wishyou.today learning

chinese hsk 7–9 in 193 days

The whole course on paper: all 5624 new words with their meanings and examples, every grammar pattern and every dialogue.

Free, with audio, games and progress tracking, at wishyou.today/learning

contents

1. day 1 · kind and honest
2. day 2 · proud, rude and mean
3. day 3 · how much: degree words
4. day 4 · stubborn, silly, careless
5. day 5 · calm, quick and clever
6. day 6 · moved and worn out
7. day 7 · idioms about people
8. day 8 · mission: Anna's new team
9. day 9 · happy days
10. day 10 · sad and low
11. day 11 · angry and fed up
12. day 12 · worry and fear
13. day 13 · hopes and wishes
14. day 14 · surprise and shame
15. day 15 · feelings in four characters
16. day 16 · mission: a week of ups and downs
17. day 17 · guests and visits
18. day 18 · friends and circles
19. day 19 · moods: surely, no wonder
20. day 20 · kindness and forgiveness
21. day 21 · quarrels and grudges
22. day 22 · flattery and tricks
23. day 23 · getting along
24. day 24 · mission: the reunion dinner
25. day 25 · the family tree
26. day 26 · love and marriage
27. day 27 · raising children, caring for parents
28. day 28 · farewells and remembrance
29. day 29 · how it is done (2)
30. day 30 · manners and style
31. day 31 · places, seasons and people
32. day 32 · mission: Xiaoming's wedding
33. day 33 · around the house
34. day 34 · tools and repairs
35. day 35 · hide, seek and sleep
36. day 36 · clothes and looks
37. day 37 · building and moving house
38. day 38 · hands at work
39. day 39 · idioms with 不
40. day 40 · mission: moving house
41. day 41 · in the kitchen
42. day 42 · flavours and feasts
43. day 43 · from the market
44. day 44 · rough, smooth and clean
45. day 45 · when: time words
46. day 46 · times of day and of life
47. day 47 · measure words and counts
48. day 48 · mission: the hot-pot restaurant
49. day 49 · mountains, rivers and coasts
50. day 50 · frontiers and far places
51. day 51 · on the road
52. day 52 · by sea and by air
53. day 53 · setting off
54. day 54 · shape and size
55. day 55 · edges, sides and places
56. day 56 · mission: hiking in the mountains
57. day 57 · wild and tame animals
58. day 58 · how animals live
59. day 59 · trees and flowers
60. day 60 · fields and farms
61. day 61 · weather and sky
62. day 62 · waves, rocks and fire
63. day 63 · light and colour
64. day 64 · mission: a weekend on the farm
65. day 65 · the body
66. day 66 · looks and fitness
67. day 67 · feeling ill
68. day 68 · serious illness
69. day 69 · at the hospital
70. day 70 · wounds and healing
71. day 71 · idioms with 无, 东…西, 七…八
72. day 72 · mission: a week in hospital
73. day 73 · secrets and specialists
74. day 74 · the competition
75. day 75 · fans and champions
76. day 76 · games and outdoor fun
77. day 77 · swing, shake and sway
78. day 78 · walk, run and chase
79. day 79 · effort and success
80. day 80 · mission: the city marathon
81. day 81 · festivals and celebrations
82. day 82 · temples, myths and legends
83. day 83 · customs and wisdom
84. day 84 · heritage and crafts
85. day 85 · grand and beautiful
86. day 86 · idioms with a story
87. day 87 · mission: Spring Festival
88. day 88 · emperors and dynasties
89. day 89 · armies and weapons
90. day 90 · attack and siege
91. day 91 · defence and peace
92. day 92 · how long and in what order
93. day 93 · turning points
94. day 94 · carry, push and dig
95. day 95 · mission: the museum of the old capital
96. day 96 · film and stage
97. day 97 · music and shows
98. day 98 · painting and sculpture
99. day 99 · stories and style
100. day 100 · eyes and attention
101. day 101 · old, full and scarce
102. day 102 · mission: the film festival
103. day 103 · news and reports
104. day 104 · gossip and the internet
105. day 105 · polite words
106. day 106 · advice and warnings
107. day 107 · praise and blame
108. day 108 · arguments and lies
109. day 109 · voices and words
110. day 110 · mission: a story goes viral
111. day 111 · contracts and rules
112. day 112 · in court

113. day 113 · crime and the police
114. day 114 · theft and fraud
115. day 115 · bribes, threats and lies
116. day 116 · staying safe
117. day 117 · mission: the rental dispute
118. day 118 · government at work
119. day 119 · votes and voices
120. day 120 · nations and diplomacy
121. day 121 · rich and poor
122. day 122 · power and reform
123. day 123 · crisis and danger
124. day 124 · mission: the community meeting
125. day 125 · disaster and rescue
126. day 126 · resources and pollution
127. day 127 · change and reform
128. day 128 · trends and signs
129. day 129 · gathering and spreading
130. day 130 · change in four characters
131. day 131 · by hand, on the spot
132. day 132 · mission: the flood
133. day 133 · money and the bank
134. day 134 · shops and selling
135. day 135 · spending and saving
136. day 136 · companies and capital
137. day 137 · ups and downs
138. day 138 · money, plans and luck
139. day 139 · with one heart, one by one
140. day 140 · mission: Anna buys a flat
141. day 141 · trade and supply
142. day 142 · taxes and shares
143. day 143 · rise and fall
144. day 144 · results and foundations
145. day 145 · stop and control
146. day 146 · putting things right
147. day 147 · mission: the trade fair
148. day 148 · hired and fired
149. day 149 · bosses and teams
150. day 150 · pay and performance
151. day 151 · effort and willpower
152. day 152 · dreams and ambition
153. day 153 · reputation and honour
154. day 154 · mission: the job interview
155. day 155 · meetings and deals
156. day 156 · plans, papers and checks
157. day 157 · on the factory floor
158. day 158 · delays and detours
159. day 159 · keeping it going
160. day 160 · talent and skill
161. day 161 · mission: the product launch
162. day 162 · computers and networks
163. day 163 · space and energy
164. day 164 · physics and chemistry
165. day 165 · in the lab
166. day 166 · shapes, parts and machines
167. day 167 · tricks and methods
168. day 168 · mission: the science fair
169. day 169 · school and degrees
170. day 170 · reading and writing
171. day 171 · learning from others
172. day 172 · thinking it over
173. day 173 · seeing clearly
174. day 174 · reasoning
175. day 175 · views and principles
176. day 176 · mission: the thesis defence
177. day 177 · pros, cons and nonsense
178. day 178 · hidden depths
179. day 179 · reason, logic and order
180. day 180 · talk, thought and decisions
181. day 181 · values and morals
182. day 182 · loyal and open-minded
183. day 183 · hold, tie and wrap
184. day 184 · mission: the great debate
185. day 185 · love and admiration
186. day 186 · noise, quiet and heat
187. day 187 · rare, odd and ordinary
188. day 188 · short, sharp and detailed
189. day 189 · breaking down
190. day 190 · eyes, faces and fists
191. day 191 · mission: the farewell party

The practice exams need sound, so they live online: wishyou.today/learning/language/chinese/hsk-7-9/exam.html

day 1 kind and honest

Describe kind, honest and good-hearted people, and read “our” in formal Chinese: 我国, 我方, 我公司.

Character words are how Chinese colleagues, friends and the news talk about people, and formal 我 is on every official notice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
诚恳	chéngkěn	sincere, earnest	他的态度非常诚恳。 His attitude was completely sincere.
诚意	chéngyì	sincerity, good faith	只要双方都有诚意，问题就能解决。 As long as both sides act in good faith, the problem can be solved.
诚挚	chéngzhì	sincere, cordial (formal)	向各位表示诚挚的感谢。 We extend our sincere thanks to you all.
纯洁	chúnjié	pure, innocent	孩子的心是纯洁的。 A child’s heart is pure.
纯朴	chúnpǔ	simple and honest	这里的人非常纯朴。 The people here are very simple and honest.
淳朴	chúnpǔ	simple and honest	他身上有一种淳朴的气质。 There is something simple and honest about him.
慈祥	cíxiáng	kindly (of an older person)	爷爷笑得很慈祥。 Grandpa smiled kindly.
敦厚	dūnhòu	honest and kind-hearted	他是个敦厚的老实人。 He’s an honest, good-hearted man.
憨厚	hānhòu	simple, honest and good-natured	他笑起来憨厚极了。 He has the most good-natured smile.
厚道	hòudao	decent, kind (to others)	做人要厚道。 You should treat people decently.
和蔼	héǎi	kindly, amiable	王老师对学生总是很和蔼。 Teacher Wang is always kind to her students.
和气	héqi	polite, friendly, good-natured	店老板说话很和气。 The shop owner speaks in a friendly way.
宽厚	kuānhòu	generous, magnanimous	她对人一向宽厚。 She has always been generous towards people.
宽容	kuānróng	tolerant; to forgive	请对新同事宽容一点。 Please be a little more patient with new colleagues.
包容	bāoróng	tolerant, accepting; to include	这座城市很包容，欢迎各种人。 This city is open-minded and welcomes all kinds of people.
仁慈	réncí	merciful, benevolent	他是一位仁慈的老人。 He is a merciful, kindly old man.

善	shàn	kind, good; good at	她心善，见到小动物总要喂一喂。 She's kind-hearted: whenever she sees a little animal, she feeds it.
善意	shànyì	goodwill, good intentions	他的批评是出于善意。 His criticism was well meant.
好心	hǎoxīn	good intentions; kind-hearted	好心的路人把钱包送了回来。 A kind passer-by brought the wallet back.
好意	hǎoyì	kindness, good intention	谢谢你的好意，我自己来吧。 Thanks for the kind offer, but I'll do it myself.
友善	yǒushàn	friendly	当地人对游客很友善。 The locals are friendly to tourists.
亲和力	qīnhélì	warmth, approachability	新来的主持人很有亲和力。 The new host is very approachable.
真心	zhēnxīn	sincere; wholehearted	我真心希望你快乐。 I sincerely hope you're happy.
真挚	zhēnzhì	sincere, heartfelt	他们之间有一份真挚的友谊。 They share a sincere friendship.
坦诚	tǎnchéng	candid, open and honest	我们坦诚地谈了一次。 We had a frank talk.
坦率	tǎnshuài	frank, straightforward	坦率地说，这个方案不太好。 Frankly, this plan isn't very good.
耿直	gěngzhí	blunt, honest and upright	他性格耿直，有什么说什么。 He's blunt by nature and says whatever he thinks.
正直	zhèngzhí	upright, honest	法官必须正直。 A judge must be honest and upright.
朴实	pǔshí	plain, down to earth	她的文章写得很朴实。 Her writing is plain and honest.
质朴	zhìpǔ	simple, unadorned	这些木头家具很质朴。 This wooden furniture is simple and unadorned.
心肠	xīncháng	heart, nature (good or bad)	他是个心肠很好的人。 He has a really good heart.
蒙	méng	to receive (a favour); to cover	这次蒙您帮忙，太感谢了。 I'm so grateful for your help this time.
殷勤	yīnqín	attentive, eager to please	服务员殷勤地给客人倒茶。 The waiter attentively poured tea for the guests.
平和	pínghé	calm, even-tempered; mild	他说话的语气很平和。 He spoke in a calm tone.

pattern 我 + institution: "our" in formal chinese

我 **国 / 方 / 公司 / 市** **= our country / side / company / city**

In formal writing and speeches, 我 goes straight before an institution and means “our”: 我国 (our country), 我方 (our side in a deal), 我公司, 我市. There is no 的. Use it only for institutions, never for people: it is 我妈妈 and 我的朋友.

我公司诚挚邀请您参加十周年活动。 **wǒ gōngsī chéngzhì yāoqǐng nín cānjiā shí zhōunián huódòng** Our company cordially invites you to our tenth-anniversary event.

我方愿意坦诚地讨论合同里的每一个问题。 **wǒ fāng yuànyì tǎnchéng de tǎolùn hétóng lǐ de měi yí gè wèntí** Our side is willing to discuss every point in the contract openly.

我国自古以来就重视朴实、宽厚的品质。 **wǒ guó zì gǔ yǐlái jiù zhòngshì pǔshí kuānhòu de pǐnzhì** Since ancient times, our country has valued plain honesty and generosity of spirit.

dialogue lunch with xiaoming: my new team

xiaoming 你的新团队怎么样？同事们好相处吗？
nǐ de xīn tuánduì zěnmeyàng tóngshìmen hǎo xiāngchǔ ma · How's your new team? Are your colleagues easy to get on with?

anna 挺好的。刘经理说话坦率，有问题就直接指出来。
tǐng hǎo de Liújīnglǐ shuōhuà tǎnshuài yǒu wèntí jiù zhíjiē zhǐ chulai · Pretty good. Manager Liu is frank: if there's a problem, she points it out right away.

xiaoming 坦率的领导好，你不用整天猜她在想什么。
tǎnshuài de lǐngdǎo hǎo nǐ búyòng zhěng tiān cāi tā zài xiǎng shénme · A frank boss is a good thing: you don't have to spend all day guessing what she's thinking.

anna 坐我旁边的老张很耿直，上午就说我的方案有问题。
zuò wǒ pángbiān de lǎo zhāng hěn gěngzhí shàngwǔ jiù shuō wǒ de fāngàn yǒu wèntí · Lao Zhang, who sits next to me, is very blunt: this morning he told me my plan had a problem.

xiaoming 耿直的人一般都很厚道，他是真心想帮你。
gěngzhí de rén yìbān dōu hěn hòudao tā shì zhēnxīn xiǎng bāng nǐ · Blunt people are usually decent. He genuinely wants to help you.

anna 对。他不太爱说话，人却很敦厚，中午还殷勤地帮我拿了外卖。
duì tā bú tài ài shuōhuà rén què hěn dūnhòu zhōngwǔ hái yīnqín de bāng wǒ ná le wàimài · Yes. He doesn't talk much, but he's good-hearted: at lunch he even kindly fetched my takeaway for me.

xiaoming 看来他的意见全是善意的。那个新来的实习生呢？
kànlái tā de yìjiàn quán shì shànyì de nàge xīn lái de shíxí shēng ne · So his comments were all well meant. And the new intern?

anna 她是从农村来的，人特别朴实，穿得也很质朴。她说她们村的人都很纯朴。
tā shì cóng nóngcūn lái de rén tèbié pǔshí chuān de yě hěn zhìpǔ tā shuō tāmen cūn de rén dōu hěn chúnpǔ · She's from the countryside: very down to earth, and she dresses simply. She says everyone in her village is like that, simple and honest.

xiaoming 这样的人往往最好相处。
zhèyàng de rén wǎngwǎng zuìhǎo xiāngchǔ · People like that are often the easiest to get on with.

anna 没错。她性格平和，很有亲和力，对谁都和气、友善。
méi cuò tā xìnggé pínghé hěn yǒu qīnhélì duì shéi dōu héqi yǒushàn · Exactly. She's even-tempered and very approachable, friendly and pleasant to everyone.

xiaoming 你自己呢？第一天表现得怎么样？
nǐ zìjǐ ne dì yī tiān biǎoxiàn de zěnmeyàng · And you? How did your first day go?

anna 我开会时说错了一个数字，大家都很宽容，刘经理也很宽厚，只是和蔼地笑了笑。
wǒ kāihuì shí shuō cuò le yí gè shùzì dàjiā dōu hěn kuānróng Liújīnglǐ yě hěn kuānhòu zhǐshì héǎi de xiào le xiao · I got a number wrong in the meeting, but everyone was understanding, and Manager Liu, generous as she is, just gave a kind smile.

xiaoming 你们团队真不错，大家心肠都好，又懂得包容。
nǐmen tuánduì zhēn búcuò dàjiā xīncháng dōu hǎo yòu dǒngde bāoróng · Your team sounds great: kind-hearted people who know how to be tolerant.

anna 是啊，这几天蒙大家照顾，我打算请他们喝咖啡，表示一点诚意。
shì a zhè jǐ tiān méng dàjiā zhàogù wǒ dǎsuàn qǐng tāmen hē kāfēi biǎoshì yìdiǎn chéngyì · Yes. They've looked after me so well these past few days that I'm going to buy them coffee, as a small sign of my thanks.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

恳
kěn
earnest

慈
cí
loving, kind

仁
rén
kindness, benevolence

坦
tǎn
flat, open

good to know · 我 straight before an institution means “our”: 我国 (our country), 我方 (our side), 我公司. Use it only in formal writing and speeches; at home, say 我们公司. 殷勤 is warm and attentive service; 献殷勤 means sucking up to someone. Context decides.

You can now say what you like about someone in Chinese, precisely and warmly. Your colleagues will notice.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 2 proud, rude and mean

Describe arrogant, rude, mean and cruel people, and read the prefixes 后- (post-) and 亲- (-friendly).

Villains in dramas, rude clients, stingy bosses: the strong words for bad character are everywhere in reviews, gossip and the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
傲	ào	proud, haughty	她有点傲，很少主动跟人打招呼。 She's a bit proud and rarely says hello first.
傲慢	àomàn	arrogant	他对服务员的态度很傲慢。 He's arrogant towards waiters.
高傲	gāoào	proud, haughty	她看起来很高傲，其实很害羞。 She looks haughty, but she's actually shy.
霸道	bàdào	overbearing, bossy	他在家里很霸道，什么都要听他的。 He's bossy at home: everything has to be his way.
卑鄙	bēibǐ	despicable, contemptible	用这种办法赢得比赛，太卑鄙了。 Winning the match that way is despicable.
粗暴	cūbào	rough, brutal	他粗暴地打断了我。 He rudely cut me off.
粗鲁	cūlǔ	rude, crude	对老人说话不能这么粗鲁。 You can't talk to old people so rudely.
狡猾	jiǎohuá	cunning, sly	那只猫很狡猾，总能偷到鱼。 That cat is very sly: it always manages to steal the fish.
奸诈	jiānzhà	treacherous, crafty	小说里的商人奸诈又贪心。 The merchant in the novel is crafty and greedy.
吝啬	lìnsè	stingy, mean	他对自己很大方，对别人却很吝啬。 He's generous with himself but stingy with others.
冷淡	lěngdàn	cool, indifferent	她的回答很冷淡。 Her reply was cool.
冷酷	lěngkù	cold and cruel, grim	现实有时候很冷酷。 Reality can be harsh.
冷漠	lěngmò	indifferent, uncaring	城市生活让一些人变得冷漠。 City life makes some people indifferent.
无情	wúqíng	heartless, ruthless	时间是无情的。 Time shows no mercy.
无耻	wúchǐ	shameless	抄别人的文章还说是自己的，真无耻！ Copying someone's article and calling it your own: how shameless!
自私	zìsī	selfish	别太自私，也想想别人。 Don't be so selfish: think of others too.
贪	tān	greedy; to covet	他太贪了，什么都想要。 He's too greedy: he wants everything.

贪婪	tānlán	greedy, avaricious	贪婪的人永远不会满足。 Greedy people are never satisfied.
虚伪	xūwěi	hypocritical, false	我不喜欢他那种虚伪的笑容。 I don't like that fake smile of his.
虚荣	xūróng	vanity; vain	买名牌只是为了虚荣。 Buying designer brands is just vanity.
狭隘	xiáài	narrow, narrow-minded	这种想法太狭隘了。 That way of thinking is far too narrow-minded.
嚣张	xiāozhāng	arrogant, aggressive	他说话的语气太嚣张了。 His tone was far too arrogant.
猖狂	chāngkuáng	rampant, unrestrained	这几年，网上的骗子越来越猖狂。 Online scammers have become more and more brazen in recent years.
放肆	fàngsì	impudent, out of line	在老师面前不能放肆。 You mustn't take liberties in front of the teacher.
邪	xié	evil; strange, weird	这事真邪，东西放在桌子上就不见了。 This is so weird: I put it on the table and it vanished.
邪恶	xiéè	evil, wicked	故事里，善良最后战胜了邪恶。 In the story, good finally defeats evil.
凶	xiōng	fierce, fearsome	那只狗看起来很凶，其实很温和。 That dog looks fierce but is actually very gentle.
凶残	xiōngcán	brutal, savage	鲨鱼并不像电影里那么凶残。 Sharks are not as savage as in the films.
凶恶	xiōngè	ferocious, fierce-looking	门口站着一个表情凶恶的保安。 A security guard with a fierce expression stood at the door.
凶狠	xiōnghěn	vicious, ruthless	他说话的样子很凶狠。 He looked vicious when he spoke.
残酷	cánkù	cruel, brutal	比赛的规则很残酷，输一场就要回家。 The rules are brutal: lose one match and you go home.
残忍	cánrěn	cruel, ruthless	伤害小动物是残忍的行为。 Hurting small animals is cruel.
野蛮	yěmán	barbaric, rough	他这种做法太野蛮了。 That way of doing things is far too rough.
丑恶	chǒuè	ugly, hideous (morally)	这本小说写出了社会上的丑恶现象。 This novel shows the ugly side of society.

pattern 后- "post-" and 亲- "-friendly"

后 | a period: 现代, 工业时代 | = post-... | 亲 | a thing: 水, 民 | = ...-friendly

Modern Chinese builds new words with prefixes. 后 before a period or movement means “post-”: 后现代 (postmodern), 后工业时代 (the post-industrial age). 亲 before a noun means “close to, friendly to”: 亲水 (waterside, where you can touch the water), 亲民 (close to ordinary people).

这座城市进入了后工业时代，旧工厂都变成了博物馆。 **zhè zuò chéngshì jìnrù le hòu gōngyè shídài jiù gōngchǎng dōu biànchéng le bówùguǎn** The city has entered its post-industrial age, and the old factories have all become museums.

网上的信息有真也有假，有人把今天叫作“后真相时代”。 **wǎngshang de xìnxī yǒu zhēn yě yǒu jiǎ yǒu rén bǎ jīntiān jiàozuò hòu zhēnxiàng shídài** Online information is a mix of true and false, and some people call today “the post-truth era”.

河边新建了一个亲水公园，孩子们可以在里面玩水。 **hé biān xīn jiàn le yí gè qīn shuǐ gōngyuán háizimen kěyǐ zài lǐmiàn wán shuǐ** A new waterside park has been built by the river, where children can play in the water.

dialogue villains on screen, and one in real life

little sister 安娜，你看过这部电视剧吗？里面的坏人一个比一个凶，一个比一个狡猾。
Ānnà nǐ kàn guo zhè bù diànshìjù ma lǐmiàn de huài rén yí gè bǐ yí gè xiōng yí gè bǐ yí gè jiǎohuá · Anna, have you seen this drama? Each villain is fiercer and more cunning than the last.

anna 看过。那个老板最可怕，表面上很热情，其实又虚伪又贪婪。
kàn guo nàge lǎobǎn zuì kěpà biǎomiàn shàng hěn rèqíng qíshí yòu xūwěi yòu tānlán · I have. The boss is the scariest: warm on the surface, but really a hypocrite, and greedy.

little sister 对！他为了钱什么都做得出来，简直无耻。
duì tā wèile qián shénme dōu zuò de chulai jiǎnzhí wúchǐ · Yes! He'd do anything for money. He's utterly shameless.

anna 他手下那几个人长得很凶恶，对老百姓又凶狠又残忍。
tā shǒu xià nà jǐ gè rén zhǎng de hěn xiōngè duì lǎobǎixìng yòu xiōnghěn yòu cánrěn · And his men look ferocious: vicious and cruel to ordinary people.

little sister 他儿子也不好，又高傲又虚荣，整天开着跑车到处跑。
tā érzi yě bù hǎo yòu gāoào yòu xūróng zhěng tiān kāi zhe pǎo chē dàochù pǎo · His son's no better: proud and vain, driving his sports car around all day.

anna 最让我生气的是，他们对别人的痛苦那么冷酷无情。
zuì ràng wǒ shēngqì de shì tāmen duì biérén de tòngkǔ nàme lěngkù wúqíng · What makes me angriest is how cold and heartless they are about other people's suffering.

little sister 有一场戏，坏人特别野蛮，导演把他们的凶残拍得太真实了，我都不敢看。
yǒu yì chǎng xì huài rén tèbié yěmán dǎoyǎn bǎ tāmen de xiōngcán pāi de tài zhēnshí le wǒ dōu bù gǎn kàn · In one scene the villains are really savage: the director shows their brutality so realistically that I couldn't watch.

anna 导演就是想让我们看清这些人有多邪恶。他们越猖狂，观众就越生气。
dǎoyǎn jiùshì xiǎng ràng wǒmen kàn qīng zhèxiē rén yǒu duō xiéè tāmen yuè chāngkuáng guānzhòng jiù yuè shēngqì · The director wants us to see how evil these people are. The more brazen they get, the angrier the audience gets.

little sister 我觉得电视剧想说的是：贪是一切丑恶的开始。
wǒ juéde diànshìjù xiǎng shuō de shì tān shì yíqiè chǒuè de kāishǐ · I think the drama is saying that greed is where all ugliness begins.

anna 说得好！现实里坏人没那么多，不过今天我就遇到了一个客户，特别傲慢，还很霸道。
shuō de hǎo xiànshí lǐ huài rén méi nàme duō búguò jīntiān wǒ jiù yùdào le yí gè kèhù tèbié àomàn hái hěn bàdào · Well said! Real life doesn't have that many villains, but today I met a client who was incredibly arrogant, and bossy too.

little sister 他怎么了？
tā zěnme le · What did he do?

anna 他让我们改了十次方案，最后还在大家面前骂我们。
tā ràng wǒmen gǎi le shí cì fāngàn zuìhòu hái zài dàjiā miànqián mà wǒmen · He made us redo the plan ten times, and in the end he told us off in front of everyone.

little sister 太嚣张、太放肆了！刘经理怎么说？
tài xiāozhāng tài fàngsì le Liújīnglǐ zěnme shuō · How arrogant! That's outrageous! What did Manager Liu say?

anna 她很冷静，只是对他的态度有点冷淡。说来也邪，我一提到他，他就打电话来了！
tā hěn lěngjìng zhǐshì duì tā de tàidù yǒu diǎn lěngdàn shuō lái yě xié wǒ yì tídào tā tā jiù dǎ diànhuà lái le · She stayed calm and was just a bit cool with him. And the strange thing is, the moment I mention him, he calls!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

蒙
méng
to receive (a favour); to cover

卑
bēi
low

诈
zhà
to cheat

耻
chǐ
shame

good to know · 后 + a period means “post-”: 后现代, 后工业时代, 后真相时代. 亲 + a noun means “friendly to, close to”: 亲水公园 (a park where you can touch the water), 亲民 (close to the people). Strong words like 无耻 and 卑鄙 are insults when said to someone’s face. In reviews and stories they are fine.

You can now say exactly what is wrong with someone’s behaviour, in Chinese, without shouting. That’s power.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 3 how much: degree words

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 1 · people and character

Say exactly how much with written degree adverbs (颇, 略微, 尤为, 万分, 越发) and describe how people act (拼命, 趁机, 公然, 刻意).

Degree and manner adverbs are what make news reports, emails and speeches sound educated; HSK 7–9 texts are full of them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
大为	dàwéi	greatly (written)	新方法让效率大为提高。 The new method has greatly improved efficiency.
分外	fènwài	especially, unusually	老朋友见面，分外亲切。 When old friends meet, it feels especially warm.
何等	héděng	how (in exclamations)	这是何等重要的一天！ What an important day this is!
极度	jídù	extremely	他当时极度紧张。 He was extremely nervous at the time.
极力	jílì	to do one's utmost	他极力反对这个计划。 He strongly opposed the plan.
略	lüè	slightly; brief; to omit	今天比昨天略冷一些。 It's slightly colder today than yesterday.
略微	lüèwēi	slightly, a little	请把声音略微调{tiao2-5}小一点。 Please turn the volume down a little.
颇	pō	quite, rather (written)	他的发言颇有道理。 His speech made quite a lot of sense.
稍稍	shāoshāo	slightly, a little	请稍稍等一下。 Please wait just a moment.
万分	wànfēn	extremely, very much	听到这个好消息，她万分激动。 She was overjoyed at the good news.
微	wēi	slightly (written); tiny	他微感意外，但没说什么。 He was slightly surprised but said nothing.
尤为	yóuwéi	especially (before 2 syllables)	这一点尤为重要。 This point is particularly important.
愈加	yùjiā	all the more, even more	到了晚上，天气愈加寒冷了。 In the evening it grew even colder.
越发	yuèfā	more and more, all the more	几年不见，她越发漂亮了。 I haven't seen her for a few years, and she's even prettier.
愈	yù	the more ... (愈……愈……)	他愈想愈生气。 The more he thought about it, the angrier he got.
按理	ànlǐ	normally, by rights	按理他应该先告诉我。 By rights he should have told me first.

按说	ànshuō	normally, by rights	按说这时候已经下班了。 Normally everyone would have finished work by now.
百般	bǎibān	in every possible way	父母对他百般照顾。 His parents look after him in every way.
不由得	bùyóude	can't help (doing)	想起小时候，她不由得笑了。 Remembering her childhood, she couldn't help smiling.
趁机	chènjī	to take the chance	他趁机提出了自己的想法。 He took the chance to put forward his idea.
趁早	chènzǎo	as early as possible	有病要趁早看医生。 If you're ill, see a doctor as soon as you can.
大肆	dàsì	wantonly, on a large scale	他们在媒体上大肆宣传。 They advertised massively in the media.
断然	duànrán	resolutely, flatly	她断然拒绝了这个要求。 She flatly refused the request.
公然	gōngrán	openly, brazenly	他公然违反规定。 He openly broke the rules.
火速	huǒsù	at top speed	救护车火速赶到了现场。 The ambulance rushed to the scene.
竭力	jiélì	to do one's utmost	我们会竭力满足您的要求。 We will do our utmost to meet your requirements.
尽情	jìnqíng	to one's heart's content	假期里孩子们尽情地玩。 In the holidays, the children play to their heart's content.
就近	jiùjìn	nearby, locally	孩子可以就近上学。 Children can go to a school nearby.
刻意	kèyì	deliberately, painstakingly	他没有刻意打扮，看起来却很精神。 He didn't make any special effort to dress up, yet he looked great.
拼命	pīnmìng	with all one's might	他拼命地跑，终于赶上了车。 He ran as hard as he could and just caught the bus.
强行	qiángxíng	to force, by force	不能强行让孩子学钢琴。 You can't force a child to learn the piano.
任意	rènyì	at will, arbitrarily	公园里的花不能任意摘。 You can't pick the flowers in the park as you please.
日趋	rìqū	day by day, increasingly	两国关系日趋紧密。 Relations between the two countries are getting closer every day.

pattern written degree adverbs: slightly, quite, especially, extremely

略微 / 稍稍 / 微 | 颇 / 大为 | 尤为 / 分外 | 极度 / 万分 | + adjective or verb

Written Chinese has its own scale of “how much”. Slightly: 略(微), 稍稍, 微. Quite, greatly: 颇, 大为. Especially: 尤为, 分外. Extremely: 极度, 万分. More and more: 越发, 愈加 (and 愈……愈……). 何等 means “how …!” in an exclamation.

对您的帮助，我们万分感谢。 **duì nín de bāngzhù wǒmen wànfēn gǎnxiè** We are extremely grateful for your help.

这个结果颇令人意外。 **zhège jiéguǒ pō lìng rén yìwài** The result was rather surprising.

那时候的生活是何等艰难！ **nà shíhou de shēnghuó shì héděng jiānnán** How hard life was back then!

经过这件事，他愈加小心了。问题愈拖愈难解决。 **jīngguò zhè jiàn shì tā yùjiā xiǎoxīn le wèntí yù tuō yù nán jiějué** After that, he became even more careful. The longer a problem is left, the harder it is to solve.

dialogue launch week, and a copycat

manager liu 安娜，发布会还有三天，准备得怎么样了？
Ānnà fābù huì hái yǒu sān tiān zhǔnbèi de zěnmeyàng le · Anna, the launch is in three days. How are the preparations going?

anna 基本好了，只是介绍产品的部分还得稍稍改一下。
jīběn hǎo le zhǐshì jièshào chǎnpǐn de bùfen hái děi shāoshāo gǎi yíxià · Nearly done. The product presentation just needs a few small changes.

manager liu 好。对了，你听说了吗？对手公司公然抄了我们的设计。
hǎo duì le nǐ tīngshuō le ma duìshǒu gōngsī gōngrán chāo le wǒmen de shèjì · Good. By the way, have you heard? A rival company has openly copied our design.

anna 听说了，他们还在网上大肆宣传，说是自己的新产品。
tīngshuō le tāmen hái zài wǎngshang dàsì xuānchuán shuō shì zìjǐ de xīn chǎnpǐn · I have. And they're advertising it all over the internet as their own new product.

manager liu 孙律师已经在火速处理了。他们想谈条件，我方断然拒绝了。
Sūnlǜshī yǐjīng zài huǒsù chǔlǐ le tāmen xiǎng tán tiáojiàn wǒ fāng duànrán jùjué le · Lawyer Sun is already dealing with it at top speed. They wanted to negotiate, and we flatly refused.

anna 他们会不会趁机降价，抢我们的客户？
tāmen huì bu huì chènjī jiàngjià qiǎng wǒmen de kèhù · Might they take the chance to cut prices and steal our customers?

manager liu 很有可能。所以我们得趁早联系老客户，竭力留住他们。
hěn yǒu kěnéng suǒyǐ wǒmen děi chènzǎo liánxì lǎo kèhù jiélì liú zhù tāmen · Quite possibly. So we need to contact our regular customers early and do our utmost to keep them.

anna 明白。孙律师也会极力保护我们的设计吧？
míngbai Sūnlǜshī yě huì jílì bǎohù wǒmen de shèjì ba · Understood. And Lawyer Sun will do everything he can to protect our design?

manager liu 当然。这些天大家拼命加班，越发紧张了，你也别太累。
dāngrán zhèxiē tiān dàjiā pīnmìng jiābān yuèfā jǐnzhāng le nǐ yě bié tài lèi · Of course. Everyone's been working flat out these days and getting more and more tense. Don't wear yourself out.

anna 按说这个项目不该这么赶，是客户强行把日期提前了。
ànshuō zhège xiàngmù bù gāi zhème gǎn shì kèhù qiángxíng bǎ rìqī tíqián le · By rights this project shouldn't be such a rush. The client forced the date forward.

manager liu 是啊，他们总是任意改要求，我百般解释，他们才同意不再改。
shì a tāmen zǒngshì rènyì gǎi yāoqiú wǒ bǎibān jiěshì tāmen cái tóngyì bú zài gǎi · Yes, they keep changing their demands as they like. I explained it every way I could before they agreed to stop.

anna 这段时间我真的极度紧张。发布会结束以后，我们一定要尽情放松一下！
zhè duàn shíjiān wǒ zhēn de jídù jǐnzhāng fābù huì jiéshù yǐhòu wǒmen yídìng yào jìnqíng fàngsōng yíxià · I've been extremely stressed lately. After the launch, we really must relax and enjoy ourselves!

manager liu 没问题。到时候就近找个餐厅，我请客。
méi wèntí dào shíhou jiùjìn zhǎo gè cāntīng wǒ qǐngkè · No problem. We'll find a restaurant nearby and it's on me.

anna 太好了！那天我不会刻意少吃的。
tài hǎo le nà tiān wǒ bú huì kèyì shǎo chī de · Great! I won't be deliberately eating less that day.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

贪
tān
greedy; to covet

伪
wěi
fake

狭
xiá
narrow

肆
sì
unrestrained

good to know · 颇, 略, 尤为, 极度 and 万分 belong to writing and formal speech. In chat, people say 挺, 有点儿, 特别 and 非常. 尤为 and 极为 go before two-syllable words: 尤为重要, never 尤为好.

Slightly, especially, extremely, more and more: you now have the fine controls of written Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 4 stubborn, silly, careless

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 1 · people and character

Tease and criticise: stubborn, fussy, careless, silly, lazy and shallow, and read word-building suffixes like -然, -为 and -制.

Family dinners, team reviews and online comments are full of these words, usually said with a smile, sometimes not.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
固执	gùzhi	stubborn, obstinate	他太固执了，谁劝都不听。 He's too stubborn to listen to anyone.
倔强	juéjiàng	unbending, strong-willed	她性格倔强，从不轻易认输。 She is strong-willed and never gives up easily.
倔	juè	gruff, stubborn (spoken)	这个老人脾气很倔。 The old man has a stubborn streak.
顽固	wángù	stubborn, die-hard	这种顽固的老观念很难改变。 Such stubborn old ideas are hard to change.
任性	rènxìng	wilful, headstrong	别那么任性，想想别人。 Don't be so wilful; think of others.
挑剔	tiāoti	fussy, nit-picking	这位客户非常挑剔。 This client is very picky.
娇气	jiāoqì	delicate, soft, pampered	别那么娇气，走几步路就喊累。 Don't be so soft: you complain you're tired after a few steps.
急躁	jízào	impatient, irritable	遇到问题别急躁，慢慢来。 When there's a problem, don't get impatient. Take it slowly.
暴躁	bàozào	hot-tempered, irascible	他脾气暴躁，一点小事就发脾气。 He's hot-tempered and loses his temper at the slightest thing.
鲁莽	lǔmǎng	reckless, rash	这么做太鲁莽了。 That's far too rash.
草率	cǎoshuài	careless, hasty, sloppy	结婚是大事，不能草率。 Marriage is a big decision; you can't rush it.
不慎	bùshèn	carelessly, by accident	他不慎摔倒，伤了腿。 He slipped and hurt his leg.
疏忽	shūhu	to neglect; an oversight	这是我的疏忽，对不起。 That was my oversight, sorry.
大意	dàyi	careless, inattentive	别大意，考试前再检查一遍。 Don't be careless; check once more before the exam.
糊涂	hútu	muddled, confused	我真糊涂，把日期记错了。 How silly of me: I got the date wrong.

蠢	chǔn	stupid, dumb	这个问题问得太蠢了。 That was a really stupid question.
笨蛋	bèndàn	idiot, fool	你这个笨蛋，又把伞忘了！ You idiot, you've forgotten your umbrella again!
傻瓜	shǎguā	fool, silly thing	别哭了，小傻瓜。 Don't cry, you little silly.
愚蠢	yúchǔn	stupid, foolish	这是一个愚蠢的决定。 That's a foolish decision.
愚昧	yúmèi	ignorant, unenlightened	那种愚昧的看法早就过时了。 That ignorant view is long out of date.
无知	wúzhī	ignorant	承认自己无知，是学习的开始。 Admitting your ignorance is where learning begins.
幼稚	yòuzhì	childish, naive	这个想法有点幼稚。 That idea is a bit naive.
迟钝	chídùn	slow, sluggish (to react)	他对别人的感情有点迟钝。 He's a bit slow to pick up on other people's feelings.
笨拙	bènzhuō	clumsy, awkward	他笨拙地向她道歉。 He apologised to her awkwardly.
懒惰	lǎnduò	lazy, idle	懒惰的人很难成功。 Lazy people rarely succeed.
偷懒	tōulǎn	to slack off, skive	别偷懒，快干活！ No slacking, get to work!
松懈	sōngxiè	slack, relaxed (in effort)	快考试了，千万不能松懈。 The exam is coming: whatever you do, don't let up.
浮躁	fúzào	impetuous, restless, superficial	现在的年轻人有些浮躁。 Some young people today are a bit restless.
肤浅	fūqiǎn	shallow, superficial	只看外表是很肤浅的。 Judging only by looks is shallow.
庸俗	yōngsú	vulgar, tacky	这个广告太庸俗了。 This advert is so tacky.
平庸	píngyōng	mediocre, ordinary	我不想过平庸的一生。 I don't want to live an ordinary life.
盲目	mángmù	blind (uncritical)	不要盲目跟别人学。 Don't blindly copy others.
自负	zìfù	conceited, full of oneself	他有点自负，但确实很有能力。 He's a bit conceited, but he really is very capable.
自满	zìmǎn	complacent, self-satisfied	取得一点成绩就自满，是不对的。 It's wrong to become complacent after one small success.

pattern word-building suffixes: -然, -为, -制 and more

a root + 然 = **-ly: 显然, 居然, 果然** + 为 = **as: 视为, 称为** + 制 = **system: 合同制, 会员制**

Chinese makes new words with suffixes. -然 makes adverbs (显然 obviously, 居然 unexpectedly, 果然 as expected); -为 means “as” (把A视为B: regard A as B); -制 means “system” (合同制 contract system, 会员制 members only). Others work the same way: 人生观 (outlook on life), 教育界 (the education world), 文坛 (the literary scene), 胆小鬼 (a coward).

他居然连自己的生日都忘了，真糊涂。 **tā jūrán lián zìjǐ de shēngrì dōu wàng le zhēn hútu** He actually forgot his own birthday. How muddle-headed!

把考试成绩视为一切，这种想法很肤浅。 **bǎ kǎoshì chéngjì shìwéi yíqiè zhè zhǒng xiǎngfǎ hěn fūqiǎn** Treating exam results as everything is a shallow way of thinking.

我们公司实行合同制，每年签一次合同。 **wǒmen gōngsī shíxíng hétóng zhì měi nián qiān yí cì hétóng** Our company works on a contract system: we sign a new contract every year.

他果然又盲目相信了网上的广告，显然没有吸取教训。 **tā guǒrán yòu mángmù xiāngxìn le wǎngshang de guǎnggào xiǎnrán méiyǒu xīqǔ jiàoxùn** As expected, he blindly believed an online advert again: he clearly hasn’t learned his lesson.

dialogue family dinner, family faults

ms zhang 小明，听说你上周在公司犯了个错?
Xiǎomíng tīngshuō nǐ shàng zhōu zài gōngsī fàn le gè cuò · Xiaoming, I hear you made a mistake at work last week?

xiaoming 别提了，我一时大意，不慎把客户的资料删了。
bié tí le wǒ yìshí dàyi búshèn bǎ kèhù de zīliào shān le · Don't remind me. I wasn't paying attention and accidentally deleted a client's files.

little sister 你也太粗心了吧!
nǐ yě tài cūxīn le ba · How careless can you get!

xiaoming 是我太松懈了。项目快结束了，我就开始偷懒。
shì wǒ tài sōngxiè le xiàngmù kuài jiéshù le wǒ jiù kāishǐ tōulǎn · I got too relaxed. The project was nearly over, so I started slacking off.

ms zhang 承认错误就好。最怕的是自满，觉得自己什么都懂。
chéngrèn cuòwù jiù hǎo zuì pà de shì zìmǎn juéde zìjǐ shénme dōu dǒng · Admitting it is good. The worst thing is complacency, thinking you know everything.

little sister 就像爸爸那样，又固执又顽固，旧手机都不肯换。
jiù xiàng bàba nàyàng yòu gùzhi yòu wángù jiù shǒujī dōu bù kěn huàn · Like Dad: stubborn and set in his ways, he won't even replace his old phone.

dr li 我那不叫顽固，叫节约！你呢？又挑剔又娇气，还任性。
wǒ nà bú jiào wángù jiào jiéyuē nǐ ne yòu tiāoti yòu jiāoqì hái rènxìng · That's not stubbornness, it's thrift! And you? Fussy, delicate and spoiled.

little sister 我哪里娇气了？我只是不想过庸俗的生活!
wǒ nǎlǐ jiāoqì le wǒ zhǐshì bù xiǎng guò yōngsú de shēnghuó · How am I delicate? I just don't want to live a vulgar life!

ms zhang 好了好了。你们俩一个暴躁，一个急躁，一说话就吵。
hǎo le hǎo le nǐmen liǎ yí gè bàozào yí gè jízào yì shuōhuà jiù chǎo · All right, all right. One of you is hot-tempered and the other impatient: you argue the moment you open your mouths.

dr li 我承认我脾气有点急。不过我们医院新来的那个年轻人，做事才叫鲁莽。
wǒ chéngrèn wǒ píqi yǒu diǎn jí búguò wǒmen yīyuàn xīn lái de nàge niánqīng rén zuò shì cái jiào lǔmǎng · I admit I have a bit of a temper. But that new young man at our hospital, now he's reckless.

xiaoming 年轻人难免幼稚一点，慢慢就成熟了。
niánqīng rén nánmiǎn yòuzhì yìdiǎn màn màn jiù chéngshú le · Young people are bound to be a bit immature. They grow up in time.

dr li 幼稚不要紧，最怕的是无知还自负，觉得别人都是傻瓜。有些想法简直愚昧。
yòuzhì búyàojǐn zuì pà de shì wúzhī hái zìfù juéde biérén dōu shì shǎguā yǒuxiē xiǎngfǎ jiǎnzhí yúmèi · Immaturity doesn't matter. The worst is ignorance plus arrogance, thinking everyone else is a fool. Some of his ideas are downright backward.

little sister 爸爸，你说的不会是你自己年轻的时候吧?
bàba nǐ shuō de bú huì shì nǐ zìjǐ niánqīng de shíhou ba · Dad, you're not talking about yourself when you were young, are you?

dr li 你这个小笨蛋！快吃饭吧。
nǐ zhège xiǎo bèndàn kuài chī fàn ba · You little rascal! Eat your dinner.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

邪
xié
evil; strange, weird

凶
xiōng
fierce, fearsome

颇
pō
quite, rather (written)

愈
yù
the more … (愈……愈……)

good to know · Chinese builds many words with a suffix: -然 (-ly: 显然, 居然, 果然), -为 (as: 视为, 称为), -制 (system: 合同制, 会员制), -观 (outlook: 人生观), -界 (world of: 教育界), -坛 (circle: 文坛), -鬼 (-aholic, person: 胆小鬼). You will meet the last four again later. 笨蛋 and 傻瓜 are fine with close friends and family; with anyone else they are insults.

You can now tease a friend, criticise a plan and admit your own mistakes in Chinese. That's real closeness.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 5 calm, quick and clever

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 1 · people and character

Praise people for staying calm, thinking fast and being good company, and use 不是……吗？ and 不是我说你 in conversation.

When something goes wrong, the words for calm, quick and clever are the ones you want to hear about yourself, and 不是……吗 is one of the most common moves in spoken Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
沉稳	chénwěn	steady, composed	他虽然年轻，做事却很沉稳。 He's young, but he handles things steadily.
沉着	chénzhuó	calm, unruffled	比赛最后一分钟，她依然沉着冷静。 In the last minute of the match, she stayed cool and composed.
从容	cóngróng	calm, unhurried	时间还多，我们可以从容地准备。 There's plenty of time; we can prepare at leisure.
镇定	zhèndìng	calm, composed	遇到危险时，他表现得很镇定。 When danger came, he stayed calm.
镇静	zhènjìng	calm, unagitated	请大家保持镇静，按顺序离开。 Please stay calm and leave in order.
稳健	wěnjiàn	steady, sound	这家公司发展得很稳健。 The company is growing steadily.
稳重	wěnzhòng	steady, serious, mature	他看起来比实际年龄稳重。 He seems more mature than his age.
慎重	shènzhòng	careful, prudent	签合同以前，一定要慎重。 Be very careful before you sign a contract.
理智	lǐzhì	rational; reason	生气的时候很难保持理智。 It's hard to stay rational when you're angry.
明智	míngzhì	wise, sensible	现在离开是明智的选择。 Leaving now is the sensible choice.
英明	yīngmíng	wise, brilliant (of leaders)	这是一个英明的决定。 That was a brilliant decision.
精明	jīngmíng	shrewd, astute	她是个精明的商人。 She's a shrewd businesswoman.
高明	gāomíng	brilliant, clever (idea, skill)	这个办法真高明！ What a brilliant idea!
机灵	jīling	smart, quick-witted	这孩子很机灵，一教就会。 This kid is so sharp: show him once and he's got it.
机智	jīzhì	resourceful, quick-witted	他机智地回答了这个难题。 He gave a witty answer to the tricky question.
灵	líng	quick, clever; effective	这个办法真灵，试一次就好了。 This trick really works: one try and it was

			fixed.
灵敏	língmǐn	sensitive, keen	狗的鼻子特别灵敏。 Dogs have a very keen sense of smell.
灵巧	língqiǎo	dexterous, nimble	她的手很灵巧，会自己做衣服。 She's good with her hands: she makes her own clothes.
敏捷	mǐnjié	nimble, quick	猫的动作非常敏捷。 Cats move very quickly.
敏锐	mǐnruì	sharp, perceptive	记者对新闻非常敏锐。 Reporters have a sharp nose for news.
利索	lìsuo	quick and neat, efficient	他干活很利索。 He works quickly and neatly.
乖	guāi	well-behaved, good (child, pet)	宝宝今天很乖，一点也没哭。 The baby was very good today: not a single tear.
乖巧	guāiqiǎo	sweet and clever (child)	这个小姑娘很乖巧，大家都喜欢她。 This little girl is sweet and clever; everyone loves her.
懂事	dǒngshì	sensible, understanding (of a child)	孩子长大了，越来越懂事了。 The children are growing up and becoming more and more sensible.
开朗	kāilǎng	cheerful, open	她性格开朗，很爱笑。 She's cheerful and laughs a lot.
外向	wàixiàng	outgoing, extroverted	外向的人喜欢交朋友。 Outgoing people like making friends.
内向	nèixiàng	introverted, reserved	他很内向，不太爱说话。 He's introverted and doesn't talk much.
腼腆	miǎntiǎn	shy, bashful	第一次见面时，他有点腼腆。 He was a bit shy the first time we met.
豁达	huòdá	open-minded, easy-going	他很豁达，从不为小事生气。 He's easy-going and never gets angry over little things.
潇洒	xiāosǎ	free and easy, stylish	他穿上西装显得很潇洒。 He looks very dashing in a suit.
风趣	fēngqù	witty, humorous	他讲课很风趣，学生都爱听。 His lectures are witty, and the students love them.
滑稽	huájī	funny, comical	他学猫走路，样子非常滑稽。 He walked like a cat, and it looked hilarious.
大大咧咧	dàdaliēliē	happy-go-lucky, careless	他大大咧咧的，常常忘带东西。 He's so laid-back that he often forgets things.
低调	dīdiào	low-key, modest	他很有钱，但生活很低调。 He's rich but lives a low-key life.
高调	gāodiào	high-profile, showy	这家公司高调宣布了新计划。 The company announced its new plan with great fanfare.

pattern 不是……吗？ didn't you ...? and 不是我说你

你 不是 说… / 要… / 很… 吗? = Didn’t you …? Aren’t you …?

不是……吗？ points at a gap between what was said or expected and what is happening: 他不是很内向吗？ “Isn’t he supposed to be shy?” At the start of a reply, 不是，…… means “No, I mean …”. 不是我说你，…… softens a criticism: “I don’t mean to nag, but …”.

你不是说今天不来吗？怎么又来了？ **nǐ bú shì shuō jīntiān bù lái ma zěnme yòu lái le** Didn’t you say you weren’t coming today? Why are you here?

不是我说你，你做事也太不慎重了。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ zuò shì yě tài bú shènzhòng le** I don’t mean to nag, but you really aren’t careful enough.

不是，我的意思是我们应该更理智一点。 **bú shì wǒ de yìsi shì wǒmen yīnggāi gèng lǐzhì yìdiǎn** No, what I mean is that we should be a bit more rational.

dialogue the launch that nearly went wrong

xiaoming 发布会怎么样？听说中间出了点问题？
fābù huì zěnmeyàng tīngshuō zhōngjiān chū le diǎn wèntí · How was the launch? I heard something went wrong halfway through?

anna 别提了！讲到一半，电脑突然坏了，屏幕全黑了。
bié tí le jiǎng dào yíbàn diànnǎo tūrán huài le píngmù quán hēi le · Don't ask! Halfway through, the computer suddenly died and the screen went black.

xiaoming 那你们怎么办？
nà nǐmen zěnme bàn · So what did you do?

anna 刘经理特别镇定，笑着说："大家先休息五分钟。"
Liújīnglǐ tèbié zhèndìng xiào zhe shuō dàjiā xiān xiūxi wǔ fēnzhōng · Manager Liu was completely calm. She smiled and said, "Let's all take a five-minute break."

xiaoming 真高明！她没取消发布会，这个决定很明智。她一向精明稳重，做事稳健。
zhēn gāomíng tā méi qǔxiāo fābù huì zhège juédìng hěn míngzhì tā yíxiàng jīngmíng wěnzhòng zuò shì wěnjiàn · Brilliant! Not cancelling the launch was a wise decision. She's always been shrewd and level-headed, and she plays it safe.

anna 老张反应最敏捷，两分钟就把电脑修好了。他的手特别灵巧，动作也利索。
lǎo zhāng fǎnyìng zuì mǐnjié liǎng fēnzhōng jiù bǎ diànnǎo xiū hǎo le tā de shǒu tèbié língqiǎo dòngzuò yě lìsuo · Lao Zhang was the quickest: he fixed the computer in two minutes. He's got clever hands and he works fast.

xiaoming 他不是很内向吗？平时都不太说话。
tā bú shì hěn nèixiàng ma píngshí dōu bú tài shuōhuà · Isn't he really introverted? He hardly ever talks.

anna 内向归内向，他脑子灵，关键时候特别机智。而且他很低调，事后什么也没说。
nèixiàng guī nèixiàng tā nǎozi líng guānjiàn shíhou tèbié jīzhì érqiě tā hěn dīdiào shìhòu shénme yě méi shuō · Introverted, yes, but he's quick-witted and brilliant in a crisis. And he's modest: he didn't say a word about it afterwards.

xiaoming 那你呢？你不是最怕在大家面前讲话吗？
nà nǐ ne nǐ bú shì zuì pà zài dàjiā miànqián jiǎnghuà ma · And you? Aren't you terrified of speaking in front of people?

anna 不是怕，是有点紧张。不过那天我居然很镇静，还讲了个笑话，样子挺滑稽的。
bú shì pà shì yǒu diǎn jǐnzhāng búguò nà tiān wǒ jūrán hěn zhènjìng hái jiǎng le gè xiàohua yàngzi tǐng huájī de · Not terrified, just a bit nervous. But that day I was amazingly calm, and I even told a joke. I must have looked pretty funny.

xiaoming 你什么时候变得这么风趣了？
nǐ shénme shíhou biàn de zhème fēngqù le · Since when are you so witty?

anna 跟实习生学的。她看起来大大咧咧的，其实很敏锐，什么都看得见。
gēn shíxí shēng xué de tā kàn qǐlai dàdaliēliē de qíshí hěn mǐnruì shénme dōu kàn de jiàn · I learned it from the intern. She seems happy-go-lucky, but she's actually very perceptive and notices everything.

xiaoming 刘经理真英明，选的人都这么好。她自己也挺豁达的吧？
Liújīnglǐ zhēn yīngmíng xuǎn de rén dōu zhème hǎo tā zìjǐ yě tǐng huòdá de ba · Manager Liu really is wise: she picks great people. And she's pretty easy-going herself, isn't she?

anna 是啊，事后她说："失败一次没什么。"说完就潇洒地走了。下次我们要更高调一点！
shì a shìhòu tā shuō shībài yí cì méi shénme shuō wán jiù xiāosǎ de zǒu le xià cì wǒmen yào gèng gāodiào yìdiǎn · Yes. Afterwards she said, "Failing once is nothing," and strolled off without a care. Next time, we're going big!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

竭
jié
to exhaust

倔
juè
gruff, stubborn (spoken)

躁
zào
dry, restless

疏
shū
loose, careless

good to know · 不是……吗？ is not a real question: 你不是说不来吗？ means “Didn’t you say you weren’t coming?” It shows surprise that things don’t match what was said. 不是我说你，…… means “I don’t mean to nag, but …”. It softens a criticism between friends and family.

Next time a friend keeps their cool, you can tell them so in Chinese, warmly and exactly.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 6 moved and worn out

Say what moved you, what wore you out and how you really felt, and use the written “all / only” adverbs: 均, 皆, 统统, 一概, 唯独, 唯有, 无非.

Speeches, reviews and notices use these words to say “everyone”, “without exception” and “only”, and feelings words let you answer when someone asks how you are.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
触动	chùdòng	to touch, move (emotionally)	这个故事触动了很多人。 This story touched a lot of people.
激荡	jīdàng	to surge, stir	听到这个消息，他心中激荡。 When he heard the news, his heart was stirred.
激起	jīqǐ	to arouse, stir up	这件事激起了大家的不满。 This stirred up everyone’s anger.
唤起	huànqǐ	to arouse, call up	老照片唤起了她的回忆。 The old photo brought back her memories.
澎湃	péngpài	surging, overflowing	想到明天的比赛，他心情澎湃。 Thinking about tomorrow’s match, his heart was racing with excitement.
共鸣	gòngmíng	resonance, sympathy	他的演讲引起了大家的共鸣。 His speech struck a chord with everyone.
同感	tónggǎn	the same feeling, agreement	对这一点，我深有同感。 I completely agree with you on that.
流露	liúlù	to reveal, show (feelings)	她的眼中流露出不安。 Unease showed in her eyes.
神情	shénqíng	expression, look	他的神情有些紧张。 He looked a little nervous.
神态	shéntài	bearing, manner, look	老人的神态很平和。 The old man had a calm air.
留念	liúniàn	to keep as a souvenir	我们在长城上拍照留念。 We took a photo on the Great Wall as a souvenir.
交集	jiāojí	to mingle; overlap, intersection	我们俩的工作没有什么交集。 Our two jobs hardly overlap at all.
解脱	jiětuō	to free oneself; release	考试结束了，我终于解脱了！ The exams are over: I’m finally free!
折磨	zhémó	to torment; torment	这场病把他折磨得很瘦。 The illness wore him down to skin and bone.
疲惫	píbèi	exhausted, weary	他拖着疲惫的身体回到家。 He dragged his weary body home.
疲倦	píjuàn	tired, weary	开了一天车，他感到很疲倦。 After driving all day, he felt worn out.
劳累	láolèi	overworked, tired out	你要注意身体，不要太劳累。 Look after yourself and don’t overwork.

不平	bùpíng	indignant; unfair	看到有人插队，他感到很不平。 Seeing someone push in, he felt indignant.
疯	fēng	mad, crazy	这么多作业，我快疯了！ So much homework, I'm going mad!
抵触	dǐchù	to resist, be in conflict with	孩子对学钢琴有点抵触。 The child is a bit resistant to learning the piano.
可笑	kěxiào	ridiculous, laughable	这个理由太可笑了。 That excuse is ridiculous.
怜惜	liánxī	to pity, care tenderly for	看着这只受伤的小鸟，她心里充满了怜惜。 Looking at the injured bird, she was full of tenderness.
大体	dàtǐ	roughly, by and large	我大体同意你的看法。 I broadly agree with you.
概	gài	all, without exception (written)	过期的票概不退换。 Expired tickets cannot be refunded, without exception.
皆	jiē	all, each (written)	他们两人皆是北京人。 They are both from Beijing.
尽	jǐn	to give priority to; to the utmost	好座位先尽{jin3-7}着客人坐。 Let the guests have the best seats first.
均	jūn	all, without exception; equal	两个队的成绩均有提高。 Both teams' results have improved.
通通	tōngtōng	all, entirely (spoken)	把这些旧衣服通通扔了吧。 Let's throw all these old clothes out.
统统	tǒngtǒng	all, completely (spoken)	你们统统给我出去！ All of you, out!
唯	wéi	only, alone (written)	如今唯你还记得这件事。 Now you are the only one who still remembers it.
唯独	wéidú	only, alone, except	大家都来了，唯独他没来。 Everyone came except him.
唯有	wéiyǒu	only (if)	唯有努力，才有希望。 Only through effort is there hope.
无非	wúfēi	nothing but, merely	他这么说，无非是想让你高兴。 He only said it to make you happy.
一概	yīgài	without exception, totally	别人的东西，他一概不要。 He never accepts anything from others.
无不	wúbù	all, without exception	听了这个故事，大家无不感动。 Everyone who heard the story was moved.

pattern all, every one, only: written scope adverbs

subject | **均 / 皆 / 统统 / 一概** | **= all, without exception** | **唯独 / 唯有** | **= only, except** | **无非** | **= merely, just**

These adverbs say how far something reaches. All, every one: 均, 皆 (written), 通通 / 统统 (spoken, “the whole lot”), 一概 (without exception, often with 不), 无不 (there is none that doesn’t). Only: 唯 / 唯独 (only, all except), 唯有……才…… (only … can …). 大体 means “by and large”, and 无非 plays things down: “nothing more than”.

参加比赛的选手均来自我国各地。 **cānjiā bǐsài de xuǎnshǒu jūn láizì wǒ guó gèdì** The competitors all come from different parts of our country.

大家都同意了，唯独他反对。 **dàjiā dōu tóngyì le wéidú tā fǎnduì** Everyone agreed except him.

唯有坚持，才能成功。 **wéiyǒu jiānchí cáinéng chénggōng** Only by keeping at it can you succeed.

他说来说去，无非是想多休息几天。 **tā shuō lái shuō qù wúfēi shì xiǎng duō xiūxi jǐ tiān** For all his talk, he just wants a few more days off.

dialogue twenty years of the school

teacher wang 安娜，你来了！看你的神态，好像很累？
Ānnà nǐ lái le kàn nǐ de shéntài hǎoxiàng hěn lèi · Anna, you made it! You look tired?

anna 王老师好！最近工作太劳累了，一个月没休息，整个人都很疲倦。
Wánglǎoshī hǎo zuìjìn gōngzuò tài láolèi le yí gè yuè méi xiūxi zhěnggè rén dōu hěn píjuàn · Hello, Teacher Wang! Work has been really draining: no break for a month, I'm worn out.

teacher wang 辛苦了。今天放松一下，学校二十周年，老学生统统回来了。
xīnkǔ le jīntiān fàngsōng yíxià xuéxiào èrshí zhōunián lǎo xuéshēng tǒngtǒng huílái le · You've worked hard. Relax tonight: it's the school's twentieth year, and all the old students are back.

anna 刚才您说“在我国学汉语的外国人越来越多”，我心里一阵激荡。
gāngcái nín shuō zài wǒ guó xué Hànyǔ de wàiguó rén yuè lái yuè duō wǒ xīnlǐ yízhèn jīdàng · Just now, when you said “more and more foreigners are learning Chinese in our country”, my heart was stirred.

teacher wang 你当年的作文我还留着呢。你写你刚来北京被出租车司机骗了，心里很不平。
nǐ dāngnián de zuòwén wǒ hái liú zhe ne nǐ xiě nǐ gāng lái Běijīng bèi chūzūchē sījī piàn le xīnlǐ hěn bùpíng · I still have your old essay. You wrote that a taxi driver cheated you when you first came to Beijing, and how indignant you were.

anna 现在想起来真可笑！不过那时候天天想家，很受折磨。
xiànzài xiǎng qǐlai zhēn kěxiào búguò nà shíhou tiān tiān xiǎng jiā hěn shòu zhémó · It seems so silly now! But back then I was homesick every day, and it was torture.

teacher wang 我记得。后来你说，学汉语让你从孤独中解脱出来了。
wǒ jìde hòulái nǐ shuō xué Hànyǔ ràng nǐ cóng gūdú zhōng jiětuō chulai le · I remember. Later you said learning Chinese freed you from loneliness.

anna 对。最初我对汉字有点抵触，觉得太难了，学得快疯了。
duì zuìchū wǒ duì Hànzì yǒu diǎn dǐchù juéde tài nán le xué de kuài fēng le · Yes. At first I resisted the characters a bit: they were so hard, I was going crazy.

teacher wang 刚开始学的人，皆是如此。当年那个班的学生，如今唯你还在北京。
gāng kāishǐ xué de rén jiē shì rúcǐ dāngnián nàge bān de xuéshēng rújīn wéi nǐ hái zài Běijīng · Everyone is like that at the beginning. Of that class, you're the only one still in Beijing.

anna 您那时候特别怜惜我们这些一个人在国外的学生。
nín nà shíhou tèbié liánxī wǒmen zhèxiē yí gè rén zài guó wài de xuéshēng · You always had such a soft spot for those of us who were alone, far from home.

teacher wang 你的经历一定能激起新学生的兴趣。下周你能来给他们讲讲吗？
nǐ de jīnglì yídìng néng jīqǐ xīn xuéshēng de xìngqù xià zhōu nǐ néng lái gěi tāmen jiǎng jiang ma · Your story would really get the new students interested. Could you come and talk to them next week?

anna 当然可以！很多人会跟我有同感吧。我们的生活本来没有交集，是汉语把我们连在了一起。
dāngrán kěyǐ hěn duō rén huì gēn wǒ yǒu tónggǎn ba wǒmen de shēnghuó běnlái méiyǒu jiāojí shì Hànyǔ bǎ wǒmen lián zài le yìqǐ · Of course! Lots of them will feel the same. Our lives had nothing in common, and Chinese brought us together.

teacher wang 说得真好。来，大家一起拍张照片留念！
shuō de zhēn hǎo lái dàjiā yìqǐ pāi zhāng zhàopiàn liúniàn · Beautifully put. Come on, everyone, let's take a photo to remember this!

anna 好！座位不够，先尽着老师们坐吧。
hǎo zuòwèi búgòu xiān jǐn zhe lǎoshīmen zuò ba · Great! There aren't enough seats: let the teachers sit first.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

涂
tú
to smear, paint

蠢
chǔn
stupid, dumb

愚
yú
foolish

昧
mèi
dark, ignorant

good to know · 均, 皆 and 概 are written “all”: 均已到齐 (all have arrived), 人人皆知 (everyone knows). In speech, say 都 and 全. 唯独 picks out the one exception (都同意了，唯独他反对); 唯有……才…… means “only … can …”.

Being moved, being worn out, finding some relief: you can now tell the whole story of a feeling in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 7 idioms about people

Praise and criticise people with four-character idioms, and open a frank opinion with 不瞒你说 and its cousins 说实话, 老实说.

Chengyu are how educated Chinese sum a person up in four syllables: in references, award speeches, gossip and the news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
彬彬有礼	bīnbīnyǒulǐ	polite and refined, courteous	服务员对客人彬彬有礼。 The waiters are courteous to the guests.
大公无私	dàgōngwúsī	selfless, impartial	他是一位大公无私的法官。 He is a completely impartial judge.
德才兼备	décáijiānbèi	having both integrity and ability	公司需要德才兼备的人才。 The company needs people with both integrity and ability.
光明磊落	guāngmínglěiluò	honest and above board	他做事光明磊落，从不搞小动作。 He's straight and above board and never plays dirty tricks.
见义勇为	jiànyìyǒngwéi	to act bravely for a just cause	这位司机见义勇为，救了落水的孩子。 The driver bravely jumped in and saved a child who had fallen into the water.
见利忘义	jiànlìwàngyì	to forget loyalty at the sight of profit	见利忘义的人很难交到真朋友。 People who drop their friends for profit rarely make real friends.
损人利己	sǔnrénlìjǐ	to harm others for one's own gain	损人利己的事，我们不能做。 We must never benefit ourselves at others' expense.
以身作则	yǐshēnzuòzé	to set an example	父母要以身作则，孩子才会学好。 Parents must set an example if children are to turn out well.
足智多谋	zúzhìduōmóu	wise and full of ideas, resourceful	遇到难题，大家都去找他，因为他足智多谋。 When there's a hard problem, everyone goes to him, because he's full of ideas.
心灵手巧	xīnlíngshǒuqiǎo	clever and skilful (with one's hands)	她心灵手巧，衣服都是自己做的。 She's clever with her hands: she makes all her own clothes.
一技之长	yījìzhīcháng	a special skill	学一门技术，就有了一技之长。 Learn a technical skill, and you have something to live by.
见多识广	jiànduōshíguǎng	experienced and knowledgeable	他去过很多国家，见多识广。 He's been to many countries and knows a lot about the world.
孤陋寡闻	gūlòuguǎwén	ignorant, ill-informed	对不起，我孤陋寡闻，第一次听说。 Sorry, I'm out of touch: this is the first I've heard of it.
井底之蛙	jǐngdǐzhīwā	a frog at the bottom of a well	不出去看看，就会变成井底之蛙。 If you never go out and look around, you'll become a frog in a well.

自以为是	zìyǐwéishì	to think one is always right	他总是自以为是，听不进意见。 He always thinks he knows best and won't listen.
盛气凌人	shèngqìlíngrén	overbearing, arrogant	他对新同事总是盛气凌人。 He's always overbearing with new colleagues.
一毛不拔	yīmáobùbá	stingy, tight-fisted	他有钱，却一毛不拔。 He's rich, but he won't part with a penny.
丢三落四	diūsānlàsì	scatterbrained, always forgetting things	他总是丢三落四，钥匙已经丢了三把了。 He's so scatterbrained: he's already lost three sets of keys.
粗心大意	cūxīndàyì	careless, inattentive	考试时不能粗心大意。 You can't be careless in an exam.
小心翼翼	xiǎoxīnyìyì	very carefully, cautiously	他小心翼翼地把杯子放好。 He set the cup down very carefully.
一丝不苟	yīsībùgǒu	meticulous, scrupulous	他做实验一丝不苟。 He's meticulous in his experiments.
脚踏实地	jiǎotàshídì	down to earth, steady	做事要脚踏实地，不能只想不做。 You have to get on with it steadily, not just dream.
实事求是	shíshìqiúshì	to seek truth from facts	我们应该实事求是地看问题。 We should look at problems realistically.
自力更生	zìlìgēngshēng	to stand on one's own feet, self-reliant	他从小自力更生，靠自己读完了大学。 He's been self-reliant since childhood and paid his own way through university.
自强不息	zìqiángbùxī	to strive constantly	爷爷一辈子自强不息，八十岁还在学习。 Grandpa has striven all his life: at eighty, he's still learning.
默默无闻	mòmòwúwén	unknown, obscure	很多人默默无闻地工作了一辈子。 Many people work their whole lives without recognition.
大名鼎鼎	dàmíngdǐngdǐng	famous, celebrated	这位大名鼎鼎的作家来我们城市了。 The famous writer has come to our city.
鹤立鸡群	hèlìjīqún	to stand out from the crowd	他的成绩在班里鹤立鸡群。 His results stand head and shoulders above the rest of the class.
脱颖而出	tuōyǐngérchū	to stand out, come to the fore	她在比赛中脱颖而出。 She stood out in the competition.
凤毛麟角	fèngmáolínjiǎo	extremely rare	这样的人才在今天是凤毛麟角。 Talent like that is extremely rare.
数一数二	shǔyīshǔèr	one of the very best	他做的菜在我们小区数一数二。 His cooking is among the best in our neighbourhood.
难能可贵	nánnéngkěguì	commendable, admirable (rare)	他这么年轻就这么懂事，实在难能可贵。 To be so sensible at his age is admirable.
当之无愧	dāngzhīwúkuì	fully deserving	他获得这个奖，当之无愧。 He fully deserves this prize.
名副其实	míngfùqíshí	worthy of the name, true	这里的风景名副其实，美极了。 The scenery here lives up to its reputation: it's stunning.

pattern 不瞒你说: to be honest with you

不瞒你说 | 说实话 / 老实说 / 实话跟你说 | , | a confession or a frank opinion

不瞒你说 (literally “not hiding it from you”) warns the listener that something honest is coming: a confession, a worry or an opinion they may not like. It goes at the very start, followed by a comma. 说实话, 老实说 and 实话跟你说 do the same job and are just as common in speech.

老实说，我一开始觉得他有点自以为是。 **lǎoshi shuō wǒ yì kāishǐ juéde tā yǒu diǎn zìyǐwéishì** To be honest, at first I thought he was a bit full of himself.

说实话，像她这样德才兼备的人实在是凤毛麟角。 **shuō shíhuà xiàng tā zhèyàng décái jiānbèi de rén shízài shì fèngmáo línjiǎo** Honestly, people with both her talent and her integrity are extremely rare.

实话跟你说，这次比赛我没什么把握。 **shíhuà gēn nǐ shuō zhè cì bǐsài wǒ méi shénme bǎwò** I’ll be honest with you: I’m not at all sure about this competition.

dialogue employee of the year

manager liu 安娜，年度最佳员工的评选，你有什么想法？
Ānnà niándù zuìjiā yuángōng de píngxuǎn nǐ yǒu shénme xiǎngfǎ · Anna, any thoughts on employee of the year?

anna 我想推荐老张。他工作脚踏实地，从来不粗心大意，也不丢三落四。
wǒ xiǎng tuījiàn lǎo zhāng tā gōngzuò jiǎotàshídì cónglái bù cūxīn dàyì yě bù diūsān làsì · I'd like to nominate Lao Zhang. He's solid and dependable: never careless, never forgets a thing.

manager liu 老张确实不错，就是太默默无闻了，很多人都不认识他。
lǎo zhāng quèshí búcuò jiùshì tài mòmò wúwén le hěn duō rén dōu bú rènshi tā · Lao Zhang is good, it's true, but he's so quiet that lots of people don't even know him.

anna 可是发布会那天，是他足智多谋，几分钟就解决了问题。上个月他还在地铁上见义勇为，帮警察抓住了小偷。
kěshì fābù huì nà tiān shì tā zúzhì duōmóu jǐ fēnzhōng jiù jiějué le wèntí shàng gè yuè tā hái zài dìtiě shàng jiànyì yǒngwéi bāng jǐngchá zhuā zhù le xiǎo tōu · But on launch day it was his quick thinking that solved the problem in minutes. And last month he bravely helped the police catch a thief on the underground.

manager liu 他做人光明磊落，这一点我很欣赏。就是有点一毛不拔，从来不请大家喝咖啡！
tā zuò rén guāngmíng lěiluò zhè yìdiǎn wǒ hěn xīnshǎng jiùshì yǒu diǎn yìmáo bùbá cónglái bù qǐng dàjiā hē kāfēi · He's honest and above board, and I admire that. He's just a bit tight-fisted: he never buys anyone coffee!

anna 哈哈。销售部的小王呢？他的销售成绩在公司数一数二。
hā hā xiāoshòu bù de xiǎo Wáng ne tā de xiāoshòu chéngjì zài gōngsī shǔyì shǔèr · Ha! What about Xiao Wang in sales? His sales figures are among the best in the company.

manager liu 说实话，小王能力很强，但有点盛气凌人，对新人不太客气。
shuō shíhuà xiǎo Wáng nénglì hěn qiáng dàn yǒu diǎn shèngqì língrén duì xīnrén bú tài kèqi · To be honest, Xiao Wang is very capable, but he can be overbearing, and he isn't very nice to new people.

anna 我也听说了。上次他抢了同事的客户，有点损人利己。还有人说他见利忘义，不过可能是误会。
wǒ yě tīngshuō le shàng cì tā qiǎng le tóngshì de kèhù yǒu diǎn sǔnrén lìjǐ hái yǒu rén shuō tā jiànlì wàngyì búguò kěnéng shì wùhuì · I've heard that too. Last time he stole a colleague's client, which was pretty selfish. Some say he'd sell out anyone for a profit, but that may be a misunderstanding.

manager liu 我们得实事求是，不能只听别人说。那个实习生呢？
wǒmen děi shíshì qiúshì bù néng zhǐ tīng biérén shuō nàge shíxí shēng ne · We have to stick to the facts, not just listen to gossip. What about the intern?

anna 她虽然刚来，但见多识广，大学学的是后现代艺术，做事小心翼翼，在实习生里鹤立鸡群，难能可贵。
tā suīrán gāng lái dàn jiànduō shíguǎng dàxué xué de shì hòu xiàndài yìshù zuò shì xiǎoxīn yìyì zài shíxí shēng lǐ hèlìjīqún nánnéng kěguì · She's new, but she's seen a lot of the world, she studied postmodern art at university, she's careful, and she stands head and shoulders above the other interns. That's rare.

manager liu 年轻人里像她这样的，确实是凤毛麟角。
niánqīng rén lǐ xiàng tā zhèyàng de quèshí shì fèngmáo línjiǎo · Young people like her really are few and far between.

anna 不过最佳员工还是老张，他当之无愧。他从农村考上大学，一直自力更生、自强不息。
búguò zuìjiā yuángōng háishi lǎo zhāng tā dāngzhīwúkuì tā cóng nóngcūn kǎo shàng dàxué yìzhí zìlì gēngshēng zìqiáng bùxī · But employee of the year should still be Lao Zhang: he truly deserves it. He got into university from a village and has always stood on his own two feet and kept pushing himself.

manager liu 好，就选老张。他是名副其实的技术高手，以后在公司就大名鼎鼎了！
hǎo jiù xuǎn lǎo zhāng tā shì míngfùqíshí de jìshù gāoshǒu yǐhòu zài gōngsī jiù dàmíng dǐngdǐng le · All right, Lao Zhang it is. He's a tech expert in every sense of the word, and soon he'll be famous around the company!

anna 哈哈，他肯定会很不好意思。
hā hā tā kěndìng huì hěn bù hǎoyìsi · Ha, he'll be so embarrassed.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

懈
xiè
slack

庸
yōng
ordinary, mediocre

乖
guāi
well-behaved, good (child, pet)

豁
huō
to slit, crack; give up (at any cost)

good to know · 不瞒你说 (literally “not hiding it from you”) opens a confession or a frank opinion: 不瞒你说，我也没准备. Its everyday cousins 说实话, 老实说 and 实话跟你说 work the same way. You’ll meet 瞒 “to hide” on its own later in the course. Some idioms are praise (德才兼备, 名副其实), some are sharp criticism (见利忘义, 损人利己). Use the critical ones about people, not to them.

Thirty-four ways to sum someone up in four characters. You can now write a reference like a native. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 8 mission: anna's new team

Follow a four-part story about Anna's team and describe everyone in it: kind or rude, calm or rash, ordinary or one in a million.

A mission pulls the whole unit together: every character word, idiom and adverb you learned this week, in one story.

chapter 1 chapter 1: good news and bad

manager liu 大家早！先说一个好消息：我公司和上海一家大企业的合作基本谈成了。
dàjiā zǎo xiān shuō yí gè hǎo xiāoxi wǒ gōngsī hé Shànghǎi yì jiā dà qǐyè de hézuò jīběn tán chéng le · Morning, everyone! Good news first: our company's partnership with a big Shanghai firm is as good as agreed.

anna 太好了！对方不是一直很傲慢吗？怎么突然同意了？
tài hǎo le duìfāng bú shì yìzhí hěn àomàn ma zěnme tūrán tóngyì le · Great! Weren't they always so arrogant? Why did they suddenly agree?

manager liu 我方表现出了最大的诚意，价格也略微降了一点，对方的态度就大为改变了。
wǒ fāng biǎoxiàn chū le zuì dà de chéngyì jiàgé yě lüèwēi jiàng le yìdiǎn duìfāng de tàidù jiù dàwéi gǎibiàn le · We showed the greatest good faith and lowered our price slightly, and their attitude changed completely.

anna 他们曾经趁机压低价格，多亏您极力坚持，我们才没有损失。这次合作对我公司何等重要！
tāmen céngjīng chènjī yā dī jiàgé duōkuī nín jílì jiānchí wǒmen cái méiyǒu sǔnshī zhè cì hézuò duì wǒ gōngsī héděng zhòngyào · They once used the chance to push the price down. Thanks to you holding firm, we lost nothing. This partnership matters so much to our company!

lawyer sun 我补充一点。那家公然抄我们设计的公司已经道歉了，态度还算诚恳。
wǒ bǔchōng yìdiǎn nà jiā gōngrán chāo wǒmen shèjì de gōngsī yǐjīng dàoqiàn le tàidù hái suàn chéngkěn · Let me add something. The company that openly copied our design has apologised, and quite sincerely.

anna 按说他们早该道歉了。他们当时在网上大肆宣传，太嚣张、太猖狂了！
ànshuō tāmen zǎo gāi dàoqiàn le tāmen dāngshí zài wǎngshang dàsì xuānchuán tài xiāozhāng tài chāngkuáng le · By rights they should have apologised long ago. They advertised it all over the internet: so arrogant, so brazen!

lawyer sun 是啊。说实话，对方的律师也很精明，不过我们火速收集了证据，证据均已齐全，他们只好承认了。
shì a shuō shíhuà duìfāng de lǜshī yě hěn jīngmíng búguò wǒmen huǒsù shōují le zhèngjù zhèngjù jūn yǐ qíquán tāmen zhǐhǎo chéngrèn le · Yes. To be honest, their lawyer was very shrewd, but we gathered evidence at top speed, and with all the evidence in place they had to admit it.

lawyer sun 这类事一定要慎重，不能鲁莽，也不能草率接受道歉。他们提出的条件，我方都断然拒绝了。
zhè lèi shì yídìng yào shènzhòng bù néng lǔmǎng yě bù néng cǎoshuài jiēshòu dàoqiàn tāmen tíchū de tiáojiàn wǒ fāng dōu duànrán jùjué le · Things like this need care: you can't be rash, and you can't accept an apology too hastily. We flatly turned down their terms.

anna 能谈成这次合作，我万分高兴！这几天大家拼命加班，都累得快疯了。
néng tán chéng zhè cì hézuò wǒ wànfēn gāoxìng zhè jǐ tiān dàjiā pīnmìng jiābān dōu lèi de kuài fēng le · I'm so happy we got this deal! Everyone's been working flat out these days; we're all so tired we're going mad.

manager liu 辛苦了，孙律师，也辛苦大家了。现在竞争日趋激烈，我们一刻也不能松懈，更不能自满。
xīnkǔ le Sūnlǜshī yě xīnkǔ dàjiā le xiànzài jìngzhēng rìqū jīliè wǒmen yí kè yě bù néng sōngxiè gèng bù néng zìmǎn · Thank you, Lawyer Sun, and thank you all. Competition is getting fiercer by the day, so we can't relax for a moment, and we certainly can't get complacent.

anna 我也要说一件事。上周我一时疏忽大意，差点把合同发错，多亏老张发现了。
wǒ yě yào shuō yí jiàn shì shàng zhōu wǒ yìshí shūhu dàyi chà diǎn bǎ hétóng fā cuò duōkuī lǎo zhāng fāxiàn le · I have something to confess too. Last week, in a careless moment, I nearly sent a contract to the wrong person. Thank goodness Lao Zhang spotted it.

manager liu 人都有犯糊涂的时候，下次小心一点就好。为了感谢大家，公司决定周末带团队去杭州玩两天。
rén dōu yǒu fàn hútu de shíhou xià cì xiǎoxīn yìdiǎn jiù hǎo wèile gǎnxiè dàjiā gōngsī juédìng zhōumò dài tuánduì qù Hángzhōu wán liǎng tiān · We all have our muddled moments; just be a bit more careful next time. To thank everyone, the company is taking the team to Hangzhou for two days this weekend.

anna	全部门都去吗? **quán bùmén dōu qù ma** · The whole department?
manager liu	统统都去，唯独老张说家里有事，可能去不了。 **tǒngtǒng dōu qù wéidú lǎo zhāng shuō jiā lǐ yǒu shì kěnéng qù bu liǎo** · Every one of you, except Lao Zhang, who says he has family matters and may not be able to come.
anna	他不是最喜欢西湖吗？我们竭力劝他来吧。让他趁早决定。 **tā bú shì zuì xǐhuan xī hú ma wǒmen jiélì quàn tā lái ba ràng tā chènzǎo juédìng** · Doesn't he love West Lake more than anything? Let's do our best to persuade him, and get him to decide soon.
manager liu	好。大家这段时间都很疲惫，这次就尽情放松，工作的事一概不谈！ **hǎo dàjiā zhè duàn shíjiān dōu hěn píbèi zhè cì jiù jìnqíng fàngsōng gōngzuò de shì yígài bù tán** · Good. Everyone's been exhausted lately, so this time we relax and enjoy ourselves: absolutely no work talk!

chapter 2 chapter 2: who's who on the train

xiaoming 安娜？真巧！你也去杭州？

Ānnà zhēn qiǎo nǐ yě qù Hángzhōu · Anna? What a coincidence! You're going to Hangzhou too?

anna 小明！我们团队去玩两天。你呢？

Xiǎomíng wǒmen tuánduì qù wán liǎng tiān nǐ ne · Xiaoming! My team's going for two days. And you?

xiaoming 我陪爱人去看她父母。他们都很慈祥和蔼，对我特别宽厚。她爸爸说话耿直，但心很善；她妈妈性格开朗、外向，特别爱笑。

wǒ péi àiren qù kàn tā fùmǔ tāmen dōu hěn cíxiáng héǎi duì wǒ tèbié kuānhòu tā bàba shuōhuà gěngzhí dàn xīn hěn shàn tā māma xìnggé kāilǎng wàixiàng tèbié ài xiào · I'm going with my wife to see her parents. They're both so kind and gentle, and very generous to me. Her dad is blunt but has a good heart; her mum is cheerful and outgoing and laughs all the time.

anna 真好。你看，窗边那位穿得很朴素的就是刘经理。她看起来很低调，其实非常精明，做事一丝不苟。

zhēn hǎo nǐ kàn chuāng biān nà wèi chuān de hěn pǔsù de jiùshì Liújīnglǐ tā kàn qǐlai hěn dīdiào qíshí fēicháng jīngmíng zuò shì yìsī bùgǒu · How lovely. Look, the one by the window, dressed simply, is Manager Liu. She seems low-key, but she's very shrewd and meticulous.

anna 刚见面的时候我觉得她有点冷淡，后来才发现她又正直又厚道。她英明、豁达，做事稳健，有时候还挺潇洒的。

gāng jiànmiàn de shíhou wǒ juéde tā yǒu diǎn lěngdàn hòulái cái fāxiàn tā yòu zhèngzhí yòu hòudao tā yīngmíng huòdá zuò shì wěnjiàn yǒu shíhou hái tǐng xiāosǎ de · When I first met her I thought she was a bit cool, but then I found out how honest and decent she is. She's wise and easy-going, steady in what she does, and quite stylish at times.

xiaoming 那个笑得很憨厚的人呢？

nàge xiào de hěn hānhòu de rén ne · And the man with the good-natured smile?

anna 那是老张，他果然还是来了！他性格内向，有点腼腆，不过很机灵，心肠也好。他的手特别灵巧，动作敏捷又利索，人也机智，眼光很敏锐。

nà shì lǎo zhāng tā guǒrán háishi lái le tā xìnggé nèixiàng yǒu diǎn miǎntiǎn búguò hěn jīling xīncháng yě hǎo tā de shǒu tèbié língqiǎo dòngzuò mǐnjié yòu lìsuo rén yě jīzhì yǎnguāng hěn mǐnruì · That's Lao Zhang: sure enough, he came after all! He's introverted and a bit shy, but he's quick and kind-hearted. He's great with his hands, fast and neat, quick-witted, with a sharp eye.

xiaoming 那个大声说话的年轻人好像有点放肆。

nàge dà shēng shuōhuà de niánqīng rén hǎoxiàng yǒu diǎn fàngsì · That young man talking loudly seems a bit out of line.

anna 那是小王。老实说，他有点自负，又有点急躁，说话粗暴，对新人也不太和气。不过他的销售成绩数一数二。

nà shì xiǎo Wáng lǎoshi shuō tā yǒu diǎn zìfù yòu yǒu diǎn jízào shuōhuà cūbào duì xīnrén yě bú tài héqi búguò tā de xiāoshòu chéngjì shǔyī shǔèr · That's Xiao Wang. Honestly, he's conceited and impatient, he can be rough, and he isn't very friendly to new people. But his sales are among the best.

xiaoming 他不会是那种虚伪、狡猾的人吧？

tā bú huì shì nà zhǒng xūwěi jiǎohuá de rén ba · He's not the two-faced, sly type, is he?

anna 不是。他只是有点高傲，又有点虚荣，喜欢名牌。有时候也很高调、很任性，对吃的特别挑剔。

bú shì tā zhǐshì yǒu diǎn gāoào yòu yǒu diǎn xūróng xǐhuan míngpái yǒu shíhou yě hěn gāodiào hěn rènxìng duì chī de tèbié tiāoti · No. He's just a bit proud and a bit vain: he likes designer labels. Sometimes he's showy and headstrong, and he's very fussy about food.

xiaoming 你们的实习生呢？

nǐmen de shíxí shēng ne · And your intern?

anna 那个戴眼镜的姑娘。她来自农村，朴实质朴，很有亲和力，又乖巧懂事、见多识广，还很风趣。

nàge dài yǎnjìng de gūniang tā láizì nóngcūn pǔshí zhìpǔ hěn yǒu qīnhélì yòu guāiqiǎo dǒngshì jiànduō shíguǎng hái hěn fēngqù · The girl with glasses. She's from the countryside, down to earth and unpretentious, very approachable, sweet and sensible, she knows a lot about the world, and she's funny.

xiaoming 听起来你们团队里各种性格的人都有，而且大家都很坦诚、很真挚。

tīng qǐlai nǐmen tuánduì lǐ gèzhǒng xìnggé de rén dōu yǒu érqiě dàjiā dōu hěn tǎnchéng hěn zhēnzhì · Sounds like your team has every kind of personality, and everyone's open and sincere.

anna 是啊。刚来的时候我有点抵触，担心大家冷漠、难相处。没想到大家都那么友善、那么包容。

shì a gāng lái de shíhou wǒ yǒu diǎn dǐchù dānxīn dàjiā lěngmò nán xiāngchǔ méi xiǎng dào dàjiā dōu nàme yǒushàn nàme bāoróng · Yes. When I first arrived I was a bit reluctant, worried they'd be cold and hard to get on with. It turns out they're all so friendly and accepting.

xiaoming 你自己也变了。以前你多大大咧咧啊，现在越发稳重了。

nǐ zìjǐ yě biàn le yǐqián nǐ duō dàdaliēliē a xiànzài yuèfā wěnzhòng le · You've changed too. You used to be so happy-go-lucky, and now you're more and more level-headed.

anna 哈哈，谢谢夸奖！

hā hā xièxie kuājiǎng · Ha, thanks for the compliment!

chapter 3 chapter 3: trouble at west lake

anna 刘经理，你看那边，围了好多人，发生什么事了？
Liújīnglǐ nǐ kàn nàbiān wéi le hǎoduō rén fāshēng shénme shì le · Manager Liu, look over there: there's a crowd. What's happened?

manager liu 好像是一个游客在跟卖水的老奶奶吵架。他样子很凶恶，说话很凶狠，态度非常粗鲁。
hǎoxiàng shì yí gè yóukè zài gēn mài shuǐ de lǎo nǎinai chǎojià tā yàngzi hěn xiōngè shuōhuà hěn xiōnghěn tàidù fēicháng cūlǔ · It looks like a tourist is arguing with an old lady selling water. He looks ferocious, he's talking viciously, and he's being really rude.

anna 那个人太霸道了，还强行把老奶奶的东西推到地上！他说是老奶奶的错，太无耻了。
nà gè rén tài bàdào le hái qiángxíng bǎ lǎo nǎinai de dōngxi tuī dào dì shàng tā shuō shì lǎo nǎinai de cuò tài wúchǐ le · He's so overbearing: he's shoved her things onto the ground! And he says it's her fault. Shameless.

manager liu 为了两块钱这样对待老人，又冷酷又无情，太野蛮、太卑鄙了，也很可笑。
wèile liǎng kuài qián zhèyàng duìdài lǎorén yòu lěngkù yòu wúqíng tài yěmán tài bēibǐ le yě hěn kěxiào · Treating an old woman like that over two yuan: cold, heartless, savage and low. Ridiculous, too.

anna 快看，老张不由得走了过去！他不是最内向吗？
kuài kàn lǎo zhāng bùyóude zǒu le guoqu tā bú shì zuì nèixiàng ma · Look, Lao Zhang just couldn't help going over! Isn't he the shyest of us all?

manager liu 他很镇定，从容地扶起老奶奶，又坦率地批评了那个人。
tā hěn zhèndìng cóngróng de fú qǐ lǎo nǎinai yòu tǎnshuài de pīpíng le nà gè rén · He's completely calm: he helped the old lady up and told the man straight what he thought of him.

anna 那个人一开始还很凶，可是老张一直很沉着，处理得又理智又明智，没有跟他打起来。
nà gè rén yì kāishǐ hái hěn xiōng kěshì lǎo zhāng yìzhí hěn chénzhuó chǔlǐ de yòu lǐzhì yòu míngzhì méiyǒu gēn tā dǎ qǐlai · The man was fierce at first, but Lao Zhang kept his cool and handled it sensibly and wisely, without a fight.

manager liu 后来那个人大概也觉得不好意思，就走了。周围的人无不为老张鼓掌。见义勇为，难能可贵啊！
hòulái nà gè rén dàgài yě juéde bù hǎoyìsi jiù zǒu le zhōuwéi de rén wúbú wèi lǎo zhāng gǔzhǎng jiànyì yǒngwéi nánnéng kěguì a · In the end the man must have felt embarrassed, because he left. Everyone around applauded Lao Zhang. Stepping in like that: admirable!

anna 刚才看到老奶奶受委屈，我心里很不平。现在心情激荡，好感动！
gāngcái kàn dào lǎo nǎinai shòu wěiqu wǒ xīnlǐ hěn bùpíng xiànzài xīnqíng jīdàng hǎo gǎndòng · Seeing the old lady treated so unfairly made me so indignant. Now I'm all stirred up. It's so moving!

manager liu 老奶奶拉着老张的手，神情很激动，眼里流露出感激，一直说他是好心人。
lǎo nǎinai lā zhe lǎo zhāng de shǒu shénqíng hěn jīdòng yǎn lǐ liúlù chū gǎnjī yìzhí shuō tā shì hǎoxīn rén · The old lady is holding Lao Zhang's hand, looking very emotional, gratitude in her eyes, calling him a good man.

anna 她说卖水很劳累，可她出来卖水，无非是想给孙子挣点学费。
tā shuō mài shuǐ hěn láolèi kě tā chūlái mài shuǐ wúfēi shì xiǎng gěi sūnzi zhèng diǎn xuéfèi · She says selling water is exhausting, but she only does it to earn a bit of money for her grandson's school fees.

manager liu 这么大年纪还要受这种折磨，真让人怜惜。这件事激起了大家的共鸣，你看，好几个人都过来买水了。
zhème dà niánjì hái yào shòu zhè zhǒng zhémó zhēn ràng rén liánxī zhè jiàn shì jīqǐ le dàjiā de gòngmíng nǐ kàn hǎo jǐ gè rén dōu guòlái mǎi shuǐ le · To go through that at her age: it breaks your heart. It struck a chord with everyone: look, lots of people have come over to buy water.

anna 我也有同感。这件事唤起了我刚来北京时的回忆：那时候我也遇到过很多善意的陌生人。
wǒ yě yǒu tónggǎn zhè jiàn shì huànqǐ le wǒ gāng lái Běijīng shí de huíyì nà shíhou wǒ yě yùdào guo hěn duō shànyì de mòshēng rén · Me too. It brings back memories of when I first came to Beijing: I met lots of kind strangers then too.

manager liu 看着湖边新建的亲水平台和这么多热心的人，我真的被触动了，心里分外温暖。来，我们跟老奶奶拍张照片留念吧。

kàn zhe hú biān xīn jiàn de qīn shuǐ píngtái hé zhème duō rèxīn de rén wǒ zhēn de bèi chùdòng le xīnlǐ fènwài wēnnuǎn lái wǒmen gēn lǎo nǎinai pāi zhāng zhàopiàn liúniàn ba · Looking at the new waterside deck by the lake and all these warm-hearted people, I'm really touched, and I feel especially warm inside. Come on, let's take a photo with the old lady to remember this.

chapter 4 chapter 4: employee of the year

manager liu 各位，今天晚上除了吃饭，还有一件尤为重要的事：宣布年度最佳员工。
gèwèi jīntiān wǎnshang chúle chī fàn hái yǒu yí jiàn yóuwéi zhòngyào de shì xuānbù niándù zuìjiā yuángōng · Everyone, tonight we have something especially important besides dinner: announcing employee of the year.

anna 大家都很激动！老张不慎把茶洒了，样子特别滑稽。
dàjiā dōu hěn jīdòng lǎo zhāng búshèn bǎ chá sǎ le yàngzi tèbié huájī · Everyone's so excited! Lao Zhang has spilled his tea, and he looks so funny.

manager liu 今年的最佳员工是老张！他工作脚踏实地、实事求是，从不丢三落四、粗心大意，今天又在西湖边见义勇为，当之无愧！
jīnnián de zuìjiā yuángōng shì lǎo zhāng tā gōngzuò jiǎotàshídì shíshì qiúshì cóng bù diūsān làsì cūxīn dàyì jīntiān yòu zài xī hú biān jiànyì yǒngwéi dāngzhīwúkuì · This year's employee of the year is Lao Zhang! He's steady and factual, never careless or forgetful, and today he stood up for someone at West Lake. He thoroughly deserves it!

anna 太好了！老张平时默默无闻，今天终于脱颖而出了。以后在公司就大名鼎鼎了！
tài hǎo le lǎo zhāng píngshí mòmò wúwén jīntiān zhōngyú tuōyǐngérchū le yǐhòu zài gōngsī jiù dàmíng dǐngdǐng le · Wonderful! Lao Zhang is usually so quiet, and today he finally stood out. He'll be famous around the company!

manager liu 说实话，像老张这样德才兼备、光明磊落的人，实在是凤毛麟角。他从农村考上大学，一直自力更生、自强不息，是名副其实的技术高手。
shuō shíhuà xiàng lǎo zhāng zhèyàng décái jiānbèi guāngmíng lěiluò de rén shízài shì fèngmáo línjiǎo tā cóng nóngcūn kǎo shàng dàxué yìzhí zìlì gēngshēng zìqiáng bùxī shì míngfùqíshí de jìshù gāoshǒu · To be honest, people like Lao Zhang, with talent and integrity, honest and above board, are very rare. He got into university from a village, has always stood on his own feet and kept pushing himself. He's a true tech expert.

anna 在我们团队里，老张鹤立鸡群，可他对谁都彬彬有礼。大家都把他视为团队的骄傲。
zài wǒmen tuánduì lǐ lǎo zhāng hèlìjīqún kě tā duì shéi dōu bīnbīn yǒulǐ dàjiā dōu bǎ tā shìwéi tuánduì de jiāoào · In our team Lao Zhang stands head and shoulders above the rest, yet he's courteous to everyone. We all see him as the pride of the team.

manager liu 老张自己说，他年轻时又固执又倔强，常常跟领导吵。
lǎo zhāng zìjǐ shuō tā niánqīng shí yòu gùzhi yòu juéjiàng chángcháng gēn lǐngdǎo chǎo · Lao Zhang says that when he was young he was stubborn and headstrong and often argued with his bosses.

anna 年轻人难免幼稚、浮躁一点嘛。他还说他只有一技之长，别的方面都很平庸。
niánqīng rén nánmiǎn yòuzhì fúzào yìdiǎn ma tā hái shuō tā zhǐyǒu yíjìzhīcháng biéde fāngmiàn dōu hěn píngyōng · Young people are bound to be a bit naive and restless. He also says he has only one skill and is ordinary at everything else.

manager liu 他太谦虚了。真正平庸的，是那些自以为是、盛气凌人，或者自私、贪婪，只会损人利己的人。
tā tài qiānxū le zhēnzhèng píngyōng de shì nàxiē zìyǐwéishì shèngqì língrén huòzhě zìsī tānlán zhǐ huì sǔnrén lìjǐ de rén · He's too modest. The truly mediocre are the know-it-alls who push people around, or the selfish, greedy ones who gain at others' expense.

manager liu 做领导的更要以身作则、大公无私，这一点我也要向老张学习。
zuò lǐngdǎo de gèng yào yǐshēn zuòzé dàgōng wúsī zhè yìdiǎn wǒ yě yào xiàng lǎo zhāng xuéxí · A leader has even more need to set an example and put the common good first. On that, I have things to learn from Lao Zhang too.

anna 说实话，我刚来中国的时候孤陋寡闻，就像井底之蛙。以前我觉得自己什么都懂，现在想想，那时候真的很愚蠢、很肤浅。是你们让我看到了更大的世界。
shuō shíhuà wǒ gāng lái Zhōngguó de shíhou gūlòu guǎwén jiù xiàng jǐngdǐzhīwā yǐqián wǒ juéde zìjǐ shénme dōu dǒng xiànzài xiǎng xiang nà shíhou zhēn de hěn yúchǔn hěn fūqiǎn shì nǐmen ràng wǒ kàn dào le gèng dà de shìjiè · Honestly, when I first came to China I knew so little: I was like a frog at the bottom of a well. I used to think I knew everything; looking back, I was really foolish and shallow. You've shown me a much bigger world.

manager liu 唯有真心，才能换来真心。好了，今天晚上大家尽情吃！老张，你今天可别一毛不拔，得请大家喝杯茶！

wéiyǒu zhēnxīn cáinéng huàn lái zhēnxīn hǎo le jīntiān wǎnshang dàjiā jìnqíng chī lǎo zhāng nǐ jīntiān kě bié yìmáo bùbá děi qǐng dàjiā hē bēi chá · Only sincerity wins sincerity. Right, everyone eat as much as you like tonight! Lao Zhang, don't be tight-fisted today: the tea's on you!

anna 哈哈！这个周末大家通通放松了，我也终于从工作中解脱了。这次旅行让我们团队愈加团结了。

hā hā zhège zhōumò dàjiā tōngtōng fàngsōng le wǒ yě zhōngyú cóng gōngzuò zhōng jiětuō le zhè cì lǚxíng ràng wǒmen tuánduì yùjiā tuánjié le · Ha! This weekend everyone's relaxed, and I've finally escaped from work too. This trip has brought our team even closer together.

manager liu 是啊。大家性格不同，但都真心对待彼此，这就是团队的力量。

shì a dàjiā xìnggé bù tóng dàn dōu zhēnxīn duìdài bǐcǐ zhè jiùshì tuánduì de lìliàng · Yes. We all have different personalities, but we treat each other sincerely. That's what makes a team strong.

You just read a whole story about people's character in advanced Chinese. Unit 1, done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 9 happy days

Talk about happiness in all its shades (joyful, content, relaxed, thrilled) and gush with 别提多……了.

“How are you?” deserves a better answer than 很好. These words let you say exactly what kind of good you feel.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
快活	kuàihuo	happy, merry	孩子们在海边玩得很快活。 The children are having a whale of a time at the beach.
欢快	huānkuài	cheerful, lively	音乐的节奏很欢快。 The music has a lively rhythm.
喜悦	xǐyuè	joy, delight	她脸上满是丰收的喜悦。 Her face was full of the joy of a good harvest.
喜洋洋	xǐyángyáng	joyful, beaming	过年了，大家都喜洋洋的。 It’s New Year, and everyone is beaming.
欣喜	xīnxǐ	glad, joyful	看到大家的进步，老师感到很欣喜。 The teacher was delighted to see everyone’s progress.
欣慰	xīnwèi	gratified, relieved	孩子考上了大学，妈妈很欣慰。 Mum was so gratified when her child got into university.
愉悦	yúyuè	joyful, pleasant	音乐能让人心情愉悦。 Music can lift your mood.
美滋滋	měizīzī	pleased, delighted with oneself	听到表扬，他心里美滋滋的。 Hearing the praise, he was secretly delighted.
舒畅	shūchàng	happy, comfortable, free of worry	散步以后，我心情舒畅多了。 After a walk I feel much better.
顺心	shùnxīn	satisfactory, going smoothly	祝你工作顺心！ Hope everything goes well at work!
惬意	qièyì	pleased, comfortable, cosy	下午在树下看书，很惬意。 Reading under a tree in the afternoon is so pleasant.
如意	rúyì	as one wishes	生活不可能事事如意。 Life can’t always go the way you want.
自在	zìzai	comfortable, at ease	在朋友家里，我觉得很自在。 I feel at home at my friend’s place.
悠闲	yōuxián	leisurely, carefree	他们在海边过着悠闲的日子。 They live a leisurely life by the sea.
安逸	ānyì	easy and comfortable	他不想过太安逸的生活。 He doesn’t want a life that’s too comfortable.

安心	ānxīn	at ease, not worried; to keep one's mind on	你安心工作，孩子我来照顾。 Focus on your work: I'll look after the kids.
安详	ānxiáng	serene, composed	奶奶睡得很安详。 Grandma is sleeping peacefully.
坦然	tǎnrán	calm, untroubled	面对失败，他很坦然。 He faced the failure calmly.
庆幸	qìngxìng	to rejoice (that something bad was avoided)	我很庆幸自己没有上那班车。 I'm so glad I didn't take that bus.
荣幸	róngxìng	honoured	认识您，我很荣幸。 It's an honour to meet you.
有幸	yǒuxìng	to be fortunate to	我有幸见过这位作家。 I was lucky enough to meet that writer.
知足	zhīzú	content with what one has	他很知足，从不抱怨。 He's content with his lot and never complains.
甜蜜	tiánmì	sweet, happy (of love, life)	他们的婚后生活很甜蜜。 Their married life is sweet.
温馨	wēnxīn	warm, cosy	这家小店布置得很温馨。 This little shop is cosily decorated.
嬉笑	xīxiào	to laugh and play	孩子们在院子里嬉笑。 The children are laughing and playing in the yard.
欢呼	huānhū	to cheer, hail	听到这个消息，大家都欢呼起来。 When they heard the news, everyone cheered.
洋溢	yángyì	to be brimming with	她的脸上洋溢着幸福的笑容。 Her face was glowing with a happy smile.
振奋	zhènfèn	to inspire; inspiring, roused	这是一个振奋人心的消息。 This is inspiring news.
振作	zhènzuò	to pull oneself together	失败了不要紧，振作起来！ Failure doesn't matter: pull yourself together!
起劲	qǐjìn	energetic, enthusiastic	他们干得很起劲。 They're working with real gusto.
兴致	xìngzhì	interest, mood (for doing something)	下雨了，大家的兴致却很高。 It rained, but everyone was still in high spirits.
踊跃	yǒngyuè	eagerly, enthusiastically (to take part)	同学们踊跃发言。 The students are eager to speak.
爽	shuǎng	great, refreshing (spoken)	夏天喝一杯冰水，真爽！ A glass of ice-cold water in summer: wonderful!
过瘾	guòyǐn	to satisfy a craving; terrific	这场比赛看得真过瘾！ What a match: that was brilliant to watch!
酣畅	hānchàng	to one's heart's content	昨天晚上他睡得很酣畅。 Last night he slept long and deeply.

pattern 别提(有)多……了: you can't imagine how …

别提 **(有)** **多** **adjective** **了** **= you can't imagine how ...!**

别提 means "don't mention it", so 别提多高兴了 is "I can't even tell you how happy". Put a bare adjective (or a feeling verb) between 多 and 了; 有 is optional. It's spoken, warm and a little exaggerated, for good and bad feelings alike.

那天的晚饭别提有多香了。 **nà tiān de wǎnfàn bié tí yǒu duō xiāng le** You can't imagine how good dinner smelled that day.

新家又大又亮，住着别提多舒畅了。 **xīn jiā yòu dà yòu liàng zhù zhe bié tí duō shūchàng le** The new flat is big and bright: it feels wonderful to live in.

终于放假了，大家别提多快活了。 **zhōngyú fàngjià le dàjiā bié tí duō kuàihuo le** The holidays are finally here, and everyone is over the moon.

dialogue three months married

anna 小明，结婚三个月了，日子过得怎么样？
Xiǎomíng jiéhūn sān gè yuè le rìzi guò de zěnmeyàng · Xiaoming, three months married: how's life?

xiaoming 别提多甜蜜了！每天下班回家，家里都特别温馨，我每天都很快活。
bié tí duō tiánmì le měi tiān xiàbān huí jiā jiā lǐ dōu tèbié wēnxīn wǒ měi tiān dōu hěn kuàihuo · Sweeter than I can tell you! Every evening I come home to a cosy place. I'm happy every single day.

anna 看你美滋滋的样子，幸福都流露在脸上了。看到你这么快乐，我也很欣喜。
kàn nǐ měizīzī de yàngzi xìngfú dōu liúlù zài liǎn shàng le kàn dào nǐ zhème kuàilè wǒ yě hěn xīnxǐ · I can tell from that pleased look: the happiness shows all over your face. Seeing you this happy makes me glad too.

xiaoming 我爱人做饭，我洗碗，生活又安逸又顺心。她性格豁达，我急躁的时候她也很包容。工作上的烦恼，我现在也能坦然面对了。
wǒ àiren zuòfàn wǒ xǐ wǎn shēnghuó yòu ānyì yòu shùnxīn tā xìnggé huòdá wǒ jízào de shíhou tā yě hěn bāoróng gōngzuò shàng de fánnǎo wǒ xiànzài yě néng tǎnrán miànduì le · My wife cooks, I wash up: life is comfortable and everything goes smoothly. She's easy-going, and bears with me when I'm impatient. Even problems at work, I can face them calmly now.

anna 真让人羡慕。你们上个月去云南玩得怎么样？
zhēn ràng rén xiànmù nǐmen shàng gè yuè qù Yúnnán wán de zěnmeyàng · I'm jealous. How was your trip to Yunnan last month?

xiaoming 太过瘾了！我们在山里住了一个星期，每天睡到自然醒，睡得特别酣畅，又悠闲又自在。
tài guòyǐn le wǒmen zài shān lǐ zhù le yí gè xīngqī měi tiān shuì dào zìrán xǐng shuì de tèbié hānchàng yòu yōuxián yòu zìzai · Fantastic! We stayed in the mountains for a week, slept until we woke up every day, slept like logs: so relaxed, so free.

anna 听起来好爽！对上班族来说，这简直是一种解脱。
tīng qǐlai hǎo shuǎng duì shàngbān zú lái shuō zhè jiǎnzhí shì yì zhǒng jiětuō · Sounds amazing! For office workers, that's a real escape.

xiaoming 最难忘的是那里的人，纯朴又热情，脸上总是洋溢着喜悦的笑容。
zuì nánwàng de shì nàlǐ de rén chúnpǔ yòu rèqíng liǎn shàng zǒngshì yángyì zhe xǐyuè de xiàoróng · What I'll never forget is the people there: simple, honest and warm, their faces always beaming with joy.

anna 你说得我也想去了。最近工作压力大，天天加班，身心疲倦，心里一点也不舒畅。
nǐ shuō de wǒ yě xiǎng qù le zuìjìn gōngzuò yālì dà tiān tiān jiābān shēnxīn píjuàn xīnlǐ yìdiǎn yě bù shūchàng · You're making me want to go. Work has been so stressful lately, with overtime every day; I'm worn out in body and mind, and I don't feel good at all.

xiaoming 振作一点！周末我爷爷奶奶庆祝结婚五十周年，你也来吧。
zhènzuò yìdiǎn zhōumò wǒ yéye nǎinai qìngzhù jiéhūn wǔshí zhōunián nǐ yě lái ba · Cheer up! This weekend my grandparents are celebrating their fiftieth wedding anniversary. Come along!

anna 真的吗？我很荣幸！
zhēn de ma wǒ hěn róngxìng · Really? I'd be honoured to be there!

xiaoming 爷爷说，他这一辈子最庆幸的事，就是娶了奶奶。他年轻时脾气暴躁，是奶奶的宽容让他变得沉稳了。
yéye shuō tā zhè yíbèizi zuì qìngxìng de shì jiùshì qǔ le nǎinai tā niánqīng shí píqi bàozào shì nǎinai de kuānróng ràng tā biàn de chénwěn le · Grandpa says the luckiest thing in his life was marrying Grandma. He was hot-tempered when he was young; it was Grandma's forbearance that made him steady.

anna 他们一定很知足吧。我有幸见过你奶奶一次，她那么慈祥、安详。
tāmen yídìng hěn zhīzú ba wǒ yǒuxìng jiàn guo nǐ nǎinai yí cì tā nàme cíxiáng ānxiáng · They must be very content. I had the good fortune to meet your grandma once: she's so kind and serene.

xiaoming 是啊。到时候孩子们嬉笑打闹，大人们喝茶聊天，兴致都很高。我爷爷说话很风趣，你一定会喜欢他。你就安心来玩吧！
shì a dào shíhou háizimen xīxiào dǎ nào dàrenmen hē chá liáotiān xìngzhì dōu hěn gāo wǒ yéye shuōhuà hěn fēngqù nǐ yídìng huì xǐhuan tā nǐ jiù ānxīn lái wán ba · Yes. The kids will be laughing and playing, the grown-ups

drinking tea and chatting, everyone in high spirits. My grandpa is very witty: you'll love him. Just come and enjoy yourself!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

稽
jī
to examine

咧
liē
to grin

荡
dàng
to sway, swing

唤
huàn
to call

good to know · 别提(有)多 + adjective + 了 means "you can't imagine how …": 别提多高兴了. The adjective is bare: no 很 or 非常 before it. 爽 and 过瘾 are casual and very common: a cold drink on a hot day is 爽, a great match or film is 过瘾.

Happy, content, carefree, thrilled: now you can tell your friends exactly how good life feels.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 10 sad and low

Talk about sadness, disappointment and feeling low, comfort a friend, and say "terribly" with 得要命 / 得要死.

Being able to name a bad feeling, and to answer someone else's, matters more in a friendship than any amount of small talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
悲哀	bēiāi	sad, pitiful, sorrowful	不能按自己的想法生活，是一种悲哀。 Not being able to live as you want is a sad thing.
悲惨	bēicǎn	tragic, miserable	他小时候的生活非常悲惨。 His childhood was miserable.
悲痛	bēitòng	grief-stricken; grief	老人去世了，家人十分悲痛。 The old man passed away, and his family is grief-stricken.
惨	cǎn	miserable, terrible; heavily	这次比赛我们输得很惨。 We lost really badly in this match.
惨痛	cǎntòng	bitter, painful (of a lesson, loss)	这是一次惨痛的教训。 That was a bitter lesson.
伤感	shānggǎn	sentimental, sad	秋天总让人有点伤感。 Autumn always makes people a bit wistful.
心酸	xīnsuān	heartbreaking, sad	看到他一个人吃饭，我有点|心酸。 Seeing him eat alone made my heart ache.
辛酸	xīnsuān	bitter (hardship)	创业的路上有很多辛酸。 Starting a business involves a lot of hardship.
凄凉	qīliáng	desolate, bleak	冬天的小村子显得很凄凉。 In winter the little village looks desolate.
痛心	tòngxīn	pained, grieved	看到孩子学坏，父母很痛心。 Parents are pained to see their children go astray.
惋惜	wǎnxī	to feel sorry, regret (for others)	这么好的机会没抓住，真让人惋惜。 What a shame such a good chance was missed.
可悲	kěbēi	pitiful, lamentable	不懂得珍惜才是最可悲的。 The saddest thing is not knowing how to treasure what you have.
哭泣	kūqì	to weep, cry (written)	她一个人在房间里哭泣。 She was crying alone in her room.
呜咽	wūyè	to sob	电话那头传来了她的呜咽声。 Down the line came the sound of her sobbing.
哽咽	gěngyè	to choke with sobs	说到这里，他哽咽了。 At this point he choked up.
叹气	tànqì	to sigh	他看着窗外，不停地叹气。 He looked out of the window, sighing again and again.

苦笑	kǔxiào	a wry smile; to smile bitterly	听到这个消息，他只能苦笑。 All he could do at the news was smile wryly.
苦涩	kǔsè	bitter, astringent; bitter (feeling)	这种茶有点苦涩。 This tea is a little bitter.
苦恼	kǔnǎo	troubled, worried; worry	他最近很苦恼，不知道该选哪个工作。 He's been troubled lately, not knowing which job to choose.
低落	dīluò	low, depressed (mood)	他这几天情绪很低落。 He's been feeling very low these past few days.
消沉	xiāochén	depressed, dispirited	失业以后，他变得很消沉。 After losing his job he became dispirited.
沮丧	jǔsàng	dejected, disheartened	输了比赛，队员们都很沮丧。 The players were dejected after losing the match.
抑郁	yìyù	depressed; depression	长期的压力让她感到抑郁。 Long-term stress has left her depressed.
忧郁	yōuyù	melancholy, gloomy	他看起来有点忧郁。 He looks a bit melancholy.
郁闷	yùmèn	fed up, down, frustrated	下了一个星期的雨，真郁闷！ A whole week of rain: so depressing!
烦闷	fánmèn	irritable and depressed	天气太热，人也很烦闷。 When it's this hot, you feel irritable.
闷	mèn	bored, gloomy; stuffy	一个人在家待着，太闷了。 Staying at home alone is so boring.
沉闷	chénmèn	dull, oppressive, depressing	会议的气氛很沉闷。 The atmosphere at the meeting was gloomy.
失落	shīluò	disappointed, feeling a loss	没被选上，他有点失落。 He felt a bit let down at not being chosen.
空虚	kōngxū	empty (inside), hollow	每天只玩手机，他觉得生活很空虚。 Doing nothing but playing on his phone all day, he feels his life is empty.
孤单	gūdān	lonely, alone	刚到国外的时候，我很孤单。 When I first went abroad, I was lonely.
孤零零	gūlínglíng	all alone	路边孤零零地站着一棵树。 A tree stood all alone by the road.
颓废	tuífèi	dispirited, decadent	别再颓废下去了，振作起来！ Stop wallowing: pull yourself together!
泄气	xièqì	to lose heart	一次没成功，别泄气。 Don't lose heart just because it didn't work once.
气馁	qìněi	to be discouraged	遇到困难，他从不气馁。 He never loses heart when things get hard.

pattern **x得要命 / x得要死: terribly, to death**

adjective or feeling | **得** | **要命 / 要死** | **= terribly, to death**

Add 得要命 or 得要死 after an adjective or a feeling verb to say “terribly, like crazy”: 累得要命 (dead tired), 饿得要死 (starving). It is spoken and exaggerated; nobody is dying. 要命 alone is an exclamation too: 真要命！ “This is killing me!”

考试前那几天，我紧张得要命。 **kǎoshì qián nà jǐ tiān wǒ jǐnzhāng de yào mìng** I was terribly nervous in the days before the exam.

一个人在国外过年，孤单得要死。 **yí gè rén zài guó wài guònián gūdān de yào sǐ** Spending New Year alone abroad is so lonely.

这几天天气太热了，我烦闷得要死。 **zhè jǐ tiān tiānqì tài rè le wǒ fánmèn de yào sǐ** It’s been so hot these days: I’m irritable as anything.

dialogue a bad result

anna 怎么了？你今天看起来情绪很低落。

zěnme le nǐ jīntiān kàn qǐlai qíngxù hěn dīluò · What's wrong? You seem really down today.

little sister 研究生考试的成绩出来了，我没考上。

yánjiūshēng kǎoshì de chéngjì chūlái le wǒ méi kǎo shàng · The graduate entrance results are out. I didn't get in.

anna 啊，真可惜。你复习得那么辛苦，每天都那么劳累。

a zhēn kěxī nǐ fùxí de nàme xīnkǔ měi tiān dōu nàme láolèi · Oh no, what a shame. You studied so hard, and you were worn out every day.

little sister 是啊，我难受得要死，昨天晚上一个人哭泣了很久。给我妈妈打电话的时候，一开口就呜咽起来，哽咽得说不出来。

shì a wǒ nánshòu de yào sǐ zuótiān wǎnshang yí gè rén kūqì le hěn jiǔ gěi wǒ māma dǎ diànhuà de shíhou yì kāi kǒu jiù wūyè qǐlai gěngyè de shuō bu chulai · Yes, I feel terrible: last night I cried on my own for ages. When I called my mum, I started sobbing as soon as I opened my mouth and was too choked up to speak.

anna 别难过，我明白那种失落的感觉。

bié nánguò wǒ míngbai nà zhǒng shīluò de gǎnjué · Don't be sad. I know that feeling of disappointment.

little sister 最惨的是，朋友们都考上了，唯独我没考上。我觉得自己很悲哀，努力了这么久，结果是这样。

zuì cǎn de shì péngyoumen dōu kǎo shàng le wéidú wǒ méi kǎo shàng wǒ juéde zìjǐ hěn bēiāi nǔlì le zhème jiǔ jiéguǒ shì zhèyàng · The worst thing is, my friends all got in, except me. I feel pathetic: all that work, and this is the result.

anna 不要这么想。失败不可悲，放弃才可悲。

búyào zhème xiǎng shībài bù kěbēi fàngqì cái kěbēi · Don't think like that. Failing isn't pitiful; giving up is.

little sister 可我现在特别空虚，什么都不想做，整天待在家里，好闷啊。家里气氛也很沉闷，太郁闷了。

kě wǒ xiànzài tèbié kōngxū shénme dōu bù xiǎng zuò zhěng tiān dāi zài jiā lǐ hǎo mèn a jiā lǐ qìfēn yě hěn chénmèn tài yùmèn le · But I feel so empty now. I don't want to do anything, I just stay at home all day, and it's so dreary. The atmosphere at home is gloomy too. It's so depressing.

anna 别这么消沉，也别这样折磨自己。一直颓废下去，对身体也不好。

bié zhème xiāochén yě bié zhèyàng zhémó zìjǐ yìzhí tuífèi xiaqu duì shēntǐ yě bù hǎo · Don't be so downhearted, and don't torment yourself like this. If you keep moping like this, it's bad for your health too.

little sister 我知道，可就是很沮丧。我妈妈只是叹气，我爸爸苦笑着说“明年再来”。

wǒ zhīdào kě jiùshì hěn jǔsàng wǒ māma zhǐshì tànqì wǒ bàba kǔxiào zhe shuō míngnián zài lái · I know, but I'm just so dejected. Mum just sighs, and Dad gives a wry smile and says, “Try again next year.”

anna 他们是心疼你。说实话，我第一次参加汉语考试也没过。那时候我太自满了，复习也很松懈，那是一次很惨痛的经历。

tāmen shì xīnténg nǐ shuō shíhuà wǒ dì yī cì cānjiā Hànyǔ kǎoshì yě méi guò nà shíhou wǒ tài zìmǎn le fùxí yě hěn sōngxiè nà shì yí cì hěn cǎntòng de jīnglì · That's because they care about you. To be honest, I failed my first Chinese exam too. I was too complacent back then and slack with my revision. It was a painful experience.

little sister 真的？那你后来是怎么振作起来的？

zhēn de nà nǐ hòulái shì zěnme zhènzuò qǐlai de · Really? So how did you pull yourself together?

anna 我告诉自己，不要泄气，要脚踏实地，一步一步来。回头看，那些辛酸和苦涩都变成了财富。不过如果心情长期不好，就要小心抑郁。

wǒ gàosu zìjǐ búyào xièqì yào jiǎotàshídì yí bù yí bù lái huítóu kàn nàxiē xīnsuān hé kǔsè dōu biànchéng le cáifù búguò rúguǒ xīnqíng chángqī bù hǎo jiù yào xiǎoxīn yìyù · I told myself not to lose heart, to keep my feet on the ground and take it one step at a time. Looking back, all that hardship and bitterness turned into something valuable. But if you feel low for a long time, watch out for depression.

little sister 我不会的，我只是有点忧郁。谢谢你，安娜，听你这么说，我心里没那么苦恼了，也安心多了。

wǒ bú huì de wǒ zhǐshì yǒu diǎn yōuyù xièxie nǐ Ānnà tīng nǐ zhème shuō wǒ xīnlǐ méi nàme kǔnǎo le yě ānxīn duō le · I won't get depressed, I'm just a bit melancholy. Thank you, Anna. Hearing you say that, I feel less miserable and much more at ease.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

鸣
míng
to cry, sing (birds); to sound

磨
mó
to grind, wear; dawdle

皆
jiē
all, each (written)

谋
móu
plans

good to know · 得要命 and 得要死 come after an adjective: 累得要命, 饿得要死. They are casual and cheerful exaggeration; in formal writing say 极其 or 非常. 抑郁 is also the medical word: 抑郁症 is depression. If a friend has felt 抑郁 for weeks, suggest they see a doctor (看医生).

Sad, disappointed, flat, lonely, and then back on your feet: you can now go through all of it, and help a friend through it, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 11 angry and fed up

Say how angry, annoyed or fed up you are, from mildly irritated to furious, and sigh 真是的! like a native.

Landlords, neighbours, traffic: everyone needs to complain sometimes, and the right word says how serious it is.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
发火	fāhuǒ	to get angry, lose one's temper	别生气，也别发火，我们慢慢说。 Don't get angry or blow up: let's talk it through slowly.
发怒	fānù	to get angry (written)	他很少发怒。 He rarely gets angry.
恼火	nǎohuǒ	annoyed, irritated	电脑又坏了，真让人恼火。 The computer's broken again: so irritating.
气愤	qìfèn	indignant, furious	听到这个消息，大家都很气愤。 Everyone was indignant at the news.
烦躁	fánzào	fretful, irritable	天太热，人容易烦躁。 When it's too hot, people get irritable easily.
焦躁	jiāozào	anxious and impatient, agitated	等结果的时候，他非常焦躁。 He was very agitated while waiting for the result.
别扭	bièniu	awkward, uncomfortable; at odds	吵过架以后，两人见面都很别扭。 After the quarrel, the two of them felt awkward around each other.
憋	biē	to hold in, suppress; stifled	有什么不满就说出来，别憋着。 If something bothers you, say it: don't hold it in.
怨	yuàn	to blame, resent	这件事不能怨他。 You can't blame him for this.
怨恨	yuànhèn	to resent, hate; resentment	她并不怨恨任何人。 She doesn't resent anyone.
怨气	yuànqì	grievance, resentment	大家心里都有怨气。 Everyone is harbouring a grievance.
仇恨	chóuhèn	hatred, enmity	两家人之间有很深的仇恨。 There is deep hatred between the two families.
反感	fǎngǎn	to dislike; aversion	我对这种广告很反感。 I really dislike this kind of advert.
厌烦	yànfán	to be fed up with, sick of	他总说同样的事，我都听厌烦了。 He always talks about the same thing; I'm sick of hearing it.
厌倦	yànjuàn	to be weary of, tired of	他厌倦了城市的生活。 He grew tired of city life.

厌恶	yànwù	to loathe, detest	我厌恶浪费粮食的行为。 I detest wasting food.
可恶	kěwù	hateful, outrageous	偷别人钱包的人真可恶！ People who steal wallets are despicable!
唾弃	tuòqì	to spurn, condemn	这种行为应该受到唾弃。 Behaviour like this should be condemned.
鄙视	bǐshì	to despise, look down on	他鄙视那些靠关系上位的人。 He despises people who get ahead through connections.
藐视	miǎoshì	to defy, disregard	他藐视规则，最后受到了惩罚。 He defied the rules and was punished in the end.
蔑视	mièshì	to scorn, show contempt for	她用蔑视的眼光看着他。 She looked at him with contempt.
轻蔑	qīngmiè	contemptuous, scornful	他轻蔑地笑了笑。 He gave a scornful smile.
轻视	qīngshì	to underestimate, look down on	不要轻视任何对手。 Never underestimate an opponent.
不屑	bùxiè	to disdain, not deign to	他对这种小事不屑一顾。 He thinks such trifles are beneath his notice.
漠然	mòrán	indifferent, apathetic	他对别人的困难漠然不理。 He's indifferent to other people's troubles.
不服	bùfú	to refuse to accept, not be convinced	他对比赛结果很不服。 He refuses to accept the result of the match.
服气	fúqì	to accept (being beaten), be convinced	他赢得光明正大，我服气。 He won fair and square: I accept it.
活该	huógāi	it serves someone right	不听劝，活该被雨淋。 He wouldn't listen, so it serves him right that he got soaked.
扫兴	sǎoxìng	disappointed, spoiled (fun)	刚出门就下雨了，真扫兴。 It started raining the moment we went out: what a letdown.
够呛	gòuqiàng	terrible, unbearable (spoken)	这么热的天在外面干活，真够呛。 Working outside in this heat is murder.
懒得	lǎnde	to not feel like, can't be bothered	天太冷，我懒得出门。 It's too cold; I can't be bothered to go out.
没劲	méijìn	boring, dull; tired	这个节目真没劲。 This programme is so boring.
发泄	fāxiè	to vent, let off steam	他用跑步来发泄压力。 He runs to let off stress.
宣泄	xuānxiè	to release, give vent to (written)	音乐是宣泄情绪的好方法。 Music is a good way to release your emotions.
压抑	yāyì	oppressive, stifling; to suppress	办公室的气氛很压抑。 The atmosphere in the office is oppressive.

pattern 真是的: honestly! for goodness' sake!

(你 / 他 / 这孩子) 真是的 ，+ the complaint = Honestly! Really!

真是的 is a sigh of annoyance, usually about a person: 你也真是的 (honestly, you!), 他这个人真是的. It can come before or after the complaint and is softer than a real scolding, often affectionate. On its own, 真是的！ means “For goodness’ sake!”

你也真是的，下雨了也不带伞。 **nǐ yě zhēn shì de xià yǔ le yě bú dài sǎn** Honestly, you: it’s raining and you didn’t bring an umbrella.

真是的！又堵车了，我们肯定要迟到了。 **zhēn shì de yòu dǔchē le wǒmen kěndìng yào chídào le** For goodness’ sake! Another traffic jam: we’re definitely going to be late.

这孩子真是的，玩了一天，作业一个字都没写。 **zhè háizi zhēn shì de wán le yì tiān zuòyè yí gè zì dōu méi xiě** Honestly, this child: he’s played all day and hasn’t written a word of his homework.

dialogue letting off steam

xiaoming 安娜，你脸色不太好，谁让你生气了？
Ānnà nǐ liǎnsè bú tài hǎo shéi ràng nǐ shēngqì le · Anna, you don't look great. Who's upset you?

anna 别提了！我的房东要涨房租，一次就涨一千块！
bié tí le wǒ de fángdōng yào zhǎng fángzū yí cì jiù zhǎng yìqiān kuài · Don't ask! My landlord wants to put the rent up by a thousand yuan in one go!

xiaoming 什么？合同不是还没到期吗？这房东也太贪了吧！
shénme hétóng bú shì hái méi dàoqī ma zhè fángdōng yě tài tān le ba · What? Isn't your contract still running? That landlord is far too greedy!

anna 是啊！他说不同意就搬走，想租房子的人多的是。这么霸道，真是的，太可恶了！
shì a tā shuō bù tóngyì jiù bān zǒu xiǎng zū fángzi de rén duō de shì zhème bàdào zhēn shì de tài kěwù le · Exactly! He says if I don't agree I can move out: there are plenty of people who want the flat. So high-handed! Honestly, it's outrageous!

xiaoming 所以你这么气愤。他这是藐视合同！
suǒyǐ nǐ zhème qìfèn tā zhè shì miǎoshì hétóng · No wonder you're so angry. He's treating the contract as if it doesn't exist!

anna 我跟他讲道理，他一脸不屑，用一种轻蔑的语气说话，好像很蔑视我。
wǒ gēn tā jiǎng dàolǐ tā yì liǎn búxiè yòng yì zhǒng qīngmiè de yǔqì shuōhuà hǎoxiàng hěn mièshì wǒ · I tried to reason with him, but he looked at me with disdain and spoke in a contemptuous tone, as if he looked down on me.

xiaoming 这种态度又傲慢又粗鲁，太让人反感了。明显是看你是外国人，就轻视你。
zhè zhǒng tàidù yòu àomàn yòu cūlǔ tài ràng rén fǎngǎn le míngxiǎn shì kàn nǐ shì wàiguó rén jiù qīngshì nǐ · That attitude is arrogant and rude, and so off-putting. He obviously thinks less of you because you're a foreigner.

anna 我当时恼火得要死，差点就发火了，最后还是保持了理智。我心里很不服，可是又没办法。
wǒ dāngshí nǎohuǒ de yào sǐ chà diǎn jiù fāhuǒ le zuìhòu háishi bǎochí le lǐzhì wǒ xīnlǐ hěn bùfú kěshì yòu méi bànfǎ · I was absolutely furious and nearly lost my temper, but in the end I kept my head. I wasn't going to accept it, but what could I do?

xiaoming 我也替你不服气，合同就是合同！不过别把怨气憋在心里，会憋出病的。
wǒ yě tì nǐ bù fúqì hétóng jiùshì hétóng búguò bié bǎ yuànqì biē zài xīnlǐ huì biē chū bìng de · I wouldn't accept it either: a contract is a contract! But don't bottle up your anger, or it'll make you ill.

anna 我已经憋了一天了。楼上的邻居也很自私，天天晚上吵，我跟他说过，他的态度很漠然，好像跟他没关系。我每天晚上都很焦躁，睡不好。
wǒ yǐjīng biē le yì tiān le lóu shàng de línjū yě hěn zìsī tiān tiān wǎnshang chǎo wǒ gēn tā shuō guo tā de tàidù hěn mòrán hǎoxiàng gēn tā méi guānxi wǒ měi tiān wǎnshang dōu hěn jiāozào shuì bu hǎo · I've been holding it in all day. The neighbour upstairs is selfish too: he's noisy every night. I told him, and he couldn't care less, as if it had nothing to do with him. Every night I'm on edge and can't sleep.

xiaoming 楼上的人也真是的，一点也不考虑别人。
lóu shàng de rén yě zhēn shì de yìdiǎn yě bù kǎolǜ biérén · Honestly, that neighbour: he doesn't think of anyone else at all.

anna 我不想怨恨谁，只是觉得很压抑。现在每次见到房东，我都觉得很别扭，什么都没劲，也很厌烦。
wǒ bù xiǎng yuànhèn shéi zhǐshì juéde hěn yāyì xiànzài měi cì jiàn dào fángdōng wǒ dōu juéde hěn bièniu shénme dōu méijìn yě hěn yànfán · I don't want to hate anyone, I just feel so stifled. Every time I see the landlord now I feel awkward, nothing's any fun, and I'm sick of it all.

xiaoming 我认识一位律师，姓孙，专门处理房子的问题。他很耿直，又很精明。你去问问他？
wǒ rènshi yí wèi lǜshī xìng Sūn zhuānmén chǔlǐ fángzi de wèntí tā hěn gěngzhí yòu hěn jīngmíng nǐ qù wèn wen tā · I know a lawyer, Mr Sun, who specialises in housing problems. He's straight as a die, and very sharp. Why not ask him?

anna 好啊。不过我现在累得够呛，今天懒得想了。
hǎo a búguò wǒ xiànzài lèi de gòuqiàng jīntiān lǎnde xiǎng le · Good idea. But I'm worn out right now: I can't be bothered to think about it today.

xiaoming 那我们打球吧，把不满都发泄出来！运动是最好的宣泄。
nà wǒmen dǎ qiú ba bǎ bùmǎn dōu fāxiè chulai yùndòng shì zuìhǎo de xuānxiè · Then let's shoot some hoops and get it all out of your system! Exercise is the best release.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

陋 lòu humble, narrow												
翼 yì wing												
丝 sī silk; thread, a tiny bit												
凤 fèng phoenix												

good to know · 真是的 is a sigh of annoyance: 你也真是的！ "Honestly, you!" It is often half-affectionate, the way a parent or friend grumbles. 懒得 + verb means "can't be bothered to": 懒得做饭, 懒得理他. It's very common and a bit cheeky.

Annoyed, fed up, furious, then calm again: you can now complain in Chinese without losing your cool.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 12 worry and fear

Talk about worry, nerves and fear, reassure someone, and read “all / only” in public notices: 均, 一概, 唯独.

Worry is the feeling people share most readily, and comforting words are a big part of friendship in any language.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
操心	cāoxīn	to worry about, take trouble over	父母总是为孩子操心。 Parents are always worrying about their children.
犯愁	fànchóu	to fret, be worried	他正为房租犯愁。 He’s fretting about the rent.
忧愁	yōuchóu	worried, sad; sorrow	她的眼里满是忧愁。 Her eyes are full of sorrow.
忧虑	yōulǜ	anxious, concerned; worry	专家对环境问题表示忧虑。 Experts have expressed concern about environmental problems.
顾虑	gùlǜ	misgiving, worry; to worry about	有什么顾虑，你就直说。 If you have any misgivings, just say so.
疑虑	yílǜ	doubt, misgiving	对这个计划，我还有一些疑虑。 I still have some doubts about this plan.
牵挂	qiānguà	to worry about, care about	我在外地工作，最牵挂的是妈妈。 Working away from home, the person I worry about most is my mum.
挂念	guàniàn	to miss, worry about	别挂念我，我在这儿很好。 Don’t worry about me: I’m fine here.
惦记	diànjì	to keep thinking about, worry about	奶奶一直惦记着你。 Grandma keeps thinking about you.
关切	guānqiè	concerned, caring; concern	医生关切地问她感觉怎么样。 The doctor asked her with concern how she was feeling.
焦急	jiāojí	anxious, frantic	孩子还没回家，妈妈非常焦急。 The child still isn’t home, and Mum is frantic.
心慌	xīnhuāng	flustered, heart pounding	一上台我就心慌。 As soon as I’m on stage my heart starts pounding.
慌	huāng	flustered, panicked	别慌，慢慢说。 Don’t panic: tell me slowly.
慌乱	huāngluàn	flustered and confused	他慌乱地找着钥匙。 He searched for his keys in a fluster.
慌忙	huāngmáng	hurriedly, in a rush	听到电话，她慌忙站了起来。 When she heard the phone, she jumped up in a hurry.
慌张	huāngzhāng	flustered, nervous	别慌张，先想想办法。 Don’t get flustered: think of a way first.

惊慌	jīnghuāng	alarmed, panic-stricken	着火了，大家并没有惊慌。 There was a fire, but nobody panicked.
恐慌	kǒnghuāng	panic; panicky	这个假{jia3}消息引起了一些恐慌。 The fake news caused some panic.
恐怖	kǒngbù	terrifying, horror	我不敢看恐怖电影。 I don't dare watch horror films.
吓人	xiàrén	frightening, scary	这条路晚上黑得吓人。 This road is frighteningly dark at night.
受惊	shòujīng	to be startled, frightened	孩子受惊了，一直在哭。 The child got a fright and won't stop crying.
惊吓	jīngxià	fright, shock	小猫受到惊吓，跑到床下去了。 The kitten got a fright and ran under the bed.
畏惧	wèijù	to fear, dread	他从不畏惧困难。 He is never daunted by difficulties.
畏缩	wèisuō	to shrink back, flinch	遇到问题不能畏缩。 You mustn't shrink from problems.
胆怯	dǎnqiè	timid, cowardly	第一次上台，他有点胆怯。 On stage for the first time, he was a bit timid.
退缩	tuìsuō	to shrink back, flinch	他在困难面前从不退缩。 He never backs down in the face of difficulty.
生怕	shēngpà	for fear that, afraid that	他轻轻地走，生怕吵醒孩子。 He walked quietly for fear of waking the baby.
心病	xīnbìng	a worry, a sore point	孩子的成绩是她的心病。 Her child's grades are a constant worry for her.
心事	xīnshì	something on one's mind	他好像有心事，一句也不说。 He seems to have something on his mind; he hasn't said a word.
定心丸	dìngxīnwán	reassurance (lit. heart-settling pill)	医生说没事，这给了大家一颗定心丸。 The doctor said it was nothing serious, and that set everyone's mind at rest.
忙乱	mángluàn	in a rush and a muddle	早上忙乱了一阵，我忘了带手机。 In the morning rush I forgot my phone.
狼狈	lángbèi	in a sorry state, embarrassed	被雨淋湿以后，他样子很狼狈。 After getting soaked in the rain, he was a sorry sight.
窘迫	jiǒngpò	embarrassed, awkward; hard up	他一时答不上来，显得很窘迫。 Unable to answer straight away, he looked very embarrassed.
拘束	jūshù	ill at ease, constrained	在这里别拘束，就像在自己家一样。 Make yourself at home here: don't be shy.
迟疑	chíyí	to hesitate	他迟疑了一下，|还是{==still, in the end}同意了。 He hesitated for a moment, but agreed all the same.

pattern **all and only, again: 均, 一概, 唯独 in notices**

我市 / 我方 … 均 / 一概 = all, without exception 唯独 / 无非 = only, merely

Public notices and news use the written scope words you met on day 6, often with formal 我: 我市各学校均停课 (all schools in our city are closed). 一概 likes a negative after it (一概不收 none accepted). In speech, 唯独 picks out the one exception and 无非 shrinks things down: 他无非是担心你 “he’s only worried about you”.

我市明天有暴雨，各学校均停课一天。 **wǒ shì míngtiān yǒu bàoyǔ gè xuéxiào jūn tíng kè yì tiān** Heavy rain is expected in our city tomorrow; all schools will close for the day.

考试期间，手机一概不得带进考场。 **kǎoshì qījiān shǒujī yígài bùdé dài jìn kǎo chǎng** During the exam, no phones whatsoever may be taken into the exam room.

大家都很紧张，唯独他一点也不慌。 **dàjiā dōu hěn jǐnzhāng wéidú tā yìdiǎn yě bù huāng** Everyone was nervous except him: he wasn’t flustered at all.

dialogue a cup of tea and a few worries

ms zhang 安娜，来，坐！最近怎么样？你看起来有心事。
Ānnà lái zuò zuìjìn zěnmeyàng nǐ kàn qǐlai yǒu xīnshì · Anna, come in, sit down! How are things? You look as if something's on your mind.

anna 被您看出来了。下周我要给上海的客户做报告，他们对我们的方案还有一些疑虑，我很担心说错。
bèi nín kàn chulai le xià zhōu wǒ yào gěi Shànghǎi de kèhù zuò bàogào tāmen duì wǒmen de fāngàn hái yǒu yìxiē yílǜ wǒ hěn dānxīn shuō cuò · You've guessed it. Next week I'm presenting to our Shanghai client. They still have some doubts about our plan, and I'm worried I'll say the wrong thing.

ms zhang 第一次总会有点胆怯，别慌张，这很正常。到时候沉着一点就行。
dì yī cì zǒng huì yǒu diǎn dǎnqiè bié huāngzhāng zhè hěn zhèngcháng dào shíhou chénzhuó yìdiǎn jiù xíng · Everyone's a bit timid the first time. Don't get flustered; it's perfectly normal. Just stay calm on the day.

anna 我生怕自己一紧张就慌了。上次开会，我一慌乱，资料掉得到处都是，特别窘迫。我这个人有时候丢三落四的。
wǒ shēngpà zìjǐ yì jǐnzhāng jiù huāng le shàng cì kāihuì wǒ yì huāngluàn zīliào diào de dàochù dōu shì tèbié jiǒngpò wǒ zhè gè rén yǒu shíhou diūsān làsì de · I'm so afraid I'll panic as soon as I get nervous. At the last meeting I got in a muddle and dropped my papers everywhere. It was mortifying. I can be so scatterbrained sometimes.

ms zhang 你准备得这么认真，没什么好顾虑的。做事不能畏惧困难，一畏缩就输了。
nǐ zhǔnbèi de zhème rènzhēn méi shénme hǎo gùlǜ de zuò shì bù néng wèijù kùnnan yí wèisuō jiù shū le · You've prepared so carefully that there's nothing to worry about. You can't be afraid of difficulties: the moment you hold back, you've lost.

anna 谢谢您。您最近好吗？小明说您也有点忧虑。
xièxie nín nín zuìjìn hǎo ma Xiǎomíng shuō nín yě yǒu diǎn yōulǜ · Thank you. And how are you? Xiaoming says you've been a bit anxious too.

ms zhang 还不是为了孩子们操心。妹妹找工作的事是我的一块心病，我天天挂念着。
hái bú shì wèile háizimen cāoxīn mèimei zhǎo gōngzuò de shì shì wǒ de yí kuài xīnbìng wǒ tiān tiān guàniàn zhe · Worrying about the children, as always. My daughter's job hunt is weighing on my mind; I think about it every day.

anna 她那么优秀，又那么稳重，一定没问题的。您不用犯愁。
tā nàme yōuxiù yòu nàme wěnzhòng yídìng méi wèntí de nín búyòng fànchóu · She's so talented, and so level-headed, she'll be fine. You don't need to fret.

ms zhang 还有她爸爸，最近天天加班，回到家一副很狼狈的样子，饭也吃不上。我很惦记他的身体。
hái yǒu tā bàba zuìjìn tiān tiān jiābān huí dào jiā yí fù hěn lángbèi de yàngzi fàn yě chī bu shàng wǒ hěn diànjì tā de shēntǐ · And her dad: he's been working overtime every day lately and comes home looking a wreck, without even a proper meal. I worry about his health.

anna 李医生自己是医生，他会注意的。
Lǐyīshēng zìjǐ shì yīshēng tā huì zhùyì de · Dr Li is a doctor himself; he'll be careful.

ms zhang 上个月他在医院里差点晕倒，那天家里一阵忙乱，我受了很大的惊吓，大白也受惊了，一直叫。
shàng gè yuè tā zài yīyuàn lǐ chà diǎn yūn dǎo nà tiān jiā lǐ yízhèn mángluàn wǒ shòu le hěn dà de jīngxià Dàbái yě shòujīng le yìzhí jiào · Last month he nearly fainted at the hospital. That day the house was in chaos, I had a terrible fright, and even Dabai was scared and wouldn't stop barking.

anna 您一定很惊慌吧？
nín yídìng hěn jīnghuāng ba · You must have been so alarmed.

ms zhang 当时我心慌得要死，一点也镇定不下来，慌忙打车去了医院。还好医生说他只是太累了，检查结果就是我的定心丸。
dāngshí wǒ xīnhuāng de yào sǐ yìdiǎn yě zhèndìng bu xialai huāngmáng dǎchē qù le yīyuàn hái hǎo yīshēng shuō tā zhǐshì tài lèi le jiǎnchá jiéguǒ jiùshì wǒ de dìngxīnwán · My heart was pounding like mad and I couldn't

calm down at all; I rushed to the hospital in a taxi. Luckily the doctor said he was just exhausted: the test results set my mind at rest.

anna 那就好。您对家人的关切，大家都看在眼里。
nà jiù hǎo nín duì jiārén de guānqiè dàjiā dōu kàn zài yǎn lǐ · Thank goodness. Everyone can see how much you care about your family.

ms zhang 你也是我们家的人啊。报告的事别迟疑，大胆去做！就算说错了，坦然面对就好。
nǐ yě shì wǒmen jiā de rén a bàogào de shì bié chíyí dàdǎn qù zuò jiùsuàn shuō cuò le tǎnrán miànduì jiù hǎo · You're part of our family too. Don't hesitate about the presentation: go for it! Even if you say something wrong, just take it in your stride.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

愧 kuì shame	
悦 yuè pleased	
滋 zī to grow	
馨 xīn fragrance	

good to know · Public notices love written "all / only": 我市各学校均停课 (all schools in our city are closed), 一概不退 (no refunds whatsoever). Read them as 都 and 只. 生怕 means "for fear that": 他走得很慢，生怕摔倒 "he walked slowly for fear of falling".

Worried, nervous, scared stiff, then reassured: you can now share a worry in Chinese, and lift one off someone else.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 13 hopes and wishes

Talk about hopes, wishes and bad luck, and say “not necessarily”, “never”, “no need” and “do not” with 不见得, 绝不, 无须, 勿.

Plans, dreams and stubborn hopes come up in every serious conversation, and the written negatives are on every sign and in every notice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
知	zhī	to know (written)	谁知第二天就下起了大雪。 Who would have known it would snow heavily the next day?
憧憬	chōngjǐng	to look forward to, yearn for	她憧憬着大学的生活。 She’s dreaming of life at university.
但愿	dànyuàn	if only, let’s hope	但愿他的病能快点好起来。 Let’s hope he gets well soon.
盼	pàn	to look forward to, long for	孩子们都盼着放假。 The children can’t wait for the holidays.
期盼	qīpàn	to expect, hope for	我们期盼着你早点回来。 We’re longing for you to come back soon.
指望	zhǐwàng	to count on, rely on; hope	别指望他会帮你。 Don’t count on him helping you.
奢望	shēwàng	an extravagant hope	我不敢有这样的奢望。 I wouldn’t dare hope for that much.
急于	jíyú	to be eager to, in a hurry to	他急于知道考试结果。 He’s eager to know the exam results.
乐意	lèyì	to be willing, glad to	我很乐意帮忙。 I’m happy to help.
甘心	gānxīn	to be willing; to be reconciled to	输了这么多次，他|还是{==still}不甘心。 After losing so many times, he still won’t accept it.
忍心	rěnxīn	to have the heart to	我不忍心告诉她这个坏消息。 I don’t have the heart to tell her the bad news.
死心	sǐxīn	to give up hope	他还没死心，想再试一次。 He hasn’t given up hope; he wants to try once more.
禁不住	jīnbuzhù	can’t help (doing)	听到这个笑话，她禁不住笑了。 Hearing the joke, she couldn’t help laughing.
豁出去	huōchuqu	to go all out, risk everything	为了这次机会，我豁出去了！ For this chance I’m going all out!
寄托	jìtuō	to place (hopes) in; to entrust	父母把希望寄托在孩子身上。 Parents place their hopes in their children.
心声	xīnshēng	heartfelt wish, true feelings	这首歌|唱出了年轻人的心声。 This song expresses what young people really feel.

满怀	mǎnhuái	to be full of (feelings)	他满怀信心地走进了考场。 He walked into the exam room full of confidence.
侥幸	jiǎoxìng	lucky, by sheer luck	这次能通过完全是侥幸。 Passing this time was pure luck.
倒霉	dǎoméi	to have bad luck; unlucky	真倒霉，刚出门就下雨了。 Just my luck: it started raining the moment I went out.
厄运	èyùn	bad luck, misfortune	他终于摆脱了厄运。 He finally shook off his bad luck.
不得已	bùdéyǐ	to have no choice, as a last resort	我也是不得已才这么做的。 I only did it because I had no choice.
享	xiǎng	to enjoy	我们是一家人，有福同享嘛！ We're family: good fortune is for sharing!
享用	xiǎngyòng	to enjoy (food, a service)	请慢慢享用。 Please enjoy your meal.
钟	zhōng	bell; clock	教室墙上的钟停了。 The clock on the classroom wall has stopped.
感悟	gǎnwù	insight; to realise	这次旅行给了我很多感悟。 This trip gave me a lot to think about.
不见得	bùjiàndé	not necessarily	他说的不见得对。 What he says isn't necessarily right.
无从	wúcóng	to have no way to	我不知道他的电话，无从联系他。 I don't have his number, so I have no way to contact him.
无须	wúxū	no need to	这件事你无须担心。 You needn't worry about this.
勿	wù	do not (written)	请勿在此停车。 No parking here, please.
不准	bùzhǔn	not allowed, forbidden	这里不准抽烟。 Smoking is not allowed here.
不容	bùróng	not to allow, brook no	这件事不容拖延。 This matter can't be delayed.
休想	xiūxiǎng	don't even think about it	你想骗我？休想！ You want to fool me? Not a chance!
绝不	juébù	never, absolutely not	我绝不同意。 I will never agree.
无可	wúkě	there is nothing to …	他的回答无可挑剔。 His answer was faultless.

pattern written negatives: not necessarily, never, no need, do not

不见得 = not necessarily　绝不 = never ever　无须 / 勿 = no need / do not

无从 / 无可 = no way to / nothing to

Advanced Chinese has a negative for every shade. 不见得 is a soft “not necessarily”, 绝不 a hard “never”. 无须 means “no need to” and 勿 is “do not” on signs. 无从 is “no way to” (无从查起 nowhere to start looking), and 无可 + verb is “nothing to …” (无可挑剔 faultless).

贵的东西不见得好。 **guì de dōngxi bújiàndé hǎo** Expensive things aren’t necessarily good.

我绝不放弃。 **wǒ juébú fàngqì** I will never give up.

请勿吸烟。 **qǐng wù xī yān** No smoking, please.

他的表现无可挑剔。 **tā de biǎoxiàn wúkě tiāoti** His performance was faultless.

dialogue a second try

little sister 陈教授，打扰了。我想跟您说说我的心声。
Chénjiàoshòu dǎrǎo le wǒ xiǎng gēn nín shuō shuo wǒ de xīnshēng · Professor Chen, sorry to bother you. I'd like to tell you what's really on my mind.

professor chen 请坐。我听说你今年没考上研究生，别太难过。
qǐng zuò wǒ tīngshuō nǐ jīnnián méi kǎo shàng yánjiūshēng bié tài nánguò · Please, sit down. I hear you didn't get into the graduate programme this year. Don't be too upset.

little sister 说实话，我还没死心。我期盼明年能做您的学生。
shuō shíhuà wǒ hái méi sǐxīn wǒ qīpàn míngnián néng zuò nín de xuéshēng · To be honest, I haven't given up. I'm hoping to be your student next year.

professor chen 我很乐意。不过你得想清楚，做研究不能急于出成绩，更不能浮躁。
wǒ hěn lèyì búguò nǐ děi xiǎng qīngchu zuò yánjiū bù néng jíyú chū chéngjì gèng bù néng fúzào · I'd be delighted. But think it through: in research you can't be in a hurry for results, and you certainly can't be restless.

little sister 我明白。我爸爸妈妈原来指望我当老师，可我更想研究历史。
wǒ míngbai wǒ bàba māma yuánlái zhǐwàng wǒ dāng lǎoshī kě wǒ gèng xiǎng yánjiū lìshǐ · I understand. My parents had counted on me becoming a teacher, but I'd rather study history.

professor chen 研究历史不见得能挣大钱，你考虑过吗？
yánjiū lìshǐ bújiàndé néng zhèng dà qián nǐ kǎolǜ guo ma · Studying history won't necessarily make you rich. Have you thought about that?

little sister 考虑过。我不奢望大富大贵，只想做自己喜欢的事。我这个人很倔强，他们也不忍心看我难过，不得已才同意了。
kǎolǜ guo wǒ bù shēwàng dà fù dà guì zhǐ xiǎng zuò zìjǐ xǐhuan de shì wǒ zhè gè rén hěn juéjiàng tāmen yě bù rěnxīn kàn wǒ nánguò bùdéyǐ cái tóngyì le · I have. I don't dream of getting rich; I just want to do what I love. I'm quite strong-willed, and they couldn't bear to see me unhappy, so in the end they had to agree.

professor chen 很好。很多人把梦想寄托在别人身上，你能自己做决定，难能可贵。
hěn hǎo hěn duō rén bǎ mèngxiǎng jìtuō zài biérén shēn shàng nǐ néng zìjǐ zuò juédìng nánnéng kěguì · Good. Lots of people pin their dreams on others; making your own decision is admirable.

little sister 这次失败让我有了很多感悟。我决定豁出去了，明年再考一次。
zhè cì shībài ràng wǒ yǒu le hěn duō gǎnwù wǒ juédìng huōchuqu le míngnián zài kǎo yí cì · This failure has taught me a lot. I've decided to go all out and try again next year.

professor chen 有这样的态度，我无须多说了。不过考试不准带资料，你得靠平时的积累，别抱侥幸心理。
yǒu zhèyàng de tàidù wǒ wúxū duō shuō le búguò kǎoshì bù zhǔn dài zīliào nǐ děi kào píngshí de jīlěi bié bào jiǎoxìng xīnlǐ · With that attitude, I needn't say any more. But no notes are allowed in the exam: you'll have to rely on what you build up day by day, not on luck.

little sister 我知道。这次我绝不偷懒了，每一章都会一丝不苟地复习。
wǒ zhīdào zhè cì wǒ juébù tōulǎn le měi yì zhāng dōu huì yìsī bùgǒu de fùxí · I know. This time I won't slack off, I promise: I'll revise every chapter meticulously.

professor chen 人总会遇到厄运，但只要满怀希望、自强不息，总会有转机。时间不容浪费，从今天开始吧。
rén zǒng huì yùdào èyùn dàn zhǐyào mǎnhuái xīwàng zìqiáng bùxī zǒng huì yǒu zhuǎnjī shíjiān bùróng làngfèi cóng jīntiān kāishǐ ba · Everyone meets bad luck, but as long as you're full of hope and keep striving, things will turn around. There's no time to waste: start today.

little sister 谢谢您！听您这么说，我心里特别振奋，禁不住想马上去图书馆。
xièxie nín tīng nín zhème shuō wǒ xīnlǐ tèbié zhènfèn jīnbuzhù xiǎng mǎshàng qù túshūguǎn · Thank you! Hearing you say that, I feel so fired up that I can't help wanting to go to the library right now.

professor chen 哈哈，去吧。不过想一个星期就把历史学完？休想！
hā hā qù ba búguò xiǎng yí gè xīngqī jiù bǎ lìshǐ xué wán xiūxiǎng · Ha, off you go. But if you think you can learn all of history in a week, think again!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

溢
yì
to overflow

振
zhèn
to shake, rouse

爽
shuǎng
great, refreshing (spoken)

瘾
yǐn
addiction; craving

good to know · 勿 is the “do not” of signs: 请勿吸烟 (no smoking), 请勿拍照 (no photos). You will rarely hear it in conversation. 不见得 softens a disagreement: 贵的不见得好 “expensive isn’t necessarily good”. It is much politer than 不对.

Hope, determination, a little bad luck and a lot of nerve: you can now talk about what you want from life in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 14 surprise and shame

Talk about surprise, embarrassment, shame and envy, and say “to such a point” with 到这个份上 and “I don’t know what to say” with 不知……才好.

Embarrassing stories are the best stories, and these are the words for telling them, and for the awkward moments themselves.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
诧异	chàyì	surprised, astonished	他的突然出现让大家很诧异。 Everyone was surprised when he suddenly turned up.
惊奇	jīngqí	amazed, surprised	孩子们惊奇地看着这个新玩具。 The children stared at the new toy in amazement.
惊叹	jīngtàn	to marvel at, exclaim in admiration	游客们惊叹这里的美景。 Tourists marvel at the beautiful scenery here.
震惊	zhènjīng	shocked; to shock	这个新闻震惊了全国。 The news shocked the whole country.
震撼	zhènhàn	to shake, stun; overwhelming	第一次看到大海，我被震撼了。 The first time I saw the sea, I was overwhelmed.
惊动	jīngdòng	to alarm, disturb, cause a stir	别惊动大家，我们自己处理。 Don’t disturb everyone: we’ll deal with it ourselves.
惊险	jīngxiǎn	thrilling, dangerous	这部电影有很多惊险的场面。 The film has lots of thrilling scenes.
纳闷儿	nàmènr	to be puzzled, wonder	他怎么还没来？我很纳闷儿。 Why isn’t he here yet? I can’t work it out.
茫然	mángrán	at a loss, bewildered	毕业以后，他对未来感到茫然。 After graduating, he felt lost about the future.
发呆	fādāi	to stare blankly, daydream	上课的时候别发呆。 Don’t daydream in class.
发愣	fālèng	to be stunned, freeze	听到这个问题，他发愣了。 When he heard the question, he froze.
出神	chūshén	to be lost in thought, spellbound	她看着窗外，想得出神。 She gazed out of the window, lost in thought.
惭愧	cánkuì	ashamed	我没帮上忙，很惭愧。 I’m ashamed I couldn’t help.
羞耻	xiūchǐ	shame; ashamed	做错了事，他感到很羞耻。 Having done wrong, he felt deeply ashamed.
羞愧	xiūkuì	ashamed, abashed	他羞愧地低着头。 He hung his head in shame.

耻辱	chǐrǔ	disgrace, humiliation	失败不是耻辱，放弃才是。 Failure is no disgrace; giving up is.
丢脸	diūliǎn	to lose face, be embarrassed	在大家面前摔倒，真丢脸！ Falling over in front of everyone: so embarrassing!
丢人	diūrén	to lose face, be embarrassing	别哭了，多丢人啊！ Stop crying: how embarrassing!
难堪	nánkān	embarrassing, awkward; ugly	他在大家面前批评我，让我很难堪。 He criticised me in front of everyone, which was mortifying.
难为情	nánwéiqíng	shy, embarrassed	被大家夸，她有点难为情。 She was a bit embarrassed to be praised by everyone.
过意不去	guòyìbùqù	to feel bad (about troubling someone)	让你等这么久，真过意不去。 I feel really bad for keeping you waiting so long.
自卑	zìbēi	to feel inferior	他因为个子矮而自卑。 He feels inferior because he's short.
自责	zìzé	to blame oneself	这不是你的错，别自责了。 It's not your fault: stop blaming yourself.
自尊	zìzūn	self-respect, pride	批评孩子时要注意保护他的自尊。 When you criticise a child, take care to protect their self-respect.
悔恨	huǐhèn	remorse; to regret deeply	他悔恨自己当初没有好好学习。 He bitterly regrets not having studied properly.
嫉妒	jídù	to be jealous, envy	她嫉妒别人比她漂亮。 She's jealous of people who are prettier than she is.
忌妒	jìdu	to be jealous (variant spelling)	他有点忌妒弟弟。 He's a little jealous of his younger brother.
眼红	yǎnhóng	to be envious	看到他赚了那么多钱，很多人都眼红了。 Seeing how much money he made, lots of people got envious.
多心	duōxīn	oversensitive, suspicious	你别多心，他不是故意的。 Don't take it personally: he didn't mean it.
介意	jièyì	to mind, take offence	你介意我开窗吗？ Do you mind if I open the window?
好受	hǎoshòu	comfortable, feeling better	吃了药以后，我好受多了。 I feel much better after taking the medicine.
不堪	bùkān	unbearable; extremely (after an adjective)	一天的工作让他疲惫不堪。 The day's work left him utterly exhausted.
煎熬	jiānáo	torment, ordeal	等结果的那几天，对我来说是一种煎熬。 Those days waiting for the results were an ordeal for me.
受苦	shòukǔ	to suffer hardship	父母不想让孩子受苦。 Parents don't want their children to suffer.
受罪	shòuzuì	to have a hard time, endure torment	这么热的天挤公交车，真受罪。 Squeezing onto a bus in this heat is

pattern 到这个份上 “to such a point” and 不知……才好 “don’t know what to …”

X | **到这个份上 (地步)** | **= to such a point** | **不知** | **说什么 / 怎么办 / 如何** | **才好 / 是好** | **= don’t know what to …**

X到这个份上 (also 到这个地步) says something has gone so far that it changes things: 忙到这个份上 “so busy that …”, 事情到了这个份上 “now that it’s come to this”. 不知 + a question word + 才好 / 是好 means “don’t know what to do / say”: 不知说什么才好, 不知如何是好.

事情到了这个份上，我们只能说实话了。 **shìqing dào le zhège fèn shàng wǒmen zhǐ néng shuō shíhuà le** Now that things have come to this, all we can do is tell the truth.

他忙到这个份上，连饭都顾不上吃。 **tā máng dào zhège fèn shàng lián fàn dōu gù bu shàng chī** He’s so busy that he doesn’t even have time to eat.

面对大家的掌声，我不知说什么才好。 **miànduì dàjiā de zhǎngshēng wǒ bù zhī shuō shénme cái hǎo** Faced with everyone’s applause, I didn’t know what to say.

孩子一直哭，妈妈不知如何是好。 **háizi yìzhí kū māma bù zhī rúhé shì hǎo** The baby kept crying and the mother didn’t know what to do.

dialogue an interview about embarrassing moments

editor lin 安娜，谢谢你接受采访。我们想写外国人在北京工作的故事。
Ānnà xièxie nǐ jiēshòu cǎifǎng wǒmen xiǎng xiě wàiguó rén zài Běijīng gōngzuò de gùshi · Anna, thank you for agreeing to the interview. We want to write about foreigners working in Beijing.

anna 不客气，我很荣幸。
búkèqi wǒ hěn róngxìng · My pleasure, I'm honoured.

editor lin 你在中国工作，有没有特别丢脸的经历？你可以坦率地说。
nǐ zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò yǒu méiyǒu tèbié diūliǎn de jīnglì nǐ kěyǐ tǎnshuài de shuō · Working in China, have you had any really embarrassing moments? Feel free to be frank.

anna 有啊！上周给客户做报告，我放错了一页资料，大家都很惊奇地看着我。我这个人有点粗心大意。
yǒu a shàng zhōu gěi kèhù zuò bàogào wǒ fàng cuò le yí yè zīliào dàjiā dōu hěn jīngqí de kàn zhe wǒ wǒ zhè gè rén yǒu diǎn cūxīn dàyì · Oh yes! Last week, presenting to a client, I put up the wrong page, and everyone stared at me in surprise. I can be a bit careless.

editor lin 那你当时怎么办？
nà nǐ dāngshí zěnme bàn · So what did you do?

anna 我发愣了好几秒，真不知说什么才好。当时很羞愧，站在台上，脑子里一片茫然。
wǒ fālèng le hǎo jǐ miǎo zhēn bù zhī shuō shénme cái hǎo dāngshí hěn xiūkuì zhàn zài tái shàng nǎozi lǐ yí piàn mángrán · I froze for several seconds; I really didn't know what to say. I was so ashamed, standing up there completely at a loss.

editor lin 那几秒钟一定很煎熬吧？换了我，也会很难堪、很难为情。
nà jǐ miǎo zhōng yídìng hěn jiānáo ba huàn le wǒ yě huì hěn nánkān hěn nánwéiqíng · Those seconds must have been agony. I'd have been mortified and embarrassed too.

anna 心里别提多不好受了，简直是受罪。我觉得太丢人了，事后还自责了很久，那几天疲惫不堪。
xīnlǐ bié tí duō bù hǎoshòu le jiǎnzhí shì shòuzuì wǒ juéde tài diūrén le shìhòu hái zìzé le hěn jiǔ nà jǐ tiān píbèi bùkān · I can't tell you how awful it felt: pure torture. It was so humiliating, and I blamed myself for ages afterwards. I was exhausted for days.

editor lin 后来呢？客户什么反应？
hòulái ne kèhù shénme fǎnyìng · And then? How did the client react?

anna 没想到，客户说这一页的数据很有意思，让我多讲讲。我自己都很纳闷儿。这件小事还惊动了我们老板，他专门打电话来问。
méi xiǎng dào kèhù shuō zhè yí yè de shùjù hěn yǒu yìsi ràng wǒ duō jiǎng jiang wǒ zìjǐ dōu hěn nàmènr zhè jiàn xiǎo shì hái jīngdòng le wǒmen lǎobǎn tā zhuānmén dǎ diànhuà lái wèn · To my surprise, the client said the figures on that page were interesting and asked me to say more. I was baffled myself. This little incident even reached our boss, who phoned specially to ask about it.

editor lin 哈哈，这真是一次惊险的经历！我听得都出神了，你的勇气和机智真让人惊叹。
hā hā zhè zhēn shì yí cì jīngxiǎn de jīnglì wǒ tīng de dōu chūshén le nǐ de yǒngqì hé jīzhì zhēn ràng rén jīngtàn · Ha! What a close shave! I was spellbound listening, and I'm amazed at your nerve and quick wits.

anna 刘经理说，遇到事情要镇静。事情到了这个份上，只能把错的变成对的。
Liújīnglǐ shuō yùdào shìqing yào zhènjìng shìqing dào le zhège fèn shàng zhǐ néng bǎ cuò de biànchéng duì de · Manager Liu said you have to keep calm when things go wrong. When things get to that point, all you can do is turn the mistake into something right.

editor lin 刚来中国的时候，你会不会觉得自卑？
gāng lái Zhōngguó de shíhou nǐ huì bu huì juéde zìbēi · When you first came to China, did you ever feel inferior?

anna 会。看到同事们能力那么强，又那么见多识广，我觉得自己像井底之蛙，有点忌妒，也有点眼红。
huì kàn dào tóngshìmen nénglì nàme qiáng yòu nàme jiànduō shíguǎng wǒ juéde zìjǐ xiàng jǐngdǐzhīwā yǒu diǎn jìdu yě yǒu diǎn yǎnhóng · Yes. Seeing how capable and well-travelled my colleagues were, I felt like a frog at the bottom of a well, a bit jealous, a bit envious.

editor lin 很多人都有这种感觉，你不用介意。那同事们对你怎么样?

hěn duō rén dōu yǒu zhè zhǒng gǎnjué nǐ búyòng jièyì nà tóngshìmen duì nǐ zěnmeyàng · Lots of people feel that way; don't let it bother you. And how are your colleagues with you?

anna 他们都很友善，刘经理也很和蔼。现在我懂了：自尊心不能太强，犯错不是耻辱。嫉妒别人，只会让自己受苦。

tāmen dōu hěn yǒushàn Liújīnglǐ yě hěn héǎi xiànzài wǒ dǒng le zìzūn xīn bù néng tài qiáng fàn cuò bú shì chǐrǔ jídù biérén zhǐ huì ràng zìjǐ shòukǔ · They're all very friendly, and Manager Liu is very kind too. And I understand now: you can't be too proud, and making a mistake is no disgrace. Envying others only makes you suffer.

editor lin 说得真好！我们的读者一定会有共鸣。

shuō de zhēn hǎo wǒmen de dúzhě yídìng huì yǒu gòngmíng · Well said! Our readers will definitely relate.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

惨
cǎn
miserable, terrible; heavily

咽
yàn
to swallow

叹
tàn
to sigh

郁
yù
gloomy

good to know · 到这个份上 (or 到这个地步) means "to such a point": 事情到了这个份上 "now that things have come to this". It often comes before a decision. 不知 + question + 才好 / 是好 means "don't know what to …": 不知说什么才好, 不知如何是好. It's a polite way to show you are moved or at a loss.

Shock, embarrassment, envy and relief: you can now laugh about your worst moments in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 15 feelings in four characters

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 2 · feelings

Describe joy, grief, panic and surprise with four-character idioms, and say “take it or leave it” with 爱A不A.

Chengyu for feelings are everywhere in stories, speeches and toasts; one idiom paints a whole scene.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
喜出望外	xǐchūwàngwài	overjoyed (at a surprise)	听说自己得{de2}了第一名，他喜出望外。 He was overjoyed to hear he had come first.
兴高采烈	xìnggāocǎiliè	in high spirits	大家兴高采烈地出发了。 Everyone set off in high spirits.
眉开眼笑	méikāiyǎnxiào	beaming with joy	看到孙子，奶奶眉开眼笑。 Grandma beams when she sees her grandson.
欢声笑语	huānshēngxiàoyǔ	laughter and cheerful voices	晚会上一片欢声笑语。 The party was full of laughter and chatter.
哄堂大笑	hōngtángdàxiào	the whole room roars with laughter	他的回答让全班哄堂大笑。 His answer made the whole class burst out laughing.
皆大欢喜	jiēdàhuānxǐ	everyone is happy	最后的结果皆大欢喜。 In the end everyone was happy with the result.
怡然自得	yíránzìdé	happy and content	老人坐在树下喝茶，怡然自得。 The old man sits under a tree drinking tea, utterly content.
心安理得	xīnānlǐdé	with a clear conscience	这是我自己挣的钱，花得心安理得。 I earned this money myself, so I spend it with a clear conscience.
称心如意	chènxīnrúyì	just as one wishes	祝你新的一年称心如意！ May the new year bring you everything you wish for!
如愿以偿	rúyuànyǐcháng	to have one’s wish fulfilled	她如愿以偿地考上了大学。 She got into university, just as she had hoped.
心想事成	xīnxiǎngshìchéng	may your wishes come true	祝你心想事成！ May all your wishes come true!
喜怒哀乐	xǐnùāilè	joy, anger, sorrow and happiness	这部电影写出了普通人的喜怒哀乐。 The film captures the joys and sorrows of ordinary people.
悲欢离合	bēihuānlíhé	sorrows and joys, partings and reunions	人生总有悲欢离合。 Life is full of partings and reunions.
愁眉苦脸	chóuméikǔliǎn	to look miserable	别愁眉苦脸的，问题总会解决的。 Don’t pull such a long face: the problem will get solved.

垂头丧气	chuítóusàngqì	dejected, crestfallen	比赛输了，队员们垂头丧气地离开了。 Having lost the match, the players left with their heads down.
哭笑不得	kūxiàobùdé	not know whether to laugh or cry	他的理由让人哭笑不得。 His excuse left us not knowing whether to laugh or cry.
热泪盈眶	rèlèiyíngkuàng	eyes brimming with tears	看到父母来机场接他，他热泪盈眶。 Seeing his parents waiting at the airport, his eyes filled with tears.
面红耳赤	miànhóngěrchì	red in the face (anger, shame)	两个人吵得面红耳赤。 The two of them argued until they were red in the face.
恼羞成怒	nǎoxiūchéngnù	to fly into a rage out of embarrassment	被大家笑了以后，他恼羞成怒。 When everyone laughed at him, his embarrassment turned to anger.
心急如焚	xīnjírúfén	worried sick, frantic	孩子走丢了，妈妈心急如焚。 The child went missing, and the mother was frantic.
提心吊胆	tíxīndiàodǎn	on tenterhooks, scared stiff	走在这条黑路上，我一直提心吊胆。 Walking along this dark road, I was on edge the whole time.
惊慌失措	jīnghuāngshīcuò	panic-stricken	着火时千万不要惊慌失措。 Whatever you do, don't panic in a fire.
惊心动魄	jīngxīndòngpò	thrilling, nerve-racking	这场比赛惊心动魄。 This match was truly thrilling.
触目惊心	chùmùjīngxīn	shocking to see	地震后的情景触目惊心。 The scenes after the earthquake were shocking.
骇人听闻	hàiréntīngwén	appalling, shocking (to hear)	这是一|起{=(measure word)}骇人听闻的事故。 This was an appalling accident.
目瞪口呆	mùdèngkǒudāi	dumbstruck, open-mouthed	看到这个结果，大家都目瞪口呆。 Everyone was dumbstruck at the result.
晕头转向	yūntóuzhuànxiàng	confused, disoriented	这么多事，忙得我晕头转向。 With so much to do, I don't know whether I'm coming or going.
莫名其妙	mòmíngqímiào	baffling, for no reason	他莫名其妙地生气了。 He got angry for no reason at all.
受宠若惊	shòuchǒngruòjīng	overwhelmed by a favour, flattered	经理请我吃饭，我有点受宠若惊。 The manager took me out for dinner, and I was rather flattered.
情不自禁	qíngbùzìjīn	can't help oneself	听到这首歌，她情不自禁地跟着唱起来。 Hearing the song, she couldn't help singing along.
如痴如醉	rúchīrúzuì	spellbound, enraptured	观众听得如痴如醉。 The audience listened, enraptured.
迫不及待	pòbùjídài	unable to wait	孩子们迫不及待地打开了礼物。 The children couldn't wait to open their presents.
梦寐以求	mèngmèiyǐqiú	to long for, dream of	这是我梦寐以求的工作。 This is my dream job.

念念不忘	niànniànbùwàng	never to forget, always remember	他对家乡的菜念念不忘。 He never stops thinking about the food from his home town.
记忆犹新	jìyìyóuxīn	still fresh in one's memory	那次旅行，我至今记忆犹新。 That trip is still fresh in my memory today.

pattern 爱a不a: take it or leave it

爱 | verb | 不 | same verb | = do it or don't, I don't care

爱 + verb + 不 + the same verb says "do it or don't, it's up to you (and I don't care)": 爱信不信 (believe it or not), 爱吃不吃 (eat it or don't). It is blunt and a bit cheeky, so between friends and family it's playful; with strangers it sounds rude.

我说的都是真的，你爱信不信。 **wǒ shuō de dōu shì zhēn de nǐ ài xìn bu xìn** Everything I've said is true. Believe it or not, it's up to you.

饭做好了，你爱吃不吃。 **fàn zuò hǎo le nǐ ài chī bu chī** Dinner's ready. Eat it or don't.

他爱来不来，我们先走吧。 **tā ài lái bu lái wǒmen xiān zǒu ba** He can come or not, as he likes. Let's go.

dialogue fifty years together

xiaoming 安娜，你来了！爷爷奶奶看到这么多客人，都眉开眼笑的。
Ānnà nǐ lái le yéye nǎinai kàn dào zhème duō kèrén dōu méikāi yǎnxiào de · Anna, you made it! Grandpa and Grandma are beaming at all these guests.

anna 能被邀请来，我真有点受宠若惊。屋子里到处是欢声笑语，太温馨了！
néng bèi yāoqǐng lái wǒ zhēn yǒu diǎn shòuchǒng ruòjīng wūzi lǐ dàochù shì huānshēng xiàoyǔ tài wēnxīn le · I'm flattered to be invited. The whole house is full of laughter and chatter: it's so cosy!

xiaoming 刚才爷爷讲他们年轻时的故事，大家都听得如痴如醉，兴致特别高。
gāngcái yéye jiǎng tāmen niánqīng shí de gùshi dàjiā dōu tīng de púchī rúzuì xìngzhì tèbié gāo · Just now Grandpa was telling stories about when they were young, and everyone was spellbound and in the best of spirits.

anna 他们是怎么认识的？
tāmen shì zěnme rènshi de · How did they meet?

xiaoming 那年爷爷去城里找工作，在车站迷了路，晕头转向，是奶奶帮了他。奶奶说，她一看就觉得这个年轻人很憨厚。
nà nián yéye qù chéng lǐ zhǎo gōngzuò zài chēzhàn mí le lù yūntóu zhuànxiàng shì nǎinai bāng le tā nǎinai shuō tā yí kàn jiù juéde zhège niánqīng rén hěn hānhòu · That year Grandpa went to the city to look for work. He got lost at the station and didn't know which way to turn, and it was Grandma who helped him. Grandma says she could tell at once that this young man was simple and good-hearted.

anna 真有意思！后来呢？
zhēn yǒu yìsi hòulái ne · How lovely! And then?

xiaoming 后来他们分开了好几年，经历了很多悲欢离合。有一次奶奶生病，爷爷心急如焚，当天晚上就赶回了家。那几年奶奶天天提心吊胆。
hòulái tāmen fēnkāi le hǎo jǐ nián jīnglì le hěn duō bēihuān líhé yǒu yí cì nǎinai shēngbìng yéye xīnjí rúfén dàngtiān wǎnshang jiù gǎn huí le jiā nà jǐ nián nǎinai tiān tiān tíxīn diàodǎn · Then they were apart for years and went through all of life's partings and reunions. Once, when Grandma fell ill, Grandpa was frantic and rushed home that very night. For years Grandma lived on tenterhooks.

anna 那段日子一定很惊心动魄。最后呢？
nà duàn rìzi yídìng hěn jīngxīn dòngpò zuìhòu ne · That must have been a nerve-racking time. And in the end?

xiaoming 最后才如愿以偿地结了婚。生活很苦，他们靠自力更生过日子，可爷爷从来不愁眉苦脸，也不垂头丧气。他说人生的喜怒哀乐，他都和奶奶一起经历了。
zuìhòu cái rúyuànyǐcháng de jié le hūn shēnghuó hěn kǔ tāmen kào zìlì gēngshēng guò rìzi kě yéye cónglái bù chóuméi kǔliǎn yě bù chuítóu sàngqì tā shuō rénshēng de xǐ nù āi lè tā dōu hé nǎinai yìqǐ jīnglì le · In the end they got married, just as they'd hoped. Life was hard and they had to make their own way, but Grandpa never looked miserable or gave up hope. He says he's shared every joy and sorrow in life with Grandma.

anna 所以他对那段日子念念不忘，五十年了，说起来还记忆犹新。比起新闻里那些骇人听闻的事，这个故事多么温暖！
suǒyǐ tā duì nà duàn rìzi niànniàn búwàng wǔshí nián le shuō qǐlai hái jìyì yóuxīn bǐ qǐ xīnwén lǐ nàxiē hàiréntīngwén de shì zhège gùshi duōme wēnnuǎn · So that's why he's never forgotten those days: fifty years on, it's still fresh in his mind. After all the shocking things in the news, what a heart-warming story!

xiaoming 是啊。现在他们每天种花、养鱼，日子过得很悠闲，怡然自得。爷爷说他这一辈子光明磊落，没做过对不起别人的事，活得心安理得。
shì a xiànzài tāmen měi tiān zhòng huā yǎng yú rìzi guò de hěn yōuxián yírán zìdé yéye shuō tā zhè yíbèizi guāngmíng lěiluò méi zuò guo duìbuqǐ biérén de shì huó de xīnān lǐdé · Yes. Now they grow flowers and keep fish; life is leisurely and they're perfectly content. Grandpa says he's lived an honest, above-board life and never wronged anyone, so his conscience is clear.

anna 这样的婚姻，是很多人梦寐以求的。你看，孩子们已经迫不及待地想吃蛋糕了！
zhèyàng de hūnyīn shì hěn duō rén mèngmèiyǐqiú de nǐ kàn háizimen yǐjīng pòbùjídài de xiǎng chī dàngāo le · A marriage like that is what so many people dream of. Look, the children can't wait for the cake!

xiaoming 哎呀，爷爷切蛋糕的时候，蛋糕倒了！奶奶惊慌失措，大家都目瞪口呆，大白也莫名其妙地叫了起来。

āiyā yéye qiē dàngāo de shíhou dàngāo dǎo le nǎinai jīnghuāng shīcuò dàjiā dōu mùdèng kǒudāi Dàbái yě mòmíngqímiào de jiào le qǐlai · Oh no, the cake fell over when Grandpa was cutting it! Grandma panicked, everyone stood there open-mouthed, and Dabai started barking for no reason at all.

anna 你爷爷真是哭笑不得！

nǐ yéye zhēn shì kūxiào bùdé · Your grandpa doesn't know whether to laugh or cry!

xiaoming 奶奶却说：“蛋糕爱倒不倒，我们五十年都没倒！”

nǎinai què shuō dàngāo ài dǎo bu dǎo wǒmen wǔshí nián dōu méi dǎo · But Grandma said: “The cake can fall over if it likes. We haven't, in fifty years!”

anna 太幽默了！大家笑得要死，爷爷也情不自禁地亲了奶奶一下。祝爷爷奶奶心想事成，称心如意！

tài yōumò le dàjiā xiào de yào sǐ yéye yě qíngbúzìjīn de qīn le nǎinai yíxià zhù yéye nǎinai xīnxiǎng shìchéng chènxīn rúyì · How funny! Everyone was in stitches, and Grandpa couldn't help giving Grandma a kiss. May all your wishes come true, Grandpa and Grandma, and may everything go just as you like!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

闷
mèn
bored, gloomy; stuffy

废
fèi
waste, useless; abandon

泄
xiè
to let out, release; vent

憋
biē
to hold in, suppress; stifled

good to know · 爱A不A repeats one verb: 爱信不信 “believe it or not, up to you”, 爱去不去. It says “I don't care what you choose”, so it's playful between friends and rude to strangers. Toasts and greeting cards love idioms: 心想事成, 称心如意, 万事如意 all wish that everything goes your way.

Thirty-five feelings in four characters each. You can now tell a story the way Chinese storytellers do. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 16 mission: a week of ups and downs

Follow a week of ups and downs in four chapters and talk about every feeling in it, from fury and fear to tears of joy.

A mission pulls the whole unit together: every feeling word, idiom and pattern of this unit, in one story.

chapter 1 chapter 1: monday, the landlord

lawyer sun 安娜，请坐。小明跟我说了你的情况，你一定很恼火吧?

Ānnà qǐng zuò Xiǎomíng gēn wǒ shuō le nǐ de qíngkuàng nǐ yídìng hěn nǎohuǒ ba · Anna, have a seat. Xiaoming told me about your situation. You must be furious.

anna 别提多气愤了！房东要涨一千块房租，不同意就让我搬走。真是的!

bié tí duō qìfèn le fángdōng yào zhǎng yìqiān kuài fángzū bù tóngyì jiù ràng wǒ bān zǒu zhēn shì de · You can't imagine how angry I am! The landlord wants another thousand a month, and if I don't agree I have to move out. Honestly!

anna 那天我差点发火，晚上又焦躁得睡不着，心里全是事。他还漠然地说：“你爱住不住。”

nà tiān wǒ chà diǎn fāhuǒ wǎnshang yòu jiāozào de shuì bu zháo xīnlǐ quán shì shì tā hái mòrán de shuō nǐ ài zhù bu zhù · That day I nearly lost my temper, and at night I was too agitated to sleep, my head full of worries. And he just said, without a care: “Stay or don't, up to you.”

anna 这件事成了我的一块心病。我妈妈在国外也很牵挂我，天天打电话。

zhè jiàn shì chéng le wǒ de yí kuài xīnbìng wǒ māma zài guó wài yě hěn qiānguà wǒ tiān tiān dǎ diànhuà · This has become a constant worry. My mum abroad is worried about me too and calls every day.

lawyer sun 你无须担心。合同上写着，到期以前，房东不准随便涨房租。

nǐ wúxū dānxīn hétóng shàng xiě zhe dàoqī yǐqián fángdōng bù zhǔn suíbiàn zhǎng fángzū · There's no need to worry. Your contract says the landlord isn't allowed to raise the rent before it runs out.

anna 真的吗？可是他态度很轻蔑，一副不屑的样子，好像我是个傻瓜。

zhēn de ma kěshì tā tàidù hěn qīngmiè yí fù búxiè de yàngzi hǎoxiàng wǒ shì gè shǎguā · Really? But he was so contemptuous, so dismissive, as if I were a fool.

lawyer sun 这种人我见多了。他是看你不懂法律，才这么轻视你。不过法律不容他这么做，他休想多拿一分钱。

zhè zhǒng rén wǒ jiàn duō le tā shì kàn nǐ bù dǒng fǎlǜ cái zhème qīngshì nǐ búguò fǎlǜ bùróng tā zhème zuò tā xiūxiǎng duō ná yì fēn qián · I've seen plenty of people like him. He looks down on you because he thinks you don't know the law. But the law won't let him do this: he won't get a penny more.

lawyer sun 这种藐视合同的人，大家都鄙视，这样的态度让人厌恶。你不用跟他闹别扭，也不用怨自己，他不值得你发怒。

zhè zhǒng miǎoshì hétóng de rén dàjiā dōu bǐshì zhèyàng de tàidù ràng rén yànwù nǐ búyòng gēn tā nào bièniu yě búyòng yuàn zìjǐ tā bù zhídé nǐ fānù · Everyone despises people who treat contracts with contempt; that kind of attitude is repellent. There's no need to fall out with him, and don't blame yourself: he isn't worth getting angry over.

anna 太好了！有您在，我就像吃了一颗定心丸。这几天我一直很焦急，也很忧虑。

tài hǎo le yǒu nín zài wǒ jiù xiàng chī le yì kē dìngxīnwán zhè jǐ tiān wǒ yìzhí hěn jiāojí yě hěn yōulǜ · Wonderful! With you on my side, I feel completely reassured. I've been so anxious and worried these past few days.

lawyer sun 别太操心，也别犯愁，这件事交给我。不过事情还没到这个份上，先好好跟他谈。

bié tài cāoxīn yě bié fànchóu zhè jiàn shì jiāo gěi wǒ búguò shìqing hái méi dào zhège fèn shàng xiān hǎohǎo gēn tā tán · Don't worry, don't fret: leave it to me. But things haven't got to that point yet. Talk to him properly first.

lawyer sun 你要有心理准备，他不见得会马上服气。他要是不服，我们再走法律程序。

nǐ yào yǒu xīnlǐ zhǔnbèi tā bújiàndé huì mǎshàng fúqì tā yàoshi bùfú wǒmen zài zǒu fǎlǜ chéngxù · Be prepared: he won't necessarily accept it straight away. If he doesn't, then we take legal steps.

anna 说实话，我心里很压抑，有时候甚至厌倦了在这里的生活。我憋了一个星期的怨气，现在终于可以发泄出来了。

shuō shíhuà wǒ xīnlǐ hěn yāyì yǒu shíhou shènzhì yànjuàn le zài zhèlǐ de shēnghuó wǒ biē le yí gè xīngqī de yuànqì xiànzài zhōngyú kěyǐ fāxiè chulai le · To be honest, I've felt so stifled that sometimes I've even been tired of life here. I've been bottling up my anger for a week, and now I can finally let it out.

lawyer sun 我理解。遇到这种可恶的事，谁都会烦躁、反感。可以用运动来宣泄，别让仇恨占满你的心。

wǒ lǐjiě yùdào zhè zhǒng kěwù de shì shéi dōu huì fánzào fǎngǎn kěyǐ yòng yùndòng lái xuānxiè bié ràng chóuhèn zhàn mǎn nǐ de xīn · I understand. Anyone would feel irritable and disgusted after something this nasty. Let it out through exercise; don't let hatred fill your heart.

anna 对，我已经厌烦了跟他打交道，也懒得跟他吵，吵架太没劲了。谢谢您，我现在心里舒畅多了。

duì wǒ yǐjīng yànfán le gēn tā dǎ jiāodao yě lǎnde gēn tā chǎo chǎojià tài méijìn le xièxie nín wǒ xiànzài xīnlǐ shūchàng duō le · Yes, I'm sick of dealing with him, and I can't be bothered to argue with him: arguing is pointless. Thank you, I feel so much better now.

chapter 2 chapter 2: wednesday, the sister's news

little sister 安娜！你猜猜！博物馆录用我去实习了！
Ānnà nǐ cāi cai bówùguǎn lùyòng wǒ qù shíxí le · Anna! Guess what! The museum has taken me on as an intern!

anna 真的吗？太好了！你一定喜出望外吧？
zhēn de ma tài hǎo le nǐ yídìng xǐchūwàngwài ba · Really? Fantastic! You must be over the moon!

little sister 别提多高兴了！接到电话的时候，我禁不住大声欢呼，邻居还以为出什么事了！然后我热泪盈眶，激动得说不出来。
bié tí duō gāoxìng le jiē dào diànhuà de shíhou wǒ jīnbuzhù dà shēng huānhū línjū hái yǐwéi chū shénme shì le ránhòu wǒ rèlèi yíngkuàng jīdòng de shuō bu chulai · I can't tell you how happy I am! When the call came I couldn't help cheering out loud, and the neighbours thought something had happened! Then my eyes filled with tears and I was too excited to speak.

anna 哈哈，你一定兴高采烈、眉开眼笑的。上个月你还那么沮丧、那么消沉，我都替你担心。
hā hā nǐ yídìng xìnggāo cǎiliè méikāi yǎnxiào de shàng gè yuè nǐ hái nàme jǔsàng nàme xiāochén wǒ dōu tì nǐ dānxīn · Ha! You must have been on top of the world, all smiles. Last month you were so dejected and down that I was worried about you.

little sister 是啊，那时候我每天待在家里，觉得生活很空虚，一个人孤零零的，还常常哭泣。
shì a nà shíhou wǒ měi tiān dāi zài jiā lǐ juéde shēnghuó hěn kōngxū yí gè rén gūlínglíng de hái chángcháng kūqì · Yes, back then I stayed shut up at home every day. Life felt empty, I was all alone, and I often cried.

anna 我还记得你在电话里呜咽，哽咽得说不出来，我心里很心酸。
wǒ hái jìde nǐ zài diànhuà lǐ wūyè gěngyè de shuō bu chulai wǒ xīnlǐ hěn xīnsuān · I still remember you sobbing on the phone, too choked up to speak. It broke my heart.

little sister 那是我最低落、最颓废的时候，一次很惨痛的经历。我天天叹气、苦笑，觉得自己很可悲，又很失落。那段时间真倒霉，我还以为厄运永远不会结束。
nà shì wǒ zuì dīluò zuì tuífèi de shíhou yí cì hěn cǎntòng de jīnglì wǒ tiān tiān tànqì kǔxiào juéde zìjǐ hěn kěbēi yòu hěn shīluò nà duàn shíjiān zhēn dǎoméi wǒ hái yǐwéi èyùn yǒngyuǎn bú huì jiéshù · That was when I was at my lowest, completely letting myself go: a really painful time. I sighed and smiled bitterly every day, felt pathetic and let down. I had such bad luck then, I thought it would never end.

anna 不过你没有泄气，也没有气馁，终于振作起来了。陈教授知道了吗？
búguò nǐ méiyǒu xièqì yě méiyǒu qìněi zhōngyú zhènzuò qǐlai le Chénjiàoshòu zhīdào le ma · But you didn't lose heart or give up, and you finally pulled yourself together. Does Professor Chen know?

little sister 知道了。他说这份实习对我考研究生很有帮助，我不知怎么感谢他才好。
zhīdào le tā shuō zhè fèn shíxí duì wǒ kǎo yánjiūshēng hěn yǒu bāngzhù wǒ bù zhī zěnme gǎnxiè tā cái hǎo · Yes. He says the internship will really help me with the graduate exam. I don't know how to thank him.

anna 他一定很乐意帮你，也一定很欣慰。你爸爸妈妈呢？
tā yídìng hěn lèyì bāng nǐ yě yídìng hěn xīnwèi nǐ bàba māma ne · He must be glad to help you, and very pleased. And your parents?

little sister 我妈妈一直惦记着我，常常关切地问我怎么样，现在她终于可以安心了。他们也不忍心看我难过。我爸爸美滋滋地请全家吃了一顿饭。
wǒ māma yìzhí diànjì zhe wǒ chángcháng guānqiè de wèn wǒ zěnmeyàng xiànzài tā zhōngyú kěyǐ ānxīn le tāmen yě bù rěnxīn kàn wǒ nánguò wǒ bàba měizīzī de qǐng quán jiā chī le yí dùn fàn · Mum was always thinking about me and anxiously asking how I was; now she can finally stop worrying. They couldn't bear to see me unhappy. And Dad was so pleased he took the whole family out for a meal.

anna 你看，你没有死心，现在如愿以偿了！
nǐ kàn nǐ méiyǒu sǐxīn xiànzài rúyuànyǐcháng le · You see? You didn't give up, and now your wish has come true!

little sister 博物馆的工作是我憧憬了很久的，我一直盼着这一天，以前都不敢有这种奢望。
bówùguǎn de gōngzuò shì wǒ chōngjǐng le hěn jiǔ de wǒ yìzhí pàn zhe zhè yì tiān yǐqián dōu bù gǎn yǒu zhè zhǒng shēwàng · Working at a museum is what I've dreamed of for so long. I've been longing for this day; I never dared hope for so much.

anna 记住，要把希望寄托在自己身上，别抱侥幸心理。

jì zhù yào bǎ xīwàng jìtuō zài zìjǐ shēn shàng bié bào jiǎoxìng xīnlǐ · Remember: put your hope in yourself, and don't count on luck.

little sister 嗯，我满怀信心。以前我总是不甘心，现在反而很坦然。说出心声以后，我心里轻松多了。不管明年考得怎么样，我都绝不放弃。

ǹg wǒ mǎnhuái xìnxīn yǐqián wǒ zǒngshì bù gānxīn xiànzài fǎnér hěn tǎnrán shuō chū xīnshēng yǐhòu wǒ xīnlǐ qīngsōng duō le bùguǎn míngnián kǎo de zěnmeyàng wǒ dōu juébú fàngqì · Yes, I'm full of confidence. I used to be so unwilling to accept things, but now I'm calm. Since I said what I really felt, I feel much lighter. Whatever happens in next year's exam, I'll never give up.

anna 说得好！但愿你明年心想事成。

shuō de hǎo dànyuàn nǐ míngnián xīnxiǎng shìchéng · Well said! I hope all your wishes come true next year.

chapter 3 chapter 3: friday, the big presentation

anna 刘经理，我心慌得要死。客户对我们的方案还有很多疑虑。

Liújīnglǐ wǒ xīnhuāng de yào sǐ kèhù duì wǒmen de fāngàn hái yǒu hěn duō yílǜ · Manager Liu, my heart's pounding like mad. The client still has lots of doubts about our plan.

manager liu 别慌张。你准备了这么久，没什么好顾虑的。第一次在大客户面前讲，胆怯是正常的，但不能畏缩，也别迟疑。

bié huāngzhāng nǐ zhǔnbèi le zhème jiǔ méi shénme hǎo gùlǜ de dì yī cì zài dà kèhù miànqián jiǎng dǎnqiè shì zhèngcháng de dàn bù néng wèisuō yě bié chíyí · Don't get flustered. You've prepared for so long; there's nothing to worry about. Feeling timid the first time you present to a big client is normal, but don't shrink back, and don't hesitate.

anna 我昨天晚上紧张得发呆，今天早上一阵忙乱，又慌忙打车过来。上次让大家那么难堪，我很惭愧，真过意不去。

wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang jǐnzhāng de fādāi jīntiān zǎoshang yízhèn mángluàn yòu huāngmáng dǎchē guolai shàng cì ràng dàjiā nàme nánkān wǒ hěn cánkuì zhēn guò yì bú qù · Last night I was so nervous I just sat staring into space, this morning was chaos, and I rushed over in a taxi. Last time I put everyone in such an awkward spot: I'm ashamed and I feel terrible about it.

anna 我生怕又像上次那样放错资料。一想到上次的事，我就觉得很丢脸、很难为情，窘迫得想马上离开。

wǒ shēngpà yòu xiàng shàng cì nàyàng fàng cuò zīliào yì xiǎng dào shàng cì de shì wǒ jiù juéde hěn diūliǎn hěn nánwéiqíng jiǒngpò de xiǎng mǎshàng líkāi · I'm so afraid I'll put up the wrong page like last time. Whenever I think about it, I feel so embarrassed and awkward that I want to leave on the spot.

manager liu 你太多心了，没有人介意。别再自责，也别自卑，要有自尊心。畏惧只会让你退缩。

nǐ tài duōxīn le méiyǒu rén jièyì bié zài zìzé yě bié zìbēi yào yǒu zìzūn xīn wèijù zhǐ huì ràng nǐ tuìsuō · You're reading too much into it: nobody minds. Stop blaming yourself and stop feeling inferior; have some self-respect. Fear will only make you hold back.

manager liu 你看，客户的经理也很拘束，大家都紧张。这几天你忙得那么狼狈，大家都看在眼里。

nǐ kàn kèhù de jīnglǐ yě hěn jūshù dàjiā dōu jǐnzhāng zhè jǐ tiān nǐ máng de nàme lángbèi dàjiā dōu kàn zài yǎn lǐ · Look, the client's manager is ill at ease too: everyone's nervous. Everyone has seen how run off your feet you've been these past few days.

anna 好，我豁出去了！

hǎo wǒ huōchuqu le · All right, I'm going for it!

manager liu 你讲得太好了！客户都听得出神了，最后还大为惊叹。

nǐ jiǎng de tài hǎo le kèhù dōu tīng de chūshén le zuìhòu hái dàwéi jīngtàn · You were brilliant! The client was spellbound, and at the end they were full of admiration.

anna 我讲完的时候，他们突然站起来鼓掌，我诧异得发愣了。

wǒ jiǎng wán de shíhou tāmen tūrán zhàn qǐlái gǔzhǎng wǒ chàyì de fālèng le · When I finished, they suddenly stood up and applauded, and I was so surprised I froze.

manager liu 那一刻大家都目瞪口呆，然后掌声响了起来，场面真震撼！他们还说，这是他们见过的最好的方案，当场就同意合作了。

nà yí kè dàjiā dōu mùdèng kǒudāi ránhòu zhǎngshēng xiǎng le qǐlai chǎngmiàn zhēn zhènhàn tāmen hái shuō zhè shì tāmen jiàn guo de zuìhǎo de fāngàn dāngchǎng jiù tóngyì hézuò le · For a moment everyone was dumbstruck, then the applause began: what a moment! They even said it was the best plan they'd ever seen, and agreed to the partnership on the spot.

anna 我一开始还有点纳闷儿，后来才明白，是新加的数据打动了他们。刚才我紧张得脑子里一片茫然，现在才好受一点。

wǒ yì kāishǐ hái yǒu diǎn nàmènr hòulái cái míngbai shì xīn jiā de shùjù dǎdòng le tāmen gāngcái wǒ jǐnzhāng de nǎozi lǐ yí piàn mángrán xiànzài cái hǎoshòu yìdiǎn · At first I was a bit puzzled, then I realised it was the new figures that won them over. Just now I was so nervous my mind was a blank; only now do I feel a bit better.

manager liu 整个过程惊心动魄，我刚才也心急如焚。结果真让人惊喜！

zhěnggè guòchéng jīngxīn dòngpò wǒ gāngcái yě xīnjí rúfén jiéguǒ zhēn ràng rén jīngxǐ · The whole thing was nail-biting: I was frantic myself just now. What a wonderful result!

anna 上一次我在台上提心吊胆，这一次却这么顺利。

shàng yí cì wǒ zài tái shàng tíxīn diàodǎn zhè yí cì què zhème shùnlì · Last time I was on stage I was a nervous wreck, and this time it went so smoothly.

manager liu 我公司能拿下这个客户，主要是靠你。我们有幸遇到这么好的机会，你也没有让大家失望。

wǒ gōngsī néng ná xià zhège kèhù zhǔyào shì kào nǐ wǒmen yǒuxìng yùdào zhème hǎo de jīhuì nǐ yě méiyǒu ràng dàjiā shīwàng · Our company won this client mainly thanks to you. We were lucky to get such a great chance, and you didn't let anyone down.

anna 能跟大家一起工作，我很荣幸。说实话，我现在有点受宠若惊。

néng gēn dàjiā yìqǐ gōngzuò wǒ hěn róngxìng shuō shíhuà wǒ xiànzài yǒu diǎn shòuchǒng ruòjīng · I'm honoured to work with all of you. To be honest, I'm a little overwhelmed.

chapter 4 chapter 4: sunday, a dinner to celebrate

xiaoming 欢迎欢迎！今天是庆祝会：安娜签了大客户，妹妹找到了实习，房租的事也解决了！
huānyíng huānyíng jīntiān shì qìngzhù huì Ānnà qiān le dà kèhù mèimei zhǎo dào le shíxí fángzū de shì yě jiějué le · Welcome, welcome! Today is a celebration: Anna landed a big client, my sister found an internship, and the rent problem is solved!

anna 这一个星期真是酸甜苦辣，什么都经历了。上周我还累得够呛，愁眉苦脸、垂头丧气的。
zhè yí gè xīngqī zhēn shì suān tián kǔ là shénme dōu jīnglì le shàng zhōu wǒ hái lèi de gòuqiàng chóuméi kǔliǎn chuítóu sàngqì de · What a week: I've tasted every flavour, sweet and bitter. Last week I was worn out, pulling a long face, utterly dejected.

xiaoming 我爱人做了很多菜，大家慢慢享用，今天一定要吃个过瘾！
wǒ àiren zuò le hěn duō cài dàjiā màn màn xiǎngyòng jīntiān yídìng yào chī gè guòyǐn · My wife has cooked loads of dishes. Everyone, enjoy, and eat to your heart's content!

little sister 哇，别提多香了！我早就迫不及待了。坐在这里真惬意，又自在又悠闲。
wā bié tí duō xiāng le wǒ zǎo jiù pòbùjídài le zuò zài zhèlǐ zhēn qièyì yòu zìzai yòu yōuxián · Wow, it smells amazing! I couldn't wait. Sitting here is so pleasant, relaxed and easy.

anna 小明，你家布置得真温馨，你们的日子一定很甜蜜吧？
Xiǎomíng nǐ jiā bùzhì de zhēn wēnxīn nǐmen de rìzi yídìng hěn tiánmì ba · Xiaoming, your flat is so cosy. Life must be sweet for you two.

xiaoming 是啊，又安逸又顺心。我很知足，也很庆幸。
shì a yòu ānyì yòu shùnxīn wǒ hěn zhīzú yě hěn qìngxìng · Yes, comfortable and easy. I'm content, and I count myself lucky.

little sister 哥哥又开始了！他每天都美滋滋的，看着就让人眼红。
gēge yòu kāishǐ le tā měi tiān dōu měizīzī de kàn zhe jiù ràng rén yǎnhóng · Here he goes again! He's pleased as punch every day; it's enough to make anyone jealous.

xiaoming 你爱信不信，结婚就是这么好！你看爷爷奶奶，奶奶的神情多安详，看着孩子们嬉笑，怡然自得。
nǐ ài xìn bu xìn jiéhūn jiùshì zhème hǎo nǐ kàn yéye nǎinai nǎinai de shénqíng duō ānxiáng kàn zhe háizimen xīxiào yírán zìdé · Believe it or not, marriage really is that good! Look at Grandpa and Grandma: Grandma looks so serene, watching the children play, perfectly content.

little sister 爷爷说他对结婚那天念念不忘，现在还记忆犹新。
yéye shuō tā duì jiéhūn nà tiān niànniàn búwàng xiànzài hái jìyì yóuxīn · Grandpa says he's never forgotten his wedding day: it's still fresh in his mind.

xiaoming 爷爷刚才听妹妹讲博物馆的事，听得如痴如醉，情不自禁地笑了起来。
yéye gāngcái tīng mèimei jiǎng bówùguǎn de shì tīng de rúchī rúzuì qíngbúzìjīn de xiào le qǐlai · Just now Grandpa was spellbound listening to my sister talk about the museum, and couldn't help smiling.

little sister 这是我梦寐以求的实习嘛！
zhè shì wǒ mèngmèiyǐqiú de shíxí ma · It's my dream internship, after all!

anna 哈哈，大家都哄堂大笑了。今天屋子里满是欢声笑语，太让人愉悦了！看着大家脸上洋溢着喜悦，我心里别提多快活了！
hā hā dàjiā dōu hōngtáng dàxiào le jīntiān wūzi lǐ mǎn shì huānshēng xiàoyǔ tài ràng rén yúyuè le kàn zhe dàjiā liǎn shàng yángyì zhe xǐyuè wǒ xīnlǐ bié tí duō kuàihuo le · Ha! Everyone burst out laughing. The whole evening is full of laughter: such a joy! Seeing the joy on everyone's faces, I can't tell you how happy I feel!

little sister 安娜，房东最后怎么说？
Ānnà fángdōng zuìhòu zěnme shuō · Anna, what did the landlord say in the end?

anna 我按孙律师说的跟他谈，他一开始面红耳赤，差点恼羞成怒，最后只好同意不涨了。他那个样子，真让人哭笑不得。
wǒ àn Sūnlǜshī shuō de gēn tā tán tā yì kāishǐ miànhóng ěrchì chà diǎn nǎoxiū chéngnù zuìhòu zhǐhǎo tóngyì bù zhǎng le tā nàge yàngzi zhēn ràng rén kūxiào bùdé · I talked to him the way Lawyer Sun told me to. At first he

went red in the face and nearly flew into a rage, but in the end he had to agree not to put the rent up. The look on his face: I didn't know whether to laugh or cry.

xiaoming 活该！谁让他那么霸道。

huógāi shéi ràng tā nàme bàdào · Serves him right! That's what he gets for being such a bully.

anna 现在我对他也没有怨恨了。这件事让我有了很多感悟。

xiànzài wǒ duì tā yě méiyǒu yuànhèn le zhè jiàn shì ràng wǒ yǒu le hěn duō gǎnwù · Now I don't even resent him. This whole business has taught me a lot.

little sister 下周博物馆有个活动，大家都踊跃报名吧！这一个星期，我们每个人都是晕头转向，最后却皆大欢喜！

xià zhōu bówùguǎn yǒu gè huódòng dàjiā dōu yǒngyuè bàomíng ba zhè yí gè xīngqī wǒmen měi gè rén dōu shì yūntóu zhuànxiàng zuìhòu què jiēdàhuānxǐ · There's an event at the museum next week: everyone sign up! This week all of us were running around in circles, and in the end everyone's happy!

xiaoming 来，为我们的喜怒哀乐干杯，祝大家万事如意、称心如意！

lái wèi wǒmen de xǐ nù āi lè gānbēi zhù dàjiā wàn shì rúyì chènxīn rúyì · Come on, a toast to all our joys and sorrows: may everything go well, and just the way we want!

A whole week of feelings, told in advanced Chinese. Unit 2, done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 17 guests and visits

Invite, receive and see off guests, from a neighbour dropping in to a VIP at a gala, and extend formal greetings and tribute with 向……致敬.

Hosting and visiting run on careful courtesy in China, and every gala, wedding and business dinner opens with the same formal phrases.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
拜会	bàihuì	to pay an official call on	代表团明天上午拜会市长。 The delegation will call on the mayor tomorrow morning.
拜见	bàijiàn	to pay a respectful visit to	他第一次去女朋友家拜见她的父母。 He went to his girlfriend's home to meet her parents for the first time.
串门	chuànmén	to drop in on the neighbours	小时候，我们常去邻居家串门。 When we were little, we often dropped in on the neighbours.
来访	láifǎng	to come to visit	欢迎各位朋友来访。 Welcome to all our friends who have come to visit.
来宾	láibīn	guest, visitor (at an event)	各位来宾，晚上好！ Good evening, ladies and gentlemen!
贵宾	guìbīn	guest of honour, VIP	今天的贵宾是一位著名的作家。 Today's guest of honour is a famous writer.
莅临	lìlín	to honour with one's presence (formal)	欢迎各位领导莅临我公司。 We welcome the leaders who have honoured our company with their presence.
特邀	tèyāo	to specially invite	我们特邀王老师来讲一讲中国书法。 We have specially invited Teacher Wang to talk about Chinese calligraphy.
邀	yāo	to invite	他邀我周末一起去爬山。 He invited me to go hiking with him at the weekend.
应邀	yìngyāo	at the invitation of	陈教授应邀参加了这次会议。 Professor Chen attended the conference at the organisers' invitation.
请柬	qǐngjiǎn	invitation card	我收到了一张婚礼请柬。 I received a wedding invitation.
请帖	qǐngtiě	invitation (card)	他自己给每位客人写了请帖。 He wrote an invitation for every guest by hand.
款待	kuǎndài	to entertain, to treat (a guest) well	主人做了一大桌子菜款待我们。 Our host made a whole table of dishes for us.
盛情	shèngqíng	great kindness, warm hospitality	谢谢你们的盛情邀请。 Thank you for your kind invitation.
作客	zuòkè	to be a guest	欢迎你有空来我家作客。 Do come and be our guest when you have time.

就座	jiùzuò	to take one's seat	请各位来宾就座。 Would all guests please take their seats.
探望	tànwàng	to visit (someone ill or far away)	周末我去医院探望了生病的同事。 At the weekend I visited a sick colleague in hospital.
慰问	wèiwèn	to express sympathy and concern to	春节前，公司领导去慰问了退休的老员工。 Before the Spring Festival, the company's leaders visited retired staff to wish them well.
慰劳	wèiláo	to reward (with thanks, food or gifts)	项目结束后，经理请大家吃饭，慰劳一下。 When the project ended, the manager took everyone out to dinner as a thank-you.
问候	wènhòu	to send one's regards to; greetings	请代我问候你的父母。 Please give my regards to your parents.
久违	jiǔwéi	long time no see	久违了！你一点儿都没变。 It's been ages! You haven't changed a bit.
送别	sòngbié	to see someone off, to bid farewell	我们在火车站送别了老朋友。 We said goodbye to our old friend at the station.
送行	sòngxíng	to see someone off (on a trip)	他明天去英国，我们晚上给他送行。 He leaves for the UK tomorrow, so we're giving him a send-off tonight.
鞠躬	jūgōng	to bow	学生们向老师鞠躬。 The students bowed to their teacher.
敬礼	jìnglǐ	to salute	小朋友们向老军人敬礼。 The children saluted the old soldier.
致敬	zhìjìng	to pay tribute to, to salute	让我们向所有的医生和护士致敬！ Let us pay tribute to all the doctors and nurses!
礼节	lǐjié	etiquette, courtesy	去别人|家作客，要注意礼节。 When you are a guest in someone's home, mind your manners.
礼仪	lǐyí	etiquette, protocol	公司请专家给员工上了一次商务礼仪课。 The company brought in an expert to teach staff a lesson in business etiquette.
礼品	lǐpǐn	gift, present	这是我们为来宾准备的小礼品。 These are the little gifts we've prepared for our guests.
失礼	shīlǐ	to be impolite; how rude of me	刚才没认出您，太失礼了。 I didn't recognise you just now: how rude of me.
失态	shītài	to lose one's composure	她听到这个消息，一时失态，在会上哭了起来。 When she heard the news, she lost her composure and burst into tears in the meeting.
欢聚	huānjù	to gather happily	春节时，全家人欢聚在一起。 At the Spring Festival, the whole family gets together.
联欢	liánhuān	to have a get-together, a party	年底公司举办了一场联欢会。 At the end of the year the company held a party.

应酬	yìngchou	social engagements; to socialise (for work)	他最近应酬太多，每天很晚才回家。 He's had so many work dinners lately that he gets home late every night.
社交	shèjiāo	social life, socialising	她很会社交，到哪儿都能交到朋友。 She's great at socialising: she makes friends wherever she goes.

pattern 向……致以……: extending greetings and respect

向 | whom | 致以 / 表示 | greetings, respect, thanks

Formal speeches and letters put the person first with 向 and the feeling last: 向各位来宾致以诚挚的问候 "we extend our warmest greetings to all our guests". 致以 (to extend) is the most formal verb; 表示 is the everyday one. The short form 向……致敬 means "pay tribute to".

我们向全体员工表示诚挚的感谢。 **wǒmen xiàng quántǐ yuángōng biǎoshì chéngzhì de gǎnxiè** We extend our heartfelt thanks to all our staff.

春节前，市长向老人们表示了问候。 **Chūnjié qián shì zhǎng xiàng lǎorénmen biǎoshì le wènhòu** Before the Spring Festival, the mayor sent his greetings to the elderly.

大家起立，向老一代科学家致敬。 **dàjiā qǐ lì xiàng lǎo yídài kēxué jiā zhìjìng** Everyone stood up to pay tribute to the older generation of scientists.

dialogue planning the year-end party

manager liu 安娜，年底的联欢会准备得怎么样了？请柬都发出去了吗？
Ānnà niándǐ de liánhuān huì zhǔnbèi de zěnmeyàng le qǐngjiǎn dōu fā chuqu le ma · Anna, how are the preparations for the year-end party going? Have all the invitations gone out?

anna 发了一百多张。上海那家公司的总经理也应邀参加，他是我们这次的特邀贵宾。
fā le yìbǎi duō zhāng Shànghǎi nà jiā gōngsī de zǒng jīnglǐ yě yìngyāo cānjiā tā shì wǒmen zhè cì de tèyāo guìbīn · Over a hundred. The general manager of the Shanghai company has accepted too: he's our special guest of honour this time.

manager liu 太好了。他上次来访，我们款待得不够周到，我一直很过意不去。这次一定要做好。
tài hǎo le tā shàng cì láifǎng wǒmen kuǎndài de búgòu zhōudào wǒ yìzhí hěn guò yì bú qù zhè cì yídìng yào zuò hǎo · Excellent. When he visited last time, we didn't look after him as well as we should have, and I've felt bad about it ever since. This time it has to be perfect.

anna 您放心。来宾先在大厅喝茶，七点整就座。保安会在门口向客人敬礼，服务员也都经过培训，个个彬彬有礼。
nín fàngxīn láibīn xiān zài dàtīng hē chá qī diǎn zhěng jiùzuò bǎoān huì zài ménkǒu xiàng kèrén jìnglǐ fúwù yuán yě dōu jīngguò péixùn gè gè bīnbīn yǒulǐ · Don't worry. Guests will have tea in the lobby first and take their seats at seven sharp. The security staff will salute the guests at the door, and the waiting staff have all been trained: every one of them is courteous.

manager liu 真是的，我差点儿忘了：开始时我要上台讲话。
zhēn shì de wǒ chàdiǎnr wàng le kāishǐ shí wǒ yào shàngtái jiǎnghuà · Oh, for goodness' sake, I nearly forgot: I have to give a speech at the start.

anna 已经替您写好了：先向各位来宾表示欢迎，再向辛苦了一年的全体员工致敬。
yǐjīng tì nín xiě hǎo le xiān xiàng gèwèi láibīn biǎoshì huānyíng zài xiàng xīnkǔ le yì nián de quántǐ yuángōng zhìjìng · I've already written it for you: first you welcome our guests, then you pay tribute to all the staff for a year of hard work.

manager liu 很好。今年大家加了不少班，很多人默默无闻地付出，这次联欢会就是为了慰劳大家。
hěn hǎo jīnnián dàjiā jiā le bù shǎo bān hěn duō rén mòmò wúwén de fùchū zhè cì liánhuān huì jiùshì wèile wèiláo dàjiā · Very good. Everyone has worked a lot of overtime this year, and many people have given their all without any recognition. This party is our way of thanking them.

anna 对了，老张下个月退休。他一直以身作则，大家都很佩服他。我们能不能在会上给他送行？他的请帖是我亲自送去的。
duì le lǎo zhāng xià gè yuè tuìxiū tā yìzhí yǐshēn zuòzé dàjiā dōu hěn pèifú tā wǒmen néng bu néng zài huì shàng gěi tā sòngxíng tā de qǐngtiě shì wǒ qīnzì sòng qù de · By the way, Lao Zhang retires next month. He has always led by example, and everyone admires him. Could we give him a send-off at the party? I delivered his invitation myself.

manager liu 好主意。他在公司干了三十年，是当之无愧的老员工代表。到时候我们一起向他鞠躬，好好送别他。
hǎo zhǔyi tā zài gōngsī gàn le sānshí nián shì dāngzhīwúkuì de lǎo yuángōng dàibiǎo dào shíhou wǒmen yìqǐ xiàng tā jūgōng hǎohǎo sòngbié tā · Good idea. He's been with the company for thirty years: he more than deserves to stand for all our long-serving staff. On the night we'll all bow to him and give him a proper farewell.

anna 还有，春节前您要去慰问退休的老员工，名单我也整理好了。
hái yǒu Chūnjié qián nín yào qù wèiwèn tuìxiū de lǎo yuángōng míngdān wǒ yě zhěnglǐ hǎo le · Also, before the Spring Festival you're visiting the retired staff to wish them well. I've put the list together too.

manager liu 你考虑得真周到。主持人那边也提醒一下：注意礼仪，千万别慌张，也别在台上失态。
nǐ kǎolǜ de zhēn zhōudào zhǔchí rén nàbiān yě tíxǐng yíxià zhùyì lǐyí qiānwàn bié huāngzhāng yě bié zài tái shàng shītài · You've thought of everything. And remind the host: mind the etiquette, don't get flustered whatever happens, and keep your cool on stage.

anna 好的。说实话，这种大型应酬我还是有点紧张，也有点拘束。我更喜欢去邻居家串门，或者跟朋友欢聚。

hǎo de shuō shíhuà zhè zhǒng dàxíng yìngchou wǒ háishi yǒu diǎn jǐnzhāng yě yǒu diǎn jūshù wǒ gèng xǐhuan qù línjū jiā chuànmén huòzhě gēn péngyou huānjù · Will do. To be honest, big formal events like this still make me a bit nervous and stiff. I prefer dropping in on the neighbours, or getting together with friends.

manager liu 哈哈，社交也是工作嘛。下周我要去上海拜会他们的老板，顺便去拜见我大学的老师。总经理还邀我们去他家作客，盛情难却啊。

hā hā shèjiāo yě shì gōngzuò ma xià zhōu wǒ yào qù Shànghǎi bàihuì tāmen de lǎobǎn shùnbiàn qù bàijiàn wǒ dàxué de lǎoshī zǒng jīnglǐ hái yāo wǒmen qù tā jiā zuòkè shèngqíng nán què a · Ha! Socialising is part of the job. Next week I'm calling on their boss in Shanghai, and I'll pay a visit to my old university teacher while I'm there. The general manager has invited us to his home too; such kindness is hard to refuse.

anna 那我帮您准备几份礼品，再写一张卡片，表达我们的诚意。也请代我问候您的老师。

nà wǒ bāng nín zhǔnbèi jǐ fèn lǐpǐn zài xiě yì zhāng kǎpiàn biǎodá wǒmen de chéngyì yě qǐng dài wǒ wènhòu nín de lǎoshī · Then I'll get a few gifts ready for you, and write a card to show our good faith. And please give your teacher my regards.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

仇
chóu
grudge, hatred

蔑
miè
to slight, scorn

呛
qiāng
to choke (on food or water)

慌
huāng
flustered, panicked

good to know · 莅临 is for other people's visits, said with respect: never say 我莅临. For your own visit, 拜访, 拜会 and 拜见 show respect to the person you go to see. When you visit a Chinese home, bring fruit, tea or a small gift, and expect the host to refuse it once or twice before accepting.

Next time you're a guest or a host in China, you have the words for every step, from the invitation to the farewell.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 18 friends and circles

Talk about friendship, circles and connections: how you met, who you owe a favour, who truly understands you, and say it with 想X之所想，急X之所急.

In China, friendship runs on 缘分, 人情 and 圈子: knowing these words is knowing how people help each other.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
交情	jiāoqing	friendship, the bond between friends	我们俩是二十年的交情了。 We two go back twenty years.
情谊	qíngyì	friendship, friendly feelings	这份情谊我会一直记在心里。 I will always keep this friendship in my heart.
知己	zhījǐ	close friend, soulmate	人生得{de2}一知己就足够了。 If you find one true friend in life, that's enough.
友人	yǒurén	friend (formal)	我们欢迎世界各地的友人来中国旅游。 We welcome friends from all over the world to visit China.
要好	yàohǎo	on good terms, close	她和大学同学特别要好，常常一起出去玩。 She and her university classmates are really close and often go out together.
亲近	qīnjìn	close, intimate; to get close to	孩子们都愿意亲近这位和蔼的老师。 The children all love being around this kind teacher.
亲热	qīnrè	affectionate, warm	两个老朋友一见面就亲热地拥抱。 The moment the two old friends met, they hugged warmly.
融洽	róngqià	harmonious, on friendly terms	我们团队的气氛很融洽。 The atmosphere in our team is very harmonious.
默契	mòqì	tacit understanding; in sync	他们俩合作多年，配合得很有默契。 They've worked together for years and are completely in sync.
缘分	yuánfèn	fate that brings people together	我们能在这里相遇，也是一种缘分。 Meeting here like this must be fate.
相识	xiāngshí	to know each other; an acquaintance	我们相识十年了，从来没吵过架。 We've known each other ten years and never had a fight.
结识	jiéshí	to get to know, to make friends with	我在旅途中结识了很多新朋友。 I got to know lots of new friends on my travels.
相遇	xiāngyù	to meet (each other)	他们在一次会议上第一次相遇。 They first met at a conference.
相约	xiāngyuē	to agree to meet; by appointment	我们相约十年后再来这里看看。 We agreed to come back here together in ten years.

逢	féng	to come across; every time (it is)	每逢春节，我都回老家。 Every Spring Festival, I go back to my home town.
相伴	xiāngbàn	to keep each other company	一路有你相伴，我不觉得孤单。 With you beside me all the way, I don't feel lonely.
并肩	bìngjiān	shoulder to shoulder	我们并肩走在湖边。 We walked side by side along the lake.
携手	xiéshǒu	hand in hand; to join hands	两家公司携手开发新产品。 The two companies are joining hands to develop a new product.
联手	liánshǒu	to join forces	几家医院联手研究这种病。 Several hospitals have joined forces to study this disease.
搭档	dādàng	partner; to team up	他是我工作上的老搭档。 He's been my partner at work for years.
伴	bàn	companion; to accompany	一个人去旅行太无聊，我想找个伴。 Travelling alone is boring: I want to find someone to go with.
帮手	bāngshou	helper, assistant	搬家那天，他是我最好的帮手。 On moving day he was my best helper.
老乡	lǎoxiāng	person from the same home town	在北京遇到老乡，感觉特别亲切。 Meeting someone from home in Beijing feels really special.
乡亲	xiāngqīn	fellow villagers, local people	乡亲们都来帮他盖房子。 The villagers all came to help him build his house.
前辈	qiánbèi	senior (colleague), elder	他是我们这个行业的前辈，经验特别丰富。 He's a senior figure in our line of work, with a wealth of experience.
旁人	pángrén	other people, outsiders	这是我们自己的事，不需要旁人管。 This is our own business: no need for anyone else to get involved.
圈子	quānzi	circle (of people)	他的朋友圈子很小。 His circle of friends is very small.
人缘儿	rényuánr	popularity, how well liked one is	她人缘儿特别好，大家都愿意跟她交朋友。 She's really popular: everyone wants to be her friend.
人情	rénqíng	favour; human feelings, the done thing	他帮过我，我欠他一个人情。 He helped me, so I owe him a favour.
纽带	niǔdài	link, bond	语言是不同文化之间的纽带。 Language is a bridge between cultures.
门路	ménlu	connections; the way in	他找门路给儿子安排了一份工作。 He used his connections to get his son a job.
联络	liánluò	to contact, to keep in touch	毕业以后我们一直保持联络。 We've stayed in touch ever since we graduated.
会面	huìmiàn	to meet (by arrangement)	双方约定下个月在北京会面。 The two sides agreed to meet in Beijing next month.
过往	guòwǎng	to come and go; dealings	我跟他没什么过往，只见过一次。 I don't have any dealings with him: we've only met once.

私事	sīshì	private matter	上班时间不要办私事。 Don't deal with personal business during working hours.

pattern 想x之所想，急x之所急: caring about what others care about

想 | X | 之所想，急 | X | 之所急

A set phrase in classical style: 之所想 is "what (X) thinks" and 之所急 "what (X) is anxious about". 想客户之所想，急客户之所急 means thinking like the customer and worrying about what worries them. You hear it about good friends, doctors, officials and companies.

作为医生，要想病人之所想，急病人之所急。 **zuòwéi yīshēng yào xiǎng bìngrén zhī suǒ xiǎng jí bìngrén zhī suǒ jí** A doctor should think like the patient and care about what the patient is worried about.

他总是想朋友之所想，急朋友之所急，所以大家都信任他。 **tā zǒngshì xiǎng péngyou zhī suǒ xiǎng jí péngyou zhī suǒ jí suǒyǐ dàjiā dōu xìnrèn tā** He always puts himself in his friends' shoes and cares about their worries, so everyone trusts him.

我们的口号是：想客户之所想，急客户之所急。 **wǒmen de kǒuhào shì xiǎng kèhù zhī suǒ xiǎng jí kèhù zhī suǒ jí** Our motto is: think like the customer, care about what they care about.

dialogue ten years on

xiaoming 安娜，你还记得我们是怎么相识的吗？
Ānnà nǐ hái jìde wǒmen shì zěnme xiāngshí de ma · Anna, do you remember how we met?

anna 当然记得！我刚到北京的第一个星期，在学校门口迷路了，晕头转向，是你帮我找到了教室。
dāngrán jìde wǒ gāng dào Běijīng de dì yī gè xīngqī zài xuéxiào ménkǒu mílù le yūntóu zhuànxiàng shì nǐ bāng wǒ zhǎo dào le jiàoshì · Of course! In my first week in Beijing I got lost at the school gate and didn't know which way to turn, and you helped me find my classroom.

xiaoming 那天我本来不走那条路，结果正好遇到你。这就叫缘分吧。
nà tiān wǒ běnlái bù zǒu nà tiáo lù jiéguǒ zhènghǎo yùdào nǐ zhè jiù jiào yuánfèn ba · I didn't normally go that way, and I happened to run into you. That's what you call fate.

anna 是啊。后来你成了我最要好的朋友，也是我在北京的第一个帮手。我一直很庆幸认识了你。
shì a hòulái nǐ chéng le wǒ zuì yàohǎo de péngyou yě shì wǒ zài Běijīng de dì yī gè bāngshou wǒ yìzhí hěn qìngxìng rènshi le nǐ · Yes. Then you became my closest friend, and my first helper in Beijing. I've always counted myself lucky to know you.

xiaoming 说到老朋友，我们大学毕业十年了，班长让我联络大家，下个月聚一聚。
shuō dào lǎo péngyou wǒmen dàxué bìyè shí nián le bān zhǎng ràng wǒ liánluò dàjiā xià gè yuè jù yi ju · Speaking of old friends: it's ten years since we graduated, and our class monitor has asked me to get in touch with everyone for a get-together next month.

anna 好啊！你们班同学关系融洽吗？
hǎo a nǐmen bān tóngxué guānxì róngqià ma · Great! Does your class get on well?

xiaoming 大部分都很亲热。最难联络的是小刘。我们以前是篮球队的搭档，配合特别有默契。
dà bùfen dōu hěn qīnrè zuì nán liánluò de shì xiǎo Liú wǒmen yǐqián shì lánqiú duì de dādàng pèihé tèbié yǒu mòqì · Most of us are very close. The hardest one to reach is Xiao Liu. We were partners on the basketball team, completely in sync.

anna 后来呢？你们闹别扭了？
hòulái ne nǐmen nào bièniu le · And then? Did you fall out?

xiaoming 毕业后他去了上海，进了另一个圈子，我们慢慢就没什么过往了。听说他家里出了点事，那是他的私事，我也不好多问。
bìyè hòu tā qù le Shànghǎi jìn le lìng yí gè quānzi wǒmen màn màn jiù méi shénme guòwǎng le tīngshuō tā jiā lǐ chū le diǎn shì nà shì tā de sīshì wǒ yě bù hǎo duō wèn · After graduating he went to Shanghai and moved in a different circle, and we gradually lost touch. I heard something happened in his family, but that's his private business, and I didn't feel I could ask.

anna 别想太多，也别多心。真正的知己会想你之所想，急你之所急，就算多年不见，交情也不会变。
bié xiǎng tài duō yě bié duōxīn zhēnzhèng de zhījǐ huì xiǎng nǐ zhī suǒ xiǎng jí nǐ zhī suǒ jí jiùsuàn duō nián bújiàn jiāoqing yě bú huì biàn · Don't overthink it, and don't read too much into it. A true friend thinks what you think and cares about what worries you. Even after years apart, the friendship doesn't change.

xiaoming 你说得对。其实当年我找工作，是他到处帮我找门路，还带我一起去那家公司面试。我一直欠他一个人情，想起来就很惭愧。
nǐ shuō de duì qíshí dāngnián wǒ zhǎo gōngzuò shì tā dàochù bāng wǒ zhǎo ménlu hái dài wǒ yìqǐ qù nà jiā gōngsī miànshì wǒ yìzhí qiàn tā yí gè rénqíng xiǎng qǐlai jiù hěn cánkuì · You're right. Actually, when I was looking for work back then, he went all over the place using his connections for me, and even took me along to interview at that company with him. I've always owed him a favour, and I feel ashamed whenever I think of it.

anna 那你就亲自给他打个电话吧，别迟疑了。旁人去说，不如你自己去说。
nà nǐ jiù qīnzì gěi tā dǎ gè diànhuà ba bié chíyí le pángrén qù shuō bùrú nǐ zìjǐ qù shuō · Then call him yourself, and don't put it off. It's better coming from you than from someone else.

xiaoming 好。这次我还特邀了几位外国友人，都是大学时结识的。我们相约在学校老食堂会面，就是我第一次跟你相遇的地方旁边。

hǎo zhè cì wǒ hái tèyāo le jǐ wèi wàiguó yǒurén dōu shì dàxué shí jiéshí de wǒmen xiāngyuē zài xuéxiào lǎo shítáng huìmiàn jiùshì wǒ dì yī cì gēn nǐ xiāngyù de dìfang pángbiān · OK. I've also specially invited a few friends from abroad that we got to know at university. We've arranged to meet in the old canteen, right next to the place where I first ran into you.

xiaoming 你呢？在公司有没有英国老乡？

nǐ ne zài gōngsī yǒu méiyǒu Yīngguó lǎoxiāng · What about you? Is there anyone from back home in the UK at your company?

anna 有一位，她还是我的前辈，人很坦诚，我们很亲近。上个月我们部门跟上海团队联手做项目，大家并肩加了一个月的班。

yǒu yí wèi tā hái shì wǒ de qiánbèi rén hěn tǎnchéng wǒmen hěn qīnjìn shàng gè yuè wǒmen bùmén gēn Shànghǎi tuánduì liánshǒu zuò xiàngmù dàjiā bìngjiān jiā le yí gè yuè de bān · There's one, and she's senior to me; she's very open and we're very close. Last month our department joined forces with the Shanghai team on a project, and we all worked overtime side by side for a month.

anna 对了，你们的同学聚会，你要是不介意，我也去给你当个伴吧！同学聚会就像一条纽带，把大家又连在一起了。

duì le nǐmen de tóngxué jùhuì nǐ yàoshi bú jièyì wǒ yě qù gěi nǐ dāng gè bàn ba tóngxué jùhuì jiù xiàng yì tiáo niǔdài bǎ dàjiā yòu lián zài yìqǐ le · By the way, if you don't mind, I'll come to your reunion too and keep you company! A reunion is like a thread that ties everyone back together.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

怖
bù
fear, terror

畏
wèi
to fear

丸
wán
pill, ball; (measure word for pills)

甘
gān
sweet, willing

good to know · 人情 is a favour that is remembered: 欠人情 (owe one), 还人情 (repay one). Returning favours at the right time keeps friendships and business ties alive. 知己 comes from 知 "know" and 己 "oneself": the friend who knows you as well as you know yourself. 红颜知己 is a close female friend.

You can now talk about the people in your life the way Chinese people do: fate, favours, circles and the friends who truly get you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 19 moods: surely, no wonder

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 3 · friends and social life

Colour what you say with surprise, guesses and certainty (no wonder, could it be, surely, why bother), and build up an argument with 别说……都…… and ……更不用说……了.

These little words carry the speaker's attitude: without them advanced Chinese sounds flat; with them you sound like a native in an argument.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
必定	bìdìng	surely, certainly	他这么努力，必定能成功。 He works so hard that he's bound to succeed.
必将	bìjiāng	will surely	新技术必将改变我们的生活。 New technology will surely change our lives.
不妨	bùfáng	might as well, there's no harm in	你不妨先试一试，不行再说。 You might as well give it a try first; if it doesn't work, we'll think again.
不免	bùmiǎn	can't help but, inevitably	第一次上台讲话，不免有点紧张。 Speaking on stage for the first time, you can't help feeling a little nervous.
反倒	fǎndào	on the contrary, instead	我帮了他，他反倒怪我。 I helped him, and instead he blamed me.
非得	fēiděi	must, have to (spoken)	这件事非得你亲自去才行。 This needs you to go in person; nothing else will do.
分明	fēnmíng	clearly, obviously	他分明看见我了，却说没看见。 He obviously saw me, but he says he didn't.
怪不得	guàibude	no wonder	原来他生病了，怪不得没来上班。 So he's ill: no wonder he didn't come to work.
果真	guǒzhēn	really, as expected	天气预报说今天下雨，果真下了。 The forecast said it would rain today, and sure enough it did.
好在	hǎozài	luckily, fortunately	路上堵车了，好在我们出发得早。 There was traffic on the way, but luckily we'd set off early.
何必	hébì	why bother, there's no need	都是老朋友，何必这么客气? We're old friends: why be so formal?
竟	jìng	unexpectedly, actually (written)	他竟什么也没说就走了。 To our surprise, he left without saying a word.
愣	lèng	stunned; to be dumbfounded	听到这个消息，他愣了半天。 When he heard the news, he stood there stunned for ages.
莫非	mòfēi	could it be that … ?	他今天这么高兴，莫非有什么好消息? He's so happy today: could he have some good news?
难怪	nánguài	no wonder	难怪他汉语说得这么好，原来他在北京住了十年。

			No wonder his Chinese is so good: he's lived in Beijing for ten years.
何苦	hékǔ	why go to such trouble	为这点小事生气，你何苦呢? Why get so upset over such a little thing?
巴不得	bābudé	to be dying to, can't wait to	孩子们巴不得天天放假。 The children wish every day were a holiday.
恨不得	hènbude	to wish one could, to itch to	我恨不得马上飞回家。 I wish I could fly home this minute.
并非	bìngfēi	is not, is by no means	成功并非一件容易的事。 Success is by no means easy.
除外	chúwài	to be excepted, except	博物馆每天开放，星期一除外。 The museum is open every day except Monday.
可谓	kěwèi	it may be called, truly	他在这个领域的成绩可谓世界一流。 His achievements in this field are truly world-class.
免不了	miǎnbuliǎo	to be unavoidable	刚开始工作，犯点错误是免不了的。 When you've just started a job, making a few mistakes is unavoidable.
少不了	shǎobuliǎo	can't do without; bound to be	过年的时候，饺子是少不了的。 At New Year there are always dumplings.
所谓	suǒwèi	so-called; what is called	所谓“知己”，就是最懂你的人。 A “soulmate” is the person who understands you best.
予以	yǔyǐ	to give, to grant (formal)	学校对这名学生予以表扬。 The school gave the student an official commendation.
不予	bùyǔ	not to grant (formal)	对于这种申请，公司不予批准。 The company does not approve applications of this kind.
犯不着	fànbuzháo	not worth it, no need to	这点小事，你犯不着生气。 It's such a small thing: it's not worth getting angry over.
犯得着	fàndezháo	is it worth it? (in questions)	这点小事，犯得着你亲自跑一趟吗? Is a small thing like this really worth a trip in person?
可否	kěfǒu	may I ask whether, could (formal)	您可否给我们一点时间考虑? Could you give us a little time to think it over?
有所	yǒusuǒ	to some extent, somewhat	今年的情况比去年有所好转。 Things have improved somewhat on last year.
别说	biéshuō	let alone, not to mention	别说一万块，一千块我也拿不出来。 Forget ten thousand: I can't even come up with a thousand.
何况	hékuàng	let alone, besides	这个问题大人都不懂，何况孩子呢? Even adults don't understand this, let alone children.
尚且	shàngqiě	even	专家尚且解决不了，何况我们呢? Even the experts can't solve it, let alone us.

pattern 别说……都……, ……更不用说……了, and set verbs like 巴不得

别说 | the big thing | ，(连) the small thing 都 / 也 | ……，更不用说……了

别说 A，(连) B 都…… puts the bigger case first: “forget A, not even B”. ……，更不用说 A 了 puts it last: “…, let alone A”. Today’s set verbs add attitude: 巴不得 / 恨不得 (dying to), 犯不着 (not worth it), 免不了 (bound to), 并非 (is not), 除外 (except), 所谓 (so-called), 可谓 (truly), 有所 (somewhat), 予以 (to give, formal), 可否 (could, formal).

别说跑步了，他现在连走路都很困难。 **biéshuō pǎobù le tā xiànzài lián zǒulù dōu hěn kùnnan** Forget running: right now even walking is hard for him.

这道题连老师都不会，更不用说我们了。 **zhè dào tí lián lǎoshī dōu bú huì gèng búyòng shuō wǒmen le** Even the teacher can’t do this question, let alone us.

考完试，我巴不得马上回家睡觉。 **kǎo wán shì wǒ bābudé mǎshàng huí jiā shuìjiào** After the exam, all I want is to go straight home to bed.

这次活动所有人都要参加，病人除外。 **zhè cì huódòng suǒyǒu rén dōu yào cānjiā bìngrén chúwài** Everyone has to take part in this event, except those who are ill.

dialogue the debate team

anna 听说陈教授选你代表学校参加比赛了？能从那么多人里脱颖而出，真不简单！怪不得你最近这么忙。

tīngshuō Chénjiàoshòu xuǎn nǐ dàibiǎo xuéxiào cānjiā bǐsài le néng cóng nàme duō rén lǐ tuōyǐngérchū zhēn bù jiǎndān guàibude nǐ zuìjìn zhème máng · I hear Professor Chen picked you to debate for the university? Standing out from so many people is no small thing! No wonder you've been so busy lately.

little sister 是啊！下个月就要比赛了，我恨不得一天有四十八个小时。

shì a xià gè yuè jiù yào bǐsài le wǒ hènbude yì tiān yǒu sìshíbā gè xiǎoshí · Yes! The competition is next month, and I wish there were forty-eight hours in a day.

anna 你何必这么拼？身体最重要，别把自己累得疲惫不堪。

nǐ hébì zhème pīn shēntǐ zuì zhòngyào bié bǎ zìjǐ lèi de píbèi bùkān · Why push yourself so hard? Your health comes first: don't wear yourself out completely.

little sister 没办法。别说我们了，连陈教授都每天陪我们练到十点。

méi bànfǎ biéshuō wǒmen le lián Chénjiàoshòu dōu měi tiān péi wǒmen liàn dào shí diǎn · I've no choice. Forget us: even Professor Chen stays with us practising until ten every night.

anna 难怪你哥哥说你瘦了。题目是什么？

nánguài nǐ gēge shuō nǐ shòu le tímù shì shénme · No wonder your brother says you've lost weight. What's the motion?

little sister “所谓成功，并非只是赚钱。”我们是支持这个观点的一方。

suǒwèi chénggōng bìngfēi zhǐshì zhuàn qián wǒmen shì zhīchí zhège guāndiǎn de yì fāng · “Success is not just about making money.” We're the side arguing for it.

anna 这个题目可谓不容易。对方必定会说，没有钱，什么都做不了，更不用说追求梦想了。

zhège tímù kěwèi bù róngyì duìfāng bìdìng huì shuō méiyǒu qián shénme dōu zuò bu liǎo gèng búyòng shuō zhuīqiú mèngxiǎng le · That's a really tough motion. The other side is sure to say that without money you can't do anything, let alone chase your dreams.

little sister 对，所以比赛中免不了会被对方问住。好在我们准备得很充分。

duì suǒyǐ bǐsài zhōng miǎnbuliǎo huì bèi duìfāng wèn zhù hǎozài wǒmen zhǔnbèi de hěn chōngfèn · Right, so we're bound to get caught out by their questions at some point. Luckily we're very well prepared.

anna 你不妨把对方可能问的问题都写下来，一个一个准备。

nǐ bùfáng bǎ duìfāng kěnéng wèn de wèntí dōu xiě xialai yí gè yí gè zhǔnbèi · You might as well write down every question they might ask and prepare them one by one.

little sister 好主意！上次练习，我被一个问题问愣了，急得面红耳赤，半天什么也说不出来。陈教授反倒笑了，说这是好事。

hǎo zhǔyi shàng cì liànxí wǒ bèi yí gè wèntí wèn lèng le jí de miànhóng ěrchì bàntiān shénme yě shuō bu chulai Chénjiàoshòu fǎndào xiào le shuō zhè shì hǎo shì · Good idea! In the last practice, one question left me stunned; I went red in the face and couldn't say anything for ages. Professor Chen actually laughed and said it was a good thing.

anna 他分明是想让你看到自己的弱点。莫非他想让你第一个发言？

tā fēnmíng shì xiǎng ràng nǐ kàn dào zìjǐ de ruòdiǎn mòfēi tā xiǎng ràng nǐ dì yī gè fāyán · He obviously wanted you to see your weak spot. Could it be that he wants you to speak first?

little sister 果真被你说对了！他说我非得多练不可，还说我的表达能力已经有所提高，反应也比以前敏捷了。

guǒzhēn bèi nǐ shuō duì le tā shuō wǒ fēiděi duō liàn bù kě hái shuō wǒ de biǎodá nénglì yǐjīng yǒusuǒ tígāo fǎnyìng yě bǐ yǐqián mǐnjié le · You've guessed it! He says I simply have to practise more, and that my speaking has already improved a bit, and I think on my feet faster than before.

anna 那就好。第一次上台不免紧张，不过别胆怯，对方也不见得比你们强。

nà jiù hǎo dì yī cì shàngtái bùmiǎn jǐnzhāng búguò bié dǎnqiè duìfāng yě bújiàndé bǐ nǐmen qiáng · That's great. You're bound to be nervous the first time on stage, but don't be timid: the other side isn't necessarily better than you.

little sister 我绝不放弃！对了，比赛规定所有学生都能参加，研究生除外。对方想加一个研究生，组织者不予同意。
wǒ juébú fàngqì duì le bǐsài guīdìng suǒyǒu xuéshēng dōu néng cānjiā yánjiūshēng chúwài duìfāng xiǎng jiā yí gè yánjiūshēng zǔzhī zhě bù yǔ tóngyì · I'll never give up! Oh, and the rules say any student can take part, except postgraduates. The other team wanted to add a postgraduate, and the organisers said no.

anna 那你犯不着为他们担心。比赛那天，少不了我这个观众，我都有点迫不及待了。
nà nǐ fànbuzháo wèi tāmen dānxīn bǐsài nà tiān shǎobuliǎo wǒ zhège guānzhòng wǒ dōu yǒu diǎn pòbùjídài le · Then there's no need for you to worry about them. On the day, you can count on me in the audience: I can hardly wait.

little sister 太好了！我巴不得你能来。我还想请陈教授写封信，对你的支持予以感谢呢！
tài hǎo le wǒ bābudé nǐ néng lái wǒ hái xiǎng qǐng Chénjiàoshòu xiě fēng xìn duì nǐ de zhīchí yǔyǐ gǎnxiè ne · Brilliant! I was hoping you'd come. I even want Professor Chen to write a letter formally thanking you for your support!

anna 哈哈，那就不用了。不过，可否先请我喝杯奶茶？
hā hā nà jiù búyòng le búguò kěfǒu xiān qǐng wǒ hē bēi nǎichá · Ha, no need for that. But might I first be treated to a bubble tea?

write it trace the grey, then write your own

悟
wù
to realise, awaken

勿
wù
do not (written)

撼
hàn
to shake

茫
máng
vast, boundless

good to know · 难怪 and 怪不得 both mean "no wonder" and are used the same way; 难怪 is a touch more written. 何必, 何苦 and 犯不着 all say "there's no need": 何必 is neutral, 何苦 adds "why put yourself through it", and 犯不着 says "it's not worth it".

You can now argue like a native: guess, insist, concede and pile on the points.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 20 kindness and forgiveness

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 3 · friends and social life

Thank the people who helped you, ask for understanding, forgive and make up, and let something go “for someone’s sake” with 看在X的面子上.

Gratitude and face are at the heart of Chinese relationships: knowing how to repay kindness and smooth over a quarrel keeps friendships alive.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
爱戴	àidài	to love and respect (a leader, teacher)	这位老校长深受学生爱戴。 The old head teacher is deeply loved and respected by the students.
敬	jìng	to respect; to offer (politely)	我敬您一杯茶，谢谢您这些年的照顾。 Let me offer you a cup of tea, to thank you for looking after me all these years.
敬爱	jìngài	respected and beloved	敬爱的王老师，祝您生日快乐！ Dear Teacher Wang, happy birthday!
敬意	jìngyì	respect, tribute	请接受我们最诚挚的敬意。 Please accept our most sincere respects.
敬重	jìngzhòng	to esteem, to hold in high regard	他做人正直，大家都很敬重他。 He’s an upright man, and everyone holds him in high regard.
恩情	ēnqíng	kindness, a debt of gratitude	父母的恩情，我们一辈子也报答不完。 We can never fully repay our parents’ kindness.
恩人	ēnrén	benefactor	那位医生救了我的命，是我的恩人。 That doctor saved my life: I owe him everything.
报答	bàodá	to repay (a kindness)	我一定要好好学习，报答父母。 I’m going to study hard to repay my parents.
回馈	huíkuì	to give back (to society, customers)	他成功以后回到家乡，回馈乡亲。 After he made it, he went back to his home town to give back to the people there.
关照	guānzhào	to look after, to keep an eye on	我刚来，请大家多多关照。 I’m new here: I’d be grateful for everyone’s help.
体谅	tǐliàng	to make allowances for, to understand	他最近家里有事，我们要体谅他。 He’s got family trouble at the moment, so we should make allowances for him.
体贴	tǐtiē	considerate, caring	他对妻子非常体贴。 He’s very considerate towards his wife.
着想	zhuóxiǎng	to consider (someone’s interests)	你也要为{wei4-3}自己的身体着想。 You also have to think about your own health.
成全	chéngquán	to help someone achieve their wish	她想去国外读书，父母最后成全了她。 She wanted to study abroad, and in the end her parents let her go.

托付	tuōfù	to entrust	出国前，她把孩子托付给了父母。 Before going abroad, she left her child in her parents' care.
接济	jiējì	to give financial help to	那几年家里困难，多亏亲戚们接济。 Those years were hard for our family; we got by thanks to help from relatives.
安抚	ānfǔ	to soothe, to calm	妈妈轻轻地安抚着哭闹的孩子。 The mother gently soothed her crying child.
勉励	miǎnlì	to encourage (formal)	老师勉励我们继续努力。 The teacher encouraged us to keep working hard.
鞭策	biāncè	to spur on	失败是对我的鞭策。 Failure spurs me on.
助力	zhùlì	help, boost; to help	新政策为小企业的发展助力。 The new policy gives small businesses a boost.
后盾	hòudùn	backing, support	家人永远是你的后盾。 Your family will always be behind you.
对得起	duìdeqǐ	to do right by, not to let down	我一定要做出成绩，对得起大家的信任。 I'm going to deliver results and live up to everyone's trust.
谅解	liàngjiě	to understand and forgive	给您带来不便，请您谅解。 We apologise for any inconvenience and ask for your understanding.
宽恕	kuānshù	to forgive (a wrong)	他真诚地道歉，请求大家宽恕。 He apologised sincerely and asked everyone to forgive him.
饶	ráo	to let off, to spare	这次就饶了你，下次可不行。 I'll let you off this time, but not next time.
饶恕	ráoshù	to forgive, to pardon	他做的事，很难让人饶恕。 What he did is hard to forgive.
放过	fàngguò	to let go, to let off	别再想那件事了，放过自己吧。 Stop thinking about it: give yourself a break.
和	hé	harmonious, gentle	做生意要以和{he2-7}为{wei2}贵。 In business, harmony comes first.
和好	héhǎo	to make up, to be reconciled	两个孩子吵完架，很快又和好了。 The two children had a fight and soon made up again.
和解	héjiě	to reconcile, to settle	经过谈判，双方终于和解了。 After talks, the two sides finally settled their differences.
调和	tiáohé	to mediate; harmonious	两个同事有矛盾，经理只好在中间调和。 Two colleagues were at odds, so the manager had to smooth things over.
让步	ràngbù	to give way, to concede	为了达成协议，我方做出了让步。 To reach an agreement, our side made concessions.
退让	tuìràng	to back down, to yield	在原则问题上，我们绝不退让。 On matters of principle, we will never back down.
迁就	qiānjiù	to give in to, to humour	你不能什么事都迁就孩子。 You can't give in to your child on everything.

妥协	tuǒxié	to compromise	在婚姻里，双方都要学会妥协。 In a marriage, both people have to learn to compromise.

pattern 看在x的面子上: for x's sake

看在 | X | 的面子上 / 的份上 | , I'll let it go / please help

看在X的面子上 means "out of regard for X": you forgive or help because of someone else, or because of something worth respecting. 面子 is face; 份上 works the same way and is common with qualities: 看在你这么诚恳的份上.

看在王老师的面子上，我就不说什么了。 kàn zài Wánglǎoshī de miànzi shàng wǒ jiù bù shuō shénme le For Teacher Wang's sake, I won't say anything more.

看在你这么诚恳的份上，我原谅你了。 kàn zài nǐ zhème chéngkěn de fèn shàng wǒ yuánliàng nǐ le Seeing how sincere you are, I forgive you.

看在多年交情的面子上，你就帮他一次吧。 kàn zài duō nián jiāoqing de miànzi shàng nǐ jiù bāng tā yí cì ba For the sake of all your years of friendship, help him just this once.

dialogue tea with teacher wang

anna 王老师，这是我从英国带回来的茶，表示我的一点敬意。我先敬您一杯茶！
Wánglǎoshī zhè shì wǒ cóng Yīngguó dài huilai de chá biǎoshì wǒ de yìdiǎn jìngyì wǒ xiān jìng nín yì bēi chá · Teacher Wang, this is tea I brought back from the UK, a small token of my respect. Let me pour you the first cup!

teacher wang 你也真是的，每次来都带礼物。快坐。最近工作怎么样？
nǐ yě zhēn shì de měi cì lái dōu dài lǐwù kuài zuò zuìjìn gōngzuò zěnmeyàng · Honestly, you bring a present every time. Sit down. How's work?

anna 挺好的。上周跟一家公司谈合同，对方条件很高，我方做了一些让步，最后双方达成了妥协。
tǐng hǎo de shàng zhōu gēn yì jiā gōngsī tán hétóng duìfāng tiáojiàn hěn gāo wǒ fāng zuò le yìxiē ràngbù zuìhòu shuāngfāng dáchéng le tuǒxié · Pretty good. Last week we were negotiating a contract with a company that drove a hard bargain. Our side made a few concessions, and in the end both sides reached a compromise.

teacher wang 做生意就是这样，该退让的时候退让，原则问题可不能迁就。
zuò shēngyi jiùshì zhèyàng gāi tuìràng de shíhou tuìràng yuánzé wèntí kě bù néng qiānjiù · That's business: give way when you should, but never bend on matters of principle.

anna 刘经理也这么说。她勉励我，说这次的经验是对我的鞭策。
Liújīnglǐ yě zhème shuō tā miǎnlì wǒ shuō zhè cì de jīngyàn shì duì wǒ de biāncè · That's what Manager Liu says too. She encouraged me and said this experience should spur me on.

teacher wang 你刚来北京的时候，连“你好”都说不好，现在都能谈合同了。我真为你感到欣慰。
nǐ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou lián nǐhǎo dōu shuō bu hǎo xiànzài dōu néng tán hétóng le wǒ zhēn wèi nǐ gǎndào xīnwèi · When you first came to Beijing you couldn't even say "nǐ hǎo" properly, and now you're negotiating contracts. I'm truly gratified for you.

anna 这都是您的恩情。那时候我没什么钱，一个人在北京很孤单，您接济过我，还把我托付给小明一家照顾。我真不知怎么报答您才好。
zhè dōu shì nín de ēnqíng nà shíhou wǒ méi shénme qián yí gè rén zài Běijīng hěn gūdān nín jiējì guo wǒ hái bǎ wǒ tuōfù gěi Xiǎomíng yì jiā zhàogù wǒ zhēn bù zhī zěnme bàodá nín cái hǎo · I owe it all to you. Back then I had hardly any money and was lonely on my own in Beijing; you helped me out and asked Xiaoming's family to look after me. I really don't know how to repay you.

teacher wang 别这么说。看到学生成功，就是对我最好的报答。
bié zhème shuō kàn dào xuéshēng chénggōng jiùshì duì wǒ zuìhǎo de bàodá · Don't say that. Seeing my students do well is the best repayment there is.

anna 难怪学生们都这么爱戴您，老师们也都很敬重您。对了，我想请教您一件事。小明跟他大学的好朋友小刘几年前闹了矛盾，后来就不联络了。
nánguài xuéshēngmen dōu zhème àidài nín lǎoshīmen yě dōu hěn jìngzhòng nín duì le wǒ xiǎng qǐngjiào nín yí jiàn shì Xiǎomíng gēn tā dàxué de hǎo péngyou xiǎo Liú jǐ nián qián nào le máodùn hòulái jiù bù liánluò le · No wonder your students love you so much and the teachers hold you in such high regard. Actually, I wanted to ask your advice. A few years ago Xiaoming fell out with his good friend from university, Xiao Liu, and they haven't been in touch since.

teacher wang 为什么事闹到这个份上？
wèi shénme shì nào dào zhège fèn shàng · What did they fall out over so badly?

anna 我也不清楚。小明给他打电话请他来同学聚会，他态度很冷漠，说他不会来。小明觉得自己对得起小刘，可小刘就是忘不了那件事，心里一直有怨气。
wǒ yě bù qīngchu Xiǎomíng gěi tā dǎ diànhuà qǐng tā lái tóngxué jùhuì tā tàidù hěn lěngmò shuō tā bú huì lái Xiǎomíng juéde zìjǐ duìdeqǐ xiǎo Liú kě xiǎo Liú jiùshì wàng bu liǎo nà jiàn shì xīnlǐ yìzhí yǒu yuànqì · I don't really know. Xiaoming phoned to invite him to the class reunion, and he was very cold and said he wouldn't come. Xiaoming feels he never let Xiao Liu down, but Xiao Liu just can't get past whatever it was, and he still bears a grudge.

teacher wang 朋友之间，很多事都是可以和解的。看在多年交情的面子上，小明不妨先去找他，安抚一下他的情绪。
péngyou zhījiān hěn duō shì dōu shì kěyǐ héjiě de kàn zài duō nián jiāoqing de miànzi shàng Xiǎomíng

bùfáng xiān qù zhǎo tā ānfǔ yíxià tā de qíngxù · Between friends, most things can be settled. For the sake of all those years of friendship, Xiaoming might as well go and see him first and help him calm down.

anna 可如果错不在小明呢？小刘又那么固执。

kě rúguǒ cuò bú zài Xiǎomíng ne xiǎo Liú yòu nàme gùzhi · But what if it isn't Xiaoming's fault? And Xiao Liu is so stubborn.

teacher wang 那也要体谅对方。宽恕别人，其实也是放过自己。当然，有的事确实很难饶恕，可我看他们的事还没到那个份上。

nà yě yào tǐliàng duìfāng kuānshù biérén qíshí yě shì fàngguò zìjǐ dāngrán yǒude shì quèshí hěn nán ráoshù kě wǒ kàn tāmen de shì hái méi dào nàge fèn shàng · Then he should still try to understand. Forgiving others is really a way of letting yourself off the hook too. Of course, some things truly are hard to forgive, but I don't think theirs has gone that far.

anna 您说得对。我可以在中间调和一下，小明也就不用为这件事犯愁了。

nín shuō de duì wǒ kěyǐ zài zhōngjiān tiáohé yíxià Xiǎomíng yě jiù búyòng wèi zhè jiàn shì fànchóu le · You're right. I can try to smooth things over between them, and then Xiaoming won't have to fret about it.

teacher wang 好。以和为贵，朋友之间也一样，大家互相关照、互相助力才好。

hǎo yǐ hé wéi guì péngyou zhījiān yě yíyàng dàjiā hùxiāng guānzhào hùxiāng zhùlì cái hǎo · Good. Harmony is what matters most, between friends too: everyone looking out for each other and giving each other a hand.

anna 敬爱的王老师，谢谢您！我以后一定要回馈学校，来给学生们讲讲我的经历。

jìngài de Wánglǎoshī xièxie nín wǒ yǐhòu yídìng yào huíkuì xuéxiào lái gěi xuéshēngmen jiǎng jiang wǒ de jīnglì · Dear Teacher Wang, thank you! One day I'm going to give something back to the school and come and tell the students about my experiences.

teacher wang 好啊，那我就成全你这个心愿！

hǎo a nà wǒ jiù chéngquán nǐ zhège xīnyuàn · Wonderful. Then I'll make that wish of yours come true!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

愣
lèng
stunned; to be dumbfounded

堪
kān
to bear

妒
dù
to envy

忌
jì
to avoid, steer clear of

good to know · 请多关照 is the humble line for a first day, a new neighbour or a new partner. The answer is 互相关照 "let's look after each other". 让步, 退让, 迁就 and 妥协 are all about giving way: 让步 is a concession, 退让 is backing down, 迁就 is giving in to someone (often too much), and 妥协 is meeting halfway.

You can now thank people properly in Chinese, and help friends find their way back to each other.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 21 quarrels and grudges

Talk about quarrels, rifts and grudges, betrayal and bullying, and tell a friend a home truth gently with 不是我说你.

Every drama, every family row and every office feud uses these words, and 不是我说你 is how Chinese friends say what needs saying.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
仇	chóu	grudge, hatred	他们俩之间并没有什么仇。 There's no real bad blood between the two of them.
仇人	chóurén	enemy	两个人吵了一架，就成了仇人。 They had one fight and became enemies.
报仇	bàochóu	to take revenge	电影里的那个年轻人一直想报仇。 The young man in the film wants nothing but revenge.
报复	bàofù	to retaliate, to get back at	他被批评以后，想找机会报复。 After he was criticised, he looked for a chance to get back at them.
恩怨	ēnyuàn	old scores, grievances	上一代的恩怨，不应该影响下一代。 The grievances of one generation shouldn't touch the next.
敌视	díshì	to be hostile towards	他敌视所有的竞争对手。 He's hostile to all his competitors.
隔阂	géhé	barrier, estrangement	多沟通可以消除两代人之间的隔阂。 Talking more can break down the barriers between generations.
裂痕	lièhén	rift, crack	那件事以后，他们的友谊出现了裂痕。 After that, a rift opened up in their friendship.
破裂	pòliè	to break down, to burst	谈判破裂了，双方都很失望。 The talks broke down, and both sides were disappointed.
疏远	shūyuǎn	distant; to drift apart	工作忙了以后，我们的关系慢慢疏远了。 Once work got busy, we slowly drifted apart.
断绝	duànjué	to sever, to break off	他跟家里断绝了来往。 He broke off all contact with his family.
冷落	lěngluò	to cold-shoulder; deserted	新同事被大家冷落，心里很难过。 The new colleague was left out by everyone and felt miserable.
排斥	páichì	to exclude, to reject	有些人排斥新的想法。 Some people reject new ideas.
孤立	gūlì	isolated; to isolate	他在班里被孤立了，没人跟他说话。 He was isolated in his class: no one would talk to him.

抛弃	pāoqì	to abandon	这只小狗被主人抛弃了。 This puppy was abandoned by its owner.
嫌弃	xiánqì	to look down on, to dislike (and avoid)	你别嫌弃，这是我自己做的。 I hope you don't mind: I made it myself.
小看	xiǎokàn	to underestimate, to look down on	你可别小看这个孩子，他会说三种语言。 Don't underestimate this child: he speaks three languages.
侮辱	wǔrǔ	to insult	你这么说，是对我的侮辱。 Saying that is an insult to me.
冒犯	màofàn	to offend	如果我刚才说错了什么，冒犯了您，请原谅。 If I said something wrong just now and offended you, please forgive me.
得罪	dézuì	to offend, to get on the wrong side of	他说话太直，得罪了不少人。 He's so blunt that he's offended quite a few people.
怠慢	dàimàn	to neglect (a guest), to be rude to	招待不周，怠慢了！ I'm sorry we couldn't look after you better!
亏待	kuīdài	to treat unfairly, to short-change	公司从来没有亏待过努力工作的人。 The company has never treated hard workers unfairly.
辜负	gūfù	to let down, to fail to live up to	我不会辜负大家的期望。 I won't let you all down.
背叛	bèipàn	to betray	被朋友背叛的感觉很难受。 Being betrayed by a friend feels terrible.
出卖	chūmài	to sell out, to betray	他为了钱出卖了朋友。 He sold out his friend for money.
欺负	qīfu	to bully	大孩子不能欺负小孩子。 Big children mustn't pick on little ones.
刁难	diāonàn	to make things difficult for	那个客户总是故意刁难我们。 That client always makes things difficult for us on purpose.
过不去	guòbuqù	to give someone a hard time; to get stuck	他为什么总跟我过不去？ Why does he always have it in for me?
作对	zuòduì	to oppose, to set oneself against	他处处跟领导作对。 He opposes the boss at every turn.
斗	dòu	to fight, to contend	两家公司斗了很多年。 The two companies have been fighting each other for years.
挑拨	tiǎobō	to stir up trouble, to sow discord	有人在背后挑拨我们的关系。 Someone has been stirring up trouble between us behind our backs.
挑衅	tiǎoxìn	to provoke	他故意挑衅，我们不要理他。 He's provoking us on purpose: let's ignore him.
惹	rě	to provoke, to cause (trouble)	这个人不好惹。 This is not someone you want to mess with.
叫板	jiàobǎn	to challenge (openly)	小公司公开向大公司叫板。 The small company is openly challenging the big one.

起哄	qǐhòng	to heckle, to jeer; to egg on	他一上台，下面的同学就起哄。 The moment he got on stage, his classmates started cheering and teasing.

pattern 不是我说你: i hate to say it, but ...

不是我说你 , the criticism

不是我说你 softens a criticism before you make it: “not that I want to nag, but ...”. It’s for people close to you: friends, family, a younger colleague. You can also say 不是我说他 / 你们 about others.

不是我说你，你也该早点睡觉了。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ yě gāi zǎo diǎn shuìjiào le** I hate to say it, but you really should get to bed earlier.

不是我说你，朋友之间有误会，要早点说清楚，不然就疏远了。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ péngyou zhījiān yǒu wùhuì yào zǎo diǎn shuō qīngchu bùrán jiù shūyuǎn le** I don’t mean to lecture you, but when friends misunderstand each other, you have to clear it up early, or you drift apart.

不是我说你，你不能因为一次失败就抛弃自己的梦想。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ bù néng yīnwèi yí cì shībài jiù pāoqì zìjǐ de mèngxiǎng** Not to nag, but you can’t give up your dream because of one failure.

dialogue what happened ten years ago

anna 你在上海见到小刘了吗?

nǐ zài Shànghǎi jiàn dào xiǎo Liú le ma · Did you see Xiao Liu in Shanghai?

xiaoming 见到了。他一开门就说：“你来干什么？我不想见你。”

jiàn dào le tā yì kāi mén jiù shuō nǐ lái gàn shénme wǒ bù xiǎng jiàn nǐ · I did. The moment he opened the door he said: “What are you doing here? I don’t want to see you.”

anna 你们俩到底有什么仇?

nǐmen liǎ dàodǐ yǒu shénme chóu · So what is the feud between you two, really?

xiaoming 毕业那年，我们一起去一家公司面试，可是只要一个人，最后公司要了我。有人跟小刘说，是我在公司面前说他不好，出卖了他。

bìyè nà nián wǒmen yìqǐ qù yì jiā gōngsī miànshì kěshì zhǐ yào yí gè rén zuìhòu gōngsī yào le wǒ yǒu rén gēn xiǎo Liú shuō shì wǒ zài gōngsī miànqián shuō tā bù hǎo chūmài le tā · The year we graduated, we both interviewed at the same company, but they only wanted one person, and in the end they took me. Someone told Xiao Liu that I’d run him down to the company and sold him out.

anna 你说了吗?

nǐ shuō le ma · And did you?

xiaoming 当然没有！我怎么会背叛朋友？可他从那以后就跟我断绝了来往。我当时又震惊又气愤。

dāngrán méiyǒu wǒ zěnme huì bèipàn péngyou kě tā cóng nà yǐhòu jiù gēn wǒ duànjué le láiwǎng wǒ dāngshí yòu zhènjīng yòu qìfèn · Of course not! How could I betray a friend? But from then on he cut off all contact with me. I was shocked and angry at the time.

anna 不是我说你，你当时为什么不跟他解释清楚?

bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ dāngshí wèi shénme bù gēn tā jiěshì qīngchu · I hate to say it, but why didn’t you explain it to him properly at the time?

xiaoming 我解释了，他不信。我一生气，也说了句“你爱信不信”，就走了。现在想想，那时候太鲁莽了。

wǒ jiěshì le tā bú xìn wǒ yì shēngqì yě shuō le jù nǐ ài xìn bu xìn jiù zǒu le xiànzài xiǎng xiang nà shíhou tài lǔmǎng le · I did, and he didn’t believe me. I lost my temper, said “Believe what you like”, and walked off. Looking back, that was far too rash.

anna 你看，你也有不对的地方。那是谁在中间挑拨的?

nǐ kàn nǐ yě yǒu bú duì de dìfang nà shì shéi zài zhōngjiān tiǎobō de · See, you weren’t entirely in the right either. So who was stirring things up between you?

xiaoming 是班上一个姓王的同学。他这个人很狭隘，总跟我作对，开会时喜欢起哄，还常常欺负新来的同学。

shì bān shàng yí gè xìng Wáng de tóngxué tā zhè gè rén hěn xiáài zǒng gēn wǒ zuòduì kāihuì shí xǐhuan qīhòng hái chángcháng qīfu xīn lái de tóngxué · A classmate called Wang. He was very narrow-minded, always against me, liked to heckle in meetings and often picked on the new students.

anna 他为什么要这样？想报复你?

tā wèi shénme yào zhèyàng xiǎng bàofù nǐ · Why would he do that? To get back at you?

xiaoming 可能吧。我在班上批评过他，得罪了他，他就一直跟我过不去。

kěnéng ba wǒ zài bān shàng pīpíng guo tā dézuì le tā tā jiù yìzhí gēn wǒ guòbuqù · Probably. I’d criticised him in front of the class and got on his wrong side, and he’d had it in for me ever since.

anna 那小刘这些年一定很煎熬，觉得被你出卖，又被大家冷落、孤立。

nà xiǎo Liú zhèxiē nián yídìng hěn jiānáo juéde bèi nǐ chūmài yòu bèi dàjiā lěngluò gūlì · Then these years must have been agony for Xiao Liu, feeling you’d sold him out and that everyone was leaving him out in the cold.

xiaoming 是啊。他说那几年找工作很不顺利，人也很消沉，觉得全世界都在排斥他、嫌弃他，甚至敌视他。

shì a tā shuō nà jǐ nián zhǎo gōngzuò hěn bú shùnlì rén yě hěn xiāochén juéde quán shìjiè dōu zài páichì tā

xiánqì tā shènzhì díshì tā · Yes. He said job-hunting went badly for years and he was very low; he felt the whole world was shutting him out, looking down on him, even turning against him.

anna 不是我说你们俩，就为了一个误会，十年的交情有了这么深的裂痕，太可惜了。
bú shì wǒ shuō nǐmen liǎ jiù wèile yí gè wùhuì shí nián de jiāoqing yǒu le zhème shēn de lièhén tài kěxī le · I don't mean to lecture you both, but for a single misunderstanding to put such a deep crack in ten years of friendship is such a shame.

xiaoming 我向他道歉，说我当时没坚持解释，后来也没去找他，辜负了他的信任，也亏待了这份友谊。他沉默了半天，说他也有错，不该小看我们的交情。
wǒ xiàng tā dàoqiàn shuō wǒ dāngshí méi jiānchí jiěshì hòulái yě méi qù zhǎo tā gūfù le tā de xìnrèn yě kuīdài le zhè fèn yǒuyì tā chénmò le bàntiān shuō tā yě yǒu cuò bù gāi xiǎokàn wǒmen de jiāoqing · I apologised. I told him I hadn't kept trying to explain, and hadn't gone to find him afterwards: I'd let down his trust and short-changed our friendship. He was quiet for a long time, then said he'd been wrong too, that he'd underestimated our friendship.

anna 太好了！那他会来聚会吗?
tài hǎo le nà tā huì lái jùhuì ma · That's wonderful! So will he come to the reunion?

xiaoming 他说考虑考虑。他怕姓王的也去，自己忍不住跟他斗起来。
tā shuō kǎolǜ kǎolǜ tā pà xìng Wáng de yě qù zìjǐ rěn bu zhù gēn tā dòu qǐlai · He says he'll think about it. He's afraid Wang will be there too and he won't be able to stop himself from having it out with him.

anna 别担心，到时候我帮你们看着。谁敢挑衅，我就跟他叫板！
bié dānxīn dào shíhou wǒ bāng nǐmen kàn zhe shéi gǎn tiǎoxìn wǒ jiù gēn tā jiàobǎn · Don't worry, I'll keep an eye on things for you. If anyone dares to start something, I'll take them on!

xiaoming 哈哈，你可别惹事！
hā hā nǐ kě bié rě shì · Ha! Don't you go causing trouble!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

煎 jiān to pan-fry (in a little oil)												
哄 hǒng to coax; to fool												
盈 yíng to fill												
赤 chì red												

good to know · 背叛 and 出卖 both mean betrayal: 背叛 is turning against someone who trusted you; 出卖 is selling them out, often for your own gain. 起哄 is not always nasty: friends 起哄 at weddings and birthdays, cheering and egging someone on to sing or make a speech.

Now you can follow every twist of a Chinese drama, and help real friends untangle theirs.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 22 flattery and tricks

Spot flattery, pressure and tricks (sucking up, sweet-talking, traps and cover-ups), and scold someone gently with 你看你.

Scams, office politics and TV dramas all run on these words. Knowing them helps you see what is going on, and say so.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
巴结	bājie	to suck up to, to curry favour with	他整天巴结领导，同事们都看不起他。 He sucks up to the boss all day, and his colleagues look down on him.
讨好	tǎohǎo	to try to please	他买了很多礼物讨好女朋友的父母。 He bought lots of presents to win over his girlfriend's parents.
迎合	yínghé	to cater to, to pander to	有些节目只会迎合观众的口味。 Some shows only pander to the audience's tastes.
拉拢	lālǒng	to win over, to rope in	他请大家吃饭，想拉拢几个同事支持他。 He treated everyone to dinner, hoping to win a few colleagues over to his side.
讨	tǎo	to ask for; to provoke (a reaction)	这孩子嘴甜，很讨人喜欢。 This child has such a sweet way of talking: everyone loves him.
依附	yīfù	to depend on, to attach oneself to	小公司往往依附于大企业。 Small companies often depend on big ones.
追随	zhuīsuí	to follow (a leader, an idea)	很多年轻人追随他的想法。 Many young people follow his ideas.
顺从	shùncóng	obedient; to submit to	她从小就很顺从，从不跟父母顶嘴。 She was obedient from a young age and never talked back to her parents.
听从	tīngcóng	to follow (advice, orders)	他听从了医生的建议，每天去散步。 He followed the doctor's advice and went for a walk every day.
使唤	shǐhuan	to order about	他总是使唤别人帮他干活。 He's always ordering other people to do his work for him.
逼迫	bīpò	to force, to compel	没有人逼迫你，这是你自己的选择。 Nobody forced you: it was your own choice.
迫使	pòshǐ	to force, to compel (something to happen)	大雨迫使比赛推迟。 The heavy rain forced the match to be postponed.
强加	qiángjiā	to impose (on)	不要把自己的想法强加给别人。 Don't force your ideas on other people.
制服	zhìfú	to subdue, to overpower; uniform	保安很快就制服了那个小偷。 The security guard quickly overpowered the thief.

纵容	zòngróng	to indulge, to let get away with	父母不能纵容孩子的坏习惯。 Parents mustn't indulge their children's bad habits.
怂恿	sǒngyǒng	to egg on, to incite	是他怂恿我去的，我本来不想去。 He egged me on to go; I didn't want to.
引诱	yǐnyòu	to lure, to entice	骗子用高工资引诱年轻人。 The scammers lure young people with high salaries.
诱惑	yòuhuò	temptation; to tempt	面对金钱的诱惑，他没有动心。 Faced with the temptation of money, he wasn't moved.
哄	hǒng	to coax; to fool	奶奶哄孩子睡觉。 Grandma is coaxing the baby to sleep.
蒙	mēng	to fool, to cheat (spoken)	你别想蒙{meng1}我，我都知道了。 Don't try to fool me: I know everything.
忽悠	hūyou	to con, to sweet-talk (spoken)	别被他忽悠了，那个产品根本没用。 Don't let him con you: that product is useless.
算计	suànjì	to scheme against; to calculate	他表面上很客气，其实一直在算计你。 He's polite on the surface, but he's been scheming against you all along.
诡计	guǐjì	trick, ruse	他的诡计被大家看穿了。 Everyone saw through his trick.
圈套	quāntào	trap, snare	这是一个圈套，你千万别上当。 It's a trap: whatever you do, don't fall for it.
搞鬼	gǎoguǐ	to play tricks, to be up to something	电脑突然坏了，是不是有人搞鬼? The computer suddenly broke: has someone been messing with it?
耍赖	shuǎlài	to go back on one's word, to be a sore loser	说好了输的人请客，你可不能耍赖。 We agreed the loser pays, so no wriggling out of it.
钻空子	zuānkòngzi	to exploit a loophole	有些人专门钻空子赚钱。 Some people make a living by exploiting loopholes.
把柄	bǎbǐng	handle; something to use against someone	他手里有我的把柄。 He's got something on me.
假装	jiǎzhuāng	to pretend	他假装没听见，继续看手机。 He pretended not to hear and went on looking at his phone.
伪装	wěizhuāng	to disguise; disguise	骗子伪装成银行职员打电话。 The scammer phoned pretending to be a bank employee.
掩饰	yǎnshì	to cover up, to hide	她笑着掩饰自己的紧张。 She smiled to hide her nerves.
瞒	mán	to hide the truth from	这件事你别瞒着我。 Don't keep this from me.
隐瞒	yǐnmán	to conceal	他向公司隐瞒了自己的病情。 He kept his illness hidden from the company.
隐情	yǐnqíng	a hidden reason, the inside story	他突然辞职，一定有什么隐情。 He resigned so suddenly that there must be more to it.

试探	shìtan	to sound out	我先试探一下他的态度。 Let me sound him out first.

pattern 你看你: look at you! (gentle scolding)

你看你	,	what they've done (again)

你看你 starts a fond telling-off, the way a parent or a friend says "look at you!" or "honestly, look what you've done". The scolding follows: 你看你，又迟到了. It's warm, not harsh, and is often said with a sigh or a smile.

你看你，说了多少次了，还是不听。 **nǐ kàn nǐ shuō le duōshao cì le háishi bù tīng** Look at you: how many times have I told you, and you still don't listen.

你看你，又被人忽悠了吧？ **nǐ kàn nǐ yòu bèi rén hūyou le ba** Look at you, conned again, weren't you?

你看你，脸都冻红了。 **nǐ kàn nǐ liǎn dōu dòng hóng le** Look at you, your face is red with cold.

dialogue too good to be true

little sister 安娜，林编辑，我差点儿被骗了！有个网站说暑假打工，一天能赚两千块。
Ānnà Línbiānjí wǒ chàdiǎnr bèi piàn le yǒu gè wǎngzhàn shuō shǔjià dǎgōng yì tiān néng zhuàn liǎngqiān kuài · Anna! Editor Lin! I nearly got scammed! A website said I could earn two thousand yuan a day in a summer job.

anna 你看你，我早就跟你说过，这么好的事哪儿有？你也太幼稚了。
nǐ kàn nǐ wǒ zǎo jiù gēn nǐ shuō guo zhème hǎo de shì nǎr yǒu nǐ yě tài yòuzhì le · Look at you! I told you ages ago: where would you find a deal that good? You're far too naive.

editor lin 我正在写这方面的报道。他们先用高工资引诱你，再让你交培训费，这就是圈套。
wǒ zhèngzài xiě zhè fāngmiàn de bàodào tāmen xiān yòng gāo gōngzī yǐnyòu nǐ zài ràng nǐ jiāo péixùn fèi zhè jiùshì quāntào · I'm writing a feature on exactly this. First they lure you with high pay, then they get you to pay a training fee. That's the trap.

little sister 对！他们还说名额有限，迫使我马上决定。我当时心慌得很。
duì tāmen hái shuō míngé yǒuxiàn pòshǐ wǒ mǎshàng juédìng wǒ dāngshí xīnhuāng de hěn · Yes! They said places were limited, to force me to decide on the spot. My heart was racing.

editor lin 典型的诡计。这些人非常狡猾，常常伪装成大公司的人事部门，说话很会哄人，很讨人喜欢。
diǎnxíng de guǐjì zhèxiē rén fēicháng jiǎohuá chángcháng wěizhuāng chéng dà gōngsī de rénshì bùmén shuōhuà hěn huì hǒng rén hěn tǎo rén xǐhuan · A classic trick. These people are very cunning: they often pose as the HR department of a big company, and they're very good at sweet-talking and charming people.

little sister 我假装很感兴趣，试探着问能不能先签合同，他们马上开始掩饰，说得越发不清楚了。
wǒ jiǎzhuāng hěn gǎn xìngqù shìtan zhe wèn néng bu néng xiān qiān hétóng tāmen mǎshàng kāishǐ yǎnshì shuō de yuèfā bù qīngchu le · I pretended to be interested and sounded them out by asking if I could sign a contract first. Straight away they started covering up, and what they said got vaguer and vaguer.

anna 还好你没有听从他们的安排。你这次很机灵！
hái hǎo nǐ méiyǒu tīngcóng tāmen de ānpái nǐ zhè cì hěn jīling · Thank goodness you didn't do what they said. That was quick thinking!

editor lin 你做得对。有的人被骗了觉得丢人，不好意思说，还瞒着家人，结果损失更大。
nǐ zuò de duì yǒude rén bèi piàn le juéde diūrén bù hǎoyìsi shuō hái mán zhe jiārén jiéguǒ sǔnshī gèng dà · You did the right thing. Some people feel so humiliated at being tricked that they won't say anything and even hide it from their families, and end up losing even more.

little sister 我同学就是这样。她被一个所谓的“老师”忽悠，交了五千块，还向父母隐瞒。那个“老师”说有几万个学生追随他。
wǒ tóngxué jiùshì zhèyàng tā bèi yí gè suǒwèi de lǎoshī hūyou jiāo le wǔqiān kuài hái xiàng fùmǔ yǐnmán nàge lǎoshī shuō yǒu jǐ wàn gè xuéshēng zhuīsuí tā · That's what happened to my classmate. She was conned by a so-called “teacher”, paid five thousand yuan and kept it from her parents. The “teacher” claimed tens of thousands of students followed him.

editor lin 这些人专门钻空子，算计想赚钱的年轻人。他们把自己的想法强加给你，让你顺从，随便使唤你；要是拿到你的把柄，还会逼迫你继续交钱。
zhèxiē rén zhuānmén zuān kòngzi suànjì xiǎng zhuàn qián de niánqīng rén tāmen bǎ zìjǐ de xiǎngfǎ qiángjiā gěi nǐ ràng nǐ shùncóng suíbiàn shǐhuan nǐ yàoshi ná dào nǐ de bǎbǐng hái huì bīpò nǐ jìxù jiāo qián · These people specialise in loopholes and prey on young people who want to make money. They force their ideas on you until you go along and they can order you about; if they get something on you, they'll pressure you into paying more.

anna 太可怕了。警察能制服他们吗？
tài kěpà le jǐngchá néng zhìfú tāmen ma · That's terrifying. Can the police stop them?

editor lin 能。上个月警察就抓了一批，我要在文章里向这些警察致敬。
néng shàng gè yuè jǐngchá jiù zhuā le yì pī wǒ yào zài wénzhāng lǐ xiàng zhèxiē jǐngchá zhìjìng · Yes. Last month the police caught a whole group of them, and I'm going to pay tribute to those officers in my article.

little sister 林编辑，做记者的是不是也有很多人想讨好你、巴结你?
Línbiānjí zuò jìzhě de shì bu shì yě yǒu hěn duō rén xiǎng tǎohǎo nǐ bājie nǐ · Editor Lin, do lots of people try to butter up and suck up to journalists too?

editor lin 当然有。有的公司请我吃饭，想拉拢我；有的节目只会迎合观众。可我们做新闻的，不能依附任何人，也不能被诱惑。
dāngrán yǒu yǒude gōngsī qǐng wǒ chī fàn xiǎng lālǒng wǒ yǒude jiémù zhǐ huì yínghé guānzhòng kě wǒmen zuò xīnwén de bù néng yīfù rènhé rén yě bù néng bèi yòuhuò · Of course. Some companies invite me to dinner to win me over, and some shows only pander to their audience. But in the news business we can't depend on anyone, and we can't be tempted.

little sister 我同学现在想要回钱，那个人却耍赖，说那是她自愿交的，还说是别人在搞鬼。这个人太无耻了!
wǒ tóngxué xiànzài xiǎng yào huí qián nà gè rén què shuǎlài shuō nà shì tā zìyuàn jiāo de hái shuō shì biérén zài gǎoguǐ zhè gè rén tài wúchǐ le · My classmate wants her money back now, but the man is wriggling out of it: he says she paid of her own free will, and claims someone else is behind it. He's utterly shameless!

editor lin 让她别再纵容这种人，马上报警。也别听别人怂恿，自己去找他，千万别抱侥幸心理。
ràng tā bié zài zòngróng zhè zhǒng rén mǎshàng bàojǐng yě bié tīng biérén sǒngyǒng zìjǐ qù zhǎo tā qiānwàn bié bào jiǎoxìng xīnlǐ · Tell her not to let people like that get away with it: call the police right away. And she shouldn't let anyone egg her on to go after him herself; she mustn't count on luck.

anna 你看你，今天学到的比上一个学期都多!
nǐ kàn nǐ jīntiān xué dào de bǐ shàng yí gè xuéqī dōu duō · Look at you: you've learned more today than in a whole term!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

魄
pò
soul

瞪
dèng
to glare, stare (wide-eyed)

莫
mò
nothing, no one (written)

若
ruò
if (written)

good to know · 忽悠 started as northeastern slang and went national through a famous comedy sketch (卖拐, 2001). It is playful: 别忽悠我 can be a joke between friends. 巴结, 讨好 and 迎合 all mean pleasing people: 巴结 is sucking up to someone powerful, 讨好 is trying to win someone over (not always bad), 迎合 is giving people what they want to hear.

You can now see through a sales pitch, a scam or an office schemer in Chinese, and tell a friend off kindly when they nearly fall for one.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 23 getting along

Talk about how people get along: meddling and stepping in, pranks and nicknames, losing out and coming to the rescue, and tease with 你说你一个X，……

Family dinners, offices and friendships are full of these everyday moves, and 你说你一个X is how Chinese parents and friends tease and scold.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
摆平	bǎipíng	to settle, to sort out	这件事交给我，我来摆平。 Leave it to me: I'll sort it out.
插手	chāshǒu	to get involved, to meddle	这是他们夫妻的事，你最好别插手。 This is between husband and wife: you'd better not get involved.
出面	chūmiàn	to step in, to act (on someone's behalf)	最后是校长出面，问题才解决。 In the end the head teacher stepped in, and only then was it solved.
过问	guòwèn	to concern oneself with, to look into	孩子大了，很多事父母不用过问。 Once children grow up, parents needn't concern themselves with lots of things.
理睬	lǐcǎi	to pay attention to (usually negative)	我跟他打招呼，他理都不理睬我。 I said hello to him, and he completely ignored me.
理会	lǐhuì	to take notice of	别理会他，他就是想引起注意。 Ignore him: he just wants attention.
回避	huíbì	to avoid, to dodge	他总是回避这个问题。 He always dodges this question.
逃避	táobì	to escape, to run away from	遇到困难不能逃避，要勇敢面对。 When you hit difficulties, you can't run away: face them bravely.
打发	dǎfa	to send away; to while away (time)	他随便说了几句，就把我打发走了。 He said a few words and sent me on my way.
打搅	dǎjiǎo	to disturb	对不起，打搅一下，请问洗手间在哪儿? Sorry to bother you, but where's the toilet?
捣乱	dǎoluàn	to make trouble, to mess about	小猫在桌子上捣乱，把东西都弄到了地上。 The kitten made havoc on the table and knocked everything onto the floor.
胡闹	húnào	to make a scene, to act up	别胡闹了，大家都在看着你。 Stop playing up: everyone's looking at you.
恶作剧	èzuòjù	prank, practical joke	别生气，这只是一个恶作剧。 Don't be cross: it was only a prank.
出丑	chūchǒu	to make a fool of oneself	我第一次上台唱歌，紧张得出丑了。 The first time I sang on stage, I was so nervous I made a fool of myself.
碰钉子	pèngdīngzi	to be rebuffed	他找领导要求加工资，又碰钉子了。 He asked the boss for a pay rise and got turned down again.

泼冷水	pōlěngshuǐ	to pour cold water on	他刚有个新想法，你别泼冷水。 He's just had a new idea: don't pour cold water on it.
吃亏	chīkuī	to lose out	他太老实，常常吃亏。 He's so honest that he often loses out.
沾光	zhānguāng	to benefit from someone else	你得{de2}了奖，我们也跟着沾光。 You've won a prize, and we all bask in your glory too.
纠缠	jiūchán	to pester; to entangle	那个人一直纠缠她，她只好报警。 That man kept pestering her, so she had to call the police.
拖累	tuōlěi	to be a burden on	我不想因为自己的病拖累家人。 I don't want my illness to be a burden on my family.
投奔	tóubèn	to go to (someone) for help	他刚到北京时，去投奔了一个老乡。 When he first came to Beijing, he went to stay with someone from his home town.
宠	chǒng	to spoil, to dote on	爷爷奶奶特别宠这个孙子。 The grandparents really spoil their grandson.
宠爱	chǒngài	to dote on; favour	她是家里最小的孩子，从小受到全家人的宠爱。 She's the youngest in the family and has been doted on by everyone since she was little.
见外	jiànwài	to treat someone as an outsider	都是一家人，别见外。 We're all family here: make yourself at home.
绰号	chuòhào	nickname	他的绰号叫“小博士”。 His nickname is “Little Doctor”.
外号	wàihào	nickname	同学们给他起了个外号。 His classmates gave him a nickname.
赐	cì	to bestow, to grant	父母赐给了我生命。 My parents gave me life.
献	xiàn	to offer, to present	孩子们给老师献上了一束花。 The children presented their teacher with a bunch of flowers.
抗拒	kàngjù	to resist	很多人很难抗拒甜点的诱惑。 Lots of people find it hard to resist desserts.
提防	dīfang	to be on guard against	这个人说话不老实，你要提防他。 This man isn't honest: watch out for him.
解围	jiěwéi	to rescue (someone from embarrassment)	我答不上来的时候，是他帮我解围。 When I couldn't answer, he came to my rescue.
磨合	móhé	to break in; to get used to each other	新婚夫妻需要一段时间磨合。 Newly-weds need time to get used to each other.
围观	wéiguān	to gather round and watch	街上有人吵架，很多人在围观。 There was a quarrel in the street, and a crowd gathered to watch.
玩弄	wánnòng	to toy with, to play with	他一边说话，一边玩弄手里的笔。 As he talked, he fiddled with the pen in his hand.

周旋	zhōuxuán	to deal with, to work round	她在几个客户之间周旋，忙了一整天。 She spent the whole day juggling several clients.

pattern 你说你一个x，……: here you are, a grown x, and …

你说你 + 一个 + who you are + ，+ what you shouldn't be doing

你说你一个X reminds someone who they are (a grown man, a manager, a student) before pointing out what doesn't fit: 你说你一个当爸爸的，整天玩手机. It is a scolding or a tease between people who are close, often with a smile.

你说你一个当爸爸的，整天玩手机，也不陪孩子。 **nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè dāng bàba de zhěng tiān wán shǒujī yě bù péi háizi** Honestly, you're a father, and you're on your phone all day instead of spending time with your child.

你说你一个年轻人，遇到一点困难就逃避，怎么行？ **nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè niánqīng rén yùdào yìdiǎn kùnnan jiù táobì zěnme xíng** You're a young man: running away the moment things get hard, how can that be right?

你说你一个经理，怎么连这点小事都摆不平？ **nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè jīnglǐ zěnme lián zhè diǎn xiǎo shì dōu bǎi bu píng** You're a manager, and you can't even sort out a little thing like this?

dialogue sunday dinner

ms zhang 安娜来了！快进来，都是一家人，别见外。
Ānnà lái le kuài jinlai dōu shì yì jiā rén bié jiànwài · Anna's here! Come in, come in: you're family, make yourself at home.

anna 阿姨好，叔叔好！打搅了。这束花献给最好的阿姨！
āyí hǎo shūshu hǎo dǎjiǎo le zhè shù huā xiàn gěi zuìhǎo de āyí · Hello, Auntie! Hello, Uncle! Sorry to impose. These flowers are for the best auntie in the world!

dr li 安娜每次来，我们都跟着沾光，能吃到好菜。
Ānnà měi cì lái wǒmen dōu gēn zhe zhānguāng néng chī dào hǎo cài · Every time Anna comes, we get the benefit: there's always a feast.

little sister 哥哥，坐这儿！……哈哈，你一坐下，椅子就叫起来了。果然出丑了吧！
gēge zuò zhèr hā hā nǐ yí zuò xià yǐzi jiù jiào qǐlai le guǒrán chūchǒu le ba · Brother, sit here! … Ha ha, the moment you sat down the chair made a noise. You've made a fool of yourself, just as I planned!

xiaoming 又是你的恶作剧！你说你一个大学生，还玩这种小孩子的游戏！真让人哭笑不得。
yòu shì nǐ de èzuòjù nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè dàxuéshēng hái wán zhè zhǒng xiǎo háizi de yóuxì zhēn ràng rén kūxiào bùdé · Another one of your pranks! Honestly, a university student, still playing kids' games like this! I don't know whether to laugh or cry.

little sister 我还知道你小时候的外号，叫“小馒头”！
wǒ hái zhīdào nǐ xiǎoshíhou de wàihào jiào xiǎo mántou · And I know your childhood nickname: "Little Bun"!

anna “小馒头”？哈哈，太滑稽了！
xiǎo mántou hā hā tài huájī le · "Little Bun"? Ha ha, that's hilarious!

xiaoming 谁告诉你的？太难为情了！妈妈，你怎么也跟着捣乱？
shéi gàosu nǐ de tài nánwéiqíng le māma nǐ zěnme yě gēn zhe dǎoluàn · Who told you? How embarrassing! Mum, don't you start too!

ms zhang 是我说的。他小时候胖胖的，邻居都叫他“小馒头”。他从小被奶奶宠坏了，特别娇气，谁也管不了。
shì wǒ shuō de tā xiǎoshíhou pàng pàng de línjū dōu jiào tā xiǎo mántou tā cóngxiǎo bèi nǎinai chǒng huài le tèbié jiāoqì shéi yě guǎn bu liǎo · It was me. He was a chubby little boy, and the neighbours all called him "Little Bun". His grandma spoiled him rotten: he was so pampered that nobody could do a thing with him.

little sister 现在这个绰号就是我的了。谢谢妈妈赐给我这么好玩的哥哥！
xiànzài zhège chuòhào jiùshì wǒ de le xièxie māma cì gěi wǒ zhème hǎowán de gēge · Now the nickname is all mine. Thank you, Mum, for blessing me with such a funny brother!

dr li 好了好了。小明，结婚以后，你们俩磨合得怎么样？
hǎo le hǎo le Xiǎomíng jiéhūn yǐhòu nǐmen liǎ móhé de zěnmeyàng · All right, that's enough. Xiaoming, how are you two getting used to married life?

xiaoming 还行。开始她总回避问题，现在我们有事就说，不逃避。
hái xíng kāishǐ tā zǒng huíbì wèntí xiànzài wǒmen yǒu shì jiù shuō bù táobì · Not bad. At first she always avoided problems; now if something's wrong we talk about it and don't run away from it.

ms zhang 好。你们小夫妻的事，我们做父母的不插手、不过问。
hǎo nǐmen xiǎo fūqī de shì wǒmen zuò fùmǔ de bù chāshǒu bú guòwèn · Good. What goes on between you young couple is none of our business: we won't interfere or ask questions.

dr li 你妈妈嘴上说不过问，其实每天都打电话，心里惦记着呢。
nǐ māma zuǐ shàng shuō bú guòwèn qíshí měi tiān dōu dǎ diànhuà xīnlǐ diànjì zhe ne · Your mum says she won't ask, but she phones every day: you're always on her mind.

xiaoming 对了，有个好消息：小刘答应来聚会了！可那个姓王的听说以后，到处说小刘不好，还想纠缠他。
duì le yǒu gè hǎo xiāoxi xiǎo Liú dāying lái jùhuì le kě nàge xìng Wáng de tīngshuō yǐhòu dàochù shuō xiǎo Liú bù hǎo hái xiǎng jiūchán tā · Oh, some good news: Xiao Liu has agreed to come to the reunion! But when Wang heard, he started badmouthing Xiao Liu everywhere and trying to pick a fight with him.

anna 别理会他。他要是再来，我出面帮你们摆平。
bié lǐhuì tā tā yàoshi zài lái wǒ chūmiàn bāng nǐmen bǎipíng · Ignore him. If he tries again, I'll step in and sort it out for you.

dr li 这种人要提防，他就喜欢玩弄这些小手段。不过也不用把他视为敌人，随便说几句把他打发走就行。
zhè zhǒng rén yào dīfang tā jiù xǐhuan wánnòng zhèxiē xiǎo shǒuduàn búguò yě búyòng bǎ tā shìwéi dírén suíbiàn shuō jǐ jù bǎ tā dǎfa zǒu jiù xíng · You do need to watch out for people like that: he loves playing these little games. But there's no need to treat him as an enemy. Just say a few words and send him on his way.

anna 李叔叔说得对。我每天在客户之间周旋，有时也碰钉子，最重要的是别跟这种人生气。
Lǐ shūshu shuō de duì wǒ měi tiān zài kèhù zhījiān zhōuxuán yǒushí yě pèng dīngzi zuì zhòngyào de shì bié gēn zhè zhǒng rén shēngqì · Uncle Li's right. I spend every day juggling clients and get turned down sometimes; the main thing is not to let people like that get to you.

dr li 当年我刚来北京，去投奔一个老乡，什么都不懂，也吃过很多亏。可我从来不想拖累别人。
dāngnián wǒ gāng lái Běijīng qù tóubèn yí gè lǎoxiāng shénme dōu bù dǒng yě chī guo hěn duō kuī kě wǒ cónglái bù xiǎng tuōlěi biérén · When I first came to Beijing I went to stay with someone from my home town. I knew nothing and lost out plenty of times. But I never wanted to be a burden on anyone.

ms zhang 好啦，菜都凉了！先吃饭。这道红烧肉谁也抗拒不了。
hǎo la cài dōu liáng le xiān chī fàn zhè dào hóng shāo ròu shéi yě kàngjù bu liǎo · Right, the food's getting cold! Let's eat. Nobody can resist this braised pork.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

痴
chī
infatuated

酬
chou
to repay a toast

契
qì
agreement

缘
yuán
fate, link

good to know · 回避 and 逃避 both mean avoiding: 回避 is keeping away from a topic or a person; 逃避 is running from a duty or reality, and sounds worse. Many Chinese children have a 小名 (a family name like 小馒头, 豆豆, 毛毛) used only at home: friends who learn it can tease you for years.

Next time you're at a Chinese family dinner, you'll get every joke, every nickname and every gentle scolding.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 24 mission: the reunion dinner

Follow a five-part story about a class reunion: the invitation, old friends, a troublemaker, a letter of apology and a farewell, using the whole unit's words for guests, friendship, quarrels and making up.

A mission pulls the unit together: every word for visits, friends, grudges, tricks and getting along, in one story.

chapter 1 the invitation

xiaoming 安娜，请帖我写好了，你帮我听听，看有没有失礼的地方。
Ānnà qǐngtiě wǒ xiě hǎo le nǐ bāng wǒ tīng ting kàn yǒu méiyǒu shīlǐ de dìfang · Anna, I've written the invitation. Have a listen and tell me if anything sounds rude.

xiaoming "亲爱的各位老同学：久违了！毕业十年，大家去了不同的城市，进了不同的圈子，工作忙，应酬多，很多人已经失去了联络。
qīnài de gèwèi lǎo tóngxué jiǔwéi le bìyè shí nián dàjiā qù le bù tóng de chéngshì jìn le bù tóng de quānzi gōngzuò máng yìngchou duō hěn duō rén yǐjīng shīqù le liánluò · "Dear old classmates: it's been far too long! In the ten years since graduation we've moved to different cities and different circles; work is busy, there are endless social engagements, and many of us have lost touch.

xiaoming 为了找回当年的情谊，我们定于下个月十五日晚上六点，在学校老食堂举行同学联欢会，欢迎大家带家人和外国友人一起来欢聚，宠物除外。
wèile zhǎo huí dāngnián de qíngyì wǒmen dìng yú xià gè yuè shíwǔ rì wǎnshang liù diǎn zài xuéxiào lǎo shítáng jǔxíng tóngxué liánhuān huì huānyíng dàjiā dài jiārén hé wàiguó yǒurén yìqǐ lái huānjù chǒngwù chúwài · To bring back the friendship of those years, we will hold a class reunion party at six in the evening on the fifteenth of next month, in the old university canteen. You are welcome to bring your families and friends from abroad (but not your pets).

xiaoming 我们还特邀了陈教授作为贵宾莅临。晚会少不了节目表演，每位来宾都有一份小礼品。学校对这次活动也予以了大力支持。
wǒmen hái tèyāo le Chénjiàoshòu zuòwéi guìbīn lìlín wǎnhuì shǎobuliǎo jiémù biǎoyǎn měi wèi láibīn dōu yǒu yí fèn xiǎo lǐpǐn xuéxiào duì zhè cì huódòng yě yǔyǐ le dàlì zhīchí · We have also specially invited Professor Chen to honour us as our guest of honour. There will of course be performances, and every guest will receive a small gift. The university has given this event its full support.

xiaoming 请收到请柬的同学尽快联络班长。在此，我们向各位老同学表示最诚挚的问候！"
qǐng shōudào qǐngjiǎn de tóngxué jǐnkuài liánluò bān zhǎng zài cǐ wǒmen xiàng gèwèi lǎo tóngxué biǎoshì zuì chéngzhì de wènhòu · If you receive this invitation, please contact the class monitor as soon as possible. We send our warmest greetings to all of you, old friends!"

anna 写得真好，既有礼节，又很亲热。社交礼仪你真是越来越懂了。陈教授答应来了吗？
xiě de zhēn hǎo jì yǒu lǐjié yòu hěn qīnrè shèjiāo lǐyí nǐ zhēn shì yuè lái yuè dǒng le Chénjiàoshòu dāying lái le ma · That's lovely: polite and warm at the same time. You're really getting the hang of social etiquette. Has Professor Chen accepted?

xiaoming 答应了。他说他巴不得见到我们这些老学生。别说上课了，当年他连我们打篮球都来看。
dāying le tā shuō tā bābudé jiàn dào wǒmen zhèxiē lǎo xuéshēng biéshuō shàngkè le dāngnián tā lián wǒmen dǎ lánqiú dōu lái kàn · Yes. He says he can't wait to see his old students. Forget lectures: back then he even came to watch us play basketball.

anna 那小刘呢？他必定会来吧？
nà xiǎo Liú ne tā bìdìng huì lái ba · And Xiao Liu? He's bound to come, isn't he?

xiaoming 他说一定来，还说要带一封信。不过那个姓王的也收到了请柬，班长说同学聚会不能冷落、排斥任何人。
tā shuō yídìng lái hái shuō yào dài yì fēng xìn búguò nàge xìng Wáng de yě shōudào le qǐngjiǎn bān zhǎng shuō tóngxué jùhuì bù néng lěngluò páichì rènhé rén · He says he'll be there, and he's bringing a letter. But Wang got an invitation too: the class monitor says a reunion mustn't leave anyone out.

anna 看在老同学的面子上，这也是应该的。你邀我一起去，正好我可以当你的帮手。
kàn zài lǎo tóngxué de miànzi shàng zhè yě shì yīnggāi de nǐ yāo wǒ yìqǐ qù zhènghǎo wǒ kěyǐ dāng nǐ de bāngshou · For old times' sake, that's fair enough. You've invited me along, so I can be your helper.

chapter 2 old faces

xiaoming 敬爱的陈教授，欢迎您！请这边就座。
jìngài de Chénjiàoshòu huānyíng nín qǐng zhèbiān jiùzuò · Dear Professor Chen, welcome! Please take a seat over here.

professor chen 谢谢你们的盛情邀请。哎呀，久违了！你们都工作了，有的还结婚了。
xièxie nǐmen de shèngqíng yāoqǐng āiyā jiǔwéi le nǐmen dōu gōngzuò le yǒude hái jiéhūn le · Thank you for such a kind invitation. My goodness, it's been so long! You all have jobs now, and some of you are even married.

xiaoming 同学们，大家一起向陈教授鞠躬致敬！当年要不是您关照，我们哪能顺利毕业？我敬您一杯茶，表示我们的敬意。
tóngxuémen dàjiā yìqǐ xiàng Chénjiàoshòu jūgōng zhìjìng dāngnián yàobúshì nín guānzhào wǒmen nǎ néng shùnlì bìyè wǒ jìng nín yì bēi chá biǎoshì wǒmen de jìngyì · Everyone, let's bow to Professor Chen together! If he hadn't looked after us back then, how would we ever have graduated? Let me offer you a cup of tea, as a token of our respect.

professor chen 何必这么客气？当年你们总在课上捣乱、玩恶作剧，现在倒这么懂礼貌了。
hébì zhème kèqi dāngnián nǐmen zǒng zài kè shàng dǎoluàn wán èzuòjù xiànzài dào zhème dǒng lǐmào le · There's no need for all that! You used to mess about in my lectures and play pranks, and now look how polite you are.

xiaoming 那是因为大家都敬重您、爱戴您。您看，同学们还给您献了花。
nà shì yīnwèi dàjiā dōu jìngzhòng nín àidài nín nín kàn tóngxuémen huán gěi nín xiàn le huā · That's because we all respect you and love you. Look, the class has even brought you flowers.

professor chen 好，好。小明啊，你人缘儿还是这么好。这位是？
hǎo hǎo Xiǎomíng a nǐ rényuánr háishi zhème hǎo zhè wèi shì · Lovely. Xiaoming, you're as popular as ever. And who's this?

anna 陈教授好，我是小明的朋友安娜。今天来作客，打搅大家了。
Chénjiàoshòu hǎo wǒ shì Xiǎomíng de péngyou Ānnà jīntiān lái zuòkè dǎjiǎo dàjiā le · Hello, Professor Chen. I'm Anna, Xiaoming's friend. I'm a guest tonight: sorry to intrude.

professor chen 别见外。你们俩怎么结识的？
bié jiànwài nǐmen liǎ zěnme jiéshí de · Not at all, make yourself at home. How did you two meet?

anna 我们是在学校门口相遇的。我迷路了，是小明帮了我。我们相识快十年了，也是缘分。他家里人现在还叫他的外号“小馒头”呢！
wǒmen shì zài xuéxiào ménkǒu xiāngyù de wǒ mílù le shì Xiǎomíng bāng le wǒ wǒmen xiāngshí kuài shí nián le yě shì yuánfèn tā jiā lǐ rén xiànzài hái jiào tā de wàihào xiǎo mántou ne · We met at the school gate: I was lost, and Xiaoming helped me. We've known each other nearly ten years; it must be fate. And his family still call him by his nickname, “Little Bun”!

xiaoming 别提我的绰号了。安娜，你看门口，莫非那是小刘？他竟真的来了！
bié tí wǒ de chuòhào le Ānnà nǐ kàn ménkǒu mòfēi nà shì xiǎo Liú tā jìng zhēn de lái le · Never mind my nickname. Anna, look at the door: could that be Xiao Liu? He really came!

anna 他好像愣在那儿了，不知道该往哪儿坐。
tā hǎoxiàng lèng zài nàr le bù zhīdào gāi wǎng nǎr zuò · He seems frozen to the spot, as if he doesn't know where to sit.

xiaoming 我去请他过来。我们俩以前是篮球队的搭档，今天我就跟他并肩坐。
wǒ qù qǐng tā guòlái wǒmen liǎ yǐqián shì lánqiú duì de dādàng jīntiān wǒ jiù gēn tā bìngjiān zuò · I'll go and bring him over. We used to be partners on the basketball team; tonight I'm sitting right beside him.

professor chen 对，老朋友之间难免有隔阂，可交情是我们之间的纽带，一直都在。快去吧。
duì lǎo péngyou zhījiān nánmiǎn yǒu géhé kě jiāoqing shì wǒmen zhījiān de niǔdài yìzhí dōu zài kuài qù ba · Yes. Old friends can't help drifting apart sometimes, but friendship is the tie between us, and it's always there. Go on.

chapter 3 trouble at the table

anna 那个大声说话的就是姓王的同学吧？他刚才一直在巴结陈教授，又是倒茶，又是讨好，还想拉拢几个同学站在他那边。

nàge dà shēng shuōhuà de jiùshì xìng Wáng de tóngxué ba tā gāngcái yìzhí zài bājie Chénjiàoshòu yòu shì dào chá yòu shì tǎohǎo hái xiǎng lālǒng jǐ gè tóngxué zhàn zài tā nàbiān · The loud one: that's Wang, isn't it? He's been sucking up to Professor Chen all evening, pouring tea and fawning over him, and trying to win a few classmates over to his side.

xiaoming 他就是这样，喜欢迎合有用的人，依附有地位的人。当年班上有几个人追随他，听从他的，他就整天使唤他们。

tā jiùshì zhèyàng xǐhuan yínghé yǒuyòng de rén yīfù yǒu dìwèi de rén dāngnián bān shàng yǒu jǐ gè rén zhuīsuí tā tīngcóng tā de tā jiù zhěng tiān shǐhuan tāmen · That's him: he plays up to useful people and attaches himself to powerful ones. Back then a few people in our class followed him and did what he said, and he ordered them about all day.

anna 看，他现在又在起哄，非得让小刘上台唱歌不可。他分明是想让小刘出丑。

kàn tā xiànzài yòu zài qǐhòng fēiděi ràng xiǎo Liú shàngtái chàng gē bù kě tā fēnmíng shì xiǎng ràng xiǎo Liú chūchǒu · Look, now he's egging Xiao Liu on, insisting he gets up and sings. He obviously wants Xiao Liu to make a fool of himself.

xiaoming 他还说小刘在上海碰钉子，混得不好，现在来投奔老乡，想跟着老同学沾光。

tā hái shuō xiǎo Liú zài Shànghǎi pèng dīngzi hùn de bù hǎo xiànzài lái tóubèn lǎoxiāng xiǎng gēn zhe lǎo tóngxué zhānguāng · He's even saying Xiao Liu got nowhere in Shanghai and has come running back to people from home, hoping to cash in on his old classmates.

anna 这简直是侮辱！他这是故意挑衅。难怪小刘脸都红了。大家都在围观，我真想跟他叫板。

zhè jiǎnzhí shì wǔrǔ tā zhè shì gùyì tiǎoxìn nánguài xiǎo Liú liǎn dōu hóng le dàjiā dōu zài wéiguān wǒ zhēn xiǎng gēn tā jiàobǎn · That's an outright insult! He's provoking him on purpose. No wonder Xiao Liu's gone red. Everyone's watching: I'd love to take him on.

xiaoming 你别惹他，也别跟他斗。他当年就爱欺负人、刁难新同学；我得罪过他，他就一直跟我作对，跟我过不去。

nǐ bié rě tā yě bié gēn tā dòu tā dāngnián jiù ài qīfu rén diāonàn xīn tóngxué wǒ dézuì guo tā tā jiù yìzhí gēn wǒ zuòduì gēn wǒ guòbuqù · Don't provoke him, and don't fight with him. He always liked picking on people and making life hard for new students; I got on his wrong side once, and he's opposed me and had it in for me ever since.

anna 犯不着跟他吵，我去给小刘解围。……各位，我是外国人，今天我先给大家唱一首中文歌，唱得不好，大家别嫌弃！

fànbuzháo gēn tā chǎo wǒ qù gěi xiǎo Liú jiěwéi gèwèi wǒ shì wàiguó rén jīntiān wǒ xiān gěi dàjiā chàng yì shǒu Zhōngwén gē chàng de bù hǎo dàjiā bié xiánqì · There's no point fighting with him. I'll go and rescue Xiao Liu. … Everyone, I'm the foreigner here, so let me sing you a Chinese song first. If I sing badly, please don't hold it against me!

xiaoming 掌声这么热烈，气氛一下子融洽了，也迫使姓王的安静了下来。你一个人就把事情摆平了！

zhǎngshēng zhème rèliè qìfēn yíxià zi róngqià le yě pòshǐ xìng Wáng de ānjìng le xialai nǐ yí gè rén jiù bǎ shìqing bǎipíng le · Such warm applause: suddenly the mood is friendly again, and it's forced Wang to quieten down. You sorted it out all by yourself!

professor chen 小王，你过来。不是我说你，你说你一个三十多岁的人，怎么还跟上学时一样胡闹？

xiǎo Wáng nǐ guòlái bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè sānshí duō suì de rén zěnme hái gēn shàngxué shí yíyàng húnào · Wang, come here. I hate to say it, but you're over thirty: how can you still act up like you did at school?

professor chen 当年是谁在中间挑拨，假装好心，其实在搞鬼，害得他们十年不联络？你隐瞒了真相这么多年，犯得着吗？何苦呢？

dāngnián shì shéi zài zhōngjiān tiǎobō jiǎzhuāng hǎoxīn qíshí zài gǎoguǐ hài de tāmen shí nián bù liánluò nǐ yǐnmán le zhēnxiàng zhème duō nián fàndezháo ma hékǔ ne · Who was it back then that stirred things up,

pretending to be kind while really making trouble, and kept them apart for ten years? You've hidden the truth all this time. Was it worth it? Why put yourself through that?

xiaoming 姓王的低着头，说他当时太嫉妒了，先试探小刘有多想要那份工作，然后才编了那个圈套。他说没想到会闹到这个份上。

xìng Wáng de dī zhe tóu shuō tā dāngshí tài jídù le xiān shìtan xiǎo Liú yǒu duō xiǎng yào nà fèn gōngzuò ránhòu cái biān le nàge quāntào tā shuō méi xiǎng dào huì nào dào zhège fèn shàng · Wang has his head down. He says he was terribly jealous at the time: he sounded out how badly Xiao Liu wanted the job, and then he set up the whole trap. He says he never thought it would go this far.

anna 这种诡计他都想得出来，真会算计人。好在他没有耍赖，向小刘道歉了，还说“如果我冒犯了你，请你原谅”。

zhè zhǒng guǐjì tā dōu xiǎng de chūlái zhēn huì suànjì rén hǎozài tā méiyǒu shuǎlài xiàng xiǎo Liú dàoqiàn le hái shuō rúguǒ wǒ màofàn le nǐ qǐng nǐ yuánliàng · Fancy him thinking up a trick like that: what a schemer. Luckily he didn't try to wriggle out of it: he apologised to Xiao Liu, and even said, "If I offended you, please forgive me."

professor chen 看在你今天诚恳的份上，这次就饶了你。以后别再想着哄人、蒙人了，也别把自己的想法强加给别人。

kàn zài nǐ jīntiān chéngkěn de fèn shàng zhè cì jiù ráo le nǐ yǐhòu bié zài xiǎng zhe hǒng rén mēng rén le yě bié bǎ zìjǐ de xiǎngfǎ qiángjiā gěi biérén · Seeing how sincere you are today, I'll let you off this time. From now on, stop trying to sweet-talk and fool people, and stop forcing your ideas on others.

anna 你看你，刚才还担心打起来，现在倒好，他们和解了。

nǐ kàn nǐ gāngcái hái dānxīn dǎ qǐlai xiànzài dào hǎo tāmen héjiě le · Look at you: a minute ago you were worried about a fight, and now they've made peace.

chapter 4 a letter from xiao liu

xiaoming 小刘说他太激动了，请我替他读一封信。

xiǎo Liú shuō tā tài jīdòng le qǐng wǒ tì tā dú yì fēng xìn · Xiao Liu says he's too emotional, so he's asked me to read a letter for him.

xiaoming “各位老同学：今天站在这里，我的心情不免有些激动。十年前，我以为最好的朋友背叛了我、出卖了我，觉得那是不可饶恕的事。我恨不得跟他断绝一切来往，后来我们的友谊果真破裂了。

gèwèi lǎo tóngxué jīntiān zhàn zài zhèlǐ wǒ de xīnqíng bùmiǎn yǒuxiē jīdòng shí nián qián wǒ yǐwéi zuìhǎo de péngyou bèipàn le wǒ chūmài le wǒ juéde nà shì bù kě ráoshù de shì wǒ hènbude gēn tā duànjué yíqiè láiwǎng hòulái wǒmen de yǒuyì guǒzhēn pòliè le · “Dear classmates: standing here today, I can't help being a little emotional. Ten years ago, I believed my best friend had betrayed me and sold me out, and I thought it was unforgivable. I wanted to cut off all contact with him, and our friendship really did break apart.

xiaoming 那几年我觉得自己被孤立、被抛弃了，敌视身边所有的人，把他当成仇人，甚至想过报复他。

nà jǐ nián wǒ juéde zìjǐ bèi gūlì bèi pāoqì le díshì shēnbiān suǒyǒu de rén bǎ tā dàngchéng chóurén shènzhì xiǎng guo bàofù tā · In those years I felt isolated and abandoned. I was hostile to everyone around me, treated him as an enemy, and even thought about getting back at him.

xiaoming 那时找工作，一个本地人尚且不容易，何况我一个外地来的穷学生？是陈教授接济我、勉励我，又把我托付给上海的一位前辈。他是我的恩人，他的鞭策和助力，就是我最大的后盾。这份恩情我一直没机会报答。

nà shí zhǎo gōngzuò yí gè běndì rén shàngqiě bù róngyì hékuàng wǒ yí gè wàidì lái de qióng xuéshēng shì Chénjiàoshòu jiējì wǒ miǎnlì wǒ yòu bǎ wǒ tuōfù gěi Shànghǎi de yí wèi qiánbèi tā shì wǒ de ēnrén tā de biāncè hé zhùlì jiùshì wǒ zuì dà de hòudùn zhè fèn ēnqíng wǒ yìzhí méi jīhuì bàodá · Back then, finding work was hard even for someone local, let alone a poor student from out of town like me. Professor Chen helped me with money, encouraged me, and put me in the care of a senior figure in Shanghai. He is my benefactor; his push and his help were my greatest support. I have never had the chance to repay that kindness.

xiaoming 现在我才知道，那只是一个误会。所谓“仇人”，并非真的仇人。我们之间的裂痕，其实是我自己不肯放过自己。我小看了我们的交情。

xiànzài wǒ cái zhīdào nà zhǐshì yí gè wùhuì suǒwèi chóurén bìngfēi zhēn de chóurén wǒmen zhījiān de lièhén qíshí shì wǒ zìjǐ bù kěn fàngguò zìjǐ wǒ xiǎokàn le wǒmen de jiāoqing · Only now do I know that it was all a misunderstanding. My so-called “enemy” was no enemy at all. The crack between us was really me refusing to let myself off the hook. I underestimated our friendship.

xiaoming 这次，小明特意来上海找我。他没有回避，向我道歉，还说我当年帮他找工作，他一直欠我一个人情。

zhè cì Xiǎomíng tèyì lái Shànghǎi zhǎo wǒ tā méiyǒu huíbì xiàng wǒ dàoqiàn hái shuō wǒ dāngnián bāng tā zhǎo gōngzuò tā yìzhí qiàn wǒ yí gè rénqíng · This time, Xiaoming came all the way to Shanghai specially to find me. He didn't avoid me: he apologised, and he said he'd owed me a favour ever since I helped him find a job.

xiaoming 其实，是我辜负了他，也亏待了这份友谊。他是我最要好的朋友，也是我的知己，总是想我之所想，急我之所急，我却怀疑他。请大家谅解我这些年的冷淡和失礼。

qíshí shì wǒ gūfù le tā yě kuīdài le zhè fèn yǒuyì tā shì wǒ zuì yàohǎo de péngyou yě shì wǒ de zhījǐ zǒngshì xiǎng wǒ zhī suǒ xiǎng jí wǒ zhī suǒ jí wǒ què huáiyí tā qǐng dàjiā liàngjiě wǒ zhèxiē nián de lěngdàn hé shīlǐ · In truth, I was the one who let him down and short-changed our friendship. He is my closest friend and the one who understands me best; he always thought of me and worried for me, and I doubted him. Please forgive my coldness and rudeness all these years.

xiaoming 这些年我的想法有所改变：人生的路上，有朋友相伴，才不孤单。我必将珍惜每一位老同学。

zhèxiē nián wǒ de xiǎngfǎ yǒusuǒ gǎibiàn rénshēng de lùshang yǒu péngyou xiāngbàn cái bù gūdān wǒ bìjiāng zhēnxī měi yí wèi lǎo tóngxué · My thinking has changed somewhat over the years: on life's road, it's friends beside you who keep you from being lonely. I will treasure every one of you.

xiaoming 最后，我要向陈教授致敬，也向每一位同学表示感谢。我们之间过往的恩怨，今天就让它过去吧。希望我们以后携手向前，像当年一样亲近。你们的老同学：小刘。”

zuìhòu wǒ yào xiàng Chénjiàoshòu zhìjìng yě xiàng měi yí wèi tóngxué biǎoshì gǎnxiè wǒmen zhījiān guòwǎng de ēnyuàn jīntiān jiù ràng tā guòqù ba xīwàng wǒmen yǐhòu xiéshǒu xiàng qián xiàng dāngnián yíyàng qīnjìn nǐmen de lǎo tóngxué xiǎo Liú · Finally, I want to pay tribute to Professor Chen, and to thank every one of you. Let whatever was between us in the past go tonight. I hope we'll go forward hand in hand, as close as we were back then. Your old classmate, Xiao Liu."

anna 大家都站起来鼓掌了，好几个人都在擦眼泪，更不用说小刘自己了。陈教授走过去安抚了小刘几句。

dàjiā dōu zhàn qǐlái gǔzhǎng le hǎo jǐ gè rén dōu zài cā yǎnlèi gèng búyòng shuō xiǎo Liú zìjǐ le Chénjiàoshòu zǒu guoqu ānfǔ le xiǎo Liú jǐ jù · Everyone is on their feet clapping, and several people are wiping away tears, not to mention Xiao Liu himself. Professor Chen has gone over to say a few comforting words to him.

professor chen 宽恕别人难，宽恕自己更难。小刘这封信，可谓今天最好的礼物。

kuānshù biérén nán kuānshù zìjǐ gèng nán xiǎo Liú zhè fēng xìn kěwèi jīntiān zuìhǎo de lǐwù · Forgiving others is hard, and forgiving yourself is harder still. Xiao Liu's letter is truly the best gift of the evening.

chapter 5 the send-off

xiaoming 陈教授，今天没怠慢您吧？我们送您回家。

Chénjiàoshòu jīntiān méi dàimàn nín ba wǒmen sòng nín huí jiā · Professor Chen, I hope we looked after you properly tonight? Let us see you home.

professor chen 不用送了，我就住在学校里。今天你们款待得这么周到，反倒让我不好意思了。这顿饭也算慰劳了我这个老头子。

búyòng sòng le wǒ jiù zhù zài xuéxiào lǐ jīntiān nǐmen kuǎndài de zhème zhōudào fǎndào ràng wǒ bù hǎoyìsi le zhè dùn fàn yě suàn wèiláo le wǒ zhège lǎo tóu zi · No need to see me off: I live on campus. You've looked after me so well tonight that I feel quite embarrassed. Consider this dinner a treat for an old man.

anna 您别这么说。要不是您出面，那位王同学不知还会胡闹到什么时候。

nín bié zhème shuō yàobúshì nín chūmiàn nà wèi Wáng tóngxué bù zhī hái huì húnào dào shénme shíhou · Please don't say that. If you hadn't stepped in, who knows how long Wang would have kept up his antics.

professor chen 这种事，旁人插手容易越帮越乱。好在他自己也愿意让步。以后别理会他那些小手段，但也要提防一点。

zhè zhǒng shì pángrén chāshǒu róngyì yuè bāng yuè luàn hǎozài tā zìjǐ yě yuànyì ràngbù yǐhòu bié lǐhuì tā nàxiē xiǎo shǒuduàn dàn yě yào dīfang yìdiǎn · In things like this, outsiders who meddle often make things worse. Luckily, he was willing to back down himself. In future, ignore his little games, but keep an eye on him all the same.

xiaoming 小刘明天早上回上海，我要去火车站给他送行。我们相约明年一起去旅行，还想联手做一个项目。

xiǎo Liú míngtiān zǎoshang huí Shànghǎi wǒ yào qù huǒchēzhàn gěi tā sòngxíng wǒmen xiāngyuē míngnián yìqǐ qù lǚxíng hái xiǎng liánshǒu zuò yí gè xiàngmù · Xiao Liu is going back to Shanghai tomorrow morning, and I'm seeing him off at the station. We've agreed to go travelling together next year, and we're even thinking of teaming up on a project.

professor chen 好啊！朋友之间不是谁迁就谁，也不是一方退让、一方妥协，而是互相体谅。以和为贵，以后免不了还会有矛盾，你们要保持联络。

hǎo a péngyou zhījiān bú shì shéi qiānjiù shéi yě bú shì yì fāng tuìràng yì fāng tuǒxié ér shì hùxiāng tǐliàng yǐ hé wéi guì yǐhòu miǎnbuliǎo hái huì yǒu máodùn nǐmen yào bǎochí liánluò · Wonderful! Between friends it isn't about one giving in to the other, or one backing down while the other compromises: it's about understanding each other. Harmony matters most. You're bound to disagree again sometimes, so stay in touch.

anna 我本来还想在中间调和，没想到你们自己就和好了。陈教授，下次我想去学校拜见您，向您请教历史问题，可否？

wǒ běnlái hái xiǎng zài zhōngjiān tiáohé méi xiǎng dào nǐmen zìjǐ jiù héhǎo le Chénjiàoshòu xià cì wǒ xiǎng qù xuéxiào bàijiàn nín xiàng nín qǐngjiào lìshǐ wèntí kěfǒu · I was going to try to smooth things over between them, but they made up on their own. Professor Chen, next time I'd like to come and pay you a visit at the university and ask you about history. Would that be all right?

professor chen 当然！我那儿随时欢迎你们来串门。你们不妨每逢过年就来看看我。好了，大家早点回去吧，代我问候你们的家人。

dāngrán wǒ nàr suíshí huānyíng nǐmen lái chuànmén nǐmen bùfáng měi féng guònián jiù lái kàn kan wǒ hǎo le dàjiā zǎo diǎn huíqù ba dài wǒ wènhòu nǐmen de jiārén · Of course! You're welcome to drop in any time. Why not come and see me every New Year? Now, off you all go home, and give my regards to your families.

xiaoming 安娜，今天谢谢你。要不是你，我和小刘的交情就断了。

Ānnà jīntiān xièxie nǐ yàobúshì nǐ wǒ hé xiǎo Liú de jiāoqing jiù duàn le · Anna, thank you for today. If it weren't for you, my friendship with Xiao Liu would be over.

anna 别说是你了，连我都差点哭了。不过不是我说你，下次再有误会，可别再等十年了！

biéshuō shì nǐ le lián wǒ dōu chà diǎn kū le búguò bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ xià cì zài yǒu wùhuì kě bié zài děng shí nián le · Forget you: even I nearly cried. But I have to say it: next time there's a misunderstanding, don't wait another ten years!

You've just read a whole story of friendship lost and found, in advanced Chinese. Unit 3, done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 25 the family tree

Name every branch of a Chinese family tree (uncles, in-laws, step-parents, twins, ancestors) and add a surprised "you know what, actually …" with (你)还别说.

Chinese family words are precise: which side, older or younger, by blood or by marriage. Getting them right shows real respect.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
伯伯	bóbo	uncle (father's older brother)	伯伯每年春节都给我们寄好吃的。 Every Spring Festival, my uncle sends us something delicious.
伯父	bófù	uncle (father's older brother; formal)	我的伯父是一位老医生。 My uncle is a doctor of many years.
伯母	bómǔ	aunt (wife of father's older brother)	伯母做的饺子特别好吃。 My aunt's dumplings are delicious.
爹	diē	dad (northern, rural)	我爹年轻时是村里有名的中医。 When my dad was young he was a well-known doctor of Chinese medicine in the village.
娘	niáng	mum (northern, rural)	娘，我回来了！ Mum, I'm home!
嫂子	sǎozi	sister-in-law (older brother's wife)	嫂子对我特别好，像亲姐姐一样。 My sister-in-law is so good to me, just like a real older sister.
女婿	nǚxu	son-in-law	王老师对这个女婿非常满意。 Teacher Wang is very happy with her son-in-law.
岳父	yuèfù	father-in-law (wife's father)	小明每个周末都陪岳父去钓鱼。 Every weekend Xiaoming goes fishing with his father-in-law.
岳母	yuèmǔ	mother-in-law (wife's mother)	岳母做了一桌子菜欢迎新女婿。 His mother-in-law cooked a whole table of dishes to welcome her new son-in-law.
继父	jìfù	stepfather	她的继父对她像亲生女儿一样好。 Her stepfather treats her as well as his own daughter.
继母	jìmǔ	stepmother	童话里的继母常常很坏，可现实中不一定。 Stepmothers in fairy tales are often wicked, but not necessarily in real life.
祖父	zǔfù	grandfather (father's father; formal)	我的祖父是一名老师。 My grandfather was a teacher.
祖母	zǔmǔ	grandmother (father's mother; formal)	祖母活到了九十八岁。 My grandmother lived to ninety-eight.
祖宗	zǔzong	ancestors	这是祖宗留下来的规矩。 This is a rule handed down from our ancestors.

祖籍	zǔjí	ancestral home	我在北京出生，祖籍是西安。 I was born in Beijing, but my family comes from Xi'an.
祖传	zǔchuán	handed down from one's ancestors	这家饭店的红烧肉是祖传的做法。 This restaurant's braised pork is made the way the family has made it for generations.
籍贯	jíguàn	native place (on forms)	表格上要填写姓名、年龄和籍贯。 On the form you fill in your name, age and native place.
姓氏	xìngshì	surname, family name	王、李、张是中国最常见的姓氏。 Wang, Li and Zhang are the most common surnames in China.
家族	jiāzú	clan, extended family	他们家族在这里生活了三百多年。 Their family has lived here for over three hundred years.
家世	jiāshì	family background	他家世普通，全靠自己的努力。 He comes from an ordinary family and owes everything to his own hard work.
家境	jiājìng	family circumstances (money)	她家境困难，但学习非常努力。 Her family is badly off, but she studies extremely hard.
家教	jiājiào	upbringing; private tutor	这孩子很有礼貌，一看就是有家教的。 This child is so polite: you can tell he's been well brought up.
后裔	hòuyì	descendant	据说他是一位古代诗人的后裔。 He is said to be a descendant of an ancient poet.
子孙	zǐsūn	children and grandchildren, descendants	老人家看着满屋子的子孙，笑得合不上嘴。 The old man looked at the room full of children and grandchildren and couldn't stop smiling.
子弟	zǐdì	sons, young people (of a family or group)	他是农民子弟，从小就很能干。 He's a farmer's son and has been hard-working since he was small.
血缘	xuèyuán	blood relationship	他们虽然没有血缘关系，却像亲兄弟一样。 Though they aren't related by blood, they're like real brothers.
血脉	xuèmài	bloodline	不管走到哪里，我们身上都流着同样的血脉。 Wherever we go, the same blood runs in our veins.
同胞	tóngbāo	siblings; compatriots	他们是同胞兄弟。 They are full brothers.
亲生	qīnshēng	one's own (child, parent) by birth	他不是我亲生的，但我把他当亲儿子。 He isn't my own by birth, but I treat him as my own son.
双胞胎	shuāngbāotāi	twins	这对双胞胎长{zhang3}得一模一样。 These twins look exactly alike.
孪生	luánshēng	twin (born)	她们是孪生姐妹。 They're twin sisters.
闺女	guīnü	daughter; girl (northern)	我闺女今年考上大学了。 My daughter got into university this year.
丫头	yātou	girl, lass	这个小丫头真聪明。 This little girl is really clever.

少女	shàonǚ	young girl, teenage girl	照片上的少女就是年轻时的奶奶。 The girl in the photo is Grandma when she was young.
老人家	lǎorenjia	elderly person (respectful)	您老人家身体还好吗? Are you keeping well, sir?

pattern (你)还别说: you know what, actually ...

(你)还别说 **,** **something that turns out to be true**

(你)还别说 admits, a little surprised, that something is true after all: “you know what, actually ...”. It often follows doubt: 我本来不信，你还别说，真管用 “I didn’t believe it, but it actually works”. It has nothing to do with 别说 “let alone”.

你还别说，这个办法真有用。 **nǐ hái biéshuō zhège bànfǎ zhēn yǒuyòng** You know what, this method actually works.

我本来不想去，还别说，去了以后玩得特别开心。 **wǒ běnlái bù xiǎng qù hái biéshuō qù le yǐhòu wán de tèbié kāixīn** I didn’t want to go, but actually, once I got there I had a brilliant time.

你还别说，这孩子越长越像他爷爷了。 **nǐ hái biéshuō zhè háizi yuè zhǎng yuè xiàng tā yéye le** You know, the more this boy grows, the more he looks like his grandfather.

dialogue the family tree

little sister 爸爸，陈教授让我们写家族的历史。我们李家的祖籍到底在哪儿？
bàba Chénjiàoshòu ràng wǒmen xiě jiāzú de lìshǐ wǒmen Lǐ jiā de zǔjí dàodǐ zài nǎr · Dad, Professor Chen wants us to write our family history. Where does the Li family actually come from?

dr li 在西安。我上小学的时候，你祖父来北京工作，把我也带来了，后来就留下了。你填表时，籍贯那一栏一直写的就是西安。
zài Xīān wǒ shàng xiǎoxué de shíhou nǐ zǔfù lái Běijīng gōngzuò bǎ wǒ yě dài lái le hòulái jiù liúxia le nǐ tián biǎo shí jíguàn nà yì lán yìzhí xiě de jiùshì Xīān · Xi'an. When I was at primary school, your grandfather came to Beijing for work and brought me with him, and we stayed. When you fill in forms, you've always written Xi'an as your native place.

little sister 原来如此！那我们家世怎么样？莫非是哪位名人的后裔？
yuánlái rúcǐ nà wǒmen jiāshì zěnmeyàng mòfēi shì nǎ wèi míngrén de hòuyì · So that's why! And what's our family background? Could we be descended from someone famous?

dr li 哈哈，你想多了。我们家是普通的农民家庭，朴实得很，我就是农民子弟。你祖母是村里的老师，家境不好，可家教特别严。
hā hā nǐ xiǎng duō le wǒmen jiā shì pǔtōng de nóngmín jiātíng pǔshí de hěn wǒ jiùshì nóngmín zǐdì nǐ zǔmǔ shì cūn lǐ de lǎoshī jiājìng bù hǎo kě jiājiào tèbié yán · Ha, dream on. We're an ordinary farming family, as plain and simple as they come; I'm a farmer's son. Your grandmother was the village teacher; the family was poor, but very strict about upbringing.

ms zhang 你看这张照片，这个穿着白裙子的少女就是你奶奶。那时候她多腼腆啊。
nǐ kàn zhè zhāng zhàopiàn zhège chuān zhe bái qúnzi de shàonǚ jiùshì nǐ nǎinai nà shíhou tā duō miǎntiǎn a · Look at this photo: the girl in the white skirt is your grandma. How shy she was back then.

little sister 你还别说，我跟她长得真像！
nǐ hái biéshuō wǒ gēn tā zhǎng de zhēn xiàng · You know what, I really do look like her!

dr li 那时候村里人都叫爸爸“爹”，叫妈妈“娘”，听起来很亲热。我小时候也这么叫。
nà shíhou cūn lǐ rén dōu jiào bàba diē jiào māma niáng tīng qǐlai hěn qīnrè wǒ xiǎoshíhou yě zhème jiào · Back then, people in the village called their father “diē” and their mother “niáng”: it sounds so affectionate. I did too, as a boy.

little sister 这两个一模一样的小丫头是谁？
zhè liǎng gè yìmú yíyàng de xiǎo yātou shì shéi · Who are these two identical little girls?

ms zhang 是你伯伯的闺女，一对孪生姐妹。长得一模一样，性格却一个外向，一个害羞。你伯父和伯母现在还住在西安。
shì nǐ bóbo de guīnü yí duì luánshēng jiěmèi zhǎng de yìmú yíyàng xìnggé què yí gè wàixiàng yí gè hàixiū nǐ bófù hé bómǔ xiànzài hái zhù zài Xīān · Your uncle's daughters: twin sisters. They look exactly alike, but one is outgoing and the other is shy. Your uncle and aunt still live in Xi'an.

little sister 双胞胎！我怎么不知道？你们也太见外了吧！对了，我们家有没有祖传的东西？
shuāngbāotāi wǒ zěnme bù zhīdào nǐmen yě tài jiànwài le ba duì le wǒmen jiā yǒu méiyǒu zǔchuán de dōngxi · Twins! How did I not know? Talk about treating me like an outsider! Oh, does our family have anything handed down through the generations?

dr li 有一本祖宗留下来的书，上面写着我们这个姓氏从哪儿来和家族里每一代子孙的名字。
yǒu yì běn zǔzong liú xialai de shū shàngmiàn xiě zhe wǒmen zhège xìngshì cóng nǎr lái hé jiāzú lǐ měi yídài zǐsūn de míngzi · There's a book left by our ancestors: it tells where our surname comes from and lists the names of every generation of the family.

little sister 太棒了！那嫂子家呢？你们不是说她爸爸也是医生吗？
tài bàng le nà sǎozi jiā ne nǐmen bú shì shuō tā bàba yě shì yīshēng ma · Brilliant! And my sister-in-law's family? Didn't you say her dad was a doctor too?

ms zhang 对，你哥哥的岳父是中医，岳母是护士。他们特别喜欢这个女婿，说他很体贴。
duì nǐ gēge de yuèfù shì zhōngyī yuèmǔ shì hùshi tāmen tèbié xǐhuan zhège nǚxu shuō tā hěn tǐtiē · Yes, your

brother's father-in-law is a doctor of Chinese medicine, and his mother-in-law is a nurse. They adore their son-in-law and say he's very considerate.

little sister 我同学家更复杂：她爸爸再婚了，她有一个继母；她妈妈也再婚了，她还有一个继父。她跟继母一开始有隔阂，后来也慢慢磨合好了。

wǒ tóngxué jiā gèng fùzá tā bàba zài hūn le tā yǒu yí gè jìmǔ tā māma yě zài hūn le tā hái yǒu yí gè jìfù tā gēn jìmǔ yì kāishǐ yǒu géhé hòulái yě màn màn móhé hǎo le · My classmate's family is even more complicated: her dad remarried, so she has a stepmother; her mum remarried too, so she has a stepfather as well. At first there was a distance between her and her stepmother, but bit by bit they've learned to get along.

dr li 有没有血缘关系不重要，重要的是一家人互相照顾。就算不是同胞兄弟姐妹，感情也能像血脉一样相连。

yǒu méiyǒu xuèyuán guānxì bú zhòngyào zhòngyào de shì yì jiā rén hùxiāng zhàogù jiùsuàn bú shì tóngbāo xiōngdì jiěmèi gǎnqíng yě néng xiàng xuèmài yíyàng xiānglián · Whether you're related by blood doesn't matter; what matters is that a family looks after each other. Even if you aren't brothers and sisters by birth, the bond can be as close as blood.

little sister 我巴不得马上去西安看看伯伯，还有那本书。

wǒ bābudé mǎshàng qù Xīān kàn kan bóbo hái yǒu nà běn shū · I can't wait to go to Xi'an and see my uncle, and that book.

ms zhang 好啊，过年我们一起去。别说你了，连你爸爸都十年没回老家了。他老人家也想家了。

hǎo a guònián wǒmen yìqǐ qù biéshuō nǐ le lián nǐ bàba dōu shí nián méi huí lǎojiā le tā lǎorenjia yě xiǎng jiā le · All right, let's all go at New Year. Forget you: even your dad hasn't been back home for ten years. The old man is homesick too.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

逢
féng
to come across; every time (it is)

纽
niǔ
button, knot

恩
ēn
kindness, grace

抚
fǔ
to stroke

good to know · Chinese family words tell you which side: your father's older brother is 伯伯 (his wife 伯母), his younger brother is 叔叔 (wife 婶婶); your mother's brother is 舅舅. Address a friend's parents as 伯父 and 伯母 (or 叔叔 and 阿姨): calling them by name would be rude.

You can now draw a Chinese family tree and name everyone on it, in the right order and with the right respect.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 26 love and marriage

Talk about couples, weddings and staying single, play things down with 罢了 and 而已, and shrug "whether X or Y" with X也好，Y也罢.

Weddings are the biggest family events in China, and everyone, from aunties to colleagues, will ask you about love and marriage.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
伴侣	bànlǚ	partner, companion (in life)	找一个能相伴一生的伴侣不容易。 It isn't easy to find a partner to share your whole life with.
配偶	pèiǒu	spouse (formal)	表格上要写配偶的姓名。 On the form you have to write your spouse's name.
两口子	liǎngkǒuzi	husband and wife, the couple	他们两口子感情特别好。 The two of them are really close.
老伴儿	lǎobànr	one's husband or wife (of an old couple)	爷爷和他的老伴儿结婚五十年了。 Grandpa and his wife have been married for fifty years.
恩爱	ēnài	loving, devoted (couple)	他们结婚几十年，一直很恩爱。 They've been married for decades and are still devoted to each other.
和睦	hémù	harmonious (family)	他们一家人生活得很和睦。 The whole family lives together in harmony.
美满	měimǎn	happy and complete	祝你们婚姻美满，生活幸福！ Wishing you a happy marriage and a wonderful life!
情侣	qínglǚ	couple (in love)	公园里有很多情侣在散步。 Lots of couples are strolling in the park.
情人	qíngrén	lover, sweetheart	情人节那天，花店特别忙。 Florists are especially busy on Valentine's Day.
吻	wěn	to kiss; kiss	妈妈吻了吻孩子的脸。 The mother kissed her child on the cheek.
异性	yìxìng	the opposite sex	他们只是普通的异性朋友。 They're just ordinary friends of the opposite sex.
单身	dānshēn	single; to be single	她三十岁了，还是单身。 She's thirty and still single.
独身	dúshēn	to stay single	他一直独身，把所有时间都给了研究。 He never married and gave all his time to his research.
成家	chéngjiā	to marry, to settle down	孩子们都成家了，我们也放心了。 The children are all married now, so we can stop worrying.
婚纱	hūnshā	wedding dress	她穿上婚纱，美极了。 In her wedding dress, she looked stunning.

喜酒	xǐjiǔ	wedding banquet	什么时候请我们吃喜酒啊? So when are you inviting us to the wedding?
喜糖	xǐtáng	wedding sweets	同事结婚，给每个人都发了喜糖。 When our colleague got married, she gave everyone wedding sweets.
嫁妆	jiàzhuang	dowry	以前女儿出嫁，父母要准备很多嫁妆。 In the past, when a daughter married, her parents had to prepare a big dowry.
蜜月	mìyuè	honeymoon	他们打算去云南度蜜月。 They're planning a honeymoon in Yunnan.
男方	nánfāng	the groom's side	按照传统，婚礼主要由男方准备。 By tradition, the groom's side mostly organises the wedding.
女方	nǚfāng	the bride's side	女方的亲戚也从外地赶来了。 The bride's relatives have also come from out of town.
复合	fùhé	to get back together	他们分手半年，又复合了。 They split up for six months and then got back together.
出走	chūzǒu	to run away (from home), to leave	电影里的女孩子为了梦想离家出走。 The girl in the film runs away from home to follow her dream.
做主	zuòzhǔ	to decide, to have the final say	我的婚事我自己做主。 I'll decide for myself who I marry.
归宿	guīsù	home, final destination	父母希望女儿找到一个好归宿。 Her parents hope their daughter will find a good husband and settle down.
团聚	tuánjù	to be reunited	春节是全家团聚的日子。 The Spring Festival is when the whole family comes together.
探亲	tànqīn	to visit one's family	他在外地工作，每年回家探亲一次。 He works far away and goes home to see his family once a year.
怀抱	huáibào	embrace, arms; to hold in one's arms	孩子在妈妈的怀抱里睡着了。 The child fell asleep in his mother's arms.
罢了	bàle	that's all, merely	我只是随便说说罢了，你别生气。 I was only saying it: don't be upset.
矣	yǐ	(written) already, indeed	人生得{de2}一知己，足矣。 To find one true friend in life is enough.
而已	éryǐ	that's all, nothing more	这不过是一个小问题而已。 It's just a small problem, that's all.
也罢	yěbà	all right then; whether … or	不去也罢，在家好好休息。 Not going is fine too: have a good rest at home.

pattern 罢了，而已，矣 and x也好，y也罢

不过 / 只是 … | 罢了 / 而已 | X也好，Y也罢

罢了 and 而已 end a sentence with “that’s all, nothing more”, often after 不过 or 只是: 我只是说说罢了. 也罢 is “all right then”, and X也好，Y也罢 means “whether X or Y, it doesn’t matter”. 矣 is classical 了, kept in sayings: 足矣 “that is enough”.

他不过是说说罢了，不会真的走。 **tā búguò shì shuō shuo bàle bú huì zhēn de zǒu** He’s only saying it; he won’t really leave.

我们只是普通朋友而已。 **wǒmen zhǐshì pǔtōng péngyou éryǐ** We’re just ordinary friends, that’s all.

去也好，不去也罢，你自己决定。 **qù yěhǎo bú qù yěbà nǐ zìjǐ juédìng** Go or don’t go: it’s up to you.

有你们这些朋友，足矣。 **yǒu nǐmen zhèxiē péngyou zú yǐ** Having friends like you is enough.

dialogue a month to the wedding

ms zhang 小明，你们两口子春天就登记了，喜酒到底什么时候办？亲戚们都在问。
Xiǎomíng nǐmen liǎngkǒuzi chūntiān jiù dēngjì le xǐjiǔ dàodǐ shénme shíhou bàn qīnqimen dōu zài wèn · Xiaoming, you two registered in the spring. When are you finally holding the wedding banquet? All the relatives keep asking.

xiaoming 定了，下个月十八号。女方的亲戚要从外地来，所以日子要早点定。男方这边主要是您和爸爸帮忙。
dìng le xià gè yuè shíbā hào nǚfāng de qīnqi yào cóng wàidì lái suǒyǐ rìzi yào zǎo diǎn dìng nánfāng zhèbiān zhǔyào shì nín hé bàba bāngmáng · It's fixed: the eighteenth of next month. Her relatives are coming from out of town, so the date had to be set early. On the groom's side, it's mostly you and Dad helping.

anna 太好了！终于能吃到你们的喜酒、喜糖了。婚纱选好了吗？
tài hǎo le zhōngyú néng chī dào nǐmen de xǐjiǔ xǐtáng le hūnshā xuǎn hǎo le ma · Wonderful! At last I get my wedding banquet and wedding sweets. Has she chosen the dress?

xiaoming 选好了。她说中式的也好，西式的也罢，只要舒服就行，最后两套都要了。我也只好迁就她。
xuǎn hǎo le tā shuō zhōng shì de yěhǎo xī shì de yěbà zhǐyào shūfu jiù xíng zuìhòu liǎng tào dōu yào le wǒ yě zhǐhǎo qiānjiù tā · Yes. She said Chinese style or Western, as long as it was comfortable. In the end she went for both, and I just had to go along with it.

ms zhang 我们那时候哪有婚纱啊，结婚无非是两家人一起吃顿饭罢了。
wǒmen nà shíhou nǎ yǒu hūnshā a jiéhūn wúfēi shì liǎng jiā rén yìqǐ chī dùn fàn bàle · In our day there were no wedding dresses. Getting married was just the two families having a meal together.

anna 阿姨，那时候还有嫁妆吗？
āyí nà shíhou hái yǒu jiàzhuang ma · Auntie, were there still dowries back then?

ms zhang 有啊。我的嫁妆不过是两床被子、一个箱子而已。那时候很多婚事都是父母做主，我们算是自己选的。
yǒu a wǒ de jiàzhuang búguò shì liǎng chuáng bèizi yí gè xiāngzi éryǐ nà shíhou hěn duō hūn shì dōu shì fùmǔ zuòzhǔ wǒmen suànshì zìjǐ xuǎn de · Oh yes. My dowry was just two quilts and a trunk, nothing more. Back then many marriages were decided by the parents; we were lucky enough to choose for ourselves.

xiaoming 现在都是自己做主了。我们登记那天，看到表格上“配偶”那一栏写着她的名字，我终于如愿以偿了，高兴了半天。
xiànzài dōu shì zìjǐ zuòzhǔ le wǒmen dēngjì nà tiān kàn dào biǎogé shàng pèiǒu nà yì lán xiě zhe tā de míngzi wǒ zhōngyú rúyuànyǐcháng le gāoxìng le bàntiān · Now everyone decides for themselves. The day we registered, I saw her name written in the “spouse” box on the form: I'd finally got my wish, and I was happy for hours.

anna 真甜蜜！那蜜月去哪儿？
zhēn tiánmì nà mìyuè qù nǎr · How sweet! So where's the honeymoon?

xiaoming 去云南，就是我们第一次一起旅行的地方，她一直念念不忘。
qù Yúnnán jiùshì wǒmen dì yī cì yìqǐ lǚxíng de dìfang tā yìzhí niànniàn búwàng · Yunnan: the place where we went on our first trip together. She's never stopped thinking about it.

ms zhang 上次你爷爷奶奶庆祝结婚五十年，你们都看到了吧？老两口还那么恩爱，爷爷还轻轻吻了吻奶奶的脸。
shàng cì nǐ yéye nǎinai qìngzhù jiéhūn wǔshí nián nǐmen dōu kàn dào le ba lǎo liǎng kǒu hái nàme ēnài yéye hái qīng qīng wěn le wen nǎinai de liǎn · You all saw Grandpa and Grandma celebrating fifty years of marriage last time, didn't you? Still so devoted to each other: Grandpa even gave Grandma a little kiss on the cheek.

anna 我看了特别感动，差点热泪盈眶。中国人说“老伴儿”，确实是老了以后最好的伴。
wǒ kàn le tèbié gǎndòng chà diǎn rèlèi yíngkuàng Zhōngguó rén shuō lǎobànr quèshí shì lǎo le yǐhòu zuìhǎo de bàn · I was so moved that I nearly had tears in my eyes. Chinese people say “lǎobànr”, and an old companion really is the best company when you're old.

xiaoming 安娜，你呢？还是单身吗？
Ānnà nǐ ne háishi dānshēn ma · And you, Anna? Still single?

anna 是啊。单身也好，成家也罢，我都无所谓。可我妈妈总催我早点找个伴侣，有个好归宿。她远在英国，一直牵挂着我。

shì a dānshēn yěhǎo chéngjiā yěbà wǒ dōu wúsuǒwèi kě wǒ māma zǒng cuī wǒ zǎo diǎn zhǎo gè bànlǚ yǒu gè hǎo guīsù tā yuǎn zài Yīngguó yìzhí qiānguà zhe wǒ · Yes. Single or married, I don't mind either way. But my mum keeps nagging me to find a partner and settle down. She's far away in the UK and always worries about me.

ms zhang 你还年轻，慢慢来。我们公司也有人选择独身，生活得很自在。多交几个异性朋友，也没什么不好。

nǐ hái niánqīng màn màn lái wǒmen gōngsī yě yǒu rén xuǎnzé dúshēn shēnghuó de hěn zìzai duō jiāo jǐ gè yìxìng péngyou yě méi shénme bù hǎo · You're still young: take your time. There are people at my company who've chosen to stay single, and they live very happily. Having a few male friends wouldn't hurt either.

xiaoming 我有个同事，跟女朋友分手半年，后来两个人学会了互相体谅，情人节那天又复合了。

wǒ yǒu gè tóngshì gēn nǚpéngyou fēnshǒu bàn nián hòulái liǎng gè rén xuéhuì le hùxiāng tǐliàng qíngrén jié nà tiān yòu fùhé le · A colleague of mine split up with his girlfriend for six months; then they learned to make allowances for each other, and they got back together on Valentine's Day.

anna 跟电视剧一样！电视剧里的情侣总是分了又合，有的还离家出走，最后又回到对方的怀抱。

gēn diànshìjù yíyàng diànshìjù lǐ de qínglǚ zǒngshì fēn le yòu hé yǒude hái lí jiā chūzǒu zuìhòu yòu huí dào duìfāng de huáibào · Just like a TV drama! Couples in dramas are always splitting up and getting back together; some even run away from home, and in the end they fall back into each other's arms.

ms zhang 生活又不是电视剧。一家人和睦、美满，比什么都好。你妈妈要是想你，就让她来北京探亲，跟你团聚。

shēnghuó yòu bú shì diànshìjù yì jiā rén hémù měimǎn bǐ shénme dōu hǎo nǐ māma yàoshi xiǎng nǐ jiù ràng tā lái Běijīng tànqīn gēn nǐ tuánjù · Life isn't a TV drama. A family that lives in harmony and happiness: nothing beats that. If your mum misses you, have her come to Beijing for a visit and be with you.

anna 谢谢阿姨！小明，祝你们两口子称心如意、心想事成！

xièxie āyí Xiǎomíng zhù nǐmen liǎngkǒuzi chènxīn rúyì xīnxiǎng shìchéng · Thank you, Auntie! Xiaoming, I wish you both everything you could want, and may all your wishes come true!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

饶
ráo
to let off, to spare

迁
qiān
to move, migrate

妥
tuǒ
appropriate, settled

裂
liè
to split, crack

good to know · Many Chinese couples register their marriage (登记, 领证) months before the wedding banquet. The banquet is the big public celebration with family and friends. 情人 can mean an affair partner, so for your own partner use 男朋友, 女朋友, 对象 or 爱人. 情人节 (Valentine's Day) is fine.

From the first date to the golden wedding, you can now talk love and marriage in Chinese, and dodge the nosy questions gracefully.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 27 raising children, caring for parents

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 4 · family

Talk about having and raising children, adoption, and caring for elderly parents, and describe days that go round in circles with X了Y，Y了X.

Looking after children and parents is the centre of family life in China, and 孝顺 (being a devoted son or daughter) is one of its deepest values.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
孕妇	yùnfù	pregnant woman	地铁上有人给孕妇让座。 Someone gave up their seat to a pregnant woman on the underground.
孕育	yùnyù	to be pregnant with; to give rise to	这片土地孕育了古老的文明。 This land gave birth to an ancient civilisation.
胎儿	tāiér	foetus, unborn baby	医生说胎儿很健康。 The doctor says the baby is healthy.
生育	shēngyù	to give birth, to have children	很多年轻人推迟了生育的时间。 Many young people are putting off having children.
哺育	bǔyù	to nurse, to nurture	黄河哺育了一代又一代中国人。 The Yellow River has nurtured generation after generation of Chinese people.
养育	yǎngyù	to bring up	感谢父母这么多年的养育。 Thank you, Mum and Dad, for all the years you spent bringing me up.
抚养	fǔyǎng	to raise, to bring up (a child)	她一个人把三个孩子抚养长{zhang3}大。 She brought up three children on her own.
喂养	wèiyǎng	to feed, to rear	这只小猫是我们一口一口喂养大的。 We fed this kitten mouthful by mouthful until it grew up.
养活	yǎnghuo	to support, to feed (a family)	他一个人的工资要养活全家。 His salary alone has to support the whole family.
摇篮	yáolán	cradle	孩子在摇篮里睡得很香。 The baby is sleeping soundly in the cradle.
周岁	zhōusuì	one full year of age	孩子满周岁那天，家里请了很多客人。 On the baby's first birthday, the family invited lots of guests.
疼爱	téngài	to love dearly (a child)	奶奶最疼爱这个小孙女。 Grandma dotes on her little granddaughter more than anyone.
娇惯	jiāoguàn	to spoil, to pamper	孩子不能太娇惯，要让他自己做事。 You mustn't spoil a child too much: let him do things for himself.
呵护	hēhù	to cherish and protect	孩子的好奇心需要我们细心呵护。 Children's curiosity needs to be carefully nurtured.

管教	guǎnjiào	to discipline; discipline	这孩子太不听话，得{dei3}好好管教管教。 This child is so naughty: he needs proper discipline.
监护	jiānhù	to act as guardian	孩子的父母不在，由爷爷奶奶监护。 The child's parents are away, so his grandparents are his guardians.
领养	lǐngyǎng	to adopt	他们领养了一只小狗。 They adopted a puppy.
收养	shōuyǎng	to take in and bring up	这位老人收养了五个孤儿。 This old man took in and raised five orphans.
孤儿	gūér	orphan	他从小是孤儿，是叔叔把他养大的。 He was an orphan from a young age; his uncle brought him up.
保姆	bǎomǔ	nanny, home help	他们请了一位保姆照顾老人。 They hired a home help to look after the old lady.
管家	guǎnjiā	housekeeper, steward	这家酒店的管家服务做得特别好。 This hotel's butler service is excellent.
照料	zhàoliào	to take care of	爸爸住院的时候，是哥哥一直在照料他。 While Dad was in hospital, it was my brother who took care of him.
伺候	cìhou	to wait on, to look after	你都这么大了，还要妈妈伺候你? You're all grown up, and you still need your mum to wait on you?
侍候	shìhòu	to wait upon (written)	他在病床前侍候了母亲三年。 He nursed his mother at her bedside for three years.
操劳	cāoláo	to work hard, to toil	妈妈为这个家操劳了一辈子。 Mum has worked her whole life for this family.
赡养	shànyǎng	to support (one's parents)	子女有赡养父母的义务。 Children have a duty to support their parents.
供养	gōngyǎng	to provide for	他工作以后，开始供养年迈的父母。 Once he started working, he began supporting his elderly parents.
孝敬	xiàojìng	to show filial respect; to give (to parents)	他每个月都拿出一部分工资孝敬父母。 Every month he gives part of his salary to his parents.
孝顺	xiàoshùn	filial, devoted to one's parents	她是个孝顺的女儿，常常回家看父母。 She's a devoted daughter and often goes home to see her parents.
晚年	wǎnnián	one's later years	希望爷爷奶奶有一个幸福的晚年。 We hope Grandpa and Grandma have a happy old age.
年迈	niánmài	aged, elderly	他最担心家里年迈的母亲。 What worries him most is his elderly mother at home.
高龄	gāolíng	advanced age	老人家已经九十高龄了，身体还很好。 At ninety, the old lady is still in good health.
寡妇	guǎfu	widow	她三十岁成了寡妇，一个人把孩子养大。 She was widowed at thirty and raised her children alone.

遗弃	yíqì	to abandon (a child, an old person)	遗弃老人是违法的。 Abandoning an elderly person is against the law.

pattern x了y，y了x: round and round

X了Y , **Y了X** = over and over, nothing else

Two verbs swap places to show a cycle that keeps repeating: 吃了睡，睡了吃 “eat, sleep, eat, sleep”. It can be fond (a baby, a retired grandma), or a complaint about someone doing nothing else. Often a result follows: 写了改，改了写，写了一个晚上.

奶奶每天吃了睡，睡了吃，胖了不少。 **nǎinai měi tiān chī le shuì shuì le chī pàng le bù shǎo** Grandma just eats and sleeps all day, and she’s put on quite a bit of weight.

他在门口走了停，停了走，就是不敢进去。 **tā zài ménkǒu zǒu le tíng tíng le zǒu jiùshì bù gǎn jìnqù** He walked up and down at the door, stopping and starting, and just couldn’t bring himself to go in.

放假在家，他玩了睡，睡了玩，作业一个字都没写。 **fàngjià zài jiā tā wán le shuì shuì le wán zuòyè yí gè zì dōu méi xiě** On holiday at home, he played, slept, played and slept, and didn’t write a word of his homework.

dialogue who will look after grandma?

anna 阿姨，我听说外婆摔倒了，一直很挂念她，带了点水果来看看她。她老人家怎么样？
āyí wǒ tīngshuō wàipó shuāi dǎo le yìzhí hěn guànniàn tā dài le diǎn shuǐguǒ lái kàn kan tā tā lǎorenjia zěnmeyàng · Auntie, I heard Grandma had a fall and I've been thinking about her, so I've brought some fruit. How is she?

ms zhang 谢谢你。没什么大问题，就是腿还不方便。她已经八十八岁高龄了，一个人住，孤零零的，我实在不放心。
xièxie nǐ méi shénme dà wèntí jiùshì tuǐ hái bù fāngbiàn tā yǐjīng bāshíbā suì gāolíng le yí gè rén zhù gūlínglíng de wǒ shízài bú fàngxīn · Thank you. Nothing serious; her leg still isn't right, that's all. But she's eighty-eight now and lives all alone, and I really can't stop worrying.

dr li 不瞒你说，我们正在商量，是请保姆，还是把她接过来一起住。可她老人家又怕拖累我们。
bù mán nǐ shuō wǒmen zhèngzài shāngliang shì qǐng bǎomǔ háishi bǎ tā jiē guolai yìqǐ zhù kě tā lǎorenjia yòu pà tuōlěi wǒmen · To be honest with you, we're just discussing it: whether to hire a home help or bring her here to live with us. But she's afraid of being a burden on us.

ms zhang 我妈妈三十岁就成了寡妇，一个人抚养我们三个孩子，操劳了一辈子。现在到了晚年，我们一定要好好照料她、侍候她。
wǒ māma sānshí suì jiù chéng le guǎfu yí gè rén fǔyǎng wǒmen sān gè háizi cāoláo le yíbèizi xiànzài dào le wǎnnián wǒmen yídìng yào hǎohǎo zhàoliào tā shìhòu tā · My mother was widowed at thirty and brought up the three of us on her own; she's worked hard all her life. Now that she's old, we must look after her and wait on her properly.

anna 您真孝顺。在英国，很多年迈的老人住在养老院。
nín zhēn xiàoshùn zài Yīngguó hěn duō niánmài de lǎorén zhù zài yǎnglǎoyuàn · You're such a devoted daughter. In the UK, lots of elderly people live in care homes.

dr li 中国也有，现在越来越多。不过很多老人还是希望儿女在身边伺候。
Zhōngguó yě yǒu xiànzài yuè lái yuè duō búguò hěn duō lǎorén háishi xīwàng érnǚ zài shēnbiān cìhou · China has them too, more and more. But many old people still want their children by their side looking after them.

ms zhang 我妈妈最疼爱小明了。小时候我们俩忙，都是外婆一口一口喂养他、照顾他。
wǒ māma zuì téngài Xiǎomíng le xiǎoshíhou wǒmen liǎ máng dōu shì wàipó yì kǒu yì kǒu wèiyǎng tā zhàogù tā · My mother loves Xiaoming most of all. When he was little and we were busy, it was his grandma who fed him spoonful by spoonful and looked after him.

dr li 也把他娇惯坏了！他三岁以前，每天吃了睡，睡了吃，谁也管教不了。
yě bǎ tā jiāoguàn huài le tā sān suì yǐqián měi tiān chī le shuì shuì le chī shéi yě guǎnjiào bu liǎo · And spoilt him rotten! Until he was three, all he did was eat and sleep, sleep and eat, and nobody could control him.

anna 哈哈，难怪他小时候叫“小馒头”。对了，我同事怀孕了，现在是孕妇，什么都要注意。
hā hā nánguài tā xiǎoshíhou jiào xiǎo mántou duì le wǒ tóngshì huáiyùn le xiànzài shì yùnfù shénme dōu yào zhùyì · Ha, no wonder he was called “Little Bun”. Oh, a colleague of mine is pregnant, and now she has to be careful about everything.

ms zhang 是啊，孕育一个生命不容易。胎儿几个月了？
shì a yùnyù yí gè shēngmìng bù róngyì tāiér jǐ gè yuè le · Yes, carrying a new life is no small thing. How many months is the baby?

anna 五个月了。她说生育以后想自己哺育孩子，可又有顾虑，怕不能上班，养活不了一家人。
wǔ gè yuè le tā shuō shēngyù yǐhòu xiǎng zìjǐ bǔyù háizi kě yòu yǒu gùlǜ pà bù néng shàngbān yǎnghuo bu liǎo yì jiā rén · Five months. She says after the birth she wants to bring up the baby herself, but she has her worries: she's afraid that if she can't work, she won't be able to support the family.

dr li 我们那时候也一样。不是我说你们年轻人，养育孩子不能全靠保姆，父母的呵护和家教最重要。
wǒmen nà shíhou yě yíyàng bú shì wǒ shuō nǐmen niánqīng rén yǎngyù háizi bù néng quán kào bǎomǔ fùmǔ

de hēhù hé jiājiào zuì zhòngyào · It was the same for us. I hate to say it to you young people, but you can't leave bringing up a child to a nanny: a parent's care and upbringing matter most.

ms zhang 我有个朋友不能生，就领养了一个孤儿，从摇篮里就开始养。虽然没有血缘关系，可比亲生的还亲，现在孩子都上大学了。

wǒ yǒu gè péngyou bù néng shēng jiù lǐngyǎng le yí gè gūér cóng yáolán lǐ jiù kāishǐ yǎng suīrán méiyǒu xuèyuán guānxì kě bǐ qīnshēng de hái qīn xiànzài háizi dōu shàng dàxué le · A friend of mine couldn't have children, so she adopted an orphan and raised her from the cradle. They aren't related by blood, but they're closer than if she were her own, and now the girl is at university.

anna 真好。我们公司还有一位同事，收养了他哥哥的孩子，做了孩子的监护人。

zhēn hǎo wǒmen gōngsī hái yǒu yí wèi tóngshì shōuyǎng le tā gēge de háizi zuò le háizi de jiānhù rén · That's lovely. There's a colleague at my company who took in his brother's child and became her guardian.

dr li 那可不容易。现在还有人遗弃孩子、遗弃老人，这种事最让人难过。赡养父母、供养子女，是每个人的责任。

nà kě bù róngyì xiànzài hái yǒu rén yíqì háizi yíqì lǎorén zhè zhǒng shì zuì ràng rén nánguò shànyǎng fùmǔ gōngyǎng zǐnǚ shì měi gè rén de zérèn · That's not easy. There are still people who abandon children or old people; nothing is sadder. Supporting your parents and providing for your children is everyone's responsibility.

ms zhang 好了，我决定了：把妈妈接过来，一家人团聚在一起，再请一个保姆帮忙。我妈妈以前常说，家里的管家就是我。

hǎo le wǒ juédìng le bǎ māma jiē guolai yì jiā rén tuánjù zài yìqǐ zài qǐng yí gè bǎomǔ bāngmáng wǒ māma yǐqián cháng shuō jiā lǐ de guǎnjiā jiùshì wǒ · Right, I've decided: we'll bring Mum here so the family is all together, and hire a home help as well. Mum always used to say I was the one who ran the household.

anna 等外婆来了，我也常来看她，孝敬孝敬她老人家。等同事的孩子满周岁，我带他们一起来！

děng wàipó lái le wǒ yě cháng lái kàn tā xiàojìng xiàojìng tā lǎorenjia děng tóngshì de háizi mǎn zhōusuì wǒ dài tāmen yìqǐ lái · When Grandma comes, I'll visit her often and spoil her a little. And when my colleague's baby turns one, I'll bring them along too!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

惹
rě
to provoke, to cause (trouble)

纵
zòng
to let loose

诱
yòu
to tempt

鬼
guǐ
ghost; (suffix) a person who is …; sly

good to know · 孝顺 combines 孝 (caring for your parents) and 顺 (going along with their wishes). 孝敬 is more about showing respect, often with gifts or money. 伺候 is everyday and can sound a bit like serving (你还要我伺候你?); 侍候 and 照料 are more respectful.

You can now talk about the whole circle of family care in Chinese, from the cradle to old age.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 28 farewells and remembrance

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 4 · family

Talk respectfully about death, funerals and remembering the dead, and use the formal prepositions of notices and speeches: 本着, 基于, 鉴于, 经, 依, 当着, 就, spoken 打 and written 乃.

Obituaries, memorial speeches and official notices are written in this formal style, and knowing the gentle words for death is a matter of respect.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
逝世	shìshì	to pass away (formal)	这位著名的作家昨天逝世了，享年九十岁。 The famous writer passed away yesterday at the age of ninety.
噩耗	èhào	sad news (of a death)	听到这个噩耗，大家都哭了。 When they heard the terrible news, everyone wept.
生前	shēngqián	during one's lifetime	这是老人生前最喜欢的一本书。 This was the old man's favourite book while he was alive.
生死	shēngsǐ	life and death	医生每天都要面对生死。 Doctors face life and death every day.
悼念	dàoniàn	to mourn	很多人来到这里，悼念这位老科学家。 Many people came here to mourn the old scientist.
追悼	zhuīdào	to mourn (the dead)	学校为老校长举行了追悼会。 The school held a memorial service for the old head teacher.
葬	zàng	to bury	老人去世后，葬在了家乡。 After the old man died, he was buried in his home town.
葬礼	zànglǐ	funeral	葬礼很简单，只有家人参加。 The funeral was simple, with only the family there.
埋葬	máizàng	to bury	他被埋葬在一座小山上。 He was buried on a little hill.
遗体	yítǐ	remains (of the dead)	他生前决定把遗体捐给医学研究。 While he was alive, he decided to donate his body to medical research.
棺材	guāncai	coffin	以前，有的老人会提前给自己准备棺材。 In the past, some old people prepared their own coffins in advance.
坟	fén	grave	山上有一座老坟。 There's an old grave on the hill.
坟墓	fénmù	grave, tomb	考古学家发现了一座古代的坟墓。 Archaeologists have found an ancient tomb.
墓	mù	tomb	这是一位古代诗人的墓。 This is the tomb of an ancient poet.

墓碑	mùbēi	gravestone	墓碑上刻着他的名字。 His name is carved on the gravestone.
墓地	mùdì	cemetery, graveyard	这片墓地安静而干净。 The cemetery is quiet and clean.
公墓	gōngmù	public cemetery	爷爷葬在城外的公墓。 Grandpa is buried in the public cemetery outside the city.
遗物	yíwù	things left by the dead	这块手表是爷爷的遗物。 This watch belonged to Grandpa.
遗嘱	yízhǔ	will (last wishes)	依照他的遗嘱，他的书都捐给了图书馆。 As his will instructed, all his books were given to the library.
扫墓	sǎomù	to visit and tend a grave	每年春天，我们全家都去给爷爷扫墓。 Every spring, our whole family goes to tend Grandpa's grave.
祭奠	jìdiàn	to hold a memorial for	人们献上鲜花，祭奠在灾难中去世的人。 People laid flowers to honour those who died in the disaster.
祭祀	jìsì	to offer sacrifices (to ancestors)	祭祀祖宗是一种古老的传统。 Honouring the ancestors with offerings is an ancient tradition.
祭	jì	to honour (the dead) with offerings	他们每年都在这一天祭祖宗。 Every year on this day they honour their ancestors.
乃	nǎi	to be, indeed (written)	他乃我国著名的历史学家。 He is one of our country's most famous historians.
打	dǎ	from (spoken)	打{da3-7}明天起，我每天早上跑步。 From tomorrow on, I'm going running every morning.
本着	běnzhe	in line with, in the spirit of	我们本着自愿的原则组织这次活动。 We are organising this event on a voluntary basis.
基于	jīyú	based on	基于以上原因，我们决定推迟会议。 For the above reasons, we have decided to postpone the meeting.
鉴于	jiànyú	in view of	鉴于天气原因，比赛改在下周举行。 In view of the weather, the match has been moved to next week.
经	jīng	after, through (a process)	经医生同意，他今天可以出院了。 With the doctor's approval, he can leave hospital today.
依	yī	according to	依我看，这件事不能着急。 As I see it, there's no rushing this.
依照	yīzhào	according to	依照法律规定，你有权利知道真相。 According to the law, you have the right to know the truth.
当着	dāngzhe	in front of, in the presence of	他当着大家的面|向我道歉。 He apologised to me in front of everyone.

pattern formal prepositions: 本着, 基于, 鉴于, 经, 依, 当着, 就, 打 and 乃

本着 / 基于 / 鉴于 / 经 / 依 **the basis** , **the decision or action**

Notices and speeches give the basis first: 本着 (in the spirit of), 基于 (based on), 鉴于 (in view of), 经 (after, through: 经医生同意), 依 / 依照 (according to). 当着 is “in front of (someone)”, 就 is “on, concerning (a topic)”. Spoken 打 means “from”: 打明天起. Written 乃 means “is”.

基于他对历史研究的贡献，学校决定为他建一座图书馆。 **jīyú tā duì lìshǐ yánjiū de gòngxiàn xuéxiào juédìng wèi tā jiàn yí zuò túshūguǎn** In recognition of his contribution to historical research, the university has decided to build a library in his name.

经家人同意，他的遗物捐给了博物馆。 **jīng jiārén tóngyì tā de yíwù juān gěi le bówùguǎn** With the family’s agreement, his belongings were given to the museum.

陈教授就老先生的研究写了一篇文章。 **Chénjiàoshòu jiù lǎo xiānsheng de yánjiū xiě le yì piān wénzhāng** Professor Chen wrote an article on the old scholar’s research.

很多打外地来的学生也参加了追悼会。 **hěn duō dǎ wàidì lái de xuéshēng yě cānjiā le zhuīdào huì** Many students who came from out of town also attended the memorial service.

dialogue after the memorial service

little sister 陈教授，您别太难过了。听到这个噩耗，我们都很悲痛。
Chénjiàoshòu nín bié tài nánguò le tīng dào zhège èhào wǒmen dōu hěn bēitòng · Professor Chen, please don't be too sad. When we heard the terrible news, we were all grief-stricken.

professor chen 谢谢你们来参加追悼会。老先生九十六岁逝世，也算走得安详。
xièxie nǐmen lái cānjiā zhuīdào huì lǎo xiānsheng jiǔshíliù suì shìshì yě suàn zǒu de ānxiáng · Thank you for coming to the memorial service. He passed away at ninety-six; at least it was peaceful.

anna 今天来悼念他的人真多，很多是打外地专门赶来的。
jīntiān lái dàoniàn tā de rén zhēn duō hěn duō shì dǎ wàidì zhuānmén gǎn lái de · So many people came to mourn him today, many of them all the way from out of town.

professor chen 他乃我国最有名的历史学家之一，学生在全国各地都有。我就是他带出来的，他是我的恩人。
tā nǎi wǒ guó zuì yǒumíng de lìshǐ xué jiā zhī yī xuéshēng zài quán guó gèdì dōu yǒu wǒ jiùshì tā dài chulai de tā shì wǒ de ēnrén · He was one of our country's greatest historians, with students all over China. I was one of the people he trained: I owe him everything.

little sister 您刚才当着大家的面念他的遗嘱，声音都哽咽了，我听哭了。
nín gāngcái dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn niàn tā de yízhǔ shēngyīn dōu gěngyè le wǒ tīng kū le · When you read out his will in front of everyone just now, your voice was choking, and it made me cry.

anna 你看你，眼睛都哭红了。陈教授，遗嘱里写了什么？
nǐ kàn nǐ yǎnjing dōu kū hóng le Chénjiàoshòu yízhǔ lǐ xiě le shénme · Look at you, your eyes are all red. Professor Chen, what did the will say?

professor chen 他生前就决定，把遗体捐给医学研究，不要棺材，也不要墓碑。
tā shēngqián jiù juédìng bǎ yítǐ juān gěi yīxué yánjiū búyào guāncai yě búyào mùbēi · He decided while he was alive to donate his body to medical research: no coffin and no gravestone.

little sister 那他的家人同意吗？中国人不是讲究死后要有个坟墓吗？
nà tā de jiārén tóngyì ma Zhōngguó rén bú shì jiǎngjiu sǐ hòu yào yǒu gè fénmù ma · And did the family agree? Don't Chinese people traditionally want a grave of their own?

professor chen 以前是这样，很多人要葬在家乡的墓地里，埋葬在祖宗的坟旁边，有的人的墓修得特别大。可他说，生死是自然的事。本着不浪费的原则，葬礼一切都要简单。
yǐqián shì zhèyàng hěn duō rén yào zàng zài jiāxiāng de mùdì lǐ máizàng zài zǔzong de fén pángbiān yǒude rén de mù xiū de tèbié dà kě tā shuō shēngsǐ shì zìrán de shì běnzhe bú làngfèi de yuánzé zànglǐ yíqiè dōu yào jiǎndān · That used to be the way: many people wanted to be buried in the graveyard back home, next to their ancestors' graves, and some had huge tombs built. But he said life and death are part of nature, and in the spirit of not wasting anything, the funeral had to be simple in every way.

anna 他的书和遗物怎么办？
tā de shū hé yíwù zěnme bàn · What will happen to his books and belongings?

professor chen 依照他的遗嘱，经家人同意，书捐给学校图书馆，遗物捐给博物馆。基于他的贡献，学校决定打下个学期起，用他的名字建立一个奖学金。
yīzhào tā de yízhǔ jīng jiārén tóngyì shū juān gěi xuéxiào túshūguǎn yíwù juān gěi bówùguǎn jīyú tā de gòngxiàn xuéxiào juédìng dǎ xià gè xuéqī qǐ yòng tā de míngzi jiànlì yí gè jiǎngxuéjīn · As his will instructed, and with the family's agreement, his books go to the university library and his belongings to the museum. In recognition of his contribution, the university has decided to set up a scholarship in his name from next term.

little sister 真了不起。我们家每年春天都去公墓给太爷爷扫墓，祭奠他老人家。
zhēn liǎobuqǐ wǒmen jiā měi nián chūntiān dōu qù gōngmù gěi tài yéye sǎomù jìdiàn tā lǎorenjia · That's remarkable. Every spring our family goes to the public cemetery to tend my great-grandfather's grave and pay our respects.

professor chen 扫墓是很好的传统。古代的祭祀很复杂，现在大家献一束花，说说心里想说的，就是最好的祭奠。
sǎomù shì hěn hǎo de chuántǒng gǔdài de jìsì hěn fùzá xiànzài dàjiā xiàn yí shù huā shuō shuo xīnlǐ xiǎng

shuō de jiùshì zuìhǎo de jìdiàn · Tending graves is a fine tradition. Ancient rites for the dead were very elaborate; nowadays, laying some flowers and saying what's in your heart is the best way to honour someone.

anna 陈教授，鉴于您跟老先生的感情这么深，您不妨就他的一生写一篇文章。

Chénjiàoshòu jiànyú nín gēn lǎo xiānsheng de gǎnqíng zhème shēn nín bùfáng jiù tā de yìshēng xiě yì piān wénzhāng · Professor Chen, given how close you were to him, why not write an article about his life?

professor chen 我正有这个打算。我想写他的生前小事，让学生们知道他是一个什么样的人。他到了晚年还天天去图书馆，学生们都很爱戴他。

wǒ zhèng yǒu zhège dǎsuàn wǒ xiǎng xiě tā de shēngqián xiǎo shì ràng xuéshēngmen zhīdào tā shì yí gè shénme yàng de rén tā dào le wǎnnián hái tiān tiān qù túshūguǎn xuéshēngmen dōu hěn àidài tā · That's just what I'm planning. I want to write about the little things from his life, so students know what kind of man he was. Even in old age he went to the library every day, and his students loved him dearly.

little sister 到时候我帮您整理资料。我们一起祭他老人家。

dào shíhou wǒ bāng nín zhěnglǐ zīliào wǒmen yìqǐ jì tā lǎorenjia · I'll help you gather the material. We'll honour him together.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

耍
shuǎ
to play with; throw (a tantrum), play (tricks)

掩
yǎn
to cover

瞒
mán
to hide the truth from

搅
jiǎo
to stir, mix; disturb

good to know · Death is spoken of gently in Chinese: 去世 is the everyday polite word, 逝世 is formal for well-known people, and 走了 ("has gone") is soft and common. To the family, say 请节哀 "please contain your grief". Graves are swept at the Qingming festival (清明节) in early April: families clean the grave, lay flowers and food, and remember the dead together.

You can now offer condolences, follow a memorial speech and read a formal notice in Chinese, with the respect such moments need.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 29 how it is done (2)

Say how things are done (without permission, as usual, one by one, all at once) and how you feel about it (luckily, of all times, I'd rather, be sure to) with advanced manner and mood adverbs.

These adverbs are where Chinese shows attitude: a complaint, a relief or an insistence often lives in one word like 偏偏, 幸亏 or 务必.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
如期	rúqī	on schedule, as planned	虽然下雨，比赛还是如期举行了。 Despite the rain, the match went ahead as planned.
擅自	shànzì	without permission	酒店擅自取消了我们的预订。 The hotel cancelled our booking without asking us.
私自	sīzì	privately, without permission	员工不能私自把公司的资料带回家。 Staff mustn't take company documents home without permission.
特此	tècǐ	hereby (in notices)	明天停水，特此通知。 Notice is hereby given that the water will be off tomorrow.
瞎	xiā	blindly, foolishly; blind	不懂就别瞎说。 If you don't know, don't talk nonsense.
一并	yībìng	along with, all together	请把这两份文件一并交给经理。 Please give both documents to the manager together.
一举	yījǔ	in one go; one move	他们一举拿下了冠军。 They took the championship in one stroke.
一手	yīshǒu	single-handedly; skill	这家公司是他一手创办的。 He built this company single-handedly.
毅然	yìrán	resolutely	他毅然离开了大城市，回到家乡当老师。 He resolutely left the big city and went home to teach.
有意	yǒuyì	on purpose; to be interested in	我不是有意的，你别生气。 I didn't mean to: don't be angry.
照常	zhàocháng	as usual	节日期间，商店照常营业。 The shops stay open as usual over the holiday.
照例	zhàolì	as a rule, as usual	每年春节，我们照例去爷爷家拜年。 Every Spring Festival we go to Grandpa's to wish him a happy New Year, as always.
照样	zhàoyàng	all the same, just the same	下雨他也照样去跑步。 He goes running even when it rains.
执意	zhíyì	insistently	我们都劝他别去，他执意要去。 We all tried to talk him out of it, but he insisted on going.
骤然	zhòurán	suddenly, abruptly	天气骤然变冷。 The weather suddenly turned cold.

逐一	zhúyī	one by one	老师逐一检查了学生的作业。 The teacher checked the students' homework one by one.
专程	zhuānchéng	specially (making a trip)	他专程从上海赶来参加婚礼。 He came all the way from Shanghai just for the wedding.
截然	jiérán	completely (different)	两个人的性格截然不同。 The two of them have completely different personalities.
宁可	nìngkě	would rather	我宁可走路，也不坐他的车。 I'd rather walk than get in his car.
宁愿	nìngyuàn	would rather	她宁愿自己辛苦一点，也不想麻烦别人。 She'd rather work a bit harder herself than trouble anyone else.
碰巧	pèngqiǎo	by chance, as it happens	我去找他，碰巧他不在家。 I went to see him, and as it happened he wasn't home.
偏偏	piānpiān	just, of all times (against wishes)	我没带伞，偏偏下雨了。 I didn't bring an umbrella, and of course it rained.
恰巧	qiàqiǎo	by coincidence	我正想给你打电话，恰巧你来了。 I was just about to ring you, and you turned up.
情愿	qíngyuàn	to be willing; would rather	为了孩子，她情愿放弃工作。 For her children's sake, she's willing to give up her job.
势必	shìbì	is bound to	这样下去，势必会影响你的健康。 If this goes on, it's bound to affect your health.
索性	suǒxìng	might as well, simply	雨太大了，我们索性不去了。 The rain was so heavy that we just didn't go.
万万	wànwàn	absolutely (not)	这件事万万不能告诉他。 On no account must he be told about this.
未免	wèimiǎn	rather (too), a bit (too)	你这么说，未免太不公平了。 Saying that is a bit unfair.
务必	wùbì	must, be sure to	请务必在周五以前回复。 Please be sure to reply by Friday.
幸好	xìnghǎo	fortunately	幸好你提醒我，不然我就忘了。 Luckily you reminded me, or I'd have forgotten.
幸亏	xìngkuī	luckily, thanks to	幸亏有你帮忙，事情才这么顺利。 It's thanks to your help that it all went so smoothly.
终究	zhōngjiū	in the end, after all	真相终究会被大家知道的。 The truth will come out in the end.
何不	hébù	why not	天气这么好，何不出去走走？ The weather's so lovely: why not go out for a walk?
何尝	hécháng	it's not that … not (rhetorical)	我何尝不想回家？可工作太忙了。 Don't think I don't want to go home! It's just that work is too busy.

pattern how it's done and how you feel: 擅自, 照样, 逐一 … 偏偏, 幸亏, 宁可

who | 擅自 / 照样 / 执意 / 逐一 / 偏偏 / 幸亏 / 宁可 | verb …

Manner adverbs say how: 擅自 / 私自 (without permission), 执意 (insisting), 照常 / 照例 / 照样 (as usual, all the same), 逐一 (one by one), 一并 (together), 专程 (specially). Mood adverbs give your attitude: 偏偏 (of all things, against your wishes), 幸亏 / 幸好 (luckily), 宁可 / 宁愿 (would rather), 务必 (be sure to), 未免 (a bit too), 索性 (might as well), 何不 (why not).

节日期间，银行照常营业。 **jiérì qījiān yínháng zhàocháng yíngyè** The banks are open as usual over the holiday.

大家都劝他别去，他执意要自己开车去。 **dàjiā dōu quàn tā bié qù tā zhíyì yào zìjǐ kāichē qù** Everyone told him not to go, but he insisted on driving there himself.

幸好你来了，不然我真不知道怎么办。 **xìnghǎo nǐ lái le bùrán wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào zěnme bàn** Luckily you came, or I really wouldn't have known what to do.

时间不多了，我们索性打车去吧。 **shíjiān bù duō le wǒmen suǒxìng dǎchē qù ba** There isn't much time: let's just take a taxi.

dialogue the hotel problem

xiaoming 孙律师，谢谢您专程过来。酒店昨天骤然通知我们，大厅不能用了。
Sūnlǜshī xièxie nín zhuānchéng guòlái jiǔdiàn zuótiān zhòurán tōngzhī wǒmen dàtīng bù néng yòng le · Lawyer Sun, thank you for coming out specially. Yesterday the hotel suddenly told us we can't have the hall.

lawyer sun 合同带来了吗？我看看。……合同上写得很清楚，酒店不能私自改日期。
hétóng dài lái le ma wǒ kàn kan hétóng shàng xiě de hěn qīngchu jiǔdiàn bù néng sīzì gǎi rìqī · Did you bring the contract? Let me see. ... The contract is very clear: the hotel can't change the date on its own.

anna 他们说碰巧有一个大公司要开年会，出的钱多，就擅自把大厅租给了人家。这分明是不讲信用！
tāmen shuō pèngqiǎo yǒu yí gè dà gōngsī yào kāi nián huì chū de qián duō jiù shànzì bǎ dàtīng zū gěi le rénjia zhè fēnmíng shì bù jiǎng xìnyòng · They said a big company happened to want it for their annual party and offered more money, so they rented the hall to them without asking. That's plainly breaking their word!

xiaoming 离婚礼只有十天了，偏偏出了这种事！我心急如焚。
lí hūnlǐ zhǐyǒu shí tiān le piānpiān chū le zhè zhǒng shì wǒ xīnjí rúfén · There are only ten days to the wedding, and this had to happen! I'm beside myself with worry.

lawyer sun 别瞎着急。他们这样做，势必要承担责任。依照合同，酒店要赔钱，或者照样给你们大厅。
bié xiā zháojí tāmen zhèyàng zuò shìbì yào chéngdān zérèn yīzhào hétóng jiǔdiàn yào péi qián huòzhě zhàoyàng gěi nǐmen dàtīng · Don't panic. If they do this, they're bound to bear the consequences. Under the contract, the hotel either pays compensation or lets you have the hall as agreed.

xiaoming 我宁愿他们把大厅还给我们。请柬都发了，日子万万不能改。
wǒ nìngyuàn tāmen bǎ dàtīng huán gěi wǒmen qǐngjiǎn dōu fā le rìzi wànwàn bù néng gǎi · I'd much rather they gave us the hall back. The invitations have all gone out: we absolutely can't change the date.

anna 你父母呢？他们怎么说？
nǐ fùmǔ ne tāmen zěnme shuō · What about your parents? What do they say?

xiaoming 我妈妈想换一家酒店，我爸爸执意要找酒店经理。两个人的想法截然不同。
wǒ māma xiǎng huàn yì jiā jiǔdiàn wǒ bàba zhíyì yào zhǎo jiǔdiàn jīnglǐ liǎng gè rén de xiǎngfǎ jiérán bù tóng · Mum wants to switch to another hotel, and Dad insists on going to see the hotel manager. Their ideas couldn't be more different.

lawyer sun 何不两个办法一并考虑？我先给酒店经理写一封信，把问题逐一列出来，请他们务必在三天内回复。
hébù liǎng gè bànfǎ yíbìng kǎolǜ wǒ xiān gěi jiǔdiàn jīnglǐ xiě yì fēng xìn bǎ wèntí zhúyī liè chulai qǐng tāmen wùbì zài sān tiān nèi huífù · Why not consider both? First I'll write to the hotel manager listing the problems one by one, and ask them to reply within three days without fail.

anna 孙律师，您这么做，会不会得罪酒店？他们会不会觉得我们有意为难他们？
Sūnlǜshī nín zhème zuò huì bu huì dézuì jiǔdiàn tāmen huì bu huì juéde wǒmen yǒuyì wéinán tāmen · Lawyer Sun, if you do that, won't we offend the hotel? Will they think we're deliberately making trouble for them?

lawyer sun 不会。他们照例会先道歉，再谈条件，最后必定会做一些让步。我做了二十年律师，这种事见多了，终究会解决的。
bú huì tāmen zhàolì huì xiān dàoqiàn zài tán tiáojiàn zuìhòu bìdìng huì zuò yìxiē ràngbù wǒ zuò le èrshí nián lǜshī zhè zhǒng shì jiàn duō le zhōngjiū huì jiějué de · No. As usual they'll apologise first, then negotiate, and in the end they're sure to make some concessions. I've been a lawyer for twenty years and seen plenty of cases like this; it'll be sorted out in the end.

xiaoming 您说得对。我何尝不想冷静一点？可这场婚礼是我和她一手准备的，花了半年时间。
nín shuō de duì wǒ hécháng bù xiǎng lěngjìng yìdiǎn kě zhè chǎng hūnlǐ shì wǒ hé tā yìshǒu zhǔnbèi de huā le bàn nián shíjiān · You're right. It's not that I don't want to stay calm. But the two of us have organised this whole wedding ourselves; it's taken six months.

lawyer sun 我理解。不过你这样未免太紧张了。你们照常准备，酒店这边交给我，我出面跟他们周旋。
wǒ lǐjiě búguò nǐ zhèyàng wèimiǎn tài jǐnzhāng le nǐmen zhàocháng zhǔnbèi jiǔdiàn zhèbiān jiāo gěi wǒ wǒ

chūmiàn gēn tāmen zhōuxuán · I understand. But you're getting a bit too worked up. Carry on preparing as usual and leave the hotel to me: I'll step in and deal with them.

anna 恰巧刘经理认识那家酒店的老板，我也请她帮忙问问。

qiàqiǎo Liújīnglǐ rènshi nà jiā jiǔdiàn de lǎobǎn wǒ yě qǐng tā bāngmáng wèn wen · As it happens, Manager Liu knows the owner of that hotel; I'll ask her to look into it too.

xiaoming 太感谢了！幸好有你们。我本来想，实在不行，索性在家里办算了。

tài gǎnxiè le xìnghǎo yǒu nǐmen wǒ běnlái xiǎng shízài bùxíng suǒxìng zài jiā lǐ bàn suànle · Thank you so much! It's lucky I have you. I was thinking that if all else failed, we'd just hold it at home.

lawyer sun 你说你一个工程师，遇到问题怎么就想放弃？上次你毅然去上海找小刘，那时候的勇气去哪儿了？

nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè gōngchéngshī yùdào wèntí zěnme jiù xiǎng fàngqì shàng cì nǐ yìrán qù Shànghǎi zhǎo xiǎo Liú nà shíhou de yǒngqì qù nǎr le · You're an engineer: why is your first thought to give up when there's a problem? When you made up your mind and went to Shanghai to find Xiao Liu, where did that courage go?

xiaoming 好，我听您的！为了这场婚礼，我情愿再辛苦十天。

hǎo wǒ tīng nín de wèile zhè chǎng hūnlǐ wǒ qíngyuàn zài xīnkǔ shí tiān · All right, I'll do as you say! For this wedding, I'm happy to work flat out for another ten days.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

钉
dìng
to nail, sew on

沾
zhān
to be stained with, touch

缠
chán
to wind, twine; to pester

赐
cì
to bestow, to grant

good to know · 偏偏 complains that things went against you: 我没带伞，偏偏下雨了. It can also mean stubbornly doing the opposite: 叫他别去，他偏偏要去. 幸亏 credits someone or something for a lucky escape (幸亏有你); 幸好 is a plain "luckily". Both usually come with 不然 or 才.

One adverb can carry a whole mood. Now you can complain, insist, reassure and give orders with native precision.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 30 manners and style

Describe manners, bearing and personality (graceful, modest, cocky, eccentric, rebellious), say what is fitting, and reassure someone with 没什么好+verb+的.

How people carry themselves matters a lot in China, at weddings, interviews and dinners alike, and these are the words people judge it by.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
举止	jǔzhǐ	bearing, manners	他举止大方，很有礼貌。 He carries himself with ease and is very polite.
仪表	yíbiǎo	appearance, bearing	面试的时候要注意仪表。 At an interview, pay attention to how you look.
风度	fēngdù	grace, poise	输了比赛，他还是很有风度地向对手祝贺。 Even after losing, he graciously congratulated his opponent.
风范	fēngfàn	style, demeanour (of a great person)	老教授很有学者风范。 The old professor has the bearing of a true scholar.
风采	fēngcǎi	elegance, charisma	她在台上展现了自己的风采。 On stage she showed off all her charisma.
风流	fēngliú	talented and admired; romantic	历史上有很多风流人物。 History has many outstanding figures.
文雅	wényǎ	refined, cultured	他举止文雅，从来不大声说话。 He has refined manners and never raises his voice.
优雅	yōuyǎ	elegant, graceful	她穿了一条优雅的长裙子。 She's wearing an elegant long dress.
绅士	shēnshì	gentleman; gentlemanly	他很绅士，总是让女士先走。 He's a real gentleman and always lets women go first.
庄重	zhuāngzhòng	solemn, dignified	婚礼开始时，音乐变得很庄重。 As the ceremony began, the music turned solemn.
郑重	zhèngzhòng	serious, solemn	他郑重地向大家道歉。 He solemnly apologised to everyone.
正经	zhèngjing	serious, proper	别开玩笑了，说点正经的。 Stop joking and say something serious.
得体	détǐ	appropriate, suitable	去参加婚礼，要穿得得体一点。 When you go to a wedding, dress appropriately.
分寸	fēncun	sense of proportion	开玩笑要有分寸。 When you joke, know where to draw the line.
含蓄	hánxù	reserved, understated	中国人表达感情比较含蓄。 Chinese people tend to express their feelings in a reserved way.

恭敬	gōngjìng	respectful	他恭敬地给老人倒了一杯茶。 He respectfully poured the old man a cup of tea.
谦逊	qiānxùn	modest, humble	他成绩很好，却一直很谦逊。 He does brilliantly but has always stayed modest.
威风	wēifēng	impressive, imposing; prestige	他穿上新西装站在台上，真威风！ In his new suit, standing on the stage, he looks so impressive!
神气	shénqì	proud, cocky; spirited	他得{de2}了第一名，神气得不得了。 He came first and is terribly pleased with himself.
张扬	zhāngyáng	to show off, to make public	这件事别张扬，我们自己知道就行。 Don't broadcast it: it's enough that we know.
世故	shìgù	worldly-wise (often too much)	他年纪不大，说话却很世故。 He's young, but he talks like someone who knows all the angles.
深沉	shēnchén	deep, reserved; deep (voice)	他性格深沉，很少流露感情。 He's a deep, quiet person who rarely shows his feelings.
爽快	shuǎngkuai	straightforward, frank	她很爽快，马上就答应了。 She's very straightforward and agreed at once.
叛逆	pànnì	rebellious; rebellion	孩子到了十几岁，常常有点叛逆。 Children in their teens are often a bit rebellious.
顽皮	wánpí	naughty, mischievous	这个顽皮的孩子又爬到树上去了。 That naughty child has climbed up the tree again.
古怪	gǔguài	strange, eccentric	他脾气有点古怪，可心很好。 He's a bit eccentric, but he has a good heart.
疯子	fēngzi	madman, lunatic	大家都说他是个疯子，可他终于成功了。 Everyone called him crazy, but he succeeded in the end.
狂	kuáng	wild, arrogant	他太狂了，谁都看不起。 He's so arrogant: he looks down on everyone.
家伙	jiāhuo	guy, fellow	你这个家伙，又迟到了！ You rascal, late again!
常人	chángrén	ordinary person	他付出了常人难以想象的努力。 He worked harder than most people can imagine.
特质	tèzhì	special quality, trait	坚持是成功者共同的特质。 Perseverance is a trait all successful people share.
性情	xìngqíng	temperament	她性情温和，从来不发脾气。 She has a gentle temperament and never loses her temper.
教养	jiàoyǎng	upbringing, breeding; to bring up	一看他的举止，就知道他很有教养。 One look at his manners and you can tell he's well brought up.

pattern 没什么好+verb+的: nothing to ... about

没什么好 verb 的 = there's no need to …

没什么好 + verb + 的 says there is no reason to do something: 没什么好怕的 "nothing to be afraid of", 没什么好说的 "nothing more to say". It can reassure someone kindly or shut a topic down firmly, depending on the tone.

这点小事，没什么好生气的。 **zhè diǎn xiǎo shì méi shénme hǎo shēngqì de** It's such a little thing: nothing to get angry about.

都是老朋友了，没什么好客气的。 **dōu shì lǎo péngyou le méi shénme hǎo kèqi de** We're old friends: no need to stand on ceremony.

他做错了事，没什么好说的。 **tā zuò cuò le shì méi shénme hǎo shuō de** He was in the wrong; there's nothing more to say.

dialogue rehearsing the speech

anna 阿姨，后天我要在婚礼上讲话，现在紧张得要死。
āyí hòutiān wǒ yào zài hūnlǐ shàng jiǎnghuà xiànzài jǐnzhāng de yào sǐ · Auntie, I'm giving a speech at the wedding the day after tomorrow, and I'm terrified.

ms zhang 讲两三分钟而已，没什么好紧张的。你先讲一遍，我们听听。
jiǎng liǎngsān fēnzhōng éryǐ méi shénme hǎo jǐnzhāng de nǐ xiān jiǎng yí biàn wǒmen tīng ting · It's only two or three minutes, nothing to be nervous about. Run through it once and let's hear it.

anna "各位来宾：我认识小明快十年了。他是一个特别的家伙，有时候有点古怪，像个疯子……"
gèwèi láibīn wǒ rènshi Xiǎomíng kuài shí nián le tā shì yí gè tèbié de jiāhuo yǒu shíhou yǒu diǎn gǔguài xiàng gè fēngzi · "Dear guests: I've known Xiaoming for nearly ten years. He's a special sort of guy, a bit eccentric at times, a bit of a madman …"

little sister 停！"疯子"可不能说。婚礼是很庄重的场合，开玩笑要有分寸。
tíng fēngzi kě bù néng shuō hūnlǐ shì hěn zhuāngzhòng de chǎnghé kāi wánxiào yào yǒu fēncun · Stop! You can't say "madman". A wedding is a solemn occasion; there's a limit to the jokes.

ms zhang 对，中国人比较含蓄。你可以说他性情温和敦厚、人很爽快，朋友有事，他总是第一个到。
duì Zhōngguó rén bǐjiào hánxù nǐ kěyǐ shuō tā xìngqíng wēnhé dūnhòu rén hěn shuǎngkuai péngyou yǒu shì tā zǒngshì dì yī gè dào · Yes, Chinese people are rather reserved. You could say he has a gentle, kindly temperament and is straightforward, and that whenever a friend is in trouble, he's the first one there.

anna 好。那他小时候很顽皮、上中学时很叛逆，这些能说吗？
hǎo nà tā xiǎoshíhou hěn wánpí shàng zhōngxué shí hěn pànnì zhèxiē néng shuō ma · OK. And can I say he was a naughty little boy and a rebellious teenager?

little sister 可以轻轻带过。要是讲得太多，长辈们会觉得不太正经。
kěyǐ qīng qīng dài guo yàoshi jiǎng de tài duō zhǎngbèimen huì juéde bú tài zhèngjing · You can mention it lightly. If you go on about it, the older relatives will think it isn't serious enough.

anna 那我穿什么得体？我想穿那条红裙子。
nà wǒ chuān shénme détǐ wǒ xiǎng chuān nà tiáo hóng qúnzi · Then what should I wear to look right? I was thinking of my red dress.

ms zhang 新娘穿红的，你最好别跟她抢。你穿那条蓝的长裙子，又文雅又优雅，也比较低调。
xīnniáng chuān hóng de nǐ zuìhǎo bié gēn tā qiǎng nǐ chuān nà tiáo lán de cháng qúnzi yòu wényǎ yòu yōuyǎ yě bǐjiào dīdiào · The bride wears red; better not to compete with her. Wear your long blue dress: refined, elegant and understated.

little sister 你还别说，安娜穿蓝的真有风采。
nǐ hái biéshuō Ānnà chuān lán de zhēn yǒu fēngcǎi · You know what, Anna really shines in blue.

anna 谢谢！对了，你们家亲戚多，我怕认错人，太失礼了。
xièxie duì le nǐmen jiā qīnqi duō wǒ pà rèncuò rén tài shīlǐ le · Thank you! Oh, there are so many of your relatives, and I'm worried I'll get people mixed up. That would be so rude.

ms zhang 没什么好怕的。伯伯个子高，说话声音深沉，看起来很威风，其实特别和气。他儿子刚当上经理，有点神气，也有点世故。
méi shénme hǎo pà de bóbo gèzi gāo shuōhuà shēngyīn shēnchén kàn qǐlai hěn wēifēng qíshí tèbié héqi tā érzi gāng dāng shàng jīnglǐ yǒu diǎn shénqì yě yǒu diǎn shìgù · Nothing to worry about. Xiaoming's uncle is tall with a deep voice: he looks imposing but he's really very kind. His son has just become a manager, so he's a bit pleased with himself and a bit too worldly-wise.

little sister 还有新娘的爸爸，是位老医生，举止特别有绅士风范，说话很文雅。你跟他说话要恭敬一点，注意礼节。
hái yǒu xīnniáng de bàba shì wèi lǎo yīshēng jǔzhǐ tèbié yǒu shēnshì fēngfàn shuōhuà hěn wényǎ nǐ gēn tā shuōhuà yào gōngjìng yìdiǎn zhùyì lǐjié · And the bride's father, an old doctor, has real gentlemanly style and speaks very elegantly. Be respectful when you talk to him, and mind your manners.

anna 明白了。还有什么要注意的?

míngbai le hái yǒu shénme yào zhùyì de · Got it. Anything else I should watch out for?

ms zhang 讲完了，郑重地向新人敬一杯茶。别太谦逊，也别太狂。做你自己就好：你的特质就是真诚，大家都看得出你很有教养。

jiǎng wán le zhèngzhòng de xiàng xīnrén jìng yì bēi chá bié tài qiānxùn yě bié tài kuáng zuò nǐ zìjǐ jiù hǎo nǐ de tèzhì jiùshì zhēnchéng dàjiā dōu kàn de chū nǐ hěn yǒu jiàoyǎng · When you've finished, solemnly raise a cup of tea to the newly-weds. Don't be too modest, and don't be too full of yourself. Just be yourself: sincerity is your special quality, and everyone can see how well brought up you are.

little sister 对，常人第一次在几百个人面前讲话都会紧张。别担心仪表了，你今天的样子已经很好了。

duì chángrén dì yī cì zài jǐ bǎi gè rén miànqián jiǎnghuà dōu huì jǐnzhāng bié dānxīn yíbiǎo le nǐ jīntiān de yàngzi yǐjīng hěn hǎo le · Exactly. Anyone would be nervous speaking in front of hundreds of people for the first time. Stop worrying about how you look: you look great already.

anna 真是的，被你们这么一说，我都不紧张了。你们俩可谓是教练里的风流人物!

zhēn shì de bèi nǐmen zhème yì shuō wǒ dōu bù jǐnzhāng le nǐmen liǎ kěwèi shì jiàoliàn lǐ de fēngliú rénwù · Honestly, after all that, I'm not nervous any more. You two are the real stars among coaches!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

伯
bó
father's elder brother

爹
diē
dad (northern, rural)

宗
zōng
(measure word for deals, cases)

脉
mài
vein

good to know · 神气 and 威风 can both be praise (looking impressive) or teasing (showing off): 你看他多神气! Tone and context decide. At a Chinese wedding, guests avoid white and black (funeral colours) and leave bright red to the bride.

You can now describe anyone's style and manners in Chinese, and tell a nervous friend there's nothing to worry about.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 31 places, seasons and people

Describe places, weather, travel and the people you meet with four-character idioms, and boast or complain with 要X有X，要Y有Y.

Travel writing, tourist brochures and wedding speeches are full of these idioms: four characters paint a whole scene.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
冰天雪地	bīngtiānxuědì	a world of ice and snow	外面冰天雪地，孩子们却玩得很开心。 It's a world of ice and snow outside, but the children are having a wonderful time.
风和日丽	fēnghérìlì	gentle breeze and bright sun	婚礼那天风和日丽，大家都很高兴。 The wedding day was bright and breezy, and everyone was happy.
暴风骤雨	bàofēngzhòuyǔ	violent storm	下午突然来了一场暴风骤雨。 In the afternoon a violent storm suddenly blew up.
风吹雨打	fēngchuīyǔdǎ	battered by wind and rain	这座老房子经历了几百年的风吹雨打。 This old house has weathered centuries of wind and rain.
风雨无阻	fēngyǔwúzǔ	come rain or shine	他每天早上风雨无阻地去跑步。 He goes running every morning, come rain or shine.
风餐露宿	fēngcānlùsù	to rough it on a journey	为了拍这些照片，他在山里风餐露宿了一个月。 To take these photos he roughed it in the mountains for a month.
飞禽走兽	fēiqínzǒushòu	birds and beasts	这片森林里有各种各样的飞禽走兽。 All kinds of birds and animals live in this forest.
四面八方	sìmiànbāfāng	from all directions	来自四面八方的游客挤满了广场。 Tourists from all over packed the square.
五湖四海	wǔhúsìhǎi	all corners of the land	我们的同学来自五湖四海。 Our classmates come from every corner of the country.
四通八达	sìtōngbādá	well connected in every direction	这座城市交通四通八达。 This city's transport links go everywhere.
古今中外	gǔjīnzhōngwài	at all times and in all places	古今中外，爱情都是最受欢迎的故事。 Everywhere and in every age, love has been the favourite story.
大街小巷	dàjiēxiǎoxiàng	every street and alley	春节前，大街小巷都很热闹。 Before the Spring Festival, every street and lane is full of life.
挨家挨户	āijiāāihù	from door to door	志愿者挨家挨户地发通知。 Volunteers handed out the notice door to door.

家喻户晓	jiāyùhùxiǎo	known to every household	这个故事在中国家喻户晓。 Everyone in China knows this story.
远近闻名	yuǎnjìnwénmíng	famous far and wide	这家饭店的饺子远近闻名。 This restaurant's dumplings are famous for miles around.
举世瞩目	jǔshìzhǔmù	to attract world attention	中国的发展取得了举世瞩目的成就。 China's development has achieved results the whole world has noticed.
土生土长	tǔshēngtǔzhǎng	born and bred (locally)	我是土生土长的北京人。 I'm Beijing born and bred.
风土人情	fēngtǔrénqíng	local customs and ways	旅行不只是看风景，也要了解当地的风土人情。 Travelling isn't just sightseeing: you should get to know the local ways too.
约定俗成	yuēdìngsúchéng	established by common usage	很多礼节是约定俗成的，没有人规定。 Many customs are simply accepted by everyone; nobody laid them down.
原汁原味	yuánzhīyuánwèi	the original flavour, authentic	这家店的云南菜原汁原味。 This restaurant's Yunnan food is completely authentic.
张灯结彩	zhāngdēngjiécǎi	decorated with lanterns and streamers	过年的时候，家家户户张灯结彩。 At New Year, every home is hung with lanterns and decorations.
琴棋书画	qínqíshūhuà	music, chess, calligraphy and painting	她从小学习琴棋书画。 She has studied music, chess, calligraphy and painting since she was little.
吃喝玩乐	chīhēwánlè	eating, drinking and having fun	他每天只知道吃喝玩乐，不想工作。 All he does every day is have fun; he doesn't want to work.
天长地久	tiānchángdìjiǔ	everlasting (love)	祝你们的爱情天长地久。 May your love last for ever.
天伦之乐	tiānlúnzhīlè	the joys of family life	退休以后，爷爷在家享受天伦之乐。 Since retiring, Grandpa has been enjoying family life at home.
成家立业	chéngjiālìyè	to marry and start a career	孩子们都成家立业了，父母终于可以休息了。 The children are all married with careers, so their parents can finally rest.
深情厚谊	shēnqínghòuyì	deep friendship	我们之间的深情厚谊，我永远不会忘记。 I will never forget the deep friendship between us.
朝夕相处	zhāoxīxiāngchǔ	to be together day and night	我们在大学朝夕相处了四年。 We spent four years together, day in day out, at university.
形影不离	xíngyǐngbùlí	inseparable	那两个小朋友形影不离。 Those two children are inseparable.
萍水相逢	píngshuǐxiāngféng	to meet by chance (as strangers)	我们萍水相逢，他却帮了我这么大的忙。 We were strangers who met by chance, yet he did me such a big favour.
素不相识	sùbùxiāngshí	complete strangers	一个素不相识的人把我的钱包送了回来。 A complete stranger brought my wallet back.
似曾相识	sìcéngxiāngshí	seemingly familiar	第一次来这里，我却有一种似曾相识的感觉。 It's my first time here, but I feel as if I've been here before.

足不出户	zúbùchūhù	to stay indoors	现在网上什么都能买，足不出户也能生活。 You can buy everything online now; you can live without setting foot outside.
惊天动地	jīngtiāndòngdì	earth-shaking	他们的爱情没有惊天动地，却很温暖。 Their love wasn't earth-shattering, but it was warm.

pattern 要x有x，要y有y: have everything you could want

要 X 有 / 没 X ，要 Y 有 / 没 Y

要X有X，要Y有Y lists what someone or somewhere has: "want X? there's X; want Y? there's Y". With 没 it lists what is missing, often as a complaint: 要钱没钱，要人没人. The nouns are short, usually one or two characters.

那个地方要风景有风景，要美食有美食。 **nàge dìfang yào fēngjǐng yǒu fēngjǐng yào měishí yǒu měishí** That place has it all: great scenery and great food.

他要学历有学历，要经验有经验。 **tā yào xuélì yǒu xuélì yào jīngyàn yǒu jīngyàn** He has the qualifications and the experience.

这个小村子要车没车，要路没路，出门很不方便。 **zhège xiǎo cūn zi yào chē méi chē yào lù méi lù chūmén hěn bù fāngbiàn** This little village has no cars and no roads; getting anywhere is a struggle.

dialogue a honeymoon in yunnan

xiaoming 周博士，听说您刚从云南回来？我们下周就去那儿度蜜月。
Zhōubóshì tīngshuō nín gāng cóng Yúnnán huílái wǒmen xià zhōu jiù qù nàr dù mìyuè · Dr Zhou, I hear you've just got back from Yunnan? We're going there on honeymoon next week.

dr zhou 你们选对地方了！云南要山有山，要水有水，要花有花，四季都很舒服。
nǐmen xuǎn duì dìfang le Yúnnán yào shān yǒu shān yào shuǐ yǒu shuǐ yào huā yǒu huā sìjì dōu hěn shūfu · You've picked the right place! Yunnan has mountains, rivers and flowers, and it's pleasant all year round.

anna 您这次去是工作吧？
nín zhè cì qù shì gōngzuò ba · You were there for work this time, weren't you?

dr zhou 对，我们去山里研究气候，风餐露宿了一个月。有一天碰到暴风骤雨，我们的东西差点被吹走了，样子狼狈极了。
duì wǒmen qù shān lǐ yánjiū qìhòu fēngcān lùsù le yí gè yuè yǒu yì tiān pèng dào bàofēng zhòuyǔ wǒmen de dōngxi chà diǎn bèi chuī zǒu le yàngzi lángbèi jí le · Yes, we were studying the climate in the mountains and roughed it for a month. One day we were caught in a violent storm and our things nearly blew away: we looked a total mess.

xiaoming 太辛苦了！那里的飞禽走兽多吗？
tài xīnkǔ le nàlǐ de fēiqín zǒushòu duō ma · That sounds exhausting! Is there a lot of wildlife?

dr zhou 特别多。山上有些地方一年四季冰天雪地，山下却风和日丽，差别特别大，景色让人惊叹。
tèbié duō shān shàng yǒuxiē dìfang yì nián sìjì bīngtiān xuědì shān xià què fēnghé rìlì chābié tèbié dà jǐngsè ràng rén jīngtàn · Loads. Some places on the mountains are snow and ice all year, while down below it's sunny and mild: a huge difference, and the views are amazing.

anna 那里的人呢？
nàlǐ de rén ne · And the people?

dr zhou 土生土长的当地人特别热情、淳朴。我们跟他们素不相识，他们却挨家挨户地请我们吃饭，盛情难却。那里的风土人情，你们一定要好好了解一下。
tǔshēng tǔzhǎng de dāngdì rén tèbié rèqíng chúnpǔ wǒmen gēn tāmen sùbùxiāngshí tāmen què āijiā āihù de qǐng wǒmen chī fàn shèngqíng nán què nàlǐ de fēngtǔ rénqíng nǐmen yídìng yào hǎohǎo liǎojiě yíxià · The local people, born and bred there, are so warm and unspoilt. We were complete strangers, yet one family after another invited us to eat: such kindness is hard to refuse. Do get to know the local ways while you're there.

xiaoming 一定！我们还想尝尝原汁原味的云南菜，肯定很过瘾。
yídìng wǒmen hái xiǎng cháng chang yuánzhī yuánwèi de Yúnnán cài kěndìng hěn guòyǐn · We will! And we want to try real, authentic Yunnan food: it'll be a treat.

dr zhou 那里的米线远近闻名，在当地家喻户晓。不过别只顾吃喝玩乐，也去看看古城。古城经历了几百年的风吹雨打，还保存得这么好，保护工作取得了举世瞩目的成绩。
nàlǐ de mǐ xiàn yuǎnjìn wénmíng zài dāngdì jiāyù hùxiǎo búguò bié zhǐgù chī hē wán lè yě qù kàn kan gǔ chéng gǔ chéng jīnglì le jǐ bǎi nián de fēngchuī yǔdǎ hái bǎocún de zhème hǎo bǎohù gōngzuò qǔdé le jǔshì zhǔmù de chéngjì · The rice noodles there are famous for miles around; every family knows them. But don't spend all your time eating and having fun: go and see the old towns too. They've weathered centuries of wind and rain and are still so well preserved: the conservation work there has won worldwide attention.

anna 对了，我听说新娘琴棋书画样样都会？
duì le wǒ tīngshuō xīnniáng qín qí shū huà yàng yàng dōu huì · By the way, I hear the bride can do it all: music, chess, calligraphy and painting?

xiaoming 哪有！她只是会画画罢了。不过婚礼上的规矩她都懂，比如发喜糖、敬茶，这些都是约定俗成的。
nǎ yǒu tā zhǐshì huì huà huà bàle búguò hūnlǐ shàng de guīju tā dōu dǒng bǐrú fā xǐtáng jìng chá zhèxiē dōu shì yuēdìng súchéng de · Hardly! She can paint, that's all. But she knows all the wedding customs, like handing out sweets and serving tea: things everyone just does.

anna 说到婚礼，小明，客人都到了吗？
shuō dào hūnlǐ Xiǎomíng kèrén dōu dào le ma · Speaking of the wedding, Xiaoming, have the guests all arrived?

xiaoming 差不多了。亲戚朋友来自五湖四海，四面八方的人都往北京赶。好在北京交通四通八达。

chàbuduō le qīnqi péngyou láizì wǔhú sìhǎi sìmiàn bāfāng de rén dōu wǎng Běijīng gǎn hǎozài Běijīng jiāotōng sìtōng bādá · Nearly. Our relatives and friends come from all over the country, heading for Beijing from every direction. Luckily Beijing's transport links go everywhere.

dr zhou 小明，你跟安娜认识多久了？听说你们俩以前形影不离的。

Xiǎomíng nǐ gēn Ānnà rènshi duō jiǔ le tīngshuō nǐmen liǎ yǐqián xíngyǐng bùlí de · Xiaoming, how long have you and Anna known each other? I hear you two used to be inseparable.

anna 快十年了。我们当年萍水相逢，后来朝夕相处，成了最好的朋友。古今中外，这样的深情厚谊都不多。

kuài shí nián le wǒmen dāngnián píngshuǐ xiāngféng hòulái zhāoxī xiāngchǔ chéng le zuìhǎo de péngyou gǔjīn zhōngwài zhèyàng de shēnqíng hòuyì dōu bù duō · Nearly ten years. We met by chance back then, then spent so much time together that we became best friends. A friendship like that is rare anywhere, in any age.

xiaoming 现在我成家立业了，她还是我的好朋友。说实话，第一次见到她，我就有一种似曾相识的感觉。

xiànzài wǒ chéngjiā lìyè le tā háishi wǒ de hǎo péngyou shuō shíhuà dì yī cì jiàn dào tā wǒ jiù yǒu yì zhǒng sìcéng xiāngshí de gǎnjué · Now I'm married with a career, and she's still my good friend. To be honest, the first time I met her I felt as if I'd known her before.

dr zhou 办完婚礼以后，可别足不出户，整天在家享受天伦之乐，把老朋友都忘了。

bàn wán hūnlǐ yǐhòu kě bié zúbùchūhù zhěng tiān zài jiā xiǎngshòu tiānlúnzhīlè bǎ lǎo péngyou dōu wàng le · After the wedding, don't stay shut away at home all day enjoying family life and forget your old friends.

anna 放心吧，他风雨无阻，每个星期都要找我喝咖啡。去云南也好，在北京也罢，我们的友谊天长地久。

fàngxīn ba tā fēngyǔ wúzǔ měi gè xīngqī dōu yào zhǎo wǒ hē kāfēi qù Yúnnán yěhǎo zài Běijīng yěbà wǒmen de yǒuyì tiāncháng dìjiǔ · Don't worry: rain or shine, he wants coffee with me every week. In Yunnan or in Beijing, our friendship will last for ever.

dr zhou 说得好！婚礼不用惊天动地，简单、温暖就好。到时候我一定去喝你们的喜酒。

shuō de hǎo hūnlǐ búyòng jīngtiān dòngdì jiǎndān wēnnuǎn jiù hǎo dào shíhou wǒ yídìng qù hē nǐmen de xǐjiǔ · Well said! A wedding doesn't have to be earth-shaking: simple and warm is best. I'll definitely be there to celebrate with you.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

胎
tāi
foetus; birth (child number); tyre

吻
wěn
to kiss; kiss

纱
shā
gauze, fine yarn

罢
bà
to stop

good to know · Some idioms pair opposites to mean “everything”: 古今中外 (past, present, China, abroad), 大街小巷 (big streets and little lanes), 四面八方 (four sides, eight directions). 天长地久 is a classic wedding wish, along with 白头到老 (grow old together) and 百年好合 (a hundred years of harmony).

Four characters, a whole picture: you can now describe a journey, a place and its people like a Chinese travel writer.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 32 mission: xiaoming's wedding

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 4 · family

Follow a five-part story of a Chinese wedding day, from fetching the bride to the last guest leaving, with the whole unit's words for family, marriage, care, remembrance, manners and idioms.

A mission pulls the unit together: every word for relatives, love and marriage, raising children and caring for parents, remembrance, manners and four-character idioms, in one story.

chapter 1 fetching the bride

little sister 哥哥，今天风和日丽，真是个好日子！你看，嫂子家门口张灯结彩，邻居们家家户户都知道有人结婚了。

gēge jīntiān fēnghé rìlì zhēn shì gè hǎo rìzi nǐ kàn sǎozi jiā ménkǒu zhāngdēng jiécǎi línjūmen jiājiāhùhù dōu zhīdào yǒu rén jiéhūn le · Brother, sunshine and a gentle breeze: what a perfect day! Look, your bride's building is covered in lanterns and streamers; every household in the block knows there's a wedding.

xiaoming 别瞎闹了，我紧张得要死。门怎么偏偏这时候不开？

bié xiā nào le wǒ jǐnzhāng de yào sǐ mén zěnme piānpiān zhè shíhou bù kāi · Stop fooling around, I'm nervous enough already. Why won't the door open now of all times?

little sister 按照约定俗成的规矩，女方的朋友照例要考考新郎。你还别说，她们准备的问题可难了。

ànzhào yuēdìng súchéng de guīju nǚfāng de péngyou zhàolì yào kǎo kao xīnláng nǐ hái biéshuō tāmen zhǔnbèi de wèntí kě nán le · By custom, the bride's friends always test the groom. You know what, the questions they've prepared are really hard.

xiaoming 问吧！要问题有问题，要红包有红包，我都准备好了。

wèn ba yào wèntí yǒu wèntí yào hóngbāo yǒu hóngbāo wǒ dōu zhǔnbèi hǎo le · Ask away! Questions, red envelopes, whatever you want: I'm ready for it all.

little sister 第一个问题：你们俩是怎么认识的？

dì yī gè wèntí nǐmen liǎ shì zěnme rènshi de · First question: how did you two meet?

xiaoming 我们萍水相逢，在去云南的火车上。碰巧她坐我对面，我却有一种似曾相识的感觉。

wǒmen píngshuǐ xiāngféng zài qù Yúnnán de huǒchē shàng pèngqiǎo tā zuò wǒ duìmiàn wǒ què yǒu yì zhǒng sìcéng xiāngshí de gǎnjué · We met by chance, on a train to Yunnan. She happened to be sitting opposite me, and I felt as if I'd known her before.

little sister 第二个问题：新娘的籍贯是哪里？她的姓氏怎么写？

dì èr gè wèntí xīnniáng de jíguàn shì nǎlǐ tā de xìngshì zěnme xiě · Second question: where is the bride's family from? And how do you write her surname?

xiaoming 杭州！她姓林，跟林编辑一样。这些我万万不会答错。

Hángzhōu tā xìng Lín gēn Línbiānjí yíyàng zhèxiē wǒ wànwàn bú huì dá cuò · Hangzhou! Her surname is Lin, like Editor Lin. There's no way I'd get those wrong.

little sister 第三个问题：结婚以后，家里谁做主？

dì sān gè wèntí jiéhūn yǐhòu jiā lǐ shéi zuòzhǔ · Third question: once you're married, who has the final say at home?

xiaoming 她做主！大事也好，小事也罢，我宁可听她的，也不跟她吵。

tā zuòzhǔ dàshì yěhǎo xiǎo shì yěbà wǒ nìngkě tīng tā de yě bù gēn tā chǎo · She does! Big things or small things, I'd rather do as she says than argue.

little sister 门开了！岳父岳母都在门口等着。你快恭敬地叫一声“爸爸、妈妈”。以前的人还要叫“爹、娘”呢。

mén kāi le yuèfù yuèmǔ dōu zài ménkǒu děng zhe nǐ kuài gōngjìng de jiào yì shēng bàba māma yǐqián de rén hái yào jiào diē niáng ne · The door's open! Your father-in-law and mother-in-law are waiting at the door. Quick, call them “Dad” and “Mum”, nice and respectfully. In the old days people even said “diē” and “niáng”.

xiaoming 爸爸，妈妈！你们放心把闺女交给我，我一定好好照顾她，做一个好女婿。

bàba māma nǐmen fàngxīn bǎ guīnü jiāo gěi wǒ wǒ yídìng hǎohǎo zhàogù tā zuò yí gè hǎo nǚxu · Dad, Mum! You can trust me with your daughter; I'll take good care of her and be a good son-in-law.

little sister 她妈妈笑着说：“我们家世普通，家境一般，可家教很严。这丫头从小被我们疼爱、娇惯，以后你要多迁就她。”她爸爸只是郑重地点了点头，他性格比较深沉。

tā māma xiào zhe shuō wǒmen jiāshì pǔtōng jiājìng yìbān kě jiājiào hěn yán zhè yātou cóngxiǎo bèi wǒmen téngài jiāoguàn yǐhòu nǐ yào duō qiānjiù tā tā bàba zhǐshì zhèngzhòng de diǎn le diǎntóu tā xìnggé bǐjiào shēnchén · Her mum says with a smile: “We're an ordinary family and not well off, but we brought her up strictly. We doted on this girl and spoiled her, so you'll have to humour her.” Her dad just gives a solemn nod: he's the quiet type.

xiaoming 我看见她了……她穿着婚纱，太美了。

wǒ kànjiàn tā le tā chuān zhe hūnshā tài měi le · I can see her … in her wedding dress. She's so beautiful.

little sister 你看你，眼睛都红了！以前人家出嫁要带很多嫁妆，现在嫂子带的唯有一个箱子、一本相册而已。相册里那个少女就是她小时候吧?

nǐ kàn nǐ yǎnjing dōu hóng le yǐqián rénjia chū jià yào dài hěn duō jiàzhuang xiànzài sǎozi dài de wéiyǒu yí gè xiāngzi yì běn xiàngcè éryǐ xiàngcè lǐ nàge shàonǚ jiùshì tā xiǎoshíhou ba · Look at you, your eyes are all red! In the old days a bride brought a big dowry; now she's bringing nothing but a suitcase and a photo album. Is that girl in the album her when she was young?

chapter 2 the guests arrive

anna 李叔叔，客人们从四面八方来了。幸亏孙律师帮忙，婚礼才能如期举行。

Lǐ shūshu kèrénmen cóng sìmiàn bāfāng lái le xìngkuī Sūnlǜshī bāngmáng hūnlǐ cái néng rúqī jǔxíng · Uncle Li, the guests are arriving from every direction. Thank goodness for Lawyer Sun: only thanks to him can the wedding go ahead as planned.

lawyer sun 小事罢了。酒店经理当着我的面向你们道歉，还一并免了你们的茶水费。他说以后再也不敢擅自改别人的日子了。

xiǎo shì bàle jiǔdiàn jīnglǐ dāngzhe wǒ de miàn xiàng nǐmen dàoqiàn hái yíbìng miǎn le nǐmen de chá shuǐ fèi tā shuō yǐhòu zài yě bù gǎn shànzì gǎi biérén de rìzi le · It was nothing. The hotel manager apologised to you in front of me and waived your tea and drinks charge into the bargain. He says he'll never dare change anyone's date without asking again.

dr li 太感谢了！孙律师，您务必坐前面。安娜，那是我哥哥嫂子，打西安专程赶来的。北京交通四通八达，他们坐高铁才五个小时。

tài gǎnxiè le Sūnlǜshī nín wùbì zuò qiánmiàn Ānnà nà shì wǒ gēge sǎozi dǎ Xīān zhuānchéng gǎn lái de Běijīng jiāotōng sìtōng bādá tāmen zuò gāotiě cái wǔ gè xiǎoshí · Thank you so much! Lawyer Sun, you must sit at the front. Anna, that's my older brother and his wife; they've come all the way from Xi'an specially. Beijing's connected to everywhere: it's only five hours on the high-speed train.

anna 伯伯好！伯母好！旁边这两位一模一样的，一定是那对双胞胎姐妹吧？

bóbo hǎo bómǔ hǎo pángbiān zhè liǎng wèi yìmú yíyàng de yídìng shì nà duì shuāngbāotāi jiěmèi ba · Hello, Uncle! Hello, Auntie! And these two who look exactly alike must be the twin sisters?

dr li 对，李生姐妹，今年刚上大学。我们李家祖籍西安，这次整个家族的人差不多都来了，都是同胞兄弟的子孙，血脉相连。

duì luánshēng jiěmèi jīnnián gāng shàng dàxué wǒmen Lǐ jiā zǔjí Xīān zhè cì zhěnggè jiāzú de rén chàbuduō dōu lái le dōu shì tóngbāo xiōngdì de zǐsūn xuèmài xiānglián · Yes, twins, just started university this year. The Li family comes from Xi'an, and nearly the whole clan has come this time: all descendants of the same brothers, one bloodline.

anna 那位坐在轮椅上的老人家是？

nà wèi zuò zài lúnyǐ shàng de lǎorenjia shì · And the old lady in the wheelchair?

dr li 是小明的外婆，已经八十八岁高龄了。她年轻时就成了寡妇，一个人把孩子们抚养长大，操劳了一辈子。鉴于她年迈，我们本来不想让她来，可她执意要来。

shì Xiǎomíng de wàipó yǐjīng bāshíbā suì gāolíng le tā niánqīng shí jiù chéng le guǎfu yí gè rén bǎ háizimen fǔyǎng zhǎng dà cāoláo le yíbèizi jiànyú tā niánmài wǒmen běnlái bù xiǎng ràng tā lái kě tā zhíyì yào lái · That's Xiaoming's grandma, eighty-eight now. She was widowed young, brought up her children on her own and worked hard all her life. Given her age we didn't want her to come, but she insisted.

anna 她看起来很高兴。今天子孙都在身边，晚年最大的幸福就是这样的天伦之乐吧。

tā kàn qǐlai hěn gāoxìng jīntiān zǐsūn dōu zài shēnbiān wǎnnián zuì dà de xìngfú jiùshì zhèyàng de tiānlúnzhīlè ba · She looks so happy. All her children and grandchildren around her: in old age, the joy of family must be the greatest happiness.

dr zhou 安娜！我来了。这里人真多，要热闹有热闹，要人有人。我刚从山里回来，风餐露宿了一个星期，今天可要好好吃一顿。

Ānnà wǒ lái le zhèlǐ rén zhēn duō yào rènao yǒu rènao yào rén yǒu rén wǒ gāng cóng shān lǐ huílái fēngcān lùsù le yí gè xīngqī jīntiān kě yào hǎohǎo chī yí dùn · Anna! Here I am. So many people: it's as lively and crowded as a wedding should be. I've just come back from roughing it in the mountains for a week, so today I'm going to eat well.

anna 周博士，欢迎！您能来，婚礼更有风采了。喜糖在这儿，您拿一点。

Zhōubóshì huānyíng nín néng lái hūnlǐ gèng yǒu fēngcǎi le xǐtáng zài zhèr nín ná yìdiǎn · Dr Zhou, welcome! With you here, the wedding is even more splendid. Here are the wedding sweets: do take some.

dr li 那边是小明的爷爷奶奶，结婚五十多年的老两口。你看，爷爷还吻了吻奶奶的手，一直那么恩爱。

nàbiān shì Xiǎomíng de yéye nǎinai jiéhūn wǔshí duō nián de lǎo liǎng kǒu nǐ kàn yéye hái wěn le wen nǎinai

de shǒu yìzhí nàme ēnài · Over there are Xiaoming's grandpa and grandma, married more than fifty years. Look, Grandpa's just kissed Grandma's hand: still so devoted.

dr zhou 老伴儿老伴儿，比年轻情侣还甜蜜。祝他们天长地久！

lǎobànr lǎobànr bǐ niánqīng qínglǚ hái tiánmì zhù tāmen tiāncháng dìjiǔ · An old couple growing old together, sweeter than any young lovers. May they last for ever!

chapter 3 the ceremony

dr li 婚礼开始了。音乐很庄重，新人慢慢走上台。

hūnlǐ kāishǐ le yīnyuè hěn zhuāngzhòng xīnrén màn màn zǒu shàngtái · The ceremony is starting. The music is solemn, and the couple are walking slowly up onto the stage.

anna 新娘举止优雅，仪表大方；小明穿上西装，也挺绅士、挺威风的。

xīnniáng jǔzhǐ yōuyǎ yíbiǎo dàfang Xiǎomíng chuān shàng xīzhuāng yě tǐng shēnshì tǐng wēifēng de · The bride carries herself so elegantly and looks so poised; and Xiaoming in his suit looks quite the gentleman, and rather impressive.

dr li 现在，新人要向双方父母敬茶。这是表示孝敬，感谢父母多年的养育。

xiànzài xīnrén yào xiàng shuāngfāng fùmǔ jìng chá zhè shì biǎoshì xiàojìng gǎnxiè fùmǔ duō nián de yǎngyù · Now the couple will serve tea to both sets of parents: a way of showing respect and thanking them for bringing them up all these years.

anna 小明的妈妈哭了。您不激动吗?

Xiǎomíng de māma kū le nín bù jīdòng ma · Xiaoming's mum is crying. Aren't you moved?

dr li 我何尝不激动？三十年前，他妈妈是孕妇的时候，我每天晚上都跟胎儿说话。生育一个孩子，孕育一个生命，多不容易啊。

wǒ hécháng bù jīdòng sānshí nián qián tā māma shì yùnfù de shíhou wǒ měi tiān wǎnshang dōu gēn tāiér shuōhuà shēngyù yí gè háizi yùnyù yí gè shēngmìng duō bù róngyì a · Don't think I'm not! Thirty years ago his mother was pregnant, and every night I talked to the baby. Having a child, carrying a new life: it's no small thing.

dr li 他满周岁以前，每天在摇篮里吃了睡，睡了吃。后来我们工作忙，是外婆一口一口喂养他。我管教他很严，他小时候顽皮，上中学又叛逆，现在终于成家了。

tā mǎn zhōusuì yǐqián měi tiān zài yáolán lǐ chī le shuì shuì le chī hòulái wǒmen gōngzuò máng shì wàipó yì kǒu yì kǒu wèiyǎng tā wǒ guǎnjiào tā hěn yán tā xiǎoshíhou wánpí shàng zhōngxué yòu pànnì xiànzài zhōngyú chéngjiā le · Until his first birthday, he just ate and slept in his cradle. Later we were busy with work, and it was his grandma who fed him spoonful by spoonful. I was strict with him; he was a naughty boy and a rebellious teenager, and now at last he's married.

anna 他是个孝顺的儿子。他说以后要好好赡养你们，伺候你们。

tā shì gè xiàoshùn de érzi tā shuō yǐhòu yào hǎohǎo shànyǎng nǐmen cìhou nǐmen · He's a devoted son. He says he's going to take good care of you both and look after you.

dr li 我们不需要他供养，也用不着他侍候，只要他们两口子和睦、美满就好。婚姻乃人生大事，过日子终究要靠他们自己。

wǒmen bù xūyào tā gōngyǎng yě yòngbuzháo tā shìhòu zhǐyào tāmen liǎngkǒuzi hémù měimǎn jiù hǎo hūnyīn nǎi rénshēng dàshì guò rìzi zhōngjiū yào kào tāmen zìjǐ · We don't need him to support us or wait on us. As long as the two of them live in harmony and happiness, that's enough. Marriage is one of life's great events, and in the end it's up to them to make it work.

anna 李叔叔，小明说上周你们去给他太爷爷扫墓了?

Lǐ shūshu Xiǎomíng shuō shàng zhōu nǐmen qù gěi tā tài yéye sǎomù le · Uncle Li, Xiaoming said you went to tend his great-grandfather's grave last week?

dr li 对。我祖父十年前逝世，葬在城外的公墓。那年听到噩耗，我正在医院值班，没能在他身边。

duì wǒ zǔfù shí nián qián shìshì zàng zài chéng wài de gōngmù nà nián tīng dào èhào wǒ zhèngzài yīyuàn zhíbān méi néng zài tā shēnbiān · Yes. My grandfather passed away ten years ago and is buried in the public cemetery outside the city. When the sad news came, I was on duty at the hospital and couldn't be at his side.

dr li 他生前留下遗嘱，依照遗嘱，他的遗物里有一块祖传的手表，要在小明结婚这天送给他。经家人商量，今天由我来送。

tā shēngqián liúxia yízhǔ yīzhào yízhǔ tā de yíwù lǐ yǒu yí kuài zǔchuán de shǒubiǎo yào zài Xiǎomíng jiéhūn zhè tiān sòng gěi tā jīng jiārén shāngliang jīntiān yóu wǒ lái sòng · He left a will. According to it, among his belongings there's a watch handed down in the family, to be given to Xiaoming on his wedding day. After talking it over, the family decided I would give it to him today.

anna 太感人了。你们在墓碑前告诉他这个好消息了吗?

tài gǎnrén le nǐmen zài mùbēi qián gàosu tā zhège hǎo xiāoxi le ma · That's so moving. Did you tell him the good news in front of his gravestone?

dr li 告诉了，我们献了花，祭了他老人家。现在不讲究复杂的祭祀，心到了就好。好了，下面是你讲话。没什么好紧张的，讲得得体就行。

gàosu le wǒmen xiàn le huā jì le tā lǎorenjia xiànzài bù jiǎngjiu fùzá de jìsì xīn dào le jiù hǎo hǎo le xiàmiàn shì nǐ jiǎnghuà méi shénme hǎo jǐnzhāng de jiǎng de détǐ jiù xíng · We did. We laid flowers and paid our respects. Nobody bothers with elaborate rites now; it's the thought that counts. Right, you're up next. Nothing to be nervous about: just keep it fitting.

chapter 4 anna's speech

anna “各位来宾，各位亲戚朋友：大家好！我是安娜，新郎的老朋友。我们相识快十年了，一直是最好的朋友。

gèwèi láibīn gèwèi qīnqi péngyou dàjiā hǎo wǒ shì Ānnà xīnláng de lǎo péngyou wǒmen xiāngshí kuài shí nián le yìzhí shì zuìhǎo de péngyou · “Dear guests, dear family and friends: hello! I’m Anna, an old friend of the groom. We’ve known each other nearly ten years, and we’ve always been the best of friends.

anna 我刚到北京的时候，跟他素不相识。一个下雪天，冰天雪地，我在学校门口迷了路，恰巧他经过，帮了我。打那天起，他就像我的哥哥一样。

wǒ gāng dào Běijīng de shíhou gēn tā sùbùxiāngshí yí gè xià xuě tiān bīngtiān xuědì wǒ zài xuéxiào ménkǒu mí le lù qiàqiǎo tā jīngguò bāng le wǒ dǎ nà tiān qǐ tā jiù xiàng wǒ de gēge yíyàng · When I first came to Beijing, he was a complete stranger. One snowy day, everything frozen, I got lost at the school gate; he happened to be passing, and he helped me. From that day on, he’s been like a brother to me.

anna 小明性情温和，为朋友风雨无阻。他有时候有点古怪，也有点神气，可他是我见过的最爽快、最真诚的家伙。他从来不张扬，也不世故，有一颗常人少有的真心。

Xiǎomíng xìngqíng wēnhé wèi péngyou fēngyǔ wúzǔ tā yǒu shíhou yǒu diǎn gǔguài yě yǒu diǎn shénqì kě tā shì wǒ jiàn guo de zuì shuǎngkuai zuì zhēnchéng de jiāhuo tā cónglái bù zhāngyáng yě bú shìgù yǒu yì kē chángrén shǎo yǒude zhēnxīn · Xiaoming has a gentle nature and will turn out for a friend in any weather. He can be a bit eccentric, and a bit cocky, but he’s the most straightforward, genuine guy I’ve ever met. He never shows off, he isn’t slick, and he has a sincere heart you rarely find.

anna 新娘是一位有教养的杭州姑娘，含蓄、文雅，琴棋书画虽然不样样精通，画画却远近闻名，在她们家那条街上家喻户晓。

xīnniáng shì yí wèi yǒu jiàoyǎng de Hángzhōu gūniang hánxù wényǎ qín qí shū huà suīrán bú yàng yàng jīngtōng huà huà què yuǎnjìn wénmíng zài tāmen jiā nà tiáo jiē shàng jiāyù hùxiǎo · The bride is a well brought-up girl from Hangzhou, reserved and refined; she may not be a master of all the classical arts, but her paintings are famous far and wide, and everyone in her street knows them.

anna 他们第一次相遇是在去云南的火车上。古今中外，好的爱情不一定惊天动地，却一定要互相体谅、互相呵护。人生总有暴风骤雨，有你们俩在一起，什么都不怕。

tāmen dì yī cì xiāngyù shì zài qù Yúnnán de huǒchē shàng gǔjīn zhōngwài hǎo de àiqíng bù yídìng jīngtiān dòngdì què yídìng yào hùxiāng tǐliàng hùxiāng hēhù rénshēng zǒng yǒu bàofēng zhòuyǔ yǒu nǐmen liǎ zài yìqǐ shénme dōu bú pà · They first met on a train to Yunnan. Everywhere and in every age, a good love story doesn’t have to be earth-shaking, but it does need understanding and care on both sides. Life always brings storms, but together you two need fear nothing.

anna 依我看，小明找到了最好的伴侣，新娘也找到了一个好归宿。

yī wǒ kàn Xiǎomíng zhǎo dào le zuìhǎo de bànlǚ xīnniáng yě zhǎo dào le yí gè hǎo guīsù · As I see it, Xiaoming has found the best partner in the world, and the bride has found a husband to settle down with.

anna 最后，我想以朋友的身份说一句：小明，结婚以后，可别足不出户，把老朋友忘了！

zuìhòu wǒ xiǎng yǐ péngyou de shēnfèn shuō yí jù Xiǎomíng jiéhūn yǐhòu kě bié zúbùchūhù bǎ lǎo péngyou wàng le · Finally, speaking as a friend, I’d like to say one thing: Xiaoming, now that you’re married, don’t stay shut away at home and forget your old friends!

anna 让我们一起祝福这对新人：恩爱一生，天长地久，早点享受天伦之乐！谢谢大家！”

ràng wǒmen yìqǐ zhùfú zhè duì xīnrén ēnài yìshēng tiāncháng dìjiǔ zǎo diǎn xiǎngshòu tiānlúnzhīlè xièxie dàjiā · Let’s all wish this couple a lifetime of love that lasts for ever, and the joys of a family of their own soon! Thank you, everyone!”

dr li 讲得太好了！大家都在鼓掌，连那位最深沉的岳父都笑了。

jiǎng de tài hǎo le dàjiā dōu zài gǔzhǎng lián nà wèi zuì shēnchén de yuèfù dōu xiào le · That was wonderful! Everyone’s clapping; even the quiet father-in-law is smiling.

dr zhou 说得多得体！又有分寸，又有感情，很有风度，真有大家风范。

shuō de duō détǐ yòu yǒu fēncun yòu yǒu gǎnqíng hěn yǒu fēngdù zhēn yǒu dàjiā fēngfàn · How fitting that was! Just the right tone, full of feeling, and so poised: real class.

chapter 5 the end of the day

xiaoming 安娜，谢谢你的讲话！我岳母说，你比她亲生女儿还会说话。
Ānnà xièxie nǐ de jiǎnghuà wǒ yuèmǔ shuō nǐ bǐ tā qīnshēng nǚér hái huì shuōhuà · Anna, thank you for your speech! My mother-in-law says you speak better than her own daughter.

anna 哈哈，她太客气了。外婆呢？
hā hā tā tài kèqi le wàipó ne · Ha, she's too kind. Where's Grandma?

xiaoming 她累了，保姆先送她回家休息了。走以前她拉着我的手说，她一辈子最大的愿望，就是看到我成家立业。说完她把我抱在怀里，就像我小时候一样。
tā lèi le bǎomǔ xiān sòng tā huí jiā xiūxi le zǒu yǐqián tā lā zhe wǒ de shǒu shuō tā yíbèizi zuì dà de yuànwàng jiùshì kàn dào wǒ chéngjiā lìyè shuō wán tā bǎ wǒ bào zài huái lǐ jiù xiàng wǒ xiǎoshíhou yíyàng · She was tired, so the home help has taken her home to rest. Before she left, she held my hand and said her greatest wish in life was to see me married and settled. Then she held me in her arms, just like when I was little.

anna 她一定很欣慰。对了，婚礼上那个节目单是谁改的？
tā yídìng hěn xīnwèi duì le hūnlǐ shàng nàge jiémù dān shì shéi gǎi de · She must be so pleased. By the way, who changed the running order?

xiaoming 我妹妹！她私自加了一个节目，让我当着大家的面唱歌。幸好我早有准备，索性唱了两首。
wǒ mèimei tā sīzì jiā le yí gè jiémù ràng wǒ dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn chàng gē xìnghǎo wǒ zǎo yǒu zhǔnbèi suǒxìng chàng le liǎng shǒu · My sister! She added an act without telling anyone and had me sing in front of everyone. Luckily I was prepared, so I just went ahead and sang two.

anna 你唱得像个疯子，不过大家都很开心。她这个人有意捣乱，其实是想让气氛更热闹。
nǐ chàng de xiàng gè fēngzi búguò dàjiā dōu hěn kāixīn tā zhè gè rén yǒuyì dǎoluàn qíshí shì xiǎng ràng qìfēn gèng rènao · You sang like a madman, but everyone loved it. She makes trouble on purpose, but really she just wanted to liven things up.

xiaoming 我知道。我跟妹妹性格截然不同，可她是我最亲的人。
wǒ zhīdào wǒ gēn mèimei xìnggé jiérán bù tóng kě tā shì wǒ zuì qīn de rén · I know. My sister and I are complete opposites, but she's the person closest to me.

anna 你们明天去度蜜月吗？
nǐmen míngtiān qù dù mìyuè ma · Are you off on honeymoon tomorrow?

xiaoming 对，明天去云南，照样坐火车，就是我们第一次相遇的那趟车。那里的风土人情、原汁原味的菜，还有飞禽走兽，我都想看看。不过我们不是只为了吃喝玩乐。
duì míngtiān qù Yúnnán zhàoyàng zuò huǒchē jiùshì wǒmen dì yī cì xiāngyù de nà tàng chē nàlǐ de fēngtǔ rénqíng yuánzhī yuánwèi de cài hái yǒu fēiqín zǒushòu wǒ dōu xiǎng kàn kan búguò wǒmen bú shì zhǐ wèile chī hē wán lè · Yes, Yunnan tomorrow, by train as before: the very same train we met on. The local life, the authentic food, the wildlife: I want to see it all. Not just to eat and play, though.

dr zhou 别忘了我说的：去山里要多带衣服，那里的天气常常骤然变化，风吹雨打的，可别冒险。云南这几年的发展举世瞩目，你们会喜欢的。
bié wàng le wǒ shuō de qù shān lǐ yào duō dài yīfu nàlǐ de tiānqì chángcháng zhòurán biànhuà fēngchuī yǔdǎ de kě bié màoxiǎn Yúnnán zhè jǐ nián de fāzhǎn jǔshì zhǔmù nǐmen huì xǐhuan de · Don't forget what I told you: take plenty of clothes to the mountains. The weather there often changes suddenly, all wind and rain, so don't take risks. Yunnan's development these past few years has caught the world's eye; you'll love it.

anna 回来以后，你们每逢过年，打算回谁家探亲？
huílái yǐhòu nǐmen měi féng guònián dǎsuàn huí shéi jiā tànqīn · When you get back, whose family are you going to visit at New Year?

xiaoming 我们早就商量好了：今年去男方家，明年去女方家，轮流来。
wǒmen zǎo jiù shāngliang hǎo le jīnnián qù nánfāng jiā míngnián qù nǚfāng jiā lúnliú lái · We sorted that out ages ago: this year the groom's family, next year the bride's, taking turns.

dr li 好，这个办法公平。客人都要走了，我们去门口送别大家吧。
hǎo zhège bànfǎ gōngpíng kèrén dōu yào zǒu le wǒmen qù ménkǒu sòngbié dàjiā ba · Good, that's fair. The guests are leaving; let's go to the door and see everyone off.

anna 今天来的人来自五湖四海，大家的深情厚谊，小明一定会记一辈子。

jīntiān lái de rén láizì wǔhú sìhǎi dàjiā de shēnqíng hòuyì Xiǎomíng yídìng huì jì yíbèizi · People came from every corner of the country today. Xiaoming will remember everyone's kindness for the rest of his life.

xiaoming 一定！安娜，你也要早点找到你的另一半。单身也好，成家也罢，我都希望你幸福。

yídìng Ānnà nǐ yě yào zǎo diǎn zhǎo dào nǐ de lìng yíbàn dānshēn yěhǎo chéngjiā yěbà wǒ dōu xīwàng nǐ xìngfú · I will! Anna, I hope you find your other half soon too. Single or married, I just want you to be happy.

You've just followed a whole Chinese wedding day, every relative, custom and toast. Unit 4, done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 33 around the house

Name every part of an old Chinese house, from the threshold to the chimney, and say “not even” with X都不/没X.

House hunting, renovating or just visiting friends: these are the words for what you see, and 看都没看 is how people complain about it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
别墅	biéshù	villa, detached house	他们在海边买了一座别墅。 They bought a villa by the sea.
平房	píngfáng	single-storey house	胡同里还有很多老平房。 There are still many old one-storey houses in the hutongs.
民居	mínjū	traditional local house	云南的民居很有特色。 The traditional houses of Yunnan are very distinctive.
阁楼	gélóu	attic, loft	阁楼上堆满了旧东西。 The attic is piled high with old things.
屋檐	wūyán	eaves	下雨了，我们在屋檐下躲一躲吧。 It’s raining: let’s shelter under the eaves for a bit.
瓦	wǎ	roof tile	这座老房子的瓦都是灰色的。 The tiles on this old house are all grey.
天花板	tiānhuābǎn	ceiling	这个房间的天花板特别高。 This room has a really high ceiling.
地板	dìbǎn	floor, floorboards	地板刚擦过，小心别滑倒{dao3}。 The floor has just been mopped: careful you don’t slip.
地毯	dìtǎn	carpet, rug	客厅里铺着一块厚厚的地毯。 There’s a thick rug in the living room.
门槛	ménkǎn	threshold; the bar to entry	进门的时候小心门槛。 Mind the threshold as you come in.
栏杆	lángān	railing, banister	下楼的时候请扶好栏杆。 Please hold the banister on the way down.
阶梯	jiētī	flight of steps; ladder (to success)	这条阶梯一直通到山顶。 These steps go all the way to the top of the hill.
过道	guòdào	corridor, passage, aisle	请不要把箱子放在过道里。 Please don’t leave boxes in the corridor.
围墙	wéiqiáng	enclosing wall	院子四周有一道高高的围墙。 A high wall runs all the way round the courtyard.
柱子	zhùzi	pillar, post	大厅里有四根红色的柱子。 There are four red pillars in the hall.
窗帘	chuānglián	curtain (window)	天黑了，把窗帘拉上吧。 It’s dark now: let’s draw the curtains.

帘子	liánzi	curtain, screen (in a doorway)	门口挂着一块红色的帘子。 A red curtain hangs in the doorway.
抽屉	chōuti	drawer	钥匙在第二个抽屉里。 The keys are in the second drawer.
架子	jiàzi	shelf, rack, frame; airs	架子上摆满了书。 The shelves are full of books.
凳子	dèngzi	stool	门口放着两个小凳子。 There are two little stools by the door.
垫	diàn	to put under, pad; pad	桌子不平，在下面垫本书吧。 The table wobbles: put a book under it.
垫子	diànzi	mat, cushion, pad	椅子太硬了，放个垫子吧。 The chair's too hard: put a cushion on it.
枕	zhěn	to rest your head on	他枕着胳膊睡着了。 He fell asleep with his head on his arm.
毯子	tǎnzi	blanket	晚上冷，多盖一条毯子吧。 It gets cold at night: put another blanket on.
蚊帐	wénzhàng	mosquito net	夏天睡觉的时候要挂上蚊帐。 In summer you have to sleep under a mosquito net.
摆设	bǎishe	ornaments, decorations	她家里的小摆设都很有意思。 The little ornaments in her home are all so interesting.
灯泡	dēngpào	light bulb	卫生间的灯泡坏了。 The bathroom light bulb has gone.
蜡	là	wax	蜡滴到桌子上了。 Wax has dripped onto the table.
蜡烛	làzhú	candle	停电了，我们点上了蜡烛。 The power went off, so we lit candles.
炉子	lúzi	stove, furnace	冬天大家围着炉子聊天。 In winter everyone chats round the stove.
灶	zào	kitchen range, cooking stove	老房子的厨房里有一个土灶。 The old house's kitchen has a brick-and-clay stove.
烟囱	yāncōng	chimney	房子上的烟囱冒着烟。 Smoke is coming out of the chimney on the roof.
炊烟	chuīyān	smoke from cooking fires	傍晚，村子里升起了炊烟。 At dusk, the smoke of cooking fires rose over the village.
烟火	yānhuǒ	fireworks; signs of everyday life	春节晚上，天上全是烟火。 On the night of the Spring Festival, the sky is full of fireworks.
微波炉	wēibōlú	microwave oven	把饭放进微波炉热一下。 Put the rice in the microwave to warm it up.
真是	zhēnshi	honestly!; really (is)	你又迟到了，真是的！ You're late again: honestly!

pattern **x都不/没x: not even x**

verb 都 不 / 没 verb (就……)

Say a verb, add 都, then 不 or 没 and the same verb: “didn’t even look”, “won’t even ask”. Use 没 for what did not happen and 不 for what someone won’t do, or (with a result) can’t do: 站都站不直. It often comes before 就: 看都没看就扔了 “threw it out without even looking”.

他想都没想就答应了。 **tā xiǎng dōu méi xiǎng jiù dāying le** He said yes without even thinking.

这把凳子太旧了，坐都不敢坐。 **zhè bǎ dèngzi tài jiù le zuò dōu bù gǎn zuò** This stool is so old I don’t even dare sit on it.

他听都不听我解释，就挂了电话。 **tā tīng dōu bù tīng wǒ jiěshì jiù guà le diànhuà** He hung up without even listening to me explain.

dialogue the old house in the hutong

anna 小明，这就是你爷爷奶奶留下的平房？真漂亮！
Xiǎomíng zhè jiùshì nǐ yéye nǎinai liúxia de píngfáng zhēn piàoliang · Xiaoming, so this is the house your grandparents left you? It's beautiful!

xiaoming 这是一座一百多年的老民居，经历了不少风吹雨打。结婚以后，我们决定搬到这儿来住。
zhè shì yí zuò yìbǎi duō nián de lǎo mínjū jīnglì le bù shǎo fēngchuī yǔdǎ jiéhūn yǐhòu wǒmen juédìng bān dào zhèr lái zhù · It's a traditional house, over a hundred years old, and it's weathered plenty of storms. After the wedding we decided to move in here.

anna 别人都想买别墅，你们俩却要住胡同里的平房，真有点古怪。
biérén dōu xiǎng mǎi biéshù nǐmen liǎ què yào zhù hútòng lǐ de píngfáng zhēn yǒu diǎn gǔguài · Everyone else wants to buy a villa, and you two want to live in a little house in a hutong: that's a bit eccentric.

xiaoming 别墅不见得比这儿好。你看屋檐上的瓦，都是老的，现在买都买不到。
biéshù bújiàndé bǐ zhèr hǎo nǐ kàn wūyán shàng de wǎ dōu shì lǎo de xiànzài mǎi dōu mǎi bu dào · A villa isn't necessarily better than this. Look at the tiles on the eaves: they're all old, you can't even buy them now.

anna 哎呀，门槛这么高！我差点儿摔倒。
āiyā ménkǎn zhème gāo wǒ chàdiǎnr shuāi dǎo · Whoa, what a high threshold! I nearly fell over.

xiaoming 老房子都这样。进门走过道，左边是厨房，右边是卧室。
lǎo fángzi dōu zhèyàng jìn mén zǒu guòdào zuǒbian shì chúfáng yòubian shì wòshì · Old houses are all like that. You come in and go down the passage: kitchen on the left, bedroom on the right.

anna 厨房里还有个老灶！还能用吗？
chúfáng lǐ hái yǒu gè lǎo zào hái néng yòng ma · There's an old stove in the kitchen! Does it still work?

xiaoming 早就不能用了。小时候一到傍晚，奶奶就在这儿做饭，烟囱里冒出炊烟，整条胡同都是饭菜的香味，我到现在还记忆犹新。现在我们用电炉子和微波炉。
zǎo jiù bù néng yòng le xiǎoshíhou yí dào bàngwǎn nǎinai jiù zài zhèr zuòfàn yāncōng lǐ mào chū chuīyān zhěng tiáo hútòng dōu shì fàn cài de xiāng wèi wǒ dào xiànzài hái jìyì yóuxīn xiànzài wǒmen yòng diàn lúzi hé wēibōlú · Not for years. When I was little, every evening Grandma cooked here: smoke came out of the chimney and the whole hutong smelled of supper. I still remember it as if it were yesterday. Now we use an electric stove and a microwave.

anna 这儿真有烟火气，我都有一种似曾相识的感觉。
zhèr zhēn yǒu yānhuǒ qì wǒ dōu yǒu yì zhǒng sìcéng xiāngshí de gǎnjué · This place really feels lived-in. I have a strange feeling I've been here before.

xiaoming 是啊，以前春节的时候，邻居们在院子里放烟火，可热闹了。
shì a yǐqián Chūnjié de shíhou línjūmen zài yuànzi lǐ fàng yānhuǒ kě rènao le · It does. At the Spring Festival the neighbours used to let off fireworks in the courtyard: it was so lively.

anna 上面那个小窗户是什么？
shàngmiàn nàge xiǎo chuānghu shì shénme · What's that little window up there?

xiaoming 那是阁楼。阶梯很窄，栏杆也松了，你先别上去。
nà shì gélóu jiētī hěn zhǎi lángān yě sōng le nǐ xiān bié shàngqù · That's the attic. The steps are narrow and the railing is loose: don't go up yet.

anna 天花板上怎么只有一个灯泡？
tiānhuābǎn shàng zěnme zhǐyǒu yí gè dēngpào · Why is there only one bulb on the ceiling?

xiaoming 线路太老了，修都没修过。上个星期停电，我们点了一晚上蜡烛，桌子上全是蜡。
xiànlù tài lǎo le xiū dōu méi xiū guo shàng gè xīngqī tíng diàn wǒmen diǎn le yì wǎnshang làzhú zhuōzi shàng quán shì là · The wiring is ancient: it's never even been repaired. Last week the power went off, we burned candles all evening, and the table is covered in wax.

anna 这些柱子呢？围墙呢？
zhèxiē zhùzi ne wéiqiáng ne · And these pillars? And the outer wall?

xiaoming 柱子结实得很，围墙倒是得修一修。
zhùzi jiēshi de hěn wéiqiáng dàoshì děi xiū yi xiu · The pillars are rock solid, but the wall does need fixing.

anna 卧室里还挂着蚊帐，像电影里一样，原汁原味的！
wòshì lǐ hái guà zhe wénzhàng xiàng diànyǐng lǐ yíyàng yuánzhī yuánwèi de · There's even a mosquito net in the bedroom, just like in a film: the real thing!

xiaoming 夏天虫子多，没有蚊帐，睡都睡不着。奶奶以前常坐在门口的凳子上晒太阳，腿上盖着毯子，日子过得很安逸。累了就进房间，枕着她的小枕头睡一会儿。
xiàtiān chóngzi duō méiyǒu wénzhàng shuì dōu shuì bu zháo nǎinai yǐqián cháng zuò zài ménkǒu de dèngzi shàng shài tàiyáng tuǐ shàng gài zhe tǎnzi rìzi guò de hěn ānyì lèi le jiù jìn fángjiān zhěn zhe tā de xiǎo zhěntou shuì yíhuìr · There are lots of bugs in summer: without a net you can't even sleep. Grandma used to sit in the sun on the stool by the door, a blanket over her knees, living a quiet, easy life. When she got tired she went in and had a little sleep with her head on her small pillow.

anna 那这个抽屉里是什么？
nà zhège chōuti lǐ shì shénme · And what's in this drawer?

xiaoming 都是她的小摆设。我们打算把它们放到架子上。窗帘是新的，门上的帘子是奶奶自己做的。地板太凉，我们又垫了一块地毯。
dōu shì tā de xiǎo bǎishe wǒmen dǎsuàn bǎ tāmen fàng dào jiàzi shàng chuānglián shì xīn de mén shàng de liánzi shì nǎinai zìjǐ zuò de dìbǎn tài liáng wǒmen yòu diàn le yí kuài dìtǎn · They're all her little ornaments. We're going to put them on the shelves. The curtains are new; the curtain in the doorway Grandma made herself. The floor is cold, so we put down a rug too.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

矣 yǐ (written) already, indeed	
呵 hē to breathe out (on); ha!	
逝 shì to pass	
葬 zàng to bury	

good to know · Many old Chinese houses have a high wooden threshold, and guests are taught to step over it, not on it. 没 for what didn't happen (看都没看), 不 for what someone won't do or can't manage (问都不问, 站都站不直), 别 for "don't even" (想都别想).

Now you can walk through an old house and name what you see, and complain like a local when nobody even asked you first.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 34 tools and repairs

Name tools and household fittings, describe repairs (unblock, rinse, sand, patch, seal), and say "do a quick X" with verb + 个X.

Something always breaks in an old house. Explaining the problem to a plumber or a handy friend is everyday Chinese at its most useful.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
锤	chuí	hammer; to hammer	他拿起锤，把钉子敲了进去。 He picked up the hammer and knocked the nail in.
斧子	fǔzi	axe	爷爷以前用这把斧子砍木头。 Grandpa used to chop firewood with this axe.
钉子	dīngzi	nail	墙上有一颗钉子，可以挂画。 There's a nail in the wall for hanging a picture.
螺丝	luósī	screw	椅子上的螺丝松了。 The screws on the chair have worked loose.
杆	gǎn	shaft; (measure word for scales, guns)	厨房里挂着一杆旧秤。 An old steelyard hangs in the kitchen.
竹竿	zhúgān	bamboo pole	院子里的竹竿是用来晒衣服的。 The bamboo pole in the courtyard is for drying clothes.
绳子	shéngzi	rope, string	晒衣服的绳子断了。 The washing line has snapped.
梯子	tīzi	ladder	你扶着梯子，我上去看看。 Hold the ladder and I'll go up and have a look.
筐	kuāng	basket	奶奶提着一筐鸡蛋回来了。 Grandma came back carrying a basket of eggs.
缸	gāng	vat, large jar, tank	院子里有一口大水缸。 There's a big water vat in the courtyard.
筒	tǒng	tube, canister, pot	桌子上有一个笔筒。 There's a pen pot on the desk.
笼子	lóngzi	cage	爷爷以前在笼子里养了两只鸟。 Grandpa used to keep two birds in a cage.
容器	róngqì	container	剩菜要放在密封的容器里。 Leftovers should go in a sealed container.
器具	qìjù	utensils, implements	这些老器具都还能用。 These old implements still work.
夹子	jiāzi	clip, clothes peg	用夹子把衣服夹在绳子上。 Peg the clothes onto the line.
钩	gōu	hook; to hook	门后有个钩，可以挂衣服。 There's a hook behind the door for your coat.

框	kuàng	frame	窗框上的油漆都掉了。 The paint has all come off the window frames.
把手	bǎshou	handle, knob	门上的把手坏了。 The door handle is broken.
罩	zhào	cover, shade; to cover	灯罩太脏了，得{dei3}洗一洗。 The lampshade is filthy: it needs a wash.
秤	chèng	scales, steelyard	卖菜的阿姨用秤称了称西红柿。 The woman at the vegetable stall weighed the tomatoes on her scales.
喇叭	lǎba	horn, loudspeaker	外面谁在按喇叭? Who's honking their horn outside?
龙头	lóngtóu	leader, front-runner; tap	这家公司是行业里的龙头企业。 This company is the industry leader.
水龙头	shuǐlóngtóu	tap, faucet	厨房的水龙头一直在滴水。 The kitchen tap keeps dripping.
马桶	mǎtǒng	toilet (bowl)	马桶又堵了。 The toilet is blocked again.
漆	qī	lacquer, paint; to paint	我们把大门漆成了红色。 We painted the front door red.
油漆	yóuqī	paint (oil-based)	油漆还没干{gan1}，别碰。 The paint isn't dry yet: don't touch.
打磨	dǎmó	to sand, polish; to hone	先把木头打磨一下，再上漆。 Sand the wood down first, then paint it.
修补	xiūbǔ	to patch up, mend	墙上的洞已经修补好了。 The holes in the wall have been patched up.
糊	hú	to paste, glue on	以前，冬天人们用纸糊窗户。 In the old days people pasted paper over the windows in winter.
疏通	shūtōng	to unblock, clear; to smooth things over	水管堵了，得{dei3}找人来疏通。 The pipe is blocked: we need someone to clear it.
堵塞	dǔsè	to block, be blocked	下班时间，这条路经常堵塞。 This road is often jammed at rush hour.
放水	fàngshuǐ	to let water run, drain	新房子的水管要先放水，再用。 In a new house, run the water for a while before you use it.
冲洗	chōngxǐ	to rinse, flush, wash down	用清水把菜冲洗干净。 Rinse the vegetables clean under water.
密封	mìfēng	to seal (airtight)	这个盒子是密封的，放饼干最好。 This box seals airtight: perfect for biscuits.
透气	tòuqì	to ventilate, let air in	房间太闷了，开窗透透气吧。 The room is stuffy: open the window and let some air in.
要命	yàomìng	awfully; deadly, a pain	今天热得要命。 It's awfully hot today.

pattern **verb + 个x: do a quick x**

verb 个 thing

Put 个 between a verb and its object and the action sounds quick and casual: 洗个澡 “have a shower”, 修个水龙头 “fix the tap”, 睡个好觉 “get a good night’s sleep”. It works even where the noun normally takes another measure word, and often with verbs that are one action, done once.

先吃个饭，再干活吧。 **xiān chī gè fàn zài gànhuó ba** Let’s grab something to eat first, then get to work.

爸爸，您帮我们看个马桶吧，又堵了。 **bàba nín bāng wǒmen kàn gè mǎtǒng ba yòu dǔ le** Dad, could you take a look at the toilet for us? It’s blocked again.

干完活，咱们去吃个火锅。 **gàn wán huó zánmen qù chī gè huǒguō** When the work’s done, let’s go for hot pot.

dialogue dr li’s toolbox

dr li 小明，工具我都带来了：锤、斧子、钉子、螺丝、梯子，要什么有什么。
Xiǎomíng gōngjù wǒ dōu dài lái le chuí fǔzi dīngzi luósī tīzi yào shénme yǒu shénme · Xiaoming, I've brought all the tools: hammer, axe, nails, screws, ladder, anything you need.

xiaoming 爸爸，您是医生，什么时候成了修东西的师傅了？
bàba nín shì yīshēng shénme shíhou chéng le xiū dōngxi de shīfu le · Dad, you're a doctor. Since when are you a repairman?

dr li 打我年轻的时候起，家里的东西坏了都是我修，这也算是我的一技之长。说吧，哪儿有问题？
dǎ wǒ niánqīng de shíhou qǐ jiā lǐ de dōngxi huài le dōu shì wǒ xiū zhè yě suànshì wǒ de yíjìzhīcháng shuō ba nǎr yǒu wèntí · Ever since I was young, I've fixed everything that breaks at home: you could call it my special skill. Go on, what's the problem?

xiaoming 问题多得要命。第一，卫生间的马桶堵塞了。
wèntí duō de yàomìng dì yī wèishēngjiān de mǎtǒng dǔsè le · There are loads of problems. First, the toilet is blocked.

dr li 我来看看……先疏通一下，再放水冲洗一遍。好了！
wǒ lái kàn kan xiān shūtōng yíxià zài fàngshuǐ chōngxǐ yí biàn hǎo le · Let me see… unblock it first, then run the water and flush it through. Done!

anna 李医生，您真厉害，干活又快又利索！厨房的水龙头也一直在滴水。
Lǐyīshēng nín zhēn lìhai gànhuó yòu kuài yòu lìsuo chúfáng de shuǐlóngtóu yě yìzhí zài dī shuǐ · Dr Li, you're amazing: quick and neat! The kitchen tap keeps dripping too.

dr li 应该是里面的螺丝松了。我来修个水龙头，几分钟就好。
yīnggāi shì lǐmiàn de luósī sōng le wǒ lái xiū gè shuǐlóngtóu jǐ fēnzhōng jiù hǎo · A screw inside must have worked loose. I'll fix the tap: it'll take a few minutes.

anna 这个水龙头质量真好，是哪个牌子的？
zhège shuǐlóngtóu zhìliàng zhēn hǎo shì nǎge páizi de · This tap is really good quality. What make is it?

xiaoming 是一家龙头企业生产的。不过窗框上的油漆都掉了。
shì yì jiā lóngtóu qǐyè shēngchǎn de búguò chuāng kuàng shàng de yóuqī dōu diào le · It's made by one of the leading firms. But the paint has all come off the window frames.

dr li 先打磨一下，再重新漆一遍。墙上那几个洞，修补一下就行。过道的地板也松了，天花板上的灯泡也该换了。
xiān dǎmó yíxià zài chóngxīn qī yí biàn qiáng shàng nà jǐ gè dòng xiūbǔ yíxià jiù xíng guòdào de dìbǎn yě sōng le tiānhuābǎn shàng de dēngpào yě gāi huàn le · Sand them down first, then paint them again. Those holes in the wall just need patching. The floorboards in the passage are loose too, and the bulb on the ceiling needs changing.

xiaoming 我爷爷那时候，冬天用纸糊窗户，房间里烧着炉子，暖和是暖和，可是一点儿也不透气。
wǒ yéye nà shíhou dōngtiān yòng zhǐ hú chuānghu fángjiān lǐ shāo zhe lúzi nuǎnhuo shì nuǎnhuo kěshì yìdiǎnr yě bú tòuqì · In my grandpa's day they pasted paper over the windows in winter and kept a stove burning in the room: warm enough, but no air got in at all.

dr li 现在的窗户密封得很好，你们要记得常开窗透气。
xiànzài de chuānghu mìfēng de hěn hǎo nǐmen yào jìde cháng kāi chuāng tòuqì · Today's windows seal really well: remember to open them often to let air in.

anna 院子里那些东西呢？竹竿、绳子、夹子，还有筐和大水缸。
yuànzi lǐ nàxiē dōngxi ne zhúgān shéngzi jiāzi hái yǒu kuāng hé dà shuǐ gāng · And all the things in the courtyard? The bamboo pole, rope, pegs, the basket and the big water vat.

dr li 竹竿和绳子用来晒衣服，夹子也留着。水缸里可以养几条鱼。
zhúgān hé shéngzi yònglái shài yīfu jiāzi yě liú zhe shuǐ gāng lǐ kěyǐ yǎng jǐ tiáo yú · The pole and rope are for drying clothes, so keep the pegs too. You could keep a few fish in the vat.

xiaoming 还有一个旧鸟笼子，是爷爷的。
hái yǒu yí gè jiù niǎo lóngzi shì yéye de · There's an old birdcage as well: it was Grandpa's.

dr li 留着吧，当个摆设也好。这些容器、器具，还有桌子上的笔筒，也都还能用。门上的把手坏了，换个新的；灯罩脏了，洗一洗。
liú zhe ba dāng gè bǎishe yěhǎo zhèxiē róngqì qìjù hái yǒu zhuōzi shàng de bǐ tǒng yě dōu hái néng yòng mén shàng de bǎshou huài le huàn gè xīn de dēng zhào zāng le xǐ yi xi · Keep it: it'll make a nice ornament. These containers and utensils, and the pen pot on the table, still work too. The door handle is broken, so get a new one; the lampshade is dirty, give it a wash.

anna 墙上这个钩挂什么好呢?
qiáng shàng zhège gōu guà shénme hǎo ne · What should we hang on this hook on the wall?

dr li 就挂这杆旧秤吧，那是你奶奶买菜用的，留个纪念。
jiù guà zhè gǎn jiù chèng ba nà shì nǐ nǎinai mǎi cài yòng de liú gè jìniàn · Hang this old steelyard: your grandma used it to weigh her shopping. Keep it to remember her by.

xiaoming 爸爸，就这个房子，您还有什么建议吗?
bàba jiù zhège fángzi nín hái yǒu shénme jiànyì ma · Dad, about the house: any other advice?

dr li 这房子是你爷爷当年亲自修好的，房子上的瓦也是他一片一片换的。你们要好好爱护它。
zhè fángzi shì nǐ yéye dāngnián qīnzì xiū hǎo de fángzi shàng de wǎ yě shì tā yí piàn yí piàn huàn de nǐmen yào hǎohǎo àihù tā · Your grandpa restored this house himself back in his day; he replaced the roof tiles one by one. Take good care of it.

anna 外面谁在按喇叭?
wàimiàn shéi zài àn lǎba · Who's honking a horn outside?

xiaoming 是送油漆的车到了!
shì sòng yóuqī de chē dào le · It's the van with the paint!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

坟
fén
grave

墓
mù
tomb

碑
bēi
stone tablet, stele

嘱
zhǔ
instruction

good to know · Plumbers in China often advertise on stickers by the door: 疏通下水道 "drains unblocked", with a phone number. 个 makes things sound easy and friendly: 帮我个忙 "do me a favour", 打个电话 "give someone a call", 吃个饭 "grab a bite".

Taps, toilets, paint and nails: next time something breaks, you can explain it and ask for help in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 35 hide, seek and sleep

Hide, search, wait and sleep in Chinese, guess how likely something is (八成, 多半, 没准儿, 顶多, 起码), and say how things ended up with verb + 得个.

Lost keys, lost pets, lost sleep: guessing “probably” and “at most” is half of everyday talk, and 落得个 is how Chinese tells the ending of a story.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
藏身	cángshēn	to hide (yourself), take shelter	下大雨了，我们找了个地方藏身。 It poured down, so we found somewhere to shelter.
隐蔽	yǐnbì	hidden, concealed; to take cover	这个地方很隐蔽，一般人找不到。 This place is well hidden: most people would never find it.
遮	zhē	to cover, block, hide from view	大树遮住了阳光。 The big tree blocked out the sun.
遮挡	zhēdǎng	to shelter from, block	这面墙可以遮挡大风。 This wall shelters you from the wind.
遮盖	zhēgài	to cover up (also a mistake)	她用一块布遮盖了桌子上的东西。 She covered the things on the table with a cloth.
潜入	qiánrù	to slip into, sneak in	小猫偷偷潜入了厨房。 The kitten crept into the kitchen.
搜寻	sōuxún	to search for (carefully)	大家在山上搜寻了一整天。 Everyone searched the mountain all day.
寻	xún	to look for, seek	他在网上发了一条寻狗的消息。 He posted a message online looking for his dog.
寻觅	xúnmì	to look for, seek (literary)	他一直在寻觅一个安静的地方。 He’s always been looking for a quiet place.
探	tàn	to stick out (the head); to explore, visit	小狗从门后探出脑袋来。 The puppy poked its head out from behind the door.
守候	shǒuhòu	to wait for, keep watch	记者在门口守候了一个晚上。 The reporters waited at the door all night.
瞄准	miáozhǔn	to aim at, take aim; to target	他瞄准球门，一脚把球踢了进去。 He took aim at the goal and kicked the ball in.
敞开	chǎngkāi	to open wide; wide open	大门敞开着，谁都可以进来。 The gate is wide open: anyone can come in.
点火	diǎnhuǒ	to light a fire, ignite; start the engine	他坐上车，点火，出发了。 He got in the car, started the engine and set off.
熄火	xīhuǒ	to switch off the engine; stall	到了停车场，他把车熄火了。 At the car park he switched the engine off.

熄灭	xīmiè	to go out, extinguish	风一吹，蜡烛就熄灭了。 A gust of wind and the candle went out.
沉睡	chénshuì	to be fast asleep; to lie dormant	孩子们还在沉睡。 The children are still fast asleep.
酣睡	hānshuì	to sleep soundly	大白在床下酣睡，一点儿声音也没有。 Dabai was sleeping soundly under the bed, without a sound.
打盹儿	dǎdǔnr	to doze, take a nap	爷爷吃完午饭，喜欢坐在椅子上打盹儿。 After lunch, Grandpa likes to doze in his chair.
唤醒	huànxǐng	to wake up; to awaken (memories)	这首老歌唤醒了我小时候的记忆。 This old song brought back my childhood memories.
出手	chūshǒu	to make a move, act; to spend	他一出手，问题就解决了。 As soon as he stepped in, the problem was solved.
采	cǎi	to pick, gather	她在院子里采了几朵花。 She picked a few flowers in the courtyard.
撒	sā	to let go, cast; to act (wildly)	小狗一看见我们，撒{sa1}腿就跑。 The moment the dog saw us, it took to its heels.
折	shé	to snap, break (long things)	梯子的一条腿折{she2-7}了。 One of the ladder's legs has snapped.
捂	wǔ	to cover (with your hand)	她捂着嘴笑了起来。 She covered her mouth and started laughing.
迟迟	chíchí	slow to, for a long time (not)	大白迟迟不回来，大家都急了。 Dabai just didn't come back, and everyone got worried.
迟早	chízǎo	sooner or later	别急，你迟早会找到它的。 Don't worry: you'll find it sooner or later.
八成	bāchéng	most likely, eighty per cent	他八成又忘了。 He's most likely forgotten again.
多半	duōbàn	most likely; the greater part	它多半是饿了。 It's probably hungry.
顶多	dǐngduō	at most	这件事顶多需要一个小时。 This will take an hour at most.
起码	qǐmǎ	at least	去机场起码要四十分钟。 It takes at least forty minutes to get to the airport.
大不了	dàbuliǎo	at worst; a big deal	大不了明天再找。 At worst, we'll look again tomorrow.
没准儿	méizhǔnr	maybe, who knows	没准儿它就在家里。 Maybe it's at home all along.
不定	bùdìng	not sure; who knows	他明天不定来不来。 Who knows whether he'll come tomorrow.
一度	yīdù	once, for a time	我们一度以为它丢了。 For a while we thought it was lost.
话	huà	words, what someone says	一句话，今天谁也别想休息。 In a word, nobody is resting today.

pattern verb + 得个……: end up with

who | 落 / 弄 / 闹 | 得个 | outcome

Verb + 得个 + a result tells you how something ended, usually not how anyone wanted: 落得个一场空 “ended up with nothing”. 落得个 is the most common, often after 结果 or 最后. The outcome is a short phrase, often a fixed one.

他平时不努力，考试落得个不及格。 **tā píngshí bù nǔlì kǎoshì luò de gè bù jígé** He never worked, and he ended up failing the exam.

他想两边都讨好，结果落得个两边都不满意。 **tā xiǎng liǎng biān dōu tǎohǎo jiéguǒ luò de gè liǎng biān dōu bù mǎnyì** He tried to please both sides and ended up with both sides unhappy.

大白在院子里跑了一圈，弄得个满身是土。 **Dàbái zài yuànzi lǐ pǎo le yì quān nòng de gè mǎn shēn shì tǔ** Dabai ran round the courtyard and ended up covered in dirt.

dialogue where is dabai?

little sister 哥哥，大白不见了！我找了一上午，哪儿都没有，焦急得要命。
gēge Dàbái bújiàn le wǒ zhǎo le yí shàngwǔ nǎr dōu méiyǒu jiāojí de yàomìng · Dabai's gone! I've looked all morning and he's nowhere. I'm frantic.

xiaoming 别急，它八成又找了个地方藏身，躲起来睡觉去了。
bié jí tā bāchéng yòu zhǎo le gè dìfang cángshēn duǒ qǐlai shuìjiào qù le · Relax: he's most likely found somewhere to hide and gone to sleep.

anna 院子里隐蔽的地方很多：柱子后面、凳子下面、水缸后面、窗帘后面，都能藏。
yuànzi lǐ yǐnbì de dìfang hěn duō zhùzi hòumiàn dèngzi xiàmiàn shuǐ gāng hòumiàn chuānglián hòumiàn dōu néng cáng · There are lots of hidden spots in the courtyard: behind the pillars, under the stools, behind the water vat, behind the curtains.

little sister 我都找了！连阁楼我都爬上去探头看了，梯子的一条腿差点儿折了。
wǒ dōu zhǎo le lián gélóu wǒ dōu pá shangqu tàn tóu kàn le tīzi de yì tiáo tuǐ chàdiǎnr shé le · I've looked! I even climbed up and stuck my head into the attic, and one leg of the ladder nearly snapped.

xiaoming 那我们分头搜寻吧。我去点火，开车到附近看看，你们在院子里再找找。
nà wǒmen fēn tóu sōuxún ba wǒ qù diǎnhuǒ kāichē dào fùjìn kàn kan nǐmen zài yuànzi lǐ zài zhǎo zhao · Then let's split up and search. I'll drive round the neighbourhood; you look in the courtyard again.

anna 那块布下面遮着什么？
nà kuài bù xiàmiàn zhē zhe shénme · What's under that cloth?

little sister 那是我用来遮盖花盆的……下面也没有。我刚才去院子里采花，也没看见它。大白个子那么大，一块布哪能遮挡得住它。
nà shì wǒ yònglái zhēgài huā pén de xiàmiàn yě méiyǒu wǒ gāngcái qù yuànzi lǐ cǎi huā yě méi kànjiàn tā Dàbái gèzi nàme dà yí kuài bù nǎ néng zhēdǎng de zhù tā · That's what I cover the flowerpots with… nothing there either. I was out picking flowers in the courtyard just now and didn't see him. Dabai is so big, a cloth could never hide him.

anna 大门一直敞开着，它多半是趁机跑出去了。
dà mén yìzhí chǎngkāi zhe tā duōbàn shì chènjī pǎo chuqu le · The gate has been wide open all along: he probably took the chance and ran out.

xiaoming 我回来了！刚把车熄火，隔壁的奶奶就跟我说，刚才有一只大白狗潜入了她家的厨房。
wǒ huílái le gāng bǎ chē xīhuǒ gébì de nǎinai jiù gēn wǒ shuō gāngcái yǒu yì zhī dà bái gǒu qiánrù le tā jiā de chúfáng · I'm back! I'd only just switched off the engine when the old lady next door told me a big white dog had just sneaked into her kitchen.

little sister 难怪找不到！它偏偏喜欢去别人家的厨房。这只狗太顽皮了！
nánguài zhǎo bu dào tā piānpiān xǐhuan qù biérén jiā de chúfáng zhè zhī gǒu tài wánpí le · No wonder we couldn't find him! He would go for other people's kitchens. What a naughty dog!

xiaoming 它想偷吃包子，被奶奶发现了，奶奶一出手，它撒腿就跑，结果落得个白跑一趟。
tā xiǎng tōu chī bāozi bèi nǎinai fāxiàn le nǎinai yì chūshǒu tā sā tuǐ jiù pǎo jiéguǒ luò de gè bái pǎo yí tàng · He tried to steal a bun, the old lady caught him, and the moment she moved he took to his heels. So he got nothing for his trouble.

anna 那它现在去哪儿了？
nà tā xiànzài qù nǎr le · So where's he gone now?

little sister 不定跑到哪儿去了。我们一度以为它丢了，要不要在网上发个寻狗的消息？
búdìng pǎo dào nǎr qù le wǒmen yídù yǐwéi tā diū le yào búyào zài wǎngshang fā gè xún gǒu de xiāoxi · Who knows where he's run off to. We thought he was lost for a while: shall we post a lost-dog message online?

xiaoming 先别发。我们在门口守候一会儿，它饿了迟早会回来的，顶多一个小时。
xiān bié fā wǒmen zài ménkǒu shǒuhòu yíhuìr tā è le chízǎo huì huílái de dǐngduō yí gè xiǎoshí · Not yet. Let's wait at the gate for a bit: he'll come back sooner or later when he's hungry, an hour at most.

anna 起码我们知道它没出什么事。大不了晚上再找。
qǐmǎ wǒmen zhīdào tā méi chū shénme shì dàbuliǎo wǎnshang zài zhǎo · At least we know nothing's

happened to him. At worst we'll look again tonight.

little sister 你们看，蜡烛都熄灭了，天也快黑了。大白怎么还迟迟不回来？我心里提心吊胆的。
nǐmen kàn làzhú dōu xīmiè le tiān yě kuài hēi le Dàbái zěnme hái chíchí bù huílái wǒ xīnlǐ tíxīn diàodǎn de · Look, the candle's gone out and it's nearly dark. Why still no Dabai? I'm on tenterhooks.

xiaoming 我去卧室拿个手电……哎？你们快来！
wǒ qù wòshì ná gè shǒu diàn āi nǐmen kuài lái · I'll get a torch from the bedroom… hey? Come quick!

anna 它就在床底下！睡在旧毯子上，睡得这么香，一点儿声音也没有。
tā jiù zài chuáng dǐxia shuì zài jiù tǎnzi shàng shuì de zhème xiāng yìdiǎnr shēngyīn yě méiyǒu · He's under the bed! Lying on the old blanket, sleeping so soundly, not a sound.

xiaoming 我们都看得目瞪口呆。
wǒmen dōu kàn de mùdèng kǒudāi · We all just stood there staring, open-mouthed.

little sister 原来它早就回来了，一直在这儿酣睡！我们找了一天，它却在沉睡。
yuánlái tā zǎo jiù huílái le yìzhí zài zhèr hānshuì wǒmen zhǎo le yì tiān tā què zài chénshuì · So he was back ages ago, fast asleep here the whole time! We searched all day while he slept.

xiaoming 没准儿它比我们还累呢。你看，一句“吃饭了”就把它唤醒了。
méizhǔnr tā bǐ wǒmen hái lèi ne nǐ kàn yí jù chī fàn le jiù bǎ tā huànxǐng le · Maybe he's even more tired than we are. Look: one “dinner time!” and he's awake.

anna 它瞄准了自己的碗，一下子就跑过去了。
tā miáozhǔn le zìjǐ de wǎn yíxià zi jiù pǎo guoqu le · He's spotted his bowl and he's off.

little sister 我捂着肚子笑了半天。好吧，我也去打盹儿了。
wǒ wǔ zhe dùzi xiào le bàntiān hǎo ba wǒ yě qù dǎdǔnr le · I laughed till my sides ached. Right, I'm off for a nap too.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

祭
jì
to honour (the dead) with offerings

奠
diàn
to offer (to the dead)

乃
nǎi
to be, indeed (written)

瞎
xiā
blindly, foolishly; blind

good to know · From surest to least sure: 迟早 (sooner or later, sure to) > 八成 (80%) > 多半 (probably) > 没准儿 / 不定 (who knows). 顶多 “at most” and 起码 “at least” go before a number or a verb: 顶多一个小时, 起码要等半天.

You can now organise a search party, guess where the culprit is hiding, and tell the whole story afterwards.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 36 clothes and looks

Talk about clothes, jewellery, hair and washing, list things casually with 什么A的B的, and extend formal thanks with 向……致以……

Dressing for a work dinner, mending a button, reading a care label: clothes talk is everywhere, and 什么A的B的 is how people really list things.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
穿着	chuānzhuó	dress, attire, way of dressing	她的穿着总是那么得体。 She always dresses so appropriately.
衣裳	yīshang	clothes	奶奶的衣裳都是自己做的。 Grandma made all her own clothes.
服饰	fúshì	clothing and accessories, costume	这个博物馆展出了各个民族的服饰。 This museum displays the dress of every ethnic group.
时装	shízhuāng	fashion, latest clothes	她在上海做时装设计。 She designs fashion in Shanghai.
时髦	shímáo	fashionable, trendy	我妈妈年轻的时候穿得很时髦。 My mum dressed very stylishly when she was young.
新潮	xīncháo	trendy, new-wave	他的发型太新潮了，我有点儿接受|不了。 His haircut is a bit too trendy for my taste.
礼服	lǐfú	formal dress, evening gown, suit	晚会要求穿礼服。 The party is formal dress.
制服	zhìfú	uniform	他上中学的时候天天穿制服{zhi4fu2-7}。 He wore a uniform every day at secondary school.
靴子	xuēzi	boots	下雪了，穿上靴子吧。 It's snowing: put your boots on.
拉链	lāliàn	zip, zipper	这件外套的拉链坏了。 The zip on this jacket is broken.
纽扣	niǔkòu	button	衬衫上掉了一个纽扣。 A button has come off the shirt.
兜	dōu	pocket; to wrap up; to go round	他把手机放进了兜里。 He put his phone in his pocket.
手帕	shǒupà	handkerchief	奶奶出门总是带着一块手帕。 Grandma always carries a handkerchief.
首饰	shǒushì	jewellery	她不太喜欢戴首饰。 She doesn't much like wearing jewellery.
钻石	zuànshí	diamond	这条项链上有一颗小钻石。 There's a little diamond on this necklace.
佩戴	pèidài	to wear (badges, jewellery)	参加会议请佩戴工作证。 Please wear your pass at the meeting.
装扮	zhuāngbàn	to dress up; get-up	她把自己装扮成了一个老奶奶。 She dressed up as an old granny.

发型	fàxíng	hairstyle, haircut	你换了个发型？很适合你！ Have you changed your hairstyle? It really suits you!
梳	shū	to comb; to sort out	她每天早上把头发梳得整整齐齐。 Every morning she combs her hair neat and tidy.
梳子	shūzi	comb	你借我一把梳子吧。 Could you lend me a comb?
剃	tì	to shave	他把胡子剃了，看起来年轻了很多。 He shaved off his beard and looks much younger.
裁	cái	to cut (cloth, paper); to cut back	裁缝先量好尺寸，再裁布。 The tailor measures first, then cuts the cloth.
裁缝	cáifeng	tailor	这件礼服是一位老裁缝做的。 This gown was made by an old tailor.
缝	féng	to sew, stitch	妈妈帮我把纽扣缝上了。 Mum sewed the button back on for me.
缝	fèng	seam, crack, gap	门缝{feng4}里透进来一点儿光。 A little light came in through the crack in the door.
编织	biānzhī	to knit, weave	这个包是用竹子编织的。 This bag is woven from bamboo.
织	zhī	to knit, weave	奶奶给我织了一件毛衣。 Grandma knitted me a jumper.
纱	shā	gauze, fine yarn	窗户上挂着一层白纱。 A white gauze curtain hangs over the window.
丝	sī	silk; thread, a tiny bit	这条围巾是丝的，摸起来很舒服。 This scarf is silk: it feels lovely.
皮革	pígé	leather	这双靴子是皮革做的。 These boots are made of leather.
熨	yùn	to iron, press	这件衬衫要熨一下才能穿。 This shirt needs ironing before you wear it.
洗涤	xǐdí	to wash (formal)	丝的衣服要用冷水洗涤。 Silk should be washed in cold water.
肥皂	féizào	soap	先用肥皂洗手，再吃饭。 Wash your hands with soap before you eat.
扫除	sǎochú	to clean up; to sweep away	春节前，家家户户都要大扫除。 Before the Spring Festival, every family does a big spring clean.
扫帚	sàozhou	broom	你拿扫帚扫一扫院子吧。 Could you sweep the courtyard with the broom?
致	zhì	to extend, send (greetings); to cause	我代表公司，向大家致以诚挚的感谢。 On behalf of the company, I extend our sincere thanks to you all.

pattern 什么a的b的: things like a and b

什么 A 的 、B 的

什么A的B的 lists a few examples casually: “stuff like A and B, and so on”. Each item takes 的 after it, and 什么 goes before the first. It sounds relaxed and spoken, often with a hint of “too much of it”.

她的箱子里什么裙子的、靴子的，装得满满的。 **tā de xiāngzi lǐ shénme qúnzi de xuēzi de zhuāng de mǎn mǎn de** Her suitcase is stuffed with skirts, boots and whatnot.

年轻人就喜欢什么时装的、新潮发型的。 **niánqīng rén jiù xǐhuan shénme shízhuāng de xīncháo fàxíng de** Young people love fashion, trendy haircuts, all that.

网上什么时装的、礼服的，要什么有什么。 **wǎngshang shénme shízhuāng de lǐfú de yào shénme yǒu shénme** Online there’s fashion, evening wear, anything you want.

dialogue a gown for the annual dinner

anna 阿姨，下个月公司开年会，刘经理让我上台讲话，向客户致以感谢。我该穿什么呢？
āyí xià gè yuè gōngsī kāi nián huì Liújīnglǐ ràng wǒ shàngtái jiǎnghuà xiàng kèhù zhì yǐ gǎnxiè wǒ gāi chuān shénme ne · Next month is our company's annual dinner, and Manager Liu wants me to give a speech thanking our clients. What should I wear?

ms zhang 这么正式的场合，穿着一定要庄重得体。我带你去找一位老裁缝，他做的衣裳特别合身。
zhème zhèngshì de chǎnghé chuānzhuó yídìng yào zhuāngzhòng détǐ wǒ dài nǐ qù zhǎo yí wèi lǎo cáifeng tā zuò de yīshang tèbié hé shēn · For something this formal, you must dress with dignity, just right. I'll take you to an old tailor I know: his clothes fit perfectly.

little sister 妈妈，现在谁还找裁缝啊？网上什么时装的、礼服的，要什么有什么。
māma xiànzài shéi hái zhǎo cáifeng a wǎngshang shénme shízhuāng de lǐfú de yào shénme yǒu shénme · Mum, who goes to a tailor these days? Online there's fashion, evening wear, anything you want.

ms zhang 网上买的不见得合身。裁缝先给你量好尺寸，再裁布，一针一针地缝。
wǎngshang mǎi de bújiàndé hé shēn cáifeng xiān gěi nǐ liáng hǎo chǐcùn zài cái bù yì zhēn yì zhēn de féng · What you buy online won't necessarily fit. A tailor measures you first, then cuts the cloth and sews it stitch by stitch.

anna 用什么料子好呢？纱的还是丝的？
yòng shénme liào zi hǎo ne shā de háishi sī de · What fabric should I go for? Gauze or silk?

ms zhang 丝的吧，又轻又软，看起来也很优雅。拉链藏在缝里，一点儿也看不出来。
sī de ba yòu qīng yòu ruǎn kàn qǐlai yě hěn yōuyǎ lāliàn cáng zài fèng lǐ yìdiǎnr yě kàn bu chulai · Silk: light and soft, and it looks elegant too. The zip is hidden in the seam, so you can't see it at all.

little sister 那穿什么鞋？靴子太随便了。
nà chuān shénme xié xuēzi tài suíbiàn le · And what shoes? Boots are too casual.

anna 我有一双黑皮鞋，是皮革的，挺好看。
wǒ yǒu yì shuāng hēi píxié shì pígé de tǐng hǎokàn · I've got a pair of black leather shoes: they look nice.

ms zhang 首饰也得想一想。你可以佩戴我那条钻石项链。
shǒushì yě děi xiǎng yi xiang nǐ kěyǐ pèidài wǒ nà tiáo zuànshí xiàngliàn · You need to think about jewellery too. You can wear my diamond necklace.

anna 那太贵重了，我怕弄丢。而且戴钻石有点太张扬了。
nà tài guìzhòng le wǒ pà nòng diū érqiě dài zuànshí yǒu diǎn tài zhāngyáng le · That's far too precious: I'd be afraid of losing it. And diamonds are a bit too showy.

ms zhang 没什么好担心的，你戴着去，回来还给我就是了。
méi shénme hǎo dānxīn de nǐ dài zhe qù huílái huán gěi wǒ jiùshì le · Nothing to worry about: wear it, and give it back afterwards.

little sister 还有发型！姐姐，你应该去剪个新潮一点儿的。
hái yǒu fàxíng jiějie nǐ yīnggāi qù jiǎn gè xīncháo yìdiǎnr de · And your hair! You should get something a bit trendier.

anna 太新潮的不适合我，简单梳一梳就好。你借我一把梳子吧。
tài xīncháo de bú shìhé wǒ jiǎndān shū yi shu jiù hǎo nǐ jiè wǒ yì bǎ shūzi ba · Too trendy doesn't suit me: I'll just give it a comb. Lend me a comb?

little sister 你看我哥哥，结婚那天把头发剃得那么短，一点儿也不时髦。
nǐ kàn wǒ gēge jiéhūn nà tiān bǎ tóufa tì de nàme duǎn yìdiǎnr yě bù shímáo · Look at my brother: he had his hair shaved so short for the wedding. Not stylish at all.

ms zhang 他从小就不爱装扮，上中学的时候天天穿制服，反倒最开心。
tā cóngxiǎo jiù bú ài zhuāngbàn shàng zhōngxué de shíhou tiān tiān chuān zhìfú fǎndào zuì kāixīn · He's never liked dressing up. At school he wore a uniform every day, and that suited him best.

little sister 我就不一样，我喜欢有特色的服饰。这件毛衣是我自己编织的！
wǒ jiù bù yíyàng wǒ xǐhuan yǒu tèsè de fúshì zhè jiàn máoyī shì wǒ zìjǐ biānzhī de · I'm different: I like clothes with character. I knitted this jumper myself!

anna 真厉害！你可真心灵手巧。什么时候学会织毛衣的?
zhēn lìhai nǐ kě zhēn xīnlíng shǒuqiǎo shénme shíhou xuéhuì zhī máoyī de · Impressive! You really are clever with your hands. When did you learn to knit?

little sister 跟奶奶学的。我还会缝纽扣、做手帕呢。
gēn nǎinai xué de wǒ hái huì féng niǔkòu zuò shǒupà ne · Grandma taught me. I can sew on buttons and make handkerchiefs too.

ms zhang 好了，衣服说完了，该大扫除了。你拿扫帚扫地，我去洗窗帘。
hǎo le yīfu shuō wán le gāi dà sǎochú le nǐ ná sàozhou sǎo dì wǒ qù xǐ chuānglián · Right, enough about clothes: time for a big clean. You sweep with the broom; I'll wash the curtains.

anna 这件衬衫怎么洗?
zhè jiàn chènshān zěnme xǐ · How should I wash this shirt?

ms zhang 用肥皂手洗，洗涤以后用夹子挂起来晒干，再熨一熨。
yòng féizào shǒu xǐ xǐdí yǐhòu yòng jiāzi guà qǐlai shài gàn zài yùn yi yun · Wash it by hand with soap, peg it up to dry afterwards, then give it an iron.

little sister 哎，我的兜里怎么有这么多纸?
āi wǒ de dōu lǐ zěnme yǒu zhème duō zhǐ · Hey, why is my pocket full of paper?

ms zhang 你看你，洗衣服之前也不看一看兜里！八成是你的复习笔记。
nǐ kàn nǐ xǐ yīfu zhīqián yě bú kàn yi kan dōu lǐ bāchéng shì nǐ de fùxí bǐjì · Look at you: you didn't even check your pockets before washing! Those are most likely your revision notes.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

宁
nìng
rather

偏
piān
deliberately, contrary to what's expected

雅
yǎ
elegant

逆
nì
go against; contrary

good to know · 穿着 chuānzhuó is "attire" (她的穿着很得体); 穿着 chuānzhe is "wearing" (她穿着一件红衣服). The context tells you which. A Chinese care label says 手洗 (hand wash), 不可熨烫 (do not iron), 不可干洗 (do not dry-clean).

Gown, tailor, necklace, iron: you can now get ready for a formal evening and thank a room full of guests in style.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 37 building and moving house

Talk about neighbourhoods, building work and flat features (heating, air conditioning, security doors), and say "each thing in its time" with 该X就X，该Y就Y.

Flat hunting in China means reading ads full of 地段, 宜居 and 供暖, and putting up with building sites next door.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
搬迁	bānqiān	to relocate, move (home, firm)	工厂明年要搬迁到郊区。 The factory is relocating to the suburbs next year.
拆迁	chāiqiān	to demolish and relocate	这片老房子明年就要拆迁了。 This block of old houses is to be demolished next year.
迁	qiān	to move, migrate	我们家祖籍上海，爷爷那一代才迁到北京。 Our family comes from Shanghai: only in Grandpa's generation did we move to Beijing.
定居	dìngjū	to settle (down somewhere)	大学毕业以后，他在杭州定居了。 After university he settled in Hangzhou.
落户	luòhù	to settle; to register as a resident	他们一家在北京落户已经二十年了。 His family has been settled in Beijing for twenty years.
住处	zhùchù	where you live, lodgings	我得{dei3}重新找个住处。 I need to find somewhere new to live.
住户	zhùhù	household, resident	这栋楼一共有六十多个住户。 There are over sixty households in this building.
街坊	jiēfang	neighbours (in the same street)	我们和街坊们相处得很好。 We get on really well with our neighbours.
临街	línjiē	facing the street	这家店临街，生意很好。 This shop faces the street and does good business.
地段	dìduàn	location, area (of a city)	这套房子地段好，交通方便。 This flat is in a good area, with easy transport.
宜居	yíjū	good to live in, liveable	这座城市气候好，非常宜居。 This city has a good climate and is very liveable.
搭建	dājiàn	to put up (a temporary structure)	他们在院子里搭建了一个小棚子。 They put up a little shed in the courtyard.
兴建	xīngjiàn	to build, construct (large projects)	这个城市正在兴建一座新机场。 The city is building a new airport.
动工	dònggōng	to start construction	新学校下个月动工。 Work on the new school starts next month.
施工	shīgōng	to carry out construction	前方施工，请注意安全。 Building work ahead: please take care.

封顶	fēngdǐng	to top out (a building)	新楼已经封顶了。 The new building has been topped out.
竣工	jùngōng	to be completed (building work)	这座大桥预计明年竣工。 The bridge is expected to be finished next year.
落成	luòchéng	to be completed and opened	新图书馆昨天正式落成。 The new library officially opened yesterday.
扩建	kuòjiàn	to extend, enlarge (a building)	医院正在扩建，明年能多住两百个病人。 The hospital is being extended: next year it will take two hundred more patients.
翻新	fānxīn	to renovate, refurbish	他们把老房子翻新了一遍。 They gave the old house a complete makeover.
铺路	pūlù	to pave a road; to pave the way	村里铺路以后，交通方便多了。 Since the village road was paved, getting around is much easier.
斑马线	bānmǎxiàn	zebra crossing	过马路要走斑马线。 Use the zebra crossing to cross the road.
避让	bìràng	to give way, make way	车辆要避让行人。 Vehicles must give way to pedestrians.
草坪	cǎopíng	lawn	请不要在草坪上踢球。 Please don't play football on the lawn.
喷泉	pēnquán	fountain	广场中间有一个大喷泉。 There's a big fountain in the middle of the square.
棚	péng	shed, shelter, awning	院子里有一个放自行车的棚。 There's a bike shed in the courtyard.
露天	lùtiān	open-air, outdoor	夏天晚上，大家喜欢在露天的地方吃饭。 On summer evenings people like to eat outdoors.
公用	gōngyòng	public, shared, for common use	以前胡同里只有一个公用电话。 In the old days the hutong had just one public phone.
供暖	gōngnuǎn	central heating; to heat	北京一般十一月十五号开始供暖。 In Beijing the heating usually comes on on 15 November.
冷气	lěngqì	air conditioning	房间里开着冷气，挺凉快的。 The air conditioning is on in the room: it's nice and cool.
取暖	qǔnuǎn	to keep warm, warm yourself	以前冬天大家都靠炉子取暖。 In the old days everyone kept warm in winter with a stove.
烘干	hōnggān	to dry (with heat), tumble-dry	衣服洗完可以直接烘干。 You can dry the clothes straight after washing.
防盗	fángdào	anti-theft, burglar-proof	新房子装的是防盗门。 The new flat has a security door.
家用	jiāyòng	household, for home use	这家商场的家用电器很便宜。 Household appliances are cheap in this shopping centre.
家政	jiāzhèng	housekeeping; domestic services	她请了家政阿姨每周来打扫两次。 She has a housekeeper come and clean twice a week.

一面	yīmiàn	while, at the same time; one side	她一面听，一面记。 She listened and took notes at the same time.

pattern 该x(就)x，该y(就)y: do each thing when it's time

该 X （就） X ，该 Y （就） Y

该X就X，该Y就Y means "when you should X, X; when you should Y, Y": do the right thing at the right time, without fuss. 就 is often dropped: 该吃吃，该喝喝. With nouns it becomes 该花的钱就花 "money that should be spent, spend it".

该吃就吃，该睡就睡，别太累了。 **gāi chī jiù chī gāi shuì jiù shuì bié tài lèi le** Eat when you need to eat, sleep when you need to sleep: don't wear yourself out.

该说的说，不该说的别说。 **gāi shuō de shuō bù gāi shuō de biéshuō** Say what needs saying, and keep quiet about the rest.

工人们该施工就施工，该休息就休息，晚上从来不吵。 **gōngrénmen gāi shīgōng jiù shīgōng gāi xiūxi jiù xiūxi wǎnshang cónglái bù chǎo** The workers build when it's time to build and rest when it's time to rest: they never make noise at night.

dialogue looking for a new home

anna 小明，我的房东要卖房子，我下个月就得搬家，得重新找个住处。真倒霉！
Xiǎomíng wǒ de fángdōng yào mài fángzi wǒ xià gè yuè jiù děi bānjiā děi chóngxīn zhǎo gè zhùchù zhēn dǎoméi · Xiaoming, my landlord is selling, so I have to move next month and find somewhere new to live. Just my luck!

xiaoming 那你搬到我们这儿来吧！这里的街坊都特别好，大家相处得很融洽，常常互相串门。
nà nǐ bān dào wǒmen zhèr lái ba zhèlǐ de jiēfang dōu tèbié hǎo dàjiā xiāngchǔ de hěn róngqià chángcháng hùxiāng chuànmén · Then move here! The neighbours are lovely: everyone gets on really well and we're always dropping in on each other.

anna 这片胡同不是要拆迁吗？
zhè piàn hútòng bú shì yào chāiqiān ma · Aren't these hutongs going to be demolished?

xiaoming 不拆了。现在的计划是保护老房子，只翻新，不搬迁住户。
bù chāi le xiànzài de jìhuà shì bǎohù lǎo fángzi zhǐ fānxīn bù bānqiān zhùhù · Not any more. The plan now is to protect the old houses: renovate them, not move the residents out.

anna 太好了。你们家一直住在北京吗？还是从别的地方迁过来的？
tài hǎo le nǐmen jiā yìzhí zhù zài Běijīng ma háishi cóng biéde dìfang qiān guolai de · That's great. Has your family always lived in Beijing, or did you move here from somewhere else?

xiaoming 我们家祖籍西安，爷爷那一代才迁到北京，在这儿落户。
wǒmen jiā zǔjí Xīān yéye nà yídài cái qiān dào Běijīng zài zhèr luòhù · We're from Xi'an originally: only in Grandpa's generation did we move to Beijing and settle here.

anna 那边那座新楼呢？
nàbiān nà zuò xīn lóu ne · What about that new building over there?

xiaoming 去年动工兴建的，今年春天封顶，上个月刚竣工。
qùnián dònggōng xīngjiàn de jīnnián chūntiān fēngdǐng shàng gè yuè gāng jùngōng · They started building it last year, it was topped out in the spring, and it was finished just last month.

anna 施工的时候很吵吧？
shīgōng de shíhou hěn chǎo ba · Isn't it noisy while they're building?

xiaoming 还好。工人们该干活就干活，该休息就休息，晚上从来不施工。
hái hǎo gōngrénmen gāi gànhuó jiù gànhuó gāi xiūxi jiù xiūxi wǎnshang cónglái bù shīgōng · Not too bad. The workers work when it's time to work and rest when it's time to rest: they never build at night.

anna 那里地段怎么样？
nàlǐ dìduàn zěnmeyàng · How's the location?

xiaoming 要地铁有地铁，要超市有超市，特别宜居。就是一楼临街，有点儿吵。
yào dìtiě yǒu dìtiě yào chāoshì yǒu chāoshì tèbié yíjū jiùshì yì lóu línjiē yǒudiǎnr chǎo · There's a metro, a supermarket, everything: really liveable. Only the ground floor faces the street, so it's a bit noisy.

anna 楼前面那块草坪真漂亮，还有喷泉！
lóu qiánmiàn nà kuài cǎopíng zhēn piàoliang hái yǒu pēnquán · The lawn in front is lovely, and there's a fountain!

xiaoming 那是新落成的小公园，去年扩建的。以前那儿只有一个临时搭建的旧车棚。
nà shì xīn luòchéng de xiǎo gōngyuán qùnián kuòjiàn de yǐqián nàr zhǐyǒu yí gè línshí dājiàn de jiù chē péng · That's the little park they've just opened: it was extended last year. Before, there was only an old makeshift bike shed there.

anna 门口这条路也是新铺的吧？
ménkǒu zhè tiáo lù yě shì xīn pū de ba · And this road by the entrance is new too?

xiaoming 对，铺路以后还画了斑马线，司机看见行人都会避让。
duì pūlù yǐhòu hái huà le bānmǎxiàn sījī kànjiàn xíngrén dōu huì bìràng · Yes: after they paved it they painted a zebra crossing, and drivers give way to pedestrians.

anna 冬天供暖吗？我特别怕冷。
dōngtiān gōngnuǎn ma wǒ tèbié pà lěng · Is there heating in winter? I really feel the cold.

xiaoming 当然供暖，夏天还有冷气。我们住平房，冬天就得自己想办法取暖了，水龙头有时候还会冻住。

dāngrán gōngnuǎn xiàtiān hái yǒu lěngqì wǒmen zhù píngfáng dōngtiān jiù děi zìjǐ xiǎng bànfǎ qǔnuǎn le shuǐlóngtóu yǒu shíhou hái huì dòng zhù · Of course there's heating, and air conditioning in summer. In our one-storey house we have to find our own ways to keep warm in winter, and sometimes the taps even freeze.

anna 住新楼还有什么好处？

zhù xīn lóu hái yǒu shénme hǎochù · What else is good about living in a new building?

xiaoming 每层都有公用的洗衣机，洗完还能烘干。厨房里还有微波炉。门都是防盗的，很安全。

měi céng dōu yǒu gōngyòng de xǐyījī xǐ wán hái néng hōnggān chúfáng lǐ hái yǒu wēibōlú mén dōu shì fángdào de hěn ānquán · Every floor has shared washing machines, and you can dry things straight after. The kitchens even have microwaves. All the doors are security doors: very safe.

anna 我工作太忙，没时间打扫，那儿有家政服务吗？

wǒ gōngzuò tài máng méi shíjiān dǎsǎo nàr yǒu jiāzhèng fúwù ma · I'm too busy at work to clean: is there a housekeeping service?

xiaoming 有。那里的管理处想住户之所想，急住户之所急，什么家政服务的、家用电器维修的，都能帮你安排。

yǒu nàlǐ de guǎnlǐ chù xiǎng zhùhù zhī suǒ xiǎng jí zhùhù zhī suǒ jí shénme jiāzhèng fúwù de jiāyòng diànqì wéixiū de dōu néng bāng nǐ ānpái · Yes. The management office thinks of everything residents need: housekeeping, home appliance repairs, the lot, they'll arrange it.

anna 听起来真不错！住在那儿一定很顺心。我都想在北京定居了。

tīng qǐlai zhēn búcuò zhù zài nàr yídìng hěn shùnxīn wǒ dōu xiǎng zài Běijīng dìngjū le · Sounds great! Life there must be so easy. I'm starting to want to settle in Beijing.

xiaoming 你搬过来以后，我们想见一面也方便。夏天晚上，大家在露天的地方一面吃西瓜，一面聊天，可舒服了。

nǐ bān guolai yǐhòu wǒmen xiǎng jiàn yímiàn yě fāngbiàn xiàtiān wǎnshang dàjiā zài lùtiān de dìfang yímiàn chī xīguā yímiàn liáotiān kě shūfu le · Once you move here, it'll be easy to meet up. On summer evenings everyone sits outdoors eating watermelon and chatting: it's lovely.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

巷
xiàng
lane, alley

挨
āi
to be next to; one by one

墅
shù
country house

瓦
wǎ
roof tile

good to know · Building news follows the stages: 动工 (ground broken) → 施工 (under construction) → 封顶 (topped out) → 竣工 (finished) → 落成 (opened). In north China, central heating comes on by city rule: in Beijing usually from 15 November to 15 March.

Area, heating, security doors and building works: you can now go flat hunting in Chinese and ask all the right questions.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 38 hands at work

Describe exactly what your hands are doing (carry, pull, twist, tear, poke, prise), and say "if we do it, let's do it properly" with X就X个Y.

Chinese has a precise verb for every way of carrying, pulling or pressing. Packing day is where you need them all at once.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
掰	bāi	to break off (with your hands)	她掰着手指|数了数，一共二十个箱子。 She counted on her fingers: twenty boxes in all.
扳	bān	to pull (a lever), turn; to turn round	走之前，把总开关扳下来。 Before you leave, pull the main switch down.
拨	bō	to move with a finger; to dial; to allot	我拨一下房东的电话。 I'll give the landlord a ring.
扒	bā	to cling to; to push aside, dig	他扒开土，看了看花的根。 He pushed the soil aside and looked at the plant's roots.
拔	bá	to pull out, pull up	离开房间前，记得拔掉插头。 Remember to unplug things before you leave the room.
揪	jiū	to grab, seize (and hold tight)	妹妹一把揪住了大白的绳子。 His sister grabbed Dabai's lead.
拽	zhuài	to pull, drag, yank	抽屉卡住了，我拽了半天也拽不开。 The drawer's stuck: I've been yanking it for ages and it won't open.
扯	chě	to pull, tear; to chat	别扯了，再扯就坏了。 Stop pulling: any more and it'll break.
挽	wǎn	to roll up (sleeves); to take (an arm)	她挽起袖子，开始干活。 She rolled up her sleeves and got to work.
拎	līn	to carry (by the handle)	你拎得动这个包吗? Can you manage to carry this bag?
挎	kuà	to carry on your arm or shoulder	她挎着一个小包出门了。 She went out with a little bag on her shoulder.
扛	káng	to carry on your shoulder	他一个人扛起了一个大箱子。 He hoisted a big box onto his shoulder all by himself.
驮	tuó	to carry on your back (animals, bikes)	我骑自行车驮几个小箱子过去。 I'll take a few small boxes over on my bike.
托	tuō	to hold up (on your palm); to entrust	麻烦你托着箱子底，别让它掉了。 Could you hold the bottom of the box so it doesn't fall?
拄	zhǔ	to lean on (a stick)	老奶奶拄着雨伞慢慢地走。 The old lady walked slowly, leaning on her umbrella.

捏	niē	to pinch, squeeze; to make up	我给你捏捏肩膀吧。 Let me give your shoulders a squeeze.
掐	qiā	to pinch (with nails); to time, cut off	我掐着时间呢，休息十分钟就继续。 I'm timing it: ten minutes' rest, then we carry on.
拧	níng	to twist, wring	把毛巾拧干{gan1}，挂在绳子上。 Wring out the towel and hang it on the line.
搓	cuō	to rub (between your hands)	天太冷了，他不停地搓手。 It was so cold he kept rubbing his hands.
揉	róu	to rub, knead	她累得直揉眼睛。 She was so tired she kept rubbing her eyes.
捶	chuí	to pound, thump (with your fist)	我腰好酸，你帮我捶一捶。 My back aches: could you thump it for me?
砸	zá	to smash, pound; to drop on; to flop	箱子掉下来，差点儿砸到他的脚。 The box fell and nearly landed on his foot.
劈	pī	to split, chop	他一斧子把木头劈成了两半。 With one blow of the axe he split the wood in two.
凿	záo	to chisel, bore a hole	墙太硬，得{dei3}先凿个洞才能挂画。 The wall is too hard: you have to bore a hole before you can hang a picture.
刨	páo	to dig, dig up	大白又在草坪上刨土了。 Dabai is digging up the lawn again.
铲	chǎn	to shovel, scrape	下雪了，大家都出来铲雪。 It snowed, and everyone came out to shovel it.
抠	kōu	to dig out (with a finger); to be stingy	别用手抠，用筷子捅一捅。 Don't dig at it with your fingers: poke it with a chopstick.
挠	náo	to scratch	他不好意思地挠了挠头。 He scratched his head, embarrassed.
捅	tǒng	to poke, jab; to let out (a secret)	他用筷子捅了捅盆底的洞。 He poked the hole in the bottom of the pot with a chopstick.
戳	chuō	to jab, poke (with a point)	小心，别把纸戳破了。 Careful: don't poke a hole in the paper.
磕	kē	to knock, bump	他站起来的时候磕到了头。 He bumped his head as he stood up.
撬	qiào	to prise open, lever	抽屉卡住了，只好用螺丝刀撬开。 The drawer was stuck, so we had to prise it open with a screwdriver.
掀	xiān	to lift (a lid, a cover), raise	她掀开锅盖，香味一下子出来了。 She lifted the lid and the smell came pouring out.
揭	jiē	to peel off, uncover; to expose	把墙上的旧画慢慢揭下来。 Peel the old pictures off the wall slowly.
撕	sī	to tear, rip	他把信撕成了两半。 He tore the letter in two.
好说	hǎoshuō	no problem; easy to arrange	帮你搬家？好说好说！ Help you move? No problem at all!

pattern **x就x个y: if you x, x properly**

(要) verb 就 verb 个 how

X就X个Y says “if you’re going to X, do it all the way”: 玩就玩个痛快 “if we play, let’s play to our heart’s content”. Repeat the verb around 就, then add 个 and the result you want: 痛快, 够, 彻底, 明白. 要 often comes in front.

要玩就玩个痛快！ **yào wán jiù wán gè tòngkuài** If we’re going to have fun, let’s really have fun!

要干就干个彻底，别干一半。 **yào gàn jiù gàn gè chèdǐ bié gàn yíbàn** If you do it, do it thoroughly: don’t stop halfway.

今天要吃就吃个够。 **jīntiān yào chī jiù chī gè gòu** If we’re eating today, let’s eat our fill.

dialogue packing day

xiaoming 安娜，我们来帮你打包了！要搬就搬个痛快，今天全部收拾好。
Ānnà wǒmen lái bāng nǐ dǎbāo le yào bān jiù bān gè tòngkuài jīntiān quánbù shōushi hǎo · Anna, we've come to help you pack! If we're doing it, let's do it properly: everything ready today.

anna 太好了！谢谢你们，我巴不得明天早上就住进新家。墙上这些画别撕，那是我第一年来北京的时候买的，慢慢揭下来。
tài hǎo le xièxie nǐmen wǒ bābudé míngtiān zǎoshang jiù zhù jìn xīn jiā qiáng shàng zhèxiē huà bié sī nà shì wǒ dì yī nián lái Běijīng de shíhou mǎi de màn màn jiē xialai · Brilliant! Thank you both: I can't wait to be in my new home first thing tomorrow. Don't tear the pictures off the wall: I bought them in my first year in Beijing. Peel them off slowly.

xiaoming 这个抽屉卡住了，拽都拽不开，硬扯也扯不开。我用螺丝刀撬一下……好了！
zhège chōuti kǎ zhù le zhuài dōu zhuài bu kāi yìng chě yě chě bu kāi wǒ yòng luósī dāo qiào yíxià hǎo le · This drawer's stuck: it won't budge, and yanking it doesn't help. I'll prise it with a screwdriver… there!

anna 小心，别磕着头。这个箱子太重了，我抬都抬不起来，里面全是衣裳和靴子。
xiǎoxīn bié kē zhe tóu zhège xiāngzi tài zhòng le wǒ tái dōu tái bu qǐlai lǐmiàn quán shì yīshang hé xuēzi · Careful you don't bump your head. This box is so heavy I can't even lift it: it's full of clothes and boots.

xiaoming 我来扛。你挎着这个包就行，里面是你的电脑。小箱子我骑自行车驮过去，一次能驮三个，顶多跑五趟。
wǒ lái káng nǐ kuà zhe zhège bāo jiù xíng lǐmiàn shì nǐ de diànnǎo xiǎo xiāngzi wǒ qí zìxíngchē tuó guoqu yí cì néng tuó sān gè dǐngduō pǎo wǔ tàng · I'll carry it on my shoulder. You just take this bag: your computer's in it. I'll take the small boxes over on my bike: three at a time, five trips at most.

anna 阳台上的花呢？
yángtái shàng de huā ne · And the plants on the balcony?

xiaoming 先把土扒开一点儿，再把花拔出来，放进小盆里。
xiān bǎ tǔ bā kāi yìdiǎnr zài bǎ huā bá chulai fàng jìn xiǎo pén lǐ · Push the soil aside a bit first, then pull the plants out and put them in small pots.

little sister 这个盆底的洞被土堵住了，我用手抠一抠。
zhège pén dǐ de dòng bèi tǔ dǔ zhù le wǒ yòng shǒu kōu yi kou · The hole in the bottom of this pot is blocked with soil: I'll dig it out with my finger.

anna 别用手，用筷子捅一捅就行，别把盆戳破了。
bié yòng shǒu yòng kuàizi tǒng yi tong jiù xíng bié bǎ pén chuō pò le · Not with your hand: just poke it with a chopstick, and don't jab a hole in the pot.

little sister 大白，不许刨土！……我一把揪住了它的绳子，它才停下来。
Dàbái bùxǔ páo tǔ wǒ yì bǎ jiū zhù le tā de shéngzi tā cái tíng xialai · Dabai, no digging! …I grabbed his lead, and only then did he stop.

xiaoming 好了，休息一下吧。大家拧把毛巾擦擦脸，搓搓手，喝口热水。我掐着时间，十分钟以后继续。
hǎo le xiūxi yíxià ba dàjiā níng bǎ máojīn cā ca liǎn cuō cuo shǒu hē kǒu rè shuǐ wǒ qiā zhe shíjiān shí fēnzhōng yǐhòu jìxù · Right, take a break. Wring out a towel and wipe your face, rub your hands, have some hot water. I'm timing it: we carry on in ten minutes.

anna 我的腰好酸，谁帮我捶一捶？
wǒ de yāo hǎo suān shéi bāng wǒ chuí yi chui · My back aches: who'll give it a thump for me?

little sister 我给你捏捏肩膀吧。你看你，累得直揉眼睛。
wǒ gěi nǐ niē nie jiānbǎng ba nǐ kàn nǐ lèi de zhí róu yǎnjing · I'll squeeze your shoulders. Look at you: you're so tired you keep rubbing your eyes.

xiaoming 门口有个旧箱子，盖子掀不开，把手也坏了。要不要砸开？
ménkǒu yǒu gè jiù xiāngzi gài zi xiān bu kāi bǎshou yě huài le yào búyào zá kāi · There's an old chest by the door: the lid won't lift and the handle's broken. Shall we smash it open?

anna 千万别砸！那是房东的。钥匙在这儿，转一下就开了。
qiānwàn bié zá nà shì fángdōng de yàoshi zài zhèr zhuǎn yíxià jiù kāi le · Don't you dare! It's the landlord's. Here's the key: one turn and it opens.

little sister 里面有一把旧雨伞。房东奶奶以前就拄着它去买菜吧?
lǐmiàn yǒu yì bǎ jiù yǔ sǎn fángdōng nǎinai yǐqián jiù zhǔ zhe tā qù mǎi cài ba · There's an old umbrella inside. I bet the landlady used to lean on it going shopping?

anna 对。我拨个电话问问她要不要。走之前还要把总开关扳下来。
duì wǒ bō gè diànhuà wèn wen tā yào búyào zǒu zhīqián hái yào bǎ zǒng kāiguān bān xialai · Yes. I'll give her a ring and ask if she wants it. And before we leave we must pull down the main switch.

xiaoming 院子里那块木头太长，带不走，我拿斧子把它劈成两半。
yuànzi lǐ nà kuài mùtou tài cháng dài bu zǒu wǒ ná fǔzi bǎ tā pī chéng liǎng bàn · That piece of wood in the yard is too long to take: I'll split it in two with the axe.

anna 新家的墙很硬，挂画得先凿个洞，再装个钩，你明天能帮我吗?
xīn jiā de qiáng hěn yìng guà huà děi xiān záo gè dòng zài zhuāng gè gōu nǐ míngtiān néng bāng wǒ ma · The walls in the new flat are really hard: to hang pictures we'll need to bore holes first and put in hooks. Can you help me tomorrow?

xiaoming 好说！冬天下雪，你门口的雪我也帮你铲。（不好意思地挠了挠头）其实我只是怕你以后不请我吃饭。
hǎoshuō dōngtiān xià xuě nǐ ménkǒu de xuě wǒ yě bāng nǐ chǎn bù hǎoyìsi de náo le nao tóu qíshí wǒ zhǐshì pà nǐ yǐhòu bù qǐng wǒ chī fàn · No problem! And when it snows in winter, I'll shovel the snow outside your door too. (scratching his head, embarrassed) Actually, I'm just afraid you won't invite me to dinner.

anna 哈哈，放心吧！搬完家，我请大家吃饭。我掰着手指数了数，一共二十个箱子，今天一定能收拾个干干净净。
hā hā fàngxīn ba bān wán jiā wǒ qǐng dàjiā chī fàn wǒ bāi zhe shǒuzhǐ shù le shù yígòng èrshí gè xiāngzi jīntiān yídìng néng shōushi gè gāngānjìngjìng · Ha ha, don't worry! After the move, dinner's on me. I've counted on my fingers: twenty boxes in all. We'll definitely get it all packed today.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

槛
kǎn
threshold

杆
gǎn
shaft; (measure word for scales, guns)

垫
diàn
to put under, pad; pad

蜡
là
wax

good to know · Carrying, the Chinese way: 拎 by a handle, 挎 on your arm or shoulder, 扛 on your shoulder, 背 on your back, 抱 in your arms, 托 on your palm, 驮 on an animal or a bike. Pulling: 拉 (general), 拽 (yank hard), 扯 (pull and tear), 拔 (pull out), 揪 (grab and hold).

Carry, twist, prise, peel, poke: your hands now have a Chinese verb for everything they do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 39 idioms with 不

Use the great family of four-character idioms built on 不: 半A半B, 不A不B and 不A而B, to describe crowds, applause, talk, doubts and goodbyes.

Speeches, news reports and essays at HSK 7–9 are full of these 不 idioms; recognising the patterns lets you guess dozens more.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
半信半疑	bànxìnbànyí	half-believing, sceptical	听了他的解释，大家都半信半疑。 Everyone was only half convinced by his explanation.
不知不觉	bùzhībùjué	without realising, before you know it	不知不觉，我在北京已经住了十年。 Before I knew it, I'd been living in Beijing for ten years.
不折不扣	bùzhébùkòu	through and through, out-and-out	这是一个不折不扣的好消息。 This is good news through and through.
不辞而别	bùcíérbié	to leave without saying goodbye	他昨天不辞而别，谁也不知道他去了哪儿。 He left yesterday without a word, and nobody knows where he went.
不言而喻	bùyánéryù	it goes without saying	保护老房子的重要性不言而喻。 The importance of protecting old houses goes without saying.
不约而同	bùyuēértóng	with one accord, all at once	听到这个消息，大家不约而同地笑了。 When they heard the news, everyone laughed at once.
不翼而飞	bùyìérfēi	to vanish into thin air	我放在桌子上的钥匙不翼而飞了。 The keys I left on the table have vanished into thin air.
不得而知	bùdéérzhī	unknown, impossible to know	他为什么离开，现在还不得而知。 Why he left is still not known.
不可思议	bùkěsīyì	unbelievable, inconceivable	一个人一天搬完了家，真是不可思议。 One person moved house in a single day: incredible.
不可或缺	bùkěhuòquē	indispensable	胡同是老北京不可或缺的一部分。 The hutongs are an indispensable part of old Beijing.
不假思索	bùjiǎsīsuǒ	without a moment's thought	老师一问，他不假思索就说出了答案。 The moment the teacher asked, he gave the answer without a second's thought.
不了了之	bùliǎoliǎozhī	to end with nothing done, fizzle out	这件事不能就这么不了了之。 We can't just let this matter drop.
不相上下	bùxiāngshàngxià	equally matched, about the same	两个队的水平不相上下。 The two teams are evenly matched.
不以为然	bùyǐwéirán	to disapprove, not think much of	我说住平房好，他却不以为然。 I said living in a one-storey house was good, but he wasn't impressed.
不由自主	bùyóuzìzhǔ	can't help it, involuntarily	听到音乐，她不由自主地跳了起来。 When she heard the music she couldn't help

			dancing.
不知所措	bùzhīsuǒcuò	at a loss, not know what to do	突然让我上台讲话，我一下子不知所措。 Suddenly asked to go up and speak, I was completely at a loss.
不厌其烦	bùyànqífán	patiently, without tiring	王老师不厌其烦地回答我们的问题。 Teacher Wang answered our questions with endless patience.
不耻下问	bùchǐxiàwèn	not ashamed to ask those below you	做学问要不耻下问。 In scholarship, you shouldn't be ashamed to learn from anyone.
不正之风	bùzhèngzhīfēng	bad practices, corruption	我们要坚决反对不正之风。 We must firmly oppose improper practices.
不亦乐乎	bùyìlèhū	extremely (busy), like mad	搬家那天，大家忙得不亦乐乎。 On moving day everyone was rushed off their feet.
必不可少	bìbùkěshǎo	absolutely necessary	水和空气是生命必不可少的。 Water and air are essential to life.
层出不穷	céngchūbùqióng	to keep appearing, one after another	新的手机软件层出不穷。 New phone apps keep appearing one after another.
川流不息	chuānliúbùxī	flowing without end (traffic, crowds)	大街上的车辆川流不息。 Traffic flows endlessly along the street.
络绎不绝	luòyìbùjué	in an endless stream (visitors)	来参观胡同的游客络绎不绝。 Visitors come to see the hutongs in an endless stream.
经久不息	jīngjiǔbùxī	prolonged (applause)	讲座结束时，掌声经久不息。 At the end of the talk, the applause went on and on.
滔滔不绝	tāotāobùjué	to talk on and on	一说起胡同，他就滔滔不绝。 Once he starts on the hutongs, he talks on and on.
赞不绝口	zànbùjuékǒu	to be full of praise	客人们对她做的菜赞不绝口。 The guests couldn't stop praising her cooking.
源源不断	yuányuánbùduàn	in a steady stream, without end	每年都有源源不断的游客来这里。 Every year a steady stream of tourists comes here.
锲而不舍	qièérbùshě	to persevere, keep at it	只要锲而不舍，就一定能成功。 As long as you keep at it, you will succeed.
恋恋不舍	liànliànbùshě	reluctant to leave	孩子们恋恋不舍地离开了公园。 The children left the park very reluctantly.
依依不舍	yīyībùshě	reluctant to part	分别的时候，大家都依依不舍。 When it came to saying goodbye, nobody wanted to part.
美中不足	měizhōngbùzú	a fly in the ointment	房子很好，美中不足的是离地铁有点儿远。 The flat is great: the one drawback is it's a bit far from the metro.
来之不易	láizhībùyì	hard-won	今天的好生活来之不易。 Today's good life was hard-won.
微不足道	wēibùzúdào	too small to mention, trivial	我做的这些事微不足道。 What I've done is too small to mention.
本事	běnshi	ability, skill	他真有本事，什么东西都能修好。 He's really capable: he can fix anything.

pattern idioms with 不: 半a半b, 不a不b, 不a而b

半A半B · 不A不B · 不A而B

半A半B is “half A, half B”: 半信半疑 half believing, half doubting (also 半真半假 half true). 不A不B is “neither A nor B” or “without A or B”: 不知不觉 without knowing or feeling. 不A而B is “B without A”: 不言而喻 understood without being said, 不约而同 the same without arranging it.

我对这个消息半信半疑。 **wǒ duì zhège xiāoxi bànxìn bànyí** I’m only half convinced by this news.

时间过得真快，不知不觉就到了年底。 **shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài bùzhī bùjué jiù dào le niándǐ** Time flies: before you know it, it’s the end of the year.

我放在桌子上的钥匙不翼而飞了。 **wǒ fàng zài zhuōzi shàng de yàoshi búyìérfēi le** The keys I left on the table have vanished into thin air.

他昨天不辞而别，谁也不知道他去了哪儿。 **tā zuótiān bùcíérbié shéi yě bù zhīdào tā qù le nǎr** He left yesterday without a word, and nobody knows where he went.

dialogue professor chen’s talk

xiaoming 安娜，你看，来听陈教授讲座的人络绎不绝。
Ānnà nǐ kàn lái tīng Chénjiàoshòu jiǎngzuò de rén luòyì bùjué · Anna, look: people keep pouring in to hear Professor Chen.

anna 陈教授真有本事，讲历史讲得那么有意思，大家都爱听。他在这一带远近闻名。
Chénjiàoshòu zhēn yǒu běnshi jiǎng lìshǐ jiǎng de nàme yǒu yìsi dàjiā dōu ài tīng tā zài zhè yídài yuǎnjìn wénmíng · Professor Chen is so good: he makes history so interesting that everyone loves listening. He's famous all round here.

professor chen 各位街坊，大家好！胡同是老北京不可或缺的一部分，保护它的意义不言而喻。
gèwèi jiēfang dàjiā hǎo hútòng shì lǎo Běijīng bùkě huòquē de yí bùfen bǎohù tā de yìyì bùyánéryù · Good evening, neighbours! The hutongs are an indispensable part of old Beijing, and the importance of protecting them goes without saying.

professor chen 七百多年里，胡同里的故事层出不穷。以前胡同外的大街上，车辆和行人川流不息；现在，来参观的游客也源源不断。
qībǎi duō nián lǐ hútòng lǐ de gùshi céngchū bùqióng yǐqián hútòng wài de dà jiē shàng chēliàng hé xíngrén chuānliú bùxī xiànzài lái cānguān de yóukè yě yuányuán búduàn · For over seven hundred years, the hutongs have produced story after story. In the old days, carts and people streamed endlessly along the streets outside; today a steady stream of visitors keeps coming.

anna 教授，以前的人为什么喜欢住平房？
jiàoshòu yǐqián de rén wèi shénme xǐhuan zhù píngfáng · Professor, why did people use to like living in one-storey houses?

professor chen 好问题。这个问题我也想请教在座的老街坊，他们很多是土生土长的北京人。
hǎo wèntí zhège wèntí wǒ yě xiǎng qǐngjiào zài zuò de lǎo jiēfang tāmen hěn duō shì tǔshēng tǔzhǎng de Běijīng rén · Good question. I'd like to put it to the old residents here too: many of them are Beijing born and bred.

xiaoming 陈教授真是不耻下问！我奶奶常说，住平房能看见天，天天能跟邻居见面。只是美中不足，冬天太冷了。
Chénjiàoshòu zhēn shì bùchǐ xiàwèn wǒ nǎinai cháng shuō zhù píngfáng néng kànjiàn tiān tiān tiān néng gēn línjū jiànmiàn zhǐshì měizhōng bùzú dōngtiān tài lěng le · Professor Chen, never too proud to ask! My grandma always said that in a one-storey house you can see the sky and see your neighbours every day. The one drawback: it's freezing in winter.

professor chen 说得好！对了，听说胡同口那对狮子不辞而别了？
shuō de hǎo duì le tīngshuō hútòng kǒu nà duì shīzi bùcíérbié le · Well said! By the way, I hear the pair of stone lions at the end of the lane left without saying goodbye?

xiaoming 是啊，大家都觉得不可思议。它们为什么不见了，到现在还不得而知。
shì a dàjiā dōu juéde bùkě sīyì tāmen wèi shénme bújiàn le dào xiànzài hái bùdéérzhī · Yes, everyone thinks it's incredible. Why they've gone is still a mystery.

anna 我听了半信半疑：那么重的东西，怎么会不翼而飞呢？
wǒ tīng le bànxìn bànyí nàme zhòng de dōngxi zěnme huì búyìérfēi ne · I only half believed it: how can something that heavy vanish into thin air?

professor chen 别担心，我问过了，是送去修补了，下个月就回来。这件事不会不了了之的。
bié dānxīn wǒ wèn guo le shì sòng qù xiūbǔ le xià gè yuè jiù huílái zhè jiàn shì bú huì bùliǎo liǎozhī de · Don't worry: I asked, and they've been taken away for repair. They'll be back next month. It won't just be forgotten.

anna 那就好！教授，翻新老民居，应该完全保留原来的样子吗？
nà jiù hǎo jiàoshòu fānxīn lǎo mínjū yīnggāi wánquán bǎoliú yuánlái de yàngzi ma · Thank goodness! Professor, when old houses are renovated, should they be kept exactly as they were?

professor chen 有的人不以为然，觉得老样子住着不方便，冬天还得自己取暖。两种意见不相上下，都有道理。住户的意见是必不可少的。
yǒude rén bùyǐwéirán juéde lǎo yàngzi zhù zhe bù fāngbiàn dōngtiān hái děi zìjǐ qǔnuǎn liǎng zhǒng yìjiàn bùxiāng shàngxià dōu yǒu dàolǐ zhùhù de yìjiàn shì bìbùkěshǎo de · Some people disagree: they think the old

style isn't practical to live in, and in winter you have to heat the place yourself. The two views are evenly matched and both make sense. What the residents think is essential.

xiaoming 以前有的地方拆迁，有人送东西、拉关系，有不正之风。现在好多了。
yǐqián yǒude dìfang chāiqiān yǒu rén sòng dōngxi lā guānxì yǒu búzhèngzhīfēng xiànzài hǎo duō le · In the past, when some places were demolished, people gave gifts and pulled strings: there were some bad practices. It's much better now.

professor chen 是啊，今天的好政策来之不易。我每个星期都来胡同里走走，忙得不亦乐乎。
shì a jīntiān de hǎo zhèngcè láizhī búyì wǒ měi gè xīngqī dōu lái hútòng lǐ zǒu zou máng de búyìlèhū · Yes, today's good policies were hard-won. I come and walk round the hutongs every week, and it keeps me busy as anything.

professor chen 我们这儿还有一位外国朋友。安娜，你也说两句？
wǒmen zhèr hái yǒu yí wèi wàiguó péngyou Ānnà nǐ yě shuō liǎng jù · We have a foreign friend here too. Anna, would you like to say a few words?

anna 啊？我……我有点儿不知所措。我只想说，我明天就搬到这儿来了，以后就是大家的街坊！说不定我会在这儿定居呢。
a wǒ wǒ yǒudiǎnr bùzhī suǒcuò wǒ zhǐ xiǎng shuō wǒ míngtiān jiù bān dào zhèr lái le yǐhòu jiùshì dàjiā de jiēfang shuōbudìng wǒ huì zài zhèr dìngjū ne · What? I... I don't know what to say. I just want to say that I'm moving here tomorrow, so from now on I'm your neighbour! Maybe I'll even settle here for good.

xiaoming 你看，大家不约而同地鼓掌，掌声经久不息。
nǐ kàn dàjiā bùyuēértóng de gǔzhǎng zhǎngshēng jīngjiǔ bùxī · Look: everyone started clapping at once, and the applause is going on and on.

professor chen 欢迎欢迎！只要大家锲而不舍，老胡同一定能保护好。今天就讲到这儿。
huānyíng huānyíng zhǐyào dàjiā qiè'érbùshě lǎo hútòng yídìng néng bǎohù hǎo jīntiān jiù jiǎng dào zhèr · Welcome, welcome! As long as we all keep at it, the old hutongs will be protected. That's all for today.

anna 陈教授，看在我们是老朋友的面子上，能给我的书签个名吗？
Chénjiàoshòu kàn zài wǒmen shì lǎo péngyou de miànzi shàng néng gěi wǒ de shū qiān gè míng ma · Professor Chen, for old times' sake, could you sign my book?

professor chen 好说好说！你明天搬家，舍得离开以前的邻居吗？
hǎoshuō hǎoshuō nǐ míngtiān bānjiā shěde líkāi yǐqián de línjū ma · With pleasure! You're moving tomorrow: is it hard to leave your old neighbours?

anna 真有点儿依依不舍。昨天房东奶奶拉着我的手，恋恋不舍地说了半天。
zhēn yǒudiǎnr yīyī bùshě zuótiān fángdōng nǎinai lā zhe wǒ de shǒu liànliàn bùshě de shuō le bàntiān · I really hate to go. Yesterday my landlady held my hand and wouldn't stop talking: she didn't want to let me go.

professor chen 搬家是好事。我做的这些事微不足道，以后你们年轻人要多关心胡同。
bānjiā shì hǎo shì wǒ zuò de zhèxiē shì wēibùzúdào yǐhòu nǐmen niánqīng rén yào duō guānxīn hútòng · Moving is a good thing. What I do is too small to mention: from now on it's up to you young people to look after the hutongs.

xiaoming 陈教授太谦逊了。大家问他问题，他都不厌其烦地回答，邻居们对他赞不绝口。
Chénjiàoshòu tài qiānxùn le dàjiā wèn tā wèntí tā dōu búyàn qífán de huídá línjūmen duì tā zànbùjuékǒu · Professor Chen is too modest. Whatever people ask, he answers with endless patience, and the neighbours can't praise him enough.

anna 是啊，有人问他问题，他不假思索就能回答。一说起胡同，他就滔滔不绝。不知不觉，两个小时就过去了，我听得不由自主地点头。
shì a yǒu rén wèn tā wèntí tā bùjiǎ sīsuǒ jiù néng huídá yì shuō qǐ hútòng tā jiù tāotāo bùjué bùzhī bùjué liǎng gè xiǎoshí jiù guòqù le wǒ tīng de bùyóuzìzhǔ de diǎntóu · Yes: whatever you ask, he can answer without a second's thought. Once he starts on the hutongs he talks on and on. Two hours went by without my noticing, and I couldn't stop nodding.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

烛
zhú
candle

灶
zào
kitchen range, cooking stove

波
bō
wave

锤
chuí
hammer; to hammer

good to know · Many idioms of the form ……不绝 or ……不息 mean “without end”: 络绎不绝 (visitors), 川流不息 (traffic), 经久不息 (applause), 滔滔不绝 (talk), 赞不绝口 (praise). 依依不舍 and 恋恋不舍 both mean reluctant to part; 依依不舍 is the usual one for people saying goodbye.

With three little frames, 半A半B, 不A不B and 不A而B, a whole shelf of idioms opens up: you can now follow a speech and applaud in style.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 40 mission: moving house

Follow a whole moving day in Chinese: the contract, the van, the repairs, the building's notice, the unpacking and the housewarming.

Everything from this unit comes together: houses, tools, hands at work, clothes, the neighbourhood and the idioms of 不.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the van arrives

anna
孙律师，您这么早就来了！
Sūnlǜshī nín zhème zǎo jiù lái le · Lawyer Sun, you're here so early!

lawyer sun
今天你搬家，我顺便把新房子的合同带来了。打今天起，你就是新楼的住户了。
jīntiān nǐ bānjiā wǒ shùnbiàn bǎ xīn fángzi de hétóng dài lái le dǎ jīntiān qǐ nǐ jiùshì xīn lóu de zhùhù le · It's moving day, so I've brought the contract for the new flat. From today you're a resident of the new building.

anna
合同上的事，您总是不厌其烦地给我解释，真是太感谢了。
hétóng shàng de shì nín zǒngshì búyàn qífán de gěi wǒ jiěshì zhēn shì tài gǎnxiè le · You've always explained everything in the contract so patiently: thank you so much.

lawyer sun
微不足道。什么房租的、家具的，都写得清清楚楚。现在租房子比以前规范，乱收钱的不正之风少多了。只有一条你要注意：家用电器坏了，要先告诉房东。
wēibùzúdào shénme fángzū de jiājù de dōu xiě de qīngqīngchuchu xiànzài zū fángzi bǐ yǐqián guīfàn luàn shōu qián de búzhèngzhīfēng shǎo duō le zhǐyǒu yì tiáo nǐ yào zhùyì jiāyòng diànqì huài le yào xiān gàosu fángdōng · It's nothing. The rent, the furniture, it's all set out clearly. Renting is better regulated now: those bad old habits of charging whatever they liked are much rarer. Just one point: if an appliance breaks, tell the landlord first.

xiaoming
搬家公司的车到了！师傅把车熄火了，正在按喇叭叫我们呢。
bānjiā gōngsī de chē dào le shīfu bǎ chē xīhuǒ le zhèngzài àn lǎba jiào wǒmen ne · The removal van's here! The driver has switched off the engine and is honking for us.

anna
要搬就搬个痛快，咱们一上午搬完！
yào bān jiù bān gè tòngkuài zánmen yí shàngwǔ bān wán · If we're moving, let's do it properly: all done by lunchtime!

xiaoming
（挽起袖子）你拎小包，我和师傅扛大箱子。妹妹，你挎着电脑包，再托好那个装灯泡的盒子。
wǎn qǐ xiùzi nǐ līn xiǎo bāo wǒ hé shīfu káng dà xiāngzi mèimei nǐ kuà zhe diànnǎo bāo zài tuō hǎo nàge zhuāng dēngpào de hézi · (rolling up his sleeves) You carry the small bags; the driver and I will shoulder the big boxes. Sis, take the computer bag on your shoulder and hold the box of light bulbs steady.

little sister
好说！别说一个盒子，十个我也拿得动。
hǎoshuō biéshuō yí gè hézi shí gè wǒ yě ná de dòng · No problem! Never mind one box: I could manage ten.

lawyer sun
沙发用布遮盖好，别弄脏了。我顶多能帮你们搬半个小时，十点还有个会。
shāfā yòng bù zhēgài hǎo bié nòng zāng le wǒ dǐngduō néng bāng nǐmen bān bàn gè xiǎoshí shí diǎn hái yǒu gè huì · Cover the sofa with a cloth so it doesn't get dirty. I can help for half an hour at most: I have a meeting at ten.

anna
起码让我请您喝个咖啡吧！
qǐmǎ ràng wǒ qǐng nín hē gè kāfēi ba · At least let me buy you a coffee!

lawyer sun
下次吧。对了，门口那个旧箱子，我看都没看就放上车了。那是房东的吧？
xià cì ba duì le ménkǒu nàge jiù xiāngzi wǒ kàn dōu méi kàn jiù fàng shàng chē le nà shì fángdōng de ba · Next time. Oh, that old chest by the door: I put it in the van without even looking. Isn't it the landlord's?

anna
哎呀，是房东的！快拿下来，不然我就落得个偷东西的罪名了！
āiyā shì fángdōng de kuài ná xialai bùrán wǒ jiù luò de gè tōu dōngxi de zuì míng le · Oh no, it's the landlord's! Get it out quick, or I'll end up accused of stealing it!

little sister
墙上的画我都揭下来了，插头也都拔了。
qiáng shàng de huà wǒ dōu jiē xialai le chā tóu yě dōu bá le · I've peeled all the pictures off the walls and pulled out all the plugs.

anna
谢谢！走之前把总开关扳下来。我拨个电话给房东，告诉她钥匙在我兜里，下午还给她。
xièxie zǒu zhīqián bǎ zǒng kāiguān bān xialai wǒ bō gè diànhuà gěi fángdōng gàosu tā yàoshi zài wǒ dōu lǐ xiàwǔ huán gěi tā · Thanks! Pull the main switch down before we go. I'll ring the landlady and tell her the keys are in my pocket and I'll bring them back this afternoon.

xiaoming 小箱子我骑自行车驮过去，一次驮三个。
xiǎo xiāngzi wǒ qí zìxíngchē tuó guoqu yí cì tuó sān gè · I'll take the small boxes over on my bike, three at a time.

anna 房东奶奶刚才拉着我的手，恋恋不舍地说了半天。我住了五年，要离开，真有点儿依依不舍。
fángdōng nǎinai gāngcái lā zhe wǒ de shǒu liànliàn bùshě de shuō le bàntiān wǒ zhù le wǔ nián yào líkāi zhēn yǒudiǎnr yīyī bùshě · The old landlady held my hand just now and talked for ages: she didn't want to let me go. I've lived here five years, and I really hate to leave.

lawyer sun 新家离这儿不远，想回来随时都能回来。
xīn jiā lí zhèr bù yuǎn xiǎng huílái suíshí dōu néng huílái · Your new place isn't far: you can come back any time.

chapter 2 chapter 2: the new flat

anna 你们看，这就是我的新家！我寻觅了一个月，才找到这么好的住处。
nǐmen kàn zhè jiùshì wǒ de xīn jiā wǒ xúnmì le yí gè yuè cái zhǎo dào zhème hǎo de zhùchù · Look, this is my new home! I searched for a month to find somewhere this good.

little sister 天花板很高，还铺着木头地板。从阳台上能看见下面的草坪和喷泉！
tiānhuābǎn hěn gāo hái pū zhe mùtou dìbǎn cóng yángtái shàng néng kànjiàn xiàmiàn de cǎopíng hé pēnquán · High ceilings, wooden floors, and from the balcony you can see the lawn and the fountain below!

xiaoming 这个地段真好，要地铁有地铁，要超市有超市。房子也不临街，晚上很安静。
zhège dìduàn zhēn hǎo yào dìtiě yǒu dìtiě yào chāoshì yǒu chāoshì fángzi yě bù línjiē wǎnshang hěn ānjìng · Great location: a metro, a supermarket, everything. And it doesn't face the street, so it's quiet at night.

little sister 虽然不是别墅，可比我们的老民居方便多了：没有门槛，也不用爬阁楼。
suīrán bú shì biéshù kě bǐ wǒmen de lǎo mínjū fāngbiàn duō le méiyǒu ménkǎn yě búyòng pá gélóu · It's not a villa, but it's much more convenient than our old house: no threshold to trip over, no attic to climb into.

anna 厨房里有微波炉，没有灶，也没有烟囱。
chúfáng lǐ yǒu wēibōlú méiyǒu zào yě méiyǒu yāncōng · There's a microwave in the kitchen: no old stove, no chimney.

xiaoming 住高楼就看不见胡同里的炊烟了。
zhù gāo lóu jiù kàn bu jiàn hútòng lǐ de chuīyān le · In a block of flats you don't see the cooking smoke over the hutong.

anna 唉，美中不足的是，卫生间的马桶好像堵塞了。
ài měizhōng bùzú de shì wèishēngjiān de mǎtǒng hǎoxiàng dǔsè le · Sigh. The one drawback: the toilet seems to be blocked.

dr li 我就知道会有问题。工具都带来了：锤、钉子、斧子、绳子，要什么有什么。先疏通一下，再放水冲洗。好了！
wǒ jiù zhīdào huì yǒu wèntí gōngjù dōu dài lái le chuí dīngzi fǔzi shéngzi yào shénme yǒu shénme xiān shūtōng yíxià zài fàngshuǐ chōngxǐ hǎo le · I knew there'd be something. I've brought all my tools: hammer, nails, axe, rope, the lot. Unblock it first, then run the water and flush it through. Done!

anna 李医生，您一出手，什么问题都解决了！厨房的水龙头也一直在滴水。
Lǐyīshēng nín yì chūshǒu shénme wèntí dōu jiějué le chúfáng de shuǐlóngtóu yě yìzhí zài dī shuǐ · Dr Li, the moment you step in, every problem is solved! And the kitchen tap keeps dripping.

dr li 里面的螺丝松了，我用螺丝刀上紧……好了。门上的把手也松了，我顺便修个把手。
lǐmiàn de luósī sōng le wǒ yòng luósī dāo shàng jǐn hǎo le mén shàng de bǎshou yě sōng le wǒ shùnbiàn xiū gè bǎshou · A screw inside is loose: I'll tighten it with the screwdriver… there. The door handle is loose too, so I'll fix that while I'm at it.

little sister 卧室的灯不亮。
wòshì de dēng bú liàng · The bedroom light doesn't work.

dr li 你扶着梯子，我上去换个灯泡……哎呀，梯子的一条腿差点儿折了！
nǐ fú zhe tīzi wǒ shàngqù huàn gè dēngpào āiyā tīzi de yì tiáo tuǐ chàdiǎnr shé le · Hold the ladder and I'll go up and change the bulb… whoa, one of the ladder's legs nearly snapped!

anna 小心！灯罩也脏了，我等一会儿擦一擦。
xiǎoxīn dēng zhào yě zāng le wǒ děng yíhuìr cā yi ca · Careful! The lampshade's dirty too: I'll wipe it in a minute.

dr li 窗框上的油漆掉了一块，我先打磨一下，周末再来漆一遍。墙上那个洞，不知道谁用纸糊上了，我来修补一下。
chuāng kuàng shàng de yóuqī diào le yí kuài wǒ xiān dǎmó yíxià zhōumò zài lái qī yí biàn qiáng shàng nàge dòng bù zhīdào shéi yòng zhǐ hú shàng le wǒ lái xiūbǔ yíxià · A bit of paint has come off the window frame: I'll sand it now and come back at the weekend to repaint it. That hole in the wall: somebody just pasted paper over it. I'll patch it up.

anna 厨房里，房东留下了一杆旧秤、几个容器，还有一个笔筒。
chúfáng lǐ fángdōng liúxia le yì gǎn jiù chèng jǐ gè róngqì hái yǒu yí gè bǐ tǒng · In the kitchen the landlord has left an old steelyard, a few containers and a pen pot.

xiaoming 这些老器具挺有意思，当个摆设也好。门后再装个钩，挂衣服方便。
zhèxiē lǎo qìjù tǐng yǒu yìsi dāng gè bǎishe yěhǎo mén hòu zài zhuāng gè gōu guà yīfu fāngbiàn · These old utensils are quite fun: they'd make nice ornaments. And put a hook behind the door for coats.

little sister 阳台上那根竹竿可以晒衣服，我再给你买几个夹子。
yángtái shàng nà gēn zhúgān kěyǐ shài yīfu wǒ zài gěi nǐ mǎi jǐ gè jiāzi · The bamboo pole on the balcony is good for drying clothes: I'll buy you some pegs.

anna 房东说冬天供暖，夏天有冷气，洗衣机还能烘干。
fángdōng shuō dōngtiān gōngnuǎn xiàtiān yǒu lěngqì xǐyījī hái néng hōnggān · The landlord says there's heating in winter and air conditioning in summer, and the washing machine can dry clothes too.

dr li 门是防盗的，窗户也密封得很好，记得常开窗透气。
mén shì fángdào de chuānghu yě mìfēng de hěn hǎo jìde cháng kāi chuāng tòuqì · The door is a security door, and the windows seal really well: remember to open them often to let air in.

anna 该修的就修，该换的就换，一上午全弄好了！
gāi xiū de jiù xiū gāi huàn de jiù huàn yí shàngwǔ quán nòng hǎo le · What needed fixing got fixed, what needed changing got changed: all done in one morning!

chapter 3 chapter 3: a notice by the lift

anna （读）“致各位住户：欢迎大家搬进新落成的阳光楼！本楼去年动工兴建，今年三月封顶，上个月正式竣工。为了大家住得安全、方便，请注意以下几点：

dú zhì gèwèi zhùhù huānyíng dàjiā bān jìn xīn luòchéng de yángguāng lóu běn lóu qùnián dònggōng xīngjiàn jīnnián sān yuè fēngdǐng shàng gè yuè zhèngshì jùngōng wèile dàjiā zhù de ānquán fāngbiàn qǐng zhùyì yǐxià jǐ diǎn · (reading) “To all residents: Welcome to the newly completed Sunshine Building! Construction began last year, the building was topped out in March and finished last month. For your safety and convenience, please note the following:

anna 一、过道和阶梯是公用的地方，请勿堆放箱子、凳子、架子等东西。二、出门前请关好防盗门和窗户。三、东门正在扩建，门外正在铺路，施工期间请走斑马线，车辆请避让行人。

yī guòdào hé jiētī shì gōngyòng de dìfang qǐng wù duī fàng xiāngzi dèngzi jiàzi děng dōngxi èr chūmén qián qǐng guān hǎo fángdào mén hé chuānghu sān dōng mén zhèngzài kuòjiàn mén wài zhèngzài pūlù shīgōng qījiān qǐng zǒu bānmǎxiàn chēliàng qǐng bìràng xíngrén · 1. Corridors and stairways are shared areas: please do not leave boxes, stools, shelves or other items there. 2. Please lock the security door and close the windows when you go out. 3. The east gate is being extended and the road outside is being paved: during the works please use the zebra crossing, and drivers must give way to pedestrians.

anna 四、本楼十一月十五日开始供暖。五、楼下新搭建了自行车棚，请把车放在棚里。请爱护楼前的草坪和喷泉，请勿在露天的地方点火、放烟火。

sì běn lóu shíyī yuè shíwǔ rì kāishǐ gōngnuǎn wǔ lóu xià xīn dājiàn le zìxíngchē péng qǐng bǎ chē fàng zài péng lǐ qǐng àihù lóu qián de cǎopíng hé pēnquán qǐng wù zài lùtiān de dìfang diǎnhuǒ fàng yānhuǒ · 4. Heating will come on on 15 November. 5. A new bike shed has been put up downstairs: please keep bikes in the shed. Please look after the lawn and the fountain in front of the building; no fires or fireworks in open areas.

anna 六、需要家政、维修等服务，请拨打管理处电话。管理处想住户之所想，急住户之所急，向全体住户致以诚挚的问候！”

liù xūyào jiāzhèng wéixiū děng fúwù qǐng bōdǎ guǎnlǐ chù diànhuà guǎnlǐ chù xiǎng zhùhù zhī suǒ xiǎng jí zhùhù zhī suǒ jí xiàng quántǐ zhùhù zhì yǐ chéngzhì de wènhòu · 6. For housekeeping, repairs and other services, please call the management office. The management office is here for whatever you need, and sends warm greetings to all residents!”

little sister 写得真清楚！“勿”是什么意思？

xiě de zhēn qīngchu wù shì shénme yìsi · That’s really clear! What does 勿 mean?

xiaoming “勿”就是“不要”，书面上用的，通知里常见。

wù jiùshì búyào shūmiàn shàng yòng de tōngzhī lǐ cháng jiàn · 勿 means “don’t”: it’s for writing, and you see it a lot in notices.

anna 不能放烟火？那春节怎么办？

bù néng fàng yānhuǒ nà Chūnjié zěnme bàn · No fireworks? What about the Spring Festival, then?

xiaoming 到时候来我们胡同吧。城里早就不让放烟火了，不过街坊们一起包饺子，热闹得要命。

dào shíhou lái wǒmen hútòng ba chéng lǐ zǎo jiù bú ràng fàng yānhuǒ le búguò jiēfangmen yìqǐ bāo jiǎozi rènao de yàomìng · Come to our hutong then. Fireworks have been banned in the city for years anyway, but the neighbours make dumplings together, and it’s incredibly lively.

little sister 我还以为新楼什么都好，原来规矩这么多。

wǒ hái yǐwéi xīn lóu shénme dōu hǎo yuánlái guīju zhème duō · I thought the new building was perfect, but there are so many rules.

anna 没什么好抱怨的。规矩多，大家才住得安心，这个道理不言而喻。

méi shénme hǎo bàoyuàn de guīju duō dàjiā cái zhù de ānxīn zhège dàolǐ bùyánéryù · Nothing to complain about. With rules, everyone can live in peace: that goes without saying.

chapter 4 chapter 4: unpacking

little sister 箱子都在这儿了！我掰着手指数了数，一共二十个。我来把盖子掀开。
xiāngzi dōu zài zhèr le wǒ bāi zhe shǒuzhǐ shù le shù yígòng èrshí gè wǒ lái bǎ gài zi xiān kāi · All the boxes are here! I counted on my fingers: twenty in all. I'll open the lids.

anna 慢慢来，别把东西扯坏了。这个箱子里什么时装的、首饰的，别弄乱了。
màn màn lái bié bǎ dōngxi chě huài le zhège xiāngzi lǐ shénme shízhuāng de shǒushì de bié nòng luàn le · Take it slowly: don't tear anything. This box has clothes, jewellery and so on: don't mess it up.

little sister 你的衣裳真多！这双皮革靴子真时髦。还有一条钻石项链！
nǐ de yīshang zhēn duō zhè shuāng pígé xuēzi zhēn shímáo hái yǒu yì tiáo zuànshí xiàngliàn · You've got so many clothes! These leather boots are so stylish. And a diamond necklace!

anna 项链是你妈妈借我的，我得还给她。那件外套的拉链坏了，纽扣也掉了一个，得找裁缝缝一下。
xiàngliàn shì nǐ māma jiè wǒ de wǒ děi huán gěi tā nà jiàn wàitào de lāliàn huài le niǔkòu yě diào le yí gè děi zhǎo cáifeng féng yíxià · The necklace is your mum's: she lent it to me and I must give it back. The zip on that jacket is broken and a button's come off: I need a tailor to sew it.

little sister 不用找裁缝，我会缝！这些毛衣是你自己织的吗？
búyòng zhǎo cáifeng wǒ huì féng zhèxiē máoyī shì nǐ zìjǐ zhī de ma · No need for a tailor: I can sew! Did you knit these jumpers yourself?

anna 是你奶奶编织的，送给我的。这条纱裙子要用冷水洗涤，那件丝衬衫要熨一熨。
shì nǐ nǎinai biānzhī de sòng gěi wǒ de zhè tiáo shā qúnzi yào yòng lěng shuǐ xǐdí nà jiàn sī chènshān yào yùn yi yun · Your grandma knitted them for me. This gauze skirt has to be washed in cold water, and that silk shirt needs ironing.

little sister 这个小箱子里是梳子、肥皂、手帕什么的。
zhège xiǎo xiāngzi lǐ shì shūzi féizào shǒupà shénme de · This little box has combs, soap, handkerchiefs and things.

anna 放进卫生间吧。窗帘太长了，得裁短一些。桌子也不平，在下面垫本书。
fàng jìn wèishēngjiān ba chuānglián tài cháng le děi cái duǎn yìxiē zhuōzi yě bùpíng zài xiàmiàn diàn běn shū · Put them in the bathroom. The curtains are too long: they need cutting shorter. And the table wobbles: put a book under it.

xiaoming 这个抽屉卡住了，拽都拽不开。
zhège chōuti kǎ zhù le zhuài dōu zhuài bu kāi · This drawer is stuck: it won't even budge.

little sister 我用螺丝刀撬一下……开了！哎呀，我磕到头了。
wǒ yòng luósī dāo qiào yíxià kāi le āiyā wǒ kē dào tóu le · I'll prise it with a screwdriver… it's open! Ouch, I've bumped my head.

anna 你看你，真是的！墙太硬，挂画得先凿个洞，晚上再说吧。我腰好酸，谁帮我捶一捶？
nǐ kàn nǐ zhēnshi de qiáng tài yìng guà huà děi xiān záo gè dòng wǎnshang zàishuō ba wǒ yāo hǎo suān shéi bāng wǒ chuí yi chui · Look at you, honestly! The walls are too hard: we'll need to bore holes before hanging pictures. Let's leave it till later. My back aches: who'll thump it for me?

little sister 我给你捏捏肩膀。你看你，累得直揉眼睛。
wǒ gěi nǐ niē nie jiānbǎng nǐ kàn nǐ lèi de zhí róu yǎnjing · I'll squeeze your shoulders. Look at you: you're so tired you keep rubbing your eyes.

xiaoming 休息十分钟，我掐着时间。哎，大白呢？刚才还在这儿。
xiūxi shí fēnzhōng wǒ qiā zhe shíjiān āi Dàbái ne gāngcái hái zài zhèr · Ten minutes' break: I'm timing it. Hey, where's Dabai? He was here a minute ago.

little sister 刚才它想潜入厨房，被我一把揪住了。它一看见我，就撒腿跑了。
gāngcái tā xiǎng qiánrù chúfáng bèi wǒ yì bǎ jiū zhù le tā yí kànjiàn wǒ jiù sā tuǐ pǎo le · He tried to sneak into the kitchen just now and I grabbed him. The moment he saw me, he took to his heels.

anna 门一直敞开着，它多半趁机跑出去了。没准儿又在楼下的草坪上刨土呢！
mén yìzhí chǎngkāi zhe tā duōbàn chènjī pǎo chuqu le méizhǔnr yòu zài lóu xià de cǎopíng shàng páo tǔ ne ·

The door's been wide open: he probably slipped out. Maybe he's digging up the lawn downstairs again!

xiaoming 我们分头搜寻吧。它最喜欢寻个安静的地方睡觉，八成还在家里。
wǒmen fēn tóu sōuxún ba tā zuì xǐhuan xún gè ānjìng de dìfang shuìjiào bāchéng hái zài jiā lǐ · Let's split up and search. He loves finding a quiet spot to sleep: he's most likely still in the flat.

little sister 我在门口探头看了看，没有。大不了我在门口守候，它饿了迟早会回来。
wǒ zài ménkǒu tàn tóu kàn le kan méiyǒu dàbuliǎo wǒ zài ménkǒu shǒuhòu tā è le chízǎo huì huílái · I stuck my head out of the door and looked: nothing. At worst I'll wait at the door: he'll come back when he's hungry.

xiaoming 你们看，窗帘后面！它用窗帘遮着自己，以为我们看不见。
nǐmen kàn chuānglián hòumiàn tā yòng chuānglián zhē zhe zìjǐ yǐwéi wǒmen kàn bu jiàn · Look, behind the curtain! He's covering himself with it and thinks we can't see him.

anna 窗帘可遮挡不住它的大尾巴。它在里面酣睡呢，叫都叫不醒。
chuānglián kě zhēdǎng bu zhù tā de dà wěiba tā zài lǐmiàn hānshuì ne jiào dōu jiào bu xǐng · The curtain can't hide that big tail. He's fast asleep in there: you can't even wake him.

little sister 我来唤醒它：大白，吃饭了！……你看，它马上瞄准了自己的碗。它迟迟不出来，就是在等这句话！
wǒ lái huànxǐng tā Dàbái chī fàn le nǐ kàn tā mǎshàng miáozhǔn le zìjǐ de wǎn tā chíchí bù chūlái jiùshì zài děng zhè jù huà · I'll wake him: Dabai, dinner! …Look, he's spotted his bowl at once. He was only hanging back waiting to hear that!

anna （捂着嘴笑）哈哈，它跟我一样，也想找个舒服的住处。
wǔ zhe zuǐ xiào hā hā tā gēn wǒ yíyàng yě xiǎng zhǎo gè shūfu de zhùchù · (laughing behind her hand) Ha ha, he's just like me: he wants a comfy place to live too.

xiaoming 客人快来了，我们得装扮一下。我的发型乱了。
kèrén kuài lái le wǒmen děi zhuāngbàn yíxià wǒ de fàxíng luàn le · The guests will be here soon: we need to smarten up. My hair's a mess.

little sister 借你梳子梳一梳。你应该穿旧衣服来干活，现在全身都是土。
jiè nǐ shūzi shū yi shu nǐ yīnggāi chuān jiù yīfu lái gànhuó xiànzài quánshēn dōu shì tǔ · Borrow my comb. You should have worn old clothes to work in: you're covered in dirt.

anna 我佩戴什么首饰呢？
wǒ pèidài shénme shǒushì ne · What jewellery shall I wear?

little sister 简单一点儿就好。你的穿着一向很得体，不用太新潮。先拿扫帚来个大扫除吧！
jiǎndān yìdiǎnr jiù hǎo nǐ de chuānzhuó yíxiàng hěn détǐ búyòng tài xīncháo xiān ná sàozhou lái gè dà sǎochú ba · Keep it simple. You always dress just right: no need to be too trendy. First, grab the broom and let's have a big clean!

chapter 5 chapter 5: the housewarming

xiaoming 客人络绎不绝，你的新家都快没地方坐了。
kèrén luòyì bùjué nǐ de xīn jiā dōu kuài méi dìfang zuò le · The guests keep coming: your new home is nearly full.

professor chen 安娜，祝贺你搬进新家！我给你带了一张老照片，配了个框，当个摆设。
Ānnà zhùhè nǐ bān jìn xīn jiā wǒ gěi nǐ dài le yì zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn pèi le gè kuàng dāng gè bǎishe · Anna, congratulations on your new home! I've brought you an old photo in a frame, as an ornament.

anna 谢谢！这是胡同吧？屋檐上的瓦、门口的柱子、院子的围墙，都是一百年前的样子，真是不可思议。
xièxie zhè shì hútòng ba wūyán shàng de wǎ ménkǒu de zhùzi yuànzi de wéiqiáng dōu shì yìbǎi nián qián de yàngzi zhēn shì bùkě sīyì · Thank you! Is this the hutong? The tiles on the eaves, the pillars by the gate, the courtyard wall: just as they were a hundred years ago. Incredible.

teacher wang 我带了几根蜡烛、一条毯子，还有一包朋友在杭州采的茶。蜡烛别放在窗帘旁边，蜡滴在地毯上不好洗。
wǒ dài le jǐ gēn làzhú yì tiáo tǎnzi hái yǒu yì bāo péngyou zài Hángzhōu cǎi de chá làzhú bié fàng zài chuānglián pángbiān là dī zài dìtǎn shàng bù hǎo xǐ · I've brought some candles, a blanket, and a packet of tea a friend picked in Hangzhou. Don't put the candles by the curtains: wax on a carpet is hard to clean.

anna 谢谢王老师！快请坐。凳子不够，大家坐垫子吧。
xièxie Wánglǎoshī kuài qǐng zuò dèngzi búgòu dàjiā zuò diànzi ba · Thank you, Teacher Wang! Please sit down. There aren't enough stools, so do sit on the cushions.

teacher wang 不知不觉，你来中国已经十年了。你打算在北京定居吗？
bùzhī bùjué nǐ lái Zhōngguó yǐjīng shí nián le nǐ dǎsuàn zài Běijīng dìngjū ma · Before we knew it, you've been in China ten years. Are you planning to settle in Beijing?

anna 我早就在这儿落户了！刚来的时候，我什么都不懂，常常不知所措，您总是不厌其烦地教我。
wǒ zǎo jiù zài zhèr luòhù le gāng lái de shíhou wǒ shénme dōu bù dǒng chángcháng bùzhī suǒcuò nín zǒngshì búyàn qífán de jiāo wǒ · I put down roots here long ago! When I first came I knew nothing and was often at a loss, and you always taught me so patiently.

teacher wang 你连邻居家的孩子都肯请教，真是不耻下问。学语言，锲而不舍是必不可少的。你的进步来之不易。
nǐ lián línjū jiā de háizi dōu kěn qǐngjiào zhēn shì bùchǐ xiàwèn xué yǔyán qiè'érbùshě shì bìbùkěshǎo de nǐ de jìnbù láizhī búyì · You'd even ask the neighbours' children: never ashamed to ask anyone. Learning a language, perseverance is a must. Your progress was hard-won.

professor chen 对了，你们胡同还拆迁吗？
duì le nǐmen hútòng hái chāiqiān ma · By the way, is your hutong still going to be demolished?

xiaoming 不拆了，也不搬迁住户，只翻新。我们家从西安迁过来以后，就一直住在那儿。还有个好消息：胡同口那对不翼而飞的狮子，今天回来了！
bù chāi le yě bù bānqiān zhùhù zhǐ fānxīn wǒmen jiā cóng Xīān qiān guolai yǐhòu jiù yìzhí zhù zài nàr hái yǒu gè hǎo xiāoxi hútòng kǒu nà duì búyìérfēi de shīzi jīntiān huílái le · No, and they won't move the residents out either: just renovate. Our family has lived there ever since we moved from Xi'an. And more good news: the stone lions that vanished from the end of the lane came back today!

anna 真的？听说它们是被送去修补了，我一度还半信半疑。
zhēn de tīngshuō tāmen shì bèi sòng qù xiūbǔ le wǒ yídù hái bànxìn bànyí · Really? I heard they'd been taken away for repair, but for a while I only half believed it.

professor chen 我说过，这件事不会不了了之的。当时它们为什么“不辞而别”，很多人都不得而知。
wǒ shuō guo zhè jiàn shì bú huì bùliǎo liǎozhī de dāngshí tāmen wèi shénme bùcíérbié hěn duō rén dōu bùdéérzhī · I told you it wouldn't just be forgotten. At the time, lots of people had no idea why they'd "left without saying goodbye".

teacher wang 你的新邻居怎么样?
nǐ de xīn línjū zěnmeyàng · And how are your new neighbours?

anna 刚才楼下的住户都来了，送了我好多吃的。大家不约而同地说：“有事就找我们！”
gāngcái lóu xià de zhùhù dōu lái le sòng le wǒ hǎoduō chī de dàjiā bùyuēértóng de shuō yǒu shì jiù zhǎo wǒmen · The people downstairs have all been up and brought me loads of food. They all said the same thing: “If you need anything, come to us!”

professor chen 这样的邻居，现在很难得。你看窗外，车辆川流不息，新的饭馆层出不穷，可是好邻居最重要。
zhèyàng de línjū xiànzài hěn nándé nǐ kàn chuāng wài chēliàng chuānliú bùxī xīn de fànguǎn céngchū bùqióng kěshì hǎo línjū zuì zhòngyào · Neighbours like that are rare now. Look out of the window: endless traffic, new restaurants opening one after another, but good neighbours matter most.

little sister 菜来了！哥哥和我做的，你们尝尝，看谁做得好。
cài lái le gēge hé wǒ zuò de nǐmen cháng chang kàn shéi zuò de hǎo · Food’s here! My brother and I made it: try it and see whose is better.

teacher wang 两个人的水平不相上下，都好吃!
liǎng gè rén de shuǐpíng bùxiāng shàngxià dōu hǎochī · You’re evenly matched: both delicious!

anna 大家对你们的菜赞不绝口。李医生却不以为然，他说还是张女士做的最好。
dàjiā duì nǐmen de cài zànbùjuékǒu Lǐyīshēng què bùyǐwéirán tā shuō háishi Zhāngnǚshì zuò de zuìhǎo · Everyone’s full of praise for your cooking. Dr Li doesn’t agree, though: he says Ms Zhang’s is still the best.

xiaoming 我爸爸累了一天，坐在凳子上就打盹儿了。
wǒ bàba lèi le yì tiān zuò zài dèngzi shàng jiù dǎdǔnr le · My dad’s been working all day: he’s dozed off on his stool.

little sister 陈教授一讲起胡同的历史，就滔滔不绝，大家听着听着，不由自主地鼓掌，掌声经久不息。
Chénjiàoshòu yì jiǎng qǐ hútòng de lìshǐ jiù tāotāo bùjué dàjiā tīng zhe tīng zhe bùyóuzìzhǔ de gǔzhǎng zhǎngshēng jīngjiǔ bùxī · Once Professor Chen starts on the history of the hutong, he talks on and on: everyone listening just starts clapping, and the applause goes on and on.

professor chen 你们问什么，我都不假思索地回答，因为这是我最爱的话题。
nǐmen wèn shénme wǒ dōu bùjiǎ sīsuǒ de huídá yīnwèi zhè shì wǒ zuì ài de huàtí · Whatever you ask, I answer without a second’s thought, because it’s my favourite subject.

xiaoming 今天大家忙得不亦乐乎。现在该吃就吃，该聊就聊，大家一面吃，一面聊吧！
jīntiān dàjiā máng de búyìlèhū xiànzài gāi chī jiù chī gāi liáo jiù liáo dàjiā yímiàn chī yímiàn liáo ba · We’ve all been rushed off our feet today. Now, time to eat and time to chat: eat and chat together!

little sister 要玩就玩个痛快，我今天晚上不走了！
yào wán jiù wán gè tòngkuài wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang bù zǒu le · If we’re having fun, let’s really have fun: I’m staying the night!

anna 欢迎欢迎！一句话，以后这儿就是大家的家，客人源源不断，我最开心了。
huānyíng huānyíng yí jù huà yǐhòu zhèr jiùshì dàjiā de jiā kèrén yuányuán búduàn wǒ zuì kāixīn le · You’re very welcome! In a word, from now on this is everyone’s home: the more guests, the happier I am.

A whole moving day, from contract to housewarming, in Chinese: you could do it for real now.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 41 in the kitchen

Name the ways of cooking (simmer, stew, steam, pan-fry, bake, smoke), prepare food (peel, soak, mix, press) and keep it (freeze, keep fresh), and tease the cook with 不是我说你 and -鬼.

Recipes, cooking videos and food labels use these verbs on every line. And a good scolding in the kitchen is part of family life.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
熬	áo	to simmer, stew for a long time; to endure	鸡汤要用小火慢慢熬。 Chicken soup should simmer slowly over a low heat.
炖	dùn	to stew, braise	牛肉要炖两个小时才好吃。 Beef needs two hours' stewing to taste good.
煲	bāo	to cook slowly in a pot (southern)	南方人喜欢煲汤。 People in the south love making slow-cooked soups.
煎	jiān	to pan-fry (in a little oil)	鱼可以蒸，也可以煎。 You can steam fish or pan-fry it.
烘	hōng	to bake, dry, warm by a fire	她每个周末都在家烘面包。 She bakes bread at home every weekend.
烘焙	hōngbèi	to bake (cakes, bread); to roast (coffee)	她最近在学烘焙，天天做蛋糕。 She's learning to bake and makes cakes every day.
蒸	zhēng	to steam	馒头要上锅蒸二十分钟。 The steamed buns need twenty minutes in the steamer.
熏	xūn	to smoke (food); to fill with smoke	这种鱼是用茶叶熏的，特别香。 This fish is smoked over tea leaves: it smells wonderful.
涮	shuàn	to dip-boil (hot pot); to rinse	冬天大家最爱涮羊肉。 In winter everyone loves dipping lamb in the hot pot.
拌	bàn	to mix, toss (a salad)	黄瓜切好以后，加点醋拌一拌。 Once the cucumber is sliced, add a little vinegar and toss it.
搅拌	jiǎobàn	to stir, mix	面粉里掺一点儿水，搅拌均匀。 Mix a little water into the flour and stir until smooth.
掺	chān	to mix in, add	米饭里掺了一些小米，更有营养。 There's some millet mixed into the rice: it's more nutritious.
剥	bāo	to peel, shell	你帮我剥几个鸡蛋吧。 Could you peel a few eggs for me?
削	xiāo	to peel (with a knife), pare	土豆要先削皮。 Peel the potatoes first.
宰	zǎi	to slaughter, kill (for food); to rip off	市场上的师傅帮我们把鱼宰好了。 The fishmonger at the market killed and cleaned the fish for us.

榨	zhà	to press, squeeze (juice, oil)	早上我喜欢榨一杯果汁。 In the morning I like to make a glass of fresh juice.
沏	qī	to make (tea), infuse	客人来了，先沏一壶茶。 When guests arrive, make a pot of tea first.
浸泡	jìnpào	to soak	米要先在水里浸泡一个小时。 Soak the rice in water for an hour first.
发酵	fājiào	to ferment; to rise (dough)	做馒头要先让面发酵。 To make steamed buns, first let the dough rise.
酿造	niàngzào	to brew (soy sauce, vinegar, wine)	这家老店酿造的酱油特别香。 The soy sauce brewed by this old shop is wonderfully fragrant.
冷冻	lěngdòng	to freeze	剩下的肉放进冰箱冷冻起来。 Put the leftover meat in the freezer.
保鲜	bǎoxiān	to keep fresh	蔬菜放在保鲜盒里，可以多放几天。 Vegetables keep a few days longer in an airtight box.
腐烂	fǔlàn	to rot, go bad; corrupt	天气太热，水果几天就腐烂了。 In this heat, fruit goes rotten in a few days.
焦	jiāo	burnt, scorched; anxious	火太大了，鱼都焦了。 The heat was too high: the fish has burnt.
火候	huǒhou	heat and timing (cooking); mastery	炒菜最重要的是火候。 The most important thing in stir-frying is getting the heat and timing right.
烹饪	pēngrèn	cooking, cuisine (the art)	她在学校学的是烹饪。 She studied cookery at college.
烹调	pēngtiáo	to cook (dishes); cookery	这本书介绍了各地菜的烹调方法。 This book explains how dishes from all over are cooked.
配方	pèifāng	recipe, formula	这个蛋糕是按奶奶的配方做的。 This cake is made from Grandma's recipe.
调料	tiáoliào	seasoning, condiment	盐和醋是最常用的调料。 Salt and vinegar are the most common seasonings.
作料	zuòliao	seasoning (spoken, north)	饺子的作料准备好了吗? Is the dipping sauce for the dumplings ready?
香料	xiāngliào	spice; perfume	炖肉的时候放一点儿香料。 Add a few spices when you stew meat.
味精	wèijīng	monosodium glutamate, MSG	我们家做菜从来不放味精。 We never put MSG in our cooking at home.
添加剂	tiānjiājì	additive (food)	这种饮料里有很多添加剂。 This drink has lots of additives.
锡纸	xīzhǐ	tin foil, aluminium foil	用锡纸把鱼包起来，再放进锅里。 Wrap the fish in foil, then put it in the pan.
易拉罐	yìlāguàn	ring-pull can	把易拉罐扔进回收的垃圾桶。 Put the cans in the recycling bin.
鬼	guǐ	ghost; (suffix) a person who is ...; sly	你这个懒鬼，就知道吃，不知道做! You lazybones: you know how to eat but not how to cook!

pattern kitchen disasters: 落得个…… and 不是我说你

不是我说你, problem 结果 落得个 outcome

Two old friends for when things go wrong. 不是我说你 “I hate to say it, but…” softens a complaint before you make it. 落得个 + outcome tells you how it ended, usually badly: 落得个一锅焦饭 “ended up with a pot of burnt rice”. Cooking verbs are the third piece: each method has its own word.

他不看火候，结果落得个一锅焦饭。 **tā bú kàn huǒhou jiéguǒ luò de gè yì guō jiāo fàn** He didn’t watch the heat and ended up with a pot of burnt rice.

不是我说你，做饭的时候别老看手机。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ zuòfàn de shíhou bié lǎo kàn shǒujī** I hate to say it, but stop looking at your phone while you cook.

菜没放进冰箱，结果落得个一筐烂菜。 **cài méi fàng jìn bīngxiāng jiéguǒ luò de gè yì kuāng làn cài** The vegetables weren’t put in the fridge, and we ended up with a basket of rotten veg.

dialogue a cooking lesson

ms zhang 安娜，今天我教你做几个家常菜。把袖子挽起来，我们先熬一锅鸡汤：鸡肉先在水里浸泡半个小时，再放进锅里，用小火慢慢炖两个小时。南方人管这个叫“煲汤”。
Ānnà jīntiān wǒ jiāo nǐ zuò jǐ gè jiācháng cài bǎ xiùzi wǎn qǐlai wǒmen xiān áo yì guō jī tāng jī ròu xiān zài shuǐ lǐ jìnpào bàn gè xiǎoshí zài fàng jìn guō lǐ yòng xiǎo huǒ màn màn dùn liǎng gè xiǎoshí nánfāng rén guǎn zhège jiào bāo tāng · Anna, today I'll teach you a few home-style dishes. Roll up your sleeves: first, a pot of chicken soup. Soak the chicken in water for half an hour, then put it in the pot and stew it slowly over a low heat for two hours. In the south they call this 煲汤.

little sister 妈妈，我来煎鱼！
māma wǒ lái jiān yú · Mum, I'll fry the fish!

ms zhang 你小心一点儿，火候很重要，火太大了鱼就焦了。
nǐ xiǎoxīn yìdiǎnr huǒhou hěn zhòngyào huǒ tài dà le yú jiù jiāo le · Be careful: heat and timing matter. If the heat is too high, the fish will burn.

little sister 哎呀，已经焦了！
āiyā yǐjīng jiāo le · Oh no, it's already burnt!

ms zhang 不是我说你，做饭的时候别老看手机。
bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ zuòfàn de shíhou bié lǎo kàn shǒujī · I hate to say it, but stop looking at your phone while you cook.

xiaoming 我妹妹每次做饭，都落得个一锅焦饭。
wǒ mèimei měi cì zuòfàn dōu luò de gè yì guō jiāo fàn · Every time my sister cooks, it ends in a pot of burnt rice.

anna 这条鱼是谁宰的？
zhè tiáo yú shì shéi zǎi de · Who killed and cleaned this fish?

ms zhang 市场上的师傅宰好了。安娜，你帮我剥几个鸡蛋，再把土豆削皮，切成丝。
shìchǎng shàng de shīfu zǎi hǎo le Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ bāo jǐ gè jīdàn zài bǎ tǔdòu xiāo pí qiē chéng sī · The fishmonger at the market did it. Anna, could you peel a few eggs for me, then peel the potatoes and cut them into thin strips?

anna 鸡蛋剥好了，有一个不太好剥，我用手指抠了半天。黄瓜呢？
jīdàn bāo hǎo le yǒu yí gè bú tài hǎo bāo wǒ yòng shǒuzhǐ kōu le bàntiān huángguā ne · The eggs are peeled; one was tricky, and I had to pick at it with my fingers for ages. And the cucumber?

ms zhang 黄瓜切好以后，加点醋拌一拌。我们家做菜从来不放味精，调料就是盐、醋和一点儿糖。北方人管调料也叫“作料”。
huángguā qiē hǎo yǐhòu jiā diǎn cù bàn yi ban wǒmen jiā zuò cài cónglái bú fàng wèijīng tiáoliào jiùshì yán cù hé yìdiǎnr táng běifāng rén guǎn tiáoliào yě jiào zuòliao · When the cucumber's sliced, add a little vinegar and toss it. We never use MSG: the seasoning is just salt, vinegar and a little sugar. In the north people also call seasoning 作料.

anna 那这些香料是做什么用的？
nà zhèxiē xiāngliào shì zuò shénme yòng de · And what are these spices for?

ms zhang 炖肉用的。烹调最重要的是火候和配方，香料也是不可或缺的。这些是我妈妈教我的。
dùn ròu yòng de pēngtiáo zuì zhòngyào de shì huǒhou hé pèifāng xiāngliào yě shì bùkě huòquē de zhèxiē shì wǒ māma jiāo wǒ de · For stewing meat. In cooking, what matters most is the heat, the timing and the recipe, and spices are indispensable too: my mother taught me these.

anna 阿姨，您烹饪的本事真大！
āyí nín pēngrèn de běnshi zhēn dà · You're such a good cook!

little sister 我最喜欢吃妈妈做的熏鱼，还有冬天的涮羊肉。
wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī māma zuò de xūn yú hái yǒu dōngtiān de shuàn yáng ròu · My favourite is Mum's smoked fish, and hot-pot lamb in winter.

xiaoming 我妈妈做的馒头也特别好吃。面要先揉好，再发酵，然后上锅蒸。
wǒ māma zuò de mántou yě tèbié hǎochī miàn yào xiān róu hǎo zài fājiào ránhòu shàng guō zhēng · Mum's

steamed buns are great too. The dough has to be kneaded first, then left to rise, then it goes in the steamer.

ms zhang 蒸馒头我还行，蛋糕要烘焙，我就不太会了。妹妹会烘面包，还会榨果汁、沏茶。
zhēng mántou wǒ hái xíng dàngāo yào hōngbèi wǒ jiù bú tài huì le mèimei huì hōng miànbāo hái huì zhà guǒzhī qī chá · Steamed buns I can manage, but cakes have to be baked, and I'm not much good at that. My daughter can bake bread, and she makes fresh juice and tea too.

little sister 做蛋糕要在面粉里掺一点儿牛奶，再加鸡蛋搅拌均匀。
zuò dàngāo yào zài miànfěn lǐ chān yìdiǎnr niúnǎi zài jiā jīdàn jiǎobàn jūnyún · For a cake you mix a little milk into the flour, then add the eggs and stir until smooth.

anna 我们那条街上有一家老店，酿造的酱油特别香。
wǒmen nà tiáo jiē shàng yǒu yì jiā lǎo diàn niàngzào de jiàngyóu tèbié xiāng · There's an old shop on my street that brews wonderful soy sauce.

ms zhang 好酱油要发酵很久。现在很多食品都有添加剂，买东西的时候要看一看。
hǎo jiàngyóu yào fājiào hěn jiǔ xiànzài hěn duō shípǐn dōu yǒu tiānjiājì mǎi dōngxi de shíhou yào kàn yi kan · Good soy sauce takes a long time to ferment. Lots of food has additives these days: have a look when you buy things.

xiaoming 剩下的肉怎么办？
shèng xià de ròu zěnme bàn · What do we do with the leftover meat?

ms zhang 用锡纸包好，放进冰箱冷冻。蔬菜放在保鲜盒里密封好，不然几天就腐烂了。
yòng xīzhǐ bāo hǎo fàng jìn bīngxiāng lěngdòng shūcài fàng zài bǎoxiān hé lǐ mìfēng hǎo bùrán jǐ tiān jiù fǔlàn le · Wrap it in foil and freeze it. Seal the vegetables in an airtight box, or they'll rot in a few days.

little sister 桌子上的易拉罐我拿去扔了。
zhuōzi shàng de yìlāguàn wǒ ná qù rēng le · I'll take the cans on the table to the bin.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

筐 kuāng basket

缸 gāng vat, large jar, tank

钩 gōu hook; to hook

框 kuàng frame

good to know · Chinese has a cooking verb for every method: 炒 stir-fry, 煎 pan-fry, 炸 deep-fry, 蒸 steam, 煮 boil, 炖 stew, 熬 simmer, 烤 roast, 烘 bake, 熏 smoke, 涮 dip-boil. -鬼 names people by a habit, usually teasing: 懒鬼 lazybones, 小气鬼 skinflint, 机灵鬼 clever clogs.

Simmer, steam, pan-fry, peel, soak and stir: you can now follow a Chinese recipe and cook alongside a Chinese mum.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 42 flavours and feasts

Describe how food tastes and feels (fresh, rich, tender, crispy, greasy, fishy), talk about meals from a quick bite to a banquet, and tease a greedy friend with 你看你.

Food is the favourite topic at every Chinese table, and food writing has its own rich vocabulary of taste and texture.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
菜肴	càiyáo	dishes, cuisine (formal)	这家酒楼的菜肴在美食界很有名。 This restaurant's dishes are famous in the food world.
佳肴	jiāyáo	delicacies, fine dishes	桌子上摆满了美味佳肴。 The table was laden with delicious dishes.
盛宴	shèngyàn	grand banquet, feast	今天的晚饭真是一场盛宴。 Tonight's dinner was a real feast.
丰盛	fēngshèng	sumptuous, lavish (meal)	春节的晚饭总是特别丰盛。 The Spring Festival dinner is always a real spread.
便饭	biànfàn	simple meal, potluck	下次来我家吃个便饭吧。 Next time, come round to mine for a simple meal.
伙食	huǒshí	meals, food (at a canteen or school)	我们公司的伙食还不错。 The food at our company canteen isn't bad.
膳食	shànshí	diet, meals (formal)	老人要注意膳食营养。 Older people need to pay attention to a nutritious diet.
夜宵	yèxiāo	late-night snack	加班到很晚，我常常一个人吃夜宵。 When I work late, I often have a late-night snack on my own.
野餐	yěcān	picnic	周末我们去公园野餐吧。 Let's go for a picnic in the park at the weekend.
就餐	jiùcān	to dine, have a meal (formal)	本店就餐时间为中午十一|点到晚上九点。 Meals are served from 11 am to 9 pm.
酒楼	jiǔlóu	restaurant (large, traditional)	这家酒楼开了一百多年。 This restaurant has been open for over a hundred years.
卤味	lǔwèi	food braised in soy and spices	这家的卤味是老配方做的。 Their braised dishes are made to an old recipe.
麻辣	málà	numbing and spicy	我最爱吃麻辣火锅。 Numbing-spicy hot pot is my favourite.
鲜美	xiānměi	delicious, savoury (fresh taste)	这条鱼的味道特别鲜美。 This fish tastes wonderfully fresh.
醇厚	chúnhòu	rich, mellow (taste)	这碗汤的味道很醇厚。 This soup has a rich, mellow flavour.

浓郁	nóngyù	strong, rich (smell, atmosphere)	厨房里飘着浓郁的香味。 A rich smell is drifting from the kitchen.
滋味	zīwèi	taste, flavour; how it feels	离开家的滋味真不好受。 Being away from home is a horrible feeling.
风味	fēngwèi	local flavour, special taste	这家店的菜很有家乡风味。 This restaurant's food really tastes of home.
正宗	zhèngzōng	authentic, genuine	这是正宗的北京烤肉。 This is authentic Beijing barbecue.
油腻	yóunì	greasy, oily	这道菜太油腻了，我不太喜欢。 This dish is too greasy for me.
腥	xīng	fishy (smell, taste)	鱼很新鲜，一点儿也不腥。 The fish is really fresh: it doesn't smell fishy at all.
嫩	nèn	tender; delicate, young	这块牛肉很嫩。 This beef is very tender.
酥	sū	crispy, flaky; limp (limbs)	这种饼又香又酥。 This pastry is fragrant and flaky.
热腾腾	rèténgténg	steaming hot	冬天喝一碗热腾腾的汤，真舒服。 A steaming bowl of soup in winter: wonderful.
素食	sùshí	vegetarian food	她最近开始吃素食。 She's started eating vegetarian recently.
素	sù	vegetarian; plain	我不吃肉，我吃素。 I don't eat meat: I'm vegetarian.
荤	hūn	meat or fish (dishes)	这家店荤的素的都有。 This place has meat dishes and vegetarian ones.
分量	fènliàng	portion, amount; weight (importance)	这家饭馆的菜分量很足。 The portions at this restaurant are generous.
馋	chán	greedy (for food); to crave	一闻到香味，我就馋了。 One whiff and I'm dying for some.
贪吃	tānchī	greedy, gluttonous	你又贪吃了，小心肚子疼。 You've been greedy again: watch out for a stomach ache.
嚼	jiáo	to chew	牛肉太老了，嚼不动。 The beef is too tough to chew.
咀嚼	jǔjué	to chew; to mull over	吃饭的时候要慢慢咀嚼。 Chew slowly when you eat.
啃	kěn	to gnaw, nibble	他坐在门口啃骨头。 He sat at the door gnawing on a bone.
咽	yàn	to swallow	他急着把饭咽了下去。 He gulped his food down.
蘸	zhàn	to dip (in sauce)	饺子蘸点醋更好吃。 Dumplings taste better dipped in a little vinegar.
界	jiè	(suffix) world, circles, field	他在美食界大名鼎鼎。 He's a big name in the food world.

pattern talking food: 什么a的b的 and 你看你

什么 | taste A | 的 | taste B | 的 | ……

Taste words love 什么A的B的: 什么麻辣的、油腻的 “spicy stuff, greasy stuff”. With 都 it means “he likes it all”, with 一概不 “he won’t touch any of it”. And when a friend eats too fast or too much, 你看你 is the gentle “look at you!”.

桌子上什么卤味的、热菜的，摆得满满的。 **zhuōzi shàng shénme lǔwèi de rè cài de bǎi de mǎn mǎn de** The table is covered with braised meats, hot dishes, everything.

你看你，又贪吃了吧？ **nǐ kàn nǐ yòu tānchī le ba** Look at you: been greedy again, have you?

她什么腥的、油腻的，都不爱吃。 **tā shénme xīng de yóunì de dōu bú ài chī** She doesn’t like anything fishy or greasy.

dialogue a table for the food column

editor lin 安娜，我在写一篇文章，讲北京的老酒楼。你们陪我来尝尝吧。
Ānnà wǒ zài xiě yì piān wénzhāng jiǎng Běijīng de lǎo jiǔlóu nǐmen péi wǒ lái cháng chang ba · Anna, I'm writing a piece on Beijing's old restaurants. Come and taste with me.

anna 太好了！一闻到这个香味，我就馋了。
tài hǎo le yì wén dào zhège xiāng wèi wǒ jiù chán le · Great! One whiff of that smell and I'm starving.

editor lin 这家酒楼开了一百多年，客人络绎不绝，它的菜肴在美食界大名鼎鼎。
zhè jiā jiǔlóu kāi le yìbǎi duō nián kèrén luòyì bùjué tā de càiyáo zài měishí jiè dàmíng dǐngdǐng · This restaurant has been open for over a hundred years, with a constant stream of customers, and its dishes are famous in the food world.

xiaoming 菜单上什么卤味的、麻辣的、素的，要什么有什么。
càidān shàng shénme lǔwèi de málà de sù de yào shénme yǒu shénme · The menu has braised meats, spicy dishes, vegetarian dishes, anything you like.

editor lin 先来一份卤味。他们的卤味是老配方做的，用了十几种香料，滋味很醇厚。
xiān lái yí fèn lǔwèi tāmen de lǔwèi shì lǎo pèifāng zuò de yòng le shí jǐ zhǒng xiāngliào zīwèi hěn chúnhòu · Let's start with the braised meats. They're made to an old recipe with a dozen or more spices, and have a rich, mellow flavour.

anna 这个麻辣牛肉香味浓郁，可是太辣了！
zhège málà niú ròu xiāng wèi nóngyù kěshì tài là le · This spicy beef smells amazing, but it's so hot!

editor lin 正宗的风味就是这样，又香又辣。
zhèngzōng de fēngwèi jiùshì zhèyàng yòu xiāng yòu là · That's the authentic taste: fragrant and fiery.

xiaoming 这条鱼特别鲜美，一点儿也不腥，是蒸的吧？肉也很嫩。
zhè tiáo yú tèbié xiānměi yìdiǎnr yě bù xīng shì zhēng de ba ròu yě hěn nèn · This fish tastes wonderfully fresh: not fishy at all. Is it steamed? And so tender.

anna 这个饼又香又酥。不过那个红烧肉有点儿油腻，美中不足。
zhège bǐng yòu xiāng yòu sū búguò nàge hóng shāo ròu yǒudiǎnr yóunì měizhōng bùzú · This pastry is fragrant and flaky. That braised pork is a bit greasy, though: the one flaw.

editor lin 尝尝这碗热腾腾的汤。
cháng chang zhè wǎn rètēngtēng de tāng · Try this steaming bowl of soup.

anna 哎呀，太烫了！我急着往下咽，烫到舌头了。
āiyā tài tàng le wǒ jí zhe wǎng xià yàn tàng dào shétou le · Ouch, it's so hot! I gulped it down and burnt my tongue.

xiaoming 你看你，慢慢喝。吃饭也一样，好好嚼一嚼再咽。
nǐ kàn nǐ màn màn hē chī fàn yě yíyàng hǎohǎo jiáo yi jiao zài yàn · Look at you: slow down. Same with food: chew properly before you swallow.

editor lin 慢慢咀嚼，才能吃出真正的滋味。
màn màn jǔjué cáinéng chī chū zhēnzhèng de zīwèi · Only by chewing slowly can you taste the real flavour.

xiaoming 我最爱啃骨头，越啃越香。
wǒ zuì ài kěn gǔtou yuè kěn yuè xiāng · I love gnawing on bones: the more you gnaw, the better it tastes.

anna 饺子来了！蘸什么？
jiǎozi lái le zhàn shénme · Here come the dumplings! What do I dip them in?

editor lin 蘸醋。这家的菜分量真足，三个人点了六个菜，太多了。
zhàn cù zhè jiā de cài fènliàng zhēn zú sān gè rén diǎn le liù gè cài tài duō le · Vinegar. The portions here are huge: three of us ordered six dishes, that's far too much.

anna 小明，你又在贪吃了。
Xiǎomíng nǐ yòu zài tānchī le · Xiaoming, you're being greedy again.

xiaoming 我们公司的伙食太一般了，菜里味精还放得特别多，难得吃顿好的。
wǒmen gōngsī de huǒshí tài yìbān le cài lǐ wèijīng hái fàng de tèbié duō nándé chī dùn hǎo de · The canteen food at work is so ordinary, and they put loads of MSG in it: I don't often get a good meal.

editor lin 现在很多公司都开始重视员工的膳食营养了。
xiànzài hěn duō gōngsī dōu kāishǐ zhòngshì yuángōng de shànshí yíngyǎng le · A lot of companies are starting to take their staff's diet seriously now.

anna 我最近常吃素食。这家店荤的素的都有，太好了。
wǒ zuìjìn cháng chī sùshí zhè jiā diàn hūn de sù de dōu yǒu tài hǎo le · I've been eating a lot of vegetarian food lately. This place has both meat and vegetarian dishes: perfect.

editor lin 我平时加班到很晚，常常一个人吃夜宵。今天能跟你们一起就餐，真开心。
wǒ píngshí jiābān dào hěn wǎn chángcháng yí gè rén chī yèxiāo jīntiān néng gēn nǐmen yìqǐ jiùcān zhēn kāixīn · I usually work late and often have a late-night snack on my own. It's lovely to eat with you both today.

xiaoming 一桌子的佳肴，今天真是一场盛宴！
yì zhuōzi de jiāyáo jīntiān zhēn shì yì chǎng shèngyàn · A table full of delicacies: tonight is a real feast!

anna 这么丰盛！天气好的时候，我们去公园野餐吧。
zhème fēngshèng tiānqì hǎo de shíhou wǒmen qù gōngyuán yěcān ba · Such a spread! When the weather's good, let's have a picnic in the park.

editor lin 好啊。下次你们来我家，我炖一锅肉，请你们吃个便饭。
hǎo a xià cì nǐmen lái wǒ jiā wǒ dùn yì guō ròu qǐng nǐmen chī gè biànfàn · Good idea. And next time, come to mine: I'll stew a pot of meat and we'll have a simple meal.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

罩
zhào
cover, shade; to cover

秤
chèng
scales, steelyard

漆
qī
lacquer, paint; to paint

遮
zhē
to cover, block, hide from view

good to know · 麻 is the tingling numbness of Sichuan pepper (花椒); 辣 is chilli heat. Together, 麻辣 is the signature taste of Sichuan and Chongqing food. -界 names a field and the people in it: 美食界 the food world, 新闻界 the press, 商界 business circles, 科学界 the scientific community.

Fresh, rich, tender, crispy, numbing: you can now taste a meal in Chinese, not just eat it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 43 from the market

Shop for vegetables, seasonings, nuts, dairy and seafood at a Chinese market, and say “it depends on …” with 视……而定.

The morning market is the heart of Chinese food life, and 视……而定 is how notices, menus and careful people say “it depends”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
葱	cōng	spring onion, scallion	面条上撒一点儿葱花。 Sprinkle a little chopped spring onion on the noodles.
姜	jiāng	ginger	炖鱼的时候要放几片姜。 Put a few slices of ginger in when you stew fish.
蒜	suàn	garlic	这道菜要多放点蒜。 This dish needs plenty of garlic.
芝麻	zhīma	sesame	面包上有很多芝麻。 There are lots of sesame seeds on the bread.
香油	xiāngyóu	sesame oil	凉菜里加几滴香油，特别香。 A few drops of sesame oil make a cold dish delicious.
萝卜	luóbo	radish, turnip	冬天的萝卜又甜又脆。 Winter radishes are sweet and crunchy.
南瓜	nánguā	pumpkin	南瓜汤又甜又香。 Pumpkin soup is sweet and fragrant.
红薯	hóngshǔ	sweet potato	冬天在街上买个烤红薯，又香又暖和。 In winter, buying a roast sweet potato in the street keeps you warm and smells wonderful.
蘑菇	mógu	mushroom	我们去山上采蘑菇吧。 Let’s go and pick mushrooms on the hill.
豆子	dòuzi	beans, peas	豆子要先在水里浸泡一个晚上。 Beans need soaking overnight first.
淀粉	diànfěn	starch, cornflour	做汤的时候可以加一点儿淀粉。 You can add a little starch when you make soup.
粉丝	fěnsī	glass noodles; fans (of a star)	白菜炖粉丝是一道北方家常菜。 Cabbage stewed with glass noodles is a northern home-style dish.
谷物	gǔwù	cereals, grains	早饭吃点谷物和牛奶，很健康。 Cereal and milk for breakfast is very healthy.
坚果	jiānguǒ	nut	每天吃一把坚果，对身体好。 A handful of nuts a day is good for you.
核桃	hétao	walnut	核桃富含营养。 Walnuts are very nutritious.
瓜子	guāzǐ	sunflower or melon seeds	春节的时候，家家都准备瓜子和糖。 At the Spring Festival every family puts out seeds and sweets.

莲子	liánzǐ	lotus seed	莲子可以用来煮粥。 Lotus seeds are good in rice porridge.
枣	zǎo	jujube, Chinese date	奶奶喜欢在粥里放几个红枣。 Grandma likes to put a few red dates in her porridge.
柿子	shìzi	persimmon	秋天，树上的柿子红了。 In autumn the persimmons on the trees turn red.
椰子	yēzi	coconut	在海边喝一个新鲜的椰子，真舒服。 Drinking a fresh coconut by the sea is bliss.
蜂蜜	fēngmì	honey	冬天喝蜂蜜水对嗓子好。 Honey water in winter is good for your throat.
奶酪	nǎilào	cheese	这种奶酪是从英国买的。 This cheese was bought in the UK.
乳制品	rǔzhìpǐn	dairy products	牛奶、奶酪这些乳制品要放在冰箱里。 Dairy products like milk and cheese go in the fridge.
火腿	huǒtuǐ	ham	这家店的火腿是云南的。 This shop's ham comes from Yunnan.
罐头	guàntou	tin, can (of food)	罐头吃起来方便，可是不够新鲜。 Tinned food is convenient, but not very fresh.
虾	xiā	shrimp, prawn	虾要挑活的。 Pick live prawns.
螃蟹	pángxiè	crab	秋天是吃螃蟹的季节。 Autumn is crab season.
水产	shuǐchǎn	aquatic products, seafood	这个城市靠海，水产很便宜。 This city is by the sea, so seafood is cheap.
丸子	wánzi	ball (meatball, fishball)	火锅里放一些肉丸子和鱼丸子。 Put some meatballs and fishballs in the hot pot.
馅	xiàn	filling, stuffing	你喜欢什么馅的饺子? What filling do you like in your dumplings?
冰棍儿	bīnggùnr	ice lolly, popsicle	夏天吃个冰棍儿，特别解渴。 An ice lolly in summer really quenches your thirst.
口香糖	kǒuxiāngtáng	chewing gum	吃完饭，他喜欢嚼一块口香糖。 After a meal he likes to chew a piece of gum.
解渴	jiěkě	to quench your thirst	西瓜特别解渴。 Watermelon really quenches your thirst.
富含	fùhán	to be rich in	南瓜富含维生素。 Pumpkin is rich in vitamins.
碟	dié	small plate, dish; (measure word)	我们点了一碟花生。 We ordered a dish of peanuts.

pattern 视……而定: depending on ...

what | 视 / 看 | condition | 而定

视……而定 means “is decided according to …”: first the thing, then 视 + what it depends on + 而定: 价格视大小而定 “the price depends on the size”. 视 is the written word; in everyday Chinese the same frame is said with 看 or 要看: 价格要看大小而定. You will meet 视 in notices and contracts, 看 at the market.

去不去爬山，看天气而定。 **qù bu qù pá shān kàn tiānqì ér dìng** Whether we go climbing depends on the weather.

价格看季节而定。 **jiàgé kàn jìjié ér dìng** The price depends on the season.

每天吃多少，看个人情况而定。 **měi tiān chī duōshao kàn gèrén qíngkuàng ér dìng** How much to eat each day depends on the person.

dialogue the morning market

dr li 安娜，明天你请客，我陪你来买菜。打算做几个菜？
Ānnà míngtiān nǐ qǐngkè wǒ péi nǐ lái mǎi cài dǎsuàn zuò jǐ gè cài · Anna, you're having people round tomorrow, so I'll help you shop. How many dishes are you making?

anna 还没想好，看来多少人而定吧。大概八个人。
hái méi xiǎng hǎo kàn lái duōshao rén ér dìng ba dàgài bā gè rén · I haven't decided: it depends how many people come. About eight, probably.

dr li 先买葱、姜、蒜，这是做中国菜必不可少的。
xiān mǎi cōng jiāng suàn zhè shì zuò Zhōngguó cài bìbùkěshǎo de · First, spring onions, ginger and garlic: you can't cook Chinese food without them.

xiaoming 爸爸，这个是姜还是蒜？
bàba zhège shì jiāng háishi suàn · Dad, is this ginger or garlic?

dr li 你说你一个大男人，连姜和蒜都分不清！
nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè dà nánrén lián jiāng hé suàn dōu fēn bù qīng · Honestly, a grown man who can't tell ginger from garlic!

anna 我想包饺子，什么馅好呢？
wǒ xiǎng bāo jiǎozi shénme xiàn hǎo ne · I want to make dumplings: what filling would be good?

dr li 萝卜肉的、蘑菇的都好吃。馅里加一点儿香油和芝麻，更香。
luóbo ròu de mógu de dōu hǎochī xiàn lǐ jiā yìdiǎnr xiāngyóu hé zhīma gèng xiāng · Radish and pork, or mushroom: both are delicious. A little sesame oil and some sesame seeds in the filling make it even better.

anna 我有两个朋友吃素，蘑菇馅的正好。再做一个汤吧，让这顿饭丰盛一点。
wǒ yǒu liǎng gè péngyou chī sù mógu xiàn de zhènghǎo zài zuò yí gè tāng ba ràng zhè dùn fàn fēngshèng yìdiǎn · Two of my friends are vegetarian, so mushroom is perfect. And a soup, too, to make it a proper spread.

dr li 南瓜汤不错，南瓜富含维生素。豆子、淀粉、粉丝这边都有。
nánguā tāng búcuò nánguā fùhán wéishēngsù dòuzi diànfěn fěnsī zhèbiān dōu yǒu · Pumpkin soup is good: pumpkin is rich in vitamins. There are beans, starch and glass noodles over here as well.

xiaoming 我要买几个红薯，冬天烤红薯最好吃了，一想就馋了。
wǒ yào mǎi jǐ gè hóngshǔ dōngtiān kǎo hóngshǔ zuì hǎochī le yì xiǎng jiù chán le · I want some sweet potatoes: roast sweet potato is the best thing in winter. Just thinking about it makes my mouth water.

anna 早饭我想买一些谷物、牛奶和奶酪。
zǎofàn wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìxiē gǔwù niúnǎi hé nǎilào · For breakfast I want some cereal, milk and cheese.

dr li 牛奶、奶酪这些乳制品记得放冰箱保鲜。
niúnǎi nǎilào zhèxiē rǔzhìpǐn jìde fàng bīngxiāng bǎoxiān · Remember to keep dairy things like milk and cheese fresh in the fridge.

xiaoming 那边卖坚果：核桃、瓜子、莲子，还有红枣。
nàbiān mài jiānguǒ hétao guāzǐ liánzǐ hái yǒu hóng zǎo · They sell nuts over there: walnuts, sunflower seeds, lotus seeds, and red dates.

dr li 核桃对大脑好，我每天吃几个。莲子和枣可以煮粥，也可以浸泡一夜再炖汤。柿子也熟了，可是一次别吃太多。再买一瓶蜂蜜，冬天喝蜂蜜水对嗓子好。
hétao duì dànǎo hǎo wǒ měi tiān chī jǐ gè liánzǐ hé zǎo kěyǐ zhǔ zhōu yě kěyǐ jìnpào yí yè zài dùn tāng shìzi yě shú le kěshì yí cì bié chī tài duō zài mǎi yì píng fēngmì dōngtiān hē fēngmì shuǐ duì sǎngzi hǎo · Walnuts are good for the brain: I eat a few every day. Lotus seeds and dates are good in porridge, or you can soak them overnight and make soup. The persimmons are ripe too, but don't eat too many at once. And get a jar of honey: honey water in winter is good for your throat.

xiaoming 我想买个椰子，椰子水特别解渴。
wǒ xiǎng mǎi gè yēzi yēzi shuǐ tèbié jiěkě · I want to buy a coconut: coconut water really quenches your thirst.

dr li 你看你，跟孩子一样，这么贪吃。火腿和罐头要不要？
nǐ kàn nǐ gēn háizi yíyàng zhème tānchī huǒtuǐ hé guàntou yào búyào · Look at you, just like a child, so greedy. Ham and tins, do you want any?

anna 罐头不太新鲜，买一点儿火腿就好。水产在哪儿？我想买虾和螃蟹。
guàntou bú tài xīnxiān mǎi yìdiǎnr huǒtuǐ jiù hǎo shuǐchǎn zài nǎr wǒ xiǎng mǎi xiā hé pángxiè · Tins aren't very fresh: a little ham will do. Where's the seafood? I want prawns and crab.

dr li 往前走。虾要挑活的，鱼可以让老板帮你宰好。螃蟹现在正是季节，价格看大小而定。
wǎng qián zǒu xiā yào tiāo huó de yú kěyǐ ràng lǎobǎn bāng nǐ zǎi hǎo pángxiè xiànzài zhèng shì jìjié jiàgé kàn dàxiǎo ér dìng · Straight ahead. Pick live prawns, and you can get the fishmonger to kill and clean the fish for you. It's crab season now: the price depends on the size.

xiaoming 再买一些肉丸子和鱼丸子，下次涮火锅用。
zài mǎi yìxiē ròu wánzi hé yú wánzi xià cì shuàn huǒguō yòng · Let's get some meatballs and fishballs too, for the next hot pot.

anna 我还得买几个小碟，装作料用。
wǒ hái děi mǎi jǐ gè xiǎo dié zhuāng zuòliao yòng · I still need to buy some little dishes for the dipping sauces.

dr li 该买的就买，不该买的就别买，别浪费。
gāi mǎi de jiù mǎi bù gāi mǎi de jiù bié mǎi bié làngfèi · Buy what you need, and leave what you don't: no waste.

xiaoming 门口有卖口香糖的，我去买一盒。
ménkǒu yǒu mài kǒuxiāngtáng de wǒ qù mǎi yì hé · They sell chewing gum by the entrance: I'll go and get a pack.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

捂
wǔ
to cover (with your hand)

兜
dōu
pocket; to wrap up; to go round

梳
shū
to comb; to sort out

剃
tì
to shave

good to know · At a Chinese market, ask 怎么卖？ "how is it sold?": prices are often per 斤 (half a kilo). 视……而定 is formal, for notices and contracts (费用视情况而定). In speech people say 看情况 or 要看……而定.

Spring onion, ginger, garlic and a good haggle: you are ready for any Chinese market.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 44 rough, smooth and clean

Describe textures, surfaces and damage (rough, smooth, sticky, cracked, rusty) and how clean or murky things are, and compare in written style with A + adjective + 于/过 + B.

Reports, product labels and science writing compare with 高于, 好于 and 强过, and describe materials with exactly these words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
粗糙	cūcāo	rough, coarse; crude (work)	爷爷的手很粗糙，可是很有力。 Grandpa's hands are rough, but strong.
光滑	guānghuá	smooth, glossy	这块石头摸起来很光滑。 This stone feels smooth.
细腻	xìnì	fine, smooth; delicate (feelings)	这种茶的味道很细腻。 This tea has a delicate flavour.
黏	nián	sticky	米饭煮得太黏了。 The rice is cooked too sticky.
润	rùn	moist, smooth; to moisten	喝了点蜂蜜水，嗓子润多了。 After some honey water my throat feels much better.
滋润	zīrùn	moist; to moisturise, nourish	秋天天气干{gan1}，要多喝水滋润皮肤。 Autumn air is dry: drink plenty of water to keep your skin moist.
质地	zhìdì	texture, quality (of a material)	这块布的质地很好。 This cloth is good quality.
颗粒	kēlì	grain, particle	水里有很多看不见的小颗粒。 There are lots of tiny particles in the water you can't see.
粉末	fěnmò	powder	这种药是粉末，要用水冲开再喝。 This medicine is a powder: mix it with water before you drink it.
泡沫	pàomò	foam, froth, bubbles; a bubble (economy)	河边有很多白色的泡沫。 There's a lot of white foam along the river.
气泡	qìpào	bubble (of air or gas)	水快开的时候会冒出很多气泡。 When water is about to boil, lots of bubbles come up.
渣	zhā	dregs, residue; crumbs	把茶叶渣倒掉，再沏一壶。 Tip out the tea leaves and make another pot.
锈	xiù	rust; to rust	桥上的栏杆都生锈了。 The railings on the bridge have all rusted.
皱	zhòu	wrinkle, crease; to frown	衣服都皱了，回去熨一熨。 Your clothes are all creased: give them an iron when you get back.

裂缝	lièfèng	crack, rift	墙上有一道裂缝，得{dei3}赶快修补。 There's a crack in the wall: it needs patching soon.
缺口	quēkǒu	gap, breach; shortfall	碗边上有个缺口。 There's a chip in the rim of the bowl.
窟窿	kūlong	hole (big, gaping)	窗户纸上破了一个窟窿。 There's a hole torn in the paper window.
孔	kǒng	hole, opening (small); pore	盆底有个小孔，水可以流出去。 There's a little hole in the bottom of the pot so the water can drain.
口子	kǒuzi	cut, slit, tear	我的袖子上划了一道口子。 I've torn my sleeve.
空洞	kōngdòng	hollow; empty (of content)	这篇文章写得很空洞，没有内容。 This article is empty: there's nothing in it.
空白	kòngbái	blank (space); gap	我脑子里一片空白。 My mind went completely blank.
空荡荡	kōngdàngdàng	empty, deserted	年轻人都去城里了，村子里空荡荡的。 The young people have all gone to the city, and the village is deserted.
虚	xū	weak (health); empty; false	爬了一天山，我觉得身体有点儿虚。 After a day's climbing I feel a bit drained.
稠	chóu	thick (liquid); dense	这碗粥又稠又香。 This porridge is thick and smells wonderful.
稠密	chóumì	dense (population, trees)	这里人口稠密，交通很拥挤。 This area is densely populated and the traffic is heavy.
浓重	nóngzhòng	thick, heavy (fog, smell, accent)	早上山里的雾很浓重。 In the morning there's a heavy fog in the mountains.
混浊	hùnzhuó	muddy, murky	下过大雨以后，河水变得很混浊。 After the heavy rain the river turned muddy.
清澈	qīngchè	clear, limpid (water)	这条小河的水特别清澈。 The water in this little river is crystal clear.
清新	qīngxīn	fresh (air); refreshing (style)	雨后的空气真清新。 The air is so fresh after the rain.
清凉	qīngliáng	cool, refreshing	山里的夏天很清凉。 Summer in the mountains is lovely and cool.
洁净	jiéjìng	clean, spotless	医院的房间都很洁净。 The hospital rooms are all spotless.
整洁	zhěngjié	clean and tidy	村子虽然小，可是很整洁。 The village is small, but clean and tidy.
污秽	wūhuì	filthy, dirty (formal)	河里的水变得很污秽，鱼都不见了。 The river water has become filthy, and the fish have gone.
坚实	jiānshí	solid, sturdy	这座老桥还很坚实。 This old bridge is still sturdy.
牢固	láogù	firm, secure	梯子放得很牢固，你放心上去吧。 The ladder is firmly in place: you can go

up safely.

pattern a + adjective + 于/过 + b: written comparisons

A | adjective | 于 / 过 | B

In written Chinese, 于 after an adjective means “than”: 高于 higher than, 好于 better than, 多于 more than, 低于 lower than. 过 does the same in a livelier, spoken way: 强过 stronger than, 好过 better than. So A比B高 becomes A高于B in a report.

山里的空气质量好于城市。 **shān lǐ de kōngqì zhìliàng hǎo yú chéngshì** The air in the mountains is better than in the city.

这里的人口密度高于周围的地区。 **zhèlǐ de rénkǒu mìdù gāoyú zhōuwéi de dìqū** The population density here is higher than in the surrounding area.

我觉得老办法强过新办法。 **wǒ juéde lǎo bànfǎ qiáng guò xīn bànfǎ** I think the old way is better than the new one.

dialogue water from the hills

dr zhou 今天我带你们去山里取一些水，带回实验室检查一下。
jīntiān wǒ dài nǐmen qù shān lǐ qǔ yìxiē shuǐ dài huí shíyànshì jiǎnchá yíxià · Today I'm taking you into the hills to collect some water to check in the lab.

anna 这条小河的水真清澈，能看见下面的石头。
zhè tiáo xiǎo hé de shuǐ zhēn qīngchè néng kànjiàn xiàmiàn de shítou · The water in this little river is so clear: you can see the stones on the bottom.

dr zhou 山里的水一般好于城里。你看，城边那条河的水就很混浊。
shān lǐ de shuǐ yìbān hǎo yú chéng lǐ nǐ kàn chéng biān nà tiáo hé de shuǐ jiù hěn hùnzhuó · Water in the mountains is usually better than in the city. Look how murky the river on the edge of town is.

xiaoming 还别说，这里的空气也特别清新，夏天还很清凉。
háibiéshuō zhèlǐ de kōngqì yě tèbié qīngxīn xiàtiān hái hěn qīngliáng · You know what, the air here is really fresh too, and it's lovely and cool in summer.

dr zhou 我们回去看看水里有没有小颗粒和粉末。有的东西眼睛看不见，就得靠仪器。
wǒmen huíqù kàn kan shuǐ lǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎo kēlì hé fěnmò yǒude dōngxi yǎnjing kàn bu jiàn jiù děi kào yíqì · Back at the lab we'll see whether there are tiny particles or powder in the water. Some things you can't see with your eyes: you need instruments.

anna 那边河上怎么有那么多白色的泡沫?
nàbiān hé shàng zěnme yǒu nàme duō báisè de pàomò · Why is there so much white foam on that river over there?

dr zhou 可能是有人往河里倒了洗衣服的水。泡沫和气泡多，说明水不洁净。
kěnéng shì yǒu rén wǎng hé lǐ dào le xǐ yīfu de shuǐ pàomò hé qìpào duō shuōmíng shuǐ bù jiéjìng · Someone may have poured washing water into it. Lots of foam and bubbles means the water isn't clean.

xiaoming 我小时候来过这儿，那时候河水很干净，现在却有点儿污秽了，真让人痛心。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou lái guo zhèr nà shíhou hé shuǐ hěn gānjìng xiànzài què yǒudiǎnr wūhuì le zhēn ràng rén tòngxīn · I came here as a child, and the river was clean then; now it's a bit filthy. It's painful to see.

anna 这个村子怎么空荡荡的?
zhège cūn zi zěnme kōngdàngdàng de · Why is this village so empty?

dr zhou 年轻人都去城里工作了。以前这里人口稠密，人口密度高于周围的村子，现在住的大多是老人，看起来有点儿凄凉。
niánqīng rén dōu qù chéng lǐ gōngzuò le yǐqián zhèlǐ rénkǒu chóumì rénkǒu mìdù gāoyú zhōuwéi de cūn zi xiànzài zhù de dàduō shì lǎorén kàn qǐlai yǒudiǎnr qīliáng · The young people have gone to work in the city. It used to be densely populated, denser than the villages around it; now most of the people here are old, and it looks a bit forlorn.

xiaoming 那座老房子的墙上有一道裂缝，围墙也有个缺口，窗户纸上还破了一个大窟窿。
nà zuò lǎo fángzi de qiáng shàng yǒu yídào lièfèng wéiqiáng yě yǒu gè quēkǒu chuānghu zhǐ shàng hái pò le yí gè dà kūlong · That old house has a crack in its wall, a gap in the courtyard wall, and a big hole torn in the paper window.

dr zhou 那座老桥倒是很牢固，几百年了，还那么坚实。
nà zuò lǎo qiáo dàoshì hěn láogù jǐ bǎi nián le hái nàme jiānshí · That old bridge is still firm, though: hundreds of years old and still so solid.

anna 桥上的栏杆都生锈了。桥头的石头摸起来很光滑，桥面却很粗糙。
qiáo shàng de lángān dōu shēng xiù le qiáo tóu de shítou mō qǐlai hěn guānghuá qiáo miàn què hěn cūcāo · The railings on the bridge have all rusted. The stone at the end feels smooth, but the surface of the bridge is rough.

dr zhou 走了几百年，石头都变得光滑了。来，喝杯茶。这里的山水泡茶最好，你们尝尝，味道是不是很细腻?
zǒu le jǐ bǎi nián shítou dōu biàn de guānghuá le lái hē bēi chá zhèlǐ de shān shuǐ pào chá zuìhǎo nǐmen cháng chang wèidào shì bu shì hěn xìnì · Hundreds of years of feet have worn it smooth. Come, have some tea. Mountain water makes the best tea: taste it, isn't it delicate?

anna 嗯，喝下去嗓子很润。秋天干，多喝点茶也滋润。
ǹg hē xiaqu sǎngzi hěn rùn qiūtiān gān duō hē diǎn chá yě zīrùn · Mm, it's soothing on the throat. Autumn is dry, so drinking more tea keeps you moist too.

xiaoming 茶叶渣倒在哪儿?
cháyè zhā dào zài nǎr · Where do I throw the tea leaves?

dr zhou 倒在门口的花盆里，盆底有个小孔，水能流出去。
dào zài ménkǒu de huā pén lǐ pén dǐ yǒu gè xiǎo kǒng shuǐ néng liú chuqu · In the flowerpot by the door: there's a little hole in the bottom so the water drains away.

xiaoming 村里的粥又稠又香，里面还放了南瓜和枣。米饭有点儿黏，不过很好吃。
cūn lǐ de zhōu yòu chóu yòu xiāng lǐmiàn hái fàng le nánguā hé zǎo mǐfàn yǒudiǎnr nián búguò hěn hǎochī · The porridge in the village is thick and smells great, with pumpkin and dates in it. The rice is a bit sticky, but delicious.

dr zhou 这才是正宗的风味，城里吃不到。
zhè cái shì zhèngzōng de fēngwèi chéng lǐ chī bu dào · That's the real taste: you can't get it in the city.

anna 我爬了一天山，身体有点儿虚。袖子还划了一道口子，衣服也皱了。
wǒ pá le yì tiān shān shēntǐ yǒudiǎnr xū xiùzi hái huá le yídào kǒuzi yīfu yě zhòu le · I've been climbing all day and I feel drained. I've torn my sleeve, and my clothes are all creased.

xiaoming 你看你。我买了一块这里的布，质地很好，送你做件新衣服。
nǐ kàn nǐ wǒ mǎi le yí kuài zhèlǐ de bù zhìdì hěn hǎo sòng nǐ zuò jiàn xīn yīfu · Look at you. I've bought a piece of local cloth: it's good quality. You can have it for a new shirt.

dr zhou 这个村子虽然小，可是很整洁，村里人也很质朴。早上的雾很浓重，太阳一出来就散了。
zhège cūn zi suīrán xiǎo kěshì hěn zhěngjié cūn lǐ rén yě hěn zhìpǔ zǎoshang de wù hěn nóngzhòng tàiyáng yì chūlái jiù sàn le · The village is small, but clean and tidy, and the people are simple and unpretentious. The morning fog is heavy, but it lifts as soon as the sun comes out.

anna 回去以后，您的报告要写得详细一点儿，可别写得空洞。
huíqù yǐhòu nín de bàogào yào xiě de xiángxì yìdiǎnr kě bié xiě de kōngdòng · When we get back, make your report detailed: don't let it be empty words.

dr zhou 放心，要写就写个清楚。不过现在让我写，我脑子里一片空白，太累了!
fàngxīn yào xiě jiù xiě gè qīngchu búguò xiànzài ràng wǒ xiě wǒ nǎozi lǐ yí piàn kòngbái tài lèi le · Don't worry: if I write it, I'll write it properly. But if you asked me now, my mind would go blank: I'm exhausted!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

縫
féng
to sew, stitch

熨
yùn
to iron, press

棚
péng
shed, shelter, awning

烘 hōng to bake, dry, warm by a fire														

good to know · Three words for holes: 孔 a small, neat hole; 窟窿 a big, ragged one; 口子 a cut or tear. In reports and the news, comparisons use 于: 高于 / 低于 / 多于 / 少于 / 大于 / 小于. In speech, 比 is still the everyday word.

Rough, smooth, cracked, crystal clear: you can now describe the world as precisely as a scientist, and compare like a report.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 45 when: time words

Follow and take part in a formal meeting: drafts, spokespeople, public money, and the written time adverbs that say “not yet”, “once”, “at that time”, “at once” and “for now”.

Notices, meeting minutes and the news are built on 尚未, 一经, 届时, 随即 and 暂且. You will read them every day in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
姑且	gūqiě	for the time being, tentatively	这个办法姑且试一试吧。 Let’s give this method a try for now.
即	jí	at once, immediately; namely (written)	会后即开始报名。 Registration opens immediately after the meeting.
即时	jíshí	immediate, real-time	有问题可以即时在网上反映。 You can report problems online in real time.
届时	jièshí	at that time, when the time comes	下个月开业，届时欢迎大家光临。 We open next month: you are all welcome to come then.
尽早	jǐnzǎo	as early as possible	有问题请尽早提出。 Please raise any problems as early as possible.
就此	jiùcǐ	at this point, here and now	今天的会就此结束。 Today’s meeting ends here.
历来	lìlái	always, throughout history	这里的街坊历来都很团结。 The people of this neighbourhood have always stuck together.
尚	shàng	still, yet (written)	这件事尚在讨论之中。 This is still under discussion.
随即	suíjí	immediately afterwards	会议结束后，大家随即开始讨论。 Right after the meeting, everyone started discussing.
向来	xiànglái	always, all along	他向来说话算数。 He has always kept his word.
一经	yījīng	once (something happens)	方案一经通过，就马上施工。 Once the plan is approved, building will begin at once.
暂且	zànqiě	for the time being	这件事我们暂且不谈。 Let’s leave that matter for now.
早日	zǎorì	soon, at an early date	祝你早日康复！ Get well soon!
暂	zàn	temporary; temporarily	饭馆暂定晚上十点关门。 The restaurants are provisionally set to close at ten at night.
尚未	shàngwèi	not yet	美食街的计划尚未确定。 The plan for the food street hasn’t been decided yet.

稍后	shāohòu	shortly, in a moment	具体时间我稍后发给大家。 I'll send everyone the exact times shortly.
及早	jízǎo	as soon as possible, before it's too late	安全问题要及早考虑。 Safety needs thinking about before it's too late.
当即	dāngjí	on the spot, at once	我们当即就去了解了情况。 We went and looked into it on the spot.
议	yì	to discuss; opinion	今天我们议一议美食街的事。 Today let's discuss the food street.
曰	yuē	to say (classical)	我爸爸有一句话，曰：“好吃的，大家一起吃。” My dad has a saying, which goes: “Good food is for sharing.”
算数	suànshù	to count, hold (a promise)	他向来说话算数。 He has always kept his word.
马后炮	mǎhòupào	hindsight, wisdom after the event	出了事再说，那就是马后炮了。 Saying it after something goes wrong is just hindsight.
重申	chóngshēn	to reaffirm, restate	我重申一下我们的意见。 Let me restate our view.
告状	gàozhuàng	to complain (to someone in charge), tell on	有人去街道告状，说饭馆太吵。 Someone complained to the street office that the restaurants were too noisy.
公费	gōngfèi	at public expense	这次培训是公费的。 This training is paid for publicly.
公款	gōngkuǎn	public money, public funds	绝不能用公款请客吃饭。 Public money must never be spent on banquets.
基建	jījiàn	infrastructure, capital construction	这个项目|的基建部分要三个月。 The infrastructure part of the project will take three months.
发言人	fāyánrén	spokesperson	孙律师是我们的发言人。 Lawyer Sun is our spokesperson.
共同体	gòngtóngtǐ	community (of shared interests)	胡同是一个共同体，大家的事大家商量。 The hutong is a community: what concerns everyone is decided together.
草案	cǎoàn	draft (plan, law)	这只是一个草案，还可以修改。 This is only a draft: it can still be changed.
领袖	lǐngxiù	leader (of a group, a field)	张女士是我们街坊里的意见领袖。 Ms Zhang is the one whose opinion counts among the neighbours.
拥护	yōnghù	to support, endorse	我拥护这个计划。 I support this plan.

pattern written time adverbs: not yet, once, then, at once, for now

尚 / 一经 / 届时 / 随即 / 暂且 … **verb**

Written Chinese has its own “when” words, placed before the verb. Not yet: 尚, 尚未. Once: 一经. When the time comes: 届时. At once: 即, 随即, 当即, 即时. As early as possible: 尽早, 及早, 早日 (in wishes). For now: 暂且, 姑且, 暂. Always: 历来, 向来. Here and now: 就此.

这件事尚在讨论之中。 **zhè jiàn shì shàng zài tǎolùn zhīzhōng** This is still under discussion.

这件事我们暂且不谈。 **zhè jiàn shì wǒmen zànqiě bù tán** Let’s leave that matter for now.

这里的街坊历来都很团结。 **zhèlǐ de jiēfang lìlái dōu hěn tuánjié** The people of this neighbourhood have always stuck together.

祝你早日康复！ **zhù nǐ zǎorì kāngfù** Get well soon!

dialogue the residents’ meeting

professor chen 各位街坊，今天我们议一议胡同口美食街的草案。
gèwèi jiēfang jīntiān wǒmen yì yi yi hútòng kǒu měishí jiē de cǎoàn · Neighbours, today let's discuss the draft plan for a food street at the end of the lane.

xiaoming 什么美食街？我从来没听说过。
shénme měishí jiē wǒ cónglái méi tīngshuō guo · What food street? I've never heard of it.

professor chen 街道打算在胡同口开一条美食街。草案尚未确定，今天先听听大家的意见。
jiēdào dǎsuàn zài hútòng kǒu kāi yì tiáo měishí jiē cǎoàn shàngwèi quèdìng jīntiān xiān tīng ting dàjiā de yìjiàn · The street office wants to open a food street at the end of the hutong. The draft isn't final yet: today we'll hear what everyone thinks.

ms zhang 我们街坊历来支持保护胡同。开美食街，会不会太吵？我有点儿疑虑。
wǒmen jiēfang lìlái zhīchí bǎohù hútòng kāi měishí jiē huì bu huì tài chǎo wǒ yǒudiǎnr yílǜ · People here have always supported protecting the hutong. Won't a food street be too noisy? I have my doubts.

lawyer sun 我是大家选的发言人。我重申一下：方案一经通过，就要尽早施工，届时会有一些声音。
wǒ shì dàjiā xuǎn de fāyánrén wǒ chóngshēn yíxià fāngàn yìjīng tōngguò jiù yào jǐnzǎo shīgōng jièshí huì yǒu yìxiē shēngyīn · I'm the spokesperson you chose. Let me restate: once the plan is approved, building will start as soon as possible, and there will be some noise then.

anna 施工要多久？
shīgōng yào duō jiǔ · How long will the building take?

lawyer sun 基建部分大概三个月，具体时间我稍后发给大家。
jījiàn bùfen dàgài sān gè yuè jùtǐ shíjiān wǒ shāohòu fā gěi dàjiā · The infrastructure part about three months: I'll send everyone the exact dates shortly.

xiaoming 钱从哪儿来？会不会有人钻空子，用公款请客吃饭？
qián cóng nǎr lái huì bu huì yǒu rén zuān kòngzi yòng gōngkuǎn qǐngkè chī fàn · Where's the money coming from? Won't someone exploit a loophole and use public money for banquets?

lawyer sun 修路和水管是公费的，可是绝不能用公款吃喝，这一点草案上写得很清楚。
xiū lù hé shuǐ guǎn shì gōngfèi de kěshì juébù néng yòng gōngkuǎn chī hē zhè yìdiǎn cǎoàn shàng xiě de hěn qīngchu · The roads and pipes are paid for publicly, but public money must never be spent on eating and drinking: the draft is very clear about that.

ms zhang 前几天有人去街道告状，说胡同里的饭馆晚上卖夜宵，太吵。
qián jǐ tiān yǒu rén qù jiēdào gàozhuàng shuō hútòng lǐ de fànguǎn wǎnshang mài yèxiāo tài chǎo · A few days ago someone complained to the street office that the restaurants in the hutong sell late-night food and are too noisy.

lawyer sun 我们当即就去了解了情况，饭馆随即改了营业时间。
wǒmen dāngjí jiù qù liǎojiě le qíngkuàng fànguǎn suíjí gǎi le yíngyè shíjiān · We went and looked into it on the spot, and the restaurant changed its opening hours straight away.

anna 我觉得美食街是好事，各地的菜肴都能尝到。我拥护这个计划。
wǒ juéde měishí jiē shì hǎo shì gèdì de càiyáo dōu néng cháng dào wǒ yōnghù zhège jìhuà · I think a food street is a good thing: we'll be able to try dishes from all over. I support the plan.

xiaoming 我也拥护。不过安全问题要及早考虑，别出了事再说，那就是马后炮了。
wǒ yě yōnghù búguò ānquán wèntí yào jízǎo kǎolǜ bié chū le shì zàishuō nà jiùshì mǎhòupào le · Me too. But safety needs thinking about now: saying something after an accident is just hindsight.

professor chen 说得对。胡同是一个共同体，大家的事大家商量，也要多为别人着想。
shuō de duì hútòng shì yí gè gòngtóngtǐ dàjiā de shì dàjiā shāngliang yě yào duō wèi biérén zhuóxiǎng · Quite right. The hutong is a community: what concerns everyone is decided together, and we should all think of others too.

ms zhang 那饭馆几点关门？
nà fànguǎn jǐ diǎn guān mén · And what time will the restaurants close?

lawyer sun 暂定晚上十点。有问题可以即时在网上反映，我们会尽早处理。
zàn dìng wǎnshang shí diǎn yǒu wèntí kěyǐ jíshí zài wǎngshang fǎnyìng wǒmen huì jǐnzǎo chǔlǐ · Ten at night, provisionally. You can report problems online in real time, and we'll deal with them as soon as we can.

anna 美食街前面能不能建一块草坪，再放几张公用的桌子？
měishí jiē qiánmiàn néng bu néng jiàn yí kuài cǎopíng zài fàng jǐ zhāng gōngyòng de zhuōzi · Could there be a lawn in front of the food street, with a few shared tables?

professor chen 张女士是我们街坊里的意见领袖，您说说？
Zhāngnǚshì shì wǒmen jiēfang lǐ de yìjiàn lǐngxiù nín shuō shuo · Ms Zhang, people listen to you round here: what do you think?

ms zhang 我只是随便说说罢了。我的意见是：暂且按草案试三个月，不好就改，不能让这件事不了了之。
wǒ zhǐshì suíbiàn shuō shuo bàle wǒ de yìjiàn shì zànqiě àn cǎoàn shì sān gè yuè bù hǎo jiù gǎi bù néng ràng zhè jiàn shì bùliǎo liǎozhī · I'm only giving my view, that's all. My suggestion: try the draft for three months for now, change it if it doesn't work, and not let the matter just fizzle out.

professor chen 好，那我们姑且这么定。大家说话要算数。想在美食街开店的街坊，会后即可来找我报名。
hǎo nà wǒmen gūqiě zhème dìng dàjiā shuōhuà yào suànshù xiǎng zài měishí jiē kāi diàn de jiēfang huì hòu jí kě lái zhǎo wǒ bàomíng · Good, so let's agree on that for now. And let's all keep our word. Neighbours who want a stall on the food street can sign up with me straight after the meeting.

xiaoming 我爸爸有一句话，曰：“好吃的，大家一起吃。”希望美食街早日开业！
wǒ bàba yǒu yí jù huà yuē hǎochī de dàjiā yìqǐ chī xīwàng měishí jiē zǎorì kāiyè · My dad has a saying, which goes: “Good food is for sharing.” Here's to the food street opening soon!

professor chen 不知不觉，已经九点了。今天的会就此结束，谢谢大家！
bùzhī bùjué yǐjīng jiǔ diǎn le jīntiān de huì jiùcǐ jiéshù xièxie dàjiā · Before we knew it, it's nine o'clock. The meeting ends here: thank you all!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

盗
dào
to steal

掰
bāi
to break off (with your hands)

扳
bān
to pull (a lever), turn; to turn round

揪
jiū
to grab, seize (and hold tight)

good to know · Spoken → written: 还没 → 尚未, 马上 → 随即 / 即, 先 → 暂且, 一直 → 向来 / 历来, 到时候 → 届时. 马后炮 “cannon behind the horse” is a move in Chinese chess; as an idiom it means advice that comes only after the event.

Drafts, spokespeople and 尚未 / 一经 / 届时: you can now sit through a Chinese meeting and know exactly what was decided, and when.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 46 times of day and of life

Tell a life story in time order with written time words (早年, 当晚, 次日一早, 一晃, 迄今), and talk about times of day and of life.

Memoirs, biographies and HSK essays are told in time order. The right time word at the start of each sentence makes your story easy to follow.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
黎明	límíng	dawn, daybreak	黎明的时候，医院里很安静。 At dawn the hospital is very quiet.
一早	yīzǎo	early in the morning	我明天一早就出发。 I'm setting off first thing tomorrow.
黄昏	huánghūn	dusk, twilight	黄昏的时候，我们在河边散步。 At dusk we went for a walk by the river.
当晚	dàngwǎn	that same evening	他下午到了北京，当晚就去看了父母。 He arrived in Beijing in the afternoon and went to see his parents that same evening.
当日	dāngrì	on that day, the same day	当日下午，病人的家人来了。 That afternoon, the patient's family came.
次日	cìrì	the next day	次日一早，病人醒了。 Early the next morning, the patient woke up.
即日	jírì	today; within a few days	即日起，晚上探望时间延长到九点。 From today, evening visiting hours are extended to nine o'clock.
改日	gǎirì	another day, some other time	今天太晚了，我们改日再聊吧。 It's too late today: let's talk another time.
来年	láinián	next year, the coming year	来年春天，我们再来这里。 Next spring we'll come here again.
平日	píngrì	ordinary days, usually	他平日很少说起往事。 He rarely talks about the past.
往常	wǎngcháng	usually, as usual (in the past)	他今天比往常回来得晚。 He came home later than usual today.
往日	wǎngrì	former days, the past	往日的朋友都去哪儿了？ Where have all the friends of the old days gone?
昔日	xīrì	former days (literary)	昔日的小村子，现在成了一座城市。 The little village of the past is now a city.
早年	zǎonián	in your early years, years ago	他早年在山里当医生。 In his early years he was a doctor in the mountains.
往事	wǎngshì	past events, memories	老人们喜欢坐在一起回忆往事。 Old people love sitting together remembering the past.

前夕	qiánxī	eve (of an event)	春节前夕，他常常在医院值班。 On the eve of the Spring Festival, he was often on duty at the hospital.
末日	mòrì	end of the world, doomsday; last day	那天的大雪，像世界末日一样。 The snowstorm that day was like the end of the world.
彻夜	chèyè	all night long	为了照顾病人，他彻夜没睡。 He stayed up all night to look after the patient.
通宵	tōngxiāo	all night, overnight	今天有急诊，我可能要通宵。 There's an emergency today: I may be up all night.
连夜	liányè	that very night, overnight	他连夜赶回了村里。 He hurried back to the village that very night.
昼夜	zhòuyè	day and night	医院昼夜都有人值班。 There are always people on duty at the hospital, day and night.
成天	chéngtiān	all day long	他成天在医院，很少回家。 He's at the hospital all day long and rarely goes home.
成年	chéngnián	all year round	他成年{cheng2nian2-7}在外面工作，很少回家。 He works away all year round and rarely comes home.
毕生	bìshēng	all your life, lifelong	他把毕生的精力都献给了医学。 He devoted his whole life to medicine.
终生	zhōngshēng	all your life, lifelong	当医生是我终生的选择。 Being a doctor is the choice of my life.
永恒	yǒnghéng	eternal, everlasting	对家人的爱是永恒的。 Love for your family is eternal.
永久	yǒngjiǔ	permanent, for ever	那碗面条，会永久留在我心里。 That bowl of noodles will stay in my heart for ever.
刹那	chànà	instant, split second	那一刹那，我觉得当医生值了。 In that instant, I felt being a doctor was worth it.
转眼	zhuǎnyǎn	in the blink of an eye	转眼我也快退休了。 In the blink of an eye, I'm nearly retiring.
一晃	yīhuàng	in a flash (time passes)	一晃三十年过去了。 Thirty years went by in a flash.
眼下	yǎnxià	at present, right now	眼下最重要的是好好休息。 Right now the most important thing is to rest properly.
迄今	qìjīn	so far, to date	迄今为止，他已经做了上万台手术。 To date he has performed over ten thousand operations.
长期以来	chángqīyǐlái	for a long time (up to now)	长期以来，这里一直缺医生。 For a long time there has been a shortage of doctors here.
多年来	duōniánlái	for many years (up to now)	多年来，他每个星期都去看父母。 For many years he has visited his parents every week.
连年	liánnián	year after year	这里连年丰收。 There has been a good harvest here year after year.

pattern telling a story in time order

早年 / 那年 → 当晚 → 次日一早 → 后来 → 一晃 / 转眼 → 迄今 / 眼下

A Chinese story in time order puts a time word at the start of each step: first the background (早年, 那年冬天), then the night and the next morning (当晚, 次日一早), then the years passing (后来, 一晃, 转眼), and finally the present (如今, 眼下, 迄今为止). Each new time word starts a new step, so you rarely need “and then”.

他早年在山里当医生。那年冬天，来了一个病人，他当晚就给病人做了手术。 **tā zǎonián zài shān lǐ dāng yīshēng nà nián dōngtiān lái le yí gè bìngrén tā dàngwǎn jiù gěi bìngrén zuò le shǒushù** In his early years he was a doctor in the mountains. One winter a patient came in, and he operated that same night.

次日一早，病人醒了。后来，病人的家人每年都来看他。 **cìrì yìzǎo bìngrén xǐng le hòulái bìngrén de jiārén měi nián dōu lái kàn tā** Early the next morning, the patient woke up. After that, the patient’s family came to see him every year.

一晃三十年过去了。迄今为止，他已经做了上万台手术。 **yíhuàng sānshí nián guòqù le qìjīn wéizhǐ tā yǐjīng zuò le shàng wàn tái shǒushù** Thirty years went by in a flash. To date, he has performed over ten thousand operations.

dialogue dr li’s night shift

anna 李医生，黄昏了，您还没下班？我给您带了饺子。
Lǐyīshēng huánghūn le nín hái méi xiàbān wǒ gěi nín dài le jiǎozi · Dr Li, it's getting dark and you're still at work? I've brought you some dumplings.

dr li 谢谢！今天有急诊，晚上可能要通宵。
xièxie jīntiān yǒu jízhěn wǎnshang kěnéng yào tōngxiāo · Thank you! There's an emergency today: I may be up all night.

anna 您往常也这么忙吗？
nín wǎngcháng yě zhème máng ma · Are you usually this busy?

dr li 平日还好。年轻的时候才累呢，成天在医院，忙了睡，睡了忙。
píngrì hái hǎo niánqīng de shíhou cái lèi ne chéngtiān zài yīyuàn máng le shuì shuì le máng · Ordinary days are fine. It was tiring when I was young: I was at the hospital all day, work, sleep, work, sleep.

anna 您给我讲讲早年的事吧。
nín gěi wǒ jiǎng jiang zǎonián de shì ba · Tell me about your early years.

dr li 往日的事，说起来很长。早年我大学毕业，去了山里的一个小医院。
wǎngrì de shì shuō qǐlai hěn cháng zǎonián wǒ dàxué bìyè qù le shān lǐ de yí gè xiǎo yīyuàn · The old days take a long time to tell. When I was young, I graduated from university and went to a little hospital in the mountains.

dr li 那年冬天的一个晚上，下着大雪，冰天雪地，像世界末日一样。村里人连夜把一个病人送来，我当晚就给他做了手术，彻夜没睡。
nà nián dōngtiān de yí gè wǎnshang xià zhe dà xuě bīngtiān xuědì xiàng shìjiè mòrì yíyàng cūn lǐ rén liányè bǎ yí gè bìngrén sòng lái wǒ dàngwǎn jiù gěi tā zuò le shǒushù chèyè méi shuì · One winter night it was snowing hard, ice and snow everywhere: it felt like the end of the world. Villagers brought a patient in through the night, I operated on him that same night, and I didn't sleep at all.

dr li 次日一早，天刚黎明，病人醒了。一位护士给我端来一碗热腾腾的面条。那一刹那，我觉得当医生值了。
cìrì yìzǎo tiān gāng límíng bìngrén xǐng le yí wèi hùshi gěi wǒ duān lái yì wǎn rèténgténg de miàntiáo nà yí chànà wǒ juéde dāng yīshēng zhí le · Early the next morning, just at dawn, the patient woke up. A nurse brought me a steaming bowl of noodles. In that instant I felt it was all worth it.

anna 真感人！那个晚上一定很惊心动魄。
zhēn gǎnrén nàge wǎnshang yídìng hěn jīngxīn dòngpò · That's so moving! That night must have been nerve-racking.

dr li 当日下午，病人的家人走了十几里山路来感谢我。他们一定要报答我，可我什么都没有收。那碗面条，会永久留在我心里。
dāngrì xiàwǔ bìngrén de jiārén zǒu le shí jǐ lǐ shān lù lái gǎnxiè wǒ tāmen yídìng yào bàodá wǒ kě wǒ shénme dōu méiyǒu shōu nà wǎn miàntiáo huì yǒngjiǔ liú zài wǒ xīnlǐ · That afternoon, the patient's family walked over ten li along mountain paths to thank me. They were determined to repay me, but I wouldn't take anything. That bowl of noodles will stay in my heart for ever.

anna 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And after that?

dr li 后来我回了北京。一晃三十多年过去了，转眼我也快退休了。
hòulái wǒ huí le Běijīng yíhuàng sānshí duō nián guòqù le zhuǎnyǎn wǒ yě kuài tuìxiū le · Later I came back to Beijing. Thirty-odd years went by in a flash, and in the blink of an eye I'm nearly retiring.

anna 这么多年来，您做了多少台手术？
zhème duō nián lái nín zuò le duōshao tái shǒushù · How many operations have you done in all these years?

dr li 多年来我从没数过。迄今为止，上万台吧。
duō nián lái wǒ cóng méi shù guo qìjīn wéizhǐ shàng wàn tái ba · I've never counted. To date, over ten thousand, I suppose.

anna 您把毕生的精力都献给了医学。
nín bǎ bìshēng de jīnglì dōu xiàn gěi le yīxué · You've given your whole life to medicine.

dr li 当医生是我终生的选择。长期以来，医院昼夜都有人值班，大家都很辛苦。
dāng yīshēng shì wǒ zhōngshēng de xuǎnzé chángqī yǐlái yīyuàn zhòuyè dōu yǒu rén zhíbān dàjiā dōu hěn xīnkǔ · Being a doctor is the choice of my life. For as long as anyone can remember, the hospital has had people on duty day and night: everyone works so hard.

anna 现在条件好多了吧?
xiànzài tiáojiàn hǎoduō le ba · Things must be much better now?

dr li 是啊，医院连年都有新设备。眼下最缺的是年轻医生，要及早培养。
shì a yīyuàn liánnián dōu yǒu xīn shèbèi yǎnxià zuì quē de shì niánqīng yīshēng yào jízǎo péiyǎng · Yes, the hospital gets new equipment year after year. What we lack most right now is young doctors: we need to train them early.

anna 听说您以前成年在医院，春节前夕也常常值班?
tīngshuō nín yǐqián chéngnián zài yīyuàn Chūnjié qiánxī yě chángcháng zhíbān · I hear you used to be at the hospital all year round, often on duty even on the eve of the Spring Festival?

dr li 对。不过来年我就不值春节的班了，我答应过张女士。
duì búguò láinián wǒ jiù bù zhí Chūnjié de bān le wǒ dāying guo Zhāngnǚshì · Yes. But next year I won't work over the Spring Festival: I promised Ms Zhang.

anna 张女士一定很高兴！昔日的病人，现在还跟您联系吗?
Zhāngnǚshì yídìng hěn gāoxìng xīrì de bìngrén xiànzài hái gēn nín liánxì ma · Ms Zhang must be delighted! Do your old patients still keep in touch?

dr li 有几个还联系。老朋友坐在一起，最爱回忆往事。这份深情厚谊是永恒的。
yǒu jǐ gè hái liánxì lǎo péngyou zuò zài yìqǐ zuì ài huíyì wǎngshì zhè fèn shēnqíng hòuyì shì yǒnghéng de · A few do. When old friends get together, they love remembering the past. That kind of deep friendship lasts for ever.

anna 墙上的通知写着：“即日起，晚上探望时间延长到九点。”
qiáng shàng de tōngzhī xiě zhe jírì qǐ wǎnshang tànwàng shíjiān yáncháng dào jiǔ diǎn · The notice on the wall says: “From today, evening visiting hours are extended to nine o'clock.”

dr li 对，这样家人下班也能来。今天太晚了，你回去吧，改日再来聊。明天一早我还要去看病人。
duì zhèyàng jiārén xiàbān yě néng lái jīntiān tài wǎn le nǐ huíqù ba gǎirì zài lái liáo míngtiān yìzǎo wǒ hái yào qù kàn bìngrén · Yes, so families can come after work. It's late now: you go home, and come and chat another day. I have to see my patients first thing tomorrow.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

拽
zhuài
to pull, drag, yank

扯
chě
to pull, tear; to chat

挽
wǎn
to roll up (sleeves); to take (an arm)

拎 līn to carry (by the handle)													

good to know · Past and present time words come in pairs: 当日 that day / 次日 the next day, 往日 / 昔日 the old days, 如今 / 眼下 now. 一晃 and 转眼 both mean time flew: 一晃十年 “ten years flew by”, 转眼又是春天 “suddenly it’s spring again”.

Early years, that night, the next morning, thirty years in a flash: you can now tell a whole life story in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 47 measure words and counts

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 6 · food and cooking

Use the advanced measure words (则, 幢, 缕, 盏, 股, 截, 摊, 码, 宗, 枚 …), units of land and weight, and the numbers of a news report (人次, 过半, 不下, 合计, 累计).

News reports, statistics and good descriptions depend on the right measure word: 一缕炊烟, 一盏灯, 一则新闻, 五十万人次.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
码	mǎ	(measure word for matters); code; yard	这是两码事，别混在一起说。 Those are two different things: don't mix them up.
枚	méi	(measure word for coins, stamps, medals)	他送给我一枚纪念邮票。 He gave me a commemorative stamp.
则	zé	(measure word for news items, notices)	报纸上有一则{ze2-7}关于美食节的新闻。 There's a news item about the food festival in the paper.
幢	zhuàng	(measure word for buildings)	公园旁边有一幢红色的老楼。 Next to the park there's an old red building.
宗	zōng	(measure word for deals, cases)	今天她做成了一宗大生意。 Today she closed a big deal.
截	jié	a section, length; to cut off	这根竹竿断了一截。 A piece has broken off this bamboo pole.
缕	lǚ	wisp, strand (of smoke, hair, light)	远处升起一缕炊烟。 A wisp of cooking smoke rose in the distance.
丸	wán	pill, ball; (measure word for pills)	这种中药一次吃一丸。 Take one pill of this Chinese medicine at a time.
盏	zhǎn	(measure word for lamps)	门口挂着一盏红灯笼。 A red lantern hangs by the door.
桩	zhuāng	(measure word for events, matters); stake	女儿结婚，是我们家的一桩大事。 Our daughter's wedding is a big event for our family.
股	gǔ	(measure word for smells, streams)	厨房里飘来一股香味。 A delicious smell is drifting from the kitchen.
丛	cóng	clump, thicket; (measure word for plants)	摊位后面有一丛竹子。 There's a clump of bamboo behind the stall.
席	xí	seat; (measure word for talks)	他的一席话让大家很感动。 What he said moved everyone.
堂	táng	(measure word for lessons); hall	今天我上了一堂生动的数学课。 Today I had a really lively maths lesson.

胎	tāi	foetus; birth (child number); tyre	她刚生了二胎，是个女儿。 She has just had her second child: a girl.
摊	tān	stall; (measure word for puddles)	地上有一摊水，小心别滑倒{dao3}。 There's a puddle on the floor: careful you don't slip.
磅	bàng	pound (weight)	这个西瓜有十磅，差不多九斤。 This watermelon weighs ten pounds: about nine jin.
亩	mǔ	mu (unit of land, about 667 m²)	这个公园占|地{di4-3}一百亩。 This park covers a hundred mu.
公顷	gōngqǐng	hectare	公园差不多有七公顷。 The park is about seven hectares.
立方	lìfāng	cube; cubic metre (spoken)	二的立方是八。 Two cubed is eight.
立方米	lìfāngmǐ	cubic metre	那口大锅装得下一立方米的水。 That huge pot can hold a cubic metre of water.
人次	réncì	person-times, visits	美食节三天共接待游客五十万人次。 The food festival received 500,000 visits over three days.
百分比	bǎifēnbǐ	percentage	年轻游客的百分比比去年高。 The percentage of young visitors is higher than last year.
半数	bànshù	half (the number)	半数以上的摊位卖小吃。 Over half the stalls sell snacks.
过半	guòbàn	more than half	来参加的人中，过半是年轻人。 More than half of the people who came were young.
不下	bùxià	no less than, at least	来参观的老人也不下十万人次。 There were no fewer than 100,000 visits from older people too.
合计	héjì	to add up to, total	三天合计卖了二十万个饺子。 Altogether, 200,000 dumplings were sold in three days.
累计	lěijì	cumulative; to add up (over time)	今年累计已有一百万人来过这里。 So far this year a total of a million people have been here.
总和	zǒnghé	sum, total	三个数字的总和是多少？ What is the sum of the three numbers?
亿万	yìwàn	hundreds of millions, countless	饺子是亿万中国人都爱吃的食物。 Dumplings are a food loved by hundreds of millions of Chinese people.
双重	shuāngchóng	double, twofold	张女士有双重身份：经理和厨师。 Ms Zhang has two roles: manager and cook.
双向	shuāngxiàng	two-way	这条路是双向的。 This is a two-way road.
一揽子	yīlǎnzi	package (of measures, deals)	明年还有一揽子新计划。 There's a whole package of new plans for next year.
一连串	yīliánchuàn	a series, a string of	记者问了一连串的问题。 The reporter asked a string of questions.

额外	éwài	extra, additional	今年额外加了一个晚上的活动。 This year an extra evening of events was added.

pattern advanced measure words, and 人次

一	则 / 幢 / 缕 / 盏 / 股 / 截 …	thing

Each measure word paints its noun: 一则新闻 a news item, 一幢楼 a building, 一缕炊烟 a wisp of smoke, 一盏灯 a lamp, 一股香味 a waft of smell, 一截绳子 a length of rope, 一摊水 a puddle, 一宗生意 a deal, 一枚邮票 a stamp, 两码事 two different things, 一重重山 range upon range of hills. 人次 counts visits: one person coming twice is 2 人次.

报纸上有一则关于美食节的新闻。 **bàozhǐ shàng yǒu yì zé guānyú měishí jié de xīnwén** There's a news item about the food festival in the paper.

公园旁边有一幢红色的老楼。 **gōngyuán pángbiān yǒu yí zhuàng hóngsè de lǎo lóu** Next to the park there's an old red building.

我们翻过了一重又一重的山。 **wǒmen fān guò le yì chóng yòu yì chóng de shān** We crossed range after range of hills.

这乃是北京最大的一次美食节。 **zhè nǎi shì Běijīng zuì dà de yí cì měishí jié** This is indeed the biggest food festival Beijing has held.

dialogue numbers for the news

editor lin 安娜，我在写一则美食节的新闻，你帮我看看数字对不对。今年美食节占地一百亩，差不多七公顷，一共有三百多个摊位，半数以上卖小吃。

Ānnà wǒ zài xiě yì zé měishí jié de xīnwén nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan shùzì duì bu duì jīnnián měishí jié zhàn dì yìbǎi mǔ chàbuduō qī gōngqǐng yígòng yǒu sānbǎi duō gè tān wèi bànshù yǐshàng mài xiǎochī · Anna, I'm writing a news piece on the food festival: can you check my numbers? This year the festival covers a hundred mu, about seven hectares. There are over three hundred stalls, and more than half sell snacks.

xiaoming 我妈妈的摊就在那幢红楼旁边，后面有一丛竹子。

wǒ māma de tān jiù zài nà zhuàng hóng lóu pángbiān hòumiàn yǒu yì cóng zhúzi · My mum's stall is next to that red building, with a clump of bamboo behind it.

editor lin 三天累计接待游客五十万人次。来参加的人中，过半是年轻人。不过老人也不下十万人次。

sān tiān lěijì jiēdài yóukè wǔshí wàn réncì lái cānjiā de rén zhōng guòbàn shì niánqīng rén búguò lǎorén yě búxià shí wàn réncì · Over the three days it's had 500,000 visits in total. More than half the visitors were young, but older people made no fewer than 100,000 visits too.

anna 年轻游客的百分比是多少？

niánqīng yóukè de bǎifēnbǐ shì duōshao · What percentage of the visitors were young?

editor lin 百分之五十五，比去年高。光是饺子，三天合计就卖了二十万个，最受欢迎的是萝卜馅和蘑菇馅的。

bǎi fēn zhī wǔshíwǔ bǐ qùnián gāo guāng shì jiǎozi sān tiān héjì jiù mài le èrshí wàn gè zuì shòu huānyíng de shì luóbo xiàn hé mógu xiàn de · Fifty-five per cent, higher than last year. Dumplings alone: 200,000 sold over the three days, and the favourites were radish and mushroom fillings.

xiaoming 这些数字的总和，说明北京人有多爱吃！

zhèxiē shùzì de zǒnghé shuōmíng Běijīng rén yǒu duō ài chī · Add it all up and it shows how much Beijing loves eating!

editor lin 饺子是亿万中国人都爱吃的食物嘛。今年还额外加了一个晚上的活动，明年还有一揽子新计划。

jiǎozi shì yìwàn Zhōngguó rén dōu ài chī de shíwù ma jīnnián hái éwài jiā le yí gè wǎnshang de huódòng míngnián hái yǒu yìlǎnzi xīn jìhuà · Dumplings are loved by hundreds of millions of Chinese people. This year they added an extra evening of events, and there's a whole package of new plans for next year.

anna 那口大锅真大！

nà kǒu dà guō zhēn dà · That giant pot is enormous!

editor lin 那口锅装得下一立方米的水，人们都说“一个立方的汤”，是这次美食节的明星。

nà kǒu guō zhuāng de xià yí lìfāngmǐ de shuǐ rénmen dōu shuō yí gè lìfāng de tāng shì zhè cì měishí jié de míngxīng · It holds a cubic metre of water, "a cube of soup" as people say: it's the star of the festival.

ms zhang 你们来得正好！闻到一股香味了吧？饺子刚煎好。打早上开门起，客人川流不息。刚才一位老先生说，吃了我的丸子，比吃一丸药还有用。

nǐmen lái de zhènghǎo wén dào yì gǔ xiāng wèi le ba jiǎozi gāng jiān hǎo dǎ zǎoshang kāi mén qǐ kèrén chuānliú bùxī gāngcái yí wèi lǎo xiānsheng shuō chī le wǒ de wánzi bǐ chī yì wán yào hái yǒuyòng · Perfect timing! Can you smell that? The dumplings have just been fried. Ever since we opened this morning, there's been a steady stream of customers. An old gentleman just said my meatballs did him more good than a pill.

editor lin 张女士有双重身份：平时是经理，周末是厨师。

Zhāngnǚshì yǒu shuāngchóng shēnfèn píngshí shì jīnglǐ zhōumò shì chúshī · Ms Zhang leads a double life: manager in the week, cook at the weekend.

ms zhang 一个是工作，一个是爱好，这是两码事。今天我还做成了一宗大生意：一家饭馆要订我的饺子！

yí gè shì gōngzuò yí gè shì àihào zhè shì liǎng mǎ shì jīntiān wǒ hái zuò chéng le yì zōng dà shēngyi yì jiā fànguǎn yào dìng wǒ de jiǎozi · One is work, one is a hobby: two different things. And today I closed a big deal: a restaurant wants to order my dumplings!

anna 这个西瓜真大，有多重？
zhège xīguā zhēn dà yǒu duō zhòng · This watermelon is huge: how heavy is it?

ms zhang 差不多十磅，就是九斤左右。旁边那个摊的姑娘刚生了二胎，我买来送给她。
chàbuduō shí bàng jiùshì jiǔ jīn zuǒyòu pángbiān nàge tān de gūniang gāng shēng le èr tāi wǒ mǎi lái sòng gěi tā · About ten pounds, roughly nine jin. The young woman at the next stall has just had her second baby: I bought it as a present for her.

editor lin 张女士，我能问您一连串问题吗？我想写进新闻里。
Zhāngnǚshì wǒ néng wèn nín yìliánchuàn wèntí ma wǒ xiǎng xiě jìn xīnwén lǐ · Ms Zhang, can I ask you a string of questions? I'd like to put you in the piece.

ms zhang 问吧。不过交流是双向的，你也得尝尝我的饺子，蘸点醋更好吃。
wèn ba búguò jiāoliú shì shuāngxiàng de nǐ yě děi cháng chang wǒ de jiǎozi zhàn diǎn cù gèng hǎochī · Go ahead. But it's a two-way street: you have to try my dumplings too. They're even better dipped in a little vinegar.

editor lin 哈哈，好！这乃是北京近年来最大的一次美食节，您的饺子一定要写进去。
hā hā hǎo zhè nǎi shì Běijīng jìnnián lái zuì dà de yí cì měishí jié nín de jiǎozi yídìng yào xiě jinqu · Ha ha, deal! This is the biggest food festival Beijing has had in years: your dumplings have to be in it.

ms zhang 我当着大家的面说一句：来年我还来！今天卖完饺子，我的一桩心事也就放下了。
wǒ dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn shuō yí jù láinián wǒ hái lái jīntiān mài wán jiǎozi wǒ de yì zhuāng xīnshì yě jiù fàng xià le · Let me say it in front of everyone: I'll be back next year! Once today's dumplings are sold, that's one thing off my mind.

anna 您的一席话，比我上的一堂中文课还生动。
nín de yì xí huà bǐ wǒ shàng de yì táng Zhōngwén kè hái shēngdòng · What you've just said was livelier than a whole Chinese lesson.

xiaoming 黄昏的时候，摊位上亮起了一盏盏灯，远处还有一缕缕炊烟，真美。妈妈，您送我的那枚纪念邮票，我也带来了。
huánghūn de shíhou tān wèi shàng liàng qǐ le yì zhǎn zhǎn dēng yuǎn chù hái yǒu yì lǚ lǚ chuīyān zhēn měi māma nín sòng wǒ de nà méi jìniàn yóupiào wǒ yě dài lái le · At dusk, lamps are lighting up over the stalls, and wisps of cooking smoke are rising in the distance. So beautiful. Mum, I've brought the commemorative stamp you gave me, too.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

挎 kuà
to carry on your arm or shoulder

扛 káng
to carry on your shoulder

驮 tuó
to carry on your back (animals, bikes)

拄 zhǔ
to lean on (a stick)

good to know · Many measure words come in doubles for “every one, row upon row”: 一盏盏灯 lamp after lamp, 一缕缕炊烟 wisps of smoke, 一幢幢高楼 tower after tower. Chinese land is measured in 亩 (mu): 1 亩 ≈ 667 m², and 15 亩 = 1 公顷 (hectare).

A wisp of smoke, a lamp, a news item, 500,000 visits: your Chinese can now paint a scene and report the numbers.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 48 mission: the hot-pot restaurant

Spend a whole evening at a hot-pot restaurant in Chinese: read the notice, order, cook, taste, tell old stories and write the review.

Everything from this unit at one table: cooking words, tastes and textures, the market, written time words, life stories, measure words and numbers.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the notice on the door

editor lin 人真多，排队的不下五十个！我是来给美食界写一则新闻的。我们先看看门口的通知，安娜，你念一下吧。

rén zhēn duō páiduì de búxià wǔshí gè wǒ shì lái gěi měishí jiè xiě yì zé xīnwén de wǒmen xiān kàn kan ménkǒu de tōngzhī Ānnà nǐ niàn yíxià ba · What a crowd: no fewer than fifty people queuing! I'm here to write a piece for the food world. Let's read the notice on the door first. Anna, read it out, would you?

anna （读）"各位客人：本店是美食街的第一家火锅店，开业时间尚短，一个月来累计接待客人三万人次，谢谢大家！本店占地两亩，可同时接待两百人。

dú gèwèi kèrén běn diàn shì měishí jiē de dì yī jiā huǒguō diàn kāiyè shíjiān shàng duǎn yí gè yuè lái lěijì jiēdài kèrén sān wàn réncì xièxie dàjiā běn diàn zhàn dì liǎng mǔ kě tóngshí jiēdài liǎngbǎi rén · (reading) "Dear guests: We are the first hot-pot restaurant on the food street. We have only just opened, and in our first month we have welcomed 30,000 visits in all: thank you! We cover two mu and can seat two hundred guests at once.

anna 本店的羊肉来自北方大草原，水产连夜从海边运来，蔬菜每天一早从市场买来。锅底用老配方熬了八个小时，辣的程度看客人口味而定。本店不使用味精和添加剂。

běn diàn de yáng ròu láizì běifāng dà cǎoyuán shuǐchǎn liányè cóng hǎi biān yùn lái shūcài měi tiān yìzǎo cóng shìchǎng mǎi lái guō dǐ yòng lǎo pèifāng áo le bā gè xiǎoshí là de chéngdù kàn kèrén kǒuwèi ér dìng běn diàn bù shǐyòng wèijīng hé tiānjiājì · Our lamb comes from the northern grasslands, our seafood is brought overnight from the coast, and our vegetables are bought at the market first thing every morning. Our broth is simmered for eight hours to an old recipe, and how hot it is depends on your taste. We use no MSG and no additives.

anna 二楼尚未开放，届时欢迎光临。座位一经预订，请按时到达。客人多的时候请及早排队，有空位即安排。如需额外的碗、碟，请告诉服务员。"

èr lóu shàngwèi kāifàng jièshí huānyíng guānglín zuòwèi yìjīng yùdìng qǐng ànshí dàodá kèrén duō de shíhou qǐng jízǎo páiduì yǒu kōng wèi jí ānpái rú xū éwài de wǎn dié qǐng gàosu fúwù yuán · The first floor is not yet open: you are welcome then. Once you book a table, please arrive on time. At busy times please queue early: we will seat you as soon as a table is free. If you need extra bowls or dishes, please ask our staff."

xiaoming "看客人口味而定"，写得像合同一样。

kàn kèrén kǒuwèi ér dìng xiě de xiàng hétóng yíyàng · "Depends on your taste": it reads like a contract.

ms zhang 这幢楼以前是一家老酒楼，菜肴很有名。后来关了，楼里空荡荡的，墙上都是裂缝。现在翻新了，栏杆虽然有点儿生锈，可是楼很坚实、牢固。

zhè zhuàng lóu yǐqián shì yì jiā lǎo jiǔlóu càiyáo hěn yǒumíng hòulái guān le lóu lǐ kōngdàngdàng de qiáng shàng dōu shì lièfèng xiànzài fānxīn le lángān suīrán yǒudiǎnr shēng xiù kěshì lóu hěn jiānshí láogù · This building used to be an old restaurant, famous for its food. Then it closed: it stood empty, with cracks all over the walls. Now it's been renovated: the railings are a bit rusty, but the building is solid and sound.

xiaoming 当时大家为美食街的草案议了好久，有人去告状说太吵，现在大家都拥护了。陈教授说话真算数。

dāngshí dàjiā wèi měishí jiē de cǎoàn yì le hǎojiǔ yǒu rén qù gàozhuàng shuō tài chǎo xiànzài dàjiā dōu yōnghù le Chénjiàoshòu shuōhuà zhēn suànshù · Back then everyone argued for ages over the draft plan for the food street, someone complained about the noise, and now everyone supports it. Professor Chen really kept his word.

editor lin 修美食街的钱是公费，基建花了三个月。他们还重申过，绝不能用公款请客。

xiū měishí jiē de qián shì gōngfèi jījiàn huā le sān gè yuè tāmen hái chóngshēn guo juébù néng yòng gōngkuǎn qǐngkè · The food street was built with public money, and the infrastructure took three months. They also made it clear again that public money must never be spent on banquets.

dr zhou 胡同真像一个共同体，大家的事大家办。

hútòng zhēn xiàng yí gè gòngtóngtǐ dàjiā de shì dàjiā bàn · The hutong really is a community: everyone's business is done by everyone.

dr li 主持会议的陈教授呢？还有当时的发言人孙律师？

zhǔchí huìyì de Chénjiàoshòu ne hái yǒu dāngshí de fāyánrén Sūnlǜshī · Where's Professor Chen, who chaired the meeting? And Lawyer Sun, the spokesperson back then?

ms zhang	孙律师今天加班。陈教授暂且来不了，稍后到。 **Sūnlǜshī jīntiān jiābān Chénjiàoshòu zànqiě lái bu liǎo shāohòu dào** · Lawyer Sun is working late today. Professor Chen can't come yet: he'll be along shortly.
xiaoming	有人说，这条街早就该开了。现在才说，那是马后炮。 **yǒu rén shuō zhè tiáo jiē zǎo jiù gāi kāi le xiànzài cái shuō nà shì mǎhòupào** · Some people say this street should have opened long ago. Saying that now is just hindsight.
little sister	我已经馋了！一闻到那股香味，就走不动了。 **wǒ yǐjīng chán le yì wén dào nà gǔ xiāng wèi jiù zǒu bu dòng le** · I'm already starving! One whiff of that smell and I can't take another step.
dr li	你这个小馋鬼。好吃的东西值得等。 **nǐ zhège xiǎo chán guǐ hǎochī de dōngxi zhídé děng** · You little greedy-guts. Good food is worth waiting for.

chapter 2 chapter 2: ordering

editor lin 锅底要什么？麻辣的还是清汤的？
guō dǐ yào shénme málà de háishi qīng tāng de · Which broth? Spicy or clear?

dr zhou 来个一半麻辣、一半清汤的吧。我吃素食，清汤那边我来涮蔬菜。
lái gè yíbàn málà yíbàn qīng tāng de ba wǒ chī sùshí qīng tāng nàbiān wǒ lái shuàn shūcài · Let's have half spicy, half clear. I eat vegetarian, so I'll cook vegetables on the clear side.

ms zhang 他们的清汤是用骨头熬的，周博士您介意吗？
tāmen de qīng tāng shì yòng gǔtou áo de Zhōubóshì nín jièyì ma · Their clear broth is simmered with bones: do you mind, Dr Zhou?

dr zhou 那我就要一锅素的清汤吧，荤的素的分开。
nà wǒ jiù yào yì guō sù de qīng tāng ba hūn de sù de fēnkāi · Then I'll have a pot of vegetarian broth: keep meat and vegetables separate.

xiaoming 肉要羊肉、牛肉，再来一份虾、一份螃蟹，还有肉丸子、鱼丸子和火腿。
ròu yào yáng ròu niú ròu zài lái yí fèn xiā yí fèn pángxiè hái yǒu ròu wánzi yú wánzi hé huǒtuǐ · Meat: lamb, beef, a plate of prawns, a plate of crab, meatballs, fishballs and ham.

little sister 蔬菜要萝卜、蘑菇、南瓜、红薯、豆子，还有粉丝！
shūcài yào luóbo mógu nánguā hóngshǔ dòuzi hái yǒu fěnsī · Vegetables: radish, mushrooms, pumpkin, sweet potato, beans, and glass noodles!

editor lin 先来一盘卤味、一碟酥饼当小吃，再来一盘拌黄瓜。
xiān lái yì pán lǔwèi yì dié sū bǐng dāng xiǎochī zài lái yì pán bàn huángguā · To start, a plate of braised meats and a dish of flaky pastries as snacks, and a plate of dressed cucumber.

anna 这家店的分量足吗？别点太多了。
zhè jiā diàn de fènliàng zú ma bié diǎn tài duō le · Are the portions here big? Let's not order too much.

editor lin 分量很足，菜单上写着一盘一斤。
fènliàng hěn zú càidān shàng xiě zhe yì pán yì jīn · They're generous: the menu says a plate is a jin.

dr li 作料我自己调：葱、姜、蒜，一点儿香油和芝麻。
zuòliao wǒ zìjǐ tiáo cōng jiāng suàn yìdiǎnr xiāngyóu hé zhīma · I'll mix my own dipping sauce: spring onion, ginger, garlic, a little sesame oil and sesame seeds.

anna 芝麻酱要先搅拌一下，再掺一点儿水。
zhīma jiàng yào xiān jiǎobàn yíxià zài chān yìdiǎnr shuǐ · Stir the sesame paste first, then mix in a little water.

ms zhang 再来一壶茶，沏得浓一点儿。饭后吃一些水果，柿子、枣都好。这里的饺子馅也是自己调的，来一盘吧。
zài lái yì hú chá qī de nóng yìdiǎnr fàn hòu chī yìxiē shuǐguǒ shìzi zǎo dōu hǎo zhèlǐ de jiǎozi xiàn yě shì zìjǐ tiáo de lái yì pán ba · And a pot of tea, made strong. Some fruit after the meal: persimmons or dates would be nice. Their dumpling filling is home-made too: let's have a plate.

little sister 我还想要一个椰子，椰子水特别解渴。饭后再吃个冰棍儿！
wǒ hái xiǎng yào yí gè yēzi yēzi shuǐ tèbié jiěkě fàn hòu zài chī gè bīnggùnr · I want a coconut: coconut water really quenches your thirst. And an ice lolly after dinner!

dr li 冬天吃什么冰棍儿！喝点蜂蜜水吧。
dōngtiān chī shénme bīnggùnr hē diǎn fēngmì shuǐ ba · An ice lolly in winter? Have some honey water.

dr zhou 这里的水产是从海边连夜运来的，可以放心吃。
zhèlǐ de shuǐchǎn shì cóng hǎi biān liányè yùn lái de kěyǐ fàngxīn chī · Their seafood comes overnight from the coast: you can eat it without worrying.

xiaoming 我要一罐饮料。哎，易拉罐打不开了！
wǒ yào yí guàn yǐnliào āi yìlāguàn dǎ bu kāi le · I want a can of something. Hey, I can't get the can open!

chapter 3 chapter 3: cooking at the table

editor lin 锅开了，冒出好多气泡。上面那层泡沫用勺子去掉。羊肉涮几秒钟就可以了，火候很重要。

guō kāi le mào chū hǎoduō qìpào shàngmiàn nà céng pàomò yòng sháozi qù diào yáng ròu shuàn jǐ miǎo zhōng jiù kěyǐ le huǒhou hěn zhòngyào · The pot's boiling: look at all the bubbles. Take the foam off the top with a spoon. Lamb only needs a few seconds: timing is everything.

ms zhang 吃火锅跟炖汤、煲汤不一样，要大火。烹饪也是一门学问，烹调的方法不同，味道就不同。

chī huǒguō gēn dùn tāng bāo tāng bù yíyàng yào dà huǒ pēngrèn yě shì yì mén xuéwen pēngtiáo de fāngfǎ bù tóng wèidào jiù bù tóng · Hot pot isn't like stewing or slow-cooking soup: you need a high heat. Cooking is a skill in itself: cook it a different way and it tastes different.

anna 羊肉好嫩，一点儿也不腥！蘸一点儿作料更香。

yáng ròu hǎo nèn yìdiǎnr yě bù xīng zhàn yìdiǎnr zuòliao gèng xiāng · The lamb is so tender, not gamey at all! Even better dipped in the sauce.

little sister 哎呀，好烫！我急着咽下去，烫到舌头了。

āiyā hǎo tàng wǒ jí zhe yàn xiaqu tàng dào shétou le · Ouch, it's hot! I gulped it down and burnt my tongue.

ms zhang 你看你，慢慢吃。好好嚼一嚼，慢慢咀嚼才有滋味。

nǐ kàn nǐ màn màn chī hǎohǎo jiáo yi jiao màn màn jǔjué cái yǒu zīwèi · Look at you: slow down. Chew it properly: only when you chew slowly do you get the flavour.

anna 这些丸子是蒸的还是煎的？

zhèxiē wánzi shì zhēng de háishi jiān de · Are these balls steamed or fried?

editor lin 先蒸后煎，外面酥，里面嫩。这块熏肉也特别香。

xiān zhēng hòu jiān wàimiàn sū lǐmiàn nèn zhè kuài xūn ròu yě tèbié xiāng · Steamed first, then fried: crispy outside, tender inside. And this smoked meat is wonderful too.

xiaoming 这个虾真鲜美。螃蟹我来剥，哎呀，手被划了一道口子。

zhège xiā zhēn xiānměi pángxiè wǒ lái bāo āiyā shǒu bèi huá le yídào kǒuzi · These prawns taste so fresh. I'll shell the crab… ouch, I've cut my hand.

little sister 我最爱啃螃蟹腿。

wǒ zuì ài kěn pángxiè tuǐ · I love gnawing on crab legs.

dr li 不是我说你，小明，你已经吃了五盘肉了，比往常吃得还多，太贪吃了。

bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ Xiǎomíng nǐ yǐjīng chī le wǔ pán ròu le bǐ wǎngcháng chī de hái duō tài tānchī le · I hate to say it, Xiaoming, but you've eaten five plates of meat already, even more than usual: you're being greedy.

xiaoming 我在公司伙食不好，难得吃一顿丰盛的。

wǒ zài gōngsī huǒshí bù hǎo nándé chī yí dùn fēngshèng de · The canteen food at work is poor: I rarely get a spread like this.

dr zhou 麻辣锅太油腻了，我还是喜欢清汤，味道醇厚，喝了嗓子也润，皮肤也滋润。蔬菜先在水里浸泡过、冲洗过，很干净。

málà guō tài yóunì le wǒ háishi xǐhuan qīng tāng wèidào chúnhòu hē le sǎngzi yě rùn pífū yě zīrùn shūcài xiān zài shuǐ lǐ jìnpào guo chōngxǐ guo hěn gānjìng · The spicy pot is too greasy for me: I prefer the clear broth, rich and mellow, good for the throat and the skin. The vegetables have been soaked and rinsed: very clean.

editor lin 这家的锅底香味浓郁，可是不像有的店那样放香料放得太多。他们的酱是自己酿造、发酵的，桌子上的调料也很全。正宗！

zhè jiā de guō dǐ xiāng wèi nóngyù kěshì bú xiàng yǒude diàn nàyàng fàng xiāngliào fàng de tài duō tāmen de jiàng shì zìjǐ niàngzào fājiào de zhuōzi shàng de tiáoliào yě hěn quán zhèngzōng · Their broth smells wonderfully rich, but they don't overdo the spices like some places. Their sauce is brewed and fermented in-house, and the table has every seasoning. Authentic!

anna 汤一开始很清澈，涮了肉以后就混浊了。红薯煮得太久，黏在锅底，有点儿焦了。

tāng yì kāishǐ hěn qīngchè shuàn le ròu yǐhòu jiù hùnzhuó le hóngshǔ zhǔ de tài jiǔ nián zài guō dǐ yǒudiǎnr jiāo le · The broth was clear at first, but it's gone cloudy since we cooked the meat. And the sweet potato has cooked too long: it's stuck to the bottom and burnt a bit.

ms zhang 红薯和南瓜里有淀粉，汤就变稠了。加一些水吧。萝卜要削皮再放。
hóngshǔ hé nánguā lǐ yǒu diànfěn tāng jiù biàn chóu le jiā yìxiē shuǐ ba luóbo yào xiāo pí zài fàng · Sweet potato and pumpkin have starch in them, so the broth thickens. Add some water. And peel the radish before you put it in.

little sister 豆腐又光滑又细腻，可是芝麻酱里有小颗粒。粉丝好滑，夹都夹不起来！
dòufu yòu guānghuá yòu xìnì kěshì zhīma jiàng lǐ yǒu xiǎo kēlì fěnsī hǎo huá jiā dōu jiā bu qǐlai · The tofu is smooth and silky, but there are little lumps in the sesame paste. And the glass noodles are so slippery I can't even pick them up!

xiaoming 你看你，弄得桌子上一摊汤。
nǐ kàn nǐ nòng de zhuōzi shàng yì tān tāng · Look at you: there's a puddle of soup on the table.

anna 这个碗边上有个缺口，得换一个。
zhège wǎn biān shàng yǒu gè quēkǒu děi huàn yí gè · This bowl has a chip in the rim: it needs changing.

editor lin 服务员听到以后，当即给我们换了新碗。这一点我要写进文章。
fúwù yuán tīng dào yǐhòu dāngjí gěi wǒmen huàn le xīn wǎn zhè yìdiǎn wǒ yào xiě jìn wénzhāng · The waiter heard and changed our bowl on the spot. That's going in my article.

chapter 4 chapter 4: dr li's first hot pot

anna 李医生，您第一次吃火锅是什么时候？
Lǐyīshēng nín dì yī cì chī huǒguō shì shénme shíhou · Dr Li, when did you first have hot pot?

dr li 早年我在山里当医生，那时候伙食很简单，成天吃馒头和萝卜。
zǎonián wǒ zài shān lǐ dāng yīshēng nà shíhou huǒshí hěn jiǎndān chéngtiān chī mántou hé luóbo · In my early years I was a doctor in the mountains. The food was simple then: steamed buns and radish, day in, day out.

dr li 有一年春节前夕，黄昏的时候下起了大雪，像世界末日一样。当晚，村里的人宰了一只羊，请我们去吃涮羊肉。一只炉子，一口铜锅，十几个人围着，热腾腾的。
yǒu yì nián Chūnjié qiánxī huánghūn de shíhou xià qǐ le dà xuě xiàng shìjiè mòrì yíyàng dàngwǎn cūn lǐ de rén zǎi le yì zhī yáng qǐng wǒmen qù chī shuàn yáng ròu yì zhī lúzi yì kǒu tóng guō shí jǐ gè rén wéi zhe rèténgténg de · One year, on the eve of the Spring Festival, heavy snow began to fall at dusk, like the end of the world. That night the villagers slaughtered a sheep and invited us for hot-pot lamb. One stove, one copper pot, a dozen people huddled round it, steaming hot.

dr li 我们边吃边聊，通宵没睡。次日一早，天刚黎明，雪停了，远处升起一缕缕炊烟，整个村子都是羊肉的香味。
wǒmen biān chī biān liáo tōngxiāo méi shuì cìrì yìzǎo tiān gāng límíng xuě tíng le yuǎn chù shēng qǐ yì lǚ lǚ chuīyān zhěnggè cūn zi dōu shì yáng ròu de xiāng wèi · We ate and talked and stayed up all night. Early the next morning, just at dawn, the snow stopped, wisps of cooking smoke rose in the distance, and the whole village smelled of lamb.

dr li 当日下午，我就赶回了医院。转眼四十年过去了，那锅涮羊肉的滋味，我迄今还记得，那是我终生难忘的一顿饭。
dāngrì xiàwǔ wǒ jiù gǎn huí le yīyuàn zhuǎnyǎn sìshí nián guòqù le nà guō shuàn yáng ròu de zīwèi wǒ qìjīn hái jìde nà shì wǒ zhōngshēng nánwàng de yí dùn fàn · That afternoon I hurried back to the hospital. Forty years have gone by in the blink of an eye, and to this day I remember that hot pot: a meal I'll never forget as long as I live.

ms zhang 他平日很少说起往事，今天是高兴了。多年来，他每年冬天都要吃一次涮羊肉。
tā píngrì hěn shǎo shuō qǐ wǎngshì jīntiān shì gāoxìng le duō nián lái tā měi nián dōngtiān dōu yào chī yí cì shuàn yáng ròu · He rarely talks about the past: tonight he's in a good mood. For years now he's had hot-pot lamb once every winter.

dr zhou 昔日的小山村，现在怎么样了？
xīrì de xiǎo shān cūn xiànzài zěnmeyàng le · And that little mountain village of the past: what's it like now?

dr li 长期以来，那里一直很穷。这些年连年丰收，路也修好了。来年春天我想回去看看。
chángqī yǐlái nàlǐ yìzhí hěn qióng zhèxiē nián liánnián fēngshōu lù yě xiū hǎo le láinián chūntiān wǒ xiǎng huíqù kàn kan · For a long time it was very poor. In recent years there've been good harvests year after year, and the road has been built. I'd like to go back next spring.

little sister 爸爸，那时候的火锅好于今天的吗？
bàba nà shíhou de huǒguō hǎo yú jīntiān de ma · Dad, was hot pot better then than today?

dr li 今天的肉更嫩，作料更多。可是那天晚上的快乐，高于一切。
jīntiān de ròu gèng nèn zuòliao gèng duō kěshì nà tiān wǎnshang de kuàilè gāoyú yíqiè · Today's meat is more tender and there are more sauces. But the joy of that night beats everything.

anna 您把毕生都给了病人，那样的快乐，真是永恒的。
nín bǎ bìshēng dōu gěi le bìngrén nàyàng de kuàilè zhēn shì yǒnghéng de · You've given your whole life to your patients: a joy like that is truly for ever.

editor lin 我成年在外面跑新闻，昼夜不停，今天听到这样的故事，比什么都好。
wǒ chéngnián zài wàimiàn pǎo xīnwén zhòuyè bù tíng jīntiān tīng dào zhèyàng de gùshi bǐ shénme dōu hǎo · I'm out chasing news all year round, day and night, and hearing a story like this tonight is better than anything.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the bill and the review

xiaoming 一共多少钱?

yígòng duōshao qián · How much was it altogether?

editor lin 合计八百块，七个人，平均每人一百多。半数是肉钱。

héjì bābǎi kuài qī gè rén píngjūn měi rén yìbǎi duō bànshù shì ròu qián · Eight hundred yuan in total: seven of us, so just over a hundred each. Half of it was the meat.

editor lin 我的文章大概这么写：“这家店的菜分量足，味道好于美食街上的大多数饭馆，价格却低于平均水平。”

wǒ de wénzhāng dàgài zhème xiě zhè jiā diàn de cài fènliàng zú wèidào hǎo yú měishí jiē shàng de dà duōshù fànguǎn jiàgé què dīyú píngjūn shuǐpíng · Here’s roughly what I’ll write: “The portions are generous, the food is better than at most restaurants on the food street, and the prices are below average.”

anna 还要写上：店里很整洁，桌子和碗都很洁净。桌子是旧木头做的，摸起来有点儿粗糙，可是很有风味。

hái yào xiě shàng diàn lǐ hěn zhěngjié zhuōzi hé wǎn dōu hěn jiéjìng zhuōzi shì jiù mùtou zuò de mō qǐlai yǒudiǎnr cūcāo kěshì hěn yǒu fēngwèi · Write that it’s clean and tidy too, and the tables and bowls are spotless. The tables are old wood, a bit rough to the touch, but full of character.

dr zhou 他们的筷子是竹子做的，质地很好。剩菜和易拉罐分开放，这一点值得表扬。

tāmen de kuàizi shì zhúzi zuò de zhìdì hěn hǎo shèng cài hé yìlāguàn fēnkāi fàng zhè yìdiǎn zhídé biǎoyáng · Their chopsticks are bamboo, good quality. They sort food waste from cans: that deserves praise.

xiaoming 要写就写个清楚：二楼尚未开放，周末排队起码要一个小时。

yào xiě jiù xiě gè qīngchu èr lóu shàngwèi kāifàng zhōumò páiduì qǐmǎ yào yí gè xiǎoshí · If you’re writing it, write it properly: the first floor isn’t open yet, and at weekends you queue for at least an hour.

editor lin 对。开业一个月，接待客人三万人次，过半是附近的街坊。年轻客人的百分比，我稍后再检查一下。文章发到网上以后，读者可以即时留言。

duì kāiyè yí gè yuè jiēdài kèrén sān wàn réncì guòbàn shì fùjìn de jiēfang niánqīng kèrén de bǎifēnbǐ wǒ shāohòu zài jiǎnchá yíxià wénzhāng fā dào wǎngshang yǐhòu dúzhě kěyǐ jíshí liúyán · Right. In its first month it’s had 30,000 visits, more than half from neighbours nearby. I’ll double-check the percentage of young customers shortly. Once the article is online, readers can comment in real time.

anna 老板问了我们一连串问题，想听意见。他说，交流是双向的。

lǎobǎn wèn le wǒmen yìliánchuàn wèntí xiǎng tīng yìjiàn tā shuō jiāoliú shì shuāngxiàng de · The owner asked us a whole string of questions: he wanted our views. He said it should go both ways.

editor lin 他说明年还有一揽子计划：开二楼，搞外卖，还要做自己烘焙的点心。

tā shuō míngnián hái yǒu yìlǎnzi jìhuà kāi èr lóu gǎo wàimài hái yào zuò zìjǐ hōngbèi de diǎnxin · He says there’s a package of plans for next year: open the first floor, do takeaway, and make their own baked pastries.

ms zhang 剩下的丸子和蘑菇，我用锡纸包好带回去，放冰箱冷冻。蔬菜放进保鲜盒，不然会腐烂。

shèng xià de wánzi hé mógu wǒ yòng xīzhǐ bāo hǎo dài huiqu fàng bīngxiāng lěngdòng shūcài fàng jìn bǎoxiān hé bùrán huì fǔlàn · I’ll wrap the leftover meatballs and mushrooms in foil and take them home to freeze. The vegetables go in an airtight box, or they’ll rot.

little sister 我还有一块奶酪和半包瓜子，明天当早饭。

wǒ hái yǒu yí kuài nǎilào hé bàn bāo guāzǐ míngtiān dāng zǎofàn · I’ve got a piece of cheese and half a bag of sunflower seeds: that’s tomorrow’s breakfast.

dr li 你看你，早饭要吃一些谷物和牛奶。坚果、乳制品富含营养，可是不能只吃这个。

nǐ kàn nǐ zǎofàn yào chī yìxiē gǔwù hé niúnǎi jiānguǒ rǔzhìpǐn fùhán yíngyǎng kěshì bù néng zhǐ chī zhège · Look at you: breakfast should be cereal and milk. Nuts and dairy are nutritious, but you can’t live on them.

xiaoming 我爸爸曰：“好吃的，大家一起吃！”今天他又说话算数了。

wǒ bàba yuē hǎochī de dàjiā yìqǐ chī jīntiān tā yòu shuōhuà suànshù le · As my dad says: “Good food is for sharing!” Tonight he kept his word again.

anna 今天真是一场盛宴。祝这家店早日开二楼，生意越来越好！我们改日再来。

jīntiān zhēn shì yì chǎng shèngyàn zhù zhè jiā diàn zǎorì kāi èr lóu shēngyi yuè lái yuè hǎo wǒmen gǎirì zài lái

· Tonight was a real feast. Here's to the restaurant opening its first floor soon, and to business getting better and better! We'll come again another day.

dr zhou 你们看，街上亮起了一盏盏灯，空气也很清新。
nǐmen kàn jiē shàng liàng qǐ le yì zhǎn zhǎn dēng kōngqì yě hěn qīngxīn · Look: lamp after lamp is lighting up along the street, and the air is so fresh.

little sister 好吃是一码事，好看是另一码事，这条街两样都有！
hǎochī shì yì mǎ shì hǎokàn shì lìng yì mǎ shì zhè tiáo jiē liǎng yàng dōu yǒu · Tasty is one thing and pretty is another: this street has both!

editor lin 文章明天一早就发，届时大家记得看！今天就此结束吧。
wénzhāng míngtiān yìzǎo jiù fā jièshí dàjiā jìde kàn jīntiān jiùcǐ jiéshù ba · The piece goes out first thing tomorrow: remember to read it then! Let's call it a night.

A whole evening out, from the notice on the door to the review: you can now eat, talk and write about food entirely in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 49 mountains, rivers and coasts

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 7 · travel and geography

Name the land and the water (plains, basins, gorges, straits, bays, beaches) and describe a landscape in order: from west to east, from the top down.

Travel writing, guidebooks and HSK reading texts describe places in space order. Once you have the frame, any map can talk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
大陆	dàlù	continent, mainland	亚洲是世界上最大的大陆。 Asia is the largest continent in the world.
半岛	bàndǎo	peninsula	这个半岛三面都是海。 This peninsula has sea on three sides.
岛屿	dǎoyǔ	islands	这片海上有很多美丽的岛屿。 There are many beautiful islands in this sea.
海峡	hǎixiá	strait	坐船过海峡只要一个小时。 Crossing the strait by boat only takes an hour.
海湾	hǎiwān	bay, gulf	海湾里的水很平静。 The water in the bay is very calm.
港湾	gǎngwān	harbour	傍晚，船都回到了港湾。 In the evening, the boats all came back to the harbour.
海滨	hǎibīn	seaside	夏天很多人去海滨度假。 In summer lots of people go on holiday to the seaside.
海滩	hǎitān	beach	孩子们在海滩上玩了一下午。 The children played on the beach all afternoon.
沙滩	shātān	sandy beach	沙滩上的沙子又细又软。 The sand on the beach is fine and soft.
沿岸	yánàn	along the coast or banks	|长江{==the Yangtze}沿岸有很多大城市。 There are many big cities along the Yangtze.
对岸	duìàn	the opposite bank	河对岸就是另一个省了。 The other side of the river is already another province.
河畔	hépàn	riverside	晚饭后，我们在河畔散步。 After dinner we went for a walk by the river.
湖泊	húpō	lakes	这个地区湖泊很多。 This area has a lot of lakes.
溪	xī	stream, brook	山里有一条清清的小溪。 There is a clear little stream in the hills.
运河	yùnhé	canal	大运河从北京一直通到杭州。 The Grand Canal runs all the way from

			Beijing to Hangzhou.
支流	zhīliú	tributary	这条河有十几条支流。 This river has a dozen or so tributaries.
流域	liúyù	river basin	|黄河{==the Yellow River}流域是中国文化的发源地之一。 The Yellow River basin is one of the birthplaces of Chinese culture.
上游	shàngyóu	upper reaches	上游下了大雨，河水涨了。 It rained hard upstream, and the river rose.
下游	xiàyóu	lower reaches	下游的城市要做好准备。 The cities downstream must get ready.
发源	fāyuán	to rise, originate (river)	这条河发源|于雪山。 This river rises in the snow mountains.
发源地	fāyuándì	source, birthplace	这座城市是京剧的发源地。 This city is the birthplace of Peking opera.
水域	shuǐyù	waters, body of water	这片水域禁止游泳。 Swimming is not allowed in these waters.
瀑布	pùbù	waterfall	瀑布从山上冲下来，声音很大。 The waterfall crashes down the mountain with a roar.
山川	shānchuān	landscape, mountains and rivers	这一带山川美丽，空气也很好。 The landscape round here is beautiful, and the air is good too.
江山	jiāngshān	the land, a country's landscape	站在山顶往下看，真是江山如画。 From the top of the mountain, the land looks just like a painting.
山脉	shānmài	mountain range	这条山脉从东到西有一千多公里。 This mountain range runs over a thousand kilometres from east to west.
山岭	shānlǐng	mountain ridges	汽车在山岭之间开了三个小时。 The car drove through the mountains for three hours.
山谷	shāngǔ	valley	山谷里很安静，只听得见鸟叫。 The valley is very quiet: all you can hear is birdsong.
峡谷	xiágǔ	gorge, canyon	河水在峡谷里流得很急。 The river runs very fast through the gorge.
丘陵	qiūlíng	hills, hilly land	这一带是丘陵，适合种{zhong4}茶。 This area is hilly and good for growing tea.
盆地	péndì	basin (land)	这个盆地四周都是山，夏天特别热。 This basin is ringed by mountains, and it's extremely hot in summer.
平原	píngyuán	plain	平原上的田一眼望不到边。 The fields on the plain stretch further than the eye can see.
雪山	xuěshān	snow mountain	远处的雪山一年四季都是白的。 The snow mountains in the distance are white all year round.
悬崖	xuányá	cliff, precipice	别走到悬崖边上，太危险了。 Don't go to the edge of the cliff: it's too dangerous.

陡峭	dǒuqiào	steep, precipitous	这段山路非常陡峭。 This stretch of mountain road is very steep.
视	shì	to look at; to regard; (视……而定) to depend on	去不去，要视天气而定。 Whether we go depends on the weather.

pattern describe a place in space order

从/由 + start | 往/向 + direction | 先是……再是……最后是……

To describe a landscape, pick a viewpoint and move in one direction: 从西往东 (or written 由西向东), 从上往下, 从远到近. Then list what you meet in order with 先是……再是/然后是……最后是……, or by sides: 左边是……右边是……, 北边是……南边是……

站在山顶往下看，左边是峡谷，右边是一条小溪。 **zhàn zài shāndǐng wǎng xià kàn zuǒbian shì xiágǔ yòubian shì yì tiáo xiǎo xī** Looking down from the top, on the left is a gorge and on the right a little stream.

这个半岛北边是海湾，南边是港湾和海滩。 **zhège bàndǎo běi biān shì hǎiwān nán biān shì gǎngwān hé hǎitān** This peninsula has a bay to the north, and a harbour and beaches to the south.

由西向东，先是山脉，然后是丘陵，最后是平原。 **yóu xī xiàng dōng xiān shì shānmài ránhòu shì qiūlíng zuìhòu shì píngyuán** From west to east, first come the mountain ranges, then the hills, and finally the plains.

dialogue a map on the wall

dr zhou 你们看这张地图：中国在亚洲大陆的东边，东边和南边是大海，海上有很多岛屿和海峡。

nǐmen kàn zhè zhāng dìtú Zhōngguó zài Yàzhōu dàlù de dōng biān dōng biān hé nán biān shì dà hǎi hǎi shàng yǒu hěn duō dǎoyǔ hé hǎixiá · Look at this map: China is on the east of the Asian continent. To the east and south is the sea, full of islands and straits.

dr zhou 从西往东，先是雪山和高原，再往东是丘陵，最后是平原。

cóng xī wǎng dōng xiān shì xuěshān hé gāoyuán zài wǎng dōng shì qiūlíng zuìhòu shì píngyuán · From west to east, first there are snow mountains and plateaus, further east come the hills, and finally the plains.

little sister 难怪大河都是从西往东流的！

nánguài dà hé dōu shì cóng xī wǎng dōng liú de · No wonder the big rivers all flow from west to east!

dr zhou 对。黄河流域是中国文化的发源地之一，河水很混浊；长江沿岸有很多大城市。

duì huánghé liúyù shì Zhōngguó wénhuà de fāyuándì zhī yī hé shuǐ hěn hùnzhuó chángjiāng yánàn yǒu hěn duō dà chéngshì · Right. The Yellow River basin is one of the birthplaces of Chinese culture, and its water is very muddy; there are many big cities along the Yangtze.

anna 长江下游的城市我去过几个，可是上游一次也没去过。

chángjiāng xiàyóu de chéngshì wǒ qù guo jǐ gè kěshì shàngyóu yí cì yě méi qù guo · I've been to a few cities on the lower Yangtze, but never once to the upper reaches.

dr zhou 那你不妨跟我去云南。下个月我要专程去一条峡谷，考察长江的一条支流。

nà nǐ bùfáng gēn wǒ qù Yúnnán xià gè yuè wǒ yào zhuānchéng qù yì tiáo xiágǔ kǎochá chángjiāng de yì tiáo zhīliú · Then why not come to Yunnan with me? Next month I'm going specially to a gorge to study one of the Yangtze's tributaries.

little sister 峡谷里是什么样子？能在水里游泳吗？

xiágǔ lǐ shì shénme yàngzi néng zài shuǐ lǐ yóuyǒng ma · What's it like in the gorge? Can you swim in the water?

dr zhou 那片水域水流太急，千万别下去。东边是陡峭的悬崖，西边是山岭，中间还有一个大瀑布。

nà piàn shuǐyù shuǐliú tài jí qiānwàn bié xiàqù dōng biān shì dǒuqiào de xuányá xī biān shì shānlǐng zhōngjiān hái yǒu yí gè dà pùbù · The current in those waters is far too strong: don't even think of going in. On the east side are sheer cliffs, on the west side mountains, and in the middle a huge waterfall.

little sister 瀑布旁边一定很清凉吧！

pùbù pángbiān yídìng hěn qīngliáng ba · It must be lovely and cool by the waterfall!

anna 中国的山川真美！难怪古今中外的诗人都爱写山水。我不由得想马上出发。去几天呢？

Zhōngguó de shānchuān zhēn měi nánguài gǔjīn zhōngwài de shīrén dōu ài xiě shān shuǐ wǒ bùyóude xiǎng mǎshàng chūfā qù jǐ tiān ne · China's landscapes are so beautiful! No wonder poets of every age and country love writing about mountains and rivers. I can't help wanting to set off right now. How many days would it be?

dr zhou 要视天气而定。下大雨的话，山路就不好走了，我们可能还得风餐露宿几天。

yào shì tiānqì ér dìng xià dà yǔ dehuà shān lù jiù bù hǎo zǒu le wǒmen kěnéng hái děi fēngcān lùsù jǐ tiān · It depends on the weather. If it rains hard, the mountain roads get difficult, and we might have to rough it for a few days.

little sister 那我们趁早准备吧！这次我要尽情地看看这大好江山。

nà wǒmen chènzǎo zhǔnbèi ba zhè cì wǒ yào jìnqíng de kàn kan zhè dà hǎo jiāngshān · Then let's get ready early! This time I want to see as much of this glorious country as I can.

dr zhou 好！峡谷里飞禽走兽很多，你们记得带好相机。

hǎo xiágǔ lǐ fēiqín zǒushòu hěn duō nǐmen jìde dài hǎo xiàngjī · Good! There's plenty of wildlife in the gorge, so remember your cameras.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

捏
niē
to pinch, squeeze; to make up

掐
qiā
to pinch (with nails); to time, cut off

搓
cuō
to rub (between your hands)

揉
róu
to rub, knead

good to know · Spoken vs written: 河边 / 河畔, 海边 / 海滨, 湖 / 湖泊, 岛 / 岛屿. The second word of each pair belongs to guidebooks, signs and essays. For rivers, 上游 and 下游 also work for business: 上游企业 are the suppliers, 下游 the customers.

Plains, gorges, straits and bays: hand yourself any map of China and you can now walk someone across it in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 50 frontiers and far places

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 7 · travel and geography

Talk about remote and border places (deserts, oases, borders, crossings, hot springs) and rank things with 仅次于: “second only to”.

News, travel writing and HSK reading passages love rankings and far-off places. 仅次于 lets you rank anything in one tidy phrase.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
边疆	biānjiāng	frontier region	他年轻的时候在边疆工作过十年。 When he was young he worked in the frontier regions for ten years.
边界	biānjiè	border, boundary line	这条河是两个国家的边界。 This river is the border between the two countries.
边境	biānjìng	border area	这座边境小城每天都有很多外国游客。 This little border town gets lots of foreign visitors every day.
边远	biānyuǎn	remote, far-flung	他每年都去边远山区给孩子们上课。 Every year he goes to remote mountain areas to teach children.
偏僻	piānpì	out of the way, secluded	那个村子很偏僻，一天只有一趟车。 That village is really out of the way: there’s only one bus a day.
偏远	piānyuǎn	remote	偏远地区的网络还不太好。 The internet in remote areas still isn’t very good.
内地	nèidì	inland, the interior	他从沿海城市搬到了内地。 He moved from a coastal city to the interior.
乡下	xiāngxia	the countryside	我小时候住在乡下的奶奶家。 As a child I lived with my grandma in the countryside.
首府	shǒufǔ	regional capital	从首府到边境还要开两天车。 From the regional capital to the border is another two days’ drive.
都会	dūhuì	metropolis	上海是一座国际大都会。 Shanghai is an international metropolis.
繁华	fánhuá	bustling, flourishing	这条街是城里最繁华的地方。 This street is the busiest part of town.
荒凉	huāngliáng	desolate, bleak	路两边很荒凉，几十公里看不到一个人。 Both sides of the road are desolate: you don’t see a soul for dozens of kilometres.
戈壁	gēbì	Gobi, stony desert	汽车在戈壁上开了一整天。 The car drove across the Gobi all day.
绿洲	lǜzhōu	oasis	沙漠里的绿洲像一个绿色的小岛。 An oasis in the desert is like a little green island.
沼泽	zhǎozé	swamp, marsh	前面是沼泽，车开不过去。 There’s a swamp ahead: the car can’t get

			through.
坝	bà	dam, embankment	河上新修了一座大坝。 A big new dam has been built on the river.
地势	dìshì	terrain, lie of the land	中国的地势西高东低。 China's land is high in the west and low in the east.
地带	dìdài	zone, belt	这里是沙漠和草原中间的过渡地带。 This is the transition zone between the desert and the grassland.
崎岖	qíqū	rugged, bumpy (road)	山路崎岖，我们走得很慢。 The mountain path was rough, so we went slowly.
赤道	chìdào	the equator	这个国家离赤道很近，一年四季都很热。 This country is close to the equator: it's hot all year.
经度	jīngdù	longitude	这两座城市的经度差不多。 These two cities are at about the same longitude.
纬度	wěidù	latitude	纬度越高，冬天越冷。 The higher the latitude, the colder the winter.
交界	jiāojiè	to share a border	这个县在三个省的交界处。 This county lies where three provinces meet.
境内	jìngnèi	within the borders	这条河在中国境内有八百公里。 This river runs for eight hundred kilometres inside China.
境外	jìngwài	outside the borders, abroad	来这里旅游的境外游客越来越多。 More and more visitors from abroad are coming here.
过境	guòjìng	to transit, pass through	我们只是过境，不在这里停留。 We're only passing through; we're not staying here.
口岸	kǒuàn	port of entry, border crossing	这个口岸每天有上万人过境。 Over ten thousand people cross the border at this checkpoint every day.
环球	huánqiú	round the world	他退休以后打算环球旅行。 After he retires he plans to travel round the world.
高空	gāokōng	high altitude	飞机在一万米的高空飞行。 The plane flies at an altitude of ten thousand metres.
上空	shàngkōng	the sky above	城市上空飘着几朵白云。 A few white clouds float in the sky above the city.
奇观	qíguān	wonder, marvel	沙漠里的日出真是一大奇观。 Sunrise in the desert is a real wonder.
风景线	fēngjǐngxiàn	scenic route, attraction	这条海边公路风景很美，是一条有名的风景线。 This coast road is beautiful: it's a famous scenic route.
温泉	wēnquán	hot spring	冬天泡温泉特别舒服。 Soaking in a hot spring in winter is wonderful.
去处	qùchù	place to go	周末带孩子出去玩，动物园是个好去处。 The zoo is a good place to take the kids at the weekend.

pattern 仅次于: second only to

A **仅次于** **B (the number one)**

A 仅次于 B means A comes right after B: B is first and A is second. It is a written, rather formal phrase, perfect for rankings, statistics and reports. Often the field comes first: 在全国，……仅次于……

黄河全长五千多公里，在中国仅次于长江。 **huánghé quán cháng wǔqiān duō gōnglǐ zài Zhōngguó jǐncìyú chángjiāng** The Yellow River is over five thousand kilometres long, second only to the Yangtze in China.

这个口岸每年过境的人数，在全国仅次于上海的机场。 **zhège kǒuàn měi nián guòjìng de rénshù zài quán guó jǐncìyú Shànghǎi de jīchǎng** The number of people crossing at this checkpoint each year is second in the whole country only to Shanghai's airport.

在外国游客最喜欢的大都会里，北京仅次于上海。 **zài wàiguó yóukè zuì xǐhuan de dà dūhuì lǐ Běijīng jǐncìyú Shànghǎi** Among the big cities foreign visitors like best, Beijing comes second only to Shanghai.

dialogue postcards from the frontier

editor lin 我刚从西北边疆回来，路上遇到了一连串有意思的事。我在写一组文章，题目叫“边疆的风景线”。

wǒ gāng cóng xīběi biānjiāng huílái lùshang yùdào le yìliánchuàn yǒu yìsi de shì wǒ zài xiě yì zǔ wénzhāng tímù jiào biānjiāng de fēngjǐngxiàn · I've just come back from the north-western frontier, and a whole string of interesting things happened on the way. I'm writing a series called "Frontier Views".

xiaoming 边疆？是不是特别偏远，路也很崎岖？

biānjiāng shì bu shì tèbié piānyuǎn lù yě hěn qíqū · The frontier? Isn't it incredibly remote, with terrible roads?

editor lin 有的地方是。我们从首府开车出发，开了两天才到边境。那儿的地势很特别：北边是雪山，南边是沙漠，中间那条地带是一个大盆地，有一个个绿洲，还有一片片沼泽。

yǒude dìfang shì wǒmen cóng shǒufǔ kāichē chūfā kāi le liǎng tiān cái dào biānjìng nàr de dìshì hěn tèbié běi biān shì xuěshān nán biān shì shāmò zhōngjiān nà tiáo dìdài shì yí gè dà péndì yǒu yí gè gè lǜzhōu hái yǒu yí piàn piàn zhǎozé · Some places are. We drove from the regional capital and it took two days to reach the border. The lie of the land is amazing: snow mountains to the north, desert to the south, and in between a belt of land that forms a great basin, with oases and big marshes.

editor lin 那儿的河上修了一座坝。这条河发源于雪山，在我国境内只有几百公里，然后就流到境外去了。

nàr de hé shàng xiū le yí zuò bà zhè tiáo hé fāyuán yú xuěshān zài wǒ guó jìngnèi zhǐyǒu jǐ bǎi gōnglǐ ránhòu jiù liú dào jìngwài qù le · There's a dam on the river there. The river rises in the snow mountains and only runs a few hundred kilometres inside China, then it flows out across the border.

xiaoming 我还以为边远地区跟乡下一样，都很荒凉，空荡荡的呢。

wǒ hái yǐwéi biānyuǎn dìqū gēn xiāngxia yíyàng dōu hěn huāngliáng kōngdàngdàng de ne · I thought remote areas were like the countryside: all bleak and empty.

editor lin 没什么好奇怪的，大家都这么想。可是边境口岸比我想的繁华多了，每天都有很多境外的商人和游客过境。

méi shénme hǎo qíguài de dàjiā dōu zhème xiǎng kěshì biānjìng kǒuàn bǐ wǒ xiǎng de fánhuá duō le měi tiān dōu yǒu hěn duō jìngwài de shāngrén hé yóukè guòjìng · Nothing strange about that: everyone thinks so. But the border crossing was far busier than I expected, with lots of traders and tourists from abroad coming through every day.

xiaoming 这么说，那儿有来自五湖四海的人？

zhème shuō nàr yǒu láizì wǔhú sìhǎi de rén · So there are people there from all over?

editor lin 对。我们跟当地人萍水相逢，他们却请我们去家里喝茶。

duì wǒmen gēn dāngdì rén píngshuǐ xiāngféng tāmen què qǐng wǒmen qù jiā lǐ hē chá · Yes. We were strangers who'd just met the locals by chance, yet they invited us home for tea.

anna 口岸旁边的小城也跟内地的大都会一样热闹吗？

kǒuàn pángbiān de xiǎo chéng yě gēn nèidì de dà dūhuì yíyàng rènao ma · Is the little town by the crossing as lively as a big city in the interior?

editor lin 当然没那么大。最奇怪的是时间：那儿跟北京的经度差了三四十度，可是用的是北京时间，所以夏天晚上十点天还亮着。

dāngrán méi nàme dà zuì qíguài de shì shíjiān nàr gēn Běijīng de jīngdù chà le sānsìshí dù kěshì yòng de shì Běijīng shíjiān suǒyǐ xiàtiān wǎnshang shí diǎn tiān hái liàng zhe · Not that big, of course. The strangest thing is the time: it's thirty or forty degrees of longitude from Beijing, but it runs on Beijing time, so in summer it's still light at ten at night.

anna 真是奇观！回来的时候，你从飞机上能看见边界吗？

zhēn shì qíguān huílái de shíhou nǐ cóng fēijī shàng néng kànjiàn biānjiè ma · What a wonder! On the way back, could you see the border from the plane?

editor lin 能！飞机飞过边境上空的时候，我从高空往下看，那条河清清楚楚。安娜，你去云南也给我们写一篇游记吧，在我们网站上，旅游文章的读者人数仅次于新闻。

néng fēijī fēi guo biānjìng shàngkōng de shíhou wǒ cóng gāokōng wǎng xià kàn nà tiáo hé qīngqīngchuchu Ānnà nǐ qù Yúnnán yě gěi wǒmen xiě yì piān yóu jì ba zài wǒmen wǎngzhàn shàng lǚyóu wénzhāng de dúzhě

rénshù jǐncìyú xīnwén · Yes! As we flew over the border, I looked down from high up and could see the river clear as anything. Anna, write us a travel piece from Yunnan too: on our site, only the news gets more readers than travel pieces.

xiaoming 写完云南，下一组干脆写环球旅行，从赤道写到北极！

xiě wán Yúnnán xià yì zǔ gāncuì xiě huánqiú lǚxíng cóng chìdào xiě dào běijí · After Yunnan, why not go for a round-the-world series next, from the equator to the North Pole!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

捶
chuí
to pound, thump (with your fist)

砸
zá
to smash, pound; to drop on; to flop

劈
pī
to split, chop

凿
záo
to chisel, bore a hole

good to know · Remote, three ways: 偏僻 (out of the way, hard to find), 偏远 / 边远 (far from the centre). 边远山区 and 偏远地区 are fixed pairs in the news. With 仅次于, the winner comes after it: A 仅次于 B means B is number one.

Deserts, oases, borders and the sky above them: your Chinese can now travel to the very edge of the map.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 51 on the road

Talk your way through a car journey (detours, tunnels, flyovers, U-turns, a crash ahead) and complain about things that happen too easily with 动不动就.

Every road trip in China comes with a running commentary on the traffic. 动不动就 is the everyday way to grumble about it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
轿车	jiàochē	car, saloon car	停车场里停着一辆黑色的轿车。 A black car is parked in the car park.
卡车	kǎchē	lorry, truck	高速公路|上卡车特别多。 There are loads of lorries on the motorway.
私家车	sījiāchē	private car	现在很多家庭都有了私家车。 Lots of families have their own car now.
方向盘	fāngxiàngpán	steering wheel	开车的时候，两只手要握住方向盘。 When you drive, keep both hands on the steering wheel.
轮胎	lúntāi	tyre	车的轮胎没气了。 The car has a flat tyre.
后备箱	hòubèixiāng	boot (of a car), trunk	行李都放进后备箱了。 The luggage is all in the boot.
机动	jīdòng	flexible, spare (time, money)	行程里最好留一天机动时间。 It's best to keep one spare day in the plan.
驾	jià	to drive (a vehicle)	他驾车从北京一直开到了西安。 He drove all the way from Beijing to Xi'an.
路段	lùduàn	stretch of road	这个路段经常堵车。 This stretch of road is often jammed.
路径	lùjìng	route, path	手机地图给了我们三条路径。 The map app gave us three routes.
路途	lùtú	journey, way	路途很远，大家多带一点儿水。 It's a long way, so everyone bring some extra water.
捷径	jiéjìng	shortcut	学语言没有捷径。 There are no shortcuts in learning a language.
岔	chà	fork (in a road), to branch off	走到岔路口，往左拐。 When you reach the fork, turn left.
立交桥	lìjiāoqiáo	flyover, interchange	北京的立交桥又多又复杂。 Beijing has lots of flyovers, and they're complicated.
天桥	tiānqiáo	footbridge	过马路请走天桥。 Please use the footbridge to cross the road.
隧道	suìdào	tunnel	这条隧道有十几公里长。 This tunnel is over ten kilometres long.

地道	dìdào	underpass, tunnel	过马路可以走地道{di4dao4}。 You can cross the road by the underpass.
通车	tōngchē	to open to traffic	这座大桥下个月就要通车了。 This bridge opens to traffic next month.
绕行	ràoxíng	to detour	前方施工，车辆请绕行。 Road works ahead: vehicles please take a detour.
绕远儿	ràoyuǎnr	to go the long way round	走这条路太绕远儿了。 This road takes us miles out of the way.
掉头	diàotóu	to turn round, U-turn	这儿不能掉头，要开到前面的路口。 You can't do a U-turn here; you have to drive on to the next junction.
逆行	nìxíng	to go the wrong way	那辆车在逆行，太危险了！ That car is driving the wrong way: so dangerous!
追尾	zhuīwěi	rear-end collision	前面两辆车追尾了，路堵得很厉害。 Two cars in front have had a rear-end crash, and the road is badly jammed.
停放	tíngfàng	to park (a vehicle)	自行车请停放在车棚里。 Please park bicycles in the bike shed.
颠簸	diānbǒ	to bump, jolt	山路很颠簸，我有点儿晕车。 The mountain road is so bumpy that I feel a bit carsick.
枢纽	shūniǔ	hub, key link	这座城市是全国的交通枢纽。 This city is a transport hub for the whole country.
直达	zhídá	to go direct, nonstop	这趟火车直达上海。 This train goes straight through to Shanghai.
顺路	shùnlù	on the way	我顺路送你回家吧。 Let me drop you home: it's on my way.
沿途	yántú	along the way	沿途的风景美极了。 The scenery along the way was gorgeous.
沿线	yánxiàn	along the line	高铁沿线有很多小城市。 There are many small towns along the high-speed line.
上行	shàngxíng	to go up (trains: towards the capital)	上行的列车马上就要进站了。 The up train is about to arrive.
下行	xiàxíng	to go down (trains: away from the capital)	下行的车在对面的站台。 Trains in the down direction leave from the opposite platform.
缆车	lǎnchē	cable car	我们坐缆车上山，走路下山。 We'll take the cable car up and walk down.
卧铺	wòpù	sleeper berth	坐夜车最好买卧铺。 On an overnight train it's best to get a sleeper.
动不动	dòngbudòng	at the slightest thing, easily	他开车动不动就按喇叭。 When he drives, he honks the horn at the slightest thing.

pattern 动不动就: at the slightest thing

someone / something | 动不动就 | something unwelcome

动不动就 says something happens far too easily, at the slightest excuse. It is nearly always a complaint: 动不动就生气 (flares up at nothing), 动不动就堵车 (jams up all the time). Never use it for good things.

这条路动不动就堵车，我们还是坐地铁吧。 **zhè tiáo lù dòngbudòng jiù dǔchē wǒmen háishi zuò dìtiě ba** This road jams up at the drop of a hat: let's take the underground.

这辆旧轿车动不动就出毛病。 **zhè liàng jiù jiàochē dòngbudòng jiù chū máobìng** This old car breaks down at the slightest thing.

这条线的上行列车动不动就晚点，下行的反而很准时。 **zhè tiáo xiàn de shàngxíng lièchē dòngbudòng jiù wǎndiǎn xiàxíng de fǎnér hěn zhǔnshí** The up trains on this line are late all the time, while the down trains are actually very punctual.

dialogue the road to the airport

xiaoming 行李都放进后备箱了吧？轮胎我昨天也检查过了，放心。
xíngli dōu fàng jìn hòubèixiāng le ba lúntāi wǒ zuótiān yě jiǎnchá guo le fàngxīn · Is all the luggage in the boot? I checked the tyres yesterday too, so don't worry.

little sister 都放好了。哥哥，你开车别动不动就按喇叭，吵死了。
dōu fàng hǎo le gēge nǐ kāichē bié dòngbudòng jiù àn lǎba chǎo sǐ le · All in. And please don't honk at every little thing, it's deafening.

xiaoming 我开车向来很稳健！倒是你，坐私家车动不动就晕车。
wǒ kāichē xiànglái hěn wěnjiàn dàoshì nǐ zuò sījiāchē dòngbudòng jiù yùnchē · I've always been a steady driver! You're the one who gets carsick at the drop of a hat.

anna 手机地图给了三条路径。平日这条路不堵，可眼下正是上班的时候。最快的那条，前面有个路段在施工，车辆要绕行。
shǒujī dìtú gěi le sān tiáo lùjìng píngrì zhè tiáo lù bù dǔ kě yǎnxià zhèng shì shàngbān de shíhou zuì kuài de nà tiáo qiánmiàn yǒu gè lùduàn zài shīgōng chēliàng yào ràoxíng · The map app gives three routes. This road isn't usually busy, but right now it's rush hour. On the fastest one, there are road works on a stretch ahead, and cars have to detour.

xiaoming 那走立交桥下面那条岔路，过了隧道就是机场高速，这是一条捷径。
nà zǒu lìjiāoqiáo xiàmiàn nà tiáo chà lù guò le suìdào jiùshì jīchǎng gāosù zhè shì yì tiáo jiéjìng · Then we'll take the side road under the flyover. Through the tunnel and we're on the airport motorway: it's a shortcut.

little sister 你的捷径每次都绕远儿！上次在桥上走错了，又不能掉头，多开了半个小时。
nǐ de jiéjìng měi cì dōu ràoyuǎnr shàng cì zài qiáo shàng zǒu cuò le yòu bù néng diàotóu duō kāi le bàn gè xiǎoshí · Your shortcuts always take us miles out of the way! Last time you went wrong on the flyover, couldn't turn round, and we drove an extra half hour.

xiaoming 哎，你们看，那边路上两辆轿车追尾了，旁边还有一辆卡车在逆行！太惊险了，幸好我们没走那条路。
āi nǐmen kàn nàbiān lùshang liǎng liàng jiàochē zhuīwěi le pángbiān hái yǒu yí liàng kǎchē zài nìxíng tài jīngxiǎn le xìnghǎo wǒmen méi zǒu nà tiáo lù · Hey, look: over on that road two cars have crashed into each other, and there's a lorry going the wrong way! That was close: lucky we didn't go that way.

anna 周博士说，从机场到峡谷路途很远，山路又崎岖又颠簸，所以她留了一天机动时间。峡谷口还有缆车，能看到瀑布。
Zhōubóshì shuō cóng jīchǎng dào xiágǔ lùtú hěn yuǎn shān lù yòu qíqū yòu diānbǒ suǒyǐ tā liú le yì tiān jīdòng shíjiān xiágǔ kǒu hái yǒu lǎnchē néng kàn dào pùbù · Dr Zhou says it's a long way from the airport to the gorge, and the mountain roads are rough and bumpy, so she's left a spare day. There's a cable car at the mouth of the gorge too, with a view of the waterfall.

little sister 下次我们坐卧铺火车去吧。沿途的风景一定很美，火车沿线的小城也可以停下来看看。
xià cì wǒmen zuò wòpù huǒchē qù ba yántú de fēngjǐng yídìng hěn měi huǒchē yánxiàn de xiǎo chéng yě kěyǐ tíng xialai kàn kan · Next time let's take the sleeper train. The scenery along the way must be lovely, and we could stop at little towns along the line.

xiaoming 到了！机场是交通枢纽，四通八达，要吃有吃，要喝有喝。你们先进去，我把车停放好，随即就来。
dào le jīchǎng shì jiāotōng shūniǔ sìtōng bādá yào chī yǒu chī yào hē yǒu hē nǐmen xiān jìnqù wǒ bǎ chē tíngfàng hǎo suíjí jiù lái · Here we are! The airport is a transport hub with links everywhere: food, drink, whatever you want. You go in first; I'll park the car and be right with you.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

刨
páo
to dig, dig up

铲
chǎn
to shovel, scrape

抠
kōu
to dig out (with a finger); to be stingy

挠
náo
to scratch

good to know · Signs are written in a formal style: 车辆请绕行 (vehicles please detour), 禁止掉头 (no U-turns), 请勿逆行 (do not drive against the traffic). 地道 dìdào is an underpass; 地道 dìdao means authentic. The tones tell you which.

Detours, shortcuts and a crash on the motorway: you can now back-seat drive in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 52 by sea and by air

Talk about ships, planes and freight, and link your reasons like a written text: 若/倘若 (if), 以防/免得 (in case, so as not to), 况且/加之 (besides, on top of that), 乃至 (and even), 且 (and).

Announcements, safety cards, contracts and news reports are built on these linking words. Knowing them turns long formal sentences into easy reading.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
船舶	chuánbó	ships, vessels	港口里停着各种各样的船舶。 All kinds of vessels are moored in the port.
帆	fān	sail	风很大，船上的帆都鼓起来了。 The wind is strong, and the boat's sails have filled out.
帆船	fānchuán	sailing boat	海湾里有几只白色的帆船。 There are a few white sailing boats in the bay.
桨	jiǎng	oar, paddle	他拿起桨，慢慢地把船划到了对岸。 He picked up the oars and slowly rowed the boat to the other side.
游船	yóuchuán	pleasure boat, cruise boat	晚上坐游船看两岸的风景，特别美。 Taking a boat in the evening to see both banks lit up is lovely.
渔船	yúchuán	fishing boat	天还没亮，渔船就出海了。 The fishing boats put out to sea before dawn.
停泊	tíngbó	to moor, anchor	几十条船停泊在港湾里。 Dozens of boats are moored in the harbour.
航海	hánghǎi	navigation, seafaring	他从小就梦想去航海。 Ever since he was a child he has dreamed of sailing the seas.
航行	hángxíng	to sail, fly (a route)	这条船已经在海上航行了三天。 The ship has been at sea for three days.
航运	hángyùn	shipping	这个城市的航运非常发达。 This city has a highly developed shipping industry.
海运	hǎiyùn	to ship by sea; sea freight	海运比空运便宜，可是慢多了。 Shipping by sea is cheaper than by air, but much slower.
货运	huòyùn	freight transport	这条铁路主要用于货运。 This railway is mainly used for freight.
集装箱	jízhuāngxiāng	shipping container	码头上堆满了集装箱。 The docks are piled high with containers.
客运	kèyùn	passenger transport	春节前后是客运最忙的时候。 The weeks around the Spring Festival are the busiest time for passenger transport.
客流	kèliú	passenger flow	火车站今天的客流特别大。 The station is extremely busy with passengers today.
客机	kèjī	airliner, passenger plane	这架客机能坐三百多人。 This airliner seats over three hundred people.

机舱	jīcāng	aircraft cabin	机舱里有点儿冷，我要了一条毯子。 It was a bit cold in the cabin, so I asked for a blanket.
舱	cāng	cabin, hold (ship or plane)	大的行李请放在行李舱里。 Please put large bags in the luggage hold.
直升机	zhíshēngjī	helicopter	直升机把受伤的游客送到了医院。 A helicopter took the injured tourist to hospital.
登陆	dēnglù	to land, come ashore	台风明天上午登陆。 The typhoon will make landfall tomorrow morning.
搭乘	dāchéng	to travel by, take (transport)	欢迎搭乘本次航班。 Welcome aboard this flight.
导航	dǎoháng	to navigate; satnav	开车去那儿最好用导航。 If you drive there, it's best to use the satnav.
漂泊	piāobó	to drift, wander	他在外面漂泊了十几年，终于回家了。 After more than ten years of wandering, he finally came home.
况且	kuàngqiě	moreover, besides	太晚了，况且外面还在下雨，你别走了。 It's too late, and besides, it's still raining: stay here tonight.
免得	miǎnde	so as not to, lest	多带一件外套，免得着凉。 Take an extra coat so you don't catch cold.
若	ruò	if (written)	若有问题，请随时联系我。 If there are any problems, please contact me at any time.
倘若	tǎngruò	if, supposing (written)	倘若航班取消，我们就改坐火车。 If the flight is cancelled, we'll take the train instead.
若是	ruòshì	if	若是天气好，我们就坐游船去湖上看看。 If the weather's good, we'll take a boat out on the lake.
以防	yǐfáng	in case, to guard against	请系好安全带，以防飞机颠簸。 Please fasten your seat belt in case of turbulence.
加之	jiāzhī	on top of that, in addition	山里天气多变，加之路不好走，要多留时间。 The mountain weather is changeable, and on top of that the roads are bad, so allow plenty of time.
乃至	nǎizhì	and even, up to	这家公司的船舶航行在中国沿海乃至世界各地。 This company's ships sail along China's coast and even all over the world.
且	qiě	and, moreover (written)	这家航空公司的机票便宜，且服务周到。 This airline's tickets are cheap, and its service is good too.
亦	yì	also (written)	我亦有同感。 I feel the same way.

pattern written links: if, in case, besides, and even

若 / 倘若 / 若是 + if… | ……，以防 / 免得 + risk | 况且 / 加之 + extra reason | A 乃至 B · A 且 B

若, 倘若 and 若是 are written ways to say 如果. 以防 (in case) and 免得 (so as not to) come in the second clause and name the risk you are avoiding. 况且 and 加之 add one more reason (况且 sounds persuasive, 加之 factual); 鉴于 (in view of) opens with the reason. 乃至 means “and even”, and 且 is a written “and”.

若是天气好，我们就坐游船去湖上看看。 **ruòshì tiānqì hǎo wǒmen jiù zuò yóuchuán qù hú shàng kàn kan** If the weather’s good, we’ll take a boat out on the lake.

鉴于天气不好，今天的游船都停泊在港湾里。 **jiànyú tiānqì bù hǎo jīntiān de yóuchuán dōu tíngbó zài gǎngwān lǐ** In view of the bad weather, all the pleasure boats are staying moored in the harbour today.

高铁又快又准时，加之票也不贵，长途客运现在主要靠高铁。 **gāotiě yòu kuài yòu zhǔnshí jiāzhī piào yě bú guì chángtú kèyùn xiànzài zhǔyào kào gāotiě** High-speed trains are fast and punctual, and on top of that tickets are cheap, so long-distance passengers now mostly go by high-speed rail.

这家航空公司的机票便宜，且服务周到。 **zhè jiā hángkōng gōngsī de jīpiào piányi qiě fúwù zhōudào** This airline’s tickets are cheap, and its service is good too.

dialogue a nervous flyer

anna 包放进行李舱了吗？……你怎么了？脸都白了。
bāo fàng jìn xíngli cāng le ma nǐ zěnme le liǎn dōu bái le · Did you get your bag into the overhead locker? … What's wrong? You've gone white.

little sister 我对坐飞机一直有点儿畏惧。刚才发的安全说明，我紧张得看都没看。
wǒ duì zuò fēijī yìzhí yǒudiǎnr wèijù gāngcái fā de ānquán shuōmíng wǒ jǐnzhāng de kàn dōu méi kàn · I've always been a bit afraid of flying. I was so nervous I didn't even look at the safety card they handed out.

anna 我给你念：“倘若遇到紧急情况，请先戴好自己的氧气面罩，然后再帮助别人。若需要帮助，请找工作人员。”你看，先做什么，后做什么，写得清清楚楚。
wǒ gěi nǐ niàn tǎngruò yùdào jǐnjí qíngkuàng qǐng xiān dài hǎo zìjǐ de yǎngqì miàn zhào ránhòu zài bāngzhù biérén ruò xūyào bāngzhù qǐng zhǎo gōngzuò rényuán nǐ kàn xiān zuò shénme hòu zuò shénme xiě de qīngqīngchuchu · I'll read it to you: “In an emergency, first put on your own oxygen mask, then help others. If you need help, please ask a member of the crew.” See? What to do first and what to do next, all clearly set out.

little sister 若是飞机掉下去怎么办？我生怕到时候惊慌失措。
ruòshì fēijī diào xiaqu zěnme bàn wǒ shēngpà dào shíhou jīnghuāng shīcuò · And what if the plane falls out of the sky? I'm so afraid I'd panic.

anna 别瞎想。客机是最安全的交通工具，况且今天天气这么好。你要是坐过直升机，就知道这个机舱有多舒服了。
bié xiā xiǎng kèjī shì zuì ānquán de jiāotōng gōngjù kuàngqiě jīntiān tiānqì zhème hǎo nǐ yàoshi zuò guo zhíshēngjī jiù zhīdào zhège jīcāng yǒu duō shūfu le · Don't be silly. Airliners are the safest way to travel, and besides, the weather's perfect today. If you'd ever been in a helicopter, you'd know how comfortable this cabin is.

little sister 听你这么说，我好像吃了一颗定心丸。我妈妈公司做的是航运，货都是用集装箱海运的。她说在海上航行慢是慢，可是货运便宜多了。
tīng nǐ zhème shuō wǒ hǎoxiàng chī le yì kē dìngxīnwán wǒ māma gōngsī zuò de shì hángyùn huò dōu shì yòng jízhuāngxiāng hǎiyùn de tā shuō zài hǎi shàng hángxíng màn shì màn kěshì huòyùn piányi duō le · Hearing you say that puts my mind at rest. My mum's company is in shipping: all its goods go by sea in containers. She says sailing is slow, but freight is much cheaper that way.

anna 到了峡谷，我们坐游船。周博士说，下游的湖上有挂着白帆的帆船、渔船，还有划桨的小船。
dào le xiágǔ wǒmen zuò yóuchuán Zhōubóshì shuō xiàyóu de hú shàng yǒu guà zhe bái fān de fānchuán yúchuán hái yǒu huá jiǎng de xiǎo chuán · When we get to the gorge, we'll take a boat. Dr Zhou says the lake downstream has sailing boats with white sails, fishing boats and little rowing boats.

little sister 那还差不多！对了，周博士为什么提前走了？
nà hái chàbuduō duì le Zhōubóshì wèi shénme tíqián zǒu le · Now you're talking! By the way, why did Dr Zhou go on ahead?

anna 鉴于这个季节雨多，加之山路不好走，她先去看看，以防出问题。她一年有一半时间在外面漂泊，真不容易。
jiànyú zhège jìjié yǔ duō jiāzhī shān lù bù hǎo zǒu tā xiān qù kàn kan yǐfáng chū wèntí tā yì nián yǒu yíbàn shíjiān zài wàimiàn piāobó zhēn bù róngyì · Since it rains a lot this season, and on top of that the mountain roads are bad, she went to check first in case of problems. She spends half the year on the road: it's not easy.

little sister 她说过，搞研究就像航海，全国乃至世界各地都得去。下了飞机她来接我们，她车上有导航，免得我们迷路。
tā shuō guo gǎo yánjiū jiù xiàng hánghǎi quán guó nǎizhì shìjiè gèdì dōu děi qù xià le fēijī tā lái jiē wǒmen tā chē shàng yǒu dǎoháng miǎnde wǒmen mílù · She told me research is like sailing the seas: you have to go all over the country, even all over the world. She's meeting us off the plane, and she has satnav in the car, so we won't get lost.

anna 你看窗外，从高空往下看，山脉和丘陵都看得清清楚楚！
nǐ kàn chuāng wài cóng gāokōng wǎng xià kàn shānmài hé qiūlíng dōu kàn de qīngqīngchuchu · Look out of the window: from up here you can see the mountain ranges and the hills so clearly!

little sister

真是奇观！我都不紧张了。

zhēn shì qíguān wǒ dōu bù jǐnzhāng le · What a sight! I'm not nervous any more.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

捅
tǒng
to poke, jab; to let out (a secret)

戳
chuō
to jab, poke (with a point)

磕
kē
to knock, bump

撬
qiào
to prise open, lever

good to know · 以防 vs 免得: both name a risk in the second clause. 以防 is formal (signs, notices); 免得 is everyday: 快走吧，免得迟到. The formal ifs, from most to least formal: 倘若, 若, 若是. All of them pair with 就 or 则 in the second clause.

Safety cards, freight, sails and helicopters: the formal Chinese of travel now reads like a conversation.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 53 setting off

Plan a trip and set off: guides, tents, sleeping bags, board and lodging, stopovers and round trips, and talk about what you do besides work with (在)……之余.

Trip planning has its own vocabulary, half everyday and half formal. And 之余 is how Chinese talks about the life you have outside work.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
动身	dòngshēn	to set off	我们明天一早就动身。 We're setting off first thing tomorrow.
启程	qǐchéng	to set out (on a journey)	代表团明天启程回国。 The delegation sets out for home tomorrow.
起程	qǐchéng	to set out (on a journey)	我们明天一早起程。 We set out early tomorrow morning.
赴	fù	to go to, attend (formal)	他赴英国留学，五年后学成归来。 He went to study in the UK and came back five years later with his degree.
赶赴	gǎnfù	to rush to	医生们连夜赶赴现场。 The doctors rushed to the scene through the night.
归来	guīlái	to return, come back	他们旅行归来，带回了很多照片。 Back from their trip, they brought lots of photos.
来回	láihuí	round trip; back and forth	从这儿到山顶，来回要六个小时。 From here to the summit and back takes six hours.
逗留	dòuliú	to stay, stop over	我们在这个小城逗留了三天。 We stayed in this little town for three days.
滞留	zhìliú	to be stranded	因为大雪，很多旅客滞留在机场。 Because of the heavy snow, many passengers were stranded at the airport.
漫游	mànyóu	to roam, wander	退休以后，他在全国各地漫游。 After retiring, he roamed all over the country.
郊游	jiāoyóu	outing, trip to the country	周末我们全家去郊游。 This weekend the whole family is going on an outing to the countryside.
避暑	bìshǔ	to escape the summer heat	夏天很多人去山里避暑。 In summer lots of people go to the mountains to escape the heat.
探险	tànxiǎn	to explore, go on an expedition	他喜欢去没人去过的地方探险。 He loves exploring places nobody has been to.
徒步	túbù	on foot	我们打算徒步穿越这个峡谷。 We're planning to cross this gorge on foot.
露营	lùyíng	to camp	今天晚上我们在湖边露营。 Tonight we're camping by the lake.

帐篷	zhàngpeng	tent	天黑以前一定要把帐篷搭好。 We must get the tent up before dark.
睡袋	shuìdài	sleeping bag	山上晚上很冷，要带厚一点儿的睡袋。 It's cold up the mountain at night: bring a thicker sleeping bag.
穿越	chuānyuè	to cross, pass through	他们用十天穿越了沙漠。 They crossed the desert in ten days.
迷失	míshī	to lose (one's way)	在森林里很容易迷失方向。 It's easy to lose your bearings in a forest.
带路	dàilù	to show the way	我不认识路，你给我们带路吧。 I don't know the way: could you lead us?
向导	xiàngdǎo	guide (person)	我们请了一位当地的向导。 We hired a local guide.
一行	yīxíng	a party, group (travelling together)	我们一行五人，明天去山里。 Our party of five is going to the mountains tomorrow.
见闻	jiànwén	what one sees and hears, experiences	她把旅途中的见闻写成了一本书。 She turned what she saw and heard on her travels into a book.
食宿	shísù	board and lodging	参加活动的人，食宿由我们安排。 For everyone taking part, we'll arrange food and accommodation.
客房	kèfáng	guest room, hotel room	这家酒店有两百多间客房。 This hotel has over two hundred rooms.
星级	xīngjí	star-rated (hotel)	这家是五星级酒店，服务特别好。 This is a five-star hotel: the service is excellent.
包袱	bāofu	bundle; a burden	别有思想包袱，大家都|会帮你。 Don't let it weigh on you: everyone will help you.
随身	suíshēn	carry-on, on one's person	随身的东西请自己保管好。 Please look after your personal belongings yourself.
位子	wèizi	seat, place	请问，这个位子有人吗? Excuse me, is this seat taken?
巷	xiàng	lane, alley	旅馆在一条安静的小巷里。 The guesthouse is in a quiet little lane.
港	gǎng	port, harbour	船已经进港了。 The ship has already come into port.
余	yú	more than; remaining (after a number)	这次比赛有三万余人参加。 More than thirty thousand people are taking part in the race.

pattern **(在) ……之余: besides, when not busy with**

(在) | activity / feeling | 之余, | something else

……之余 means “in the time left over from” or “on top of”. With work or study it says what you do in your free time: 工作之余, 学习之余. With a feeling it adds a second feeling: 高兴之余，也有点儿担心 (glad, but also a little worried). It is a touch formal.

在紧张的工作之余，他每个周末都去徒步。 **zài jǐnzhāng de gōngzuò zhī yú tā měi gè zhōumò dōu qù túbù** Besides his stressful job, he goes hiking every weekend.

研究之余，周博士还写了好几本科普书。 **yánjiū zhī yú Zhōubóshì hái xiě le hǎo jǐ běn kēpǔ shū** On top of her research, Dr Zhou has written several popular science books.

惊喜之余，她也有一点儿担心。 **jīngxǐ zhī yú tā yě yǒuyìdiǎnr dānxīn** Delighted as she was, she was also a little worried.

dialogue the plan

dr zhou 欢迎来到峡谷口！我们一行三人，明天黎明就动身。
huānyíng lái dào xiágǔ kǒu wǒmen yìxíng sān rén míngtiān límíng jiù dòngshēn · Welcome to the mouth of the gorge! There are three of us, and we set off at dawn tomorrow.

little sister 周博士，您工作之余也喜欢徒步吗？
Zhōubóshì nín gōngzuò zhī yú yě xǐhuan túbù ma · Dr Zhou, do you like hiking in your free time too?

dr zhou 当然！工作之余，我最喜欢徒步穿越峡谷。这一带地势复杂，山岭又多，所以我请了一位当地的向导给我们带路，免得我们在山里迷失方向。
dāngrán gōngzuò zhī yú wǒ zuì xǐhuan túbù chuānyuè xiágǔ zhè yídài dìshì fùzá shānlǐng yòu duō suǒyǐ wǒ qǐng le yí wèi dāngdì de xiàngdǎo gěi wǒmen dàilù miǎnde wǒmen zài shān lǐ míshī fāngxiàng · Of course! When I'm not working, my favourite thing is hiking through gorges. The terrain round here is complicated, with ridge after ridge, so I've hired a local guide to lead us, so we don't lose our way in the mountains.

anna 我们晚上住哪儿？要露营吗？
wǒmen wǎnshang zhù nǎr yào lùyíng ma · Where do we sleep? Are we camping?

dr zhou 第一天晚上在山谷里露营，帐篷和睡袋向导都准备好了。第二天住山里的小旅馆，食宿都很简单，不是什么星级酒店。
dì yī tiān wǎnshang zài shāngǔ lǐ lùyíng zhàngpeng hé shuìdài xiàngdǎo dōu zhǔnbèi hǎo le dì èr tiān zhù shān lǐ de xiǎo lǚguǎn shísù dōu hěn jiǎndān bú shì shénme xīngjí jiǔdiàn · The first night we camp in the valley: the guide has the tents and sleeping bags ready. The second night we stay in a little inn in the mountains. Food and beds are simple: definitely not a star-rated hotel.

little sister 没关系，这家旅馆在小巷里，客房又安静又干净，我已经很满意了。
méi guānxi zhè jiā lǚguǎn zài xiǎo xiàng lǐ kèfáng yòu ānjìng yòu gānjìng wǒ yǐjīng hěn mǎnyì le · That's fine. This guesthouse is down a lane, the rooms are quiet and clean, and I'm already happy.

anna 我能把大包袱留在客房，随身只带一个小背包吗？
wǒ néng bǎ dà bāofu liú zài kèfáng suíshēn zhǐ dài yí gè xiǎo bēibāo ma · Can I leave my big bundle in the room and just take a small backpack?

dr zhou 可以。来回一共四天。山里天气变得快，以前有游客在山上多逗留了一天，结果碰上大雨，滞留了三天。所以我们一定要按计划走。
kěyǐ láihuí yígòng sì tiān shān lǐ tiānqì biàn de kuài yǐqián yǒu yóukè zài shān shàng duō dòuliú le yì tiān jiéguǒ pèng shàng dà yǔ zhìliú le sān tiān suǒyǐ wǒmen yídìng yào àn jìhuà zǒu · Yes. It's four days there and back. Mountain weather changes fast: some tourists once stayed an extra day on the mountain, got caught in heavy rain and were stranded for three days. So we must stick to the plan.

anna 山里晚上冷吗？
shān lǐ wǎnshang lěng ma · Is it cold in the mountains at night?

dr zhou 冷。不过附近有温泉，是个好去处。
lěng búguò fùjìn yǒu wēnquán shì gè hǎo qùchù · Yes. But there's a hot spring nearby: a great place to go.

little sister 太刺激了，简直是去探险！我早就憧憬这样的旅行了。回去以后，我要把这次的见闻都写下来。
tài cìjī le jiǎnzhí shì qù tànxiǎn wǒ zǎo jiù chōngjǐng zhèyàng de lǚxíng le huíqù yǐhòu wǒ yào bǎ zhè cì de jiànwén dōu xiě xialai · How exciting, it's a real expedition! I've dreamed of a trip like this for ages. When I get back, I'm going to write down everything we see and hear.

anna 林编辑还等着我的游记呢。来，我们三个先拍个照，发给她！
Línbiānjí hái děng zhe wǒ de yóu jì ne lái wǒmen sān gè xiān pāi gè zhào fā gěi tā · Editor Lin is waiting for my travel piece too. Come on, let's take a photo of the three of us first and send it to her!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

掀
xiān
to lift (a lid, a cover), raise

揭
jiē
to peel off, uncover; to expose

撕
sī
to tear, rip

亦
yì
also (written)

good to know · Setting off, from everyday to formal: 走 → 出发 → 动身 → 启程 / 起程. Arriving formally: 抵达; coming home formally: 归来. 逗留 is a stay you choose; 滞留 is a stay you are stuck with (stranded by snow, strikes, cancelled flights).

Tent, sleeping bag, guide, plan: you can now organise a whole expedition in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 54 shape and size

Describe shapes and sizes in a landscape (sunken, jutting, flat, tilted, towering, vast, narrow) and say “nothing is more … than …”.

Travel writing lives on shape words: cliffs tower, paths narrow, plateaus stretch away. And “nothing beats …” is how you sum up a trip.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
凹	āo	sunken, concave	路面有一块凹下去了，开车小心。 Part of the road surface has sunk: drive carefully.
凸	tū	protruding, convex	墙上有一块石头凸出来了。 A stone is sticking out of the wall.
扁	biǎn	flat	我的背包被压扁了。 My backpack has been squashed flat.
横	héng	horizontal, crosswise	一棵大树横{heng2-7}在路中间。 A big tree lies across the middle of the path.
倾斜	qīngxié	to tilt, lean	那座老塔有点儿倾斜了。 That old pagoda is leaning a little.
棱角	léngjiǎo	edges and corners; sharpness	这块石头棱角很尖，别碰到手。 This stone has sharp edges: don’t cut your hand.
轮廓	lúnkuò	outline, contour	远处只能看见山的轮廓。 In the distance you can only see the outline of the mountains.
格子	gézi	check pattern, squares	他穿着一件蓝格子衬衫。 He’s wearing a blue checked shirt.
花纹	huāwén	decorative pattern	这块石头上的花纹像一幅画。 The pattern on this stone looks like a painting.
花样	huāyàng	variety, pattern; trick	她做菜的花样真多。 She can make so many different dishes.
立体	lìtǐ	three-dimensional	这张地图是立体的，山都凸出来了。 This map is three-dimensional: the mountains stick out.
个头儿	gètóur	height, size (of a person)	他个头儿不高，可是力气很大。 He isn’t tall, but he’s very strong.
巨人	jùrén	giant	那块大石头像一个站着的巨人。 That big rock looks like a standing giant.
渺小	miǎoxiǎo	tiny, insignificant	站在大山面前，人显得很渺小。 Standing before the great mountains, people look tiny.
微型	wēixíng	miniature, micro-	这是一台微型相机，放在口袋里就行。 This is a miniature camera: it fits in your pocket.
袖珍	xiùzhēn	pocket-sized	我带了一本袖珍字典。 I brought a pocket dictionary.

区区	qūqū	a mere, trifling	区区小事，不用客气。 It was nothing at all: no need to thank me.
胖乎乎	pànghūhū	chubby, plump	那个孩子胖乎乎的，真可爱。 That little kid is so chubby and cute.
稚嫩	zhìnèn	tender, young, immature	孩子稚嫩的声音让大家都笑了。 The child's little voice made everyone laugh.
宽敞	kuānchang	spacious, roomy	新房子的客厅很宽敞。 The living room in the new flat is very spacious.
宽阔	kuānkuò	broad, wide	这条马路很宽阔，可以并排开四辆车。 This road is very wide: four cars can drive side by side.
宽广	kuānguǎng	vast, broad (also of the mind)	到了下游，河面宽广，水流平静。 In its lower reaches the river is broad and the current calm.
宽松	kuānsōng	loose (clothes); relaxed, roomy	爬山最好穿宽松的衣服。 For hiking it's best to wear loose clothes.
宽泛	kuānfàn	broad, vague	这个题目太宽泛了，你得{dei3}写得具体一点儿。 This topic is too broad: you need to be more specific.
辽阔	liáokuò	vast, boundless (land, sea)	草原辽阔，一眼望不到边。 The grassland stretches away further than the eye can see.
开阔	kāikuò	open, wide; open-minded	站在山顶，眼前顿时开阔了。 At the top of the mountain, the view suddenly opened out.
浩瀚	hàohàn	vast (sea, sky, books)	夜里看着浩瀚的天空，人会变得很安静。 Gazing at the vast sky at night makes you very calm.
茫茫	mángmáng	boundless, hazy	大雪过后，四周白茫茫的一片。 After the heavy snow, everything around was a vast expanse of white.
狭小	xiáxiǎo	narrow and small, cramped	房间狭小，只放得下一张床。 The room is so cramped it only fits a bed.
狭窄	xiázhǎi	narrow	山路很狭窄，只能一个人走。 The path is so narrow that only one person can pass at a time.
陡	dǒu	steep	这段坡太陡了，我们慢慢走。 This slope is too steep: let's go slowly.
矗立	chùlì	to stand tall, tower	江边矗立着一座座高楼。 Tall buildings tower along the river.
屹立	yìlì	to stand firm, tower	这座古塔在山上屹立了一千年。 This old pagoda has stood on the hill for a thousand years.
耸立	sǒnglì	to rise high, tower	峡谷两边耸立着陡峭的悬崖。 Sheer cliffs rise high on both sides of the gorge.
挺拔	tǐngbá	tall and straight	路两边是一排排挺拔的大树。 Both sides of the road are lined with tall, straight trees.
莫	mò	nothing, no one (written)	人生最大的快乐莫过于和家人在一起。 Nothing in life is happier than being with your

pattern 莫过于: nothing is more ... than

最 + adjective + 的 | 莫过于 | the thing

……莫过于X means “nothing is more … than X”: 最美的莫过于这里的日出. It is written and a little formal; in speech the same idea is 最……的就是……了.

这一路上，最美的莫过于悬崖上那几棵挺拔的大树。 **zhè yílù shàng zuì měi de mò guòyú xuányá shàng nà jǐ kē tǐngbá de dà shù** Of everything on the way, nothing was more beautiful than those tall, straight trees on the cliff.

走了一天，最舒服的莫过于在宽敞的客房里好好休息。 **zǒu le yì tiān zuì shūfu de mò guòyú zài kuānchang de kèfáng lǐ hǎohǎo xiūxi** After a day’s walking, nothing feels better than a good rest in a roomy guest room.

我觉得最了不起的，莫过于那座在山上屹立了一千年的古塔。 **wǒ juéde zuì liǎobuqǐ de mò guòyú nà zuò zài shān shàng yìlì le yìqiān nián de gǔ tǎ** To me, nothing is more remarkable than that old pagoda that has stood on the hill for a thousand years.

dialogue giants in the rock

little sister 哇！两边的悬崖这么高，像两个巨人。山下的村子里还传来孩子们稚嫩的读书声。
wā liǎng biān de xuányá zhème gāo xiàng liǎng gè jùrén shān xià de cūn zi lǐ hái chuán lái háizimen zhìnèn de dúshū shēng · Wow! The cliffs on either side are so high, like two giants. And you can hear the little voices of children reading aloud in the village below.

dr zhou 东边的悬崖有一千多米高。从下往上看，越往上越陡，最上面还有一点儿雪。
dōng biān de xuányá yǒu yìqiān duō mǐ gāo cóng xià wǎng shàng kàn yuè wǎng shàng yuè dǒu zuì shàngmiàn hái yǒuyìdiǎnr xuě · The cliff on the east side is over a thousand metres high. Looking up from the bottom, it gets steeper the higher it goes, and there's still a little snow at the very top.

little sister 悬崖上有一道裂缝，好像随时会掉下石头来！
xuányá shàng yǒu yídào lièfèng hǎoxiàng suíshí huì diào xià shítou lái · There's a crack in the cliff: it looks as if rocks could fall at any moment!

anna 站在这儿，我觉得自己特别渺小。你们看，那块大石头的轮廓像不像一个胖乎乎的孩子？
zhàn zài zhèr wǒ juéde zìjǐ tèbié miǎoxiǎo nǐmen kàn nà kuài dà shítou de lúnkuò xiàng bu xiàng yí gè pànghūhū de háizi · Standing here, I feel so tiny. Look, doesn't the outline of that big rock look like a chubby child?

little sister 像！它旁边那块中间凹进去，两边凸出来，扁扁的，有很多棱角，上面的花纹像格子衬衫。
xiàng tā pángbiān nà kuài zhōngjiān āo jinqu liǎng biān tū chulai biǎn biǎn de yǒu hěn duō léngjiǎo shàngmiàn de huāwén xiàng gézi chènshān · It does! The one next to it is hollow in the middle, sticks out on both sides, all flat and full of sharp edges, and the pattern on it looks like a checked shirt.

anna 我看得都出神了。
wǒ kàn de dōu chūshén le · I've been staring at them, completely spellbound.

dr zhou 这些石头花样很多，都是河水几万年冲出来的，有的光滑，有的粗糙，就像一本立体的地质书。
zhèxiē shítou huāyàng hěn duō dōu shì hé shuǐ jǐ wàn nián chōng chulai de yǒude guānghuá yǒude cūcāo jiù xiàng yì běn lìtǐ de dìzhì shū · These rocks come in all shapes: the river carved them over tens of thousands of years, some smooth, some rough. They're like a three-dimensional geology book.

anna 前面的路越来越窄了，还有一棵树横在路上。下面是白茫茫的河水，我有点儿怕。
qiánmiàn de lù yuè lái yuè zhǎi le hái yǒu yì kē shù héng zài lùshang xiàmiàn shì bái mángmáng de hé shuǐ wǒ yǒudiǎnr pà · The path ahead is getting narrower, and there's a tree lying across it. Down below the river is a mass of white water: I'm a bit scared.

dr zhou 小心，那段路有点儿倾斜。过了这一段，河面就宽阔了，前面是辽阔的高原，眼前马上就开阔了，心情也会舒畅很多。
xiǎoxīn nà duàn lù yǒudiǎnr qīngxié guò le zhè yí duàn hé miàn jiù kuānkuò le qiánmiàn shì liáokuò de gāoyuán yǎnqián mǎshàng jiù kāikuò le xīnqíng yě huì shūchàng hěn duō · Careful, that bit slopes a little. After this stretch the river widens, the plateau stretches out ahead, the view opens right up, and you'll feel much better.

little sister 我个头儿小，走窄路没问题。区区几公里，难不倒我！我还带了一台微型相机，一路拍下来。
wǒ gètóur xiǎo zǒu zhǎi lù méi wèntí qūqū jǐ gōnglǐ nán bù dǎo wǒ wǒ hái dài le yì tái wēixíng xiàngjī yílù pāi xialai · I'm small, so narrow paths are no problem. A mere few kilometres won't beat me! And I've brought a mini camera to film the whole way.

anna 在狭小的办公室里待久了，最开心的莫过于看到这样的风景。一想到晚上能看浩瀚的天空，我就不累了。
zài xiáxiǎo de bàngōngshì lǐ dāi jiǔ le zuì kāixīn de mò guòyú kàn dào zhèyàng de fēngjǐng yì xiǎng dào wǎnshang néng kàn hàohàn de tiānkōng wǒ jiù bú lèi le · After so long in a cramped office, nothing makes me happier than a view like this. Just thinking about the vast night sky this evening, I'm not tired at all.

dr zhou 那就加油！不过一定要听向导的，别一个人乱走，不然落得个在山里迷路，那就麻烦了。

nà jiù jiāyóu búguò yídìng yào tīng xiàngdǎo de bié yí gè rén luàn zǒu bùrán luò de gè zài shān lǐ mílù nà jiù máfan le · Then keep going! But do listen to the guide and don't wander off alone, or you'll end up lost in the mountains, and that would be serious.

anna 放心，我们会紧跟着向导。这一路真是一条美丽的风景线。

fàngxīn wǒmen huì jǐn gēn zhe xiàngdǎo zhè yílù zhēn shì yì tiáo měilì de fēngjǐngxiàn · Don't worry, we'll stay right behind the guide. This whole route is one long beautiful view.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

绎
yì
unbroken

炖
dùn
to stew, braise

煲
bāo
to cook slowly in a pot (southern)

蒸
zhēng
to steam

good to know · Standing tall, three ways: 矗立 (tall buildings, towers), 耸立 (sheer height: cliffs, peaks), 屹立 (standing firm through time: an old pagoda, a nation). Wide, five ways: 宽敞 roomy (rooms), 宽阔 broad (roads, rivers), 宽广 vast (land, the mind), 宽松 loose (clothes, rules), 宽泛 vague (topics).

Towering, sunken, vast or cramped: you can now paint any landscape in Chinese, rock by rock.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 55 edges, sides and places

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 7 · travel and geography

Say where things are (on the edge, at the end, to one side, between, all around) and turn an argument round with 反过来（说）.

Maps, directions, search parties and debates all need precise place words. 反过来说 is the classic move for seeing a point from the other side.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
边缘	biānyuán	edge, margin; on the verge	别站在悬崖边缘拍照。 Don't stand on the edge of the cliff to take photos.
背面	bèimiàn	the back, reverse side	照片的背面写着日期。 The date is written on the back of the photo.
侧面	cèmiàn	side, flank; indirectly	从侧面看，这座山像一个人的脸。 From the side, this mountain looks like a face.
横向	héngxiàng	horizontal, across	跟别的旅馆横向比较，这家的价格居于中等。 Compared side by side with other guesthouses, this one is mid-priced.
局部	júbù	part, local	明天局部地区有雨。 Tomorrow there will be rain in places.
大片	dàpiàn	large stretch, expanse	山下是一大片树林。 Below the mountain is a great stretch of forest.
方圆	fāngyuán	circumference, all round	方圆十公里内只有这一个村子。 This is the only village for ten kilometres around.
四方	sìfāng	all directions, everywhere	四方的游客都来这里看日出。 Visitors come from all over to watch the sunrise here.
全方位	quánfāngwèi	all-round, all-sided	这台相机可以全方位拍摄。 This camera can shoot in every direction.
纵深	zòngshēn	depth (going inward)	越往峡谷的纵深走，路越难走。 The deeper you go into the gorge, the harder the path.
区间	qūjiān	range, interval	这里的房价区间在一百到两百元之间。 Rooms here range from one to two hundred yuan.
界限	jièxiàn	limit, dividing line (abstract)	工作和生活要有界限。 There should be a line between work and life.
界线	jièxiàn	boundary line	这条小溪就是两个村子的界线。 This stream is the boundary between the two villages.
尽头	jìntóu	end (of a road, river)	路的尽头是一个小村子。 At the end of the road there is a small village.
上限	shàngxiàn	upper limit	每个帐篷的人数上限是四个人。 Each tent sleeps four people at most.

终极	zhōngjí	ultimate, final	我们这次的终极目标是峡谷尽头的湖。 Our ultimate goal this time is the lake at the end of the gorge.
介于	jièyú	to lie between	这几天的气温介于十度和二十度之间。 Temperatures these days are between ten and twenty degrees.
居于	jūyú	to be in (a position), rank	这座山的高度在全省居于第二位。 This mountain is the second highest in the province.
所在	suǒzài	where something is, location	这就是问题所在。 That is where the problem lies.
坐落	zuòluò	to be located, sit (buildings)	村子坐落在两座山之间。 The village sits between two mountains.
一旁	yīpáng	one side, nearby	他一个人站在一旁，什么也没说。 He stood to one side on his own and said nothing.
去向	qùxiàng	whereabouts, direction gone	那只狗跑了，谁也不知道它的去向。 The dog ran off, and nobody knows where it went.
下落	xiàluò	whereabouts; to fall	丢了三天的包终于有下落了。 The bag lost three days ago has finally turned up.
遍布	biànbù	to be found everywhere	这一带遍布大大小小的湖泊。 This area is dotted with lakes, large and small.
附	fù	to attach, enclose	信后附了一张地图。 A map is enclosed with the letter.
附加	fùjiā	to add, additional	这个价格不附加任何费用。 There are no extra charges on top of this price.
挨	āi	to be next to; one by one	我们的帐篷挨着小溪。 Our tent is right next to the stream.
丙	bǐng	third (in a series), C	我们住在丙区，最里面是丁区。 We're in zone C; zone D is the furthest in.
丁	dīng	fourth (in a series), D	丁区在峡谷的最里面。 Zone D is the furthest into the gorge.
担	dàn	a shoulder-pole load	他挑着一担东西上山。 He carried a load up the mountain on his shoulder pole.

pattern 反过来（说）: the other way round

statement **反过来（说），** **the same idea, reversed**

反过来 means “turned the other way round”. As a linking phrase, 反过来（说）turns your point round to look at it from the other side: “conversely”, “by the same token”. It is great for arguments, advice and essays.

山里人帮了我们，反过来，我们也应该帮他们。 **shān lǐ rén bāng le wǒmen fǎnguolai wǒmen yě yīnggāi bāng tāmen** The mountain people helped us; by the same token, we should help them.

在山里迷路，待在原地最安全；反过来说，越走越远就越难找了。 **zài shān lǐ mílù dāi zài yuán dì zuì ānquán fǎnguolaishuō yuè zǒu yuè yuǎn jiù yuè nán zhǎo le** If you get lost in the mountains, staying put is safest; conversely, the further you walk, the harder you are to find.

工作和生活要有界限：工作不该影响生活；反过来说，生活也不该影响工作。 **gōngzuò hé shēnghuó yào yǒu jièxiàn gōngzuò bù gāi yǐngxiǎng shēnghuó fǎnguolaishuō shēnghuó yě bù gāi yǐngxiǎng gōngzuò** Work and life need a clear line between them: work shouldn’t spill into your life, and conversely, life shouldn’t get in the way of work.

dialogue where’s my sister?

anna 周博士，妹妹不见了！刚才她说去一旁拍照，现在不知道去向了。我心里慌乱得很。
Zhōubóshì mèimei bújiàn le gāngcái tā shuō qù yìpáng pāizhào xiànzài bù zhīdào qùxiàng le wǒ xīnlǐ huāngluàn de hěn · Dr Zhou, Xiaoming's sister has disappeared! She said she was going to the side to take photos, and now nobody knows where she went. I'm in a real state.

dr zhou 别慌。向导说过，在山里迷路，待在原地最安全；反过来说，越走越远，就越难找。她最后在哪儿?
bié huāng xiàngdǎo shuō guo zài shān lǐ mílù dāi zài yuán dì zuì ānquán fǎnguolaishuō yuè zǒu yuè yuǎn jiù yuè nán zhǎo tā zuìhòu zài nǎr · Don't panic. The guide told us that if you get lost in the mountains, staying put is safest; conversely, the further you walk, the harder you are to find. Where did you last see her?

anna 就在这个岔路口。她往右边那条小路的尽头走了。
jiù zài zhège chà lùkǒu tā wǎng yòubian nà tiáo xiǎo lù de jìntóu zǒu le · Right here at the fork. She went off towards the end of the path on the right.

dr zhou 看地图，右边是悬崖的边缘，左边是一大片树林。方圆两公里都没有人家，只有一个露营的地方挨着小溪。我们分头搜寻吧。
kàn dìtú yòubian shì xuányá de biānyuán zuǒbian shì yí dàpiàn shùlín fāngyuán liǎng gōnglǐ dōu méiyǒu rénjia zhǐyǒu yí gè lùyíng de dìfang āi zhe xiǎo xī wǒmen fēn tóu sōuxún ba · According to the map, on the right is the edge of the cliff, and on the left a big stretch of forest. There are no houses for two kilometres around, only a campsite next to the stream. Let's split up and search.

anna 这片树林那么大，她要是迷了路，我们就是彻夜去找，也不一定找得到她。
zhè piàn shùlín nàme dà tā yàoshi mí le lù wǒmen jiùshì chèyè qù zhǎo yě bù yídìng zhǎo de dào tā · The forest is so big: if she's lost, we could search all night and still not find her.

little sister （电话里）喂？我在一块大石头的背面，侧面有一条小溪。别担心，我没事！
diànhuà lǐ wèi wǒ zài yí kuài dà shítou de bèimiàn cèmiàn yǒu yì tiáo xiǎo xī bié dānxīn wǒ méishì · (on the phone) Hello? I'm behind a big rock, with a stream along the side. Don't worry, I'm fine!

dr zhou 太好了，总算有你的下落了！你待在那儿别动，我们马上过来。向导说今天晚上局部有雨，我们得早一点儿到。
tài hǎo le zǒngsuàn yǒu nǐ de xiàluò le nǐ dāi zài nàr bié dòng wǒmen mǎshàng guòlái xiàngdǎo shuō jīntiān wǎnshang júbù yǒu yǔ wǒmen děi zǎo yìdiǎnr dào · Thank goodness, at last we know where you are! Stay right there; we're coming. The guide says there'll be rain in places tonight, so we need to get there early.

little sister 对不起，我真羞愧！我只是想拍几张全方位的风景照，结果越走越远。
duìbuqǐ wǒ zhēn xiūkuì wǒ zhǐshì xiǎng pāi jǐ zhāng quánfāngwèi de fēngjǐng zhào jiéguǒ yuè zǒu yuè yuǎn · I'm sorry, I feel so ashamed! I just wanted some all-round shots of the view, and I kept walking further and further.

anna 吓死我了！你没受惊吧？以后你不管去哪儿，都得告诉我们。
xià sǐ wǒ le nǐ méi shòujīng ba yǐhòu nǐ bùguǎn qù nǎr dōu děi gàosu wǒmen · You scared me to death! Are you all right, not too shaken? From now on, wherever you go, you tell us first.

dr zhou 好了，出发吧。今天晚上露营的地方分甲、乙、丙、丁四个区，我们在丙区。丁区在峡谷的纵深处，每个区的人数上限是二十人。这儿很受欢迎，四方的游客都来。
hǎo le chūfā ba jīntiān wǎnshang lùyíng de dìfang fēn jiǎ yǐ bǐng dīng sì gè qū wǒmen zài bǐng qū dīng qū zài xiágǔ de zòngshēn chù měi gè qū de rénshù shàngxiàn shì èrshí rén zhèr hěn shòu huānyíng sìfāng de yóukè dōu lái · Right, let's go. Tonight's campsite has four zones, A, B, C and D, and we're in C. Zone D is deep in the gorge. Each zone takes twenty people at most. It's very popular: people come from all over.

little sister 你们看向导，一个人挑着一担东西，什么帐篷的、锅的，还比我们走得快！明天的终极目标是哪儿?
nǐmen kàn xiàngdǎo yí gè rén tiāo zhe yí dàn dōngxi shénme zhàngpeng de guō de hái bǐ wǒmen zǒu de kuài míngtiān de zhōngjí mùbiāo shì nǎr · Look at the guide: he's carrying a whole load on his shoulder pole, tents, pots, everything, and he's still faster than us! What's tomorrow's ultimate goal?

dr zhou 明天我们要走到两个县交界的那片地带。
míngtiān wǒmen yào zǒu dào liǎng gè xiàn jiāojiè de nà piàn dìdài · Tomorrow we walk to the area where two

counties meet.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

熏
xūn
to smoke (food); to fill with smoke

涮
shuàn
to dip-boil (hot pot); to rinse

拌
bàn
to mix, toss (a salad)

掺
chān
to mix in, add

good to know · 甲乙丙丁 (jiǎ yǐ bǐng dīng) are the old Chinese A, B, C, D: zones, grades, and the two parties to a contract, 甲方 and 乙方. Where is it? 所在 (the place where it is: 问题所在), 坐落 (where a building sits), 居于 (where it ranks), 介于 (what it lies between).

Edge, side, end, between, all around: you can now find anyone, or anything, on a Chinese map.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 56 mission: hiking in the mountains

Follow a whole hike in Chinese: the park notice at the gate, the last stretch of the gorge, a boat on the lake, the bumpy road home and the travel piece that comes out of it.

Everything from this unit comes together: mountains and rivers, far places, roads, boats and planes, setting off, shapes and sizes, edges and places.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the notice at the gate

dr zhou 今天是最后一段路，我们的终极目标就是峡谷尽头的湖。出发以前，先看看门口的通知。

jīntiān shì zuìhòu yí duàn lù wǒmen de zhōngjí mùbiāo jiùshì xiágǔ jìntóu de hú chūfā yǐqián xiān kàn kan ménkǒu de tōngzhī · Today is the last stretch: our ultimate goal is the lake at the end of the gorge. Before we set off, let's read the notice at the gate.

anna 我来读！（读）“各位游客：欢迎来到本景区！本景区坐落在两座雪山之间，是长江一条支流的发源地。由北向南，先是陡峭的峡谷和悬崖，再往南是瀑布和湖泊，最后是一片宽阔的平原。

wǒ lái dú dú gèwèi yóukè huānyíng lái dào běn jǐngqū běn jǐngqū zuòluò zài liǎng zuò xuěshān zhījiān shì chángjiāng yì tiáo zhīliú de fāyuándì yóu běi xiàng nán xiān shì dǒuqiào de xiágǔ hé xuányá zài wǎng nán shì pùbù hé húpō zuìhòu shì yí piàn kuānkuò de píngyuán · I'll read it! (reading) "Dear visitors, welcome to the scenic area! The area lies between two snow mountains and is the source of one of the Yangtze's tributaries. From north to south, first come steep gorges and cliffs, further south waterfalls and lakes, and finally a broad plain.

anna 本景区位于两个省的交界处，地势北高南低，方圆五十公里内遍布大大小小的湖泊和温泉，好去处很多。每年接待游客上百万人次，在全省仅次于省会附近的古城。请注意以下几点：

běn jǐngqū wèiyú liǎng gè shěng de jiāojiè chù dìshì běi gāo nán dī fāngyuán wǔshí gōnglǐ nèi biànbù dàdàxiǎoxiǎo de húpō hé wēnquán hǎo qùchù hěn duō měi nián jiēdài yóukè shàng bǎi wàn réncì zài quán shěng jǐncìyú shěnghuì fùjìn de gǔ chéng qǐng zhùyì yǐxià jǐ diǎn · The area lies where two provinces meet. The land is high in the north and low in the south, and for fifty kilometres around it is dotted with lakes and hot springs, so there are plenty of places to go. It receives over a million visits a year, second in the province only to the old town near the provincial capital. Please note the following:

anna 一、峡谷里的水域水流很急，禁止游泳。二、徒步的游客请走指定的路径，不要走到悬崖边缘，以防发生危险。三、露营的地方分甲、乙、丙、丁四个区，帐篷请搭在区内，每个区的人数上限为二十人。

yī xiágǔ lǐ de shuǐyù shuǐliú hěn jí jìnzhǐ yóuyǒng èr túbù de yóukè qǐng zǒu zhǐdìng de lùjìng búyào zǒu dào xuányá biānyuán yīfáng fāshēng wēixiǎn sān lùyíng de dìfang fēn jiǎ yǐ bǐng dīng sì gè qū zhàngpeng qǐng dā zài qū nèi měi gè qū de rénshù shàngxiàn wéi èrshí rén · 1. The waters in the gorge are fast-flowing: no swimming. 2. Hikers must keep to the marked paths and stay away from the cliff edges, in case of accidents. 3. The campsite has four zones, A, B, C and D. Please pitch tents inside the zones; each zone takes twenty people at most.

anna 四、山里天气多变，加之有的路段狭窄，若遇到大雨，请在原地等待，请勿单独行动。倘若迷失方向，请拨打救援电话，必要时景区会派直升机救援。

sì shān lǐ tiānqì duō biàn jiāzhī yǒude lùduàn xiázhǎi ruò yùdào dà yǔ qǐng zài yuán dì děngdài qǐng wù dāndú xíngdòng tǎngruò míshī fāngxiàng qǐng bōdǎ jiùyuán diànhuà bìyào shí jǐngqū huì pài zhíshēngjī jiùyuán · 4. Mountain weather is changeable, and on top of that some stretches of path are narrow: if there is heavy rain, wait where you are and do not set off alone. If you lose your way, call the rescue number; if necessary, the scenic area will send a helicopter.

anna 五、缆车站在山谷的侧面，上行和下行的缆车每天早上八点到下午五点运行。六、私家车请停放在大门一旁的停车场。七、景区内有星级酒店，亦有民居客房，食宿可在游客中心预订，露营费里不附加别的费用。请保管好随身物品，且爱护山川树木。祝各位旅途愉快！”

wǔ lǎnchē zhàn zài shāngǔ de cèmiàn shàngxíng hé xiàxíng de lǎnchē měi tiān zǎoshang bā diǎn dào xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn yùnxíng liù sījiāchē qǐng tíngfàng zài dà mén yìpáng de tíngchēchǎng qī jǐngqū nèi yǒu xīngjí jiǔdiàn yì yǒu mínjū kèfáng shísù kě zài yóukè zhōngxīn yùdìng lùyíng fèi lǐ bú fùjiā biéde fèiyong qǐng bǎoguǎn hǎo suíshēn wùpǐn qiě àihù shānchuān shùmù zhù gèwèi lǚtú yúkuài · 5. The cable car station is on the side of the valley; cars going up and down run from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. daily. 6. Private cars must park in the car park beside the main gate. 7. There are star-rated hotels in the area and also rooms in local houses; board and lodging can be

booked at the visitor centre, and there are no extra charges on top of the camping fee. Please look after your belongings and take care of the landscape and the trees. Have a pleasant journey!”

dr zhou 通知的背面还附了一张地图。你们看，我们在这儿，湖在峡谷的纵深处，路的尽头。
tōngzhī de bèimiàn hái fù le yì zhāng dìtú nǐmen kàn wǒmen zài zhèr hú zài xiágǔ de zòngshēn chù lù de jìntóu · There’s a map on the back of the notice. Look: we’re here, and the lake is deep in the gorge, at the very end of the path.

little sister 写得真全面！以防、倘若、亦、且，全是书面上的说法。
xiě de zhēn quánmiàn yǐfáng tǎngruò yì qiě quán shì shūmiàn shàng de shuōfǎ · That covers everything! 以防, 倘若, 亦, 且: it’s all written language.

dr zhou 通知和合同都这么写。鉴于昨天的事，今天谁也不许一个人乱走。
tōngzhī hé hétóng dōu zhème xiě jiànyú zuótiān de shì jīntiān shéi yě bùxǔ yí gè rén luàn zǒu · Notices and contracts are always written like that. In view of what happened yesterday, nobody wanders off alone today.

little sister 知道了！我动不动就迷路，今天一定跟紧向导。
zhīdào le wǒ dòngbudòng jiù mílù jīntiān yídìng gēn jǐn xiàngdǎo · I know! I get lost at the drop of a hat, so today I’ll stick right behind the guide.

chapter 2 chapter 2: the last stretch

dr zhou 从这儿往前，路越来越窄。左边耸立着悬崖，右边是峡谷，下面就是河水。
cóng zhèr wǎng qián lù yuè lái yuè zhǎi zuǒbian sǒnglì zhe xuányá yòubian shì xiágǔ xiàmiàn jiùshì hé shuǐ · From here on the path gets narrower and narrower. Cliffs tower on the left, the gorge drops away on the right, and the river is right below.

anna 前面那个瀑布好高！水从山上冲下来，像一块挂在悬崖上的白布。
qiánmiàn nàge pùbù hǎo gāo shuǐ cóng shān shàng chōng xialai xiàng yí kuài guà zài xuányá shàng de bái bù · That waterfall ahead is so high! The water pours down the mountain like a white cloth hanging on the cliff.

little sister 那边的石头凹凸不平，像巨人的脸。还有那块扁扁的，轮廓像一只鞋。
nàbiān de shítou āo tū bùpíng xiàng jùrén de liǎn hái yǒu nà kuài biǎn biǎn de lúnkuò xiàng yì zhī xié · The rocks over there are all lumps and hollows, like a giant's face. And that flat one is shaped like a shoe.

anna 小心，前面有一棵树横在路上，旁边的石头还有点儿倾斜。
xiǎoxīn qiánmiàn yǒu yì kē shù héng zài lùshang pángbiān de shítou hái yǒudiǎnr qīngxié · Careful, there's a tree lying across the path ahead, and the rock beside it is leaning a bit.

dr zhou 这些石头有棱角，也有花纹，花样多得很。你们看那块，立体得像一个胖乎乎的小熊。
zhèxiē shítou yǒu léngjiǎo yě yǒu huāwén huāyàng duō de hěn nǐmen kàn nà kuài lìtǐ de xiàng yí gè pànghūhū de xiǎo xióng · These rocks have sharp edges and patterns too, all kinds of shapes. Look at that one: it's so three-dimensional it looks like a chubby little bear.

dr zhou 这条河的上游在雪山上，到了下游，河面就宽阔了。沿岸的村子都靠这条河生活。
zhè tiáo hé de shàngyóu zài xuěshān shàng dào le xiàyóu hé miàn jiù kuānkuò le yánàn de cūn zi dōu kào zhè tiáo hé shēnghuó · This river's upper reaches are up in the snow mountains; in the lower reaches it broadens out. All the villages along its banks live off it.

anna 从悬崖上往下看，河对岸的村子小得像玩具。在大自然面前，人真渺小。
cóng xuányá shàng wǎng xià kàn hé duìàn de cūn zi xiǎo de xiàng wánjù zài dàzìrán miànqián rén zhēn miǎoxiǎo · Looking down from the cliff, the village on the far bank is as small as a toy. Before nature, people are so tiny.

little sister 这条小溪就是两个村子的界线吧？向导挑着一担东西，挨着溪水走得飞快。
zhè tiáo xiǎo xī jiùshì liǎng gè cūn zi de jièxiàn ba xiàngdǎo tiāo zhe yí dàn dōngxi āi zhe xī shuǐ zǒu de fēi kuài · Is this stream the boundary between the two villages? The guide is carrying a full load on his shoulder pole and racing along right beside the water.

dr zhou 对。这一带是整条山脉里最美的一段，长江的这条支流就发源于前面的雪山，流过一大片森林，最后进入长江流域。
duì zhè yídài shì zhěng tiáo shānmài lǐ zuì měi de yí duàn chángjiāng de zhè tiáo zhīliú jiù fāyuán yú qiánmiàn de xuěshān liú guò yí dàpiàn sēnlín zuìhòu jìnrù chángjiāng liúyù · Yes. This is the most beautiful part of the whole range. The Yangtze tributary rises in the snow mountains ahead, runs through a great stretch of forest, and finally joins the Yangtze basin.

anna 山谷里矗立着一棵棵挺拔的大树，上面是浩瀚的天空，远处的雪山白茫茫的。真是大好江山！
shāngǔ lǐ chùlì zhe yì kē kē tǐngbá de dà shù shàngmiàn shì hàohàn de tiānkōng yuǎn chù de xuěshān bái mángmáng de zhēnshi dà hǎo jiāngshān · Tall straight trees tower in the valley, the vast sky is above us, and the snow mountains in the distance are a sea of white. What a glorious country!

little sister 我的腿快走不动了。区区十公里，怎么这么累？
wǒ de tuǐ kuài zǒu bu dòng le qūqū shí gōnglǐ zěnme zhème lèi · My legs can barely move. It's a mere ten kilometres: why am I so tired?

dr zhou 山路崎岖，又陡又滑，在这儿走十公里比在平原上走二十公里还累。况且我们每个人还背着帐篷和睡袋。
shān lù qíqū yòu dǒu yòu huá zài zhèr zǒu shí gōnglǐ bǐ zài píngyuán shàng zǒu èrshí gōnglǐ hái lèi kuàngqiě wǒmen měi gè rén hái bēi zhe zhàngpeng hé shuìdài · The path is rough, steep and slippery: ten kilometres here is harder than twenty on the plain. And besides, we're each carrying a tent and a sleeping bag.

anna 加油！我觉得旅行中最开心的，莫过于走到最后看见风景的那一刻了。
jiāyóu wǒ juéde lǚxíng zhōng zuì kāixīn de mò guòyú zǒu dào zuìhòu kànjiàn fēngjǐng de nà yí kè le · Keep going! For me, nothing on a trip beats the moment you reach the end and see the view.

little sister 哇，到了！湖在那儿！湖水那么蓝，四周雪山的影子都在水里。
wā dào le hú zài nàr hú shuǐ nàme lán sìzhōu xuěshān de yǐngzi dōu zài shuǐ lǐ · Wow, we're here! There's the lake! The water is so blue, and the snow mountains all around are reflected in it.

dr zhou 这就是峡谷的尽头。这个湖也是那条支流的发源地之一，我要在这儿取几个水样。
zhè jiùshì xiágǔ de jìntóu zhège hú yě shì nà tiáo zhīliú de fāyuándì zhī yī wǒ yào zài zhèr qǔ jǐ gè shuǐ yàng · This is the end of the gorge. The lake is also one of the sources of that tributary: I'm going to take a few water samples here.

chapter 3 chapter 3: a boat on the lake

dr zhou 湖边有个小港湾，停泊着几条游船和渔船。我们租一条小船，自己划桨吧。
hú biān yǒu gè xiǎo gǎngwān tíngbó zhe jǐ tiáo yóuchuán hé yúchuán wǒmen zū yì tiáo xiǎo chuán zìjǐ huá jiǎng ba · There's a little harbour on the lake, with a few pleasure boats and fishing boats moored there. Let's hire a small boat and row ourselves.

anna 好啊！你们看那边的帆船，白色的帆，就像一幅画。
hǎo a nǐmen kàn nàbiān de fānchuán báisè de fān jiù xiàng yì fú huà · Great! Look at the sailing boats over there with their white sails: it's like a painting.

little sister 我来划！……哎呀，船怎么老是转圈？
wǒ lái huá āiyā chuán zěnme lǎoshì zhuǎn quān · I'll row! … Oh no, why does the boat keep going round in circles?

anna 你动不动就用力太大，两只桨要一起划。
nǐ dòngbudòng jiù yònglì tài dà liǎng zhī jiǎng yào yìqǐ huá · You keep pulling too hard: you have to row with both oars together.

dr zhou 我年轻的时候跟打鱼的人在海上航行过，学过一点儿航海。来，我教你。
wǒ niánqīng de shíhou gēn dǎ yú de rén zài hǎi shàng hángxíng guo xué guo yìdiǎnr hánghǎi lái wǒ jiāo nǐ · When I was young I sailed with fishermen and learned a bit of seamanship. Here, I'll show you.

little sister 周博士，您工作之余也常去海边吗？
Zhōubóshì nín gōngzuò zhī yú yě cháng qù hǎi biān ma · Dr Zhou, do you often go to the seaside too, when you're not working?

dr zhou 常去。我在一个半岛上住过一年，那儿有海湾、海滩，还有很多小岛屿，坐船过海峡只要一个小时。
cháng qù wǒ zài yí gè bàndǎo shàng zhù guo yì nián nàr yǒu hǎiwān hǎitān hái yǒu hěn duō xiǎo dǎoyǔ zuò chuán guò hǎixiá zhǐyào yí gè xiǎoshí · Often. I once lived on a peninsula for a year: there were bays and beaches and lots of little islands, and it was only an hour by boat across the strait.

anna 你这样到处漂泊，不累吗？
nǐ zhèyàng dàochù piāobó bú lèi ma · Isn't it tiring, always wandering around like that?

little sister 我妈妈公司做航运，她的船舶在海上一走就是几个星期。集装箱用海运，货运便宜，客运就不行了，太慢。
wǒ māma gōngsī zuò hángyùn tā de chuánbó zài hǎi shàng yì zǒu jiùshì jǐ gè xīngqī jízhuāngxiāng yòng hǎiyùn huòyùn piányi kèyùn jiù bùxíng le tài màn · My mum's company is in shipping: her ships are at sea for weeks at a time. Sea freight in containers is cheap for goods, but no good for passengers: far too slow.

dr zhou 所以客流都去坐飞机和高铁了。我住在半岛的时候，夏天海滨和沙滩上全是来避暑、郊游的人。
suǒyǐ kèliú dōu qù zuò fēijī hé gāotiě le wǒ zhù zài bàndǎo de shíhou xiàtiān hǎibīn hé shātān shàng quán shì lái bìshǔ jiāoyóu de rén · So passengers all take planes and high-speed trains. When I lived on the peninsula, in summer the seafront and the beaches were packed with people escaping the heat or on day trips.

anna 我小时候也喜欢在河畔和运河边漫游，那时候觉得自己像在探险。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou yě xǐhuan zài hépàn hé yùnhé biān mànyóu nà shíhou juéde zìjǐ xiàng zài tànxiǎn · When I was little, I loved wandering by the river and along the canal: I felt like I was on an expedition.

dr zhou 累是累，可是去的地方多了，心也开阔了。反过来说，一直待在办公室里，人容易变得狭隘。
lèi shì lèi kěshì qù de dìfang duō le xīn yě kāikuò le fǎnguolaishuō yìzhí dāi zài bàngōngshì lǐ rén róngyì biàn de xiáài · Tiring, yes, but the more places you go, the more open your mind becomes. Conversely, if you stay in an office all the time, it's easy to become narrow-minded.

little sister 我以后也要环球旅行，从赤道一直走到北极！
wǒ yǐhòu yě yào huánqiú lǚxíng cóng chìdào yìzhí zǒu dào běijí · One day I'm going round the world too, all the way from the equator to the North Pole!

dr zhou 好啊！从大陆走到海岛，国内乃至全世界，都值得去看看。
hǎo a cóng dàlù zǒu dào hǎi dǎo guó nèi nǎizhì quán shìjiè dōu zhídé qù kàn kan · Why not! From the

continent to the islands, from home to the whole world: it's all worth seeing.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the road home

dr zhou 向导开车送我们去机场。后备箱放得下所有的行李吗?

xiàngdǎo kāichē sòng wǒmen qù jīchǎng hòubèixiāng fàng de xià suǒyǒu de xíngli ma · The guide is driving us to the airport. Will all the luggage fit in the boot?

anna 放得下，帐篷和睡袋都装进去了，随身只带一个小包。

fàng de xià zhàngpeng hé shuìdài dōu zhuāng jinqu le suíshēn zhǐ dài yí gè xiǎo bāo · Yes, the tents and sleeping bags are all in. I'm just keeping one small bag with me.

dr zhou 向导一大早就动身来接我们了。他握着方向盘开了一整天，轮胎也检查过了，这一段路途不短。

xiàngdǎo yí dà zǎo jiù dòngshēn lái jiē wǒmen le tā wò zhe fāngxiàngpán kāi le yì zhěng tiān lúntāi yě jiǎnchá guo le zhè yí duàn lùtú bù duǎn · The guide set off first thing to fetch us. He's been at the wheel all day and he's checked the tyres: it's a long way.

little sister 这条山路好颠簸，车动不动就跳一下。

zhè tiáo shān lù hǎo diānbǒ chē dòngbudòng jiù tiào yíxià · This mountain road is so bumpy: the car jumps at every little thing.

dr zhou 前面的路段在施工，车辆要绕行。我们穿过隧道，再上立交桥，这是去机场的捷径。

qiánmiàn de lùduàn zài shīgōng chēliàng yào ràoxíng wǒmen chuānguò suìdào zài shàng lìjiāoqiáo zhè shì qù jīchǎng de jiéjìng · There are road works on the stretch ahead, and traffic has to detour. We'll go through the tunnel and up onto the flyover: it's a shortcut to the airport.

anna 看！前面有一辆卡车在掉头，后面两辆轿车差点儿追尾。

kàn qiánmiàn yǒu yí liàng kǎchē zài diàotóu hòumiàn liǎng liàng jiàochē chàdiǎnr zhuīwěi · Look! There's a lorry turning round ahead, and two cars behind it nearly crashed into each other.

little sister 前面有个岔路口，往左会不会绕远儿?

qiánmiàn yǒu gè chà lùkǒu wǎng zuǒ huì bu huì ràoyuǎnr · There's a fork ahead: will going left take us the long way round?

dr zhou 不会，向导很熟，他驾车给游客带路已经二十年了。我们留了一点儿机动时间，来得及。

bú huì xiàngdǎo hěn shú tā jià chē gěi yóukè dàilù yǐjīng èrshí nián le wǒmen liú le yìdiǎnr jīdòng shíjiān láidejí · No, the guide knows the way: he's been driving visitors around for twenty years. And we've left ourselves some spare time, so we'll make it.

dr zhou 山里开车，最怕有人逆行。还好向导开车向来很小心。

shān lǐ kāichē zuì pà yǒu rén nìxíng hái hǎo xiàngdǎo kāichē xiànglái hěn xiǎoxīn · Driving in the mountains, the worst is people going the wrong way. Luckily the guide is always a careful driver.

little sister 沿途的风景真美。若是有时间，我真想再逗留几天。

yántú de fēngjǐng zhēn měi ruòshì yǒu shíjiān wǒ zhēn xiǎng zài dòuliú jǐ tiān · The scenery along the way is so beautiful. If I had time, I'd love to stay a few more days.

anna 我们搭乘的是晚上九点的航班，我的位子靠窗。来的时候我坐的是过道的位子，这次要从机舱里好好看看风景。

wǒmen dāchéng de shì wǎnshang jiǔ diǎn de hángbān wǒ de wèizi kào chuāng lái de shíhou wǒ zuò de shì guòdào de wèizi zhè cì yào cóng jīcāng lǐ hǎohǎo kàn kan fēngjǐng · Our flight is at nine tonight, and I have a window seat. On the way here I had an aisle seat; this time I'll really watch the scenery from the cabin.

little sister 包袱太大的话，要放进行李舱。我只带了一个小包，顺路还买了一点儿特产。

bāofu tài dà dehuà yào fàng jìn xíngli cāng wǒ zhǐ dài le yí gè xiǎo bāo shùnlù hái mǎi le yìdiǎnr tèchǎn · If your bag is too big, it has to go in the hold. I've only got a small one, and I picked up some local specialities on the way.

dr zhou 下次吧。我们得按时赶到机场，免得错过航班。机场是全省的交通枢纽，直达北京的航班一天好几趟。

xià cì ba wǒmen děi ànshí gǎn dào jīchǎng miǎnde cuòguò hángbān jīchǎng shì quán shěng de jiāotōng shūniǔ zhídá Běijīng de hángbān yì tiān hǎo jǐ tàng · Next time. We have to get to the airport on time so we don't miss the flight. The airport is the province's transport hub, with several direct flights to Beijing a day.

anna 上了飞机，我就把这次的见闻写下来，林编辑等着呢。

shàng le fēijī wǒ jiù bǎ zhè cì de jiànwén xiě xialai Línbiānjí děng zhe ne · Once we're on the plane, I'll write down everything we saw and heard: Editor Lin is waiting.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the travel piece

editor lin 安娜，欢迎旅行归来！游记写好了吗？
Ānnà huānyíng lǚxíng guīlái yóu jì xiě hǎo le ma · Anna, welcome back from your travels! Is the piece written?

anna 写好了，我给你们念开头：（读）“从北京坐客机往西南飞，从一万米的高空往下看，先是辽阔的平原，再是丘陵，最后是一座座雪山。
xiě hǎo le wǒ gěi nǐmen niàn kāitóu dú cóng Běijīng zuò kèjī wǎng xīnán fēi cóng yí wàn mǐ de gāokōng wǎng xià kàn xiān shì liáokuò de píngyuán zài shì qiūlíng zuìhòu shì yí zuò zuò xuěshān · It is: I’ll read you the start. (reading) “Fly south-west from Beijing, and from ten thousand metres up you see first the vast plains, then hills, and finally snow mountain after snow mountain.

anna 下了飞机，我们一行三人坐车穿越山岭，来到峡谷口。峡谷两边的悬崖已经屹立了几百万年，在它们面前，我们的烦恼显得那么渺小。”
xià le fēijī wǒmen yìxíng sān rén zuò chē chuānyuè shānlǐng lái dào xiágǔ kǒu xiágǔ liǎng biān de xuányá yǐjīng yìlì le jǐ bǎi wàn nián zài tāmen miànqián wǒmen de fánnǎo xiǎnde nàme miǎoxiǎo · Off the plane, our party of three drove through the mountains to the mouth of the gorge. The cliffs on either side have stood there for millions of years, and before them our worries seemed so small.”

xiaoming 写得真好！那天我送你们去机场，还担心你们会在山里滞留呢。
xiě de zhēn hǎo nà tiān wǒ sòng nǐmen qù jīchǎng hái dānxīn nǐmen huì zài shān lǐ zhìliú ne · That’s really good! When I drove you to the airport that day, I was worried you’d get stranded in the mountains.

editor lin 写得很好，就是有的地方太宽泛了。比如峡谷里的村子，你可以写得具体一点儿：坐落在哪儿，有什么特色。
xiě de hěn hǎo jiùshì yǒude dìfang tài kuānfàn le bǐrú xiágǔ lǐ de cūn zi nǐ kěyǐ xiě de jùtǐ yìdiǎnr zuòluò zài nǎr yǒu shénme tèsè · It’s very good, but some parts are too vague. The village in the gorge, for example: be more specific. Where does it sit, what makes it special?

anna 好。村子在峡谷的边缘，很偏僻，一天只有一趟车，可是村里的人特别热情。
hǎo cūn zi zài xiágǔ de biānyuán hěn piānpì yì tiān zhǐyǒu yí tàng chē kěshì cūn lǐ de rén tèbié rèqíng · OK. The village is on the edge of the gorge, very out of the way, with just one bus a day, but the people there are incredibly warm.

editor lin 我在边疆也有同感。越是偏远、荒凉的地方，人越热情。而且越是边远的地方，越有自己的风景线。那儿的经度跟北京差了三四十度，纬度也高，夏天晚上十点天还亮着。
wǒ zài biānjiāng yě yǒu tónggǎn yuè shì piānyuǎn huāngliáng de dìfang rén yuè rèqíng érqiě yuè shì biānyuǎn de dìfang yuè yǒu zìjǐ de fēngjǐngxiàn nàr de jīngdù gēn Běijīng chà le sānsìshí dù wěidù yě gāo xiàtiān wǎnshang shí diǎn tiān hái liàng zhe · I felt the same at the frontier. The more remote and bleak the place, the warmer the people. And the more far-flung the place, the more it has its own kind of beauty. It’s thirty or forty degrees of longitude from Beijing, at a high latitude, and in summer it’s still light at ten at night.

editor lin 我从边疆回来的时候，飞机飞过边境上空，从窗户往下看，边界那条河清清楚楚，真是奇观。
wǒ cóng biānjiāng huílái de shíhou fēijī fēi guo biānjìng shàngkōng cóng chuānghu wǎng xià kàn biānjiè nà tiáo hé qīngqīngchuchu zhēnshi qíguān · On my way back from the frontier, as the plane flew over the border I looked down, and the river along the border was crystal clear: an amazing sight.

xiaoming 我还以为边疆跟乡下一样，没想到口岸那么繁华，跟内地的大都会差不多。
wǒ hái yǐwéi biānjiāng gēn xiāngxia yíyàng méi xiǎng dào kǒuàn nàme fánhuá gēn nèidì de dà dūhuì chàbuduō · I thought the frontier would be like the countryside: I didn’t expect the border crossing to be so busy, almost like a big city in the interior.

editor lin 境内境外的商人天天过境，河上还修了一座大坝，变化可大了。
jìngnèi jìngwài de shāngrén tiān tiān guòjìng hé shàng hái xiū le yí zuò dà bà biànhuà kě dà le · Traders from inside and outside the country cross every day, and they’ve built a big dam on the river: it has changed enormously.

xiaoming 下次你们去哪儿？戈壁？绿洲？还是边境的口岸？
xià cì nǐmen qù nǎr gēbì lǜzhōu háishi biānjìng de kǒuàn · Where are you two going next? The Gobi? An oasis? Or a border crossing?

editor lin 我想去看看沼泽里的鸟。安娜，若是有空，你亦可一起去。

wǒ xiǎng qù kàn kan zhǎozé lǐ de niǎo Ānnà ruòshì yǒu kōng nǐ yì kě yìqǐ qù · I'd like to go and see the birds in the marshes. Anna, if you're free, you're welcome to come too.

anna 好啊！不过先让我在家休息几天，免得累坏了。

hǎo a búguò xiān ràng wǒ zài jiā xiūxi jǐ tiān miǎnde lèi huài le · I'd love to! But first let me rest at home for a few days, so I don't wear myself out.

A gorge, a lake, a boat, a bumpy road and a story to tell: you have travelled a whole unit in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 57 wild and tame animals

Name wild and farm animals, birds and pests, talk about hunters and prey, and say “do each thing when it’s time” with 该X就X.

Animals fill Chinese idioms, stories and nature writing. A day at the zoo is the easiest way to meet them all at once.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
豹	bào	leopard	豹爬树爬得特别快。 Leopards climb trees incredibly fast.
狐狸	húli	fox	狐狸在洞里做了一个窝。 The fox has made a den in the hole.
鹿	lù	deer	几只鹿在树林边吃草。 A few deer are grazing at the edge of the wood.
骏马	jùnmǎ	fine horse, steed	草原上有一匹白色的骏马。 There is a white steed on the grassland.
猩猩	xīngxing	orangutan, great ape	那只猩猩在吃香蕉。 That orangutan is eating a banana.
恐龙	kǒnglóng	dinosaur	孩子们都喜欢看恐龙。 Kids all love looking at dinosaurs.
鳄鱼	èyú	crocodile	鳄鱼看起来很懒，其实非常凶猛。 Crocodiles look lazy, but they’re extremely fierce.
鲸	jīng	whale	鲸是世界上最大的动物。 Whales are the largest animals in the world.
海豚	hǎitún	dolphin	海豚是一种很聪明的动物。 Dolphins are very clever animals.
龟	guī	tortoise, turtle	池子里有一只一百多岁的老龟。 There is a tortoise over a hundred years old in the pond.
鲤鱼	lǐyú	carp	公园的湖里有很多红色的鲤鱼。 There are lots of red carp in the park lake.
大雁	dàyàn	wild goose	秋天，一群大雁往南飞。 In autumn, a flock of wild geese flies south.
天鹅	tiāné	swan	湖上有两只白天鹅。 There are two white swans on the lake.
仙鹤	xiānhè	red-crowned crane	仙鹤的头上有一块红色。 The red-crowned crane has a red patch on its head.
鹰	yīng	eagle, hawk	一只鹰在山谷上空飞来飞去。 An eagle is circling above the valley.
燕子	yànzi	swallow (bird)	燕子在屋檐下面做了一个窝。 Swallows have built a nest under the eaves.

鸽子	gēzi	pigeon, dove	广场上的鸽子一点儿也不怕人。 The pigeons in the square aren't afraid of people at all.
鹅	é	goose	院子里养着几只白色的大鹅。 A few big white geese are kept in the yard.
家禽	jiāqín	poultry	鸡和鹅都是家禽。 Chickens and geese are both poultry.
牲畜	shēngchù	livestock	牛和羊是牲畜。 Cattle and sheep are livestock.
苍蝇	cāngying	fly (insect)	厨房里有一只苍蝇，快把它赶出去。 There's a fly in the kitchen: shoo it out.
蚊子	wénzi	mosquito	夏天晚上蚊子特别多。 There are loads of mosquitoes on summer evenings.
害虫	hàichóng	pest, harmful insect	燕子吃害虫，是农民的好朋友。 Swallows eat pests: they're farmers' friends.
野兽	yěshòu	wild beast	以前这片森林里有很多野兽。 There used to be lots of wild animals in this forest.
凶猛	xiōngměng	fierce, ferocious	老虎是一种凶猛的动物。 The tiger is a ferocious animal.
天敌	tiāndí	natural enemy, predator	鹰是很多小动物的天敌。 Eagles are the natural enemy of many small animals.
捕食	bǔshí	to prey on, hunt for food	狐狸常常在晚上出来捕食。 Foxes often come out at night to hunt.
猎物	lièwù	prey	豹悄悄地靠近它的猎物。 The leopard creeps up on its prey.
猎人	lièrén	hunter	故事里的猎人最后放走了小鹿。 In the story the hunter lets the little deer go in the end.
打猎	dǎliè	to hunt	现在这一带不许打猎了。 Hunting is no longer allowed round here.
诱饵	yòuěr	bait	钓鱼的时候，他用虫子做诱饵。 When he goes fishing he uses worms as bait.
爪子	zhuǎzi	claw, paw	鹰用爪子抓住了一条鱼。 The eagle caught a fish in its claws.
巢穴	cháoxué	lair, den, nest	狐狸的巢穴一般在山洞里。 A fox's den is usually in a cave.
窝	wō	nest, den; litter	大白的窝就在门口。 Dabai's bed is right by the door.
鸟巢	niǎocháo	bird's nest	树上有一个鸟巢。 There's a bird's nest in the tree.

pattern 该x就x: do each thing when it's time

该 + X　（就）X，　该 + Y （就）Y

该X就X says: when it’s time for X, do X, no fuss. Two of them in a row describe an easy, sensible rhythm: 该吃就吃，该睡就睡. Use the same verb twice. 动不动就, from day 51, is its opposite: things that happen far too easily.

我们家大白该吃就吃，该睡就睡，什么也不操心。 **wǒmen jiā Dàbái gāi chī jiù chī gāi shuì jiù shuì shénme yě bù cāoxīn** Our Dabai eats when it’s time to eat and sleeps when it’s time to sleep: not a care in the world.

广场上的鸽子该吃就吃，该飞就飞，一点儿也不怕人。 **guǎngchǎng shàng de gēzi gāi chī jiù chī gāi fēi jiù fēi yìdiǎnr yě bú pà rén** The pigeons in the square eat when they want and fly when they want: they aren’t afraid of people at all.

在动物园里，该看的看，该拍的拍，可是别吵着动物。 **zài dòngwùyuán lǐ gāi kàn de kàn gāi pāi de pāi kěshì bié chǎo zhe dòngwù** At the zoo, look at what you want and take your photos, but don’t disturb the animals.

dialogue sunday at the zoo

little sister 先去看猩猩！听说那只猩猩动不动就向游客扔香蕉皮。
xiān qù kàn xīngxing tīngshuō nà zhī xīngxing dòngbudòng jiù xiàng yóukè rēng xiāngjiāo pí · Let's see the apes first! Apparently that orangutan throws banana skins at visitors at the drop of a hat.

xiaoming 你小时候也一样，动不动就扔东西。
nǐ xiǎoshíhou yě yíyàng dòngbudòng jiù rēng dōngxi · You were just the same as a kid: always throwing things.

anna 你们看那边，几只鹿在吃草，一旁还有几匹骏马。
nǐmen kàn nàbiān jǐ zhī lù zài chī cǎo yìpáng hái yǒu jǐ pǐ jùnmǎ · Look over there: a few deer are grazing, and there are some fine horses beside them.

xiaoming 野兽区在后面，有豹、狐狸，还有鳄鱼。它们都是凶猛的动物，在野外靠捕食生活，小动物都是它们的猎物。
yěshòu qū zài hòumiàn yǒu bào húli hái yǒu èyú tāmen dōu shì xiōngměng de dòngwù zài yěwài kào bǔshí shēnghuó xiǎo dòngwù dōu shì tāmen de lièwù · The wild animals are at the back: leopards, foxes and crocodiles. They're all fierce animals that live by hunting in the wild, and small animals are their prey.

little sister 以前山里有很多猎人，现在不许随便打猎了。
yǐqián shān lǐ yǒu hěn duō lièrén xiànzài bùxǔ suíbiàn dǎliè le · There used to be lots of hunters in the mountains; now you're not allowed to hunt as you please.

xiaoming 前几天新闻里说，一只鹿在山里迷失了方向，跑到了公路中间。
qián jǐ tiān xīnwén lǐ shuō yì zhī lù zài shān lǐ míshī le fāngxiàng pǎo dào le gōnglù zhōngjiān · The news the other day said a deer lost its way in the mountains and ended up in the middle of the road.

anna 那个工作人员在干什么？把肉挂在树上当诱饵？
nàge gōngzuò rényuán zài gàn shénme bǎ ròu guà zài shù shàng dàng yòuěr · What is that keeper doing? Hanging meat in the tree as bait?

xiaoming 对，让豹自己爬上去拿，这样它们就不会忘了怎么用爪子。豹的巢穴就在那块凸出来的大石头后面。
duì ràng bào zìjǐ pá shangqu ná zhèyàng tāmen jiù bú huì wàng le zěnme yòng zhuǎzi bào de cháoxué jiù zài nà kuài tū chulai de dà shítou hòumiàn · Yes: the leopards have to climb up and get it themselves, so they don't forget how to use their claws. Their den is behind that big rock sticking out.

little sister 大水池里还有海豚和白鲸！湖上有天鹅和仙鹤，天上还飞过一群大雁。
dà shuǐ chí lǐ hái yǒu hǎitún hé bái jīng hú shàng yǒu tiāné hé xiānhè tiānshàng hái fēi guò yì qún dàyàn · There are dolphins and belugas in the big pool! There are swans and cranes on the lake, and a flock of wild geese just flew over.

xiaoming 去年我们坐游船的时候，也看见过一群海豚跟在船后面。
qùnián wǒmen zuò yóuchuán de shíhou yě kànjiàn guò yì qún hǎitún gēn zài chuán hòumiàn · Last year, when we took a pleasure boat, we saw a pod of dolphins following the boat too.

anna 池子里的鲤鱼好多啊。那只龟在池子边缘一动也不动，是不是睡着了？
chí zi lǐ de lǐyú hǎoduō a nà zhī guī zài chí zi biānyuán yí dòng yě bú dòng shì bu shì shuì zháo le · There are so many carp in the pond. That tortoise at the edge of the pond isn't moving at all: is it asleep?

xiaoming 它都一百多岁了，该吃就吃，该睡就睡，比我们会生活。走，出去以后我们顺路去自然博物馆看恐龙！
tā dōu yìbǎi duō suì le gāi chī jiù chī gāi shuì jiù shuì bǐ wǒmen huì shēnghuó zǒu chūqù yǐhòu wǒmen shùnlù qù zìrán bówùguǎn kàn kǒnglóng · It's over a hundred years old: it eats when it's time to eat and sleeps when it's time to sleep. It knows how to live better than we do. Come on, after this let's drop in at the natural history museum on the way and see the dinosaurs!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

剥
bāo
to peel, shell

削
xiāo
to peel (with a knife), pare

宰
zǎi
to slaughter, kill (for food); to rip off

榨
zhà
to press, squeeze (juice, oil)

good to know · Animal homes: 窝 (any nest or den, even a dog's bed), 巢 / 鸟巢 (a bird's nest), 巢穴 (a lair; also a gang's hideout), 洞 (a hole or burrow). 鸟巢 is also the nickname of Beijing's National Stadium, built for the 2008 Olympics, and 水立方 (the Water Cube) stands next to it.

Leopards, cranes, crocodiles and a hundred-year-old tortoise: the whole animal kingdom now speaks Chinese to you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 58 how animals live

Explain how animals live (hatch, migrate, hibernate, breed, survive) and how people raise them, and give your reasons one by one with 一来……，二来……，三来……

Nature documentaries, museum labels and science articles are full of these words. 一来……二来…… is the natural way to list reasons when you explain anything.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
哺乳	bǔrǔ	to suckle, breastfeed	鲸是哺乳动物，不是鱼。 Whales are mammals, not fish.
孵化	fūhuà	to hatch, incubate	小鸡从鸡蛋里孵化出来了。 The chicks have hatched from their eggs.
卵	luǎn	egg (biology), ovum	很多鱼一次能产几千个卵。 Many fish can lay thousands of eggs at a time.
繁衍	fányǎn	to multiply, reproduce	这些鸟在这片湖边繁衍了几千年。 These birds have bred by this lake for thousands of years.
雌性	cíxìng	female (animals)	这只鸟是雌性的，颜色没那么鲜艳。 This bird is a female: its colours aren't as bright.
雄性	xióngxìng	male (animals)	雄性的鸟，颜色往往更漂亮。 Male birds are often more colourful.
两栖	liǎngqī	amphibious	有些动物是两栖的，在水里和陆地上都能生活。 Some animals are amphibious: they can live both in water and on land.
迁徙	qiānxǐ	to migrate	每年秋天，很多鸟要迁徙到南方。 Every autumn, many birds migrate south.
休眠	xiūmián	to hibernate, lie dormant	熊冬天要休眠好几个月。 Bears hibernate for months in winter.
物种	wùzhǒng	species	这个物种现在已经很少了。 This species is now very rare.
存活	cúnhuó	to survive	离开了水，鱼很难存活。 Out of water, fish can hardly survive.
捕获	bǔhuò	to catch, capture	渔船一次捕获了很多鱼。 The fishing boat caught a lot of fish in one go.
鸣	míng	to cry, sing (birds); to sound	清早，树林里鸟鸣声不断。 Early in the morning, the woods are full of birdsong.
飞翔	fēixiáng	to fly, soar	一群鸟在湖面上自由地飞翔。 A flock of birds soars freely over the lake.
驯	xùn	to tame, train	人们驯狗已经有一万多年了。 People have been taming dogs for more than ten thousand years.
饲养	sìyǎng	to raise, breed (animals)	他在家里饲养了几只兔子。 He keeps a few rabbits at home.

饲料	sìliào	animal feed, fodder	冬天草少，要给牛羊准备饲料。 There's little grass in winter, so you have to prepare feed for the cattle and sheep.
畜牧	xùmù	animal husbandry	这里的人主要靠畜牧生活。 People here live mainly by raising livestock.
养殖	yǎngzhí	to farm, breed (fish, animals)	这个村子靠养殖鱼虾富了起来。 This village got rich by farming fish and prawns.
牧场	mùchǎng	pasture, ranch	夏天，牧民把牛羊赶到山上的牧场。 In summer the herders drive their cattle and sheep to the mountain pastures.
牧民	mùmín	herder, herdsman	牧民们一年要搬好几次家。 The herders move several times a year.
圈	juān	to pen in, shut in	天黑了，把羊圈{juan1-7}起来。 It's getting dark: pen the sheep in.
圈	juàn	pen, fold (for animals)	羊圈{juan4-7}里有五十多只{zhi1}羊。 There are over fifty sheep in the fold.
渔民	yúmín	fisherman	渔民们天不亮就出海了。 The fishermen put out to sea before dawn.
贝壳	bèiké	shell, seashell	孩子们在沙滩上捡贝壳。 The children are collecting shells on the beach.
壳	ké	shell, husk	鸡蛋壳很薄，一碰就破。 Eggshells are thin and break at a touch.
海绵	hǎimián	sponge	海绵能吸很多水。 A sponge can soak up a lot of water.
海藻	hǎizǎo	seaweed	很多小鱼藏在海藻里。 Lots of little fish hide in the seaweed.
礁石	jiāoshí	reef, rocks	船撞上了礁石。 The boat hit the rocks.
自然界	zìránjiè	the natural world	自然界里有很多我们不了解的事。 There's a lot we don't understand about the natural world.
生机	shēngjī	vitality, signs of life	春天来了，到处都充满了生机。 Spring has come, and everything is full of life.

pattern 一来……，二来……: for one thing …, for another …

result / choice, | 一来 + reason 1, | 二来 + reason 2 | (，三来……)

一来……，二来…… lists the reasons for something, one by one: "for one thing …, for another …". Add 三来 for a third. It is everyday and neat at the same time, perfect for explaining choices. The reasons usually come after what they explain.

大雁往南飞，一来南方暖和，二来那儿吃的东西多。 **dàyàn wǎng nán fēi yìlái nánfāng nuǎnhuo èrlái nàr chī de dōngxi duō** Wild geese fly south because, for one thing, it's warmer there, and for another, there's more to eat.

牧民常常搬家，一来是为了找新的牧场，二来也让草有时间长回来。 **mùmín chángcháng bānjiā yìlái shì wèile zhǎo xīn de mùchǎng èrlái yě ràng cǎo yǒu shíjiān cháng huilai** Herders move often, partly to find new pastures and partly to give the grass time to grow back.

我喜欢这家博物馆，一来不要钱，二来离家近，三来孩子们也喜欢。 **wǒ xǐhuan zhè jiā bówùguǎn yìlái búyào qián èrlái lí jiā jìn sānlái háizimen yě xǐhuan** I like this museum: it's free, it's close to home, and the kids love it too.

dialogue a walk through the museum

dr zhou 欢迎来到自然博物馆！自然界里的物种多得数不清，大到鲸，小到苍蝇，今天我们就看看动物是怎么生活的。
huānyíng lái dào zìrán bówùguǎn zìránjiè lǐ de wùzhǒng duō de shù bù qīng dà dào jīng xiǎo dào cāngying jīntiān wǒmen jiù kàn kan dòngwù shì zěnme shēnghuó de · Welcome to the natural history museum! There are more species in the natural world than anyone can count, from huge ones like whales to tiny ones like flies. Today let's see how animals live.

little sister 周博士，鲸为什么是哺乳动物，不是鱼？
Zhōubóshì jīng wèi shénme shì bǔrǔ dòngwù bú shì yú · Dr Zhou, why are whales mammals and not fish?

dr zhou 一来它用肺呼吸，二来小鲸是妈妈喂大的。鱼呢，大多是产卵的。
yìlái tā yòng fèi hūxī èrlái xiǎo jīng shì māma wèi dà de yú ne dàduō shì chǎn luǎn de · For one thing, they breathe with lungs; for another, baby whales are fed by their mothers. Fish mostly lay eggs.

anna 这两只鸟一只颜色鲜艳，一只灰灰的。哪个是雌性，哪个是雄性？
zhè liǎng zhī niǎo yì zhī yánsè xiānyàn yì zhī huī huī de nǎge shì cíxìng nǎge shì xióngxìng · One of these two birds is brightly coloured and the other is grey. Which is the female and which is the male?

dr zhou 漂亮的是雄性。它天天鸣叫、飞翔，就是为了让雌性注意它。小鸟孵化以后，它们一起养孩子，就这样一代代繁衍下去。
piàoliang de shì xióngxìng tā tiān tiān míng jiào fēixiáng jiùshì wèile ràng cíxìng zhùyì tā xiǎo niǎo fūhuà yǐhòu tāmen yìqǐ yǎng háizi jiù zhèyàng yídài dài fányǎn xiaqu · The pretty one is the male. He sings and flies about all day just to get the female's attention. When the chicks hatch, they raise the chicks together, and so they breed generation after generation.

xiaoming 这块牌子上说，这种鸟每年要迁徙几千公里，沿途要躲开很多天敌，最后能存活下来的不到一半。
zhè kuài páizi shàng shuō zhè zhǒng niǎo měi nián yào qiānxǐ jǐ qiān gōnglǐ yántú yào duǒ kāi hěn duō tiāndí zuìhòu néng cúnhuó xialai de bú dào yíbàn · This label says that this bird migrates thousands of kilometres every year, dodging plenty of predators along the way, and fewer than half survive.

dr zhou 对。以前猎人大量捕获它们，加之环境变化，现在已经很少了。若不好好保护，这个物种就可能消失。
duì yǐqián lièrén dàliàng bǔhuò tāmen jiāzhī huánjìng biànhuà xiànzài yǐjīng hěn shǎo le ruò bù hǎohǎo bǎohù zhège wùzhǒng jiù kěnéng xiāoshī · Yes. Hunters used to catch them in huge numbers, and on top of that the environment has changed, so now they're rare. If we don't protect them properly, the species could disappear.

little sister 那边是海里的东西：贝壳、海绵、海藻，还有一大块礁石！那个大壳是海龟的吗？
nàbiān shì hǎi lǐ de dōngxi bèiké hǎimián hǎizǎo hái yǒu yí dà kuài jiāoshí nàge dà ké shì hǎi guī de ma · Over there it's all from the sea: shells, sponges, seaweed and a huge piece of reef! Is that big shell a sea turtle's?

dr zhou 是。渔民说，礁石附近鱼最多，可是船也容易撞上去，所以在这一带航行一定要小心，以防出事。
shì yúmín shuō jiāoshí fùjìn yú zuì duō kěshì chuán yě róngyì zhuàng shangqu suǒyǐ zài zhè yídài hángxíng yídìng yào xiǎoxīn yǐfáng chū shì · Yes. Fishermen say there are most fish around the reefs, but boats can easily hit them, so you have to be careful sailing in these waters, in case of accidents.

xiaoming 最后一部分讲畜牧：牧民在牧场上放牛放羊，晚上把羊圈起来，关进羊圈里。现在很多地方是饲养、养殖，用饲料喂家禽和牲畜。
zuìhòu yí bùfen jiǎng xùmù mùmín zài mùchǎng shàng fàng niú fàng yáng wǎnshang bǎ yáng juān qǐlai guān jìn yáng juàn lǐ xiànzài hěn duō dìfang shì sìyǎng yǎngzhí yòng sìliào wèi jiāqín hé shēngchù · The last section is about herding: herders graze their cattle and sheep on the pastures, and at night they pen the sheep into the fold. Nowadays a lot of places raise animals on farms and give the poultry and livestock feed.

anna 人类最早是怎么学会驯动物的？狼可是凶猛的野兽啊。
rénlèi zuì zǎo shì zěnme xuéhuì xùn dòngwù de láng kěshì xiōngměng de yěshòu a · How did humans first learn to tame animals? Wolves are fierce wild beasts, after all.

dr zhou 一来动物能帮人干活，二来能给人肉和牛奶，三来嘛，狗还能陪人！人驯狗已经有一万多年了。

yìlái dòngwù néng bāng rén gànhuó èrlái néng gěi rén ròu hé niúnǎi sānlái ma gǒu hái néng péi rén rén xùn gǒu yǐjīng yǒu yí wàn duō nián le · For one thing, animals could work for people; for another, they gave meat and milk; and third, well, dogs keep people company! Humans have been taming dogs for over ten thousand years.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

沏
qī
to make (tea), infuse

烹
pēng
boil

饪
rèn
cook

剂
jì
dose; (measure) a dose of medicine

good to know · Raising animals: 饲养 (feed and keep, any animal), 养殖 (farm on a large scale, often fish and poultry), 畜牧 (herding livestock on pasture), 驯 (tame). 圈 has three readings: quān (circle: 圆圈), juān (to pen in), juàn (a pen: 羊圈, 猪圈).

Hatching, migrating, hibernating, herding: you can now walk through any natural history museum and explain it in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 59 trees and flowers

Name trees and flowers, describe how plants grow, bloom and fade, and list reasons in writing with 一则……，二则……

Chinese poetry, essays and everyday small talk are full of flowers and trees, each with its own meaning. And 一则……二则…… is how notices and essays give their reasons.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
百合	bǎihé	lily	婚礼上摆满了白色的百合。 The wedding was full of white lilies.
荷花	héhuā	lotus flower	夏天，湖里的荷花都开了。 In summer, all the lotuses on the lake are in flower.
茉莉	mòlì	jasmine	很多老北京人爱喝茉莉花茶。 Lots of old Beijingers love jasmine tea.
牡丹	mǔdan	peony	春天，公园里的牡丹都开了，又大又美。 In spring the peonies in the park are all out, big and beautiful.
桂花	guìhuā	osmanthus, sweet olive	秋天，桂花开了，满街都是香味。 In autumn the osmanthus blooms and the whole street smells sweet.
花卉	huāhuì	flowers and plants	这个市场卖各种花卉。 This market sells all kinds of flowers and plants.
花瓣	huābàn	petal	风一吹，花瓣落了一地。 When the wind blew, petals fell all over the ground.
花蕾	huālěi	flower bud	满树都是花蕾，过几天就要开了。 The tree is covered in buds: they'll open in a few days.
芽	yá	sprout, bud	树枝上长出了新芽。 New shoots have sprung from the branches.
苗	miáo	seedling, young plant	地里的苗长得很好。 The seedlings in the field are growing well.
籽	zǐ	seed	花开过以后，会留下很多籽。 After flowering, they leave lots of seeds.
茎	jīng	stem, stalk	这种{zhong3}花的茎又细又长。 This flower has a long, thin stem.
藤蔓	téngwàn	vine, creeper	老房子的墙上爬满了藤蔓。 The walls of the old house are covered in creepers.
荆棘	jīngjí	thorny bushes, brambles	路边长满了荆棘，走的时候小心一点儿。 The path is lined with brambles: be careful as you go.
草丛	cǎocóng	thick grass	一只小兔子藏在草丛里。 A little rabbit is hiding in the long grass.

丛林	cónglín	jungle, dense forest	南方的丛林里有很多我们没见过的动物。 The southern jungles are home to many animals we've never seen.
柏树	bǎishù	cypress	这个公园里有很多几百年的老柏树。 This park has many cypresses hundreds of years old.
槐树	huáishù	pagoda tree (Chinese scholar tree)	院子里那棵老槐树长得很茂盛。 The old pagoda tree in the courtyard is thriving.
柳树	liǔshù	willow	柳树发芽了，春天就要来了。 The willows are budding: spring is nearly here.
杨树	yángshù	poplar	路两边种着一排排杨树。 Both sides of the road are planted with rows of poplars.
松树	sōngshù	pine tree	冬天，山上的松树还是绿色的。 In winter the pines on the mountain are still green.
树干	shùgàn	tree trunk	这棵树的树干很粗，三个人|才抱得过来。 This tree's trunk is so thick it takes three people to get their arms round it.
树梢	shùshāo	treetop	月亮挂在树梢上。 The moon hangs above the treetops.
树荫	shùyīn	shade of a tree	我们去树荫下坐一会儿吧。 Let's go and sit in the shade for a bit.
年轮	niánlún	growth rings	从树干的年轮可以看出树的年龄。 You can tell a tree's age from the rings in its trunk.
茂密	màomì	dense, thick (plants)	山上的树林很茂密，阳光都照不进来。 The forest on the mountain is so dense that the sun can't get through.
茂盛	màoshèng	lush, flourishing	雨水多，草长得特别茂盛。 With so much rain, the grass is especially lush.
盛开	shèngkāi	to be in full bloom	公园里的花都盛开了。 The flowers in the park are all in full bloom.
绽放	zhànfàng	to burst into bloom	她的脸上绽放出了笑容。 A smile burst across her face.
萌发	méngfā	to sprout, germinate	看了那部电影，他萌发了学中文的想法。 After seeing that film, the idea of learning Chinese took root in him.
萌芽	méngyá	to sprout; a bud, beginning	这个计划还在萌芽阶段。 This plan is still in its infancy.
发芽	fāyá	to sprout, germinate	种子在土里发芽了。 The seeds have sprouted in the soil.
凋谢	diāoxiè	to wither and fall (flowers)	花凋谢了，可是明年还会再开。 The flowers have faded, but they'll bloom again next year.
枯萎	kūwěi	withered	很久没浇水，花都枯萎了。 They haven't been watered for ages, and the flowers have all withered.
干枯	gānkū	dried up, withered	天太热，河都干枯了。 It's so hot that the river has dried up.

pattern 一则……，二则……: firstly …, secondly …

decision / fact,	一则 + reason 1,	二则 + reason 2	(，三则……)

一则……，二则…… does the same job as 一来……，二来…… (day 58), listing reasons one by one, but it sounds written and formal: notices, letters, reports. 三则 adds a third reason.

本园冬天提前关门，一则天黑得早，二则游客较少。 **běn yuán dōngtiān tíqián guān mén yìzé tiān hēi de zǎo èrzé yóukè jiào shǎo** The garden closes early in winter: firstly because it gets dark early, and secondly because there are fewer visitors.

我推荐种茉莉，一则好养，二则花香，三则不贵。 **wǒ tuījiàn zhǒng mòlì yìzé hǎo yǎng èrzé huā xiāng sānzé bú guì** I recommend growing jasmine: it's easy to look after, its flowers smell lovely, and it's cheap.

他这次没来，一则工作太忙，二则身体不太好。 **tā zhè cì méi lái yìzé gōngzuò tài máng èrzé shēntǐ bú tài hǎo** He didn't come this time, partly because he was too busy with work and partly because he wasn't well.

dialogue the scent of osmanthus

ms zhang 安娜，你闻，好香！这是桂花，秋天盛开，香味能飘好远。树上还有不少花蕾呢。
Ānnà nǐ wén hǎo xiāng zhè shì guìhuā qiūtiān shèngkāi xiāng wèi néng piāo hǎo yuǎn shù shàng hái yǒu bù shǎo huālěi ne · Anna, smell that! It's osmanthus: it blooms in autumn and you can smell it from far away. And there are still plenty of buds on the tree.

anna 花这么小，香味却这么浓。旁边那些是什么花卉？
huā zhème xiǎo xiāng wèi què zhème nóng pángbiān nàxiē shì shénme huāhuì · Such tiny flowers, and such a strong scent. What are those plants next to it?

ms zhang 那是百合和茉莉。春天这儿的牡丹最有名，可惜现在不是时候。
nà shì bǎihé hé mòlì chūntiān zhèr de mǔdan zuì yǒumíng kěxī xiànzài bú shì shíhou · Those are lilies and jasmine. In spring the peonies here are famous, but it's the wrong season now.

anna 我在云南徒步的时候，山上遍布野花，可惜我一种也叫不出名字。
wǒ zài Yúnnán túbù de shíhou shān shàng biànbù yě huā kěxī wǒ yì zhǒng yě jiào bu chū míngzi · When I was hiking in Yunnan, the mountains were covered in wild flowers, but I couldn't name a single one.

little sister 湖里的荷花都枯萎了，花瓣也掉光了，只剩下干枯的茎，几只鹅在旁边游来游去。
hú lǐ de héhuā dōu kūwěi le huābàn yě diào guāng le zhǐ shèng xià gānkū de jīng jǐ zhī é zài pángbiān yóu lái yóu qù · The lotuses on the lake have all withered: the petals have fallen, and only the dry stems are left, with a few geese swimming about beside them.

ms zhang 它现在虽然不好看，可是花凋谢了，莲子会留下来，在泥里存活一个冬天。春天又萌发新芽，到了夏天，荷花又会绽放。
tā xiànzài suīrán bù hǎokàn kěshì huā diāoxiè le liánzǐ huì liú xialai zài ní lǐ cúnhuó yí gè dōngtiān chūntiān yòu méngfā xīn yá dào le xiàtiān héhuā yòu huì zhànfàng · It may not look like much now, but when the flowers fade, the lotus seeds stay behind and survive the winter in the mud. In spring they put out new shoots, and by summer the lotuses bloom again.

anna 这边的松树和柏树又高又挺拔，树梢都快碰到天了。
zhèbiān de sōngshù hé bǎishù yòu gāo yòu tǐngbá shùshāo dōu kuài pèng dào tiān le · The pines and cypresses here are so tall and straight: their tops almost touch the sky.

ms zhang 柏树能活上千年，连害虫都很少碰它。你看这段老树干，一圈年轮就是一年。
bǎishù néng huó shàng qiān nián lián hàichóng dōu hěn shǎo pèng tā nǐ kàn zhè duàn lǎo shùgàn yì quān niánlún jiùshì yì nián · Cypresses can live for a thousand years; even pests rarely touch them. Look at this old trunk: each ring is one year.

little sister 那边的那片杨树很茂密，我们去树荫下坐一会儿吧。小心，路边有荆棘和藤蔓，草丛里说不定还有虫子。
nàbiān de nà piàn yángshù hěn màomì wǒmen qù shùyīn xià zuò yíhuìr ba xiǎoxīn lùbiān yǒu jīngjí hé téngwàn cǎocóng lǐ shuōbudìng hái yǒu chóngzi · The poplar wood over there is really dense: let's sit in the shade for a while. Careful, there are brambles and creepers by the path, and there might be insects in the long grass.

anna 这条路这么狭窄，走在这儿就像在丛林里探险。门口的通知我来读：（读）“本园冬天提前关门，一则天黑得早，二则游客较少。请各位注意时间。”
zhè tiáo lù zhème xiázhǎi zǒu zài zhèr jiù xiàng zài cónglín lǐ tànxiǎn ménkǒu de tōngzhī wǒ lái dú dú běn yuán dōngtiān tíqián guān mén yìzé tiān hēi de zǎo èrzé yóukè jiào shǎo qǐng gèwèi zhùyì shíjiān · The path is so narrow: walking here feels like exploring a jungle. I'll read the notice by the gate: (reading) "The garden closes early in winter, firstly because it gets dark early, and secondly because there are fewer visitors. Please keep an eye on the time."

ms zhang 我家阳台上的花苗也发芽了，种的是我妈妈留下的花籽。冬天我得把它们搬进房间，一则外面太冷，二则房间里暖和。
wǒ jiā yángtái shàng de huā miáo yě fāyá le zhòng de shì wǒ māma liúxia de huā zǐ dōngtiān wǒ děi bǎ tāmen bān jìn fángjiān yìzé wàimiàn tài lěng èrzé fángjiān lǐ nuǎnhuo · The seedlings on my balcony have sprouted too, from seeds my mother left me. In winter I'll have to bring them inside: firstly it's too cold outside, and secondly it's warm indoors.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

腻
nì
greasy

腥
xīng
fishy (smell, taste)

嫩
nèn
tender; delicate, young

酥
sū
crispy, flaky; limp (limbs)

good to know · Blooming, in four steps: 萌芽 / 发芽 (sprout) → 花蕾 (bud) → 盛开 / 绽放 (bloom) → 凋谢 / 枯萎 (fade, wither). Flowers have meanings: 牡丹 wealth and honour, 荷花 purity, 百合 a happy marriage (百年好合), 松树 and 柏树 long life and steadfastness.

Bud, bloom, fade, sprout again: you can now follow a plant through its whole year in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 60 fields and farms

Talk about farming (ploughing, irrigating, fertilising, planting, picking and harvesting) and offer alternatives with 或……，或……

China still farms a huge part of its land, and harvest, soil and water come up in the news, in essays and in every trip to the countryside.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
耕	gēng	to plough, till	以前农民用牛耕田。 Farmers used to plough the fields with oxen.
耕地	gēngdì	to plough; farmland	这个村子有两千亩耕地。 This village has two thousand mu of farmland.
耕耘	gēngyún	to cultivate, work hard	一分耕耘，一分收获。 You reap what you sow: every bit of effort brings its reward.
开垦	kāikěn	to clear land, reclaim	这些地{di4-3}是他年轻时自己开垦的。 He cleared this land himself when he was young.
锄	chú	hoe; to hoe, weed	奶奶在菜地里锄草。 Grandma is hoeing the weeds in the vegetable patch.
灌溉	guàngài	to irrigate	农民用河水灌溉农田。 The farmers irrigate the fields with river water.
肥料	féiliào	fertiliser	春天要给苹果树加一些肥料。 In spring the apple trees need some fertiliser.
化肥	huàféi	chemical fertiliser	化肥用得太多，土会变坏。 If you use too much chemical fertiliser, the soil gets worse.
粪	fèn	dung, manure	他用牛粪做肥料。 He uses cow dung as fertiliser.
粪便	fènbiàn	excrement, droppings	请把狗的粪便带走。 Please take your dog's droppings away with you.
禾苗	hémiáo	young crops, seedlings	下过雨，田里的禾苗长得更好了。 After the rain, the young crops in the fields are doing even better.
稻草	dàocǎo	rice straw	孩子们在稻草堆上跳来跳去。 The children are jumping about on the pile of straw.
作物	zuòwù	crop	这里的主要作物是小麦和玉米。 The main crops here are wheat and maize.
棉花	miánhuā	cotton	这件衬衫是棉花做的，很舒服。 This shirt is made of cotton: very comfortable.
麻	má	hemp, flax	这种布是用麻做的。 This cloth is made from hemp.
栽	zāi	to plant, grow	我们在院子里栽了几棵树。 We planted a few trees in the yard.

栽培	zāipéi	to cultivate, grow; to train	这种{zhong3}花是他自己栽培的。 He grew these flowers himself.
茁壮	zhuózhuàng	sturdy, thriving	孩子们在这里茁壮成长。 The children grow up healthy and strong here.
采摘	cǎizhāi	to pick, harvest (by hand)	周末很多城里人去农场采摘苹果。 At weekends lots of city people go to farms to pick apples.
收割	shōugē	to harvest, reap	小麦熟了，该收割了。 The wheat is ripe: it's time to harvest.
盛产	shèngchǎn	to produce in abundance	这一带盛产苹果。 This area is famous for its apples.
农场	nóngchǎng	farm	我们周末去农场摘苹果。 We're going to a farm to pick apples at the weekend.
田间	tiánjiān	in the fields	农民们在田间忙了一整天。 The farmers were busy in the fields all day.
田野	tiányě	open fields, countryside	火车开过{guo4}一片片田野。 The train runs past field after field.
田园	tiányuán	countryside, rural life	很多城里人向往田园生活。 Many city people long for a life in the country.
泥土	nítǔ	soil, earth	下过雨，空气里有泥土的味道。 After the rain, the air smells of earth.
淤泥	yūní	silt, sludge	河底有很厚的淤泥。 There's a thick layer of silt on the riverbed.
泥泞	nínìng	muddy	下过雨，路很泥泞。 After the rain the road is very muddy.
泥潭	nítán	mire, quagmire	车开进了泥潭，出不来了。 The car drove into the mire and got stuck.
坑	kēng	pit, hole; to cheat	路上有一个大坑，开车小心。 There's a big pothole in the road: drive carefully.
池塘	chítáng	pond	池塘里有很多小鱼。 There are lots of little fish in the pond.
流水	liúshuǐ	running water	山间的流水声很好听。 The sound of running water in the hills is lovely.
流淌	liútǎng	to flow, run	山间流淌着一条小河。 A little river runs through the hills.
淡水	dànshuǐ	fresh water	地球上的淡水其实很少。 There is actually very little fresh water on Earth.
地下水	dìxiàshuǐ	groundwater	这里的人打井用地下水。 People here dig wells to use the groundwater.

pattern 或……，或……: either …, or …

或 + choice 1， | 或 + choice 2 | （，或……）

或……，或…… lists alternatives or different people's different choices: "some …, others …", "either …, or …". It is a neat, slightly written version of 有的……有的…… or 要么……要么…… Use it before verbs or verb phrases.

村里的年轻人或去城里工作，或留在家里种地。 **cūn lǐ de niánqīng rén huò qù chéng lǐ gōngzuò huò liú zài jiā lǐ zhòngdì** The young people in the village either go to work in the city or stay at home and farm.

农场的肥料，或用化肥，或用牛粪，各有各的好处。 **nóngchǎng de féiliào huò yòng huàféi huò yòng niú fèn gè yǒu gè de hǎochù** Fertiliser on a farm can be either chemical or cow dung: each has its advantages.

退休以后，他或在田间干活，或在家看书，过得很自在。 **tuìxiū yǐhòu tā huò zài tiánjiān gànhuó huò zài jiā kàn shū guò de hěn zìzai** Since retiring he either works in the fields or reads at home: he lives a carefree life.

dialogue an invitation to the farm

xiaoming 我岳父岳母在乡下开了一个农场，下个月收割，请你们去玩。
wǒ yuèfù yuèmǔ zài xiāngxia kāi le yí gè nóngchǎng xià gè yuè shōugē qǐng nǐmen qù wán · My parents-in-law run a farm in the countryside. They harvest next month, and they've invited you both.

little sister 太好了！农场里种什么作物?
tài hǎo le nóngchǎng lǐ zhòng shénme zuòwù · Brilliant! What crops do they grow?

xiaoming 主要是小麦和玉米，还有一点儿棉花和麻。那一带盛产苹果，秋天可以去采摘。
zhǔyào shì xiǎomài hé yùmǐ hái yǒuyìdiǎnr miánhuā hé má nà yídài shèngchǎn píngguǒ qiūtiān kěyǐ qù cǎizhāi · Mostly wheat and maize, and a bit of cotton and hemp. The area is famous for apples, so in autumn you can go picking.

anna 你岳父真厉害，那么多地都是他种的?
nǐ yuèfù zhēn lìhai nàme duō dì dōu shì tā zhòng de · Your father-in-law is amazing: he farms all that land?

xiaoming 那些耕地是他二十年前自己开垦的，那儿原来全是荆棘。以前用牛耕田，用锄头锄草，现在都用机器了。
nàxiē gēngdì shì tā èrshí nián qián zìjǐ kāikěn de nàr yuánlái quán shì jīngjí yǐqián yòng niú gēng tián yòng chú tou chú cǎo xiànzài dōu yòng jīqì le · He cleared that farmland himself twenty years ago: it used to be all brambles. They used to plough with oxen and weed with hoes; now it's all done by machine.

little sister 农场里也饲养动物吗?
nóngchǎng lǐ yě sìyǎng dòngwù ma · Do they keep animals on the farm too?

xiaoming 养了几头牛和一大群鸡，春天还有小鸡孵化出来。
yǎng le jǐ tóu niú hé yí dà qún jī chūntiān hái yǒu xiǎo jī fūhuà chulai · A few cows and a big flock of chickens, and in spring chicks hatch.

little sister 水从哪儿来?
shuǐ cóng nǎr lái · Where does the water come from?

xiaoming 山上的流水流进一个长满荷花的池塘，再用来灌溉。他们也打井用地下水，不过不能用太多，淡水越来越少了。
shān shàng de liúshuǐ liú jìn yí gè zhǎng mǎn héhuā de chítáng zài yònglái guàngài tāmen yě dǎ jǐng yòng dìxiàshuǐ búguò bù néng yòng tài duō dànshuǐ yuè lái yuè shǎo le · Running water from the hills flows into a pond full of lotuses and is used for irrigation. They also have a well for groundwater, but they can't use too much: fresh water is getting scarcer.

anna 用化肥吗?
yòng huàféi ma · Do they use chemical fertiliser?

xiaoming 很少。他们或用鸡粪、牛粪做肥料，或种豆子养地。动物的粪便放在一个大坑里，几个月以后就成了好肥料。
hěn shǎo tāmen huò yòng jī fèn niú fèn zuò féiliào huò zhòng dòuzi yǎng dì dòngwù de fènbiàn fàng zài yí gè dà kēng lǐ jǐ gè yuè yǐhòu jiù chéng le hǎo féiliào · Hardly any. They either use chicken and cow dung as fertiliser or grow beans to feed the soil. The animal droppings go into a big pit, and after a few months they become good fertiliser.

little sister 听起来有点儿臭，可是很环保。
tīng qǐlai yǒudiǎnr chòu kěshì hěn huánbǎo · Sounds a bit smelly, but very green.

xiaoming 我岳父常说：“一分耕耘，一分收获。”他在田间栽了很多苹果树，看着禾苗一天天茁壮成长，就是他最开心的事了。
wǒ yuèfù cháng shuō yì fēn gēngyún yì fēn shōuhuò tā zài tiánjiān zāi le hěn duō píngguǒ shù kàn zhe hémiáo yì tiān tiān zhuózhuàng chéngzhǎng jiùshì tā zuì kāixīn de shì le · My father-in-law always says, "You reap what you sow." He's planted lots of apple trees in the fields, and nothing makes him happier than watching the crops grow strong day by day.

anna 那我们去的时候，帮他收割吧！我还想在田野里走走，看看真正的田园生活。
nà wǒmen qù de shíhou bāng tā shōugē ba wǒ hái xiǎng zài tiányě lǐ zǒu zou kàn kan zhēnzhèng de tiányuán shēnghuó · Then when we go, let's help him with the harvest! And I'd love to walk through the fields and see real country life.

xiaoming 好。不过要带雨鞋：下过雨，地上全是泥土和淤泥，有的地方像泥潭，一脚踩下去就拔不出来。累了倒是可以在稻草堆上躺一躺，或者去树荫下坐坐。

hǎo búguò yào dài yǔ xié xià guo yǔ dì shàng quán shì nítǔ hé yūní yǒude dìfang xiàng nítán yì jiǎo cǎi xiaqu jiù bá bu chulai lèi le dàoshì kěyǐ zài dàocǎo duī shàng tǎng yi tang huòzhě qù shùyīn xià zuò zuo · OK. But bring boots: after rain the ground is all mud and silt, and some places are like a bog, your foot goes in and won't come out. When you're tired, though, you can lie down on the straw stacks or sit in the shade.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

腾
téng
to rise, soar; to make room

荤
hūn
meat or fish (dishes)

馋
chán
greedy (for food); to crave

嚼
jiáo
to chew

good to know · Mud, four ways: 泥土 (soil, earth), 淤泥 (silt at the bottom of water), 泥泞 (muddy: a road), 泥潭 (a mire, also a hopeless situation: 陷入泥潭). Harvest verbs: 采摘 (pick by hand: fruit, tea), 收割 (cut and gather: grain), 收获 (harvest; also what you gain from any effort).

Plough, water, plant, pick and harvest: you're ready for a real weekend on a Chinese farm.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 61 weather and sky

Talk about weather and sky like a forecaster and a poet (air pressure, frost, dew, sunset glow, fog that shrouds a village) and speak frankly with 说真的.

Weather is everyone's favourite small talk, and Chinese has both a scientific and a poetic vocabulary for it. 说真的 is how you drop the small talk and say what you really think.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
气象	qìxiàng	weather, meteorology	气象台说明天有大雨。 The weather service says there will be heavy rain tomorrow.
气压	qìyā	air pressure	气压低的时候，我常常头疼。 When the air pressure is low, I often get headaches.
气流	qìliú	air current, turbulence	飞机遇到气流，有点儿颠簸。 The plane hit some turbulence and was a bit bumpy.
大气	dàqì	the atmosphere; grand	最近大气污染好多了。 Air pollution has improved a lot recently.
风暴	fēngbào	storm	一场风暴就要来了。 A storm is on its way.
风浪	fēnglàng	wind and waves, rough seas	海上风浪很大，渔船都回港了。 The sea is rough, and the fishing boats have all come back to port.
风沙	fēngshā	wind-blown sand, sandstorm	春天北京有时候会有风沙。 In spring, Beijing sometimes gets sandstorms.
冰雹	bīngbáo	hail, hailstone	下了一场冰雹，很多车都被砸坏了。 A hailstorm damaged a lot of cars.
霜	shuāng	frost	早上，草地上结了一层霜。 In the morning there was a layer of frost on the grass.
瑞雪	ruìxuě	timely snow	下了一场瑞雪，农民们都很高兴。 There was a welcome fall of snow, and the farmers were delighted.
露	lù	dew	早上，草上都是露{lu4-7b}水。 In the morning the grass is wet with dew.
乌云	wūyún	dark clouds	天上乌云密布，快要下雨了。 The sky is full of dark clouds: it's about to rain.
烈日	lièrì	scorching sun	农民们在烈日下干活。 The farmers work under the scorching sun.
旭日	xùrì	the rising sun	旭日东升，新的一天开始了。 The sun rises in the east, and a new day begins.
夕阳	xīyáng	the setting sun	夕阳下，湖面红红的。 In the setting sun, the lake glows red.

晚霞	wǎnxiá	sunset glow	天边的晚霞特别美。 The sunset glow on the horizon is beautiful.
明媚	míngmèi	bright and beautiful (sunshine)	今天阳光明媚，我们去公园吧。 It's gloriously sunny today: let's go to the park.
凉爽	liángshuǎng	pleasantly cool	秋天的北京天气凉爽。 Beijing is pleasantly cool in autumn.
闷热	mēnrè	hot and stuffy, muggy	今天又闷热又没有风，可能要下雨了。 It's muggy and there's no wind today: it might rain.
湿润	shīrùn	moist, humid	南方的空气很湿润。 The air in the south is very humid.
温差	wēnchā	temperature difference	这里早晚温差很大。 Here the temperature changes a lot between morning and evening.
寒带	hándài	frigid zone	寒带的冬天又长又冷。 Winters in the frigid zone are long and cold.
温带	wēndài	temperate zone	北京在温带，四季分明。 Beijing is in the temperate zone, with four distinct seasons.
热带	rèdài	the tropics, tropical	热带的水果又甜又多。 Tropical fruit is sweet and plentiful.
盛夏	shèngxià	midsummer	盛夏的中午，街上没什么人。 At midday in high summer, the streets are nearly empty.
时节	shíjié	season, time of year	现在正是吃螃蟹的时节。 Now is just the season for crabs.
水汽	shuǐqì	water vapour, moisture	洗完澡，镜子上都是水汽。 After a shower the mirror is all steamed up.
弥漫	mímàn	to fill the air, spread everywhere	厨房里弥漫着饭菜的香味。 The kitchen is filled with the smell of cooking.
笼罩	lǒngzhào	to envelop, shroud	整个城市笼罩在大雾里。 The whole city is shrouded in fog.
密布	mìbù	to cover densely	天上乌云密布。 The sky is thick with dark clouds.
呼啸	hūxiào	to howl, whistle (wind)	外面北风呼啸，房间里很暖和。 Outside the north wind is howling, but it's warm inside.
天地	tiāndì	heaven and earth, world	大雪过后，天地一片白。 After the heavy snow, heaven and earth are all white.

pattern 说真的: seriously, honestly

说真的， **what you really think**

说真的 (“speaking truly”) opens a sentence when you switch to what you really think, or to something serious after joking. It is spoken and friendly, like “honestly”, “seriously” or “to be honest”.

说真的，我从来没见过这么大的冰雹。 **shuōzhēnde wǒ cónglái méi jiàn guo zhème dà de bīngbáo**
Seriously, I’ve never seen hailstones that big.

说真的，最近大气污染好多了，天比以前蓝多了。 **shuōzhēnde zuìjìn dàqì wūrǎn hǎo duō le tiān bǐ yǐqián lán duō le** To be honest, the air pollution has got much better lately: the sky is much bluer than before.

说真的，你去农场最好带一件厚衣服。 **shuōzhēnde nǐ qù nóngchǎng zuìhǎo dài yí jiàn hòu yīfu**
Seriously, you’d better take a warm coat to the farm.

dialogue the weekend forecast

anna 周博士，我们周末去小明岳父的农场。气象台说周末天气怎么样？
Zhōubóshì wǒmen zhōumò qù Xiǎomíng yuèfù de nóngchǎng qìxiàng tái shuō zhōumò tiānqì zěnmeyàng · Dr Zhou, we're going to Xiaoming's father-in-law's farm this weekend. What does the weather service say?

dr zhou 我刚看了气象数据。周五北边来一股冷空气，气压升高，会刮大风，可能还有风沙。
wǒ gāng kàn le qìxiàng shùjù zhōu wǔ běi biān lái yì gǔ lěng kōngqì qìyā shēng gāo huì guā dà fēng kěnéng hái yǒu fēngshā · I've just looked at the data. A cold front comes down from the north on Friday: the pressure goes up, there'll be strong winds, maybe some blowing sand too.

xiaoming 风沙？那田野里不是什么也看不见了吗？
fēngshā nà tiányě lǐ bú shì shénme yě kàn bu jiàn le ma · Sand? Then won't we see nothing at all in the fields?

dr zhou 别担心，大风过后，阳光明媚，空气凉爽。不过早晚温差大，夜里可能会结霜，早上草上都是露水。
bié dānxīn dà fēng guòhòu yángguāng míngmèi kōngqì liángshuǎng búguò zǎowǎn wēnchā dà yè lǐ kěnéng huì jié shuāng zǎoshang cǎo shàng dōu shì lù shuǐ · Don't worry: after the wind, it'll be sunny and cool. But the temperature swings a lot between day and night, there may be frost overnight, and in the morning the grass will be wet with dew.

anna 现在正是采摘苹果的时节吧？
xiànzài zhèng shì cǎizhāi píngguǒ de shíjié ba · It's apple-picking season now, isn't it?

xiaoming 对。说真的，我最怕夏天去农场锄草：盛夏又闷热又没有风，有时候还下冰雹。
duì shuōzhēnde wǒ zuì pà xiàtiān qù nóngchǎng chú cǎo shèngxià yòu mēnrè yòu méiyǒu fēng yǒu shíhou hái xià bīngbáo · Yes. To be honest, what I dread is weeding on the farm in summer: midsummer is hot and muggy with no wind, and sometimes it hails.

dr zhou 北京在温带，空气比南方干，南方湿润多了。你要是去过热带丛林，或者去过寒带，才知道什么叫热，什么叫冷。
Běijīng zài wēndài kōngqì bǐ nánfāng gān nánfāng shīrùn duō le nǐ yàoshi qù guo rèdài cónglín huòzhě qù guo hándài cái zhīdào shénme jiào rè shénme jiào lěng · Beijing is in the temperate zone, and the air is drier than in the south, which is much more humid. If you'd been to a tropical jungle or the polar regions, you'd know what real heat and real cold are.

anna 我最喜欢看日出和日落。早上旭日东升，傍晚夕阳西下，满天都是晚霞。
wǒ zuì xǐhuan kàn rì chū hé rì luò zǎoshang xùrì dōng shēng bàngwǎn xīyáng xī xià mǎn tiān dōu shì wǎnxiá · What I love most is sunrise and sunset: the sun coming up in the morning, the sun going down in the evening, and the whole sky glowing.

dr zhou 那你一定要早起。山里的早上常常有雾，水汽弥漫，整个村子都笼罩在雾里，连村口那棵老槐树都看不清，天地一片白。
nà nǐ yídìng yào zǎo qǐ shān lǐ de zǎoshang chángcháng yǒu wù shuǐqì mímàn zhěnggè cūn zi dōu lǒngzhào zài wù lǐ lián cūn kǒu nà kē lǎo huáishù dōu kàn bu qīng tiāndì yí piàn bái · Then you must get up early. Mornings in the hills are often foggy: the mist spreads everywhere, the whole village is shrouded in it, you can't even make out the old pagoda tree at the village entrance, and heaven and earth are all white.

xiaoming 说真的，你们俩一个科学家，一个诗人。我只关心会不会有风暴，北风呼啸的时候，在外面干活可难受了。
shuōzhēnde nǐmen liǎ yí gè kēxué jiā yí gè shīrén wǒ zhǐ guānxīn huì bu huì yǒu fēngbào běi fēng hūxiào de shíhou zài wàimiàn gànhuó kě nánshòu le · Seriously, one of you is a scientist and the other's a poet. All I care about is whether there'll be a storm: working outside with the north wind howling is miserable.

dr zhou 放心，这周没有风暴。反过来说，天气这么好，你岳父可能会让你们干一整天的活！
fàngxīn zhè zhōu méiyǒu fēngbào fǎnguolaishuō tiānqì zhème hǎo nǐ yuèfù kěnéng huì ràng nǐmen gàn yì zhěng tiān de huó · Don't worry, no storms this week. Then again, with weather this good, your father-in-law may well have you working all day!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

啃
kěn
to gnaw, nibble

蘸
zhàn
to dip (in sauce)

葱
cōng
spring onion, scallion

姜
jiāng
ginger

good to know · Weather words come in pairs, science and poetry: 气象 / 天气, 水汽 / 雾, 夕阳 / 落日, 旭日 / 朝阳. Forecasts use the first kind; essays and poems love the second. 说真的 and 说实话 both mean “honestly”. 说真的 can also switch from a joke to a serious point.

Frost, dew, howling winds and glowing sunsets: you can now talk weather like a forecaster, and like a poet.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 62 waves, rocks and fire

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 8 · nature

Describe the restless Earth (waves, tides, whirlpools, volcanoes, caves and gems) and say how often things happen: again and again, in a row, one after another, now and then.

News and documentaries report how often things happen with a whole family of written adverbs. Once you know them, every report on earthquakes, storms or elections reads faster.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
看头儿	kàntour	something worth seeing	这个展览很有看头儿。 This exhibition is well worth seeing.
波浪	bōlàng	wave	风越来越大，海上的波浪也越来越高。 The wind is getting stronger and the waves higher and higher.
波涛	bōtāo	great waves, billows	海上波涛汹涌，船不能出海。 The sea is raging, and boats can't go out.
波澜	bōlán	great waves; ups and downs	听了他的话，她心里起了波澜。 What he said stirred her up inside.
潮	cháo	tide	涨潮的时候，海水会淹没这片沙滩。 At high tide the sea covers this beach.
潮水	cháoshuǐ	tidewater, tide	潮水慢慢退了下去。 The tide slowly went out.
汹涌	xiōngyǒng	turbulent, surging	河水汹涌，大家不要靠近。 The river is surging: everyone keep away.
涌	yǒng	to surge, gush, pour	下班的时候，人群涌进了地铁站。 At rush hour, crowds pour into the underground station.
荡漾	dàngyàng	to ripple, undulate	微风吹过，湖水轻轻荡漾。 A breeze blows and the lake ripples gently.
旋涡	xuánwō	whirlpool	河中间有一个旋涡，千万别游过去。 There's a whirlpool in the middle of the river: whatever you do, don't swim out there.
泻	xiè	to pour down, rush down	大雨过后，山上的水往下泻。 After the heavy rain, water rushes down the mountain.
汪洋	wāngyáng	a vast expanse of water	大水过后，田野变成了一片汪洋。 After the flood, the fields became one vast sheet of water.
火山	huǒshān	volcano	这座火山一百年后再度爆发了。 This volcano erupted again after a hundred years.
岩石	yánshí	rock	这块岩石已经有几亿年了。 This rock is hundreds of millions of years old.
板块	bǎnkuài	tectonic plate; sector	两个板块碰在一起，形成了高山。 Two plates collided and formed high mountains.

洞穴	dòngxué	cave, cavern	这个洞穴里很黑，要带手电筒。 It's dark in this cave: bring a torch.
宝石	bǎoshí	gem, precious stone	她戴着一枚红宝石戒指。 She is wearing a ruby ring.
宝藏	bǎozàng	treasure, hidden riches	书是一座取之不尽的宝藏。 Books are a treasure that never runs out.
水晶	shuǐjīng	crystal (quartz)	洞穴里发现了很多漂亮的水晶。 Lots of beautiful crystals were found in the cave.
芬芳	fēnfāng	fragrant; fragrance	春天的花园里一片芬芳。 In spring the garden is full of fragrance.
连连	liánlián	again and again, repeatedly (in a row)	观众连连鼓掌。 The audience applauded again and again.
屡次	lǚcì	repeatedly, time and again	他屡次迟到，被经理批评了。 He was late time and again, and the manager criticised him.
屡屡	lǚlǚ	repeatedly, again and again	探险队屡屡遇到危险。 The expedition ran into danger again and again.
屡	lǚ	repeatedly (written)	这种事故近年来屡有发生。 Accidents like this have happened repeatedly in recent years.
时而	shíér	sometimes; now ... now ...	天气时而晴，时而下雨。 The weather is now sunny, now rainy.
时时	shíshí	constantly, at all times	妈妈时时提醒我注意安全。 Mum constantly reminds me to be careful.
相继	xiāngjì	one after another	客人们相继到达。 The guests arrived one after another.
一连	yīlián	in a row, in succession	一连下了三天雨。 It rained for three days in a row.
再度	zàidù	once more, a second time	两国领导人再度见面。 The two leaders met once more.
频频	pínpín	repeatedly, frequently	他频频点头，表示同意。 He kept nodding to show he agreed.
频	pín	frequently (written)	最近这一带地震频发。 Earthquakes have been frequent in this area recently.
一个劲儿	yīgèjìnr	persistently, nonstop	孩子一个劲儿地哭，怎么哄都不行。 The child cried and cried, and nothing would calm him down.

pattern how often: again, in a row, one after another

连连 / 频频 + verb | 屡次 / 屡屡 / 屡 | 一连 + number + time | 时而 · 时时 · 相继 · 再度 · 一个劲儿

连连 and 频频: again and again, right then (连连点头, 频频回头). 屡次, 屡屡 and written 屡: time after time, over a long period. 一连 + number: in a row (一连三天). 时而……时而……: now this, now that; 时时: constantly; 相继: one after another; 再度: once more; 一个劲儿: nonstop (spoken).

天气时而晴，时而下雨。 **tiānqì shíér qíng shíér xià yǔ** The weather is now sunny, now rainy.

附近的几座火山相继爆发。 **fùjìn de jǐ zuò huǒshān xiāngjì bàofā** Several volcanoes nearby erupted one after another.

他一个劲儿地向我道歉。 **tā yígèjìnr de xiàng wǒ dàoqiàn** He kept apologising to me.

这种事故近年来屡有发生。 **zhè zhǒng shìgù jìnnián lái lǚ yǒu fāshēng** Accidents like this have happened repeatedly in recent years.

dialogue the restless earth

little sister 周博士，今天的纪录片有看头儿吗？
Zhōubóshì jīntiān de jìlùpiàn yǒu kàntour ma · Dr Zhou, is tonight's documentary worth watching?

dr zhou 当然！讲的是火山和大海。地球表面由好几个板块组成，板块一动，火山就时而爆发，地震也频频发生。
dāngrán jiǎng de shì huǒshān hé dà hǎi dìqiú biǎomiàn yóu hǎo jǐ gè bǎnkuài zǔchéng bǎnkuài yí dòng huǒshān jiù shíér bàofā dìzhèn yě pínpín fāshēng · Of course! It's about volcanoes and the sea. The Earth's surface is split into several plates; when the plates move, volcanoes erupt from time to time and earthquakes happen again and again.

anna 你们看这座火山，天上乌云密布，滚烫的岩石像水一样往下泻！
nǐmen kàn zhè zuò huǒshān tiānshàng wūyún mìbù gǔn tàng de yánshí xiàng shuǐ yíyàng wǎng xià xiè · Look at this volcano: the sky is thick with dark clouds, and the red-hot rock is pouring down like water!

dr zhou 这座火山二十年前爆发过一次，去年再度爆发，附近的村子相继搬走了。最近那一带小地震频发，大家时时都要小心。
zhè zuò huǒshān èrshí nián qián bàofā guo yí cì qùnián zàidù bàofā fùjìn de cūn zi xiāngjì bān zǒu le zuìjìn nà yídài xiǎo dìzhèn pín fā dàjiā shíshí dōu yào xiǎoxīn · That volcano erupted twenty years ago and again last year, and the villages nearby moved away one after another. Small earthquakes have been frequent there recently, so everyone has to be careful all the time.

little sister 现在是大海，波浪一个比一个高，太可怕了！
xiànzài shì dà hǎi bōlàng yí gè bǐ yí gè gāo tài kěpà le · Now it's the sea: each wave is higher than the last. Terrifying!

dr zhou 那是风暴来的时候。海上波涛汹涌，潮水一个劲儿往岸上涌，有的地方变成了一片汪洋。海里还有旋涡，船一进去就出不来。
nà shì fēngbào lái de shíhou hǎi shàng bōtāo xiōngyǒng cháoshuǐ yígèjìnr wǎng àn shàng yǒng yǒude dìfang biànchéng le yí piàn wāngyáng hǎi lǐ hái yǒu xuánwō chuán yí jìnqù jiù chū bu lái · That's when a storm hits. The sea rages, the tide keeps surging up the shore, and some places become one vast sheet of water. There are whirlpools too: once a boat is caught, it can't get out.

anna 我更喜欢平静的海：夕阳下，微风吹过，海水轻轻荡漾。
wǒ gèng xǐhuan píngjìng de hǎi xīyáng xià wēi fēng chuī guo hǎi shuǐ qīng qīng dàngyàng · I prefer a calm sea: the sun going down, a breeze blowing and the water rippling gently.

little sister 下一段讲什么？洞穴？宝藏？
xià yí duàn jiǎng shénme dòngxué bǎozàng · What's the next part about? Caves? Treasure?

dr zhou 对。有个洞穴里发现了很多水晶和宝石。探险队一连找了三个星期，晚上就睡在睡袋里，中间屡屡遇到危险，最后终于找到了。
duì yǒu gè dòngxué lǐ fāxiàn le hěn duō shuǐjīng hé bǎoshí tànxiǎn duì yìlián zhǎo le sān gè xīngqī wǎnshang jiù shuì zài shuìdài lǐ zhōngjiān lǚlǚ yùdào wēixiǎn zuìhòu zhōngyú zhǎo dào le · Yes. A cave full of crystals and gems was discovered. The expedition searched for three weeks in a row, sleeping in sleeping bags at night, and ran into danger again and again before they finally found it.

anna 太刺激了，看得我心里也起了波澜！我们连连说“好”，旁边的人都笑了。
tài cìjī le kàn de wǒ xīnlǐ yě qǐ le bōlán wǒmen liánlián shuō hǎo pángbiān de rén dōu xiào le · So exciting: it really stirred me up! We kept saying “wow”, and the people next to us laughed.

dr zhou 下次带你们去看真的火山，不过那儿的山路很陡。去不去，要看那边的情况而定。
xià cì dài nǐmen qù kàn zhēn de huǒshān búguò nàr de shān lù hěn dǒu qù bu qù yào kàn nàbiān de qíngkuàng ér dìng · Next time I'll take you to see a real volcano, though the mountain road there is steep. Whether we go depends on the situation there.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

蒜
suàn
garlic

萝
luó
radish

卜
bo
radish

淀
diàn
sediment

good to know · In a row vs again and again: 一连 needs a number (一连三天); 连连 goes straight before a verb (连连点头). 屡次 is about separate occasions over time (屡次迟到). Water words for essays: 波涛 (great waves), 波澜 (waves, and stirred feelings), 汹涌 (surging), 荡漾 (gently rippling), 汪洋 (a vast expanse).

Tides, waves, volcanoes, gems, and the adverbs that say how often: the restless Earth now has a voice in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 63 light and colour

Describe light and colour precisely (dazzling, hazy, gloomy, emerald, azure, vermilion, rosy) and say something is not worth seeing with 没什么看头儿.

Colour and light words are the paint box of Chinese description, in essays, reviews and travel writing alike. 没什么看头儿 is the everyday way to say “don’t bother”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
灿烂	cànlàn	brilliant, glorious	孩子们笑得那么灿烂。 The children’s smiles are so radiant.
璀璨	cuǐcàn	dazzling, resplendent	晚上，城市的灯光十分璀璨。 At night, the city lights are dazzling.
辉煌	huīhuáng	splendid, glorious	这座城市有过辉煌的历史。 This city has had a glorious history.
光彩	guāngcǎi	lustre; honoured, proud	孩子拿了第一名，父母也觉得很光彩。 Their child came first, and the parents were proud too.
光辉	guānghuī	brilliance, radiance	太阳的光辉照耀着大地。 The sun’s radiance shines over the land.
光芒	guāngmáng	rays of light	太阳升起来，放出万道光芒。 The sun rose, sending out countless rays of light.
光环	guānghuán	halo, aura (of fame)	离开了名人的光环，他只是一个普通人。 Without the halo of fame, he’s just an ordinary person.
光泽	guāngzé	sheen, gloss	她的头发很有光泽。 Her hair has a lovely sheen.
闪烁	shǎnshuò	to twinkle, flicker	满天的星星在闪烁。 The sky is full of twinkling stars.
耀眼	yàoyǎn	dazzling	她穿着一条耀眼的红裙子。 She’s wearing a dazzling red dress.
刺眼	cìyǎn	glaring, harsh to the eye	雪地上的阳光太刺眼了。 The sunlight on the snow is too glaring.
照耀	zhàoyào	to shine on, illuminate	阳光照耀着大地。 The sunshine lights up the land.
焕发	huànfā	to glow with, radiate	运动让他重新焕发了活力。 Exercise has given him a new lease of life.
晶莹	jīngyíng	glistening, crystal-clear	草上挂着晶莹的露{lu4-7b}水。 Glistening dewdrops hang on the grass.
亮丽	liànglì	bright and beautiful	她今天穿得很亮丽。 She’s dressed very brightly today.
明朗	mínglǎng	bright and clear; clear-cut	雨停了，天空变得明朗起来。 The rain stopped and the sky cleared.

朦胧	ménglóng	hazy, misty, dim	月光朦胧，湖边很安静。 The moonlight is hazy, and the lakeside is quiet.
阴暗	yīnàn	dark, gloomy	地下室又阴暗又潮湿。 The basement is dark and damp.
阴影	yīnyǐng	shadow; a shadow over one	那次事故在他心里留下了阴影。 That accident left a shadow over his mind.
漆黑	qīhēi	pitch-dark	停电了，房间里一片漆黑。 The power went off, and the room was pitch-dark.
洁白	jiébái	spotlessly white	她穿着一件洁白的衬衫。 She's wearing a spotless white shirt.
惨白	cǎnbái	deathly pale	他吓得脸色惨白。 He went white with fear.
苍白	cāngbái	pale, wan	她病了好几天，脸色很苍白。 She's been ill for days and looks very pale.
碧绿	bìlǜ	emerald green	湖水碧绿碧绿的，清得能看见鱼。 The lake is emerald green and so clear you can see the fish.
翠绿	cuìlǜ	fresh green, emerald	雨后的竹子翠绿翠绿的。 After the rain the bamboo is a fresh, bright green.
蔚蓝	wèilán	azure, sky blue	天空蔚蓝，一片云也没有。 The sky is azure without a single cloud.
朱红	zhūhóng	vermilion	老房子的大门是朱红的。 The old house's front gate is vermilion.
通红	tōnghóng	very red, red all over	她的脸冻得通红。 Her face was bright red with cold.
红润	hóngrùn	rosy, healthy-looking	病好了以后，她的脸色红润多了。 Now she's better, her face is much rosier.
红扑扑	hóngpūpū	rosy, flushed (cheeks)	孩子们的脸冻得红扑扑的。 The children's cheeks were rosy with cold.
艳丽	yànlì	gorgeous, brightly coloured	花园里开满了艳丽的花。 The garden is full of gorgeous flowers.
缤纷	bīnfēn	colourful, profuse	秋天的山上五颜六色，色彩缤纷。 In autumn the hills are a riot of colour.
华丽	huálì	magnificent, ornate	舞台上的衣服很华丽。 The costumes on stage are magnificent.
火花	huǒhuā	spark	两个人的想法碰出了新的火花。 The two people's ideas struck new sparks.
火焰	huǒyàn	flame	蜡烛的火焰在风里一闪一闪的。 The candle flame flickers in the wind.

pattern 没什么看头儿: not worth seeing

这个…… 没什么 verb + 头儿

Verb + 头儿 turns an action into “what is worth doing”: 看头儿 (worth seeing). 有看头儿 means worth seeing; 没什么看头儿 means not worth it. The same frame makes 听头儿 (worth hearing) and 吃头儿 (worth eating). It is casual and spoken.

这个展览没什么看头儿，我们走吧。 **zhège zhǎnlǎn méi shénme kàntour wǒmen zǒu ba** This exhibition isn’t worth seeing: let’s go.

那部电影太简单，没什么看头儿。 **nà bù diànyǐng tài jiǎndān méi shénme kàntour** That film is too simple: there’s nothing to it.

这本书一来太长，二来没什么看头儿。 **zhè běn shū yìlái tài cháng èrlái méi shénme kàntour** This book is too long, and anyway it isn’t worth reading.

dialogue light and colour

editor lin 欢迎来看我们摄影比赛的照片！今年的主题是“光和颜色”。
huānyíng lái kàn wǒmen shèyǐng bǐsài de zhàopiàn jīnnián de zhǔtí shì guāng hé yánsè · Welcome to our photo competition! This year’s theme is “Light and Colour”.

xiaoming 第一张就很耀眼：旭日的光辉照耀着雪山，山顶放出万道光芒。
dì yī zhāng jiù hěn yàoyǎn xùrì de guānghuī zhàoyào zhe xuěshān shāndǐng fàng chū wàn dào guāngmáng · The first one is dazzling: the glow of the rising sun lights up the snow mountains, with rays streaming from the summit.

anna 这张晚上的城市也很美，是在立交桥上拍的，灯光璀璨，像天上的星星一样闪烁。
zhè zhāng wǎnshang de chéngshì yě hěn měi shì zài lìjiāoqiáo shàng pāi de dēngguāng cuǐcàn xiàng tiānshàng de xīngxing yíyàng shǎnshuò · This one of the city at night is lovely too, taken from a flyover: the lights are dazzling and twinkle like stars.

editor lin 这张是老城门，已经屹立了六百年，朱红的大门在阳光下显得特别辉煌。
zhè zhāng shì lǎo chéng mén yǐjīng yìlì le liùbǎi nián zhūhóng de dà mén zài yángguāng xià xiǎnde tèbié huīhuáng · This one is the old city gate, which has stood for six hundred years: the vermilion doors look magnificent in the sunlight.

xiaoming 这张太阴暗了，人脸上全是阴影，没什么看头儿。
zhè zhāng tài yīnàn le rén liǎn shàng quán shì yīnyǐng méi shénme kàntour · This one is too gloomy: the faces are all in shadow. Not worth looking at.

editor lin 别急着下结论。你仔细看：漆黑的小巷里只有一盏灯，照着一位老人苍白的脸。这是一个光和阴影的故事。
bié jí zhe xià jiélùn nǐ zǐxì kàn qīhēi de xiǎo xiàng lǐ zhǐyǒu yì zhǎn dēng zhào zhe yí wèi lǎorén cāngbái de liǎn zhè shì yí gè guāng hé yīnyǐng de gùshi · Don’t jump to conclusions. Look closely: in a pitch-dark lane there’s a single lamp, lighting an old man’s pale face. It’s a story of light and shadow.

anna 我喜欢这张：碧绿的草原，翠绿的山，洁白的羊群，骑着骏马的牧民，蔚蓝的天空，又明朗又亮丽。
wǒ xǐhuan zhè zhāng bìlǜ de cǎoyuán cuìlǜ de shān jiébái de yáng qún qí zhe jùnmǎ de mùmín wèilán de tiānkōng yòu mínglǎng yòu liànglì · I like this one: emerald grassland, fresh green hills, snow-white sheep, herders on fine horses and an azure sky. So bright and cheerful.

editor lin 安娜，这张是你在云南拍的吧？山里水汽弥漫，村子朦胧得像一幅画，孩子们的脸红扑扑的，眼睛那么晶莹。
Ānnà zhè zhāng shì nǐ zài Yúnnán pāi de ba shān lǐ shuǐqì mímàn cūn zi ménglóng de xiàng yì fú huà háizimen de liǎn hóngpūpū de yǎnjing nàme jīngyíng · Anna, this is the one you took in Yunnan, isn’t it? The mist hangs over the hills and the village is as hazy as a painting, the children have rosy cheeks, and their eyes are shining.

xiaoming 还有这张晚会的照片：火焰、火花，五颜六色，缤纷又华丽，有看头儿！
hái yǒu zhè zhāng wǎnhuì de zhàopiàn huǒyàn huǒhuā wǔyán liùsè bīnfēn yòu huálì yǒu kàntour · And this one of an evening party: flames, sparks, every colour you can think of, so bright and splendid. Now that’s worth seeing!

editor lin 今年的照片一来颜色艳丽，二来都有故事，水平明显高于去年。
jīnnián de zhàopiàn yìlái yánsè yànlì èrlái dōu yǒu gùshi shuǐpíng míngxiǎn gāoyú qùnián · This year’s photos have gorgeous colours, and they all tell a story too: the standard is clearly higher than last year.

anna 谢谢！我又不是有名的摄影家，没有什么光环，能进前十名已经很开心了。
xièxie wǒ yòu bú shì yǒumíng de shèyǐng jiā méiyǒu shénme guānghuán néng jìn qián shí míng yǐjīng hěn kāixīn le · Thank you! I’m not a famous photographer with any kind of halo; getting into the top ten makes me very happy.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

谷
gǔ
grain

枣
zǎo
jujube, Chinese date

虾
xiā
shrimp, prawn

碟
dié
small plate, dish; (measure word)

good to know · Colours by comparison: 碧绿 (green as jade), 翠绿 (green as kingfisher feathers), 蔚蓝 (deep sky blue), 朱红 (vermilion), 洁白 (spotless white), 漆黑 (black as lacquer). Pale, three ways: 苍白 (pale, also feeble), 惨白 (deathly white, from fear), 洁白 (clean white, a compliment).

Azure, emerald, vermilion, hazy, dazzling: your Chinese now paints in full colour.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 64 mission: a weekend on the farm

Follow a whole weekend on a Chinese farm: the farm rules, the animals, the harvest, a sudden storm in the orchard and an evening round the fire.

Everything from this unit comes together: wild and farm animals, how they live, trees and flowers, fields and farming, weather and sky, water and rock, light and colour.

chapter 1 chapter 1: arriving at dawn

xiaoming 到了！你们看，整个农场都笼罩在雾里，水汽弥漫，天地一片白。
dào le nǐmen kàn zhěnggè nóngchǎng dōu lǒngzhào zài wù lǐ shuǐqì mímàn tiāndì yí piàn bái · We're here! Look: the whole farm is shrouded in fog, mist everywhere, heaven and earth all white.

anna 周博士说得真准！夜里结了霜，早上草上全是晶莹的露水。
Zhōubóshì shuō de zhēn zhǔn yè lǐ jié le shuāng zǎoshang cǎo shàng quán shì jīngyíng de lù shuǐ · Dr Zhou was spot on! There was frost overnight, and this morning the grass is covered in glistening dew.

ms zhang 旭日东升，雾马上就散了。这里早晚温差大，白天倒是很凉爽。
xùrì dōng shēng wù mǎshàng jiù sǎn le zhèlǐ zǎowǎn wēnchā dà báitiān dàoshì hěn liángshuǎng · Once the sun is up, the fog will clear. The temperature swings a lot between morning and night here, but the days are nice and cool.

xiaoming 周博士看了气象数据，说北边来的冷空气让气压升高，大风把风沙都吹走了，大气也干净了。
Zhōubóshì kàn le qìxiàng shùjù shuō běi biān lái de lěng kōngqì ràng qìyā shēng gāo dà fēng bǎ fēngshā dōu chuī zǒu le dàqì yě gānjìng le · Dr Zhou looked at the weather data: she says the cold air from the north has pushed the pressure up, the wind has blown the sand away, and the air is clean too.

ms zhang 现在正是收割的时节。盛夏的时候这里又闷热又没有风，在烈日下干活可辛苦了。
xiànzài zhèng shì shōugē de shíjié shèngxià de shíhou zhèlǐ yòu mēnrè yòu méiyǒu fēng zài lièrì xià gànhuó kě xīnkǔ le · It's harvest season now. In midsummer it's hot and muggy here with no wind, and working under the scorching sun is really hard.

anna 北京在温带，秋天最舒服，不像南方那么湿润，也不像热带和寒带那么热、那么冷。
Běijīng zài wēndài qiūtiān zuì shūfu bú xiàng nánfāng nàme shīrùn yě bú xiàng rèdài hé hándài nàme rè nàme lěng · Beijing is in the temperate zone, and autumn is the nicest season: not as humid as the south, and not as hot or cold as the tropics or the polar regions.

little sister 门口有一块牌子，我来念：（读）“农场规定：一、家禽和牲畜请勿随意喂，一则它们有专门的饲料，二则乱喂容易生病。
ménkǒu yǒu yí kuài páizi wǒ lái niàn dú nóngchǎng guīdìng yī jiāqín hé shēngchù qǐng wù suíyì wèi yìzé tāmen yǒu zhuānmén de sìliào èrzé luàn wèi róngyì shēngbìng · There's a sign by the gate: I'll read it. (reading) "Farm rules: 1. Please do not feed the poultry or livestock as you like: firstly, they have their own special feed; secondly, the wrong food makes them ill.

little sister 二、池塘水深，有淤泥，禁止游泳。三、田间的路下雨后很泥泞，请穿雨鞋，小心路边的坑。四、来访的客人或去苹果树下采摘，或去田里帮忙收割，请听工作人员安排。”
èr chítáng shuǐ shēn yǒu yūní jìnzhǐ yóuyǒng sān tiánjiān de lù xià yǔ hòu hěn níníng qǐng chuān yǔ xié xiǎoxīn lùbiān de kēng sì láifǎng de kèrén huò qù píngguǒ shù xià cǎizhāi huò qù tián lǐ bāngmáng shōugē qǐng tīng gōngzuò rényuán ānpái · 2. The pond is deep and muddy at the bottom: no swimming. 3. The paths through the fields get very muddy after rain: wear boots and watch out for holes. 4. Visitors may either pick apples under the trees or help with the harvest in the fields: please follow the staff's instructions."

xiaoming 工作人员就是我岳父！他一大早就去田里了，说真的，他一年到头都闲不下来。
gōngzuò rényuán jiùshì wǒ yuèfù tā yí dà zǎo jiù qù tián lǐ le shuōzhēnde tā yì nián dào tóu dōu xián bu xialai · The staff is my father-in-law! He went out to the fields first thing. Seriously, he never stops, all year round.

ms zhang 你看这片田野，一边是禾苗，一边是棉花，远处还有麻，真是一幅田园画。
nǐ kàn zhè piàn tiányě yìbiān shì hémiáo yìbiān shì miánhuā yuǎn chù hái yǒu má zhēnshi yì fú tiányuán huà · Look at these fields: young crops on one side, cotton on the other, and hemp in the distance. A real country picture.

anna 空气里有泥土和稻草的味道，比城里好闻多了。
kōngqì lǐ yǒu nítǔ hé dàocǎo de wèidào bǐ chéng lǐ hǎo wén duō le · The air smells of earth and straw: so much nicer than the city.

chapter 2 chapter 2: the animals

little sister 哇，好多大白鹅！它们一个劲儿地追我！
wā hǎoduō dà bái é tāmen yígèjìnr de zhuī wǒ · Wow, so many big white geese! They keep chasing me!

anna 早上我是被鸟鸣声叫醒的，太舒服了。
zǎoshang wǒ shì bèi niǎo míng shēng jiào xǐng de tài shūfu le · I was woken by birdsong this morning: lovely.

xiaoming 鹅比狗还凶，你别跑，越跑它们追得越快。
é bǐ gǒu hái xiōng nǐ bié pǎo yuè pǎo tāmen zhuī de yuè kuài · Geese are fiercer than dogs. Don't run: the more you run, the faster they chase you.

ms zhang 屋檐下面有燕子的窝，院子里还有一群鸽子在飞翔。这些燕子吃害虫，对农场很有好处。
wūyán xiàmiàn yǒu yànzi de wō yuànzi lǐ hái yǒu yì qún gēzi zài fēixiáng zhèxiē yànzi chī hàichóng duì nóngchǎng hěn yǒu hǎochù · There are swallows' nests under the eaves, and a flock of pigeons soaring over the yard. The swallows eat pests, which is very good for the farm.

anna 这边的小鸡刚孵化出来，胖乎乎的，真可爱！哪只是雌性，哪只是雄性？
zhèbiān de xiǎo jī gāng fūhuà chulai pànghūhū de zhēn kěài nǎ zhī shì cíxìng nǎ zhī shì xióngxìng · These chicks have only just hatched: so fluffy and cute! Which ones are the females and which the males?

xiaoming 现在还看不出来。我岳父说，前几天夜里来了一只狐狸，一连偷了三只鸡。
xiànzài hái kàn bu chulai wǒ yuèfù shuō qián jǐ tiān yè lǐ lái le yì zhī húli yìlián tōu le sān zhī jī · You can't tell yet. My father-in-law says a fox came at night a few days ago and took three chickens in a row.

little sister 狐狸真狡猾！那现在怎么办？
húli zhēn jiǎohuá nà xiànzài zěnme bàn · Foxes are so cunning! What are they doing about it?

xiaoming 晚上把鸡和羊都圈起来，关进鸡窝和羊圈。天上还有鹰，小鸡是它的猎物，鹰是小鸡的天敌。
wǎnshang bǎ jī hé yáng dōu juān qǐlai guān jìn jī wō hé yáng juàn tiānshàng hái yǒu yīng xiǎo jī shì tā de lièwù yīng shì xiǎo jī de tiāndí · At night they pen the chickens and sheep into the henhouse and the sheepfold. There are eagles in the sky too: chicks are their prey, and the eagle is the chick's natural enemy.

little sister 上次在动物园看的豹、鳄鱼都是凶猛的野兽，这儿的动物温和多了。
shàng cì zài dòngwùyuán kàn de bào èyú dōu shì xiōngměng de yěshòu zhèr de dòngwù wēnhé duō le · The leopards and crocodiles we saw at the zoo last time were fierce beasts: the animals here are much gentler.

xiaoming 以前这一带山里也有野兽，猎人用诱饵打猎，现在不许了。听说狐狸的巢穴就在后山。你们看，那只鹰用爪子抓住了一只老鼠！
yǐqián zhè yídài shān lǐ yě yǒu yěshòu lièrén yòng yòuěr dǎliè xiànzài bùxǔ le tīngshuō húli de cháoxué jiù zài hòu shān nǐmen kàn nà zhī yīng yòng zhuǎzi zhuā zhù le yì zhī lǎoshǔ · There used to be wild animals in the hills round here too, and hunters would hunt with bait, but that's not allowed any more. They say the fox's den is on the hill at the back. Look, that eagle has caught a mouse in its claws!

ms zhang 秋天了，大雁开始往南迁徙了。湖边还住着几只天鹅和仙鹤，它们在这儿繁衍了很多年。
qiūtiān le dàyàn kāishǐ wǎng nán qiānxǐ le hú biān hái zhù zhe jǐ zhī tiāné hé xiānhè tāmen zài zhèr fányǎn le hěn duō nián · It's autumn, and the wild geese are starting to migrate south. A few swans and cranes live by the lake too: they've bred here for years.

anna 那边的牧场上还有牛和几匹骏马。这些牲畜吃什么？
nàbiān de mùchǎng shàng hái yǒu niú hé jǐ pǐ jùnmǎ zhèxiē shēngchù chī shénme · There are cows and a few fine horses on the pasture over there. What do these animals eat?

ms zhang 夏天在牧场上吃草，冬天吃饲料。现在养殖的方法跟以前不一样了，不过他岳父还是喜欢自己饲养。
xiàtiān zài mùchǎng shàng chī cǎo dōngtiān chī sìliào xiànzài yǎngzhí de fāngfǎ gēn yǐqián bù yíyàng le búguò tā yuèfù háishi xǐhuan zìjǐ sìyǎng · Grass on the pasture in summer, feed in winter. Farming methods have changed, but his father-in-law still likes to raise them himself.

little sister 就是苍蝇和蚊子太多了，我腿上已经被咬了好几个包。
jiùshì cāngying hé wénzi tài duō le wǒ tuǐ shàng yǐjīng bèi yǎo le hǎo jǐ gè bāo · The only thing is, there are too many flies and mosquitoes: I've already been bitten several times on my legs.

xiaoming 那匹白马是我岳父自己驯的。以前这里的牧民靠畜牧生活，现在大家都种地了。
nà pǐ bái mǎ shì wǒ yuèfù zìjǐ xùn de yǐqián zhèlǐ de mùmín kào xùmù shēnghuó xiànzài dàjiā dōu zhòngdì le · That white horse was tamed by my father-in-law himself. People round here used to live by herding; now everyone farms.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the harvest

xiaoming 今天的任务是收割玉米。这些耕地都是我岳父年轻时自己开垦的，一年四季，他耕耘、灌溉、加肥料，一天也不休息。以前用牛耕田，用锄头锄草，现在都用机器了。
jīntiān de rènwu shì shōugē yùmǐ zhèxiē gēngdì dōu shì wǒ yuèfù niánqīng shí zìjǐ kāikěn de yì nián sìjì tā gēngyún guàngài jiā féiliào yì tiān yě bù xiūxi yǐqián yòng niú gēng tián yòng chú tou chú cǎo xiànzài dōu yòng jīqì le · Today's job is bringing in the maize. My father-in-law cleared all this farmland himself when he was young. All year round he ploughs, waters and fertilises, without a day off. He used to plough with oxen and weed with a hoe; now it's all done by machine.

anna 他用化肥吗?
tā yòng huàféi ma · Does he use chemical fertiliser?

xiaoming 很少，主要用牛粪做肥料。动物的粪便放在坑里，过几个月就是最好的肥料。
hěn shǎo zhǔyào yòng niú fèn zuò féiliào dòngwù de fènbiàn fàng zài kēng lǐ guò jǐ gè yuè jiùshì zuìhǎo de féiliào · Hardly any: mostly cow dung. The animal droppings go into a pit, and a few months later they're the best fertiliser there is.

ms zhang 你看这些作物，长得多茁壮！水是从山上的流水和地下水来的，不用担心干旱。
nǐ kàn zhèxiē zuòwù zhǎng de duō zhuózhuàng shuǐ shì cóng shān shàng de liúshuǐ hé dìxiàshuǐ lái de búyòng dānxīn gānhàn · Look how strong these crops are! The water comes from the streams in the hills and from groundwater, so there's no need to worry about drought.

little sister 这一片池塘里还有很多鱼，是淡水鱼吧?
zhè yí piàn chítáng lǐ hái yǒu hěn duō yú shì dànshuǐ yú ba · And this pond has lots of fish in it: freshwater fish, I suppose?

xiaoming 对，是鲤鱼，我岳父自己养的。好了，开始干活！我们一连掰了两个小时玉米，大家连连说累。
duì shì lǐyú wǒ yuèfù zìjǐ yǎng de hǎo le kāishǐ gànhuó wǒmen yìlián bāi le liǎng gè xiǎoshí yùmǐ dàjiā liánlián shuō lèi · Yes, carp: my father-in-law raises them himself. Right, let's get to work! … We picked maize for two hours straight, and everyone kept saying how tired they were.

anna 累是累，可是看着大家把玉米一车一车运回去，心里特别有成就感。
lèi shì lèi kěshì kàn zhe dàjiā bǎ yùmǐ yì chē yì chē yùn huiqu xīnlǐ tèbié yǒu chéngjiù gǎn · Tired, yes, but watching everyone take the maize home cartload after cartload gives you a real sense of achievement.

little sister 哎呀，我的鞋！这边下过雨，地上全是泥，我一脚踩进了一个泥潭！
āiyā wǒ de xié zhèbiān xià guo yǔ dì shàng quán shì ní wǒ yì jiǎo cǎi jìn le yí gè nítán · Oh no, my shoe! It rained over here, it's all mud, and I've stepped right into a bog!

xiaoming 我早说过要穿雨鞋。来，抓住我的手……拔出来了！
wǒ zǎo shuō guo yào chuān yǔ xié lái zhuā zhù wǒ de shǒu bá chulai le · I told you to wear boots. Here, grab my hand… there, it's out!

ms zhang 下午我们或去摘苹果，或在田间帮着收稻草，大家自己选。
xiàwǔ wǒmen huò qù zhāi píngguǒ huò zài tiánjiān bāng zhe shōu dàocǎo dàjiā zìjǐ xuǎn · This afternoon we can either pick apples or help gather the straw in the fields: everyone choose for yourselves.

chapter 4 chapter 4: a storm in the orchard

ms zhang 这些苹果树是小明的岳父自己栽的，栽培了十几年了。这一带盛产苹果，又大又甜。
zhèxiē píngguǒ shù shì Xiǎomíng de yuèfù zìjǐ zāi de zāipéi le shí jǐ nián le zhè yídài shèngchǎn píngguǒ yòu dà yòu tián · Xiaoming's father-in-law planted these apple trees himself and has been growing them for over ten years. This area is famous for its apples: big and sweet.

anna 院子里还有槐树、柳树和杨树，路边一排松树和柏树，树荫下面好凉快。
yuànzi lǐ hái yǒu huáishù liǔshù hé yángshù lùbiān yì pái sōngshù hé bǎishù shùyīn xiàmiàn hǎo liángkuai · And there are pagoda trees, willows and poplars in the yard, and a row of pines and cypresses along the road. It's lovely and cool in the shade.

little sister 这棵老槐树的树干好粗，年轮一定很多。树梢上还有一个鸟巢！
zhè kē lǎo huáishù de shùgàn hǎo cū niánlún yídìng hěn duō shùshāo shàng hái yǒu yí gè niǎocháo · This old pagoda tree has such a thick trunk: it must have loads of rings. And there's a bird's nest at the very top!

ms zhang 墙边的桂花正在盛开，满院子都是芬芳。池塘里的荷花已经凋谢了，可是明年夏天又会绽放。
qiáng biān de guìhuā zhèngzài shèngkāi mǎn yuànzi dōu shì fēnfāng chítáng lǐ de héhuā yǐjīng diāoxiè le kěshì míngnián xiàtiān yòu huì zhànfàng · The osmanthus by the wall is in full bloom, and the whole yard smells sweet. The lotuses in the pond have faded, but they'll bloom again next summer.

little sister 花园里种着百合、茉莉，还有一棵牡丹，各种花卉都有。春天的时候满树都是花蕾，花瓣落了一地。
huāyuán lǐ zhòng zhe bǎihé mòlì hái yǒu yì kē mǔdan gèzhǒng huāhuì dōu yǒu chūntiān de shíhou mǎn shù dōu shì huālěi huābàn luò le yí dì · The garden has lilies, jasmine and even a peony: all kinds of flowers. In spring the trees are covered in buds, and the petals fall all over the ground.

ms zhang 那边的花苗刚发芽，是用去年留下的籽种的。新芽从茎旁边萌发出来，这就是萌芽。有的花已经枯萎了，留下干枯的茎。
nàbiān de huā miáo gāng fāyá shì yòng qùnián liúxia de zǐ zhòng de xīn yá cóng jīng pángbiān méngfā chulai zhè jiùshì méngyá yǒude huā yǐjīng kūwěi le liúxia gānkū de jīng · The seedlings over there have just sprouted, grown from seeds saved last year. The new shoots come out beside the stem: that's sprouting. Some flowers have withered already, leaving dry stalks.

anna 后面的树林那么茂密，草长得那么茂盛，简直像丛林一样。
hòumiàn de shùlín nàme màomì cǎo zhǎng de nàme màoshèng jiǎnzhí xiàng cónglín yíyàng · The wood at the back is so dense and the grass so lush: it's like a jungle.

xiaoming 小心那边的草丛，里面有荆棘和藤蔓。
xiǎoxīn nàbiān de cǎocóng lǐmiàn yǒu jīngjí hé téngwàn · Watch out for the long grass over there: there are brambles and creepers in it.

anna 哎，天怎么突然暗了？刚才还阳光明媚，现在乌云密布。
āi tiān zěnme tūrán àn le gāngcái hái yángguāng míngmèi xiànzài wūyún mìbù · Hey, why has it suddenly got dark? A minute ago it was bright sunshine, and now the sky is thick with black clouds.

xiaoming 要下大雨了，说不定还有冰雹！快，把苹果筐搬到棚里去！
yào xià dà yǔ le shuōbudìng hái yǒu bīngbáo kuài bǎ píngguǒ kuāng bān dào péng lǐ qù · It's going to pour, and there may even be hail! Quick, get the apple baskets into the shed!

little sister 风好大，北风呼啸，树枝时而往左，时而往右，苹果相继掉了下来。
fēng hǎo dà běi fēng hūxiào shù zhī shíér wǎng zuǒ shíér wǎng yòu píngguǒ xiāngjì diào le xialai · The wind is so strong! The north wind is howling, the branches swing now left, now right, and the apples are falling one after another.

ms zhang 别怕，这只是一阵风，不是风暴。说真的，在城里住久了，我还真有点儿想念这样的天气。
bié pà zhè zhǐshì yízhèn fēng bú shì fēngbào shuōzhēnde zài chéng lǐ zhù jiǔ le wǒ hái zhēn yǒudiǎnr xiǎngniàn zhèyàng de tiānqì · Don't be scared: it's just a squall, not a storm. To be honest, after living in the city so long, I've actually missed weather like this.

anna

雨停了！天空马上变得明朗起来，远处的山碧绿碧绿的。

yǔ tíng le tiānkōng mǎshàng biàn de mínglǎng qǐlai yuǎn chù de shān bìlǜ bìlǜ de · The rain has stopped! The sky has suddenly cleared, and the hills in the distance are emerald green.

chapter 5 chapter 5: round the fire

anna 你们看，夕阳下的晚霞多美！整个天空都是红的，田野也变成了红色。
nǐmen kàn xīyáng xià de wǎnxiá duō měi zhěnggè tiānkōng dōu shì hóng de tiányě yě biànchéng le hóngsè · Look how beautiful the sunset is! The whole sky is red, and the fields have turned red too.

xiaoming 晚上我们在院子里点了一堆火。火焰一跳一跳的，火花飞到天上，孩子们的脸都照得红扑扑的。
wǎnshang wǒmen zài yuànzi lǐ diǎn le yì duī huǒ huǒyàn yí tiào yí tiào de huǒhuā fēi dào tiānshàng háizimen de liǎn dōu zhào de hóngpūpū de · In the evening we lit a fire in the yard. The flames leapt and the sparks flew up into the sky, and the children's faces glowed rosy in the firelight.

little sister 天一黑，四周一片漆黑，只有满天的星星在闪烁，比城里的灯光还灿烂。
tiān yì hēi sìzhōu yí piàn qīhēi zhǐyǒu mǎn tiān de xīngxing zài shǎnshuò bǐ chéng lǐ de dēngguāng hái cànlàn · As soon as night falls, everything around is pitch-dark except for the stars twinkling all over the sky, brighter than the city lights.

little sister 这堆火让我想起周博士纪录片里的火山：滚烫的岩石往下泻，太可怕了。
zhè duī huǒ ràng wǒ xiǎng qǐ Zhōubóshì jìlùpiàn lǐ de huǒshān gǔn tàng de yánshí wǎng xià xiè tài kěpà le · This fire reminds me of the volcano in Dr Zhou's documentary: red-hot rock pouring down. Terrifying.

ms zhang 我年轻的时候在海边住过。台风来的时候，海上波涛汹涌，波浪一个比一个高，潮水往岸上涌，港口变成一片汪洋；平静的时候，海水轻轻荡漾，我们在礁石边上捡贝壳、海藻。
wǒ niánqīng de shíhou zài hǎi biān zhù guo táifēng lái de shíhou hǎi shàng bōtāo xiōngyǒng bōlàng yí gè bǐ yí gè gāo cháoshuǐ wǎng àn shàng yǒng gǎngkǒu biànchéng yí piàn wāngyáng píngjìng de shíhou hǎi shuǐ qīng qīng dàngyàng wǒmen zài jiāoshí biān shàng jiǎn bèiké hǎizǎo · When I was young I lived by the sea. When a typhoon came, the sea raged, each wave higher than the last, the tide surged up the shore and the harbour became one vast sheet of water. On calm days the water rippled gently, and we collected shells and seaweed by the rocks.

ms zhang 我们来看看今天拍的照片吧。安娜，这张晚霞拍得真好，颜色艳丽，又不刺眼。
wǒmen lái kàn kan jīntiān pāi de zhàopiàn ba Ānnà zhè zhāng wǎnxiá pāi de zhēn hǎo yánsè yànlì yòu bú cìyǎn · Let's look at the photos we took today. Anna, this sunset is beautifully taken: rich colours, but not glaring.

xiaoming 这张鹅追妹妹的照片也有看头儿！她吓得脸色苍白。
zhè zhāng é zhuī mèimei de zhàopiàn yě yǒu kàntour tā xià de liǎnsè cāngbái · And this one of the geese chasing my sister is worth a look too! She's white as a sheet.

anna 还有这张：太阳的光芒照耀着田野，蔚蓝的天，洁白的云，翠绿的树，又亮丽又辉煌。
hái yǒu zhè zhāng tàiyáng de guāngmáng zhàoyào zhe tiányě wèilán de tiān jiébái de yún cuìlǜ de shù yòu liànglì yòu huīhuáng · And this one: the sun's rays shining over the fields, azure sky, white clouds, green trees: bright and glorious.

xiaoming 这张拍得有点儿阴暗，人都在阴影里。不过你们看那扇朱红的大门，颜色真耀眼。
zhè zhāng pāi de yǒudiǎnr yīnàn rén dōu zài yīnyǐng lǐ búguò nǐmen kàn nà shān zhūhóng de dà mén yánsè zhēn yàoyǎn · This one is a bit dark: everyone is in shadow. But look at that vermilion gate: the colour is dazzling.

little sister 哪有！我脸色红润着呢。倒是这张雾里的农场，朦胧得什么也看不清，没什么看头儿。
nǎ yǒu wǒ liǎnsè hóngrùn zhe ne dàoshì zhè zhāng wù lǐ de nóngchǎng ménglóng de shénme yě kàn bu qīng méi shénme kàntour · I am not! I'm perfectly rosy-cheeked. That one of the farm in the fog, though, is so hazy you can't see anything: not worth looking at.

anna 我觉得来农场真好，一来能呼吸新鲜空气，二来能自己干活，三来，吃的都是自己种的。
wǒ juéde lái nóngchǎng zhēn hǎo yìlái néng hūxī xīnxiān kōngqì èrlái néng zìjǐ gànhuó sānlái chī de dōu shì zìjǐ zhòng de · I think coming to the farm is wonderful: you breathe fresh air, you do the work yourself, and everything you eat is home-grown.

ms zhang 是啊。在城里待久了，人会变得苍白、没有精神；来这儿住两天，整个人都焕发了生机。

shì a zài chéng lǐ dāi jiǔ le rén huì biàn de cāngbái méiyǒu jīngshen lái zhèr zhù liǎng tiān zhěnggè rén dōu huànfā le shēngjī · Yes. Stay in the city too long and you turn pale and listless; a couple of days here and you're full of life again.

xiaoming 明天早上我岳父还要带我们去河边，看渔民捕鱼。听说河里的大鱼屡次把网弄破，渔民们一直没能捕获它。

míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yuèfù hái yào dài wǒmen qù hé biān kàn yúmín bǔ yú tīngshuō hé lǐ de dà yú lǚcì bǎ wǎng nòng pò yúmínmen yìzhí méi néng bǔhuò tā · Tomorrow morning my father-in-law is taking us down to the river to watch the fishermen. Apparently a big fish in the river has broken their nets time and again, and the fishermen have never managed to catch it.

little sister 太好了！那今天晚上该睡就睡，明天一早起来看旭日东升！

tài hǎo le nà jīntiān wǎnshang gāi shuì jiù shuì míngtiān yìzǎo qǐlái kàn xùrì dōng shēng · Brilliant! Then tonight we sleep when it's time to sleep, and get up early to watch the sunrise!

Geese, foxes, maize, apples, a storm and a sky full of stars: a whole weekend in the Chinese countryside, and you understood it all.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 65 the body

Name the parts of the body, from wrist and knee to kidney and artery, and scoff "what's the point?" with 有什么 + verb + 头.

Doctors, coaches and health articles all talk about the body in this precise vocabulary, and 有什么……头 is how Chinese friends tease you about your plans.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
身躯	shēnqū	body, frame (written)	老人拖着疲惫的身躯走回了家。 The old man dragged his weary body home.
身子	shēnzi	body (spoken); health	我这两天身子不太舒服。 I haven't been feeling too well these last couple of days.
浑身	húnshēn	from head to toe, all over	跑完步，我浑身都是汗。 After my run I was sweating all over.
四肢	sìzhī	the four limbs, arms and legs	运动前要先活动一下四肢。 Before exercise, loosen up your arms and legs first.
肢体	zhītǐ	limbs; body (language)	他不会说中文，只好用肢体语言。 He can't speak Chinese, so he has to use body language.
手脚	shǒujiǎo	hands and feet; movements	奶奶八十岁了，手脚还很灵活。 Grandma is eighty and still very nimble.
手腕	shǒuwàn	wrist	她天天打电脑，手腕有点儿疼。 She types all day and her wrist hurts a bit.
手掌	shǒuzhǎng	palm (of the hand)	他把手掌放在我头上，说我发烧了。 He put his palm on my head and said I had a fever.
拇指	mǔzhǐ	thumb; big toe	他向我竖起了大拇指。 He gave me a thumbs-up.
指甲	zhǐjia	fingernail, toenail	孩子的指甲长{zhang3}得很快，要常剪。 Children's nails grow fast: you have to cut them often.
膝盖	xīgài	knee	跑步跑多了，膝盖容易受伤。 Run too much and you can easily hurt your knees.
屁股	pìgu	bottom, backside (spoken)	坐了一天车，屁股都坐疼了。 After a whole day in the car, my backside hurts.
臀	tún	buttocks (formal)	这个动作可以锻炼腿部和臀部的肌肉。 This exercise works the muscles of your legs and buttocks.
腹	fù	belly, abdomen (written)	他感到腹部一阵疼痛。 He felt a stab of pain in his abdomen.
胸膛	xiōngtáng	chest	他挺起胸膛，大步走上台。 He puffed out his chest and strode onto the stage.

脊梁	jǐliáng	back, backbone	坐的时候要挺直脊梁。 Keep your back straight when you sit.
骨骼	gǔgé	skeleton, bones	青少年的骨骼还在发育。 Teenagers' bones are still growing.
关节	guānjié	joint (knee, elbow…); key point	天一冷，奶奶的关节就疼。 As soon as it turns cold, Grandma's joints ache.
筋	jīn	tendon, sinew; vein	我打球的时候扭了筋，走路有点儿疼。 I pulled a tendon playing ball, and it hurts a bit to walk.
肌肤	jīfū	skin (written)	冬天空气干燥，肌肤也容易变干{gan1}。 The air is dry in winter, and your skin dries out easily.
脸颊	liǎnjiá	cheek	泪水从她的脸颊上流了下来。 Tears ran down her cheeks.
嘴唇	zuǐchún	lips	天太冷了，孩子的嘴唇都冻紫了。 It was so cold the child's lips had turned blue.
喉咙	hóulóng	throat	我喉咙疼，说不出话来。 My throat hurts so much I can hardly speak.
咽喉	yānhóu	throat, pharynx (medical); key passage	医生说是咽喉发炎，多喝水就好了。 The doctor says it's an inflamed throat: drink plenty of water and it will clear up.
气管	qìguǎn	windpipe, trachea	吃东西别说话，小心掉进气管里。 Don't talk while you eat, or something might go down the wrong way.
内脏	nèizàng	internal organs	检查结果显示，他的内脏都很健康。 The check-up shows all his internal organs are healthy.
器官	qìguān	organ (of the body)	心脏是人体最重要的器官之一。 The heart is one of the body's most vital organs.
肾	shèn	kidney	医生说他的肾有点儿问题，要多喝水。 The doctor says there's a slight problem with his kidneys and he should drink more water.
脾	pí	spleen; temper	中医认为，脾胃不好的人要少吃生{sheng1-4-2}冷的东西。 Traditional Chinese medicine holds that people with weak digestion should avoid raw and cold food.
动脉	dòngmài	artery	动脉把血液从心脏送到全身。 Arteries carry blood from the heart to the whole body.
脉搏	màibó	pulse	跑完以后，我的脉搏一分钟一百五十次。 After the run my pulse was 150 beats a minute.
五官	wǔguān	facial features	这个孩子五官长{zhang3}得很好看。 This child has lovely features.
腔	qiāng	cavity (of the body); accent, tone	他说话带着一股上海腔。 He speaks with a bit of a Shanghai accent.
秃	tū	bald; bare	我爸爸四十岁头就秃了。 My dad went bald at forty.
皱纹	zhòuwén	wrinkle	奶奶脸上的皱纹多了，可笑容|还是{==still, after all}那么慈祥。

Grandma has more wrinkles now, but her smile is as kind as ever.

pattern 有什么 + verb + 头: what's the point of ...?

有什么 | verb | 头(儿)

Verb + 头(儿) makes a noun: "something worth doing". 有什么看头儿? is a scoffing question, "what's there to see?", so it really means "it isn't worth it". It is the mirror of 没什么 + verb + 头儿, which you met on day 63. Common verbs: 看, 吃, 玩, 说, 跑.

这种电影有什么看头儿? **zhè zhǒng diànyǐng yǒu shénme kàntour** What's worth watching in a film like that?

天这么冷，公园有什么玩头? **tiān zhème lěng gōngyuán yǒu shénme wán tou** In this cold, what fun is there to be had in the park?

事情早就说清楚了，还有什么说头? **shìqing zǎo jiù shuō qīngchu le hái yǒu shénme shuō tou** It was all settled long ago: what's left to talk about?

dialogue a check-up from head to toe

dr li 安娜，听说你报名参加明年春天的城市马拉松了？
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐ bàomíng cānjiā míngnián chūntiān de chéngshì mǎlāsōng le · Anna, I hear you've signed up for the city marathon next spring?

anna 是啊，比赛四月举行，届时有三万人参加。公司要求我们尽早做个体检。
shì a bǐsài sì yuè jǔxíng jièshí yǒu sān wàn rén cānjiā gōngsī yāoqiú wǒmen jǐnzǎo zuò gè tǐjiǎn · Yes: it's in April, and thirty thousand people will be running. The company wants us to have a check-up as early as possible.

little sister 顶着风沙跑四十二公里，累得浑身是汗，膝盖还疼，有什么跑头？
dǐng zhe fēngshā pǎo sìshíèr gōnglǐ lèi de húnshēn shì hàn xīgài hái téng yǒu shénme pǎo tou · Running 42 kilometres into the blowing sand, sweating all over, with sore knees: what's the point?

anna 一则锻炼身体，二则认识新朋友，三则跑到终点的那一刻，特别有成就感！
yì zé duànliàn shēntǐ èr zé rènshi xīn péngyou sān zé pǎo dào zhōngdiǎn de nà yí kè tèbié yǒu chéngjiù gǎn · For one thing it keeps me fit, for another I meet new people, and thirdly, the moment you cross the finish line feels amazing!

dr li 好，先量一下脉搏……每分钟五十八次，很好。把手掌伸出来，再看看你的指甲。
hǎo xiān liáng yíxià màibó měi fēnzhōng wǔshíbā cì hěn hǎo bǎ shǒuzhǎng shēn chulai zài kàn kan nǐ de zhǐjia · Right, first your pulse… fifty-eight a minute, very good. Hold out your hands, and let me see your nails.

dr li 张开嘴，我看看喉咙。咽喉有点儿红，嘴唇也有点儿干。最近温差大，感冒了吗？
zhāng kāi zuǐ wǒ kàn kan hóulóng yānhóu yǒudiǎnr hóng zuǐchún yě yǒudiǎnr gān zuìjìn wēnchā dà gǎnmào le ma · Open your mouth and let me see your throat. It's a little red, and your lips are a bit dry. The temperature swings a lot these days: have you had a cold?

anna 前几天身子不太舒服，现在好了。
qián jǐ tiān shēnzi bú tài shūfu xiànzài hǎo le · I was a bit under the weather a few days ago, but I'm fine now.

dr li 再弯一下膝盖。你的骨骼和关节都没问题，就是腿上的筋有点儿紧。跑前一定要活动活动四肢，转转手腕。
zài wān yíxià xīgài nǐ de gǔgé hé guānjié dōu méi wèntí jiùshì tuǐ shàng de jīn yǒudiǎnr jǐn pǎo qián yídìng yào huódòng huódòng sìzhī zhuàn zhuan shǒuwàn · Now bend your knee. Your bones and joints are fine; just the tendons in your legs are a bit tight. Always loosen up your arms and legs and circle your wrists before you run.

dr li 检查结果也出来了：肝、肾、脾，所有的内脏器官都很健康，动脉也没问题。
jiǎnchá jiéguǒ yě chūlái le gān shèn pí suǒyǒu de nèizàng qìguān dōu hěn jiànkāng dòngmài yě méi wèntí · Your test results are back too: liver, kidneys, spleen, all your internal organs are healthy, and your arteries are fine.

anna 太好了！那跑步的时候要注意什么？
tài hǎo le nà pǎobù de shíhou yào zhùyì shénme · Great! So what should I watch out for when I run?

dr li 挺起胸膛，挺直脊梁，手脚要协调，手掌放松，大拇指轻轻放在手指上。坐久了别马上跑，先活动一下腹部和臀部的肌肉。
tǐng qǐ xiōngtáng tǐng zhí jǐliáng shǒujiǎo yào xiétiáo shǒuzhǎng fàngsōng dà mǔzhǐ qīng qīng fàng zài shǒuzhǐ shàng zuò jiǔ le bié mǎshàng pǎo xiān huódòng yíxià fù bù hé tún bù de jīròu · Chest up, back straight, arms and legs in rhythm, hands relaxed, thumb resting lightly on your fingers. If you've been sitting a long time, don't start running straight away: loosen up your stomach and glutes first.

little sister 爸爸，你向来说跑步最伤膝盖，怎么现在又让安娜去跑？
bàba nǐ xiànglái shuō pǎobù zuì shāng xīgài zěnme xiànzài yòu ràng Ānnà qù pǎo · Dad, you've always said running ruins your knees. Why are you telling Anna to do it now?

dr li 我是说过，可我现在也天天跑。你看我，头快秃了，脸上的皱纹也多了，可脸色红润，身体比十年前还好。
wǒ shì shuō guo kě wǒ xiànzài yě tiān tiān pǎo nǐ kàn wǒ tóu kuài tū le liǎn shàng de zhòuwén yě duō le kě liǎnsè hóngrùn shēntǐ bǐ shí nián qián hái hǎo · I did say that, but now I run every day myself. Look at me: I'm nearly bald and I've got more wrinkles, but I've got a healthy colour and I'm fitter than I was ten years ago.

little sister 那我跟你们一起跑几公里吧。不过先说好，屁股坐疼了我就不跑了！
nà wǒ gēn nǐmen yìqǐ pǎo jǐ gōnglǐ ba búguò xiān shuō hǎo pìgu zuò téng le wǒ jiù bù pǎo le · All right, I'll run a

few kilometres with you. But I'm warning you: once my backside gets sore from sitting, I'm done!

anna 跑步又不是坐着！你看你，脸颊红红的，肌肤很有光泽，五官又漂亮，跑完步一定更有精神。

pǎobù yòu bú shì zuò zhe nǐ kàn nǐ liǎnjiá hóng hóng de jīfū hěn yǒu guāngzé wǔguān yòu piàoliang pǎo wán bù yídìng gèng yǒu jīngshen · Running isn't sitting! Look at you: rosy cheeks, glowing skin, pretty features: you'll look even livelier after a run.

dr li 跑的时候用鼻子和嘴一起呼吸，让冷空气慢慢进入气管和胸腔。累了就停，别用疲惫的身躯硬撑。

pǎo de shíhou yòng bízi hé zuǐ yìqǐ hūxī ràng lěng kōngqì màn màn jìnrù qìguǎn hé xiōng qiāng lèi le jiù tíng bié yòng píbèi de shēnqū yìng chēng · When you run, breathe through your nose and mouth together, so the cold air goes into your windpipe and chest slowly. If you're tired, stop: don't force a worn-out body to keep going.

anna 明白！跑步也是一种肢体语言，告诉自己：我能行！

míngbai pǎobù yě shì yì zhǒng zhītǐ yǔyán gàosu zìjǐ wǒ néng xíng · Got it! Running is body language too: it tells yourself, "I can do this!"

write it trace the grey, then write your own

黏
nián
sticky

渣
zhā
dregs, residue; crumbs

锈
xiù
rust; to rust

皱
zhòu
wrinkle, crease; to frown

good to know · Spoken words and written words for the body often come in pairs: 身子 / 身躯, 屁股 / 臀部, 肚子 / 腹部, 皮肤 / 肌肤. Use the first in conversation and the second in medical or literary writing. Verb + 头(儿) "something worth doing" mostly appears in 有什么……头 and 没什么……头. In writing the 儿 is often dropped: 没什么吃头.

From thumb to artery, you can now follow a doctor's check-up in Chinese, and tease a friend: 有什么跑头?
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 66 looks and fitness

Talk about looks, figure and fitness, the Chinese art of 养生, and say what you would rather do with 宁可 / 宁愿……，也不……

Looks and health come up in every family conversation in China, and 宁可……也不…… is the natural way to state a firm preference.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
相貌	xiàngmào	looks, appearance (of a face)	不能只看一个人的相貌。 You can't judge a person by their looks alone.
长相	zhǎngxiàng	looks (spoken)	兄弟俩的长相差不多，性格却完全不同。 The two brothers look much the same but have completely different personalities.
容貌	róngmào	looks, features (written)	几十年过去了，她的容貌没怎么变。 Decades have passed, and her looks have hardly changed.
容颜	róngyán	face, youthful looks (literary)	时间会改变容颜，却改变不了真心。 Time changes our faces but not a true heart.
面孔	miànkǒng	face (as seen by others)	公司里来了好几张新面孔。 There are quite a few new faces at the company.
外貌	wàimào	outward appearance	她觉得外貌没有健康重要。 She thinks looks matter less than health.
体态	tǐtài	figure, posture	常跳舞的人体态都很好。 People who dance a lot have good posture.
苗条	miáotiao	slim, slender	为了苗条，她晚饭只吃一点儿水果。 To stay slim, she only eats a little fruit for supper.
修长	xiūcháng	long and slender	她的手指修长，很适合弹钢琴。 She has long slender fingers, perfect for the piano.
性感	xìnggǎn	sexy	广告里的模特儿穿得很性感。 The models in the ad are dressed very sexily.
美容	měiróng	to beautify, do beauty treatments	她每个月都去做一次美容。 She has a beauty treatment once a month.
气色	qìsè	complexion, how well you look	你最近气色不错，是不是休息好了？ You're looking well lately: have you been getting some rest?
憔悴	qiáocuì	haggard, worn out	连着加了一个月班，他看起来很憔悴。 After a month of overtime he looks haggard.
健壮	jiànzhuàng	strong and healthy	大白是一条健壮的大狗。 Dabai is a big, strong dog.
硬朗	yìnglang	hale and hearty (of old people)	爷爷九十岁了，身体还很硬朗。 Grandpa is ninety and still hale and hearty.
壮	zhuàng	strong; to strengthen	他长{zhang3}得又高又壮。 He's grown tall and strong.

体质	tǐzhì	constitution, physique	她体质弱，一到冬天就感冒。 She has a weak constitution and catches a cold every winter.
体魄	tǐpò	physique, vigour	运动能让人有一个健康的体魄。 Exercise gives you a strong, healthy body.
先天	xiāntiān	inborn, congenital	他的心脏病是先天的。 His heart condition is congenital.
生理	shēnglǐ	physiology; physical	压力太大|会影响人的生理和心理。 Too much stress affects people both physically and mentally.
养生	yǎngshēng	to look after your health	现在很多年轻人也开始注重养生了。 These days many young people care about staying healthy too.
保养	bǎoyǎng	to take care of (health, skin, a car)	她保养得很好，看起来很年轻。 She has looked after herself well and looks young.
疗养	liáoyǎng	to convalesce (in a sanatorium)	病好以后，他去海边疗养了一个月。 After he got better, he spent a month by the sea recuperating.
休养	xiūyǎng	to rest and recover	医生让他在家休养两个星期。 The doctor told him to rest at home for two weeks.
桑拿	sāngná	sauna	运动完洗个桑拿，浑身都舒服。 A sauna after exercise makes you feel good all over.
辫子	biànzi	plait, braid	妹妹小时候总是梳着两条辫子。 As a little girl, his sister always wore two plaits.
嗅觉	xiùjué	sense of smell	狗的嗅觉比人灵敏得多。 Dogs have a far keener sense of smell than people.
触觉	chùjué	sense of touch	皮肤是我们的触觉器官。 The skin is our organ of touch.
知觉	zhījué	consciousness, feeling	我的手冻得失去了知觉。 My hands were so cold they'd gone numb.
分泌	fēnmì	to secrete	人紧张的时候会分泌更多的激素。 When we are nervous, we secrete more hormones.
激素	jīsù	hormone	运动可以让身体分泌让人快乐的激素。 Exercise makes the body release hormones that make you happy.
唾液	tuòyè	saliva (medical)	唾液可以帮助消化。 Saliva helps digestion.
口水	kǒushuǐ	saliva, drool	一看到红烧肉，他就流口水了。 One look at the braised pork and his mouth was watering.
鼻涕	bítì	nasal mucus, runny nose	我感冒了，一直流鼻涕。 I've got a cold and my nose won't stop running.
痰	tán	phlegm	咳嗽有痰的话，要多喝热水。 If you have a chesty cough, drink plenty of warm water.

pattern 宁可 / 宁愿……，也不……: would rather … than …

宁可 / 宁愿 | A (the price you accept) | 也不 | B (what you refuse)

宁可 and 宁愿 introduce the choice you accept, even though it costs you something; 也不 introduces what you refuse to do. 宁愿 sounds a little more personal ("I'd willingly…"), 宁可 a little more resolute. Use it for real preferences and principles.

我宁可走路去，也不想挤公共汽车。 **wǒ nìngkě zǒulù qù yě bù xiǎng jǐ gōnggòng qìchē** I'd rather walk than squeeze onto the bus.

她宁愿每天早起一个小时，也不放弃跑步。 **tā nìngyuàn měi tiān zǎo qǐ yí gè xiǎoshí yě bú fàngqì pǎobù** She would rather get up an hour earlier every day than give up running.

我宁可胖一点儿，也不饿着肚子减肥。 **wǒ nìngkě pàng yìdiǎnr yě bú è zhe dùzi jiǎnféi** I'd rather be a bit chubby than starve myself to lose weight.

dialogue the 养生 expert

ms zhang 安娜，快进来！你最近气色真好，脸红扑扑的。
Ānnà kuài jinlai nǐ zuìjìn qìsè zhēn hǎo liǎn hóngpūpū de · Anna, come on in! You're looking so well lately: such rosy cheeks.

anna 因为天天跑步！阿姨，您看起来比去年还年轻，保养得真好。
yīnwèi tiān tiān pǎobù āyí nín kàn qǐlai bǐ qùnián hái niánqīng bǎoyǎng de zhēn hǎo · That's from running every day! And you look even younger than last year: you really take care of yourself.

ms zhang 我五十多了，容颜早就不比当年了。不过养生我是认真的。我每天六点起床，先喝一杯热水；然后去公园活动活动四肢，走一个小时；中午睡半个小时；晚饭后出去散步；最后，十点以前一定睡觉。
wǒ wǔshí duō le róngyán zǎo jiù bù bǐ dāngnián le búguò yǎngshēng wǒ shì rènzhēn de wǒ měi tiān liù diǎn qǐchuáng xiān hē yì bēi rè shuǐ ránhòu qù gōngyuán huódòng huódòng sìzhī zǒu yí gè xiǎoshí zhōngwǔ shuì bàn gè xiǎoshí wǎnfàn hòu chūqù sànbù zuìhòu shí diǎn yǐqián yídìng shuìjiào · I'm over fifty: my looks aren't what they were. But I take my health seriously. Every day I get up at six and drink a glass of hot water; then I loosen up my arms and legs and walk in the park for an hour; at noon I nap for half an hour; after supper I go for a stroll; and last of all, I'm always in bed before ten.

little sister 妈妈，这是老年人的生活！我宁可每天少睡两个小时，也不想十点就睡觉。
māma zhè shì lǎonián rén de shēnghuó wǒ nìngkě měi tiān shǎo shuì liǎng gè xiǎoshí yě bù xiǎng shí diǎn jiù shuìjiào · Mum, that's a pensioner's life! I'd rather sleep two hours less a day than go to bed at ten.

ms zhang 你呀，天天说要苗条，饭也不好好吃，脸色苍白，人都憔悴了。
nǐ yā tiān tiān shuō yào miáotiao fàn yě bù hǎohǎo chī liǎnsè cāngbái rén dōu qiáocuì le · Oh, you: always going on about being slim, not eating properly, and now you're pale and look worn out.

little sister 现在的女孩子都想要修长的腿、苗条的身材。网上那些模特儿多性感啊！
xiànzài de nǚ háizi dōu xiǎng yào xiūcháng de tuǐ miáotiao de shēncái wǎngshang nàxiē mótèr duō xìnggǎn a · All girls want long legs and a slim figure these days. The models online are so sexy!

anna 我觉得外貌没那么重要。健康的体魄比漂亮的面孔重要多了。
wǒ juéde wàimào méi nàme zhòngyào jiànkāng de tǐpò bǐ piàoliang de miànkǒng zhòngyào duō le · I don't think looks matter that much. A healthy body is far more important than a pretty face.

ms zhang 安娜说得对。相貌是父母给的，没法选，可体质是可以慢慢变好的。
Ānnà shuō de duì xiàngmào shì fùmǔ gěi de méifǎ xuǎn kě tǐzhì shì kěyǐ màn màn biàn hǎo de · Anna's right. Your looks come from your parents and you can't choose them, but your constitution can improve over time.

little sister 好吧好吧。那我周末或去游泳，或去健身房，洗完桑拿再去做个美容。
hǎo ba hǎo ba nà wǒ zhōumò huò qù yóuyǒng huò qù jiànshēnfáng xǐ wán sāngná zài qù zuò gè měiróng · All right, all right. Then at weekends I'll either go swimming or go to the gym, and after the sauna I'll get a beauty treatment.

anna 我宁愿在公园里跑步，也不去健身房，那里人太多了。
wǒ nìngyuàn zài gōngyuán lǐ pǎobù yě bú qù jiànshēnfáng nàlǐ rén tài duō le · I'd rather run in the park than go to the gym: it's too crowded.

dr li 你们在说什么呢？有的人先天体质弱，但是坚持锻炼，也能变得很健壮。
nǐmen zài shuō shénme ne yǒude rén xiāntiān tǐzhì ruò dànshì jiānchí duànliàn yě néng biàn de hěn jiànzhuàng · What are you all talking about? Some people are born with a weak constitution, but if they keep exercising they can become strong and healthy.

ms zhang 你看你爸爸，六十了，头快秃了，身体还这么硬朗，壮得像个小伙子。
nǐ kàn nǐ bàba liùshí le tóu kuài tū le shēntǐ hái zhème yìnglang zhuàng de xiàng gè xiǎohuǒzi · Look at your dad: sixty, nearly bald, still so fit, and as strong as a young man.

dr li 这是有生理原因的：运动的时候，身体会分泌一种让人快乐的激素。还有，吃饭要慢慢嚼，唾液可以帮助消化。
zhè shì yǒu shēnglǐ yuányīn de yùndòng de shíhou shēntǐ huì fēnmì yì zhǒng ràng rén kuàilè de jīsù hái yǒu chī fàn yào màn màn jiáo tuòyè kěyǐ bāngzhù xiāohuà · There's a physiological reason for that: when you exercise, your body releases a hormone that makes you happy. And chew your food slowly: saliva helps digestion.

anna 大白怎么一直流口水?

Dàbái zěnme yìzhí liú kǒushuǐ · Why is Dabai drooling like that?

dr li 它闻到厨房里的肉味了。狗的嗅觉比人灵敏多了。

tā wén dào chúfáng lǐ de ròu wèi le gǒu de xiùjué bǐ rén língmǐn duō le · He can smell the meat in the kitchen. A dog's sense of smell is far keener than ours.

little sister 我感冒以后，一点儿嗅觉都没有了，鼻涕和痰也特别多，喉咙也疼。昨天顶着呼啸的北风骑车回学校，手冻得失去了知觉，连触觉都没了。

wǒ gǎnmào yǐhòu yìdiǎnr xiùjué dōu méiyǒu le bítì hé tán yě tèbié duō hóulóng yě téng zuótiān dǐng zhe hūxiào de běi fēng qí chē huí xuéxiào shǒu dòng de shīqù le zhījué lián chùjué dōu méi le · Since I caught a cold I can't smell a thing, I'm full of snot and phlegm, and my throat hurts. And riding back to college into the howling north wind yesterday, my hands got so cold they went numb: I couldn't feel a thing.

dr li 那就在家休养两天，多喝水，出门戴手套。

nà jiù zài jiā xiūyǎng liǎng tiān duō hē shuǐ chūmén dài shǒutào · Then rest at home for a couple of days, drink lots of water and wear gloves when you go out.

ms zhang 你奶奶年轻的时候，梳着两条长辫子，体态好，容貌也美。现在九十了，脸上全是皱纹，前年还去南方温暖湿润的海边疗养了一个月呢。

nǐ nǎinai niánqīng de shíhou shū zhe liǎng tiáo cháng biànzi tǐtài hǎo róngmào yě měi xiànzài jiǔshí le liǎn shàng quán shì zhòuwén qiánnián hái qù nánfāng wēnnuǎn shīrùn de hǎi biān liáoyǎng le yí gè yuè ne · When your grandma was young she wore two long plaits, she held herself beautifully and she was lovely to look at. Now she's ninety and her face is all wrinkles, and the year before last she still went to a warm, humid seaside place in the south to convalesce for a month.

little sister 难怪大家都说我的长相像奶奶!

nánguài dàjiā dōu shuō wǒ de zhǎngxiàng xiàng nǎinai · No wonder everyone says I look like Grandma!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

孔
kǒng
hole, opening (small); pore

稠
chóu
thick (liquid); dense

曰
yuē
to say (classical)

炮
pào
cannon, artillery

good to know · 你气色真好 (you look well) is a warm compliment; 你瘦了 (you've lost weight) is usually meant kindly too, while 你胖了 can still be said by older relatives as plain observation. To tell a story or a routine in time order, chain 先……，然后……，再……，最后……; in writing, 起初……，后来……，最终…… 宁可 and 宁愿 can swap in almost every sentence. With 与其 (tomorrow's pattern) the order flips: 与其 + what you reject, 宁可 + what you choose.

You can now compliment a friend's 气色, compare looks and health, and stand your ground: 我宁可跑步，也不节食!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 67 feeling ill

Describe how you feel when you are ill, from sneezing and numbness to fainting and choking, and weigh two options with 与其……，宁可 / 宁愿……

When you or a colleague falls ill in China you need these words for the doctor, the boss and the pharmacy, and 与其……宁可…… is how people talk you into the sensible choice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
打喷嚏	dǎpēntì	to sneeze	我一闻到花香就打喷嚏。 I sneeze as soon as I smell flowers.
发热	fārè	to have a temperature	孩子有点儿发热，今天别去学校了。 The child has a slight temperature: no school today.
乏力	fálì	weak, lacking strength	我这几天总是浑身乏力。 I've felt weak all over these last few days.
虚弱	xūruò	weak, frail	她刚生完病，身体还很虚弱。 She has just been ill and is still very weak.
衰弱	shuāiruò	feeble, failing	老人的听力慢慢衰弱了。 The old man's hearing has slowly failed.
昏	hūn	to faint; dizzy, dim	天太热了，有个游客昏了过去。 It was so hot that a tourist fainted.
昏迷	hūnmí	to be unconscious, in a coma	他出了车祸，昏迷了两天。 He was in a car accident and was unconscious for two days.
苏醒	sūxǐng	to come round, regain consciousness	经过抢救，病人终于苏醒了。 After emergency treatment, the patient finally came round.
休克	xiūkè	shock (medical); to go into shock	病人突然休克，医生马上进行抢救。 The patient suddenly went into shock and the doctors began emergency treatment.
喘	chuǎn	to pant, gasp	爬了十层楼，我累得直喘。 After climbing ten floors I was out of breath.
喘息	chuǎnxī	to gasp; a breather	忙了一个月，终于有了喘息的机会。 After a month of rush, at last there's a chance to catch my breath.
呻吟	shēnyín	to moan, groan	他疼得一直呻吟。 He was in so much pain he kept groaning.
呕吐	ǒutù	to vomit	她晕车，一路上呕吐了好几次。 She got carsick and threw up several times on the way.
腹泻	fùxiè	diarrhoea; to have diarrhoea	他吃了不干净的东西，腹泻了一天。 He ate something bad and had diarrhoea all day.
呛	qiāng	to choke (on food or water)	喝慢一点儿，别呛{qiang1-7b}着。 Drink slowly, or you'll choke.

呛	qiàng	to irritate (throat, nose: of smoke)	厨房里的辣椒味呛{qiang4}得我直咳嗽。 The chilli fumes in the kitchen made me cough and cough.
窒息	zhìxī	to suffocate	房间里人太多，空气不流通，让人感到窒息。 The room was so crowded and the air so still that it felt suffocating.
溺水	nìshuǐ	to drown	夏天游泳要小心，每年都有孩子溺水。 Be careful swimming in summer: children drown every year.
疙瘩	gēda	lump, bump; knot (of worry)	被蚊子咬了以后，腿上起了好几个疙瘩。 After the mosquito bites, my leg came up in bumps.
胀	zhàng	swollen, bloated	吃得太多了，肚子胀得难受。 I ate too much and my stomach feels horribly bloated.
麻	má	numb, tingling	坐得太久，腿都麻{ma2-7}了。 I sat so long that my legs have gone numb.
麻木	mámù	numb; apathetic	我的手冻得麻木了。 My hands are numb with cold.
麻痹	mábì	paralysed; to lull, numb	比分领先的时候，千万不能麻痹大意。 When you're ahead, you mustn't drop your guard.
瘫	tān	paralysed; to collapse	跑完全程，我累得瘫在地{di4-3}上。 After finishing the race I collapsed on the ground, exhausted.
瘫痪	tānhuàn	to be paralysed; paralysis	大雪让城市的交通几乎瘫痪了。 The heavy snow almost paralysed the city's traffic.
聋	lóng	deaf	爷爷耳朵有点儿聋，你说话大声一点儿。 Grandpa is a bit deaf: speak up.
哑	yǎ	mute; hoarse	唱了一晚上歌，嗓子都哑了。 I sang all night and lost my voice.
瘸	qué	to limp, be lame	他走路有点儿瘸，是不是脚受伤了？ He's walking with a slight limp: has he hurt his foot?
失明	shīmíng	to lose your sight, go blind	她小时候生了一场病，一只眼睛失明了。 She was ill as a child and lost the sight of one eye.
尿	niào	urine; to pee	医生让我去检查一下血和尿。 The doctor wants me to have a blood and urine test.
屎	shǐ	excrement, poo	带狗出去散步的时候，请把狗屎带走。 When you walk your dog, please take the dog poo with you.
上火	shànghuǒ	to have too much "inner heat"; to get angry	最近吃了太多辣的，有点儿上火。 I've eaten too much spicy food lately and it's given me "inner heat".
发作	fāzuò	to flare up, have an attack	他的心脏病又发作了。 His heart trouble has flared up again.
急性	jíxìng	acute (illness)	她得{de2}了急性胃病，在医院住了三天。 She had an acute stomach illness and spent three days in hospital.

慢性	mànxìng	chronic (illness)	慢性病要长期治疗。 Chronic illnesses need long-term treatment.

pattern 与其……，宁可 / 宁愿……: rather than …, better …

与其 | A (what you reject) | 宁可 / 宁愿 | B (what you choose)

与其 introduces the option you turn down, and 宁可 or 宁愿 the one you prefer, even if it costs something. Compare yesterday's 宁可 B，也不 A: same idea, opposite order. 与其……不如…… (you know it from HSK 5) is the cooler, more neutral version.

与其在家躺着难受，我宁可去医院看看。 **yǔqí zài jiā tǎng zhe nánshòu wǒ nìngkě qù yīyuàn kàn kan** Rather than lie at home feeling awful, I'd sooner go and get checked at the hospital.

与其花钱买补药，宁愿早睡早起多锻炼。 **yǔqí huā qián mǎi bǔ yào nìngyuàn zǎo shuì zǎo qǐ duō duànliàn** Better to go to bed early, get up early and exercise than spend money on tonics.

与其把感冒传染给大家，你宁可在家休息两天。 **yǔqí bǎ gǎnmào chuánrǎn gěi dàjiā nǐ nìngkě zài jiā xiūxi liǎng tiān** Rather than give everyone your cold, you'd better rest at home for two days.

dialogue sent home

manager liu 安娜，你一上午不停地打喷嚏，脸也红红的，是不是发热了？

Ānnà nǐ yí shàngwǔ bù tíng de dǎ pēntì liǎn yě hóng hóng de shì bu shì fārè le · Anna, you've been sneezing all morning and your face is all red: have you got a temperature?

anna 有一点儿。浑身乏力，头有点儿昏，嗓子也哑了。刚才爬了两层楼就喘得不行。

yǒuyìdiǎnr húnshēn fálì tóu yǒudiǎnr hūn sǎngzi yě yǎ le gāngcái pá le liǎng céng lóu jiù chuǎn de bùxíng · A little. I feel weak all over, my head's a bit woozy and I've lost my voice. Just now I climbed two flights of stairs and was completely out of breath.

manager liu 说真的，你脸色憔悴，看起来很虚弱。与其在这儿硬撑着，我宁愿你回家好好休息两天。下午的会我替你开。

shuō zhēn de nǐ liǎnsè qiáocuì kàn qǐlai hěn xūruò yǔqí zài zhèr yìng chēng zhe wǒ nìngyuàn nǐ huí jiā hǎohǎo xiūxi liǎng tiān xiàwǔ de huì wǒ tì nǐ kāi · Honestly, you look worn out and really weak. Rather than have you struggling on here, I'd prefer you went home and rested properly for two days. I'll take your meeting this afternoon.

anna 谢谢刘经理！昨天跑步淋了雨，又吃了一大盘麻辣火锅，李医生说我是着凉加上上火。他让我一次吃两丸中药。

xièxie Liújīnglǐ zuótiān pǎobù lín le yǔ yòu chī le yí dà pán málà huǒguō Lǐyīshēng shuō wǒ shì zháoliáng jiāshàng shànghuǒ tā ràng wǒ yí cì chī liǎng wán zhōngyào · Thank you, Ms Liu! I got caught in the rain while running yesterday, and then I ate a huge spicy hot pot. Dr Li says I caught a chill and have too much "inner heat" on top. He told me to take two herbal pills at a time.

manager liu 最近公司好几个人呕吐、腹泻，也许跟食堂有关系。你嘴唇都干了，回家多喝水，别再吃辣的了。

zuìjìn gōngsī hǎo jǐ gè rén ǒutù fùxiè yěxǔ gēn shítáng yǒu guānxì nǐ zuǐchún dōu gān le huí jiā duō hē shuǐ bié zài chī là de le · Lately several people at the company have had vomiting and diarrhoea: maybe it's something to do with the canteen. Your lips are all dry: drink plenty of water at home, and no more spicy food.

anna 我现在一闻到辣椒味就被呛得直咳嗽，想吃也吃不下了。喂，林编辑？

wǒ xiànzài yì wén dào làjiāo wèi jiù bèi qiàng de zhí késou xiǎng chī yě chī bu xià le wèi Línbiānjí · The smell of chilli catches my throat now and I can't stop coughing: I couldn't eat it if I wanted to. Hello, Editor Lin?

editor lin 安娜，听说你病了？我正在写一则新闻，讲急救知识。上个月，全市打急救电话的超过了两万人次。

Ānnà tīngshuō nǐ bìng le wǒ zhèngzài xiě yì zé xīnwén jiǎng jíjiù zhīshi shàng gè yuè quán shì dǎ jíjiù diànhuà de chāoguò le liǎng wàn réncì · Anna, I hear you're ill? I'm writing a news story about first aid. Last month people across the city rang the emergency number more than twenty thousand times.

anna 这么多！都是什么病？

zhème duō dōu shì shénme bìng · That many! What sort of illnesses?

editor lin 有急性的，也有慢性病突然发作的。有人心脏病发作，休克昏迷；有老人吃饭呛着了，差点儿窒息；夏天还有孩子溺水。

yǒu jíxìng de yě yǒu mànxìng bìng tūrán fāzuò de yǒu rén xīnzàng bìng fāzuò xiūkè hūnmí yǒu lǎorén chī fàn qiāng zhe le chàdiǎnr zhìxī xiàtiān hái yǒu háizi nìshuǐ · Acute ones, and chronic ones that suddenly flare up. Some people have heart attacks and go into shock or lose consciousness; old people choke on food and nearly suffocate; in summer there are children who drown.

editor lin 医生说，如果有人昏倒了，与其慌慌张张地乱动他，宁可先打急救电话，按医生说的做。等他苏醒了，再慢慢扶他起来。

yīshēng shuō rúguǒ yǒu rén hūn dǎo le yǔqí huānghuāngzhāngzhāng de luàn dòng tā nìngkě xiān dǎ jíjiù diànhuà àn yīshēng shuō de zuò děng tā sūxǐng le zài màn màn fú tā qǐlái · The doctor says that if someone collapses, rather than move them about in a panic, you should call an ambulance first and do as the doctor says. Once they come round, help them up slowly.

anna 我记住了。很多人觉得自己年轻，就麻痹大意了。

wǒ jì zhù le hěn duō rén juéde zìjǐ niánqīng jiù mábì dàyi le · I'll remember that. Lots of people think they're young, so they let their guard down.

editor lin 还有一个让人感动的故事：一位老人病了以后，身体一天比一天衰弱，半边身子瘫痪了，手脚麻木，疼得整夜呻吟。可他坚持锻炼，体质慢慢变好了，现在虽然走路还有点儿瘸，但能自己去公园了。

hái yǒu yí gè ràng rén gǎndòng de gùshi yí wèi lǎorén bìng le yǐhòu shēntǐ yì tiān bǐ yì tiān shuāiruò bàn biān shēnzi tānhuàn le shǒujiǎo mámù téng de zhěng yè shēnyín kě tā jiānchí duànliàn tǐzhì màn màn biàn hǎo le xiànzài suīrán zǒulù hái yǒudiǎnr qué dàn néng zìjǐ qù gōngyuán le · There's a moving story too: after an illness, an old man grew weaker by the day and was paralysed down one side, his arms and legs numb, groaning with pain all night. But he kept up his exercises and his constitution slowly improved, and now, though he still limps a little, he can walk to the park by himself.

editor lin 我还采访了一所特殊学校。那里的孩子有的耳朵聋，有的眼睛失明，可是都特别乐观。

wǒ hái cǎifǎng le yì suǒ tèshū xuéxiào nàlǐ de háizi yǒude ěrduo lóng yǒude yǎnjing shīmíng kěshì dōu tèbié lèguān · I also interviewed a special school. Some of the children there are deaf and some are blind, but they're all wonderfully cheerful.

anna 真了不起。跟他们比，我这点小感冒算什么？就是肚子有点儿胀，身上冷得起了一层鸡皮疙瘩。

zhēn liǎobuqǐ gēn tāmen bǐ wǒ zhè diǎn xiǎo gǎnmào suàn shénme jiùshì dùzi yǒudiǎnr zhàng shēn shàng lěng de qǐ le yì céng jī pí gēda · How amazing. Next to them, what's my little cold? My stomach just feels a bit bloated, and I'm so cold I've got goosebumps.

editor lin 医生说，发热的时候要多喝水，多排尿。你快回家好好休养吧，别坐太久，腿都坐麻了。

yīshēng shuō fārè de shíhou yào duō hē shuǐ duō pái niào nǐ kuài huí jiā hǎohǎo xiūyǎng ba bié zuò tài jiǔ tuǐ dōu zuò má le · The doctor says that with a fever you should drink a lot and keep peeing. Go home and rest properly now, and don't sit too long, or your legs will go numb.

anna 好，我现在只想瘫在床上好好睡一会儿。这个项目做完，大家都能喘息一下了。

hǎo wǒ xiànzài zhǐ xiǎng tān zài chuáng shàng hǎohǎo shuì yíhuìr zhège xiàngmù zuò wán dàjiā dōu néng chuǎnxī yíxià le · OK. Right now I just want to collapse into bed and sleep. Once this project is done, we can all catch our breath.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

昏
hūn
to faint; dizzy, dim

恒
héng
constant

晃
huàng
to sway, shake; to wander about

枚
méi
(measure word for coins, stamps, medals)

good to know · 上火 “inner heat” is a traditional idea, not a Western diagnosis, but everyone uses it: spicy food, fried food and late nights cause it; herbal tea (凉茶) and pears are said to cool it. 呛 has two readings: qiāng when food or water goes down the wrong way (喝水呛着了), qiàng when smoke or chilli catches your throat (辣椒味呛人). Speak of disabilities with respect: 听障 (hearing-impaired) and 视障 (visually impaired) are the modern polite words; 聋 and 失明 are plain descriptions; avoid 哑巴 and 瞎子.

You can now tell a doctor exactly how you feel, and talk a stubborn colleague into going home: 与其硬撑，宁可休息!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 68 serious illness

Talk about serious illness, screening, vaccines and addiction, and say what a lucky break saved you from with 幸亏 / 幸好……，不然 / 否则……

Health news, check-up reports and family worries all use this vocabulary, and 幸亏……不然…… is how Chinese people tell a near-miss story.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
癌	ái	cancer	抽烟会增加得{de2}肺癌的风险。 Smoking increases the risk of lung cancer.
癌症	áizhèng	cancer (the illness)	很多癌症早发现是可以治好的。 Many cancers can be cured if they are found early.
肿瘤	zhǒngliú	tumour	检查发现他肺里有个小肿瘤，幸好不是恶性的。 The scan found a small tumour in his lung; luckily it isn't malignant.
恶性	èxìng	malignant; vicious	恶性肿瘤要尽早治疗。 A malignant tumour must be treated as soon as possible.
晚期	wǎnqī	late stage, final period	到了晚期，治疗就难多了。 At a late stage, treatment is much harder.
艾滋病	àizībìng	AIDS	12月1日是世界艾滋病日。 1 December is World AIDS Day.
糖尿病	tángniàobìng	diabetes	得{de2}了糖尿病，饮食要特别注意。 If you have diabetes, you must be very careful about what you eat.
高血压	gāoxuèyā	high blood pressure	我奶奶有高血压，每天都要吃药。 My grandma has high blood pressure and takes medicine every day.
瘟疫	wēnyì	plague, pestilence	历史上，瘟疫曾经让很多城市变得空荡荡的。 In history, plagues once left many cities empty.
防疫	fángyì	epidemic prevention	防疫人员在机场给旅客量体温。 Epidemic-control staff take travellers' temperatures at the airport.
疫苗	yìmiáo	vaccine	孩子出生以后要打好几种疫苗。 After birth, babies have several vaccinations.
隔离	gélí	to isolate, quarantine	他得{de2}了传染病，要隔离一个星期。 He has an infectious disease and must be isolated for a week.
筛查	shāichá	to screen (for a disease)	社区每年为老人免费筛查高血压和糖尿病。 Every year the community screens old people for high blood pressure and diabetes for free.
确诊	quèzhěn	to confirm a diagnosis	经过检查，他被确诊为{wei2}糖尿病。 After tests, he was diagnosed with diabetes.
并发症	bìngfāzhèng	complication (medical)	糖尿病最可怕的是并发症。 The worst thing about diabetes is the complications.

后遗症	hòuyízhèng	after-effects, lasting damage	那次车祸没给他留下什么后遗症。 That car accident left him with no lasting damage.
衰竭	shuāijié	failure (of an organ); exhaustion	病人因为心力衰竭住进了医院。 The patient was admitted to hospital with heart failure.
致命	zhìmìng	deadly, fatal	这种病如果不及时治疗，是会致命的。 If this illness isn't treated in time, it can be fatal.
性命	xìngmìng	(a person's) life	医生们救了他一条性命。 The doctors saved his life.
畸形	jīxíng	deformed; abnormal	孕妇吃错药可能会导致胎儿畸形。 The wrong medicine in pregnancy can cause birth defects.
痴呆	chīdāi	dementia; dull-witted	得{de2}了老年痴呆的人，常常连家里人都认不出来。 People with dementia often can't even recognise their own family.
精神病	jīngshénbìng	mental illness	精神病和身体上的病一样，都需要治疗。 Mental illness, like physical illness, needs treatment.
抑郁症	yìyùzhèng	depression (the illness)	抑郁症不是心情不好，而是一种病。 Depression isn't just a bad mood: it is an illness.
瘾	yǐn	addiction; craving	他打游戏打出瘾来了，一天不玩就难受。 He's got hooked on video games: he feels awful if he goes a day without.
上瘾	shàngyǐn	to get addicted, be hooked	这部电视剧太好看了，我已经上瘾了。 This TV series is so good I'm already hooked.
酗酒	xùjiǔ	to drink heavily	长期酗酒对肝的伤害很大。 Years of heavy drinking do great harm to the liver.
戒	jiè	to give up, quit (a habit)	为了孩子，他终于把烟戒了。 For his child's sake he finally gave up smoking.
阳性	yángxìng	positive (test result)	检查结果是阳性，他马上被隔离了。 His test was positive, and he was immediately isolated.
阴性	yīnxìng	negative (test result)	还好，结果是阴性。 Thank goodness, the result was negative.
蛀牙	zhùyá	tooth decay, a cavity	糖吃多了容易长{zhang3}蛀牙。 Eat too many sweets and you'll get cavities.

pattern 幸亏 / 幸好……，不然 / 否则……: luckily …, otherwise …

幸亏 / 幸好 | the lucky fact | 不然 / 否则 | what would have happened

幸亏 or 幸好 (luckily) introduces what really happened; 不然 or 否则 (otherwise) introduces the bad thing that would have happened without it. 不然 is spoken, 否则 a little more written. Add 就 in the second half: 不然就……, 否则就……

幸亏你提醒我，不然我就忘了吃药。 **xìngkuī nǐ tíxǐng wǒ bùrán wǒ jiù wàng le chī yào** Good thing you reminded me, or I'd have forgotten my medicine.

幸好打了疫苗，否则这次肯定也被传染了。 **xìnghǎo dǎ le yìmiáo fǒuzé zhè cì kěndìng yě bèi chuánrǎn le** Luckily I'd been vaccinated; otherwise I'd certainly have caught it this time.

幸亏送医院送得及时，不然他就有生命危险了。 **xìngkuī sòng yīyuàn sòng de jíshí bùrán tā jiù yǒu shēngmìng wēixiǎn le** Luckily he got to hospital in time, or his life would have been in danger.

dialogue screening day

xiaoming 安娜，你感冒好了？今天社区给老人免费筛查高血压和糖尿病，我陪奶奶来了。
Ānnà nǐ gǎnmào hǎo le jīntiān shèqū gěi lǎorén miǎnfèi shāichá gāoxuèyā hé tángniàobìng wǒ péi nǎinai lái le · Anna, over your cold? The community is screening older people for high blood pressure and diabetes for free today, so I've brought Grandma.

anna 早好了，就是还有点儿打喷嚏。这个中心真大，我都找不到路了。
zǎo hǎo le jiùshì hái yǒudiǎnr dǎ pēntì zhège zhōngxīn zhēn dà wǒ dōu zhǎo bu dào lù le · Long since: I just still sneeze a bit. This centre is huge: I can't find my way around.

xiaoming 我给你介绍一下：一进门，左边是登记处，右边是小药店；往里走，走廊尽头是抽血的地方；二楼是牙科；楼顶上还有一个小花园。
wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào yíxià yí jìn mén zuǒbian shì dēngjì chù yòubian shì xiǎo yàodiàn wǎng lǐ zǒu zǒuláng jìntóu shì chōu xiě de dìfang èr lóu shì yá kē lóu dǐng shàng hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo huāyuán · Let me show you: as you come in, registration is on the left and a little pharmacy on the right; further in, at the end of the corridor, is where they take blood; dentistry is on the first floor, and there's even a little garden on the roof.

anna 奶奶呢？
nǎinai ne · Where's Grandma?

xiaoming 在二楼看牙呢。她最近时而牙疼，时而不疼，医生说是蛀牙。
zài èr lóu kàn yá ne tā zuìjìn shíér yá téng shíér bù téng yīshēng shuō shì zhùyá · Upstairs at the dentist's. Lately her tooth hurts on and off: the dentist says it's a cavity.

dr li 小明，奶奶的检查结果出来了：血压有点儿高，不过不是糖尿病。
Xiǎomíng nǎinai de jiǎnchá jiéguǒ chūlái le xuèyā yǒudiǎnr gāo búguò bú shì tángniàobìng · Xiaoming, Grandma's results are in: her blood pressure is a bit high, but it isn't diabetes.

xiaoming 幸亏今天来筛查了，不然我们还不知道奶奶有高血压。
xìngkuī jīntiān lái shāichá le bùrán wǒmen hái bù zhīdào nǎinai yǒu gāoxuèyā · Good thing we came for the screening today, or we still wouldn't know she had high blood pressure.

dr li 高血压和糖尿病都是慢性病，最怕的是并发症，心、肾这些内脏器官都可能出问题，严重了还会衰竭。有的病好了，也会留下后遗症。
gāoxuèyā hé tángniàobìng dōu shì mànxìng bìng zuì pà de shì bìngfāzhèng xīn shèn zhèxiē nèizàng qìguān dōu kěnéng chū wèntí yánzhòng le hái huì shuāijié yǒude bìng hǎo le yě huì liúxia hòuyízhèng · High blood pressure and diabetes are both chronic; the real danger is the complications. The heart, kidneys and other internal organs can be affected, and in serious cases they can fail. Even when some illnesses are cured, they leave lasting damage.

anna 我有个同事，去年体检发现肺里有个肿瘤。幸好不是恶性的，否则就麻烦了。
wǒ yǒu gè tóngshì qùnián tǐjiǎn fāxiàn fèi lǐ yǒu gè zhǒngliú xìnghǎo bú shì èxìng de fǒuzé jiù máfan le · A colleague of mine had a check-up last year and they found a tumour in her lung. Luckily it wasn't malignant, or it would have been serious.

dr li 很多癌症，比如肺癌、胃癌，早发现是可以治好的，到了晚期就难多了。所以这几年医院频频组织筛查。
hěn duō áizhèng bǐrú fèi ái wèi ái zǎo fāxiàn shì kěyǐ zhì hǎo de dào le wǎnqī jiù nán duō le suǒyǐ zhè jǐ nián yīyuàn pínpín zǔzhī shāichá · Many cancers, lung or stomach cancer for example, can be cured if they're found early; at a late stage it's much harder. That's why hospitals have been organising screenings so often these past few years.

xiaoming 奶奶以前总说自己身体硬朗，从来不体检。
nǎinai yǐqián zǒng shuō zìjǐ shēntǐ yìnglang cónglái bù tǐjiǎn · Grandma always used to say she was fit as a fiddle, and she never had check-ups.

ms zhang 我小时候，还没有这么多疫苗。一场瘟疫，一个村子相继死了好多人。那时候很多病都是致命的。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou hái méiyǒu zhème duō yìmiáo yì chǎng wēnyì yí gè cūn zi xiāngjì sǐ le hǎoduō rén nà shíhou hěn duō bìng dōu shì zhìmìng de · When I was little there weren't so many vaccines. One epidemic, and people in a village would die one after another. Many illnesses were fatal back then.

dr li 我刚当医生那几年，参加过防疫工作，病人都要隔离。现在孩子一出生就要打好几种疫苗。艾滋病也一样，以前得了就没救了，现在可以长期控制。

wǒ gāng dāng yīshēng nà jǐ nián cānjiā guo fángyì gōngzuò bìngrén dōu yào gélí xiànzài háizi yì chūshēng jiù yào dǎ hǎo jǐ zhǒng yìmiáo àizībìng yě yíyàng yǐqián dé le jiù méi jiù le xiànzài kěyǐ chángqī kòngzhì · In my first years as a doctor I worked in epidemic control, and patients all had to be isolated. Now babies get several vaccines as soon as they're born. It's the same with AIDS: it used to be a death sentence, and now it can be controlled long-term.

xiaoming 我记得传染病流行的那年，我们公司好几个人检查结果是阳性。我一连做了三次检查，幸好都是阴性。

wǒ jìde chuánrǎnbìng liúxíng de nà nián wǒmen gōngsī hǎo jǐ gè rén jiǎnchá jiéguǒ shì yángxìng wǒ yìlián zuò le sān cì jiǎnchá xìnghǎo dōu shì yīnxìng · I remember the year the epidemic broke out: several people at our company tested positive. I had three tests in a row, and luckily they were all negative.

anna 那心理方面的病呢？我有个朋友最近确诊了抑郁症。

nà xīnlǐ fāngmiàn de bìng ne wǒ yǒu gè péngyou zuìjìn quèzhěn le yìyùzhèng · What about mental illness? A friend of mine was recently diagnosed with depression.

dr li 抑郁症是一种病，不是“想不开”。精神病患者也需要大家的理解。老年人还要注意痴呆，奶奶最近时时忘事。

yìyùzhèng shì yì zhǒng bìng bú shì xiǎng bù kāi jīngshénbìng huànzhě yě xūyào dàjiā de lǐjiě lǎonián rén hái yào zhùyì chīdāi nǎinai zuìjìn shíshí wàng shì · Depression is an illness, not "taking things too hard". People with mental illness need understanding too. With older people you also have to watch for dementia: Grandma has been forgetting things all the time lately.

ms zhang 对，她屡次把钥匙忘在门上，一个劲儿地说自己没忘。

duì tā lǚcì bǎ yàoshi wàng zài mén shàng yígèjìnr de shuō zìjǐ méi wàng · Yes, time and again she's left her keys in the door, and she keeps insisting she didn't forget.

dr li 还有上瘾的问题。我有个病人酗酒三十年，酒瘾很大，后来肝坏了，昏迷了三天，差点儿丢了性命。幸好他终于把酒戒了，不然人早就没了。

hái yǒu shàngyǐn de wèntí wǒ yǒu gè bìngrén xùjiǔ sānshí nián jiǔ yǐn hěn dà hòulái gān huài le hūnmí le sān tiān chàdiǎnr diū le xìngmìng xìnghǎo tā zhōngyú bǎ jiǔ jiè le bùrán rén zǎo jiù méi le · Then there's addiction. I had a patient who drank heavily for thirty years; he was badly hooked, his liver gave out, he was in a coma for three days and he nearly lost his life. Luckily he finally gave up drinking, or he'd be gone by now.

ms zhang 孕妇也要特别小心，吃错药可能导致胎儿畸形。

yùnfù yě yào tèbié xiǎoxīn chī cuò yào kěnéng dǎozhì tāiér jīxíng · Pregnant women must be especially careful too: the wrong medicine can cause birth defects.

anna 听了这么多，我觉得体检真的不能偷懒。

tīng le zhème duō wǒ juéde tǐjiǎn zhēn de bù néng tōulǎn · After hearing all that, I really think you can't skip your check-ups.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

幢
zhuàng
(measure word for buildings)

缕
lǚ
wisp, strand (of smoke, hair, light)

盏
zhǎn (measure word for lamps)

桩
zhuāng (measure word for events, matters); stake

good to know · To describe a place in space order, pick a path and stick to it: 一进门……，左边……，右边……，往里走……，楼上……. Chinese guides and essays do exactly this. In medicine, 阳性 positive is the worrying result and 阴性 negative is the good news, the same as in English. Chinese often avoids naming cancer directly in front of a patient; families may say 不好的病 or 那个病.

You can now follow a doctor on serious illness and screening, and tell a near-miss story the Chinese way: 幸亏……，不然……
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 69 at the hospital

Find your way through a Chinese hospital: records, tests, prescriptions, doses, drips and operations, and set a condition with 非得……才……

A hospital visit in China moves fast and has its own vocabulary; 非得……才…… is how doctors and families say what simply has to happen first.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
就医	jiùyī	to see a doctor, get treatment	身体不舒服要及时就医。 If you feel unwell, see a doctor promptly.
就诊	jiùzhěn	to see a doctor (at a clinic)	请带好身份证和病历|来医院就诊。 Please bring your ID card and medical record when you come to the hospital.
求医	qiúyī	to seek medical help	为了治好儿子的病，他们到处求医。 They went everywhere looking for doctors to cure their son.
诊所	zhěnsuǒ	clinic	我家楼下有一家小诊所，看个感冒很方便。 There's a little clinic downstairs from me: handy for a cold.
医务	yīwù	medical work	医务人员连夜救治伤员。 The medical staff treated the injured through the night.
临床	línchuáng	clinical (at the bedside)	李医生有三十年的临床经验。 Dr Li has thirty years of clinical experience.
会诊	huìzhěn	to hold a consultation (several doctors)	医院请了三位专家给奶奶会诊。 The hospital brought in three specialists to examine Grandma together.
病历	bìnglì	medical record, case history	医生看了看我的病历，又问了几个问题。 The doctor glanced at my medical record and asked a few more questions.
病症	bìngzhèng	illness, symptoms	这种病症在老年人中很常见。 This illness is very common among the elderly.
床位	chuángwèi	bed (in a hospital, a sleeper train)	医院床位很紧张，要等两天才能住院。 Hospital beds are in short supply: we have to wait two days to be admitted.
化验	huàyàn	to do a lab test	化验结果下午就能出来。 The lab results will be out this afternoon.
复查	fùchá	to have a follow-up check	医生让我一个月以后|来复查。 The doctor wants me back for a follow-up in a month.
处方	chǔfāng	prescription; to prescribe	这种药必须有医生的处方才能买。 You can only buy this medicine with a doctor's prescription.
药方	yàofāng	prescription, remedy	老中医给他开了一个药方。 The old Chinese doctor wrote him a prescription.

剂	jì	dose; (measure) a dose of medicine	这个药方要吃三剂{ji4-7b}，每天一剂{ji4-7b}。 This prescription is three doses, one a day.
剂量	jìliàng	dosage	孩子吃药，剂量要比大人少。 Children take a smaller dose than adults.
过量	guòliàng	excessive; to overdo it	安眠药过量是很危险的。 An overdose of sleeping pills is very dangerous.
适量	shìliàng	in moderation, the right amount	适量运动对身体有好处。 Moderate exercise is good for you.
胶囊	jiāonáng	capsule	这种胶囊一天吃两次，每次一粒。 Take one of these capsules twice a day.
抗生素	kàngshēngsù	antibiotic	感冒一般不需要吃抗生素。 A cold doesn't usually need antibiotics.
安眠药	ānmiányào	sleeping pill	她最近睡不着，得{dei3}靠安眠药才能睡觉。 She can't sleep lately: she needs sleeping pills to get any rest.
注射	zhùshè	to inject; injection	护士给他注射了一针止疼药。 The nurse gave him an injection of painkiller.
输液	shūyè	to be on a drip	她发高烧，在医院输液输了两天。 She had a high fever and spent two days on a drip in hospital.
输血	shūxuè	to have / give a blood transfusion	手术的时候他流了很多血，需要输血。 He lost a lot of blood in the operation and needed a transfusion.
麻醉	mázuì	to anaesthetise; anaesthesia	做手术前，医生先给病人麻醉。 Before the operation the doctor anaesthetises the patient.
切除	qiēchú	to remove (surgically)	医生切除|了他身上的肿瘤。 The surgeons removed his tumour.
移植	yízhí	to transplant	他做了肾移植手术，恢复得很好。 He had a kidney transplant and has recovered well.
缝合	fénghé	to stitch up (a wound)	伤口缝合了五针。 The wound needed five stitches.
救治	jiùzhì	to give emergency treatment	伤员被送到医院救治。 The injured were taken to hospital for treatment.
护理	hùlǐ	to nurse; nursing care	护士们护理病人非常细心。 The nurses look after the patients very carefully.
看护	kānhù	to look after (a patient); carer	妈妈住院的时候，是姐姐一直在看护她。 When Mum was in hospital, it was my sister who looked after her the whole time.

pattern 非得……才……: only if ... will ...

非得 the condition 才 the result

非得 (fēiděi) means “it simply must be”: put the necessary condition after it, and the result after 才. The sentence says “only this will do”. In speech 非得 can also stand alone with a stubborn person: 他非得去 “he insists on going”.

这个病非得做手术才能治好。 **zhège bìng fēiděi zuò shǒushù cáinéng zhì hǎo** This illness can only be cured with an operation.

你非得亲自去一趟，事情才能办好。 **nǐ fēiděi qīnzì qù yí tàng shìqing cáinéng bàn hǎo** You’ll have to go in person, or it won’t get sorted out.

他非得睡够八个小时，才有精神工作。 **tā fēiděi shuì gòu bā gè xiǎoshí cái yǒu jīngshen gōngzuò** He has to get a full eight hours’ sleep before he can work properly.

dialogue a morning at the big hospital

xiaoming 人真多！挂号就排了半个小时。
rén zhēn duō guàhào jiù pái le bàn gè xiǎoshí · So many people! Just registering took half an hour.

dr li 我们医院每天来就诊的病人，在全市仅次于人民医院。很多人从外地来求医。
wǒmen yīyuàn měi tiān lái jiùzhěn de bìngrén zài quán shì jǐn cì yú rénmín yīyuàn hěn duō rén cóng wàidì lái qiúyī · Our hospital sees more patients a day than any in the city except the People's Hospital. Lots of people come from other provinces for treatment.

anna 奶奶为什么不去楼下的小诊所?
nǎinai wèi shénme bú qù lóu xià de xiǎo zhěnsuǒ · Why doesn't Grandma go to the little clinic downstairs from her?

dr li 小诊所看个感冒还行。奶奶的高血压，非得到大医院复查，我才放心。
xiǎo zhěnsuǒ kàn gè gǎnmào hái xíng nǎinai de gāoxuèyā fēiděi dào dà yīyuàn fùchá wǒ cái fàngxīn · A little clinic is fine for a cold. But with Grandma's blood pressure, I won't rest easy until she's been followed up at a big hospital.

ms zhang 奶奶的病历带了吗？上次的化验单也要带。
nǎinai de bìnglì dài le ma shàng cì de huàyàn dān yě yào dài · Have you brought Grandma's medical record? We need the last lab report too.

xiaoming 都带了。王主任有三十年的临床经验，他说奶奶这种病症不复杂，不用会诊。
dōu dài le Wáng zhǔrèn yǒu sānshí nián de línchuáng jīngyàn tā shuō nǎinai zhè zhǒng bìngzhèng bú fùzá búyòng huìzhěn · Got them both. Dr Wang, the head of department, has thirty years of clinical experience: he says Grandma's condition isn't complicated and there's no need for a team consultation.

anna 这是王主任开的处方：这种胶囊一天一次，每次一粒，剂量不能自己改。
zhè shì Wáng zhǔrèn kāi de chǔfāng zhè zhǒng jiāonáng yì tiān yí cì měi cì yí lì jìliàng bù néng zìjǐ gǎi · Here's the prescription Dr Wang wrote: these capsules once a day, one at a time, and she mustn't change the dose herself.

dr li 对，药要适量，过量就危险了，特别是安眠药。还有抗生素，很多人一感冒就吃，其实感冒是病毒引起的，非得有细菌感染才需要抗生素。
duì yào yào shìliàng guòliàng jiù wēixiǎn le tèbié shì ānmiányào hái yǒu kàngshēngsù hěn duō rén yì gǎnmào jiù chī qíshí gǎnmào shì bìngdú yǐnqǐ de fēiděi yǒu xìjūn gǎnrǎn cái xūyào kàngshēngsù · Right: medicine in the right amount; too much is dangerous, especially sleeping pills. And antibiotics: lots of people take them at the first sign of a cold, but colds are caused by viruses. You only need antibiotics if there's a bacterial infection.

anna 上次我发烧，还以为非得输液才能好，医生说吃药就行。
shàng cì wǒ fāshāo hái yǐwéi fēiděi shūyè cáinéng hǎo yīshēng shuō chī yào jiù xíng · Last time I had a fever, I thought I'd have to go on a drip to get better, but the doctor said tablets would do.

dr li 我们有个原则：能吃药就不注射，能注射就不输液。
wǒmen yǒu gè yuánzé néng chī yào jiù bú zhùshè néng zhùshè jiù bù shūyè · We have a rule: if a tablet works, no injection; if an injection works, no drip.

ms zhang 那中药呢？我们家有个治上火的老药方，一剂药要熬三次。
nà zhōngyào ne wǒmen jiā yǒu gè zhì shànghuǒ de lǎo yàofāng yí jì yào yào áo sān cì · What about Chinese medicine? Our family has an old prescription for "inner heat": each dose has to be boiled three times.

dr li 中药也一样，要按医生说的吃。对了，今天上午我们科刚做了一个肾移植手术。
zhōngyào yě yíyàng yào àn yīshēng shuō de chī duì le jīntiān shàngwǔ wǒmen kē gāng zuò le yí gè shèn yízhí shǒushù · Same with Chinese medicine: take it as the doctor says. Oh, and this morning our department did a kidney transplant.

xiaoming 这种手术是怎么做的?
zhè zhǒng shǒushù shì zěnme zuò de · How is an operation like that done?

dr li 先给病人麻醉，然后切除坏的肾，再移植新的，最后缝合伤口。手术中还要给病人输血，随时注意他的脉搏。
xiān gěi bìngrén mázuì ránhòu qiēchú huài de shèn zài yízhí xīn de zuìhòu fénghé shāngkǒu shǒushù zhōng hái yào gěi bìngrén shūxuè suíshí zhùyì tā de màibó · First the patient is anaesthetised, then the damaged

kidney is removed and the new one transplanted, and finally the wound is stitched up. During the operation the patient also needs a blood transfusion, and his pulse is watched the whole time.

anna 太厉害了！医务人员真不容易。
tài lìhai le yīwù rényuán zhēn bù róngyì · Amazing! Medical staff have such a hard job.

dr li 救治病人是我们的工作。昨天送来一个溺水的孩子，一个小时以后才苏醒过来。手术以后，护士的护理也非常重要。现在床位很紧张，有的病人非得等两三天才能住进来。
jiùzhì bìngrén shì wǒmen de gōngzuò zuótiān sòng lái yí gè nìshuǐ de háizi yí gè xiǎoshí yǐhòu cái sūxǐng guolai shǒushù yǐhòu hùshi de hùlǐ yě fēicháng zhòngyào xiànzài chuángwèi hěn jǐnzhāng yǒude bìngrén fēiděi děng liǎngsān tiān cáinéng zhù jinlai · Treating patients is our job. Yesterday a child who had nearly drowned was brought in, and it was an hour before he came round. After an operation, the nursing care matters a lot too. Beds are in short supply right now: some patients have to wait two or three days to be admitted.

ms zhang 要是哪天奶奶住院了，咱们得商量好谁来看护她。
yàoshi nǎ tiān nǎinai zhùyuàn le zánmen děi shāngliang hǎo shéi lái kānhù tā · If Grandma ever has to go into hospital, we'll need to work out who looks after her.

xiaoming 我们轮流。哎，等候区的电视节目真没什么看头儿，奶奶去拿药了，怎么还不回来？
wǒmen lúnliú āi děnghòu qū de diànshì jiémù zhēn méi shénme kàntour nǎinai qù ná yào le zěnme hái bù huílái · We'll take turns. Hey, the TV in the waiting area really isn't worth watching. Grandma went to get her medicine: why isn't she back yet?

anna 你看墙上写着："就医请带好身份证和病历。"我们都带了，别着急。
nǐ kàn qiáng shàng xiě zhe jiùyī qǐng dài hǎo shēnfènzhèng hé bìnglì wǒmen dōu dài le bié zháojí · Look, it says on the wall: "When seeing a doctor, please bring your ID card and medical record." We've got them both, so don't worry.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

从
cóng
clump, thicket; (measure word for plants)

摊
tān
stall; (measure word for puddles)

磅
bàng
pound (weight)

亩
mǔ
mu (unit of land, about 667 m²)

good to know · In a Chinese hospital you usually 挂号 (register and pay for a doctor) first, often on a phone app, then 就诊, then pay and 化验 or collect medicine at separate windows. 非得 is pronounced fēiděi: 得 here is děi “must”. In speech people sometimes drop 才: 你非得去吗？ “Do you really have to go?”

From 挂号 to 处方, you can now get through a Chinese hospital morning, and know when something 非得 be done.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 70 wounds and healing

Talk about cuts, scars, fractures and how they heal, about Western and Chinese treatments, and give a reason of caution with 为(了)……起见.

Sports injuries and home remedies come up all the time, and 为了安全起见 is a phrase you will hear in every notice, briefing and worried parent's advice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
创伤	chuāngshāng	wound, trauma	那次地震给很多人留下了心理创伤。 That earthquake left many people with psychological trauma.
伤残	shāngcán	to be disabled by injury	政府给伤残人士提供了很多帮助。 The government gives a lot of support to people disabled by injury.
伤痕	shānghén	scar	他的手臂上有一道很长的伤痕。 He has a long scar on his arm.
伤势	shāngshì	the seriousness of an injury	还好，他的伤势不重。 Luckily his injuries aren't serious.
疤	bā	scar	我膝盖上的疤是小时候摔的。 The scar on my knee is from a fall when I was little.
流血	liúxuè	to bleed	我切菜的时候不小心切到手，流血了。 I cut my finger chopping vegetables and it bled.
鲜血	xiānxuè	(fresh) blood	鲜血从伤口里流了出来。 Blood flowed out of the wound.
骨折	gǔzhé	to fracture, break (a bone)	他打篮球的时候摔倒了，左腿骨折了。 He fell playing basketball and broke his left leg.
拐杖	guǎizhàng	crutch, walking stick	腿好之前，她只能拄着拐杖走路。 Until her leg heals, she can only walk on crutches.
绷带	bēngdài	bandage	护士给我换了一条新绷带。 The nurse changed my bandage.
包扎	bāozā	to bandage, dress (a wound)	医生把伤口包扎好，让他回家休息。 The doctor dressed the wound and sent him home to rest.
敷	fū	to apply (a compress, ointment)	脚扭了，先用冰块敷一敷。 If you twist your ankle, first put some ice on it.
愈合	yùhé	to heal (of a wound)	伤口愈合得很好，下个星期可以拆线了。 The wound is healing well: the stitches can come out next week.
治愈	zhìyù	to cure	经过半年的治疗，她的病终于治愈了。 After six months of treatment, she was finally cured.
根治	gēnzhì	to cure completely, eradicate	这种病很难根治，只能慢慢控制。 This illness is hard to cure completely: it can only be controlled over time.

疗法	liáofǎ	therapy, treatment method	医生们正在试一种新的疗法。 The doctors are trying a new therapy.
疗效	liáoxiào	curative effect	这种药疗效不错，副作用也小。 This medicine works well and has few side effects.
副作用	fùzuòyòng	side effect	吃了这种药，可能会有一点儿副作用，比如头晕。 This medicine may have mild side effects, such as dizziness.
复发	fùfā	to recur, relapse	病好了也要按时复查，防止复发。 Even when you're better, keep your follow-ups to prevent a relapse.
矫正	jiǎozhèng	to correct (posture, teeth, eyesight)	很多孩子都戴着牙套矫正牙齿。 Lots of children wear braces to straighten their teeth.
草药	cǎoyào	herbal medicine	奶奶相信草药，感冒了就喝中药汤。 Grandma believes in herbal remedies: when she has a cold she drinks herbal soup.
药材	yàocái	medicinal materials, herbs	云南的山里出产很多珍贵的药材。 The mountains of Yunnan produce many precious medicinal herbs.
秘方	mìfāng	secret recipe, secret remedy	他说他有治感冒的秘方，其实就是姜汤。 He says he has a secret cure for colds: it's just ginger soup.
针灸	zhēnjiǔ	acupuncture and moxibustion	他腰疼，做了几次针灸，好多了。 He had a bad back, and after a few sessions of acupuncture it's much better.
穴位	xuéwèi	acupuncture point	按这个穴位可以让眼睛不那么累。 Pressing this point can relieve tired eyes.
忌口	jìkǒu	to avoid certain foods (on a diet)	吃中药的时候要忌口，别吃辣的。 While taking herbal medicine you have to watch what you eat: nothing spicy.
催眠	cuīmián	to hypnotise; make sleepy	这首歌太慢了，简直是催眠曲。 This song is so slow it's practically a lullaby.
口罩	kǒuzhào	face mask	感冒的时候戴上口罩，免得传染别人。 Wear a mask when you have a cold so you don't infect others.
防护	fánghù	to protect; protection	医务人员穿|着防护服在病房工作。 Medical staff work on the ward in protective suits.

pattern 为(了)……起见: for the sake of …, to be …

为(了) 安全 / 保险 / 慎重 / 方便 起见 ，what you do

为(了) + a quality + 起见 means “for the sake of being …”: 为了安全起见 “to be safe”, 为保险起见 “just to be sure”, 为慎重起见 “to be careful”, 为方便起见 “for convenience”. It is a fixed frame from notices and formal speech, and always comes before the action.

为了安全起见，请大家系好安全带。 wèile ānquán qǐjiàn qǐng dàjiā jì hǎo ānquándài For your safety, please fasten your seat belts.

为慎重起见，医生又给他做了一次检查。 wèi shènzhòng qǐjiàn yīshēng yòu gěi tā zuò le yí cì jiǎnchá To be careful, the doctor examined him once more.

为方便起见，我们把会议改到了线上。 wèi fāngbiàn qǐjiàn wǒmen bǎ huìyì gǎi dào le xiànshàng For convenience, we’ve moved the meeting online.

dialogue the bandaged knee

ms zhang 哎呀，你的腿怎么了？还包着绷带！
āiyā nǐ de tuǐ zěnme le hái bāo zhe bēngdài · Goodness, what's happened to your leg? It's all bandaged up!

little sister 打篮球的时候摔了一下，膝盖流血了，学校的医生帮我包扎好了。
dǎ lánqiú de shíhou shuāi le yíxià xīgài liúxuè le xuéxiào de yīshēng bāng wǒ bāozā hǎo le · I fell playing basketball and my knee was bleeding. The school doctor dressed it for me.

ms zhang 伤势重不重？是不是骨折了？
shāngshì zhòng bu zhòng shì bu shì gǔzhé le · Is it bad? Have you broken anything?

little sister 不重，检查过了，没有骨折。医生说伤口一个星期就能愈合，就是可能会留个疤。
bú zhòng jiǎnchá guo le méiyǒu gǔzhé yīshēng shuō shāngkǒu yí gè xīngqī jiù néng yùhé jiùshì kěnéng huì liú gè bā · No, they checked: nothing's broken. The doctor says the cut will heal in a week; it just might leave a scar.

xiaoming 留个疤有什么关系？我胳膊上这道伤痕，就是小时候爬树留下的。
liú gè bā yǒu shénme guānxì wǒ gēbo shàng zhè dào shānghén jiùshì xiǎoshíhou pá shù liúxia de · So what if there's a scar? This one on my arm is from climbing a tree when I was little.

ms zhang 为了安全起见，以后打球前一定要做好防护。
wèile ānquán qǐjiàn yǐhòu dǎ qiú qián yídìng yào zuò hǎo fánghù · To be on the safe side, from now on protect yourself properly before you play.

little sister 妈妈，你动不动就担心。这点小伤，有什么说头？
māma nǐ dòngbudòng jiù dānxīn zhè diǎn xiǎo shāng yǒu shénme shuō tou · Mum, you worry about every little thing. A scratch like this, what's there to talk about?

dr li 脚是不是也扭了？先用冰块敷一敷，四十八小时以后再热敷。
jiǎo shì bu shì yě niǔ le xiān yòng bīng kuài fū yi fu sìshíbā xiǎoshí yǐhòu zài rè fū · Did you twist your ankle too? Put ice on it first, and after forty-eight hours use something warm.

dr li 今天急诊来了一个车祸病人，满身鲜血，腿骨折了。幸好送得及时，医生马上给他输血，没有造成伤残，不过要拄好几个月拐杖。
jīntiān jízhěn lái le yí gè chēhuò bìngrén mǎn shēn xiānxuè tuǐ gǔzhé le xìnghǎo sòng de jíshí yīshēng mǎshàng gěi tā shūxuè méiyǒu zàochéng shāngcán búguò yào zhǔ hǎo jǐ gè yuè guǎizhàng · Today a road-accident victim came into A&E, covered in blood, with a broken leg. Luckily he got there in time and the doctors gave him a blood transfusion straight away; he won't be disabled, but he'll be on crutches for months.

anna 身体上的伤能治愈，心理上的创伤也需要时间。
shēntǐ shàng de shāng néng zhìyù xīnlǐ shàng de chuāngshāng yě xūyào shíjiān · Physical injuries can be cured, but psychological trauma takes time too.

ms zhang 说到治病，奶奶最近膝盖疼，在一家中医诊所做针灸。中医说针灸加上草药，疗效不错。
shuō dào zhì bìng nǎinai zuìjìn xīgài téng zài yì jiā zhōngyī zhěnsuǒ zuò zhēnjiǔ zhōngyī shuō zhēnjiǔ jiāshàng cǎoyào liáoxiào búcuò · Talking of treatment, Grandma's knee has been hurting lately, so she's having acupuncture at a Chinese medicine clinic. The Chinese doctor says acupuncture plus herbal medicine works well.

anna 针灸疼吗？要扎那么多穴位。
zhēnjiǔ téng ma yào zhā nàme duō xuéwèi · Does acupuncture hurt? With needles in all those points?

ms zhang 奶奶说一点儿也不疼，扎着扎着就睡着了，跟催眠一样。中医还让她忌口，不能吃辣的、凉的。
nǎinai shuō yìdiǎnr yě bù téng zhā zhe zhā zhe jiù shuì zháo le gēn cuīmián yíyàng zhōngyī hái ràng tā jìkǒu bù néng chī là de liáng de · Grandma says it doesn't hurt at all: she drifts off to sleep halfway through, as if hypnotised. The doctor also has her avoid spicy and cold food.

xiaoming 奶奶还有个秘方，用好几种药材熬水，热敷膝盖。
nǎinai hái yǒu gè mìfāng yòng hǎo jǐ zhǒng yàocái áo shuǐ rè fū xīgài · Grandma has a secret remedy too: she soaks several herbs in spirits and rubs it on her knee.

dr li 为慎重起见，什么秘方都要先问问医生。有的草药也有副作用，剂量不对更危险。针灸能减轻疼痛，但是关节的老毛病很难根治，还容易复发。

wèi shènzhòng qǐjiàn shénme mìfāng dōu yào xiān wèn wen yīshēng yǒude cǎoyào yě yǒu fùzuòyòng jìliàng bú duì gèng wēixiǎn zhēnjiǔ néng jiǎnqīng téngtòng dànshì guānjié de lǎo máobìng hěn nán gēnzhì hái róngyì fùfā · To be careful, ask a doctor about any secret remedy first. Some herbs have side effects too, and the wrong dose is even more dangerous. Acupuncture can ease the pain, but an old joint problem is hard to cure completely and tends to come back.

dr li 现在新的疗法越来越多了。就像你小时候矫正牙齿，以前要好几年，现在快多了。

xiànzài xīn de liáofǎ yuè lái yuè duō le jiù xiàng nǐ xiǎoshíhou jiǎozhèng yáchǐ yǐqián yào hǎo jǐ nián xiànzài kuài duō le · There are more and more new treatments now. Like when you had your teeth straightened as a child: it used to take years, and now it's much quicker.

little sister 爸爸，你一讲医学知识，我就想睡觉。

bàba nǐ yì jiǎng yīxué zhīshi wǒ jiù xiǎng shuìjiào · Dad, as soon as you start on medicine I want to fall asleep.

dr li 那最后一句：流感季节，为保险起见，最好打一针疫苗，去医院记得戴口罩。

nà zuìhòu yí jù liúgǎn jìjié wèi bǎoxiǎn qǐjiàn zuìhǎo dǎ yì zhēn yìmiáo qù yīyuàn jìde dài kǒuzhào · Then just one last thing: in flu season, just to be safe, it's best to get a vaccine, and remember to wear a mask when you go to the hospital.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

揽
lǎn
to take on, take upon oneself; hold

屿
yǔ
islet

峡
xiá
gorge, narrow pass

滩
tān
beach, shoal

good to know · First aid in Chinese: 冷敷 a cold compress for a fresh sprain, 热敷 a warm one later; 止血 stop the bleeding; 包扎 dress the wound. 为了……起见 always takes an abstract quality: 安全, 保险, 慎重, 方便, 公平. You can't say 为了你起见: say 为了你 instead.

Cuts, scars, crutches and acupuncture: you can now follow a family argument about how best to heal, and end it 为了安全起见.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 71 idioms with 无, 东...西, 七...八

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 9 · health and medicine

Use the four-character frames 东A西B, 忽A忽B, 七A八B, 无A不B and 无A可B, and the big family of 无 idioms, to talk about worry, care and helplessness.

无 idioms are everywhere in speeches, news and essays, and once you know the frames you can understand dozens you have never seen.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
东奔西走	dōngbēnxīzǒu	to rush about here and there	为了给妈妈找好医生，他东奔西走了一个月。 He rushed around for a month to find a good doctor for his mum.
东张西望	dōngzhāngxīwàng	to look around in all directions	他在医院门口东张西望，好像在找人。 He was looking all around at the hospital entrance, as if searching for someone.
忽冷忽热	hūlěnghūrè	hot one moment, cold the next	这几天天气忽冷忽热，很容易感冒。 The weather keeps swinging between hot and cold: it's easy to catch a cold.
或多或少	huòduōhuòshǎo	more or less, to some extent	每个人或多或少都有点儿压力。 Everyone is under some stress, more or less.
七嘴八舌	qīzuǐbāshé	everyone talking at once	大家七嘴八舌地出主意。 Everyone chipped in with ideas at once.
乱七八糟	luànqībāzāo	in a terrible mess	孩子们一走，房间里乱七八糟的。 As soon as the kids left, the room was a total mess.
时好时坏	shíhǎoshíhuài	sometimes good, sometimes bad	奶奶的身体时好时坏，我们都很担心。 Grandma's health is up and down: we're all worried.
无微不至	wúwēibùzhì	meticulous, in every detail (care)	护士们对病人的照顾无微不至。 The nurses look after the patients with the greatest care.
无话可说	wúhuàkěshuō	to have nothing to say	事实摆在眼前，他无话可说。 Faced with the facts, he had nothing to say.
无家可归	wújiākěguī	homeless	大地震以后，很多人无家可归。 After the big earthquake, many people were left homeless.
无可奈何	wúkěnàihé	to have no choice, helpless	医生也无可奈何地摇了摇头。 Even the doctor shook his head helplessly.
无可厚非	wúkěhòufēi	understandable, not to be blamed	病人着急，想早一点儿出院，这无可厚非。 The patient is impatient to go home early: that's understandable.
无能为力	wúnéngwéilì	powerless to help	这件事我也无能为力，真对不起。 I'm afraid there's nothing I can do about it. I'm so sorry.
无济于事	wújìyúshì	no help at all, futile	事情已经发生了，后悔也无济于事。 It's already happened: regret won't help.

无所事事	wúsuǒshìshì	to have nothing to do, idle	住院的时候无所事事，我天天看书。 With nothing to do in hospital, I read every day.
无所作为	wúsuǒzuòwéi	to achieve nothing	面对问题，我们不能无所作为。 Faced with the problem, we can't just sit back and do nothing.
无边无际	wúbiānwújì	boundless	站在山顶，眼前是无边无际的大海。 From the hilltop we looked out on the boundless sea.
无忧无虑	wúyōuwúlǜ	carefree	我真想回到无忧无虑的童年。 I'd love to go back to my carefree childhood.
无价之宝	wújiàzhībǎo	priceless treasure	健康是无价之宝。 Health is a priceless treasure.
无关紧要	wúguānjǐnyào	unimportant, of no consequence	这些都是无关紧要的小事，别放在心上。 These are all trivial little things: don't let them bother you.
无动于衷	wúdòngyúzhōng	unmoved, indifferent	大家都劝他戒烟，可他无动于衷。 Everyone urged him to quit smoking, but he was unmoved.
无精打采	wújīngdǎcǎi	listless, in low spirits	你今天怎么无精打采的？是不是没睡好？ Why are you so listless today? Didn't you sleep well?
一无所有	yīwúsuǒyǒu	to have nothing at all	他刚来北京的时候一无所有。 When he first came to Beijing he had nothing.
一无所知	yīwúsuǒzhī	to know nothing at all	我对中医一无所知，你给我讲讲吧。 I know nothing about Chinese medicine: tell me about it.
一事无成	yīshìwúchéng	to accomplish nothing	如果做什么都不坚持，最后会一事无成。 If you never stick at anything, you'll end up achieving nothing.
一筹莫展	yīchóumòzhǎn	at your wits' end	医生们都一筹莫展的时候，一位老专家想出了办法。 Just when the doctors were at their wits' end, a senior specialist found a way.
束手无策	shùshǒuwúcè	helpless, at a loss	电脑突然坏了，我束手无策。 My computer suddenly died and I was helpless.
走投无路	zǒutóuwúlù	to have nowhere to turn	在他走投无路的时候，是朋友帮了他。 When he had nowhere left to turn, it was his friends who helped him.
目中无人	mùzhōngwúrén	arrogant, looking down on everyone	他成绩好，可是有点儿目中无人。 His grades are good, but he's a bit arrogant.
肆无忌惮	sìwújìdàn	brazen, without restraint	有人在病房里肆无忌惮地大声打电话。 Someone was brazenly talking loudly on the phone in the ward.
杂乱无章	záluànwúzhāng	disorganised, chaotic	他的文章杂乱无章，看不出想说什么。 His essay is so disorganised you can't tell what he's trying to say.
寥寥无几	liáoliáowújǐ	very few	下雨了，公园里的游客寥寥无几。 It was raining, and there were hardly any visitors in the park.
前所未有	qiánsuǒwèiyǒu	unprecedented	这次瘟疫的规模是前所未有的。 The scale of this epidemic is unprecedented.

前无古人	qiánwúgǔrén	without precedent (an achievement)	他的研究可以说是前无古人。 His research could be called a first of its kind.
史无前例	shǐwúqiánlì	unprecedented in history	这样大规模的移植手术，在这家医院是史无前例的。 A transplant operation on this scale is unprecedented at this hospital.

pattern frames: 东a西b, 忽a忽b, 七a八b, 无a不b, 无a可b

东A西B 忽A忽B 七A八B 无A不B 无A可B

东A西B is “here and there”: 东奔西走 rushing about, 东张西望 looking around. 忽A忽B is “now A, now B”: 忽冷忽热 cold then hot. 七A八B is “all over the place”: 七嘴八舌 everyone talking, 乱七八糟 a mess. 无A不B is a double negative, “no A that isn’t B”: 无微不至 caring down to the tiniest detail. 无A可B is “no A to B”: 无话可说 nothing to say, 无家可归 no home to go to.

为了这件事，他东奔西走了好几个月。 **wèile zhè jiàn shì tā dōngbēn xīzǒu le hǎo jǐ gè yuè** He rushed around for months over this.

他的房间乱七八糟的，什么都找不到。 **tā de fángjiān luànqībāzāo de shénme dōu zhǎo bu dào** His room is such a mess you can’t find anything.

大地震以后，很多人无家可归。 **dà dìzhèn yǐhòu hěn duō rén wújiā kěguī** After the big earthquake, many people were left homeless.

这样的好成绩，在学校历史上是前所未有的。 **zhèyàng de hǎo chéngjì zài xuéxiào lìshǐ shàng shì qiánsuǒwèiyǒu de** Results this good are unprecedented in the school’s history.

dialogue a family meeting

ms zhang 奶奶这几天无精打采的，气色也不好，饭也吃不下。
nǎinai zhè jǐ tiān wújīng dǎcǎi de qìsè yě bù hǎo fàn yě chī bu xià · Grandma has been so listless these last few days, she doesn't look well, and she can hardly eat.

dr li 天气忽冷忽热，老人的身体或多或少都会受影响，加之她的血压时好时坏，所以没精神。
tiānqì hūlěng hūrè lǎorén de shēntǐ huòduō huòshǎo dōu huì shòu yǐngxiǎng jiāzhī tā de xuèyā shíhǎo shíhuài suǒyǐ méi jīngshen · With the weather swinging between hot and cold, older people are all affected to some extent; on top of that her blood pressure has been up and down, so she has no energy.

little sister 鉴于奶奶的情况，我觉得应该让她去医院住几天，好好复查一下。
jiànyú nǎinai de qíngkuàng wǒ juéde yīnggāi ràng tā qù yīyuàn zhù jǐ tiān hǎohǎo fùchá yíxià · Given how Grandma is, I think she should spend a few days in hospital and have a proper check-up.

xiaoming 奶奶最不喜欢住院了。她说她宁可在家难受，也不去医院。
nǎinai zuì bù xǐhuan zhùyuàn le tā shuō tā nìngkě zài jiā nánshòu yě bú qù yīyuàn · Grandma hates being in hospital. She says she'd rather feel awful at home than go in.

anna 这也无可厚非，谁都不喜欢医院。
zhè yě wúkěhòufēi shéi dōu bù xǐhuan yīyuàn · That's understandable: nobody likes hospitals.

ms zhang 可是倘若她晚上起来头晕，摔倒骨折了怎么办？
kěshì tǎngruò tā wǎnshang qǐlái tóu yūn shuāi dǎo gǔzhé le zěnme bàn · But what if she gets up in the night, feels dizzy, falls and breaks a bone?

xiaoming 你们看，大家七嘴八舌说了半天，还是没有结果。
nǐmen kàn dàjiā qīzuǐ bāshé shuō le bàntiān háishi méiyǒu jiéguǒ · Look at us: everyone talking at once for ages, and still no decision.

dr li 这样吧，白天请人来看护她，晚上我们轮流陪她，以防万一。
zhèyàng ba báitiān qǐng rén lái kānhù tā wǎnshang wǒmen lúnliú péi tā yǐfáng wànyī · Here's what we'll do: during the day we'll have someone come and look after her, and at night we'll take turns staying with her, just in case.

little sister 安娜上个月为了项目东奔西走，累得够呛，况且还在准备马拉松，就别让她来了。
Ānnà shàng gè yuè wèile xiàngmù dōngbēn xīzǒu lèi de gòuqiàng kuàngqiě hái zài zhǔnbèi mǎlāsōng jiù bié ràng tā lái le · Anna was rushing all over the place for her project last month and was worn out; on top of that she's training for the marathon. Let's not ask her.

anna 没关系，奶奶是我的老朋友了。她讲的那些老故事，对我来说是无价之宝。
méi guānxi nǎinai shì wǒ de lǎo péngyou le tā jiǎng de nàxiē lǎo gùshi duì wǒ lái shuō shì wújiàzhībǎo · It's fine: Grandma and I are old friends. The old stories she tells are priceless to me.

ms zhang 奶奶年轻的时候吃过很多苦。她十几岁那年，家乡发大水，很多人无家可归，她家也一无所有了。
nǎinai niánqīng de shíhou chī guo hěn duō kǔ tā shí jǐ suì nà nián jiāxiāng fā dà shuǐ hěn duō rén wújiā kěguī tā jiā yě yìwúsuǒyǒu le · Grandma had a hard life when she was young. When she was a teenager her home town flooded; lots of people lost their homes, and her family lost everything.

dr li 后来她一个人到城里，对城市一无所知，差点儿走投无路。幸亏遇到了好人。
hòulái tā yí gè rén dào chéng lǐ duì chéngshì yìwúsuǒzhī chàdiǎnr zǒutóu wúlù xìngkuī yùdào le hǎo rén · Later she came to the city alone, knowing nothing about it, and almost had nowhere to turn. Luckily she met some kind people.

xiaoming 奶奶常说，人可以穷，但不能无所作为，更不能目中无人。
nǎinai cháng shuō rén kěyǐ qióng dàn bù néng wúsuǒzuòwéi gèng bù néng mùzhōng wúrén · Grandma always says you can be poor, but you mustn't do nothing with your life, and you must never look down on others.

little sister 我小时候不想上学，她就说：“这样下去，你会一事无成的！”
wǒ xiǎoshíhou bù xiǎng shàngxué tā jiù shuō zhèyàng xiàqù nǐ huì yíshì wúchéng de · When I was little and didn't want to go to school, she'd say: “Carry on like this and you'll never amount to anything!”

little sister 不过她也说过，她小时候在海边长大，每天看着无边无际的大海，无忧无虑。
búguò tā yě shuō guo tā xiǎoshíhou zài hǎi biān zhǎng dà měi tiān kàn zhe wúbiān wújì de dà hǎi wúyōu wúlǜ · But she's also told me she grew up by the sea, looking out at the endless ocean every day, without a care in the world.

anna 奶奶九十岁了，还天天读报纸，真可以说是前无古人。
nǎinai jiǔshí suì le hái tiān tiān dú bàozhǐ zhēn kěyǐ shuō shì qiánwúgǔrén · Grandma is ninety and still reads the paper every day: you could call it a first in history!

little sister 可是我劝她少吃咸菜，她一点儿也不听，无动于衷。
kěshì wǒ quàn tā shǎo chī xián cài tā yìdiǎnr yě bù tīng wúdòngyúzhōng · But when I tell her to eat less pickled veg, she won't listen at all: totally unmoved.

dr li 我在医院见过很多家属，面对老人的痴呆、晚期癌症这些病束手无策，只能无可奈何地叹气。有的病，医学也无能为力。
wǒ zài yīyuàn jiàn guo hěn duō jiāshǔ miànduì lǎorén de chīdāi wǎnqī áizhèng zhèxiē bìng shùshǒu wúcè zhǐ néng wúkěnàihé de tànqì yǒude bìng yīxué yě wúnéngwéilì · At the hospital I've seen plenty of families who are helpless in the face of an old person's dementia or late-stage cancer, and can only sigh. For some illnesses, medicine can do nothing.

anna 医生也有一筹莫展的时候吧?
yīshēng yě yǒu yìchóu mòzhǎn de shíhou ba · Even doctors are sometimes at their wits' end, aren't they?

dr li 当然有。不过医学发展得很快，有的移植手术十年前还是史无前例的，现在已经很普通了。
dāngrán yǒu búguò yīxué fāzhǎn de hěn kuài yǒude yízhí shǒushù shí nián qián háishi shǐwúqiánlì de xiànzài yǐjīng hěn pǔtōng le · Of course. But medicine is moving fast: some transplant operations that were unheard of ten years ago are routine now.

xiaoming 还有，奶奶的房间杂乱无章，晚上起来很容易摔倒。上次还有人在楼道里肆无忌惮地放东西，把路都堵上了。
hái yǒu nǎinai de fángjiān záluàn wúzhāng wǎnshang qǐlái hěn róngyì shuāi dǎo shàng cì hái yǒu rén zài lóudào lǐ sìwú jìdàn de fàng dōngxi bǎ lù dōu dǔ shàng le · And Grandma's room is so cluttered she could easily fall when she gets up at night. Last time someone even brazenly dumped their things in the stairwell and blocked the way.

ms zhang 明天我去收拾一下，那些无关紧要的旧东西都收起来，免得她摔倒。
míngtiān wǒ qù shōushi yíxià nàxiē wúguān jǐnyào de jiù dōngxi dōu shōu qǐlai miǎnde tā shuāi dǎo · Tomorrow I'll go and tidy up, and put away all the old odds and ends so she doesn't trip.

xiaoming 我也去。周末在家无所事事，还不如去陪奶奶。
wǒ yě qù zhōumò zài jiā wúsuǒshìshì hái bùrú qù péi nǎinai · I'll come too. Rather than sit at home with nothing to do at the weekend, I may as well keep Grandma company.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

畔
pàn
side, bank

泊
pō
lake, pool

溪
xī
stream, brook

悬														
xuán to hang, be suspended; unresolved														

good to know · Many 无 idioms are complaints or criticism (无所事事, 目中无人, 肆无忌惮, 杂乱无章); a few are warm praise (无微不至, 无价之宝, 无忧无虑). Learn each with its feeling. 无可奈何, 无能为力, 束手无策 and 一筹莫展 all mean “nothing can be done”, but 无能为力 is about lacking the power, 束手无策 and 一筹莫展 about lacking a plan.

Five little frames and a shelf of 无 idioms: you can now follow a whole family argument, and sum it up in four characters.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 72 mission: a week in hospital

Follow a whole week in a Chinese hospital: the fall, the emergency, the operation, life on the ward, the discharge notes and the homecoming.

Everything from this unit comes together: the body, feeling ill, serious illness, the hospital, wounds and healing, and the idioms of 无.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the fall

xiaoming 爸爸，快来！奶奶起来上厕所，头一昏，摔倒了！
bàba kuài lái nǎinai qǐlái shàng cèsuǒ tóu yì hūn shuāi dǎo le · Dad, come quick! Grandma got up to go to the loo, felt dizzy and fell!

dr li 别慌。她昏迷了吗?
bié huāng tā hūnmí le ma · Don't panic. Is she unconscious?

xiaoming 刚才昏过去了一会儿，现在已经苏醒了。可是她疼得一直呻吟，浑身出冷汗，喘得很厉害。我当时一筹莫展，只好给你打电话。
gāngcái hūn guoqu le yíhuìr xiànzài yǐjīng sūxǐng le kěshì tā téng de yìzhí shēnyín húnshēn chū lěng hàn chuǎn de hěn lìhai wǒ dāngshí yìchóu mòzhǎn zhǐhǎo gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà · She passed out for a moment, but she's come round now. But she keeps groaning with pain, she's in a cold sweat all over and breathing very hard. I didn't know what to do, so I rang you.

dr li 千万别乱动她！与其把她扶起来，宁可让她先躺着。我马上打120。
qiānwàn bié luàn dòng tā yǔqí bǎ tā fú qǐlai nìngkě ràng tā xiān tǎng zhe wǒ mǎshàng dǎ · Whatever you do, don't move her! Rather than help her up, let her stay lying down. I'm calling 120 right now.

xiaoming 她的左腿一点儿也动不了，屁股和腰也摔疼了。膝盖那儿还流血了，地上有不少鲜血。
tā de zuǒ tuǐ yìdiǎnr yě dòng bu liǎo pìgu hé yāo yě shuāi téng le xīgài nàr hái liúxuè le dì shàng yǒu bù shǎo xiānxuè · She can't move her left leg at all, and she's hurt her hip and back. Her knee is bleeding too: there's quite a lot of blood on the floor.

dr li 先用干净的毛巾把伤口包扎一下，止住血。看看她的手脚，有没有发麻?
xiān yòng gānjìng de máojīn bǎ shāngkǒu bāozā yíxià zhǐ zhù xiě kàn kan tā de shǒujiǎo yǒu méiyǒu fā má · First wrap the cut with a clean towel to stop the bleeding. Check her hands and feet: are they numb or tingling?

xiaoming 她说右手还好，左腿麻木了，没有知觉。
tā shuō yòu shǒu hái hǎo zuǒ tuǐ mámù le méiyǒu zhījué · She says her right hand is fine, but her left leg has gone numb: she can't feel it.

dr li 老人的骨骼没有年轻人结实，关节也不灵活，摔一下就可能骨折。我再量一下脉搏……一分钟一百次，有点儿快，血压也高。
lǎorén de gǔgé méiyǒu niánqīng rén jiēshi guānjié yě bù línghuó shuāi yíxià jiù kěnéng gǔzhé wǒ zài liáng yíxià màibó yì fēnzhōng yìbǎi cì yǒudiǎnr kuài xuèyā yě gāo · Old people's bones aren't as strong as young people's and their joints are stiffer: one fall can mean a fracture. Let me take her pulse… a hundred a minute, a bit fast, and her blood pressure is high.

dr li 别让她喝水，万一要做手术，非得空着肚子才行。要是她想呕吐，让她侧着头，免得呛着，窒息就危险了。
bié ràng tā hē shuǐ wànyī yào zuò shǒushù fēiděi kōng zhe dùzi cái xíng yàoshi tā xiǎng ǒutù ràng tā cè zhe tóu miǎnde qiāng zhe zhìxī jiù wēixiǎn le · Don't give her water: if she needs an operation, her stomach has to be empty. If she feels sick, turn her head to one side so she doesn't choke: suffocating would be dangerous.

xiaoming 伤势重不重？会不会有生命危险?
shāngshì zhòng bu zhòng huì bu huì yǒu shēngmìng wēixiǎn · How bad are her injuries? Is her life in danger?

dr li 老人摔倒，最怕的是休克。她现在说话清楚，暂时没有性命危险，你放心。
lǎorén shuāi dǎo zuì pà de shì xiūkè tā xiànzài shuōhuà qīngchu zànshí méiyǒu xìngmìng wēixiǎn nǐ fàngxīn · When old people fall, the biggest fear is shock. She's talking clearly now, so for the moment her life isn't in danger: don't worry.

xiaoming 幸亏今天是我值班，不然奶奶一个人在家，后果不敢想。
xìngkuī jīntiān shì wǒ zhíbān bùrán nǎinai yí gè rén zài jiā hòuguǒ bù gǎn xiǎng · Thank goodness it was my turn to stay tonight; otherwise Grandma would have been alone, and I daren't think what might have happened.

dr li 这几天天气忽冷忽热，她本来就浑身乏力，身体很虚弱。房间又乱七八糟的，晚上起来很容易摔倒。
zhè jǐ tiān tiānqì hūlěng hūrè tā běnlái jiù húnshēn fálì shēntǐ hěn xūruò fángjiān yòu luànqībāzāo de

wǎnshang qǐlái hěn róngyì shuāi dǎo · The weather has been swinging between hot and cold; she was already weak all over and very frail. And her room is such a mess: it's easy to fall when you get up in the night.

xiaoming 救护车到了！我去开门。

jiùhùchē dào le wǒ qù kāi mén · The ambulance is here! I'll get the door.

chapter 2 chapter 2: emergency and operation

ms zhang （跑进来）怎么样了？半夜的急诊，病人寥寥无几，我在门口东张西望，半天才找到这儿。

pǎo jinlai zěnmeyàng le bànyè de jízhěn bìngrén liáoliáo wújǐ wǒ zài ménkǒu dōngzhāng xīwàng bàntiān cái zhǎo dào zhèr · (running in) How is she? A&E is almost empty in the middle of the night, but I was looking all around at the entrance for ages before I found you.

dr li 医务人员已经开始救治了。护士先给奶奶注射了止疼药，现在疼得好一点儿了。

yīwù rényuán yǐjīng kāishǐ jiùzhì le hùshi xiān gěi nǎinai zhùshè le zhǐ téng yào xiànzài téng de hǎo yìdiǎnr le · The medical staff are already treating her. The nurse first gave Grandma a painkilling injection, and now the pain is a little better.

ms zhang 大家怎么都戴着口罩？

dàjiā zěnme dōu dài zhe kǒuzhào · Why is everyone wearing masks?

dr li 最近流感病人多，为保险起见，医院规定都要戴。住院前还要先筛查传染病，结果是阴性才能住进病房，阳性的要隔离。

zuìjìn liúgǎn bìngrén duō wèi bǎoxiǎn qǐjiàn yīyuàn guīdìng dōu yào dài zhùyuàn qián hái yào xiān shāichá chuánrǎnbìng jiéguǒ shì yīnxìng cáinéng zhù jìn bìngfáng yángxìng de yào gélí · There's a lot of flu about, so to be on the safe side the hospital requires them. Before admission patients are also screened for infectious diseases: only a negative result gets you onto the ward, and positive cases are isolated.

dr li 检查结果出来了，确诊是左腿骨折。王主任临床经验很丰富，他和几位专家一起会诊了，说非得做手术，骨头才能长好。

jiǎnchá jiéguǒ chūlái le quèzhěn shì zuǒ tuǐ gǔzhé Wáng zhǔrèn línchuáng jīngyàn hěn fēngfù tā hé jǐ wèi zhuānjiā yìqǐ huìzhěn le shuō fēiděi zuò shǒushù gǔtou cáinéng zhǎng hǎo · The results are in: it's confirmed, a fractured left leg. Dr Wang has a lot of clinical experience; he and several specialists examined her together, and they say only an operation will let the bone heal properly.

ms zhang 她九十岁了，能做手术吗？

tā jiǔshí suì le néng zuò shǒushù ma · She's ninety: can she have an operation?

dr li 化验过了，心、肾这些内脏器官都还好，也没有糖尿病，就是高血压。为了安全起见，手术前先把血压降下来。

huàyàn guo le xīn shèn zhèxiē nèizàng qìguān dōu hái hǎo yě méiyǒu tángniàobìng jiùshì gāoxuèyā wèile ānquán qǐjiàn shǒushù qián xiān bǎ xuèyā jiàng xialai · They've done the lab tests: her heart, kidneys and other organs are all right and she doesn't have diabetes, just high blood pressure. To be safe, they'll bring her blood pressure down before the operation.

xiaoming 要不要输血？

yào búyào shūxuè · Will she need a blood transfusion?

dr li 可能要输一点儿，现在先输液。手术用全身麻醉，大概两个小时，最后缝合伤口就行了。

kěnéng yào shū yìdiǎnr xiànzài xiān shūyè shǒushù yòng quánshēn mázuì dàgài liǎng gè xiǎoshí zuìhòu fénghé shāngkǒu jiù xíng le · Possibly a little; for now she's on a drip. The operation is under general anaesthetic, about two hours, and then they just stitch up the wound.

ms zhang 会不会有并发症？我听说老人骨折以后，躺久了容易出问题，甚至心肺衰竭。

huì bu huì yǒu bìngfāzhèng wǒ tīngshuō lǎorén gǔzhé yǐhòu tǎng jiǔ le róngyì chū wèntí shènzhì xīn fèi shuāijié · Could there be complications? I've heard that when old people break a bone, lying in bed a long time causes problems, even heart and lung failure.

dr li 所以要尽早做手术，手术以后早一点儿下床，就不会留下什么后遗症。躺得太久，老人还容易得抑郁症，甚至痴呆。

suǒyǐ yào jǐnzǎo zuò shǒushù shǒushù yǐhòu zǎo yìdiǎnr xià chuáng jiù bú huì liúxia shénme hòuyízhèng tǎng de tài jiǔ lǎorén hái róngyì dé yìyùzhèng shènzhì chīdāi · That's why they operate as soon as possible: if she's out of bed early afterwards, there shouldn't be any lasting damage. Lying down too long can also bring on depression in old people, or even dementia.

xiaoming 床位够吗？上次听说要等两三天。

chuángwèi gòu ma shàng cì tīngshuō yào děng liǎngsān tiān · Are there enough beds? Last time we heard you had to wait two or three days.

dr li 急性病人有专门的床位。病历和处方我都交给护士了。

jíxìng bìngrén yǒu zhuānmén de chuángwèi bìnglì hé chǔfāng wǒ dōu jiāo gěi hùshi le · Acute patients have beds set aside. I've given her medical record and prescriptions to the nurses.

ms zhang 我什么忙也帮不上，真是无能为力。奶奶年轻的时候，生了病只能到处求医，有的病医生也束手无策。

wǒ shénme máng yě bāng bu shàng zhēnshi wúnéngwéilì nǎinai niánqīng de shíhou shēng le bìng zhǐ néng dàochù qiúyī yǒude bìng yīshēng yě shùshǒu wúcè · And I can't help at all: I feel so powerless. When Grandma was young, if you fell ill you had to go from doctor to doctor, and for some illnesses the doctors were helpless.

dr li 着急也无济于事。你在这儿陪着她，就是最大的帮助。

zháojí yě wújìyúshì nǐ zài zhèr péi zhe tā jiùshì zuì dà de bāngzhù · Worrying won't help. Staying here with her is the biggest help of all.

xiaoming 手术灯灭了！医生出来了，他竖起了大拇指！

shǒushù dēng miè le yīshēng chūlái le tā shù qǐ le dà mǔzhǐ · The theatre light's gone out! The surgeon's come out, and he's giving us a thumbs-up!

chapter 3 chapter 3: life on the ward

anna 奶奶，我来看您了！您的气色比昨天好多了。
nǎinai wǒ lái kàn nín le nín de qìsè bǐ zuótiān hǎo duō le · Grandma, I've come to see you! You look much better than yesterday.

little sister 奶奶说她刚做完手术那天，嘴唇发白，脸颊一点儿也不红，憔悴得自己都认不出来了。前两天她无精打采，情绪时好时坏。
nǎinai shuō tā gāng zuò wán shǒushù nà tiān zuǐchún fā bái liǎnjiá yìdiǎnr yě bù hóng qiáocuì de zìjǐ dōu rèn bu chulai le qián liǎng tiān tā wújīng dǎcǎi qíngxù shíhǎo shíhuài · Grandma says the day of the operation her lips were white and there was no colour in her cheeks at all: she looked so worn out she didn't recognise herself. The first two days she was listless and her mood was up and down.

anna 现在看起来，她脸上的皱纹虽然多了，五官还是那么好看。
xiànzài kàn qǐlai tā liǎn shàng de zhòuwén suīrán duō le wǔguān háishi nàme hǎokàn · Looking at her now, she may have more wrinkles, but her features are as lovely as ever.

little sister 护士说奶奶体质好，先天条件好，加上平时注意保养，恢复得特别快。
hùshi shuō nǎinai tǐzhì hǎo xiāntiān tiáojiàn hǎo jiāshàng píngshí zhùyì bǎoyǎng huīfù de tèbié kuài · The nurse says Grandma has a strong constitution, good genes, and she's always looked after herself, so she's recovering very fast.

anna 护士们对奶奶的照顾真是无微不至。
hùshimen duì nǎinai de zhàogù zhēnshi wúwēi búzhì · The nurses really look after Grandma wonderfully.

little sister 是啊，每天按时给她量体温、换药，帮她剪指甲，还教她活动四肢。不过奶奶在病房里无所事事，天天说没意思。
shì a měi tiān ànshí gěi tā liáng tǐwēn huàn yào bāng tā jiǎn zhǐjia hái jiāo tā huódòng sìzhī búguò nǎinai zài bìngfáng lǐ wúsuǒshìshì tiān tiān shuō méi yìsi · Yes: every day they take her temperature and change her dressing on time, they cut her nails and teach her exercises for her arms and legs. But Grandma has nothing to do on the ward and keeps saying she's bored.

little sister 我今天有点儿流鼻涕，还老打喷嚏，所以一直戴着口罩，免得传染给奶奶。
wǒ jīntiān yǒudiǎnr liú bítì hái lǎo dǎ pēntì suǒyǐ yìzhí dài zhe kǒuzhào miǎnde chuánrǎn gěi nǎinai · I've got a bit of a runny nose today and I keep sneezing, so I'm wearing a mask the whole time so I don't give it to Grandma.

anna 病房里消毒水的味道有点儿呛人。看看电视吧?
bìngfáng lǐ xiāodú shuǐ de wèidào yǒudiǎnr qiàng rén kàn kan diànshì ba · The smell of disinfectant on the ward catches your throat a bit. What about watching TV?

little sister 她说：“这种电视剧有什么看头儿？”她宁可跟别人聊天，也不看电视。医院的饭太软，她也说没什么吃头。
tā shuō zhè zhǒng diànshìjù yǒu shénme kàntour tā nìngkě gēn biérén liáotiān yě bú kàn diànshì yīyuàn de fàn tài ruǎn tā yě shuō méi shénme chī tou · She says: "What's worth watching in a series like that?" She'd rather chat with people than watch TV. And the hospital food is too soft: she says it isn't worth eating.

anna 下午来了好几个邻居，大家七嘴八舌，病房里热闹得像开会。病房里每天都有新面孔。
xiàwǔ lái le hǎo jǐ gè línjū dàjiā qīzuǐ bāshé bìngfáng lǐ rènao de xiàng kāihuì bìngfáng lǐ měi tiān dōu yǒu xīn miànkǒng · Several neighbours came this afternoon, everyone talking at once: the ward was as lively as a meeting. There are new faces on the ward every day.

little sister 隔壁床的老人更有意思。他头已经秃了，可是胸膛很宽，身体很壮，年轻时是开大卡车的。他以前酗酒，戒了十年了，可是烟瘾还很大。
gébì chuáng de lǎorén gèng yǒu yìsi tā tóu yǐjīng tū le kěshì xiōngtáng hěn kuān shēntǐ hěn zhuàng niánqīng shí shì kāi dà kǎchē de tā yǐqián xùjiǔ jiè le shí nián le kěshì yān yǐn hái hěn dà · The old man in the next bed is even funnier. He's gone bald, but he has a broad chest and he's strong: he used to drive lorries. He used to drink heavily and quit ten years ago, but he's still badly hooked on cigarettes.

little sister 有一次他肆无忌惮地在厕所里抽烟，被护士发现了。他天天咳嗽，痰很多，喉咙也疼，还说抽烟跟打游戏一样，一上瘾就戒不了。
yǒu yí cì tā sìwú jìdàn de zài cèsuǒ lǐ chōu yān bèi hùshi fāxiàn le tā tiān tiān késou tán hěn duō hóulóng yě

téng hái shuō chōu yān gēn dǎ yóuxì yíyàng yí shàngyǐn jiù jiè bu liǎo · Once he brazenly smoked in the toilet and got caught by the nurse. He coughs every day, brings up lots of phlegm and has a sore throat, and he says smoking is like video games: once you're hooked you can't quit.

anna 在医院抽烟？他的气管受得了吗？

zài yīyuàn chōu yān tā de qìguǎn shòu de liǎo ma · Smoking in hospital? Can his windpipe take it?

little sister 护士怎么劝他，他都无动于衷。最后王主任来了，他才无话可说。护士也只能无可奈何地笑笑。

hùshi zěnme quàn tā tā dōu wúdòngyúzhōng zuìhòu Wáng zhǔrèn lái le tā cái wúhuà kěshuō hùshi yě zhǐ néng wúkěnàihé de xiào xiao · Whatever the nurse said, he didn't care. Only when Dr Wang came did he have nothing more to say. The nurse could only smile helplessly.

anna 对面床的老人呢？

duìmiàn chuáng de lǎorén ne · And the old man in the bed opposite?

little sister 他耳朵有点儿聋，跟他说话得很大声。他有糖尿病，一只眼睛差点儿失明，现在走路还有点儿瘸。

tā ěrduo yǒudiǎnr lóng gēn tā shuōhuà děi hěn dà shēng tā yǒu tángniàobìng yì zhī yǎnjing chàdiǎnr shīmíng xiànzài zǒulù hái yǒudiǎnr qué · He's a bit deaf, so you have to talk loudly. He has diabetes, almost lost the sight of one eye, and still walks with a slight limp.

anna 奶奶，听说您年轻的时候梳着两条长辫子，容貌特别美？

nǎinai tīngshuō nín niánqīng de shíhou shū zhe liǎng tiáo cháng biànzi róngmào tèbié měi · Grandma, I hear that when you were young you wore two long plaits and you were really beautiful?

little sister 奶奶笑了，说：“那时候家里一无所有，哪有时间想自己的长相？”她十几岁的时候，家乡发大水，她无家可归，一个人到城里，对城市一无所知，差点儿走投无路。后来她东奔西走地打工，靠一双手养活了一家人。

nǎinai xiào le shuō nà shíhou jiā lǐ yìwúsuǒyǒu nǎ yǒu shíjiān xiǎng zìjǐ de zhǎngxiàng tā shí jǐ suì de shíhou jiāxiāng fā dà shuǐ tā wújiā kěguī yí gè rén dào chéng lǐ duì chéngshì yìwúsuǒzhī chàdiǎnr zǒutóu wúlù hòulái tā dōngbēn xīzǒu de dǎgōng kào yì shuāng shǒu yǎnghuo le yì jiā rén · Grandma laughed and said: “Back then our family had nothing: who had time to think about their looks?” As a teenager, her home town flooded and she lost her home; she came to the city alone, knowing nothing about it, and almost had nowhere to turn. After that she rushed from job to job and supported the whole family with her own two hands.

anna 奶奶的故事对我来说是无价之宝。我想把它们写下来，不过我的笔记现在还杂乱无章。

nǎinai de gùshi duì wǒ lái shuō shì wújiàzhībǎo wǒ xiǎng bǎ tāmen xiě xialai búguò wǒ de bǐjì xiànzài hái záluàn wúzhāng · Grandma's stories are priceless to me. I'd like to write them down, but my notes are still all over the place.

little sister 奶奶说好啊，不过要先等她的伤口愈合。现在她每天还要输液，手腕上都是针眼。

nǎinai shuō hǎo a búguò yào xiān děng tā de shāngkǒu yùhé xiànzài tā měi tiān hái yào shūyè shǒuwàn shàng dōu shì zhēn yǎn · Grandma says yes, but only once her wound has healed. She's still on a drip every day, and her wrist is covered in needle marks.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the discharge notes

dr li 好消息：奶奶明天可以出院了！这是出院注意事项，安娜，你普通话标准，给大家念一下吧。

hǎo xiāoxi nǎinai míngtiān kěyǐ chūyuàn le zhè shì chūyuàn zhùyì shìxiàng Ānnà nǐ pǔtōnghuà biāozhǔn gěi dàjiā niàn yíxià ba · Good news: Grandma can go home tomorrow! Here are the discharge instructions. Anna, your Mandarin is so clear: read them out for everyone.

anna （念）“出院注意事项：一、按处方吃药。每天早上一粒胶囊，剂量不能自己改，不能过量，也不要自己加安眠药。抗生素再吃三天就停。高血压是慢性病，要按时吃药，以防发作。

niàn chūyuàn zhùyì shìxiàng yī àn chǔfāng chī yào měi tiān zǎoshang yí lì jiāonáng jìliàng bù néng zìjǐ gǎi bù néng guòliàng yě búyào zìjǐ jiā ānmiányào kàngshēngsù zài chī sān tiān jiù tíng gāoxuèyā shì mànxìng bìng yào ànshí chī yào yǐfáng fāzuò · (reading) “Discharge instructions: 1. Take your medicine as prescribed: one capsule every morning. Do not change the dose yourself or take more than prescribed, and do not add sleeping pills on your own. Stop the antibiotics after three more days. High blood pressure is a chronic condition: take your medicine on time to prevent attacks.

anna 二、伤口护理：每两天换一次绷带，可以在附近的诊所换。伤口周围肿的话，可以用冰袋敷一敷。伤口愈合以后会留下疤，这是正常的。如果伤口发热、流血或者有疙瘩，请及时就诊。

èr shāngkǒu hùlǐ měi liǎng tiān huàn yí cì bēngdài kěyǐ zài fùjìn de zhěnsuǒ huàn shāngkǒu zhōuwéi zhǒng dehuà kěyǐ yòng bīng dài fū yi fu shāngkǒu yùhé yǐhòu huì liúxia bā zhè shì zhèngcháng de rúguǒ shāngkǒu fārè liúxuè huòzhě yǒu gēda qǐng jíshí jiùzhěn · 2. Wound care: change the bandage every two days; a local clinic can do it. If the area around the wound swells, put an ice pack on it. Once the wound heals it will leave a scar: this is normal. If the wound feels hot, bleeds or develops lumps, see a doctor promptly.

anna 三、活动：出院后用拐杖走路，适量活动，避免再次骨折。为了安全起见，晚上起床要开灯，家里的东西要放整齐。

sān huódòng chūyuàn hòu yòng guǎizhàng zǒulù shìliàng huódòng bìmiǎn zàicì gǔzhé wèile ānquán qǐjiàn wǎnshang qǐchuáng yào kāi dēng jiā lǐ de dōngxi yào fàng zhěngqí · 3. Activity: walk with a crutch after discharge and keep moderately active, to avoid another fracture. For safety, turn the light on when getting up at night, and keep things at home tidy.

anna 四、饮食：要忌口，少吃咸的、辣的，多喝水，免得上火。如果出现腹泻、呕吐、肚子胀等情况，请马上就医。

sì yǐnshí yào jìkǒu shǎo chī xián de là de duō hē shuǐ miǎnde shànghuǒ rúguǒ chūxiàn fùxiè ǒutù dùzi zhàng děng qíngkuàng qǐng mǎshàng jiùyī · 4. Diet: avoid certain foods; eat less salty and spicy food and drink plenty of water, so as not to build up “inner heat”. If you have diarrhoea, vomiting or a bloated stomach, see a doctor immediately.

anna 五、复查：一个月后来医院复查，请带好病历。祝您早日康复！”

wǔ fùchá yí gè yuè hòu lái yīyuàn fùchá qǐng dài hǎo bìnglì zhù nín zǎorì kāngfù · 5. Follow-up: come back to the hospital for a check-up in one month, and bring your medical record. We wish you a speedy recovery!”

ms zhang 念得真清楚！奶奶还说要用她的秘方，药材泡酒擦腿，再请老中医开一剂草药。

niàn de zhēn qīngchu nǎinai hái shuō yào yòng tā de mìfāng yàocái pào jiǔ cā tuǐ zài qǐng lǎo zhōngyī kāi yí jì cǎoyào · Read beautifully! Grandma says she wants to use her secret remedy too, herbs soaked in spirits rubbed on her leg, and get the old Chinese doctor to prescribe a dose of herbal medicine.

dr li 与其用秘方，宁可多做几次复查。针灸、按穴位可以减轻疼痛，但是骨折不能靠针灸治愈。新的疗法疗效好，不过什么药都可能有副作用，先问医生。

yǔqí yòng mìfāng nìngkě duō zuò jǐ cì fùchá zhēnjiǔ àn xuéwèi kěyǐ jiǎnqīng téngtòng dànshì gǔzhé bù néng kào zhēnjiǔ zhìyù xīn de liáofǎ liáoxiào hǎo búguò shénme yào dōu kěnéng yǒu fùzuòyòng xiān wèn yīshēng · Better to have a few more check-ups than use a secret remedy. Acupuncture and pressing acupoints can ease the pain, but a fracture can’t be cured by acupuncture. New treatments work well, but any medicine can have side effects: ask the doctor first.

dr li 以前老人骨折只能一直躺着，有的就瘫在床上好几年，现在好多了。她的高血压没法根治，但是只要按时吃药，就不容易复发。千万不能麻痹大意。

yǐqián lǎorén gǔzhé zhǐ néng yìzhí tǎng zhe yǒude jiù tān zài chuáng shàng hǎo jǐ nián xiànzài hǎo duō le tā de gāoxuèyā méifǎ gēnzhì dànshì zhǐyào ànshí chī yào jiù bù róngyì fùfā qiānwàn bù néng mábì dàyi · In the old days an old person with a fracture just had to lie in bed, and some were bedridden for years; it's much better now. Her high blood pressure can't be cured completely, but as long as she takes her medicine on time it shouldn't flare up again. We mustn't let our guard down.

xiaoming 那奶奶回家以后谁来看护她?

nà nǎinai huí jiā yǐhòu shéi lái kānhù tā · So who looks after Grandma once she's home?

dr li 白天请个专门护理老人的阿姨，晚上我们还是轮流。

báitiān qǐng gè zhuānmén hùlǐ lǎorén de āyí wǎnshang wǒmen háishi lúnliú · In the daytime we'll get a carer who specialises in looking after old people, and at night we'll still take turns.

chapter 5 chapter 5: home again

xiaoming 奶奶回家了！房间我已经收拾好了，那些乱七八糟的东西都收起来了。
nǎinai huí jiā le fángjiān wǒ yǐjīng shōushi hǎo le nàxiē luànqībāzāo de dōngxi dōu shōu qǐlai le · Grandma's home! I've tidied her room and put away all the clutter.

little sister 奶奶拄着拐杖走了两圈，说自己的身体还硬朗着呢。
nǎinai zhǔ zhe guǎizhàng zǒu le liǎng quān shuō zìjǐ de shēntǐ hái yìnglang zhe ne · Grandma walked two laps on her crutch and said she's still hale and hearty.

anna 奶奶，您这一个星期最想念什么？
nǎinai nín zhè yí gè xīngqī zuì xiǎngniàn shénme · Grandma, what did you miss most this week?

little sister 她说最想大白！医院里不能带狗，她每天都问大白吃饭了没有。
tā shuō zuì xiǎng Dàbái yīyuàn lǐ bù néng dài gǒu tā měi tiān dōu wèn Dàbái chī fàn le méiyǒu · She says Dabai! You can't bring a dog into hospital, and every day she asked whether Dabai had eaten.

dr li 大白的嗅觉真灵，奶奶一进门，它就冲过来了，口水流了奶奶一手。
Dàbái de xiùjué zhēn líng nǎinai yí jìn mén tā jiù chōng guolai le kǒushuǐ liú le nǎinai yì shǒu · Dabai's nose is amazing: the moment Grandma came in, he rushed over and drooled all over her hand.

xiaoming 骨折以后，老人或多或少都会害怕走路，这也无可厚非。奶奶却一点儿也不怕。
gǔzhé yǐhòu lǎorén huòduō huòshǎo dōu huì hàipà zǒulù zhè yě wúkěhòufēi nǎinai què yìdiǎnr yě bú pà · After a fracture, old people are usually afraid of walking to some degree, which is understandable, but Grandma isn't scared at all.

ms zhang 这一个星期，大家为奶奶东奔西走，辛苦了。奶奶说，她宁可少活几年，也不想给大家添麻烦。
zhè yí gè xīngqī dàjiā wèi nǎinai dōngbēn xīzǒu xīnkǔ le nǎinai shuō tā nìngkě shǎo huó jǐ nián yě bù xiǎng gěi dàjiā tiān máfan · Everyone has been rushing about for Grandma this week: thank you all. Grandma says she'd rather live a few years less than be a burden to everyone.

anna 奶奶，您可不能这么说！您是我们家的无价之宝。
nǎinai nín kě bù néng zhème shuō nín shì wǒmen jiā de wújiàzhībǎo · Grandma, you mustn't say that! You're this family's greatest treasure.

dr li 这次幸亏发现得及时，治疗也顺利，否则就麻烦了。以后要注意养生，好好休养，大家终于可以喘息一下了。
zhè cì xìngkuī fāxiàn de jíshí zhìliáo yě shùnlì fǒuzé jiù máfan le yǐhòu yào zhùyì yǎngshēng hǎohǎo xiūyǎng dàjiā zhōngyú kěyǐ chuǎnxī yíxià le · This time it was lucky that we caught it in time and the treatment went smoothly; otherwise it would have been serious. From now on she must take care of her health and rest well, and the rest of us can finally catch our breath.

ms zhang 奶奶说，她年轻的时候，很多手术是史无前例的，现在九十岁做手术都没问题，真是前所未有的变化。
nǎinai shuō tā niánqīng de shíhou hěn duō shǒushù shì shǐwúqiánlì de xiànzài jiǔshí suì zuò shǒushù dōu méi wèntí zhēnshi qiánsuǒwèiyǒu de biànhuà · Grandma says that when she was young, many of these operations had never been done; now even a ninety-year-old can have surgery. It's a change like nothing before.

little sister 奶奶还说，人老了也不能无所作为。等腿好了，她要学画画。
nǎinai hái shuō rén lǎo le yě bù néng wúsuǒzuòwéi děng tuǐ hǎo le tā yào xué huà huà · Grandma also says that getting old is no reason to do nothing. When her leg is better she wants to learn to paint.

xiaoming 她还说，下个月要去海边疗养，看看无边无际的大海，像小时候一样无忧无虑。
tā hái shuō xià gè yuè yào qù hǎi biān liáoyǎng kàn kan wúbiān wújì de dà hǎi xiàng xiǎoshíhou yíyàng wúyōu wúlǜ · She also says that next month she wants to go to the seaside to convalesce, look at the endless sea and be as carefree as when she was little.

anna 我陪您去！等您好了，再来看我跑马拉松。
wǒ péi nín qù děng nín hǎo le zài lái kàn wǒ pǎo mǎlāsōng · I'll go with you! And when you're better, come and watch me run the marathon.

A fall at night, an operation, a week on the ward and a homecoming: you can follow every step in Chinese, and comfort a family through it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 73 secrets and specialists

Handle formal language at work, 兹, 何, 若干, 彼, 之, and concede a point before you make yours with 别看…… and 虽说……

Contracts, notices and meetings in China use a layer of written words from classical Chinese; 别看 and 虽说 are how people say “it may look like…, but…” in real conversation.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
剪彩	jiǎncǎi	to cut the ribbon (at an opening)	市长为{wei4-3}新体育馆剪彩。 The mayor cut the ribbon to open the new sports hall.
把关	bǎguān	to check, be the gatekeeper for quality	每篇文章都由林编辑把关。 Editor Lin checks every article before it goes out.
机密	jīmì	secret, confidential; a secret	比赛路线现在|还是{==still, after all}机密。 The race route is still confidential.
泄密	xièmì	to leak a secret	合同的内容千万不能泄密。 Whatever you do, don’t leak what’s in the contract.
自负	zìfù	to be responsible for yourself	不听别人的|话下海游泳，后果自负{zi4fu4-7}。 Ignore the warnings and swim in the sea, and it’s at your own risk.
专人	zhuānrén	a person specially assigned	这件事由专人负责。 A dedicated person is in charge of this.
专项	zhuānxiàng	special item, dedicated (fund, project)	公司拿出一笔专项资金支持这次比赛。 The company set aside a dedicated fund to support the race.
专职	zhuānzhí	full-time (post)	我们请了一位专职教练。 We’ve hired a full-time coach.
日程	rìchéng	schedule, agenda	下周的日程已经排满了。 Next week’s schedule is already full.
受理	shòulǐ	to accept and handle (an application, case)	报名从下周一开始受理。 Registrations will be accepted from next Monday.
兹	zī	this; now (very formal, written)	兹定于五月一日举行开幕式。 It is hereby announced that the opening ceremony will be held on 1 May.
何	hé	what, which, why (written)	你有何打算? What are your plans?
若干	ruògān	a certain number of, several	我们研究了若干问题。 We looked into a number of issues.
之	zhī	it, him, her (written object)	这个问题很重要，我们要认真对待之{zhi1-7c}。 This issue is important, and we must take it seriously.

彼	bǐ	that, the other (written)	他们游了两个小时，终于到了河的彼岸。 After swimming for two hours they finally reached the far bank of the river.
这么着	zhèmezhe	like this, this way (spoken)	这么着吧，我们明天再商量。 Tell you what: let's talk it over tomorrow.
怎么着	zěnmezhe	what about it?; how (spoken)	我就是不去，你能把我怎么着? I'm not going: what are you going to do about it?
何止	hézhǐ	far more than, not only	参加的人何止一万，至少有三万。 Far more than ten thousand took part: at least thirty thousand.
别看	biékàn	although (it may look), don't be fooled by	别看他个子小，跑得可快了。 He may be small, but he runs really fast.
虽说	suīshuō	although (it is true that)	虽说天气不好，可来的人{==still, after all}很多。 Although the weather was bad, lots of people still came.
固然	gùrán	admittedly, of course	赢固然重要，参加更重要。 Winning is important, of course, but taking part matters more.
纵然	zòngrán	even if	纵然下大雨，比赛也照常进行。 Even if it pours, the race will go ahead as planned.
不亚于	bùyàyú	no less than, as good as	她的水平不亚于专业运动员。 She is every bit as good as a professional athlete.
非但	fēidàn	not only (written)	他非但没有生气，反而笑了。 Far from getting angry, he laughed.
堪称	kānchēng	can be called, worthy of the name	这场比赛堪称今年最精彩的比赛。 This match could be called the most exciting of the year.
与否	yǔfǒu	whether or not (after a word)	比赛成功与否，要看天气。 Whether the race is a success depends on the weather.
任	rèn	no matter (how / what); to let	任你怎么说，他也不听。 No matter what you say, he won't listen.
假使	jiǎshǐ	if, supposing (written)	假使明天下雨，比赛就推迟一周。 If it rains tomorrow, the race will be postponed a week.

pattern 别看…… and 虽说……; written 兹, 何, 若干, 彼

别看 / 虽说 | what it looks like / what is true | ，(可 / 但) | the real point

别看 A，B: “don’t go by A”: A looks one way, but B is the truth. 虽说 A，但 / 可 B: “granted that A, still B”, a spoken cousin of 虽然. In formal writing you also meet old pointing and question words: 兹 “hereby”, 彼 “that, the other”, 何 “what, which”, 若干 “a number of”, and the spoken 这么着 “like this” and 怎么着 “what about it?”.

别看她平时坐办公室，体力可不比运动员差。 **biékàn tā píngshí zuò bàngōngshì tǐlì kě bù bǐ yùndòngyuán chà** She may sit in an office all day, but she’s as fit as an athlete.

虽说只是一个小比赛，可大家都很认真。 **suīshuō zhǐshì yí gè xiǎo bǐsài kě dàjiā dōu hěn rènzhēn** It may only be a small race, but everyone takes it seriously.

兹定于五月一日上午八点举行比赛。 **zī dìng yú wǔ yuè yī rì shàngwǔ bā diǎn jǔxíng bǐsài** It is hereby announced that the race will be held at 8 a.m. on 1 May.

此一时，彼一时，现在跑步的人比以前多多了。 **cǐ yìshí bǐ yìshí xiànzài pǎobù de rén bǐ yǐqián duō duō le** Times have changed: far more people run now than before.

dialogue the secret route

manager liu 大家好，今天开个短会。我先念一下通知：“兹定于下月十号上午，在体育中心举行城市马拉松发布会，由我公司代表剪彩。”

dàjiā hǎo jīntiān kāi gè duǎn huì wǒ xiān niàn yíxià tōngzhī zī dìng yú xià yuè shí hào shàngwǔ zài tǐyù zhōngxīn jǔxíng chéngshì mǎlāsōng fābù huì yóu wǒ gōngsī dàibiǎo jiǎncǎi · Hello everyone, just a short meeting today. Let me read the notice first: “It is hereby announced that the city marathon launch will be held at the sports centre on the morning of the tenth of next month, and a representative of our company will cut the ribbon.”

anna 我们公司是这次比赛的合作伙伴，具体要做什么？

wǒmen gōngsī shì zhè cì bǐsài de hézuò huǒbàn jùtǐ yào zuò shénme · Our company is a partner of the race: what exactly do we have to do?

manager liu 公司拿出一笔专项资金，请了一位专职教练帮员工训练，还安排了医务人员。员工报名下周一开始受理。希望大家工作之余多练一练。

gōngsī ná chū yì bǐ zhuānxiàng zījīn qǐng le yí wèi zhuānzhí jiàoliàn bāng yuángōng xùnliàn hái ānpái le yīwù rényuán yuángōng bàomíng xià zhōu yī kāishǐ shòulǐ xīwàng dàjiā gōngzuò zhī yú duō liàn yi lian · The company is putting up a dedicated fund, has hired a full-time coach to train staff and has arranged medical staff too. Staff registrations will be accepted from next Monday. I hope everyone will train in their spare time.

anna 别看我天天坐办公室，我已经练了三个月了！

biékàn wǒ tiān tiān zuò bàngōngshì wǒ yǐjīng liàn le sān gè yuè le · I may sit in an office all day, but I’ve been training for three months already!

manager liu 虽说你练了三个月，可全程四十二公里，不是开玩笑的，跑到最后会喘得说不出话。还有一件事：比赛路线现在是机密，正式公布以前，谁也不能泄密。

suīshuō nǐ liàn le sān gè yuè kě quánchéng sìshíèr gōnglǐ bú shì kāi wánxiào de pǎo dào zuìhòu huì chuǎn de shuō bu chū huà hái yǒu yí jiàn shì bǐsài lùxiàn xiànzài shì jīmì zhèngshì gōngbù yǐqián shéi yě bù néng xièmì · Granted, you’ve trained for three months, but forty-two kilometres is no joke: by the end you’ll be too out of breath to speak. One more thing: the route is confidential for now, and until it’s officially announced, nobody may leak it.

anna 林编辑昨天还问我路线经过何处呢。

Línbiānjí zuótiān hái wèn wǒ lùxiàn jīngguò hé chù ne · Editor Lin was asking me only yesterday where the route goes.

manager liu 这件事由专人负责，所有的宣传材料都要经过我把关。日程表我已经发给大家了。

zhè jiàn shì yóu zhuānrén fùzé suǒyǒu de xuānchuán cáiliào dōu yào jīngguò wǒ bǎguān rìchéng biǎo wǒ yǐjīng fā gěi dàjiā le · A dedicated person is in charge of this, and all the publicity material has to go through me. I’ve already sent everyone the schedule.

lawyer sun 刘经理，合同我看完了。有若干问题需要改一改。

Liújīnglǐ hétóng wǒ kàn wán le yǒu ruògān wèntí xūyào gǎi yi gai · Ms Liu, I’ve read the contract. There are a number of points that need changing.

lawyer sun 第一，“参赛者受伤，后果自负”这一条，固然可以写，但是主办方也要承担安全责任：万一有人昏倒，要马上救治。

dì yī cānsài zhě shòushāng hòuguǒ zìfù zhè yì tiáo gùrán kěyǐ xiě dànshì zhǔbàn fāng yě yào chéngdān ānquán zérèn wànyī yǒu rén hūn dǎo yào mǎshàng jiùzhì · First, the clause “participants who are injured do so at their own risk”: of course you can include it, but the organisers must also take responsibility for safety: if someone collapses, they must be treated at once.

manager liu 那就这么着吧，按孙律师说的改。

nà jiù zhèmezhe ba àn Sūnlǜshī shuō de gǎi · Then let’s do it that way: change it as Mr Sun says.

lawyer sun 第二，假使比赛那天下大雨，比赛推迟与否，要在合同里写清楚。纵然推迟，公司的钱也不退。

dì èr jiǎshǐ bǐsài nà tiān xià dà yǔ bǐsài tuīchí yǔ fǒu yào zài hétóng lǐ xiě qīngchu zòngrán tuīchí gōngsī de qián yě bú tuì · Second, if it pours on race day, the contract must state clearly whether or not the race is postponed. Even if it is, the company’s money won’t be refunded.

anna 去年参加的人何止两万，今年报名的已经有三万余人了。
qùnián cānjiā de rén hézhǐ liǎng wàn jīnnián bàomíng de yǐjīng yǒu sān wàn yú rén le · Last year far more than twenty thousand took part, and this year over thirty thousand have already signed up.

manager liu 这次比赛的规模不亚于国际大赛，堪称本市历史上最大的一次。
zhè cì bǐsài de guīmó búyàyú guójì dàsài kānchēng běn shì lìshǐ shàng zuì dà de yí cì · This race is on a par with international events: it could be called the biggest in the city's history.

lawyer sun 这样一来，你们公司非但不会吃亏，名字还会印在每个运动员的衣服上。
zhèyàng yì lái nǐmen gōngsī fēidàn bú huì chīkuī míngzi hái huì yìn zài měi gè yùndòngyuán de yīfu shàng · And that way your company won't lose out at all: on the contrary, its name will be printed on every runner's shirt.

anna 那我跑得慢，会不会给公司丢脸？
nà wǒ pǎo de màn huì bu huì gěi gōngsī diūliǎn · Then if I'm slow, will I embarrass the company?

manager liu 任你跑得多慢，都是我们的骄傲。与其担心成绩，你不如多睡一会儿，保养好身体，保持体力。
rèn nǐ pǎo de duō màn dōu shì wǒmen de jiāoào yǔqí dānxīn chéngjì nǐ bùrú duō shuì yíhuìr bǎoyǎng hǎo shēntǐ bǎochí tǐlì · However slowly you run, you're still our pride. Rather than worry about your time, you'd do better to get more sleep, look after yourself and keep your strength up.

editor lin （打电话）安娜，路线到底怎么着？透露一点儿嘛！
dǎ diànhuà Ānnà lùxiàn dàodǐ zěnmezhe tòulù yìdiǎnr ma · (on the phone) Anna, so what's the route? Give me a hint!

anna 对不起，林编辑，这是机密。此一时，彼一时，以前我什么都告诉你，现在可不行了！
duìbuqǐ Línbiānjí zhè shì jīmì cǐ yìshí bǐ yìshí yǐqián wǒ shénme dōu gàosu nǐ xiànzài kě bùxíng le · Sorry, Editor Lin, it's confidential. Things have changed: I used to tell you everything, but not any more!

editor lin （笑）好吧，那就等你们公布了，我再报道之！
xiào hǎo ba nà jiù děng nǐmen gōngbù le wǒ zài bàodào zhī · (laughing, in mock-official style) Very well: once you have announced it, I shall report upon it!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

陡
dǒu
steep

荒
huāng
to neglect, let go to waste

坝
bà
dam, embankment

岔
chà
fork (in a road), to branch off

good to know · 兹, 之, 彼, 何 and 若干 belong to written Chinese: notices, contracts and speeches. Saying them in a casual chat sounds as stiff as “hereby” in English, unless you are joking. 怎么着 can be friendly (你周末怎么着？ what are you up to at the weekend?) or a challenge (你想怎么着？ what are you going to do about it?): listen to the tone.

You can now read an official notice, follow a contract meeting and keep a secret politely, in proper written Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 74 the competition

Follow a match and talk about leagues, rounds, fouls, substitutes, winners and dark horses, and praise something as "every bit as good as" with 不亚于.

Sport is the easiest small talk in China, and sports reports are a gold mine of HSK 7–9 words; 不亚于 is how commentators and critics compare.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
赛	sài	to compete; race, match	咱们赛一赛，看谁先到终点。 Let's have a race and see who reaches the finish first.
赛跑	sàipǎo	to race (on foot); a race	我们俩来一场赛跑吧。 Let's have a race, you and me.
赛车	sàichē	motor racing; racing car	他从小就喜欢看赛车。 He has loved watching motor racing since he was small.
赛季	sàijì	season (of a sport)	这个赛季我们队一场也没输。 Our team hasn't lost a single match this season.
联赛	liánsài	league (competition)	周末有足球联赛，我们一起去看吧。 There's a league football match at the weekend: let's go and watch.
预赛	yùsài	preliminary round, heats	她在预赛中跑了第一。 She came first in the heats.
竞技	jìngjì	competitive sport, athletics	竞技体育讲究的是更快、更高、更强。 Competitive sport is all about faster, higher, stronger.
比试	bǐshi	to have a go against each other	不服气？那我们比试比试！ Don't believe me? Then let's see who's better!
较量	jiàoliàng	to measure your strength against; a contest	这是两支强队之间的较量。 This is a contest between two strong teams.
较劲	jiàojìn	to compete, be at odds; to strain	他们俩一直在较劲。 Those two are always trying to outdo each other.
角逐	juézhú	to contend, vie for	八支球队将角逐冠军。 Eight teams will vie for the title.
冲刺	chōngcì	to sprint (for the finish)	最后一百米，她开始全力冲刺。 With a hundred metres to go, she began to sprint flat out.
起跑线	qǐpǎoxiàn	starting line	不要让孩子输在起跑线上。 Don't let children fall behind at the starting line.
接力	jiēlì	relay	我们班在接力比赛中得{de2}了第二名。 Our class came second in the relay race.
回合	huíhé	round (of a fight or contest)	第一回合，他就赢了。 He won in the very first round.

上半场	shàngbànchǎng	first half (of a match)	上半场两个队都没有进球。 Neither team scored in the first half.
下半场	xiàbànchǎng	second half (of a match)	下半场我们连进两个球。 We scored twice in a row in the second half.
犯规	fànguī	to foul, break the rules	他犯规了，裁判给了他一张黄牌。 He fouled, and the referee showed him a yellow card.
出局	chūjú	to be out, be knocked out	我们队在第一轮就出局了。 Our team was knocked out in the first round.
防守	fángshǒu	to defend; defence	我们的防守太差了，一连丢了三个球。 Our defence was awful: we let in three goals in a row.
替补	tìbǔ	substitute; to substitute	他是替补，今天终于有机会比赛了。 He's a substitute, and today he finally got to play.
主力	zhǔlì	main force, key players	两名主力受伤了，这场比赛很难打。 Two key players are injured, so this match will be tough.
阵容	zhènróng	line-up, team	今年的阵容比去年强多了。 This year's line-up is much stronger than last year's.
队形	duìxíng	formation (of a team)	下半场教练换了一个队形。 In the second half the coach changed the formation.
领队	lǐngduì	team leader; to lead a team	这次由王老师领队。 Teacher Wang is leading the team this time.
夺冠	duóguàn	to win the title	她在全国比赛中夺冠了。 She won the national championship.
夺魁	duókuí	to come first, take the top prize	我们公司的队伍在比赛中一举夺魁。 Our company's team took first place at one stroke.
取胜	qǔshèng	to win, gain victory	我们队2比1取胜。 Our team won two-one.
胜出	shèngchū	to come out on top	最后谁能胜出，现在还很难说。 It's still hard to say who will come out on top.
胜负	shèngfù	victory or defeat, the outcome	比赛的胜负不重要，重要的是参与。 Winning or losing doesn't matter; what matters is taking part.
失利	shīlì	to lose, suffer a defeat	上一场比赛失利以后，队员们练得更努力了。 After losing the last match, the players trained even harder.
晋级	jìnjí	to go through (to the next round)	赢了这场，我们就能晋级决赛。 Win this one and we're through to the final.
名次	míngcì	place, ranking	我不在乎名次，只想跑完全程。 I don't care about my placing: I just want to finish the course.
垫底	diàndǐ	to come last, be bottom	我们队去年在联赛中垫底。 Our team finished bottom of the league last year.

黑马	hēimǎ	dark horse	这支新球队是今年联赛最大的黑马。 This new team is the league's biggest dark horse this year.

pattern 不亚于……: no less than, every bit as ... as

A **不亚于** **B (the high standard)**

亚 means "second, inferior", so A 不亚于 B is "A is not inferior to B": A is at least as good, big or strong as B. B is usually the famous standard, so it is a strong compliment. It is more formal than 跟……一样好.

她的跑步水平不亚于专业运动员。 **tā de pǎobù shuǐpíng búyàyú zhuānyè yùndòngyuán** Her running is every bit as good as a professional's.

这次比赛的观众人数不亚于去年。 **zhè cì bǐsài de guānzhòng rénshù búyàyú qùnián** The crowd at this race is no smaller than last year's.

业余比赛的竞争有时候不亚于职业联赛。 **yèyú bǐsài de jìngzhēng yǒu shíhou búyàyú zhíyè liánsài** Competition in amateur matches is sometimes as fierce as in the professional league.

dialogue the derby on tv

xiaoming 快来！联赛最重要的一场较量开始了，两支强队角逐第一名。
kuài lái liánsài zuì zhòngyào de yì chǎng jiàoliàng kāishǐ le liǎng zhī qiáng duì juézhú dì yī míng · Quick! The biggest clash in the league has started: two strong teams fighting for first place.

little sister 我们的城市队这个赛季一场也没输，主力阵容是最强的。
wǒmen de chéngshì duì zhège sàijì yì chǎng yě méi shū zhǔlì zhènróng shì zuì qiáng de · Our city team hasn't lost a single match this season: its first-choice line-up is the strongest.

xiaoming 可是对面那支球队是今年最大的黑马。去年他们还在联赛垫底，今年连赢八场。
kěshì duìmiàn nà zhī qiúduì shì jīnnián zuì dà de hēimǎ qùnián tāmen hái zài liánsài diàndǐ jīnnián lián yíng bā chǎng · But the other team is this year's biggest dark horse. Last year they were bottom of the league, and this year they've won eight in a row.

anna 上半场两个队都没有进球。你看，他们的队员一直在较劲。
shàngbànchǎng liǎng gè duì dōu méiyǒu jìn qiú nǐ kàn tāmen de duìyuán yìzhí zài jiàojìn · Neither team scored in the first half. Look, the players are always trying to get one over on each other.

little sister 哎呀，犯规了！有个队员倒在地上呻吟，裁判叫停了比赛。
āiyā fànguī le yǒu gè duìyuán dǎo zài dì shàng shēnyín cáipàn jiào tíng le bǐsài · Oh no, a foul! A player is lying on the ground groaning, and the referee has stopped play.

xiaoming 还好，医生用冰块给他敷了敷，他又站起来了。幸亏我们的防守好，不然早就丢球了。
hái hǎo yīshēng yòng bīng kuài gěi tā fū le fu tā yòu zhàn qǐlái le xìngkuī wǒmen de fángshǒu hǎo bùrán zǎo jiù diū qiú le · It's all right: the doctor put ice on it and he's back on his feet. Luckily our defence is good, or we'd have let in a goal long ago.

anna 说到比赛，我们公司运动会的接力赛，我们队晋级决赛了！
shuō dào bǐsài wǒmen gōngsī yùndònghuì de jiēlì sài wǒmen duì jìnjí juésài le · Talking of competitions, our team made it to the final of the relay at the company sports day!

little sister 真的？预赛你们跑了第几名？
zhēn de yùsài nǐmen pǎo le dì jǐ míng · Really? Where did you come in the heats?

anna 第二名。我跑最后一段，从起跑线开始，我就一直在追。最后一百米，我全力冲刺，超过了两个人。
dì èr míng wǒ pǎo zuìhòu yí duàn cóng qǐpǎoxiàn kāishǐ wǒ jiù yìzhí zài zhuī zuìhòu yìbǎi mǐ wǒ quánlì chōngcì chāoguò le liǎng gè rén · Second. I ran the last leg, and from the starting line I was chasing all the way. In the last hundred metres I sprinted flat out and overtook two people.

xiaoming 不错嘛！你的速度不亚于专业运动员。
búcuò ma nǐ de sùdù búyàyú zhuānyè yùndòngyuán · Not bad at all! You're every bit as fast as a pro.

anna 别夸我了。我们的领队是刘经理，她说名次不重要，胜负也不重要，重要的是大家一起参加。
bié kuā wǒ le wǒmen de lǐngduì shì Liújīnglǐ tā shuō míngcì bú zhòngyào shèngfù yě bú zhòngyào zhòngyào de shì dàjiā yìqǐ cānjiā · Don't flatter me. Our team leader is Ms Liu: she says placings don't matter, winning or losing doesn't matter; what matters is taking part together.

little sister 下半场开始了！教练换了队形，还让两个替补上来了。
xiàbànchǎng kāishǐ le jiàoliàn huàn le duìxíng hái ràng liǎng gè tìbǔ shanglai le · The second half has started! The coach has changed the formation and brought on two substitutes.

xiaoming 这种比赛一个回合一个回合地打，最后谁能胜出，现在还很难说。
zhè zhǒng bǐsài yí gè huíhé yí gè huíhé de dǎ zuìhòu shéi néng shèngchū xiànzài hái hěn nán shuō · A match like this is fought round by round, and it's still hard to say who will come out on top.

anna 进了！进了！全场观众连连欢呼，我们1比0取胜了！
jìn le jìn le quán chǎng guānzhòng liánlián huānhū wǒmen bǐ qǔshèng le · Goal! Goal! The whole crowd is cheering again and again: we've won one–nil!

little sister 太好了！上个赛季在外地比赛失利，一个主力还拄上了拐杖，大家都很担心。这下有希望夺冠了。
tài hǎo le shàng gè sàijì zài wàidì bǐsài shīlì yí gè zhǔlì hái zhǔ shàng le guǎizhàng dàjiā dōu hěn dānxīn zhè xià yǒu xīwàng duóguàn le · Brilliant! After losing away last season, with one of the key players on crutches, everyone was worried. Now we've got a chance of winning the title.

xiaoming 竞技体育就是这样，你不努力，就会出局。下个月还有国际赛车比赛，我们要不要去看？
jìngjì tǐyù jiùshì zhèyàng nǐ bù nǔlì jiù huì chūjú xià gè yuè hái yǒu guójì sàichē bǐsài wǒmen yào búyào qù kàn · That's competitive sport for you: if you don't work hard, you're out. There's an international motor race next month: shall we go and watch?

anna 好啊！不过先说好：下周咱们俩比试比试，赛跑五公里，输的人请吃饭！
hǎo a búguò xiān shuō hǎo xià zhōu zánmen liǎ bǐshi bǐshi sàipǎo wǔ gōnglǐ shū de rén qǐng chī fàn · Sure! But first: next week, you and I have a contest: a five-kilometre race, and the loser buys dinner!

xiaoming 说定了！我们公司去年在全市运动会上可是一举夺魁的。
shuō dìng le wǒmen gōngsī qùnián zài quán shì yùndònghuì shàng kěshì yìjǔ duókuí de · Deal! Don't forget, last year my company took first place at the city sports games in one go.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

颠
diān
jolt, top

桨
jiǎng
oar, paddle

赴
fù
to go to, attend (formal)

滞
zhì
stuck

good to know · Chinese sports reports love short, punchy verbs of victory: 夺冠 win the title, 夺魁 take first place, 取胜 win, 胜出 come out on top; and of defeat: 失利 lose, 出局 be knocked out, 垫底 come last. 黑马 dark horse was borrowed from English in the 20th century and is now used for surprise winners everywhere: in exams, elections and business.

You can follow a match from kick-off to final whistle in Chinese, and pay a big compliment: 你的速度不亚于专业运动员!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 75 fans and champions

Talk about hosting a big sports event, tickets, fans, judges, trophies and the strength sports, and say “whether or not” with 无论……与否，都……

Big sports events are a national passion in China; and 无论……与否 is the formal “whether or not” you will meet in reports, rules and speeches.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
东道主	dōngdàozhǔ	host (country, city, team)	作为东道主，我们要让客人满意。 As hosts, we must make sure our guests are happy.
申办	shēnbàn	to bid to host	这个城市申办了两次才成功。 The city only succeeded on its second bid.
火炬	huǒjù	torch	火炬传递经过了一百多个城市。 The torch relay passed through more than a hundred cities.
看台	kàntái	stands (in a stadium)	看台上坐满了观众。 The stands were packed with spectators.
入场	rùchǎng	to enter (the venue)	观众请从三号门入场。 Spectators please enter through Gate 3.
入场券	rùchǎngquàn	admission ticket	决赛的入场券一个小时就卖完了。 Tickets for the final sold out in an hour.
啦啦队	lālāduì	cheerleading squad, supporters	公司组织了一支啦啦队为我们加油。 The company put together a cheering squad to support us.
助威	zhùwēi	to cheer on	很多球迷到现场为球队助威。 Lots of fans came to cheer the team on.
争光	zhēngguāng	to win honour for	她在比赛中为国争光。 She won glory for her country at the games.
无敌	wúdí	unbeatable, invincible	这支球队连赢二十场，简直是无敌了。 This team has won twenty in a row: it’s practically unbeatable.
赢家	yíngjiā	winner	这次合作没有输家，大家都是赢家。 There are no losers in this partnership: everyone wins.
王牌	wángpái	trump card, ace	他是我们队的王牌，最后才让他上场。 He’s our team’s ace: we send him on last.
重量级	zhòngliàngjí	heavyweight; major, top-level	今天来了好几位重量级嘉宾。 Several big-name guests came today.
奖杯	jiǎngbēi	trophy, cup	队长高高举起了奖杯。 The captain held the trophy high.
评委	píngwěi	judge (on a panel)	评委给她打了最高分。 The judges gave her the top score.

评判	píngpàn	to judge, assess	裁判的评判很公平。 The referee's decisions were very fair.
哨	shào	whistle	裁判一吹哨，比赛就开始了。 The moment the referee blew the whistle, the match began.
上场	shàngchǎng	to come on, go into play	下半场，教练让替补上场了。 In the second half the coach sent the substitutes on.
更衣室	gēngyīshì	changing room	运动员们正在更衣室里换衣服。 The athletes are getting changed in the changing room.
退役	tuìyì	to retire (from sport or the army)	他三十五岁退役，后来当了教练。 He retired at thirty-five and later became a coach.
体能	tǐnéng	physical strength, fitness	跑|马拉松{==marathon}非得有很好的体能才行。 You need to be really fit to run a marathon.
兴奋剂	xīngfènjì	doping drug, stimulant	运动员服用兴奋剂是被严格禁止的。 Athletes taking performance-enhancing drugs is strictly forbidden.
健美	jiànměi	bodybuilding; strong and beautiful	他练了五年健美，肌肉很发达。 He has done bodybuilding for five years and is very muscular.
举重	jǔzhòng	weightlifting	举重是中国的优势项目。 Weightlifting is one of China's strongest sports.
拳	quán	fist; boxing, martial arts style	他每天早上在公园里打拳。 He practises kung fu in the park every morning.
拳击	quánjī	boxing	拳击比赛的时候，运动员要戴手套。 In a boxing match the fighters wear gloves.
摔跤	shuāijiāo	wrestling; to fall over	他小时候学过摔跤。 He learned wrestling as a boy.
投掷	tóuzhì	to throw (in athletics)	他投掷得最远，拿了第一名。 He threw the farthest and took first place.
靶子	bǎzi	target	他一连三枪都打中了靶子。 He hit the target with three shots in a row.

pattern 无论……与否，都……: whether or not ...

无论 X 与否，都……

与否 after a verb or adjective means "or not": 成功与否 "success or not", 参加与否 "taking part or not". Put 无论 in front and 都 in the second half, and you get a formal "whether or not X, ...". The spoken version is 不管……不……，都……: 不管成不成功，都……

无论你参加与否，都请告诉我一声。 **wúlùn nǐ cānjiā yǔ fǒu dōu qǐng gàosu wǒ yì shēng** Whether you're coming or not, please let me know.

无论比赛顺利与否，我们都会坚持到最后。 **wúlùn bǐsài shùnlì yǔ fǒu wǒmen dōu huì jiānchí dào zuìhòu** Whether or not the race goes smoothly, we'll see it through to the end.

无论获奖与否，他都是我们心中的赢家。 **wúlùn huòjiǎng yǔ fǒu tā dōu shì wǒmen xīn zhōng de yíngjiā** Whether or not he wins a prize, he's a winner in our eyes.

dialogue a day at the national games

xiaoming 我们城市申办了两次，这次终于成了全国运动会的东道主！
wǒmen chéngshì shēnbàn le liǎng cì zhè cì zhōngyú chéng le quán guó yùndònghuì de dōngdàozhǔ · Our city bid twice, and this time we're finally hosting the national games!

little sister 上个月火炬从我们学校门口经过，大家都去看了。
shàng gè yuè huǒjù cóng wǒmen xuéxiào ménkǒu jīngguò dàjiā dōu qù kàn le · Last month the torch went past our college gates, and everyone went to watch.

anna 今天的入场券很难买，非得提前一个月预订才行。我们从三号门入场。
jīntiān de rùchǎngquàn hěn nán mǎi fēiděi tíqián yí gè yuè yùdìng cái xíng wǒmen cóng sān hào mén rùchǎng · Tickets for today were hard to get: you had to book a month ahead. We go in through Gate 3.

xiaoming 看台上坐满了人，那边还有一支啦啦队在为本市运动员助威。
kàntái shàng zuò mǎn le rén nàbiān hái yǒu yì zhī lālāduì zài wèi běn shì yùndòngyuán zhùwēi · The stands are packed, and over there there's a cheering squad supporting our city's athletes.

little sister 第一项是举重。那个运动员是我们队的王牌，去年在全国比赛中夺魁，这次也想为家乡争光。
dì yī xiàng shì jǔzhòng nàge yùndòngyuán shì wǒmen duì de wángpái qùnián zài quán guó bǐsài zhōng duókuí zhè cì yě xiǎng wèi jiāxiāng zhēngguāng · First up is weightlifting. That lifter is our team's ace: he took the national title last year and wants to do his home town proud again.

anna 他看起来真壮！举那么重的东西，体能非得特别好才行。
tā kàn qǐlai zhēn zhuàng jǔ nàme zhòng de dōngxi tǐnéng fēiděi tèbié hǎo cái xíng · He looks so strong! To lift something that heavy, you have to be incredibly fit.

little sister 他已经连续三年在大赛中没有失利过了。
tā yǐjīng liánxù sān nián zài dàsài zhōng méiyǒu shīlì guo le · He hasn't lost at a major competition for three years running.

xiaoming 下午是重量级的拳击比赛，还有摔跤。你看，运动员刚从更衣室出来，准备上场了。
xiàwǔ shì zhòngliàngjí de quánjī bǐsài hái yǒu shuāijiāo nǐ kàn yùndòngyuán gāng cóng gēngyīshì chūlái zhǔnbèi shàngchǎng le · This afternoon there's heavyweight boxing, and wrestling. Look, the boxers have just come out of the changing room and are about to go on.

little sister 裁判一吹哨，第一个回合就开始了。他的拳又快又重！
cáipàn yì chuī shào dì yī gè huíhé jiù kāishǐ le tā de quán yòu kuài yòu zhòng · The moment the referee blows the whistle, the first round begins. His punches are so fast and so heavy!

anna 那边场地上是什么比赛？
nàbiān chǎngdì shàng shì shénme bǐsài · What's happening on the field over there?

xiaoming 那边是投掷项目，再往里是射击，运动员要打远处的靶子。
nàbiān shì tóuzhì xiàngmù zài wǎng lǐ shì shèjī yùndòngyuán yào dǎ yuǎn chù de bǎzi · Over there are the throwing events, and further in is shooting: the shooters aim at targets far away.

little sister 晚上还有健美比赛，评委要评判运动员的身材和动作。
wǎnshang hái yǒu jiànměi bǐsài píngwěi yào píngpàn yùndòngyuán de shēncái hé dòngzuò · Tonight there's a bodybuilding contest: the judges assess the athletes' physiques and poses.

anna 这么多比赛，会不会有人用兴奋剂？
zhème duō bǐsài huì bu huì yǒu rén yòng xīngfènjì · With so many events, will anyone use doping drugs?

xiaoming 每个运动员都可能被检查。无论夺冠与否，只要检查结果是阳性，成绩就会被取消。
měi gè yùndòngyuán dōu kěnéng bèi jiǎnchá wúlùn duóguàn yǔ fǒu zhǐyào jiǎnchá jiéguǒ shì yángxìng chéngjì jiù huì bèi qǔxiāo · Any athlete can be tested. Whether they win or not, if the test comes back positive, their result is cancelled.

teacher wang 安娜！小明！你们也来了？
Ānnà Xiǎomíng nǐmen yě lái le · Anna! Xiaoming! You're here too?

anna 王老师！您怎么也在这儿？
Wánglǎoshī nín zěnme yě zài zhèr · Teacher Wang! What are you doing here?

teacher wang 我侄子是本市的举重教练。他以前是全国冠军，在赛场上几乎无敌。三十岁那年，膝盖的伤老是复发，他只好退役，当了教练。

wǒ zhízi shì běn shì de jǔzhòng jiàoliàn tā yǐqián shì quán guó guànjūn zài sàichǎng shàng jīhū wúdí sānshí suì nà nián xīgài de shāng lǎoshì fùfā tā zhǐhǎo tuìyì dāng le jiàoliàn · My nephew is the city's weightlifting coach. He used to be national champion and was almost unbeatable. At thirty his knee injury kept coming back, so he had to retire, and he became a coach.

little sister 那他一定拿过很多奖杯吧！

nà tā yídìng ná guo hěn duō jiǎngbēi ba · Then he must have won lots of trophies!

teacher wang 是啊。他常说，是比赛成就了他；反过来说，他也把一生都给了这项运动。无论获奖与否，他都是我心中的赢家。

shì a tā cháng shuō shì bǐsài chéngjiù le tā fǎn guolai shuō tā yě bǎ yìshēng dōu gěi le zhè xiàng yùndòng wúlùn huòjiǎng yǔ fǒu tā dōu shì wǒ xīn zhōng de yíngjiā · Yes. He always says the competitions made him; and the other way round, he gave his whole life to the sport. Whether he wins prizes or not, he's a winner to me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

凸
tū
protruding, convex

扁
biǎn
flat

纹
wén
lines, grain

耸
sǒng
to shrug; to tower

good to know · 与否 sits right after a two-syllable word: 成功与否, 同意与否, 正确与否. With one-syllable words the spoken A不A is more natural: 去不去, 好不好. Chinese fans shout 加油！ ("add fuel!") to cheer anyone on, at a match, an exam or a job interview.

From the torch relay to the trophy, you can follow a whole sports day in Chinese and cheer like a local: 加油!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 76 games and outdoor fun

Plan outdoor adventures and indoor games, from rafting and skydiving to mahjong and riddles, and make suppositions with 假若 / 假使……

Weekend plans are the stuff of everyday chat, and 假若 and 假使 are the written "if" you meet in stories, rules and careful arguments.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
冲浪	chōnglàng	to surf; surfing	夏天我们去海南冲浪吧。 Let's go surfing in Hainan this summer.
潜水	qiánshuǐ	to dive (underwater); diving	潜水的时候能看见很多漂亮的鱼。 When you dive you can see lots of beautiful fish.
漂流	piāoliú	to go rafting; to drift	我们坐橡皮船顺着河漂流。 We drifted down the river in a rubber raft.
跳伞	tiàosǎn	to parachute, skydive	从飞机上跳伞，你敢吗? Would you dare to skydive from a plane?
攀登	pāndēng	to climb (a mountain, a peak)	他们花了五天攀登这座雪山。 They spent five days climbing this snowy mountain.
登顶	dēngdǐng	to reach the summit	早上六点，我们终于登顶了。 At six in the morning we finally reached the summit.
巅峰	diānfēng	summit, peak (also of a career)	她二十五岁时达到了事业的巅峰。 She reached the peak of her career at twenty-five.
风筝	fēngzheng	kite	春天，很多人在公园里放风筝。 In spring, lots of people fly kites in the park.
滑梯	huátī	slide (in a playground)	孩子们排着队玩滑梯。 The children are queuing up for the slide.
乐园	lèyuán	paradise; amusement park	这个公园是孩子们的乐园。 This park is a children's paradise.
玩耍	wánshuǎ	to play (of children)	孩子们在草地上开心地玩耍。 The children are playing happily on the grass.
捉迷藏	zhuōmícáng	hide-and-seek	小时候我们常在胡同里捉迷藏。 As kids we often played hide-and-seek in the hutongs.
消遣	xiāoqiǎn	to pass the time; pastime	看书是爷爷最喜欢的消遣。 Reading is Grandpa's favourite pastime.
嗜好	shìhào	hobby, habit (often bad)	他没有什么不良嗜好。 He doesn't have any bad habits.

麻将	májiàng	mahjong	过年的时候，一家人常常一起打麻将。 At New Year families often play mahjong together.
扑克	pūkè	playing cards, poker	火车上，几个年轻人在打扑克。 On the train, some young people were playing cards.
对弈	duìyì	to play a game of chess (written)	两位老人在树下对弈。 Two old men are playing chess under the tree.
博弈	bóyì	to play a strategic game; a contest of wits	谈判就像一场博弈。 A negotiation is like a game of strategy.
打赌	dǎdǔ	to bet, make a bet	我跟你打赌，他一定会迟到。 I bet you he'll be late.
赌	dǔ	to gamble; to bet	赌钱是违法的。 Gambling for money is illegal.
抽签	chōuqiān	to draw lots	比赛的分组由抽签决定。 The groups for the competition are decided by drawing lots.
谜	mí	riddle, mystery	他为什么突然离开，到现在{==still, after all}个谜。 Why he suddenly left is still a mystery.
谜语	míyǔ	riddle	元宵节有猜谜语的习惯。 At the Lantern Festival people guess riddles.
谜底	mídǐ	answer to a riddle; the truth	你猜出谜底了吗? Have you guessed the answer?
作息	zuòxī	to work and rest; daily routine	比赛前要保持规律的作息。 Before a race, keep a regular routine.
沐浴	mùyù	to bathe (formal); to bask in	我们在海边沐浴着春天的阳光。 By the sea we basked in the spring sunshine.

pattern 假若 / 假使……，……: if, supposing …

假若 / 假使 | the supposition | ，(就 / 那么) | the result

假若 and 假使 are more literary ways of saying 如果 "if". Use them in writing, speeches or when you imagine something unlikely. The second half often has 就 or 那么. Like 如果, they can also end the clause with ……的话.

假使明天下雨，比赛就推迟一周。 **jiǎshǐ míngtiān xià yǔ bǐsài jiù tuīchí yì zhōu** If it rains tomorrow, the race will be put back a week.

假若你是我，你会怎么选? **jiàruò nǐ shì wǒ nǐ huì zěnme xuǎn** If you were me, what would you choose?

假使没有大家的帮助，我们不可能登顶。 **jiǎshǐ méiyǒu dàjiā de bāngzhù wǒmen bù kěnéng dēngdǐng** Without everyone's help, we could never have reached the summit.

dialogue the weekend lottery

anna 下个月开始我要按照专职教练的计划训练，作息要非常规律。这个周末是最后的自由时间，大家想去哪儿玩？

xià gè yuè kāishǐ wǒ yào ànzhào zhuānzhí jiàoliàn de jìhuà xùnliàn zuòxī yào fēicháng guīlǜ zhège zhōumò shì zuìhòu de zìyóu shíjiān dàjiā xiǎng qù nǎr wán · From next month I'm on the full-time coach's training plan, with a very regular routine. This weekend is my last free time: where does everyone want to go?

xiaoming 去海边冲浪吧！要不就去潜水，水下的鱼漂亮极了。

qù hǎi biān chōnglàng ba yàobú jiù qù qiánshuǐ shuǐ xià de yú piàoliang jí le · Let's go surfing at the seaside! Or diving: the fish underwater are gorgeous.

little sister 我想去山里漂流，或者去跳伞！假若能从三千米高的地方跳下来，那多刺激啊！

wǒ xiǎng qù shān lǐ piāoliú huòzhě qù tiàosǎn jiàruò néng cóng sānqiān mǐ gāo de dìfang tiào xialai nà duō cìjī a · I want to go rafting in the mountains, or skydiving! Imagine jumping from three thousand metres: what a thrill!

editor lin 我宁可去爬山。上次我们攀登了一座雪山，早上六点登顶，看着太阳出来，感觉自己站在了世界的巅峰。

wǒ nìngkě qù pá shān shàng cì wǒmen pāndēng le yí zuò xuěshān zǎoshang liù diǎn dēngdǐng kàn zhe tàiyáng chūlái gǎnjué zìjǐ zhàn zài le shìjiè de diānfēng · I'd rather go climbing. Last time we climbed a snowy mountain and reached the summit at six in the morning: watching the sun come up, I felt I was standing on top of the world.

anna 每个人都不一样，怎么办？

měi gè rén dōu bù yíyàng zěnme bàn · Everyone wants something different: what do we do?

xiaoming 那就抽签吧，抽到什么就玩什么，谁也不许说不。

nà jiù chōuqiān ba chōu dào shénme jiù wán shénme shéi yě bùxǔ shuō bù · Then let's draw lots: whatever comes up, we do it, and nobody's allowed to say no.

anna 好，就这么定了！谁的签被抽到，谁就是赢家！

hǎo jiù zhème dìng le shéi de qiān bèi chōu dào shéi jiùshì yíngjiā · OK, that's settled! Whoever's slip gets drawn is the winner!

little sister 我跟你们打赌，一定抽到我的跳伞！

wǒ gēn nǐmen dǎdǔ yídìng chōu dào wǒ de tiàosǎn · I bet you anything my skydiving comes up!

editor lin 打赌可以，可是别赌钱啊。

dǎdǔ kěyǐ kěshì bié dǔ qián a · A bet's fine, but no gambling for money.

anna 抽到了……漂流！

chōu dào le piāoliú · And it's… rafting!

xiaoming 好！假使明天下雨，我们就改到后天。为了安全起见，大家都要听教练的话。

hǎo jiǎshǐ míngtiān xià yǔ wǒmen jiù gǎi dào hòutiān wèile ānquán qǐjiàn dàjiā dōu yào tīng jiàoliàn de huà · Great! If it rains tomorrow, we'll move it to the day after. To be safe, everyone has to do what the instructor says.

editor lin 漂流完了，晚上找个地方住，可以沐浴，休息一下，再打打麻将或者扑克。

piāoliú wán le wǎnshang zhǎo gè dìfang zhù kěyǐ mùyù xiūxi yíxià zài dǎ da májiàng huòzhě pūkè · After rafting we can find somewhere to stay for the night, have a bath and a rest, and then play some mahjong or cards.

little sister 我爷爷以前最大的嗜好就是下象棋，他常说两个人对弈，就像一场博弈，要想好几步。

wǒ yéye yǐqián zuì dà de shìhào jiùshì xià xiàngqí tā cháng shuō liǎng gè rén duìyì jiù xiàng yì chǎng bóyì yào xiǎng hǎo jǐ bù · My grandpa's great passion was Chinese chess: he used to say a game was a real battle of wits, and you had to think several moves ahead.

anna 我小时候最喜欢的消遣是放风筝、玩滑梯、捉迷藏，还有跟小朋友赛跑。周末的公园就是孩子们的乐园。

wǒ xiǎoshíhou zuì xǐhuan de xiāoqiǎn shì fàng fēngzheng wán huátī zhuōmícáng hái yǒu gēn xiǎopéngyǒu sàipǎo zhōumò de gōngyuán jiùshì háizimen de lèyuán · When I was little my favourite pastimes were flying

kites, going down slides, hide-and-seek and racing the other kids. At weekends the park was a children's paradise.

xiaoming 现在的孩子都在家玩手机，很少到外面玩耍了。
xiànzài de háizi dōu zài jiā wán shǒujī hěn shǎo dào wàimiàn wánshuǎ le · Kids nowadays play on their phones at home; they hardly go out to play any more.

editor lin 我出个谜语给大家猜：“有头没有脚，有眼没有毛，天上飞得高，就是不能跑。”打一个东西。
wǒ chū gè míyǔ gěi dàjiā cāi yǒu tóu méiyǒu jiǎo yǒu yǎn méiyǒu máo tiānshàng fēi de gāo jiùshì bù néng pǎo dǎ yí gè dōngxi · Here's a riddle for you all: "It has a head but no feet, eyes but no hair; it flies high in the sky but can never run." What is it?

little sister 是鸟吗？不对，鸟有脚……这个谜太难了！
shì niǎo ma bú duì niǎo yǒu jiǎo zhège mí tài nán le · A bird? No, birds have feet… this riddle is too hard!

editor lin 谜底是风筝！
mídǐ shì fēngzheng · The answer is: a kite!

anna 哈哈，刚才我们还说放风筝呢！
hā hā gāngcái wǒmen hái shuō fàng fēngzheng ne · Ha ha, and we were just talking about flying kites!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

丙
bǐng
third (in a series), C

丁
dīng
fourth (in a series), D

鹿
lù
deer

鲸
jīng
whale

good to know · Riddles (谜语) end with a clue to the category: 打一动物 "guess an animal", 打一字 "guess a character". At the Lantern Festival riddles hang on lanterns for people to guess. 嗜好 sounds like a habit you can't give up and is often negative (不良嗜好 bad habits); for an ordinary hobby, say 爱好.

Surfing or mahjong, skydiving or riddles: you can now plan a weekend with friends in Chinese and dream out loud with 假若.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 77 swing, shake and sway

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 10 · sport and movement

Describe movement, swinging, shaking, jumping, hanging and falling, and say “no matter how …” with 任……也……

Coaches, sports reports and stories describe the body in motion with these precise verbs; 任……也…… adds the grit: whatever happens, we keep going.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
甩	shuǎi	to swing, fling; to dump	她甩了甩头发上的水。 She shook the water out of her hair.
撇	piě	to cast aside; to curl (your lip)	她不高兴地撇了撇嘴。 She curled her lip in displeasure.
抡	lūn	to swing (an arm, a tool) hard	他抡起大锤，一下就把石头砸开了。 He swung the sledgehammer and split the rock in one blow.
挥舞	huīwǔ	to wave, brandish	观众挥舞着国旗为运动员加油。 The spectators waved flags to cheer on the runners.
扬	yáng	to raise, lift; to spread	她扬起头，自信地笑了。 She raised her head and smiled confidently.
摆动	bǎidòng	to swing, sway	跑步的时候，手臂要自然摆动。 When you run, let your arms swing naturally.
摇摆	yáobǎi	to sway; to waver	树枝在风中摇摆。 The branches sway in the wind.
摇晃	yáohuàng	to shake, sway (unsteadily)	船摇晃得很厉害，好几个人晕船了。 The boat rocked so badly that several people got seasick.
晃	huàng	to sway, shake; to wander about	他喝多了，走路晃来晃去的。 He’d had too much and was swaying all over the place.
晃荡	huàngdang	to sway; to loaf about	别整天在街上晃荡，找一点儿正经事做。 Stop loafing around the streets all day: find something proper to do.
抖	dǒu	to shake, shiver; to shake out	他抖了抖衣服上的雪。 He shook the snow off his clothes.
发抖	fādǒu	to tremble, shiver	外面太冷了，我冻得发抖。 It’s so cold out that I’m shivering.
哆嗦	duōsuo	to shiver, tremble (spoken)	他冷得直哆嗦。 He was shivering with cold.
颤抖	chàndǒu	to tremble, quiver	她紧张得声音都在颤抖。 She was so nervous her voice was trembling.
跳动	tiàodòng	to beat, throb	我能感到心脏在快速地跳动。 I can feel my heart beating fast.

蹦	bèng	to hop, bounce, jump	孩子高兴得又蹦又跳。 The child was jumping for joy.
跳跃	tiàoyuè	to leap, jump; a leap	海豚在水里跳跃。 Dolphins are leaping in the water.
腾	téng	to rise, soar; to make room	我把这个房间腾出来给你住。 I'll clear this room out for you to stay in.
翘	qiào	to stick up, tilt upwards	他坐在沙发上，翘着腿看电视。 He sat on the sofa with his legs crossed, watching TV.
耸	sǒng	to shrug; to tower	他耸了耸肩膀，说：“我也不知道。” He shrugged and said: “I don't know either.”
竖立	shùlì	to stand upright, erect	终点竖立着一块大牌子。 A big sign stands at the finish line.
伸手	shēnshǒu	to reach out your hand	她伸手把我拉了起来。 She reached out and pulled me up.
伸缩	shēnsuō	to stretch and shrink; flexible	这把伞可以伸缩，很方便。 This umbrella folds up: very handy.
舒展	shūzhǎn	to stretch out; relaxed	跑完以后，舒展一下身体，会舒服很多。 After running, stretch out your body and you'll feel much better.
缩	suō	to shrink, draw back	天太冷了，大家都缩着脖子。 It was so cold everyone had their necks hunched down.
垂	chuí	to hang down, droop	柳树的枝条垂在水面上。 The willow branches hang down over the water.
悬	xuán	to hang, be suspended; unresolved	比赛的结果到最后一秒还悬着。 The result of the match was in the balance until the very last second.
悬挂	xuánguà	to hang (up), fly (a flag)	街道两边悬挂着红灯笼。 Red lanterns hang along both sides of the street.
飘浮	piāofú	to float (in the air)	天上飘浮着几朵白云。 A few white clouds are drifting across the sky.
漂浮	piāofú	to float (on water)	河面上漂浮着很多垃圾。 Lots of rubbish is floating on the river.
飘扬	piāoyáng	to flutter, wave (flags)	国旗在风中飘扬。 The national flag flutters in the wind.
盘旋	pánxuán	to circle, hover	一只老鹰在山顶上空盘旋。 An eagle is circling above the mountaintop.
下坠	xiàzhuì	to fall, drop down	气球突然开始下坠。 The balloon suddenly began to fall.
坠	zhuì	to fall; to weigh down	苹果太多了，把树枝都坠弯了。 There were so many apples they weighed the branches down.
坠落	zhuìluò	to fall, crash (from a height)	一块石头从山上坠落下来。 A rock fell from the mountain.

pattern 任……也……: no matter how …

任 | who / how / what (怎么, 多, 再, 谁) | ，也 / 都 | the result that doesn't change

任 means "let it be": whatever happens, the result stays the same. Follow it with a question word or 再 + adjective, and put 也 or 都 in the second half. 任他怎么说，我也不改 "let him say what he likes, I won't change". It is a punchier, more literary 不管……也……

任外面多冷，他每天都去跑步。 **rèn wàimiàn duō lěng tā měi tiān dōu qù pǎobù** However cold it is outside, he goes running every day.

任谁来劝，她也不听。 **rèn shéi lái quàn tā yě bù tīng** Whoever tries to talk her round, she won't listen.

任风再大，我们也要跑完十公里。 **rèn fēng zài dà wǒmen yě yào pǎo wán shí gōnglǐ** However strong the wind, we're going to finish the ten kilometres.

dialogue the first training session

anna 太冷了！我冻得浑身发抖，说话的声音都在颤抖。
tài lěng le wǒ dòng de húnshēn fādǒu shuōhuà de shēngyīn dōu zài chàndǒu · It's freezing! I'm shivering all over, and even my voice is trembling.

xiaoming 我也冷得直哆嗦，把脖子都缩起来了。
wǒ yě lěng de zhí duōsuo bǎ bózi dōu suō qǐlai le · I'm shivering too: my neck's hunched right down.

dr zhou 这几天天气忽冷忽热，今天又刮北风。你们看，湖边的国旗被风吹得飘扬起来了。
zhè jǐ tiān tiānqì hūlěng hūrè jīntiān yòu guā běi fēng nǐmen kàn hú biān de guóqí bèi fēng chuī de piāoyáng qǐlai le · The weather has been swinging between hot and cold, and today the north wind is blowing. Look, the flag by the lake is flying out straight in the wind.

manager liu 任风再大，我们也要跑完十公里！教练说先热身：甩甩手，抖抖腿，再原地蹦几下。
rèn fēng zài dà wǒmen yě yào pǎo wán shí gōnglǐ jiàoliàn shuō xiān rè shēn shuǎi shuai shǒu dǒu dou tuǐ zài yuán dì bèng jǐ xià · However strong the wind, we're finishing the ten kilometres! The coach says warm up first: shake out your hands, loosen your legs, then bounce on the spot a few times.

anna 大家站在起跑线上东张西望，有的在跳，有的在伸胳膊，七嘴八舌地问教练问题。
dàjiā zhàn zài qǐpǎoxiàn shàng dōngzhāng xīwàng yǒude zài tiào yǒude zài shēn gēbo qīzuǐ bāshé de wèn jiàoliàn wèntí · Everyone stood on the starting line looking around; some were jumping, some stretching their arms, all firing questions at the coach at once.

xiaoming 我们要不要先比试比试，看谁冲刺最快？
wǒmen yào búyào xiān bǐshi bǐshi kàn shéi chōngcì zuì kuài · Shall we have a contest first and see who sprints fastest?

manager liu 教练说跑的时候身体不要左右摇摆，手臂要自然摆动，别像抡大锤一样。
jiàoliàn shuō pǎo de shíhou shēntǐ búyào zuǒyòu yáobǎi shǒubì yào zìrán bǎidòng bié xiàng lūn dà chuí yíyàng · The coach says when you run, don't sway from side to side; let your arms swing naturally, not like swinging a sledgehammer.

xiaoming 你看那个人，跑起来身体一直晃来晃去的，像喝多了一样。
nǐ kàn nà gè rén pǎo qǐlai shēntǐ yìzhí huàng lái huàng qù de xiàng hē duō le yíyàng · Look at that man: when he runs his body sways about all over the place, as if he'd had too much to drink.

dr zhou 那是因为他的肩膀太紧了。肩膀要放松，脊梁挺直，不要耸着，也不要往下垂。
nà shì yīnwèi tā de jiānbǎng tài jǐn le jiānbǎng yào fàngsōng jǐliáng tǐng zhí búyào sǒng zhe yě búyào wǎng xià chuí · That's because his shoulders are too tight. Keep them relaxed and your back straight: don't hunch them up, and don't let them droop.

anna 周博士，您每天都跑步吗？
Zhōubóshì nín měi tiān dōu pǎobù ma · Dr Zhou, do you run every day?

dr zhou 任外面多冷，我每天早上都跑。跑完以后，舒展一下身体，心脏有力地跳动，一整天都有精神。
rèn wàimiàn duō lěng wǒ měi tiān zǎoshang dōu pǎo pǎo wán yǐhòu shūzhǎn yíxià shēntǐ xīnzàng yǒulì de tiàodòng yì zhěng tiān dōu yǒu jīngshen · However cold it is, I run every morning. Afterwards I stretch out, my heart beats strong, and I'm full of energy all day.

xiaoming 快看，天上有一只老鹰在盘旋！
kuài kàn tiānshàng yǒu yì zhī lǎo yīng zài pánxuán · Look, there's an eagle circling in the sky!

dr zhou 不是老鹰，是风筝！有人在放风筝，你看它在空中飘浮，一会儿往上腾，一会儿往下坠。
bú shì lǎo yīng shì fēngzheng yǒu rén zài fàng fēngzheng nǐ kàn tā zài kōngzhōng piāofú yíhuìr wǎng shàng téng yíhuìr wǎng xiàzhuì · That's not an eagle, it's a kite! Someone's flying a kite: look how it floats in the air, now soaring up, now dropping down.

anna 哎呀，风筝挂在树上了，悬在半空中！……线断了，风筝一下子坠了下来，坠落到湖里去了！
āiyā fēngzheng guà zài shù shàng le xuán zài bàn kōngzhōng xiàn duàn le fēngzheng yíxià zi zhuì le xialai

zhuìluò dào hú lǐ qù le · Oh no, the kite's caught in a tree, hanging in mid-air! … The string's snapped: the kite has dropped and fallen into the lake!

xiaoming 你看它在湖面上漂浮着，湖里的鱼都吓得跳跃起来了。那个孩子急得又蹦又跳，伸手想去拿。

nǐ kàn tā zài hú miàn shàng piāofú zhe hú lǐ de yú dōu xià de tiàoyuè qǐlai le nàge háizi jí de yòu bèng yòu tiào shēnshǒu xiǎng qù ná · Look, it's floating on the lake, and the fish are leaping out of the water in fright. That child is jumping up and down in a panic, reaching out to grab it.

manager liu 危险！别过去！湖边的石头又湿又滑，人站上去会摇晃，很容易掉进水里。

wēixiǎn bié guòqù hú biān de shítou yòu shī yòu huá rén zhàn shàngqù huì yáohuàng hěn róngyì diào jìn shuǐ lǐ · Careful! Don't go over there! The stones by the lake are wet and slippery: you'll wobble if you stand on them, and you could easily fall in.

dr zhou 我去帮他。我有一根能伸缩的长棍子，正好够得着。

wǒ qù bāng tā wǒ yǒu yì gēn néng shēnsuō de cháng gùn zi zhènghǎo gòu de zháo · I'll help him. I've got a long telescopic pole: it'll just reach.

xiaoming 拿到了！孩子高兴地挥舞着风筝，向周博士扬了扬手。

ná dào le háizi gāoxìng de huīwǔ zhe fēngzheng xiàng Zhōubóshì yáng le yang shǒu · Got it! The child happily waved the kite and raised a hand to Dr Zhou.

anna 他的妈妈本来不高兴地撇着嘴，现在也笑了，还对周博士竖起了大拇指。

tā de māma běnlái bù gāoxìng de piě zhe zuǐ xiànzài yě xiào le hái duì Zhōubóshì shù qǐ le dà mǔzhǐ · His mum had been pursing her lips in annoyance, but now she smiled too and gave Dr Zhou a thumbs-up.

manager liu 好了好了，别在这儿晃荡了！小明，别坐在那儿翘着腿了。你们看，终点竖立着一块大牌子，上面悬挂着公司的名字。出发！

hǎo le hǎo le bié zài zhèr huàngdang le Xiǎomíng bié zuò zài nàr qiào zhe tuǐ le nǐmen kàn zhōngdiǎn shùlì zhe yí kuài dà páizi shàngmiàn xuánguà zhe gōngsī de míngzi chūfā · All right, all right, stop hanging about! Xiaoming, stop sitting there with your legs crossed. Look, there's a big sign standing at the finish with the company's name hanging on it. Off we go!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

鹅
é
goose

仙
xiān
immortal

鹰
yīng
eagle, hawk

牲
shēng
domestic animal

good to know · Chinese has a verb for every kind of shake: 抖 shake (out), 发抖 shiver, 哆嗦 shiver (spoken), 颤抖 tremble, 摇晃 rock unsteadily, 晃 sway, 摇摆 sway to and fro. 飘 (wind radical) floats in the air and 漂 (water radical) floats on water: 飘浮 in the sky, 漂浮 on the lake. Both are piāofú.

Shake, sway, leap and float: you can now describe every move in a training session, and keep going 任风再大.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 78 walk, run and chase

Describe every way of moving on foot, strolling, pacing, darting, chasing, tripping, and ask a pointed written question with 有何.....

Stories, news and signs are full of these movement verbs; 有何 + noun is the crisp written way to ask “what … is there?”, as in 有何|不可 “why not?”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
奔	bèn	to head for, make for	一下飞机，他就直奔{ben4-7}医院。 As soon as he got off the plane, he headed straight for the hospital.
奔波	bēnbō	to rush about, toil	为了生活，他每天在城市里奔波。 To make a living, he rushes around the city every day.
奔驰	bēnchí	to gallop, speed	火车在大地上奔驰。 The train speeds across the land.
奔赴	bēnfù	to hurry to, set out for (a post, a place)	队员们奔赴赛场。 The team set off for the venue.
步伐	bùfá	pace, step	最后五公里，她的步伐越来越慢。 Over the last five kilometres her pace got slower and slower.
踏	tà	to step on, tread	他踏上了回家的路。 He set off on the road home.
蹬	dēng	to pedal, push off with the feet	他用力蹬着自行车上坡。 He pedalled hard up the hill.
践踏	jiàntà	to trample	请勿践踏草地。 Please keep off the grass.
跨	kuà	to stride, step across; to span	他一步跨过了小溪。 He stepped across the stream in one stride.
越过	yuèguò	to cross, go over	我们越过了最后一座山。 We crossed the last mountain.
溜	liū	to slip away; to slide	会还没开完，他就偷偷溜了。 He slipped away before the meeting was over.
溜达	liūda	to stroll, wander	吃完饭，我们去外面溜达溜达吧。 After dinner let’s go out for a stroll.
遛	liù	to walk (a dog)	小明每天早上遛大白。 Xiaoming walks Dabai every morning.
转悠	zhuànyou	to wander around	我在商场里转悠了一下午，什么也没买。 I wandered round the shopping centre all afternoon and bought nothing.
徘徊	páihuái	to pace up and down; to hover	他在门外徘徊了很久，才敲门。 He paced outside the door for a long time before he knocked.
驻足	zhùzú	to stop (walking) (written)	很多游客在这幅画前驻足观看。 Many visitors stop to look at this painting.

止步	zhǐbù	to stop, halt	前面施工，行人止步。 Construction ahead: no pedestrians beyond this point.
站立	zhànlì	to stand	他站立了一个小时，腿都麻{ma2-7}了。 He stood for an hour and his legs went numb.
趴	pā	to lie on your stomach, lean over	大白趴在门口睡觉。 Dabai is sleeping stretched out by the door.
卧	wò	to lie down (written)	医生让他卧床休息一个星期。 The doctor told him to stay in bed for a week.
倚	yǐ	to lean on	她倚在窗前看着外面的雨。 She leaned by the window, watching the rain.
翻身	fānshēn	to turn over (in bed); to turn things round	病人不能自己翻身，需要护士帮忙。 The patient can't turn over by himself and needs a nurse's help.
动弹	dòngtan	to move, stir (spoken)	跑完|马拉松{==marathon}，我累得一点儿也动弹不了{liao3-4}。 After the marathon I was too tired to move a muscle.
穿梭	chuānsuō	to shuttle back and forth	快递员骑着电动车在大街小巷穿梭。 Couriers dart through the streets on their e-bikes.
窜	cuàn	to dart, scurry	一只猫从草丛里窜了出来。 A cat darted out of the grass.
追赶	zhuīgǎn	to chase, catch up with	他在后面拼命追赶前面的运动员。 He was chasing the runner in front for all he was worth.
追逐	zhuīzhú	to chase; to pursue	孩子们在沙滩上互相追逐。 The children chase each other on the beach.
逼近	bījìn	to close in on, approach	后面的运动员越来越逼近了。 The runners behind were closing in.
靠拢	kàolǒng	to draw close, move together	大家往中间靠拢一点儿，我给你们拍照。 Everyone move in a bit closer and I'll take your photo.
凑	còu	to gather; to put together; to move close	我们几个人凑钱给他买了个礼物。 A few of us chipped in to buy him a present.
簇拥	cùyōng	to crowd around	冠军在记者的簇拥下走出了赛场。 The champion left the venue surrounded by reporters.
冲撞	chōngzhuàng	to collide with; to offend	两个队员在比赛中发生了冲撞。 Two players collided during the match.
撞击	zhuàngjī	to strike, ram	小船撞击到了礁石上。 The little boat struck the rocks.
绊	bàn	to trip over	他被一块石头绊倒了。 He tripped over a stone.
攀	pān	to climb (by holding on)	孩子们攀着绳子往上爬。 The children clung to the rope and climbed up.

pattern 有何……: what … is there? (written)

有何 不可 / 区别 / 意义 / 打算 / 关系 ?

何 is the written 什么, so 有何 + noun = 有什么 + noun. It is often a rhetorical question: 有何|不可? "what's wrong with it?" = why not; 有何意义? "what's the point?". It sounds crisp, formal or a little playful. Day 73's 何, 若干 and 彼 belong to the same written family.

年轻人多出去走走，有何不可? **niánqīng rén duō chuqu zǒu zou yǒu hé bù kě** Why shouldn't young people get out and see the world?

这样做有何意义? **zhèyàng zuò yǒu hé yìyì** What's the point of doing it like this?

这两个词有何区别? **zhè liǎng gè cí yǒu hé qūbié** What's the difference between these two words?

dialogue the long run

xiaoming 安娜！你一大早就在街上奔跑，不累吗？
Ānnà nǐ yí dà zǎo jiù zài jiē shàng bēnpǎo bú lèi ma · Anna! Running round the streets first thing in the morning: aren't you tired?

anna 教练的日程表上写着，今天要跑二十公里。你呢？
jiàoliàn de rìchéng biǎo shàng xiě zhe jīntiān yào pǎo èrshí gōnglǐ nǐ ne · The coach's schedule says twenty kilometres today. And you?

xiaoming 我每天早上遛大白，在附近溜达溜达。平时上班天天奔波，周末就慢慢转悠。
wǒ měi tiān zǎoshang liù Dàbái zài fùjìn liūda liūda píngshí shàngbān tiān tiān bēnbō zhōumò jiù màn màn zhuànyou · I walk Dabai every morning and stroll round the neighbourhood. On weekdays I'm rushing about at work, so at weekends I take it slow.

anna 那这么着吧，我跑前面，你和大白在后面追。
nà zhèmezhe ba wǒ pǎo qiánmiàn nǐ hé Dàbái zài hòumiàn zhuī · Then tell you what: I'll run in front, and you and Dabai chase me.

xiaoming 带狗跑步？好吧，有何不可！大白，走！
dài gǒu pǎobù hǎo ba yǒu hé bù kě Dàbái zǒu · Running with a dog? Well, why not! Dabai, let's go!

anna 哎呀，一只猫从草丛里窜出来了！大白甩着尾巴追上去了！
āiyā yì zhī māo cóng cǎocóng lǐ cuàn chulai le Dàbái shuǎi zhe wěiba zhuī shangqu le · Oh no, a cat's just darted out of the grass! Dabai's after it, tail swinging!

xiaoming 大白，回来！它们俩在草地上追逐，真拿它没办法。
Dàbái huílái tāmen liǎ zài cǎodì shàng zhuīzhú zhēn ná tā méi bànfǎ · Dabai, come back! The two of them are chasing each other across the grass: I can't do a thing with him.

anna 猫跨过一条小沟，越过围墙，一下子就不见了。
māo kuà guò yì tiáo xiǎo gōu yuèguò wéiqiáng yíxià zi jiù bújiàn le · The cat's leapt across a ditch and over the wall, and it's gone in a flash.

xiaoming 大白在墙下徘徊了半天，最后趴在地上不动了。
Dàbái zài qiáng xià páihuái le bàntiān zuìhòu pā zài dì shàng bú dòng le · Dabai paced up and down under the wall for ages, and in the end flopped down on the ground and didn't move.

anna 啊！我被一块石头绊了一下，身子晃了晃……还好，没摔倒。
a wǒ bèi yí kuài shítou bàn le yíxià shēnzi huàng le huang hái hǎo méi shuāi dǎo · Ah! I tripped over a stone and wobbled… phew, I didn't fall.

xiaoming 前面的路不好走，你的步伐小一点儿，看清楚了再往下踏。
qiánmiàn de lù bù hǎo zǒu nǐ de bùfá xiǎo yìdiǎnr kàn qīngchu le zài wǎng xià tà · The path's uneven ahead: take shorter steps and look before you put your foot down.

anna 你看，那边写着“游客止步”，旁边还有个牌子：“请勿践踏草地。”
nǐ kàn nàbiān xiě zhe yóukè zhǐbù pángbiān hái yǒu gè páizi qǐng wù jiàntà cǎodì · Look, it says “No visitors beyond this point” over there, and there's another sign: “Please keep off the grass.”

professor chen 安娜，小明！真巧！我在看古墙上的这则老通知：“兹定于……”，是一百年前写的。
Ānnà Xiǎomíng zhēn qiǎo wǒ zài kàn gǔ qiáng shàng de zhè zé lǎo tōngzhī zī dìng yú shì yìbǎi nián qián xiě de · Anna, Xiaoming! What a coincidence! I'm reading this old notice on the city wall: “It is hereby decided…”: it was written a hundred years ago.

anna 陈教授，这上面的“彼”和“何”是什么意思？
Chénjiàoshòu zhè shàngmiàn de bǐ hé hé shì shénme yìsi · Professor Chen, what do the 彼 and 何 on here mean?

professor chen “彼”就是“那”，“何”就是“什么”。古人说话跟我们今天有何区别？其实区别不大，就是更简单。
bǐ jiùshì nà hé jiùshì shénme gǔrén shuōhuà gēn wǒmen jīntiān yǒu hé qūbié qíshí qūbié bú dà jiùshì gèng jiǎndān · 彼 means “that”, and 何 means “what”. How did people in the past speak differently from us? Actually not very differently: just more concisely.

xiaoming 这段古墙上有若干个城门吧?

zhè duàn gǔ qiáng shàng yǒu ruògān gè chéng mén ba · This stretch of wall has a number of gates, doesn't it?

professor chen 对。以前，这条路上马车奔驰，商人从这里奔赴南方。现在古墙下面是骑车的人在穿梭。墙上这些坑，据说是以前马车撞击留下的。

duì yǐqián zhè tiáo lùshang mǎ chē bēnchí shāngrén cóng zhèlǐ bēnfù nánfāng xiànzài gǔ qiáng xiàmiàn shì qí chē de rén zài chuānsuō qiáng shàng zhèxiē kēng jùshuō shì yǐqián mǎ chē zhuàngjī liúxia de · That's right. In the old days, carriages sped along this road, and merchants set off from here for the south. Now it's cyclists weaving through under the wall. These dents in the wall are said to be from carriages crashing into it long ago.

anna 好多游客驻足拍照，大家都往城门那儿靠拢，把一位旅游明星簇拥在中间，有的人还挥舞着手机。

hǎoduō yóukè zhùzú pāizhào dàjiā dōu wǎng chéng mén nàr kàolǒng bǎ yí wèi lǚyóu míngxīng cùyōng zài zhōngjiān yǒude rén hái huīwǔ zhe shǒujī · Lots of tourists have stopped to take photos, and everyone's crowding towards the gate, surrounding a travel celebrity; some are even waving their phones about.

xiaoming 人太多了，小心别冲撞了别人。我们也凑过去看看?

rén tài duō le xiǎoxīn bié chōngzhuàng le biérén wǒmen yě còu guoqu kàn kan · It's so crowded: careful not to bump into anyone. Shall we go over and have a look too?

anna 不行，我还要跑十公里。后面的人越来越逼近了，我得追赶前面的队伍!

bùxíng wǒ hái yào pǎo shí gōnglǐ hòumiàn de rén yuè lái yuè bījìn le wǒ děi zhuīgǎn qiánmiàn de duìwu · No, I've still got ten kilometres to go. The runners behind are closing in, and I need to catch up with the group in front!

professor chen 去吧！晚上还能动弹吗?

qù ba wǎnshang hái néng dòngtan ma · Off you go! Will you still be able to move tonight?

anna 晚上我就卧在沙发上，倚着枕头，连翻身都不想翻!

wǎnshang wǒ jiù wò zài shāfā shàng yǐ zhe zhěntou lián fānshēn dōu bù xiǎng fān · Tonight I'll lie on the sofa leaning on a cushion, and I won't even want to turn over!

xiaoming 大白，别想溜！起来！站立！我们回家吧。下次带你去攀古墙……开玩笑的。

Dàbái bié xiǎng liū qǐlái zhànlì wǒmen huí jiā ba xià cì dài nǐ qù pān gǔ qiáng kāi wánxiào de · Dabai, don't you sneak off! Up! Stand! Let's go home. Next time I'll take you climbing up the city wall... only joking.

anna 大白已经一路小跑奔着回家的方向去了。它用后腿一蹬，跑得比我还快!

Dàbái yǐjīng yílù xiǎo pǎo bèn zhe huí jiā de fāngxiàng qù le tā yòng hòu tuǐ yì dēng pǎo de bǐ wǒ hái kuài · Dabai is already trotting off towards home. One push with his back legs and he's faster than me!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

猛
měng
fierce, violent; suddenly

猎
liè
hunt

穴
xué
cave, hole

窝
wō
nest, den; litter

good to know · Signs in China use crisp written Chinese: 请勿践踏 (please do not trample), 游客止步 (no visitors beyond this point), 禁止吸烟 (no smoking). 勿 is the written 不要. Beijingers love their strolling words: 溜达, 转悠, and 遛弯儿 for an after-dinner walk; 遛 is also what you do with a dog (遛狗) or, traditionally, a caged bird (遛鸟).

Stroll, pace, dart, chase and trip: you can now tell a whole morning run in Chinese, and answer any objection with a breezy 有何|不可?
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 79 effort and success

Encourage, praise and warn with the great idioms of effort and success, and state a rule for everyone with 凡是……，均(可)……

Speeches, school banners, sports reports and New Year wishes are full of these idioms; 凡是……均…… is the formal frame of every rule and notice.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
持之以恒	chízhīyǐhéng	to persevere, keep at it	学外语要持之以恒。 Learning a foreign language takes perseverance.
全力以赴	quánlìyǐfù	to go all out	明天的比赛，我们一定全力以赴。 We'll go all out in tomorrow's match.
竭尽全力	jiéjìnquánlì	to do your very utmost	医生们竭尽全力救治病人。 The doctors did everything they could to save the patient.
全心全意	quánxīnquányì	wholeheartedly	她全心全意地照顾生病的奶奶。 She looked after her sick grandma wholeheartedly.
一心一意	yīxīnyīyì	single-mindedly	他一心一意想当一名好医生。 His one aim is to become a good doctor.
聚精会神	jùjīnghuìshén	with full concentration	学生们聚精会神地听老师讲课。 The students listened to the teacher with rapt attention.
废寝忘食	fèiqǐnwàngshí	to forget to eat and sleep (over work)	为了这个项目，他废寝忘食地工作了一个月。 He worked on this project for a month, barely stopping to eat or sleep.
夜以继日	yèyǐjìrì	day and night, round the clock	工人们夜以继日地工作，大桥提前建好了。 The workers worked round the clock, and the bridge was finished early.
埋头苦干	máitóukǔgàn	to put your head down and work hard	他不爱说话，只知道埋头苦干。 He doesn't talk much: he just keeps his head down and works hard.
精益求精	jīngyìqiújīng	to keep improving what is already good	这位老师傅做菜精益求精。 This old chef keeps refining his cooking, never satisfied.
再接再厉	zàijiēzàilì	to keep up the good work	这次考得不错，希望你再接再厉！ You did well in this exam: keep up the good work!
勇往直前	yǒngwǎngzhíqián	to forge bravely ahead	不管遇到什么困难，我们都要勇往直前。 Whatever difficulties we meet, we must forge ahead.
一鼓作气	yīgǔzuòqì	in one go, without stopping	我们一鼓作气爬到了山顶。 We climbed to the summit in one go.
前赴后继	qiánfùhòujì	to advance wave upon wave	一代又一代的科学家前赴后继，才有了今天的成果。 Today's achievements are the work of generation after generation of scientists, each taking over from the last.

争分夺秒	zhēngfēnduómiǎo	to race against the clock	医生们争分夺秒地抢救病人。 The doctors raced against the clock to save the patient.
齐心协力	qíxīnxiélì	to work together as one	只要大家齐心协力，就没有做不到的事。 As long as we all pull together, there's nothing we can't do.
众志成城	zhòngzhìchéngchéng	unity is strength	大家众志成城，终于战胜了洪水。 United as one, the people finally overcame the flood.
同舟共济	tóngzhōugòngjì	to pull together in hard times	困难的时候，我们要同舟共济。 In hard times we must stick together.
任重道远	rènzhòngdàoyuǎn	a heavy burden and a long road	保护环境的工作任重道远。 Protecting the environment is a heavy task with a long way to go.
鹏程万里	péngchéngwànlǐ	a bright future (a wish)	毕业的时候，老师祝我们鹏程万里。 At graduation the teacher wished us a brilliant future.
大有可为	dàyǒukěwéi	there is great potential	年轻人在这个行业大有可为。 Young people have great prospects in this industry.
循序渐进	xúnxùjiànjìn	step by step	训练要循序渐进，不能一下子跑太多。 Training has to build up gradually: you can't run too much all at once.
水滴石穿	shuǐdīshíchuān	dripping water wears through stone	水滴石穿，每天练一点儿，总会有进步。 Dripping water wears through stone: practise a little every day and you'll improve.
愚公移山	yúgōngyíshān	the Foolish Old Man moves the mountains	我们要有愚公移山的精神。 We need the spirit of the Foolish Old Man who moved the mountains.
半途而废	bàntúérfèi	to give up halfway	做事不能半途而废。 You shouldn't give up halfway through.
急于求成	jíyúqiúchéng	too eager for quick success	学习不能急于求成。 When you study, don't expect results overnight.
急功近利	jígōngjìnlì	after quick success and short-term gain	有的公司太急功近利，不重视质量。 Some companies are so after a quick profit that they neglect quality.
揠苗助长	yàmiáozhùzhǎng	to spoil things by being too impatient	逼孩子学太多东西，就是揠苗助长。 Pushing children to learn too much is like pulling up seedlings to make them grow.
苦尽甘来	kǔjìngānlái	after hardship comes happiness	辛苦了这么多年，他终于苦尽甘来。 After so many hard years, things have finally turned sweet for him.
得心应手	déxīnyìngshǒu	to do with ease, have the knack	她用这个软件已经得心应手了。 She has really got the hang of this software.
轻而易举	qīngéryìjǔ	very easy, effortless	这么重的箱子，他轻而易举地就搬起来了。 He lifted that heavy box without any effort.
小菜一碟	xiǎocàiyīdié	a piece of cake	跑五公里？对他来说是小菜一碟。 Run five kilometres? For him that's a piece of cake.
力所能及	lìsuǒnéngjí	within your power	孩子可以做一些力所能及的家务。 Children can do some housework that's within their abilities.

力不从心	lìbùcóngxīn	the will is there but not the strength	爷爷想帮忙，可是力不从心。 Grandpa wanted to help, but he wasn't up to it.

pattern 凡是……(者)，均(可)……: all who …, may …

凡是 | who it applies to (……的人 / ……者) | ，均(可) | what they get or must do

凡是 (in writing often just 凡) means "every single one who…", and 均 is the written 都. Together they make the frame of rules and notices: 凡是……的人，均可…… "all who …, may …". Add 者 ("one who") for an even more formal ring: 凡是参加者，均……

凡是年满十八岁的人，均可报名。 **fánshì nián mǎn shíbā suì de rén jūn kě bàomíng** Anyone aged eighteen or over may enter.

凡是迟到的人，均不能进入比赛区。 **fánshì chídào de rén jūn bù néng jìnrù bǐsài qū** Latecomers will not be admitted to the race area.

凡是参加比赛者，均可获得一件纪念衣服。 **fánshì cānjiā bǐsài zhě jūn kě huòdé yí jiàn jìniàn yīfu** Every participant will receive a commemorative shirt.

dialogue the night before

manager liu 大家安静一下，我念一下明天的规则：“凡是跑完全程的人，均可领取奖牌。凡是迟到的人，均不能进入比赛区。”

dàjiā ānjìng yíxià wǒ niàn yíxià míngtiān de guīzé fánshì pǎo wán quánchéng de rén jūn kě lǐngqǔ jiǎngpái fánshì chídào de rén jūn bù néng jìnrù bǐsài qū · Quiet please, everyone: let me read tomorrow’s rules. “Everyone who finishes the full course will receive a medal. Latecomers will not be admitted to the race area.”

anna 明天或晴或雨，我们都要全力以赴！

míngtiān huò qíng huò yǔ wǒmen dōu yào quánlìyǐfù · Rain or shine tomorrow, we’ll give it everything we’ve got!

teacher wang 安娜，你这几个月持之以恒，每天早上跑步，真不容易。

Ānnà nǐ zhè jǐ gè yuè chízhī yǐhéng měi tiān zǎoshang pǎobù zhēn bù róngyì · Anna, you’ve kept at it for months, running every morning: that’s no small thing.

anna 刚开始我急于求成，第一周就跑了三十公里，结果膝盖疼了好几天，走路都有点儿瘸。

gāng kāishǐ wǒ jíyú qiúchéng dì yī zhōu jiù pǎo le sānshí gōnglǐ jiéguǒ xīgài téng le hǎo jǐ tiān zǒulù dōu yǒudiǎnr qué · At first I wanted results too fast: I ran thirty kilometres the first week, and my knees hurt for days: I was even limping a bit.

dr zhou 这就叫揠苗助长。训练要循序渐进，不能一下子跑太多。

zhè jiù jiào yàmiáo zhùzhǎng xùnliàn yào xúnxù jiànjìn bù néng yíxià zi pǎo tài duō · That’s what we call pulling up the seedlings to help them grow. Training has to build up gradually: you can’t run too much all at once.

teacher wang 学中文也一样。水滴石穿，每天学一点儿，比急功近利有用得多。

xué Zhōngwén yě yíyàng shuǐdī shíchuān měi tiān xué yìdiǎnr bǐ jígōng jìnlì yǒuyòng de duō · Learning Chinese is the same. Dripping water wears through stone: a little every day is far more use than chasing quick results.

xiaoming 安娜学中文的时候就是这样，一心一意，有时候废寝忘食。

Ānnà xué Zhōngwén de shíhou jiùshì zhèyàng yìxīn yíyì yǒu shíhou fèiqǐn wàngshí · That’s exactly how Anna learned Chinese: single-minded, sometimes forgetting to eat and sleep.

manager liu 她工作也是埋头苦干，夜以继日。这个项目能完成，全靠她全心全意、竭尽全力。她做什么都精益求精。

tā gōngzuò yě shì máitóu kǔgàn yèyǐjìrì zhège xiàngmù néng wánchéng quán kào tā quánxīn quányì jiéjìn quánlì tā zuò shénme dōu jīngyìqiújīng · She works the same way: head down, day and night. We finished this project thanks to her total dedication and utmost effort. Whatever she does, she keeps polishing it.

anna 哪里哪里，是大家齐心协力，同舟共济，才把项目做好的。

nǎlǐ nǎlǐ shì dàjiā qíxīn xiélì tóngzhōu gòngjì cái bǎ xiàngmù zuò hǎo de · Not at all: it was everyone pulling together through the hard times that got the project done.

dr zhou 明天四万人一起跑，众志成城，场面一定不亚于国际大赛。

míngtiān sì wàn rén yìqǐ pǎo zhòngzhì chéngchéng chǎngmiàn yídìng búyàyú guójì dàsài · Tomorrow forty thousand people will run together, united as one: it’ll be every bit as spectacular as an international event.

xiaoming 我听说前面的运动员是专业的，跑一个马拉松对他们来说是小菜一碟。

wǒ tīngshuō qiánmiàn de yùndòngyuán shì zhuānyè de pǎo yí gè mǎlāsōng duì tāmen lái shuō shì xiǎocài yìdié · I hear the runners at the front are professionals: a marathon is a piece of cake for them.

manager liu 我们不跟他们比。做力所能及的事，跑不动了就走，千万别硬撑。

wǒmen bù gēn tāmen bǐ zuò lìsuǒnéngjí de shì pǎo bu dòng le jiù zǒu qiānwàn bié yìng chēng · We’re not competing with them. Do what’s within your power: if you can’t run, walk, and don’t force yourself.

teacher wang 我年纪大了，想跟你们一起跑，可是力不从心了。我明天在终点等你们。

wǒ niánjì dà le xiǎng gēn nǐmen yìqǐ pǎo kěshì lìbùcóngxīn le wǒ míngtiān zài zhōngdiǎn děng nǐmen · I’m getting on: I’d love to run with you, but my body won’t let me. I’ll wait for you at the finish tomorrow.

anna 听说路线要越过三座大桥，还要绕着老城跑一圈。

tīngshuō lùxiàn yào yuèguò sān zuò dà qiáo hái yào rào zhe lǎo chéng pǎo yì quān · I hear the route goes over three big bridges and once round the old town.

dr zhou 跑到三十公里的时候最难。那时候要聚精会神，调整好步伐，一步一步往前，一鼓作气跑到终点。
pǎo dào sānshí gōnglǐ de shíhou zuì nán nà shíhou yào jùjīng huìshén tiáozhěng hǎo bùfá yí bù yí bù wǎng qián yìgǔ zuòqì pǎo dào zhōngdiǎn · The hardest moment comes at thirty kilometres. Then you have to concentrate, steady your stride, take it step by step, and push on to the finish in one go.

anna 我一定勇往直前，不会半途而废！
wǒ yídìng yǒngwǎng zhíqián bú huì bàntúérfèi · I'll forge ahead, and I won't give up halfway!

xiaoming 我跟你打赌：明天你跑得得心应手，轻而易举！
wǒ gēn nǐ dǎdǔ míngtiān nǐ pǎo de déxīn yìngshǒu qīngéryìjǔ · I bet you tomorrow you'll run with ease, no trouble at all!

teacher wang 安娜从一个中文都不会说的外国姑娘，到今天在中国工作，真是苦尽甘来。
Ānnà cóng yí gè Zhōngwén dōu bú huì shuō de wàiguó gūniang dào jīntiān zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò zhēnshi kǔjìn gānlái · Anna went from a foreign girl who couldn't speak a word of Chinese to working in China today: after the hard times, the sweet ones have come.

dr zhou 这就是愚公移山的精神。一代一代的跑步爱好者前赴后继，马拉松才越来越受欢迎。
zhè jiùshì yúgōng yíshān de jīngshén yídài yídài de pǎobù àihào zhě qiánfù hòujì mǎlāsōng cái yuè lái yuè shòu huānyíng · That's the spirit of the Foolish Old Man who moved the mountains. Generation after generation of runners have kept the torch going, and that's why marathons are more and more popular.

manager liu 好！最后，祝大家明天再接再厉，跑出好成绩！公司的发展还任重道远，我们的年轻人大有可为。
hǎo zuìhòu zhù dàjiā míngtiān zàijiē zàilì pǎo chū hǎo chéngjì gōngsī de fāzhǎn hái rènzhòng dàoyuǎn wǒmen de niánqīng rén dàyǒu kěwéi · Right! Finally, I wish everyone another great effort and a good time tomorrow! The company still has a long road ahead, and our young people have a great future.

teacher wang 祝你们鹏程万里！好了，早一点儿回家睡觉，明天还要争分夺秒呢！
zhù nǐmen péngchéng wànlǐ hǎo le zǎo yìdiǎnr huí jiā shuìjiào míngtiān hái yào zhēngfēn duómiǎo ne · Wishing you all a brilliant future! Now, off home to bed early: tomorrow every second counts!

anna 凡是今天吃了面条的人，均可早睡！大家明天见！
fánshì jīntiān chī le miàntiáo de rén jūn kě zǎo shuì dàjiā míngtiān jiàn · Everyone who had noodles tonight may go to bed early! See you all tomorrow!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

卵
luǎn
egg (biology), ovum

衍
yǎn
spread out

驯
xùn
to tame, train

牧
mù
herd, graze

good to know · Many of these idioms are wishes: 鹏程万里 for graduates, 再接再厉 after a success, 大有可为 for young people. Teachers write them in yearbooks and cards. 急于求成, 急功近利 and 揠苗助长 are all warnings against impatience; 揠苗助长 is the one with a story behind it.

You can now cheer, praise and warn with a whole shelf of idioms, and read any rule that begins 凡是……均……
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 80 mission: the city marathon

Follow a whole marathon day in Chinese: the race notice, the start, the long middle, the wall at thirty kilometres, the final sprint and the medals.

Everything from this unit comes together: formal notices, competition, fans and champions, games, movement and the idioms of effort.

chapter 1 chapter 1: before the start

manager liu 大家集合！我先念一下组织者的通知。
dàjiā jíhé wǒ xiān niàn yíxià zǔzhī zhě de tōngzhī · Gather round, everyone! Let me first read the organisers' notice.

manager liu （念）“各位参赛者：兹定于今天上午七点半，在体育中心举行城市马拉松。本次比赛共有四万余人参加，规模不亚于国际大赛。报名人数太多，部分名额由抽签决定。
niàn gèwèi cānsài zhě zī dìng yú jīntiān shàngwǔ qī diǎn bàn zài tǐyù zhōngxīn jǔxíng chéngshì mǎlāsōng běn cì bǐsài gòng yǒu sì wàn yú rén cānjiā guīmó búyàyú guójì dàsài bàomíng rénshù tài duō bùfen míngé yóu chōuqiān juédìng · (reading) “To all participants: The city marathon will be held at the sports centre at 7.30 this morning. More than forty thousand runners are taking part, on a scale equal to any international event. Because so many applied, some places were decided by drawing lots.

manager liu 凡是跑完全程者，均可领取奖牌。无论下雨与否，比赛都照常进行；假使出现危险天气，比赛将推迟。沿路有若干医疗点，安全工作由专人负责，所有食品和水都由专人把关。
fánshì pǎo wán quánchéng zhě jūn kě lǐngqǔ jiǎngpái wúlùn xià yǔ yǔ fǒu bǐsài dōu zhàocháng jìnxíng jiǎshǐ chūxiàn wēixiǎn tiānqì bǐsài jiāng tuīchí yán lù yǒu ruògān yīliáo diǎn ānquán gōngzuò yóu zhuānrén fùzé suǒyǒu shípǐn hé shuǐ dōu yóu zhuānrén bǎguān · All runners who complete the full course will receive a medal. The race will go ahead whether or not it rains; should dangerous weather occur, it will be postponed. A number of medical points are set up along the route; dedicated staff are in charge of safety, and all food and water is checked by dedicated staff.

manager liu 为了安全起见，请大家按号码排队，不要冲撞他人，不要践踏路边的草地。任何人不得使用兴奋剂。祝各位取得好成绩！”
wèile ānquán qǐjiàn qǐng dàjiā àn hàomǎ páiduì búyào chōngzhuàng tārén búyào jiàntà lùbiān de cǎodì rènhé rén bùdé shǐyòng xīngfènjì zhù gèwèi qǔdé hǎo chéngjì · For safety, please line up by number, do not push others, and keep off the verges. Doping by anyone is forbidden. We wish you all a good race!”

anna 四万人！虽说我练了半年，可现在心还是跳动得很快，一直悬着。
sì wàn rén suīshuō wǒ liàn le bàn nián kě xiànzài xīn háishi tiàodòng de hěn kuài yìzhí xuán zhe · Forty thousand people! I may have trained for six months, but my heart is still racing: I'm on tenterhooks.

manager liu 别紧张。公司拿出了专项资金，请了专职教练，这半年你的作息都是按照教练的日程表安排的。你准备得很好。
bié jǐnzhāng gōngsī ná chū le zhuānxiàng zījīn qǐng le zhuānzhí jiàoliàn zhè bàn nián nǐ de zuòxī dōu shì ànzhào jiàoliàn de rìchéng biǎo ānpái de nǐ zhǔnbèi de hěn hǎo · Don't be nervous. The company put up a dedicated fund and hired a full-time coach, and for six months your whole routine has followed the coach's schedule. You're well prepared.

dr zhou 别看我平时在实验室工作，年轻的时候我练过举重、拳击，还学过摔跤。今天我带你们跑，跟着我的步伐，前二十公里别太快。
biékàn wǒ píngshí zài shíyànshì gōngzuò niánqīng de shíhou wǒ liàn guo jǔzhòng quánjī hái xué guo shuāijiāo jīntiān wǒ dài nǐmen pǎo gēn zhe wǒ de bùfá qián èrshí gōnglǐ bié tài kuài · I may spend my days in a lab, but as a young man I did weightlifting and boxing, and I learned wrestling too. Today I'll set your pace: keep to my steps, and don't go too fast for the first twenty kilometres.

xiaoming 安娜，加油！我和妹妹组织了一支啦啦队，看台的入场券是我排了两个小时队买的！
Ānnà jiāyóu wǒ hé mèimei zǔzhī le yì zhī lālāduì kàntái de rùchǎngquàn shì wǒ pái le liǎng gè xiǎoshí duì mǎi de · Go, Anna! My sister and I have put together a cheering squad, and I queued two hours for the stand tickets!

little sister 听说外地来了好多选手，宾馆都住满了。这次我们城市是东道主，来看比赛的何止十万人！
tīngshuō wàidì lái le hǎoduō xuǎnshǒu bīnguǎn dōu zhù mǎn le zhè cì wǒmen chéngshì shì dōngdàozhǔ lái kàn bǐsài de hézhǐ shí wàn rén · I hear loads of runners have come from out of town, and the hotels are all full. Our city is the host this time: far more than a hundred thousand people have come to watch!

anna 我刚从更衣室出来，冷得直哆嗦，肩膀都缩起来了。
wǒ gāng cóng gēngyīshì chūlái lěng de zhí duōsuo jiānbǎng dōu suō qǐlai le · I've just come out of the changing room, and I'm shivering with cold, my shoulders all hunched up.

dr zhou	那就原地蹦一蹦，甩甩手，抖抖腿，舒展一下身体。你看大家，有的伸手跟朋友打招呼，有的耸着肩膀，有的在原地跳跃。 **nà jiù yuán dì bèng yi beng shuǎi shuai shǒu dǒu dou tuǐ shūzhǎn yíxià shēntǐ nǐ kàn dàjiā yǒude shēnshǒu gēn péngyou dǎ zhāohu yǒude sǒng zhe jiānbǎng yǒude zài yuán dì tiàoyuè** · Then bounce on the spot, shake out your hands and legs and stretch. Look at everyone: some reaching out to greet friends, some with their shoulders hunched, some jumping on the spot.
manager liu	看，起跑线前面竖立着一个大门，上面悬挂着巨大的牌子，路两边的国旗在风中飘扬。市长要来剪彩了！ **kàn qǐpǎoxiàn qiánmiàn shùlì zhe yí gè dà mén shàngmiàn xuánguà zhe jùdà de páizi lù liǎng biān de guóqí zài fēng zhōng piāoyáng shì zhǎng yào lái jiǎncǎi le** · Look, there's a big arch standing over the starting line with a huge banner hanging on it, and flags are flying along both sides of the road. The mayor's coming to cut the ribbon!
anna	裁判吹哨了！出发！ **cáipàn chuī shào le chūfā** · There's the whistle! We're off!

chapter 2 chapter 2: the first twenty kilometres

dr zhou 步伐放小一点儿，手臂自然摆动，身体不要左右摇摆。脚踏在地上要轻，用后脚轻轻一蹬就行。

bùfá fàng xiǎo yìdiǎnr shǒubì zìrán bǎidòng shēntǐ búyào zuǒyòu yáobǎi jiǎo tà zài dì shàng yào qīng yòng hòu jiǎo qīng qīng yì dēng jiù xíng · Shorter steps, arms swinging naturally, no swaying from side to side. Land lightly, and just push off gently with your back foot.

anna 前面的人好多，大家在路上穿梭，我差点儿被一个人绊倒。

qiánmiàn de rén hǎoduō dàjiā zài lùshang chuānsuō wǒ chàdiǎnr bèi yí gè rén bàn dǎo · There are so many people ahead, everyone weaving about: I nearly tripped over someone.

dr zhou 别急着超人。往右边靠拢，跟着我跑。

bié jí zhe chāo rén wǎng yòubian kàolǒng gēn zhe wǒ pǎo · Don't rush to overtake. Move over to the right and follow me.

manager liu 安娜，我们俩比试比试，看谁先到二十公里？

Ānnà wǒmen liǎ bǐshi bǐshi kàn shéi xiān dào èrshí gōnglǐ · Anna, shall we have a contest and see who reaches twenty kilometres first?

anna 刘经理，这不是赛跑，是马拉松！我跟小明打赌了，我能在五个小时以内跑完，赌一顿饭。

Liújīnglǐ zhè bú shì sàipǎo shì mǎlāsōng wǒ gēn Xiǎomíng dǎdǔ le wǒ néng zài wǔ gè xiǎoshí yǐnèi pǎo wán dǔ yí dùn fàn · Ms Liu, this isn't a sprint, it's a marathon! I've bet Xiaoming I can finish in under five hours: the loser buys dinner.

manager liu 你们看，前面就是古墙。以前马车在这条路上奔驰，今天是我们在这儿奔跑。平时天天为工作奔波，今天终于为自己跑一次。

nǐmen kàn qiánmiàn jiùshì gǔ qiáng yǐqián mǎ chē zài zhè tiáo lùshang bēnchí jīntiān shì wǒmen zài zhèr bēnpǎo píngshí tiān tiān wèi gōngzuò bēnbō jīntiān zhōngyú wèi zìjǐ pǎo yí cì · Look, the old wall is just ahead. Carriages used to speed along this road; today it's us running here. Every day we rush about for work; today, at last, we run for ourselves.

anna 路边好多人在为我们加油。有个中年人抡着手臂大声喊，有个小姑娘扬着小手。还有很多行人驻足观看。

lùbiān hǎoduō rén zài wèi wǒmen jiāyóu yǒu gè zhōngnián rén lūn zhe shǒubì dà shēng hǎn yǒu gè xiǎo gūniang yáng zhe xiǎo shǒu hái yǒu hěn duō xíngrén zhùzú guānkàn · So many people are cheering along the road. A middle-aged man is swinging his arms and shouting, a little girl is waving her hand, and lots of passers-by have stopped to watch.

manager liu 可是你看那几位老人，在路边打麻将、打扑克，还有两位在对弈，根本不看我们！

kěshì nǐ kàn nà jǐ wèi lǎorén zài lùbiān dǎ májiàng dǎ pūkè hái yǒu liǎng wèi zài duìyì gēnběn bú kàn wǒmen · But look at those old men at the roadside playing mahjong and cards, and two of them playing chess: they're not watching us at all!

dr zhou 对弈就是一场博弈，他们比我们还认真呢。

duìyì jiùshì yì chǎng bóyì tāmen bǐ wǒmen hái rènzhēn ne · A game of chess is a real battle of wits: they're even more focused than we are.

anna 哎呀，有人在路边遛狗，狗突然窜到跑道上来了，在我们中间转悠！

āiyā yǒu rén zài lùbiān liù gǒu gǒu tūrán cuàn dào pǎodào shànglái le zài wǒmen zhōngjiān zhuànyou · Oh no, someone walking a dog at the side, and the dog has suddenly darted onto the course and is wandering about among us!

manager liu 几个孩子追逐着它，狗主人在后面拼命追赶。好了，狗被带走了，那边写着“行人止步”。

jǐ gè háizi zhuīzhú zhe tā gǒu zhǔrén zài hòumiàn pīnmìng zhuīgǎn hǎo le gǒu bèi dài zǒu le nàbiān xiě zhe xíngrén zhǐbù · A few kids are chasing it, and the owner is racing after them. There, the dog's been taken away: there's a sign over there saying “No pedestrians”.

dr zhou 十公里了。路过的这个公园，孩子们在滑梯上玩耍，有的在捉迷藏，有人在放风筝，真是孩子们的乐园。

shí gōnglǐ le lùguò de zhège gōngyuán háizimen zài huátī shàng wánshuǎ yǒude zài zhuōmícáng yǒu rén zài fàng fēngzheng zhēnshi háizimen de lèyuán · Ten kilometres. In this park we're passing, children are playing on the slide, some are playing hide-and-seek, someone's flying a kite: a real children's paradise.

manager liu 前面是喝水的地方，桌子上的水杯被风吹得直摇晃。我们奔过去拿一杯吧。
qiánmiàn shì hē shuǐ de dìfang zhuōzi shàng de shuǐ bēi bèi fēng chuī de zhí yáohuàng wǒmen bèn guoqu ná yì bēi ba · There's the drinks table ahead, and the cups on the table are wobbling in the wind. Let's head over and grab one.

anna 现在是小菜一碟，后面才难呢！
xiànzài shì xiǎocài yìdié hòumiàn cái nán ne · Right now it's a piece of cake: the hard part comes later!

chapter 3 chapter 3: the wall at thirty kilometres

anna 三十公里了……我的腿重得像石头一样，在发抖，手臂也垂了下来，像坠着两块石头。
sānshí gōnglǐ le wǒ de tuǐ zhòng de xiàng shítou yíyàng zài fādǒu shǒubì yě chuí le xialai xiàng zhuì zhe liǎng kuài shítou · Thirty kilometres… my legs are as heavy as stone and trembling, and my arms are hanging down as if weighed with rocks.

dr zhou 这就是最难的地方。聚精会神，一步一步往前。任腿多累，也别停下来。速度固然重要，但是坚持更重要。
zhè jiùshì zuì nán de dìfang jùjīng huìshén yí bù yí bù wǎng qián rèn tuǐ duō lèi yě bié tíng xialai sùdù gùrán zhòngyào dànshì jiānchí gèng zhòngyào · This is the hardest part. Concentrate, one step at a time. However tired your legs are, don't stop. Speed matters, of course, but keeping going matters more.

dr zhou 你看前面那些一开始跑得太快的人，现在都慢下来了。急于求成就是这样。
nǐ kàn qiánmiàn nàxiē yì kāishǐ pǎo de tài kuài de rén xiànzài dōu màn xialai le jíyú qiúchéng jiùshì zhèyàng · Look at all those people ahead who went off too fast: they've all slowed down. That's what happens when you want results too soon.

manager liu 我有点儿力不从心了，喘得厉害。这么着吧，你们先跑，我慢慢走。
wǒ yǒudiǎnr lìbùcóngxīn le chuǎn de lìhai zhèmezhe ba nǐmen xiān pǎo wǒ màn màn zǒu · I'm running out of strength, and I'm very out of breath. Tell you what: you two go on, and I'll walk.

anna 不行！我们是一个队，要同舟共济。纵然最后只能走，我们也一起走到终点。
bùxíng wǒmen shì yí gè duì yào tóngzhōu gòngjì zòngrán zuìhòu zhǐ néng zǒu wǒmen yě yìqǐ zǒu dào zhōngdiǎn · No way! We're a team: we stick together. Even if we can only walk in the end, we'll walk to the finish together.

dr zhou 走一会儿有何不可？力所能及就好，千万别硬撑。
zǒu yíhuìr yǒu hé bù kě lìsuǒnéngjí jiù hǎo qiānwàn bié yìng chēng · What's wrong with walking for a while? Do what you can, and don't force it.

anna 哎呀，前面有个人摔倒了，趴在地上动弹不了！
āiyā qiánmiàn yǒu gèrén shuāi dǎo le pā zài dì shàng dòngtan bu liǎo · Oh no, someone's fallen just ahead: he's lying face down and can't move!

dr zhou 医疗点的医生已经过去了，帮他翻身，扶他站立起来了。他现在倚着树休息。我们往旁边让一让。
yīliáo diǎn de yīshēng yǐjīng guòqù le bāng tā fānshēn fú tā zhànlì qǐlai le tā xiànzài yǐ zhe shù xiūxi wǒmen wǎng pángbiān ràng yi rang · The doctors from the medical point are already there: they've turned him over and helped him stand up. Now he's resting against a tree. Let's move aside.

anna 河上漂浮着几条小船，天上飘浮着白云。要是能躺在船上就好了！
hé shàng piāofú zhe jǐ tiáo xiǎo chuán tiānshàng piāofú zhe bái yún yàoshi néng tǎng zài chuán shàng jiù hǎo le · There are a few little boats floating on the river and white clouds drifting in the sky. If only I could lie down in a boat!

manager liu 好了，我休息够了。我们一鼓作气，跑完最后十公里！
hǎo le wǒ xiūxi gòu le wǒmen yìgǔ zuòqì pǎo wán zuìhòu shí gōnglǐ · Right, I've rested enough. Let's push on in one go and run the last ten kilometres!

anna 后面那群人越来越逼近了。我们不能被他们追上！
hòumiàn nà qún rén yuè lái yuè bījìn le wǒmen bù néng bèi tāmen zhuī shàng · That group behind us is closing in. We can't let them catch us!

dr zhou 别跟他们较劲，按自己的节奏跑。虽说比赛有名次，可对我们来说，跑完就是赢家。
bié gēn tāmen jiàojìn àn zìjǐ de jiézòu pǎo suīshuō bǐsài yǒu míngcì kě duì wǒmen lái shuō pǎo wán jiùshì yíngjiā · Don't try to outdo them: run at your own rhythm. True, the race has placings, but for us, finishing is winning.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the final sprint

xiaoming （在看台上）来了来了！我看见安娜了！
zài kàntái shàng lái le lai le wǒ kànjiàn Ānnà le · (in the stands) Here they come! I can see Anna!

little sister 大家快挥舞双手！安娜，加油！冲刺！
dàjiā kuài huīwǔ shuāng shǒu Ānnà jiāyóu chōngcì · Everyone wave your arms! Go, Anna! Sprint!

anna 最后一公里了！我听见了啦啦队的声音，突然又有劲了！
zuìhòu yì gōnglǐ le wǒ tīngjiàn le lālāduì de shēngyīn tūrán yòu yǒujìn le · The last kilometre! I can hear the cheering squad, and suddenly I've got my strength back!

dr zhou 最后几百米，每个人都在争分夺秒。全力以赴，勇往直前！
zuìhòu jǐ bǎi mǐ měi gè rén dōu zài zhēngfēn duómiǎo quánlìyǐfù yǒngwǎng zhíqián · In the last few hundred metres, every second counts for everyone. Give it everything, straight ahead!

xiaoming 你看，跑在最前面的不是去年的冠军。那个冠军是专业队的王牌，大家都以为他无敌，今年胜出的却是一匹黑马！
nǐ kàn pǎo zài zuì qiánmiàn de bú shì qùnián de guànjūn nàge guànjūn shì zhuānyè duì de wángpái dàjiā dōu yǐwéi tā wúdí jīnnián shèngchū de què shì yì pǐ hēimǎ · Look, the man in front isn't last year's champion. He's a professional team's ace, and everyone thought he was unbeatable, but this year a dark horse has come out on top!

little sister 听说是个普通的大学老师。就像足球比赛的替补，上半场没人注意，下半场突然发力。他第一个越过了终点线，夺冠了！
tīngshuō shì gè pǔtōng de dàxué lǎoshī jiù xiàng zúqiú bǐsài de tìbǔ shàngbànchǎng méi rén zhùyì xiàbànchǎng tūrán fā lì tā dì yī gè yuèguò le zhōngdiǎn xiàn duóguàn le · They say he's an ordinary university lecturer. Like a substitute in football: nobody notices him in the first half, then in the second half he suddenly turns it on. He's first across the line: he's won!

xiaoming 记者们一下子把他簇拥在中间。他高高举起了奖杯，说要为学校争光。这场比赛的精彩程度，不亚于职业联赛的决赛！
jìzhěmen yíxià zi bǎ tā cùyōng zài zhōngjiān tā gāo gāo jǔ qǐ le jiǎngbēi shuō yào wèi xuéxiào zhēngguāng zhè chǎng bǐsài de jīngcǎi chéngdù búyàyú zhíyè liánsài de juésài · The reporters have crowded round him in an instant. He's holding the trophy high and saying he wanted to do his university proud. This race is every bit as exciting as a professional league final!

anna 到了！到了！我跑完了！
dào le dào le wǒ pǎo wán le · I'm there! I'm there! I've finished!

manager liu 四小时五十分！我们全队都跑完了，一个也没有出局！
sì xiǎoshí wǔshí fēn wǒmen quán duì dōu pǎo wán le yí gè yě méiyǒu chūjú · Four hours fifty! Our whole team has finished: not a single one dropped out!

anna 我现在只想卧在草地上，一动也不想动……
wǒ xiànzài zhǐ xiǎng wò zài cǎodì shàng yí dòng yě bù xiǎng dòng · Right now I just want to lie on the grass and not move a muscle…

chapter 5 chapter 5: medals and a special guest

little sister 安娜，快起来！你看谁来了！
Ānnà kuài qǐlai nǐ kàn shéi lái le · Anna, get up! Look who's here!

anna 奶奶！您怎么来了？
nǎinai nín zěnme lái le · Grandma! What are you doing here?

dr li 她一定要来。别看她九十岁了，拄着拐杖在终点等了你两个小时，非但不累，还说明年还来。
tā yídìng yào lái biékàn tā jiǔshí suì le zhǔ zhe guǎizhàng zài zhōngdiǎn děng le nǐ liǎng gè xiǎoshí fēidàn bú lèi hái shuō míngnián hái lái · She insisted on coming. She may be ninety, but she waited at the finish for two hours on her crutch, and far from being tired, she says she's coming again next year.

teacher wang 我也在这儿！安娜学中文的时候就一心一意，有时候废寝忘食。你堪称我们学校最了不起的学生。
wǒ yě zài zhèr Ānnà xué Zhōngwén de shíhou jiù yìxīn yíyì yǒu shíhou fèiqǐn wàngshí nǐ kānchēng wǒmen xuéxiào zuì liǎobuqǐ de xuéshēng · I'm here too! When Anna was learning Chinese she was single-minded, sometimes forgetting to eat and sleep. You could be called the most remarkable student our school has ever had.

xiaoming 这是你的奖牌。凡是跑完全程的人，均可领取一枚。还有，打赌你赢了，今天晚上我请客！
zhè shì nǐ de jiǎngpái fánshì pǎo wán quánchéng de rén jūn kě lǐngqǔ yì méi hái yǒu dǎdǔ nǐ yíng le jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè · Here's your medal. Everyone who finishes the full course gets one. And you've won our bet: dinner's on me tonight!

anna 无论名次怎么样，这都是我最宝贵的奖牌。半年前，我连五公里都跑不下来。
wúlùn míngcì zěnmeyàng zhè dōu shì wǒ zuì bǎoguì de jiǎngpái bàn nián qián wǒ lián wǔ gōnglǐ dōu pǎo bu xialai · Whatever my placing, this is the most precious medal I'll ever have. Six months ago I couldn't even run five kilometres.

dr li 这就叫水滴石穿，持之以恒。假若你当时半途而废，就没有今天了。奶奶说你有愚公移山的精神。
zhè jiù jiào shuǐdī shíchuān chízhī yǐhéng jiàruò nǐ dāngshí bàntúérfèi jiù méiyǒu jīntiān le nǎinai shuō nǐ yǒu yúgōng yíshān de jīngshén · That's dripping water wearing through stone: perseverance. If you'd given up halfway back then, you wouldn't be here today. Grandma says you have the spirit of the Foolish Old Man who moved the mountains.

dr zhou 训练要循序渐进，不能急功近利，更不能揠苗助长。你做到了。我这个领跑的人明年就退役啦！
xùnliàn yào xúnxù jiànjìn bù néng jígōng jìnlì gèng bù néng yàmiáo zhùzhǎng nǐ zuò dào le wǒ zhège lǐng pǎo de rén míngnián jiù tuìyì la · Training has to build up step by step, without chasing quick results, and certainly without pulling up the seedlings. You did it. And as your pacer, I'm retiring next year!

manager liu 这次大家齐心协力，众志成城，今天大家都是赢家。我是公司跑步队的领队，下个赛季我们还要参加城市接力联赛，五月就是预赛。
zhè cì dàjiā qíxīn xiélì zhòngzhì chéngchéng jīntiān dàjiā dōu shì yíngjiā wǒ shì gōngsī pǎobù duì de lǐngduì xià gè sàijì wǒmen hái yào cānjiā chéngshì jiēlì liánsài wǔ yuè jiùshì yùsài · This time everyone pulled together, united as one, and today everyone is a winner. I'm the leader of the company running team: next season we're entering the city relay league, and the heats are in May.

anna 那我当替补就行。
nà wǒ dāng tìbǔ jiù xíng · Then I'll just be a substitute.

manager liu 你是主力！我们的阵容很强。去年我们垫底，今年一定要晋级。公司的发展任重道远，你们年轻人大有可为。
nǐ shì zhǔlì wǒmen de zhènróng hěn qiáng qùnián wǒmen diàndǐ jīnnián yídìng yào jìnjí gōngsī de fāzhǎn rènzhòng dàoyuǎn nǐmen niánqīng rén dàyǒu kěwéi · You're in the first team! Our line-up is strong. Last year we came bottom; this year we're going through for sure. The company has a long road ahead, and you young people have a great future.

little sister 以前跑步是你的消遣，现在快成你的嗜好了！下一个目标是什么？冲浪、潜水还是跳伞？

yǐqián pǎobù shì nǐ de xiāoqiǎn xiànzài kuài chéng nǐ de shìhào le xià yí gè mùbiāo shì shénme chōnglàng qiánshuǐ háishi tiàosǎn · Running used to be your pastime, and now it's almost an addiction! What's the next goal? Surfing, diving or skydiving?

anna 我想去攀登雪山。登顶那一刻，一定是人生的巅峰！

wǒ xiǎng qù pāndēng xuěshān dēngdǐng nà yí kè yídìng shì rénshēng de diānfēng · I want to climb a snowy mountain. The moment you reach the summit must be the peak of your life!

teacher wang 苦尽甘来！祝你鹏程万里，再接再厉！

kǔjìn gānlái zhù nǐ péngchéng wànlǐ zàijiē zàilì · After the hard times come the sweet ones! Wishing you a brilliant future: keep it up!

dr zhou 怎么着，明年还跑吗？

zěnmezhe míngnián hái pǎo ma · So, what do you say: running again next year?

anna 此一时，彼一时。现在我只想坐在草地上，沐浴着阳光，什么也不想！不过……明年，有何不可？

cǐ yìshí bǐ yìshí xiànzài wǒ zhǐ xiǎng zuò zài cǎodì shàng mùyù zhe yángguāng shénme yě bù xiǎng búguò míngnián yǒu hé bù kě · Ask me another time. Right now all I want is to sit on the grass in the sunshine and think about nothing! But... next year? Why not?

From the official notice to the finish-line hug, you can follow a whole marathon in Chinese, and you have your own medal: unit 10 is done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 81 festivals and celebrations

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 11 · Chinese culture

Talk about the Spring Festival and its customs, and say what happens as a result with 这样一来.

The Spring Festival is the heart of the Chinese year: every conversation in winter turns to it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
新春	xīnchūn	the New Year season, Spring Festival time	祝大家新春快乐！ Happy New Year to you all!
正月	zhēngyuè	first month of the lunar year	正月十五是元宵节。 The fifteenth of the first lunar month is the Lantern Festival.
腊月	làyuè	twelfth month of the lunar year	一到腊月，家家户户就开始准备过年。 As soon as the twelfth month comes, every family starts getting ready for New Year.
佳节	jiājié	happy festival, festive season	春节是中国人最重要的佳节。 The Spring Festival is the most important festival for Chinese people.
喜庆	xǐqìng	festive, joyous; happy occasion	街上挂满了红灯笼，看起来非常喜庆。 The streets are full of red lanterns: everywhere looks bright and festive.
庆典	qìngdiǎn	celebration, ceremony	公司成立十周年，举办了一场庆典。 The company held a celebration for its tenth anniversary.
庆贺	qìnghè	to celebrate, congratulate	大家聚在一起，庆贺新年的到来。 Everyone gathered to celebrate the arrival of the New Year.
盛大	shèngdà	grand, magnificent (event)	学校为毕业生举行了盛大的晚会。 The school held a grand evening party for its graduates.
盛会	shènghuì	grand gathering, big event	世界杯是全世界球迷的盛会。 The World Cup is a great event for football fans all over the world.
隆重	lóngzhòng	grand, solemn, ceremonious	婚礼办得很隆重。 The wedding was a very grand affair.
嘉年华	jiāniánhuá	carnival	海边每年夏天都有一个音乐嘉年华。 There's a music carnival by the sea every summer.
狂欢	kuánghuān	to celebrate wildly, party	比赛赢了，球迷们在街上狂欢到半夜。 After the win, the fans partied in the streets until midnight.
庙会	miàohuì	temple fair	春节的时候，我们去公园逛庙会。 At Spring Festival we went to the temple fair in the park.
烟花	yānhuā	fireworks	除夕夜，天空中开满了烟花。 On New Year's Eve the sky was full of fireworks.

爆竹	bàozhú	firecrackers (written)	爆竹声中一岁除。 Amid the sound of firecrackers, the old year leaves.
鞭炮	biānpào	firecrackers (a string)	很多城市春节期间不许放鞭炮。 Many cities don't allow firecrackers over Spring Festival.
燃放	ránfàng	to set off (fireworks)	市区禁止燃放烟花爆竹。 Setting off fireworks and firecrackers is banned in the city centre.
对联	duìlián	couplet (on a doorway)	过年的时候，门两边要贴对联。 At New Year you paste couplets on both sides of the door.
年画	niánhuà	New Year picture	这张年画上画着一个抱着鱼的胖娃娃。 This New Year picture shows a chubby baby holding a fish.
秧歌	yāngge	yangge (folk dance)	公园里，一群老人在扭秧歌。 In the park a group of older people are doing the yangge dance.
农历	nónglì	the lunar calendar (Chinese calendar)	春节是农历的正月初一。 Spring Festival is the first day of the first month of the lunar calendar.
阴历	yīnlì	the lunar calendar (everyday word)	我奶奶过生日一直按阴历算。 My grandma always counts her birthday by the lunar calendar.
阳历	yánglì	the Western (solar) calendar	今年阳历一月和农历正月差了二十多天。 This year the Western January and the first lunar month are more than twenty days apart.
节气	jiéqì	solar term (24 points of the farming year)	以前农民种地都要看节气。 Farmers plan their work by the solar terms.
属相	shǔxiàng	Chinese zodiac animal (of your birth year)	你的属相是什么？我属龙。 What's your zodiac animal? I'm a Dragon.
吉利	jílì	lucky, auspicious	八这个数字听起来很吉利。 The number eight sounds lucky.
吉祥物	jíxiángwù	mascot	这只大熊猫是运动会的吉祥物。 This giant panda is the mascot of the games.
福气	fúqi	good fortune, luck	有这么孝顺的孩子，您真有福气！ With such caring children, you're very lucky!
许愿	xǔyuàn	to make a wish; make a promise	吹蜡烛之前，先许愿吧。 Make a wish before you blow out the candles.
诞辰	dànchén	birthday (of a great person, formal)	今年是这位诗人诞辰三百周年。 This year is the 300th anniversary of the poet's birth.
风尚	fēngshàng	prevailing custom, trend	节约成了一种新的社会风尚。 Being thrifty has become a new social trend.
俗	sú	vulgar, tacky; common	这件衣服的颜色太俗了。 The colour of this jacket is too tacky.
惯例	guànlì	convention, usual practice	按照惯例，年夜饭要全家一起吃。 By custom, the whole family eats the New Year's Eve dinner together.

汉服	Hànfú	Hanfu (traditional Han clothing)	现在不少年轻人喜欢穿汉服拍照。 Plenty of young people now like to wear Hanfu for photos.
旗袍	qípáo	qipao, cheongsam	她穿|着一件红色的旗袍。 She is wearing a red qipao.

pattern 这样一来: this way, as a result

what happened + 。这样一来， + the result

这样一来 starts a new sentence and says what follows from what you just said: “this way, as a result, so”. It sums up a change and points to its effect, often with 就 or 了 in the result.

他们把庙会搬到了公园。这样一来，地方大了很多。 **tāmen bǎ miàohuì bān dào le gōngyuán zhèyàng yì lái dìfang dà le hěn duō** They moved the temple fair to the park. That way there’s much more room.

今年不放鞭炮了。这样一来，狗也不害怕了。 **jīnnián bú fàng biānpào le zhèyàng yì lái gǒu yě bú hàipà le** No firecrackers this year. So the dogs aren’t scared any more.

我们提前买了票。这样一来，就不用排队了。 **wǒmen tíqián mǎi le piào zhèyàng yì lái jiù búyòng páiduì le** We bought our tickets in advance, so we don’t have to queue.

dialogue getting ready for new year

ms zhang 安娜，今年春节来我们家过吧！一家人热热闹闹的，多喜庆。
Ānnà jīnnián Chūnjié lái wǒmen jiā guò ba yì jiā rén rèrènaonao de duō xǐqìng · Anna, spend Spring Festival with us this year! The whole family together: it'll be so festive.

anna 太好了，谢谢阿姨！说真的，我一直想过一个地道的中国年。
tài hǎo le xièxie āyí shuō zhēn de wǒ yìzhí xiǎng guo yí gè dìdao de Zhōngguó nián · Wonderful, thank you! Honestly, I've always wanted a real Chinese New Year.

little sister 现在已经是腊月了。按照惯例，腊月二十三以后就要打扫房子、贴对联、贴年画，门口还要悬挂红灯笼。
xiànzài yǐjīng shì làyuè le ànzhào guànlì làyuè èrshísān yǐhòu jiù yào dǎsǎo fángzi tiē duìlián tiē niánhuà ménkǒu hái yào xuánguà hóng dēnglong · It's already the twelfth month. By custom, after the twenty-third you clean the house, put up couplets and New Year pictures, and hang red lanterns by the door.

anna 对联上的字是谁写的？
duìlián shàng de zì shì shéi xiě de · Who writes the characters on the couplets?

xiaoming 以前是爷爷自己写，现在大多是买的。今年我想试试自己写。
yǐqián shì yéye zìjǐ xiě xiànzài dàduō shì mǎi de jīnnián wǒ xiǎng shì shi zìjǐ xiě · Grandpa used to write them himself; now most people buy them. This year I want to try writing ours.

little sister 哥哥，你的字太丑了，贴出去多不吉利！
gēge nǐ de zì tài chǒu le tiē chuqu duō bù jílì · Your handwriting's awful! Putting it on the door would be bad luck!

anna 那放鞭炮呢？我在电视上看过，特别热闹。
nà fàng biānpào ne wǒ zài diànshì shàng kàn guo tèbié rènao · What about firecrackers? I've seen it on TV: it looks like so much fun.

ms zhang 市区禁止燃放烟花爆竹。这样一来，空气好了，也安全了，就是过年的气氛少了一点儿。
shìqū jìnzhǐ ránfàng yānhuā bàozhú zhèyàng yì lái kōngqì hǎo le yě ānquán le jiùshì guònián de qìfēn shǎo le yìdiǎnr · Fireworks and firecrackers are banned in the city. So the air is better and it's safer, though it feels a bit less like New Year.

xiaoming 不过正月初一有庙会，有扭秧歌的，有卖小吃的，还有一个大吉祥物，孩子们都簇拥着它拍照。无论天冷与否，人都特别多。
búguò zhēngyuè chū yī yǒu miàohuì yǒu niǔ yāngge de yǒu mài xiǎochī de hái yǒu yí gè dà jíxiángwù háizimen dōu cùyōng zhe tā pāizhào wúlùn tiān lěng yǔ fǒu rén dōu tèbié duō · But on the first day there's a temple fair: yangge dancers, snack stalls, and a giant mascot that the children crowd round for photos. Cold or not, it's always packed.

anna 听起来像个嘉年华！在英国，新年夜大家在街上狂欢。中国人怎么庆贺新年？
tīng qǐlai xiàng gè jiāniánhuá zài Yīngguó xīnnián yè dàjiā zài jiē shàng kuánghuān Zhōngguó rén zěnme qìnghè xīnnián · Sounds like a carnival! In the UK people party in the streets on New Year's Eve. How do Chinese people celebrate?

ms zhang 春节是一年里最重要的佳节，最隆重的是除夕的年夜饭，一家人一定要在一起。
Chūnjié shì yì nián lǐ zuì zhòngyào de jiājié zuì lóngzhòng de shì chúxī de niányèfàn yì jiā rén yídìng yào zài yìqǐ · Spring Festival is the most important festival of the year. The grandest part is the New Year's Eve dinner: the family must be together.

little sister 吃完饭还要看春节晚会，那可是全国人民的盛会。
chī wán fàn hái yào kàn Chūnjié wǎnhuì nà kěshì quán guó rénmín de shènghuì · After dinner there's the Spring Festival Gala on TV: a big event for the whole country.

ms zhang 孩子们最高兴了，在院子里玩捉迷藏，玩到半夜也不睡。
háizimen zuì gāoxìng le zài yuànzi lǐ wán zhuōmícáng wán dào bànyè yě bú shuì · The children love it most: they play hide-and-seek in the courtyard and stay up till midnight.

anna 我要穿汉服去！现在年轻人穿汉服好像成了一种新风尚。上次买的那件一直没机会穿。

wǒ yào chuān Hànfú qù xiànzài niánqīng rén chuān Hànfú hǎoxiàng chéng le yì zhǒng xīn fēngshàng shàng cì mǎi de nà jiàn yìzhí méi jīhuì chuān · I'll wear Hanfu! Wearing Hanfu seems to have become the new fashion among young people. I've never had a chance to wear the one I bought.

little sister 我穿旗袍。今年是我的本命年，属相是龙，我要穿红的，图个吉利。
wǒ chuān qípáo jīnnián shì wǒ de běn mìng nián shǔxiàng shì lóng wǒ yào chuān hóng de tú gè jílì · I'll wear a qipao. It's my zodiac year, I'm a Dragon, so I'll wear red for luck.

xiaoming 红旗袍再配一条绿色的围巾？那也太俗了吧！
hóng qípáo zài pèi yì tiáo lǜsè de wéijīn nà yě tài sú le ba · A red qipao with a green scarf? That would be so tacky!

anna 本命年？是不是每十二年一次？
běn mìng nián shì bu shì měi shíèr nián yí cì · Your zodiac year? Is that once every twelve years?

ms zhang 对，按农历算。我们过节按农历，以前种地还要看节气。你奶奶过生日也按阴历吧？
duì àn nónglì suàn wǒmen guòjié àn nónglì yǐqián zhòngdì hái yào kàn jiéqì nǐ nǎinai guò shēngrì yě àn yīnlì ba · Yes, counted by the lunar calendar. Our festivals follow it, and farmers used to go by the solar terms. Your grandma counts her birthday by the lunar calendar too, doesn't she?

xiaoming 妈妈，安娜的奶奶在英国，当然按阳历了！
māma Ānnà de nǎinai zài Yīngguó dāngrán àn yánglì le · Mum, Anna's grandma is in the UK: of course she uses the Western calendar!

ms zhang 哈哈，也是。除夕晚上我们一起包饺子、打麻将、猜谜语，十二点许愿，新的一年就有福气了。
hā hā yě shì chúxī wǎnshang wǒmen yìqǐ bāo jiǎozi dǎ májiàng cāi míyǔ shíèr diǎn xǔyuàn xīn de yì nián jiù yǒu fúqi le · Ha, of course. On New Year's Eve we'll make dumplings, play mahjong and guess riddles together, make a wish at midnight, and the new year will bring good luck.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

壳
ké
shell, husk

芽
yá
sprout, bud

苗
miáo
seedling, young plant

籽
zǐ
seed

good to know · Calendars: 农历 or 阴历 is the lunar calendar, 阳历 or 公历 the Western one. Birthdays of older people, festivals and the 24 节气 follow the lunar side. "Ask someone's animal": 你属什么？ The answer: 我属龙. 属相 is the noun; in speech 属 does the work.

Couplets, temple fairs, zodiac signs: you can now join the New Year chat at any Chinese table.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 82 temples, myths and legends

Visit a temple as a sight, retell a legend, and add “then again” to a point with 话(又)说回来.

Temples, gods and monsters live on in Chinese sayings, films and everyday jokes: 老天保佑, 魔鬼训练, 购物天堂.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
信仰	xìnyǎng	belief, faith; to believe in	每个人都有自己的信仰，我们应该互相尊重。 Everyone has their own beliefs, and we should respect each other.
宗教	zōngjiào	religion	这座寺庙是研究古代宗教建筑的好例子。 This temple is a fine example for studying ancient religious architecture.
佛	fó	Buddha	寺庙中间有一座很高的佛像。 In the middle of the temple stands a very tall statue of the Buddha.
菩萨	púsà	bodhisattva; a kind-hearted person	我现在是泥菩萨过河，自身难保，哪儿还帮得了{liao3-4}你? I’m a clay idol crossing a river: I can barely save myself, let alone help you.
和尚	héshang	Buddhist monk	一个和尚挑水喝，两个和尚抬水喝，三个和尚没水喝。 One monk carries his own water, two monks carry it together, three monks go without.
僧人	sēngrén	monk (formal)	以前这座寺里住着几十位僧人。 Dozens of monks used to live in this temple.
寺	sì	(Buddhist) temple	这座寺已经有一千多年的历史了。 This temple is more than a thousand years old.
寺庙	sìmiào	temple	山上的寺庙每年春节都很热闹。 The temple on the hill is always busy at Spring Festival.
庙	miào	temple, shrine	村子后面有一座小庙。 There’s a little shrine behind the village.
坛	tán	altar; platform; circle (of a field)	天坛是古代皇帝祈祷丰收的地方。 The Temple of Heaven is where emperors of old prayed for a good harvest.
供奉	gòngfèng	to enshrine, honour (with offerings)	这座庙里供奉着一位古代有名的医生。 This temple honours a famous doctor of ancient times.
祈祷	qídǎo	to pray; hope hard	大家都在祈祷明天别下雨。 Everyone is praying it won’t rain tomorrow.
虔诚	qiánchéng	devout, sincere	他对音乐的热爱几乎是虔诚的。 His love of music is almost devout.
保佑	bǎoyòu	to bless, protect	老天保佑，这次考试千万要过! Heaven help me, I just have to pass this exam!

洗礼	xǐlǐ	baptism; (figurative) a testing experience	经过这次比赛的洗礼，队员们成熟了很多。 Tested by this competition, the players have grown up a lot.
神圣	shénshèng	sacred, holy	保护孩子是每个老师神圣的责任。 Protecting children is every teacher's sacred duty.
神仙	shénxiān	immortal, god (in folk tales)	退休以后，他过上了神仙一样的日子。 After retiring, he lives a life of perfect ease.
仙女	xiānnǚ	fairy, goddess	她穿上汉服，真像画里的仙女。 In her Hanfu she looks just like a fairy in a painting.
天使	tiānshǐ	angel	在病人眼里，护士就是天使。 To patients, nurses are angels.
天堂	tiāntáng	paradise, heaven	这个商场简直是购物天堂。 This mall is a shopper's paradise.
地狱	dìyù	hell; (figurative) a nightmare	每天早上的交通简直像地狱一样。 The traffic every morning is a total nightmare.
阎王	Yánwang	Yama, king of the underworld (folk tales)	小时候奶奶讲过阎王的故事，吓得我不敢睡觉。 When I was little, Grandma told me stories about Yama: I was too scared to sleep.
魔鬼	móguǐ	devil, demon	教练的魔鬼训练让大家累得要命。 The coach's brutal training wore everyone out.
妖怪	yāoguài	monster, demon (in folk tales)	故事里的妖怪最后被打败了。 In the end the demon in the story is defeated.
怪物	guàiwu	monster; a strange person	孩子们最喜欢看怪物电影。 Kids love monster films.
凤凰	fènghuáng	phoenix	龙和凤凰都是吉祥的象征。 The dragon and the phoenix are both symbols of good fortune.
魔法	mófǎ	magic	假使我会魔法，我就把时间停下来。 If I could do magic, I'd stop time.
魔力	mólì	magic, charm, appeal	音乐有一种神奇的魔力。 Music has a kind of magical power.
化身	huàshēn	embodiment, incarnation	在故事里，凤凰是美丽和吉祥的化身。 In stories, the phoenix is the embodiment of beauty and good fortune.
灵魂	línghún	soul	细节是一个作品的灵魂。 The details are the soul of a work.
人间	rénjiān	the human world, on earth	人们常说杭州是人间天堂。 People often say Hangzhou is heaven on earth.
世间	shìjiān	in the world, on earth	世间万物都在不停地变化。 Everything in the world is changing all the time.
命	mìng	to order, command (written)	皇帝命{ming4-7}人在山上修了一座寺庙。 The emperor ordered a temple to be built on the hill.

pattern 话(又)说回来: then again, having said that

one side | 。话(又)说回来， | the other side

话又说回来 turns the conversation back to the other side: “then again, having said that”. Say your first point, then add the balancing fact. 话说回来 is the same, a little more casual.

门票有点儿贵。话又说回来，这么好的地方，也值了。 **ménpiào yǒudiǎnr guì huà yòu shuō huilai zhème hǎo de dìfang yě zhí le** The ticket is a bit pricey. Then again, for a place this good, it’s worth it.

他说话很直。话说回来，他的心是好的。 **tā shuōhuà hěn zhí huà shuō huilai tā de xīn shì hǎo de** He’s very blunt. Having said that, his heart is in the right place.

老房子住着不太方便。话又说回来，邻居们都很热心。 **lǎo fángzi zhù zhe bú tài fāngbiàn huà yòu shuō huilai línjūmen dōu hěn rèxīn** The old house isn’t very convenient. Then again, the neighbours are all so kind.

dialogue the temple on the hill

professor chen 这座寺已经有一千多年的历史了。据说当年皇帝命人在山上修了这座寺庙。
zhè zuò sì yǐjīng yǒu yìqiān duō nián de lìshǐ le jùshuō dāngnián huángdì mìng rén zài shān shàng xiū le zhè zuò sìmiào · This temple is over a thousand years old. They say an emperor ordered it built up here.

anna 人真多啊！大家都是来烧香的吗？
rén zhēn duō a dàjiā dōu shì lái shāo xiāng de ma · So many people! Have they all come to burn incense?

professor chen 有的是，有的不是。有人有宗教信仰，有人只是来看建筑、看风景。我们来，是看历史的。
yǒude shì yǒude bú shì yǒu rén yǒu zōngjiào xìnyǎng yǒu rén zhǐshì lái kàn jiànzhù kàn fēngjǐng wǒmen lái shì kàn lìshǐ de · Some have, some haven't. Some people are religious; others come for the buildings and the views. We've come for the history.

little sister 那边有个老奶奶站在佛像前面，特别虔诚，一个劲儿地说着什么。
nàbiān yǒu gè lǎo nǎinai zhàn zài fó xiàng qiánmiàn tèbié qiánchéng yígèjìnr de shuō zhe shénme · There's an old lady in front of the Buddha statue over there, very devout, murmuring something over and over.

professor chen 老人过年来这儿，多半是祈祷家人平安、健康。以前寺里住着几十位僧人，现在只剩几个和尚了。
lǎorén guònián lái zhèr duōbàn shì qídǎo jiārén píngān jiànkāng yǐqián sì lǐ zhù zhe jǐ shí wèi sēngrén xiànzài zhǐ shèng jǐ gè héshang le · Older people who come here at New Year are mostly praying for their family's safety and health. Dozens of monks used to live here; now there are just a few.

anna 这些菩萨像做得真精致。这里供奉的是谁？
zhèxiē púsà xiàng zuò de zhēn jīngzhì zhèlǐ gòngfèng de shì shéi · These bodhisattva statues are so finely made. Who is honoured in this hall?

professor chen 这里供奉的是一位古代有名的医生。传说他治好了很多人，大家把他看作好心的神仙。
zhèlǐ gòngfèng de shì yí wèi gǔdài yǒumíng de yīshēng chuánshuō tā zhì hǎo le hěn duō rén dàjiā bǎ tā kànzuò hǎoxīn de shénxiān · This one honours a famous doctor of ancient times. Legend says he cured so many people that they came to see him as a kind immortal.

anna 这儿和天坛一样吗？
zhèr hé tiān tán yíyàng ma · Is this like the Temple of Heaven?

professor chen 不一样。天坛不是寺庙，是古代皇帝祈祷丰收的地方。
bù yíyàng tiān tán bú shì sìmiào shì gǔdài huángdì qídǎo fēngshōu de dìfang · No. The Temple of Heaven isn't a temple of this kind: it's where the emperors of old prayed for good harvests.

little sister 我小时候最喜欢听神话故事：仙女、凤凰、在天上盘旋的龙、会魔法的妖怪……
wǒ xiǎoshíhou zuì xǐhuan tīng shénhuà gùshi xiānnǚ fènghuáng zài tiānshàng pánxuán de lóng huì mófǎ de yāoguài · When I was little I loved myths: fairies, phoenixes, dragons circling in the sky, demons who could do magic…

anna 我们的童话里也有天使、魔鬼和各种怪物。看来世间的孩子都爱听这些。
wǒmen de tónghuà lǐ yě yǒu tiānshǐ móguǐ hé gèzhǒng guàiwu kànlái shìjiān de háizi dōu ài tīng zhèxiē · Our fairy tales have angels, devils and all kinds of monsters too. It seems children everywhere love these stories.

professor chen 这些故事有一种魔力。比如凤凰，就是美丽和吉祥的化身。
zhèxiē gùshi yǒu yì zhǒng mólì bǐrú fènghuáng jiùshì měilì hé jíxiáng de huàshēn · These stories have a kind of magic. The phoenix, for example, is the embodiment of beauty and good fortune.

little sister 我奶奶还讲过阎王和地狱的故事，吓得我直哆嗦，屡次半夜哭醒。
wǒ nǎinai hái jiǎng guo Yánwang hé dìyù de gùshi xià de wǒ zhí duōsuo lǚcì bànyè kū xǐng · My grandma told me stories about Yama and hell too: they made me shiver with fright, and I woke up crying in the night again and again.

anna 哈哈，怪不得你这么胆小！
hā hā guàibude nǐ zhème dǎnxiǎo · Ha ha, no wonder you're such a scaredy-cat!

professor chen 神话里，好人死后去天堂，坏人去地狱。说到底，故事是想告诉人们：在人间要做好人。

shénhuà lǐ hǎo rén sǐ hòu qù tiāntáng huài rén qù dìyù shuō dàodǐ gùshi shì xiǎng gàosu rénmen zài rénjiān yào zuò hǎo rén · In myths the good go to heaven and the bad to hell. In the end the stories are saying: be good while you're here on earth.

anna 爬了一个小时的山，累得我腿都动弹不了了。话又说回来，山上的风景真值得。

pá le yí gè xiǎoshí de shān lèi de wǒ tuǐ dōu dòngtan bu liǎo le huà yòu shuō huilai shān shàng de fēngjǐng zhēn zhídé · An hour's climb: my legs can hardly move. Then again, the view up here is so worth it.

little sister 老天保佑，明天去庙会千万别下雪！

lǎo tiān bǎoyòu míngtiān qù miàohuì qiānwàn bié xià xuě · Fingers crossed it doesn't snow tomorrow for the temple fair!

professor chen 经过一千年风雨的洗礼，这座寺还在这儿。对很多人来说，这里是一个神圣的地方，也是这片土地的灵魂。

jīngguò yìqiān nián fēngyǔ de xǐlǐ zhè zuò sì hái zài zhèr duì hěn duō rén lái shuō zhèlǐ shì yí gè shénshèng de dìfang yě shì zhè piàn tǔdì de línghún · After a thousand years of wind and rain, this temple is still standing. For many people it's a sacred place, and the soul of this land.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

茎
jīng
stem, stalk

蔓
wàn
creeper

绽
zhàn
split open

耕
gēng
to plough, till

good to know · Visiting a temple: step over the high threshold (门槛), never on it, don't point at statues, and ask before taking photos inside a hall. Many "religious" words live on in everyday Chinese: 白衣天使 (nurses), 购物天堂 (shopping paradise), 魔鬼训练 (brutal training), 神仙一样的日子 (a life of ease).

From phoenixes to 老天保佑, you can now follow the old stories that colour everyday Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 83 customs and wisdom

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 11 · Chinese culture

Talk about customs, taboos and old wisdom, and define a term with 所谓……，就是……

Taboos and old sayings shape how people give gifts, choose homes and argue: knowing them saves you from awkward moments.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
迷信	míxìn	to be superstitious; superstition	现在很少有人迷信这些老规矩了。 Few people take these old rules seriously any more.
风水	fēngshuǐ	feng shui	老人买房子的时候，常常讲究风水。 Older people often care about feng shui when they buy a house.
占卜	zhānbǔ	to tell fortunes, divine	古代人用乌龟壳占卜。 In ancient times people told the future with tortoise shells.
预兆	yùzhào	omen, sign; to foreshadow	冬天下大雪，农民觉得是丰收的预兆。 Farmers take heavy winter snow as a sign of a good harvest.
兆头	zhàotou	omen, sign (spoken)	开门红，这可是个好兆头！ A great start: that's a good sign!
忌	jì	to avoid, steer clear of	医生说他最近忌辣。 The doctor says he should avoid spicy food for now.
忌讳	jìhuì	taboo; to avoid (saying or doing)	送东西的时候，中国人忌讳送钟。 Chinese people avoid giving a clock as a present.
禁忌	jìnjì	taboo, prohibition	每个地方都有自己的饮食禁忌。 Every place has its own food taboos.
风貌	fēngmào	look, character (of a place or era)	这条老街保留了一百年前的风貌。 This old street still looks the way it did a hundred years ago.
风情	fēngqíng	local flavour, charm	云南的小城充满了民族风情。 Yunnan's little towns are full of local ethnic charm.
底蕴	dǐyùn	deep inner richness, heritage	这座城市有很深厚的文化底蕴。 This city has a rich cultural heritage.
积淀	jīdiàn	to build up over time; accumulation	这些习俗是几千年历史的积淀。 These customs are the sediment of thousands of years of history.
精髓	jīngsuǐ	essence, quintessence	这本书讲的是中国文化的精髓。 This book is about the essence of Chinese culture.
渊源	yuānyuán	origin, deep connection	这两个城市的渊源很深。 These two cities have long, deep ties.

国学	guóxué	traditional Chinese learning (classics)	他在大学里教国学。 He teaches the Chinese classics at university.
圣贤	shèngxián	sages and worthies	读圣贤书，学做人的道理。 Read the books of the sages and learn how to live.
君子	jūnzǐ	a gentleman, a person of virtue	君子动口不动手。 A gentleman argues with words, not fists.
中庸	zhōngyōng	the golden mean; moderate	中庸之道就是做事不走极端。 The doctrine of the mean is about never going to extremes.
哲理	zhélǐ	philosophy, wisdom (in a saying)	这句老话里有很深的哲理。 There's deep wisdom in this old saying.
太极	tàijí	the Supreme Ultimate; tai chi	公园里每天早上都有人打太极。 Every morning there are people doing tai chi in the park.
文人	wénrén	man of letters, scholar	古代的文人喜欢喝茶、写诗、画画。 Scholars of old liked drinking tea, writing poems and painting.
弟子	dìzǐ	disciple, pupil	据说孔子有三千弟子。 Confucius is said to have had three thousand disciples.
传人	chuánrén	successor, heir (of a craft)	她是这位老画家唯一的传人。 She is the old painter's only true successor.
弘扬	hóngyáng	to promote, carry forward (formal)	我们要弘扬传统文化。 We should promote traditional culture.
发扬	fāyáng	to carry on, develop (a tradition)	这种好的传统应该发扬下去。 Good traditions like this should be carried on.
糟粕	zāopò	dregs; the worthless part	对传统文化，要留下好的，去掉糟粕。 With tradition, keep the best and throw out the rest.
华侨	huáqiáo	overseas Chinese (Chinese citizens abroad)	每年春节，很多华侨都回国过年。 Every Spring Festival many overseas Chinese come home for New Year.
华人	huárén	ethnic Chinese (anywhere)	世界上很多城市都有华人。 There are ethnic Chinese in many cities around the world.
华裔	huáyì	person of Chinese descent	她是在英国长{zhang3}大的华裔，中文说得很好。 She grew up in the UK, of Chinese descent, and speaks good Chinese.
瞻仰	zhānyǎng	to pay respects to, look at with reverence	每年都有很多人来这里瞻仰这位诗人住过的地方。 Every year many people come here to pay their respects at the poet's old home.

pattern 所谓……，就是……: what is called … means …

所谓 term ，就是 what it means

所谓 picks out a term or a saying, and 就是 explains it: “what we call X is simply Y”. Put the term in quotation marks when it is a saying. Speakers use it to define a word before they argue about it.

所谓“国学”，就是中国传统的学问。 **suǒwèi guóxué jiùshì Zhōngguó chuántǒng de xuéwen** What is called “guoxue” is traditional Chinese learning.

所谓好兆头，就是让人觉得会有好事的东西。 **suǒwèi hǎo zhàotou jiùshì ràng rén juéde huì yǒu hǎo shì de dōngxi** A “good sign” is simply something that makes you feel good things are coming.

所谓“入乡随俗”，就是到一个地方，就按那里的习惯做。 **suǒwèi rù xiāng suí sú jiùshì dào yí gè dìfang jiù àn nàlǐ de xíguàn zuò** “When in Rome” means doing things the local way wherever you go.

dialogue what not to do at new year

ms zhang 安娜，明天是正月初一，有几个忌讳你得知道：不能扫地，说话忌说不吉利的字，碗也千万别打破。

Ānnà míngtiān shì zhēngyuè chū yī yǒu jǐ gè jìhuì nǐ děi zhīdào bù néng sǎo dì shuōhuà jì shuō bù jílì de zì wǎn yě qiānwàn bié dǎpò · Anna, tomorrow is the first day of the year, and there are a few taboos you should know: no sweeping, no unlucky words, and whatever you do, don't break a bowl.

anna 为什么不能扫地？这是迷信吗？

wèi shénme bù néng sǎo dì zhè shì míxìn ma · Why no sweeping? Is that a superstition?

ms zhang 老人说，初一扫地会把福气扫走。年轻人不一定信，不过大家还是按老规矩来，图个好兆头。

lǎorén shuō chū yī sǎo dì huì bǎ fúqi sǎo zǒu niánqīng rén bù yídìng xìn búguò dàjiā háishi àn lǎo guīju lái tú gè hǎo zhàotou · Old people say sweeping on the first day sweeps your luck away. Young people don't always believe it, but everyone still follows the old rules for a good omen.

xiaoming 我奶奶还会看风水，家里的床放在哪儿，都得她说了算。

wǒ nǎinai hái huì kàn fēngshuǐ jiā lǐ de chuáng fàng zài nǎr dōu děi tā shuō le suàn · My grandma even reads feng shui: where the beds go is up to her.

little sister 奶奶还说，属相不合的人不能结婚。

nǎinai hái shuō shǔxiàng bù hé de rén bù néng jiéhūn · Grandma also says people whose zodiac signs don't match shouldn't marry.

professor chen 这些禁忌和风水的说法，跟古代的占卜有很深的渊源。古人觉得天上的变化是人间事情的预兆。

zhèxiē jìnjì hé fēngshuǐ de shuōfǎ gēn gǔdài de zhānbǔ yǒu hěn shēn de yuānyuán gǔrén juéde tiānshàng de biànhuà shì rénjiān shìqing de yùzhào · These taboos and feng shui ideas go back a long way, to ancient divination. People of old saw changes in the sky as omens of things on earth.

anna 陈教授，您觉得这些都是糟粕吗？

Chénjiàoshòu nín juéde zhèxiē dōu shì zāopò ma · Professor Chen, do you think all this is rubbish?

professor chen 不能都这么说。所谓传统，就是一代一代传下来的东西，好的我们发扬，不好的就放下。

bù néng dōu zhème shuō suǒwèi chuántǒng jiùshì yídài yídài chuán xialai de dōngxi hǎo de wǒmen fāyáng bù hǎo de jiù fàng xià · You can't lump it all together. Tradition is simply what is handed down from generation to generation: we carry on the good and let go of the bad.

little sister 像我外婆，生病了忌口，这个有道理。可是不能吃梨，因为“梨”和“离”听起来一样，这个就没什么道理了。

xiàng wǒ wàipó shēngbìng le jìkǒu zhège yǒu dàolǐ kěshì bù néng chī lí yīnwèi lí hé lí tīng qǐlai yíyàng zhège jiù méi shénme dàolǐ le · Like my grandma: avoiding certain foods when she's ill makes sense. But not eating pears because 梨 sounds like 离 “part”: there's nothing to that.

xiaoming 你别忘了，你还给我讲过“送钟”的忌讳呢。

nǐ bié wàng le nǐ hái gěi wǒ jiǎng guo sòng zhōng de jìhuì ne · Don't forget, you're the one who told me about the clock taboo.

professor chen 说到底，这些习俗是几千年文化的积淀。比如“君子”“中庸”，都是国学的精髓，圣贤书里讲了很多做人的哲理。

shuō dàodǐ zhèxiē xísú shì jǐ qiān nián wénhuà de jīdiàn bǐrú jūnzǐ zhōngyōng dōu shì guóxué de jīngsuǐ shèngxián shū lǐ jiǎng le hěn duō zuò rén de zhélǐ · In the end, these customs are thousands of years of culture built up layer on layer. Ideas like the gentleman and the golden mean are the essence of the classics: the books of the sages are full of wisdom about how to live.

anna 所谓中庸，就是不走极端，对吗？

suǒwèi zhōngyōng jiùshì bù zǒu jíduān duì ma · The golden mean is about not going to extremes, right?

professor chen 对。公园里打太极的老人，动作不快也不慢，刚刚好，也有这个意思。

duì gōngyuán lǐ dǎ tàijí de lǎorén dòngzuò bú kuài yě bú màn gāng gānghǎo yě yǒu zhège yìsi · Right. The old

people doing tai chi in the park, moving neither too fast nor too slow, just right: that's the same idea.

xiaoming 陈教授的爷爷是一位有名的文人，他自己也收了不少弟子，算是国学的传人了。
Chénjiàoshòu de yéye shì yí wèi yǒumíng de wénrén tā zìjǐ yě shōu le bù shǎo dìzǐ suànshì guóxué de chuánrén le · Professor Chen's grandfather was a famous scholar, and he has taken on quite a few students himself: you could call him an heir to the classics.

professor chen 哪里哪里。我只是想弘扬一点儿传统文化。我有个学生是华裔，在英国长大的，她说海外的华人、华侨过春节，贴对联、放鞭炮，比我们还讲究。
nǎlǐ nǎlǐ wǒ zhǐshì xiǎng hóngyáng yìdiǎnr chuántǒng wénhuà wǒ yǒu gè xuéshēng shì huáyì zài Yīngguó zhǎng dà de tā shuō hǎiwài de huárén huáqiáo guò Chūnjié tiē duìlián fàng biānpào bǐ wǒmen hái jiǎngjiu · I wouldn't say that. I just want to spread a little traditional culture. One of my students is of Chinese descent and grew up in the UK: she says Chinese communities abroad celebrate the New Year, with couplets and firecrackers, even more carefully than we do.

anna 真的！英国的中国城一到春节，到处都是红灯笼，很有中国风情。
zhēn de Yīngguó de Zhōngguó chéng yí dào Chūnjié dàochù dōu shì hóng dēnglong hěn yǒu Zhōngguó fēngqíng · It's true! When Spring Festival comes, Chinatown in the UK is full of red lanterns: it has real Chinese charm.

professor chen 过完年，我带你们去城南的老街看看，我们还可以去瞻仰一位老画家住过的房子。
guò wán nián wǒ dài nǐmen qù chéng nán de lǎo jiē kàn kan wǒmen hái kěyǐ qù zhānyǎng yí wèi lǎo huàjiā zhù guo de fángzi · After New Year I'll take you to the old street in the south of the city, and we can pay our respects at an old painter's former home.

little sister 那条老街现在都是商店了，没什么看头儿了吧?
nà tiáo lǎo jiē xiànzài dōu shì shāngdiàn le méi shénme kàntour le ba · Isn't that street all shops now? Hardly worth seeing.

professor chen 不会。那儿还保留着一百年前的风貌，很有文化底蕴。
bú huì nàr hái bǎoliú zhe yìbǎi nián qián de fēngmào hěn yǒu wénhuà dǐyùn · Not at all. It still looks as it did a hundred years ago, steeped in culture.

ms zhang 任你们怎么逛，晚上也得回来吃饺子！这是我们家的惯例。
rèn nǐmen zěnme guàng wǎnshang yě děi huílái chī jiǎozi zhè shì wǒmen jiā de guànlì · Wander as much as you like, but you must be back for dumplings tonight! That's our family custom.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

锄
chú
hoe; to hoe, weed

灌
guàn
to fill, pour into

粪
fèn
dung, manure

禾
hé
grain plant

good to know · Gift taboos: no clocks (送钟 sounds like 送终), no pears to share (分梨 sounds like 分离 “separate”), no sets of four (四 sounds like 死). 华侨 are Chinese citizens abroad, 华人 are ethnic Chinese anywhere, 华裔 are people of Chinese descent, usually with another nationality.

Taboos, omens and the golden mean: you can now see the old wisdom behind everyday habits.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 84 heritage and crafts

Talk about museums, antiques and traditional crafts, and say “why not?” with 有何X.

Museums, old streets and craft workshops are where Chinese history becomes something you can see and touch.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
宝库	bǎokù	treasure house, treasury	这座图书馆是一座知识的宝库。 This library is a treasure house of knowledge.
瑰宝	guībǎo	treasure, gem (of culture)	京剧是中国文化的瑰宝。 Peking opera is a gem of Chinese culture.
古董	gǔdǒng	antique	他家里收藏了不少古董。 He has quite a few antiques at home.
古籍	gǔjí	ancient books	图书馆里保存着很多珍贵的古籍。 The library keeps many precious ancient books.
藏品	cángpǐn	item in a collection	这家博物馆有两万多件藏品。 The museum has more than twenty thousand items in its collection.
珍藏	zhēncáng	to treasure; treasured collection	这封信她一直珍藏着。 She has kept this letter safe all along.
陈列	chénliè	to display, exhibit	这些古董都陈列在二楼。 These antiques are all on display on the first floor.
出土	chūtǔ	to be unearthed	这件青铜器是五十年前出土的。 This bronze was unearthed fifty years ago.
发掘	fājué	to excavate; discover (talent)	考古学家在这里发掘出了一座古城。 Archaeologists dug up an ancient town here.
青铜器	qīngtóngqì	bronze ware, bronze object	三千年前的青铜器就已经非常精美了。 Bronzes were already exquisite three thousand years ago.
陶瓷	táocí	pottery and porcelain, ceramics	中国的陶瓷在世界上很有名。 Chinese ceramics are famous all over the world.
窑	yáo	kiln	这些瓷器都是在这个窑里烧出来的。 All this porcelain was fired in this kiln.
玉	yù	jade	奶奶送给我一块玉。 Grandma gave me a piece of jade.
丝绸	sīchóu	silk	这条丝绸围巾摸起来很舒服。 This silk scarf feels lovely.
刺绣	cìxiù	embroidery; to embroider	这幅刺绣花了她半年时间。 This embroidery took her half a year.
绣	xiù	to embroider	她在手帕上绣了一朵花。 She embroidered a flower on the handkerchief.

印章	yìnzhāng	seal, stamp (name seal)	古代的书画上常常有作者的印章。 Old paintings and calligraphy often carry the artist's seal.
算盘	suànpán	abacus	我小时候学过打算盘。 I learned to use an abacus as a child.
工匠	gōngjiàng	craftsman, artisan	这座桥是古代工匠修的，一千年了还很结实。 Ancient craftsmen built this bridge, and after a thousand years it's still solid.
手艺	shǒuyì	craft, skill, workmanship	这位师傅做菜的手艺特别好。 This chef's cooking is superb.
失传	shīchuán	to be lost (no longer handed down)	有些老手艺已经失传了。 Some old crafts have already died out.
城墙	chéngqiáng	city wall	西安的城墙保存得非常完整。 Xi'an's city wall is remarkably well preserved.
宫殿	gōngdiàn	palace	这座宫殿有六百年的历史。 This palace is six hundred years old.
殿堂	diàntáng	palace hall; (figurative) the hall of fame	她终于走进了音乐的殿堂。 She finally made it to the very top of the music world.
亭子	tíngzi	pavilion	湖边有一个小亭子，我们去那儿休息一下吧。 There's a little pavilion by the lake: let's rest there.
碑	bēi	stone tablet, stele	这块碑上刻着一千年前的文字。 This stone tablet is carved with writing from a thousand years ago.
纪念碑	jìniànbēi	monument, memorial	广场中间立着一座纪念碑。 A monument stands in the middle of the square.

pattern 有何x: what x is there?

有何 **不可 / 难 / 区别 / 意义**

何 is a written "what", so 有何X means "what X is there?", a rhetorical question that expects "none". 有何不可 "why not?", 有何难 "what's hard about it?", 有何区别 "what's the difference?". It sounds a little bookish, which is part of the fun. Its spoken cousin is 有什么 + verb + 头儿 "what's the point of …?".

周末去看展览，有何不可？ **zhōumò qù kàn zhǎnlǎn yǒu hé bù kě** Going to an exhibition at the weekend: why not?

这两种瓷器有何区别？ **zhè liǎng zhǒng cíqì yǒu hé qūbié** What's the difference between these two kinds of porcelain?

这种电影有什么看头儿？ **zhè zhǒng diànyǐng yǒu shénme kàntour** What's the point of watching a film like this?

dialogue the old street of crafts

professor chen 这条街以前全是工匠的小店：刻印章的、做刺绣的、卖陶瓷的。现在还有几家老店，手艺都是祖传的。
zhè tiáo jiē yǐqián quán shì gōngjiàng de xiǎo diàn kè yìnzhāng de zuò cìxiù de mài táocí de xiànzài hái yǒu jǐ jiā lǎo diàn shǒuyì dōu shì zǔchuán de · This street used to be all craftsmen's little shops: seal carvers, embroiderers, pottery sellers. A few old shops are still here, with skills handed down in the family.

anna 正月初三，老街上到处是年画，真喜庆。
zhēngyuè chū sān lǎo jiē shàng dàochù shì niánhuà zhēn xǐqìng · The third day of New Year, and the old street is covered in New Year pictures: so festive.

little sister 您看这家刺绣！上面的仙女绣得跟真的一样。
nín kàn zhè jiā cìxiù shàngmiàn de xiānnǚ xiù de gēn zhēn de yíyàng · Look at this embroidery! The fairy on it is stitched so well she looks real.

anna 我也想学刺绣，可是我手太笨了。
wǒ yě xiǎng xué cìxiù kěshì wǒ shǒu tài bèn le · I'd love to learn embroidery, but I'm so clumsy.

professor chen 有何不可？师傅说初学的人先绣一片叶子就行。
yǒu hé bù kě shīfu shuō chū xué de rén xiān xiù yí piàn yèzi jiù xíng · Why not? The master says beginners just start with a single leaf.

little sister 这儿还有刻印章的！安娜，给你刻一个中文名字的印章吧。
zhèr hái yǒu kè yìnzhāng de Ānnà gěi nǐ kè yí gè Zhōngwén míngzi de yìnzhāng ba · And here's a seal carver! Anna, let's get a seal made with your Chinese name.

anna 好啊！以后我写书法，就可以在上面盖章了。
hǎo a yǐhòu wǒ xiě shūfǎ jiù kěyǐ zài shàngmiàn gài zhāng le · Great! Then I can stamp it on my calligraphy.

professor chen 可惜很多老手艺都快失传了，年轻人不太愿意学。
kěxī hěn duō lǎo shǒuyì dōu kuài shīchuán le niánqīng rén bú tài yuànyì xué · Sadly many old crafts are close to dying out: young people aren't keen to learn.

little sister 那边的店里卖算盘，现在还有人用吗？一个算盘有什么看头儿？
nàbiān de diàn lǐ mài suànpán xiànzài hái yǒu rén yòng ma yí gè suànpán yǒu shénme kàntour · That shop over there sells abacuses: does anyone still use them? What's there to see in an abacus?

professor chen 别小看算盘，它是古人的“电脑”。走，前面就是博物馆了。
bié xiǎokàn suànpán tā shì gǔrén de diànnǎo zǒu qiánmiàn jiùshì bówùguǎn le · Don't look down on the abacus: it was the ancients' computer. Come on, the museum is just ahead.

anna 门口这块碑是什么时候的？
ménkǒu zhè kuài bēi shì shénme shíhou de · How old is the stone tablet by the entrance?

professor chen 一千年前的。这座博物馆是一座宝库，有两万多件藏品，很多是从附近发掘出来的。
yìqiān nián qián de zhè zuò bówùguǎn shì yí zuò bǎokù yǒu liǎng wàn duō jiàn cángpǐn hěn duō shì cóng fùjìn fājué chulai de · A thousand years old. This museum is a treasure house: more than twenty thousand items, many of them excavated nearby.

anna 这件青铜器上有好多花纹，颜色也变了。
zhè jiàn qīngtóngqì shàng yǒu hǎoduō huāwén yánsè yě biàn le · This bronze is covered in patterns, and its colour has changed.

professor chen 它是五十年前出土的，有三千年了。二楼陈列着陶瓷和玉，还有古代的丝绸。
tā shì wǔshí nián qián chūtǔ de yǒu sānqiān nián le èr lóu chénliè zhe táocí hé yù hái yǒu gǔdài de sīchóu · It was unearthed fifty years ago and it's three thousand years old. Upstairs they display ceramics and jade, and ancient silk too.

little sister 这些碗是在哪个窑烧的？
zhèxiē wǎn shì zài nǎge yáo shāo de · Which kiln were these bowls fired in?

professor chen 就在城外，那个古窑现在还在。旁边那个柜子里是这里珍藏的古籍，有的记着古代的节气和风水，都是国家的瑰宝。
jiù zài chéng wài nàge gǔ yáo xiànzài hái zài pángbiān nàge guìzi lǐ shì zhèlǐ zhēncáng de gǔjí yǒude jì zhe

gǔdài de jiéqì hé fēngshuǐ dōu shì guójiā de guībǎo · Just outside the town: the old kiln is still there. The case next to it holds the museum's treasured ancient books, some recording the old solar terms and feng shui: national treasures, all of them.

anna 还有一张老照片：古代的城墙、宫殿、寺庙，还有湖边的亭子。

hái yǒu yì zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn gǔdài de chéngqiáng gōngdiàn sìmiào hái yǒu hú biān de tíngzi · And here's an old photo: the ancient city wall, the palace, temples, and a pavilion by the lake.

professor chen 城墙只剩一小段了，现在那儿立着一座纪念碑。说到底，博物馆不只是古董的殿堂，也是我们记住历史的地方。

chéngqiáng zhǐ shèng yì xiǎo duàn le xiànzài nàr lì zhe yí zuò jìniànbēi shuō dàodǐ bówùguǎn bù zhǐshì gǔdǒng de diàntáng yě shì wǒmen jì zhù lìshǐ de dìfang · Only a short stretch of the wall is left, and there's a monument there now. In the end, a museum isn't just a hall of antiques: it's where we remember our history.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

栽
zāi
to plant, grow

坑
kēng
pit, hole; to cheat

淌
tǎng
to drip, trickle, flow

霜
shuāng
frost

good to know · 有何不可 and 有何难 are bookish: perfect when you want to sound playfully grand. In everyday speech: 为什么不行？, 有什么难的？ Craft verbs: 绣 embroider, 刻 carve, 烧 fire (pottery), 织 weave. The craftsman is 工匠 or 师傅, the craft 手艺.

Bronze, jade, silk and seals: you can now walk through a Chinese museum and talk about what you see.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 85 grand and beautiful

Describe grand sights, beautiful scenery and striking looks, and say “I’d rather … than …” with 宁可……也不……

When you travel, you want more than 很漂亮: Chinese has a precise word for every kind of beauty and grandeur.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
宏伟	hóngwěi	grand, magnificent (building, plan)	这座宏伟的建筑是新的国家图书馆。 This magnificent building is the new national library.
雄伟	xióngwěi	imposing, majestic	雄伟的长城在山上一直伸向远方。 The majestic Great Wall stretches over the mountains into the distance.
壮观	zhuàngguān	spectacular; a spectacular sight	山上看日出的景色特别壮观。 The sunrise from the mountain is spectacular.
壮丽	zhuànglì	magnificent, glorious (scenery)	这首诗写出了祖国山河的壮丽。 This poem captures the glory of the country’s mountains and rivers.
庄严	zhuāngyán	solemn, dignified	升国旗的时候，现场气氛非常庄严。 When the national flag is raised, the atmosphere is very solemn.
气派	qìpài	impressive, stylish; grand style	这家酒店的大门真气派。 This hotel’s entrance is really impressive.
气势	qìshì	momentum, imposing power	瀑布从山上冲下来，气势非常大。 The waterfall crashes down the mountain with tremendous force.
豪华	háohuá	luxurious	他们住在一家很豪华的酒店。 They’re staying in a very luxurious hotel.
秀丽	xiùlì	beautiful, graceful (scenery)	这里的山水非常秀丽。 The hills and streams here are beautifully graceful.
秀美	xiùměi	graceful, lovely (scenery)	这个小镇风景秀美。 This little town is set in lovely scenery.
美妙	měimiào	wonderful, beautiful (sound, moment)	那是我一生中最美妙的一个晚上。 It was the most wonderful evening of my life.
奇妙	qímiào	marvellous, wonderful (strange and good)	大自然真是奇妙。 Nature is truly marvellous.
奇特	qítè	peculiar, unusual	这块石头的样子很奇特，像一只猴子。 This rock has an unusual shape: it looks like a monkey.
别致	biézhì	unique, original (design)	这家咖啡店装修得很别致。 This café has a really original design.
新奇	xīnqí	novel, new and strange	孩子们对什么都觉得新奇。 Children find everything new and exciting.

新式	xīnshì	new-style, modern	老城旁边建起了一片新式住宅。 A modern housing estate has gone up beside the old town.
标致	biāozhì	pretty (of a woman)	那个姑娘长{zhang3}得很标致。 That girl is very pretty.
俊	jùn	handsome, good-looking	这个小伙子长{zhang3}得真俊！ What a handsome young man!
俊俏	jùnqiào	good-looking, pretty	她女儿长{zhang3}得很俊俏。 Her daughter is very pretty.
英俊	yīngjùn	handsome (of a man)	照片上的爸爸年轻时很英俊。 Dad was very handsome when he was young, in this photo.
甜美	tiánměi	sweet (voice, smile)	导游的声音很甜美。 The guide has a sweet voice.
诱人	yòurén	tempting, attractive	烤红薯的香味太诱人了。 The smell of roast sweet potatoes is so tempting.
抢眼	qiǎngyǎn	eye-catching, striking	她的红大衣在雪地里特别抢眼。 Her red coat really stands out against the snow.
显眼	xiǎnyǎn	conspicuous, easy to see	把钥匙放在显眼的地方，别又忘了。 Put the keys somewhere you can see them, so you don't forget them again.
醒目	xǐngmù	eye-catching, clear (sign)	出口的标志很醒目。 The exit signs are very clear.
突兀	tūwù	abrupt, out of place	老街中间建了一座高楼，看起来很突兀。 A tower block in the middle of the old street looks out of place.
赫然	hèrán	strikingly, suddenly (there)	打开盒子，里面赫然是一块古玉。 I opened the box, and there, to my amazement, was a piece of ancient jade.
卓越	zhuóyuè	outstanding, brilliant	他为这座城市做出了卓越的贡献。 He made an outstanding contribution to the city.
非凡	fēifán	extraordinary	这位作家有非凡的想象力。 This writer has an extraordinary imagination.
无比	wúbǐ	incomparably, unmatched	站在长城上，我心里激动无比。 Standing on the Great Wall, I was thrilled beyond words.
顶级	dǐngjí	top-level, top-notch	这是一家顶级餐厅。 This is a top restaurant.
顶尖	dǐngjiān	top, the very best	她是世界顶尖的钢琴家。 She is one of the world's top pianists.
头号	tóuhào	number one, top	堵车是过年出门的头号问题。 Traffic jams are the number-one problem when you travel at New Year.
名贵	míngguì	precious, rare and valuable	这棵树是很名贵的品种。 This tree is a rare and valuable variety.
莫大	mòdà	greatest, enormous (honour, help)	能在这里演出，是我莫大的荣幸。 Performing here is the greatest honour.

pattern 宁可 / 宁愿……，也不……: would rather … than …

宁可 / 宁愿 | the hard choice you accept | ，也不 | what you refuse

宁可 or 宁愿 puts the price you are willing to pay first; 也不 gives what you refuse to do. Both halves have the same subject. The first half is usually something unpleasant: that is what makes the choice strong.

我宁可多走几步，也不坐那个缆车。 **wǒ nìngkě duō zǒu jǐ bù yě bú zuò nàge lǎnchē** I'd rather walk a bit further than take that cable car.

他宁愿自己累一点儿，也不让孩子受委屈。 **tā nìngyuàn zìjǐ lèi yìdiǎnr yě bú ràng háizi shòu wěiqu** He would rather wear himself out than let his children be hard done by.

我宁可不拍照，也不在那么危险的地方停下来。 **wǒ nìngkě bù pāizhào yě bú zài nàme wēixiǎn de dìfang tíng xialai** I'd rather skip the photo than stop somewhere that dangerous.

dialogue up on the great wall

little sister 六点就出发，太早了吧！
liù diǎn jiù chūfā tài zǎo le ba · Leaving at six? That's way too early!

xiaoming 我宁可早起两个小时，也不想堵在路上。过年出门，堵车是头号问题。
wǒ nìngkě zǎo qǐ liǎng gè xiǎoshí yě bù xiǎng dǔ zài lùshang guònián chūmén dǔchē shì tóuhào wèntí · I'd rather get up two hours early than be stuck in traffic. Jams are the number-one problem when you travel at New Year.

anna 路上那座宏伟的建筑是什么？
lùshang nà zuò hóngwěi de jiànzhù shì shénme · What was that magnificent building on the way?

xiaoming 新的体育馆。到了！入口的标志很醒目，票我放在包里最显眼的地方了。
xīn de tǐyùguǎn dào le rùkǒu de biāozhì hěn xǐngmù piào wǒ fàng zài bāo lǐ zuì xiǎnyǎn de dìfang le · The new stadium. We're here! The entrance signs are nice and clear, and I've put the tickets where I can see them in my bag.

anna 门口的牌子上写着："凡是带学生证的游客，均可免费参观。"妹妹，你带了吗？
ménkǒu de páizi shàng xiě zhe fánshì dài xuéshēng zhèng de yóukè jūn kě miǎnfèi cānguān mèimei nǐ dài le ma · The sign at the gate says: "All visitors with a student card may enter free." Did you bring yours?

little sister 带了！省下的钱给我买烤红薯吧，那个香味太诱人了。
dài le shěng xià de qián gěi wǒ mǎi kǎo hóngshǔ ba nàge xiāng wèi tài yòurén le · I did! Spend the money we save on roast sweet potatoes: that smell is too tempting.

little sister 快看！一转弯，长城就赫然出现在眼前了。
kuài kàn yì zhuǎn wān Chángchéng jiù hèrán chūxiàn zài yǎnqián le · Look! Round the bend, and there's the Great Wall right in front of us.

anna 天哪，太壮观了！雄伟的长城在山上一直伸向远方，雪里的景色真是壮丽。
tiān na tài zhuàngguān le xióngwěi de Chángchéng zài shān shàng yìzhí shēn xiàng yuǎnfāng xuě lǐ de jǐngsè zhēnshi zhuànglì · Wow, it's spectacular! The majestic wall stretches over the mountains into the distance: the snowy view is glorious.

xiaoming 这段长城修在山顶上，气势非凡。古代工匠能在这么高的地方修城墙，手艺真是卓越。
zhè duàn Chángchéng xiū zài shāndǐng shàng qìshì fēifán gǔdài gōngjiàng néng zài zhème gāo de dìfang xiū chéngqiáng shǒuyì zhēnshi zhuóyuè · This stretch is built along the ridge: it's extraordinarily imposing. Ancient builders raising walls this high up: their skill was outstanding.

little sister 这儿有一块碑，上面写着这段长城是明朝修的。
zhèr yǒu yí kuài bēi shàngmiàn xiě zhe zhè duàn Chángchéng shì Míngcháo xiū de · There's a stone tablet here: it says this stretch of the wall was built in the Ming dynasty.

anna 站在这儿，我心里激动无比。大自然和人一起，创造了这么奇妙的东西。对我来说，这里的一切都很新奇。
zhàn zài zhèr wǒ xīnlǐ jīdòng wúbǐ dàzìrán hé rén yìqǐ chuàngzào le zhème qímiào de dōngxi duì wǒ lái shuō zhèlǐ de yíqiè dōu hěn xīnqí · Standing here, I'm thrilled beyond words. Nature and people together made something this marvellous. Everything here feels new and exciting to me.

little sister 安娜，你的红大衣在雪地里特别抢眼，站那儿别动，我给你拍一张！
Ānnà nǐ de hóng dàyī zài xuě dì lǐ tèbié qiǎngyǎn zhàn nàr bié dòng wǒ gěi nǐ pāi yì zhāng · Anna, your red coat really stands out in the snow: stay there and I'll take a picture!

anna 小心，这儿很滑，别踏在冰上。我宁可不拍照，也不想你摔倒。
xiǎoxīn zhèr hěn huá bié tà zài bīng shàng wǒ nìngkě bù pāizhào yě bù xiǎng nǐ shuāi dǎo · Careful, it's slippery here: don't step on the ice. I'd rather skip the photo than have you fall.

xiaoming 长城不只是风景，也是一个庄严的地方，更是中华文化的瑰宝。一代一代的人在这里保护过国家。
Chángchéng bù zhǐshì fēngjǐng yě shì yí gè zhuāngyán de dìfang gèng shì Zhōnghuá wénhuà de guībǎo yídài yídài de rén zài zhèlǐ bǎohù guo guójiā · The wall isn't just scenery: it's a solemn place too, and a gem of Chinese culture. Generation after generation, people stood guard here.

anna 我们终于一步一步攀上了最高的地方！
wǒmen zhōngyú yí bù yí bù pān shàng le zuì gāo de dìfang · We've finally climbed, step by step, to the highest point!

xiaoming 你们看远处那块石头，样子很奇特，像一只坐着的猴子。
nǐmen kàn yuǎn chù nà kuài shítou yàngzi hěn qítè xiàng yì zhī zuò zhe de hóuzi · Look at that rock in the distance: it has an unusual shape, like a monkey sitting down.

little sister 那边那个导游声音好甜美，长得也很标致。旁边那个小伙子是她同事吧？长得真俊。
nàbiān nàge dǎoyóu shēngyīn hǎo tiánměi zhǎng de yě hěn biāozhì pángbiān nàge xiǎohuǒzi shì tā tóngshì ba zhǎng de zhēn jùn · That guide over there has such a sweet voice, and she's pretty too. Is the young man next to her her colleague? He's really good-looking.

xiaoming 你看风景还是看人？你自己长得也挺俊俏，别老看别人。哥哥年轻的时候，可比他英俊多了。
nǐ kàn fēngjǐng háishi kàn rén nǐ zìjǐ zhǎng de yě tǐng jùnqiào bié lǎo kàn biérén gēge niánqīng de shíhou kě bǐ tā yīngjùn duō le · Are you here for the view or the people? You're pretty good-looking yourself: stop staring at others. When I was young I was far more handsome than him.

little sister 哈哈，你现在也才三十！
hā hā nǐ xiànzài yě cái sānshí · Ha, you're only thirty now!

anna 下山以后去哪儿吃饭？
xià shān yǐhòu qù nǎr chī fàn · Where shall we eat after we come down?

xiaoming 山下新开了一家酒店，大门特别气派，里面的餐厅是顶级的，听说厨师是全国顶尖的，用的都是名贵的材料。不过太豪华了，也太贵了。
shān xià xīn kāi le yì jiā jiǔdiàn dà mén tèbié qìpài lǐmiàn de cāntīng shì dǐngjí de tīngshuō chúshī shì quán guó dǐngjiān de yòng de dōu shì míngguì de cáiliào búguò tài háohuá le yě tài guì le · A new hotel has opened at the foot of the mountain: the entrance is so grand, and its restaurant is top-notch, with one of the best chefs in the country, they say, and only the finest ingredients. But it's too luxurious, and too pricey.

little sister 我知道一家小饭馆，院子装修得很别致，里面还有个小亭子，菜也好吃。
wǒ zhīdào yì jiā xiǎo fànguǎn yuànzi zhuāngxiū de hěn biézhì lǐmiàn hái yǒu gè xiǎo tíngzi cài yě hǎochī · I know a little restaurant: the courtyard is decorated in a really original way, with a little pavilion, and the food's great.

anna 好！对了，山下那座新式酒店在古村旁边，跟村子的风貌不太协调，看起来有点儿突兀。
hǎo duì le shān xià nà zuò xīnshì jiǔdiàn zài gǔ cūn pángbiān gēn cūn zi de fēngmào bú tài xiétiáo kàn qǐlai yǒudiǎnr tūwù · Great! By the way, that modern hotel right next to the old village doesn't fit the village's character: it looks a bit out of place.

xiaoming 是啊。还是这边的小村子风景秀美，山水秀丽。
shì a háishi zhèbiān de xiǎo cūn zi fēngjǐng xiùměi shān shuǐ xiùlì · True. The little villages round here, in their lovely hills and streams, are much nicer.

anna 今天是我在中国最美妙的一天。能和你们一起登上长城，是我莫大的福气。
jīntiān shì wǒ zài Zhōngguó zuì měimiào de yì tiān néng hé nǐmen yìqǐ dēng shàng Chángchéng shì wǒ mòdà de fúqi · Today has been my most wonderful day in China. Climbing the Great Wall with you is the greatest stroke of luck.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

泻
xiè
to pour down, rush down

晶
jīng
crystal, bright

屡
lǚ
repeatedly (written)

灿
càn
bright

good to know · Scale words: 宏伟 and 雄伟 for buildings and mountains, 壮观 for a sight, 壮丽 for landscapes, 秀丽 and 秀美 for gentle, graceful scenery. Looks: 英俊 for men, 标致 and 俊俏 for women (a little old-fashioned), 俊 for anyone in northern speech.

Majestic, graceful, eye-catching, out of place: you can now describe a view with real precision.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 86 idioms with a story

Use 34 idioms that come with a story, and give your opinion with 要(让)我说.

Idioms with a story are the spice of educated Chinese: one 画蛇添足 says what takes a sentence in English.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
守株待兔	shǒuzhūdàitù	to wait for luck instead of working	找工作不能守株待兔，要主动去找机会。 You can't just wait for a job to fall into your lap: go out and look for chances.
刻舟求剑	kèzhōuqiújiàn	to cling to rules when things have changed	时代变了，还用老办法，就是刻舟求剑。 Times have changed: sticking to the old methods is like marking the boat to find the sword.
亡羊补牢	wángyángbǔláo	better late than never (fix it after a loss)	丢过一次钱包以后，他出门总要检查一遍，也算亡羊补牢。 Since losing his wallet once, he always checks before going out: better late than never.
画蛇添足	huàshétiānzú	to spoil something by adding too much	文章写到这儿就很好了，再加一段就是画蛇添足。 The essay is good as it is: another paragraph would spoil it.
画龙点睛	huàlóngdiǎnjīng	the finishing touch that brings it to life	最后这句话真是画龙点睛。 That last line is the perfect finishing touch.
对牛弹琴	duìniútánqín	to talk to someone who can't understand	跟他讲古典音乐，简直是对牛弹琴。 Talking classical music with him is like playing the zither to an ox.
掩耳盗铃	yǎněrdàolíng	to fool yourself (cover your ears)	不复习就说考试不难，这不是掩耳盗铃吗? Saying the exam won't be hard without revising: isn't that just fooling yourself?
南辕北辙	nányuánběizhé	to act against your own goal	想减肥又天天吃夜宵，这不是南辕北辙吗? Trying to lose weight while snacking every night? That's working against yourself.
纸上谈兵	zhǐshàngtánbīng	armchair strategy, theory with no practice	没做过实际工作，只会纸上谈兵可不行。 Without real experience, just theorising won't get you anywhere.
朝三暮四	zhāosānmùsì	to keep changing your mind	他做事朝三暮四，一个计划从来坚持不了一个月。 He keeps changing his mind: he never sticks with a plan for a month.
狼吞虎咽	lángtūnhǔyàn	to wolf down food	他饿坏了，狼吞虎咽地吃了三碗面。 He was starving and wolfed down three bowls of noodles.
千钧一发	qiānjūnyīfà	hanging by a thread, critical moment	在这千钧一发的时候，司机停住了车。 At that critical moment, the driver stopped the bus.
千军万马	qiānjūnwànmǎ	a mighty army; a huge crowd	每年高考，千军万马都想进好大学。 Every year, a huge army of students sits the college entrance exam, all aiming for top universities.

汗马功劳	hànmǎgōngláo	great service, hard-won achievements	这次项目成功，他立下了汗马功劳。 He did a huge amount for this project's success.
运筹帷幄	yùnchóuwéiwò	to plan a strategy from headquarters	她运筹帷幄，整个活动安排得井井有条。 She masterminded it all: the whole event ran like clockwork.
开天辟地	kāitiānpìdì	since the world began; unprecedented	他主动洗碗，这可是开天辟地头一回！ He offered to do the washing-up: a first since the dawn of time!
对症下药	duìzhèngxiàyào	to find the right remedy for the problem	解决问题要对症下药，先找到原因。 To solve a problem, find the cause and treat that.
有的放矢	yǒudìfàngshǐ	to speak or act with a clear target	提意见要有的放矢，不要随便批评。 Make your comments targeted: don't just criticise at random.
一针见血	yīzhēnjiànxiě	to hit the nail on the head	他一针见血地指出了问题。 He put his finger right on the problem.
断章取义	duànzhāngqǔyì	to quote out of context	他的话被人断章取义了。 His words were quoted out of context.
颠倒黑白	diāndǎohēibái	to turn the truth upside down	这篇文章颠倒黑白，大家都很生气。 This article twists the facts, and everyone is furious.
冰山一角	bīngshānyījiǎo	the tip of the iceberg	这些问题只是冰山一角。 These problems are just the tip of the iceberg.
雪上加霜	xuěshàngjiāshuāng	one disaster after another	车坏了，又下起了大雨，真是雪上加霜。 The car broke down, then it started pouring: one thing after another.
锦上添花	jǐnshàngtiānhuā	to make something good even better	有你的帮助，真是锦上添花。 Your help makes it even better.
水涨船高	shuǐzhǎngchuángāo	to rise along with everything else	房价涨了，房租也水涨船高。 House prices went up, and rents rose with them.
水落石出	shuǐluòshíchū	the truth comes out	事情总有水落石出的一天。 The truth will come out one day.
来龙去脉	láilóngqùmài	the whole story, ins and outs	你先把事情的来龙去脉说清楚。 Tell me the whole story from the beginning.
根深蒂固	gēnshēndìgù	deep-rooted	有些老观念根深蒂固，很难改变。 Some old ideas are so deep-rooted they're hard to change.
潜移默化	qiányímòhuà	to influence quietly over time	父母的习惯会潜移默化地影响孩子。 Parents' habits quietly shape their children.
举一反三	jǔyīfǎnsān	to learn one thing and apply it to others	学语言要举一反三，学会一个句子，就能说十个。 With a language, learn one sentence and work out ten more.
顾名思义	gùmíngsīyì	as the name suggests	火锅，顾名思义，就是在火上的锅里煮菜。 Hotpot, as the name suggests, is food cooked in a pot over a fire.
引经据典	yǐnjīngjùdiǎn	to quote the classics	陈教授说话喜欢引经据典。 Professor Chen loves to quote the classics.

博大精深	bódàjīngshēn	broad and profound	中国文化博大精深。 Chinese culture is vast and profound.
源远流长	yuányuǎnliúcháng	of ancient origin, long history	中国的茶文化源远流长。 China's tea culture goes back a very long way.

pattern 要(让)我说: if you ask me

要我说 / 让我说 , **your opinion**

要我说 or 让我说 opens your opinion: "if you ask me, the way I see it". It is friendly and direct, perfect for giving advice or a verdict in a discussion.

要我说，这个计划是纸上谈兵。 **yào wǒ shuō zhège jìhuà shì zhǐshàng tánbīng** If you ask me, this plan is all theory.

让我说，你们俩都有道理。 **ràng wǒ shuō nǐmen liǎ dōu yǒu dàolǐ** The way I see it, you both have a point.

要我说，解决问题得对症下药。 **yào wǒ shuō jiějué wèntí děi duìzhèng xiàyào** If you ask me, you have to treat the cause of a problem.

dialogue the idiom game

little sister 我们玩个游戏吧：每人讲一个成语故事，再用它说一句话。我先来：守株待兔。一个人在树下捡到一只撞死的兔子，以后天天在那儿等。

wǒmen wán gè yóuxì ba měi rén jiǎng yí gè chéngyǔ gùshi zài yòng tā shuō yí jù huà wǒ xiān lái shǒuzhū dàitù yí gè rén zài shù xià jiǎn dào yì zhī zhuàng sǐ de tùzi yǐhòu tiān tiān zài nàr děng · Let's play a game: everyone tells the story of an idiom, then uses it in a sentence. Me first: "watching the stump for a hare". A man found a hare that had run into a tree and died, so he waited there every day after.

xiaoming 要我说，妹妹找实习就是守株待兔，天天等别人打电话。

yào wǒ shuō mèimei zhǎo shíxí jiùshì shǒuzhū dàitù tiān tiān děng biérén dǎ diànhuà · If you ask me, my sister's internship hunt is exactly that: waiting every day for someone to call.

little sister 你才是！我说一个刻舟求剑：剑掉进河里，他在船边刻了一下，船停了才下去找。你们公司那些老规定就是刻舟求剑。

nǐ cái shì wǒ shuō yí gè kèzhōu qiújiàn jiàn diào jìn hé lǐ tā zài chuán biān kè le yíxià chuán tíng le cái xiàqù zhǎo nǐmen gōngsī nàxiē lǎo guīdìng jiùshì kèzhōu qiújiàn · You're one to talk! Here's "marking the boat to find the sword": a man dropped his sword in a river, made a cut in the side of the boat, and only searched once the boat had stopped. Those old rules at your company are just that.

anna 我知道亡羊补牢！羊丢了再修羊圈，还不晚。上次电脑坏了，文件全没了，我才开始把文件多存一份。

wǒ zhīdào wángyáng bǔláo yáng diū le zài xiū yáng juàn hái bù wǎn shàng cì diànnǎo huài le wénjiàn quán méi le wǒ cái kāishǐ bǎ wénjiàn duō cún yí fèn · I know "mending the pen after losing a sheep"! It's still not too late. Last time my computer died I lost all my files: only then did I start keeping a second copy.

professor chen 很好。还有画蛇添足：几个人比赛画蛇，有人先画完了，又给蛇画上脚，结果输了。安娜，你那篇写长城的文章，开头写得气势非凡，最后一段就有点儿画蛇添足。

hěn hǎo hái yǒu huàshé tiānzú jǐ gè rén bǐsài huà shé yǒu rén xiān huà wán le yòu gěi shé huà shàng jiǎo jiéguǒ shū le Ānnà nǐ nà piān xiě Chángchéng de wénzhāng kāitóu xiě de qìshì fēifán zuìhòu yí duàn jiù yǒudiǎnr huàshé tiānzú · Very good. There's also "drawing legs on a snake": in a snake-drawing contest, the first to finish added feet and lost. Anna, your essay on the Great Wall opens in a wonderfully imposing way, but the last paragraph is a bit like that.

anna 那反过来，画龙点睛就是最后一笔让整个作品活起来？

nà fǎn guolai huàlóng diǎnjīng jiùshì zuìhòu yì bǐ ràng zhěnggè zuòpǐn huó qǐlai · And the opposite, "dotting the dragon's eyes", is the final touch that brings the whole work to life?

professor chen 没错，你真会举一反三。顾名思义，龙有了眼睛，就飞走了。

méi cuò nǐ zhēn huì jǔyì fǎnsān gùmíng sīyì lóng yǒu le yǎnjing jiù fēi zǒu le · Exactly: you're good at working things out. As the name says, once the dragon had eyes, it flew away.

little sister 上次我给哥哥讲古典音乐，他一点儿也听不懂，简直是对牛弹琴。

shàng cì wǒ gěi gēge jiǎng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè tā yìdiǎnr yě tīng bu dǒng jiǎnzhí shì duìniú tánqín · Last time I talked to my brother about classical music, he didn't get a word: like playing the zither to an ox.

xiaoming 那你考试前不复习，还说“老师不会考”，不是掩耳盗铃吗？

nà nǐ kǎoshì qián bú fùxí hái shuō lǎoshī bú huì kǎo bú shì yǎněr dàolíng ma · And you skipping revision and saying "the teacher won't test it": isn't that covering your ears to steal a bell?

ms zhang 好了好了，你们俩别吵了，这么诱人的菜都要凉了。小明，慢一点儿吃，别狼吞虎咽的！

hǎo le hǎo le nǐmen liǎ bié chǎo le zhème yòurén de cài dōu yào liáng le Xiǎomíng màn yìdiǎnr chī bié lángtūn hǔyàn de · All right, you two, stop bickering: this lovely food is getting cold. Xiaoming, slow down, don't wolf it!

professor chen 让我说，你们俩都有道理。做事方向错了，越努力离目标越远，那就是南辕北辙。只会说不会做，叫纸上谈兵。

ràng wǒ shuō nǐmen liǎ dōu yǒu dàolǐ zuò shì fāngxiàng cuò le yuè nǔlì lí mùbiāo yuè yuǎn nà jiùshì nányuán běizhé zhǐ huì shuō bú huì zuò jiào zhǐshàng tánbīng · The way I see it, you both have a point. If you head the wrong way, the harder you try the farther you get from your goal: that's "shafts south, tracks north". All talk and no action is "fighting wars on paper".

anna 朝三暮四呢？我以为是说一个人老是改主意。
zhāosān mùsì ne wǒ yǐwéi shì shuō yí gè rén lǎoshì gǎi zhǔyi · What about “three in the morning, four in the evening”? I thought it meant someone who keeps changing their mind.

professor chen 现在是这个意思。原来的故事是一个人喂猴子：早上三个，晚上四个，猴子不高兴；改成早上四个，晚上三个，猴子就高兴了。
xiànzài shì zhège yìsi yuánlái de gùshi shì yí gè rén wèi hóuzi zǎoshang sān gè wǎnshang sì gè hóuzi bù gāoxìng gǎi chéng zǎoshang sì gè wǎnshang sān gè hóuzi jiù gāoxìng le · That’s what it means now. The original story is about a man feeding monkeys: three in the morning and four in the evening made them angry; four in the morning and three in the evening made them happy.

anna 上个月我们的项目也是千钧一发，差点儿来不及。刘经理运筹帷幄，同事们加班加点，都立下了汗马功劳。
shàng gè yuè wǒmen de xiàngmù yě shì qiānjūn yífà chàdiǎnr láibují Liújīnglǐ yùnchóu wéiwò tóngshìmen jiābān jiā diǎn dōu lì xià le hànmǎ gōngláo · Our project last month hung by a thread too: we nearly missed the deadline. Manager Liu planned it all, and my colleagues worked overtime: they all did heroic work.

little sister 我们高考那年，千军万马都想进好大学，压力太大了。
wǒmen gāokǎo nà nián qiānjūn wànmǎ dōu xiǎng jìn hǎo dàxué yālì tài dà le · The year I sat the college entrance exam, a whole army of us were fighting for the top universities: so much pressure.

xiaoming 妈妈，您看，我今天主动洗碗，这可是开天辟地头一回！
māma nín kàn wǒ jīntiān zhǔdòng xǐ wǎn zhè kěshì kāitiān pìdì tóu yì huí · Mum, look, I’m doing the washing-up without being asked: a first since the world began!

ms zhang 那是锦上添花。你要是每天都洗，我就更高兴了。
nà shì jǐnshàng tiānhuā nǐ yàoshi měi tiān dōu xǐ wǒ jiù gèng gāoxìng le · That’s the icing on the cake. If you did it every day, I’d be happier still.

professor chen 说到网上的事：有人把别人的话断章取义，甚至颠倒黑白。我们看到的，常常只是冰山一角。
shuō dào wǎngshang de shì yǒu rén bǎ biérén de huà duànzhāng qǔyì shènzhì diāndǎo hēibái wǒmen kàn dào de chángcháng zhǐshì bīngshān yìjiǎo · Speaking of the internet: some people quote others out of context, or even twist the facts. What we see is often just the tip of the iceberg.

anna 要我说，与其相信网上的评论，宁可自己去查清楚事情的来龙去脉。事情总有水落石出的一天。
yào wǒ shuō yǔqí xiāngxìn wǎngshang de pínglùn nìngkě zìjǐ qù chá qīngchu shìqing de láilóng qùmài shìqing zǒng yǒu shuǐluò shíchū de yì tiān · If you ask me, rather than trusting online comments, better to find out the whole story yourself. The truth always comes out in the end.

professor chen 你这句话一针见血。解决问题也一样，要对症下药，有的放矢。
nǐ zhè jù huà yìzhēn jiànxiě jiějué wèntí yě yíyàng yào duìzhèng xiàyào yǒudì fàngshǐ · You’ve hit the nail on the head. Solving problems is the same: treat the real cause, and aim before you shoot.

ms zhang 说起难事，我们公司今年又涨工资又涨房租，真是水涨船高；上个月有个大客户走了，更是雪上加霜。
shuō qǐ nán shì wǒmen gōngsī jīnnián yòu zhǎng gōngzī yòu zhǎng fángzū zhēnshi shuǐzhǎng chuángāo shàng gè yuè yǒu gè dà kèhù zǒu le gèng shì xuěshàng jiāshuāng · Talking of hard things, at our company salaries and rents both went up this year: everything rises together. And last month a big client left, which made it even worse.

professor chen 有些观念根深蒂固，可是孩子会受父母潜移默化的影响。你们家这么爱读书，就是最好的例子。
yǒuxiē guānniàn gēnshēn dìgù kěshì háizi huì shòu fùmǔ qiányí mòhuà de yǐngxiǎng nǐmen jiā zhème ài dúshū jiùshì zuìhǎo de lìzi · Some ideas are deep-rooted, but children are quietly shaped by their parents. Your family’s love of reading is the best example.

xiaoming 陈教授说话总是引经据典，今天我们可是学了一晚上的成语。
Chénjiàoshòu shuōhuà zǒngshì yǐnjīng jùdiǎn jīntiān wǒmen kěshì xué le yì wǎnshang de chéngyǔ · Professor Chen always quotes the classics: we’ve had a whole evening of idioms today.

anna 中国文化真是博大精深，源远流长。这样一来，我写文章也有好多新词可以用了！

Zhōngguó wénhuà zhēnshi bódà jīngshēn yuányuǎn liúcháng zhèyàng yì lái wǒ xiě wénzhāng yě yǒu hǎoduō xīn cí kěyǐ yòng le · Chinese culture really is vast and ancient. And now I have loads of new phrases for my essays!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

辉 huī radiance	
煌 huáng bright	
耀 yào shine	
焕 huàn shining	

good to know · Idioms come in pairs of opposites: 画蛇添足 (spoil by adding) vs 画龙点睛 (the perfect final touch); 雪上加霜 (bad to worse) vs 锦上添花 (good to better). Watch the readings: 有的(dì)放矢, 一针见血(xiě in speech), 朝(zhāo)三暮四.

Thirty-four stories, thirty-four shortcuts: your Chinese now has the punch of a well-read speaker.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 87 mission: spring festival

Follow a whole Spring Festival in Chinese: New Year's Eve, a temple fair, a palace visit and the Lantern Festival.

Everything from this unit comes together in the one week of the year when all of China is on holiday.

chapter 1 chapter 1: new year's eve

anna 叔叔、阿姨，新春快乐！这是我从英国带来的茶，祝你们新的一年有福气！
shūshu āyí xīnchūn kuàilè zhè shì wǒ cóng Yīngguó dài lái de chá zhù nǐmen xīn de yì nián yǒu fúqi · Happy New Year! This is tea I brought from the UK: wishing you good fortune in the new year!

dr li 安娜来了！快进来。你看，门两边的对联是小明写的，墙上的年画是他妹妹贴的。
Ānnà lái le kuài jinlai nǐ kàn mén liǎng biān de duìlián shì Xiǎomíng xiě de qiáng shàng de niánhuà shì tā mèimei tiē de · Anna's here! Come in. Look: Xiaoming wrote the couplets by the door, and his sister put up the New Year pictures.

anna 家里挂满了红灯笼，真喜庆！
jiā lǐ guà mǎn le hóng dēnglong zhēn xǐqìng · Red lanterns everywhere: it's so festive!

anna 对联写得真好！话又说回来，小明的字以前可没这么好看。
duìlián xiě de zhēn hǎo huà yòu shuō huilai Xiǎomíng de zì yǐqián kě méi zhème hǎokàn · The couplets are beautifully written! Then again, Xiaoming's handwriting didn't used to be this good.

xiaoming 我从腊月开始，天天练字。这叫亡羊补牢，为时不晚。
wǒ cóng làyuè kāishǐ tiān tiān liàn zì zhè jiào wángyáng bǔláo wèi shí bù wǎn · I've practised every day since the twelfth month began. Better late than never.

little sister 安娜，你今天穿汉服啦？真像画里的仙女！现在穿汉服过年成了一种新风尚。我穿了红旗袍，今年是我的本命年，属相是龙，图个吉利。
Ānnà nǐ jīntiān chuān Hànfú la zhēn xiàng huà lǐ de xiānnǚ xiànzài chuān Hànfú guònián chéng le yì zhǒng xīn fēngshàng wǒ chuān le hóng qípáo jīnnián shì wǒ de běn mìng nián shǔxiàng shì lóng tú gè jílì · Anna, you're wearing Hanfu today? You look like a fairy from a painting! Wearing Hanfu for New Year is the new trend. I'm in my red qipao: it's my zodiac year, I'm a Dragon, so it's for luck.

xiaoming 红旗袍配绿色的鞋？有点儿俗吧。
hóng qípáo pèi lǜsè de xié yǒudiǎnr sú ba · A red qipao with green shoes? A bit tacky, isn't it?

little sister 你懂什么！对牛弹琴。
nǐ dǒng shénme duìniú tánqín · What would you know! Like playing the zither to an ox.

ms zhang 按照惯例，年夜饭全家一定要在一起吃。今天是一年里最隆重的一顿饭。
ànzhào guànlì niányèfàn quán jiā yídìng yào zài yìqǐ chī jīntiān shì yì nián lǐ zuì lóngzhòng de yí dùn fàn · By custom, the whole family has to eat New Year's Eve dinner together. It's the grandest meal of the year.

dr li 以前过年去饭店，吃得很豪华。要我说，再好的饭店也比不上家里的饺子。
yǐqián guònián qù fàndiàn chī de hěn háohuá yào wǒ shuō zài hǎo de fàndiàn yě bǐ bu shàng jiā lǐ de jiǎozi · We used to go to a restaurant at New Year and eat in luxury. If you ask me, even the best restaurant can't beat dumplings at home.

anna 这么多菜，太诱人了！这条鱼一定有讲究吧？
zhème duō cài tài yòurén le zhè tiáo yú yídìng yǒu jiǎngjiu ba · So many dishes: it all looks so tempting! The fish must mean something?

ms zhang 鱼就是“余”，年年有余。还有，明天是正月初一，千万别忘了那几个禁忌：不扫地，说话忌说不吉利的字。碗打破了，被看作不好的预兆，老人特别忌讳。
yú jiùshì yú nián nián yǒu yú hái yǒu míngtiān shì zhēngyuè chū yī qiānwàn bié wàng le nà jǐ gè jìnjì bù sǎo dì shuōhuà jì shuō bù jílì de zì wǎn dǎpò le bèi kànzuò bù hǎo de yùzhào lǎorén tèbié jìhuì · Fish 鱼 sounds like 余 “surplus”: plenty every year. And tomorrow is the first day of the first month, so don't forget the taboos: no sweeping, and no unlucky words. A broken bowl is seen as a bad omen: older people really avoid it.

little sister 妈妈，这些都是迷信。
māma zhèxiē dōu shì míxìn · Mum, it's all superstition.

ms zhang 迷信不迷信，图个好兆头嘛。
míxìn bù míxìn tú gè hǎo zhàotou ma · Superstition or not, it's for a good omen.

anna 今年春节在阳历二月，可是你们过节都按农历算吧？
jīnnián Chūnjié zài yánglì èr yuè kěshì nǐmen guòjié dōu àn nónglì suàn ba · This year Spring Festival is in February by the Western calendar, but you count festivals by the lunar calendar, don't you?

ms zhang	对，我妈妈过生日也按阴历。过了年，没几天就是第一个节气了。老天保佑，新的一年全家平安！ **duì wǒ māma guò shēngrì yě àn yīnlì guò le nián méi jǐ tiān jiùshì dì yī gè jiéqì le lǎo tiān bǎoyòu xīn de yì nián quán jiā píngān** · Yes, and my mum counts her birthday by the lunar calendar too. A few days after New Year comes the first solar term. Heaven bless us all with a safe and peaceful year!
xiaoming	吃完饭看春节晚会，那可是全国人民的盛会。 **chī wán fàn kàn Chūnjié wǎnhuì nà kěshì quán guó rénmín de shènghuì** · After dinner we watch the Spring Festival Gala: the whole country's big night.
anna	城里不让燃放烟花爆竹，大家怎么庆贺呢？ **chéng lǐ bú ràng ránfàng yānhuā bàozhú dàjiā zěnme qìnghè ne** · Fireworks and firecrackers are banned in the city: how do people celebrate?
dr li	郊区有一个盛大的烟花晚会，电视上能看。市区不放鞭炮，这样一来，空气好了，大白也不害怕了。 **jiāoqū yǒu yí gè shèngdà de yānhuā wǎnhuì diànshì shàng néng kàn shìqū bú fàng biānpào zhèyàng yì lái kōngqì hǎo le Dàbái yě bú hàipà le** · There's a huge fireworks show out of town that you can watch on TV. No firecrackers in the city, so the air's better and Dabai isn't scared.
little sister	十二点要许愿。安娜，你许愿了吗？ **shíèr diǎn yào xǔyuàn Ānnà nǐ xǔyuàn le ma** · At midnight you make a wish. Anna, did you make a wish?
anna	当然！不过说出来就不灵了。 **dāngrán búguò shuō chulai jiù bù líng le** · Of course! But if I tell you, it won't come true.

chapter 2 chapter 2: a notice for the temple fair

anna （读）“新春庙会通知：为庆贺新春佳节，本公园将于正月初一至初五举办新春庙会。庙会有扭秧歌、太极表演、传统手艺展示等活动，并有刺绣、印章、陶瓷、丝绸等摊位。

dú xīnchūn miàohuì tōngzhī wèi qìnghè xīnchūn jiājié běn gōngyuán jiāng yú zhēngyuè chū yī zhì chū wǔ jǔbàn xīnchūn miàohuì miàohuì yǒu niǔ yāngge tàijí biǎoyǎn chuántǒng shǒuyì zhǎnshì děng huódòng bìng yǒu cìxiù yìnzhāng táocí sīchóu děng tān wèi · (reading) “Spring Festival temple fair notice: to celebrate the New Year, the park will hold a temple fair from the first to the fifth of the first month. Events include yangge dancing, tai chi, and traditional craft demonstrations, with stalls for embroidery, seals, ceramics and silk.

anna 凡是穿汉服、旗袍的游客，均可免费领取吉祥物一个。园内禁止燃放烟花爆竹。请保管好随身物品，祝大家新春快乐，万事如意！”

fánshì chuān Hànfú qípáo de yóukè jūn kě miǎnfèi lǐngqǔ jíxiángwù yí gè yuán nèi jìnzhǐ ránfàng yānhuā bàozhú qǐng bǎoguǎn hǎo suíshēn wùpǐn zhù dàjiā xīnchūn kuàilè wàn shì rúyì · All visitors in Hanfu or a qipao may collect a free mascot. Fireworks and firecrackers are not allowed in the park. Please look after your belongings. Happy New Year, and may everything go your way!”

little sister 穿汉服送吉祥物！这样一来，我们俩都有了。

chuān Hànfú sòng jíxiángwù zhèyàng yì lái wǒmen liǎ dōu yǒu le · A free mascot if you wear Hanfu! That means we both get one.

xiaoming 庙会人山人海，跟狂欢节一样，简直是一个中国式的嘉年华。

miàohuì rénshān rénhǎi gēn kuánghuān jié yíyàng jiǎnzhí shì yí gè Zhōngguó shì de jiāniánhuá · The temple fair is packed: like a carnival, a Chinese-style one.

anna 所谓庙会，就是在庙旁边办的市场吗？

suǒwèi miàohuì jiùshì zài miào pángbiān bàn de shìchǎng ma · Is a temple fair just a market held next to a temple?

xiaoming 以前是这样。现在很多庙会在公园里，和宗教没什么关系了，主要是热闹、好玩。

yǐqián shì zhèyàng xiànzài hěn duō miàohuì zài gōngyuán lǐ hé zōngjiào méi shénme guānxì le zhǔyào shì rènao hǎowán · It used to be. Now many are in parks and have little to do with religion: they’re mainly about fun.

anna 要我说，这比英国过新年还热闹！

yào wǒ shuō zhè bǐ Yīngguó guò xīnnián hái rènao · If you ask me, it’s livelier than New Year in the UK!

chapter 3 chapter 3: at the temple fair

little sister 快看，刺绣的摊位！这只凤凰绣得跟活的一样。
kuài kàn cìxiù de tān wèi zhè zhī fènghuáng xiù de gēn huó de yíyàng · Look, the embroidery stall! This phoenix is stitched so well it looks alive.

anna 凤凰是美丽和吉祥的化身，对吧？
fènghuáng shì měilì hé jíxiáng de huàshēn duì ba · The phoenix is the embodiment of beauty and good luck, right?

xiaoming 你现在比我们还懂。那边是刻印章的，师傅是这门手艺的第三代传人。
nǐ xiànzài bǐ wǒmen hái dǒng nàbiān shì kè yìnzhāng de shīfu shì zhè mén shǒuyì de dì sān dài chuánrén · You know more than we do now. Over there is the seal carver: the master is the third generation in his craft.

anna 我上次刻的印章已经用上了。可惜这些老手艺快失传了。
wǒ shàng cì kè de yìnzhāng yǐjīng yòng shàng le kěxī zhèxiē lǎo shǒuyì kuài shīchuán le · I already use the seal I had made last time. Shame these old crafts are dying out.

professor chen 所以要弘扬啊。好的传统要发扬下去，糟粕就不要了。安娜，新年好！
suǒyǐ yào hóngyáng a hǎo de chuántǒng yào fāyáng xiaqu zāopò jiù búyào le Ānnà xīnnián hǎo · That's why we need to promote them. Carry on the good traditions and drop the rubbish. Anna, Happy New Year!

anna 陈教授！您也来逛庙会？
Chénjiàoshòu nín yě lái guàng miàohuì · Professor Chen! You're at the temple fair too?

professor chen 每年都来。前面那座寺庙有六百年了，寺里还有几位和尚。里面有佛像，也有菩萨像。我们去看看建筑吧，不过要安静一点儿。
měi nián dōu lái qiánmiàn nà zuò sìmiào yǒu liùbǎi nián le sì lǐ hái yǒu jǐ wèi héshang lǐmiàn yǒu fó xiàng yě yǒu púsà xiàng wǒmen qù kàn kan jiànzhù ba búguò yào ānjìng yìdiǎnr · Every year. That temple ahead is six hundred years old, and a few monks still live there. Inside there are statues of the Buddha and of bodhisattvas. Let's go and look at the architecture, but keep your voices down.

little sister 庙里有一位老奶奶，好虔诚，在祈祷家人平安。
miào lǐ yǒu yí wèi lǎo nǎinai hǎo qiánchéng zài qídǎo jiārén píngān · There's an old lady in the temple, very devout, praying for her family's safety.

professor chen 每个人的信仰不同，我们尊重就好。对很多老人来说，这是一个神圣的地方。
měi gè rén de xìnyǎng bù tóng wǒmen zūnzhòng jiù hǎo duì hěn duō lǎorén lái shuō zhè shì yí gè shénshèng de dìfang · Everyone's beliefs are different: we just respect them. For many older people, this is a sacred place.

anna 以前这座寺里住着很多僧人吗？
yǐqián zhè zuò sì lǐ zhù zhe hěn duō sēngrén ma · Did many monks live in this temple in the past?

professor chen 几百个。旁边还有一个古代的坛，是祈祷丰收的地方。这座寺经过几百年风雨的洗礼，还是老样子。庙会就是老北京的灵魂，很有老北京的风情。
jǐ bǎi gè pángbiān hái yǒu yí gè gǔdài de tán shì qídǎo fēngshōu de dìfang zhè zuò sì jīngguò jǐ bǎi nián fēngyǔ de xǐlǐ háishi lǎo yàngzi miàohuì jiùshì lǎo Běijīng de línghún hěn yǒu lǎo Běijīng de fēngqíng · Hundreds. Next to it there's an ancient altar where people prayed for good harvests. After centuries of wind and rain, the temple is just as it was. Temple fairs are the soul of old Beijing, full of its old charm.

xiaoming 那边有个算命的，说能占卜、看风水。
nàbiān yǒu gè suàn mìng de shuō néng zhānbǔ kàn fēngshuǐ · There's a fortune-teller over there who says he can read the future and do feng shui.

professor chen 那是老习俗了，玩玩可以，别太相信。
nà shì lǎo xísú le wán wan kěyǐ bié tài xiāngxìn · That's an old custom: fine for fun, but don't believe it too much.

little sister 我想去看儿童区的魔法表演，演的是神仙打败魔鬼和妖怪的故事，还有阎王和地狱！
wǒ xiǎng qù kàn értóng qū de mófǎ biǎoyǎn yǎn de shì shénxiān dǎbài móguǐ hé yāoguài de gùshi hái yǒu Yánwang hé dìyù · I want to see the magic show in the children's area: gods defeating devils and demons, and Yama and the underworld too!

xiaoming 你都大学生了，还看这个？
nǐ dōu dàxuéshēng le hái kàn zhège · You're at university and you still want to watch that?

little sister 故事有魔力嘛，世间的孩子都爱听，大孩子也一样。
gùshi yǒu mólì ma shìjiān de háizi dōu ài tīng dà háizi yě yíyàng · Stories have a magic of their own: children everywhere love them, big children too.

xiaoming 这儿简直是小吃的天堂。这家烤红薯是庙会上的头号小吃，老板每年都在这儿，从来不用守株待兔，客人自己就来了。
zhèr jiǎnzhí shì xiǎochī de tiāntáng zhè jiā kǎo hóngshǔ shì miàohuì shàng de tóuhào xiǎochī lǎobǎn měi nián dōu zài zhèr cónglái búyòng shǒuzhū dàitù kèrén zìjǐ jiù lái le · This place is a paradise for snacks. This roast sweet potato stall is the fair's number-one treat: the owner is here every year and never has to wait for customers, they just come.

anna 你们看那个扭秧歌的姑娘，长得真标致，笑得也很甜美。旁边那个小伙子也挺俊的。
nǐmen kàn nàge niǔ yāngge de gūniang zhǎng de zhēn biāozhì xiào de yě hěn tiánměi pángbiān nàge xiǎohuǒzi yě tǐng jùn de · Look at that girl doing the yangge: she's so pretty, with such a sweet smile. The young man next to her is quite handsome too.

little sister 安娜，你比他们还抢眼！穿着汉服走在人群里，特别显眼。
Ānnà nǐ bǐ tāmen hái qiǎngyǎn chuān zhe Hànfú zǒu zài rénqún lǐ tèbié xiǎnyǎn · Anna, you stand out more than they do! In your Hanfu you're so easy to spot in the crowd.

xiaoming 人越来越多了，简直是千军万马。过年的时候东西也水涨船高，烤红薯都涨价了。
rén yuè lái yuè duō le jiǎnzhí shì qiānjūn wànmǎ guònián de shíhou dōngxi yě shuǐzhǎng chuángāo kǎo hóngshǔ dōu zhǎngjià le · More and more people: it's like a mighty army. Prices rise with everything at New Year: even the sweet potatoes cost more.

anna 那个烤红薯好香！我宁可排半个小时队，也要买一个。
nàge kǎo hóngshǔ hǎo xiāng wǒ nìngkě pái bàn gè xiǎoshí duì yě yào mǎi yí gè · That roast sweet potato smells amazing! I'd rather queue for half an hour than miss out.

xiaoming 你吃得狼吞虎咽的，小心烫！
nǐ chī de lángtūn hǔyàn de xiǎoxīn tàng · You're wolfing it down: careful, it's hot!

chapter 4 chapter 4: the palace museum

professor chen 今天带你们来看这座宫殿。它已经有六百年了，是古代建筑的宝库，也是中国建筑的殿堂。旁边的城墙也很雄伟。
jīntiān dài nǐmen lái kàn zhè zuò gōngdiàn tā yǐjīng yǒu liùbǎi nián le shì gǔdài jiànzhù de bǎokù yě shì Zhōngguó jiànzhù de diàntáng pángbiān de chéngqiáng yě hěn xióngwěi · Today I've brought you to see this palace. It's six hundred years old: a treasure house of ancient architecture, the pinnacle of Chinese building. The city wall beside it is majestic too.

anna 太宏伟了！宫殿又高又宽，气势非凡，前面的广场显得特别庄严。
tài hóngwěi le gōngdiàn yòu gāo yòu kuān qìshì fēifán qiánmiàn de guǎngchǎng xiǎnde tèbié zhuāngyán · It's magnificent! The halls are so tall and wide, extraordinarily imposing, and the square in front feels so solemn.

little sister 宫殿的顶都是黄色的，在雪里特别醒目，壮观极了。
gōngdiàn de dǐng dōu shì huángsè de zài xuě lǐ tèbié xǐngmù zhuàngguān jí le · The roofs are all yellow: they stand out against the snow. It's spectacular.

xiaoming 门口这么气派，跟外面新式的高楼一比，一点儿也不突兀，反而很配。
ménkǒu zhème qìpài gēn wàimiàn xīnshì de gāo lóu yì bǐ yìdiǎnr yě bù tūwù fǎnér hěn pèi · The entrance is so grand, and next to the modern tower blocks outside it doesn't look out of place at all: they suit each other.

professor chen 这儿的藏品有一百多万件：青铜器、陶瓷、玉、古籍、古董、名贵的丝绸……很多是从全国各地发掘出土的，都是国家的瑰宝。
zhèr de cángpǐn yǒu yìbǎi duō wàn jiàn qīngtóngqì táocí yù gǔjí gǔdǒng míngguì de sīchóu hěn duō shì cóng quán guó gèdì fājué chūtǔ de dōu shì guójiā de guībǎo · The collection has over a million items: bronzes, ceramics, jade, ancient books, antiques, precious silk… many excavated all over the country. National treasures, every one.

anna 这件瓷器是在哪个窑烧的？颜色真美妙。
zhè jiàn cíqì shì zài nǎge yáo shāo de yánsè zhēn měimiào · Which kiln was this porcelain fired in? The colour is wonderful.

professor chen 南方的一个官窑。古代工匠的手艺卓越，连现在顶尖的专家也觉得奇妙。
nánfāng de yí gè guān yáo gǔdài gōngjiàng de shǒuyì zhuóyuè lián xiànzài dǐngjiān de zhuānjiā yě juéde qímiào · An imperial kiln in the south. The skill of the old craftsmen was outstanding: even today's top experts find it marvellous.

xiaoming 这个房间陈列着皇帝珍藏的书画，每一幅上都有好几个印章。
zhège fángjiān chénliè zhe huángdì zhēncáng de shūhuà měi yì fú shàng dōu yǒu hǎo jǐ gè yìnzhāng · This room displays paintings and calligraphy the emperors treasured: each one has several seals on it.

professor chen 古代的文人喜欢在自己喜欢的画上盖章，这也是一种习惯。
gǔdài de wénrén xǐhuan zài zìjǐ xǐhuan de huà shàng gài zhāng zhè yě shì yì zhǒng xíguàn · Scholars of old liked to stamp the paintings they loved: that was a custom too.

anna 那边那个亭子样子很奇特，很别致。
nàbiān nàge tíngzi yàngzi hěn qítè hěn biézhì · That pavilion over there has an unusual shape: very original.

professor chen 那是皇帝下雪天看风景的地方。还有那块碑，上面刻着圣贤的话，讲君子之道、中庸之道，都是国学的精髓，也是几千年文化的积淀。那些话里有很深的哲理。
nà shì huángdì xià xuě tiān kàn fēngjǐng de dìfang hái yǒu nà kuài bēi shàngmiàn kè zhe shèngxián de huà jiǎng jūnzǐ zhī dào zhōngyōng zhī dào dōu shì guóxué de jīngsuǐ yě shì jǐ qiān nián wénhuà de jīdiàn nàxiē huà lǐ yǒu hěn shēn de zhélǐ · That's where the emperors watched the snow. And that stone tablet is carved with the words of sages, about the gentleman's way and the golden mean: the essence of the classics, built up over thousands of years. There's deep wisdom in those words.

little sister 陈教授说话总是引经据典。您的弟子们一定都很怕您吧？
Chénjiàoshòu shuōhuà zǒngshì yǐnjīng jùdiǎn nín de dìzǐmen yídìng dōu hěn pà nín ba · Professor Chen, you're always quoting the classics. Your students must all be scared of you!

professor chen 哈哈，顾名思义，“弟子”就像我的孩子，怎么会怕我？
hā hā gùmíng sīyì dìzǐ jiù xiàng wǒ de háizi zěnme huì pà wǒ · Ha ha, as the word says, 弟子 are like my children: why would they be scared of me?

anna 所谓中庸，就是不走极端。我上次学过！
suǒwèi zhōngyōng jiùshì bù zǒu jíduān wǒ shàng cì xué guo · The golden mean is about not going to extremes. I learned that last time!

little sister 你看，那边几个外国游客拍照拍得好开心。还有几个华裔小朋友，中文说得真好。
nǐ kàn nàbiān jǐ gè wàiguó yóukè pāizhào pāi de hǎo kāixīn hái yǒu jǐ gè huáyì xiǎopéngyǒu Zhōngwén shuō de zhēn hǎo · Look, those foreign tourists are having fun taking photos. And some kids of Chinese descent there speak really good Chinese.

professor chen 很多华侨、华人带孩子回来过年，让他们看看这里的风貌，了解中国文化的底蕴。
hěn duō huáqiáo huárén dài háizi huílái guònián ràng tāmen kàn kan zhèlǐ de fēngmào liǎojiě Zhōngguó wénhuà de dǐyùn · Many overseas Chinese bring their children home for New Year, to see the place as it is and get a feel for the depth of Chinese culture.

anna 出去的时候，我们能去宫殿后面，瞻仰一下那块古碑吗？
chūqù de shíhou wǒmen néng qù gōngdiàn hòumiàn zhānyǎng yíxià nà kuài gǔ bēi ma · On the way out, can we go behind the palace and have a respectful look at that old stone tablet?

professor chen 当然。这座宫殿和那块古碑的渊源很深，一会儿我给你们讲讲来龙去脉。
dāngrán zhè zuò gōngdiàn hé nà kuài gǔ bēi de yuānyuán hěn shēn yíhuìr wǒ gěi nǐmen jiǎng jiang láilóng qùmài · Of course. The palace and that old tablet have a deep connection: I'll tell you the whole story in a minute.

anna 站在这儿，我心里激动无比。能看到这么多宝贝，真是莫大的福气。
zhàn zài zhèr wǒ xīnlǐ jīdòng wúbǐ néng kàn dào zhème duō bǎobèi zhēnshi mòdà de fúqi · Standing here, I'm thrilled beyond words. Seeing so many treasures is such good fortune.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the lantern festival

xiaoming 今天正月十五，元宵节，春节的最后一天。看灯去！
jīntiān zhēngyuè shíwǔ yuánxiāo jié Chūnjié de zuìhòu yì tiān kàn dēng qù · It's the fifteenth of the first month, the Lantern Festival, the last day of New Year. Let's see the lanterns!

anna 太美了！湖边、亭子上全挂着灯，秀丽极了。那盏龙灯好抢眼！
tài měi le hú biān tíngzi shàng quán guà zhe dēng xiùlì jí le nà zhǎn lóng dēng hǎo qiǎngyǎn · So beautiful! Lanterns all round the lake and on the pavilions: absolutely lovely. That dragon lantern really stands out!

professor chen 这个公园白天山水秀美，晚上有了灯，更是锦上添花。
zhège gōngyuán báitiān shān shuǐ xiùměi wǎnshang yǒu le dēng gèng shì jǐnshàng tiānhuā · This park is lovely by day, and at night the lanterns make it even better.

little sister 我还看见一个大算盘做的灯，好新奇！
wǒ hái kànjiàn yí gè dà suànpán zuò de dēng hǎo xīnqí · And I saw a lantern made like a giant abacus: so new and fun!

little sister 画龙点睛！你看，龙的眼睛还会发光。
huàlóng diǎnjīng nǐ kàn lóng de yǎnjing hái huì fāguāng · Dotting the dragon's eyes! Look, the eyes even light up.

professor chen 元宵节源远流长，有两千多年了。古人看灯、猜灯谜，我们今天也来猜一个。
yuánxiāo jié yuányuǎn liúcháng yǒu liǎngqiān duō nián le gǔrén kàn dēng cāi dēng mí wǒmen jīntiān yě lái cāi yí gè · The Lantern Festival goes back over two thousand years. People of old watched lanterns and solved lantern riddles: let's solve one today.

anna 这个灯谜写着：“羊丢了再修圈”，打一个成语。是亡羊补牢！
zhège dēng mí xiě zhe yáng diū le zài xiū juàn dǎ yí gè chéngyǔ shì wángyáng bǔláo · This riddle says: “mend the pen after losing a sheep”, guess the idiom. It's 亡羊补牢!

professor chen 对！你真会举一反三。
duì nǐ zhēn huì jǔyì fǎnsān · Correct! You really can work things out.

xiaoming 安娜这个春节学的东西，可以写一本书了。
Ānnà zhège Chūnjié xué de dōngxi kěyǐ xiě yì běn shū le · Anna has learned enough this Spring Festival to write a book.

anna 要我说，中国文化博大精深，我学到的只是冰山一角。
yào wǒ shuō Zhōngguó wénhuà bódà jīngshēn wǒ xué dào de zhǐshì bīngshān yìjiǎo · If you ask me, Chinese culture is so vast that what I've learned is only the tip of the iceberg.

professor chen 学文化不能纸上谈兵，要来生活里看、来过节。这样一来，文化才会潜移默化地变成你自己的东西。
xué wénhuà bù néng zhǐshàng tánbīng yào lái shēnghuó lǐ kàn lái guòjié zhèyàng yì lái wénhuà cái huì qiányí mòhuà de biànchéng nǐ zìjǐ de dōngxi · You can't learn culture from books alone: you have to see it in life and celebrate the festivals. That way it quietly becomes part of you.

little sister 话又说回来，安娜，你吃了那么多饺子，回去以后不会想家吗？
huà yòu shuō huilai Ānnà nǐ chī le nàme duō jiǎozi huíqù yǐhòu bú huì xiǎng jiā ma · Then again, Anna, after all those dumplings, won't you be homesick when you go back?

xiaoming 我也要谢谢安娜。这个春节，你帮我妈妈运筹帷幄，买菜、做饭、招待客人，立下了汗马功劳。
wǒ yě yào xièxie Ānnà zhège Chūnjié nǐ bāng wǒ māma yùnchóu wéiwò mǎi cài zuòfàn zhāodài kèrén lì xià le hànmǎ gōngláo · And I want to thank Anna. This New Year you masterminded everything with my mum: shopping, cooking, looking after guests. You did heroic work.

ms zhang 你也不错，主动洗了一次碗，开天辟地头一回！
nǐ yě búcuò zhǔdòng xǐ le yí cì wǎn kāitiān pìdì tóu yì huí · You weren't bad either: you washed up once without being asked, a first since the world began!

anna 这儿就是我的家呀。我今天还给奶奶发了消息：“奶奶，新春快乐！今年我在北京过了一个地道的中国年，贴对联、逛庙会、看宫殿、猜灯谜。我穿了汉服，大家都说我

像仙女。祝您身体健康，万事如意！”

zhèr jiùshì wǒ de jiā yā wǒ jīntiān hái gěi nǎinai fā le xiāoxi nǎinai xīnchūn kuàilè jīnnián wǒ zài Běijīng guò le yí gè dìdao de Zhōngguó nián tiē duìlián guàng miàohuì kàn gōngdiàn cāi dēng mí wǒ chuān le Hànfú dàjiā dōu shuō wǒ xiàng xiānnǚ zhù nín shēntǐ jiànkāng wàn shì rúyì · This is my home now. I sent Grandma a message today: “Grandma, Happy New Year! This year I had a real Chinese New Year in Beijing: couplets, a temple fair, a palace and lantern riddles. I wore Hanfu, and everyone said I looked like a fairy. Wishing you good health and every success!”

ms zhang 大家都来吃元宵吧！吃了元宵，一年团团圆圆。

dàjiā dōu lái chī yuánxiāo ba chī le yuánxiāo yì nián tuántuányuányuán · Come and have some sweet dumplings, everyone! Eat them, and the family stays together all year.

You’ve just lived a Chinese New Year from first couplet to last lantern, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 88 emperors and dynasties

Talk about emperors, dynasties and the rise and fall of empires, and say “easier said than done” with 谈何.....

Chinese history is told in dynasties: museums, TV dramas and everyday sayings all assume you know how an empire rises and falls.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
帝国	dìguó	empire	这个帝国存在了一千多年。 This empire lasted for more than a thousand years.
王朝	wángcháo	dynasty	这个王朝统治了近三百年。 This dynasty ruled for nearly three hundred years.
王国	wángguó	kingdom, realm	这个小王国只有几十万人。 This little kingdom has only a few hundred thousand people.
皇宫	huánggōng	imperial palace	皇宫里有九千多间房子。 The imperial palace has more than nine thousand rooms.
皇后	huánghòu	empress	这件衣服是皇后穿过{guo}的。 This robe was worn by the empress.
皇上	huángshang	Your Majesty, the emperor (spoken, old)	电视剧里，大臣们总是说：“皇上，万万不可！” In TV dramas the ministers always say: “Your Majesty, you mustn’t!”
皇室	huángshì	imperial family, royal family	英国皇室的新闻很多人都关心。 Lots of people follow news about the British royal family.
宫廷	gōngtíng	the (imperial) court	这道菜以前是宫廷菜，只有皇帝能吃。 This dish used to be court cuisine, only for the emperor.
贵族	guìzú	nobility, aristocrat	古代只有贵族的孩子才能读书。 In ancient times only noble children could go to school.
官吏	guānlì	officials (of old)	古代的官吏要通过考试选出来。 In ancient times officials were chosen through exams.
功臣	gōngchén	hero of a success; meritorious official	这个项目成功了，她是头号功臣。 The project succeeded, and she deserves the most credit.
状元	zhuàngyuan	top scorer in the imperial exam; top scorer	他是我们省今年的高考状元。 He was this year’s top scorer in our province’s college entrance exam.
商贾	shānggǔ	merchants (written)	丝绸之路上，各国的商贾来来往往。 Merchants from many countries came and went along the Silk Road.

奴隶	núlì	slave	不要做金钱的奴隶。 Don't be a slave to money.
庄园	zhuāngyuán	manor, estate	这座庄园以前是一个贵族家的。 This estate used to belong to a noble family.
封建	fēngjiàn	feudal; feudalism	这种想法太封建了。 That way of thinking is so old-fashioned.
统治	tǒngzhì	to rule, govern	这个王朝统治了三百年。 This dynasty ruled for three hundred years.
历代	lìdài	successive dynasties, past generations	历代皇帝都在这里住过。 Emperors of successive dynasties all lived here.
世代	shìdài	for generations	他家|世代住在这个村子里。 His family has lived in this village for generations.
后世	hòushì	later generations, posterity	他的诗对后世影响很大。 His poems had a great influence on later generations.
中叶	zhōngyè	the middle (of a dynasty or century)	十九世纪中叶，这座城市开始变化。 In the mid-nineteenth century, the city began to change.
长征	chángzhēng	long march; long journey	学中文就像一次长征，要一步一步走。 Learning Chinese is a long march: you take it one step at a time.
废墟	fèixū	ruins	这座古城现在只剩下一片废墟。 All that is left of the ancient town is a field of ruins.
浩劫	hàojié	catastrophe, great disaster	那场大火对古城来说是一场浩劫。 That great fire was a catastrophe for the old town.
灭亡	mièwáng	to perish, be destroyed (of a state)	这个王朝最后在战争中灭亡了。 The dynasty finally fell in war.
推翻	tuīfān	to overthrow; overturn (a view)	新的发现推翻了以前的说法。 The new discovery overturned the old theory.
打倒	dǎdǎo	to knock down, defeat	困难没有把他打倒。 Hardship didn't get him down.
瓜分	guāfēn	to carve up, divide up	这个市场被几家大公司瓜分了。 The market has been carved up by a few big companies.
征服	zhēngfú	to conquer	这位歌手用她的声音征服了观众。 The singer won over the audience with her voice.
征	zhēng	to go on a campaign; levy, recruit	古代一有战争，王朝就要征很多年轻人当兵。 In ancient times, whenever war came, the dynasty would call up many young men as soldiers.
凯旋	kǎixuán	to return in triumph	球队凯旋，球迷们在机场欢迎他们。 The team returned in triumph, and fans welcomed them at the airport.
烈士	lièshì	martyr, someone who died for a cause	这座纪念碑是为了纪念烈士而建的。 This monument was built to honour those who gave their lives.
壮烈	zhuàngliè	heroic (death, deed)	这是一段壮烈的历史。 This is a heroic chapter of history.

勋章	xūnzhāng	medal, decoration	爷爷的勋章一直挂在墙上。 Grandpa's medal has always hung on the wall.
牺牲	xīshēng	to sacrifice, give up (one's life, time)	她牺牲了很多休息时间来照顾老人。 She gave up a lot of her free time to look after the elderly.

pattern 谈何……: how could it be …?

something hard ，谈何 容易 / 简单

谈何 means "how can you even talk of …?" It almost always comes as 谈何容易 "easier said than done", after you describe a hard task. It sounds thoughtful and a little bookish.

要改变人的老观念，谈何容易。 **yào gǎibiàn rén de lǎo guānniàn tán hé róngyì** Changing people's old ideas is easier said than done.

一年学会一门语言？谈何容易！ **yì nián xuéhuì yì mén yǔyán tán hé róngyì** Learn a language in a year? Easier said than done!

要把废墟修成原来的样子，谈何容易。 **yào bǎ fèixū xiū chéng yuánlái de yàngzi tán hé róngyì** Restoring the ruins to how they were: that's no easy task.

dialogue three thousand years in one exhibition

anna 陈教授，我们公司要给西安的一家历史博物馆做一个手机讲解。刘经理让我负责，可是我对中国历史只知道一点儿。

Chénjiàoshòu wǒmen gōngsī yào gěi Xīān de yì jiā lìshǐ bówùguǎn zuò yí gè shǒujī jiǎngjiě Liújīnglǐ ràng wǒ fùzé kěshì wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ zhǐ zhīdào yìdiǎnr · Professor Chen, my company is making a phone guide for a history museum in Xi'an. Manager Liu has put me in charge, but I only know a little Chinese history.

professor chen 西安好啊！那儿的历史源远流长，历代有十几个王朝把那儿当作首都，有的统治了好几百年。

Xīān hǎo a nàr de lìshǐ yuányuǎn liúcháng lìdài yǒu shí jǐ gè wángcháo bǎ nàr dàngzuò shǒudū yǒude tǒngzhì le hǎo jǐ bǎi nián · Xi'an, wonderful! Its history goes back a very long way: more than ten dynasties had their capital there over the ages, some ruling for centuries.

anna 我们想把三千年的历史放进一个展览，您觉得可能吗？

wǒmen xiǎng bǎ sānqiān nián de lìshǐ fàng jìn yí gè zhǎnlǎn nín juéde kěnéng ma · We want to fit three thousand years of history into one exhibition. Do you think it's possible?

professor chen 谈何容易！不过可以抓住几条线：皇帝和皇宫，宫廷里的生活，还有普通人：官吏、商贾、农民。

tán hé róngyì búguò kěyǐ zhuā zhù jǐ tiáo xiàn huángdì hé huánggōng gōngtíng lǐ de shēnghuó hái yǒu pǔtōng rén guānlì shānggǔ nóngmín · Easier said than done! But you can follow a few threads: the emperors and their palaces, life at court, and ordinary people too: officials, merchants, farmers.

anna 普通人？我还以为历史就是皇上、皇后、皇室和贵族的故事。

pǔtōng rén wǒ hái yǐwéi lìshǐ jiùshì huángshang huánghòu huángshì hé guìzú de gùshi · Ordinary people? I thought history was all about emperors, empresses, the imperial family and nobles.

professor chen 电视剧里是这样。可是一个帝国靠的是千千万万普通人，有的人甚至是奴隶，一辈子在贵族豪华的庄园里干活。

diànshìjù lǐ shì zhèyàng kěshì yí gè dìguó kào de shì qiānqiān wànwàn pǔtōng rén yǒude rén shènzhì shì núlì yíbèizi zài guìzú háohuá de zhuāngyuán lǐ gànhuó · In TV dramas, yes. But an empire rests on millions of ordinary people, some of them even slaves, working all their lives on the nobles' luxurious estates.

anna 以西安为首都的王朝里，哪个最有名？

yǐ Xīān wèi shǒudū de wángcháo lǐ nǎge zuì yǒumíng · Of the dynasties based in Xi'an, which is the most famous?

professor chen 大概是一千多年前的那个王朝。它很开放，丝绸之路上，各国的商贾都来西安做生意。读书人通过考试当官，考第一名的叫状元。

dàgài shì yìqiān duō nián qián de nàge wángcháo tā hěn kāifàng sīchóu zhī lùshang gè guó de shānggǔ dōu lái Xīān zuò shēngyi dúshū rén tōngguò kǎoshì dāng guān kǎo dì yī míng de jiào zhuàngyuan · Probably the one from over a thousand years ago. It was very open: merchants from many countries came to Xi'an along the Silk Road. Scholars became officials through exams, and the one who came top was called the zhuangyuan.

anna 那它是怎么灭亡的？

nà tā shì zěnme mièwáng de · So how did it fall?

professor chen 八世纪中叶发生了一场大乱，对这座城市来说是一场浩劫，很多宏伟的宫殿成了废墟。以后王朝越来越弱，最后被推翻了。

bā shìjì zhōngyè fāshēng le yì chǎng dà luàn duì zhè zuò chéngshì lái shuō shì yì chǎng hàojié hěn duō hóngwěi de gōngdiàn chéng le fèixū yǐhòu wángcháo yuè lái yuè ruò zuìhòu bèi tuīfān le · In the mid-eighth century a great rebellion broke out: a catastrophe for the city, with many magnificent palaces left in ruins. After that the dynasty grew weaker and weaker, and in the end it was overthrown.

anna 一个强大的帝国，最后也会被打倒。

yí gè qiángdà de dìguó zuìhòu yě huì bèi dǎdǎo · Even a mighty empire can be brought down in the end.

professor chen 是啊。古代的皇帝想征服别的国家、瓜分土地，一有战争，就征很多年轻人当兵，打赢了就凯旋回城。可是战争中牺牲的，大多是普通人。

shì a gǔdài de huángdì xiǎng zhēngfú biéde guójiā guāfēn tǔdì yì yǒu zhànzhēng jiù zhēng hěn duō niánqīng rén dāng bīng dǎ yíng le jiù kǎixuán huí chéng kěshì zhànzhēng zhōng xīshēng de dàduō shì pǔtōng rén · Yes.

Emperors of old wanted to conquer other states and carve up their land: whenever war came they called up young men as soldiers, and came home in triumph if they won. But most of those who died in the wars were ordinary people.

anna 我们的展览也要讲这些。博物馆门口有一座纪念碑，是纪念烈士的吧?
wǒmen de zhǎnlǎn yě yào jiǎng zhèxiē bówùguǎn ménkǒu yǒu yí zuò jìniànbēi shì jìniàn lièshì de ba · Our exhibition should talk about that too. There's a monument at the museum entrance: is it in memory of people who died for their country?

professor chen 对，那是近代的历史，很壮烈。博物馆里还有一些老兵的勋章。
duì nà shì jìndài de lìshǐ hěn zhuàngliè bówùguǎn lǐ hái yǒu yìxiē lǎo bīng de xūnzhāng · Yes, that's modern history, and very heroic. The museum also has some old soldiers' medals.

anna 统治、封建、王国，还有出土的青铜器、珍藏的古籍……这么多新词，做这个项目就像一次长征。
tǒngzhì fēngjiàn wángguó hái yǒu chūtǔ de qīngtóngqì zhēncáng de gǔjí zhème duō xīn cí zuò zhège xiàngmù jiù xiàng yí cì chángzhēng · Rule, feudal, kingdom, unearthed bronzes, treasured ancient books... so many new words: this project is going to be a long march.

professor chen 话又说回来，你们年轻人学得快。历史不只是过去，它对后世的影响一直都在。很多家庭世代都住在西安，他们本身就是历史。
huà yòu shuō huilai nǐmen niánqīng rén xué de kuài lìshǐ bù zhǐshì guòqù tā duì hòushì de yǐngxiǎng yìzhí dōu zài hěn duō jiātíng shìdài dōu zhù zài Xīān tāmen běnshēn jiùshì lìshǐ · Then again, you young people learn fast. History isn't just the past: its influence on later generations is always there. Many families have lived in Xi'an for generations: they are history themselves.

anna 幸亏有您帮忙，不然我真不知道从哪儿开始。您就是我们项目的头号功臣!
xìngkuī yǒu nín bāngmáng bùrán wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào cóng nǎr kāishǐ nín jiùshì wǒmen xiàngmù de tóuhào gōngchén · Luckily you're helping: otherwise I really wouldn't know where to start. You're the hero of our project!

professor chen 说得太早了，展览还没开始做呢。
shuō de tài zǎo le zhǎnlǎn hái méi kāishǐ zuò ne · You're speaking too soon: we haven't even started the exhibition.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

臀
tún
buttocks (formal)

腹
fù
belly, abdomen (written)

筋
jīn
tendon, sinew; vein

肾
shèn
kidney

good to know · Dynasties are named + 朝: 唐朝, 宋朝, 明朝, 清朝. 王朝 is the general word, 帝国 an empire, 王国 a kingdom. 皇帝 is the emperor in general; 皇上 is how people spoke to him ("Your Majesty"), so you hear it in every TV drama.

Empires, dynasties and their fall: you can now follow a Chinese history documentary.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 89 armies and weapons

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 12 · history

Talk about armies, weapons and military history in a museum, and say “surely it won’t come to that” with 何至于.....

History museums, news and films are full of military words: you need them to understand, and to talk about peace.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
军事	jūnshì	military affairs; military	他从小就对军事历史很感兴趣。 He has been interested in military history since he was a boy.
军官	jūnguān	army officer	他爷爷以前是一名军官。 His grandfather used to be an army officer.
官兵	guānbīng	officers and soldiers, troops	洪水来了，几千名官兵赶来帮忙。 When the flood came, thousands of troops rushed in to help.
司令	sīlìng	commander	司令站在前面，大声说了几句话。 The commander stood at the front and said a few words loudly.
参谋	cānmóu	staff officer; to give advice	买房子这件事，我请朋友帮我参谋参谋。 I asked a friend to help me think it over before buying the flat.
战士	zhànshì	soldier, fighter	这些战士在山上守了三年。 These soldiers held the mountain for three years.
战友	zhànyǒu	comrade-in-arms	爷爷和他的老战友每年都见一次面。 Grandpa meets up with his old comrades once a year.
海军	hǎijūn	navy	他哥哥在海军当兵。 His older brother serves in the navy.
陆军	lùjūn	army (land forces)	陆军、海军和空军一起参加了演习。 The army, navy and air force all took part in the exercise.
空军	kōngjūn	air force	她小时候的理想是当空军。 As a child she dreamed of joining the air force.
军舰	jūnjiàn	warship	港口里停着几艘军舰。 A few warships are moored in the harbour.
潜艇	qiántǐng	submarine	潜艇可以在海底待几个月。 A submarine can stay under the sea for months.
坦克	tǎnkè	tank (vehicle)	博物馆门口停着一辆旧坦克。 An old tank stands outside the museum.
导弹	dǎodàn	missile	这个博物馆里还有一枚旧导弹。 The museum even has an old missile.
核武器	héwǔqì	nuclear weapon	很多国家都希望世界上不再有核武器。 Many countries hope for a world without nuclear weapons.

炸弹	zhàdàn	bomb; (figurative) bombshell	这条新闻像一颗炸弹，让大家都很吃惊。 The news was a bombshell: everyone was stunned.
炸药	zhàyào	explosive	以前修山路，要用炸药把石头炸{zha4}开。 Building mountain roads used to mean blasting the rock with explosives.
子弹	zǐdàn	bullet	博物馆里陈列着一百年前的子弹。 The museum displays bullets from a hundred years ago.
炮	pào	cannon, artillery	城墙上还放着几门古代的炮。 A few ancient cannons still sit on the city wall.
弓	gōng	bow (weapon)	古代的战士用弓和箭打仗。 Ancient soldiers fought with bows and arrows.
干戈	gāngē	weapons; war (written)	两个人吵了几句，差点儿动起干戈来。 The two of them argued and nearly came to blows.
武力	wǔlì	force, military power	用武力解决不了问题。 Force can't solve the problem.
武装	wǔzhuāng	armed forces; to arm	他带了三台相机，|全副{==fully}武装地去拍照。 He went to take photos fully equipped, with three cameras.
国防	guófáng	national defence	每个国家都很重视国防。 Every country takes national defence seriously.
驻	zhù	to be stationed, based (at)	我们公司有一个小团队常驻西安。 Our company has a small team based in Xi'an.
驻扎	zhùzhā	to be stationed (troops)	古代的军队在这里驻扎过很多年。 Ancient armies were stationed here for many years.
操练	cāoliàn	to drill, train (troops)	战士们每天早上在广场上操练。 The soldiers drill on the square every morning.
演习	yǎnxí	(military) exercise; drill	今天学校有消防演习。 There's a fire drill at school today.
口令	kǒulìng	word of command; password	大家跟着口令一起做动作。 Everyone moves together on the word of command.
代号	dàihào	code name	这个项目|的代号叫“凤凰”。 The project's code name is “Phoenix”.
情报	qíngbào	intelligence, information	你的情报真准，那家店今天果然打折。 Your info was spot on: the shop really does have a sale today.
士气	shìqì	morale	赢了这场比赛，全队士气大增。 Winning this match gave the whole team a big boost in morale.
威慑	wēishè	to deter; deterrence	有人认为核武器的作用主要是威慑。 Some people believe the main role of nuclear weapons is deterrence.

pattern 何至于……: why would it come to ...?

a small cause **，何至于** **such a big reaction** **？**

何至于 asks “how could it go so far as …?” It says a reaction or result is out of proportion: 何至于这么紧张 “why get so nervous?”. Put the small cause first, then 何至于 + the overblown result, as a question.

他只是迟到了五分钟，何至于发这么大的火？ **tā zhǐshì chídào le wǔ fēnzhōng hé zhìyú fā zhème dà de huǒ** He was only five minutes late: why fly into such a rage?

只是一次演习，何至于这么紧张？ **zhǐshì yí cì yǎnxí hé zhìyú zhème jǐnzhāng** It’s just an exercise: why so nervous?

要是早一点儿准备，何至于现在这么忙？ **yàoshi zǎo yìdiǎnr zhǔnbèi hé zhìyú xiànzài zhème máng** If we’d prepared earlier, would we be this busy now?

dialogue the hall of weapons

xiaoming 我对军事历史最感兴趣了。这次正好来西安出差，就跟你们一起来了。
wǒ duì jūnshǐ lìshǐ zuì gǎn xìngqù le zhè cì zhènghǎo lái Xīān chūchāi jiù gēn nǐmen yìqǐ lái le · Military history is my favourite thing. I happened to be in Xi'an on business, so I came along.

anna 欢迎！我们这个项目的代号叫“凤凰”。今天先看看这里。
huānyíng wǒmen zhège xiàngmù de dàihào jiào fènghuáng jīntiān xiān kàn kan zhèlǐ · Welcome! Our project's code name is "Phoenix". Today we're starting here.

professor chen 历代的军队都在西安驻扎过。这儿陈列着两千多年前的弓、刀，城墙上用过的炮，还有一百年前的子弹。
lìdài de jūnduì dōu zài Xīān zhùzhā guo zhèr chénliè zhe liǎngqiān duō nián qián de gōng dāo chéngqiáng shàng yòng guo de pào hái yǒu yìbǎi nián qián de zǐdàn · Armies of every dynasty were stationed in Xi'an. Here they show bows and blades from over two thousand years ago, cannons used on the city wall, and bullets from a hundred years ago.

anna 所谓“干戈”，就是这些武器吧?
suǒwèi gāngē jiùshì zhèxiē wǔqì ba · So 干戈 means weapons like these?

professor chen 对，“干戈”原来是两种武器，后来就指战争。我们常说，不要动干戈，要用和平的办法解决问题。
duì gāngē yuánlái shì liǎng zhǒng wǔqì hòulái jiù zhǐ zhànzhēng wǒmen cháng shuō búyào dòng gāngē yào yòng hépíng de bànfǎ jiějué wèntí · Yes: 干戈 were originally two weapons, and later the word came to mean war. We often say: don't take up arms, solve problems peacefully.

xiaoming 外面广场上还有一辆旧坦克，一枚旧导弹。另一边讲的是海军、陆军和空军，还有军舰、潜艇的模型。
wàimiàn guǎngchǎng shàng hái yǒu yí liàng jiù tǎnkè yì méi jiù dǎodàn lìng yìbiān jiǎng de shì hǎijūn lùjūn hé kōngjūn hái yǒu jūnjiàn qiántǐng de móxíng · Outside on the square there's an old tank and an old missile. Another section covers the navy, army and air force, with models of warships and submarines.

anna 你怎么知道得这么清楚?
nǐ zěnme zhīdào de zhème qīngchu · How do you know all this?

xiaoming 我的情报很准吧？昨天晚上在网上查的。我爷爷以前是军官，小时候常给我讲他和战友的故事。
wǒ de qíngbào hěn zhǔn ba zuótiān wǎnshang zài wǎngshang chá de wǒ yéye yǐqián shì jūnguān xiǎoshíhou cháng gěi wǒ jiǎng tā hé zhànyǒu de gùshi · Good intelligence, eh? I looked it up online last night. My grandpa was an army officer, and when I was little he often told me stories about him and his comrades.

anna 古代的皇帝靠军队统治帝国，打赢了就凯旋回城。
gǔdài de huángdì kào jūnduì tǒngzhì dìguó dǎ yíng le jiù kǎixuán huí chéng · Emperors of old ruled their empires through their armies, and came home in triumph when they won.

professor chen 展览的最后一部分讲核武器。很多国家都在努力，希望有一天世界上不再有核武器。
zhǎnlǎn de zuìhòu yí bùfen jiǎng héwǔqì hěn duō guójiā dōu zài nǔlì xīwàng yǒu yì tiān shìjiè shàng bú zài yǒu héwǔqì · The last part of the exhibition is about nuclear weapons. Many countries are working towards a day when the world has none.

anna 有人说核武器的作用主要是威慑，可是我还是觉得太可怕了。
yǒu rén shuō héwǔqì de zuòyòng zhǔyào shì wēishè kěshì wǒ háishi juéde tài kěpà le · Some say their main role is deterrence, but I still find them terrifying.

professor chen 所以和平才这么珍贵。国防是为了保护家园，不是为了征服别人。
suǒyǐ hépíng cái zhème zhēnguì guófáng shì wèile bǎohù jiāyuán bú shì wèile zhēngfú biérén · That's why peace is so precious. National defence is for protecting your home, not conquering others.

anna 我们的讲解要不要放一段战士们操练的视频？跟着口令一起动，很整齐。
wǒmen de jiǎngjiě yào búyào fàng yí duàn zhànshìmen cāoliàn de shìpín gēn zhe kǒulìng yìqǐ dòng hěn zhěngqí · Should our guide include a video of soldiers drilling? Moving together on the word of command, all in step.

xiaoming 好主意。那些官兵在洪水的时候也来帮忙救人，司令自己都下水了。
hǎo zhǔyi nàxiē guānbīng zài hóngshuǐ de shíhou yě lái bāngmáng jiù rén sīlìng zìjǐ dōu xià shuǐ le · Good idea. Those troops also came to help in the floods: the commander went into the water himself.

anna 刘经理刚发来消息，说我们的计划书要改，明天就得交。
Liújīnglǐ gāng fā lái xiāoxi shuō wǒmen de jìhuà shū yào gǎi míngtiān jiù děi jiāo · Manager Liu just messaged: our proposal needs changing, and it's due tomorrow.

xiaoming 只是改一改，何至于这么紧张？今天晚上我给你参谋参谋。
zhǐshì gǎi yi gai hé zhìyú zhème jǐnzhāng jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ gěi nǐ cānmóu cānmóu · It's just a few changes: why get so worked up? I'll help you think it through tonight.

anna 好！你一说，我的士气又回来了。
hǎo nǐ yì shuō wǒ de shìqì yòu huílái le · Great! Now you say that, my morale's back.

professor chen 你们公司有一个小团队常驻这儿吧？明天大家一起全副武装：电脑、相机、笔记本。
nǐmen gōngsī yǒu yí gè xiǎo tuánduì cháng zhù zhèr ba míngtiān dàjiā yìqǐ quánfù wǔzhuāng diànnǎo xiàngjī bǐjìběn · Your company has a small team based here, right? Tomorrow everyone comes fully equipped: laptops, cameras, notebooks.

anna 对了，这条消息像一颗炸弹：博物馆说下个月就要开幕！
duì le zhè tiáo xiāoxi xiàng yì kē zhàdàn bówùguǎn shuō xià gè yuè jiù yào kāimù · Oh, and this news is a bombshell: the museum says it's opening next month!

xiaoming 非得这么快吗？那我们要像修山路一样，用炸药把困难都炸开！
fēiděi zhème kuài ma nà wǒmen yào xiàng xiū shān lù yíyàng yòng zhàyào bǎ kùnnan dōu zhà kāi · Does it have to be so soon? Then we'll have to blast through the problems like building a mountain road with explosives!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

搏
bó
beat, fight

秃
tū
bald; bare

桑
sāng
mulberry (here for sound)

嗅
xiù
to sniff, smell

good to know · 军 makes the forces: 陆军 army, 海军 navy, 空军 air force, 军官 officer, 军舰 warship, 军事 military affairs. 参谋 is also an everyday verb: 帮我参谋参谋 "help me think it over" before a big purchase or decision.

From bows to submarines, you can now follow a military museum, and talk about why peace matters.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 90 attack and siege

Retell a siege from history, use battle words for sport and work, and answer “true, but …” with 话是这么说.

Battle words are everywhere in Chinese: news headlines, football commentary and office talk “attack” markets and “gear up” for exams.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
攻	gōng	to attack; to study hard at	她白天上班，晚上攻外语。 She works by day and studies foreign languages hard at night.
进攻	jìngōng	to attack, go on the offensive	下半场我们队一直在进攻。 Our team was on the attack all through the second half.
攻势	gōngshì	offensive, attack (noun)	对手的攻势很强，我们要守住。 The other side is attacking hard: we have to hold on.
攻克	gōngkè	to capture; to crack (a hard problem)	科学家们终于攻克了这个难题。 The scientists have finally cracked this hard problem.
突击	tūjī	sudden attack; to do in a rush (cram)	考试前一天他才突击复习。 He only crammed the day before the exam.
袭击	xíjī	to strike, hit (by surprise)	台风袭击了南方沿海城市。 A typhoon struck the cities on the southern coast.
轰炸	hōngzhà	to bomb; (figurative) bombard	每天手机上都有广告轰炸，真烦人。 Every day my phone bombards me with ads: so annoying.
侵略	qīnlüè	to invade (aggression)	这个国家历史上多次受到侵略。 This country was invaded many times in its history.
入侵	rùqīn	to invade, intrude	电脑被病毒入侵了。 The computer has been infected by a virus.
侵占	qīnzhàn	to seize, occupy illegally	公共的地方不能被私人侵占。 Public space must not be taken over by private owners.
占领	zhànlǐng	to occupy, capture; take over (a market)	这款手机很快占领了市场。 This phone quickly took over the market.
掠夺	lüèduó	to plunder, loot	不能为了发展而掠夺大自然的资源。 We mustn’t plunder nature’s resources for the sake of development.
屠杀	túshā	to massacre	纪念碑上记录着那段历史：很多百姓被屠杀了。 The monument records that history: many ordinary people were massacred.
歼灭	jiānmiè	to wipe out (an enemy force)	书上说，那一次敌人的一万多人被全部歼灭。 The book says that time more than ten thousand enemy troops were wiped out.

摧毁	cuīhuǐ	to destroy, smash	大地震摧毁了这个小城。 The great earthquake destroyed the little town.
重创	zhòngchuāng	to inflict heavy losses on, badly damage	这次台风重创了当地的农业。 The typhoon dealt a heavy blow to local farming.
斩	zhǎn	to chop, cut off	他一刀斩断了绳子。 He cut the rope with a single stroke.
包围	bāowéi	to surround, encircle	歌手一出来，就被歌迷包围了。 As soon as the singer came out, she was surrounded by fans.
封锁	fēngsuǒ	to block off, seal off	大雪封锁了上山的路。 Heavy snow has blocked the road up the mountain.
埋伏	máifú	to lie in ambush; ambush	我们在门后埋伏好，等他一进门就喊“生日快乐”！ We'll hide behind the door and shout “Happy birthday!” the moment he walks in!
潜伏	qiánfú	to lie hidden, be latent	这种病毒在身体里可以潜伏很多天。 This virus can lie hidden in the body for many days.
掩护	yǎnhù	to cover, shield (someone)	你先走，我来掩护你。 You go first: I'll cover for you.
交锋	jiāofēng	to cross swords, clash	这两支球队今天晚上再次交锋。 The two teams meet again tonight.
对峙	duìzhì	to stand off, confront each other	两边对峙了三个月，谁也不让步。 The two sides faced off for three months, and neither gave way.
作战	zuòzhàn	to fight, do battle	我们是一个团队，要一起作战。 We're a team: we fight together.
出征	chūzhēng	to set out (on a campaign or competition)	国家队明天出征世界杯。 The national team sets off for the World Cup tomorrow.
出动	chūdòng	to set out, be sent out (police, crews)	火灾发生后，消防队马上出动了。 After the fire broke out, the fire brigade was sent out at once.
进军	jìnjūn	to march on; to move into (a market)	这家公司准备进军国外市场。 The company is getting ready to move into markets abroad.
部署	bùshǔ	to deploy, arrange	经理已经部署好了下个月的工作。 The manager has already planned out next month's work.
备战	bèizhàn	to prepare for war; gear up (for an exam)	同学们都在紧张地备战高考。 The students are busy gearing up for the college entrance exam.
补给	bǔjǐ	supplies; to supply	爬山的人在半山腰补给了水和食物。 The climbers took on water and food halfway up the mountain.
两翼	liǎngyì	both wings, both flanks	球队从两翼进攻，打得很漂亮。 The team attacked down both wings and played beautifully.
前线	qiánxiàn	front line	护士们一直在前线救人。 The nurses have been saving lives on the front line all along.

阵地	zhèndì	position (held by troops); front, platform	士兵们守住了阵地。 The soldiers held their position.
战场	zhànchǎng	battlefield	这里以前是战场，现在是一片农田。 This used to be a battlefield; now it's farmland.

pattern 话是这么说: that may be so, but ...

someone's advice | 。话是这么说， | (可是 / 不过) the reality

话是这么说 accepts what someone said in principle, then points to the reality: "that's all very well, but ...". It is usually followed by 可是, 不过 or 但是. Use it to disagree politely.

"别担心。""话是这么说，可是明天就要交了。" **bié dānxīn huà shì zhème shuō kěshì míngtiān jiù yào jiāo le** "Don't worry." "That's all very well, but it's due tomorrow."

话是这么说，可是谁有那么多时间呢？ **huà shì zhème shuō kěshì shéi yǒu nàme duō shíjiān ne** True enough, but who has that much time?

多运动对身体好。话是这么说，不过我每天都加班。 **duō yùndòng duì shēntǐ hǎo huà shì zhème shuō búguò wǒ měi tiān dōu jiābān** Exercise is good for you. That may be so, but I work late every day.

dialogue the wall under siege

professor chen 为了安全起见，城墙晚上不开放，我们趁现在走一段。这座城墙几百年来经历过很多次战争。
wèile ānquán qǐ jiàn chéngqiáng wǎnshang bù kāifàng wǒmen chèn xiànzài zǒu yí duàn zhè zuò chéngqiáng jǐ bǎi nián lái jīnglì guo hěn duō cì zhànzhēng · For safety's sake the wall is closed at night, so let's walk a stretch now. Over the centuries this wall has been through many wars.

anna 敌人来进攻的时候，城里的人怎么办？
dírén lái jìngōng de shíhou chéng lǐ de rén zěnme bàn · What did people in the city do when an enemy attacked?

professor chen 敌人常常先包围城市，封锁所有的路，让城里得不到补给。然后从两翼一起攻城，攻势很强。
dírén chángcháng xiān bāowéi chéngshì fēngsuǒ suǒyǒu de lù ràng chéng lǐ dé bu dào bǔjǐ ránhòu cóng liǎngyì yìqǐ gōng chéng gōngshì hěn qiáng · The enemy would often surround the city first and block every road so no supplies could get in. Then they attacked the walls from both flanks, with a fierce assault.

xiaoming 守城的战士就在城墙上作战，用弓和炮守住阵地吧？
shǒu chéng de zhànshì jiù zài chéngqiáng shàng zuòzhàn yòng gōng hé pào shǒu zhù zhèndì ba · And the soldiers defending it fought from the wall, holding their position with bows and cannons?

professor chen 对。有时候两边对峙好几个月。也有人晚上出城打听情报、突击敌人，或者在城外埋伏，袭击敌人的补给，斩断他们的后路。有一次，守城的人歼灭了敌人的一支部队。
duì yǒu shíhou liǎng biān duìzhì hǎo jǐ gè yuè yě yǒu rén wǎnshang chū chéng dǎting qíngbào tūjī dírén huòzhě zài chéng wài máifú xíjī dírén de bǔjǐ zhǎn duàn tāmen de hòu lù yǒu yí cì shǒu chéng de rén jiānmiè le dírén de yì zhī bùduì · Yes. Sometimes the two sides faced off for months. Some would slip out at night to gather intelligence and make surprise attacks, or lie in ambush outside the walls to raid the enemy's supplies and cut off their retreat. Once, the defenders wiped out a whole enemy unit.

anna 这儿以前就是战场啊。最后城被攻克了吗？
zhèr yǐqián jiùshì zhànchǎng a zuìhòu chéng bèi gōngkè le ma · So this was a battlefield. Was the city captured in the end?

professor chen 有几次被攻克了。侵略者占领城市以后，掠夺财物，摧毁房子，甚至屠杀百姓，城市受到重创，那是一场浩劫。我们记住这些历史，是为了珍惜和平。
yǒu jǐ cì bèi gōngkè le qīnlüè zhě zhànlǐng chéngshì yǐhòu lüèduó cáiwù cuīhuǐ fángzi shènzhì túshā bǎi xìng chéngshì shòudào zhòngchuāng nà shì yì chǎng hàojié wǒmen jì zhù zhèxiē lìshǐ shì wèile zhēnxī hépíng · A few times. When invaders took the city they looted it, destroyed houses, and even massacred its people: the city suffered terribly; it was a catastrophe. We remember this history so that we treasure peace.

anna 我们的讲解里，前线的官兵和城里的普通人都要讲。
wǒmen de jiǎngjiě lǐ qiánxiàn de guānbīng hé chéng lǐ de pǔtōng rén dōu yào jiǎng · Our guide should cover both the troops on the front line and the ordinary people in the city.

xiaoming 好了，历史讲完了，回酒店！今天晚上我们也要作战：计划书明天早上就要交。
hǎo le lìshǐ jiǎng wán le huí jiǔdiàn jīntiān wǎnshang wǒmen yě yào zuòzhàn jìhuà shū míngtiān zǎoshang jiù yào jiāo · Right, history's done: back to the hotel! We have a battle of our own tonight: the proposal's due tomorrow morning.

anna 刘经理像司令一样，已经部署好了：我写文字，小张做图，你帮我们检查。我们一起备战，士气很高，一定能攻克。
Liújīnglǐ xiàng sīlìng yíyàng yǐjīng bùshǔ hǎo le wǒ xiě wénzì xiǎo zhāng zuò tú nǐ bāng wǒmen jiǎnchá wǒmen yìqǐ bèizhàn shìqì hěn gāo yídìng néng gōngkè · Manager Liu has it all planned out like a commander: I write, Xiao Zhang does the graphics, and you check our work. We're gearing up together and morale is high: we'll crack it.

xiaoming 那你先早一点儿休息，十二点以后的部分我来。
nà nǐ xiān zǎo yìdiǎnr xiūxi shíèr diǎn yǐhòu de bùfen wǒ lái · Then you get some rest first: I'll do the part after midnight.

anna 话是这么说，可是我怎么睡得着？电视上还有球赛呢！
huà shì zhème shuō kěshì wǒ zěnme shuì de zháo diànshì shàng hái yǒu qiú sài ne · That's all very well, but

how could I sleep? There's a match on TV!

xiaoming 今天晚上是两个老对手交锋。你看，我们的队一直在进攻，从两翼突击，打得真漂亮！
jīntiān wǎnshang shì liǎng gè lǎo duìshǒu jiāofēng nǐ kàn wǒmen de duì yìzhí zài jìngōng cóng liǎngyì tūjī dǎ de zhēn piàoliang · Tonight two old rivals meet. Look, our team is on the attack all the time, breaking down both wings: beautiful football!

anna 我的电脑怎么这么慢？不会被病毒入侵了吧？
wǒ de diànnǎo zěnme zhème màn bú huì bèi bìngdú rùqīn le ba · Why is my laptop so slow? It can't have been hit by a virus, can it?

xiaoming 有的病毒能在电脑里潜伏很久。别担心，技术部已经出动了，马上来修。
yǒude bìngdú néng zài diànnǎo lǐ qiánfú hěn jiǔ bié dānxīn jìshù bù yǐjīng chūdòng le mǎshàng lái xiū · Some viruses can hide in a computer for a long time. Don't worry, IT has been sent out and will fix it now.

anna 手机上的广告也在轰炸我……对了，小张说你的位子被别人侵占了？
shǒujī shàng de guǎnggào yě zài hōngzhà wǒ duì le xiǎo zhāng shuō nǐ de wèizi bèi biérén qīnzhàn le · And my phone's bombarding me with ads… oh, Xiao Zhang says someone's taken your seat?

xiaoming ……你们在门后干什么？
nǐmen zài mén hòu gàn shénme · …What are you all doing behind the door?

anna 生日快乐！我们在这儿埋伏了半天了！小张帮我们掩护，你一点儿都没发现。
shēngrì kuàilè wǒmen zài zhèr máifú le bàntiān le xiǎo zhāng bāng wǒmen yǎnhù nǐ yìdiǎnr dōu méi fāxiàn · Happy birthday! We've been lying in ambush for ages! Xiao Zhang covered for us, and you didn't notice a thing.

xiaoming 你们……我还以为今天晚上真的要出征呢！
nǐmen wǒ hái yǐwéi jīntiān wǎnshang zhēn de yào chūzhēng ne · You lot… I thought we really were going into battle tonight!

anna 吃完蛋糕，再进军计划书！
chī wán dàngāo zài jìnjūn jìhuà shū · Cake first, then we march on the proposal!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

泌
mì
seep

痰
tán
phlegm

苏
sū
revive

喘
chuǎn
to pant, gasp

good to know · Battle words at work and in sport: 进军市场 (move into a market), 占领市场 (take over a market), 备战高考 (gear up for exams), 突击复习 (cram), 攻克难题 (crack a problem). 进攻, 攻势, 两翼, 交锋 are all standard football commentary words.

Sieges, ambushes and offensives: you can follow a history programme, and a football match.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 91 defence and peace

Talk about defence, retreat and peace in history and in daily life, and argue "even supposing …" with 退一步说.

Defending, giving way and holding firm are what every negotiation, debate and family argument is made of.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
战略	zhànlüè	strategy	公司制定了新的发展战略。 The company has drawn up a new development strategy.
战术	zhànshù	tactics	教练在比赛中换了战术。 The coach changed tactics during the match.
战役	zhànyì	battle, campaign	这场战役改变了整个战争。 This battle changed the whole war.
防御	fángyù	to defend; defence	这支球队防御很强，很难进球。 This team's defence is so strong it's hard to score.
防卫	fángwèi	to defend (oneself)	遇到危险的时候，人有权利防卫自己。 When in danger, people have the right to defend themselves.
保卫	bǎowèi	to defend, safeguard	人们拿起武器保卫自己的家园。 People took up arms to defend their homes.
捍卫	hànwèi	to uphold, defend (rights, honour)	我们要捍卫自己的权利。 We must stand up for our rights.
守护	shǒuhù	to guard, watch over	妈妈一夜守护在孩子身边。 The mother watched over her child all night.
戒备	jièbèi	to be on guard, on alert	大会期间，城里戒备很严。 During the conference, security in the city is tight.
堡垒	bǎolěi	fortress, stronghold	这座古城像一座堡垒，很难攻下来。 The old city was like a fortress, very hard to take.
屏障	píngzhàng	barrier, protective screen	这片山是城市北边的天然屏障。 These mountains are the city's natural barrier to the north.
抵挡	dǐdǎng	to keep out, withstand	这件大衣抵挡不了这么冷的风。 This coat can't keep out such a cold wind.
抵御	dǐyù	to resist, guard against	古人修长城是为了抵御北方的进攻。 People of old built the Great Wall to fend off attacks from the north.
反击	fǎnjī	to strike back, counter-attack	讨论的时候，他马上反击了。 In the discussion, he hit back at once.
反抗	fǎnkàng	to resist, rebel against	受到不公平的对待，他们开始反抗。 Treated unfairly, they began to resist.

撤退	chètuì	to retreat, withdraw	天气太差了，登山队决定撤退。 The weather was too bad, so the climbing team decided to turn back.
退却	tuìquè	to retreat; shrink back	遇到困难，她从来不退却。 She never shrinks back from a difficulty.
投降	tóuxiáng	to surrender	好了好了，我投降，你说得对。 All right, all right, I give up: you're right.
俘虏	fúlǔ	prisoner of war; to capture	战争结束后，俘虏们都回家了。 After the war, the prisoners all went home.
俘获	fúhuò	to capture; win (hearts)	这部电影俘获了很多观众的心。 The film won the hearts of many viewers.
逃亡	táowáng	to flee, go into exile	战争中，很多人不得不逃亡到外地。 In the war, many people had to flee to other places.
收复	shōufù	to recover (lost territory)	几年以后，他们收复了失去的城市。 A few years later, they recovered the cities they had lost.
冷战	lěngzhàn	cold war; (figurative) silent treatment	他们俩吵完架，已经冷战三天了。 After their row, the two of them haven't spoken for three days.
海盗	hǎidào	pirate	孩子们最喜欢玩海盗游戏。 The kids love playing pirates.
矛头	máotóu	spearhead; target (of criticism)	大家把矛头都对准了经理。 Everyone turned their criticism on the manager.

pattern 退一步说: even supposing …, at the very least

退一步说， **就算 / 即使 the worst case** **，也 it's not so bad**

退一步说 "taking a step back" concedes the worst case for argument's sake: "even supposing …". It is usually followed by 就算 or 即使 and a clause with 也. Use it to calm a worry or win an argument.

退一步说，就算没赶上，下次还有机会。 **tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn méi gǎnshàng xià cì hái yǒu jīhuì** Even supposing we miss it, there'll be another chance.

退一步说，即使展览推迟，我们也有更多时间准备。 **tuì yí bù shuō jíshǐ zhǎnlǎn tuīchí wǒmen yě yǒu gèng duō shíjiān zhǔnbèi** At worst, if the exhibition is postponed, we get more time to prepare.

退一步说，就算你不喜欢他，也要尊重他。 **tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn nǐ bù xǐhuan tā yě yào zūnzhòng tā** Even if you don't like him, you should respect him.

dialogue the hall of peace

professor chen 最后一部分讲防御与和平。西安南边的山是这座城市的天然屏障，城墙就像一座堡垒。

zuìhòu yí bùfen jiǎng fángyù yǔ hépíng Xīān nán biān de shān shì zhè zuò chéngshì de tiānrán píngzhàng chéngqiáng jiù xiàng yí zuò bǎoděi · The last section is about defence and peace. The mountains south of Xi'an are the city's natural barrier, and the wall was like a fortress.

anna 古人修长城，也是为了抵御北方的进攻吧?

gǔrén xiū Chángchéng yě shì wèile dǐyù běifāng de jìngōng ba · And people of old built the Great Wall to fend off attacks from the north, right?

professor chen 对。可是光靠城墙抵挡不了敌人的攻势。打仗要有战略，每一场战役还要有好的战术。防御好了，才能反击。

duì kěshì guāng kào chéngqiáng dǐdǎng bu liǎo dírén de gōngshì dǎzhàng yào yǒu zhànlüè měi yì chǎng zhànyì hái yào yǒu hǎo de zhànshù fángyù hǎo le cáinéng fǎnjī · Yes. But walls alone can't hold back an enemy's assault. War needs a strategy, and every battle needs good tactics. Only with a good defence can you strike back.

xiaoming 有一个故事说，城里的人坚持保卫自己的家园，敌人包围了城市，攻了三个月，最后只好撤退了。

yǒu yí gè gùshi shuō chéng lǐ de rén jiānchí bǎowèi zìjǐ de jiāyuán dírén bāowéi le chéngshì gōng le sān gè yuè zuìhòu zhǐhǎo chètuì le · One story says the townspeople held firm defending their homes: the enemy surrounded the city and attacked for three months, and in the end had to withdraw.

professor chen 也有失败的时候：有的城被敌人占领了，有的投降了，士兵成了俘虏，百姓不得不逃亡。过了几年，才收复回来。

yě yǒu shībài de shíhou yǒude chéng bèi dírén zhànlǐng le yǒude tóuxiáng le shìbīng chéng le fúlǔ bǎi xìng bùdébù táowáng guò le jǐ nián cái shōufù huilai · There were defeats too: some cities were occupied, some surrendered, the soldiers were taken prisoner and the people had to flee. Only years later were the cities recovered.

anna 城被封锁的时候，普通人也会反抗吗?

chéng bèi fēngsuǒ de shíhou pǔtōng rén yě huì fǎnkàng ma · When a city was blockaded, did ordinary people resist too?

professor chen 会。面对侵略，很多人没有退却，用生命捍卫了自己的城市。

huì miànduì qīnlüè hěn duō rén méiyǒu tuìquè yòng shēngmìng hànwèi le zìjǐ de chéngshì · They did. Faced with invasion, many didn't shrink back, and defended their city with their lives.

anna 这部分的最后，我想讲二十世纪的冷战，再放一句话：“守护和平，比赢得战争更难。”

zhè bùfen de zuìhòu wǒ xiǎng jiǎng èrshí shìjì de lěngzhàn zài fàng yí jù huà shǒuhù hépíng bǐ yíngdé zhànzhēng gèng nán · At the end of this part I want to cover the Cold War, then show one line: "Keeping the peace is harder than winning a war."

professor chen 好！这句话一定能俘获观众的心。

hǎo zhè jù huà yídìng néng fúhuò guānzhòng de xīn · Good! That line is sure to win visitors' hearts.

xiaoming 儿童区可以做一个海盗游戏：海盗来袭击，孩子们学会怎么防卫，又不打人。

értóng qū kěyǐ zuò yí gè hǎidào yóuxì hǎidào lái xíjī háizimen xuéhuì zěnme fángwèi yòu bù dǎ rén · The children's area could have a pirate game: the pirates attack, and kids learn how to defend themselves without hurting anyone.

anna 刘经理来电话了……什么？开幕可能要推迟?

Liújīnglǐ lái diànhuà le shénme kāimù kěnéng yào tuīchí · Manager Liu's calling... what? The opening might be postponed?

xiaoming 会上大家肯定七嘴八舌，矛头都会对准我们。

huì shàng dàjiā kěndìng qīzuǐ bāshé máotóu dōu huì duì zhǔn wǒmen · At the meeting everyone will talk at once, and they'll all point the finger at us.

anna 我这几天忽冷忽热，现在头更疼了。
wǒ zhè jǐ tiān hūlěng hūrè xiànzài tóu gèng téng le · I've had a fever on and off these last few days, and now my headache's worse.

professor chen 别急。退一步说，就算推迟一个星期，也不是什么大事。说不定我们还能准备得更好。
bié jí tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn tuīchí yí gè xīngqī yě bú shì shénme dàshì shuōbudìng wǒmen hái néng zhǔnbèi de gèng hǎo · Don't panic. Even supposing it's postponed a week, that's no big deal. We might even be better prepared.

xiaoming 这几天你东奔西走，太累了。好好休息，别跟我们打冷战就行。
zhè jǐ tiān nǐ dōngbēn xīzǒu tài lèi le hǎohǎo xiūxi bié gēn wǒmen dǎ lěngzhàn jiù xíng · You've been running around all week: you're worn out. Get some rest, and don't give us the silent treatment.

anna 好了好了，我投降。不过博物馆最近戒备很严，明天进门别忘了带证件。
hǎo le hǎo le wǒ tóuxiáng búguò bówùguǎn zuìjìn jièbèi hěn yán míngtiān jìn mén bié wàng le dài zhèngjiàn · All right, all right, I give up. But security at the museum is tight right now, so don't forget your ID tomorrow.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

胀
zhàng
swollen, bloated

瘫
tān
paralysed; to collapse

聋
lóng
deaf

哑
yǎ
mute; hoarse

good to know · 保卫 (defend a place), 捍卫 (uphold rights, honour, the truth), 守护 (watch over someone you love), 防卫 (defend yourself), 防御 (defence in general, also in sport). Everyday war words: 冷战 (the silent treatment), 我投降 (I give up), 矛头对准 (to point the finger at).

Defend, retreat, hold firm, give in gracefully: you can now argue a case in Chinese and know when to step back.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 92 how long and in what order

Talk about time, schedules and order (first, in parallel, overlapping), and give a cause with 因……而……

Every project lives on a timeline: countdowns, overlaps, what goes first. This is the language of planning.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
时隔	shígé	(after) an interval of …	时隔十年，他又回到了这座城市。 Ten years later, he came back to the city.
时段	shíduàn	time slot, period	晚上七点到九点是看电视的黄金时段。 Seven to nine in the evening is prime time for TV.
耗时	hàoshí	to take time, be time-consuming	这个工作很耗时，要慢慢来。 This job is time-consuming: take it slowly.
历时	lìshí	to last, take (a period)	这座桥历时三年才修好。 The bridge took three years to build.
短暂	duǎnzàn	brief, short-lived	我们的见面虽然很短暂，但是很愉快。 Our meeting was brief, but very pleasant.
流逝	liúshì	to pass, slip away (time)	时间流逝得真快，一年又过去了。 Time flies: another year has gone.
推移	tuīyí	to pass, move on (time)	随着时间的推移，大家慢慢忘了这件事。 As time went on, people gradually forgot about it.
消磨	xiāomó	to while away, wear down	他每天在网上消磨时间。 He whiles away his time online every day.
适时	shìshí	timely, at the right moment	老师适时地给了他一些鼓励。 The teacher encouraged him at just the right moment.
同期	tóngqī	the same period (last year, etc.)	今年游客比去年同期多了两成。 Visitors are up 20 per cent on the same period last year.
历届	lìjiè	all previous (sessions, years)	历届毕业生的照片都挂在这面墙上。 Photos of every past graduating class hang on this wall.
年均	niánjūn	annual average; average per year	这个城市年均气温十五度。 The city's average annual temperature is 15 degrees.
年限	niánxiàn	fixed number of years, term	这台机器的使用年限是十年。 This machine has a service life of ten years.
倒计时	dàojìshí	countdown; to count down	离开幕还有十天，倒计时开始了！ Ten days until the opening: the countdown has begun!
倒数	dàoshǔ	to count backwards; from the bottom	他考了全班倒数第一。 He came bottom of the class.

中途	zhōngtú	halfway, on the way	他看电影看到中途就睡着了。 He fell asleep halfway through the film.
间隙	jiànxì	gap, interval, break	他利用工作的间隙学习中文。 He studies Chinese in the gaps in his work.
空隙	kòngxì	gap, space; spare moment	书架上已经没有空隙了。 There's no space left on the bookshelf.
临近	línjìn	to approach, be close to	临近春节，火车票越来越难买。 As Spring Festival approaches, train tickets get harder to buy.
临	lín	just before; to face	临走的时候，他把钥匙给了我。 Just before leaving, he gave me the key.
旬	xún	period of ten days; ten years (of age)	爷爷已经年过七旬了。 Grandpa is already over seventy.
首批	shǒupī	the first batch	首批游客明天上午就到。 The first group of visitors arrives tomorrow morning.
序	xù	order, sequence; preface	这本书的序是一位老教授写的。 The preface to this book was written by an old professor.
序列	xùliè	series, sequence	这些文物按时间顺序排成一个序列。 These relics are arranged in a time sequence.
次序	cìxù	order, sequence	请大家按次序进场。 Please go in in order.
编号	biānhào	serial number; to number	每件藏品都有一个编号。 Every item in the collection has a serial number.
行列	hángliè	ranks, ranks of (people)	越来越多的年轻人加入了志愿者的行列。 More and more young people are joining the ranks of volunteers.
并列	bìngliè	to be side by side, tie	他们俩并列第一名。 The two of them tied for first place.
并行	bìngxíng	to run side by side, in parallel	这两个项目可以并行，不用等。 These two projects can run in parallel: no need to wait.
平行	píngxíng	parallel; at the same time	这两条路是平行的，永远不会碰到一起。 These two roads are parallel: they will never meet.
重叠	chóngdié	to overlap	这两个会议的时间重叠了。 The two meetings overlap.
重合	chónghé	to coincide, overlap exactly	两张图放在一起，正好重合。 Put the two pictures together and they match exactly.
交叉	jiāochā	to cross, intersect	两条路在这里交叉。 The two roads cross here.
环绕	huánrào	to surround, revolve around	这座小城被青山环绕着。 The little town is surrounded by green hills.
纵横	zònghéng	criss-cross; vertical and horizontal	老城里的小街纵横交错。 The little streets of the old town criss-cross each other.

pattern 因……而……: because of …, (so) …

subject 因 cause 而 result

因 + cause + 而 + result is the written way to say “because of …, …”. Both parts sit inside one clause: 开幕因施工而推迟 “the opening was delayed because of building work”. It is common in news, notices and essays.

很多航班因大雪而取消。 **hěn duō hángbān yīn dà xuě ér qǔxiāo** Many flights were cancelled because of heavy snow.

他因工作忙而没来参加。 **tā yīn gōngzuò máng ér méi lái cānjiā** He didn’t come because he was busy with work.

这座城因丝绸之路而出名。 **zhè zuò chéng yīn sīchóu zhī lù ér chūmíng** This city became famous because of the Silk Road.

dialogue the countdown

anna 博物馆发了通知：“兹定于三月下旬举行开幕式。”开幕因施工而推迟了十天。
bówùguǎn fā le tōngzhī zī dìng yú sān yuè xiàxún jǔxíng kāimùshì kāimù yīn shīgōng ér tuīchí le shí tiān · The museum has sent a notice: “The opening ceremony is hereby set for late March.” It’s been pushed back ten days because of building work.

xiaoming 这样一来，我们正好可以把藏品的次序重新排一下。
zhèyàng yì lái wǒmen zhènghǎo kěyǐ bǎ cángpǐn de cìxù chóngxīn pái yíxià · That gives us the chance to put the exhibits back in the right order.

professor chen 展览分为若干部分，按时间顺序排成一个序列。不过有几个王朝是并行的，时间有重叠，不能简单地排成一条线。
zhǎnlǎn fēnwéi ruògān bùfen àn shíjiān shùnxù pái chéng yí gè xùliè búguò yǒu jǐ gè wángcháo shì bìngxíng de shíjiān yǒu chóngdié bù néng jiǎndān de pái chéng yì tiáo xiàn · The exhibition is divided into several parts, arranged as a time sequence. But some dynasties ran in parallel and overlap, so you can’t just put them in one line.

anna 那我们画两条平行的时间线，在重合的地方交叉一下？
nà wǒmen huà liǎng tiáo píngxíng de shíjiān xiàn zài chónghé de dìfang jiāochā yíxià · Then shall we draw two parallel timelines that cross where they coincide?

professor chen 好主意。每件藏品都有一个编号，你们按编号放进去就行。
hǎo zhǔyi měi jiàn cángpǐn dōu yǒu yí gè biānhào nǐmen àn biānhào fàng jinqu jiù xíng · Good idea. Every object has a serial number: just put them in by number.

xiaoming 一共两千多件，这个工作太耗时了，简直是一场战役。
yígòng liǎngqiān duō jiàn zhège gōngzuò tài hàoshí le jiǎnzhí shì yì chǎng zhànyì · More than two thousand items: this is going to take forever. It’s a real campaign.

anna 我们可以把文字和图片两个部分并行做，不用等。
wǒmen kěyǐ bǎ wénzì hé túpiàn liǎng gè bùfen bìngxíng zuò búyòng děng · We can do the text and the images in parallel: no need to wait.

professor chen 还有，西安被群山环绕，这些山就是城市的屏障。老城里的街道纵横交错，地图那部分要画清楚。
hái yǒu Xīān bèi qún shān huánrào zhèxiē shān jiùshì chéngshì de píngzhàng lǎo chéng lǐ de jiēdào zònghéng jiāo cuò dìtú nà bùfen yào huà qīngchu · And Xi’an is surrounded by mountains, which act as the city’s barrier, and the old town’s streets criss-cross: the map section has to be clear.

anna 博物馆说，这里年均有三百万游客。今年春节的游客比去年同期多了两成。首批游客开幕那天上午就到。
bówùguǎn shuō zhèlǐ niánjūn yǒu sānbǎi wàn yóukè jīnnián Chūnjié de yóukè bǐ qùnián tóngqī duō le liǎng chéng shǒupī yóukè kāimù nà tiān shàngwǔ jiù dào · The museum says it gets three million visitors a year on average, and this Spring Festival visitor numbers were up 20 per cent on the same period last year. The first group arrives the morning of the opening.

xiaoming 怎么着？还要准备一个历届展览的回顾？
zěnmezhe hái yào zhǔnbèi yí gè lìjiè zhǎnlǎn de huígù · What’s this? We’re also preparing a look back at all their previous exhibitions?

anna 对，刘经理临走的时候说的。不过这个可以放在最后。
duì Liújīnglǐ lín zǒu de shíhou shuō de búguò zhège kěyǐ fàng zài zuìhòu · Yes, Manager Liu said so just before she left. But it can go last.

professor chen 这么着吧，你们先做第一部分。我利用上课的间隙帮你们看文字。
zhèmezhe ba nǐmen xiān zuò dì yī bùfen wǒ lìyòng shàngkè de jiànxì bāng nǐmen kàn wénzì · Tell you what: you do the first part first. I’ll check your text in the gaps between my classes.

xiaoming 离开幕还有二十天，倒计时开始了！大家准备作战！
lí kāimù hái yǒu èrshí tiān dàojìshí kāishǐ le dàjiā zhǔnbèi zuòzhàn · Twenty days to the opening: the countdown has begun! Everyone get ready for battle!

anna 时间流逝得真快。随着时间的推移，我越来越喜欢这个项目了。
shíjiān liúshì de zhēn kuài suízhe shíjiān de tuīyí wǒ yuè lái yuè xǐhuan zhège xiàngmù le · Time flies. The longer it goes on, the more I love this project.

xiaoming 你可别中途投降，也别在网上消磨时间。
nǐ kě bié zhōngtú tóuxiáng yě bié zài wǎngshang xiāomó shíjiān · Don't surrender halfway, and don't waste time online.

anna 放心吧！我们一定不会倒数第一。上次公司比赛，我们和另一个团队并列第一呢。
fàngxīn ba wǒmen yídìng bú huì dàoshǔ dì yī shàng cì gōngsī bǐsài wǒmen hé lìng yí gè tuánduì bìngliè dì yī ne · Don't worry! We definitely won't come last. In the last company contest we tied for first place.

xiaoming 不过这些电脑的使用年限快到了，开幕以前得换新的。
búguò zhèxiē diànnǎo de shǐyòng niánxiàn kuài dào le kāimù yǐqián děi huàn xīn de · But these computers are nearly at the end of their service life: we need new ones before the opening.

professor chen 人生很短暂，能做一件有意义的事，就值得。历史上，很多文人也加入过记录历史的行列。
rénshēng hěn duǎnzàn néng zuò yí jiàn yǒu yìyì de shì jiù zhídé lìshǐ shàng hěn duō wénrén yě jiārù guo jìlù lìshǐ de hángliè · Life is short: if you can do one meaningful thing, it's worth it. In history, many scholars joined the ranks of those who recorded the past.

anna 陈教授，您年过七旬，还这么忙，真让人佩服。
Chénjiàoshòu nín nián guò qī xún hái zhème máng zhēn ràng rén pèifú · Professor Chen, you're over seventy and still so busy: it's really admirable.

professor chen 哈哈，我还差几年呢！对了，书的序我写好了，你适时放在展览的开头吧。
hā hā wǒ hái chà jǐ nián ne duì le shū de xù wǒ xiě hǎo le nǐ shìshí fàng zài zhǎnlǎn de kāitóu ba · Ha ha, I've still got a few years to go! By the way, I've written the preface for the book: put it at the start of the exhibition at the right moment.

xiaoming 时隔一千年，这些东西又要跟大家见面了。
shí gé yìqiān nián zhèxiē dōngxi yòu yào gēn dàjiā jiànmiàn le · After a thousand years, these objects are about to meet the public again.

anna 黄金时段的新闻也会报道。书架上的空隙，就留给开幕那天的照片吧！
huángjīn shíduàn de xīnwén yě huì bàodào shūjià shàng de kòngxì jiù liú gěi kāimù nà tiān de zhàopiàn ba · The prime-time news will cover it too. And the gap on the bookshelf: let's save it for a photo from opening day!

xiaoming 这座桥历时三年才修好，我们历时一个月，也算快了。
zhè zuò qiáo lìshí sān nián cái xiū hǎo wǒmen lìshí yí gè yuè yě suàn kuài le · That bridge took three years to build; our project took a month, which is pretty fast.

anna 临近开幕，大家一起加油！那两个会议的时间重叠了，我们分开去开。
línjìn kāimù dàjiā yìqǐ jiāyóu nà liǎng gè huìyì de shíjiān chóngdié le wǒmen fēnkāi qù kāi · With the opening close, let's all push on! Those two meetings overlap, so let's split up and go to one each.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

瘸
qué
to limp, be lame

尿
niào
urine; to pee

屎
shǐ
excrement, poo

癌
ái
cancer

good to know · A month has three 旬 of ten days: 上旬 (1st–10th), 中旬 (11th–20th), 下旬 (21st to the end). 年过七旬 means “over seventy”. 兹 “hereby” opens formal notices: 兹定于…… “it is hereby set for …”, 兹通知如下 “notice is hereby given as follows”.

Countdowns, overlaps, first batches and parallel tracks: you can now plan a project in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 93 turning points

Describe deadlocks, setbacks and turning points, and wave away thanks or blame with 说到哪儿去了.

Every project has its crisis and its turning point: telling that story well is a skill in any language.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
关头	guāntóu	crucial moment, juncture	在这个关键关头，大家一定要团结。 At this crucial moment, everyone must stick together.
僵局	jiāngjú	deadlock, stalemate	谈判陷入了僵局。 The talks have reached a deadlock.
瓶颈	píngjǐng	bottleneck	公司的发展遇到了瓶颈。 The company's growth has hit a bottleneck.
弊病	bìbìng	malady, flaw (in a system)	这种管理方法有很多弊病。 This way of managing has many flaws.
弊端	bìduān	drawback, abuse	每种制度都有它的弊端。 Every system has its drawbacks.
出路	chūlù	way out, prospects	只有改革，才有出路。 Only reform offers a way out.
出头	chūtóu	to make it; just over (an age)	他三十出头就当上了经理。 He became a manager just after turning thirty.
余地	yúdì	room, leeway	这件事还有商量的余地。 There's still room to discuss this.
极限	jíxiàn	limit (of what is possible)	这已经是我的极限了，跑不动了。 That's my limit: I can't run any more.
下场	xiàchǎng	fate, end (usually bad)	做坏事的人不会有好下场。 People who do bad things come to a bad end.
挫败	cuòbài	to defeat, frustrate; setback	一次挫败不能说明什么。 One setback doesn't prove anything.
受挫	shòucuò	to suffer a setback	计划受挫以后，他没有放弃。 After his plan hit a setback, he didn't give up.
经受	jīngshòu	to undergo, withstand	这座老桥经受住了大洪水的考验。 The old bridge withstood the great flood.
挨	ái	to suffer, endure (criticism, hunger)	他今天挨{ai2-7}了经理的批评。 He got told off by the manager today.
陷	xiàn	to sink, get stuck	车陷在泥里，出不来了。 The car is stuck in the mud and can't get out.
降临	jiànglín	to arrive, descend (night, chance)	机会降临的时候，你要准备好。 When the chance comes, you have to be ready.

情境	qíngjìng	situation, scene, setting	游客好像走进了一千年前的情境。 Visitors feel as if they've walked into a scene from a thousand years ago.
归属	guīshǔ	to belong to; belonging	在这个团队里，我很有归属感。 I have a real sense of belonging in this team.
着落	zhuóluò	whereabouts; a sure source	项目的钱还没有着落。 There's still no sure source for the project's money.
分割	fēngē	to cut apart, separate	这块地被一条河分割成两半。 The land is cut in two by a river.
分化	fēnhuà	to split, polarise	在这个问题上，大家的意见分化了。 On this question, opinion is split.
颠倒	diāndǎo	to reverse, turn upside down	这两件藏品的次序颠倒了。 These two items are in the wrong order.
扭曲	niǔqū	to distort, twist	历史不能被扭曲。 History must not be distorted.
扭转	niǔzhuǎn	to turn around, reverse (a situation)	最后十分钟，他们扭转了局面。 In the last ten minutes they turned the game around.
飞跃	fēiyuè	leap; to leap forward	这项技术让我们的工作有了很大的飞跃。 This technology took our work a great leap forward.
跨越	kuàyuè	to span, leap across	这个展览跨越了三千年。 The exhibition spans three thousand years.
深化	shēnhuà	to deepen	两国要继续深化合作。 The two countries want to deepen their cooperation.
升华	shēnghuá	to raise to a higher level, sublimate	这首歌让友情升华了。 This song lifts friendship to something higher.
凸显	tūxiǎn	to bring out, highlight	这个设计凸显了展览的主题。 This design brings out the theme of the exhibition.
引领	yǐnlǐng	to lead, guide	这家公司引领了手机的潮流。 This company set the trend in phones.
着力	zhuólì	to put effort into, focus on	我们要着力解决这个问题。 We need to focus our efforts on solving this problem.
加紧	jiājǐn	to step up, speed up	离开幕只有十天了，大家加紧准备。 Only ten days to the opening: everyone is stepping up preparations.
提速	tísù	to speed up	新的软件让工作提速了一倍。 The new software has doubled the pace of work.
一体	yītǐ	a single whole, one body	这两个城市已经连成一体了。 The two cities have grown into one.
无力	wúlì	powerless, unable; weak	面对这么大的问题，我一个人感到很无力。 Facing such a big problem alone, I feel powerless.

pattern 说到哪儿去了: not at all! (polite denial)

thanks / an apology / a wrong guess **——说到哪儿去了！** **(the truth)**

说到哪儿去了 literally asks “where has your talk wandered off to?” It politely brushes off thanks, an apology or a wrong accusation: “not at all!”, “what are you on about?”. You can add the real situation after it. The tone is warm, never rude.

“真不好意思，让你等了这么久。”“说到哪儿去了，我也刚到。” **zhēn bù hǎoyìsi ràng nǐ děng le zhème jiǔ shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒ yě gāng dào** “So sorry to keep you waiting.” “Not at all, I just got here.”

“你是不是不想帮我？”“说到哪儿去了！我是真的没时间。” **nǐ shì bu shì bù xiǎng bāng wǒ shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒ shì zhēn de méi shíjiān** “You don’t want to help me, do you?” “Don’t be silly! I really don’t have time.”

“这次全靠你了。”“说到哪儿去了，是大家一起做的。” **zhè cì quán kào nǐ le shuō dào nǎr qù le shì dàjiā yìqǐ zuò de** “This is all thanks to you.” “Not at all: we did it together.”

dialogue the turning point

anna 临近开幕，博物馆突然要改最后一部分，可是我们的意见分化了，谈了一上午，还是僵局。

línjìn kāimù bówùguǎn tūrán yào gǎi zuìhòu yí bùfen kěshì wǒmen de yìjiàn fēnhuà le tán le yí shàngwǔ háishi jiāngjú · With the opening so close, the museum suddenly wants to change the last part, but we're split on it: we talked all morning and it's still deadlocked.

xiaoming 更麻烦的是软件。游客一多，特别是在高峰时段，手机讲解就卡，这是技术上的瓶颈。

gèng máfan de shì ruǎnjiàn yóukè yì duō tèbié shì zài gāofēng shíduàn shǒujī jiǎngjiě jiù kǎ zhè shì jìshù shàng de píngjǐng · Worse is the software. When there are lots of visitors, especially at peak times, the phone guide freezes: a technical bottleneck.

anna 还有，最后那部分的钱还没有着落。我今天还挨了刘经理的批评。

hái yǒu zuìhòu nà bùfen de qián hái méiyǒu zhuóluò wǒ jīntiān hái ái le Liújīnglǐ de pīpíng · And there's still no money confirmed for the last part. Manager Liu told me off today too.

xiaoming 三天改完？谈何容易！这次的难度不亚于修一座城墙。

sān tiān gǎi wán tán hé róngyì zhè cì de nándù búyàyú xiū yí zuò chéngqiáng · Finish the changes in three days? Easier said than done! This is every bit as hard as building a city wall.

anna 我觉得已经到了极限了。一个人面对这么多问题，感到很无力。

wǒ juéde yǐjīng dào le jíxiàn le yí gè rén miànduì zhème duō wèntí gǎndào hěn wúlì · I feel I've hit my limit. Facing so many problems on my own, I feel powerless.

professor chen 别灰心。一次受挫没什么。这座城墙经受过多少次战争，现在不是还在吗？

bié huīxīn yí cì shòucuò méi shénme zhè zuò chéngqiáng jīngshòu guo duōshao cì zhànzhēng xiànzài bú shì hái zài ma · Don't lose heart. One setback is nothing. Think how many wars this city wall has been through: isn't it still standing?

anna 陈教授，这么晚还来帮我们，给您添麻烦了。

Chénjiàoshòu zhème wǎn hái lái bāng wǒmen gěi nín tiān máfan le · Professor Chen, coming to help us so late: I'm sorry to put you out.

professor chen 说到哪儿去了！我们是一个团队。现在是关键关头，越是这种时候，越要冷静。

shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒmen shì yí gè tuánduì xiànzài shì guānjiàn guāntóu yuè shì zhè zhǒng shíhou yuè yào lěngjìng · Not at all! We're a team. This is the crucial moment, and the harder it gets, the calmer we have to be.

professor chen 我看了你们的方案：问题不在内容，在次序。有两部分颠倒了，序列也乱了，还有一个地方把历史讲得有点儿扭曲。

wǒ kàn le nǐmen de fāngàn wèntí bú zài nèiróng zài cìxù yǒu liǎng bùfen diāndǎo le xùliè yě luàn le hái yǒu yí gè dìfang bǎ lìshǐ jiǎng de yǒudiǎnr niǔqū · I've looked at your plan: the problem isn't the content, it's the order. Two parts are the wrong way round, the sequence is muddled, and in one place the history comes out a bit distorted.

anna 真的！我们一直着力写文字，没注意到。

zhēn de wǒmen yìzhí zhuólì xiě wénzì méi zhùyì dào · You're right! We were so focused on the writing that we didn't notice.

professor chen 旧的方法有弊病：每一部分都被分割开了。要让游客走进当时的情境，展览要成为一体。

jiù de fāngfǎ yǒu bìbìng měi yí bùfen dōu bèi fēngē kāi le yào ràng yóukè zǒu jìn dāngshí de qíngjìng zhǎnlǎn yào chéngwéi yìtǐ · The old approach has a flaw: every part is cut off from the others. To let visitors step into the scene of the time, the exhibition has to work as one whole.

xiaoming 我也想到一个办法！把讲解的声音先放在手机里，这样一来，网络不好也不卡。工作一下子提速了。

wǒ yě xiǎng dào yí gè bànfǎ bǎ jiǎngjiě de shēngyīn xiān fàng zài shǒujī lǐ zhèyàng yì lái wǎngluò bù hǎo yě bù kǎ gōngzuò yíxià zi tísù le · I've thought of something too! Store the guide's audio on the phone first: then it won't freeze even with a bad connection. That speeds everything right up.

anna 太好了，这是一个大飞跃！我们终于有出路了。
tài hǎo le zhè shì yí gè dà fēiyuè wǒmen zhōngyú yǒu chūlù le · Brilliant, that's a huge leap! At last there's a way out.

professor chen 还有商量的余地：钱的事，博物馆说可以先用明年的。
hái yǒu shāngliang de yúdì qián de shì bówùguǎn shuō kěyǐ xiān yòng míngnián de · And there's room to discuss the money: the museum says it can use next year's budget first.

xiaoming 你看，机会降临了！我们终于走出来了，局面完全扭转了。
nǐ kàn jīhuì jiànglín le wǒmen zhōngyú zǒu chulai le júmiàn wánquán niǔzhuǎn le · See, the chance has come! We're through it, and things have completely turned around.

anna 我差点儿以为自己要落个丢了工作的下场了。
wǒ chàdiǎnr yǐwéi zìjǐ yào luò gè diū le gōngzuò de xiàchǎng le · I almost thought I'd end up losing my job.

professor chen 展览跨越三千年，你们的讲解要凸显一个主题：每一个普通人都是历史的一部分。这样，感情就升华了。
zhǎnlǎn kuàyuè sānqiān nián nǐmen de jiǎngjiě yào tūxiǎn yí gè zhǔtí měi yí gè pǔtōng rén dōu shì lìshǐ de yí bùfen zhèyàng gǎnqíng jiù shēnghuá le · The exhibition spans three thousand years: your guide should highlight one theme: every ordinary person is part of history. That lifts the whole thing to another level.

anna 我好像又有了力气。在这个团队里，我很有归属感。
wǒ hǎoxiàng yòu yǒu le lìqi zài zhège tuánduì lǐ wǒ hěn yǒu guīshǔ gǎn · I feel I've got my strength back. I have such a sense of belonging in this team.

xiaoming 那我们加紧做吧。不过别像上次那样，车在中途陷在雪里，差点儿赶不上飞机。
nà wǒmen jiājǐn zuò ba búguò bié xiàng shàng cì nàyàng chē zài zhōngtú xiàn zài xuě lǐ chàdiǎnr gǎn bu shàng fēijī · Then let's step it up. Just don't be like last time, when the car got stuck in the snow halfway and we nearly missed the plane.

professor chen 你们三十出头，正是能引领一个项目的年纪。做完这个，我们的合作还可以深化。
nǐmen sānshí chūtóu zhèng shì néng yǐnlǐng yí gè xiàngmù de niánjì zuò wán zhège wǒmen de hézuò hái kěyǐ shēnhuà · You're just over thirty: exactly the age to lead a project. When this is done, we can take our work together further.

anna 谢谢陈教授！这次是一次挫败，也是一次学习。
xièxie Chénjiàoshòu zhè cì shì yí cì cuòbài yě shì yí cì xuéxí · Thank you, Professor Chen! This was a setback, and a lesson too.

professor chen 每种方法都有弊端，重要的是不断改。
měi zhǒng fāngfǎ dōu yǒu bìduān zhòngyào de shì búduàn gǎi · Every method has its drawbacks: what matters is to keep improving.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

瘤
liú
growth, tumour

疤
bā
scar

绷
bēng
to stretch tight, tense

敷 fū to apply (a compress, ointment)													

good to know · 挨 has two readings: ái “to suffer” (挨批评, 挨饿) and āi “next to, in turn” (挨着, 挨个儿). Crisis words: 僵局 deadlock, 瓶颈 bottleneck, 关头 crucial moment; turning words: 扭转 turn around, 飞跃 leap, 出路 a way out.

Deadlock, setback, breakthrough: you can now tell the story of a crisis, and of how you got out of it. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 94 carry, push and dig

Describe hands-on work (unload, shift, prop, dig, carry), and say someone did a lot of something with V了一通.

Setting up an exhibition, moving house, a dig: physical work needs exact verbs, and 通 lets you grumble about it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
背负	bēifù	to carry on one's back; bear (a burden)	他背负着全家的希望。 He carries the hopes of the whole family.
负	fù	to bear, shoulder; negative	这件事由我负全部责任。 I take full responsibility for this.
负重	fùzhòng	to carry a heavy load	他们负重爬了三个小时的山。 They climbed for three hours carrying heavy loads.
担	dān	to carry on a pole; take on (a task)	这份责任，我来担{dan1-7}。 I'll take on this responsibility.
担子	dànzi	load (on a carrying pole); burden	经理一走，这副担子就落到了她身上。 Once the manager left, the whole burden fell on her.
撤	chè	to remove, take away; withdraw	把桌子上的东西都撤了吧。 Clear everything off the table.
卸	xiè	to unload; remove	工人们正在卸货。 The workers are unloading the goods.
挪	nuó	to move, shift (a little)	帮我把这张桌子往左挪一下。 Help me shift this table a bit to the left.
拣	jiǎn	to pick up; pick out	他从地上拣起了一张旧照片。 He picked an old photo up off the floor.
揽	lǎn	to take on, take upon oneself; hold	他把所有的工作都揽到了自己身上。 He took all the work on himself.
搀	chān	to help (someone) by the arm	她搀着奶奶慢慢地走。 She walked slowly, holding her grandma's arm.
抵	dǐ	to prop against, hold back	他用身体抵住门，不让风吹开。 He leaned against the door to stop the wind blowing it open.
挤压	jǐyā	to squeeze, press	箱子里的东西被挤压坏了。 The things in the box got crushed.
搅	jiǎo	to stir, mix; disturb	咖啡里放了糖，要搅一搅。 You've put sugar in your coffee: give it a stir.
粉碎	fěnsuì	smashed to pieces; to crush	杯子掉在地上，摔得粉碎。 The cup fell and smashed to pieces.
磨	mó	to grind, wear; dawdle	新鞋把脚磨破了。 My new shoes have rubbed my feet raw.

堆积	duījī	to pile up	仓库里的箱子堆积如山。 Boxes are piled sky-high in the storeroom.
丢弃	diūqì	to throw away, discard	请不要随便丢弃垃圾。 Please don't drop litter.
滚动	gǔndòng	to roll; scroll	大屏幕上滚动播放着展览的介绍。 An introduction to the exhibition scrolls across the big screen.
挖掘	wājué	to excavate, dig; unearth (stories, talent)	我们要挖掘历史背后的故事。 We want to dig out the stories behind history.
撵	niǎn	to drive away, chase off	鸽子总飞进来，他只好把它们撵出去。 Pigeons kept flying in, so he had to chase them out.
阻拦	zǔlán	to stop, hold back	谁也阻拦不了她。 No one can stop her.
挑	tiǎo	to raise (on a stick); stir up	他用棍子把灯笼挑{tiao3}了起来。 He lifted the lantern up on a stick.
耍	shuǎ	to play with; throw (a tantrum), play (tricks)	孩子累了，就开始耍脾气。 When the kids get tired, they start throwing tantrums.
勾	gōu	to tick; hook; draw (an outline)	在表上把你要的东西勾一下。 Tick the things you want on the form.
拱	gǒng	to push with the snout or body; arch	小猪用鼻子在地上拱来拱去。 The piglet nosed around in the earth.
豁	huō	to slit, crack; give up (at any cost)	搬的时候，这个碗豁了一个口子。 This bowl got chipped in the move.
料理	liàolǐ	to take care of, manage; cuisine	奶奶把家里的事料理得井井有条。 Grandma keeps the household beautifully in order.
煤气	méiqì	(coal) gas, cooking gas	出门前别忘了关煤气。 Don't forget to turn off the gas before you go out.
玩意儿	wányìr	thing, gadget (spoken)	这是什么玩意儿？怎么用？ What's this thing? How does it work?
筑	zhù	to build (walls, roads)	古人用土筑起了高高的城墙。 People of old built tall city walls out of earth.

pattern v了一通: a whole bout of ...

verb | 了一 | 通

通 (read tòng) counts a bout of an action that goes on and on, usually noisy or tiring: 骂了一通 "gave a good telling-off", 忙了一通 "rushed around for a while", 说了一通 "went on and on". It often sounds a little exasperated or funny.

他把我骂了一通。 **tā bǎ wǒ mà le yí tòng** He gave me a real telling-off.

我们找了一通，还是没找到。 **wǒmen zhǎo le yí tòng háishi méi zhǎo dào** We searched high and low and still couldn't find it.

孩子们闹了一通，就睡着了。 **háizimen nào le yí tòng jiù shuì zháo le** The kids made a racket for a while, then fell asleep.

dialogue crates, screens and a dig

xiaoming 车到了！开幕倒计时只剩五天，工人们正在卸货，一共四十个箱子。
chē dào le kāimù dàojìshí zhǐ shèng wǔ tiān gōngrénmen zhèngzài xiè huò yígòng sìshí gè xiāngzi · The truck's here! Only five days left on the countdown, and the workers are unloading: forty crates in all.

anna 小心，别挤压了！里面有一件陶瓷，摔了就粉碎了。这个箱子的角已经豁了一个口子。
xiǎoxīn bié jǐyā le lǐmiàn yǒu yí jiàn táocí shuāi le jiù fěnsuì le zhège xiāngzi de jiǎo yǐjīng huō le yí gè kǒuzi · Careful, don't crush anything! There's a piece of porcelain inside: if it falls, it'll shatter. The corner of this crate already has a split in it.

xiaoming 这个柜子太大了，帮我往左挪一下，跟墙平行。
zhège guìzi tài dà le bāng wǒ wǎng zuǒ nuó yíxià gēn qiáng píngxíng · This cabinet's too big: help me shift it a bit to the left, parallel to the wall.

anna 只是挪一下柜子，你何至于累成这样？
zhǐshì nuó yíxià guìzi nǐ hé zhìyú lèi chéng zhèyàng · It's only a cabinet: why are you so worn out?

xiaoming 我今天负重走了一天了！你用身体抵住门，别让风吹开。
wǒ jīntiān fùzhòng zǒu le yì tiān le nǐ yòng shēntǐ dǐ zhù mén bié ràng fēng chuī kāi · I've been hauling heavy loads all day! Lean against the door so the wind doesn't blow it open.

anna 大家忙了一通，终于把箱子都卸完了。旧的牌子也都撤了。
dàjiā máng le yí tòng zhōngyú bǎ xiāngzi dōu xiè wán le jiù de páizi yě dōu chè le · After a frantic round of work, we've finally unloaded all the crates. The old signs are down too.

xiaoming 仓库里纸箱子堆积如山。这些没用的，可以丢弃吗？
cāngkù lǐ zhǐ xiāngzi duījī rú shān zhèxiē méi yòng de kěyǐ diūqì ma · The cardboard boxes in the storeroom are piled sky-high. Can we throw out the ones we don't need?

anna 先别扔，有的里面还有小东西。我刚从地上拣起一个小玩意儿，不知道是什么。
xiān bié rēng yǒude lǐmiàn hái yǒu xiǎo dōngxi wǒ gāng cóng dì shàng jiǎn qǐ yí gè xiǎo wányìr bù zhīdào shì shénme · Don't throw them yet: some still have bits and pieces in them. I just picked a little gadget up off the floor, no idea what it is.

xiaoming 这玩意儿是屏幕的插头！大屏幕要滚动播放展览的介绍，没它可不行。
zhè wányìr shì píngmù de chā tóu dà píngmù yào gǔndòng bōfàng zhǎnlǎn de jièshào méi tā kě bùxíng · That thing is the plug for the screen! The big screen has to scroll the exhibition introduction: we can't do without it.

anna 还有几只鸽子总飞进来，我把它们撵出去三次了。
hái yǒu jǐ zhī gēzi zǒng fēi jinlai wǒ bǎ tāmen niǎn chuqu sān cì le · And some pigeons keep flying in: I've chased them out three times.

professor chen 下午我带你们去城外的考古工地看看，很多藏品就是在那儿挖掘出来的。
xiàwǔ wǒ dài nǐmen qù chéng wài de kǎogǔ gōngdì kàn kan hěn duō cángpǐn jiùshì zài nàr wājué chulai de · This afternoon I'll take you to the dig site outside town: a lot of the collection was excavated there.

professor chen 你们看，古人就是用土一层一层筑起城墙的，一段城墙要历时好几年。考古的人每天背负着工具，在地里一点儿一点儿地挖。
nǐmen kàn gǔrén jiùshì yòng tǔ yì céng yì céng zhù qǐ chéngqiáng de yí duàn chéngqiáng yào lìshí hǎo jǐ nián kǎogǔ de rén měi tiān bēifù zhe gōngjù zài dì lǐ yìdiǎnr yìdiǎnr de wā · Look: people of old built walls by packing earth layer by layer, and one stretch could take years. Archaeologists carry their tools on their backs every day and dig a little at a time.

anna 我的新鞋把脚都磨破了。那边那只小猪在地上拱来拱去，好可爱。
wǒ de xīn xié bǎ jiǎo dōu mó pò le nàbiān nà zhī xiǎo zhū zài dì shàng gǒng lái gǒng qù hǎo kěài · My new shoes have rubbed my feet raw. That piglet over there nosing about in the dirt: so cute.

professor chen 它要是拱到工地上就麻烦了。来，路不好走，我搀着这位老师傅。
tā yàoshi gǒng dào gōngdì shàng jiù máfan le lái lù bù hǎo zǒu wǒ chān zhe zhè wèi lǎo shīfu · If it gets onto the site, we're in trouble. Come on, the path is rough: I'll give this old craftsman my arm.

anna 我们要把这些挖掘的故事也放进讲解里，让游客走进当时的情境。
wǒmen yào bǎ zhèxiē wājué de gùshi yě fàng jìn jiǎngjiě lǐ ràng yóukè zǒu jìn dāngshí de qíngjìng · We should

put these stories of the dig into the guide too, so visitors can step into the scene of the time.

manager liu 大家好，我刚下飞机。看了你们的进度，我必须说你们一通：晚了两天！现在可是关键关头。
dàjiā hǎo wǒ gāng xià fēijī kàn le nǐmen de jìndù wǒ bìxū shuō nǐmen yí tòng wǎn le liǎng tiān xiànzài kěshì guānjiàn guāntóu · Hi everyone, I've just landed. I've seen your progress and I have to tell you off: you're two days behind! This is the crucial moment.

anna 刘经理，这是我的责任，我来担。
Liújīnglǐ zhè shì wǒ de zérèn wǒ lái dān · Manager Liu, it's my responsibility: I'll take it on.

manager liu 别什么都揽到自己身上。这副担子太重，一个人负不起，别把自己逼到极限。大家一起来。
bié shénme dōu lǎn dào zìjǐ shēn shàng zhè fù dànzi tài zhòng yí gè rén fù bu qǐ bié bǎ zìjǐ bī dào jíxiàn dàjiā yìqǐ lái · Don't take everything on yourself. This burden is too heavy for one person: don't push yourself to the limit. Let's all do it together.

xiaoming 我们都豁出去了，无论成功与否，都要尽力！
wǒmen dōu huōchuqu le wúlùn chénggōng yǔ fǒu dōu yào jìnlì · We're all going all out: success or not, we'll give it everything!

manager liu 好！谁也阻拦不了我们，不过工作得加紧。小明，你别在那儿耍嘴皮子了，去把表上做完的工作都勾一下。
hǎo shéi yě zǔlán bu liǎo wǒmen búguò gōngzuò děi jiājǐn Xiǎomíng nǐ bié zài nàr shuǎ zuǐ pí zi le qù bǎ biǎo shàng zuò wán de gōngzuò dōu gōu yíxià · Good! No one can stop us, but we need to step it up. Xiaoming, stop being clever and tick off the finished tasks on the list.

xiaoming 是！对了，晚上回酒店谁做饭？厨房的煤气好像有问题。
shì duì le wǎnshang huí jiǔdiàn shéi zuòfàn chúfáng de méiqì hǎoxiàng yǒu wèntí · Yes, boss! By the way, who's cooking at the hotel tonight? The kitchen gas seems to be playing up.

anna 别做了，去外面吃吧。我来料理晚饭的事，你们把灯笼挑起来，挂在门口。
bié zuò le qù wàimiàn chī ba wǒ lái liàolǐ wǎnfàn de shì nǐmen bǎ dēnglong tiǎo qǐlai guà zài ménkǒu · Forget cooking, let's eat out. I'll sort out dinner; you hang the lanterns up by the door on a pole.

professor chen 咖啡给你们，糖放好了，自己搅一搅。今天大家辛苦了。
kāfēi gěi nǐmen táng fàng hǎo le zìjǐ jiǎo yi jiao jīntiān dàjiā xīnkǔ le · Coffee for you all: sugar's in, give it a stir. Thank you all for today's hard work.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

衷
zhōng
inner heart

兹
zī
this; now (very formal, written)

哨
shào
whistle

役
yì
service

good to know · Carrying, continued: 背 on the back, 担 on a shoulder pole, 挑 tiāo also on a pole (tiǎo means to lift on a stick or stir up), 搀 someone by the arm. 通 as a verbal measure is read tòng: 骂了一通, 忙了一通, 找了一通. As “get through” (通过, 打通) it is tōng.

Unload, shift, prop, pile up, dig: you can now talk your way through a day of real work.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 95 mission: the museum of the old capital

Guide a visitor through a history museum in Chinese, from dynasties and sieges to defence and peace.

Everything in this unit comes together on opening day: emperors, armies, timelines, turning points and a lot of heavy lifting.

chapter 1 chapter 1: opening morning

anna （读）“开幕通知：兹定于三月二十五日上午九点举行本博物馆新展览开幕式。本展览跨越三千年，分为若干部分：王朝与宫廷、军事与战争、防御与和平。凡是带学生证的游客，均可免费参观。

dú kāimù tōngzhī zī dìng yú sān yuè èrshíwǔ rì shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn jǔxíng běn bówùguǎn xīn zhǎnlǎn kāimùshì běn zhǎnlǎn kuàyuè sānqiān nián fēnwéi ruògān bùfen wángcháo yǔ gōngtíng jūnshì yǔ zhànzhēng fángyù yǔ hépíng fánshì dài xuéshēng zhèng de yóukè jūn kě miǎnfèi cānguān · (reading) “Opening notice: the opening ceremony of our new exhibition is hereby set for 9 a.m. on 25 March. The exhibition spans three thousand years and is divided into several parts: dynasties and the court, the military and war, defence and peace. All visitors with a student card may enter free.

anna 首批游客请按次序进场，每人可在门口领取一张有编号的地图。为了安全起见，博物馆内请勿奔跑，请勿随便丢弃垃圾。开幕式因场地有限而只请了二百位客人，请大家原谅。”

shǒupī yóukè qǐng àn cìxù jìn chǎng měi rén kě zài ménkǒu lǐngqǔ yì zhāng yǒu biānhào de dìtú wèile ānquán qǐ jiàn bówùguǎn nèi qǐng wù bēnpǎo qǐng wù suíbiàn diūqì lājī kāimùshì yīn chǎngdì yǒuxiàn ér zhǐ qǐng le èrbǎi wèi kèrén qǐng dàjiā yuánliàng · The first visitors are asked to go in in order; everyone can collect a numbered map at the door. For safety’s sake, please don’t run inside or drop litter. Because space is limited, only two hundred guests have been invited to the ceremony: we ask for your understanding.”

xiaoming 离开幕还有一个小时，倒计时开始了！大屏幕上已经在滚动播放介绍了。

lí kāimù hái yǒu yí gè xiǎoshí dàojìshí kāishǐ le dà píngmù shàng yǐjīng zài gǔndòng bōfàng jièshào le · One hour to the opening: the countdown has begun! The introduction is already scrolling on the big screen.

manager liu 安娜，你们这一个月辛苦了。上次我把你们说了一通，别往心里去。

Ānnà nǐmen zhè yí gè yuè xīnkǔ le shàng cì wǒ bǎ nǐmen shuō le yí tòng bié wǎng xīnlǐ qù · Anna, you’ve all worked so hard this month. Last time I gave you a real talking-to: don’t take it to heart.

anna 说到哪儿去了！要不是您，我们也不会加紧做完。

shuō dào nǎr qù le yàobúshì nín wǒmen yě bú huì jiājǐn zuò wán · Not at all! Without you, we wouldn’t have stepped up and finished.

manager liu 你们三十出头，就能引领这么大的项目，我很佩服。这次我们一起经受住了考验。

nǐmen sānshí chūtóu jiù néng yǐnlǐng zhème dà de xiàngmù wǒ hěn pèifú zhè cì wǒmen yìqǐ jīngshòu zhù le kǎoyàn · You’re just over thirty and already leading a project this size: I’m impressed. We’ve come through this test together.

anna 临走前，我把大家的任务又部署了一遍：小明管屏幕，我管讲解，大家一起备战！

lín zǒu qián wǒ bǎ dàjiā de rènwu yòu bùshǔ le yí biàn Xiǎomíng guǎn píngmù wǒ guǎn jiǎngjiě dàjiā yìqǐ bèizhàn · Before we came out I went over everyone’s tasks again: Xiaoming on the screens, me on the guide. We’re all geared up!

xiaoming 我昨天晚上还检查了一遍，没有病毒入侵，屏幕也不会中途停下来。

wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang hái jiǎnchá le yí biàn méiyǒu bìngdú rùqīn píngmù yě bú huì zhōngtú tíng xialai · I checked again last night: no virus has got in, and the screens won’t stop halfway.

manager liu 门口的游客排成了长长的行列，比去年同期多了一倍。我看这次展览不亚于任何一次大的展览。

ménkǒu de yóukè pái chéng le cháng cháng de hángliè bǐ qùnián tóngqī duō le yí bèi wǒ kàn zhè cì zhǎnlǎn búyàyú rènhé yí cì dà de zhǎnlǎn · The visitors outside are queuing in a long line, twice as many as the same time last year. I’d say this exhibition is as good as any major show.

xiaoming 博物馆说，这里年均有三百万游客。今天这个时段人最多。

bówùguǎn shuō zhèlǐ niánjūn yǒu sānbǎi wàn yóukè jīntiān zhège shíduàn rén zuì duō · The museum says it gets three million visitors a year on average. This time slot is the busiest of the day.

manager liu 临近九点了。说实话，这个项目很耗时，从开始到现在历时一个月。离开幕还有几分钟，我们倒数吧！

línjìn jiǔ diǎn le shuō shíhuà zhège xiàngmù hěn hàoshí cóng kāishǐ dào xiànzài lìshí yí gè yuè lí kāimù hái yǒu jǐ fēnzhōng wǒmen dàoshǔ ba · It’s nearly nine. To be honest this project took a lot of time: a whole month from start to finish. A few minutes to go: let’s count down!

chapter 2 chapter 2: dynasties and the court

professor chen 各位好，欢迎来到西安这座古城。历代有十几个王朝以这里为首都，有的统治了好几百年。

gèwèi hǎo huānyíng lái dào Xīān zhè zuò gǔ chéng lìdài yǒu shí jǐ gè wángcháo yǐ zhèlǐ wèi shǒudū yǒude tǒngzhì le hǎo jǐ bǎi nián · Hello everyone, and welcome to the ancient city of Xi'an. Over the ages more than ten dynasties made it their capital, some ruling for centuries.

professor chen 这一部分讲帝国的宫廷生活。这件衣服是一位皇后穿过的，旁边是皇室用过的东西。

zhè yí bùfen jiǎng dìguó de gōngtíng shēnghuó zhè jiàn yīfu shì yí wèi huánghòu chuān guo de pángbiān shì huángshì yòng guo de dōngxi · This part is about life at the imperial court. This robe was worn by an empress, and next to it are things used by the imperial family.

anna 讲解里还有皇宫的样子：大臣们在宫殿里对皇上说话，贵族住在城里，官吏通过考试选出来，考第一名的叫状元。

jiǎngjiě lǐ hái yǒu huánggōng de yàngzi dàchénmen zài gōngdiàn lǐ duì huángshang shuōhuà guìzú zhù zài chéng lǐ guānlì tōngguò kǎoshì xuǎn chulai kǎo dì yī míng de jiào zhuàngyuan · The guide also shows the imperial palace: ministers addressing the emperor in the halls, nobles living in the city, officials chosen by exam, and the top scorer called the zhuangyuan.

professor chen 不过，一个帝国靠的不只是皇帝和功臣。丝绸之路上来来往往的商贾，在庄园里干活的农民，甚至奴隶，都是历史的一部分。

búguò yí gè dìguó kào de bù zhǐshì huángdì hé gōngchén sīchóu zhī lùshang lái lai wǎngwǎng de shānggǔ zài zhuāngyuán lǐ gànhuó de nóngmín shènzhì núlì dōu shì lìshǐ de yí bùfen · But an empire doesn't rest only on its emperor and his great ministers. The merchants travelling the Silk Road, the farmers working the estates, even the slaves: they are all part of history.

anna 封建王朝最后都灭亡了吗？

fēngjiàn wángcháo zuìhòu dōu mièwáng le ma · Did all the feudal dynasties fall in the end?

professor chen 对。八世纪中叶的一场大乱对这座城市是一场浩劫，很多宫殿成了废墟。以后王朝越来越弱，最后被推翻了，土地被几方瓜分。

duì bā shìjì zhōngyè de yì chǎng dà luàn duì zhè zuò chéngshì shì yì chǎng hàojié hěn duō gōngdiàn chéng le fèixū yǐhòu wángcháo yuè lái yuè ruò zuìhòu bèi tuīfān le tǔdì bèi jǐ fāng guāfēn · Yes. A great rebellion in the mid-eighth century was a catastrophe for the city, and many palaces were left in ruins. The dynasty grew ever weaker, and in the end it was overthrown and its land carved up.

xiaoming 你们看这条时间线：有几个王朝是并行的，时间有重叠，所以我们画成两条平行的线，在重合的地方交叉。

nǐmen kàn zhè tiáo shíjiān xiàn yǒu jǐ gè wángcháo shì bìngxíng de shíjiān yǒu chóngdié suǒyǐ wǒmen huà chéng liǎng tiáo píngxíng de xiàn zài chónghé de dìfang jiāochā · Look at this timeline: some dynasties ran in parallel and overlapped, so we drew two parallel lines that cross where they coincide.

professor chen 这本书的序我也写好了，讲解开头适时放一段，让游客走进当时的情境。

zhè běn shū de xù wǒ yě xiě hǎo le jiǎngjiě kāitóu shìshí fàng yí duàn ràng yóukè zǒu jìn dāngshí de qíngjìng · I've finished the preface for the book too: put a section of it at the start of the guide at the right moment, to take visitors into the scene of the time.

anna 历届展览都没讲过普通人的故事，我们这次是第一次。古代的皇帝出兵征服别的国家，打赢了就凯旋，可是后世记住的，往往只是皇帝的名字。

lìjiè zhǎnlǎn dōu méi jiǎng guo pǔtōng rén de gùshi wǒmen zhè cì shì dì yī cì gǔdài de huángdì chū bīng zhēngfú biéde guójiā dǎ yíng le jiù kǎixuán kěshì hòushì jì zhù de wǎngwǎng zhǐshì huángdì de míngzi · None of the previous exhibitions told ordinary people's stories: ours is the first. Emperors of old sent armies to conquer other states and returned in triumph, but later generations often remember only the emperors' names.

professor chen 是啊，一有战争，王朝就要征很多年轻人。很多人的下场很惨。

shì a yì yǒu zhànzhēng wángcháo jiù yào zhēng hěn duō niánqīng rén hěn duō rén de xiàchǎng hěn cǎn · Yes: whenever there was a war, the dynasty called up huge numbers of young men. Many met a terrible end.

anna 时隔一千年，这些东西又跟大家见面了。有的家庭世代住在西安，他们看了一定很感动。

shí gé yìqiān nián zhèxiē dōngxi yòu gēn dàjiā jiànmiàn le yǒude jiātíng shìdài zhù zài Xīān tāmen kàn le yídìng hěn gǎndòng · After a thousand years, these objects are on show again. Some families have lived in Xi'an for generations: they're sure to be moved.

chapter 3 chapter 3: armies and sieges

professor chen 这一部分讲军事。古代的军队在西安驻扎过很多年。这儿有战士用的弓、城墙上的炮，还有一百年前的子弹。

zhè yí bùfen jiǎng jūnshì gǔdài de jūnduì zài Xīān zhùzhā guo hěn duō nián zhèr yǒu zhànshì yòng de gōng chéngqiáng shàng de pào hái yǒu yìbǎi nián qián de zǐdàn · This part is about the military. Ancient armies were stationed in Xi'an for many years. Here are bows used by soldiers, cannons from the city wall, and bullets from a hundred years ago.

xiaoming 这一边讲古代军队的生活：战士们每天在广场上操练，听司令的口令，参谋帮他们出主意。打赢了，大家的士气就大增。

zhè yìbiān jiǎng gǔdài jūnduì de shēnghuó zhànshìmen měi tiān zài guǎngchǎng shàng cāoliàn tīng sīlìng de kǒulìng cānmóu bāng tāmen chū zhǔyi dǎ yíng le dàjiā de shìqì jiù dà zēng · This side is about life in an ancient army: soldiers drilling on the square every day to the commander's orders, with staff officers giving advice. After a victory, the whole army's morale soared.

anna 还有一个小游戏：游客要找到藏在画里的“情报”，像潜伏的士兵一样，不能被发现。

hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo yóuxì yóukè yào zhǎo dào cáng zài huà lǐ de qíngbào xiàng qiánfú de shìbīng yíyàng bù néng bèi fāxiàn · And there's a little game: visitors have to find the "intelligence" hidden in a picture, like soldiers lying hidden, without being spotted.

xiaoming 外面广场上还有一辆旧坦克。另一边是海军、陆军和空军的介绍，还有军舰和潜艇的模型。

wàimiàn guǎngchǎng shàng hái yǒu yí liàng jiù tǎnkè lìng yìbiān shì hǎijūn lùjūn hé kōngjūn de jièshào hái yǒu jūnjiàn hé qiántǐng de móxíng · Outside on the square there's an old tank. On the other side there's an introduction to the navy, army and air force, with models of warships and submarines.

anna 这个城墙模型最受欢迎。讲解会告诉游客，敌人怎样包围城市、封锁道路，让城里得不到补给，再从两翼进攻。

zhège chéngqiáng móxíng zuì shòu huānyíng jiǎngjiě huì gàosu yóukè dírén zěnyàng bāowéi chéngshì fēngsuǒ dàolù ràng chéng lǐ dé bu dào bǔjǐ zài cóng liǎngyì jìngōng · This model of the city wall is the most popular thing. The guide tells visitors how an enemy would surround the city, block the roads so no supplies got in, then attack on both flanks.

professor chen 守城的官兵在城墙上作战，守住阵地。有时候两边对峙几个月，也有人晚上出城突击，或者在城外埋伏，袭击敌人。

shǒu chéng de guānbīng zài chéngqiáng shàng zuòzhàn shǒu zhù zhèndì yǒu shíhou liǎng biān duìzhì jǐ gè yuè yě yǒu rén wǎnshang chū chéng tūjī huòzhě zài chéng wài máifú xíjī dírén · The troops defending the city fought from the wall and held their position. Sometimes the two sides faced off for months; some slipped out at night for surprise attacks, or lay in ambush outside to strike the enemy.

anna 城被攻克以后，侵略者占领了城市，掠夺财物，摧毁房子，甚至屠杀百姓，这座城市受到重创。这里曾经是战场。我们记住这些，是为了珍惜和平。

chéng bèi gōngkè yǐhòu qīnlüè zhě zhànlǐng le chéngshì lüèduó cáiwù cuīhuǐ fángzi shènzhì túshā bǎi xìng zhè zuò chéngshì shòudào zhòngchuāng zhèlǐ céngjīng shì zhànchǎng wǒmen jì zhù zhèxiē shì wèile zhēnxī hépíng · After the city fell, the invaders occupied it, looted, destroyed homes and even massacred its people: the city suffered terribly. This was once a battlefield. We remember this so that we treasure peace.

professor chen 也有守城的人反击成功的时候：他们从城门出动，掩护百姓出城，还歼灭了一部分敌人。

yě yǒu shǒu chéng de rén fǎnjī chénggōng de shíhou tāmen cóng chéng mén chūdòng yǎnhù bǎi xìng chū chéng hái jiānmiè le yí bùfen dírén · There were times when the defenders struck back successfully too: they sallied out through the gates, covered the people as they left the city, and even wiped out part of the enemy force.

xiaoming 有个小朋友问我，核武器和导弹在哪儿。我说，世界上最好不要有这些东西。

yǒu gè xiǎopéngyǒu wèn wǒ héwǔqì hé dǎodàn zài nǎr wǒ shuō shìjiè shàng zuìhǎo búyào yǒu zhèxiē dōngxi · A little boy asked me where the nuclear weapons and missiles were. I said the world would be better without such things.

professor chen 说得好。用武力解决不了问题。有人说武器是一种威慑，可是干戈再多，也换不来真正的和平。国防是为了保护家园，不是为了进攻别人。

shuō de hǎo yòng wǔlì jiějué bu liǎo wèntí yǒu rén shuō wǔqì shì yì zhǒng wēishè kěshì gāngē zài duō yě huàn bu lái zhēnzhèng de hépíng guófáng shì wèile bǎohù jiāyuán bú shì wèile jìngōng biérén · Well said. Force can't solve problems. Some say weapons are a deterrent, but however many there are, they can't buy real peace. National defence is for protecting your home, not attacking others.

anna 我们的讲解有一个代号，叫“凤凰”。爷爷当过军官的游客听了以后，说想起了他的老战友。

wǒmen de jiǎngjiě yǒu yí gè dàihào jiào fènghuáng yéye dāng guo jūnguān de yóukè tīng le yǐhòu shuō xiǎng qǐ le tā de lǎo zhànyǒu · Our guide has a code name: “Phoenix”. A visitor whose grandfather was an army officer said listening to it reminded him of his grandfather's old comrades.

chapter 4 chapter 4: defence and peace

professor chen 最后一部分讲防御与和平。西安南边的山是这座城市的天然屏障，城墙就像一座堡垒，抵御了一次又一次的进攻。

zuìhòu yí bùfen jiǎng fángyù yǔ hépíng Xīān nán biān de shān shì zhè zuò chéngshì de tiānrán píngzhàng chéngqiáng jiù xiàng yí zuò bǎoděi dìyù le yí cì yòu yí cì de jìngōng · The last part is about defence and peace. The mountains south of Xi'an are the city's natural barrier, and the wall was like a fortress that fended off attack after attack.

anna 打仗要有战略，每一场战役还要有好的战术。可是有的城投降了，士兵成了俘虏，百姓不得不逃亡，过了很多年才收复。

dǎzhàng yào yǒu zhànlüè měi yì chǎng zhànyì hái yào yǒu hǎo de zhànshù kěshì yǒude chéng tóuxiáng le shìbīng chéng le fúlǔ bǎi xìng bùdébù táowáng guò le hěn duō nián cái shōufù · War needs strategy, and every battle good tactics. But some cities surrendered, the soldiers were taken prisoner and the people had to flee, and it took years to win the cities back.

professor chen 面对侵略，很多普通人没有退却。他们拿起武器保卫自己的家园，捍卫自己的城市，很多人牺牲了。广场上的纪念碑，就是纪念这些烈士的。

miànduì qīnlüè hěn duō pǔtōng rén méiyǒu tuìquè tāmen ná qǐ wǔqì bǎowèi zìjǐ de jiāyuán hànwèi zìjǐ de chéngshì hěn duō rén xīshēng le guǎngchǎng shàng de jìniànbēi jiùshì jìniàn zhèxiē lièshì de · Faced with invasion, many ordinary people didn't shrink back. They took up arms to defend their homes and their city, and many gave their lives. The monument on the square honours them.

xiaoming 儿童区的海盗游戏特别受欢迎，孩子们学会了怎样防卫自己，又不打人。

értóng qū de hǎidào yóuxì tèbié shòu huānyíng háizimen xuéhuì le zěnyàng fángwèi zìjǐ yòu bù dǎ rén · The pirate game in the children's area is a big hit: kids learn to defend themselves without hurting anyone.

anna 这部分的最后是二十世纪的冷战，还有一句话："守护和平，比赢得战争更难。"

zhè bùfen de zuìhòu shì èrshí shìjì de lěngzhàn hái yǒu yí jù huà shǒuhù hépíng bǐ yíngdé zhànzhēng gèng nán · The part ends with the Cold War of the twentieth century, and one line: "Keeping the peace is harder than winning a war."

xiaoming 这句话俘获了很多游客的心，大家都在那儿拍照。

zhè jù huà fúhuò le hěn duō yóukè de xīn dàjiā dōu zài nàr pāizhào · That line has won lots of visitors' hearts: everyone is taking photos there.

manager liu 这次项目差点儿陷入僵局：意见分化，技术有瓶颈，钱也没有着落。是你们扭转了局面。

zhè cì xiàngmù chàdiǎnr xiànrù jiāngjú yìjiàn fēnhuà jìshù yǒu píngjǐng qián yě méiyǒu zhuóluò shì nǐmen niǔzhuǎn le júmiàn · This project nearly got stuck in deadlock: opinions split, a technical bottleneck, and no money confirmed. You turned it all around.

anna 那时候我觉得到了极限，一个人面对这么多问题，感到很无力。旧方法的弊病是每部分都被分割开了，没有成为一体。

nà shíhou wǒ juéde dào le jíxiàn yí gè rén miànduì zhème duō wèntí gǎndào hěn wúlì jiù fāngfǎ de bìbìng shì měi bùfen dōu bèi fēngē kāi le méiyǒu chéngwéi yìtǐ · Back then I felt I'd hit my limit: facing so many problems alone, I felt powerless. The flaw in the old approach was that every part was cut off from the rest, not one whole.

xiaoming 受挫以后，我们找到了出路：把讲解的声音先放在手机里，工作一下子提速了。机会就这么降临了。

shòucuò yǐhòu wǒmen zhǎo dào le chūlù bǎ jiǎngjiě de shēngyīn xiān fàng zài shǒujī lǐ gōngzuò yíxià zi tísù le jīhuì jiù zhème jiànglín le · After that setback we found a way out: store the audio on the phone first, which sped everything right up. That's how the chance came.

professor chen 一次挫败没什么，重要的是着力解决问题，还要留一点儿商量的余地。

yí cì cuòbài méi shénme zhòngyào de shì zhuólì jiějué wèntí hái yào liú yìdiǎnr shāngliang de yúdì · One setback means nothing: what matters is to put your effort into solving the problem, and leave a bit of room for discussion.

anna 那是关键关头，陈教授指出了我们的问题：次序颠倒了，有的地方把历史讲得有点儿扭曲。

nà shì guānjiàn guāntóu Chénjiàoshòu zhǐchū le wǒmen de wèntí cìxù diāndǎo le yǒude dìfang bǎ lìshǐ jiǎng de yǒudiǎnr niǔqū · At the crucial moment, Professor Chen pointed out our problems: the order was the wrong way round, and in places the history came out distorted.

professor chen 话是这么说，可是改起来谈何容易？是你们自己一点儿一点儿改好的。

huà shì zhème shuō kěshì gǎi qǐlai tán hé róngyì shì nǐmen zìjǐ yìdiǎnr yìdiǎnr gǎi hǎo de · That's true, but making the changes was easier said than done. You fixed it bit by bit yourselves.

xiaoming 退一步说，就算没有成功，这一个月我们也学到了很多。

tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn méiyǒu chénggōng zhè yí gè yuè wǒmen yě xué dào le hěn duō · Even supposing it hadn't worked, we'd have learned a lot this month.

manager liu 这次展览的主题很清楚：每一个普通人都是历史的一部分。你们的工作让这个主题凸显出来了，这是一次飞跃。

zhè cì zhǎnlǎn de zhǔtí hěn qīngchu měi yí gè pǔtōng rén dōu shì lìshǐ de yí bùfen nǐmen de gōngzuò ràng zhège zhǔtí tūxiǎn chulai le zhè shì yí cì fēiyuè · The theme of this exhibition is clear: every ordinary person is part of history. Your work brought that theme out: it's a real leap forward.

chapter 5 chapter 5: after closing time

xiaoming 最后一位游客走了。今天我们忙了一通，脚都磨破了。
zuìhòu yí wèi yóukè zǒu le jīntiān wǒmen máng le yí tòng jiǎo dōu mó pò le · The last visitor has gone. We've been rushing around all day: my feet are rubbed raw.

anna 只是站了一天，何至于累成这样？
zhǐshì zhàn le yì tiān hé zhìyú lèi chéng zhèyàng · You only stood around all day: why are you this worn out?

xiaoming 你说得轻松！我帮工人卸货、挪柜子、搀老人上台阶，还把几只鸽子撵出去了。
nǐ shuō de qīngsōng wǒ bāng gōngrén xiè huò nuó guìzi chān lǎorén shàng táijiē hái bǎ jǐ zhī gēzi niǎn chuqu le · Easy for you to say! I helped unload, shifted cabinets, gave old people my arm on the steps, and chased out a few pigeons.

anna 好好好，你是今天的头号功臣。仓库里的纸箱子堆积如山，明天再料理吧。
hǎo hǎohǎo nǐ shì jīntiān de tóuhào gōngchén cāngkù lǐ de zhǐ xiāngzi duījī rú shān míngtiān zài liàolǐ ba · All right, all right, you're today's hero. The cardboard boxes in the storeroom are piled sky-high: let's deal with them tomorrow.

manager liu 这副担子以后会更重。博物馆想跟我们深化合作，下一个项目是城外的考古工地：把挖掘的故事也做进讲解里。
zhè fù dànzi yǐhòu huì gèng zhòng bówùguǎn xiǎng gēn wǒmen shēnhuà hézuò xià yí gè xiàngmù shì chéng wài de kǎogǔ gōngdì bǎ wājué de gùshi yě zuò jìn jiǎngjiě lǐ · The burden will only get heavier. The museum wants to take our work further: the next project is the dig site outside town, putting the stories of the excavation into a guide.

xiaoming 我今天背负的东西太多了，负重走了一天。你们看，这个箱子的角都豁了。
wǒ jīntiān bēifù de dōngxi tài duō le fùzhòng zǒu le yì tiān nǐmen kàn zhège xiāngzi de jiǎo dōu huō le · I've carried way too much today: I've been hauling loads all day. Look, the corner of this crate has split.

anna 我从地上拣起一张小纸条，上面写着：“厨房的煤气记得关。”是谁写的？
wǒ cóng dì shàng jiǎn qǐ yì zhāng xiǎo zhǐ tiáo shàngmiàn xiě zhe chúfáng de méiqì jìde guān shì shéi xiě de · I picked a little note up off the floor that says: “Remember to turn off the kitchen gas.” Who wrote that?

xiaoming 我写的！我只是怕忘了。你别笑我，也别跟我耍脾气。
wǒ xiě de wǒ zhǐshì pà wàng le nǐ bié xiào wǒ yě bié gēn wǒ shuǎ píqi · Me! I was just afraid I'd forget. Don't laugh at me, and don't get cross with me either.

anna 刘经理，考古工地那个项目，我愿意担起来！无论成功与否，我都会尽力。
Liújīnglǐ kǎogǔ gōngdì nàge xiàngmù wǒ yuànyì dān qǐlai wúlùn chénggōng yǔ fǒu wǒ dōu huì jìnlì · Manager Liu, I'm happy to take on the dig-site project! Whether it succeeds or not, I'll give it my all.

professor chen 时间流逝得真快。随着时间的推移，今天也会成为历史。
shíjiān liúshì de zhēn kuài suízhe shíjiān de tuīyí jīntiān yě huì chéngwéi lìshǐ · Time flies. As time passes, today will become history too.

anna 陈教授，这一个月给您添了这么多麻烦，真不好意思。
Chénjiàoshòu zhè yí gè yuè gěi nín tiān le zhème duō máfan zhēn bù hǎoyìsi · Professor Chen, I'm so sorry for all the trouble we caused you this month.

professor chen 说到哪儿去了！我在这个团队里很有归属感。人生短暂，能跟你们一起做这件事，我很高兴。
shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒ zài zhège tuánduì lǐ hěn yǒu guīshǔ gǎn rénshēng duǎnzàn néng gēn nǐmen yìqǐ zuò zhè jiàn shì wǒ hěn gāoxìng · Not at all! I feel I belong in this team. Life is short, and I'm glad I could do this with you.

xiaoming 那我们去吃饭庆祝吧！我饿得什么玩意儿都能吃下去。
nà wǒmen qù chī fàn qìngzhù ba wǒ è de shénme wányìr dōu néng chī xiaqu · Then let's go and celebrate over dinner! I'm so hungry I could eat anything.

manager liu 走吧，今天晚上我请客。谁也别阻拦我！
zǒu ba jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè shéi yě bié zǔlán wǒ · Let's go: dinner's on me tonight. Nobody try to stop me!

You just guided a whole museum in Chinese: three thousand years, one opening day.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 96 film and stage

Talk about a film or a play, from plot and acting to the box office, and give an honest opinion with 老实说.

Films and plays are what friends, colleagues and the papers talk about every week; at HSK 7–9 you can join in and say what you really think.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
片子	piānzi	film, movie (spoken)	这部片子下个月上映。 This film comes out next month.
上映	shàngyìng	to be released, to show (film)	这部电影国庆节上映。 The film is released on National Day.
上演	shàngyǎn	to stage, to be performed	这部话剧已经上演了一百多场。 The play has already been performed more than a hundred times.
放映	fàngyìng	to screen, to project	电影节期间，每天放映三十多部电影。 During the festival, more than thirty films are screened every day.
银幕	yínmù	the screen, the silver screen	她第一次出现|在银幕上的时候才十八岁。 She was only eighteen when she first appeared on screen.
票房	piàofáng	box office, takings	这部电影的票房已经超过了十亿。 The film has already taken over a billion at the box office.
剧目	jùmù	play, item in a repertoire	今年剧院准备了二十个新剧目。 The theatre has prepared twenty new plays this year.
剧情	jùqíng	plot, storyline	剧情有点儿复杂，我没完全看懂。 The plot is a bit complicated; I didn't fully follow it.
编剧	biānjù	to write a script; screenwriter	这部电影的编剧是一位年轻的女作家。 The film's screenwriter is a young woman novelist.
对白	duìbái	dialogue (in a film or play)	这部片子对白不多，音乐却很美。 There isn't much dialogue in this film, but the music is beautiful.
配音	pèiyīn	to dub; dubbing, voice-over	这部动画片是请明星配音的。 This cartoon was dubbed by film stars.
配角	pèijué	supporting role	她在电影里演一个配角。 She plays a supporting role in the film.
主人公	zhǔréngōng	protagonist, hero of a story	小说的主人公是一个普通的出租车司机。 The hero of the novel is an ordinary taxi driver.
跑龙套	pǎolóngtào	to play a walk-on part	她上大学的时候在电影里跑龙套。 At university she played walk-on parts in films.
演技	yǎnjì	acting skills	他的演技越来越好了。 His acting keeps getting better.

登场	dēngchǎng	to come on stage, to appear	主人公到第二幕才登场。 The hero doesn't come on until the second act.
开场	kāichǎng	to begin (a show); opening	演出七点半开场，别迟到。 The show starts at half past seven: don't be late.
序幕	xùmù	prologue, prelude	电影节昨天晚上拉开了序幕。 The film festival opened last night.
尾声	wěishēng	epilogue; the final stage	电影节已经接近尾声了。 The film festival is nearly over.
高潮	gāocháo	climax, high point	到了电影的高潮，全场都安静了。 At the film's climax, the whole cinema went quiet.
结局	jiéjú	ending, outcome	我怎么也没想到会是这样的结局。 I never imagined it would end like that.
悬念	xuánniàn	suspense	这部片子悬念很多，直到最后都猜不到。 The film is full of suspense: you can't guess the ending until the very last moment.
幕	mù	act (of a play); scene	这部话剧一共有三幕。 The play has three acts.
幕后	mùhòu	behind the scenes	很多幕后工作人员，观众都不认识。 Audiences don't know many of the people who work behind the scenes.
后台	hòutái	backstage	演出结束以后，我们去后台见了演员。 After the show we went backstage to meet the actors.
前台	qiántái	front desk, reception	请把钥匙交给前台。 Please leave the key at reception.
道具	dàojù	prop (on stage or set)	这把椅子是拍电影用的道具。 This chair is a prop for the film shoot.
压轴	yāzhòu	the star turn, the grand finale	今天晚上的压轴节目是一段京剧。 Tonight's grand finale is a piece of Peking opera.
巡回	xúnhuí	to tour, to go round	这部话剧明年要在全国巡回演出。 The play will tour the whole country next year.
捧场	pěngchǎng	to come and support (a show)	谢谢大家今天来捧场！ Thank you all for coming to support us today!
喝彩	hècǎi	to cheer, to acclaim	观众们站起来为她喝彩。 The audience stood up and cheered her.
叫好	jiàohǎo	to applaud, to shout "bravo"	演完以后，观众们纷纷叫好。 When it ended, the audience called out "bravo!" one after another.
颁奖	bānjiǎng	to present an award	颁奖典礼晚上八点开始。 The award ceremony starts at eight in the evening.
奖项	jiǎngxiàng	award, prize (category)	这部片子一共获得了三个奖项。 The film won three awards in all.
荣获	rónghuò	to be honoured with, to win	她荣获了最佳女配角奖。 She won the award for best supporting actress.

pattern 老实说: frankly, to be honest

老实说 , your honest opinion

老实说 opens an honest opinion, often one the listener may not want to hear: “frankly”, “to be honest”. Owning the opinion this way makes criticism sound fair, not rude. 说实话 and 说真的 work the same way.

老实说，我没看懂这部片子的结局。 **lǎoshi shuō wǒ méi kàn dǒng zhè bù piānzi de jiéjú** To be honest, I didn’t understand the ending of this film.

老实说，他的演技还不够好。 **lǎoshi shuō tā de yǎnjì hái búgòu hǎo** Frankly, his acting isn’t good enough yet.

话是这么说，可老实说，票也太贵了。 **huà shì zhème shuō kě lǎoshi shuō piào yě tài guì le** That may be so, but honestly, the tickets are far too expensive.

假若没有幕后的工作人员，就不会有这么好的电影。 **jiǎ ruò méiyǒu mùhòu de gōngzuò rényuán jiù bú huì yǒu zhème hǎo de diànyǐng** If it weren’t for the people behind the scenes, there would be no film this good.

dialogue after the opening film

editor lin 能看到开幕片的放映，可不容易。安娜，你觉得怎么样？
néng kàn dào kāimù piàn de fàngyìng kě bù róngyì Ānnà nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng · It's not easy to get into the opening film. Anna, what did you think?

anna 老实说，前半部分我有点儿看不进去，到了高潮，局面一下子扭转了，我才被吸引住。悬念一直留到最后，结局也很意外。
lǎoshi shuō qián bàn bùfen wǒ yǒudiǎnr kàn bu jinqu dào le gāocháo júmiàn yíxià zi niǔzhuǎn le wǒ cái bèi xīyǐn zhù xuánniàn yìzhí liú dào zuìhòu jiéjú yě hěn yìwài · To be honest, I couldn't get into the first half; at the climax everything suddenly turned around, and only then did it grab me. The suspense lasted right to the end, and the ending was a surprise.

editor lin 编剧原来是写话剧的，所以对白特别多，一幕一幕的，像在看戏。
biānjù yuánlái shì xiě huàjù de suǒyǐ duìbái tèbié duō yí mù yí mù de xiàng zài kàn xì · The screenwriter used to write plays, so there's a lot of dialogue, scene after scene, like watching theatre.

anna 那个演老爷爷的配角，一登场大家就为他喝彩。他的演技比主人公还好！
nàge yǎn lǎo yéye de pèijué yì dēngchǎng dàjiā jiù wèi tā hècǎi tā de yǎnjì bǐ zhǔréngōng hái hǎo · That supporting actor who played the old grandpa: the audience cheered the moment he came on. He acted better than the lead!

editor lin 他年轻的时候跑龙套跑了十年，经受过很多挫败，五十岁才在银幕上出名。
tā niánqīng de shíhou pǎo lóngtào pǎo le shí nián jīngshòu guo hěn duō cuòbài wǔshí suì cái zài yínmù shàng chūmíng · He played walk-on parts for ten years when he was young and went through a lot of setbacks; he only became famous on screen at fifty.

anna 主人公最后找到了出路，这一段让我很感动。
zhǔréngōng zuìhòu zhǎo dào le chūlù zhè yí duàn ràng wǒ hěn gǎndòng · The hero finds a way out in the end: that part really moved me.

little sister 安娜！林编辑！没想到在这儿碰到你们！
Ānnà Línbiānjí méi xiǎng dào zài zhèr pèng dào nǐmen · Anna! Editor Lin! Fancy meeting you here!

little sister 我同学拍的短片也入选了电影节，后天下午放映。我在里面演个小角色，其实就是跑龙套。
wǒ tóngxué pāi de duǎn piàn yě rùxuǎn le diànyǐng jié hòutiān xiàwǔ fàngyìng wǒ zài lǐmiàn yǎn gè xiǎo juésè qíshí jiùshì pǎo lóngtào · A short film my classmate made has been picked for the festival too; it's on the day after tomorrow in the afternoon. I have a small part in it: a walk-on, really.

editor lin 学生的片子能入选，真了不起！说不定还能荣获什么奖项呢。
xuéshēng de piānzi néng rùxuǎn zhēn liǎobuqǐ shuōbudìng hái néng rónghuò shénme jiǎngxiàng ne · A student film getting in: that's amazing! You might even win an award.

little sister 话是这么说，可参加的片子有一百多部呢。老实说，我们连钱都没有：道具是从家里拿的，有的还是从路边拣的，配音也是自己配的。
huà shì zhème shuō kě cānjiā de piānzi yǒu yìbǎi duō bù ne lǎoshi shuō wǒmen lián qián dōu méiyǒu dàojù shì cóng jiā lǐ ná de yǒude háishi cóng lùbiān jiǎn de pèiyīn yě shì zìjǐ pèi de · That may be so, but there are over a hundred films in it. Honestly, we didn't even have any money: the props came from home, some we even picked up off the street, and we did the voices ourselves.

editor lin 钱没有着落，还能拍完，真不容易。
qián méiyǒu zhuóluò hái néng pāi wán zhēn bù róngyì · No money lined up, and you still finished it: that's no small thing.

anna 那后天我们一定去捧场，放映完了还要去后台给你们叫好！
nà hòutiān wǒmen yídìng qù pěngchǎng fàngyìng wán le hái yào qù hòutái gěi nǐmen jiàohǎo · Then we'll definitely come and support you the day after tomorrow, and go backstage afterwards to cheer you!

editor lin 颁奖那天我也会来。电影节到了尾声，压轴的是一部老话剧，剧院要重新上演，以后还要在全国巡回演出。
bānjiǎng nà tiān wǒ yě huì lái diànyǐng jié dào le wěishēng yāzhòu de shì yí bù lǎo huàjù jùyuàn yào chóngxīn

shàngyǎn yǐhòu hái yào zài quán guó xúnhuí yǎnchū · I'll be there on awards night too. As the festival draws to a close, the grand finale is an old play the theatre is putting on again, and then it's touring the whole country.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

拳
quán
fist; boxing, martial arts style

攀
pān
to climb (by holding on)

赌
dǔ
to gamble; to bet

谜
mí
riddle, mystery

good to know · 片子 is everyday speech for a film; 影片 and 电影 are more neutral. 拍片子 at a hospital means having an X-ray! 跑龙套 comes from Peking opera, where extras in dragon-pattern costumes ran across the stage as armies. Office workers use it about themselves too: 我只是跑龙套的.

Next time a friend asks what you thought of a film, you can tell them frankly, plot, acting and ending, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 97 music and shows

Talk about music, concerts and shows, and say the same thing more plainly with 换句话说.

Concerts, gala nights and theme songs come up all the time, and 换句话说 lets you rephrase when your first sentence didn't land.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
歌剧	gējù	opera	她爱听西方歌剧，也爱看京剧。 She loves Western opera, and Peking opera too.
芭蕾	bāléi	ballet	妹妹小时候学过芭蕾。 Xiaoming's sister learned ballet as a child.
交响乐	jiāoxiǎngyuè	symphony, symphonic music	周末我们去听了一场交响乐。 At the weekend we went to a symphony concert.
合唱	héchàng	chorus; to sing together	张女士每个星期都去参加合唱团的活动。 Ms Zhang goes to choir practice every week.
伴奏	bànzòu	to accompany (music)	她唱歌，我弹吉他为她伴奏。 She sings, and I accompany her on the guitar.
乐队	yuèduì	band, orchestra	这个乐队是几个大学生组成的。 The band was formed by a few university students.
乐谱	yuèpǔ	sheet music, score	他不看乐谱也能弹。 He can play without looking at the music.
旋律	xuánlǜ	melody, tune	这首歌的旋律很简单，听一遍就会唱。 The melody is simple: you can sing it after hearing it once.
谱	pǔ	score, chart; to set to music	这首诗后来被谱成了一首歌。 The poem was later set to music as a song.
弦	xián	string (of an instrument)	我的吉他断了一根弦。 A string on my guitar has snapped.
笛子	dízi	bamboo flute	爷爷笛子吹得很好。 Grandpa plays the flute very well.
吉他	jítā	guitar	他上大学的时候自学了吉他。 He taught himself the guitar at university.
小提琴	xiǎotíqín	violin	她拉小提琴拉了二十年。 She has played the violin for twenty years.
唱片	chàngpiàn	record (disc)	我家还有很多老唱片。 We still have lots of old records at home.
专辑	zhuānjí	album	这个乐队下个月要出新专辑。 The band is bringing out a new album next month.
主题曲	zhǔtíqǔ	theme song	这部电视剧的主题曲大家都|会唱。 Everyone can sing the theme song of this TV series.

插曲	chāqǔ	song in a film; episode, interlude	旅行中出了一个小插曲。 There was a little incident during the trip.
歌舞	gēwǔ	song and dance	晚会上有很多歌舞节目。 There were lots of song-and-dance numbers at the party.
舞	wǔ	dance; to dance (with)	她跳了一段民族舞{wu3-7b}。 She performed a folk dance.
歌谣	gēyáo	ballad, folk rhyme	奶奶常给我们唱老北京的歌谣。 Grandma often sang us old Beijing folk rhymes.
歌颂	gēsòng	to sing the praises of	这首歌歌颂了母亲的爱。 This song celebrates a mother's love.
曲艺	qǔyì	folk performing arts	相声是北方最受欢迎的曲艺。 Crosstalk is the most popular folk performing art in the north.
杂技	zájì	acrobatics	中国杂技在世界上很有名。 Chinese acrobatics are famous all over the world.
魔术	móshù	magic (tricks)	他给孩子们变了一个魔术。 He did a magic trick for the children.
小丑	xiǎochǒu	clown	小丑一出来，孩子们就笑了。 The children laughed the moment the clown came out.
木偶	mùǒu	puppet	孩子们看木偶戏看得很开心。 The children loved the puppet show.
卡通	kǎtōng	cartoon	她的书包上画着一只卡通小狗。 Her school bag has a cartoon puppy on it.
搞笑	gǎoxiào	funny, hilarious	这个视频太搞笑了！ This video is hilarious!
小品	xiǎopǐn	comedy sketch, short piece	春节晚会上最受欢迎的是小品。 The comedy sketches are the most popular part of the Spring Festival Gala.
音响	yīnxiǎng	sound system, speakers	这家剧院的音响效果特别好。 The sound in this theatre is excellent.
口哨儿	kǒushàor	whistle (with the lips)	他一高兴就吹口哨儿。 He whistles whenever he's happy.
沙龙	shālóng	salon (gathering)	这家书店每周六晚上有读书沙龙。 This bookshop holds a reading salon every Saturday evening.
武侠	wǔxiá	martial-arts hero; wuxia	他从小就爱看武侠小说。 He has loved martial-arts novels since he was a child.

pattern 换句话说: in other words

statement **，换句话说，** **the same idea, plainer or sharper**

换句话说 (“to change the sentence”) restates what you just said in plainer or more pointed words: “in other words”. Use it to explain, to sum up, or to spell out what something really means. In writing you also see 也就是说.

她五岁学芭蕾，十岁学小提琴，换句话说，她是在音乐里长大的。 **tā wǔ suì xué bāléi shí suì xué xiǎotíqín huàn jù huà shuō tā shì zài yīnyuè lǐ zhǎng dà de** She started ballet at five and the violin at ten: in other words, she grew up in music.

周六书店有个音乐沙龙，换句话说，就是一群人坐在一起听歌、聊天。 **zhōu liù shūdiàn yǒu gè yīnyuè shālóng huàn jù huà shuō jiùshì yì qún rén zuò zài yìqǐ tīng gē liáotiān** There’s a music salon at the bookshop on Saturday: in other words, a group of people sitting together listening to songs and chatting.

退一步说，就算没人来听，我们也得把歌唱完。 **tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn méi rén lái tīng wǒmen yě děi bǎ gē chàng wán** Even supposing nobody comes to listen, we still have to sing the song to the end.

任你怎么劝，他也不肯上台唱歌。 **rèn nǐ zěnme quàn tā yě bù kěn shàngtái chàng gē** No matter how you try to persuade him, he won’t go on stage and sing.

dialogue a theme song, please

xiaoming 今天晚上的节目真丰富：开场是合唱，然后是歌舞、杂技、魔术，还有木偶戏。
jīntiān wǎnshang de jiémù zhēn fēngfù kāichǎng shì héchàng ránhòu shì gēwǔ zájì móshù hái yǒu mùǒu xì · There's so much on tonight: it opens with the choir, then song and dance, acrobatics, magic, and a puppet show too.

anna 你妈妈的合唱团第一个上吧?
nǐ māma de héchàng tuán dì yī gè shàng ba · Your mum's choir is on first, isn't it?

xiaoming 对，她们唱一首老歌谣，歌颂家乡的。乐队给她们伴奏，拉小提琴的是从交响乐团请来的。
duì tāmen chàng yì shǒu lǎo gēyáo gēsòng jiāxiāng de yuèduì gěi tāmen bànzòu lā xiǎotíqín de shì cóng jiāoxiǎngyuè tuán qǐng lái de · Yes, they're singing an old folk song in praise of their home town. A band is accompanying them, and the violinist is from a symphony orchestra.

ms zhang 怎么样？音响太大了，我都听不清自己在唱什么。
zěnmeyàng yīnxiǎng tài dà le wǒ dōu tīng bu qīng zìjǐ zài chàng shénme · How was it? The sound system was so loud I couldn't hear what I was singing.

anna 唱得太好了！旋律那么美，大家都听得很投入，唱完了还一个劲儿地喝彩。
chàng de tài hǎo le xuánlǜ nàme měi dàjiā dōu tīng de hěn tóurù chàng wán le hái yígèjìnr de hècǎi · You were wonderful! Such a beautiful melody: everyone was hanging on every note, and they kept cheering when you finished.

little sister 妈妈，我想求哥哥一件事。我们的短片还缺一首主题曲，哥哥上大学的时候在乐队里弹吉他，还写过歌呢。
māma wǒ xiǎng qiú gēge yí jiàn shì wǒmen de duǎn piàn hái quē yì shǒu zhǔtíqǔ gēge shàng dàxué de shíhou zài yuèduì lǐ tán jítā hái xiě guo gē ne · Mum, I need to ask my brother something. Our short film still needs a theme song, and he played the guitar in a band at university. He even wrote songs.

xiaoming 那都是十年前的事了。任你怎么说，我也不上台。
nà dōu shì shí nián qián de shì le rèn nǐ zěnme shuō wǒ yě bú shàngtái · That was ten years ago. Whatever you say, I'm not going on stage.

little sister 不用上台！你只要给片子谱个曲子，换句话说，就是写一段旋律。最好有点儿武侠片的感觉。
búyòng shàngtái nǐ zhǐyào gěi piānzi pǔ gè qǔ zi huàn jù huà shuō jiùshì xiě yí duàn xuánlǜ zuìhǎo yǒudiǎnr wǔxiá piàn de gǎnjué · You don't have to go on stage! Just write the music for the film: in other words, a melody. Ideally with a bit of a martial-arts-film feel.

xiaoming 退一步说，就算我写得出来，谁来唱?
tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn wǒ xiě de chulai shéi lái chàng · Even supposing I could write it, who would sing it?

ms zhang 我们合唱团来唱嘛！再请你爷爷吹一段笛子。
wǒmen héchàng tuán lái chàng ma zài qǐng nǐ yéye chuī yí duàn dízi · My choir will sing it! And we'll get your grandpa to play the flute.

little sister 到时候你们都来捧场!
dào shíhou nǐmen dōu lái pěngchǎng · Then you'll all come and support us!

anna 我还以为你们拍的是搞笑片，没想到这么认真。
wǒ hái yǐwéi nǐmen pāi de shì gǎoxiào piàn méi xiǎng dào zhème rènzhēn · I thought you were making a comedy. I didn't know it was so serious.

little sister 也有搞笑的地方！片子里有个小丑变魔术，还有一段卡通。插曲我们想用一张老唱片里的歌。
yě yǒu gǎoxiào de dìfang piānzi lǐ yǒu gè xiǎochǒu biàn móshù hái yǒu yí duàn kǎtōng chāqǔ wǒmen xiǎng yòng yì zhāng lǎo chàngpiàn lǐ de gē · There are funny bits too! There's a clown doing magic tricks and a bit of cartoon. For the song in the middle we want to use one from an old record.

xiaoming 好吧，我回去把吉他的弦换了，先试试。下一个节目是什么?
hǎo ba wǒ huíqù bǎ jítā de xián huàn le xiān shì shi xià yí gè jiémù shì shénme · All right, I'll put new strings on my guitar when I get home and give it a go. What's the next act?

ms zhang 先是曲艺：一段相声，然后是小品，压轴的是一段民族舞。

xiān shì qǔyì yí duàn xiàngsheng ránhòu shì xiǎopǐn yāzhòu de shì yí duàn mínzú wǔ · First some folk performing art, a crosstalk act; then a comedy sketch, and a folk dance as the grand finale.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

甩
shuǎi
to swing, fling; to dump

抡
lūn
to swing (an arm, a tool) hard

抖
dǒu
to shake, shiver; to shake out

蹦
bèng
to hop, bounce, jump

good to know · Instruments take different verbs: 弹 (tán) the guitar or piano, 拉 (lā) the violin, 吹 (chuī) the flute, 打 drums. 主题曲 is the theme song of a film or series; 插曲 is a song inside it, and also a little incident: 旅行中的小插曲.

From a choir to a theme song, you can now talk music in Chinese, and rephrase yourself when you need to.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 98 painting and sculpture

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 13 · arts and literature

Describe paintings and sculptures, their lines, colours, composition and mood, and say what makes a work special.

Museums, exhibitions and art books are a big part of cultural life in China, and these are the words guides, critics and friends use.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
油画	yóuhuà	oil painting	客厅里挂着一幅油画。 An oil painting hangs in the living room.
壁画	bìhuà	mural, wall painting	这些壁画已经有一千多年的历史了。 These murals are over a thousand years old.
插图	chātú	illustration (in a book)	这本儿童书的插图很漂亮。 The illustrations in this children's book are lovely.
画册	huàcè	album of paintings, art book	我在博物馆买了一本画册。 I bought an art book at the museum.
肖像	xiàoxiàng	portrait	这幅肖像画的是画家的母亲。 This portrait is of the painter's mother.
线条	xiàntiáo	line (in drawing); figure, lines	这幅画的线条非常简单。 The lines in this painting are very simple.
勾勒	gōulè	to sketch the outline of	他几笔就勾勒出了一个人的样子。 With a few strokes he sketched a person.
绘制	huìzhì	to draw, to draw up (a map, chart)	这张地图是两百年前绘制的。 This map was drawn two hundred years ago.
笔墨	bǐmò	brush and ink; writing, painting	那种美，很难用笔墨来形容。 That kind of beauty is hard to put into words.
墨	mò	ink, ink stick	写书法要先磨墨。 Before doing calligraphy you grind the ink.
雕	diāo	to carve	他在木头上雕了一只小鸟。 He carved a little bird out of wood.
雕刻	diāokè	to carve; carving	门上的雕刻非常精美。 The carving on the door is beautiful.
雕塑	diāosù	sculpture; to sculpt	广场中间有一座大型雕塑。 There's a large sculpture in the middle of the square.
雕像	diāoxiàng	statue	公园门口有一座诗人的雕像。 There's a statue of a poet at the park gate.
镶嵌	xiāngqiàn	to inlay, to set (jewels)	盒子上镶嵌着很多小石头。 The box is inlaid with lots of little stones.
点缀	diǎnzhuì	to dot, to embellish	绿色的山上点缀着几座白房子。 The green hills are dotted with a few white houses.

衬托	chèntuō	to set off, to bring out	蓝天把红花衬托得更美了。 The blue sky sets the red flowers off beautifully.
烘托	hōngtuō	to set off, to heighten (a mood)	音乐很好地烘托了紧张的气氛。 The music really heightens the tension.
布局	bùjú	layout, composition; to lay out	这幅画的布局很有特点。 The composition of this painting is very distinctive.
构思	gòusī	to plan, to conceive (a work)	这部小说他构思了三年。 He spent three years planning this novel.
美学	měixué	aesthetics	陈教授年轻时读过很多美学的书。 Professor Chen read many books on aesthetics when he was young.
美化	měihuà	to beautify, to prettify	种{zhong4}些花草可以美化环境。 Planting flowers and greenery makes a place more beautiful.
鉴赏	jiànshǎng	to appreciate (art)	鉴赏古画需要很多知识。 Appreciating old paintings takes a lot of knowledge.
品味	pǐnwèi	taste (in things); to savour	她穿衣服很有品味。 She dresses with great taste.
高雅	gāoyǎ	elegant, refined	她家布置得很高雅。 Her home is elegantly decorated.
古朴	gǔpǔ	simple and old-fashioned	这座小镇的建筑很古朴。 The buildings in this little town have a simple, old-world charm.
精妙	jīngmiào	exquisite, ingenious	这个故事的结构非常精妙。 The story is ingeniously constructed.
精湛	jīngzhàn	consummate, superb (skill)	老师傅的手艺十分精湛。 The old craftsman's skill is superb.
绝技	juéjì	unique skill	用一根头发写字是他的绝技。 Writing with a single hair is his special trick.
动感	dònggǎn	sense of movement	这匹马画得很有动感。 This horse is painted with a real sense of movement.
情调	qíngdiào	mood, ambience, charm	这家小饭店很有情调。 This little restaurant has a lot of charm.
韵味	yùnwèi	lingering charm, appeal	这首老歌越听越有韵味。 The more you listen to this old song, the more it grows on you.
灵感	línggǎn	inspiration	这首歌的灵感来自一次旅行。 The song was inspired by a trip.
裸体	luǒtǐ	nude; naked body	博物馆里有几座古代的裸体雕像。 The museum has several ancient nude statues.
扮	bàn	to dress up as, to play (a part)	孩子们扮成了各种小动物。 The children dressed up as all kinds of little animals.

pattern review: 因……而…… and 有何x

因 cause 而 result · 有何 X?

因 A 而 B is a written way to say “B because of A”: 因壁画而出名 famous for its murals. 有何 + X is a classical “what X is there?”, used as a challenge: 有何不可 “why not?”, 有何意见 “any objections?”. Both make a museum guide or an essay sound polished.

这位画家因一幅肖像而出名。 **zhè wèi huàjiā yīn yì fú xiàoxiàng ér chūmíng** The painter became famous for a single portrait.

她因找不到灵感而很着急。 **tā yīn zhǎo bu dào línggǎn ér hěn zháojí** She’s anxious because she can’t find any inspiration.

年轻人喜欢卡通画，有何不可？ **niánqīng rén xǐhuan kǎtōng huà yǒu hé bù kě** Young people like cartoons: what’s wrong with that?

dialogue looking for a poster

professor chen 这个展览很难得：有油画、壁画，有雕塑，还有古人的笔墨。
zhège zhǎnlǎn hěn nándé yǒu yóuhuà bìhuà yǒu diāosù hái yǒu gǔrén de bǐmò · This exhibition is a rare treat: oil paintings, murals, sculpture and old ink paintings too.

little sister 教授，我是来找灵感的。我们短片的主题曲有了，是哥哥用吉他写的旋律，可是还缺一张宣传画，我想自己画。
jiàoshòu wǒ shì lái zhǎo línggǎn de wǒmen duǎn piàn de zhǔtíqǔ yǒu le shì gēge yòng jítā xiě de xuánlǜ kěshì hái quē yì zhāng xuānchuán huà wǒ xiǎng zìjǐ huà · Professor, I've come for inspiration. Our short film has its theme song now, a melody my brother wrote on the guitar, but it still needs a poster, and I want to paint it myself.

professor chen 那你先看这幅肖像。线条很少，画家只用墨勾勒了几笔，人物就活了。他就是因这幅画而出名的。
nà nǐ xiān kàn zhè fú xiàoxiàng xiàntiáo hěn shǎo huàjiā zhǐ yòng mò gōulè le jǐ bǐ rénwù jiù huó le tā jiùshì yīn zhè fú huà ér chūmíng de · Then look at this portrait first. There are hardly any lines: the painter sketched a few strokes in ink and the person comes alive. This is the picture that made him famous.

anna 背景几乎是空的，反而把人物衬托得更突出。
bèijǐng jīhū shì kōng de fǎnér bǎ rénwù chèntuō de gèng tūchū · The background is almost empty, and that makes the figure stand out even more.

professor chen 对，这就是中国画的美学：布局要留白。旁边这张山水画，用淡淡的颜色烘托出山里有雾的情调。
duì zhè jiùshì Zhōngguó huà de měixué bùjú yào liú bái pángbiān zhè zhāng shān shuǐ huà yòng dàn dàn de yánsè hōngtuō chū shān lǐ yǒu wù de qíngdiào · Exactly: that's the aesthetics of Chinese painting. The composition leaves space. This landscape next to it uses pale colours to build up the mood of mist in the mountains.

little sister 这张画很古朴，可是越看越有韵味。
zhè zhāng huà hěn gǔpǔ kěshì yuè kàn yuè yǒu yùnwèi · It's very simple and old-fashioned, but the more I look, the more it grows on me.

professor chen 你这么年轻就会鉴赏古画，很有品味啊。
nǐ zhème niánqīng jiù huì jiànshǎng gǔ huà hěn yǒu pǐnwèi a · So young and already able to appreciate old paintings: you have good taste.

anna 这边是雕塑。这座马的雕像真有动感，好像马上要跑起来。
zhèbiān shì diāosù zhè zuò mǎ de diāoxiàng zhēn yǒu dònggǎn hǎoxiàng mǎshàng yào pǎo qǐlai · The sculpture is over here. This statue of a horse has such movement: it looks as if it's about to break into a gallop.

professor chen 它是用一整块木头雕的，雕刻的手艺非常精湛。马身上还镶嵌着小石头，点缀得很好看。
tā shì yòng yì zhěng kuài mùtou diāo de diāokè de shǒuyì fēicháng jīngzhàn mǎ shēn shàng hái xiāngqiàn zhe xiǎo shítou diǎnzhuì de hěn hǎokàn · It was carved from a single block of wood, and the carving is superb. The horse is inlaid with little stones too, which decorate it beautifully.

anna 这件雕塑像一个小丑在变魔术，真搞笑。
zhè jiàn diāosù xiàng yí gè xiǎochǒu zài biàn móshù zhēn gǎoxiào · This sculpture looks like a clown doing a magic trick: so funny.

little sister 那边的裸体雕像前面，好多学生在练习画画。
nàbiān de luǒtǐ diāoxiàng qiánmiàn hǎoduō xuéshēng zài liànxí huà huà · Over there, lots of students are practising drawing in front of the nude statues.

professor chen 画家研究人体的线条，有何不可？几百年来都是这么学的。
huàjiā yánjiū réntǐ de xiàntiáo yǒu hé bù kě jǐ bǎi nián lái dōu shì zhème xué de · Artists studying the lines of the human body: why not? That's how they've learned for centuries.

anna 我买了一本画册，里面有古人绘制的地图，还有老书里的插图。
wǒ mǎi le yì běn huàcè lǐmiàn yǒu gǔrén huìzhì de dìtú hái yǒu lǎo shū lǐ de chātú · I've bought an art book: it has maps drawn long ago, and illustrations from old books.

little sister 我有构思了！片子里我跑龙套，扮一个画家，宣传画就画我站在一幅大壁画前面。
wǒ yǒu gòusī le piānzi lǐ wǒ pǎo lóngtào bàn yí gè huàjiā xuānchuán huà jiù huà wǒ zhàn zài yì fú dà bìhuà qiánmiàn · I've got it! In the film I have a walk-on part as a painter, so the poster will show me standing in front of a huge mural.

professor chen 好主意。别画得太复杂，也别把自己美化得太漂亮。精妙的作品往往很简单，高雅不在于画得多。
hǎo zhǔyi bié huà de tài fùzá yě bié bǎ zìjǐ měihuà de tài piàoliang jīngmiào de zuòpǐn wǎngwǎng hěn jiǎndān gāoyǎ bú zàiyú huà de duō · Good idea. Don't make it too complicated, and don't make yourself too glamorous. The finest works are often very simple: elegance isn't about how much you paint.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

翘
qiào
to stick up, tilt upwards

坠
zhuì
to fall; to weigh down

伐
fá
(marching)

蹬
dēng
to pedal, push off with the feet

good to know · Measure words for art: 一幅画 (a painting), 一座雕像 (a statue), 一本画册 (an art book). 留白 "leaving white" is a key idea in Chinese painting: the empty space is part of the picture.

Next time you're in a museum, you can say what you see: the lines, the layout and the mood.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 99 stories and style

Talk about books and writing style, and link cause, result and purpose in formal Chinese with 故, 以至(于) and 以.

Book reviews, notices and essays use these written connectors all the time, and readers judge your Chinese by how neatly you join ideas.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
名著	míngzhù	classic, famous work	这部电影是根据一部名著改编的。 The film is adapted from a classic novel.
传记	zhuànjì	biography	我最近在看一本科学家的传记。 I'm reading a biography of a scientist at the moment.
传	zhuàn	biography, life story; commentary	这本书是一部人物传{zhuan4-7}。 This book is a biography.
回忆录	huíyìlù	memoir	她退休以后写了一本回忆录。 After retiring she wrote a memoir.
传奇	chuánqí	legend; legendary	他的一生充满了传奇。 His life was the stuff of legend.
寓言	yùyán	fable	"守株待兔"是一个有名的寓言故事。 Waiting by the tree stump for a hare is a famous fable.
寓意	yùyì	moral, implied meaning	这个故事的寓意很深。 This story has a deep moral.
体裁	tǐcái	genre, literary form	诗歌、小说、散文都是文学体裁。 Poetry, fiction and essays are all literary forms.
素材	sùcái	material (for a work)	作家常常从生活中找素材。 Writers often find their material in everyday life.
取材	qǔcái	to draw material (from)	这部电影取材于一个真实的故事。 The film is based on a true story.
虚构	xūgòu	to make up; fictional	小说里的人物都是虚构的。 The characters in the novel are all fictional.
刻画	kèhuà	to portray, to depict	作者把每个人物都刻画得很生动。 The author brings every character vividly to life.
写照	xiězhào	true portrayal, reflection	这首诗是他一生的写照。 This poem is a true picture of his life.
抒情	shūqíng	to express feelings; lyrical	这是一首抒情诗。 This is a lyric poem.
朗诵	lǎngsòng	to recite (with expression)	她在晚会上朗诵了一首诗。 She recited a poem at the party.
序言	xùyán	preface, foreword	这本书的序言是他的老师写的。 The preface was written by his teacher.

片段	piànduàn	extract, excerpt, fragment	老师让我们读了小说的一个片段。 The teacher had us read an extract from the novel.
简练	jiǎnliàn	concise, succinct	他的文章语言简练，很好读。 His writing is concise and easy to read.
精练	jīngliàn	polished, terse	这段话写得很精练，一个字也不多。 This paragraph is tightly written: not a word too many.
连贯	liánguàn	coherent, joined-up	这篇文章前后不太连贯。 This essay doesn't hang together very well.
堆砌	duīqì	to pile up (fancy words)	写文章不要堆砌好听的词。 When you write, don't just pile up fine-sounding words.
通俗	tōngsú	popular, accessible, plain	这本书写得很通俗，孩子也看得懂。 The book is written so plainly that even children can understand it.
流派	liúpài	school (of thought or art)	这位画家不属于任何流派。 This painter doesn't belong to any school.
原创	yuánchuàng	original (work); to create	这些歌都是乐队自己原创的。 These songs are all the band's own.
仿	fǎng	to imitate, to copy	这座楼是仿古代的样子建的。 This building was built in imitation of an ancient style.
编排	biānpái	to arrange, to lay out	这本书编排得很清楚。 The book is very clearly laid out.
故	gù	therefore, so (formal)	因天气原因，故演出改到明天。 Because of the weather, the performance has been moved to tomorrow.
以致	yǐzhì	so that, with the result that (bad)	他平时不复习，以致考试没通过。 He never revised, so he failed the exam.
以至于	yǐzhìyú	so much so that, to the point that	她看得太投入了，以至于忘了吃饭。 She was so absorbed that she forgot to eat.
致使	zhìshǐ	to cause, to result in	大雨致使很多航班取消。 The heavy rain caused many flights to be cancelled.
旨在	zhǐzài	to be aimed at, to be intended to	这个活动旨在让更多人喜欢读书。 The event aims to get more people reading.
致力于	zhìlìyú	to devote yourself to	她一直致力于儿童教育。 She has always devoted herself to children's education.

pattern written cause, result and purpose: 故, 以至(于), 以

(因) cause ，故 result · …，以至(于) extreme result · …，以 purpose

故 is a formal “therefore”, often after 因: 因时间有限，故…… “as time is short, …”. 以至(于) introduces a result so strong it is surprising: “so much that …”; 以致 is similar but the result is usually bad. A second clause starting with 以 + verb gives the purpose: “…, in order to …”. All four belong to notices, reports and essays.

因演员生病，故今天的演出取消。 **yīn yǎnyuán shēngbìng gù jīntiān de yǎnchū qǔxiāo** Owing to an actor’s illness, today’s performance is cancelled.

她太紧张了，以至于把台词都忘了。 **tā tài jǐnzhāng le yǐzhìyú bǎ tái cí dōu wàng le** She was so nervous that she forgot all her lines.

学校办了这个沙龙，以鼓励大家多读书。 **xuéxiào bàn le zhège shālóng yǐ gǔlì dàjiā duō dúshū** The school started this salon to encourage everyone to read more.

他一直不注意休息，以致病倒了。 **tā yìzhí bú zhùyì xiūxi yǐzhì bìng dǎo le** He never took care to rest, and ended up falling ill.

dialogue the reading salon

teacher wang 欢迎大家来参加读书沙龙！凡是今天来的朋友，均可免费借一本书。今天的主题是传记和回忆录。
huānyíng dàjiā lái cānjiā dúshū shālóng fánshì jīntiān lái de péngyou jūn kě miǎnfèi jiè yì běn shū jīntiān de zhǔtí shì zhuànjì hé huíyìlù · Welcome to the reading salon! Everyone here today may borrow a book for free. Tonight's theme is biographies and memoirs.

teacher wang 安娜，你先给大家朗诵一个片段吧。
Ānnà nǐ xiān gěi dàjiā lǎngsòng yí gè piànduàn ba · Anna, would you start by reading us an extract?

anna 我读的是一位老科学家的回忆录。他的一生很传奇，可书写得很通俗，语言也很简练。
wǒ dú de shì yí wèi lǎo kēxué jiā de huíyìlù tā de yìshēng hěn chuánqí kě shū xiě de hěn tōngsú yǔyán yě hěn jiǎnliàn · I'm reading from an old scientist's memoir. His life was extraordinary, but the book is written very plainly and concisely.

anna （读）"那年冬天特别冷，以至于村里的河都冻住了。我每天天不亮就出门，以赶上第一节课。"
dú nà nián dōngtiān tèbié lěng yǐzhìyú cūn lǐ de hé dōu dòng zhù le wǒ měi tiān tiān bú liàng jiù chūmén yǐ gǎnshàng dì yī jié kè · (reading) "That winter was so cold that even the river in the village froze. Every day I left before dawn to get to the first lesson in time."

editor lin 写得真精练，没有一个字是多余的。前后很连贯，也不堆砌好听的词。
xiě de zhēn jīngliàn méiyǒu yí gè zì shì duōyú de qiánhòu hěn liánguàn yě bù duīqì hǎotīng de cí · That's tight writing: not a word wasted. It flows well, and it doesn't pile on fancy words.

teacher wang 安娜，你朗诵得比我还好！
Ānnà nǐ lǎngsòng de bǐ wǒ hái hǎo · Anna, you read better than I do!

anna 王老师，您说到哪儿去了！我的中文还差得远呢。
Wánglǎoshī nín shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒ de Zhōngwén hái chà de yuǎn ne · Oh, Teacher Wang, not at all! My Chinese still has a long way to go.

editor lin 我最近在写一部人物传，取材于一位老演员的真实经历，他后来荣获过很多奖项。传记这种体裁不能虚构，可也要把人物刻画得生动。
wǒ zuìjìn zài xiě yí bù rénwù zhuàn qǔcái yú yí wèi lǎo yǎnyuán de zhēnshí jīnglì tā hòulái rónghuò guo hěn duō jiǎngxiàng zhuànjì zhè zhǒng tǐcái bù néng xūgòu kě yě yào bǎ rénwù kèhuà de shēngdòng · I'm writing a biography at the moment, based on the real life of an old actor who went on to win many awards. In a biography you can't make things up, but you still have to bring the person to life.

anna 小明妹妹的短片也是这样。素材来自她爷爷的回忆，是原创的故事，不是仿别人的。宣传画也是她自己构思的。
Xiǎomíng mèimei de duǎn piàn yě shì zhèyàng sùcái láizì tā yéye de huíyì shì yuánchuàng de gùshi bú shì fǎng biérén de xuānchuán huà yě shì tā zìjǐ gòusī de · Xiaoming's sister's short film is the same. The material comes from her grandpa's memories: it's an original story, not a copy of anyone else's. She came up with the poster herself too.

teacher wang 那片子的寓意是什么？
nà piānzi de yùyì shì shénme · So what's the message of the film?

anna 有点儿像寓言：一个画家一辈子只用笔墨画一座山。换句话说，就是坚持。
yǒudiǎnr xiàng yùyán yí gè huàjiā yíbèizi zhǐ yòng bǐmò huà yí zuò shān huàn jù huà shuō jiùshì jiānchí · It's a bit like a fable: a painter who spends his whole life painting one mountain in ink. In other words, it's about perseverance.

editor lin 这是老一代人的写照。以前作家喜欢讲流派，现在大家更看重好故事。
zhè shì lǎo yídài rén de xiězhào yǐqián zuòjiā xǐhuan jiǎng liúpài xiànzài dàjiā gèng kànzhòng hǎo gùshi · That's a true picture of the older generation. Writers used to care about schools and movements; now people value a good story more.

anna 我读的那本回忆录也是这样，里面有很多插图和老照片。
wǒ dú de nà běn huíyìlù yě shì zhèyàng lǐmiàn yǒu hěn duō chātú hé lǎo zhàopiàn · The memoir I read is like

that too: it's full of illustrations and old photos.

teacher wang 我们的沙龙旨在让大家多读名著，也致力于帮外国朋友了解中国文学。
wǒmen de shālóng zhǐzài ràng dàjiā duō dú míngzhù yě zhìlìyú bāng wàiguó péngyou liǎojiě Zhōngguó wénxué · Our salon aims to get people reading the classics, and to help friends from abroad get to know Chinese literature.

teacher wang 下面请大家讨论。因时间有限，故每人只说三分钟。顺序我已经编排好了，写在书的序言后面。
xiàmiàn qǐng dàjiā tǎolùn yīn shíjiān yǒuxiàn gù měi rén zhǐ shuō sān fēnzhōng shùnxù wǒ yǐjīng biānpái hǎo le xiě zài shū de xùyán hòumiàn · Now let's discuss. As time is short, everyone gets three minutes. I've already arranged the order: it's written after the preface of your book.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

跨
kuà
to stride, step across; to span

溜
liū
to slip away; to slide

遛
liù
to walk (a dog)

驻
zhù
to be stationed, based (at)

good to know · 以至于 can be good or neutral (so absorbed that …); 以致 usually leads to something bad (以致病倒了). 传 is chuán "to pass on" in 传奇 (legend), but zhuàn "life story" in 传记 and book titles like 《李白传》.

With **故, 以至于** and **以** your written Chinese starts to sound like a real report or essay.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 100 eyes and attention

Use four-character idioms for watching, attention and behaviour, and pile up praise or complaints with ……不说，还……

Reviews, chats about films and gossip about people are full of these idioms; they are the quickest way to sound like a fluent speaker.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
爱不释手	àibùshìshǒu	to love too much to put down	这本书我爱不释手，一晚上就看完了。 I couldn't put the book down: I finished it in one night.
津津有味	jīnjīnyǒuwèi	with great relish	孩子们听故事听得津津有味。 The children were lapping up the story.
乐此不疲	lècǐbùpí	to never tire of it	他每个周末都去拍鸟，乐此不疲。 He goes bird-photographing every weekend and never tires of it.
目不转睛	mùbùzhuǎnjīng	to stare without blinking	孩子们目不转睛地看着小丑变魔术。 The children watched the clown's magic tricks without blinking.
扣人心弦	kòurénxīnxián	gripping, thrilling	最后十分钟扣人心弦。 The last ten minutes are gripping.
引人入胜	yǐnrénrùshèng	fascinating, absorbing	这本小说写得引人入胜。 The novel is absorbing.
引人注目	yǐnrénzhùmù	eye-catching, striking	她穿着一条红裙子，非常引人注目。 In her red dress she really caught the eye.
耐人寻味	nàirénxúnwèi	thought-provoking	电影的结局耐人寻味。 The film's ending gives you a lot to think about.
耳目一新	ěrmùyīxīn	refreshingly new	这家书店重新装修以后，让人耳目一新。 Since its makeover, the bookshop feels refreshingly new.
耳熟能详	ěrshúnéngxiáng	so familiar you know it by heart	这些故事中国人都耳熟能详。 Every Chinese person knows these stories by heart.
喜闻乐见	xǐwénlèjiàn	popular, well-loved	相声是老百姓喜闻乐见的艺术。 Crosstalk is an art ordinary people love.
刮目相看	guāmùxiāngkàn	to see someone in a new light	她这次演得这么好，大家都对她刮目相看。 She acted so well this time that everyone sees her in a new light.
别具匠心	biéjùjiàngxīn	ingenious, original	这个书店的设计别具匠心。 The design of this bookshop is really ingenious.
精彩纷呈	jīngcǎifēnchéng	one highlight after another	今天晚上的节目精彩纷呈。 Tonight's show was one highlight after another.
容光焕发	róngguānghuànfā	glowing, radiant	张女士今天容光焕发，看起来年轻了十岁。 Ms Zhang is glowing today: she looks ten years younger.

扑面而来	pūmiànérlái	to hit you in the face	一进门，饭菜的香味扑面而来。 As soon as we walked in, the smell of the food hit us.
深入人心	shēnrùrénxīn	to strike a deep chord	这个角色深入人心。 The character has struck a deep chord with people.
鲜为人知	xiǎnwéirénzhī	little known	这部片子讲的是一段鲜为人知的历史。 The film tells a little-known piece of history.
沸沸扬扬	fèifèiyángyáng	the talk of the town; in an uproar	这件事在网上闹得沸沸扬扬。 The affair caused an uproar online.
大惊小怪	dàjīngxiǎoguài	to make a fuss about nothing	这有什么好大惊小怪的? What's all the fuss about?
比比皆是	bǐbǐjiēshì	to be found everywhere	这样的问题比比皆是。 Problems like this are everywhere.
司空见惯	sīkōngjiànguàn	nothing out of the ordinary	在大城市，堵车已经司空见惯了。 In big cities, traffic jams are nothing new.
随时随地	suíshísuídì	any time, anywhere	有了手机，我们随时随地都能看新闻。 With phones, we can read the news any time, anywhere.
成群结队	chéngqúnjiéduì	in crowds, in groups	年轻人成群结队地来看电影。 Young people came to the film in groups.
争先恐后	zhēngxiānkǒnghòu	to rush to be first	门一开，大家争先恐后地往里跑。 The moment the doors opened, everyone rushed inside.
左顾右盼	zuǒgùyòupàn	to look around, to glance about	他站在门口左顾右盼，好像在等人。 He stood at the door looking around, as if he was waiting for someone.
一动不动	yīdòngbùdòng	perfectly still	大白趴在地上一动不动。 Dabai lay on the floor without moving.
一举一动	yījǔyīdòng	every move	明星的一举一动都有人关注。 Every move a star makes is watched.
一言一行	yīyányīxíng	every word and deed	父母的一言一行都会影响孩子。 Everything parents say and do affects their children.
所作所为	suǒzuòsuǒwéi	what someone has done, conduct	他的所作所为让大家很失望。 What he did disappointed everyone.
袖手旁观	xiùshǒupángguān	to stand by and do nothing	朋友有困难，我们不能袖手旁观。 When a friend is in trouble, we can't just stand by.
敬而远之	jìngéryuǎnzhī	to keep at a respectful distance	他太严肃了，同学们都对他敬而远之。 He's so serious that his classmates keep their distance.
格格不入	gégébùrù	out of place, not fitting in	这座新楼和周围的老房子格格不入。 The new building looks out of place among the old houses around it.
礼尚往来	lǐshàngwǎnglái	courtesy calls for courtesy	你请我看电影，我请你吃饭，礼尚往来嘛。 You took me to the film, I'll take you to dinner: one good turn deserves another.

pattern **a 不说，还 b: not only a, b as well**

A **不说，** **(subject) 还** **B (one more thing)**

A 不说，还 B means “never mind A, there’s B too”: it adds a second point on top of the first, often in complaints (他迟到不说，还……) but also in praise. It’s spoken and lively; the written equivalent is 不仅……，而且……

这部片子剧情引人入胜不说，音乐还特别好听。 **zhè bù piānzi jùqíng yǐnrén rùshèng bù shuō yīnyuè hái tèbié hǎotīng** Not only is the plot gripping, the music is wonderful too.

他迟到不说，还把票弄丢了。 **tā chídào bù shuō hái bǎ piào nòng diū le** He was late, and on top of that he lost the tickets.

这个短片的道具别具匠心不说，还都是从家里拿的。 **zhège duǎn piàn de dàojù biéjù jiàngxīn bù shuō hái dōu shì cóng jiā lǐ ná de** The props in the short film are really clever, and they all came from home.

导演把她骂了一通，这样一来，她反而不紧张了。 **dǎoyǎn bǎ tā mà le yí tòng zhèyàng yì lái tā fǎnér bù jǐnzhāng le** The director gave her a real telling-off, and as a result she stopped being nervous.

dialogue a film under the stars

xiaoming 你看，年轻人成群结队地来了。门一开，大家争先恐后地往里跑。
nǐ kàn niánqīng rén chéngqún jiéduì de lái le mén yì kāi dàjiā zhēngxiān kǒnghòu de wǎng lǐ pǎo · Look, young people arriving in crowds. The moment the gates opened, everyone rushed in.

anna 一进公园，热闹的气氛就扑面而来。露天电影真有意思！门口还有个乐队在唱歌。
yí jìn gōngyuán rènao de qìfēn jiù pūmiànérlái lùtiān diànyǐng zhēn yǒu yìsi ménkǒu hái yǒu gè yuèduì zài chàng gē · The second you walk into the park, the buzz hits you. Open-air films are such fun! There's even a band singing at the entrance.

xiaoming 今天放的是一部老片子，大家都耳熟能详，里面的插曲也深入人心。
jīntiān fàng de shì yí bù lǎo piānzi dàjiā dōu ěrshú néngxiáng lǐmiàn de chāqǔ yě shēnrù rénxīn · Tonight it's an old film everyone knows by heart, and the songs in it are much loved.

anna 昨天那部片子讲的是一段鲜为人知的历史，精彩纷呈不说，还让人耳目一新。
zuótiān nà bù piānzi jiǎng de shì yí duàn xiǎnwéirénzhī de lìshǐ jīngcǎi fēnchéng bù shuō hái ràng rén ěrmù yìxīn · The film yesterday was about a little-known piece of history: one great scene after another, and it felt really fresh too.

xiaoming （左顾右盼）我妹妹呢？说好七点见的。
zuǒgù yòupàn wǒ mèimei ne shuō hǎo qī diǎn jiàn de · (looking around) Where's my sister? We said seven.

little sister 我在这儿！别提了，导演刚才在后台把我骂了一通。
wǒ zài zhèr bié tí le dǎoyǎn gāngcái zài hòutái bǎ wǒ mà le yí tòng · I'm here! Don't ask. The director just gave me a real telling-off backstage.

anna 为什么？
wèi shénme · What for?

little sister 他说我的一举一动都太紧张，在台上一动不动，像个木偶，对白也说得太快。
tā shuō wǒ de yìjǔ yídòng dōu tài jǐnzhāng zài tái shàng yídòng búdòng xiàng gè mùǒu duìbái yě shuō de tài kuài · He says every move I make is too tense: I stand on stage without moving, like a puppet, and I rush my lines.

xiaoming 他骂你不说，还不让你明天上台了？
tā mà nǐ bù shuō hái bú ràng nǐ míngtiān shàngtái le · So he's not just told you off: he's not letting you on stage tomorrow either?

little sister 那倒没有。他说把话说开了，这样一来，我明天反而不紧张了。
nà dào méiyǒu tā shuō bǎ huà shuō kāi le zhèyàng yì lái wǒ míngtiān fǎnér bù jǐnzhāng le · No, not that. He says now he's said it, I'll actually be less nervous tomorrow.

anna 他的所作所为是有点儿过分，可他对片子很认真。
tā de suǒzuò suǒwéi shì yǒudiǎnr guòfèn kě tā duì piānzi hěn rènzhēn · What he did was a bit much, but he takes the film seriously.

little sister 他的一言一行都像个大导演，所以同学们都对他敬而远之。可他拍的片子，大家都爱看。
tā de yìyán yìxíng dōu xiàng gè dà dǎoyǎn suǒyǐ tóngxuémen dōu duì tā jìngéryuǎnzhī kě tā pāi de piānzi dàjiā dōu ài kàn · Everything he says and does is like a big-shot director, so everyone keeps their distance. But they all love his films.

xiaoming 明天你登场的时候放松一点儿。演好了，他就会对你刮目相看。
míngtiān nǐ dēngchǎng de shíhou fàngsōng yìdiǎnr yǎn hǎo le tā jiù huì duì nǐ guāmù xiāngkàn · Relax when you come on tomorrow. Do well and he'll see you in a whole new light.

anna 开始了！这种老百姓喜闻乐见的片子，在露天看最有味道。
kāishǐ le zhè zhǒng lǎobǎixìng xǐwén lèjiàn de piānzi zài lùtiān kàn zuì yǒu wèidào · It's starting! A film everybody loves, like this one, is best watched outdoors.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

趴
pā
to lie on your stomach, lean over

倚
yǐ
to lean on

窜
cuàn
to dart, scurry

凑
còu
to gather; to put together; to move close

good to know · Many idioms come in pairs of near-twins: 引人入胜 (absorbing, for stories) vs 引人注目 (eye-catching, for looks). 一举一动 and 一言一行 both mean “everything someone does”; 所作所为 usually sounds critical.

A hundred days in: you can now describe a whole evening in idioms, and complain or praise twice over with 不说，还.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 101 old, full and scarce

Describe things as old or new, heavy or light, plentiful or rare, and make a strong point with 连……都……，更不用说……了.

Whether you're clearing an attic, buying second-hand or describing a person's energy, these adjectives do the work, and "even …, let alone …" is how Chinese speakers clinch an argument.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
陈旧	chénjiù	outdated, old-fashioned	这些设备太陈旧了，该换了。 This equipment is too outdated: it's time to replace it.
破旧	pòjiù	worn out, shabby	他穿着一件破旧的大衣。 He was wearing a shabby old coat.
简陋	jiǎnlòu	simple and crude, basic	教室虽然简陋，但是很干净。 The classroom is basic, but very clean.
残缺	cánquē	incomplete, with parts missing	这本古书已经残缺不全了。 This old book is no longer complete.
完好	wánhǎo	intact, in good condition	这只碗三百年了，还保存得很完好。 The bowl is three hundred years old and still in perfect condition.
完备	wánbèi	complete, fully equipped	这家医院的设施非常完备。 This hospital is very well equipped.
现成	xiànchéng	ready-made	家里有现成的饭，不用做了。 There's food ready at home: no need to cook.
耐用	nàiyòng	durable, hard-wearing	这种包又轻又耐用。 This kind of bag is light and hard-wearing.
笨重	bènzhòng	heavy and clumsy, bulky	这台老电视又大又笨重。 This old TV is big and bulky.
沉甸甸	chéndiàndiàn	heavy (in your hands)	箱子沉甸甸的，里面装满了书。 The box is heavy: it's full of books.
重型	zhòngxíng	heavy-duty, heavy (vehicle)	这条路不许重型卡车通过。 Heavy trucks aren't allowed on this road.
轻型	qīngxíng	light (type)	我们买了一辆轻型车。 We bought a light vehicle.
僵	jiāng	stiff, numb; deadlocked	外面太冷了，我的手都冻僵了。 It's so cold out there my hands are frozen stiff.
僵硬	jiāngyìng	stiff, rigid	坐了一天，脖子都僵硬了。 After sitting all day, my neck is stiff.
生硬	shēngyìng	stiff, awkward, unnatural	他的中文有点儿生硬。 His Chinese is a bit stiff.
生疏	shēngshū	rusty, out of practice	好几年没弹钢琴，手都生疏了。 I haven't played the piano for years: I'm out of practice.

松弛	sōngchí	slack, loose, relaxed	做完运动，全身的肌肉都松弛下来了。 After exercise, all your muscles relax.
涨	zhàng	to swell; to flush (red)	他一紧张，脸就涨{zhang4-7}得通红。 When he gets nervous, his face goes bright red.
饱满	bǎomǎn	full, plump; full of (energy)	演员们精神饱满地走上舞台。 The actors walked on stage full of energy.
丰满	fēngmǎn	full, rounded; plump	这部小说里的人物写得很丰满。 The characters in this novel are fully rounded.
丰厚	fēnghòu	generous, rich (pay, gifts)	这份工作的收入很丰厚。 This job pays very well.
充沛	chōngpèi	abundant, full of (energy)	孩子们总是精力充沛。 Children always have bags of energy.
充裕	chōngyù	ample, plenty (time, money)	时间很充裕，我们慢慢来。 We've got plenty of time: let's take it slowly.
雄厚	xiónghòu	solid, strong (funds, strength)	这家公司资金雄厚。 This company has deep pockets.
旺盛	wàngshèng	vigorous, flourishing	年轻人的好奇心很旺盛。 Young people are full of curiosity.
繁多	fánduō	many and varied	超市里的商品种类繁多。 The supermarket has a huge range of goods.
繁杂	fánzá	miscellaneous, many and messy	她每天要处理很多繁杂的事情。 Every day she has to deal with lots of odds and ends.
零碎	língsuì	scattered, bits and pieces	抽屉里都是零碎的东西。 The drawer is full of bits and pieces.
零星	língxīng	scattered, sporadic, odd	明天有零星小雨。 Tomorrow there will be scattered showers.
琐碎	suǒsuì	trivial, petty	生活中琐碎的小事最花时间。 It's the little everyday chores that take up the most time.
稀	xī	sparse, rare; watery	他的头发越来越稀了。 His hair is getting thinner and thinner.
稀少	xīshǎo	sparse, few	这一带人口稀少。 This area is thinly populated.
稀有	xīyǒu	rare, uncommon	这是一种很稀有|的花。 This is a very rare flower.
稀罕	xīhan	rare; to value, to care for	这种东西现在不稀罕了，到处都能买到。 Things like this aren't rare any more: you can buy them anywhere.
稀奇	xīqí	strange, curious, rare	他从国外带回来很多稀奇的东西。 He brought back lots of curious things from abroad.

pattern 连 a 都……，更不用说 b 了: even a …, let alone b

连 | the unlikely case | 都……, | 更不用说 | the obvious case | 了

First give the surprising case with 连……都 (even A …), then the obvious one with 更不用说……了 ("needless to say B, let alone B"). If it's true even for A, it's certainly true for B. The pattern works for both positive and negative points.

这个箱子沉甸甸的，连我都抬不动，更不用说妹妹了。 **zhège xiāngzi chéndiàndiàn de lián wǒ dōu tái bu dòng gèng búyòng shuō mèimei le** This box is so heavy even I can't lift it, let alone my sister.

这种鸟越来越稀少，连专家都很少见到，更不用说普通人了。 **zhè zhǒng niǎo yuè lái yuè xīshǎo lián zhuānjiā dōu hěn shǎo jiàn dào gèng búyòng shuō pǔtōng rén le** This bird is getting rarer and rarer: even experts hardly ever see one, let alone ordinary people.

这个柜子又旧又难看。话又说回来，旧东西虽然破旧，可是很耐用。 **zhège guìzi yòu jiù yòu nánkàn huà yòu shuō huilai jiù dōngxi suīrán pòjiù kěshì hěn nàiyòng** This cupboard is old and ugly. Then again, old things may be shabby, but they last.

老实说，这些零碎的东西早就该扔了。 **lǎoshi shuō zhèxiē língsuì de dōngxi zǎo jiù gāi rēng le** Frankly, all these bits and pieces should have been thrown out long ago.

dialogue treasures in the attic

little sister 爸爸，电影节要在大厅展出我们的道具，阁楼上那些旧东西我得拿走。
bàba diànyǐng jié yào zài dàtīng zhǎnchū wǒmen de dàojù gélóu shàng nàxiē jiù dōngxi wǒ de ná zǒu · Dad, the festival is putting our props on show in the lobby, so I need to take those old things from the attic.

dr li 拿吧，都是些陈旧的东西：破旧的箱子、残缺的书、那台笨重的老电视、几张旧唱片，还有一堆零碎的东西。
ná ba dōu shì xiē chénjiù de dōngxi pòjiù de xiāngzi cánquē de shū nà tái bènzhòng de lǎo diànshì jǐ zhāng jiù chàngpiàn hái yǒu yì duī língsuì de dōngxi · Go ahead. It's all old stuff: battered boxes, books with pages missing, that bulky old TV, a few old records, and a heap of odds and ends.

xiaoming 这个箱子沉甸甸的，里面装的什么？
zhège xiāngzi chéndiàndiàn de lǐmiàn zhuāng de shénme · This box weighs a ton. What's in it?

dr li 你爷爷的书、信和画册。连我都好多年没打开了，更不用说你们了。
nǐ yéye de shū xìn hé huàcè lián wǒ dōu hǎoduō nián méi dǎkāi le gèng búyòng shuō nǐmen le · Your grandpa's books, letters and art albums. Even I haven't opened it in years, let alone you two.

anna 这本书一百年了，还这么完好！这么稀有的东西，真稀奇。现在很稀罕了吧？
zhè běn shū yìbǎi nián le hái zhème wánhǎo zhème xīyǒu de dōngxi zhēn xīqí xiànzài hěn xīhan le ba · This book is a hundred years old and still in perfect condition! Something this rare is a real curiosity. You hardly ever see one now, do you?

xiaoming 箱子里还有一支笛子，是爷爷年轻的时候吹的。
xiāngzi lǐ hái yǒu yì zhī dízi shì yéye niánqīng de shíhou chuī de · There's a flute in the box too: Grandpa played it when he was young.

dr li 老实说，以前家里条件简陋，可东西都很耐用。现在的东西种类繁多，倒是用不了几年。
lǎoshi shuō yǐqián jiā lǐ tiáojiàn jiǎnlòu kě dōngxi dōu hěn nàiyòng xiànzài de dōngxi zhǒnglèi fánduō dàoshì yòng bu liǎo jǐ nián · To be honest, our home used to be very basic, but things lasted. Now there's endless choice, and nothing lasts more than a few years.

little sister 片子里那个画家的房间，就是用这些现成的东西布置的，布局是导演定的。拍片子的时候琐碎的事特别多，导演每天要处理很多繁杂的事情。
piānzi lǐ nàge huàjiā de fángjiān jiùshì yòng zhèxiē xiànchéng de dōngxi bùzhì de bùjú shì dǎoyǎn dìng de pāi piānzi de shíhou suǒsuì de shì tèbié duō dǎoyǎn měi tiān yào chǔlǐ hěn duō fánzá de shìqing · We dressed the painter's room in the film with these very things, and the director decided the layout. Shooting a film involves endless little jobs, and the director had a pile of odds and ends to deal with every day.

xiaoming 话又说回来，你们的设备也太简单了。连一台好相机都没有，更不用说重型的拍摄设备了。
huà yòu shuō huilai nǐmen de shèbèi yě tài jiǎndān le lián yì tái hǎo xiàngjī dōu méiyǒu gèng búyòng shuō zhòngxíng de pāishè shèbèi le · Then again, your equipment was so basic. You didn't even have a decent camera, let alone heavy filming gear.

little sister 我们只有一台轻型的小相机。导演说，钱不充裕，就要靠灵感和创意。
wǒmen zhǐyǒu yì tái qīngxíng de xiǎo xiàngjī dǎoyǎn shuō qián bù chōngyù jiù yào kào línggǎn hé chuàngyì · We just had one light little camera. The director says when money's short, you rely on inspiration and ideas.

dr li 你们导演很有想法。年轻人精力充沛，好奇心旺盛，这是好事。
nǐmen dǎoyǎn hěn yǒu xiǎngfǎ niánqīng rén jīnglì chōngpèi hàoqí xīn wàngshèng zhè shì hǎo shì · Your director has his own ideas. Young people are full of energy and curiosity: that's a good thing.

anna 电影节的奖金丰厚吗？
diànyǐng jié de jiǎngjīn fēnghòu ma · Is the festival prize money generous?

little sister 不太丰厚，主办方的资金也不雄厚。能放映，我们就很满足了。可明天还有问答环节，我一紧张脸就涨得通红，手也僵了。
bú tài fēnghòu zhǔbàn fāng de zījīn yě bù xiónghòu néng fàngyìng wǒmen jiù hěn mǎnzú le kě míngtiān hái yǒu wèn dá huánjié wǒ yì jǐnzhāng liǎn jiù zhàng de tōnghóng shǒu yě jiāng le · Not very. The organisers don't

have deep pockets either. Just being screened is enough for us. But there's a Q&A tomorrow, and when I'm nervous my face goes bright red and my hands go stiff.

dr li 来，深呼吸，让肩膀松弛下来。你看，脖子这么僵硬。上次你说话也有点儿生硬，慢慢说就好了。

lái shēn hūxī ràng jiānbǎng sōngchí xialai nǐ kàn bózi zhème jiāngyìng shàng cì nǐ shuōhuà yě yǒudiǎnr shēngyìng màn màn shuō jiù hǎo le · Come on, deep breath, let your shoulders relax. Look how stiff your neck is. Last time you sounded a bit stiff too: just take it slowly.

xiaoming 别担心，你演的人物很丰满，感情也很饱满。

bié dānxīn nǐ yǎn de rénwù hěn fēngmǎn gǎnqíng yě hěn bǎomǎn · Don't worry. The character you play is fully rounded, and you put real feeling into it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

绊 bàn to trip over												
隆 lóng grand, thriving												
庙 miào temple, shrine												
寺 sì (Buddhist) temple												

good to know · 稀 has two everyday senses: sparse (头发稀) and watery (粥太稀). 稀罕 is chatty: 我才不稀罕！ "As if I care!" 涨 is zhàng when something swells or a face flushes (脸涨红了), but zhǎng when prices or water rise.

Old or new, rare or plentiful: you can now describe the things around you precisely, and win an argument with "let alone".
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 102 mission: the film festival

Follow a whole day at a film festival in Chinese: a screening, a Q&A, the awards-night notice, the ceremony and the party afterwards.

Everything from this unit comes together: film and stage, music and shows, painting, books and style, idioms of attention, and words for old, full and rare.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the screening

xiaoming 小剧场里坐满了人！年轻人成群结队地来，门一开就争先恐后地往里走。
xiǎo jùchǎng lǐ zuò mǎn le rén niánqīng rén chéngqún jiéduì de lái mén yì kāi jiù zhēngxiān kǒnghòu de wǎng lǐ zǒu · The little theatre is packed! Young people came in groups and rushed in the moment the doors opened.

editor lin 学生的片子能有这么多人捧场，真不简单。
xuéshēng de piānzi néng yǒu zhème duō rén pěngchǎng zhēn bù jiǎndān · A student film with this many people coming to support it: that's quite something.

anna 开场了。序幕是一段卡通，有点儿像木偶戏：银幕上一个小丑在变魔术，好搞笑！
kāichǎng le xùmù shì yí duàn kǎtōng yǒudiǎnr xiàng mùǒu xì yínmù shàng yí gè xiǎochǒu zài biàn móshù hǎo gǎoxiào · It's starting. The prologue is a cartoon, a bit like a puppet show: a clown doing magic tricks on the screen. So funny!

xiaoming 主题曲来了。旋律是我谱的，伴奏是我弹的吉他，合唱是我妈妈她们合唱团唱的，笛子是我爷爷吹的。
zhǔtíqǔ lái le xuánlǜ shì wǒ pǔ de bànzòu shì wǒ tán de jítā héchàng shì wǒ māma tāmen héchàng tuán chàng de dízi shì wǒ yéye chuī de · Here comes the theme song. I wrote the tune and played the guitar accompaniment, my mum's choir sang it, and my grandpa played the flute.

xiaoming 录歌那天，我的吉他断了一根弦，还是乐队里拉小提琴的朋友借了我一把。我连乐谱都没写，全靠记。
lù gē nà tiān wǒ de jítā duàn le yì gēn xián háishi yuèduì lǐ lā xiǎotíqín de péngyou jiè le wǒ yì bǎ wǒ lián yuèpǔ dōu méi xiě quán kào jì · The day we recorded it, a string on my guitar snapped, and a violinist friend from the band lent me one. I didn't even write the music down: it was all from memory.

editor lin 换句话说，这是一部全家人的片子！
huàn jù huà shuō zhè shì yí bù quán jiārén de piānzi · In other words, it's a whole-family film!

editor lin 编剧也是导演自己，剧情很简单，却引人入胜。
biānjù yě shì dǎoyǎn zìjǐ jùqíng hěn jiǎndān què yǐnrén rùshèng · The director wrote the script too. The plot is simple, but it draws you right in.

anna 主人公是一个老画家，一辈子只画一座山。演老画家的那位老人演技真好，他一登场，大家都目不转睛。
zhǔréngōng shì yí gè lǎo huàjiā yíbèizi zhǐ huà yí zuò shān yǎn lǎo huàjiā de nà wèi lǎorén yǎnjì zhēn hǎo tā yì dēngchǎng dàjiā dōu mùbùzhuǎnjīng · The hero is an old painter who spends his whole life painting one mountain. The old man who plays him is a wonderful actor: from the moment he appears, nobody can look away.

xiaoming 我妹妹演他的孙女，一个配角。说是跑龙套，其实戏不少。
wǒ mèimei yǎn tā de sūnnǚ yí gè pèijué shuō shì pǎo lóngtào qíshí xì bù shǎo · My sister plays his granddaughter, a supporting role. She called it a walk-on, but she's in quite a lot of it.

xiaoming 其实老画家的声音不是他自己的，是后来配音的。
qíshí lǎo huàjiā de shēngyīn bú shì tā zìjǐ de shì hòulái pèiyīn de · Actually the old painter's voice isn't his own: it was dubbed later.

editor lin 对白不多，可每一句都很精练。插曲用的是一张老唱片里的歌谣，扑面而来的都是老北京的味道。
duìbái bù duō kě měi yí jù dōu hěn jīngliàn chāqǔ yòng de shì yì zhāng lǎo chàngpiàn lǐ de gēyáo pūmiànérlái de dōu shì lǎo Běijīng de wèidào · There isn't much dialogue, but every line is tight. The song in the middle is a folk rhyme from an old record, and the feel of old Beijing hits you in the face.

anna 高潮那段太扣人心弦了：画家的画被大雨打湿了，他一动不动地坐在山前，我以为他要放弃了。
gāocháo nà duàn tài kòurénxīnxián le huàjiā de huà bèi dà yǔ dǎ shī le tā yídòng búdòng de zuò zài shān qián wǒ yǐwéi tā yào fàngqì le · The climax was so gripping: the rain ruins the painter's picture and he sits in front of the mountain without moving. I thought he was going to give up.

editor lin 悬念一直留到最后，结局也耐人寻味。老实说，比昨天的开幕片还好。
xuánniàn yìzhí liú dào zuìhòu jiéjú yě nàirénxúnwèi lǎoshi shuō bǐ zuótiān de kāimù piàn hái hǎo · The

suspense holds right to the end, and the ending makes you think. Honestly, it's better than the opening film yesterday.

xiaoming 放完了！大家都在鼓掌叫好，还有人站起来喝彩！

fàng wán le dàjiā dōu zài gǔzhǎng jiàohǎo hái yǒu rén zhàn qǐlái hècǎi · It's over! Everyone's clapping and cheering, and some people are on their feet!

editor lin 这部片子还没正式上映，就有人问票房了。听说电影节以后，还要去几个城市的大学巡回放映。

zhè bù piānzi hái méi zhèngshì shàngyìng jiù yǒu rén wèn piàofáng le tīngshuō diànyǐng jié yǐhòu hái yào qù jǐ gè chéngshì de dàxué xúnhuí fàngyìng · The film hasn't even been released yet and people are already asking about the box office. I hear it's going on a tour of universities in several cities after the festival.

chapter 2 chapter 2: the q&a

editor lin 我是今天问答的主持人。先请导演的同学，也是片子里的孙女，回答大家的问题。
wǒ shì jīntiān wèn dá de zhǔchí rén xiān qǐng dǎoyǎn de tóngxué yě shì piānzi lǐ de sūnnǚ huídá dàjiā de wèntí · I'm hosting today's Q&A. First, let's ask the director's classmate, who also plays the granddaughter, to take your questions.

little sister （脸涨得通红）大家好……谢谢大家来捧场。
liǎn zhàng de tōnghóng dàjiā hǎo xièxie dàjiā lái pěngchǎng · (going bright red) Hello, everyone... Thank you all for coming to support us.

editor lin 第一个问题：故事是虚构的，还是取材于真事？
dì yī gè wèntí gùshi shì xūgòu de háishi qǔcái yú zhēn shì · First question: is the story made up, or based on real events?

little sister 素材来自我爷爷的回忆。他年轻时学过油画，后来在一个简陋的小学教美术，一辈子都在画家乡的山。换句话说，这是他一生的写照。
sùcái láizì wǒ yéye de huíyì tā niánqīng shí xué guo yóuhuà hòulái zài yí gè jiǎnlòu de xiǎoxué jiāo měishù yíbèizi dōu zài huà jiāxiāng de shān huàn jù huà shuō zhè shì tā yìshēng de xiězhào · The material comes from my grandpa's memories. He studied oil painting when he was young, then taught art in a very basic little primary school, and spent his whole life painting the mountains back home. In other words, it's a true picture of his life.

anna 她一开口就不紧张了，说话也不生硬了！
tā yì kāi kǒu jiù bù jǐnzhāng le shuōhuà yě bù shēngyìng le · Once she starts talking she's not nervous at all, and she doesn't sound stiff any more!

editor lin 片子里那张山的画，线条很少，布局却很精妙。是谁画的？
piānzi lǐ nà zhāng shān de huà xiàntiáo hěn shǎo bùjú què hěn jīngmiào shì shéi huà de · The painting of the mountain in the film has hardly any lines, but the composition is superb. Who painted it?

little sister 是我爷爷画的。他用墨勾勒了几笔，留了很多白，衬托出山的高大。灵感来自他在博物馆看到的一幅壁画。
shì wǒ yéye huà de tā yòng mò gōulè le jǐ bǐ liú le hěn duō bái chèntuō chū shān de gāodà línggǎn láizì tā zài bówùguǎn kàn dào de yì fú bìhuà · My grandpa did. He sketched it in a few strokes of ink and left a lot of space empty, which brings out how tall the mountain is. The idea came from a mural he once saw in a museum.

editor lin （小声）那张画很古朴，越看越有韵味。
xiǎo shēng nà zhāng huà hěn gǔpǔ yuè kàn yuè yǒu yùnwèi · (quietly) That painting has a simple, old-world charm: the more you look, the more it grows on you.

editor lin 那片子的寓意是什么？有人说它像一个寓言。
nà piānzi de yùyì shì shénme yǒu rén shuō tā xiàng yí gè yùyán · And what's the message of the film? Some people say it's like a fable.

little sister 我们的构思很简单：一个人只要坚持，就能把普通的事做得不普通。片子是原创的，没有仿别人。
wǒmen de gòusī hěn jiǎndān yí gè rén zhǐyào jiānchí jiù néng bǎ pǔtōng de shì zuò de bù pǔtōng piānzi shì yuánchuàng de méiyǒu fǎng biérén · Our idea was simple: if you persevere, you can do ordinary things in an extraordinary way. The film is original; we didn't copy anyone.

editor lin 你爷爷平时爱读什么书？
nǐ yéye píngshí ài dú shénme shū · What does your grandpa like to read?

little sister 他爱读名著，最爱画家的传记和回忆录，还常给我们朗诵抒情诗。
tā ài dú míngzhù zuì ài huàjiā de zhuànjì hé huíyìlù hái cháng gěi wǒmen lǎngsòng shūqíng shī · He loves the classics, especially painters' biographies and memoirs, and he often recites lyric poems to us.

anna 片子里的人物刻画得很生动，对白简练，前后连贯，一点儿也不堆砌。
piānzi lǐ de rénwù kèhuà de hěn shēngdòng duìbái jiǎnliàn qiánhòu liánguàn yìdiǎnr yě bù duīqì · The characters are vividly drawn, the dialogue is concise, it all hangs together and nothing is overdone.

professor chen 这不属于哪个流派，就是一个真正的好故事。
zhè bù shǔyú nǎge liúpài jiùshì yí gè zhēnzhèng de hǎo gùshi · It doesn't belong to any school: it's simply a really good story.

editor lin	最后一个问题：拍片子钱够吗？ **zuìhòu yí gè wèntí pāi piānzi qián gòu ma** · Last question: did you have enough money to make it?
little sister	一点儿也不充裕！我们连一台好相机都没有，更不用说重型设备了。道具都是家里现成的旧东西：破旧的箱子、笨重的老电视。 **yìdiǎnr yě bù chōngyù wǒmen lián yì tái hǎo xiàngjī dōu méiyǒu gèng búyòng shuō zhòngxíng shèbèi le dàojù dōu shì jiā lǐ xiànchéng de jiù dōngxi pòjiù de xiāngzi bènzhòng de lǎo diànshì** · Not at all! We didn't even have a decent camera, let alone heavy equipment. The props were all old things we had at home: battered boxes, a bulky old TV.
professor chen	（在观众里）钱少不说，还拍得这么好，这就是本事！ **zài guānzhòng lǐ qián shǎo bù shuō hái pāi de zhème hǎo zhè jiùshì běnshi** · (from the audience) Little money, and still such a good film: that's real talent!

chapter 3 chapter 3: a notice in the lobby

anna （读）“颁奖典礼通知：本届电影节已接近尾声，颁奖典礼定于今天晚上七点半在大剧院举行。因座位有限，故凡是有票的观众，均请提前半小时到场，以保证典礼准时开场。

dú bānjiǎng diǎnlǐ tōngzhī běn jiè diànyǐng jié yǐ jiējìn wěishēng bānjiǎng diǎnlǐ dìng yú jīntiān wǎnshang qī diǎn bàn zài dà jùyuàn jǔxíng yīn zuòwèi yǒuxiàn gù fánshì yǒu piào de guānzhòng jūn qǐng tíqián bàn xiǎoshí dào chǎng yǐ bǎozhèng diǎnlǐ zhǔnshí kāichǎng · (reading) “Awards ceremony notice: this year’s festival is drawing to a close, and the awards ceremony will be held at the Grand Theatre at 7.30 this evening. As seats are limited, all ticket holders are asked to arrive half an hour early so that the ceremony can begin on time.

anna 典礼一共有二十个奖项，其中学生单元的奖项旨在鼓励年轻人原创，本届电影节一直致力于发现新人。请获奖者在前台登记，开场前到后台准备。

diǎnlǐ yígòng yǒu èrshí gè jiǎngxiàng qízhōng xuéshēng dānyuán de jiǎngxiàng zhǐzài gǔlì niánqīng rén yuánchuàng běn jiè diànyǐng jié yìzhí zhìlìyú fāxiàn xīnrén qǐng huòjiǎng zhě zài qiántái dēngjì kāichǎng qián dào hòutái zhǔnbèi · Twenty awards will be presented, including awards in the students’ section, which aim to encourage original work by young people; the festival has always been committed to discovering new talent. Award winners please register at the front desk and go backstage to prepare before the start.

anna 颁奖中间有歌舞、杂技、小品和曲艺节目，交响乐团还将演奏多部电影的主题曲。压轴节目是一段芭蕾和一段歌剧。

bānjiǎng zhōngjiān yǒu gēwǔ zájì xiǎopǐn hé qǔyì jiémù jiāoxiǎngyuè tuán hái jiāng yǎnzòu duō bù diànyǐng de zhǔtíqǔ yāzhòu jiémù shì yí duàn bāléi hé yí duàn gējù · Between the awards there will be song and dance, acrobatics, comedy sketches and folk performing arts, and the symphony orchestra will play theme songs from several films. The grand finale is a ballet and an excerpt from an opera.

anna 大剧院设施完备，音响效果非常好。前一场演出结束得很晚，以致布置工作推迟了，大厅还有零星施工，请大家注意安全。”

dà jùyuàn shèshī wánbèi yīnxiǎng xiàoguǒ fēicháng hǎo qián yì chǎng yǎnchū jiéshù de hěn wǎn yǐzhì bùzhì gōngzuò tuīchí le dàtīng hái yǒu língxīng shīgōng qǐng dàjiā zhùyì ānquán · The Grand Theatre is fully equipped, with excellent sound. Because the previous show finished late, setting up has been delayed and there is still some work going on here and there in the hall: please take care.”

xiaoming 学生单元也有奖项！说不定我们能荣获一个。

xuéshēng dānyuán yě yǒu jiǎngxiàng shuōbudìng wǒmen néng rónghuò yí gè · There are awards in the students’ section too! We might win one.

little sister 别说了，我连想都不敢想，更不用说上台领奖了。

biéshuō le wǒ lián xiǎng dōu bù gǎn xiǎng gèng búyòng shuō shàngtái lǐng jiǎng le · Stop it. I don’t even dare think about it, let alone going on stage to collect a prize.

editor lin 大厅那边在展出你们的道具，好多人围着看，很引人注目。

dàtīng nàbiān zài zhǎnchū nǐmen de dàojù hǎoduō rén wéi zhe kàn hěn yǐnrén zhùmù · Your props are on show over there in the lobby, and lots of people are gathered round: they’re really catching people’s eye.

professor chen 那个木头雕的小马，雕刻的手艺很精湛，镶嵌的小石头也点缀得很好。真是别具匠心。

nàge mùtou diāo de xiǎo mǎ diāokè de shǒuyì hěn jīngzhàn xiāngqiàn de xiǎo shítou yě diǎnzhuì de hěn hǎo zhēnshi biéjù jiàngxīn · That little carved wooden horse: the carving is superb, and the inlaid stones decorate it beautifully. Very cleverly done.

little sister 是我爷爷年轻时雕的。连他自己都忘了，更不用说我们了。是在阁楼的箱子里找到的。

shì wǒ yéye niánqīng shí diāo de lián tā zìjǐ dōu wàng le gèng búyòng shuō wǒmen le shì zài gélóu de xiāngzi lǐ zhǎo dào de · My grandpa carved it when he was young. Even he had forgotten about it, let alone us. We found it in a box in the attic.

anna 旁边还有爷爷当年画的肖像，和画册里的几张插图。

pángbiān hái yǒu yéye dāngnián huà de xiàoxiàng hé huàcè lǐ de jǐ zhāng chātú · Next to it there’s a portrait Grandpa painted back then, and some illustrations from an art book.

chapter 4 chapter 4: awards night

ms zhang 安娜，你看我穿这件衣服怎么样？太高雅了吧？
Ānnà nǐ kàn wǒ chuān zhè jiàn yīfu zěnmeyàng tài gāoyǎ le ba · Anna, how do I look in this? Is it too fancy?

anna 一点儿也不！您今天容光焕发，很有品味。
yìdiǎnr yě bù nín jīntiān róngguāng huànfā hěn yǒu pǐnwèi · Not at all! You're glowing today, and you look very stylish.

dr li 我是第一次参加颁奖典礼，节目精彩纷呈。那个杂技演员的绝技，我从来没见过。
wǒ shì dì yī cì cānjiā bānjiǎng diǎnlǐ jiémù jīngcǎi fēnchéng nàge zájì yǎnyuán de juéjì wǒ cónglái méi jiàn guo · It's my first awards ceremony, and the show is one highlight after another. I've never seen anything like that acrobat's special trick.

xiaoming 我妹妹在后台左顾右盼，紧张得要命。
wǒ mèimei zài hòutái zuǒgù yòupàn jǐnzhāng de yàomìng · My sister is backstage looking all around her, terribly nervous.

editor lin 下面是学生单元的奖项。最佳原创短片……就是他们！
xiàmiàn shì xuéshēng dānyuán de jiǎngxiàng zuìjiā yuánchuàng duǎn piàn jiùshì tāmen · Next, the students' section. Best original short film… it's them!

xiaoming （吹口哨儿）太棒了！大家都在为他们喝彩！
chuī kǒushàor tài bàng le dàjiā dōu zài wèi tāmen hècǎi · (whistling) Brilliant! Everyone's cheering for them!

little sister （在台上）谢谢评委，谢谢所有幕后的工作人员。这个奖项要送给我的爷爷，他就是片子的主人公。
zài tái shàng xièxie píngwěi xièxie suǒyǒu mùhòu de gōngzuò rényuán zhège jiǎngxiàng yào sòng gěi wǒ de yéye tā jiùshì piānzi de zhǔréngōng · (on stage) Thank you to the jury, and to everyone who worked behind the scenes. This award goes to my grandpa: he is the hero of the film.

professor chen 你看，她说得多流利。导演以前骂了她一通，现在大家都对她刮目相看了。
nǐ kàn tā shuō de duō liúlì dǎoyǎn yǐqián mà le tā yí tòng xiànzài dàjiā dōu duì tā guāmù xiāngkàn le · Listen to how well she speaks. The director gave her a telling-off before, and now everyone sees her in a new light.

teacher wang 现在搞笑的短片比比皆是，这么认真的片子并不多。这个故事一定会深入人心。
xiànzài gǎoxiào de duǎn piàn bǐbǐ jiēshì zhème rènzhēn de piānzi bìng bù duō zhège gùshi yídìng huì shēnrù rénxīn · Funny short films are everywhere these days, but serious ones like this are rare. This story is going to touch people's hearts.

editor lin 老实说，我想写一篇报道。一个鲜为人知的老画家，一部全家人拍的片子，读者一定喜闻乐见。
lǎoshi shuō wǒ xiǎng xiě yì piān bàodào yí gè xiǎnwéirénzhī de lǎo huàjiā yí bù quán jiārén pāi de piānzi dúzhě yídìng xǐwén lèjiàn · Frankly, I want to write a report on this. A little-known old painter and a film made by a whole family: readers are going to love it.

ms zhang 压轴的芭蕾开始了！这个剧目明年还要在大剧院上演呢。大家别说话了。
yāzhòu de bāléi kāishǐ le zhège jùmù míngnián hái yào zài dà jùyuàn shàngyǎn ne dàjiā bié shuōhuà le · The ballet finale is starting! This piece is being staged at the Grand Theatre again next year. Everyone, quiet.

xiaoming 第一幕就这么精彩！
dì yī mù jiù zhème jīngcǎi · The first act alone is stunning!

chapter 5 chapter 5: the party in the hutong

dr li 奖杯沉甸甸的，拿在手里，手都有点儿僵了。
jiǎngbēi chéndiàndiàn de ná zài shǒu lǐ shǒu dōu yǒudiǎnr jiāng le · The trophy's so heavy that holding it makes my hands go stiff.

dr li 那些陈旧的道具，我明天放回阁楼。有的已经残缺了，有的还很完好。
nàxiē chénjiù de dàojù wǒ míngtiān fàng huí gélóu yǒude yǐjīng cánquē le yǒude hái hěn wánhǎo · I'll put those old props back in the attic tomorrow. Some are falling apart, some are still in perfect condition.

ms zhang 老东西就是耐用。爷爷用木头雕的小马，现在可是稀有的东西了。
lǎo dōngxi jiùshì nàiyòng yéye yòng mùtou diāo de xiǎo mǎ xiànzài kěshì xīyǒu de dōngxi le · Old things last. Grandpa's little wooden horse is a real rarity now.

little sister 奖金不丰厚，可这个奖比什么都稀罕。
jiǎngjīn bù fēnghòu kě zhège jiǎng bǐ shénme dōu xīhan · The prize money isn't much, but this award is worth more than anything.

little sister 我现在全身都松弛下来了，早上脖子还僵硬得要命。
wǒ xiànzài quánshēn dōu sōngchí xialai le zǎoshang bózi hái jiāngyìng de yàomìng · I've finally relaxed. This morning my neck was terribly stiff.

xiaoming 妹妹今天精神饱满，说话也一点儿不生硬。
mèimei jīntiān jīngshén bǎomǎn shuōhuà yě yìdiǎnr bù shēngyìng · My sister was full of energy today, and she didn't sound stiff at all.

anna 她讲爷爷的故事，大家都听得津津有味。我对这部片子爱不释手，已经在手机上看了三遍了。
tā jiǎng yéye de gùshi dàjiā dōu tīng de jīnjīn yǒuwèi wǒ duì zhè bù piānzi àibúshìshǒu yǐjīng zài shǒujī shàng kàn le sān biàn le · When she told her grandpa's story, everyone hung on every word. I can't get enough of this film: I've watched it three times on my phone already.

ms zhang 拍片子的时候，她每天忙那些零碎、琐碎的事，以至于连饭都忘了吃。
pāi piānzi de shíhou tā měi tiān máng nàxiē língsuì suǒsuì de shì yǐzhìyú lián fàn dōu wàng le chī · While they were making the film she was so busy with endless little jobs that she even forgot to eat.

professor chen 年轻人精力充沛，好奇心旺盛。话又说回来，也要注意休息。
niánqīng rén jīnglì chōngpèi hàoqí xīn wàngshèng huà yòu shuō huilai yě yào zhùyì xiūxi · Young people have so much energy and curiosity. Having said that, they need to rest too.

editor lin 我的报道明天早上发。题目我想好了：“一辈子画一座山”。
wǒ de bàodào míngtiān zǎoshang fā tímù wǒ xiǎng hǎo le yíbèizi huà yí zuò shān · My report goes out tomorrow morning. I've got the headline: "A Lifetime Painting One Mountain".

little sister 林编辑，您写得通俗一点儿，别把我们美化得太厉害。
Línbiānjí nín xiě de tōngsú yìdiǎnr bié bǎ wǒmen měihuà de tài lìhai · Editor Lin, please keep it simple, and don't make us sound too wonderful.

editor lin 放心，传记和报道都不能虚构。我只写事实。
fàngxīn zhuànjì hé bàodào dōu bù néng xūgòu wǒ zhǐ xiě shìshí · Don't worry. Biographies and news reports can't make things up. I only write the facts.

teacher wang 下个月我们的读书沙龙，请你来讲讲这部片子吧。
xià gè yuè wǒmen de dúshū shālóng qǐng nǐ lái jiǎng jiang zhè bù piānzi ba · Come and talk about the film at our reading salon next month.

editor lin 你们帮了我很多，我写篇报道，也算礼尚往来嘛。
nǐmen bāng le wǒ hěn duō wǒ xiě piān bàodào yě suàn lǐshàngwǎnglái ma · You've helped me a lot, so a report is the least I can do in return.

anna 老实说，我有点儿担心。网上的事，谁也说不准。
lǎoshi shuō wǒ yǒudiǎnr dānxīn wǎngshang de shì shéi yě shuō bù zhǔn · To be honest, I'm a bit worried. You never know what will happen online.

xiaoming 这有什么好大惊小怪的？一篇小报道而已。
zhè yǒu shénme hǎo dàjīng xiǎoguài de yì piān xiǎo bàodào éryǐ · What's there to fuss about? It's just a little

report.

A screening, a Q&A, a formal notice and an awards night, all in Chinese: you've just lived a festival day in the language.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 103 news and reports

Talk about the news, papers, radio and TV, and build a paragraph that grows: 此外, 不仅如此, 更重要的是, 由此可见.

News is the language of HSK 7–9 reading and writing, and the exam's essays reward paragraphs that develop one idea step by step.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
报	bào	to report, to announce	这件事要马上报{bao4-7b}给经理。 This has to be reported to the manager straight away.
头条	tóutiáo	headline, front page	这条新闻上了今天的头条。 The story made today's front page.
时事	shíshì	current affairs	他每天早上都看时事新闻。 He reads the current-affairs news every morning.
资讯	zīxùn	information, news	手机上每天都有很多资讯。 There's a flood of news on your phone every day.
据悉	jùxī	it is reported that	据悉，这部电影将在下个月上映。 It is reported that the film will be released next month.
获悉	huòxī	to learn (of news)	记者获悉，比赛已经推迟。 Reporters have learned that the match has been postponed.
刊登	kāndēng	to publish (in a paper)	报纸上刊登了她的文章。 The paper published her article.
刊物	kānwù	publication, periodical	这是一份学生自己办的刊物。 This is a magazine run by the students themselves.
转载	zhuǎnzǎi	to reprint, to repost	这篇文章被很多网站转载了。 The article was reposted by many websites.
投稿	tóugǎo	to submit (an article)	她给杂志投稿，等了三个月才收到回复。 She sent a piece to a magazine and waited three months for a reply.
主编	zhǔbiān	editor-in-chief; to edit	林编辑下个月要当主编了。 Editor Lin becomes editor-in-chief next month.
专栏	zhuānlán	column (in a paper)	她在报纸上有一个美食专栏。 She has a food column in the paper.
栏目	lánmù	section, programme slot	这个网站新开了一个读书栏目。 The website has started a new books section.
封面	fēngmiàn	cover (of a book, magazine)	她的照片上了杂志封面。 Her photo made the cover of the magazine.
改版	gǎibǎn	to redesign (a paper, site)	这份报纸明年要改版。 The newspaper is getting a redesign next year.

订阅	dìngyuè	to subscribe (to)	我爸爸订阅了三份报纸。 My dad subscribes to three newspapers.
独家	dújiā	exclusive	这是我们网站的独家报道。 This is an exclusive from our website.
第一手	dìyīshǒu	first-hand	记者要拿到第一手的材料。 Reporters need first-hand material.
纪实	jìshí	factual record; documentary	这是一部纪实文学作品。 This is a work of non-fiction.
实况	shíkuàng	live (event); what actually happens	电视台正在做比赛的实况转播。 The TV station is broadcasting the match live.
转播	zhuǎnbō	to relay, to broadcast	颁奖典礼会在网上转播。 The award ceremony will be streamed online.
电台	diàntái	radio station	爷爷每天早上听电台的新闻。 Grandpa listens to the radio news every morning.
卫视	wèishì	satellite TV (channel)	这个节目在好几个卫视播出。 The programme airs on several satellite channels.
收音机	shōuyīnjī	radio (set)	奶奶的收音机已经用了三十年。 Grandma's radio has been going for thirty years.
收视率	shōushìlǜ	viewing figures, ratings	这个节目的收视率很高。 This programme has very high ratings.
综艺	zōngyì	variety (show)	年轻人很爱看综艺节目。 Young people love variety shows.
电讯	diànxùn	telegraphic dispatch, news wire	这条消息来自一份国外的电讯。 The story comes from a foreign news dispatch.
媒介	méijiè	medium, channel	网络已经成了最重要的媒介。 The internet has become the most important medium.
传媒	chuánméi	the media	她大学学的是传媒。 She studied media at university.
舆论	yúlùn	public opinion	这件事引起了舆论的关注。 The affair caught the attention of public opinion.
揭露	jiēlù	to expose, to uncover	记者揭露了这家公司的问题。 Reporters exposed the company's problems.
披露	pīlù	to disclose, to make public	公司还没有披露具体的数字。 The company hasn't disclosed the exact figures yet.
曝光	bàoguāng	to expose (to the public)	这件事被媒体曝光了。 The story was exposed by the media.
揭晓	jiēxiǎo	to announce (results)	比赛的结果明天揭晓。 The results of the competition will be announced tomorrow.
预告	yùgào	to announce in advance; trailer	我看了这部电影的预告片。 I've watched the trailer for this film.

pattern a paragraph that grows: 此外, 不仅如此, 更重要的是, 由此可见

topic sentence | 此外 / 不仅如此 | more support | 更重要的是 | the key point | 由此可见 | conclusion

To extend a topic, start with one clear sentence, then add support with 此外 or 另外 (“besides”), raise the stakes with 不仅如此 (“what’s more”) or 更重要的是 (“more importantly”), go deeper with 进一步说, and close with 由此可见 (“so we can see that”). Each connector opens a new sentence in the same paragraph.

这个栏目很受欢迎。此外，它的收视率也一直很高。 **zhège lánmù hěn shòu huānyíng cǐwài tā de shōushìlǜ yě yìzhí hěn gāo** This programme is very popular. Besides that, its ratings have always been high.

纪实作品要有第一手材料。更重要的是，作者不能虚构。 **jìshí zuòpǐn yào yǒu dìyīshǒu cáiliào gèng zhòngyào de shì zuòzhě bù néng xūgòu** Non-fiction needs first-hand material. More importantly, the author can’t make anything up.

转载的网站越来越多。由此可见，这个故事打动了很多人。 **zhuǎnzǎi de wǎngzhàn yuè lái yuè duō yóu cǐ kějiàn zhège gùshi dǎdòng le hěn duō rén** More and more websites are reposting it. So we can see that the story has touched a lot of people.

所谓独家报道，就是只有一家媒体有的新闻。 **suǒwèi dújiā bàodào jiùshì zhǐyǒu yì jiā méitǐ yǒude xīnwén** An “exclusive” is news that only one media outlet has.

dialogue a busy morning in the newsroom

anna 林编辑，恭喜！你的报道上了网站的头条。
Línbiānjí gōngxǐ nǐ de bàodào shàng le wǎngzhàn de tóutiáo · Congratulations, Editor Lin! Your report is the website's top story.

editor lin 谢谢！不仅如此，已经有二十多家网站转载了。据悉，一家报纸明天也要刊登。
xièxie bùjǐn rúcǐ yǐjīng yǒu èrshí duō jiā wǎngzhàn zhuǎnzǎi le jùxī yì jiā bàozhǐ míngtiān yě yào kāndēng · Thanks! What's more, over twenty websites have reposted it already. And I hear a newspaper is printing it tomorrow.

anna 你们的栏目真多：时事、资讯、纪实专栏，还有综艺和新剧目介绍。
nǐmen de lánmù zhēn duō shíshì zīxùn jìshí zhuānlán hái yǒu zōngyì hé xīn jùmù jièshào · You have so many sections: current affairs, news in brief, a non-fiction column, and entertainment and new plays too.

editor lin 下个月网站要改版，我要当主编了。所谓改版，就是把栏目重新编排，封面也换新的。
xià gè yuè wǎngzhàn yào gǎibǎn wǒ yào dāng zhǔbiān le suǒwèi gǎibǎn jiùshì bǎ lánmù chóngxīn biānpái fēngmiàn yě huàn xīn de · The site is being redesigned next month, and I'm going to be editor-in-chief. A redesign means rearranging the sections and giving the front page a new look.

anna 恭喜恭喜！那你还写报道吗？
gōngxǐ gōngxǐ nà nǐ hái xiě bàodào ma · Congratulations! Will you still write reports?

editor lin 当然。好的报道要有第一手的材料。此外，还要懂媒介：现在的传媒，网上、电台、卫视，哪个都不能少。更重要的是，不能被舆论牵着走。
dāngrán hǎo de bàodào yào yǒu dìyīshǒu de cáiliào cǐwài hái yào dǒng méijiè xiànzài de chuánméi wǎngshang diàntái wèishì nǎge dōu bù néng shǎo gèng zhòngyào de shì bù néng bèi yúlùn qiān zhe zǒu · Of course. A good report needs first-hand material. Besides that, you have to understand the media: nowadays you need the internet, radio and satellite TV, all of them. More importantly, you mustn't let public opinion lead you by the nose.

anna 刚才是谁打来的电话？
gāngcái shì shéi dǎ lái de diànhuà · Who was that on the phone just now?

editor lin 一家卫视。他们获悉这个故事以后，想做个节目，采访片子的编剧，还想实况转播片子的展览。连国外的电讯都提到了这部片子。由此可见，大家都喜欢这样的故事。
yì jiā wèishì tāmen huòxī zhège gùshi yǐhòu xiǎng zuò gè jiémù cǎifǎng piānzi de biānjù hái xiǎng shíkuàng zhuǎnbō piānzi de zhǎnlǎn lián guó wài de diànxùn dōu tídào le zhè bù piānzi yóu cǐ kějiàn dàjiā dōu xǐhuan zhèyàng de gùshi · A satellite channel. They heard about the story and want to make a programme interviewing the film's writer, maybe even broadcast the props exhibition live. Even a foreign news dispatch has mentioned the film. So clearly, people love stories like this.

anna 那收视率一定很高。小明的爷爷天天抱着收音机听新闻，说不定他也能听到。小明的妹妹在片子里扮一个画家，现在也算个小名人了。
nà shōushìlǜ yídìng hěn gāo Xiǎomíng de yéye tiān tiān bào zhe shōuyīnjī tīng xīnwén shuōbudìng tā yě néng tīng dào Xiǎomíng de mèimei zài piānzi lǐ bàn yí gè huàjiā xiànzài yě suàn gè xiǎo míngrén le · The ratings will be high, then. Xiaoming's grandpa listens to the news on his radio all day long: he might even hear it. And Xiaoming's sister plays a painter in the film: now she's a bit of a celebrity too.

editor lin 电台也打电话来了！还有读者投稿，说想订阅我们的网上刊物。
diàntái yě dǎ diànhuà lái le hái yǒu dúzhě tóugǎo shuō xiǎng dìngyuè wǒmen de wǎngshang kānwù · A radio station has called too! And readers are sending in pieces and asking to subscribe to our online magazine.

anna 你们平时也揭露社会问题吗？
nǐmen píngshí yě jiēlù shèhuì wèntí ma · Do you usually expose social problems as well?

editor lin 会。上个月我们独家披露了一家公司的问题，事情曝光以后，那家公司马上道歉了。
huì shàng gè yuè wǒmen dújiā pīlù le yì jiā gōngsī de wèntí shìqing bàoguāng yǐhòu nà jiā gōngsī mǎshàng dàoqiàn le · Yes. Last month we had an exclusive on a company's wrongdoing; once it came out, the company apologised straight away.

anna 换句话说，你们既写好消息，也写坏消息。
huàn jù huà shuō nǐmen jì xiě hǎo xiāoxi yě xiě huài xiāoxi · In other words, you write good news and bad news.

editor lin 对。下周的预告我已经写好了：我们要报一条更大的新闻。
duì xià zhōu de yùgào wǒ yǐjīng xiě hǎo le wǒmen yào bào yì tiáo gèng dà de xīnwén · Right. I've already written next week's preview: we're going to report an even bigger story.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

圣
shèng
sage, holy

魔
mó
demon

凰
huáng
female phoenix

魂
hún
soul

good to know · News Chinese loves short formal verbs: 据悉 "it is reported", 获悉 "has learned", 揭晓 "announced". You'll see them in every headline. In an essay, don't stack all the connectors in one paragraph: one or two, used well, sound natural.

You can now read a news page, and write a paragraph that builds from a point to a conclusion.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 104 gossip and the internet

Talk about posts, fans, gossip, rumours and piracy online, and switch topics smoothly with 至于, 说到, 顺便说一句 and 回到正题.

Everyone in China lives online: these are the words of trending posts and comment sections, and switching topics neatly is a mark of a skilled speaker and writer.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
网民	wǎngmín	internet users, netizens	很多网民在网上留言。 Lots of internet users left comments.
帖子	tiězi	post (online)	这个帖子一天就有上万人看。 Tens of thousands of people read this post in a day.
粉丝	fěnsī	fans	这个歌手有几百万粉丝{fen3si1-7}。 This singer has millions of fans.
人气	rénqì	popularity	她的人气越来越高。 She's getting more and more popular.
追捧	zhuīpěng	to rave about, to idolise	这款手机受到年轻人的追捧。 Young people are mad about this phone.
排行榜	páihángbǎng	ranking list, chart	这首歌在排行榜上排第一。 The song is number one in the charts.
口碑	kǒubēi	reputation, word of mouth	这家饭店的口碑很好。 This restaurant has a great reputation.
反响	fǎnxiǎng	response, reaction	这篇文章发表以后，反响很大。 The article got a big response when it came out.
轰动	hōngdòng	to cause a sensation	这个消息轰动了全城。 The news caused a sensation across the city.
哗然	huárán	in an uproar	消息一出，全场哗然。 When the news broke, the whole room was in uproar.
炒作	chǎozuò	to hype	有人说这是公司在炒作。 Some say it's just the company hyping itself.
八卦	bāguà	gossip; gossipy	别那么八卦，这是别人的事。 Don't be so nosy: it's someone else's business.
绯闻	fēiwén	celebrity gossip, rumoured affair	这个演员从来没有绯闻。 This actor has never been in the gossip columns.
丑闻	chǒuwén	scandal	这个丑闻让公司损失很大。 The scandal cost the company dearly.
内幕	nèimù	inside story	谁也不知道这件事的内幕。 Nobody knows the inside story.

传闻	chuánwén	rumour; it is rumoured	传闻她要去美国工作。 Rumour has it she's going to work in America.
传言	chuányán	rumour, hearsay	这只是传言，不一定是真的。 It's only hearsay: it may not be true.
谣言	yáoyán	rumour, false rumour	谣言很快就传开了。 The rumour soon spread.
散布	sànbù	to spread (rumours), to scatter	不要在网上散布{san4bu4-7}谣言。 Don't spread rumours online.
误导	wùdǎo	to mislead	这个标题很容易误导读者。 The headline could easily mislead readers.
走漏	zǒulòu	to leak (news)	消息不知道怎么走漏了。 Somehow the news leaked out.
泄露	xièlòu	to leak, to divulge	不能泄露别人的个人信息。 You must not leak other people's personal information.
匿名	nìmíng	anonymous	有人匿名给报社写了一封信。 Someone wrote an anonymous letter to the paper.
宣扬	xuānyáng	to publicise, to spread about	这件事你别到处宣扬。 Don't go telling everyone about this.
正能量	zhèngnéngliàng	positive energy, good vibes	这是一个充满正能量的故事。 This is a really uplifting story.
海报	hǎibào	poster	电影院门口贴着新片的海报。 There's a poster for the new film at the cinema entrance.
传单	chuándān	leaflet, flyer	有人在地铁口发传单。 Someone is handing out flyers at the metro entrance.
标语	biāoyǔ	slogan (on a banner)	墙上写着一条标语。 There's a slogan written on the wall.
张贴	zhāngtiē	to put up (a notice)	这里禁止张贴广告。 No posting of advertisements here.
版权	bǎnquán	copyright	这本书的版权属于作者。 The copyright of this book belongs to the author.
盗版	dàobǎn	pirated (copy); to pirate	不要买盗版书。 Don't buy pirated books.
正版	zhèngbǎn	genuine, licensed (copy)	我们支持正版，不看盗版。 We support legal copies and don't watch pirated ones.
问世	wènshì	to come out, to be launched	第一台电脑是哪一年问世的? In which year did the first computer appear?
影像	yǐngxiàng	image, footage	这段影像记录了老北京的生活。 This footage records life in old Beijing.
剪辑	jiǎnjí	to edit (film); editing	这段视频是我自己剪辑的。 I edited this video myself.

pattern switching topics: 至于, 说到, 顺便说一句, 回到正题

topic A … | 至于 / 说到 / 顺便说一句 | topic B … | 回到正题 | back to A

至于 X (“as for X”) moves on to a related point. 说到 X (“speaking of X”) picks up a word just mentioned and turns to it. 顺便说一句 (“by the way”) adds a side remark; 另外 (“also, separately”) adds another matter. 回到正题 (“back to the point”) brings the talk home again. In writing, each switch usually starts a new sentence or paragraph.

这部片子人气很高。至于口碑，就要看观众了。 **zhè bù piānzi rénqì hěn gāo zhìyú kǒubēi jiù yào kàn guānzhòng le** The film is very popular. As for its reputation, that’s up to the audience.

说到海报，学校里已经张贴了很多。 **shuō dào hǎibào xuéxiào lǐ yǐjīng zhāngtiē le hěn duō** Speaking of posters, lots have already been put up around the university.

顺便说一句，网上那些盗版都不是我们发的。 **shùnbiàn shuō yí jù wǎngshang nàxiē dàobǎn dōu bú shì wǒmen fā de** By the way, those pirated copies online weren’t posted by us.

说了这么多，回到正题：片子什么时候上映？ **shuō le zhème duō huí dào zhèng tí piānzi shénme shíhou shàngyìng** We’ve talked a lot: back to the point, when is the film coming out?

dialogue famous overnight

xiaoming 你们看，我妹妹火了！片子里她哭的那段影像被人剪辑成了短视频，在网上轰动了，一个帖子就有五十万人点赞。

nǐmen kàn wǒ mèimei huǒ le piānzi lǐ tā kū de nà duàn yǐngxiàng bèi rén jiǎnjí chéng le duǎn shìpín zài wǎngshang hōngdòng le yí gè tiězi jiù yǒu wǔshí wàn rén diǎnzàn · Look, my sister's gone viral! Someone cut the bit of the film where she cries into a short video, and it's causing a sensation: one post alone has half a million likes.

anna 网民的反响太大了。她现在有三万个粉丝了，大家都对她刮目相看！

wǎngmín de fǎnxiǎng tài dà le tā xiànzài yǒu sān wàn gè fěnsī le dàjiā dōu duì tā guāmù xiāngkàn · The response online is huge. She has thirty thousand fans now, and everyone sees her in a new light!

little sister 人气是高了，可麻烦也来了。有人匿名发帖子，说我们的片子不是原创，是抄国外的，还说这都是导演在炒作。

rénqì shì gāo le kě máfan yě lái le yǒu rén nìmíng fā tiězi shuō wǒmen de piānzi bú shì yuánchuàng shì chāo guó wài de hái shuō zhè dōu shì dǎoyǎn zài chǎozuò · I'm popular, sure, but the trouble has started too. Someone posted anonymously that our film isn't original, that it copies a foreign one, and that it's all hype by the director.

xiaoming 这种谣言谁信啊？

zhè zhǒng yáoyán shéi xìn a · Who believes rumours like that?

little sister 不少人信。消息一出，网上一片哗然。还有一个传闻，说我是哪个大明星的亲戚。

bù shǎo rén xìn xiāoxi yì chū wǎngshang yí piàn huárán hái yǒu yí gè chuánwén shuō wǒ shì nǎge dà míngxīng de qīnqi · Plenty of people. The moment it came out, the internet was in uproar. There's another rumour that I'm related to some big star.

anna 这种八卦最容易误导人。还有人说知道什么“内幕”，要向媒体披露，其实都是假的。

zhè zhǒng bāguà zuì róngyì wùdǎo rén hái yǒu rén shuō zhīdào shénme nèimù yào xiàng méitǐ pīlù qíshí dōu shì jiǎ de · Gossip like that misleads people so easily. And some people claim to know the "inside story" and say they'll disclose it to the media, but it's all made up.

xiaoming 至于明星亲戚的传言，太可笑了。我们家最大的明星是大白！

zhìyú míngxīng qīnqi de chuányán tài kěxiào le wǒmen jiā zuì dà de míngxīng shì Dàbái · As for the rumour about a star relative, that's ridiculous. The biggest star in our family is Dabai!

little sister 还有更糟的：网上已经有盗版了。片子还没正式问世，不知道是谁泄露出去的。

hái yǒu gèng zāo de wǎngshang yǐjīng yǒu dàobǎn le piānzi hái méi zhèngshì wènshì bù zhīdào shì shéi xièlòu chuqu de · It gets worse: there are already pirated copies online. The film hasn't even been officially released, and we don't know who leaked it.

anna 版权是你们的，大家应该支持正版。顺便说一句，导演知道了吗？

bǎnquán shì nǐmen de dàjiā yīnggāi zhīchí zhèngbǎn shùnbiàn shuō yí jù dǎoyǎn zhīdào le ma · You own the copyright: people should support the real thing. By the way, does the director know?

little sister 知道了，他气坏了。他说一定是有人走漏了消息。

zhīdào le tā qì huài le tā shuō yídìng shì yǒu rén zǒulòu le xiāoxi · He does, and he's furious. He says someone must have leaked it.

anna 网上的舆论变得很快，你们最好尽早把情况说明白。

wǎngshang de yúlùn biàn de hěn kuài nǐmen zuìhǎo jǐnzǎo bǎ qíngkuàng shuō míngbai · Opinion online changes fast: you'd better explain what happened as soon as you can.

xiaoming 别人散布谣言，我们可不能袖手旁观，但也不能跟着到处宣扬。其实大部分人都很追捧你们的片子，说它充满正能量，让人耳目一新。

biérén sànbù yáoyán wǒmen kě bù néng xiùshǒu pángguān dàn yě bù néng gēn zhe dàochù xuānyáng qíshí dà bùfen rén dōu hěn zhuīpěng nǐmen de piānzi shuō tā chōngmǎn zhèngnéngliàng ràng rén ěrmù yìxīn · Other people may spread rumours: we can't just stand by, but we mustn't go spreading them around too. Actually, most people love your film; they say it's really uplifting and refreshingly new.

little sister 好了，回到正题：电影节的海报和传单还剩很多，我们想在学校张贴，再写一条引人注目的标语。

hǎo le huí dào zhèng tí diànyǐng jié de hǎibào hé chuándān hái shèng hěn duō wǒmen xiǎng zài xuéxiào zhāngtiē zài xiě yì tiáo yǐnrén zhùmù de biāoyǔ · OK, back to the point: we've got loads of festival posters and flyers left, and we want to put them up around the university, with an eye-catching slogan.

xiaoming 只要别闹成丑闻就好。明星怕绯闻，你怕的是谣言。

zhǐyào bié nào chéng chǒuwén jiù hǎo míngxīng pà fēiwén nǐ pà de shì yáoyán · As long as it doesn't turn into a scandal. Stars are afraid of gossip about their love lives; what you're afraid of is rumours.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

蕴 yùn contain

弘 hóng broad, great

董 dǒng (sound)

陈 chén lay out

good to know · 粉丝 "fans" is a sound loan from English; it also means glass noodles, so jokes write it as 粉丝 (fans) eating 粉丝 (noodles). 正能量 "positive energy" is everywhere in Chinese media: a 正能量 story is one that makes people feel hopeful.

From trending posts to piracy, you can now follow, and steer, a conversation about life online.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 105 polite words

Use the polite formulas of Chinese for meeting, thanking, refusing, leaving and writing letters, and join a formal letter together with 故, 以 and 以至于.

Polite set phrases open doors at work and at formal events, and a letter that declines nicely keeps every relationship intact.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
拜托	bàituō	please (asking a favour)	这件事就拜托你了！ I'm counting on you for this!
劳驾	láojià	excuse me (may I trouble you)	劳驾，让一让。 Excuse me, could you let me through?
敬请	jìngqǐng	you are kindly requested to	敬请大家准时出席。 You are kindly requested to arrive on time.
久仰	jiǔyǎng	I've long admired you	久仰大名，今天终于见到您了！ I've heard so much about you: at last we meet!
不敢当	bùgǎndāng	I don't deserve it, you flatter me	您叫我老师，我可不敢当。 You call me teacher? Oh, I don't deserve that.
过奖	guòjiǎng	you flatter me	您过奖了，我做得还不够好。 You flatter me: I still have a lot to learn.
冒昧	màomèi	presumptuous, bold	我冒昧地问一句，您今年多大年纪了？ If I may be so bold, how old are you?
赐教	cìjiào	please give me your advice	有什么问题，请您多多赐教。 If you see any problems, please do point them out.
指教	zhǐjiào	to give advice; please advise me	我是新来的，请多指教。 I'm new here: I look forward to learning from you.
寒暄	hánxuān	to make small talk	两个人寒暄了几句，就开始谈工作。 They exchanged a few pleasantries and got down to business.
保重	bǎozhòng	take care (of yourself)	天冷了，您多保重。 It's getting cold: take good care of yourself.
珍重	zhēnzhòng	to treasure; take care (farewell)	珍重！我们以后再见。 Take care! We'll meet again.
当心	dāngxīn	to watch out, to be careful	路上有冰，当心别摔倒。 There's ice on the road: be careful not to fall.
留神	liúshén	to be careful, to look out	过马路要留神。 Mind how you cross the road.
告辞	gàocí	to take your leave	时间不早了，我先告辞了。 It's getting late: I'll take my leave.
道别	dàobié	to say goodbye	走之前，他和每个人都道别了。 Before he left he said goodbye to everyone.

此致	cǐzhì	(letter ending) with best regards	信的最后写着“此致，敬礼”。 The letter ends with “Yours faithfully”.
贺电	hèdiàn	telegram of congratulations	很多国家给大会发来了贺电。 Many countries sent messages of congratulations to the conference.
贺信	hèxìn	letter of congratulations	学校给她写了一封贺信。 The school wrote her a letter of congratulations.
信件	xìnjiàn	letters, mail	现在很少有人寄信件了。 Hardly anyone sends letters now.
邮编	yóubiān	postcode	信封上别忘了写邮编。 Don’t forget the postcode on the envelope.
邮政	yóuzhèng	postal service	这个小镇的邮政很方便。 The post is very convenient in this little town.
来电	láidiàn	incoming call; to call	谢谢您的来电。 Thank you for calling.
诸位	zhūwèi	everyone, ladies and gentlemen	诸位，请安静一下。 Ladies and gentlemen, a moment of quiet, please.
致辞	zhìcí	to make a speech (at a ceremony)	校长在开学典礼上致辞。 The head made a speech at the start-of-term ceremony.
开场白	kāichǎngbái	opening remarks	他的开场白很有意思。 His opening remarks were very entertaining.
演说	yǎnshuō	speech; to give a speech	他的演说打动了很多人。 His speech moved a lot of people.
宣读	xuāndú	to read out (formally)	主持人宣读了获奖名单。 The host read out the list of winners.
歉意	qiànyì	apology, regret	我们对这个错误表示歉意。 We apologise for this mistake.
谢绝	xièjué	to decline politely	她谢绝了所有的采访。 She declined all interviews.
推辞	tuīcí	to decline (an offer)	他推辞了半天，最后还是收下了礼物。 He refused for ages, but in the end he accepted the present.
恳求	kěnqiú	to implore, to beg earnestly	我恳求您再给我一次机会。 I beg you to give me one more chance.
哀求	āiqiú	to plead, to beg piteously	孩子哀求妈妈再让他玩一会儿。 The child pleaded with his mum to let him play a bit longer.
乞求	qǐqiú	to beg (for)	我们不是在乞求帮助，而是在讲道理。 We aren’t begging for help: we’re making a reasonable case.

pattern review: 故, 以 and 以至于 in a polite letter

因 reason ，故 result · …，以 purpose · …，以至于 strong result

Formal letters love these three: 因……，故…… gives a reason and its result (因时间冲突，故不能参加), ……，以…… gives a purpose (特写此信，以表示感谢), and ……，以至于…… a result so strong it surprises. With 敬请, 歉意 and 此致, they make a letter sound properly polite.

因工作安排冲突，故不能参加，深表歉意。 **yīn gōngzuò ānpái chōngtū gù bù néng cānjiā shēn biǎo qiànyì** Owing to a clash in my schedule I am unable to attend, and I sincerely apologise.

我们写这封信，以表示感谢。 **wǒmen xiě zhè fēng xìn yǐ biǎoshì gǎnxiè** We are writing this letter to express our thanks.

来信太多，以至于她一个星期都没回完。 **lái xìn tài duō yǐzhìyú tā yí gè xīngqī dōu méi huí wán** There were so many letters that she couldn’t answer them all in a week.

敬请诸位准时出席。 **jìngqǐng zhūwèi zhǔnshí chūxí** All guests are kindly requested to arrive on time.

dialogue how to say no nicely

little sister 王老师，冒昧打扰您。我收到很多信件，有的是匿名的，有的不知道怎么回，只好来请您指教。

Wánglǎoshī màomèi dǎrǎo nín wǒ shōudào hěn duō xìnjiàn yǒude shì nìmíng de yǒude bù zhīdào zěnme huí zhǐhǎo lái qǐng nín zhǐjiào · Teacher Wang, sorry to barge in. I've had lots of letters: some are anonymous, and I don't know how to answer some of them, so I've come to ask your advice.

teacher wang 不客气，说吧。

búkèqi shuō ba · Not at all. Go ahead.

little sister 这是一封贺信，是我们学校发来的。片子轰动以后，还有一家卫视请我上他们的综艺节目，可我不想去。

zhè shì yì fēng hèxìn shì wǒmen xuéxiào fā lái de piānzi hōngdòng yǐhòu hái yǒu yì jiā wèishì qǐng wǒ shàng tāmen de zōngyì jiémù kě wǒ bù xiǎng qù · This is a letter of congratulations from my university. And since the film caused a sensation, a satellite channel has invited me onto their variety show, but I don't want to go.

teacher wang 不想去，就客气地谢绝。说明原因："因学习安排紧张，故不能参加，深表歉意，敬请原谅。"最后写"此致，敬礼"。

bù xiǎng qù jiù kèqi de xièjué shuōmíng yuányīn yīn xuéxí ānpái jǐnzhāng gù bù néng cānjiā shēn biǎo qiànyì jìngqǐng yuánliàng zuìhòu xiě cǐzhì jìnglǐ · If you don't want to go, decline politely. Give a reason: "Owing to a heavy study schedule I am unable to take part. I sincerely apologise and hope you will understand." Then end with "Yours faithfully".

anna 中文的信真讲究，连邮编都要写在信封左上角。

Zhōngwén de xìn zhēn jiǎngjiu lián yóubiān dōu yào xiě zài xìnfēng zuǒ shàng jiǎo · Chinese letters have so many rules: even the postcode has its place in the top left corner of the envelope.

teacher wang 现在邮政没有以前忙了，大家随时随地都能发邮件。可正式的信件，还是手写的好。

xiànzài yóuzhèng méiyǒu yǐqián máng le dàjiā suíshí suídì dōu néng fā yóujiàn kě zhèngshì de xìnjiàn háishi shǒu xiě de hǎo · The post isn't as busy as it used to be: everyone can send an email any time, anywhere. But for a formal letter, handwritten is still best.

little sister 还有一件事：下个月电影学院请我在开学典礼上致辞，还要宣读一封贺电。我一想就紧张，以至于晚上都睡不着。

hái yǒu yí jiàn shì xià gè yuè diànyǐng xuéyuàn qǐng wǒ zài kāixué diǎnlǐ shàng zhìcí hái yào xuāndú yì fēng hèdiàn wǒ yì xiǎng jiù jǐnzhāng yǐzhìyú wǎnshang dōu shuì bu zháo · There's one more thing: next month the film school wants me to speak at the start-of-term ceremony and read out a message of congratulations. Just thinking about it makes me so nervous I can't sleep.

teacher wang 这个可以答应，别推辞。开场白可以这样说："诸位老师、诸位同学，大家好！"演说不要太长，语言要通俗，三分钟就够了。

zhège kěyǐ dāying bié tuīcí kāichǎngbái kěyǐ zhèyàng shuō zhūwèi lǎoshī zhūwèi tóngxué dàjiā hǎo yǎnshuō búyào tài cháng yǔyán yào tōngsú sān fēnzhōng jiù gòu le · You should accept that one: don't turn it down. You can open like this: "Teachers, fellow students, hello, everyone!" Keep the speech short and the language plain: three minutes is enough.

anna 见到那些大导演，是不是要说"久仰大名"？

jiàn dào nàxiē dà dǎoyǎn shì bu shì yào shuō jiǔyǎng dà míng · When she meets the famous directors, should she say "I've heard so much about you"?

teacher wang 对。人家夸你，你就说"过奖了""不敢当"。最后说"请多赐教"，以表示尊重。

duì rénjia kuā nǐ nǐ jiù shuō guòjiǎng le bùgǎndāng zuìhòu shuō qǐng duō cìjiào yǐ biǎoshì zūnzhòng · Yes. When people praise you, say "You flatter me" or "I don't deserve that". Finish with "I'd welcome your advice", to show respect.

little sister 这些客气话，跟寒暄差不多吧？我都耳熟能详，可就是说起来很生硬。

zhèxiē kèqi huà gēn hánxuān chàbuduō ba wǒ dōu ěrshú néngxiáng kě jiùshì shuō qǐlai hěn shēngyìng · These polite phrases are a bit like small talk, aren't they? I know them all by heart, but they sound so stiff when I say them.

teacher wang 差不多。（电话响了）喂？……是卫视的来电，找你的。
chàbuduō diànhuà xiǎng le wèi shì wèishì de láidiàn zhǎo nǐ de · More or less. (the phone rings) Hello? … It's the satellite channel, for you.

little sister （打完电话）他们恳求我去，说可以只聊片子。我没答应，他们差点儿就哀求我了。
dǎ wán diànhuà tāmen kěnqiú wǒ qù shuō kěyǐ zhǐ liáo piānzi wǒ méi dāying tāmen chàdiǎnr jiù āiqiú wǒ le · (after the call) They begged me to come and said we could talk only about the film. I didn't say yes, and they practically pleaded with me.

anna 不少媒体都在追捧她，可有些传闻也是从这类节目里传出来的。
bù shǎo méitǐ dōu zài zhuīpěng tā kě yǒuxiē chuánwén yě shì cóng zhè lèi jiémù lǐ chuán chulai de · Lots of media outlets are raving about her, but some of the rumours started on shows like these too.

teacher wang 我们不乞求谁来采访，也不必怕谁。现在大家都关注你的一言一行，想好了再回答。
wǒmen bù qǐqiú shéi lái cǎifǎng yě búbì pà shéi xiànzài dàjiā dōu guānzhù nǐ de yìyán yìxíng xiǎng hǎo le zài huídá · We don't beg anyone for interviews, and we needn't be afraid of anyone either. Everyone is watching your every word and deed now: think it over, then answer.

little sister 好，我回去想想。王老师，我先告辞了。那封信就拜托您帮我看看。
hǎo wǒ huíqù xiǎng xiang Wánglǎoshī wǒ xiān gàocí le nà fēng xìn jiù bàituō nín bāng wǒ kàn kan · OK, I'll think about it. Teacher Wang, I'll be off. I'm counting on you to look over that letter for me.

teacher wang 好。外面路滑，当心一点，留神别摔倒。
hǎo wàimiàn lù huá dāngxīn yìdiǎn liúshén bié shuāi dǎo · Of course. The roads are slippery: be careful, and mind you don't fall.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

掘
jué
dig

陶
táo
pottery

窑
yáo
kiln

绸
chóu
silk cloth

good to know · A formal Chinese letter ends with 此致 on one line and 敬礼 on the next, a bit like "Yours faithfully". Accepting praise directly can sound boastful: 过奖了, 哪里哪里 or 不敢当 are the polite replies.

You can now meet, thank, refuse and say goodbye with real Chinese courtesy, on paper and face to face.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 106 advice and warnings

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 14 · news and talk

Give advice, warnings and instructions, ask hard questions and make promises, and offer your view with 要我说.

Advising, warning, passing on messages and promising are daily work in any family or office, and Chinese has a precise verb for each.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
劝告	quàngào	to advise; advice	他不听医生的劝告，还在抽烟。 He ignored the doctor's advice and still smokes.
劝说	quànshuō	to persuade	经过大家劝说，他终于同意了。 After everyone talked to him, he finally agreed.
劝阻	quànzǔ	to talk someone out of	我想劝阻她，可她不听。 I tried to talk her out of it, but she wouldn't listen.
忠告	zhōnggào	sincere advice; to advise	我给你一个忠告：别相信网上的传言。 A word of advice: don't believe rumours online.
告诫	gàojiè	to warn, to admonish	父亲告诫他做人要诚实。 His father warned him always to be honest.
警示	jǐngshì	to warn; warning	这件事对大家是一个警示。 This is a warning to us all.
叮嘱	dīngzhǔ	to remind again and again	妈妈叮嘱我路上小心。 Mum kept telling me to be careful on the way.
嘱咐	zhǔfù	to tell, to instruct (kindly)	医生嘱咐他多休息。 The doctor told him to rest more.
嘱托	zhǔtuō	to entrust; trust placed in you	我不会辜负老师的嘱托。 I won't let my teacher down.
吩咐	fēnfù	to tell (someone to do), to order	经理吩咐我把文件准备好。 The manager told me to get the documents ready.
交代	jiāodài	to explain, to brief; to hand over	走之前，他把工作都交代{jiao1dai4-7}清楚了。 Before he left, he briefed everyone on his work.
转达	zhuǎndá	to pass on (a message)	请你把我的感谢转达给她。 Please pass on my thanks to her.
告知	gàozhī	to inform	有变化，我们会及时告知大家。 If anything changes, we'll let everyone know at once.
告	gào	to sue; to tell	他要去法院告那家公司。 He's going to take the company to court.

指点	zhǐdiǎn	to give pointers, to coach	多亏老师指点，我才写好了这篇文章。 Thanks to my teacher's pointers, I managed to write the essay well.
指引	zhǐyǐn	to guide, to show the way	在工作人员的指引下，大家很快找到了座位。 With the staff showing the way, everyone soon found their seats.
催促	cuīcù	to hurry, to urge	妈妈一直催促他早一点睡觉。 His mum kept telling him to go to bed early.
敦促	dūncù	to urge (formally)	政府敦促各方尽快解决问题。 The government urged all parties to solve the problem quickly.
提议	tíyì	to propose; proposal	我提议大家先休息十分钟。 I suggest we all take a ten-minute break.
示意	shìyì	to signal, to gesture	他用眼睛示意我别说话。 He gave me a look that told me to keep quiet.
响应	xiǎngyìng	to respond (to a call)	很多人响应了学校的号召。 Many people answered the school's call.
回应	huíyìng	to respond, to reply	公司还没有回应这个问题。 The company hasn't responded to the question yet.
应	yìng	to answer; to comply with	应{ying4-7}大家的要求，他又唱了一首。 At everyone's request, he sang another song.
附和	fùhè	to echo (someone's view)	他从来没有自己的看法，总是附和别人。 He never has his own opinion: he just echoes everyone else.
聆听	língtīng	to listen (respectfully)	大家安静地聆听老人讲故事。 Everyone listened quietly to the old man's story.
质问	zhìwèn	to question, to challenge	记者质问经理为什么不早说。 The reporter demanded to know why the manager hadn't said so earlier.
追问	zhuīwèn	to press (with questions)	在妈妈的追问下，他只好说了实话。 Pressed by his mum, he had to tell the truth.
反问	fǎnwèn	to ask in return; rhetorical question	他没回答，反问我：“你说呢？” He didn't answer but asked me back: "What do you think?"
发誓	fāshì	to swear, to vow	我发誓，我没有告诉别人。 I swear I didn't tell anyone.
诺言	nuòyán	promise	他实现了自己的诺言。 He kept his promise.
坦白	tǎnbái	frank; to confess	坦白地说，我不太同意。 Frankly, I don't really agree.
坦言	tǎnyán	to say frankly; frank words	导演坦言，这部片子拍得很辛苦。 The director admitted that making the film had been hard going.
倾诉	qīngsù	to pour out (your heart)	她有心事的时候，就向好朋友倾诉。 When something's on her mind, she pours her heart out to her best friend.
诉说	sùshuō	to tell, to recount	这首歌诉说着对家乡的思念。 The song speaks of longing for home.
诉苦	sùkǔ	to complain about your troubles	他一见到我就诉苦，说工作太累了。 The moment he sees me he starts moaning

that work is too tiring.

pattern review: 要(让)我说 and ……不说，还……

要我说 / 让我说 , your advice or view · A 不说，还 B

要我说 or 让我说 (“if you ask me”) introduces your own opinion or advice, in a friendly, direct way. ……不说，还…… piles a second complaint on the first: 他迟到不说，还…… “not only was he late, he also…”. Both are spoken and lively.

要我说，你应该先听听律师的意见。 **yào wǒ shuō nǐ yīnggāi xiān tīng ting lǜshī de yìjiàn** If you ask me, you should listen to the lawyer first.

让我说，这件事不能急。 **ràng wǒ shuō zhè jiàn shì bù néng jí** If you want my view, this can’t be rushed.

网上的人骂她不说，还追问她家里的事。 **wǎngshang de rén mà tā bù shuō hái zhuīwèn tā jiā lǐ de shì** People online don’t just insult her: they keep prying into her family, too.

dialogue a family meeting

ms zhang 来，大家坐。今天开个家庭会，帮妹妹想想办法。
lái dàjiā zuò jīntiān kāi gè jiātíng huì bāng mèimei xiǎng xiang bànfǎ · Come on, everyone, sit down. Today we're holding a family meeting to help our girl work out what to do.

little sister 我先坦白：这几天我很难过。网上有人质问我为什么哭得那么假，还有人一直追问我家里的事。
wǒ xiān tǎnbái zhè jǐ tiān wǒ hěn nánguò wǎngshang yǒu rén zhìwèn wǒ wèi shénme kū de nàme jiǎ hái yǒu rén yìzhí zhuīwèn wǒ jiā lǐ de shì · I'll be honest first: I've been really down these last few days. People online demand to know why my crying was so fake, and others keep prying into my family.

dr li 难过就说出来。跟家人倾诉，总比一个人难受好。
nánguò jiù shuō chulai gēn jiārén qīngsù zǒng bǐ yí gè rén nánshòu hǎo · If you're upset, say so. Pouring your heart out to your family beats suffering on your own.

little sister 我不是诉苦，就是有点儿累。导演今天又催促我们回应网上的谣言，他怕事情越闹越大，变成丑闻。
wǒ bú shì sùkǔ jiùshì yǒudiǎnr lèi dǎoyǎn jīntiān yòu cuīcù wǒmen huíyìng wǎngshang de yáoyán tā pà shìqing yuè nào yuè dà biànchéng chǒuwén · I'm not complaining, just a bit tired. The director was hurrying us again today to respond to the rumours online: he's afraid it'll keep growing and turn into a scandal.

lawyer sun 要我说，现在别急着回应。我给你一个忠告：先把事情的经过写下来，不要随便发言，也别在网上发帖子。
yào wǒ shuō xiànzài bié jí zhe huíyìng wǒ gěi nǐ yí gè zhōnggào xiān bǎ shìqing de jīngguò xiě xialai búyào suíbiàn fāyán yě bié zài wǎngshang fā tiězi · If you ask me, don't rush to respond. Here's my advice: first write down exactly what happened, don't say anything off the cuff, and don't post anything online.

anna 现在反响这么大，说错一句话，网上就会一片哗然。
xiànzài fǎnxiǎng zhème dà shuō cuò yí jù huà wǎngshang jiù huì yí piàn huárán · The response is so big now: say one wrong thing and there'll be an uproar online.

anna 孙律师，盗版的事怎么办？片子是谁泄露出去的，能查出来吗？能告那些网站吗？
Sūnlǜshī dàobǎn de shì zěnme bàn piānzi shì shéi xièlòu chuqu de néng chá chulai ma néng gào nàxiē wǎngzhàn ma · Lawyer Sun, what about the pirated copies? Can we find out who leaked the film? Can you sue those websites?

lawyer sun 能。可以先告知网站，敦促他们马上删除盗版。他们不删，再去法院告。这件事对很多年轻人也是一个警示。
néng kěyǐ xiān gàozhī wǎngzhàn dūncù tāmen mǎshàng shānchú dàobǎn tāmen bù shān zài qù fǎyuàn gào zhè jiàn shì duì hěn duō niánqīng rén yě shì yí gè jǐngshì · Yes. First notify the websites and urge them to take the copies down at once. If they don't, then go to court. This is a warning for a lot of young people, too.

ms zhang 我早就叮嘱过你：上网要小心，个人信息不能随便发。
wǒ zǎo jiù dīngzhǔ guo nǐ shàngwǎng yào xiǎoxīn gèrén xìnxī bù néng suíbiàn fā · I told you again and again: be careful online, and don't post your personal details just anywhere.

little sister 妈妈，您嘱咐过的，我都记得。
māma nín zhǔfù guo de wǒ dōu jìde · Mum, I remember everything you told me.

dr li 那家卫视的事，我劝你别去。我不是要劝阻你做喜欢的事，是怕他们只想要收视率，还会问你那些八卦。
nà jiā wèishì de shì wǒ quàn nǐ bié qù wǒ bú shì yào quànzǔ nǐ zuò xǐhuan de shì shì pà tāmen zhǐ xiǎng yào shōushìlǜ hái huì wèn nǐ nàxiē bāguà · As for that satellite channel, I'd advise you not to go. I'm not trying to stop you doing what you love: I just worry all they want is ratings, and they'll ask you about all that gossip.

ms zhang 你爸爸说得对。我也劝说过你哥哥：上节目的时候，别主持人说什么你都附和。
nǐ bàba shuō de duì wǒ yě quànshuō guo nǐ gēge shàng jiémù de shíhou bié zhǔchí rén shuō shénme nǐ dōu fùhè · Your dad's right. I've told your brother the same: when you're on a show, don't just agree with whatever the presenter says.

anna 导演那边，我可以帮你转达。上次他反问我：“你们觉得我们该怎么办？”好多粉丝已经响应他的号召，不看盗版，只看正版了。
dǎoyǎn nàbiān wǒ kěyǐ bāng nǐ zhuǎndá shàng cì tā fǎnwèn wǒ nǐmen juéde wǒmen gāi zěnme bàn hǎoduō fěnsī yǐjīng xiǎngyìng tā de hàozhào bú kàn dàobǎn zhǐ kàn zhèngbǎn le · I can pass the message on to the director. Last time he turned the question back on me: “What do you think we should do?” Lots of fans have already answered his call: they’ve stopped watching pirated copies and only watch the real thing.

lawyer sun 那就告诉他，我提议明天一起开个会，把事情交代清楚。应大家的要求，再写一份说明。
nà jiù gàosu tā wǒ tíyì míngtiān yìqǐ kāi gè huì bǎ shìqing jiāodài qīngchu yìng dàjiā de yāoqiú zài xiě yí fèn shuōmíng · Then tell him I suggest we all meet tomorrow and go through it properly. Then, as everyone’s asking, write a statement explaining things.

little sister 好，那就拜托你了，安娜。
hǎo nà jiù bàituō nǐ le Ānnà · OK, then I’m counting on you, Anna.

dr li 你爷爷当年告诫我一句话：做人要诚实。你只要说实话，就什么都不怕。
nǐ yéye dāngnián gàojiè wǒ yí jù huà zuò rén yào chéngshí nǐ zhǐyào shuō shíhuà jiù shénme dōu bú pà · Your grandpa once warned me: always be honest. As long as you tell the truth, you’ve nothing to fear.

little sister 我发誓，我们的片子没有抄任何人。我不会辜负爷爷的嘱托，这是我对他的诺言。谢谢你们的指点。
wǒ fāshì wǒmen de piānzi méiyǒu chāo rènhé rén wǒ bú huì gūfù yéye de zhǔtuō zhè shì wǒ duì tā de nuòyán xièxie nǐmen de zhǐdiǎn · I swear our film doesn’t copy anyone. I won’t let Grandpa down: that’s my promise to him. Thank you all for your advice.

ms zhang （示意大家安静）听，爷爷在房间里叫你呢。快去聆听老人家的意见吧。
shìyì dàjiā ānjìng tīng yéye zài fángjiān lǐ jiào nǐ ne kuài qù língtīng lǎorenjia de yìjiàn ba · (signalling everyone to be quiet) Listen, Grandpa’s calling you from his room. Go and hear what the old man has to say.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

绣
xiù
to embroider

匠
jiàng
craftsman

俊
jùn
handsome, good-looking

卓
zhuó
eminent

good to know · 叮嘱 and 嘱咐 are kind, caring instructions (parents, doctors); 吩咐 comes from above (a boss); 告诫 is a serious warning. 反问 is a question answered with a question, and also a rhetorical question: 难道你不知道吗?

Advice, warnings, promises and hard questions: you can now hold your own at a family meeting in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 107 praise and blame

Talk about praise, flattery, boasting, criticism and mockery, and argue from the stronger case with ……尚且……，何况……

Comment sections, reviews and office politics are full of praise and blame; these verbs tell you exactly what kind, and 尚且……何况 is a classic way to win the point.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
赞美	zànměi	to praise; praise	这首诗赞美了大自然。 The poem praises nature.
赞叹	zàntàn	to marvel at	看到这幅画，大家都赞叹不已。 Everyone marvelled at the painting.
赞许	zànxǔ	to approve of, to commend	老师赞许地|点了点头。 The teacher nodded approvingly.
赞扬	zànyáng	to praise, to commend (publicly)	他救人的事受到了大家的赞扬。 Everyone praised him for saving someone's life.
恭维	gōngwéi	to flatter	他说的都是恭维话，你别太相信。 He's just flattering you: don't believe too much of it.
吹捧	chuīpěng	to puff up, to overpraise	网上有人把他吹捧成天才。 Some people online are hyping him up as a genius.
吹牛	chuīniú	to boast, to brag	他又在吹牛了，别信。 He's bragging again: don't believe him.
夸大	kuādà	to exaggerate	这篇报道夸大了事实。 The report exaggerated the facts.
夸耀	kuāyào	to show off, to flaunt	他总爱夸耀自己的成绩。 He loves showing off about his results.
炫耀	xuànyào	to show off	她在网上炫耀新买的包。 She's showing off her new bag online.
标榜	biāobǎng	to proclaim, to flaunt (as a label)	这家店标榜自己是全城最好的。 The shop advertises itself as the best in town.
号称	hàochēng	to be known as; to claim to be	这家饭店号称有一百年历史。 The restaurant claims to be a hundred years old.
自称	zìchēng	to call yourself, to claim to be	一个自称记者的人给我打了电话。 Someone claiming to be a reporter called me.
声称	shēngchēng	to claim, to assert	他声称自己什么都不知道。 He claims he knew nothing about it.
宣称	xuānchēng	to declare, to proclaim	公司宣称新产品下个月问世。 The company announced its new product will come out next month.
宣告	xuāngào	to proclaim, to announce	主持人宣告比赛开始。 The host declared the competition open.

声明	shēngmíng	statement; to state	公司发表了一份声明。 The company issued a statement.
表态	biǎotài	to state your position	这件事经理还没表态。 The manager hasn't taken a position on this yet.
表白	biǎobái	to explain yourself; to declare (feelings)	他向大家表白了自己的想法。 He laid out his thinking to everyone.
责备	zébèi	to reproach, to blame	他没做错什么，你别责备他。 He didn't do anything wrong: don't blame him.
责怪	zéguài	to blame	这不能责怪孩子。 You can't blame the child for this.
埋怨	mányuàn	to grumble, to blame	他总是埋怨别人，从来不找自己的原因。 He always blames others and never looks at himself.
怨言	yuànyán	complaint, grumble	她工作很辛苦，可从来没有怨言。 She works very hard, but never complains.
牢骚	láosāo	grumbles, complaints	别发牢骚了，快干活吧。 Stop grumbling and get on with it.
吐槽	tǔcáo	to roast, to make fun of (online)	网民纷纷吐槽这部电影的结局。 Internet users are all making fun of the film's ending.
抨击	pēngjī	to attack (in words)	这篇文章抨击了网上的不良现象。 The article attacked some bad things happening online.
批判	pīpàn	to criticise, to critique	读书要有批判的精神。 When you read, you need a critical spirit.
谴责	qiǎnzé	to condemn	大家都谴责这种不负责任的行为。 Everyone condemns this kind of irresponsible behaviour.
讽刺	fěngcì	to satirise; irony	这个小品讽刺了爱面子的人。 The sketch satirises people who care too much about face.
挖苦	wāku	to make sarcastic remarks	你别挖苦他了，他已经很难过了。 Stop being sarcastic to him: he's upset enough.
奚落	xīluò	to mock, to jeer at	他说错了一句话，就被同学奚落了半天。 He got one sentence wrong and his classmates jeered at him for ages.
嘲弄	cháonòng	to mock, to make fun of	我们不应该嘲弄别人说话的方式。 We shouldn't make fun of the way other people talk.
讥笑	jīxiào	to sneer at, to ridicule	他不怕别人讥笑，坚持自己的梦想。 He didn't care if people sneered: he stuck to his dream.
耻笑	chǐxiào	to scorn, to laugh at	做这种事，会被人耻笑的。 Do something like that and people will laugh at you.
取笑	qǔxiào	to tease, to make fun of	别取笑我了，我第一次做饭。 Don't tease me: it's my first time cooking.

pattern **a 尚且……，(更)何况 b: even a …, let alone b**

A (the stronger case) **尚且** **…，** **(更)何况** **B (呢)?**

尚且 marks the case that should be easiest or strongest: “even A …”. (更)何况 then brings in B, for which it is all the more true: “let alone B”, “so how much more B”. It often ends as a rhetorical question with 呢. It is more formal than 连……都……，更不用说……了.

大导演尚且会被人吐槽，更何况我们呢？ **dà dǎoyǎn shàngqiě huì bèi rén tǔcáo gèng hékuàng wǒmen ne** Even famous directors get mocked online, so of course we will.

说服一个人尚且很难，何况几百万网民？ **shuōfú yí gè rén shàngqiě hěn nán hékuàng jǐ bǎi wàn wǎngmín** Convincing one person is hard enough, let alone millions of internet users.

想让所有人都满意，谈何容易！ **xiǎng ràng suǒyǒu rén dōu mǎnyì tán hé róngyì** Pleasing everyone? Easier said than done!

连主编都没看过，更不用说别人了。 **lián zhǔbiān dōu méi kàn guo gèng búyòng shuō biérén le** Even the editor-in-chief hasn’t seen it, let alone anyone else.

dialogue twenty thousand comments

editor lin 导演今天发表了声明，宣告片子的版权是他们的。评论已经有两万条，我们一条一条看。

dǎoyǎn jīntiān fābiǎo le shēngmíng xuāngào piānzi de bǎnquán shì tāmen de pínglùn yǐjīng yǒu liǎng wàn tiáo wǒmen yì tiáo yì tiáo kàn · The director issued a statement today declaring that the film's copyright is theirs. There are already twenty thousand comments: let's go through them one by one.

little sister 导演坦言，这几天他都没睡好。

dǎoyǎn tǎnyán zhè jǐ tiān tā dōu méi shuì hǎo · The director admitted he hasn't slept well these past few days.

anna 第一条："片子让人赞叹，老画家的故事太美了，每个镜头都别具匠心！"这条是赞美。

dì yī tiáo piānzi ràng rén zàntàn lǎo huàjiā de gùshi tài měi le měi gè jìngtóu dōu biéjù jiàngxīn zhè tiáo shì zànměi · First one: "An amazing film. The old painter's story is so beautiful, and every shot is so ingenious!" That's praise.

little sister 这条也是："这个姑娘演得真好！"……不过，有的话听起来像恭维。

zhè tiáo yě shì zhège gūniang yǎn de zhēn hǎo búguò yǒude huà tīng qǐlai xiàng gōngwéi · This one too: "That girl is a brilliant actress!"… Though some of it sounds like flattery.

editor lin 有的是真心赞许，有的是吹捧。把你吹捧成天才的，你也别信，就说"不敢当"。

yǒude shì zhēnxīn zànxǔ yǒude shì chuīpěng bǎ nǐ chuīpěng chéng tiāncái de nǐ yě bié xìn jiù shuō bùgǎndāng · Some is sincere approval, some is just hype. If they call you a genius, don't believe it: just say "I don't deserve that".

anna 这条很奇怪：有个人自称是导演的老同学，声称片子的主意是他想出来的，还宣称要告导演。

zhè tiáo hěn qíguài yǒu gè rén zìchēng shì dǎoyǎn de lǎo tóngxué shēngchēng piānzi de zhǔyi shì tā xiǎng chūlái de hái xuānchēng yào gào dǎoyǎn · This one's strange: someone claiming to be the director's old classmate says the film was his idea, and announces he's going to sue the director.

little sister 他在吹牛！我从来没听导演提过他。他还在网上炫耀，号称自己是"幕后高手"，说他知道片子的内幕。

tā zài chuīniú wǒ cónglái méi tīng dǎoyǎn tí guo tā tā hái zài wǎngshang xuànyào hàochēng zìjǐ shì mùhòu gāoshǒu shuō tā zhīdào piānzi de nèimù · He's bragging! I've never heard the director mention him. And he's showing off online, calling himself the "genius behind the scenes" and saying he knows the inside story of the film.

editor lin 这种人喜欢夸大自己的作用，标榜自己，到处夸耀。

zhè zhǒng rén xǐhuan kuādà zìjǐ de zuòyòng biāobǎng zìjǐ dàochù kuāyào · People like that love to exaggerate their own role, put labels on themselves and boast to everyone.

anna 再看批评的：有人抨击我们炒作，有人谴责盗版网站，也有人批判现在的年轻人只想出名。

zài kàn pīpíng de yǒu rén pēngjī wǒmen chǎozuò yǒu rén qiǎnzé dàobǎn wǎngzhàn yě yǒu rén pīpàn xiànzài de niánqīng rén zhǐ xiǎng chūmíng · Now the critical ones: some attack us for hype, some condemn the piracy sites, and some criticise young people today for only wanting to be famous.

little sister 这条最难听："哭得那么假，还好意思拿奖？"这不是批评，是挖苦，是奚落。

zhè tiáo zuì nántīng kū de nàme jiǎ hái hǎo yìsi ná jiǎng zhè bú shì pīpíng shì wāku shì xīluò · This one's the nastiest: "Crying that fake, and she has the nerve to take a prize?" That's not criticism: it's sarcasm, it's jeering.

editor lin 别难过。大导演尚且会被人吐槽，何况你一个学生呢？

bié nánguò dà dǎoyǎn shàngqiě huì bèi rén tǔcáo hékuàng nǐ yí gè xuéshēng ne · Don't let it get to you. Even big directors get mocked online, let alone a student like you.

little sister 我知道。可被人嘲弄、讥笑，心里还是不好受。

wǒ zhīdào kě bèi rén cháonòng jīxiào xīnlǐ háishi bù hǎoshòu · I know. But being mocked and sneered at still hurts.

editor lin 有什么不开心的，就跟我们倾诉吧。

yǒu shénme bù kāixīn de jiù gēn wǒmen qīngsù ba · If something's upsetting you, pour it out to us.

anna 换个角度看，大部分人在取笑那个吹牛的“老同学”，不是你。还有人画了漫画讽刺他，大家看得津津有味。
huàn gè jiǎodù kàn dà bùfen rén zài qǔxiào nàge chuīniú de lǎo tóngxué bú shì nǐ hái yǒu rén huà le mànhuà fěngcì tā dàjiā kàn de jīnjīn yǒuwèi · Look at it another way: most people are laughing at that bragging “old classmate”, not you. Someone has even drawn a cartoon sending him up, and everyone is loving it.

editor lin 对。做这种事的人，最后会被大家耻笑。至于导演，他还要再表态吗？
duì zuò zhè zhǒng shì de rén zuìhòu huì bèi dàjiā chǐxiào zhìyú dǎoyǎn tā hái yào zài biǎotài ma · Exactly. People who do that end up a laughing stock. As for the director, is he going to say anything more?

little sister 他说他不会再说什么了。他没有怨言，不责备谁，也不埋怨网民。他只是想向大家表白：片子是我们自己的。
tā shuō tā bú huì zài shuō shénme le tā méiyǒu yuànyán bù zébèi shéi yě bù mányuàn wǎngmín tā zhǐshì xiǎng xiàng dàjiā biǎobái piānzi shì wǒmen zìjǐ de · He says he won’t say any more. He has no complaints, blames no one, and isn’t grumbling about internet users. He just wants to make it clear to everyone that the film is our own.

anna 连主编都说片子好，更不用说那么多观众了。想让所有人都满意，谈何容易！
lián zhǔbiān dōu shuō piānzi hǎo gèng búyòng shuō nàme duō guānzhòng le xiǎng ràng suǒyǒu rén dōu mǎnyì tán hé róngyì · Even the editor-in-chief says the film is good, let alone all those viewers. Pleasing everyone? Easier said than done!

editor lin 好了，牢骚发完了，我们去吃饭吧。
hǎo le láosāo fā wán le wǒmen qù chī fàn ba · Right, we’ve had our grumble: let’s go and eat.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

辟
pì
open up

劫
jié
to rob; a disaster

牺
xī
sacrificial animal

弓
gōng
bow (weapon)

good to know · Praise has many shades: 赞美 and 赞扬 are sincere, 恭维 is flattery, 吹捧 is overblown hype. Mockery too: 取笑 is light teasing, 挖苦 sarcastic, 讽刺 satire, 奚落 and 耻笑 openly humiliating.

From sincere praise to sly sarcasm, you can now name exactly what people are doing with their words.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 108 arguments and lies

Debate, rebut, clarify and call out lies and distortions, and ask “why would it come to that?” with 何至于.

Debates, meetings and comment threads all need these verbs, and the HSK 7–9 essay asks you to argue a point and answer the other side.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
辩	biàn	to argue, to debate	这个问题越辩{bian4-7}越清楚。 The more you debate this question, the clearer it gets.
辩论	biànlùn	to debate; debate	陈教授的辩论队赢了比赛。 Professor Chen’s debating team won the competition.
辩解	biànjiě	to justify yourself, to make excuses	错了就是错了，不要再辩解了。 Wrong is wrong: stop making excuses.
争辩	zhēngbiàn	to argue, to dispute	他们为了一个小问题争辩了半天。 They argued for ages over one small point.
争执	zhēngzhí	to quarrel, to be at odds	两个人发生了争执。 The two of them got into a dispute.
反驳	fǎnbó	to refute, to rebut	她用事实反驳了对方的观点。 She rebutted the other side’s point with the facts.
讲理	jiǎnglǐ	to be reasonable; to reason	他这个人不讲理，跟他说也没用。 He’s unreasonable: there’s no point talking to him.
澄清	chéngqīng	to clarify, to clear up	我想澄清一个事实。 I’d like to clarify one fact.
阐述	chǎnshù	to set out, to expound	请你阐述一下你的观点。 Please set out your argument.
阐释	chǎnshì	to explain, to interpret	老师阐释了这句话的意思。 The teacher explained what the sentence means.
诠释	quánshì	to interpret (a role, an idea)	她用行动诠释了什么是坚持。 She showed through her actions what perseverance means.
陈述	chénshù	to state, to present	请你简单陈述一下事情的经过。 Please briefly state what happened.
表述	biǎoshù	to express; wording	这句话的表述不太准确。 The wording of this sentence isn’t very precise.
列举	lièjǔ	to list, to enumerate	他列举了三个例子。 He gave three examples.
提及	tíjí	to mention	他在文章里提及了这件事。 He mentioned the matter in his article.
谈及	tánjí	to talk about, to touch on	谈及家乡，老人很激动。 When the talk turned to his home town, the

			old man was very moved.
畅谈	chàngtán	to talk freely, to have a good talk	老朋友们一起畅谈了一个晚上。 The old friends talked the whole evening.
借口	jièkǒu	excuse, pretext	他找了个借口，没来开会。 He made up an excuse and skipped the meeting.
谎话	huǎnghuà	lie	他说的都是谎话。 Everything he said was a lie.
谎言	huǎngyán	lie, falsehood	谎言总有一天会被揭穿。 Lies always get found out in the end.
撒谎	sāhuǎng	to tell a lie	孩子撒谎，父母要耐心教育。 When children lie, parents need to teach them patiently.
说谎	shuōhuǎng	to lie	我从来不说谎。 I never lie.
编造	biānzào	to make up, to fabricate	这个故事是他编造的。 He made this story up.
歪曲	wāiqū	to distort, to twist	这篇报道歪曲了她的意思。 The report twisted her words.
污蔑	wūmiè	to slander, to smear	你不能没有证据就污蔑别人。 You can't smear someone without evidence.
贬低	biǎndī	to belittle, to run down	他总是贬低别人，抬高自己。 He always runs others down to make himself look better.
褒贬	bāobiǎn	to judge; praise and blame	对这部电影，网上褒贬不一。 Opinions of the film online are mixed.
点评	diǎnpíng	to comment on; review	老师点评了每个学生的作品。 The teacher commented on every student's work.
胡说	húshuō	to talk nonsense; nonsense	别胡说，这件事不是真的。 Don't talk nonsense: it isn't true.
废话	fèihuà	nonsense, waffle	少说废话，说重点。 Cut the waffle and get to the point.
说情	shuōqíng	to plead for someone	他犯了错，没有人替他说情。 He made a mistake, and nobody put in a word for him.
插嘴	chāzuǐ	to butt in, to interrupt	大人说话，孩子别插嘴。 Children shouldn't butt in when grown-ups are talking.
打岔	dǎchà	to interrupt, to change the subject	别打岔，让他说完。 Don't interrupt: let him finish.
说不上	shuōbushàng	can't really say; not worth calling	我也说不上为什么，就是不喜欢他。 I can't say why: I just don't like him.
调侃	tiáokǎn	to tease, to banter	他喜欢调侃自己的中文。 He likes to joke about his own Chinese.

pattern review: 何至于..... and a paragraph that grows

small cause ，何至于 **big reaction?** · **此外 / 更重要的是 / 由此可见**

何至于 + a reaction asks “why would it come to that?”: the reaction is out of all proportion to the cause. 不就是几条评论吗？何至于这么生气？ In a debate, build your case with the paragraph connectors: 首先, 此外, 更重要的是, and close with 由此可见.

不就是几条评论吗？何至于这么生气？ **bú jiùshì jǐ tiáo pínglùn ma hé zhìyú zhème shēngqì** It’s only a few comments: why get so angry?

他不过说错一句话，何至于被骂成这样？ **tā búguò shuō cuò yí jù huà hé zhìyú bèi mà chéng zhèyàng** He only said one wrong thing: why should he be abused like this?

谣言会伤害别人。此外，它还会误导读者。更重要的是，它让人不再相信真话。 **yáoyán huì shānghài biérén cǐwài tā hái huì wùdǎo dúzhě gèng zhòngyào de shì tā ràng rén bú zài xiāngxìn zhēn huà** Rumours hurt people. Besides that, they mislead readers. More importantly, they stop people believing the truth.

dialogue the great rumour debate

professor chen 今天的辩论题目是：“网上的谣言，平台应该负责吗？”先请正方阐述观点。
jīntiān de biànlùn tímù shì wǎngshang de yáoyán píngtái yīnggāi fùzé ma xiān qǐng zhèng fāng chǎnshù guāndiǎn · Tonight’s motion is: “Should online platforms be responsible for rumours?” First, the proposition will set out its case.

little sister 首先，我想列举几个例子。我们的片子被人歪曲成“抄别人的”，有人编造我的家庭背景，还有人污蔑我们的导演炒作。由此可见，平台不能不管。
shǒuxiān wǒ xiǎng lièjǔ jǐ gè lìzi wǒmen de piānzi bèi rén wāiqū chéng chāo biérén de yǒu rén biānzào wǒ de jiātíng bèijǐng hái yǒu rén wūmiè wǒmen de dǎoyǎn chǎozuò yóu cǐ kějiàn píngtái bù néng bùguǎn · First, let me give some examples. Our film was twisted into a “copy”, someone made up my family background, and others smeared our director with claims of hype. Clearly, platforms can’t just stand aside.

xiaoming 反方反驳：平台怎么知道哪条是谎言？要是什么都删，大家就不能说话了。
fǎn fāng fǎnbó píngtái zěnme zhīdào nǎ tiáo shì huǎngyán yàoshi shénme dōu shān dàjiā jiù bù néng shuōhuà le · The opposition replies: how is a platform to know which posts are lies? If they delete everything, nobody can say anything.

little sister 这不是借口。平台有技术，也有责任。更重要的是……
zhè bú shì jièkǒu píngtái yǒu jìshù yě yǒu zérèn gèng zhòngyào de shì · That’s no excuse. Platforms have the technology, and the responsibility. More importantly…

xiaoming 让我说完，别插嘴！
ràng wǒ shuō wán bié chāzuǐ · Let me finish: don’t butt in!

professor chen 好了，不要争执。辩论要讲理，不是争辩谁的声音大，也不是挖苦对方。
hǎo le búyào zhēngzhí biànlùn yào jiǎnglǐ bú shì zhēngbiàn shéi de shēngyīn dà yě bú shì wāku duìfāng · All right, no quarrelling. Debating means reasoning, not arguing over who can shout loudest, and not making sarcastic digs at the other side.

anna 我想问正方：你提及“撒谎的人”，能不能具体陈述一下？
wǒ xiǎng wèn zhèng fāng nǐ tíjí sāhuǎng de rén néng bu néng jùtǐ chénshù yíxià · A question for the proposition: you mentioned “people who lie”. Could you give us the specifics?

little sister 可以。有个人说谎，声称他是导演的老同学。他的表述前后矛盾：一会儿说帮忙写了剧本，一会儿说帮忙拍了片子。
kěyǐ yǒu gè rén shuōhuǎng shēngchēng tā shì dǎoyǎn de lǎo tóngxué tā de biǎoshù qiánhòu máodùn yíhuìr shuō bāngmáng xiě le jùběn yíhuìr shuō bāngmáng pāi le piānzi · Yes. A man lied, claiming he was the director’s old classmate. His story contradicted itself: one minute he helped write the script, the next he helped shoot the film.

xiaoming 不就是一个人在网上胡说吗？何至于拿到辩论会上来说？
bú jiùshì yí gè rén zài wǎngshang húshuō ma hé zhìyú ná dào biànlùn huì shàng lái shuō · Isn’t that just one guy talking nonsense online? Why bring it all the way to a debate?

professor chen 别打岔。说到这个，我刚收到消息：那个“老同学”今天发表声明道歉了，承认他说的都是谎话，还在辩解说只是想开个玩笑。
bié dǎchà shuō dào zhège wǒ gāng shōudào xiāoxi nàge lǎo tóngxué jīntiān fābiǎo shēngmíng dàoqiàn le chéngrèn tā shuō de dōu shì huǎnghuà hái zài biànjiě shuō zhǐshì xiǎng kāi gè wán xiào · Don’t change the subject. Speaking of which, I’ve just heard: that “old classmate” issued a statement today apologising and admitted it was all lies, though he’s still making excuses that it was only a joke.

little sister 开玩笑？他贬低我们的片子，还在网上炫耀，伤害了那么多人。
kāi wánxiào tā biǎndī wǒmen de piānzi hái zài wǎngshang xuànyào shānghài le nàme duō rén · A joke? He ran down our film, showed off about it online, and hurt so many people.

anna 不管他怎么宣称只是开玩笑，大家都在谴责他。
bùguǎn tā zěnme xuānchēng zhǐshì kāi wánxiào dàjiā dōu zài qiǎnzé tā · Whatever he claims about it being just a joke, everyone is condemning him.

xiaoming 他的朋友还在网上替他说情呢。
tā de péngyou hái zài wǎngshang tì tā shuōqíng ne · His friends are even pleading for him online.

professor chen 我来点评一下：正方阐释得很清楚，反方也诠释了说话自由的重要。至于谁赢，我也说不上。
wǒ lái diǎnpíng yíxià zhèng fāng chǎnshì de hěn qīngchu fǎn fāng yě quánshì le shuōhuà zìyóu de zhòngyào zhìyú shéi yíng wǒ yě shuōbushàng · Let me comment: the proposition explained its case very clearly, and the opposition showed why free speech matters. As for who won, I really can't say.

anna 网上对这件事褒贬不一，可是事实已经澄清了。
wǎngshang duì zhè jiàn shì bāobiǎn bù yī kěshì shìshí yǐjīng chéngqīng le · Opinions online are mixed, but the facts have been cleared up.

professor chen 好，辩论结束。大家去喝杯茶，畅谈一下。今天谈及的问题，以后还要再辩。
hǎo biànlùn jiéshù dàjiā qù hē bēi chá chàngtán yíxià jīntiān tánjí de wèntí yǐhòu hái yào zài biàn · Right, the debate is over. Let's all have a cup of tea and talk freely. We'll be debating the issues we touched on tonight again.

xiaoming （调侃）妹妹，你今天真厉害，我差点儿就输给你了。这不是恭维。
tiáokǎn mèimei nǐ jīntiān zhēn lìhai wǒ chàdiǎnr jiù shū gěi nǐ le zhè bú shì gōngwéi · (teasing) Sis, you were amazing today. You nearly beat me. And that's not flattery.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

袭
xí
raid

轰
hōng
to bang, rumble; boom

侵
qīn
invade

毁
huǐ
to ruin, destroy

good to know · In a Chinese debate, the side for the motion is 正方 and the side against is 反方; the motion is the 辩题. 说谎 and 撒谎 both mean "to lie"; 谎话 is spoken, 谎言 written. 编造 is to make up a whole story.

You can now argue, rebut and clear your name in Chinese, and keep your temper while you do it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 109 voices and words

Describe how people speak, from shouting and muttering to accents, tone and eloquence, and talk about sayings and mottos.

How something is said matters as much as what is said; these words let you describe voices, styles and the sayings everyone quotes.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
嚷	rǎng	to shout, to yell	别嚷了，孩子在睡觉。 Stop yelling: the baby's asleep.
吼	hǒu	to roar, to bellow	他生气地吼了一声。 He let out an angry roar.
呼	hū	to breathe out; to shout, to call	考完试，她长长地呼了一口气。 After the exam she let out a long breath.
呼唤	hūhuàn	to call out to	妈妈在楼下呼唤孩子回家吃饭。 Mum called from downstairs for the children to come home for dinner.
呼救	hūjiù	to call for help	听到有人呼救，他马上跑了过去。 Hearing someone call for help, he ran straight over.
呐喊	nàhǎn	to shout, to cheer (loudly)	球迷们为自己的队伍呐喊加油。 The fans roared on their team.
嘀咕	dígu	to mutter, to whisper	他一边走一边嘀咕。 He muttered to himself as he walked.
哼	hēng	to hum; to snort	她一边做饭一边哼着歌。 She hummed a song while she cooked.
呵	hē	to breathe out (on); ha!	他往冻僵的手上呵了一口气。 He breathed on his frozen hands.
唠叨	láodao	to nag, to chatter on	我妈妈每天都唠叨我早一点睡。 My mum nags me every day to go to bed early.
絮叨	xùdao	long-winded; to go on and on	老人絮叨了半天，都是过去的事。 The old man went on and on, all about the old days.
啰唆	luōsuo	long-winded; to fuss	他说话太啰唆，一件事要说三遍。 He's so long-winded he says everything three times.
吞吞吐吐	tūntūntǔtǔ	hesitant, hemming and hawing	他吞吞吐吐，半天也没说清楚。 He hummed and hawed and never said it clearly.
口吃	kǒuchī	to stutter, to stammer	他小时候有点儿口吃，现在说话很流利。 He stammered a little as a child, but now he speaks fluently.
口音	kǒuyīn	accent	她说话有一点儿南方口音。 She speaks with a slight southern accent.
嗓音	sǎngyīn	voice (singing or speaking)	这个歌手的嗓音很特别。 This singer has a very unusual voice.

口气	kǒuqì	tone (of voice)	他说话的口气很不客气。 His tone was very rude.
口才	kǒucái	eloquence, way with words	她口才很好，适合当主持人。 She has a way with words: she'd make a good presenter.
流畅	liúchàng	fluent, smooth	他的中文说得很流畅。 He speaks Chinese very fluently.
犀利	xīlì	sharp, incisive	她的问题很犀利。 Her questions are razor-sharp.
委婉	wěiwǎn	tactful, indirect	她委婉地拒绝了我。 She turned me down tactfully.
含糊	hánhu	vague, unclear	他的回答很含糊。 His answer was vague.
贴切	tiēqiè	apt, fitting (words)	这个比喻很贴切。 That comparison is spot on.
言辞	yáncí	words, wording	他的言辞很激烈。 He used very strong language.
言论	yánlùn	views, remarks (public)	在网上发表言论，也要负责任。 You're responsible for what you post online too.
话语	huàyǔ	words, speech	他简单的话语让大家很感动。 His simple words moved everyone.
字眼	zìyǎn	wording, choice of words	他在文章里特别注意字眼。 He's very careful with his choice of words when he writes.
口头禅	kǒutóuchán	pet phrase	"没问题"是他的口头禅。 "No problem" is his catchphrase.
俗话	súhuà	common saying	俗话说，好事不出门，坏事传千里。 As the saying goes, good news stays at home but bad news travels a thousand miles.
俗语	súyǔ	proverb, folk saying	这句俗语大家都知道。 Everyone knows this saying.
俗称	súchēng	to be commonly called; popular name	这种花俗称"太阳花"。 This flower is commonly called the "sun flower".
名言	míngyán	famous saying	这句名言你听说过吗? Have you heard this famous saying?
座右铭	zuòyòumíng	motto	"活到老，学到老"是她的座右铭。 "Never stop learning" is her motto.
闲话	xiánhuà	gossip; idle talk	别在背后说别人的闲话。 Don't gossip about people behind their backs.
口径	kǒujìng	official line; calibre	回答记者问题以前，我们要统一口径。 Before answering reporters, we need to agree on a common line.

pattern review: 话是这么说 and switching topics

话是这么说，

可/但 + the other side

·

说到 / 至于 / 顺便说一句 / 回到正题

话是这么说 (“that may be so”) grants a point, then turns with 可 or 但 to the other side. To steer a conversation, as a radio host does, use 说到 X (“speaking of X”), 至于 X (“as for X”), 顺便说一句 (“by the way”) and 回到正题 (“back to the point”).

话是这么说，可做起来没那么容易。 huà shì zhème shuō kě zuò qǐlai méi nàme róngyì That’s true, but it’s not so easy to do.

说到口音，安娜说话有一点儿北京口音。 shuō dào kǒuyīn Ānnà shuōhuà yǒuyìdiǎnr Běijīng kǒuyīn Speaking of accents, Anna has a bit of a Beijing accent.

至于那些闲话，就让它们过去吧。 zhìyú nàxiē xiánhuà jiù ràng tāmen guòqù ba As for all that gossip, let it go.

顺便说一句，我的座右铭是“慢慢来”。 shùnbiàn shuō yí jù wǒ de zuòyòumíng shì màn màn lái By the way, my motto is “one step at a time”.

dialogue on air

editor lin 各位听众晚上好！今天我在电台做嘉宾主持。我们这个节目，听众俗称“睡前聊天”。今天请来了两位客人。

gèwèi tīngzhòng wǎnshang hǎo jīntiān wǒ zài diàntái zuò jiābīn zhǔchí wǒmen zhège jiémù tīngzhòng súchēng shuì qián liáotiān jīntiān qǐng lái le liǎng wèi kèrén · Good evening, listeners! Tonight I’m your guest host. Listeners call this show “the bedtime chat”, and tonight we have two guests.

little sister 大家好……我、我是……对不起，我有点儿紧张。

dàjiā hǎo wǒ wǒ shì duìbuqǐ wǒ yǒudiǎnr jǐnzhāng · Hello everyone… I, I’m… sorry, I’m a bit nervous.

editor lin 别急，慢慢说。你的嗓音很好听，刚才在外面你还哼着歌呢。

bié jí màn màn shuō nǐ de sǎngyīn hěn hǎotīng gāngcái zài wàimiàn nǐ hái hēng zhe gē ne · Take your time. You have a lovely voice: you were humming a song outside a minute ago.

little sister 我小时候有点儿口吃，一紧张说话就吞吞吐吐。

wǒ xiǎoshíhou yǒudiǎnr kǒuchī yì jǐnzhāng shuōhuà jiù tūntūntǔtǔ · I stammered a bit as a child, and when I’m nervous I still stumble over my words.

anna 话是这么说，可你在辩论会上的口才，大家都看到了，说话又流畅又犀利，把观点阐述得很清楚。

huà shì zhème shuō kě nǐ zài biànlùn huì shàng de kǒucái dàjiā dōu kàn dào le shuōhuà yòu liúchàng yòu xīlì bǎ guāndiǎn chǎnshù de hěn qīngchu · That may be so, but everyone saw how well you spoke at the debate: fluent and sharp, and you set out your views very clearly.

editor lin 说到口音，安娜，你的中文有一点儿北京口音。

shuō dào kǒuyīn Ānnà nǐ de Zhōngwén yǒuyìdiǎnr Běijīng kǒuyīn · Speaking of accents, Anna, your Chinese has a touch of Beijing in it.

anna 是吗？我的口头禅是“就这样吧”，大家都说很像北京人。

shì ma wǒ de kǒutóuchán shì jiù zhèyàng ba dàjiā dōu shuō hěn xiàng Běijīng rén · Really? My catchphrase is “let’s leave it at that”, and everyone says I sound like a real Beijinger.

editor lin 好，回到正题。网上的事已经过去了，事实也澄清了，你现在怎么看那些闲话？

hǎo huí dào zhèng tí wǎngshang de shì yǐjīng guòqù le shìshí yě chéngqīng le nǐ xiànzài zěnme kàn nàxiē xiánhuà · Right, back to the point. The storm online has passed and the facts have been cleared up: how do you see all that gossip now?

little sister 我爷爷常说一句俗语：“身正不怕影子歪。”这是他的座右铭。

wǒ yéye cháng shuō yí jù súyǔ shēn zhèng bú pà yǐngzi wāi zhè shì tā de zuòyòumíng · My grandpa often quotes a saying: “If you stand straight, you needn’t fear a crooked shadow.” It’s his motto.

editor lin 说得很贴切。现在有听众来电。喂，您好？

shuō de hěn tiēqiè xiànzài yǒu tīngzhòng láidiàn wèi nín hǎo · That fits perfectly. Now, a caller. Hello?

dr li 你好，我是她爸爸。我平时爱唠叨，她妈妈也爱絮叨，她总嫌我们啰唆。今天我只想说一句：我们为你骄傲。

nǐhǎo wǒ shì tā bàba wǒ píngshí ài láodao tā māma yě ài xùdao tā zǒng xián wǒmen luōsuo jīntiān wǒ zhǐ xiǎng shuō yí jù wǒmen wèi nǐ jiāoào · Hello, I’m her dad. I tend to nag, her mum likes to go on a bit too, and she’s always saying we fuss. Tonight I just want to say one thing: we’re proud of you.

little sister 爸爸！……（小声嘀咕）怎么是您啊。

bàba xiǎo shēng dígu zěnme shì nín a · Dad!… (muttering) Of all people…

editor lin 多么温暖的话语。下一位听众……这位先生口气很冲，他说现在年轻人的言论太随便，常常胡说。

duōme wēnnuǎn de huàyǔ xià yí wèi tīngzhòng zhè wèi xiānsheng kǒuqì hěn chòng tā shuō xiànzài niánqīng rén de yánlùn tài suíbiàn chángcháng húshuō · What warm words. Next caller… this gentleman sounds rather cross: he says young people today are too careless about what they say, and often talk nonsense.

anna 他的言辞有点儿激烈，可是也有道理。说话要注意字眼，可以委婉一点，但回答问题不能含糊。

tā de yáncí yǒudiǎnr jīliè kěshì yě yǒu dàolǐ shuōhuà yào zhùyì zìyǎn kěyǐ wěiwǎn yìdiǎn dàn huídá wèntí bù

néng hánhu · He puts it strongly, but he has a point. You need to choose your words carefully: you can be tactful, but your answers mustn't be vague.

little sister 我不想辩解什么。大家怎么点评都可以，我只想把片子拍好。

wǒ bù xiǎng biànjiě shénme dàjiā zěnme diǎnpíng dōu kěyǐ wǒ zhǐ xiǎng bǎ piānzi pāi hǎo · I don't want to justify myself. People can comment however they like: I just want to make good films.

editor lin 顺便说一句，我们网站对这件事已经统一了口径：只说事实，不歪曲事实。

shùnbiàn shuō yí jù wǒmen wǎngzhàn duì zhè jiàn shì yǐjīng tǒngyī le kǒujìng zhǐ shuō shìshí bù wāiqū shìshí · By the way, our website has agreed a common line on this: we only report the facts, and never twist them.

little sister 我还想说：那几天我觉得自己像在水里呼救，没人听见；网上的骂声就像有人对我吼。后来我听到家人在呼唤我，还有很多人在为我们呐喊加油。

wǒ hái xiǎng shuō nà jǐ tiān wǒ juéde zìjǐ xiàng zài shuǐ lǐ hūjiù méi rén tīngjiàn wǎngshang de mà shēng jiù xiàng yǒu rén duì wǒ hǒu hòulái wǒ tīng dào jiārén zài hūhuàn wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō rén zài wèi wǒmen nàhǎn jiāyóu · I'd like to add: for a few days I felt as if I was calling for help under water and nobody could hear, and the abuse online was like people roaring at me. Then I heard my family calling me, and lots of people cheering us on.

editor lin 谢谢你。我想用一句名言结束今天的节目……

xièxie nǐ wǒ xiǎng yòng yí jù míngyán jiéshù jīntiān de jiémù · Thank you. I'd like to end tonight's show with a famous saying...

write it trace the grey, then write your own

斩
zhǎn
to chop, cut off

伏
fú
lie low

锋
fēng
blade

署
shǔ
arrange

good to know · 唠叨, 絮叨 and 啰唆 all mean going on and on; 唠叨 is the nagging parent, 啰唆 the long-winded speaker. 统一口径 "to agree a common line" is what press offices do before talking to reporters.

Voices, accents, tone and sayings: you can now say not just what people said, but how they said it. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 110 mission: a story goes viral

Follow a news story from report to rumour to statement in Chinese: the headlines, the comments, the advice, the official statement and the radio interview.

Everything from this unit comes together: news and media, life online, polite formulas, advice and warnings, praise and blame, arguments and lies, and the way people speak.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the top story

editor lin 安娜，你看！我的报道上了网站的头条，二十多家网站都转载了。不仅如此，一家报纸明天还要刊登。

Ānnà nǐ kàn wǒ de bàodào shàng le wǎngzhàn de tóutiáo èrshí duō jiā wǎngzhàn dōu zhuǎnzǎi le bùjǐn rúcǐ yì jiā bàozhǐ míngtiān hái yào kāndēng · Anna, look! My report is the site's top story, and over twenty websites have reposted it. What's more, a newspaper is printing it tomorrow.

anna 据悉，连国外的电讯都提到了这部片子。由此可见，大家都喜欢这样的故事。

jùxī lián guó wài de diànxùn dōu tídào le zhè bù piānzi yóu cǐ kějiàn dàjiā dōu xǐhuan zhèyàng de gùshi · I hear even a foreign news dispatch has mentioned the film. So clearly, people love stories like this.

editor lin 这是我们的独家报道，材料都是第一手的。此外，我们的纪实专栏下周还要做一期。

zhè shì wǒmen de dújiā bàodào cáiliào dōu shì dìyīshǒu de cǐwài wǒmen de jìshí zhuānlán xià zhōu hái yào zuò yì qī · It's our exclusive, and all the material is first-hand. Besides that, our non-fiction column is doing a feature next week.

anna 电台和卫视都来电话了吗？

diàntái hé wèishì dōu lái diànhuà le ma · Have the radio station and the satellite channels called too?

editor lin 都来了。一家卫视获悉以后，想请她上综艺节目，说收视率一定很高。还有读者投稿，要订阅我们的刊物。

dōu lái le yì jiā wèishì huòxī yǐhòu xiǎng qǐng tā shàng zōngyì jiémù shuō shōushìlǜ yídìng hěn gāo hái yǒu dúzhě tóugǎo yào dìngyuè wǒmen de kānwù · They all have. One satellite channel heard about it and wants her on a variety show; they say the ratings would be huge. And readers are sending in pieces and asking to subscribe to our magazine.

editor lin 他们恳求了好几次，差点儿就哀求了。她不好意思推辞，我建议她客气地谢绝。

tāmen kěnqiú le hǎo jǐ cì chàdiǎnr jiù āiqiú le tā bù hǎoyìsi tuīcí wǒ jiànyì tā kèqi de xièjué · They begged several times; they practically pleaded. She felt awkward saying no, so I suggested she decline politely.

anna 现在的传媒真快。网上、电台、报纸，哪个媒介都在报这件事。

xiànzài de chuánméi zhēn kuài wǎngshang diàntái bàozhǐ nǎge méijiè dōu zài bào zhè jiàn shì · The media move so fast now. Online, radio, the papers: every outlet is reporting it.

editor lin 时事和资讯栏目今天都在讲这件事，电视台还想实况转播片子的展览。小明的爷爷天天抱着收音机听。

shíshì hé zīxùn lánmù jīntiān dōu zài jiǎng zhè jiàn shì diànshìtái hái xiǎng shíkuàng zhuǎnbō piānzi de zhǎnlǎn Xiǎomíng de yéye tiān tiān bào zhe shōuyīnjī tīng · The current-affairs and news-in-brief sections are all covering it today, and a TV station even wants to broadcast the props exhibition live. Xiaoming's grandpa is glued to his radio.

anna 上个月你们独家曝光的那家公司，也没有这么大的反响。

shàng gè yuè nǐmen dújiā bàoguāng de nà jiā gōngsī yě méiyǒu zhème dà de fǎnxiǎng · Even the company you exposed in your exclusive last month didn't get a response like this.

editor lin 下个月网站改版，我当主编，栏目和封面都要换。更重要的是，我们不能被舆论牵着走。

xià gè yuè wǎngzhàn gǎibǎn wǒ dāng zhǔbiān lánmù hé fēngmiàn dōu yào huàn gèng zhòngyào de shì wǒmen bù néng bèi yúlùn qiān zhe zǒu · Next month the site is redesigned and I become editor-in-chief: new sections, new front page. More importantly, we mustn't let public opinion lead us by the nose.

anna 说到舆论，你们平时也揭露社会问题吧？

shuō dào yúlùn nǐmen píngshí yě jiēlù shèhuì wèntí ba · Speaking of public opinion, you expose social problems too, don't you?

editor lin 会。好消息要报，坏消息也要披露。下周的预告我已经写好了，结果到时候揭晓。

huì hǎo xiāoxi yào bào huài xiāoxi yě yào pīlù xià zhōu de yùgào wǒ yǐjīng xiě hǎo le jiéguǒ dào shíhou jiēxiǎo · Yes. We report good news, and we disclose bad news too. I've already written next week's preview: the results will be revealed then.

chapter 2 chapter 2: famous overnight

xiaoming 妹妹哭的那段影像被人剪辑成了短视频，在网上轰动了。一个帖子就有五十万人点赞，网民的反响太大了！

mèimei kū de nà duàn yǐngxiàng bèi rén jiǎnjí chéng le duǎn shìpín zài wǎngshang hōngdòng le yí gè tiězi jiù yǒu wǔshí wàn rén diǎnzàn wǎngmín de fǎnxiǎng tài dà le · Someone edited the clip of my sister crying into a short video, and it's caused a sensation online. One post alone has half a million likes: the response is huge!

little sister 我的粉丝突然多了三万，人气是高了，可有人匿名发帖子，说我们的片子是抄的，是导演在炒作。

wǒ de fěnsī tūrán duō le sān wàn rénqì shì gāo le kě yǒu rén nìmíng fā tiězi shuō wǒmen de piānzi shì chāo de shì dǎoyǎn zài chǎozuò · I suddenly have thirty thousand more fans. I'm popular, sure, but someone posted anonymously that our film is a copy and it's all the director's hype.

anna 消息一出，网上一片哗然。还有传闻说你是大明星的亲戚。这种八卦最会误导人。

xiāoxi yì chū wǎngshang yí piàn huárán hái yǒu chuánwén shuō nǐ shì dà míngxīng de qīnqi zhè zhǒng bāguà zuì huì wùdǎo rén · The moment that came out, the internet was in uproar. There's even a rumour you're related to a big star. Gossip like that misleads people so easily.

xiaoming 至于这个传言，太可笑了。我们家最大的明星是大白！

zhìyú zhège chuányán tài kěxiào le wǒmen jiā zuì dà de míngxīng shì Dàbái · As for that rumour, it's ridiculous. The biggest star in our family is Dabai!

anna 别听那些人胡说。我们自己也别到处宣扬就好。

bié tīng nàxiē rén húshuō wǒmen zìjǐ yě bié dàochù xuānyáng jiù hǎo · Don't listen to their nonsense. And let's not go shouting about it ourselves either.

little sister 还有更糟的：片子还没问世，网上就有盗版了。不知道是谁走漏了消息，把片子泄露出去的。

hái yǒu gèng zāo de piānzi hái méi wènshì wǎngshang jiù yǒu dàobǎn le bù zhīdào shì shéi zǒulòu le xiāoxi bǎ piānzi xièlòu chuqu de · And it gets worse: the film isn't even out, and there are pirated copies online. We don't know who leaked it.

anna 版权是你们的，大家应该支持正版。顺便说一句，那些散布谣言的人，你别理他们。

bǎnquán shì nǐmen de dàjiā yīnggāi zhīchí zhèngbǎn shùnbiàn shuō yí jù nàxiē sànbù yáoyán de rén nǐ bié lǐ tāmen · You own the copyright: people should support the real thing. By the way, ignore the people spreading rumours.

xiaoming 其实追捧你们的人更多，都说片子充满正能量，口碑很好。你们的主题曲还上了排行榜呢！

qíshí zhuīpěng nǐmen de rén gèng duō dōu shuō piānzi chōngmǎn zhèngnéngliàng kǒubēi hěn hǎo nǐmen de zhǔtíqǔ hái shàng le páihángbǎng ne · Actually far more people love your film. They all say it's uplifting, and the word of mouth is great. Your theme song is even in the charts!

little sister 好了，回到正题：海报和传单还剩很多，我们想在学校张贴，再写一条标语。只要别闹成丑闻就好。

hǎo le huí dào zhèng tí hǎibào hé chuándān hái shèng hěn duō wǒmen xiǎng zài xuéxiào zhāngtiē zài xiě yì tiáo biāoyǔ zhǐyào bié nào chéng chǒuwén jiù hǎo · OK, back to the point: we've got loads of posters and flyers left, and we want to put them up around the university with a slogan. As long as it doesn't turn into a scandal.

xiaoming 放心，你又不是明星，没有绯闻，也没有什么内幕。

fàngxīn nǐ yòu bú shì míngxīng méiyǒu fēiwén yě méiyǒu shénme nèimù · Don't worry. You're not a star: no gossip about your love life, and no "inside story" either.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the family meeting

little sister 我先坦白：这几天很难过。有人质问我为什么哭得那么假，还有人一直追问我家里的事。

wǒ xiān tǎnbái zhè jǐ tiān hěn nánguò yǒu rén zhìwèn wǒ wèi shénme kū de nàme jiǎ hái yǒu rén yìzhí zhuīwèn wǒ jiā lǐ de shì · I'll be honest: I've been really down. People demand to know why my crying was so fake, and others keep prying into my family.

dr li 难过就跟家人倾诉，这不是诉苦。要我说，那家卫视你别去，我怕他们只想要收视率。

nánguò jiù gēn jiārén qīngsù zhè bú shì sùkǔ yào wǒ shuō nà jiā wèishì nǐ bié qù wǒ pà tāmen zhǐ xiǎng yào shōushìlǜ · When you're upset, tell your family: that's not moaning. If you ask me, don't go on that channel: I fear all they want is ratings.

ms zhang 我不是要劝阻你做喜欢的事，只是劝告你：上节目的时候，别主持人说什么你都附和。

wǒ bú shì yào quànzǔ nǐ zuò xǐhuan de shì zhǐshì quàngào nǐ shàng jiémù de shíhou bié zhǔchí rén shuō shénme nǐ dōu fùhè · I'm not trying to stop you doing what you love; I'm just advising you: when you're on a show, don't agree with everything the presenter says.

lawyer sun 我也给你一个忠告：别急着回应。先告知那些网站，敦促他们删除盗版。不删，就去法院告。

wǒ yě gěi nǐ yí gè zhōnggào bié jí zhe huíyìng xiān gàozhī nàxiē wǎngzhàn dūncù tāmen shānchú dàobǎn bù shān jiù qù fǎyuàn gào · Here's my advice too: don't rush to respond. First notify those websites and urge them to remove the pirated copies. If they don't, take them to court.

ms zhang 我早就叮嘱过你，上网要小心。你爸爸嘱咐过你的事，你也要记住。

wǒ zǎo jiù dīngzhǔ guo nǐ shàngwǎng yào xiǎoxīn nǐ bàba zhǔfù guo nǐ de shì nǐ yě yào jì zhù · I've told you again and again to be careful online. And remember what your dad told you, too.

little sister 导演天天催促我们表态。他上次还反问我：“你们说怎么办？”

dǎoyǎn tiān tiān cuīcù wǒmen biǎotài tā shàng cì hái fǎnwèn wǒ nǐmen shuō zěnme bàn · The director keeps pushing us to say something. Last time he turned the question back on me: "What do you think we should do?"

little sister 导演坦言他也很紧张。他吩咐我们这几天谁都别接受采访。

dǎoyǎn tǎnyán tā yě hěn jǐnzhāng tā fēnfù wǒmen zhè jǐ tiān shéi dōu bié jiēshòu cǎifǎng · The director admits he's nervous too. He's told us not to give any interviews for now.

anna 我可以帮你转达。孙律师，您提议的会，是明天吗？

wǒ kěyǐ bāng nǐ zhuǎndá Sūnlǜshī nín tíyì de huì shì míngtiān ma · I can pass the message on. Lawyer Sun, is the meeting you suggested tomorrow?

lawyer sun 对。应大家的要求，导演要写一份声明，把事情交代清楚。我会给他指点一下。

duì yìng dàjiā de yāoqiú dǎoyǎn yào xiě yí fèn shēngmíng bǎ shìqing jiāodài qīngchu wǒ huì gěi tā zhǐdiǎn yíxià · Yes. As everyone is asking, the director will write a statement and set out exactly what happened. I'll give him some pointers.

lawyer sun 很多粉丝已经响应导演的号召，不看盗版了。

hěn duō fěnsī yǐjīng xiǎngyìng dǎoyǎn de hàozhào bú kàn dàobǎn le · Lots of fans have already answered the director's call and stopped watching the pirated copies.

dr li 你爷爷当年告诫我：做人要诚实。这件事对年轻人也是一个警示。

nǐ yéye dāngnián gàojiè wǒ zuò rén yào chéngshí zhè jiàn shì duì niánqīng rén yě shì yí gè jǐngshì · Your grandpa once warned me: always be honest. This is a warning to young people too.

little sister 我发誓，我们没有抄任何人。这是我对爷爷的诺言，我不会辜负他的嘱托。

wǒ fāshì wǒmen méiyǒu chāo rènhé rén zhè shì wǒ duì yéye de nuòyán wǒ bú huì gūfù tā de zhǔtuō · I swear we didn't copy anyone. That's my promise to Grandpa, and I won't let him down.

little sister 这部片子就是在诉说爷爷的一生。有他的指引，我什么都不怕。

zhè bù piānzi jiùshì zài sùshuō yéye de yìshēng yǒu tā de zhǐyǐn wǒ shénme dōu bú pà · This film tells the story of Grandpa's life. With him to guide me, I'm not afraid of anything.

ms zhang 好孩子。网上那么多不认识你的人尚且相信你，更何况我们是你的家人呢?

hǎo háizi wǎngshang nàme duō bú rènshi nǐ de rén shàngqiě xiāngxìn nǐ gèng hékuàng wǒmen shì nǐ de jiārén ne · Good girl. Even so many strangers online believe you, so how could we, your family, not?

ms zhang （示意大家安静）听，爷爷在房间里叫你呢。快去聆听老人家的意见吧。

shìyì dàjiā ānjìng tīng yéye zài fángjiān lǐ jiào nǐ ne kuài qù língtīng lǎorenjia de yìjiàn ba · (signalling everyone to be quiet) Listen, Grandpa's calling you from his room. Go and hear what the old man has to say.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the statement

little sister （读）“声明：诸位网友，大家好。近日，网上有人编造事实，歪曲我们的片子，污蔑我们炒作。在此，我们想澄清几件事。

dú shēngmíng zhūwèi wǎngyǒu dàjiā hǎo jìnrì wǎngshang yǒu rén biānzào shìshí wāiqū wǒmen de piānzi wūmiè wǒmen chǎozuò zài cǐ wǒmen xiǎng chéngqīng jǐ jiàn shì · (reading) “Statement: Dear internet users. Recently, people online have made up facts, twisted the story of our film and smeared us with claims of hype. We would like to clarify a few points.

little sister 第一，片子是原创的，故事取材于一位老画家的真实经历。第二，某人自称是导演的老同学，声称片子的主意是他想出来的，这完全是谎言。第三，网上的盗版都不是我们发的，我们已经告知有关网站。

dì yī piānzi shì yuánchuàng de gùshi qǔcái yú yí wèi lǎo huàjiā de zhēnshí jīnglì dì èr mǒu rén zìchēng shì dǎoyǎn de lǎo tóngxué shēngchēng piānzi de zhǔyi shì tā xiǎng chūlái de zhè wánquán shì huǎngyán dì sān wǎngshang de dàobǎn dōu bú shì wǒmen fā de wǒmen yǐjīng gàozhī yǒuguān wǎngzhàn · First, the film is original: the story is based on the real life of an old painter. Second, a person calling himself the director’s old classmate claims the film was his idea: this is entirely untrue. Third, none of the pirated copies online were posted by us, and we have notified the websites concerned.

little sister 此外，有人说我们夸大事实、炫耀自己，我们没有怨言，也不责怪任何人。对给大家带来的麻烦，我们深表歉意。

cǐwài yǒu rén shuō wǒmen kuādà shìshí xuànyào zìjǐ wǒmen méiyǒu yuànyán yě bù zéguài rènhé rén duì gěi dàjiā dài lái de máfan wǒmen shēn biǎo qiànyì · Furthermore, some have said we exaggerate and show off. We have no complaints and blame no one. We sincerely apologise for any trouble caused.

little sister 感谢所有赞扬和批评我们的朋友，敬请大家支持正版。此致，敬礼！”

gǎnxiè suǒyǒu zànyáng hé pīpíng wǒmen de péngyou jìngqǐng dàjiā zhīchí zhèngbǎn cǐzhì jìnglǐ · Thank you to everyone who has praised or criticised us, and we kindly ask you all to support legal copies. Yours faithfully.”

editor lin 写得很好，表述清楚，言辞也不激烈。一份好的声明，尚且要改好几遍，何况第一次写的学生呢？他们做得不错。

xiě de hěn hǎo biǎoshù qīngchu yáncí yě bù jīliè yí fèn hǎo de shēngmíng shàngqiě yào gǎi hǎo jǐ biàn hékuàng dì yī cì xiě de xuéshēng ne tāmen zuò de búcuò · Very well written: clear, and not angry in tone. Even a good statement takes several drafts, let alone one by students writing their first. They’ve done well.

anna 评论已经有两万条了。有人赞美，有人赞叹，也有人吐槽、挖苦，还有人抨击盗版网站。

pínglùn yǐjīng yǒu liǎng wàn tiáo le yǒu rén zànměi yǒu rén zàntàn yě yǒu rén tǔcáo wāku hái yǒu rén pēngjī dàobǎn wǎngzhàn · There are already twenty thousand comments. Some praise it, some marvel, some mock and sneer, and some attack the piracy sites.

anna 也有人恭维你们，把你们吹捧成天才。那个“老同学”还号称自己是幕后高手，到处夸耀，标榜自己。

yě yǒu rén gōngwéi nǐmen bǎ nǐmen chuīpěng chéng tiāncái nàge lǎo tóngxué hái hàochēng zìjǐ shì mùhòu gāoshǒu dàochù kuāyào biāobǎng zìjǐ · Some people flatter you too and hype you up as geniuses. And that “old classmate” called himself the genius behind the scenes, boasting everywhere and blowing his own trumpet.

editor lin 他之前还宣称要告导演呢。现在有人谴责他，有人画漫画讽刺他，还有人嘲弄他、讥笑他。

tā zhīqián hái xuānchēng yào gào dǎoyǎn ne xiànzài yǒu rén qiǎnzé tā yǒu rén huà mànhuà fěngcì tā hái yǒu rén cháonòng tā jīxiào tā · He even announced he was going to sue the director. Now some people condemn him, some draw cartoons satirising him, and others mock and sneer at him.

editor lin 那个吹牛的“老同学”今天也道歉了，承认说的都是谎话，还在辩解说只是开玩笑。

nàge chuīniú de lǎo tóngxué jīntiān yě dàoqiàn le chéngrèn shuō de dōu shì huǎnghuà hái zài biànjiě shuō zhǐshì kāi wánxiào · And that bragging “old classmate” apologised today. He admitted it was all lies, though he’s still making excuses that it was a joke.

little sister 他撒谎不说，还找借口。他的朋友还在网上替他说情呢。

tā sāhuǎng bù shuō hái zhǎo jièkǒu tā de péngyou hái zài wǎngshang tì tā shuōqíng ne · Not only did he lie,

he's making excuses. His friends are even pleading for him online.

little sister 他贬低我们的片子，现在大家都在取笑他，他会被人耻笑很久的。

tā biǎndī wǒmen de piānzi xiànzài dàjiā dōu zài qǔxiào tā tā huì bèi rén chǐxiào hěn jiǔ de · He ran our film down, and now everyone's laughing at him. People will be mocking him for a long time.

little sister 可我不想再奚落他了。导演说，我们不责备谁，也不埋怨谁，发牢骚没有用。这份声明就是向大家表白，也是宣告：片子是我们自己的。

kě wǒ bù xiǎng zài xīluò tā le dǎoyǎn shuō wǒmen bù zébèi shéi yě bù mányuàn shéi fā láosāo méiyǒu yòng zhè fèn shēngmíng jiùshì xiàng dàjiā biǎobái yě shì xuāngào piānzi shì wǒmen zìjǐ de · But I don't want to jeer at him any more. The director says we blame no one and resent no one: grumbling gets you nowhere. The statement is our way of explaining ourselves, and of declaring that the film is our own.

chapter 5 chapter 5: on the radio

editor lin 各位听众晚上好！我们这个节目，听众俗称“睡前聊天”。今天的客人是那部片子里的孙女。你好，久仰大名！
gèwèi tīngzhòng wǎnshang hǎo wǒmen zhège jiémù tīngzhòng súchēng shuì qián liáotiān jīntiān de kèrén shì nà bù piānzi lǐ de sūnnǚ nǐhǎo jiǔyǎng dà míng · Good evening, listeners! Tonight’s guest is the granddaughter from that film. Hello: I’ve heard so much about you!

little sister 不敢当，您过奖了……对不起，我一紧张说话就吞吞吐吐。
bùgǎndāng nín guòjiǎng le duìbuqǐ wǒ yì jǐnzhāng shuōhuà jiù tūntūntǔtǔ · Oh, I don’t deserve that, you flatter me… Sorry, when I’m nervous I stumble over my words.

little sister 我冒昧地说一句，我其实不太会说话。
wǒ màomèi de shuō yí jù wǒ qíshí bú tài huì shuōhuà · If I may say so, I’m really not much of a talker.

editor lin 话是这么说，可在辩论会上你的口才大家都看到了，说话又流畅又犀利。
huà shì zhème shuō kě zài biànlùn huì shàng nǐ de kǒucái dàjiā dōu kàn dào le shuōhuà yòu liúchàng yòu xīlì · That may be so, but everyone saw your skill at the debate: fluent and sharp.

little sister 那次辩论，我们正方先阐述观点，列举了很多例子，反方也一直在反驳。陈教授说辩论要讲理，不要争执。我们争辩了半天，最后陈教授点评说，谁赢他也说不上。
nà cì biànlùn wǒmen zhèng fāng xiān chǎnshù guāndiǎn lièjǔ le hěn duō lìzi fǎn fāng yě yìzhí zài fǎnbó Chénjiàoshòu shuō biànlùn yào jiǎnglǐ búyào zhēngzhí wǒmen zhēngbiàn le bàntiān zuìhòu Chénjiàoshòu diǎnpíng shuō shéi yíng tā yě shuōbushàng · In that debate our side gave lots of examples and the other side kept rebutting them. We argued for ages, and in the end Professor Chen said he couldn’t say who had won.

editor lin 说到口音，你有一点儿北京口音，嗓音也很好听。好，现在有听众来电。
shuō dào kǒuyīn nǐ yǒuyìdiǎnr Běijīng kǒuyīn sǎngyīn yě hěn hǎotīng hǎo xiànzài yǒu tīngzhòng láidiàn · Speaking of accents, you’ve got a bit of a Beijing accent, and a lovely voice. Now, we have a caller.

dr li 我是她爸爸。我平时爱唠叨，她总嫌我啰唆。今天我只想说：我们为你骄傲。
wǒ shì tā bàba wǒ píngshí ài láodao tā zǒng xián wǒ luōsuo jīntiān wǒ zhǐ xiǎng shuō wǒmen wèi nǐ jiāoào · I’m her dad. I tend to nag, and she always says I go on too much. Tonight I just want to say: we’re proud of you.

little sister （小声嘀咕）怎么又是您啊……谢谢爸爸。
xiǎo shēng dígu zěnme yòu shì nín a xièxie bàba · (muttering) Not you again… Thank you, Dad.

editor lin 多么温暖的话语。最后，你有什么座右铭吗？
duōme wēnnuǎn de huàyǔ zuìhòu nǐ yǒu shénme zuòyòumíng ma · What warm words. Finally, do you have a motto?

editor lin 下一位听众口气很冲，一打进来就嚷：现在年轻人的言论太随便！
xià yí wèi tīngzhòng kǒuqì hěn chòng yì dǎ jinlai jiù rǎng xiànzài niánqīng rén de yánlùn tài suíbiàn · The next caller sounds cross: the moment he’s on air he shouts that young people are too careless with what they say!

little sister 他的话我也聆听了。说话要注意字眼，可以委婉，但不能含糊。
tā de huà wǒ yě língtīng le shuōhuà yào zhùyì zìyǎn kěyǐ wěiwǎn dàn bù néng hánhu · I’ve heard him too. You need to choose your words carefully: you can be tactful, but not vague.

editor lin 顺便说一句，我们网站已经统一了口径：只说事实。
shùnbiàn shuō yí jù wǒmen wǎngzhàn yǐjīng tǒngyī le kǒujìng zhǐ shuō shìshí · By the way, our website has agreed a common line: we only report the facts.

little sister 那几天我像在水里呼救，网上的人对我吼。后来我听到家人在呼唤我，好多人在为我们呐喊加油。
nà jǐ tiān wǒ xiàng zài shuǐ lǐ hūjiù wǎngshang de rén duì wǒ hǒu hòulái wǒ tīng dào jiārén zài hūhuàn wǒ hǎoduō rén zài wèi wǒmen nàhǎn jiāyóu · For a few days I felt as if I was calling for help under water, with people online roaring at me. Then I heard my family calling me, and lots of people cheering us on.

little sister 我爷爷常说一句俗语：“身正不怕影子歪。”至于网上的闲话，就让它们过去吧。
wǒ yéye cháng shuō yí jù súyǔ shēn zhèng bú pà yǐngzi wāi zhìyú wǎngshang de xiánhuà jiù ràng tāmen guòqù ba · My grandpa often says: “If you stand straight, you needn’t fear a crooked shadow.” As for the gossip online, let it go.

editor lin 说得很贴切。谢谢你来电台，节目就到这里。大家晚安，多保重！
shuō de hěn tiēqiè xièxie nǐ lái diàntái jiémù jiù dào zhèlǐ dàjiā wǎnān duō bǎozhòng · Well put. Thank you for coming to the radio station: that's all for tonight. Good night, everyone, and take care!

little sister 林编辑，我先告辞了。拜托您明天帮我看看我的讲话。
Línbiānjí wǒ xiān gàocí le bàituō nín míngtiān bāng wǒ kàn kan wǒ de jiǎnghuà · Editor Lin, I'll be off now. Could I ask you to look over my speech tomorrow?

editor lin 没问题。外面路滑，当心一点，留神别摔倒。
méi wèntí wàimiàn lù huá dāngxīn yìdiǎn liúshén bié shuāi dǎo · No problem. The roads are slippery: be careful, and mind you don't fall.

anna （在门外）恭喜你！电影学院来了贺信，请你在开学典礼上致辞，还要宣读一封贺电。对了，刚才又有人打电话来，说想把你们的片子拍成电视剧……
zài mén wài gōngxǐ nǐ diànyǐng xuéyuàn lái le hèxìn qǐng nǐ zài kāixué diǎnlǐ shàng zhìcí hái yào xuāndú yì fēng hèdiàn duì le gāngcái yòu yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà lái shuō xiǎng bǎ nǐmen de piānzi pāi chéng diànshìjù · (outside the door) Congratulations! The film school has sent a letter of congratulations: they want you to speak at the start-of-term ceremony and read out a message too. Oh, and someone just rang again: they want to turn your film into a TV series…

From headline to rumour to statement to radio, you followed a whole media storm in Chinese. You can read the news and the comments now, and answer back.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 111 contracts and rules

Read a contract clause by clause, say what each side may and may not do, and build long sentences with several parallel parts.

Leases, job contracts and the rules on every notice board are written in this language. If you can read them, nobody can tell you “the contract says so” when it doesn’t.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
契约	qìyuē	contract, deed (formal)	这份契约是一百年前订立的。 This deed was drawn up a hundred years ago.
订立	dìnglì	to conclude, draw up (a contract)	双方订立了合作协议。 The two sides concluded a cooperation agreement.
条款	tiáokuǎn	clause, article (of a contract)	签合同以前，每一条条款都要看清楚。 Before you sign a contract, read every clause carefully.
条例	tiáolì	regulations, ordinance	很多城市都有养狗的管理条例。 Many cities have regulations on keeping dogs.
规章	guīzhāng	rules and regulations	公司的规章制度，大家都要遵守。 Everyone has to follow the company’s rules and regulations.
章程	zhāngchéng	charter, articles (of a group)	按照协会的章程，会员每年开一次大会。 Under the association’s charter, members hold a general meeting once a year.
须知	xūzhī	notes for users, what you need to know	考试须知贴在教室门口。 The exam instructions are posted at the classroom door.
公证	gōngzhèng	to notarize	这份合同已经公证过了。 This contract has already been notarized.
生效	shēngxiào	to take effect	新的规定下个月一号起生效。 The new rules take effect from the 1st of next month.
现行	xiànxíng	current, in force	按照现行规定，租户可以提前一个月解约。 Under the current rules, a tenant can end the lease with a month’s notice.
解约	jiěyuē	to cancel a contract	他想提前解约，但是要赔一个月的房租。 He wants to end the contract early, but he has to pay a month’s rent in compensation.
违约	wéiyuē	to break a contract	房东违约，就要赔偿租户的损失。 If the landlord breaks the contract, he has to compensate the tenant.
违章	wéizhāng	to break the rules (esp. traffic)	他违章停车，被罚了两百块。 He parked illegally and was fined two hundred yuan.
违背	wéibèi	to go against, violate	这样做违背了合同的精神。 Doing this goes against the spirit of the contract.
吊销	diàoxiāo	to revoke (a licence)	他多次违章，驾照被吊销了。 He broke the traffic rules again and again,

			and his licence was revoked.
解除	jiěchú	to terminate, remove	双方同意解除合同。 Both sides agreed to terminate the contract.
容许	róngxǔ	to allow, tolerate	这种错误绝不容许再发生。 A mistake like this must never be allowed to happen again.
准许	zhǔnxǔ	to permit (officially)	没有准许，任何人不得进入。 No one may enter without permission.
依法	yīfǎ	according to the law	公民都应当依法交税。 Citizens should pay their taxes according to the law.
遵循	zūnxún	to follow (a principle, a rule)	我们要遵循公平的原则。 We must follow the principle of fairness.
遵照	zūnzhào	to act in accordance with	遵照医生的嘱咐，他每天散步。 On the doctor's orders, he goes for a walk every day.
法则	fǎzé	law, rule (of nature)	大鱼吃小鱼是自然界的法则。 Big fish eat little fish: that's a law of nature.
法制	fǎzhì	legal system	这个国家的法制越来越健全。 The country's legal system is becoming more and more complete.
法治	fǎzhì	the rule of law; to govern by law	法治就是用法律来管理国家。 The rule of law means running a country by law.
立法	lìfǎ	to legislate, make laws	保护野生动物需要立法。 Protecting wildlife needs legislation.
宪法	xiànfǎ	constitution	宪法是国家的根本法。 The constitution is a country's fundamental law.
刑法	xíngfǎ	criminal law	他在大学学的是刑法。 He studied criminal law at university.
刑事	xíngshì	criminal (as opposed to civil)	他要承担刑事责任。 He will bear criminal liability.
民事	mínshì	civil (law)	房东和租户之间的纠纷一般属于民事纠纷。 Disputes between landlords and tenants are usually civil disputes.
法人	fǎrén	legal person (a company etc.)	公司是法人，可以自己签合同。 A company is a legal person and can sign contracts itself.
享有	xiǎngyǒu	to enjoy (rights, a reputation)	每个公民都享有受教育的权利。 Every citizen has the right to education.
行使	xíngshǐ	to exercise (a right, power)	每个人都可以依法行使自己的权利。 Everyone may exercise their rights according to the law.
权益	quányì	rights and interests	消费者的权益受法律保护。 Consumers' rights are protected by law.
人权	rénquán	human rights	尊重人权是法治的基础。 Respect for human rights is the basis of the rule of law.
人身	rénshēn	(one's) person, personal	人身安全比什么都重要。 Your personal safety matters more than anything.

pattern long sentences with several parallel parts

既 A，又 B ； 一方面 C，另一方面 D

Written Chinese likes to stack parallel pairs inside one sentence. Each small pair is linked by 既……又……, 也, 有的……有的…… or 一方面……另一方面……, and a semicolon (；) separates the bigger halves. Read it half by half: each half is a sentence you already know.

合同既规定了房东的权利，也规定了租户的义务；既写清楚了房租，又写清楚了押金。 **hétóng jì guīdìng le fángdōng de quánlì yě guīdìng le zū hù de yìwù jì xiě qīngchu le fángzū yòu xiě qīngchu le yājīn** The contract sets out the landlord's rights and also the tenant's duties; it states the rent, and the deposit too.

有的纠纷属于民事，按民事法律处理；有的属于刑事，按刑法处理。 **yǒude jiūfēn shǔyú mínshì àn mínshì fǎlǜ chǔlǐ yǒude shǔyú xíngshì àn xíngfǎ chǔlǐ** Some disputes are civil and are handled under civil law; others are criminal and are handled under criminal law.

保护老建筑，一方面要靠立法，另一方面要靠大家遵循这些规定。 **bǎohù lǎo jiànzhù yì fāngmiàn yào kào lìfǎ lìng yì fāngmiàn yào kào dàjiā zūnxún zhèxiē guīdìng** Protecting old buildings depends on legislation on the one hand, and on everyone following the rules on the other.

dialogue clause eight

anna 孙律师，房东昨天给我发消息，说他要卖房子，催促我下个月就搬走。
Sūnlǜshī fángdōng zuótiān gěi wǒ fā xiāoxi shuō tā yào mài fángzi cuīcù wǒ xià gè yuè jiù bān zǒu · Lawyer Sun, my landlord messaged me yesterday: he's selling the flat and is pushing me to move out next month.

lawyer sun 别急，我们先看看你们订立的合同。这份契约签了字，双方都要遵守。
bié jí wǒmen xiān kàn kan nǐmen dìnglì de hétóng zhè fèn qìyuē qiān le zì shuāngfāng dōu yào zūnshǒu · Don't worry: let's look at the contract you both signed first. Once a contract is signed, both sides are bound by it.

anna 合同是去年签的，我们还去公证处公证过。
hétóng shì qùnián qiān de wǒmen hái qù gōngzhèng chù gōngzhèng guo · We signed it last year, and we had it notarized at the notary office too.

lawyer sun 那就好。你看第八条条款：合同期内，房东要解除合同，必须提前三个月通知租户，并且赔偿一个月的房租。
nà jiù hǎo nǐ kàn dì bā tiáo tiáokuǎn hétóng qī nèi fángdōng yào jiěchú hétóng bìxū tíqián sān gè yuè tōngzhī zū hù bìngqiě péicháng yí gè yuè de fángzū · Good. Look at clause eight: during the lease, if the landlord wants to end the contract, he must give the tenant three months' notice and pay one month's rent in compensation.

anna 也就是说，他这样做是违约？
yě jiùshì shuō tā zhèyàng zuò shì wéiyuē · So what he's doing is a breach of contract?

lawyer sun 对，这违背了合同。按照现行规定，没有你的准许，他不能进你的房间，更不容许他逼你搬家。
duì zhè wéibèi le hétóng ànzhào xiànxíng guīdìng méiyǒu nǐ de zhǔnxǔ tā bù néng jìn nǐ de fángjiān gèng bù róngxǔ tā bī nǐ bānjiā · Yes: it goes against the contract. Under the current rules he can't enter your flat without your permission, let alone force you to move.

anna 可是他天天给我发消息，唠叨个没完。他说房子是他的，他想怎么样就怎么样。
kěshì tā tiān tiān gěi wǒ fā xiāoxi láodao gè méi wán tā shuō fángzi shì tā de tā xiǎng zěnmeyàng jiù zěnmeyàng · But he messages me every day and goes on and on. He says the flat is his, and he can do what he likes.

lawyer sun 房子是他的，合同也是他签的。法治社会，大家都要遵照合同办事，这是市场的基本法则。
fángzi shì tā de hétóng yě shì tā qiān de fǎzhì shèhuì dàjiā dōu yào zūnzhào hétóng bànshì zhè shì shìchǎng de jīběn fǎzé · The flat is his, but so is the signature on the contract. Under the rule of law, everyone has to act according to their contracts: that is a basic law of the market.

anna 我是外国人，在中国也受法律保护吗？
wǒ shì wàiguó rén zài Zhōngguó yě shòu fǎlǜ bǎohù ma · I'm a foreigner. Am I protected by the law in China too?

lawyer sun 当然。中国的宪法尊重和保障人权，法律保护每个人的合法权益，在中国生活的外国人也一样。这些年，法制越来越健全了。
dāngrán Zhōngguó de xiànfǎ zūnzhòng hé bǎozhàng rénquán fǎlǜ bǎohù měi gè rén de héfǎ quányì zài Zhōngguó shēnghuó de wàiguó rén yě yíyàng zhèxiē nián fǎzhì yuè lái yuè jiànquán le · Of course. China's constitution respects and protects human rights, and the law protects everyone's legal rights and interests, including foreigners living in China. The legal system has become much more complete in recent years.

lawyer sun 你依法享有住下去的权利，完全可以行使这个权利，拒绝提前搬走。
nǐ yīfǎ xiǎngyǒu zhù xiaqu de quánlì wánquán kěyǐ xíngshǐ zhège quánlì jùjué tíqián bān zǒu · By law you have the right to stay, and you can perfectly well exercise that right and refuse to leave early.

anna 老实说，我以前觉得租房子只是件小事。
lǎoshi shuō wǒ yǐqián juéde zū fángzi zhǐshì jiàn xiǎo shì · To be honest, I used to think renting a flat was no big deal.

lawyer sun 很多人都这么想。其实从物业公司的规章、各种协会的章程，到楼门口的“住户须知”，处处都是规则。北京还有专门管理租房子的条例。
hěn duō rén dōu zhème xiǎng qíshí cóng wùyè gōngsī de guīzhāng gèzhǒng xiéhuì de zhāngchéng dào lóu ménkǒu de zhùhù xūzhī chùchù dōu shì guīzé Běijīng hái yǒu zhuānmén guǎnlǐ zū fángzi de tiáolì · Lots of

people think that. In fact there are rules everywhere: the management company's regulations, the charters of all kinds of associations, the "Notes for residents" at the door. Beijing even has its own regulations on renting.

anna 我们楼的须知上写着：楼道里不能放东西，违章停车要罚款。
wǒmen lóu de xūzhī shàng xiě zhe lóudào lǐ bù néng fàng dōngxi wéizhāng tíngchē yào fákuǎn · The notes in our building say: nothing in the corridors, and a fine for parking where you shouldn't.

lawyer sun 规则对谁都一样：司机违章太多，驾照会被吊销；房东违约，也要承担责任。
guīzé duì shéi dōu yíyàng sījī wéizhāng tài duō jiàzhào huì bèi diàoxiāo fángdōng wéiyuē yě yào chéngdān zérèn · Rules are the same for everyone: a driver who breaks the rules too often has his licence revoked, and a landlord who breaks a contract has to take responsibility.

anna 那他要是把我的东西搬出去呢?
nà tā yàoshi bǎ wǒ de dōngxi bān chuqu ne · And what if he moves my things out?

lawyer sun 那就关系到你的人身和财产安全了，他不敢。如果房子是公司的，公司是法人，要由公司负责；好在你的房东是个人，事情简单一些。
nà jiù guānxì dào nǐ de rénshēn hé cáichǎn ānquán le tā bù gǎn rúguǒ fángzi shì gōngsī de gōngsī shì fǎrén yào yóu gōngsī fùzé hǎozài nǐ de fángdōng shì gèrén shìqing jiǎndān yìxiē · That would be a matter of your personal safety and your property: he won't dare. If the flat belonged to a company, the company would be the legal person and answer for it; luckily your landlord is a private individual, so it's simpler.

lawyer sun 退一步说，就算他真的要卖房子，也得先按合同赔偿你，再给你足够的时间找房子。
tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn tā zhēn de yào mài fángzi yě děi xiān àn hétóng péicháng nǐ zài gěi nǐ zúgòu de shíjiān zhǎo fángzi · Even supposing he really does sell, he still has to compensate you under the contract first and give you enough time to find somewhere else.

anna 他要是撒谎，说合同上没有这一条呢?
tā yàoshi sāhuǎng shuō hétóng shàng méiyǒu zhè yì tiáo ne · What if he lies and says there's no such clause in the contract?

lawyer sun 合同在你手里，写得清清楚楚，他找什么借口都没用。
hétóng zài nǐ shǒu lǐ xiě de qīngqīngchuchu tā zhǎo shénme jièkǒu dōu méi yòng · The contract is in your hands and it's all there in writing: no excuse he comes up with will help him.

anna 那我现在该怎么办?
nà wǒ xiànzài gāi zěnme bàn · So what should I do now?

lawyer sun 一方面，你给他回个消息，把第八条拍下来发给他；另一方面，把你们的聊天记录都保存好。
yì fāngmiàn nǐ gěi tā huí gè xiāoxi bǎ dì bā tiáo pāi xialai fā gěi tā lìng yì fāngmiàn bǎ nǐmen de liáotiān jìlù dōu bǎocún hǎo · On the one hand, reply to him and send him a photo of clause eight; on the other, keep all your chat messages.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

御
yù
resist

疊
dié
to fold; to pile up

僵
jiāng
stiff, numb; deadlocked

弊 bì harm, abuse													

good to know · 法制 (the legal system) and 法治 (the rule of law) are both fǎzhì. 制 is the system; 治 is governing by it. Contracts are full of 不得 “may not”, 须 “must” and 应当 “shall”: the written forms of 不能, 必须 and 应该.

Clauses, rules and rights: you can now sit with a Chinese contract and find the line that protects you. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 112 in court

Follow a civil hearing from the public seats: who sues whom, what they ask for, the evidence, the ruling and the appeal, and build long sentences with a turn inside.

Court news, legal dramas and any dispute of your own use these words. And a turn inside a long sentence (虽然……也……，但是……) is how careful Chinese weighs both sides.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
法庭	fǎtíng	court, courtroom	在法庭上，双方都很紧张。 In court, both sides were very nervous.
开庭	kāitíng	to open a court session	这个官司下周一开庭。 The case will be heard next Monday.
审	shěn	to try (a case); to examine	这个官司审了三天。 The case was tried for three days.
审理	shěnlǐ	to hear (a case)	法院正在审理这起纠纷。 The court is hearing the dispute.
审判	shěnpàn	to try, bring to justice	他终于受到了法律的审判。 He was finally brought to justice.
判	pàn	to judge, sentence	法官判他赔对方两万块。 The judge ordered him to pay the other side twenty thousand yuan.
判处	pànchǔ	to sentence (to)	他被判处罚款五千元。 He was sentenced to a fine of five thousand yuan.
判决	pànjué	to rule; judgment	法院判决房东退还押金。 The court ruled that the landlord must return the deposit.
裁定	cáidìng	to rule (on a procedural point)	法院裁定不受理这个诉讼。 The court ruled not to accept the lawsuit.
裁决	cáijué	to adjudicate; ruling	仲裁的裁决对双方都有效。 The arbitration ruling is binding on both sides.
驳回	bóhuí	to reject (a claim, an appeal)	法院驳回了他的请求。 The court rejected his claim.
上诉	shàngsù	to appeal (to a higher court)	他不服判决，决定上诉。 He doesn't accept the judgment and has decided to appeal.
起诉	qǐsù	to sue, prosecute	她把那家公司起诉到了法院。 She took the company to court.
诉讼	sùsòng	lawsuit, litigation	诉讼要花很多时间和钱。 Lawsuits take a lot of time and money.
官司	guānsi	lawsuit (spoken)	为了这么点钱打官司，不值得。 It's not worth going to court over so little money.
原告	yuángào	plaintiff	原告要求被告赔偿损失。 The plaintiff demands that the defendant pay compensation.

被告	bèigào	defendant	被告不同意原告的说法。 The defendant disagrees with the plaintiff's account.
当事人	dāngshìrén	party (to a case), person concerned	律师要先听听当事人怎么说。 A lawyer first listens to what the client has to say.
辩护	biànhù	to defend (in court)	律师为被告辩护。 The lawyer defends the accused.
证人	zhèngrén	witness	那天只有一个证人。 There was only one witness that day.
做证	zuòzhèng	to testify, give evidence	邻居愿意为她做证。 Her neighbour is willing to testify for her.
物证	wùzhèng	material evidence	光有证人不够，还要有物证。 A witness isn't enough: you need physical evidence too.
指控	zhǐkòng	to accuse, charge	他被指控偷了公司的资料。 He is accused of stealing company files.
控告	kònggào	to accuse, sue (formally)	她控告这家公司欺骗消费者。 She has taken the company to court for deceiving consumers.
申诉	shēnsù	to appeal, lodge a complaint	对处理结果不满意，可以申诉。 If you're unhappy with the decision, you can appeal.
诉求	sùqiú	demand, appeal	我们的诉求很简单：退钱。 Our demand is simple: give us our money back.
诉诸	sùzhū	to resort to	能商量解决的事，就不必诉诸法律。 If something can be settled by talking, there's no need to go to law.
索赔	suǒpéi	to claim damages	快递丢了，你可以向快递公司索赔。 If a parcel is lost, you can claim compensation from the delivery company.
仲裁	zhòngcái	to arbitrate; arbitration	劳动纠纷可以先申请仲裁。 In a labour dispute you can apply for arbitration first.
调解	tiáojiě	to mediate	经过调解，双方达成了协议。 After mediation, the two sides reached an agreement.
司法	sīfǎ	judicial, the justice system	司法一定要公正。 Justice must be fair.
检察	jiǎnchá	to prosecute (public prosecution)	她大学毕业后当了检察官。 After university she became a public prosecutor.
正当	zhèngdàng	proper, legitimate	这是正当的要求。 This is a legitimate request.
冤	yuān	an injustice; unfair, not worth it	我白等了两个小时，真冤！ I waited two hours for nothing: what a waste!
冤枉	yuānwang	to wrong (someone); unjustly treated	不是我干的，你冤枉我了！ I didn't do it: you've got me wrong!

pattern long sentences with a turn inside

虽然 A，也 B | 但是 / 然而 / 可是 | C，所以 D

A long sentence can carry a pair on each side of a big turn. First half: what speaks for one side (often 虽然……也……). Then the turn word, 但是, 可是 or written 然而. Then the other side, sometimes with its own result (所以, 因此). Find the turn word first, and the sentence falls into two halves.

原告虽然有证人，也有聊天记录，但是没有物证，所以法院只支持了一半的请求。
yuángào suīrán yǒu zhèngrén yě yǒu liáotiān jìlù dànshì méiyǒu wùzhèng suǒyǐ fǎyuàn zhǐ zhīchí le yíbàn de qǐngqiú
The plaintiff had a witness and chat records too, but no physical evidence, so the court upheld only half of his claim.

打官司能解决问题，然而诉讼时间长、花钱多，因此很多人愿意先调解。 **dǎ guānsi néng jiějué wèntí ránér sùsòng shíjiān cháng huā qián duō yīncǐ hěn duō rén yuànyì xiān tiáojiě** Going to court can settle a problem; but lawsuits take a long time and cost a lot, so many people prefer mediation first.

被告因工作忙而没有来，可是他的律师来了，并且为他辩护得很好。 **bèigào yīn gōngzuò máng ér méiyǒu lái kěshì tā de lǜshī lái le bìngqiě wèi tā biànhù de hěn hǎo** The defendant didn't come because he was busy at work, but his lawyer came and defended him very well.

dialogue a morning in court

lawyer sun 今天这个官司跟你的情况差不多，你好好听一听。审判是公开的，谁都可以来。
jīntiān zhège guānsi gēn nǐ de qíngkuàng chàbuduō nǐ hǎohǎo tīng yi ting shěnpàn shì gōngkāi de shéi dōu kěyǐ lái · Today's case is a lot like yours: listen carefully. Trials are public: anyone can come.

anna 法庭里好安静啊。几点开庭?
fǎtíng lǐ hǎo ānjìng a jǐ diǎn kāitíng · It's so quiet in the courtroom. What time does the hearing start?

lawyer sun 九点。法院今天审理的是一起租房子的纠纷：原告是租户，被告是房东，原告上个月起诉的。
jiǔ diǎn fǎyuàn jīntiān shěnlǐ de shì yì qǐ zū fángzi de jiūfēn yuángào shì zū hù bèigào shì fángdōng yuángào shàng gè yuè qǐsù de · Nine. The court is hearing a rental dispute today: the plaintiff is the tenant and the defendant is the landlord. The tenant sued last month.

anna 原告的诉求是什么?
yuángào de sùqiú shì shénme · What is the plaintiff asking for?

lawyer sun 退还押金，再索赔两千块。他指控房东没有理由就扣下了押金，违背了合同，本来还想控告房东欺骗他。
tuìhuán yājīn zài suǒpéi liǎngqiān kuài tā zhǐkòng fángdōng méiyǒu lǐyóu jiù kòu xià le yājīn wéibèi le hétóng běnlái hái xiǎng kònggào fángdōng qīpiàn tā · His deposit back, plus two thousand yuan in damages. He accuses the landlord of keeping the deposit for no reason, against the contract, and he even wanted to sue him for deceit.

anna 被告请律师了吗?
bèigào qǐng lǜshī le ma · Has the defendant got a lawyer?

lawyer sun 请了。你听，被告的律师正在为他辩护，说房子被弄坏了，扣押金是正当的，没有违约。
qǐng le nǐ tīng bèigào de lǜshī zhèngzài wèi tā biànhù shuō fángzi bèi nòng huài le kòu yājīn shì zhèngdàng de méiyǒu wéiyuē · Yes. Listen: his lawyer is defending him now, saying the flat was damaged, so keeping the deposit was justified and no breach of contract.

anna 原告说他冤枉，墙上的洞是以前就有的。
yuángào shuō tā yuānwang qiáng shàng de dòng shì yǐqián jiù yǒude · The plaintiff says that's unfair: the hole in the wall was there before.

lawyer sun 楼下的邻居是证人，愿意为他做证。可是光有证人不够，还要有物证，比如搬进去那天拍的照片。
lóu xià de línjū shì zhèngrén yuànyì wèi tā zuòzhèng kěshì guāng yǒu zhèngrén búgòu hái yào yǒu wùzhèng bǐrú bān jinqu nà tiān pāi de zhàopiàn · His downstairs neighbour is a witness and is willing to testify for him. But a witness isn't enough: he needs physical evidence too, like photos taken the day he moved in.

anna 法官会不会因同情租户而判他赢?
fǎguān huì bu huì yīn tóngqíng zū hù ér pàn tā yíng · Could the judge rule for the tenant because he feels sorry for him?

lawyer sun 不会。司法要公正，法官只看证据。要是材料不全，法院开庭以前就可以裁定不受理。
bú huì sīfǎ yào gōngzhèng fǎguān zhǐ kàn zhèngjù yàoshi cáiliào bù quán fǎyuàn kāitíng yǐqián jiù kěyǐ cáidìng bú shòulǐ · No. Justice must be fair: the judge looks only at the evidence. If the papers aren't complete, the court can even rule not to accept the case before the hearing.

anna 已经审了两个小时了……法官在说什么?
yǐjīng shěn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí le fǎguān zài shuō shénme · They've been at it for two hours… What's the judge saying?

lawyer sun 宣布判决了：房东退还一半押金；索赔的两千块，法院驳回了。
xuānbù pànjué le fángdōng tuìhuán yíbàn yājīn suǒpéi de liǎngqiān kuài fǎyuàn bóhuí le · He's giving the judgment: the landlord returns half the deposit; the claim for two thousand is rejected.

anna 原告虽然有证人，也有聊天记录，但是没有照片，所以只拿回一半。那他太冤了！
yuángào suīrán yǒu zhèngrén yě yǒu liáotiān jìlù dànshì méiyǒu zhàopiàn suǒyǐ zhǐ ná huí yíbàn nà tā tài yuān le · So the plaintiff had a witness and chat records, but no photos, so he only gets half back. That's so unfair on him!

lawyer sun 他可以上诉。如果上一级法院也驳回，判决就生效了；以后发现新证据，还可以申诉。诉讼费一般由输的一方出。
tā kěyǐ shàngsù rúguǒ shàng yì jí fǎyuàn yě bóhuí pànjué jiù shēngxiào le yǐhòu fāxiàn xīn zhèngjù hái kěyǐ shēnsù sùsòng fèi yìbān yóu shū de yì fāng chū · He can appeal. If the higher court rejects it too, the judgment stands; if new evidence turns up later, he can still petition. Court fees are usually paid by the losing side.

anna 隔壁法庭为什么有那么多人？
gébì fǎtíng wèi shénme yǒu nàme duō rén · Why are there so many people in the courtroom next door?

lawyer sun 那是一个刑事诉讼。刑事诉讼由检察官代表国家起诉，被告可能被判处一年；民事纠纷呢，是当事人自己起诉。
nà shì yí gè xíngshì sùsòng xíngshì sùsòng yóu jiǎnchá guān dàibiǎo guójiā qǐsù bèigào kěnéng bèi pànchǔ yì nián mínshì jiūfēn ne shì dāngshìrén zìjǐ qǐsù · That's a criminal case. In a criminal case a prosecutor charges the accused on behalf of the state, and he could be sentenced to a year. In a civil dispute, the parties themselves bring the case.

anna 打官司一定要来法院吗？
dǎ guānsi yídìng yào lái fǎyuàn ma · Do you have to come to court to settle a dispute?

lawyer sun 不一定。很多纠纷可以先调解；劳动纠纷还可以申请仲裁，仲裁的裁决双方都要执行。能商量解决的，就不必马上诉诸法律。
bù yídìng hěn duō jiūfēn kěyǐ xiān tiáojiě láodòng jiūfēn hái kěyǐ shēnqǐng zhòngcái zhòngcái de cáijué shuāngfāng dōu yào zhíxíng néng shāngliang jiějué de jiù búbì mǎshàng sùzhū fǎlǜ · Not necessarily. Many disputes can be mediated first, and a labour dispute can go to arbitration, whose ruling both sides must follow. If you can settle something by talking, there's no need to go straight to the law.

anna 那我先跟房东好好谈谈。我们签了合同，他应该讲理。
nà wǒ xiān gēn fángdōng hǎohǎo tán tan wǒmen qiān le hétóng tā yīnggāi jiǎnglǐ · Then I'll have a proper talk with my landlord first. We signed a contract: he ought to be reasonable.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

卸
xiè
to unload; remove

挪
nuó
to move, shift (a little)

拣
jiǎn
to pick up; pick out

搀
chān
to help (someone) by the arm

good to know · 打官司 is the everyday way to say “go to court”; 起诉 and 诉讼 are what lawyers and the news say. Courtroom roles: 原告 plaintiff, 被告 defendant, 当事人 the parties, 证人 witness, 律师 lawyer, 法官 judge, 检察官 prosecutor.

Plaintiff, defendant, evidence, ruling, appeal: you can now follow a Chinese court case from the public seats to the final word.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 113 crime and the police

Talk about a crime and the police work that follows, from reporting it to the arrest, and say "even ..., let alone ..." with 尚且……何况.

Local news, detective novels and crime dramas are some of the most-read and most-watched things in Chinese. And if anything is ever stolen from you, you will need to report it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
犯罪	fànzuì	to commit a crime	犯罪就要受到法律的惩罚。 Commit a crime and you will be punished by law.
罪犯	zuìfàn	criminal	警察终于抓住了罪犯。 The police finally caught the criminal.
歹徒	dǎitú	thug, criminal	歹徒已经被警察抓住了。 The thug has been caught by the police.
凶手	xiōngshǒu	murderer, culprit	这本侦探小说到最后才知道谁是凶手。 In this detective novel you only find out who did it at the very end.
杀手	shāshǒu	killer (also figurative)	高血压被称为“沉默的杀手”。 High blood pressure is called “the silent killer”.
杀害	shāhài	to murder, kill	小说里，侦探最后查明了是谁杀害了老人。 In the novel, the detective finally works out who killed the old man.
谋害	móuhài	to plot to kill	小说里，侦探发现老人是被人谋害的。 In the novel, the detective finds out the old man was murdered.
尸体	shītǐ	corpse, (dead) body	很多侦探小说都从发现一个尸体开始。 Many detective novels start with the discovery of a body.
案件	ànjiàn	(legal) case	这起案件已经查清楚了。 This case has been cleared up.
报案	bàoàn	to report (a crime) to the police	钱包丢了，要马上|去派出所报案。 If you lose your wallet, report it at the police station straight away.
立案	lìàn	to open a case	警察已经立案调查了。 The police have opened an investigation.
破案	pòàn	to solve a case	警察只用三天就破案了。 The police solved the case in just three days.
侦查	zhēnchá	to investigate (a crime)	警察正在侦查这起案件。 The police are investigating the case.
侦探	zhēntàn	detective; to detect	小时候我最喜欢看侦探小说。 As a child I loved detective stories.
嫌疑	xiányí	suspicion	他的嫌疑最大。 He is the main suspect.
涉嫌	shèxián	to be suspected of	这个人涉嫌偷东西，被警察带走了。 The man is suspected of theft and has been taken away by the police.

通缉	tōngjī	to put on the wanted list	警察正在通缉这个罪犯。 The police have put the criminal on the wanted list.
逮	dǎi	to catch (spoken)	小偷被警察逮住了。 The thief was caught by the police.
逮捕	dàibǔ	to arrest	警察依法逮捕了罪犯。 The police arrested the criminal according to the law.
拘留	jūliú	to detain	他因为打架被拘留了十天。 He was detained for ten days for fighting.
扣留	kòuliú	to detain, hold	他的行李被海关扣留了。 His luggage was held by customs.
扣押	kòuyā	to seize, hold	法院扣押了公司的财产。 The court seized the company's assets.
囚犯	qiúfàn	prisoner	囚犯在监狱里也可以学习。 Prisoners can study in prison too.
监狱	jiānyù	prison	他在监狱里读了很多书。 He read a lot of books in prison.
自首	zìshǒu	to turn oneself in	罪犯最后去派出所自首了。 The criminal finally gave himself up at the police station.
巡逻	xúnluó	to patrol	晚上，警察在小区里巡逻。 At night the police patrol the estate.
治安	zhìān	public order, public safety	这里的治安很好，晚上出门也很安全。 Public safety is good here: it's safe to go out at night.
执法	zhífǎ	to enforce the law	执法人员要文明执法。 Law enforcers must enforce the law politely.
搜查	sōuchá	to search (a place)	警察搜查了他的房间。 The police searched his room.
查获	cháhuò	to seize, track down	海关查获了一批假{jia3}手表。 Customs seized a batch of fake watches.
查处	cháchǔ	to investigate and punish	有关部门查处了几家违法的饭馆。 The authorities investigated and punished several restaurants that broke the law.
查明	chámíng	to find out, establish (facts)	事故的原因已经查明了。 The cause of the accident has been established.
追踪	zhuīzōng	to track, trace	警察通过手机信号追踪小偷。 The police tracked the thief through his phone signal.
踪迹	zōngjì	trace, track	森林里发现了老虎的踪迹。 Tiger tracks have been found in the forest.
指纹	zhǐwén	fingerprint	现在很多手机可以用指纹开锁。 Many phones now unlock with a fingerprint.

pattern 尚且……何况: even …, let alone …

A **尚且** **…，** **（更）何况** **B（呢）？**

Put the stronger, more likely case first with 尚且 “even”, then the weaker case after 何况 “let alone, all the more so”. If even A can’t, B surely can’t; if even A must, B all the more must. 更何况 is a little stronger, and the sentence often ends as a question with 呢.

专业的警察破一起案件尚且要几个月，何况一个普通人呢？ **zhuānyè de jǐngchá pò yì qǐ ànjiàn shàngqiě yào jǐ gè yuè hékuàng yí gè pǔtōng rén ne** Even professional police take months to solve a case: what chance does an ordinary person have?

大人尚且看不懂这份合同，更何况孩子？ **dàren shàngqiě kàn bu dǒng zhè fèn hétóng gèng hékuàng háizi** Even adults can’t make sense of this contract, let alone children.

丢一辆自行车尚且要报案，何况丢了电脑？ **diū yí liàng zìxíngchē shàngqiě yào bàoàn hékuàng diū le diànnǎo** You report a stolen bike, so all the more a stolen computer.

dialogue a burglary on the third floor

editor lin 安娜，听说你们楼上周有人家里被偷了？
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐmen lóu shàng zhōu yǒu rén jiā lǐ bèi tōu le · Anna, I hear someone in your building was burgled last week?

anna 对，三楼的邻居出差回来，发现电脑不见了，马上去派出所报案。
duì sān lóu de línjū chūchāi huilai fāxiàn diànnǎo bújiàn le mǎshàng qù pàichūsuǒ bàoàn · Yes: my neighbour on the third floor came back from a business trip, found his computer gone, and reported it at the police station straight away.

editor lin 警察立案了吗？
jǐngchá lìàn le ma · Did the police open a case?

anna 立案了。警察搜查了房间，在门上找到了指纹，又通过电梯里的摄像头追踪到一个人，他的嫌疑最大。
lìàn le jǐngchá sōuchá le fángjiān zài mén shàng zhǎo dào le zhǐwén yòu tōngguò diàntī lǐ de shèxiàngtóu zhuīzōng dào yí gè rén tā de xiányí zuì dà · They did. They searched the flat, found fingerprints on the door, and traced someone through the camera in the lift: he's the main suspect.

little sister 跟侦探小说一样！侦探先看踪迹，再查指纹，最后找到凶手。
gēn zhēntàn xiǎoshuō yíyàng zhēntàn xiān kàn zōngjì zài chá zhǐwén zuìhòu zhǎo dào xiōngshǒu · Just like a detective novel! The detective looks at the tracks, then the fingerprints, and in the end finds the culprit.

editor lin 后来破案了吗？
hòulái pòàn le ma · So was the case solved?

anna 破了！警察还没来得及去逮他，他就自己去派出所自首了。原来他是个老罪犯，警察早就在通缉他。
pò le jǐngchá hái méi láidejí qù dǎi tā tā jiù zìjǐ qù pàichūsuǒ zìshǒu le yuánlái tā shì gè lǎo zuìfàn jǐngchá zǎo jiù zài tōngjī tā · It was! Before the police could go and catch him, he turned himself in. It turns out he's an old offender: the police had been after him for a long time.

editor lin 自首可以从轻处理。他现在被拘留了吧？
zìshǒu kěyǐ cóng qīng chǔlǐ tā xiànzài bèi jūliú le ba · Turning yourself in can mean a lighter punishment. Is he being held now?

anna 已经被逮捕了。警察在他家里查获了十几台电脑，已经查明都是偷来的。
yǐjīng bèi dàibǔ le jǐngchá zài tā jiā lǐ cháhuò le shí jǐ tái diànnǎo yǐjīng chámíng dōu shì tōu lái de · He's been arrested. The police found over ten computers at his home and have established that they were all stolen.

little sister 那三楼的邻居是当事人，要去法庭做证吗？
nà sān lóu de línjū shì dāngshìrén yào qù fǎtíng zuòzhèng ma · So the neighbour on the third floor is a party to the case: will he have to testify in court?

anna 要去。法院下个月开庭审判。
yào qù fǎyuàn xià gè yuè kāitíng shěnpàn · Yes. The court tries the case next month.

editor lin 我们网站正在写一组报道，讲社区警察的工作。派出所的人说，这一带的治安比十年前好多了。
wǒmen wǎngzhàn zhèngzài xiě yì zǔ bàodào jiǎng shèqū jǐngchá de gōngzuò pàichūsuǒ de rén shuō zhè yídài de zhìān bǐ shí nián qián hǎo duō le · Our website is doing a series about neighbourhood police work. The people at the station say public safety round here is much better than ten years ago.

little sister 因为警察天天巡逻吗？
yīnwèi jǐngchá tiān tiān xúnluó ma · Because the police patrol every day?

editor lin 不光是巡逻，还有严格执法。上个月，他们查处了几家违法的手机店，扣押了一批来路不清楚的手机。有一个老板涉嫌卖偷来的手机，护照也被扣留了。有个歹徒在地铁站抢包，被巡逻的警察当场逮住了。
bùguāng shì xúnluó hái yǒu yángé zhífǎ shàng gè yuè tāmen cháchǔ le jǐ jiā wéifǎ de shǒujī diàn kòuyā le yì pī lái lù bù qīngchu de shǒujī yǒu yí gè lǎobǎn shèxián mài tōu lái de shǒujī hùzhào yě bèi kòuliú le yǒu gè dǎitú zài dìtiě zhàn qiǎng bāo bèi xúnluó de jǐngchá dāngchǎng dǎi zhù le · Not just patrols: strict law enforcement

too. Last month they cracked down on several phone shops breaking the law, seized a batch of phones of unknown origin. One shop owner is suspected of selling stolen phones, and his passport has been held. And a thug who snatched a bag at the metro station was caught on the spot by officers on patrol.

anna 林编辑，你知道得真多，真像个侦探！
Línbiānjí nǐ zhīdào de zhēn duō zhēn xiàng gè zhēntàn · Editor Lin, you know so much: you're a real detective!

editor lin 说到哪儿去了，我只是爱问问题。我还去监狱采访过，那里的囚犯可以学技术，出来以后好找工作。
shuō dào nǎr qù le wǒ zhǐshì ài wèn wèntí wǒ hái qù jiānyù cǎifǎng guo nàlǐ de qiúfàn kěyǐ xué jìshù chūlái yǐhòu hǎo zhǎo gōngzuò · Oh, not at all: I just like asking questions. I've even interviewed people in a prison: the prisoners can learn a trade there, so it's easier to find work when they get out.

little sister 我最近在看一本侦探小说：一个老人在家里被谋害了，第一章就发现了尸体。
wǒ zuìjìn zài kàn yì běn zhēntàn xiǎoshuō yí gè lǎorén zài jiā lǐ bèi móuhài le dì yī zhāng jiù fāxiàn le shītǐ · I'm reading a detective novel at the moment: an old man is murdered at home, and the body is found in chapter one.

anna 别讲细节，不然我晚上睡不着！
bié jiǎng xìjié bùrán wǒ wǎnshang shuì bu zháo · No details, or I won't sleep tonight!

little sister 不吓人！侦探一个人侦查，最后发现，老人不是被那个神秘的杀手杀害的，凶手是他的朋友。
bú xiàrén zhēntàn yí gè rén zhēnchá zuìhòu fāxiàn lǎorén bú shì bèi nàge shénmì de shāshǒu shāhài de xiōngshǒu shì tā de péngyou · It's not scary! The detective investigates on his own, and in the end finds out the old man wasn't killed by the mysterious hired killer at all: the culprit was his friend.

editor lin 小说里的侦探什么都会。现实中，专业的警察破一起案件尚且要几个月，何况一个人呢？
xiǎoshuō lǐ de zhēntàn shénme dōu huì xiànshí zhōng zhuānyè de jǐngchá pò yì qǐ ànjiàn shàngqiě yào jǐ gè yuè hékuàng yí gè rén ne · Detectives in novels can do anything. In real life, even professional police take months to solve a case, let alone one person on their own.

little sister 所以我只在小说里当侦探！
suǒyǐ wǒ zhǐ zài xiǎoshuō lǐ dāng zhēntàn · That's why I only play detective in novels!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

撵
niǎn
to drive away, chase off

勾
gōu
to tick; hook; draw (an outline)

拱
gǒng
to push with the snout or body; arch

巡
xún
patrol

good to know · 罪犯 is a criminal; 犯罪 is to commit a crime. The same two characters, swapped. 逮 is read dǎi in speech (逮住 to catch), but dài in the written word 逮捕 (to arrest).

From 报案 to 破案: you can now follow a crime story in Chinese, in the news or in a novel.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 114 theft and fraud

Recognise the classic scams and talk about theft and robbery, in the news or in films, and add "not to mention …" with 更不用说……了.

Phone and online scams are a daily topic in China: police posters, apps and news reports warn about them all the time. Knowing the words keeps you and your family safe.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
盗	dào	to steal	他的账号被盗了。 His account was hacked.
盗窃	dàoqiè	to steal (formal)	他因为盗窃被判了一年。 He got a year for theft.
贼	zéi	thief; sly	昨天晚上，邻居家进贼了！ Our neighbours had a break-in last night!
强盗	qiángdào	robber, bandit	故事里，强盗抢走了商人的钱。 In the story, robbers take the merchant's money.
抢劫	qiǎngjié	to rob	那家银行被抢劫的新闻上了头条。 The news of the bank robbery made the headlines.
抢夺	qiǎngduó	to snatch, seize	有人在街上抢夺行人的手机。 Someone has been snatching people's phones in the street.
劫	jié	to rob; a disaster	他晚上在小路上被人劫了。 He was robbed on a back street at night.
劫持	jiéchí	to hijack	电影里，一架飞机被劫持了。 In the film, a plane is hijacked.
挟持	xiéchí	to hold (someone) under duress	电影里，坏人挟持了一个孩子。 In the film, the villain takes a child hostage.
绑架	bǎngjià	to kidnap	这部电影讲的是一个孩子被绑架的故事。 The film is about a child who is kidnapped.
人质	rénzhì	hostage	最后，人质都被救出来了。 In the end, all the hostages were rescued.
赎	shú	to redeem, ransom	电影里，家人准备了钱去赎人。 In the film, the family gets the money together to pay the ransom.
敲诈	qiāozhà	to blackmail, extort	有人用他的照片敲诈他。 Someone is blackmailing him with his photos.
讹诈	ézhà	to extort (on a false pretext)	他故意摔倒，想讹诈司机。 He fell over on purpose to extort money from the driver.
欺诈	qīzhà	fraud; to defraud	这家公司因为欺诈消费者被罚款。 The company was fined for defrauding consumers.
诈骗	zhàpiàn	to swindle, scam	接到陌生电话要小心诈骗。 Watch out for scams when a stranger calls.

受骗	shòupiàn	to be cheated, be taken in	很多老人在网上受骗。 Many elderly people get cheated online.
冒充	màochōng	to pose as	骗子冒充警察打电话。 The scammer phones pretending to be the police.
假冒	jiǎmào	to counterfeit, fake	这些都是假冒的名牌包。 These are all fake designer bags.
伪造	wěizào	to forge	他伪造了一份合同。 He forged a contract.
造假	zàojiǎ	to fake, falsify	数据造假是很严重的问题。 Faking data is a very serious matter.
走私	zǒusī	to smuggle	海关查获了一批走私的手表。 Customs seized a batch of smuggled watches.
毒品	dúpǐn	illegal drugs	毒品危害健康，一定要远离。 Drugs damage your health: stay well away.
吸毒	xīdú	to take drugs	学校请警察来讲吸毒的危害。 The school invited the police to talk about the dangers of drugs.
赌博	dǔbó	to gamble	赌博让他失去了一切。 Gambling cost him everything.
流氓	liúmáng	hooligan, lout	这个人说话像个流氓。 He talks like a thug.
团伙	tuánhuǒ	gang	警察抓住了一个诈骗团伙。 The police caught a gang of fraudsters.
同伙	tónghuǒ	accomplice	小偷的同伙也被抓住了。 The thief's accomplice was caught too.
勾结	gōujié	to collude	他和外面的人勾结，偷公司的东西。 He colluded with outsiders to steal from the company.
窃取	qièqǔ	to steal (data, secrets)	有人窃取了用户的资料。 Someone has stolen users' data.
偷窥	tōukuī	to peep, spy on	偷窥别人的隐私是违法的。 Spying on other people's private lives is illegal.
失踪	shīzōng	to go missing	他家的猫失踪了三天，又自己回来了。 Their cat went missing for three days, then came back on its own.
受害	shòuhài	to be harmed, fall victim	这次诈骗中，上百人受害。 Over a hundred people fell victim to the scam.
受害人	shòuhàirén	victim	警察把钱还给了受害人。 The police returned the money to the victims.
无辜	wúgū	innocent	不能让无辜的人受到伤害。 Innocent people must not be hurt.

pattern **……，更不用说……了: …, not to mention …**

a strong case ，更不用说 **the obvious case** 了

Say the surprising case first, then add the obvious one with 更不用说……了 “never mind, not to mention”. Today also brings back 通 as a measure word for an action done at length and with energy: 骂了一通 “gave him a good telling-off”, 忙了一通 “rushed about”.

这个团伙连卖毒品都干，更不用说走私、赌博了。 **zhège tuánhuǒ lián mài dúpǐn dōu gàn gèng búyòng shuō zǒusī dǔbó le** This gang even dealt drugs, never mind smuggling and gambling.

很多年轻人都在网上受过骗，更不用说老人了。 **hěn duō niánqīng rén dōu zài wǎngshang shòu guo piàn gèng búyòng shuō lǎorén le** Plenty of young people have been cheated online, never mind the elderly.

骗子在电话里把她骂了一通。 **piànzi zài diànhuà lǐ bǎ tā mà le yí tòng** The scammer gave her a real earful on the phone.

dialogue a call from the “police”

ms zhang 今天差点儿受骗！有人打电话，冒充警察，说我的银行卡涉嫌走私和赌博，让我把钱转到一个“安全账户”。

jīntiān chàdiǎnr shòupiàn yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà màochōng jǐngchá shuō wǒ de yínhángkǎ shèxián zǒusī hé dǔbó ràng wǒ bǎ qián zhuǎn dào yí gè ānquán zhànghù · I nearly got cheated today! Someone phoned pretending to be the police, said my bank card was linked to smuggling and gambling, and told me to transfer my money to a “safe account”.

xiaoming 妈妈，这是最常见的诈骗！真警察绝对不会让你转钱。

māma zhè shì zuì cháng jiàn de zhàpiàn zhēn jǐngchá juéduì bú huì ràng nǐ zhuǎn qián · Mum, that’s the most common scam there is! Real police never ask you to transfer money.

ms zhang 我当时吓坏了。他说话很凶，把我骂了一通，说我不配合就要拘留我，还发来了一张伪造的警察证。

wǒ dāngshí xià huài le tā shuōhuà hěn xiōng bǎ wǒ mà le yí tòng shuō wǒ bú pèihé jiù yào jūliú wǒ hái fā lái le yì zhāng wěizào de jǐngchá zhèng · I was terrified. He was so aggressive: he gave me a real telling-off, said he’d have me detained if I didn’t cooperate, and even sent a forged police ID.

dr li 后来呢？

hòulái ne · And then?

ms zhang 我觉得不对，挂了电话就打110。警察说，这是一个诈骗团伙，上个月就有几十个人受害。他们已经抓到了两个人，还在侦查，要找出他们的同伙。

wǒ juéde bú duì guà le diànhuà jiù dǎ jǐngchá shuō zhè shì yí gè zhàpiàn tuánhuǒ shàng gè yuè jiù yǒu jǐ shí gè rén shòuhài tāmen yǐjīng zhuā dào le liǎng gè rén hái zài zhēnchá yào zhǎo chū tāmen de tónghuǒ · Something felt wrong, so I hung up and called 110. The police said it’s a gang of fraudsters: dozens of people fell victim last month. They’ve caught two of them and are still investigating to find their accomplices.

xiaoming 现在骗子什么都敢假冒：假冒银行，假冒快递，连老同学都能冒充。

xiànzài piànzi shénme dōu gǎn jiǎmào jiǎmào yínháng jiǎmào kuàidì lián lǎo tóngxué dōu néng màochōng · Scammers fake anything these days: banks, delivery firms, they’ll even pretend to be your old classmates.

dr li 我们医院也出过事：有人跟里面的人勾结，窃取了病人的资料。骗子知道你的名字和电话，就是这么来的。

wǒmen yīyuàn yě chū guo shì yǒu rén gēn lǐmiàn de rén gōujié qièqǔ le bìngrén de zīliào piànzi zhīdào nǐ de míngzi hé diànhuà jiùshì zhème lái de · We had a case at our hospital too: someone colluded with a member of staff and stole patients’ data. That’s how scammers know your name and number.

little sister 网上还有人偷窥别人的隐私，然后拿照片敲诈。还有人故意在车前摔倒，讹诈司机。

wǎngshang hái yǒu rén tōukuī biérén de yǐnsī ránhòu ná zhàopiàn qiāozhà hái yǒu rén gùyì zài chē qián shuāi dǎo ézhà sījī · Online, people spy on others’ private lives and then blackmail them with the photos. And some people throw themselves in front of cars on purpose to extort money from the driver.

dr li 欺诈、造假、盗窃……花样真多。年轻人都会上当，更不用说老人了。骗子专门骗无辜的老人。

qīzhà zàojiǎ dàoqiè huāyàng zhēn duō niánqīng rén dōu huì shàngdàng gèng búyòng shuō lǎorén le piànzi zhuānmén piàn wúgū de lǎorén · Fraud, fakes, theft… there are so many tricks. Even young people get taken in, not to mention the elderly. The scammers go after innocent old people on purpose.

xiaoming 我的游戏账号上个月也被盗了。我们小区还进过贼，有人在门口抢夺快递员的手机，我们马上就报案了。

wǒ de yóuxì zhànghào shàng gè yuè yě bèi dào le wǒmen xiǎoqū hái jìn guo zéi yǒu rén zài ménkǒu qiǎngduó kuàidì yuán de shǒujī wǒmen mǎshàng jiù bàoàn le · My gaming account was hacked last month too. And our estate has had a burglary, and someone snatched a delivery man’s phone at the gate: we reported it straight away.

ms zhang 警察说，追回来的钱会还给受害人。我把这件事告诉了楼里所有的老人。

jǐngchá shuō zhuī huilai de qián huì huán gěi shòuhàirén wǒ bǎ zhè jiàn shì gàosu le lóu lǐ suǒyǒu de lǎorén · The police say any money they get back will be returned to the victims. I’ve told every older person in our building about it.

little sister 说个轻松的：我昨天看了一部电影，一伙强盗抢劫银行，劫了一辆公共汽车，还挟持了一个孩子当人质。

shuō gè qīngsōng de wǒ zuótiān kàn le yí bù diànyǐng yì huǒ qiángdào qiǎngjié yínháng jié le yí liàng gōnggòng qìchē hái xiéchí le yí gè háizi dāng rénzhì · Something lighter: yesterday I saw a film where a gang of robbers holds up a bank, seizes a bus and takes a child hostage.

ms zhang 这还叫轻松？后来呢？

zhè hái jiào qīngsōng hòulái ne · You call that light? What happened?

little sister 他们还绑架了银行经理，让他家人拿钱来赎。最后人质都被救出来了，强盗一个也没跑掉。

tāmen hái bǎngjià le yínháng jīnglǐ ràng tā jiārén ná qián lái shú zuìhòu rénzhì dōu bèi jiù chulai le qiángdào yí gè yě méi pǎo diào · They kidnap the bank manager too and tell his family to pay a ransom. In the end the hostages are all rescued, and not one robber gets away.

dr li 电影里的流氓和歹徒总是很笨。

diànyǐng lǐ de liúmáng hé dǎitú zǒngshì hěn bèn · The thugs and crooks in films are always so stupid.

xiaoming 现实中也一样。我们小区上次有个老人失踪，大家急坏了，警察忙了一通，后来发现他只是迷路了。

xiànshí zhōng yě yíyàng wǒmen xiǎoqū shàng cì yǒu gè lǎorén shīzōng dàjiā jí huài le jǐngchá máng le yí tòng hòulái fāxiàn tā zhǐshì mílù le · Real life's not so different. An old man from our estate went missing once and everyone panicked. The police rushed about, and then it turned out he'd just got lost.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

颁
bān
issue, confer

谱
pǔ
score, chart; to set to music

弦
xián
string (of an instrument)

勒
lēi
to tie tight, strap

good to know · 冒充 is to pose as a person (冒充警察); 假冒 is mostly for fake goods and brands (假冒名牌); 伪造 is to forge a document. China's police run a free anti-fraud app, 国家反诈中心 (National Anti-Fraud Centre), that warns you about scam calls and websites.

Scams, fakes and robbers: you can now spot a fraud in Chinese and warn the people you love.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 115 bribes, threats and lies

Name threats, harassment, slander, bribery and abuse, say which ones the law punishes, and build sentences that climb step by step with 不但……而且……甚至……

When someone bullies you, the right legal word changes everything: “harassment” and “unlawful occupation” are things the police act on. And 不但……而且……甚至…… is how a story builds to its worst point.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
贿赂	huìlù	to bribe; a bribe	他想贿赂官员，被拒绝了。 He tried to bribe an official and was turned down.
受贿	shòuhuì	to take bribes	这个官员因为受贿被调查。 The official is under investigation for taking bribes.
收买	shōumǎi	to buy off, win over	他想用钱收买证人。 He tried to buy off the witness.
贪污	tānwū	to embezzle	他贪污了公司的钱。 He embezzled the company’s money.
包庇	bāobì	to shield, cover up for	不能因为是朋友就包庇他。 You can’t cover for him just because he’s a friend.
诬陷	wūxiàn	to frame (falsely accuse)	有人诬陷他偷了东西。 Someone framed him for theft.
陷害	xiànhài	to frame, set up	小说里，好人被坏人陷害了。 In the novel, the hero is set up by the villain.
栽赃	zāizāng	to plant evidence on	他把钱包放进我的包里，想栽赃给我。 He put the wallet in my bag to pin it on me.
陷阱	xiànjǐng	trap	这个“免费”的广告其实是个陷阱。 This “free” ad is actually a trap.
阴谋	yīnmóu	plot, conspiracy	小说里，侦探发现了一个大阴谋。 In the novel, the detective uncovers a big conspiracy.
诽谤	fěibàng	to slander, libel	在网上诽谤别人也是违法的。 Slandering people online is illegal too.
恐吓	kǒnghè	to threaten, intimidate	他打电话恐吓邻居。 He phoned his neighbour with threats.
骚扰	sāorǎo	to harass, disturb	我每天都接到骚扰电话。 I get nuisance calls every day.
殴打	ōudǎ	to beat up, assault	在法庭上，被告承认殴打了对方。 In court, the defendant admitted assaulting the other man.
虐待	nüèdài	to mistreat, abuse	法律禁止虐待老人和孩子。 The law forbids the mistreatment of the elderly and children.

迫害	pòhài	to persecute	历史上，有的科学家因为说真话而受到迫害。 In history, some scientists were persecuted for telling the truth.
侵犯	qīnfàn	to infringe on, violate	偷看别人的手机是侵犯隐私。 Looking at someone's phone behind their back is an invasion of privacy.
侵害	qīnhài	to violate, harm (rights)	法律保护孩子不受侵害。 The law protects children from harm.
侵权	qīnquán	to infringe (rights, copyright)	随便用别人的照片可能侵权。 Using other people's photos as you please may infringe their rights.
剥夺	bōduó	to deprive of	谁也不能剥夺孩子受教育的权利。 No one can take away a child's right to education.
霸占	bàzhàn	to take over by force	他霸占了公共的楼道，放满了自己的东西。 He has taken over the shared corridor and filled it with his things.
强占	qiángzhàn	to occupy by force	有人强占了别人的车位。 Someone has grabbed another person's parking space.
强制	qiángzhì	to force; compulsory	法院可以强制执行判决。 The court can enforce the judgment.
闹事	nàoshì	to make trouble, cause a disturbance	有人在门口闹事，保安马上报警了。 Someone was making trouble at the door, and the guard called the police.
肇事	zhàoshì	to cause an accident	肇事司机已经被警察找到了。 The police have found the driver who caused the accident.
过失	guòshī	fault, negligence	这次事故是他的过失。 The accident was his fault.
不法	bùfǎ	unlawful	这家公司用不法手段赚钱，被罚了一大笔钱。 The company made money by unlawful means and was heavily fined.
非法	fēifǎ	illegal	在这里停车是非法的。 It is illegal to park here.
触犯	chùfàn	to violate, offend against	他的行为触犯了法律。 What he did broke the law.
制裁	zhìcái	to punish; sanctions	违法的人一定会受到法律的制裁。 Those who break the law will be punished by it.
取缔	qǔdì	to ban, outlaw	那些违法的小摊被取缔了。 The illegal stalls were shut down.
没收	mòshōu	to confiscate	上课玩手机，手机被老师没收了。 He played on his phone in class and the teacher confiscated it.
枪毙	qiāngbì	to execute by shooting	在旧社会，这样的罪可能会被枪毙。 In the old society, a crime like this could mean being shot.
手枪	shǒuqiāng	pistol, handgun	博物馆里有一把一百年前的手枪。 The museum has a hundred-year-old pistol.
黑名单	hēimíngdān	blacklist	我把骚扰电话都拉进了黑名单。 I've blocked all the nuisance callers.

pattern sentences that build up: 不但……而且……甚至……

不但 A， **而且 B，** **甚至 C**

A climbing sentence goes one step further each time: 不但 (not only) A, 而且 (but also) B, 甚至 (even) C, the most surprising or serious step last. 不仅 can replace 不但, and 更 or 还 can join the middle. Keep the steps in order, from mild to worst.

他不但骚扰我，而且恐吓我，甚至想陷害我。 **tā búdàn sāorǎo wǒ érqiě kǒnghè wǒ shènzhì xiǎng xiànhài wǒ** He has not only harassed me but threatened me, and he has even tried to set me up.

那个经理不但贪污了维修费，而且收了装修公司的贿赂，甚至还包庇他们。 **nàge jīnglǐ búdàn tānwū le wéixiū fèi érqiě shōu le zhuāngxiū gōngsī de huìlù shènzhì hái bāobì tāmen** That manager not only embezzled the repair fund but took bribes from the decorating firm, and even covered up for them.

肇事司机不但没有停车，而且关了手机，甚至换了车牌。 **zhàoshì sījī búdàn méiyǒu tíngchē érqiě guān le shǒujī shènzhì huàn le chē pái** The driver who caused the accident not only didn't stop but switched off his phone, and even changed his number plates.

这个法律博物馆不但有古代的法律书，而且有旧时代的手枪，甚至还讲了过去枪毙犯人的历史。 **zhège fǎlǜ bówùguǎn búdàn yǒu gǔdài de fǎlǜ shū érqiě yǒu jiù shídài de shǒuqiāng shènzhì hái jiǎng le guoqu qiāngbì fàn rén de lìshǐ** This law museum has not only ancient law books but old pistols, and it even tells the history of how prisoners were once executed by shooting.

dialogue a new lock on the door

anna 孙律师，房东越来越过分了。他不但每天打骚扰电话，而且发消息恐吓我，甚至说要找人来“处理”我。

Sūnlǜshī fángdōng yuè lái yuè guòfèn le tā búdàn měi tiān dǎ sāorǎo diànhuà érqiě fā xiāoxi kǒnghè wǒ shènzhì shuō yào zhǎo rén lái chǔlǐ wǒ · Lawyer Sun, my landlord is going too far. He not only makes nuisance calls every day but sends me threatening messages, and he even says he'll get someone to "deal with" me.

lawyer sun 恐吓、骚扰都是违法的，已经触犯了法律，严重的要受到法律制裁。消息都保存好了吗？

kǒnghè sāorǎo dōu shì wéifǎ de yǐjīng chùfàn le fǎlǜ yánzhòng de yào shòudào fǎlǜ zhìcái xiāoxi dōu bǎocún hǎo le ma · Threats and harassment are both illegal: he has already broken the law, and serious cases are punished. Have you kept all the messages?

anna 保存了。他还在网上说我把房子弄坏了，不交房租，还用了我的照片。老实说，我从来没晚交过一天！

bǎocún le tā hái zài wǎngshang shuō wǒ bǎ fángzi nòng huài le bù jiāo fángzū hái yòng le wǒ de zhàopiàn lǎoshi shuō wǒ cónglái méi wǎn jiāo guo yì tiān · Yes. He's also posted online that I damaged the flat and don't pay the rent, and he used my photo. Frankly, I've never paid a single day late!

lawyer sun 这是诽谤，随便用你的照片也是侵权。他侵犯了你的权益，这些我们都可以告他。

zhè shì fěibàng suíbiàn yòng nǐ de zhàopiàn yě shì qīnquán tā qīnfàn le nǐ de quányì zhèxiē wǒmen dōu kěyǐ gào tā · That's slander, and using your photo without asking infringes your rights. He has infringed your rights and interests, and we can take him to court for all of it.

anna 他还说要把我拉进“租房子的黑名单”，以后谁都不租给我。

tā hái shuō yào bǎ wǒ lā jìn zū fángzi de hēimíngdān yǐhòu shéi dōu bù zū gěi wǒ · He also says he'll put me on a "renters' blacklist" so nobody will ever rent to me again.

lawyer sun 哪有这种黑名单？他是吓你的。

nǎ yǒu zhè zhǒng hēimíngdān tā shì xià nǐ de · There's no such blacklist: he's just trying to scare you.

anna 可是昨天我回家，发现门锁被换了！我的东西都在里面。

kěshì zuótiān wǒ huí jiā fāxiàn mén suǒ bèi huàn le wǒ de dōngxi dōu zài lǐmiàn · But when I got home yesterday, the lock had been changed! All my things are inside.

lawyer sun 什么？这是非法强占！合同没有解除，谁也不能剥夺你住在里面的权利，他更不能霸占房子。你马上报警，警察可以强制他开门。

shénme zhè shì fēifǎ qiángzhàn hétóng méiyǒu jiěchú shéi yě bù néng bōduó nǐ zhù zài lǐmiàn de quánlì tā gèng bù néng bàzhàn fángzi nǐ mǎshàng bàojǐng jǐngchá kěyǐ qiángzhì tā kāi mén · What? That's unlawful occupation! The contract hasn't been terminated: nobody can take away your right to live there, and he certainly can't seize the flat. Call the police now: they can make him open the door.

anna 我怕他来闹事。他还说，我要是报警，他就说我偷了他的手表，那块表就放在我房间里。

wǒ pà tā lái nàoshì tā hái shuō wǒ yàoshi bàojǐng tā jiù shuō wǒ tōu le tā de shǒubiǎo nà kuài biǎo jiù fàng zài wǒ fángjiān lǐ · I'm afraid he'll come and make trouble. And he says if I call the police, he'll say I stole his watch: the watch is sitting in my room.

lawyer sun 他想栽赃给你。这是个陷阱：你别碰那块表，先拍照。诬陷别人是要承担法律责任的。

tā xiǎng zāizāng gěi nǐ zhè shì gè xiànjǐng nǐ bié pèng nà kuài biǎo xiān pāizhào wūxiàn biérén shì yào chéngdān fǎlǜ zérèn de · He wants to pin it on you. It's a trap: don't touch the watch; photograph it first. Framing someone carries legal consequences.

anna 他这样做，跟流氓有什么区别？我觉得这是一个阴谋，他想逼我自己走。他还去找物业的保安，想收买他们，跟他们勾结起来，说我弄坏了门。

tā zhèyàng zuò gēn liúmáng yǒu shénme qūbié wǒ juéde zhè shì yí gè yīnmóu tā xiǎng bī wǒ zìjǐ zǒu tā hái qù zhǎo wùyè de bǎoān xiǎng shōumǎi tāmen gēn tāmen gōujié qǐlai shuō wǒ nòng huài le mén · How is what he's doing any different from a thug? I think it's a plot: he wants to force me out myself. He's even gone to the building's guards and tried to buy them off, to get them in on it and say I broke the door.

lawyer sun 保安要是收了他的钱，替他说假话，就是包庇他，自己也要承担责任。他想陷害你，反而会害了自己。

bǎoān yàoshi shōu le tā de qián tì tā shuō jiǎ huà jiùshì bāobì tā zìjǐ yě yào chéngdān zérèn tā xiǎng xiànhài nǐ fǎnér huì hài le zìjǐ · If the guards take his money and lie for him, they're covering up for him and will answer for it themselves. By trying to set you up, he'll only hurt himself.

anna 他不会动手吧?

tā bú huì dòngshǒu ba · He won't get violent, will he?

lawyer sun 他要是敢殴打你，那就是刑事问题了。不过这种人一般只敢吓人。我上个月处理过一起案件：一个物业经理不但贪污了维修费，而且受贿，拿了装修公司不少好处，最后什么都没得到。

tā yàoshi gǎn ōudǎ nǐ nà jiùshì xíngshì wèntí le búguò zhè zhǒng rén yìbān zhǐ gǎn xiàrén wǒ shàng gè yuè chǔlǐ guo yì qǐ ànjiàn yí gè wùyè jīnglǐ búdàn tānwū le wéixiū fèi érqiě shòuhuì ná le zhuāngxiū gōngsī bù shǎo hǎochù zuìhòu shénme dōu méi de dào · If he dares to hit you, it becomes a criminal matter. But people like him usually only dare to scare. Last month I handled a case: a building manager had not only embezzled the repair fund but taken bribes, plenty of favours from a decorating firm, and in the end he got nothing out of it.

lawyer sun 有些专门帮房东赶走租户的非法中介，其实就是流氓团伙，去年已经被取缔了，他们的不法收入也被没收了。

yǒuxiē zhuānmén bāng fángdōng gǎn zǒu zū hù de fēifǎ zhōngjiè qíshí jiùshì liúmáng tuánhuǒ qùnián yǐjīng bèi qǔdì le tāmen de bùfǎ shōurù yě bèi mòshōu le · Some illegal agencies that specialised in driving tenants out for landlords were really gangs of thugs: they were shut down last year, and their unlawful earnings were confiscated.

anna 听您这么说，我就不怕了。他又不是电影里拿着手枪的强盗。

tīng nín zhème shuō wǒ jiù bú pà le tā yòu bú shì diànyǐng lǐ ná zhe shǒuqiāng de qiángdào · Hearing you say that, I'm not scared any more. He's hardly a robber with a pistol out of a film.

lawyer sun 对。好人不该被坏人吓住，法律就是为这个而存在的。

duì hǎo rén bù gāi bèi huài rén xià zhù fǎlǜ jiùshì wèi zhège ér cúnzài de · Exactly. Good people shouldn't be scared off by bad ones: that's what the law is for.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

墨 mò ink, ink stick												
雕 diāo to carve												
镶 xiāng to inlay, set												
裸 luǒ bare, naked												

good to know · 侵犯, 侵害 and 侵权 all start with 侵 "to invade": you invade someone's rights (权), their privacy (隐私) or their interests (权益). 非法 and 不法 both mean "unlawful"; 不法 mostly comes before 分子 (criminals) or 收入 (earnings).

Threats, slander, a trap and a changed lock: you now have the words to name what is happening and to stand up for yourself.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 116 staying safe

Talk about safety, surveillance and reporting wrongdoing, say whether something was done on purpose, and restate a point with 换句话说.

CCTV, alarms and “report it” hotlines are everywhere in Chinese cities. And 换句话说 lets you sum up a long story in one sharp line.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
警报	jǐngbào	alarm, alert	火灾警报一响，大家马上离开了大楼。 As soon as the fire alarm went off, everyone left the building.
警戒	jǐngjiè	to be on alert, cordon off	警察在门口拉起了警戒线。 The police put up a cordon at the door.
警惕	jǐngtì	to be vigilant, on guard	对陌生人要保持警惕。 Stay on your guard with strangers.
警钟	jǐngzhōng	alarm bell, warning	这次事故给我们敲响了警钟。 The accident was a wake-up call for us.
警犬	jǐngquǎn	police dog	警犬帮警察找到了失踪的孩子。 A police dog helped the police find the missing child.
防范	fángfàn	to guard against	我们要防范网络诈骗。 We need to guard against online scams.
监控	jiānkòng	to monitor; CCTV	小区门口装了监控。 CCTV has been put up at the estate gate.
监视	jiānshì	to keep watch on	侦探在暗中监视那个人。 The detective is secretly watching the man.
看守	kānshǒu	to guard	晚上有人看守仓库。 Someone guards the warehouse at night.
看管	kānguǎn	to look after, mind	请看管好自己的行李。 Please keep an eye on your luggage.
间谍	jiàndié	spy	这是一部关于间谍的电影。 It’s a spy film.
禁区	jìnqū	restricted area, no-go zone	这里是禁区，不能拍照。 This is a restricted area: no photos.
揭发	jiēfā	to expose, blow the whistle	他揭发了公司造假的问题。 He exposed the company’s faking of figures.
举报	jǔbào	to report (wrongdoing)	发现违法行为，可以打电话举报。 If you see something illegal, you can phone and report it.
维权	wéiquán	to defend one’s rights	买到假{jia3}货，消费者要学会维权。 If they buy fakes, consumers need to know how to stand up for their rights.
伸张	shēnzhāng	to uphold (justice)	法律为受害人伸张了正义。 The law saw justice done for the victims.

自卫	zìwèi	self-defence	他是为了自卫才动手的。 He only hit out in self-defence.
藏匿	cángnì	to hide away, conceal	小偷把偷来的东西藏匿在仓库里。 The thief hid the stolen goods in a warehouse.
审查	shěnchá	to examine, vet	新电影上映以前要经过审查。 New films have to be vetted before they are released.
押	yā	to escort (a prisoner); to pledge	罪犯被警察押走了。 The police led the criminal away.
暗地里	àndìlǐ	secretly, behind sb's back	他表面上同意，暗地里却反对。 On the surface he agreed, but behind the scenes he was against it.
暗中	ànzhōng	in secret	警察在暗中保护证人。 The police are secretly protecting the witness.
私下	sīxià	privately, in private	这件事我们私下谈吧。 Let's talk about this in private.
成心	chéngxīn	on purpose	你是成心气我吧? You're doing this to annoy me on purpose, aren't you?
存心	cúnxīn	deliberately	他不是存心的，原谅他吧。 He didn't mean it: forgive him.
无意	wúyì	unintentionally; to have no wish to	对不起，我是无意的。 Sorry, I didn't mean to.
无故	wúgù	without reason	员工不能无故不来上班。 Staff may not miss work without a reason.
猛然	měngrán	suddenly	我猛然想起，门还没锁。 It suddenly hit me that I hadn't locked the door.
迎面	yíngmiàn	head-on, in one's face	一辆车迎面开了过来。 A car came straight towards us.
径直	jìngzhí	straight, directly	他下了车，径直走进了警察局。 He got out of the car and walked straight into the police station.
胡乱	húluàn	at random, carelessly	不要胡乱点开陌生的链接。 Don't click on strange links without thinking.

pattern 换句话说: in other words (and parallel parts again)

a long point ，换句话说， **the same point, short and sharp**

换句话说 “to say it in other words” introduces a restatement: shorter, plainer or blunter than what came before. It often follows a long sentence with parallel parts (一方面……另一方面……, 既……又……), and then sums them up.

合同还没有解除，换句话说，房子现在还是你住。 **hétóng hái méiyǒu jiěchú huàn jù huà shuō fángzi xiànzài háishi nǐ zhù** The contract hasn’t been terminated: in other words, the flat is still yours to live in.

物业一方面要装监控，另一方面要有人看守大门；换句话说，安全既要靠技术，也要靠人。 **wùyè yì fāngmiàn yào zhuāng jiānkòng lìng yì fāngmiàn yào yǒu rén kānshǒu dà mén huàn jù huà shuō ānquán jì yào kào jìshù yě yào kào rén** The management needs cameras on the one hand and someone guarding the gate on the other: in other words, safety depends on technology and on people.

他没有理由就换了锁，换句话说，他是成心的。 **tā méiyǒu lǐyóu jiù huàn le suǒ huàn jù huà shuō tā shì chéngxīn de** He changed the lock for no reason: in other words, he did it on purpose.

dialogue what the cameras saw

xiaoming 安娜，听说你昨天晚上报警了？
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐ zuótiān wǎnshang bàojǐng le · Anna, I hear you called the police last night?

anna 对，孙律师陪我去的。我们刚到楼下，房东就迎面走过来，一看到警察，脸都白了。
duì Sūnlǜshī péi wǒ qù de wǒmen gāng dào lóu xià fángdōng jiù yíngmiàn zǒu guolai yí kàn dào jǐngchá liǎn dōu bái le · Yes, Lawyer Sun came with me. We'd just got downstairs when the landlord walked straight towards us, and the moment he saw the police he went white.

little sister 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And then?

anna 警察让他开门。他说自己不是成心的，是无意中把锁换了。
jǐngchá ràng tā kāi mén tā shuō zìjǐ bú shì chéngxīn de shì wúyì zhōng bǎ suǒ huàn le · The police told him to open the door. He said he hadn't meant to: he'd changed the lock "by accident".

xiaoming 谁信啊！换句话说，他就是存心的。
shéi xìn a huàn jù huà shuō tā jiùshì cúnxīn de · As if! In other words, he did it on purpose.

anna 警察也这么说，还警告他：强占租户的房子，是要受到法律制裁的。
jǐngchá yě zhème shuō hái jǐnggào tā qiángzhàn zū hù de fángzi shì yào shòudào fǎlǜ zhìcái de · The police said so too, and warned him that seizing a tenant's home gets you punished by the law.

anna 他们还看了楼道的监控：前天夜里，他暗中进过我的房间，把一块手表藏匿在我的柜子里，想栽赃给我。
tāmen hái kàn le lóudào de jiānkòng qiántiān yè lǐ tā ànzhōng jìn guo wǒ de fángjiān bǎ yí kuài shǒubiǎo cángnì zài wǒ de guìzi lǐ xiǎng zāizāng gěi wǒ · They also checked the corridor cameras: the night before last he secretly went into my flat and hid a watch in my cupboard, to plant it on me.

little sister 他暗地里做的事，全被拍下来了！
tā àndìlǐ zuò de shì quán bèi pāi xialai le · Everything he did behind your back was caught on camera!

anna 是啊。孙律师说，暗地里做的事，早晚会被揭发；邻居们也可以向有关部门举报他。今天上午，房东私下找我，说愿意赔钱，按合同解约，押的一个月房租也全退给我。
shì a Sūnlǜshī shuō àndìlǐ zuò de shì zǎowǎn huì bèi jiēfā línjūmen yě kěyǐ xiàng yǒuguān bùmén jǔbào tā jīntiān shàngwǔ fángdōng sīxià zhǎo wǒ shuō yuànyì péi qián àn hétóng jiěyuē yā de yí gè yuè fángzū yě quán tuì gěi wǒ · Exactly. Lawyer Sun says what's done in secret comes out sooner or later, and the neighbours can also report him to the authorities. This morning the landlord came to me privately and said he'll pay compensation, end the lease by the contract and give back the month's rent I paid as a deposit.

xiaoming 太好了，你这次维权成功了！他想陷害你，最后害了自己。
tài hǎo le nǐ zhè cì wéiquán chénggōng le tā xiǎng xiànhài nǐ zuìhòu hài le zìjǐ · Brilliant: you've stood up for your rights and won! He tried to set you up and only hurt himself.

little sister 正义得到了伸张！要是他那天动手，你就自卫。
zhèngyì dédào le shēnzhāng yàoshi tā nà tiān dòngshǒu nǐ jiù zìwèi · Justice is done! And if he'd got violent that day, you'd have defended yourself.

anna 我才不跟他动手呢。不过这件事给我敲响了警钟：对这种人要保持警惕。
wǒ cái bù gēn tā dòngshǒu ne búguò zhè jiàn shì gěi wǒ qiāo xiǎng le jǐngzhōng duì zhè zhǒng rén yào bǎochí jǐngtì · I'd never get into a fight with him. But this has been a wake-up call: you have to be on your guard with people like that.

xiaoming 你们物业应该一方面加强防范，另一方面多装几个监控。
nǐmen wùyè yīnggāi yì fāngmiàn jiāqiáng fángfàn lìng yì fāngmiàn duō zhuāng jǐ gè jiānkòng · Your management company should step up security on the one hand and put up more cameras on the other.

anna 物业已经发了通知：晚上加强警戒，有人看守大门；请住户看管好自己的东西；物业也不能无故进住户的房间。
wùyè yǐjīng fā le tōngzhī wǎnshang jiāqiáng jǐngjiè yǒu rén kānshǒu dà mén qǐng zhùhù kānguǎn hǎo zìjǐ de dōngxi wùyè yě bù néng wúgù jìn zhùhù de fángjiān · They've already sent a notice: more security at night, with someone guarding the gate; residents should keep an eye on their belongings; and the management may not enter a flat without good reason.

anna 还提醒大家，不要胡乱点开陌生的链接。昨天晚上楼里的火灾警报也响了，原来是演习。
hái tíxǐng dàjiā búyào húluàn diǎn kāi mòshēng de liànjiē zuótiān wǎnshang lóu lǐ de huǒzāi jǐngbào yě xiǎng le yuánlái shì yǎnxí · It also reminds everyone not to click on strange links without thinking. And the fire alarm went off last night: it turned out to be a drill.

little sister 说到安全，我们学校昨天来了一只警犬，几分钟就找到了藏起来的包。
shuō dào ānquán wǒmen xuéxiào zuótiān lái le yì zhī jǐngquǎn jǐ fēnzhōng jiù zhǎo dào le cáng qǐlai de bāo · Talking of safety, a police dog came to our school yesterday and found a hidden bag in a few minutes.

xiaoming 你最近不是在看间谍电影吗?
nǐ zuìjìn bú shì zài kàn jiàndié diànyǐng ma · Aren't you watching spy films at the moment?

little sister 对！主人公猛然发现自己被人监视了，他没有回头，径直走进了一个军事禁区。这部电影审查了半年才上映。
duì zhǔréngōng měngrán fāxiàn zìjǐ bèi rén jiānshì le tā méiyǒu huítóu jìngzhí zǒu jìn le yí gè jūnshì jìnqū zhè bù diànyǐng shěnchá le bàn nián cái shàngyìng · Yes! The hero suddenly realises he's being watched; without looking back, he walks straight into a military no-go zone. The film was held up by the censors for six months before it came out.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

旨
zhǐ
aim, purpose

沸
fèi
boil

旺
wàng
prosperous, vigorous

稀
xī
sparse, rare; watery

good to know · On purpose: 成心, 存心, 故意 (neutral). Not on purpose: 无意, 不是故意的. 成心 and 存心 sound more accusing. 看 is kān, not kàn, when it means "to guard, look after": 看守, 看管, 看孩子 (to mind the children).

Cameras, alarms, a report and a private apology: you can now tell a whole safety story in Chinese, and sum it up in one line.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 117 mission: the rental dispute

Follow a rental dispute from the mediation notice to the signed agreement, read a news report on a fraud gang, and use this unit's words for contracts, courts, crime, scams and safety.

This is how most disputes in China really end: not in a courtroom, but at a mediation table, with a contract, the evidence and a good lawyer.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the mediation notice

anna （读）“安娜女士：您与房东之间的民事纠纷，经双方同意，本中心将于本周六上午九点进行调解。调解遵循自愿、公平的原则，依法进行。

dú Ānnà nǚshì nín yǔ fángdōng zhījiān de mínshì jiūfēn jīng shuāngfāng tóngyì běn zhōngxīn jiāng yú běn zhōu liù shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn jìnxíng tiáojiě tiáojiě zūnxún zìyuàn gōngpíng de yuánzé yǐfǎ jìnxíng · (reading) “Dear Ms Anna: With the agreement of both parties, this centre will hold a mediation of the civil dispute between you and your landlord at 9 a.m. this Saturday. Mediation follows the principles of free will and fairness and is conducted according to law.

anna 请双方当事人带好以下材料：一、双方订立的合同；二、押金和房租的付款记录；三、证据，如照片、聊天记录、监控录像等。

qǐng shuāngfāng dāngshìrén dài hǎo yǐxià cáiliào yī shuāngfāng dìnglì de hétóng èr yājīn hé fángzū de fù kuǎn jìlù sān zhèngjù rú zhàopiàn liáotiān jìlù jiānkòng lùxiàng děng · Both parties are asked to bring: 1. the contract they concluded; 2. records of payment of the deposit and rent; 3. evidence, such as photos, chat records, CCTV footage and so on.

anna 调解不成的，当事人可以申请仲裁，也可以向法院起诉。调解协议签字以后生效，双方都应当遵照执行，任何一方不得违背。

tiáojiě bùchéng de dāngshìrén kěyǐ shēnqǐng zhòngcái yě kěyǐ xiàng fǎyuàn qǐsù tiáojiě xiéyì qiānzì yǐhòu shēngxiào shuāngfāng dōu yīngdāng zūnzhào zhíxíng rènhé yì fāng bùdé wéibèi · If mediation fails, the parties may apply for arbitration or bring a case in court. A mediation agreement takes effect once signed; both parties shall comply with it, and neither may go against it.

anna 须知：本中心不收任何费用，也不会通过电话要求当事人转钱。请警惕冒充本中心工作人员的诈骗电话，发现问题请举报。”

xūzhī běn zhōngxīn bù shōu rènhé fèiyong yě bú huì tōngguò diànhuà yāoqiú dāngshìrén zhuǎn qián qǐng jǐngtì màochōng běn zhōngxīn gōngzuò rényuán de zhàpiàn diànhuà fāxiàn wèntí qǐng jǔbào · Please note: this centre charges no fees and will never ask parties to transfer money by phone. Beware of scam calls from people posing as our staff, and report any problems.”

xiaoming 写得清清楚楚。合同你们去公证过，现在用上了。

xiě de qīngqīngchuchu hétóng nǐmen qù gōngzhèng guo xiànzài yòng shàng le · That’s very clear. And you had the contract notarized: now it comes in handy.

little sister 调解员是谁啊?

tiáojiě yuán shì shéi a · Who’s the mediator?

anna 通知上写着：陈教授。原来他退休以后在街道当义务调解员！

tōngzhī shàng xiě zhe Chénjiàoshòu yuánlái tā tuìxiū yǐhòu zài jiēdào dāng yìwù tiáojiě yuán · The notice says: Professor Chen. It turns out he has been an unpaid mediator for the neighbourhood since he retired!

xiaoming 他办事公正，说话又有分量。房东既违约，又恐吓你，还想栽赃给你，这次他没话说了。

tā bànshì gōngzhèng shuōhuà yòu yǒu fènliàng fángdōng jì wéiyuē yòu kǒnghè nǐ hái xiǎng zāizāng gěi nǐ zhè cì tā méi huà shuō le · He’s fair, and people listen to him. The landlord broke the contract, threatened you and tried to frame you: this time he’ll have nothing to say.

anna 孙律师说，监控录像是最好的物证。我们一方面讲合同，另一方面讲证据。

Sūnlǜshī shuō jiānkòng lùxiàng shì zuìhǎo de wùzhèng wǒmen yì fāngmiàn jiǎng hétóng lìng yì fāngmiàn jiǎng zhèngjù · Lawyer Sun says the CCTV footage is the best physical evidence. We’ll argue from the contract on the one hand and the evidence on the other.

chapter 2 chapter 2: round the mediation table

professor chen 各位好。今天我是调解员，不是教授。我们本着公平的原则，先听双方说，再看证据。这里不是法庭，不开庭，也不判谁输谁赢。

gèwèi hǎo jīntiān wǒ shì tiáojiě yuán bú shì jiàoshòu wǒmen běnzhe gōngpíng de yuánzé xiān tīng shuāngfāng shuō zài kàn zhèngjù zhèlǐ bú shì fǎtíng bù kāitíng yě bú pàn shéi shū shéi yíng · Good morning, everyone. Today I'm a mediator, not a professor. In a spirit of fairness, we'll hear both sides first, then look at the evidence. This isn't a court: there's no hearing, and no one is ruled the winner or loser.

lawyer sun 我代表我的当事人安娜女士。我们的诉求有三点：第一，房东按合同第八条赔偿；第二，删除网上诽谤她的内容，向她道歉；第三，给她两个月的时间找房子。

wǒ dàibiǎo wǒ de dāngshìrén Ānnà nǚshì wǒmen de sùqiú yǒu sān diǎn dì yī fángdōng àn hétóng dì bā tiáo péicháng dì èr shānchú wǎngshang fěibàng tā de nèiróng xiàng tā dàoqiàn dì sān gěi tā liǎng gè yuè de shíjiān zhǎo fángzi · I represent my client, Ms Anna. Our demands are threefold: first, the landlord compensates her under clause eight; second, he deletes the slanderous posts about her and apologises; third, she gets two months to find a new flat.

professor chen 房东先生说，他是因为急着卖房子，才想提前解约，没想到闹成这样。他觉得自己很冤，说大家冤枉他了。

fángdōng xiānsheng shuō tā shì yīnwèi jí zhe mài fángzi cái xiǎng tíqián jiěyuē méi xiǎng dào nào chéng zhèyàng tā juéde zìjǐ hěn yuān shuō dàjiā yuānwang tā le · The landlord says he only wanted to end the lease early because he was in a hurry to sell, and never thought it would come to this. He feels hard done by and says everyone has got him wrong.

lawyer sun 卖房子是他的权利，然而合同也是他签的。按照现行的规定，他不能随便解除合同。他不但没有提前三个月通知，而且换了锁，霸占房子，甚至把一块手表藏匿在我当事人的柜子里，想陷害她。

mài fángzi shì tā de quánlì ránér hétóng yě shì tā qiān de ànzhào xiànxíng de guīdìng tā bù néng suíbiàn jiěchú hétóng tā búdàn méiyǒu tíqián sān gè yuè tōngzhī érqiě huàn le suǒ bàzhàn fángzi shènzhì bǎ yí kuài shǒubiǎo cángnì zài wǒ dāngshìrén de guìzi lǐ xiǎng xiànhài tā · Selling is his right; but he also signed the contract, and under the current rules he can't just terminate it. He not only failed to give three months' notice but changed the lock and seized the flat, and he even hid a watch in my client's cupboard to set her up.

professor chen 这一点，监控录像拍得很清楚。房东先生说，他是无意的……

zhè yìdiǎn jiānkòng lùxiàng pāi de hěn qīngchu fángdōng xiānsheng shuō tā shì wúyì de · The CCTV shows that very clearly. The landlord says it was unintentional…

anna 无意的？他半夜暗中进我的房间，换句话说，就是存心的。他还每天打骚扰电话，说要把我拉进黑名单。

wúyì de tā bànyè ànzhōng jìn wǒ de fángjiān huàn jù huà shuō jiùshì cúnxīn de tā hái měi tiān dǎ sāorǎo diànhuà shuō yào bǎ wǒ lā jìn hēimíngdān · Unintentional? He slipped into my flat in the middle of the night: in other words, he meant every bit of it. And he made nuisance calls every day and said he'd put me on a blacklist.

lawyer sun 这不是刑法管的刑事问题，是民事纠纷。可是没有正当理由，没有租户的准许，房东用强制的办法赶人走，是绝不容许的。北京租房子的管理条例、物业的规章，都写得很清楚。

zhè bú shì xíngfǎ guǎn de xíngshì wèntí shì mínshì jiūfēn kěshì méiyǒu zhèngdàng lǐyóu méiyǒu zū hù de zhǔnxǔ fángdōng yòng qiángzhì de bànfǎ gǎn rén zǒu shì juébù róngxǔ de Běijīng zū fángzi de guǎnlǐ tiáolì wùyè de guīzhāng dōu xiě de hěn qīngchu · This isn't a criminal matter for the criminal law: it's a civil dispute. But a landlord who uses force to drive a tenant out, without good reason and without the tenant's permission, is never allowed to. Beijing's rental regulations and the building management's rules are both clear about it.

lawyer sun 宪法尊重和保障人权，法律保护每个人的合法权益。我的当事人依法享有住在里面的权利，谁也不能剥夺，她也完全可以行使这个权利。这些事如果诉诸法律，他违约不说，还侵犯了她的权益：诽谤、侵权、非法强占，都触犯了法律。

xiànfǎ zūnzhòng hé bǎozhàng rénquán fǎlǜ bǎohù měi gè rén de héfǎ quányì wǒ de dāngshìrén yīfǎ xiǎngyǒu zhù zài lǐmiàn de quánlì shéi yě bù néng bōduó tā yě wánquán kěyǐ xíngshǐ zhège quánlì zhèxiē shì rúguǒ sùzhū fǎlǜ tā wéiyuē bù shuō hái qīnfàn le tā de quányì fěibàng qīnquán fēifǎ qiángzhàn dōu chùfàn le fǎlǜ · The constitution respects and protects human rights, and the law protects everyone's legal rights. By law my

client has the right to live there: nobody can take that away, and she is fully entitled to exercise it. If this went to law, quite apart from the breach of contract, he has violated her rights: slander, infringement and unlawful occupation all break the law.

lawyer sun 退一步说，就算到了法庭上，原告有证人，有物证，被告怎么辩护也没用。法院审理以后，判决他赔偿，他上诉也会被驳回，还要付诉讼费。我们本来还可以控告他诽谤，向他索赔更多。

tuì yí bù shuō jiùsuàn dào le fǎtíng shàng yuángào yǒu zhèngrén yǒu wùzhèng bèigào zěnme biànhù yě méi yòng fǎyuàn shěnlǐ yǐhòu pànjué tā péicháng tā shàngsù yě huì bèi bóhuí hái yào fù sùsòng fèi wǒmen běnlái hái kěyǐ kònggào tā fěibàng xiàng tā suǒpéi gèng duō · Even supposing it got to court, the plaintiff has witnesses and physical evidence: however the defendant argued, it wouldn't help. The court would hear it and order him to pay; any appeal would be rejected, and he'd pay the court costs too. We could even have sued him for slander and claimed more.

professor chen 打官司虽然能把事情说清楚，但是时间长、花钱多，对双方都不好。房东先生愿意让步，我们看看能不能谈出一个双方都接受的办法。

dǎ guānsi suīrán néng bǎ shìqing shuō qīngchu dànshì shíjiān cháng huā qián duō duì shuāngfāng dōu bù hǎo fángdōng xiānsheng yuànyì ràngbù wǒmen kàn kan néng bu néng tán chū yí gè shuāngfāng dōu jiēshòu de bànfǎ · Going to court may settle who is right, but it takes long and costs a lot, and that's bad for both sides. The landlord is willing to give ground: let's see if we can work out something you both accept.

professor chen 好，调解结果是：房东赔偿一个月房租，押的一个月房租全部退还；网上的内容今天删除，并且向安娜道歉；安娜两个月以后搬出去。双方同意吗？

hǎo tiáojiě jiéguǒ shì fángdōng péicháng yí gè yuè fángzū yā de yí gè yuè fángzū quánbù tuìhuán wǎngshang de nèiróng jīntiān shānchú bìngqiě xiàng Ānnà dàoqiàn Ānnà liǎng gè yuè yǐhòu bān chuqu shuāngfāng tóngyì ma · Right, the outcome: the landlord pays one month's rent in compensation and returns the full month's deposit; the online posts are deleted today and he apologises to Anna; Anna moves out in two months. Do both sides agree?

anna 我同意。老实说，我只想要一个说法，不想跟他打官司。

wǒ tóngyì lǎoshi shuō wǒ zhǐ xiǎng yào yí gè shuōfǎ bù xiǎng gēn tā dǎ guānsi · I agree. Frankly, I just wanted things put right: I don't want to go to court with him.

professor chen 房东先生也签字了。协议签字以后就生效，谁违约，谁承担责任。在法治社会里，契约就是契约。

fángdōng xiānsheng yě qiānzì le xiéyì qiānzì yǐhòu jiù shēngxiào shéi wéiyuē shéi chéngdān zérèn zài fǎzhì shèhuì lǐ qìyuē jiùshì qìyuē · The landlord has signed too. The agreement takes effect once signed: whoever breaks it bears the consequences. Under the rule of law, a contract is a contract.

chapter 3 chapter 3: a call about "fees"

anna 刚才有人打电话，说他是调解中心的工作人员，要我先交五百块手续费，赔偿才能打到我的卡上。
gāngcái yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà shuō tā shì tiáojiě zhōngxīn de gōngzuò rényuán yào wǒ xiān jiāo wǔbǎi kuài shǒuxù fèi péicháng cáinéng dǎ dào wǒ de kǎ shàng · Someone just phoned saying he was from the mediation centre: he said I have to pay a 500-yuan fee first before the compensation can go into my account.

lawyer sun 通知上写得很清楚：中心不收任何费用。这是冒充工作人员的诈骗。
tōngzhī shàng xiě de hěn qīngchu zhōngxīn bù shōu rènhé fèiyong zhè shì màochōng gōngzuò rényuán de zhàpiàn · The notice says it plainly: the centre charges nothing. That's a scam by someone posing as staff.

editor lin 你们好！我刚好来采访调解中心。安娜，你没转钱吧？
nǐmen hǎo wǒ gānghǎo lái cǎifǎng tiáojiě zhōngxīn Ānnà nǐ méi zhuǎn qián ba · Hello, everyone! I've just come to do a piece on the mediation centre. Anna, you didn't transfer any money, did you?

anna 当然没有。可是奇怪：他知道我的名字，还知道今天调解。
dāngrán méiyǒu kěshì qíguài tā zhīdào wǒ de míngzi hái zhīdào jīntiān tiáojiě · Of course not. But it's strange: he knew my name, and he knew about today's mediation.

editor lin 我正在写这个团伙的报道。他们跟一家中介的人勾结，窃取了很多租户的资料，专门骗刚处理完纠纷的人，上百人受骗。
wǒ zhèngzài xiě zhège tuánhuǒ de bàodào tāmen gēn yì jiā zhōngjiè de rén gōujié qièqǔ le hěn duō zū hù de zīliào zhuānmén piàn gāng chǔlǐ wán jiūfēn de rén shàng bǎi rén shòupiàn · I'm writing a report on that gang. They colluded with people at a letting agency, stole the details of lots of tenants and target people who have just settled a dispute: over a hundred people have been cheated.

lawyer sun 你马上去派出所报案，把通话记录给警察。他们已经立案，正在追踪这个团伙。
nǐ mǎshàng qù pàichūsuǒ bàoàn bǎ tōnghuà jìlù gěi jǐngchá tāmen yǐjīng lìàn zhèngzài zhuīzōng zhège tuánhuǒ · Go and report it at the police station at once, and give the police your call log. They've already opened a case and are tracking the gang.

editor lin 他们不但冒充调解中心，而且伪造法院的文件，甚至冒充警察和检察官，敲诈受害人。不过已经有两个同伙被逮捕了。
tāmen búdàn màochōng tiáojiě zhōngxīn érqiě wěizào fǎyuàn de wénjiàn shènzhì màochōng jǐngchá hé jiǎnchá guān qiāozhà shòuhàirén búguò yǐjīng yǒu liǎng gè tónghuǒ bèi dàibǔ le · They not only pose as mediation centres but forge court papers, and they even pretend to be police officers and prosecutors to extort money from their victims. But two of the gang have already been arrested.

anna 受骗的人里，有很多是无辜的老人吧？
shòupiàn de rén lǐ yǒu hěn duō shì wúgū de lǎorén ba · I suppose a lot of the victims are innocent old people?

editor lin 对。年轻人都会上当，更不用说老人了。你们看，这是我今天要发的新闻。
duì niánqīng rén dōu huì shàngdàng gèng búyòng shuō lǎorén le nǐmen kàn zhè shì wǒ jīntiān yào fā de xīnwén · Yes. Even young people get taken in, never mind the elderly. Look, here's the news story I'm putting out today.

chapter 4 chapter 4: editor lin's news story

anna （读）“本网消息：近日，警察成功破案，抓住了一个诈骗团伙。这个团伙冒充调解中心、银行和快递公司，骗受害人的钱，涉嫌诈骗、敲诈和盗窃个人资料。他们还造假身份证，卖假冒的名牌包，走私手表；有的成员还有赌博和吸毒的问题。
dú běn wǎng xiāoxi jìnrì jǐngchá chénggōng pòàn zhuā zhù le yí gè zhàpiàn tuánhuǒ zhège tuánhuǒ màochōng tiáojiě zhōngxīn yínháng hé kuàidì gōngsī piàn shòuhàirén de qián shèxián zhàpiàn qiāozhà hé dàoqiè gèrén zīliào tāmen hái zàojiǎ shēnfènzhèng mài jiǎmào de míngpái bāo zǒusī shǒubiǎo yǒude chéngyuán hái yǒu dǔbó hé xīdú de wèntí · (reading) “Our reporter writes: The police have recently solved the case and caught a gang of fraudsters. Posing as mediation centres, banks and delivery firms, the gang cheated victims out of their money, and is suspected of fraud, extortion and the theft of personal data. They also faked ID cards, sold counterfeit designer bags and smuggled watches; some members also had gambling and drug problems.

anna 接到报案以后，警察立即侦查，通过指纹和监控查明了四名嫌疑人。在搜查中，警察查获手机二十多台，扣押了团伙的银行卡。
jiē dào bàoàn yǐhòu jǐngchá lìjí zhēnchá tōngguò zhǐwén hé jiānkòng chámíng le sì míng xiányí rén zài sōuchá zhōng jǐngchá cháhuò shǒujī èrshí duō tái kòuyā le tuánhuǒ de yínhángkǎ · On receiving the reports, the police opened an investigation at once and identified three suspects through fingerprints and CCTV. In searches, the police seized more than twenty phones and impounded the gang’s bank cards.

anna 目前，两名罪犯已被逮捕，一人被拘留；另一名同伙被通缉以后，昨天晚上已到派出所自首。追回的钱将还给受害人。
mùqián liǎng míng zuìfàn yǐ bèi dàibǔ yì rén bèi jūliú lìng yì míng tónghuǒ bèi tōngjī yǐhòu zuótiān wǎnshang yǐ dào pàichūsuǒ zìshǒu zhuī huí de qián jiāng huán gěi shòuhàirén · At present, two offenders have been arrested and one detained; another accomplice, on the wanted list, turned himself in at a police station last night. Recovered money will be returned to the victims.

anna 警察提醒市民：欺诈、讹诈的花样很多，要提高警惕，加强防范；不要胡乱点开陌生链接；发现问题，请及时举报。毒品害人，一定要远离。”
jǐngchá tíxǐng shìmín qīzhà ézhà de huāyàng hěn duō yào tígāo jǐngtì jiāqiáng fángfàn búyào húluàn diǎn kāi mòshēng liànjiē fāxiàn wèntí qǐng jíshí jǔbào dúpǐn hài rén yídìng yào yuǎnlí · The police remind the public that frauds and extortion come in many forms: stay alert and take precautions, don’t click on unknown links without thinking, and report any problems promptly. Drugs ruin lives: stay well away.”

lawyer sun 写得好。这个案件说明，犯罪的人总会留下踪迹。
xiě de hǎo zhège ànjiàn shuōmíng fànzuì de rén zǒng huì liúxia zōngjì · Well written. This case shows that criminals always leave traces.

editor lin 谢谢。警察说，这几个人以前就因盗窃进过监狱，出来以后又开始犯罪。
xièxie jǐngchá shuō zhè jǐ gè rén yǐqián jiù yīn dàoqiè jìn guo jiānyù chūlái yǐhòu yòu kāishǐ fànzuì · Thanks. The police say these men had been in prison for theft before, and started again once they got out.

anna 希望他们这次在监狱里好好学个技术。
xīwàng tāmen zhè cì zài jiānyù lǐ hǎohǎo xué gè jìshù · I hope this time they learn a proper trade while they’re inside.

editor lin 执法要严，也要给人改的机会。囚犯能学好，社会的治安也会更好。
zhífǎ yào yán yě yào gěi rén gǎi de jīhuì qiúfàn néng xué hǎo shèhuì de zhìān yě huì gèng hǎo · Law enforcement has to be strict, but it should also give people a chance to change. If prisoners can turn their lives around, public safety improves for everyone.

chapter 5 chapter 5: dinner, and what comes next

ms zhang 安娜，祝贺你！你又躲过一个骗子，跟我上次一样，挂了电话就报警。
Ānnà zhùhè nǐ nǐ yòu duǒ guò yí gè piànzi gēn wǒ shàng cì yíyàng guà le diànhuà jiù bàojǐng · Anna, congratulations! And you dodged another scammer: just like me last time, hang up and call the police.

dr li 这个房东，先违约，再恐吓，最后还想诬陷你。真没想到。
zhège fángdōng xiān wéiyuē zài kǒnghè zuìhòu hái xiǎng wūxiàn nǐ zhēn méi xiǎng dào · That landlord: first he breaks the contract, then he threatens you, and in the end he tries to frame you. Who'd have thought it?

anna 这全是他的阴谋。他还想收买保安，给他们好处费，让他们替他说话。幸好保安没有收他的钱，也没有包庇他。
zhè quán shì tā de yīnmóu tā hái xiǎng shōumǎi bǎoān gěi tāmen hǎochù fèi ràng tāmen tì tā shuōhuà xìnghǎo bǎoān méiyǒu shōu tā de qián yě méiyǒu bāobì tā · It was all his scheme. He even tried to buy off the guards with a backhander so they'd speak up for him. Luckily they didn't take his money or cover for him.

xiaoming 这就是贿赂！还好他没敢动手殴打你，也没来闹事。违法的人，早晚会受到法律的制裁。
zhè jiùshì huìlù hái hǎo tā méi gǎn dòngshǒu ōudǎ nǐ yě méi lái nàoshì wéifǎ de rén zǎowǎn huì shòudào fǎlǜ de zhìcái · That's bribery! At least he didn't dare hit you or come round making trouble. People who break the law get punished sooner or later.

anna 后来他私下跟我说，他不是成心的，是一个不法中介教他这么做的。孙律师已经向有关部门揭发了这家中介。
hòulái tā sīxià gēn wǒ shuō tā bú shì chéngxīn de shì yí gè bùfǎ zhōngjiè jiāo tā zhème zuò de Sūnlǜshī yǐjīng xiàng yǒuguān bùmén jiēfā le zhè jiā zhōngjiè · Afterwards he told me privately he hadn't meant it: an unscrupulous letting agent had told him to do it. Lawyer Sun has already reported the agency to the authorities.

dr li 这种中介早就应该取缔了！
zhè zhǒng zhōngjiè zǎo jiù yīnggāi qǔdì le · Agencies like that should have been shut down long ago!

anna 这件事让我学到了很多：签合同要看清每一条条款；受了欺负，要依法维权；接到陌生电话，要保持警惕。这次给我敲响了警钟。
zhè jiàn shì ràng wǒ xué dào le hěn duō qiān hétóng yào kàn qīng měi yì tiáo tiáokuǎn shòu le qīfu yào yīfǎ wéiquán jiē dào mòshēng diànhuà yào bǎochí jǐngtì zhè cì gěi wǒ qiāo xiǎng le jǐngzhōng · I've learned a lot from all this: read every clause before you sign; if someone bullies you, defend your rights according to the law; when a stranger calls, stay on your guard. It was a real wake-up call.

little sister 就像侦探小说：先发现踪迹，再找证据，最后坏人自己掉进了陷阱！我正在看的那本，侦探猛然发现，凶手就是那个最热心的邻居。
jiù xiàng zhēntàn xiǎoshuō xiān fāxiàn zōngjì zài zhǎo zhèngjù zuìhòu huài rén zìjǐ diào jìn le xiànjǐng wǒ zhèngzài kàn de nà běn zhēntàn měngrán fāxiàn xiōngshǒu jiùshì nàge zuì rèxīn de línjū · Just like a detective novel: first you find the tracks, then the evidence, and in the end the bad guy falls into his own trap! In the one I'm reading, the detective suddenly realises the culprit is the most helpful neighbour of all.

xiaoming 又是凶手！你的小说里不是杀手，就是强盗。
yòu shì xiōngshǒu nǐ de xiǎoshuō lǐ bú shì shāshǒu jiùshì qiángdào · Culprits again! Your novels are all hired killers or robbers.

little sister 还有歹徒劫持飞机、绑架人质，家人拿钱去赎人……还有间谍呢！他偷偷进了禁区，被人监视了，可是他没回头，径直走了出去。
hái yǒu dǎitú jiéchí fēijī bǎngjià rénzhì jiārén ná qián qù shú rén hái yǒu jiàndié ne tā tōutōu jìn le jìnqū bèi rén jiānshì le kěshì tā méi huítóu jìngzhí zǒu le chuqu · And thugs hijacking planes, taking hostages, families paying ransoms… and spies! He sneaks into a no-go zone and is being watched, but he doesn't look back: he walks straight out.

ms zhang 好了好了，吃饭的时候不说这些。正义得到了伸张，安娜的人身和财产都安全了，这才是最重要的。
hǎo le hǎo le chī fàn de shíhou bù shuō zhèxiē zhèngyì dédào le shēnzhāng Ānnà de rénshēn hé cáichǎn dōu ānquán le zhè cái shì zuì zhòngyào de · All right, that's enough: none of that at the dinner table. Justice has been done and Anna and her things are safe: that's what matters.

ms zhang 下一步呢？两个月以后住哪儿？
xià yí bù ne liǎng gè yuè yǐhòu zhù nǎr · So what's next? Where will you live in two months?

anna 我想找一个老小区，邻居多，治安好，晚上有人巡逻，门口有人看守。陈教授说，他们小区正在搞一个新项目，下个月还要开居民大会。
wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè lǎo xiǎoqū línjū duō zhìān hǎo wǎnshang yǒu rén xúnluó ménkǒu yǒu rén kānshǒu Chénjiàoshòu shuō tāmen xiǎoqū zhèngzài gǎo yí gè xīn xiàngmù xià gè yuè hái yào kāi jūmín dàhuì · I'd like an older estate: lots of neighbours, safe streets, someone patrolling at night and someone on the gate. Professor Chen says his estate is starting some new project, and they're having a residents' meeting next month.

dr li 那你去看看。说不定，你下一个房东就是个好人。
nà nǐ qù kàn kan shuōbudìng nǐ xià yí gè fángdōng jiùshì gè hǎo rén · Go and have a look, then. Who knows, your next landlord might be a good one.

anna 希望如此！这次我先请孙律师看合同，再签字。
xīwàng rúcǐ zhè cì wǒ xiān qǐng Sūnlǜshī kàn hétóng zài qiānzì · I hope so! This time I'll get Lawyer Sun to read the contract before I sign.

A contract, a lawyer, the evidence and a mediator: you followed a real dispute in Chinese from the first message to the signed agreement.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 118 government at work

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 16 · society and government

Explain how a policy travels from the top to your street: who issues it, who approves it, who carries it out, and say what an action is based on with 经, 依, 鉴于, 基于 and 本着.

Notices on estate gates, news about new measures and every application you make in China use this language. You will read 经……批准 and 公示 on your own building's door.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
行政	xíngzhèng	administration; administrative	她在学校负责行政工作。 She is in charge of administration at the school.
机关	jīguān	government office; mechanism	他大学毕业后在政府机关工作。 After university he went to work in a government office.
国务院	guówùyuàn	the State Council (China's cabinet)	国务院是中国最高的行政机关。 The State Council is China's highest administrative body.
委员	wěiyuán	committee member	她是家长委员会的委员。 She is a member of the parents' committee.
委员会	wěiyuánhuì	committee	小区成立了一个环保委员会。 The estate has set up an environment committee.
干部	gànbù	official, cadre	村里的干部常常到农民家里了解情况。 The village officials often visit farmers at home to see how things are.
公务	gōngwù	official business	他这次去上海是办公务。 He is going to Shanghai on official business.
公职	gōngzhí	public office, government post	他离开了公职，自己开了一家公司。 He left his government job and started his own company.
公仆	gōngpú	public servant	官员应该是人民的公仆。 Officials should be servants of the people.
官僚	guānliáo	bureaucrat; bureaucratic	办一个证要跑五个地方，太官僚了！ Five offices for one certificate: what bureaucracy!
书记	shūjì	secretary (job title of an official)	新来的村书记是个大学生。 The new village head is a university graduate.
基层	jīcéng	grassroots, local level	他在基层工作了十年。 He worked at the grassroots for ten years.
上层	shàngcéng	upper level	这件事要等上层决定。 This has to wait for a decision from higher up.
管辖	guǎnxiá	to have jurisdiction over	这条街归哪个派出所管辖？ Which police station covers this street?
辖区	xiáqū	area under one's jurisdiction	警察对自己辖区的情况很熟悉。 The police know their own area very well.

直辖市	zhíxiáshì	municipality (Beijing, Shanghai…)	北京和上海都是直辖市。 Beijing and Shanghai are both municipalities.
自治区	zìzhìqū	autonomous region	中国一共有五个自治区。 China has five autonomous regions.
体制	tǐzhì	system (of organisation)	教育体制改革是大家关心的话题。 Reform of the education system is something everyone cares about.
方针	fāngzhēn	policy, guiding principle	学校的方针是“安全第一”。 The school’s guiding principle is “safety first”.
纲领	gānglǐng	programme, guiding principle	这份文件是我们今后工作的纲领。 This document sets out the programme for our future work.
举措	jǔcuò	measure, step	政府出台了一系列保护老街的新举措。 The government has brought in a series of new measures to protect the old streets.
出台	chūtái	to be introduced (a policy)	新的养老政策下个月出台。 The new pension policy will be introduced next month.
颁布	bānbù	to promulgate, issue (a law)	这部法律是去年颁布的。 This law was issued last year.
颁发	bānfā	to issue, award	学校给优秀学生颁发了奖学金。 The school awarded scholarships to its best students.
施行	shīxíng	to put into effect	这部法律从明年一月一号起施行。 This law comes into force on 1 January next year.
试行	shìxíng	to try out	这个办法先试行半年。 We’ll try this method out for six months first.
试点	shìdiǎn	pilot (scheme); to run a pilot	我们小区是垃圾分类的试点。 Our estate is a pilot site for rubbish sorting.
贯彻	guànchè	to carry through, implement	新政策要贯彻到基层。 The new policy must be carried right through to the grassroots.
落实	luòshí	to put into practice	计划好做，落实难。 Making plans is easy; carrying them out is hard.
审批	shěnpī	to examine and approve	开饭馆要先通过审批。 To open a restaurant you first need official approval.
申报	shēnbào	to declare, apply	入境时，超过规定的现金要申报。 When you enter the country, cash above the limit must be declared.
申领	shēnlǐng	to apply for and collect	你可以在网上申领新的身份证。 You can apply for a new ID card online.
告示	gàoshi	notice (posted up)	门口贴着一张告示。 There’s a notice up by the door.
通告	tōnggào	public notice; to announce	物业发了通告：明天停水。 The management has put out a notice: the water will be off tomorrow.
公示	gōngshì	to publish for public comment	名单要先公示七天。 The list must first be made public for seven days.

pattern on the basis of: 经, 依, 鉴于, 基于, 本着

经 / 依 / 鉴于 / 基于 / 本着 | the basis | , the decision or action

Official Chinese starts by saying what an action rests on. 经 “after, through” (经研究, 经批准), 依 “according to” (依规定), 鉴于 “in view of”, 基于 “based on” and 本着 “in the spirit of” (本着……的原则). Today they also mix with a turn: 虽然……，但是……

经市政府批准，我们小区成为老小区改造的试点。 **jīng shì zhèngfǔ pīzhǔn wǒmen xiǎoqū chéngwéi lǎo xiǎoqū gǎizào de shìdiǎn** With the city government’s approval, our estate has become a pilot site for renovating old estates.

依规定，加装电梯要先申报，再审批。 **yī guīdìng jiā zhuāng diàntī yào xiān shēnbào zài shěnpī** Under the rules, putting in a lift has to be applied for first, then approved.

本着公开的原则，方案要在楼门口公示十天。 **běnzhe gōngkāi de yuánzé fāngàn yào zài lóu ménkǒu gōngshì shí tiān** In the spirit of openness, the plan is posted at the entrance for ten days for comment.

政策虽然出台了，资金也有了，但是落实起来并不容易。 **zhèngcè suīrán chūtái le zījīn yě yǒu le dànshì luòshí qǐlai bìng bù róngyì** The policy has come out and the money is there, but carrying it out is far from easy.

dialogue a notice at the gate

anna 陈教授，门口这张告示写的是什么？

Chénjiàoshòu ménkǒu zhè zhāng gàoshi xiě de shì shénme · Professor Chen, what does this notice at the gate say?

professor chen 是街道的通告：经市政府批准，我们小区成为老小区改造的试点，要给六层的老楼加装电梯。

shì jiēdào de tōnggào jīng shì zhèngfǔ pīzhǔn wǒmen xiǎoqū chéngwéi lǎo xiǎoqū gǎizào de shìdiǎn yào gěi liù céng de lǎo lóu jiā zhuāng diàntī · It's a notice from the street office: with the city government's approval, our estate has become a pilot site for renovating old estates, and the old six-storey blocks are getting lifts.

anna 这个政策是谁出台的？

zhège zhèngcè shì shéi chūtái de · Who brought in this policy?

professor chen 国务院几年前就定了支持老小区改造的方针，各个城市再根据自己的情况出台具体的举措。北京是直辖市，有自己的办法。

guówùyuàn jǐ nián qián jiù dìng le zhīchí lǎo xiǎoqū gǎizào de fāngzhēn gègè chéngshì zài gēnjù zìjǐ de qíngkuàng chūtái jùtǐ de jǔcuò Běijīng shì zhíxiáshì yǒu zìjǐ de bànfǎ · The State Council set the guiding principle of supporting the renovation of old estates a few years ago, and each city then brings in concrete measures to suit itself. Beijing is a municipality, so it has its own scheme.

xiaoming 去年市里颁布了新的条例，明年一月起施行。现在先在几个小区试行。

qùnián shì lǐ bānbù le xīn de tiáolì míngnián yī yuè qǐ shīxíng xiànzài xiān zài jǐ gè xiǎoqū shìxíng · Last year the city issued new regulations that come into force next January. For now they're being tried out on a few estates.

anna 那具体由谁来落实？

nà jùtǐ yóu shéi lái luòshí · So who actually carries it out?

professor chen 基层。上层定方针，基层抓落实：街道的干部和社区的工作人员，天天跑来跑去。光有纲领不行，要贯彻到每一栋楼。

jīcéng shàngcéng dìng fāngzhēn jīcéng zhuā luòshí jiēdào de gànbù hé shèqū de gōngzuò rényuán tiān tiān pǎo lái pǎo qù guāng yǒu gānglǐng bùxíng yào guànchè dào měi yí dòng lóu · The grassroots. Higher up they set the principles, and the grassroots puts them into practice: the street office officials and community workers run around every day. A programme on paper isn't enough: it has to reach every single building.

anna 装电梯要审批吗？

zhuāng diàntī yào shěnpī ma · Does a lift need official approval?

professor chen 要。依规定，先由居民申报，经三分之二以上的住户同意，再报有关部门审批。批下来以后，本着公开的原则，方案要在楼门口公示十天。

yào yī guīdìng xiān yóu jūmín shēnbào jīng sān fēn zhī èr yǐshàng de zhùhù tóngyì zài bào yǒuguān bùmén shěnpī pī xiàlái yǐhòu běnzhe gōngkāi de yuánzé fāngàn yào zài lóu ménkǒu gōngshì shí tiān · Yes. Under the rules, the residents apply first; once at least two thirds of the households agree, it goes to the authorities for approval. After it's approved, in the spirit of openness, the plan is posted at the entrance for ten days for comment.

xiaoming 这些规章，楼门口的住户须知上也写了。

zhèxiē guīzhāng lóu ménkǒu de zhùhù xūzhī shàng yě xiě le · These rules are in the residents' notes at the entrance too.

anna 鉴于很多老人爬楼困难，这个办法真好。可是谁来管这些事？

jiànyú hěn duō lǎorén pá lóu kùnnan zhège bànfǎ zhēn hǎo kěshì shéi lái guǎn zhèxiē shì · Since lots of older people struggle with the stairs, it's a great idea. But who looks after all this?

professor chen 小区成立了一个电梯委员会，我是委员之一，专门听大家的意见。这个小区归哪个街道管辖，归哪个派出所的辖区，治安由谁负责，我都清楚。

xiǎoqū chénglì le yí gè diàntī wěiyuánhuì wǒ shì wěiyuán zhī yī zhuānmén tīng dàjiā de yìjiàn zhège xiǎoqū guī nǎge jiēdào guǎnxiá guī nǎge pàichūsuǒ de xiáqū zhìān yóu shéi fùzé wǒ dōu qīngchu · The estate has set up a lift committee, and I'm one of the members: our job is to listen to what everyone thinks. I know exactly which street office the estate comes under, which police station covers it and who is in charge of public order.

xiaoming 陈教授，您以前是不是在政府机关工作过？
Chénjiàoshòu nín yǐqián shì bu shì zài zhèngfǔ jīguān gōngzuò guo · Professor Chen, did you ever work in a government office?

professor chen 没有，我一辈子在大学教书。不过我的学生里有不少人担任了公职，有的在行政机关，有的当了村里的书记，有的常常出差办公务，还去过自治区。
méiyǒu wǒ yíbèizi zài dàxué jiāo shū búguò wǒ de xuéshēng lǐ yǒu bù shǎo rén dānrèn le gōngzhí yǒude zài xíngzhèng jīguān yǒude dāng le cūn lǐ de shūjì yǒude chángcháng chūchāi bàn gōngwù hái qù guo zìzhìqū · No, I've taught at the university all my life. But plenty of my students went into public service: some in government offices, some became village heads, and some travel a lot on official business, out to the autonomous regions too.

professor chen 我总对他们说：干部是人民的公仆，办事不能官僚，更不能贪污。
wǒ zǒng duì tāmen shuō gànbù shì rénmín de gōngpú bànshì bù néng guānliáo gèng bù néng tānwū · I always tell them: officials are servants of the people; they mustn't be bureaucratic, and they must never embezzle.

anna 上个月我去申领新的工作证，跑了三个窗口，真有点儿官僚。
shàng gè yuè wǒ qù shēnlǐng xīn de gōngzuò zhèng pǎo le sān gè chuāngkǒu zhēn yǒudiǎnr guānliáo · Last month I went to apply for my new work permit and had to go to three different counters: a bit bureaucratic, if you ask me.

xiaoming 我上次去办事，也跑了好几趟。有人还说可以给工作人员送些钱，那不是贿赂吗？
wǒ shàng cì qù bànshì yě pǎo le hǎo jǐ tàng yǒu rén hái shuō kěyǐ gěi gōngzuò rényuán sòng xiē qián nà bú shì huìlù ma · When I went to sort something out last time, I had to go back several times too. Someone even said I could slip the staff some money: isn't that bribery?

professor chen 这几年好多了，很多手续在网上就能办。这也是行政体制改革的一部分。对了，上个月区里还给我们小区颁发了“文明小区”的牌子！
zhè jǐ nián hǎo duō le hěn duō shǒuxù zài wǎngshang jiù néng bàn zhè yě shì xíngzhèng tǐzhì gǎigé de yí bùfen duì le shàng gè yuè qū lǐ hái gěi wǒmen xiǎoqū bānfā le wénmíng xiǎoqū de páizi · It's much better these days: lots of things can be done online. That's part of the reform of the administrative system too. Oh, and last month the district gave our estate a "model estate" plaque!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

舆 yú the public (old: carriage)	
曝 bào expose to sun	
乞 qǐ beg	
忠 zhōng loyal	

good to know · 颁布 is to issue a law or rule; 颁发 is to award a certificate, prize or licence; 出台 is when a policy comes out. 公示 is a public posting for comment: plans, lists of prize-winners and promotions are often 公示 for 5 to 15 days so people can object.

From the State Council to your stairwell: you can now follow a policy all the way down to the notice on your own gate.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 119 votes and voices

Talk about elections, votes and public opinion in a neutral way, from a student union to a residents' committee, and link cause, result and purpose with 故, 以至于 and 以.

Elections happen everywhere: in schools, clubs, companies and neighbourhoods. And 故, 以至于 and 以 are the written links you meet in every report of a vote.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
选举	xuǎnjǔ	election; to elect	学生会每年选举一次。 The student union holds elections every year.
选民	xuǎnmín	voter	选民可以在网上了解候选人。 Voters can find out about the candidates online.
竞选	jìngxuǎn	to run for (office)	她决定竞选学生会主席。 She has decided to run for student union president.
候选人	hòuxuǎnrén	candidate	这次一共有三位候选人。 There are three candidates this time.
提名	tímíng	to nominate	他被提名为{wei2}最佳男演员。 He has been nominated for best actor.
推选	tuīxuǎn	to choose, elect (by agreement)	大家推选她当代表。 Everyone chose her as their representative.
表决	biǎojué	to vote (on a motion)	这个方案需要大家举手表决。 We need a show of hands on this plan.
否决	fǒujué	to vote down, veto	这个提议被大多数人否决了。 The proposal was voted down by the majority.
决议	juéyì	resolution	会议通过了一项决议。 The meeting passed a resolution.
弃权	qìquán	to abstain; to forfeit	表决的时候，有两个人弃权。 Two people abstained in the vote.
连任	liánrèn	to be re-elected, serve again	她连任了三届班长。 She was class monitor three years running.
任期	rènqī	term of office	主任的任期是三年。 The director's term is three years.
罢免	bàmiǎn	to recall, remove from office	选民有权罢免不为大家办事的代表。 Voters have the right to remove a representative who does nothing for them.
下台	xiàtái	to step down; to get out of a fix	你这么说，让他怎么下台? If you say that, how is he going to save face?
宣誓	xuānshì	to take an oath	新医生毕业的时候要宣誓。 New doctors take an oath when they graduate.
席位	xíwèi	seat (in a body)	这个委员会一共有十五个席位。 The committee has fifteen seats in all.
政党	zhèngdǎng	political party	很多国家有不同的政党。 Many countries have several political parties.

党	dǎng	(political) party	这个国家有两个大党。 That country has two big parties.
派别	pàibié	faction, school (of thought)	这个协会里有好几个派别，常常意见不同。 There are several factions in the association, and they often disagree.
阵营	zhènyíng	camp, side	在这个问题上，大家分为两个阵营。 On this question, people split into two camps.
团员	tuányuán	member (of a group, a tour)	旅游团的团员都到齐了。 All the members of the tour group are here.
同志	tóngzhì	comrade	在老电影里，大家都互相叫“同志”。 In old films, everyone calls each other “comrade”.
民意	mínyì	public opinion	这次调查反映了民意。 This survey reflects public opinion.
呼声	hūshēng	voice, call (of the public)	要求修地铁的呼声越来越高。 The calls for a metro line are getting louder.
呼吁	hūyù	to appeal, call on	专家呼吁大家少用塑料袋。 Experts are calling on everyone to use fewer plastic bags.
倡导	chàngdǎo	to advocate, promote	学校倡导绿色出行。 The school encourages green ways of getting about.
倡议	chàngyì	to propose; proposal	我们倡议每个家庭节约用水。 We propose that every family save water.
鼓动	gǔdòng	to urge, egg on	是他鼓动我去参加比赛的。 He was the one who talked me into entering the competition.
煽动	shāndòng	to incite, stir up	有人在网上煽动不满情绪。 Someone is stirring up resentment online.
动员	dòngyuán	to mobilise, get people involved	学校动员学生参加公益活动。 The school is getting students to take part in community work.
集会	jíhuì	to assemble; a rally	周末广场上有一个环保集会。 There’s an environmental rally in the square this weekend.
游行	yóuxíng	to parade, march; parade	节日那天，街上有盛大的游行。 On the festival day there’s a grand parade in the street.
示威	shìwēi	to demonstrate; to show strength	比赛前，球迷大声唱歌，向对手示威。 Before the match the fans sang at the top of their voices to show the other side who was boss.
抗议	kàngyì	to protest	居民抗议工厂太吵。 Residents are protesting that the factory is too noisy.
抗争	kàngzhēng	to fight against, resist	她一直在和疾病抗争。 She has been fighting her illness all along.

pattern **cause, result and purpose: (因)……故……, 以至于, ……以……**

(因) cause | ，故 / 以至于 result | · action，以 + purpose

Written Chinese has short links. (因)……，故…… is “because …, therefore …”: 故 is the formal 所以. ……，以至于…… is “so much so that …”, for a result that went far. ……，以…… puts a purpose after the action: “in order to”.

因去年参加的人太少，故今年改在网上投票。 **yīn qùnián cānjiā de rén tài shǎo gù jīnnián gǎi zài wǎngshang tóupiào** Because too few people took part last year, voting will be online this year.

去年开会的人少得可怜，以至于很多事都定不下来。 **qùnián kāihuì de rén shǎo de kělián yǐzhìyú hěn duō shì dōu dìng bu xialai** So pitifully few people came to meetings last year that a lot of things couldn’t be decided.

小区重新讨论电梯的方案，以争取更多住户的支持。 **xiǎoqū chóngxīn tǎolùn diàntī de fāngàn yǐ zhēngqǔ gèng duō zhùhù de zhīchí** The estate is discussing the lift plan again, in order to win the support of more households.

dialogue two elections

little sister 安娜，我决定竞选学生会主席了！是你鼓动我的，你得帮我！
Ānnà wǒ juédìng jìngxuǎn xuéshēng huì zhǔxí le shì nǐ gǔdòng wǒ de nǐ děi bāng wǒ · Anna, I've decided to run for student union president! You talked me into it, so you have to help!

anna 太好了！有几个候选人？
tài hǎo le yǒu jǐ gè hòuxuǎnrén · Fantastic! How many candidates are there?

little sister 三个。我是同学们推选出来的，老师也提名了我。我倡导“少开会，多做事”，还倡议食堂晚上开到十点。
sān gè wǒ shì tóngxuémen tuīxuǎn chulai de lǎoshī yě tímíng le wǒ wǒ chàngdǎo shǎo kāihuì duō zuò shì hái chàngyì shítáng wǎnshang kāi dào shí diǎn · Three. My classmates chose me, and a teacher nominated me too. I'm all for "fewer meetings, more action", and I'm proposing the canteen stays open till ten at night.

anna 同学们的呼声你都听到了。民意就在食堂里！
tóngxuémen de hūshēng nǐ dōu tīng dào le mínyì jiù zài shítáng lǐ · You've heard what your classmates are calling for. Public opinion lives in the canteen!

little sister 对！我还要在食堂门口张贴海报，让大家都知道。
duì wǒ hái yào zài shítáng ménkǒu zhāngtiē hǎibào ràng dàjiā dōu zhīdào · Right! And I'll put up posters at the canteen door so everyone knows.

little sister 因去年参加投票的人太少，故今年改在网上投票，以方便大家。我还要动员合唱团的团员都来投票。
yīn qùnián cānjiā tóupiào de rén tài shǎo gù jīnnián gǎi zài wǎngshang tóupiào yǐ fāngbiàn dàjiā wǒ hái yào dòngyuán héchàng tuán de tuányuán dōu lái tóupiào · Because too few people voted last year, the vote is online this year, to make it easier for everyone. And I'm going to get everyone in the choir to vote.

professor chen 我们小区下个月也要选举新的居民委员会。十八岁以上的居民都是选民。
wǒmen xiǎoqū xià gè yuè yě yào xuǎnjǔ xīn de jūmín wěiyuánhuì shíbā suì yǐshàng de jūmín dōu shì xuǎnmín · Our estate is electing a new residents' committee next month too. Every resident over eighteen is a voter.

anna 委员的任期多长？
wěiyuán de rènqī duō cháng · How long is a member's term?

professor chen 五年，可以连任。如果委员不为大家办事，居民也可以依法罢免他。
wǔ nián kěyǐ liánrèn rúguǒ wěiyuán bú wèi dàjiā bànshì jūmín yě kěyǐ yīfǎ bàmiǎn tā · Five years, and they can be re-elected. If a member does nothing for people, the residents can also remove them according to the law.

professor chen 去年小区开会的人少得可怜，以至于很多事都定不下来。所以街道干部呼吁大家都来参加选举。
qùnián xiǎoqū kāihuì de rén shǎo de kělián yǐzhìyú hěn duō shì dōu dìng bu xialai suǒyǐ jiēdào gànbù hūyù dàjiā dōu lái cānjiā xuǎnjǔ · So few people came to the estate's meetings last year that a lot of things couldn't be decided. That's why the street office officials are urging everyone to take part in the election.

anna 电梯的方案也要表决吗？
diàntī de fāngàn yě yào biǎojué ma · Does the lift plan go to a vote too?

professor chen 要。上次一楼的几户反对，方案被否决了。这次我们重新讨论，以争取更多人支持。表决的时候也可以弃权。会议通过的决议，大家都要遵守。
yào shàng cì yì lóu de jǐ hù fǎnduì fāngàn bèi fǒujué le zhè cì wǒmen chóngxīn tǎolùn yǐ zhēngqǔ gèng duō rén zhīchí biǎojué de shíhou yě kěyǐ qìquán huìyì tōngguò de juéyì dàjiā dōu yào zūnshǒu · Yes. Last time a few ground-floor households were against it, and the plan was voted down. This time we're discussing it again to win more support. You can also abstain when it comes to the vote. Whatever resolution the meeting passes, everyone has to abide by it.

anna 这样做公开透明，是个好举措。
zhèyàng zuò gōngkāi tòumíng shì gè hǎo jǔcuò · That's open and transparent: a good measure.

professor chen 要求装电梯的呼声越来越高，可是选举要讲道理，不能在网上煽动情绪。我的一个老同学一直在和疾病抗争，他坐着轮椅也要来投票。
yāoqiú zhuāng diàntī de hūshēng yuè lái yuè gāo kěshì xuǎnjǔ yào jiǎng dàolǐ bù néng zài wǎngshang

shāndòng qíngxù wǒ de yí gè lǎo tóngxué yìzhí zài hé jíbìng kàngzhēng tā zuò zhe lúnyǐ yě yào lái tóupiào · The calls for a lift are getting louder, but an election should be about reason, not stirring up feelings online. An old classmate of mine has been fighting an illness for years, and he's coming to vote in his wheelchair.

anna 在英国，大选的时候，新闻里天天讲：两个大党争夺席位，选民分为两个阵营；除了大党，还有几个小政党和派别。

zài Yīngguó dà xuǎn de shíhou xīnwén lǐ tiān tiān jiǎng liǎng gè dà dǎng zhēngduó xíwèi xuǎnmín fēnwéi liǎng gè zhènyíng chúle dà dǎng hái yǒu jǐ gè xiǎo zhèngdǎng hé pàibié · In the UK, at election time the news talks about nothing else: the two big parties fight for seats and voters split into two camps; besides the big parties there are several small parties and factions.

anna 选举以前，街上有很多集会和游行，有时候也有人示威、抗议。选完以后，有人连任，有人下台，新当选的人要宣誓。

xuǎnjǔ yǐqián jiē shàng yǒu hěn duō jíhuì hé yóuxíng yǒu shíhou yě yǒu rén shìwēi kàngyì xuǎn wán yǐhòu yǒu rén liánrèn yǒu rén xiàtái xīn dāngxuǎn de rén yào xuānshì · Before an election there are lots of rallies and marches in the streets, and sometimes demonstrations and protests too. Afterwards, some are re-elected, some step down, and the newly elected take an oath.

professor chen 我年轻的时候，大家见面都叫“同志”，连机关里的领导也一样。现在这个词只在老电影里听得到了。

wǒ niánqīng de shíhou dàjiā jiànmiàn dōu jiào tóngzhì lián jīguān lǐ de lǐngdǎo yě yíyàng xiànzài zhège cí zhǐ zài lǎo diànyǐng lǐ tīng de dào le · When I was young, everyone called each other “comrade”, even the bosses in government offices. Now you only hear that word in old films.

little sister 下周的竞选辩论我好紧张。要是对方问的问题我答不上来，我就下不了台了！

xià zhōu de jìngxuǎn biànlùn wǒ hǎo jǐnzhāng yàoshi duìfāng wèn de wèntí wǒ dá bu shanglai wǒ jiù xià bu liǎo tái le · I'm so nervous about next week's campaign debate. If I can't answer the other side's questions, I'll be left with no way out!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

聆 líng listen

骚 sāo disturb, grievance

辩 biàn to argue, to debate

阐 chǎn explain

good to know · 选举 is the election; 竞选 is to run in it; 候选人 is a candidate; 选民 is a voter; 投票 is to cast a vote; 当选 is to be elected. 下台 is literally “to get off the stage”: to step down, but also to get out of an awkward spot. 下不了台 means “to be left with no way to save face”.

Candidates, votes, abstentions and a recall: you can now follow any election in Chinese and explain why and how it was held.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 120 nations and diplomacy

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 16 · society and government

Follow news about summits, treaties and alliances, deal with your consulate, and build sentences with one condition inside another.

International news is full of summits, talks and agreements, and as a foreigner in China you will need your consulate one day. Conditions inside conditions are how officials and journalists say exactly what happens if, and if not.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
共和国	gònghéguó	republic	中华人民共和国成立于1949年。 The People's Republic of China was founded in 1949.
国徽	guóhuī	national emblem	护照上印着国徽。 The passport has the national emblem printed on it.
国土	guótǔ	(national) territory, land	中国的国土面积很大。 China covers a very large area.
领土	lǐngtǔ	territory	每个国家都有自己的领土。 Every country has its own territory.
主权	zhǔquán	sovereignty	尊重各国主权是国际关系的基本原则。 Respect for each country's sovereignty is a basic principle of international relations.
国民	guómín	citizens, the nation's people	提高国民的健康水平很重要。 Improving the nation's health matters a great deal.
外籍	wàijí	foreign (nationality)	我们公司有不少外籍员工。 Our company has quite a few foreign staff.
元首	yuánshǒu	head of state	两国元首在北京见面。 The two heads of state met in Beijing.
首脑	shǒunǎo	leader (at a summit), head	二十个国家的首脑都来了。 The leaders of twenty countries all came.
峰会	fēnghuì	summit	今年的峰会在上海举行。 This year's summit is held in Shanghai.
会谈	huìtán	talks; to hold talks	两国领导人进行了会谈。 The two countries' leaders held talks.
会晤	huìwù	to meet (formally)	双方在会晤中谈到了经济合作。 At the meeting the two sides discussed economic cooperation.
接见	jiējiàn	to receive (a visitor)	校长接见了获奖的学生。 The head teacher received the prize-winning students.
出访	chūfǎng	to visit abroad (officially)	总统下个月出访欧洲。 The president visits Europe next month.
使者	shǐzhě	envoy, messenger	|大熊猫{==giant panda}被称为“和平使者”。 Giant pandas are called “ambassadors of peace”.

领事	lǐngshì	consul	领事负责帮助在国外的本国公民。 A consul helps their own country's citizens abroad.
领事馆	lǐngshìguǎn	consulate	护照丢了，要马上联系领事馆。 If you lose your passport, contact the consulate at once.
双边	shuāngbiān	bilateral	两国签了一项双边协议。 The two countries signed a bilateral agreement.
多边	duōbiān	multilateral	这个问题需要多边合作。 This problem needs multilateral cooperation.
单边	dānbiān	unilateral	单边的做法解决不了问题。 Going it alone won't solve the problem.
单方面	dānfāngmiàn	one-sided; unilaterally	房东不能单方面提高房租。 A landlord can't raise the rent unilaterally.
条约	tiáoyuē	treaty	两国签订了和平条约。 The two countries signed a peace treaty.
公约	gōngyuē	convention, pact	很多国家加入了保护环境的公约。 Many countries have joined the convention on protecting the environment.
协定	xiédìng	(formal) agreement	两国签订了贸易协定。 The two countries signed a trade agreement.
宣言	xuānyán	declaration	双方发表了一份共同宣言。 The two sides issued a joint declaration.
联盟	liánméng	alliance, league	几家公司组成了联盟。 Several companies have formed an alliance.
同盟	tóngméng	alliance; to ally	历史上，两国曾经结成同盟。 In history, the two countries were once allies.
盟友	méngyǒu	ally	这两个国家是多年的盟友。 The two countries have been allies for many years.
中立	zhōnglì	neutral; to stay neutral	在这件事上，我保持中立。 I'm staying neutral on this.
干涉	gānshè	to interfere	父母不应该过多干涉孩子的选择。 Parents shouldn't interfere too much in their children's choices.
干预	gānyù	to intervene	医生及时干预，病人很快好了。 The doctor stepped in in time, and the patient soon recovered.
介入	jièrù	to get involved, step in	警察已经介入调查。 The police have stepped in to investigate.
施压	shīyā	to put pressure on	员工向公司施压，要求提高工资。 The staff are pressing the company for a pay rise.
软实力	ruǎnshílì	soft power	文化是国家软实力的一部分。 Culture is part of a country's soft power.
和平共处	hépínggòngchǔ	peaceful coexistence	不同的国家应该和平共处。 Different countries should live together in peace.

pattern conditions inside conditions

如果 A，就 B ； **如果不 A / 但是如果 C，就 D**

A long condition sentence can set out two cases side by side (如果……就……；如果不……就……), or put a second condition inside the first (只要……就……，但是如果……，那么……). Read each 如果 / 只要 / 要是 as the start of a new case. And today's old friend: ……不说，还…… "not only …, but also …".

如果材料齐全，两周就能拿到新护照；如果不齐全，就要再等一个月。 **rúguǒ cáiliào qíquán liǎng zhōu jiù néng ná dào xīn hùzhào rúguǒ bù qíquán jiù yào zài děng yí gè yuè** If your documents are complete, you get your new passport in two weeks; if not, you wait another month.

只要双方愿意谈，就有希望；但是如果一方单方面退出，那么协定就没有用了。 **zhǐyào shuāngfāng yuànyì tán jiù yǒu xīwàng dànshì rúguǒ yì fāng dānfāngmiàn tuìchū nàme xiédìng jiù méi yǒuyòng le** As long as both sides are willing to talk, there is hope; but if one side pulls out unilaterally, the agreement is worthless.

开峰会那几天，路上堵车不说，地铁还特别挤。 **kāi fēnghuì nà jǐ tiān lùshang dǔchē bù shuō dìtiě hái tèbié jǐ** During the summit, not only were the roads jammed, the metro was packed too.

dialogue summit week

anna 林编辑，我下午要去大使馆，护照快到期了。
Línbiānjí wǒ xiàwǔ yào qù dà shǐguǎn hùzhào kuài dàoqī le · Editor Lin, I'm going to the embassy this afternoon: my passport's about to expire.

editor lin 办护照要多久？
bàn hùzhào yào duō jiǔ · How long does a passport take?

anna 领事说，如果材料齐全，两周就能拿到；如果不齐全，就要再等一个月。我们国家在中国有不少公民，大使馆一直很忙。
lǐngshì shuō rúguǒ cáiliào qíquán liǎng zhōu jiù néng ná dào rúguǒ bù qíquán jiù yào zài děng yí gè yuè wǒmen guójiā zài Zhōngguó yǒu bù shǎo gōngmín dà shǐguǎn yìzhí hěn máng · The consul says if the documents are complete, two weeks; if not, another month. Lots of our citizens live in China, so the embassy is always busy.

editor lin 你护照封面上的图案是你们的国徽吧？我这周忙死了，要报道峰会：二十个国家的元首和首脑都来北京了，光是外籍记者就有几百个。
nǐ hùzhào fēngmiàn shàng de túàn shì nǐmen de guóhuī ba wǒ zhè zhōu máng sǐ le yào bàodào fēnghuì èrshí gè guójiā de yuánshǒu hé shǒunǎo dōu lái Běijīng le guāng shì wàijí jìzhě jiù yǒu jǐ bǎi gè · The design on your passport cover is your national emblem, right? I'm run off my feet this week covering the summit: the heads of state and government of twenty countries are in Beijing, and there are hundreds of foreign journalists alone.

anna 怪不得！开峰会这几天，路上堵车不说，地铁还特别挤。
guàibude kāi fēnghuì zhè jǐ tiān lùshang dǔchē bù shuō dìtiě hái tèbié jǐ · That explains it! This summit week, not only are the roads jammed, the metro is packed too.

editor lin 各国领导人先举行多边会谈，然后两两会晤，讨论双边合作。主人还要接见各国的代表。有的总统开完会还要出访别的国家。
gè guó lǐngdǎo rén xiān jǔxíng duōbiān huìtán ránhòu liǎngliǎng huìwù tǎolùn shuāngbiān hézuò zhǔrén hái yào jiējiàn gè guó de dàibiǎo yǒude zǒngtǒng kāi wán huì hái yào chūfǎng biéde guójiā · The leaders hold multilateral talks first, then meet in pairs to discuss bilateral cooperation. The host will also receive each country's delegation. Some presidents are going on to visit other countries after the summit.

dr zhou 我只关心气候。这次峰会会不会发表一份共同宣言，支持保护环境的公约？
wǒ zhǐ guānxīn qìhòu zhè cì fēnghuì huì bu huì fābiǎo yí fèn gòngtóng xuānyán zhīchí bǎohù huánjìng de gōngyuē · All I care about is the climate. Will the summit issue a joint declaration backing the environmental convention?

editor lin 可能会。不过各国的利益不同：有的国家只想签双边协定，有的愿意签多边条约。
kěnéng huì búguò gè guó de lìyì bù tóng yǒude guójiā zhǐ xiǎng qiān shuāngbiān xiédìng yǒude yuànyì qiān duōbiān tiáoyuē · Possibly. But countries have different interests: some only want bilateral agreements, others are willing to sign multilateral treaties.

dr zhou 气候不是一个国家的事，单边的做法解决不了问题。只要大家一起做，就有希望；但是如果有的国家单方面退出，那么别的国家做得再多也不够。
qìhòu bú shì yí gè guójiā de shì dānbiān de zuòfǎ jiějué bu liǎo wèntí zhǐyào dàjiā yìqǐ zuò jiù yǒu xīwàng dànshì rúguǒ yǒude guójiā dānfāngmiàn tuìchū nàme biéde guójiā zuò de zài duō yě búgòu · The climate isn't one country's business: going it alone won't solve anything. As long as everyone acts together, there's hope; but if some countries pull out unilaterally, then however much the others do, it won't be enough.

editor lin 这些年，保护环境的呼声越来越高了。
zhèxiē nián bǎohù huánjìng de hūshēng yuè lái yuè gāo le · Calls to protect the environment have grown louder in recent years.

anna 国际关系真复杂。别的国家出了大事，要不要干预呢？
guójì guānxì zhēn fùzá biéde guójiā chū le dàshì yào búyào gānyù ne · International relations are so complicated. If something big happens in another country, should others intervene?

editor lin 这是个难题。一般来说，国际关系的原则是尊重各国的主权和领土完整，不干涉别的国家内部的事，和平共处。如果对方请求帮助，国际社会就可以介入；如果没有请求，介入就可能被看成干涉。

zhè shì gè nántí yìbān lái shuō guójì guānxì de yuánzé shì zūnzhòng gè guó de zhǔquán hé lǐngtǔ wánzhěng bù gānshè biéde guójiā nèibù de shì hépíng gòngchǔ rúguǒ duìfāng qǐngqiú bāngzhù guójì shèhuì jiù kěyǐ jièrù rúguǒ méiyǒu qǐngqiú jièrù jiù kěnéng bèi kàn chéng gānshè · It's a hard question. Generally, the principles of international relations are respect for each country's sovereignty and territorial integrity, non-interference in other countries' internal affairs, and peaceful coexistence. If a country asks for help, the international community can step in; if not, stepping in may be seen as interference.

dr zhou 有的国家一直保持中立，不参加任何联盟；也有的国家结成同盟，是多年的盟友，常常一起向别的国家施压。

yǒude guójiā yìzhí bǎochí zhōnglì bù cānjiā rènhé liánméng yě yǒude guójiā jié chéng tóngméng shì duō nián de méngyǒu chángcháng yìqǐ xiàng biéde guójiā shīyā · Some countries have always stayed neutral and joined no alliances; others have formed alliances and been allies for years, often putting pressure on other countries together.

anna 我觉得文化也很重要。大熊猫到了哪个国家，哪个国家的人都喜欢。

wǒ juéde wénhuà yě hěn zhòngyào dàxióngmāo dào le nǎge guójiā nǎge guójiā de rén dōu xǐhuan · I think culture matters a lot too. Wherever giant pandas go, people love them.

editor lin 对，大熊猫被称为“和平使者”。电影、音乐、美食，都是一个国家的软实力。

duì dàxióngmāo bèi chēngwéi hépíng shǐzhě diànyǐng yīnyuè měishí dōu shì yí gè guójiā de ruǎnshílì · Yes: giant pandas are called “ambassadors of peace”. Films, music and food are all part of a country's soft power.

anna 难怪电影节总是倡导大家多看看别的国家的电影。

nánguài diànyǐng jié zǒngshì chàngdǎo dàjiā duō kàn kan biéde guójiā de diànyǐng · No wonder the film festival always encourages people to watch more films from other countries.

dr zhou 中国国土面积这么大，北方下雪的时候，南方还很暖和。光是美食，就够世界学很多年了。

Zhōngguó guótǔ miànjī zhème dà běifāng xià xuě de shíhou nánfāng hái hěn nuǎnhuo guāng shì měishí jiù gòu shìjiè xué hěn duō nián le · China is so huge that when it snows in the north, it's still warm in the south. The food alone could keep the world learning for years.

anna 那我下午先去大使馆，晚上再看你的峰会报道。中华人民共和国成立以来，北京一定开过很多这样的会吧?

nà wǒ xiàwǔ xiān qù dà shǐguǎn wǎnshang zài kàn nǐ de fēnghuì bàodào Zhōnghuá rénmín gònghéguó chénglì yǐlái Běijīng yídìng kāi guo hěn duō zhèyàng de huì ba · Then I'll go to the embassy this afternoon and read your summit report tonight. Beijing must have hosted lots of meetings like this since the People's Republic was founded.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

诠
quán
explain

谎
huǎng
lie

贬
biǎn
lower, demote

侃
kǎn
chat, banter

good to know · 会谈 is talks; 会晤 is a formal meeting between leaders; 接见 is when someone senior receives a visitor; 出访 is an official visit abroad. 干涉 is to interfere (negative); 干预 is to intervene (more neutral: a doctor can 干预 too); 介入 is simply to get involved.

Summits, treaties and a trip to your consulate: you can now read world news in Chinese and get your own papers sorted.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 121 rich and poor

Talk respectfully about wealth, poverty, discrimination and help for people in need, and say "even …, let alone …" with 连……都……，更不用说……了.

Livelihoods, migrant workers and fairness are among the most discussed topics in China, in the news and at the dinner table. Talking about them kindly and accurately takes exactly these words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
阶层	jiēcéng	social stratum	社会各个阶层的人都关心教育。 People from every walk of life care about education.
阶级	jiējí	(social) class	这本书|写的是十九世纪英国的工人阶级。 The book is about the working class in 19th-century Britain.
底层	dǐcéng	bottom (of society, a pile)	这部电影讲的是城市底层人的生活。 The film is about the lives of people at the bottom of city life.
低下	dīxià	low (status, ability)	过去，女性的社会地位很低下。 In the past, women had a very low place in society.
精英	jīngyīng	elite	这所大学培养了很多社会精英。 This university has trained many of society's elite.
弱势	ruòshì	disadvantaged; a weak position	社会要多关心弱势群体。 Society should do more for disadvantaged groups.
歧视	qíshì	to discriminate against	我们反对任何形式的歧视。 We oppose discrimination in any form.
种族	zhǒngzú	race, ethnic group	不管什么种族，人人平等。 Whatever their race, all people are equal.
农民工	nóngmíngōng	migrant worker (from the countryside)	城市的发展离不开农民工。 Cities couldn't grow without migrant workers.
流浪	liúlàng	to wander; homeless, stray	她收养了一只流浪猫。 She has adopted a stray cat.
乞丐	qǐgài	beggar	故事里，王子和乞丐换了衣服。 In the story, the prince and the beggar swap clothes.
乞讨	qǐtǎo	to beg	他小时候曾经在街上乞讨。 As a child he once begged in the street.
贫穷	pínqióng	poor; poverty	教育是改变贫穷的好办法。 Education is a good way out of poverty.
小康	xiǎokāng	moderately well-off	现在村里家家都过上了小康生活。 Now every family in the village is comfortably off.
民生	mínshēng	people's livelihood	住房、看病、上学都是民生问题。 Housing, healthcare and schooling are all livelihood issues.

剥削	bōxuē	to exploit	在旧社会，工人受到严重的剥削。 In the old society, workers were badly exploited.
压迫	yāpò	to oppress	这部小说写的是对压迫的反抗。 The novel is about resistance to oppression.
压榨	yāzhà	to squeeze, exploit	有的老板压榨员工，天天让他们加班。 Some bosses squeeze their staff, making them work overtime every day.
特权	tèquán	privilege	在法律面前，谁都没有特权。 No one is privileged before the law.
权威	quánwēi	authority; authoritative	他是这个领域的权威。 He is an authority in this field.
声势	shēngshì	momentum, impact	这次活动声势很大，全城都知道了。 The campaign made a big splash: the whole city heard about it.
世人	shìrén	people (of the world)	长城让世人看到了古代中国人的智慧。 The Great Wall shows the world the wisdom of the ancient Chinese.
半边天	bànbiāntiān	“half the sky”: women	妇女能顶半边天。 Women hold up half the sky.
风气	fēngqì	general mood, common practice	公司里形成了互相帮助的好风气。 A good habit of helping each other has grown up in the company.
腐败	fǔbài	corrupt; rotten	反对腐败是每个国家的大事。 Fighting corruption matters to every country.
人道	réndào	humane; humanity	这样对待动物太不人道了。 Treating animals like that is inhumane.
外援	wàiyuán	foreign aid; foreign player	这支球队请了两名外援。 The team has signed two foreign players.
援助	yuánzhù	to aid; assistance	很多国家向灾区提供了援助。 Many countries have sent aid to the disaster area.
支援	zhīyuán	to support, assist	城里的医生去农村支援。 Doctors from the city are going to help out in the countryside.
扶持	fúchí	to support, help (to grow)	政府扶持小企业发展。 The government helps small businesses grow.
补助	bǔzhù	subsidy, allowance	学校给贫困学生发补助。 The school gives allowances to poor students.
抚恤	fǔxù	to compensate (a bereaved family)	政府为牺牲的消防员家属提供了抚恤。 The government gave support to the families of the firefighters who died.
安置	ānzhì	to settle, find a place for	政府把受灾的居民安置在学校里。 The government housed the flood victims in a school.
迁移	qiānyí	to migrate, move	每年秋天，这些鸟都会向南迁移。 Every autumn these birds migrate south.
驱逐	qūzhú	to expel, drive out	他因为违法被驱逐出境。 He was deported for breaking the law.

pattern 连……都……，更不用说……了: even …, let alone …

连 A 都 / 也 … | ，更不用说 | B | 了

连 A 都 … picks the most basic case (“even A”); 更不用说 B 了 adds the bigger case that obviously follows (“let alone B”). It often sits inside a climbing sentence: 不但……而且……甚至……

他连工资都拿不到，更不用说保险了。 **tā lián gōngzī dōu ná bu dào gèng búyòng shuō bǎoxiǎn le** He can’t even get his wages, let alone insurance.

他们不但工作累，而且工资低，甚至连住的地方都没有。 **tāmen búdàn gōngzuò lèi érqiě gōngzī dī shènzhì lián zhù de dìfang dōu méiyǒu** Not only is their work exhausting and their pay low, some don’t even have a place to live.

这么难的问题，连老师都要想一会儿，更不用说学生了。 **zhème nán de wèntí lián lǎoshī dōu yào xiǎng yíhuìr gèng búyòng shuō xuéshēng le** A question this hard makes even the teacher stop and think, let alone the students.

dialogue an essay on migrant workers

little sister 爸爸，我在写社会学的论文，题目是“城市里的农民工”。可以采访你吗？
bàba wǒ zài xiě shèhuì xué de lùnwén tímù shì chéngshì lǐ de nóngmíngōng kěyǐ cǎifǎng nǐ ma · Dad, I'm writing a sociology essay called “Migrant workers in the city”. Can I interview you?

dr li 好题目。城市的发展离不开农民工，我们医院的新楼就是他们盖的。
hǎo tímù chéngshì de fāzhǎn lí bu kāi nóngmíngōng wǒmen yīyuàn de xīn lóu jiùshì tāmen gài de · Good topic. Cities couldn't grow without migrant workers: they built our hospital's new wing.

little sister 很多农民工从农村迁移到城市，干最累的工作，可是工资低。有的老板压榨他们，连工资都不按时发，更不用说保险了。
hěn duō nóngmíngōng cóng nóngcūn qiānyí dào chéngshì gàn zuì lèi de gōngzuò kěshì gōngzī dī yǒude lǎobǎn yāzhà tāmen lián gōngzī dōu bú ànshí fā gèng búyòng shuō bǎoxiǎn le · Lots of migrant workers move from the countryside to the city and do the hardest work, but the pay is low. Some bosses squeeze them: they don't even pay wages on time, let alone insurance.

ms zhang 这几年好多了，政府颁布了不少保护他们的规定，他们的孩子也能在城里上学了。
zhè jǐ nián hǎo duō le zhèngfǔ bānbù le bù shǎo bǎohù tāmen de guīdìng tāmen de háizi yě néng zài chéng lǐ shàngxué le · It's much better these days: the government has issued lots of rules to protect them, and their children can go to school in the city now.

dr li 以前有些人瞧不起农民工，这是歧视。不管是什么人，什么种族，都应该平等对待。
yǐqián yǒuxiē rén qiáo bu qǐ nóngmíngōng zhè shì qíshì bùguǎn shì shénme rén shénme zhǒngzú dōu yīnggāi píngděng duìdài · Some people used to look down on migrant workers: that's discrimination. Whoever someone is, whatever their race, they should be treated as equals.

little sister 我们老师是这个领域的权威。他说，社会有不同的阶层：精英阶层收入高，底层的人收入低，社会地位也低下。社会要多关心弱势群体。
wǒmen lǎoshī shì zhège lǐngyù de quánwēi tā shuō shèhuì yǒu bù tóng de jiēcéng jīngyīng jiēcéng shōurù gāo dǐcéng de rén shōurù dī shèhuì dìwèi yě dīxià shèhuì yào duō guānxīn ruòshì qúntǐ · Our teacher is an authority in the field. He says society has different strata: the elite earn a lot, people at the bottom earn little and have a low social standing too. Society should do more for disadvantaged groups.

anna 我在英国读书的时候，读过很多写十九世纪工人阶级的小说。工人不但受剥削，而且受压迫，甚至连孩子都要去工厂干活。
wǒ zài Yīngguó dúshū de shíhou dú guo hěn duō xiě shíjiǔ shìjì gōngrén jiējí de xiǎoshuō gōngrén búdàn shòu bōxuē érqiě shòu yāpò shènzhì lián háizi dōu yào qù gōngchǎng gànhuó · When I was studying in the UK I read lots of novels about the 19th-century working class. Workers were not only exploited but oppressed, and even children had to work in the factories.

dr li 那是过去。现在大家讲民生：住房、看病、上学都是民生问题。在法律面前，谁都没有特权。
nà shì guoqu xiànzài dàjiā jiǎng mínshēng zhùfáng kànbìng shàngxué dōu shì mínshēng wèntí zài fǎlǜ miànqián shéi dōu méiyǒu tèquán · That was the past. These days the talk is of livelihoods: housing, healthcare and schooling are all livelihood issues. And no one is privileged before the law.

ms zhang 这些年反对腐败的声势很大，社会风气也好多了。我们公司每年都支援山区的学校，扶持当地的小企业，还给贫困学生发补助。
zhèxiē nián fǎnduì fǔbài de shēngshì hěn dà shèhuì fēngqì yě hǎo duō le wǒmen gōngsī měi nián dōu zhīyuán shānqū de xuéxiào fúchí dāngdì de xiǎo qǐyè hái gěi pínkùn xuéshēng fā bǔzhù · The fight against corruption has had a lot of momentum in recent years, and the general climate is much better. Every year our company supports schools in the mountains, helps local small businesses, and gives allowances to poor students.

little sister 几十年里，中国有几亿人走出了贫穷，世人都很关注。现在很多村子都过上了小康生活。
jǐ shí nián lǐ Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ yì rén zǒu chū le pínqióng shìrén dōu hěn guānzhù xiànzài hěn duō cūn zi dōu guò shàng le xiǎokāng shēnghuó · Over a few decades, hundreds of millions of people in China have left poverty behind, and the world has taken notice. Many villages are now comfortably off.

anna 这件事在国际上影响也很大，很多外籍记者都来报道过。
zhè jiàn shì zài guójì shàng yǐngxiǎng yě hěn dà hěn duō wàijí jìzhě dōu lái bàodào guo · It has made a big

impression internationally too: lots of foreign journalists have come to report on it.

anna 我在地铁里见过一个乞讨的老人，不知道该不该给钱。小时候我读过一本书，讲王子和乞丐换衣服，我一直很同情乞丐。

wǒ zài dìtiě lǐ jiàn guo yí gè qǐtǎo de lǎorén bù zhīdào gāi bu gāi gěi qián xiǎoshíhou wǒ dú guo yì běn shū jiǎng wángzǐ hé qǐgài huàn yīfu wǒ yìzhí hěn tóngqíng qǐgài · I've seen an old man begging in the metro and didn't know whether to give him money. As a child I read a book about a prince and a beggar who swap clothes, and I've always felt for beggars.

dr li 真有困难的人，可以去救助站。政府会安置流浪的人，帮他们回家。

zhēn yǒu kùnnan de rén kěyǐ qù jiùzhù zhàn zhèngfǔ huì ānzhì liúlàng de rén bāng tāmen huí jiā · People in real need can go to a relief centre. The government finds places for homeless people and helps them get home.

ms zhang 女性的变化也很大。过去女性的地位很低下，现在妇女能顶半边天：我们公司一半的经理是女的。

nǚxìng de biànhuà yě hěn dà guòqù nǚxìng de dìwèi hěn dīxià xiànzài fùnǚ néng dǐng bànbiāntiān wǒmen gōngsī yíbàn de jīnglǐ shì nǚ de · Things have changed a lot for women too. Women used to have a very low standing; now women hold up half the sky: half the managers at our company are women.

dr li 上个月有个消防员救火时牺牲了，政府给他的家属提供了抚恤。地震的时候，很多国家也提供了人道援助。帮助别人，这就是讲人道。

shàng gè yuè yǒu gè xiāofáng yuán jiù huǒ shí xīshēng le zhèngfǔ gěi tā de jiāshǔ tígōng le fǔxù dìzhèn de shíhou hěn duō guójiā yě tígōng le réndào yuánzhù bāngzhù biérén zhè jiùshì jiǎng réndào · Last month a firefighter died fighting a fire, and the government gave support to his family. When there was an earthquake, many countries sent humanitarian aid too. Helping others: that's what being humane means.

little sister 说到外援，我们学校的篮球队今年请了两名外援！

shuō dào wàiyuán wǒmen xuéxiào de lánqiú duì jīnnián qǐng le liǎng míng wàiyuán · Talking of foreign help, our university basketball team has signed two foreign players this year!

anna 哈哈！我们外国人在中国要守法，要是违法，可能会被驱逐出境。所以我的签证从来不过期！

hā hā wǒmen wàiguó rén zài Zhōngguó yào shǒu fǎ yàoshi wéifǎ kěnéng huì bèi qūzhú chūjìng suǒyǐ wǒ de qiānzhèng cónglái bú guòqī · Ha! We foreigners in China have to keep the law: break it and you could be deported. That's why my visa never runs out!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

嚷
rǎng
to shout, to yell

吼
hǒu
to roar, to bellow

哼
hēng
to hum; to snort

宪
xiàn
constitution

good to know · 援助, 支援 and 扶持 are all “help”: 援助 is aid (often from outside), 支援 is support sent to where it is needed, 扶持 is helping something grow. 外援 is foreign aid, but in sport it is a foreign player: 这支球队有三名外援.

Class, livelihoods, discrimination and help: you can now talk about fairness in Chinese with care and the right words.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 122 power and reform

Talk about the rise and fall of dynasties and about reform today, extend a topic across a paragraph with 不仅如此, 此外 and 与此同时, and use the pattern 无A不B.

History books, museum labels and news about reform all build long paragraphs that add point after point. Knowing the linking words lets you follow, and write, a whole paragraph, not just a sentence.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
政权	zhèngquán	regime, political power	历史上，这个政权只存在了十五年。 In history, this regime lasted only fifteen years.
专制	zhuānzhì	autocratic; autocracy	古代的皇帝大多是专制的。 Most emperors in ancient times ruled as autocrats.
主义	zhǔyì	-ism, doctrine	他是个乐观主义者。 He is an optimist.
社会主义	shèhuìzhǔyì	socialism	这本课本介绍了社会主义和其他几种经济制度。 The textbook describes socialism and several other economic systems.
局势	júshì	situation (overall)	比赛的局势突然变了。 The match suddenly swung the other way.
动荡	dòngdàng	turbulent, unstable	那是一个动荡的年代。 It was a turbulent time.
骚乱	sāoluàn	riot, disturbance	历史书上记载了这次骚乱。 The history books record the riot.
颠覆	diānfù	to overturn, subvert	智能手机颠覆了人们的生活方式。 The smartphone turned the way we live upside down.
分裂	fēnliè	to split	这个乐队因为意见不同而分裂了。 The band split up because of disagreements.
崛起	juéqǐ	to rise (to power, fame)	这座城市在十年里迅速崛起。 The city rose fast in just ten years.
复兴	fùxīng	to revive; revival	这条老街正在复兴。 This old street is coming back to life.
振兴	zhènxīng	to revitalise	发展旅游业可以振兴乡村经济。 Tourism can revitalise the rural economy.
富强	fùqiáng	prosperous and strong	每个人都希望自己的国家富强。 Everyone wants their country to be prosperous and strong.
昌盛	chāngshèng	flourishing, prosperous	那是一个繁荣昌盛的时代。 It was an age of prosperity.
太平	tàipíng	peaceful	只有天下太平，老百姓才能过好日子。 Only when the world is at peace can ordinary people live well.
造福	zàofú	to benefit, bring good to	这条新铁路将造福沿线的居民。 The new railway will benefit people living along the line.

整治	zhěngzhì	to clean up, sort out	政府正在整治河道污染。 The government is cleaning up the river.
放宽	fàngkuān	to relax (rules)	很多城市放宽了落户条件。 Many cities have relaxed the conditions for registering as a resident.
废除	fèichú	to abolish	这条旧规定早就被废除{fei4chu2}了。 This old rule was abolished long ago.
解散	jiěsàn	to dissolve, disband	那个乐队去年解散了。 The band broke up last year.
抵制	dǐzhì	to boycott, resist	我们要抵制假冒产品。 We should boycott counterfeit goods.
争端	zhēngduān	dispute	两国通过谈判解决了争端。 The two countries settled their dispute through negotiation.
监察	jiānchá	to supervise, inspect (officials)	监察部门负责调查官员的问题。 The supervisory department investigates problems with officials.
监管	jiānguǎn	to supervise, regulate	食品安全需要严格监管。 Food safety needs strict regulation.
视察	shìchá	to inspect (on an official visit)	市长来学校视察。 The mayor is coming to inspect the school.
巡视	xúnshì	to make an inspection tour	校长每天早上在校园里巡视一圈。 The head teacher does a round of the school every morning.
授予	shòuyǔ	to award, confer	学校授予他“优秀教师”称号。 The school gave him the title “outstanding teacher”.
表彰	biǎozhāng	to commend, honour	公司表彰了今年的优秀员工。 The company honoured this year’s outstanding staff.
锦旗	jǐnqí	silk banner (a thank-you gift)	病人给医生送了一|面锦旗。 The patient gave the doctor a silk banner.
旗帜	qízhì	flag, banner	运动员举着旗帜走进体育场。 The athletes marched into the stadium carrying banners.
征集	zhēngjí	to collect, call for	博物馆正在向市民征集老照片。 The museum is asking the public for old photos.
公办	gōngbàn	state-run	这是一所公办幼儿园，学费不高。 This is a state-run kindergarten, and the fees are low.
公立	gōnglì	public (school, hospital)	他在公立医院工作。 He works in a public hospital.
民办	mínbàn	privately run	民办学校的学费一般比较高。 Private schools usually charge higher fees.
民用	mínyòng	civilian, for civil use	这种技术现在也用在民用飞机上了。 This technology is now used on civilian planes too.

pattern extending a topic: 不仅如此, 此外, 与此同时 (and 无a不b)

topic sentence. **不仅如此 / 此外 / 与此同时 / 更重要的是,** **the next point.**

A good paragraph states its topic, then adds to it. 不仅如此 “what’s more” raises the stakes, 此外 “besides” adds another point, 与此同时 “at the same time” adds something happening alongside, and 更重要的是 saves the key point for last. Also back today: 无A不B, “there’s no A that isn’t B”: 无人不知 (everyone knows), 无处不在 (it’s everywhere).

以前这条河又脏又臭。不仅如此，河边还堆满了垃圾。与此同时，工厂越开越多，河水越来越差。 **yǐqián zhè tiáo hé yòu zāng yòu chòu bùjǐn rúcǐ hé biān hái duī mǎn le lājī yǔ cǐ tóngshí gōngchǎng yuè kāi yuè duō hé shuǐ yuè lái yuè chà** This river used to be dirty and smelly. What’s more, its banks were piled with rubbish. At the same time, more and more factories opened and the water got worse and worse.

政府开始整治河道，废除了旧的规定，加强了监管。此外，还放宽了条件，鼓励民办企业参加。 **zhèngfǔ kāishǐ zhěngzhì hé dào fèichú le jiù de guīdìng jiāqiáng le jiānguǎn cǐwài hái fàngkuān le tiáojiàn gǔlì mínbàn qǐyè cānjiā** The government began to clean up the river, abolished the old rules and tightened regulation. Besides that, it relaxed the conditions to encourage private firms to take part.

现在，河边的公园无人不知。更重要的是，它造福了沿线的居民。 **xiànzài hé biān de gōngyuán wú rén bù zhī gèng zhòngyào de shì tā zàofú le yánxiàn de jūmín** Now everyone knows the riverside park. More importantly, it has benefited the people who live along the river.

dialogue a thousand years of a river

professor chen 这个展览讲的是城里这条河的一千年。你们看，第一部分讲的是古代：一个政权建立，一个政权灭亡，河边的城市也跟着变化。

zhège zhǎnlǎn jiǎng de shì chéng lǐ zhè tiáo hé de yìqiān nián nǐmen kàn dì yī bùfen jiǎng de shì gǔdài yí gè zhèngquán jiànlì yí gè zhèngquán mièwáng hé biān de chéngshì yě gēn zhe biànhuà · This exhibition tells the story of our city's river over a thousand years. Look: the first part is about ancient times: one regime rises, another falls, and the city by the river rises and falls with them.

little sister 古代的皇帝大多是专制的吧？他们都有很多特权。

gǔdài de huángdì dàduō shì zhuānzhì de ba tāmen dōu yǒu hěn duō tèquán · Most ancient emperors were autocrats, weren't they? They all had lots of privileges.

professor chen 对。天下太平的时候，国家富强，城市繁荣昌盛，唐朝、宋朝都是这样。可是到了动荡的年代，常有骚乱，老百姓很贫穷，国家甚至分裂。

duì tiānxià tàipíng de shíhou guójiā fùqiáng chéngshì fánróng chāngshèng Tángcháo Sòngcháo dōu shì zhèyàng kěshì dào le dòngdàng de niándài cháng yǒu sāoluàn lǎobǎixìng hěn pínqióng guójiā shènzhì fēnliè · Yes. When the land was at peace, the country was rich and strong and the cities flourished: the Tang and the Song were like that. But in turbulent times there were often riots, ordinary people were poor, and the country even split apart.

anna 这条河见过多少朝代的变化啊！

zhè tiáo hé jiàn guo duōshao cháodài de biànhuà a · How many dynasties has this river seen rise and fall!

professor chen 第二部分讲近代：城市怎样一步步崛起。那个时候，各种主义都有人讲，课本上也讲了社会主义和其他几种经济制度。

dì èr bùfen jiǎng jìndài chéngshì zěnyàng yí bù bu juéqǐ nàge shíhou gèzhǒng zhǔyì dōu yǒu rén jiǎng kèběn shàng yě jiǎng le shèhuì zhǔyì hé qítā jǐ zhǒng jīngjì zhìdù · The second part is about modern times: how the city rose step by step. Back then people argued for all kinds of "-isms", and textbooks described socialism and several other economic systems.

little sister 第三部分最有意思，讲的是这条河的整治。以前河水又脏又臭。不仅如此，河边还堆满了垃圾。

dì sān bùfen zuì yǒu yìsi jiǎng de shì zhè tiáo hé de zhěngzhì yǐqián hé shuǐ yòu zāng yòu chòu bùjǐn rúcǐ hé biān hái duī mǎn le lājī · The third part is the most interesting: it's about cleaning up the river. The water used to be dirty and smelly. What's more, the banks were piled with rubbish.

professor chen 后来政府开始整治：废除了一些旧规定，加强了监管，监察部门也查了不少问题。此外，还放宽了条件，鼓励民办企业参加。与此同时，市长多次来视察，河边天天有人巡视。

hòulái zhèngfǔ kāishǐ zhěngzhì fèichú le yìxiē jiù guīdìng jiāqiáng le jiānguǎn jiānchá bùmén yě chá le bù shǎo wèntí cǐwài hái fàngkuān le tiáojiàn gǔlì mínbàn qǐyè cānjiā yǔ cǐ tóngshí shì zhǎng duō cì lái shìchá hé biān tiān tiān yǒu rén xúnshì · Then the government started the clean-up: it abolished some old rules and tightened regulation, and the supervisory department looked into a lot of problems. Besides that, it relaxed the conditions to encourage private firms to join in. At the same time, the mayor came to inspect it several times, and people patrolled the banks every day.

anna 现在河边的公园在这里无人不知。周末那里无处不是散步的人。

xiànzài hé biān de gōngyuán zài zhèlǐ wú rén bù zhī zhōumò nàlǐ wú chù bú shì sànbù de rén · Now everyone here knows the riverside park. At weekends there are people out walking everywhere you look.

professor chen 更重要的是，它造福了沿线的居民。旁边还新开了一所公办幼儿园和一家公立医院，振兴了这一带的经济。

gèng zhòngyào de shì tā zàofú le yánxiàn de jūmín pángbiān hái xīn kāi le yì suǒ gōngbàn yòuéryuán hé yì jiā gōnglì yīyuàn zhènxīng le zhè yídài de jīngjì · More importantly, it has benefited the people living along the river. A state kindergarten and a public hospital have opened nearby too, and the local economy has been revitalised.

anna 政府还扶持了河边的小店，很多人都过上了小康生活。

zhèngfǔ hái fúchí le hé biān de xiǎo diàn hěn duō rén dōu guò shàng le xiǎokāng shēnghuó · The government also supported the little shops by the river, and lots of people are comfortably off now.

little sister 这面锦旗是谁送的?
zhè miàn jǐnqí shì shéi sòng de · Who gave this silk banner?

professor chen 是河边的居民送给清洁工人的。市里还授予他们“优秀集体”称号，在大会上表彰了他们，大家举着旗帜给他们鼓掌。
shì hé biān de jūmín sòng gěi qīngjié gōngrén de shì lǐ hái shòuyǔ tāmen yōuxiù jítǐ chēnghào zài dàhuì shàng biǎozhāng le tāmen dàjiā jǔ zhe qízhì gěi tāmen gǔzhǎng · The residents by the river gave it to the cleaning workers. The city also gave them the title “outstanding team” and honoured them at a big ceremony, where everyone waved flags and applauded them.

anna 以前也有过争端吗?
yǐqián yě yǒu guo zhēngduān ma · Were there ever any disputes?

professor chen 有。上游的工厂和下游的村子争了很多年。最后，污染大的工厂被要求解散或者搬走，大家也开始抵制污染环境的产品，社会风气变了。
yǒu shàngyóu de gōngchǎng hé xiàyóu de cūn zi zhēng le hěn duō nián zuìhòu wūrǎn dà de gōngchǎng bèi yāoqiú jiěsàn huòzhě bān zǒu dàjiā yě kāishǐ dǐzhì wūrǎn huánjìng de chǎnpǐn shèhuì fēngqì biàn le · Yes. The factories upstream and the villages downstream argued for years. In the end, the most polluting factories were made to close down or move, people started boycotting products that pollute, and attitudes in society changed.

little sister 最后一部分讲未来：智能手机颠覆了人们的生活方式，很多新技术将来也会用在民用领域，比如用小飞机送快递。局势变得真快!
zuìhòu yí bùfen jiǎng wèilái zhìnéng shǒujī diānfù le rénmen de shēnghuó fāngshì hěn duō xīn jìshù jiānglái yě huì yòng zài mínyòng lǐngyù bǐrú yòng xiǎo fēijī sòng kuàidì júshì biàn de zhēn kuài · The last part is about the future: smartphones have turned our lives upside down, and lots of new technology will be put to civilian use in future, like little aircraft delivering parcels. Things are changing so fast!

professor chen 博物馆还在向市民征集老照片。安娜，你拍的河边照片，也可以送来。
bówùguǎn hái zài xiàng shìmín zhēngjí lǎo zhàopiàn Ānnà nǐ pāi de hé biān zhàopiàn yě kěyǐ sòng lái · The museum is also collecting old photos from the public. Anna, you could bring in your photos of the river too.

anna 好啊！我觉得这条河也在复兴，就像一个老人又年轻了。
hǎo a wǒ juéde zhè tiáo hé yě zài fùxīng jiù xiàng yí gè lǎorén yòu niánqīng le · I’d love to! I feel the river is coming back to life too, like an old man growing young again.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

刑
xíng
punishment

讼
sòng
dispute in court

冤
yuān
an injustice; unfair, not worth it

逮
dǎi
to catch (spoken)

good to know · 公办 and 公立 are state-run (公立学校, 公立医院); 民办 is privately run. 民用 is civilian, as opposed to military (军用). 复兴 is a revival (文艺复兴 the Renaissance), 振兴 is to revitalise (振兴乡村 revitalise the countryside), 崛起 is a rise.

Dynasties, reforms and a river brought back to life: you can now follow, and build, a whole paragraph in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 123 crisis and danger

Describe a crisis, a hidden danger and a hard time in life, chain several causes and effects in one sentence, and switch topics smoothly with 说到, 至于 and 话说回来.

Every news story about an emergency, and every talk about a hard life, uses these words. And chains of causes are how people explain how things got so bad.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
危及	wēijí	to endanger	吸烟会危及健康。 Smoking endangers your health.
危急	wēijí	critical, in danger	情况危急，马上叫救护车！ It's an emergency: call an ambulance now!
紧迫	jǐnpò	pressing, urgent	时间紧迫，我们得快一点。 Time is short: we need to hurry.
急迫	jípò	urgent, eager	他急迫地想知道考试结果。 He is desperate to know his exam results.
严峻	yánjùn	severe, grim	我们面临的形势很严峻。 The situation we face is grim.
艰巨	jiānjù	arduous, formidable	这是一项艰巨的任务。 This is a formidable task.
艰险	jiānxiǎn	hardships and dangers	登山的路十分艰险。 The path up the mountain is hard and dangerous.
棘手	jíshǒu	thorny, tricky	这个问题很棘手。 This is a tricky problem.
困境	kùnjìng	predicament, difficult position	公司现在陷入了困境。 The company is now in difficulties.
逆境	nìjìng	adversity	在逆境中，他也没有放弃。 He didn't give up, even in adversity.
难关	nánguān	difficulty, crisis	大家一起努力，度过难关。 Let's pull together and get through this.
难处	nánchù	difficulty (that one faces)	每个人都有自己的难处。 Everyone has their own troubles.
处境	chǔjìng	situation, plight	他现在的处境很困难。 He is in a difficult position now.
境地	jìngdì	plight, position	他把自己逼到了没有退路的境地。 He has backed himself into a corner.
境遇	jìngyù	circumstances, lot (in life)	她很同情这些孩子的境遇。 She feels for these children and what they've been through.
坎坷	kǎnkě	rough, full of setbacks	他的人生道路很坎坷。 His life has been full of setbacks.
曲折	qūzhé	winding, complicated	这个故事的情节很曲折。 The story has a twisting plot.

波折	bōzhé	setback, twists and turns	事情经过了一番波折，终于解决了。 After a few twists and turns, the matter was finally settled.
周折	zhōuzhé	trouble, hassle	费了一番周折，才拿到签证。 It took quite a bit of trouble to get the visa.
磨难	mónàn	tribulation, hardship	经历了许多磨难，她变得更坚强了。 After many hardships, she has grown stronger.
苦难	kǔnàn	suffering, misery	这部电影讲的是战争带来的苦难。 The film is about the suffering that war brings.
祸害	huòhai	scourge; to wreck, ruin	这些老鼠祸害了地里的粮食。 The rats have ruined the grain in the fields.
遭殃	zāoyāng	to suffer (disaster), be hit	大水来了，地里的庄稼全遭殃了。 When the flood came, all the crops were ruined.
隐患	yǐnhuàn	hidden danger, hazard	楼道里堆东西，有火灾隐患。 Stacking things in the stairwell is a fire hazard.
导火索	dǎohuǒsuǒ	fuse; trigger, spark	一句玩笑成了这场争吵的导火索。 A joke was what sparked the row.
不妙	bùmiào	not good, ominous	他一看情况不妙，马上回家了。 As soon as he saw things weren't looking good, he went straight home.
失控	shīkòng	out of control	车突然失控，撞到了树上。 The car suddenly went out of control and hit a tree.
紊乱	wěnluàn	disordered, out of order	经常熬夜会让身体的节奏紊乱。 Staying up late a lot throws your body's rhythm out.
风波	fēngbō	disturbance, storm (fig.)	这件事在网上引起了一场风波。 The incident caused a storm online.
风云	fēngyún	the situation; wind and cloud	他是这几年体育界的风云人物。 He has been the big name in sport these last few years.
惨重	cǎnzhòng	heavy (losses)	这次地震造成了惨重的损失。 The earthquake caused heavy losses.
恶化	èhuà	to worsen	病人的情况突然恶化了。 The patient suddenly got worse.
激化	jīhuà	to intensify, sharpen (conflict)	双方的矛盾越来越激化了。 The conflict between the two sides is getting sharper.
濒临	bīnlín	to be on the verge of	这家老店曾经濒临倒闭。 This old shop once came close to closing down.
地步	dìbù	point, extent (usu. bad)	事情怎么会发展到这个地步？ How did it come to this?

pattern chains of cause and effect (and switching topics)

由于 / 因为 A，加上 B **，所以 C** **，因此 / 结果 D**

A cause can have two parts (由于 A，加上 B) and a result can lead to a further result (所以 C，因此 / 结果 D). Follow the chain link by link. Today's returning point is switching topic in a paragraph: 说到 (speaking of), 至于 (as for), 另外 (besides), 话说回来 (that said, coming back to it).

由于楼太老，加上资金不够，所以工程很艰巨，因此需要大家一起想办法。 **yóuyú lóu tài lǎo jiāshàng zījīn búgòu suǒyǐ gōngchéng hěn jiānjù yīncǐ xūyào dàjiā yìqǐ xiǎng bànfǎ** Because the building is so old and the money is short, the work is a huge task, so everyone needs to put their heads together.

因为没有电梯，抬病人下楼花了二十分钟，结果他的病情恶化了。 **yīnwèi méiyǒu diàntī tái bìngrén xià lóu huā le èrshí fēnzhōng jiéguǒ tā de bìngqíng èhuà le** Because there was no lift, it took twenty minutes to carry the patient downstairs, and as a result he got worse.

电梯的事就说到这儿。至于资金，政府有一部分补助。话说回来，最难的还是让大家同意。 **diàntī de shì jiù shuō dào zhèr zhìyú zījīn zhèngfǔ yǒu yí bùfen bǔzhù huà shuō huilai zuì nán de háishi ràng dàjiā tóngyì** That's enough about the lift itself. As for the money, the government pays part of it. That said, the hardest thing is still getting everyone to agree.

dialogue trouble at the estate

professor chen 小明，安娜，你们来得正好。电梯的事遇到了大难关。
Xiǎomíng Ānnà nǐmen lái de zhènghǎo diàntī de shì yùdào le dà nánguān · Xiaoming, Anna, perfect timing. The lift project has hit a big obstacle.

xiaoming 怎么了？
zěnme le · What's happened?

professor chen 检查的人来了，发现老楼有很多安全隐患：水管太旧，电路乱七八糟，楼道里还堆满了东西。
jiǎnchá de rén lái le fāxiàn lǎo lóu yǒu hěn duō ānquán yǐnhuàn shuǐ guǎn tài jiù diàn lù luànqībāzāo lóudào lǐ hái duī mǎn le dōngxi · The inspectors came and found lots of hidden dangers in the old blocks: the pipes are worn out, the wiring is a mess, and the stairwells are full of junk.

xiaoming 我是工程师，我看看……情况不妙。电路这么紊乱，会危及整栋楼的安全。形势很严峻。
wǒ shì gōngchéngshī wǒ kàn kan qíngkuàng búmiào diàn lù zhème wěnluàn huì wēijí zhěng dòng lóu de ānquán xíngshì hěn yánjùn · I'm an engineer, let me look… This isn't good. With the wiring in such a muddle, the whole building is at risk. It's a grim situation.

professor chen 不只这样，小区的群里还起了一场风波。本来只是一位老太太的一句玩笑，结果成了导火索。
bù zhǐ zhèyàng xiǎoqū de qún lǐ hái qǐ le yì chǎng fēngbō běnlái zhǐshì yí wèi lǎotàitai de yí jù wán xiào jiéguǒ chéng le dǎohuǒsuǒ · And that's not all: there's been a storm in the estate's chat group. It started with a joke from an old lady, and that was the spark.

professor chen 因为一楼和六楼的意见不同，又有人在群里乱说，所以矛盾越来越激化，最后几乎失控了。邻居之间的关系一度濒临破裂。
yīnwèi yì lóu hé liù lóu de yìjiàn bù tóng yòu yǒu rén zài qún lǐ luàn shuō suǒyǐ máodùn yuè lái yuè jīhuà zuìhòu jīhū shīkòng le línjū zhījiān de guānxì yídù bīnlín pòliè · Because the ground floor and the sixth floor disagreed, and some people said things they shouldn't in the group, the conflict kept getting sharper until it nearly got out of control. For a while, relations between neighbours were close to breaking point.

anna 怎么会发展到这个地步？
zěnme huì fāzhǎn dào zhège dìbù · How did it come to this?

professor chen 每家都有自己的难处。一楼的人用不上电梯，还怕电梯挡住阳光；六楼的老人天天爬楼，处境很困难。
měi jiā dōu yǒu zìjǐ de nánchù yì lóu de rén yòng bu shàng diàntī hái pà diàntī dǎng zhù yángguāng liù lóu de lǎorén tiān tiān pá lóu chǔjìng hěn kùnnan · Every household has its own problems. The ground-floor families won't use the lift and worry it'll block their light; the old people on the sixth floor climb the stairs every day, and they're in a hard spot.

anna 对老人来说，爬六楼就像爬一座艰险的山。
duì lǎorén lái shuō pá liù lóu jiù xiàng pá yí zuò jiānxiǎn de shān · For an elderly person, climbing to the sixth floor is like climbing a dangerous mountain.

dr li 说到六楼，昨天晚上出了一件事。六楼的刘爷爷突然病了，情况危急。救护车来了，可是没有电梯，几个人抬着他走楼梯，花了二十分钟。
shuō dào liù lóu zuótiān wǎnshang chū le yí jiàn shì liù lóu de Liú yéye tūrán bìng le qíngkuàng wēijí jiùhùchē lái le kěshì méiyǒu diàntī jǐ gè rén tái zhe tā zǒu lóutī huā le èrshí fēnzhōng · Speaking of the sixth floor, something happened last night. Grandpa Liu on the sixth floor suddenly fell ill, and it was an emergency. The ambulance came, but there's no lift, so several people had to carry him down the stairs: it took twenty minutes.

anna 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And then?

dr li 因为送得太晚，所以到医院的时候，他的病情已经恶化了。幸好抢救及时，现在没有危险了。
yīnwèi sòng de tài wǎn suǒyǐ dào yīyuàn de shíhou tā de bìngqíng yǐjīng èhuà le xìnghǎo qiǎngjiù jíshí xiànzài

méiyǒu wēixiǎn le · Because he got there late, his condition had already got worse by the time he reached hospital. Luckily he was treated in time, and he's out of danger now.

professor chen 这件事让大家都明白了：装电梯的事很紧迫。六楼的老人们都急迫地盼着电梯。
zhè jiàn shì ràng dàjiā dōu míngbai le zhuāng diàntī de shì hěn jǐnpò liù lóu de lǎorénmen dōu jípò de pàn zhe diàntī · This has made everyone see that the lift is urgent. The old people on the sixth floor are desperate for it.

anna 政府应该放宽条件，让老楼更快装上电梯。
zhèngfǔ yīnggāi fàngkuān tiáojiàn ràng lǎo lóu gèng kuài zhuāng shàng diàntī · The government should relax the conditions so old blocks can get lifts faster.

xiaoming 由于楼太老，加上资金不够，再加上住户的意见不统一，所以这个工程很艰巨。小区现在真是陷入了困境。
yóuyú lóu tài lǎo jiāshàng zījīn búgòu zài jiāshàng zhùhù de yìjiàn bù tǒngyī suǒyǐ zhège gōngchéng hěn jiānjù xiǎoqū xiànzài zhēnshi xiànrù le kùnjìng · Because the building is so old, money is short and the residents don't agree, this is a huge job. The estate really is in a tight spot now.

professor chen 是啊，为了这个方案，我们费了很多周折，经历了不少波折。去年夏天下大雨，地下室进水，老鼠到处祸害，一楼的几家全遭殃了，损失惨重。
shì a wèile zhège fāngàn wǒmen fèi le hěn duō zhōuzhé jīnglì le bù shǎo bōzhé qùnián xiàtiān xià dà yǔ dìxià shì jìn shuǐ lǎoshǔ dàochù huòhai yì lóu de jǐ jiā quán zāoyāng le sǔnshī cǎnzhòng · Yes: this plan has cost us a lot of trouble, with plenty of twists and turns. Last summer a heavy rain flooded the basement, rats ran riot, and several ground-floor families were badly hit: they lost a great deal.

anna 至于资金，政府不是有补助吗？
zhìyú zījīn zhèngfǔ bú shì yǒu bǔzhù ma · As for the money, isn't there a government subsidy?

professor chen 有，可是不够。话说回来，大家一起努力，没有过不去的难关。
yǒu kěshì búgòu huà shuō huilai dàjiā yìqǐ nǔlì méiyǒu guòbuqù de nánguān · There is, but it isn't enough. That said, if everyone pulls together, there's no obstacle we can't get past.

xiaoming 要是电梯装好了，市里说不定还会表彰我们小区。
yàoshi diàntī zhuāng hǎo le shì lǐ shuōbudìng hái huì biǎozhāng wǒmen xiǎoqū · If the lift goes in, the city might even commend our estate.

dr li 刘爷爷这一辈子很坎坷。年轻的时候他是厂里的风云人物，后来经历过不少苦难和磨难，可是在逆境中也没有放弃。他说，人生的路总是曲折的。
Liú yéye zhè yíbèizi hěn kǎnkě niánqīng de shíhou tā shì chǎng lǐ de fēngyún rénwù hòulái jīnglì guo bù shǎo kǔnàn hé mónàn kěshì zài nìjìng zhōng yě méiyǒu fàngqì tā shuō rénshēng de lù zǒngshì qūzhé de · Grandpa Liu has had a hard life. When he was young he was the big name at his factory; later he went through a lot of suffering and hardship, but he never gave up, even in adversity. He says the road of life always twists and turns.

professor chen 他的境遇让大家很感动。今天，一楼的老太太也说，她理解六楼人的处境了，不想让任何人再落到那样危险的境地。
tā de jìngyù ràng dàjiā hěn gǎndòng jīntiān yì lóu de lǎotàitai yě shuō tā lǐjiě liù lóu rén de chǔjìng le bù xiǎng ràng rènhé rén zài luò dào nàyàng wēixiǎn de jìngdì · Everyone has been moved by what he's been through. Today the old lady on the ground floor said she understands the sixth floor's situation now, and doesn't want anyone ever to end up in such danger again.

xiaoming 那这个问题就没那么棘手了。下次开会，我来讲安全隐患，再把大家的意见征集一下。
nà zhège wèntí jiù méi nàme jíshǒu le xià cì kāihuì wǒ lái jiǎng ānquán yǐnhuàn zài bǎ dàjiā de yìjiàn zhēngjí yíxià · Then the problem isn't so thorny any more. At the next meeting, I'll talk about the safety hazards and gather everyone's views.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

贼
zéi
thief; sly

绑
bǎng
to tie, bind

赎
shú
to redeem, ransom

辖
xiá
govern

good to know · 危及 (wēijí) is a verb, “to endanger”: 危及生命. 危急 (also wēijí) is an adjective, “critical”: 情况危急. Same sound, different 及 / 急. Hard times, from mild to heavy: 周折 (hassle), 波折 (setback), 坎坷 (a bumpy road), 磨难 (ordeal), 苦难 (suffering).

Hidden dangers, a crisis and a hard life told kindly: you can now explain how things went wrong in Chinese, and how people pulled through.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 124 mission: the community meeting

Follow a whole residents' meeting in Chinese: the notice, an election, a heated debate, a peace deal between two buildings and the results, using this unit's words for government, votes, diplomacy, fairness, reform and crisis.

A neighbourhood meeting is democracy, diplomacy and crisis management in one room. If you can follow this one, you can follow the news.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the notice in the lobby

anna （读）“通告：本小区居民大会定于本周五晚上七点在社区中心举行。会议内容如下：

dú tōnggào běn xiǎoqū jūmín dàhuì dìng yú běn zhōu wǔ wǎnshang qī diǎn zài shèqū zhōngxīn jǔxíng huìyì nèiróng rúxià · (reading) “Notice: The estate’s residents’ meeting will be held at 7 p.m. this Friday at the community centre. The agenda is as follows:

anna 一、选举新一届居民委员会。委员任期五年，可以连任。候选人由居民提名，名单已经公示七天。十八岁以上的居民都是选民，可以投票，也可以弃权。

yī xuǎnjǔ xīn yí jiè jūmín wěiyuánhuì wěiyuán rènqī wǔ nián kěyǐ liánrèn hòuxuǎnrén yóu jūmín tímíng míngdān yǐjīng gōngshì qī tiān shíbā suì yǐshàng de jūmín dōu shì xuǎnmín kěyǐ tóupiào yě kěyǐ qìquán · 1. Election of the new residents’ committee. Members serve five-year terms and may be re-elected. Candidates are nominated by residents; the list has been posted publicly for seven days. All residents over eighteen are voters and may vote or abstain.

anna 二、加装电梯试点方案。根据国务院支持老小区改造的方针，以及市里出台、明年一月起施行的办法，经三分之二以上住户同意，方案就可以申报，由有关部门审批。今年市里放宽了申报条件，政府对每部电梯提供补助。

èr jiā zhuāng diàntī shìdiǎn fāngàn gēnjù guówùyuàn zhīchí lǎo xiǎoqū gǎizào de fāngzhēn yǐjí shì lǐ chūtái míngnián yī yuè qǐ shīxíng de bànfǎ jīng sān fēn zhī èr yǐshàng zhùhù tóngyì fāngàn jiù kěyǐ shēnbào yóu yǒuguān bùmén shěnpī jīnnián shì lǐ fàngkuān le shēnbào tiáojiàn zhèngfǔ duì měi bù diàntī tígōng bǔzhù · 2. The pilot plan for adding lifts. In line with the State Council’s guiding principle of supporting the renovation of old estates, and the rules the city has brought in, which take effect next January, once more than two thirds of households agree, the plan may be submitted for approval by the authorities. This year the city has relaxed the conditions, and the government provides a subsidy for each lift.

anna 三、楼道安全隐患的整治。四、会后颁发“好邻居”证书。新的停车证请到社区中心申领。请各位住户积极参加，共同落实小区的各项举措。”

sān lóudào ānquán yǐnhuàn de zhěngzhì sì huì hòu bānfā hǎo línjū zhèngshū xīn de tíngchē zhèng qǐng dào shèqū zhōngxīn shēnlǐng qǐng gèwèi zhùhù jījí cānjiā gòngtóng luòshí xiǎoqū de gè xiàng jǔcuò · 3. Clearing up safety hazards in the stairwells. 4. After the meeting, “good neighbour” certificates will be presented. New parking permits can be collected at the community centre. All residents are invited to take part and help carry out the estate’s measures together.”

little sister 门口还贴着一张告示：“会议由街道干部主持，社区书记和区里的委员也会来视察。”

ménkǒu hái tiē zhe yì zhāng gàoshi huìyì yóu jiēdào gànbù zhǔchí shèqū shūjì hé qū lǐ de wěiyuán yě huì lái shìchá · There’s another notice by the door: “The meeting will be chaired by an official from the street office; the community secretary and members from the district will also come to observe.”

xiaoming 街道是区政府在基层的行政机关。我们小区归这个街道管辖，辖区里一共有十二个小区。

jiēdào shì qū zhèngfǔ zài jīcéng de xíngzhèng jīguān wǒmen xiǎoqū guī zhège jiēdào guǎnxiá xiáqū lǐ yígòng yǒu shíèr gè xiǎoqū · The street office is the district government’s administrative office at the grassroots. Our estate comes under this street office, and there are twelve estates in its area.

anna 我还不是这个小区的居民，又是外国人，没有选举权。但是陈教授说，我可以去听，也可以发表意见。对了，我上午去领事馆拿了新护照，领事还问我住得怎么样呢！

wǒ hái bú shì zhège xiǎoqū de jūmín yòu shì wàiguó rén méiyǒu xuǎnjǔ quán dànshì Chénjiàoshòu shuō wǒ kěyǐ qù tīng yě kěyǐ fābiǎo yìjiàn duì le wǒ shàngwǔ qù lǐngshìguǎn ná le xīn hùzhào lǐngshì hái wèn wǒ zhù de zěnmeyàng ne · I don’t live on this estate yet, and I’m a foreigner, so I don’t have a vote. But Professor Chen says I can go and listen, and have my say too. Oh, and this morning I picked up my new passport at the consulate: the consul even asked how I was getting on with my flat!

chapter 2 chapter 2: two candidates

professor chen 各位街坊，我参加竞选，希望能连任。这五年，大家推选我当委员，我一直把自己看成大家的公仆，不是官。年轻的时候，大家都叫我“陈同志”，现在叫我“陈教授”，我还是那个为大家跑腿的人。

gèwèi jiēfang wǒ cānjiā jìngxuǎn xīwàng néng liánrèn zhè wǔ nián dàjiā tuīxuǎn wǒ dāng wěiyuán wǒ yìzhí bǎ zìjǐ kàn chéng dàjiā de gōngpú bú shì guān niánqīng de shíhou dàjiā dōu jiào wǒ Chén tóngzhì xiànzài jiào wǒ Chénjiàoshòu wǒ háishi nàge wèi dàjiā pǎo tuǐ de rén · Neighbours, I'm standing for re-election. For five years you chose me as a committee member, and I've always seen myself as your servant, not an official. When I was young everyone called me "Comrade Chen"; now it's "Professor Chen", but I'm still the one who runs your errands.

professor chen 我的纲领很简单：第一，落实电梯试点；第二，整治安全隐患；第三，多关心小区里的弱势群体：老人、残疾人和收入低的家庭。电梯不是小事，是民生问题。

wǒ de gānglǐng hěn jiǎndān dì yī luòshí diàntī shìdiǎn dì èr zhěngzhì ānquán yǐnhuàn dì sān duō guānxīn xiǎoqū lǐ de ruòshì qúntǐ lǎorén cánjí rén hé shōurù dī de jiātíng diàntī bú shì xiǎo shì shì mínshēng wèntí · My programme is simple: first, carry out the lift pilot; second, clear up the safety hazards; third, do more for the vulnerable on our estate: the elderly, the disabled and low-income families. A lift is no small matter: it's about people's livelihoods.

teacher wang 我是王老师，也是候选人。是邻居们鼓动我参加的，我以前从来没担任过公职。我倡导“有事大家商量”，倡议每个月开一次小会，有意见当面说，不要在群里吵。

wǒ shì Wánglǎoshī yě shì hòuxuǎnrén shì línjūmen gǔdòng wǒ cānjiā de wǒ yǐqián cónglái méi dānrèn guo gōngzhí wǒ chàngdǎo yǒu shì dàjiā shāngliang chàngyì měi gè yuè kāi yí cì xiǎo huì yǒu yìjiàn dāngmiàn shuō búyào zài qún lǐ chǎo · I'm Teacher Wang, and I'm a candidate too. My neighbours talked me into standing; I've never held public office before. I stand for "talk things over together", and I propose a small meeting every month, so people raise their concerns face to face instead of quarrelling in the chat group.

teacher wang 这几个月，要求装电梯的呼声越来越高，这就是民意。可是办事不能官僚，也不能只听上层的，要从基层做起。不管是哪个阶层的人，在小区里谁也没有特权。

zhè jǐ gè yuè yāoqiú zhuāng diàntī de hūshēng yuè lái yuè gāo zhè jiùshì mínyì kěshì bànshì bù néng guānliáo yě bù néng zhǐ tīng shàngcéng de yào cóng jīcéng zuò qǐ bùguǎn shì nǎge jiēcéng de rén zài xiǎoqū lǐ shéi yě méiyǒu tèquán · These past months the calls for a lift have grown louder and louder: that's public opinion. But we mustn't be bureaucratic or only listen to those higher up: we have to start from the grassroots. Whoever you are, nobody on this estate gets special privileges.

professor chen 选举要讲道理，不能煽动大家的情绪。我们小区的选举不分派别，也不分阵营。委员会有七个席位，我们两个人都可能当选。我呼吁大家都来投票，不要弃权。

xuǎnjǔ yào jiǎng dàolǐ bù néng shāndòng dàjiā de qíngxù wǒmen xiǎoqū de xuǎnjǔ bù fēn pàibié yě bù fēn zhènyíng wěiyuánhuì yǒu qī gè xíwèi wǒmen liǎng gè rén dōu kěnéng dāngxuǎn wǒ hūyù dàjiā dōu lái tóupiào búyào qìquán · An election should be about reason, not stirring up feelings. Our estate's election has no factions and no camps. The committee has seven seats, so we could both be elected. I urge everyone to vote and not to abstain.

teacher wang 如果当选的委员不为大家办事，大家可以罢免他；如果我没选上，我就高高兴兴地下台，继续当好邻居。大会通过的决议，我都会遵守。

rúguǒ dāngxuǎn de wěiyuán bú wèi dàjiā bànshì dàjiā kěyǐ bàmiǎn tā rúguǒ wǒ méi xuǎn shàng wǒ jiù gāogāoxìngxìng de xiàtái jìxù dāng hǎo línjū dàhuì tōngguò de juéyì wǒ dōu huì zūnshǒu · If an elected member does nothing for you, you can remove them; if I'm not elected, I'll happily step aside and carry on being a good neighbour. Whatever resolution the meeting passes, I'll abide by it.

xiaoming 这次街道动员得真好，来了三百多人，比去年多一倍，声势很大。合唱团的团员也都来了。去年来的人太少，以至于什么都定不下来。

zhè cì jiēdào dòngyuán de zhēn hǎo lái le sānbǎi duō rén bǐ qùnián duō yí bèi shēngshì hěn dà héchàng tuán de tuányuán yě dōu lái le qùnián lái de rén tài shǎo yǐzhìyú shénme dōu dìng bu xialai · The street office has really got people out this time: over three hundred came, twice as many as last year, and there's quite a buzz. The whole choir has come too. Last year so few came that nothing could be decided.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the lift debate

professor chen 下面讨论电梯方案。上次表决，方案被否决了。今天，鉴于刘爷爷的事，大家再谈一谈。

xiàmiàn tǎolùn diàntī fāngàn shàng cì biǎojué fāngàn bèi fǒujué le jīntiān jiànyú Liú yéye de shì dàjiā zài tán yi tan · Next, the lift plan. At the last vote it was rejected. Today, in view of what happened to Grandpa Liu, let's discuss it again.

dr li 我是医生，说几句。那天晚上情况危急，因为没有电梯，抬刘爷爷下楼花了二十分钟，所以到医院的时候，他的病情已经恶化了。没有电梯，会危及老人的生命。让老人天天爬六楼，太不人道了。

wǒ shì yīshēng shuō jǐ jù nà tiān wǎnshang qíngkuàng wēijí yīnwèi méiyǒu diàntī tái Liú yéye xià lóu huā le èrshí fēnzhōng suǒyǐ dào yīyuàn de shíhou tā de bìngqíng yǐjīng èhuà le méiyǒu diàntī huì wēijí lǎorén de shēngmìng ràng lǎorén tiān tiān pá liù lóu tài bù réndào le · I'm a doctor, so let me say a few words. That night it was an emergency. Because there's no lift, it took twenty minutes to carry Grandpa Liu downstairs, so by the time he reached hospital he'd got worse. Without a lift, old people's lives are at risk. Making them climb six floors every day is inhumane.

xiaoming 我是工程师。由于楼太老，加上电路紊乱，楼道里又堆满东西，所以隐患很多，因此装电梯以前，要先整治。形势很严峻，任务也很艰巨，可是时间紧迫。要是再不整治，等出了事，大家都要遭殃，损失会很惨重。

wǒ shì gōngchéngshī yóuyú lóu tài lǎo jiāshàng diàn lù wěnluàn lóudào lǐ yòu duī mǎn dōngxi suǒyǐ yǐnhuàn hěn duō yīncǐ zhuāng diàntī yǐqián yào xiān zhěngzhì xíngshì hěn yánjùn rènwu yě hěn jiānjù kěshì shíjiān jǐnpò yàoshi zài bù zhěngzhì děng chū le shì dàjiā dōu yào zāoyāng sǔnshī huì hěn cǎnzhòng · I'm an engineer. Because the buildings are old, the wiring is a mess and the stairwells are full of junk, there are a lot of hazards, so before any lift goes in, they have to be fixed. The situation is serious and the task is huge, but time is short. If we don't fix things now, when something goes wrong we'll all suffer, and the losses will be heavy.

teacher wang 一楼的邻居也有难处。如果电梯挡住阳光，就要给他们补偿；如果不挡，也要保证施工的时候不太吵。施工期间，一楼的老人可以安置在社区中心休息。

yì lóu de línjū yě yǒu nánchù rúguǒ diàntī dǎng zhù yángguāng jiù yào gěi tāmen bǔcháng rúguǒ bù dǎng yě yào bǎozhèng shīgōng de shíhou bú tài chǎo shīgōng qījiān yì lóu de lǎorén kěyǐ ānzhì zài shèqū zhōngxīn xiūxi · Our ground-floor neighbours have their problems too. If the lift blocks their light, they should be compensated; if it doesn't, the building work still mustn't be too noisy. While the work goes on, older ground-floor residents can rest at the community centre.

professor chen 有人说，老人可以迁移到有电梯的小区去。这不现实：他们在这里住了一辈子。只要大家愿意让一步，就有办法；但是如果谁都不让，那么这件事永远办不成。

yǒu rén shuō lǎorén kěyǐ qiānyí dào yǒu diàntī de xiǎoqū qù zhè bú xiànshí tāmen zài zhèlǐ zhù le yíbèizi zhǐyào dàjiā yuànyì ràng yí bù jiù yǒu bànfǎ dànshì rúguǒ shéi dōu bú ràng nàme zhè jiàn shì yǒngyuǎn bàn bùchéng · Some say the old people could move to estates that have lifts. That's not realistic: they've lived here all their lives. As long as everyone is willing to give a little, there's a way; but if no one gives an inch, this will never get done.

anna 我可以说一句吗？我在英国的老房子也没有电梯。我奶奶七十岁的时候，连下楼买菜都很困难，更不用说去公园了。电梯会让老人的生活完全不一样。

wǒ kěyǐ shuō yí jù ma wǒ zài Yīngguó de lǎo fángzi yě méiyǒu diàntī wǒ nǎinai qīshí suì de shíhou lián xià lóu mǎi cài dōu hěn kùnnan gèng búyòng shuō qù gōngyuán le diàntī huì ràng lǎorén de shēnghuó wánquán bù yíyàng · May I say something? My old house in the UK had no lift either. When my grandma was seventy, even going downstairs to buy food was hard, let alone going to the park. A lift changes old people's lives completely.

ms zhang 我是来看朋友的。我们小区去年装了电梯：政府扶持，住户出一部分钱，区里还派工程师来支援，工程由公办和民办的公司一起做，整个工程都有严格的监管。补助的每一分钱都要公开，不能有任何腐败。现在老人都愿意下楼了。

wǒ shì lái kàn péngyou de wǒmen xiǎoqū qùnián zhuāng le diàntī zhèngfǔ fúchí zhùhù chū yí bùfen qián qū lǐ hái pài gōngchéngshī lái zhīyuán gōngchéng yóu gōngbàn hé mínbàn de gōngsī yìqǐ zuò zhěnggè gōngchéng dōu yǒu yángé de jiānguǎn bǔzhù de měi yì fēn qián dōu yào gōngkāi bù néng yǒu rènhé fǔbài xiànzài lǎorén dōu yuànyì xià lóu le · I'm only here visiting a friend. Our estate put in lifts last year: the government helped, the

households paid part, the district sent engineers to help out, state-run and private firms did the work together, and the whole job was strictly supervised. Every cent of the subsidy has to be public: no corruption of any kind. Now the old people are happy to come downstairs.

professor chen 好，现在请大家举手表决……二百一十户同意，八户反对，五户弃权。超过三分之二，方案通过！

hǎo xiànzài qǐng dàjiā jǔ shǒu biǎojué èrbǎiyīshí hù tóngyì bā hù fǎnduì wǔ hù qìquán chāoguò sān fēn zhī èr fāngàn tōngguò · Right, let's have a show of hands… 210 households in favour, 8 against, 5 abstentions. That's over two thirds: the plan is passed!

chapter 4 chapter 4: a summit between two blocks

professor chen 最后一个问题，也是最棘手的：三号楼和四号楼的争端。两栋楼为了停车位吵了一年，邻居之间的矛盾越来越激化。怎么会闹到这个地步？

zuìhòu yí gè wèntí yě shì zuì jíshǒu de sān hào lóu hé sì hào lóu de zhēngduān liǎng dòng lóu wèile tíng chēwèi chǎo le yì nián línjū zhījiān de máodùn yuè lái yuè jīhuà zěnme huì nào dào zhège dìbù · One last issue, and the thorniest: the dispute between Block 3 and Block 4. The two blocks have been arguing over parking for a year, and the conflict between the neighbours keeps getting sharper. How did it come to this?

xiaoming 开始只是一辆车停错了地方，结果成了导火索。后来群里的风波一场接一场，有一次几乎失控，小区差点儿分裂成两派。

kāishǐ zhǐshì yí liàng chē tíng cuò le dìfang jiéguǒ chéng le dǎohuǒsuǒ hòulái qún lǐ de fēngbō yì chǎng jiē yì chǎng yǒu yí cì jīhū shīkòng xiǎoqū chàdiǎnr fēnliè chéng liǎng pài · It started with one car parked in the wrong place, and that was the spark. After that, one storm in the chat group followed another; once it nearly got out of hand, and the estate almost split into two sides.

little sister 这简直是两个国家开峰会！四号楼说那些车位是他们的“领土”，有“主权”。两栋楼的“首脑”要先会晤，再签条约。

zhè jiǎnzhí shì liǎng gè guójiā kāi fēnghuì sì hào lóu shuō nàxiē chēwèi shì tāmen de lǐngtǔ yǒu zhǔquán liǎng dòng lóu de shǒunǎo yào xiān huìwù zài qiān tiáoyuē · This is practically a summit between two countries! Block 4 says those parking spaces are its “territory” and it has “sovereignty”. The two blocks’ “leaders” must meet first, then sign a treaty.

teacher wang 哈哈，那我保持中立，当和平使者。我们不干涉各家的私事，可是公共的地方属于大家，谁也不能单方面霸占。单边的做法只会让事情恶化。

hā hā nà wǒ bǎochí zhōnglì dāng hépíng shǐzhě wǒmen bù gānshè gè jiā de sīshì kěshì gōnggòng de dìfang shǔyú dàjiā shéi yě bù néng dānfāngmiàn bàzhàn dānbiān de zuòfǎ zhǐ huì ràng shìqing èhuà · Ha, then I’ll stay neutral and be the peace envoy. We won’t interfere in anyone’s private business, but shared spaces belong to everyone: nobody can unilaterally take them over. Going it alone only makes things worse.

xiaoming 三号楼说，四号楼的人向物业施压，还去物业抗议过；四号楼说，三号楼和旁边的几栋楼结成了同盟。周末两栋楼的孩子在球场上还互相示威呢。

sān hào lóu shuō sì hào lóu de rén xiàng wùyè shīyā hái qù wùyè kàngyì guo sì hào lóu shuō sān hào lóu hé pángbiān de jǐ dòng lóu jié chéng le tóngméng zhōumò liǎng dòng lóu de háizi zài qiúchǎng shàng hái hùxiāng shìwēi ne · Block 3 says Block 4 has been putting pressure on the management and even went to protest there; Block 4 says Block 3 has formed an alliance with the blocks next door. At weekends the kids of the two blocks even square up to each other on the court.

little sister 联盟、盟友都有了！要不要请外援？

liánméng méngyǒu dōu yǒu le yào búyào qǐng wàiyuán · Alliances and allies already! Shall we call in foreign help?

professor chen 街道本来不想介入，也不想干预。今天我接见了两栋楼的代表，大家都说不想再吵了。

jiēdào běnlái bù xiǎng jièrù yě bù xiǎng gānyù jīntiān wǒ jiējiàn le liǎng dòng lóu de dàibiǎo dàjiā dōu shuō bù xiǎng zài chǎo le · The street office didn’t want to get involved or step in. Today I received representatives from both blocks, and they all said they don’t want to fight any more.

teacher wang 我的办法是：两栋楼先进行双边会谈，然后全小区一起定一个多边的协定，车位按时间轮流用。大家也要抵制乱停车。

wǒ de bànfǎ shì liǎng dòng lóu xiān jìnxíng shuāngbiān huìtán ránhòu quán xiǎoqū yìqǐ dìng yí gè duōbiān de xiédìng chēwèi àn shíjiān lúnliú yòng dàjiā yě yào dǐzhì luàn tíngchē · My suggestion: the two blocks hold bilateral talks first, then the whole estate draws up a multilateral agreement, and the parking spaces are shared on a rota. And everyone has to say no to parking anywhere they like.

professor chen 好主意。我们再写一份居民公约，大家签字，就像一份和平宣言：邻居之间，和平共处。

hǎo zhǔyi wǒmen zài xiě yí fèn jūmín gōngyuē dàjiā qiānzì jiù xiàng yí fèn hépíng xuānyán línjū zhījiān hépíng gòngchǔ · Good idea. And we’ll write a residents’ code that everyone signs, like a declaration of peace: neighbours living together in peace.

anna 这才是真正的软实力：不靠吵，靠商量。

zhè cái shì zhēnzhèng de ruǎnshílì bú kào chǎo kào shāngliang · That's real soft power: not shouting, but talking it through.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the results

anna 选举结果公示了！陈教授连任，王老师也当选了委员。委员会七个委员里，有四个是女的，妇女能顶半边天！

xuǎnjǔ jiéguǒ gōngshì le Chénjiàoshòu liánrèn Wánglǎoshī yě dāngxuǎn le wěiyuán wěiyuánhuì qī gè wěiyuán lǐ yǒu sì gè shì nǚ de fùnǚ néng dǐng bànbiāntiān · The election results are up! Professor Chen has been re-elected, and Teacher Wang has been elected to the committee too. Four of the seven members are women: women hold up half the sky!

professor chen 谢谢大家。下周新委员会宣誓以后，第一件事就是贯彻电梯方案，第二件事是整治楼道。委员们每天都会去工地巡视。

xièxie dàjiā xià zhōu xīn wěiyuánhuì xuānshì yǐhòu dì yī jiàn shì jiùshì guànchè diàntī fāngàn dì èr jiàn shì shì zhěngzhì lóudào wěiyuánmen měi tiān dōu huì qù gōngdì xúnshì · Thank you, everyone. Once the new committee has taken its oath next week, the first job is to carry through the lift plan, and the second is to clear up the stairwells. Committee members will check the building site every day.

teacher wang 区里来视察的委员说，我们小区的做法很好，要在全区试行。街道还要表彰帮刘爷爷下楼的几个年轻人，授予他们“好邻居”称号。

qū lǐ lái shìchá de wěiyuán shuō wǒmen xiǎoqū de zuòfǎ hěn hǎo yào zài quán qū shìxíng jiēdào hái yào biǎozhāng bāng Liú yéye xià lóu de jǐ gè niánqīng rén shòuyǔ tāmen hǎo línjū chēnghào · The district member who came to observe said our estate’s approach is excellent and should be tried across the district. And the street office is going to honour the young people who carried Grandpa Liu downstairs, giving them the title “good neighbours”.

dr li 刘爷爷出院了。他一辈子很坎坷，经历过不少苦难，和疾病抗争了很多年，在逆境中从来没放弃。他家人要给那几个年轻人送一面锦旗。

Liú yéye chūyuàn le tā yíbèizi hěn kǎnkě jīnglì guo bù shǎo kǔnàn hé jíbìng kàngzhēng le hěn duō nián zài nìjìng zhōng cónglái méi fàngqì tā jiārén yào gěi nà jǐ gè niánqīng rén sòng yí miàn jǐnqí · Grandpa Liu is out of hospital. He has had a hard life, been through a great deal of suffering and fought illness for years, and never gave up, even in adversity. His family want to give those young people a silk banner.

xiaoming 修电梯的工人大多是农民工，他们干活特别认真。我们应该好好招待他们，不能有任何歧视。

xiū diàntī de gōngrén dàduō shì nóngmíngōng tāmen gànhuó tèbié rènzhēn wǒmen yīnggāi hǎohǎo zhāodài tāmen bù néng yǒu rènhé qíshì · Most of the workers building the lift are migrant workers, and they work so carefully. We should look after them well, with no discrimination whatsoever.

little sister 社区中心还在征集小区的老照片，要办一个展览，叫“老小区的复兴”。开幕那天，我要举着旗帜去！

shèqū zhōngxīn hái zài zhēngjí xiǎoqū de lǎo zhàopiàn yào bàn yí gè zhǎnlǎn jiào lǎo xiǎoqū de fùxīng kāimù nà tiān wǒ yào jǔ zhe qízhì qù · The community centre is collecting old photos of the estate for an exhibition called “The old estate comes back to life”. I’m going to the opening with a flag!

ms zhang 电梯会造福全楼的人。老小区就这样一点一点振兴起来了。小区的风气好，大家住得放心。

diàntī huì zàofú quán lóu de rén lǎo xiǎoqū jiù zhèyàng yìdiǎn yìdiǎn zhènxīng qǐlai le xiǎoqū de fēngqì hǎo dàjiā zhù de fàngxīn · The lift will benefit everyone in the building. That’s how old estates come back to life, bit by bit. With a good spirit on the estate, people can live here with peace of mind.

professor chen 这一年，我们费了不少周折，经历了不少波折，好在终于度过了难关。我是个乐观主义者：只要大家一起努力，就没有办不成的事。

zhè yì nián wǒmen fèi le bù shǎo zhōuzhé jīnglì le bù shǎo bōzhé hǎozài zhōngyú dù guò le nánguān wǒ shì gè lèguān zhǔyì zhě zhǐyào dàjiā yìqǐ nǔlì jiù méiyǒu bàn bùchéng de shì · This year has cost us a lot of trouble, with plenty of twists and turns, but luckily we’ve finally got through the worst. I’m an optimist: as long as everyone works together, there’s nothing we can’t do.

anna 我决定了：如果这里有合适的房子，我就搬过来；如果暂时没有，我就先等一等。反正，我已经爱上这个小区了！

wǒ juédìng le rúguǒ zhèlǐ yǒu héshì de fángzi wǒ jiù bān guolai rúguǒ zànshí méiyǒu wǒ jiù xiān děng yi deng

fǎnzhèng wǒ yǐjīng ài shàng zhège xiǎoqū le · I've made up my mind: if there's a suitable flat here, I'll move in; if there isn't one for now, I'll wait a bit. Either way, I've already fallen in love with this estate!

An election, a vote, a peace deal and a lift: you followed a whole community meeting in Chinese, and you could have spoken up in it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 125 disaster and rescue

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 17 · environment and change

Follow news of a flood and a rescue, and talk about helping: evacuating, sheltering, donating, volunteering.

Disaster news is full of words you rarely hear elsewhere, and knowing them lets you understand, and help.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
海啸	hǎixiào	tsunami	地震以后，海边的人马上撤离，防止发生海啸。 After the earthquake, people on the coast left at once in case of a tsunami.
泛滥	fànlàn	to flood, overflow; spread unchecked	连下了三天暴雨，河水泛滥了。 After three days of heavy rain, the river overflowed.
涝	lào	waterlogged (fields)	今年雨水太多，田里涝了。 There's been too much rain this year, and the fields are waterlogged.
防汛	fángxùn	flood prevention	每年七月是防汛最紧张的时候。 July is the most tense time of year for flood prevention.
堤	dī	dyke, embankment	河边那道堤是去年修的。 The embankment by the river was built last year.
堤坝	dībà	dykes and dams	大家日夜守在堤坝上。 Everyone guarded the dykes day and night.
闸	zhá	sluice gate; to dam, stop	上游开闸放水了，下游要做好准备。 They've opened the sluice gates upstream: downstream needs to get ready.
倒塌	dǎotā	to collapse, fall down	地震中，一座老楼倒塌了。 An old building collapsed in the earthquake.
烧毁	shāohuǐ	to burn down, destroy by fire	一场大火烧毁了半个村子。 A big fire burned down half the village.
失事	shīshì	(of a plane or ship) to crash, be wrecked	那架飞机失事以后，大家都很难过。 After that plane crashed, everyone was very sad.
空难	kōngnàn	air crash	坐飞机其实很安全，空难很少发生。 Flying is actually very safe: air crashes are rare.
遇难	yùnàn	to die in a disaster or accident	幸好这次没有人遇难。 Luckily nobody was killed this time.
遇险	yùxiǎn	to be in danger, in distress	一条船在海上遇险，正在等待救援。 A boat is in distress at sea, waiting to be rescued.
丧生	sàngshēng	to lose one's life	这次山火中有两名消防员丧生。 Two firefighters lost their lives in this wildfire.

幸存	xìngcún	to survive	这本书讲的是一个幸存的孩子的故事。 This book tells the story of a child who survived.
幸免	xìngmiǎn	to escape by luck	大火烧了整条街，只有这家小店幸免。 The fire burned the whole street; only this little shop escaped.
逃生	táoshēng	to escape with one's life	记住楼里的逃生路线。 Learn the escape routes in the building.
避难	bìnàn	to take refuge, shelter	学校成了大家避难的地方。 The school became everyone's shelter.
撤离	chèlí	to evacuate, withdraw	水位还在上涨，大家必须马上撤离。 The water is still rising: everyone must evacuate now.
疏散	shūsàn	to evacuate, disperse; sparse	警察正在疏散商场里的顾客。 The police are evacuating the shoppers from the mall.
搜救	sōujiù	search and rescue	搜救工作进行了三天三夜。 The search and rescue went on for three days and nights.
营救	yíngjiù	to rescue	消防员从楼顶营救了五个人。 Firefighters rescued five people from the roof.
解救	jiějiù	to rescue, free	他们把困在电梯里的老人解救了出来。 They freed the old man who was stuck in the lift.
拯救	zhěngjiù	to save, rescue (often grand)	这位医生拯救了很多人的生命。 This doctor has saved many lives.
打捞	dǎlāo	to salvage, dredge up	他们从河里打捞起一辆车。 They pulled a car out of the river.
应急	yìngjí	emergency; to meet an emergency	家里最好准备一些应急的东西。 It's best to keep a few emergency supplies at home.
预警	yùjǐng	early warning; to warn in advance	气象台提前发出了暴雨预警。 The weather service issued a rainstorm warning in advance.
救济	jiùjì	relief; to help those in need	政府给受灾的家庭发了救济。 The government gave relief to the families hit by the disaster.
收留	shōuliú	to take in, give shelter to	她收留了一只没有家的小狗。 She took in a little stray dog.
慈善	císhàn	charitable, charity	他把一半的收入都捐给了慈善机构。 He gave half his income to charity.
捐献	juānxiàn	to donate, contribute	很多人去医院捐献血液。 Many people went to the hospital to give blood.
募捐	mùjuān	to raise donations	学生们在校园里为灾区募捐。 The students raised money on campus for the disaster area.
基金会	jījīnhuì	foundation (charity)	这个基金会帮助山区的孩子上学。 This foundation helps children in the mountains go to school.
义工	yìgōng	volunteer	周末我在动物医院做义工。 At weekends I volunteer at an animal hospital.

荒	huāng	to neglect, let go to waste	这块地荒了好几年了。 This land has lain waste for years.

pattern 无a可b and 别看…… in the news

无 | a noun (A) | 可 | a verb (B)

无A可B means “there is no A to B”: 无家可归 “no home to return to”, 无路可走 “no way out”. 别看……，…… means “it may look …, but …”: 别看这条河很安静，发起大水来很可怕. Both turn up a lot in news reports.

大水过后，很多人无家可归。 **dà shuǐ guòhòu hěn duō rén wújiā kěguī** After the flood, many people had no home to go back to.

路都被冲断了，车无路可走。 **lù dōu bèi chōng duàn le chē wú lù kě zǒu** The roads were washed away, and cars had nowhere to go.

别看她个子小，搜救的时候比谁都快。 **biékàn tā gèzi xiǎo sōujiù de shíhou bǐ shéi dōu kuài** She may be small, but in a search and rescue she’s faster than anyone.

dialogue a call from the flood

editor lin 安娜，你看，南方那条河泛滥了。周博士的研究站就在河边那个小镇上。
Ānnà nǐ kàn nánfāng nà tiáo hé fànlàn le Zhōubóshì de yánjiū zhàn jiù zài hé biān nàge xiǎo zhèn shàng · Anna, look: that river in the south has burst its banks. Dr Zhou's research station is in the little town right by it.

anna 天啊！她没事吧？情况不妙，我马上给她打视频电话。
tiān a tā méishì ba qíngkuàng búmiào wǒ mǎshàng gěi tā dǎ shìpín diànhuà · Oh no! Is she all right? This doesn't look good: I'll video-call her right away.

dr zhou 我没事！昨天晚上收到暴雨预警，镇上提前疏散了老人和孩子，我们也连夜撤离了。
wǒ méishì zuótiān wǎnshang shōudào bàoyǔ yùjǐng zhèn shàng tíqián shūsàn le lǎorén hé háizi wǒmen yě liányè chèlí le · I'm fine! We got the rainstorm warning last night: the town evacuated the old people and children in advance, and we left overnight too.

editor lin 镇上的堤坝怎么样？网上说有一段堤倒塌了。
zhèn shàng de dībà zěnmeyàng wǎngshang shuō yǒu yí duàn dī dǎotā le · How are the town's dykes? People online are saying a section of embankment collapsed.

dr zhou 对，东边那段。上游开闸放水以后，水一下子就冲过来了，田里全涝了。
duì dōng biān nà duàn shàngyóu kāi zhá fàngshuǐ yǐhòu shuǐ yíxià zi jiù chōng guolai le tián lǐ quán lào le · Yes, the eastern stretch. After they opened the sluices upstream, the water came over all at once, and the fields are all waterlogged.

editor lin 水再涨下去，就会危及整个小镇。
shuǐ zài zhǎng xiaqu jiù huì wēijí zhěnggè xiǎo zhèn · If the water keeps rising, it'll put the whole town in danger.

anna 有人遇险吗？
yǒu rén yùxiǎn ma · Is anyone in danger?

dr zhou 有一家人困在楼顶上，搜救队用船把他们营救了出来。还有一辆车被冲进河里，刚刚打捞上来，车里没人。
yǒu yì jiā rén kùn zài lóu dǐng shàng sōujiù duì yòng chuán bǎ tāmen yíngjiù le chulai hái yǒu yí liàng chē bèi chōng jìn hé lǐ gānggāng dǎlāo shanglai chē lǐ méi rén · A family was stuck on their roof, and the rescue team got them out by boat. A car was also swept into the river and has just been pulled out: nobody was in it.

editor lin 那就好。我做了这么多年新闻，空难、海啸、大火烧毁整个村子……最怕听到有人遇难、丧生。
nà jiù hǎo wǒ zuò le zhème duō nián xīnwén kōngnàn hǎixiào dà huǒ shāohuǐ zhěnggè cūn zi zuì pà tīng dào yǒu rén yùnàn sàngshēng · Thank goodness. I've covered news for years: air crashes, tsunamis, fires burning down whole villages… What I dread most is hearing that people have died.

dr zhou 这次大家都幸存了，可是很多房子没能幸免，不少人无家可归。
zhè cì dàjiā dōu xìngcún le kěshì hěn duō fángzi méi néng xìngmiǎn bù shǎo rén wújiā kěguī · This time everyone survived, but a lot of houses didn't escape, and many people have nowhere to live.

anna 那他们现在在哪儿避难？
nà tāmen xiànzài zài nǎr bìnàn · So where are they sheltering now?

dr zhou 镇上的中学收留了两百多人。别看学校不大，应急的东西准备得很全：水、被子、方便面都有。
zhèn shàng de zhōngxué shōuliú le liǎngbǎi duō rén biékàn xuéxiào bú dà yìngjí de dōngxi zhǔnbèi de hěn quán shuǐ bèizi fāngbiànmiàn dōu yǒu · The town's secondary school has taken in over two hundred people. It may not be big, but it's well stocked for emergencies: water, quilts, instant noodles, the lot.

editor lin 我听说一个慈善基金会已经开始募捐了，政府也会发救济。
wǒ tīngshuō yí gè císhàn jījīnhuì yǐjīng kāishǐ mùjuān le zhèngfǔ yě huì fā jiùjì · I hear a charity foundation has already started raising money, and the government will give relief too.

anna 我们公司也可以捐献一些钱和物品。我还想去当义工！
wǒmen gōngsī yě kěyǐ juānxiàn yìxiē qián hé wùpǐn wǒ hái xiǎng qù dāng yìgōng · Our company could donate some money and supplies too. And I want to go and volunteer!

dr zhou 太好了！等水退了，要帮忙的事很多，任务很艰巨。田要是一直没人管，就荒了。
tài hǎo le děng shuǐ tuì le yào bāngmáng de shì hěn duō rènwu hěn jiānjù tián yàoshi yìzhí méi rén guǎn jiù huāng le · Wonderful! Once the water goes down there'll be lots to do: it's a huge task. If nobody looks after the fields, they'll go to waste.

editor lin 这次逃生的故事，我想写一篇报道。“防汛救人”，题目还可以再想想。
zhè cì táoshēng de gùshi wǒ xiǎng xiě yì piān bàodào fángxùn jiù rén tímù hái kěyǐ zài xiǎng xiang · I want to write a piece on how people got out this time. “Fighting the flood, saving lives”: the headline needs work.

dr zhou 写写那些不怕艰险、解救别人的普通人吧。拯救生命的，不只是英雄。
xiě xie nàxiē bú pà jiānxiǎn jiějiù biérén de pǔtōng rén ba zhěngjiù shēngmìng de bù zhǐshì yīngxióng · Write about the ordinary people who braved the danger to rescue others. It isn't only heroes who save lives.

anna 失事、遇难这些词，我希望在你的报道里一个都不要出现。
shīshì yùnàn zhèxiē cí wǒ xīwàng zài nǐ de bàodào lǐ yí gè dōu búyào chūxiàn · Words like “crash” and “killed”: I hope not one of them appears in your report.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

纲 gāng main rope

党 dǎng (political) party

吁 yù appeal

盟 méng alliance

good to know · 难 read nàn means disaster: 遇难 die in a disaster, 避难 take refuge, 空难 an air crash. Read nán it means difficult. Four ways to rescue: 救 (everyday), 营救 (an organised rescue), 解救 (free someone trapped), 拯救 (save, often grandly).

You can now follow disaster news in Chinese, and, more importantly, ask how to help.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 126 resources and pollution

Talk about natural resources, energy and pollution, and explain what makes a flood worse.

Energy and the environment come up everywhere, from the news to your electricity bill.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
采矿	cǎikuàng	to mine	这座山下面有煤，以前很多人在这里采矿。 There's coal under this mountain, and many people used to mine here.
开采	kāicǎi	to extract, mine	这里的石油已经开采了五十年。 The oil here has been extracted for fifty years.
勘探	kāntàn	to prospect, survey (for resources)	他们在沙漠里勘探了三年，终于找到了石油。 They prospected in the desert for three years and finally found oil.
矿	kuàng	mine; ore	这个矿已经关了十年了。 This mine has been closed for ten years.
矿藏	kuàngcáng	mineral deposits	这个地区的矿藏非常丰富。 This region is very rich in mineral deposits.
矿产	kuàngchǎn	minerals, mineral products	矿产资源不是用不完的。 Mineral resources won't last for ever.
储量	chǔliàng	reserves	专家说，这里的天然气储量很大。 Experts say the natural gas reserves here are large.
蕴藏	yùncáng	to hold in store, contain	大海里蕴藏着丰富的资源。 The sea holds rich resources.
煤炭	méitàn	coal	很多城市已经不再用煤炭取暖了。 Many cities no longer burn coal for heating.
炭	tàn	charcoal	爷爷用炭火烤红薯。 Grandpa roasts sweet potatoes over a charcoal fire.
柴油	cháiyóu	diesel	大卡车一般烧柴油。 Big lorries usually run on diesel.
燃油	rányóu	fuel oil, fuel	燃油价格又上涨了。 Fuel prices have gone up again.
燃气	ránqì	gas (for cooking, heating)	做完饭，记得关好燃气。 When you finish cooking, remember to turn off the gas.
能耗	nénghào	energy consumption	这台新冰箱的能耗比旧的低一半。 This new fridge uses half the energy of the old one.
尾气	wěiqì	exhaust (fumes)	汽车尾气是城市空气污染的原因之一。 Car exhaust is one of the causes of air pollution in cities.

超标	chāobiāo	to exceed the standard	检查发现，这家工厂排放的尾气超标了。 Tests found that the fumes from this factory exceed the limit.
泄漏	xièlòu	to leak	工厂的燃气泄漏了，附近的人都被疏散了。 Gas leaked from the factory, and people nearby were evacuated.
焚烧	fénshāo	to burn, incinerate	城市的垃圾不能随便焚烧。 A city's rubbish can't just be burned anywhere.
废品	fèipǐn	scrap, waste (items)	我把旧报纸当废品卖了。 I sold the old newspapers as scrap.
废弃	fèiqì	to discard; abandoned	山上有一个废弃的矿。 There's an abandoned mine on the mountain.
废物	fèiwù	waste; (insult) good-for-nothing	工厂的废物不能直接倒进河里。 Factory waste can't be dumped straight into the river.
净化	jìnghuà	to purify	湿地可以净化水。 Wetlands can purify water.
砍伐	kǎnfá	to fell, cut down (trees)	这片森林被砍伐了一大半。 More than half of this forest has been cut down.
流失	liúshī	to be lost, drain away	人才流失是这个小镇最大的问题。 Losing talented people is this town's biggest problem.
水土	shuǐtǔ	water and soil	树少了，水土就容易流失。 With fewer trees, the soil is easily washed away.
水源	shuǐyuán	water source	这条河是整个城市的水源。 This river is the whole city's water source.
水利	shuǐlì	water conservancy	这座水坝是这里最大的水利工程。 This dam is the biggest water project here.
湿地	shīdì	wetland	湿地被称为“地球之肾”。 Wetlands are called “the kidneys of the earth”.
绿地	lǜdì	green space	新小区里有一大片绿地。 The new housing estate has a big green space.
温室	wēnshì	greenhouse	冬天也能吃到温室里种的西红柿。 Even in winter you can eat tomatoes grown in greenhouses.
枯竭	kūjié	dried up, exhausted	这口井已经枯竭了。 This well has dried up.
灭绝	mièjué	to become extinct	这种鸟一百年前就灭绝了。 This bird became extinct a hundred years ago.
绝迹	juéjì	to disappear, die out	这种老手艺几乎已经绝迹了。 This old craft has almost died out.
濒危	bīnwēi	endangered, on the brink	大熊猫现在已经不再是濒危动物了。 Giant pandas are no longer an endangered species.
珍稀	zhēnxī	rare and precious	湿地是很多珍稀鸟类的家。 Wetlands are home to many rare birds.

pattern conditions inside conditions, and 虽说……但……

如果 A， **只要 B，** **就 C**

At this level one sentence can hold several conditions: 如果 sets the big “if”, and inside it 只要……就…… or 要是……就…… adds a smaller one. 虽说……，但/可…… means “true, …, but still …”, a softer, more spoken 虽然.

如果上游的森林还在，只要湿地不被填平，水就不会涨得这么快。 **rúguǒ shàngyóu de sēnlín hái zài zhǐyào shīdì bú bèi tián píng shuǐ jiù bú huì zhǎng de zhème kuài** If the forests upstream were still there, then as long as the wetlands weren’t filled in, the water wouldn’t rise this fast.

要是工厂不改，即使罚了款，河水也净化不了。 **yàoshi gōngchǎng bù gǎi jíshǐ fá le kuǎn hé shuǐ yě jìnghuà bu liǎo** If the factory doesn’t change, the river won’t get clean even if it is fined.

虽说煤炭便宜，可尾气和废物太多了。 **suīshuō méitàn piányi kě wěiqì hé fèiwù tài duō le** Coal may be cheap, but it leaves far too much exhaust and waste.

dialogue why the river rose

little sister 周博士，网上有人说，这次洪水就是天气不好，跟人没关系。您怎么看？
Zhōubóshì wǎngshang yǒu rén shuō zhè cì hóngshuǐ jiùshì tiānqì bù hǎo gēn rén méi guānxi nín zěnme kàn · Dr Zhou, people online say this flood was just bad weather and nothing to do with people. What do you think?

dr zhou 虽说雨下得特别大，可是人也有责任。你们看地图：上游这片山，三十年前全是森林，后来被砍伐了，水土大量流失。
suīshuō yǔ xià de tèbié dà kěshì rén yě yǒu zérèn nǐmen kàn dìtú shàngyóu zhè piàn shān sānshí nián qián quán shì sēnlín hòulái bèi kǎnfá le shuǐtǔ dàliàng liúshī · The rain was unusually heavy, true, but people are responsible too. Look at the map: thirty years ago these mountains upstream were all forest. Then they were cut down, and the soil washed away.

anna 我还听说那里以前有很多矿。
wǒ hái tīngshuō nàlǐ yǐqián yǒu hěn duō kuàng · I also heard there used to be a lot of mines there.

dr zhou 对。山里蕴藏着丰富的矿产，勘探的人一来，大家就开始采矿。煤炭、还有别的矿藏，开采了几十年。
duì shān lǐ yùncáng zhe fēngfù de kuàngchǎn kāntàn de rén yì lái dàjiā jiù kāishǐ cǎikuàng méitàn hái yǒu biéde kuàngcáng kāicǎi le jǐ shí nián · Yes. The mountains are rich in minerals: once the prospectors came, everyone started mining. Coal and other deposits were dug out for decades.

little sister 现在呢？
xiànzài ne · And now?

dr zhou 储量差不多枯竭了，留下一个个废弃的矿。下雨的时候，矿里的废物都被冲进河里，水源也被污染了，检查结果严重超标。
chǔliàng chàbuduō kūjié le liúxia yí gè gè fèiqì de kuàng xià yǔ de shíhou kuàng lǐ de fèiwù dōu bèi chōng jìn hé lǐ shuǐyuán yě bèi wūrǎn le jiǎnchá jiéguǒ yánzhòng chāobiāo · The reserves are almost exhausted, and there's one abandoned mine after another. When it rains, waste from the mines washes into the river, and the water supply gets polluted: the test results were way over the limit.

anna 那湿地呢？以前河边不是有一大片湿地吗？
nà shīdì ne yǐqián hé biān bú shì yǒu yí dàpiàn shīdì ma · What about the wetlands? Wasn't there a big wetland by the river?

dr zhou 湿地是天然的“海绵”：既能净化水，又能吸收洪水。可是后来湿地被填平，盖了温室和工厂。如果湿地还在，只要上游不再砍树，水就不会涨得这么快。
shīdì shì tiānrán de hǎimián jì néng jìnghuà shuǐ yòu néng xīshōu hóngshuǐ kěshì hòulái shīdì bèi tián píng gài le wēnshì hé gōngchǎng rúguǒ shīdì hái zài zhǐyào shàngyóu bú zài kǎn shù shuǐ jiù bú huì zhǎng de zhème kuài · Wetlands are natural sponges: they purify water and soak up floods. But they were filled in to build greenhouses and factories. If the wetland were still there, then as long as no more trees were cut upstream, the water wouldn't rise this fast.

little sister 我还看到新闻说，镇上一家工厂的燃气泄漏了，工人都疏散了。
wǒ hái kàn dào xīnwén shuō zhèn shàng yì jiā gōngchǎng de ránqì xièlòu le gōngrén dōu shūsàn le · I also saw news that gas leaked at a factory in town, and the workers were all evacuated.

dr zhou 幸好发现得早，没有人遇险。还有人在河边焚烧垃圾和废品，柴油、燃油到处都是。
xìnghǎo fāxiàn de zǎo méiyǒu rén yùxiǎn hái yǒu rén zài hé biān fénshāo lājī hé fèipǐn cháiyóu rányóu dàochù dōu shì · Luckily they found it early, and nobody was in danger. People had also been burning rubbish and scrap by the river, with diesel and fuel oil everywhere.

anna 我们在城市里也一样：汽车尾气、空调、暖气，能耗越来越高。
wǒmen zài chéngshì lǐ yě yíyàng qìchē wěiqì kōngtiáo nuǎnqì nénghào yuè lái yuè gāo · It's the same in the city: car exhaust, air conditioning, heating, using more and more energy.

dr zhou 所以要多种树、多留绿地。连我们家的炭火锅，我都改成电的了。
suǒyǐ yào duō zhòng shù duō liú lǜdì lián wǒmen jiā de tàn huǒguō wǒ dōu gǎi chéng diàn de le · So we need more trees and more green space. I've even switched our charcoal hotpot to an electric one.

little sister 那里的动物怎么样？
nàlǐ de dòngwù zěnmeyàng · How are the animals there?

dr zhou 河边有一种珍稀的鸟，现在是濒危动物。在别的地方，它已经绝迹了。如果再不保护，它就会灭绝。

hé biān yǒu yì zhǒng zhēnxī de niǎo xiànzài shì bīnwēi dòngwù zài biéde dìfang tā yǐjīng juéjì le rúguǒ zài bù bǎohù tā jiù huì mièjué · There's a rare bird by the river that is now endangered. Everywhere else, it has already disappeared. If it isn't protected, it will become extinct.

anna 政府打算怎么办？

zhèngfǔ dǎsuàn zěnme bàn · What is the government planning to do?

dr zhou 要修新的水利工程，还要把废弃的矿变成森林和湿地。要是大家都支持，用不了十年，就能看到变化。

yào xiū xīn de shuǐlì gōngchéng hái yào bǎ fèiqì de kuàng biànchéng sēnlín hé shīdì yàoshi dàjiā dōu zhīchí yòng bu liǎo shí nián jiù néng kàn dào biànhuà · They will build new water projects and turn the abandoned mines back into forest and wetland. If everyone supports it, we'll see the change within ten years.

anna 我们公司可以和慈善基金会一起捐献一些钱，帮镇上种树。

wǒmen gōngsī kěyǐ hé císhàn jījīnhuì yìqǐ juānxiàn yìxiē qián bāng zhèn shàng zhòng shù · Our company could work with a charity foundation and donate some money to help the town plant trees.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

驱
qū
drive

崛
jué
rise abruptly

昌
chāng
flourishing

彰
zhāng
make known

good to know · 废 means useless or abandoned: 废品 scrap, 废物 waste, 废弃 abandoned, 废水 waste water, 废话 nonsense. 矿 builds the mining words: 采矿 mine, 矿产 minerals, 矿藏 deposits, 煤矿 a coal mine, 矿泉水 mineral water.

Coal, wetlands, rare birds and leaking gas: you can now talk about the environment like a science reporter.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 127 change and reform

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 17 · environment and change

Describe how a place or a company changes: starting out, turning points, reforms and milestones.

Every business plan, history book and news story about China talks about change, and it has dozens of words for it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
变革	biàngé	to transform; transformation	互联网给我们的生活带来了一场变革。 The internet has revolutionised our lives.
变更	biàngēng	to change, alter (plans, details)	会议时间有变更，请大家注意通知。 The meeting time has changed: please watch for the notice.
变故	biàngù	unforeseen misfortune	家里发生了变故，他只好回老家。 Something bad happened in his family, so he had to go home.
变换	biànhuàn	to vary, alternate	舞台上的灯光不停地变换颜色。 The stage lights kept changing colour.
变迁	biànqiān	changes (over time)	这本书|写的是一个小镇一百年的变迁。 This book is about a hundred years of change in a small town.
变形	biànxíng	to be deformed, lose shape	这个箱子被压得变形了。 This box has been crushed out of shape.
剧变	jùbiàn	drastic change	这几年，整个行业发生了剧变。 In the last few years the whole industry has changed beyond recognition.
沧桑	cāngsāng	great changes, the ups and downs of life	爷爷的脸上写满了沧桑。 Grandpa's face shows everything he has been through.
演变	yǎnbiàn	to evolve	汉字是从图画慢慢演变来的。 Chinese characters slowly evolved from pictures.
转化	zhuǎnhuà	to transform, convert	太阳能可以转化成电能。 Solar energy can be converted into electricity.
转型	zhuǎnxíng	to transform (a company, an economy)	这家老工厂正在转型，开始做新能源。 This old factory is transforming itself and moving into new energy.
转折	zhuǎnzhé	a turn, twist (in events)	这个故事的转折太突然了。 The twist in this story is too sudden.
转折点	zhuǎnzhédiǎn	turning point	那次比赛是他人生的转折点。 That match was the turning point of his life.
转机	zhuǎnjī	turn for the better	病人的情况有了转机{zhuan3ji1-7}。 The patient's condition has taken a turn for the better.

改动	gǎidòng	to alter, modify	这篇文章我只改动了几个字。 I only changed a few words in this article.
改观	gǎiguān	to change in appearance, look different	经过两年的努力，小镇大为改观。 After two years of work, the town looks completely different.
改良	gǎiliáng	to improve (a breed, method)	他们改良了这种水稻，产量高了很多。 They improved this rice variety and the yield went up a lot.
改装	gǎizhuāng	to refit, convert	他把一辆旧车改装成了咖啡车。 He converted an old car into a coffee van.
更改	gēnggǎi	to change, alter	密码已经更改了。 The password has been changed.
更正	gēngzhèng	to correct (a statement)	昨天的报道有一个错误，今天我们更正一下。 Yesterday's report had a mistake, which we're correcting today.
修正	xiūzhèng	to amend, revise	专家修正了原来的计划。 The experts revised the original plan.
革新	géxīn	to innovate	技术不断革新，手机越来越轻。 Technology keeps improving, and phones get lighter and lighter.
刷新	shuāxīn	to break (a record); refresh	他又刷新了自己的世界纪录。 He broke his own world record again.
首创	shǒuchuàng	to pioneer; first of its kind	这种做法是这个小镇首创的。 This approach was pioneered by this town.
创	chuàng	to create, start; achieve	他三十岁就创了一家公司。 He started a company at thirty.
开辟	kāipì	to open up	这里开辟了一条新的公交线路。 A new bus route has been opened here.
开拓	kāituò	to open up, pioneer	公司今年开拓了海外市场。 The company opened up overseas markets this year.
起步	qǐbù	to start, take the first step	我们的公司起步很晚，但是发展很快。 Our company started late, but it has grown fast.
入手	rùshǒu	to start with, begin from	学一门语言，要从听说入手。 To learn a language, start with listening and speaking.
着手	zhuóshǒu	to set about, get down to	我们已经着手准备新的项目了。 We've already got started on the new project.
下手	xiàshǒu	to start, get to work; make a move	这么多事，我都不知道从哪儿下手。 There's so much to do, I don't know where to start.
步入	bùrù	to step into, enter (a stage)	他们的公司已经步入了快速发展的时期。 Their company has entered a period of fast growth.
划时代	huàshídài	epoch-making	智能手机是一个划时代的产品。 The smartphone was an epoch-making product.
里程碑	lǐchéngbēi	milestone	这次合作是我们公司的里程碑。 This partnership is a milestone for our company.

突破口	tūpòkǒu	breakthrough point	解决这个问题，要先找到突破口。 To solve this problem, first find the breakthrough point.

pattern 尚且……何况…… and 到这个地步

A	尚且	can't / must	，何况	B	?

……尚且……，(更)何况…… argues from the stronger case: "even A …, so all the more B". X到这个地步 (or 到这个份上) says things have gone so far: 污染到这个地步 "polluted to this extent". Both make an argument sound urgent.

大城市尚且来不及预警，更何况一个小镇？ **dà chéngshì shàngqiě láibují yùjǐng gèng hékuàng yí gè xiǎo zhèn** Even big cities can't warn people in time, let alone a small town.

专家尚且说不清楚，何况我们？ **zhuānjiā shàngqiě shuō bu qīngchu hékuàng wǒmen** Even the experts can't explain it clearly, never mind us.

公司都困难到这个地步了，再不转型就晚了。 **gōngsī dōu kùnnan dào zhège dìbù le zài bù zhuǎnxíng jiù wǎn le** The company is in such trouble that if it doesn't change now, it'll be too late.

dialogue a town that changed

manager liu 安娜，周博士那个小镇怎么样了？
Ānnà Zhōubóshì nàge xiǎo zhèn zěnmeyàng le · Anna, how is Dr Zhou's town doing?

anna 水退了，可是大家心里都不好受。周博士给我讲了那里三十年的变迁，真是一部沧桑的历史。
shuǐ tuì le kěshì dàjiā xīnlǐ dōu bù hǎoshòu Zhōubóshì gěi wǒ jiǎng le nàlǐ sānshí nián de biànqiān zhēnshi yí bù cāngsāng de lìshǐ · The water has gone down, but everyone is shaken. Dr Zhou told me about thirty years of change there: quite a history of ups and downs.

manager liu 说来听听。
shuō lái tīng ting · Tell me.

anna 小镇是靠采矿起步的，后来矿藏枯竭了，经济剧变，年轻人都走了。很多家庭都经历过变故。
xiǎo zhèn shì kào cǎikuàng qǐbù de hòulái kuàngcáng kūjié le jīngjì jùbiàn niánqīng rén dōu zǒu le hěn duō jiātíng dōu jīnglì guo biàngù · The town started out on mining. Then the deposits ran out, the economy collapsed, and the young people left. Many families went through hard times.

manager liu 很多地方都是这样演变的。后来呢？
hěn duō dìfang dōu shì zhèyàng yǎnbiàn de hòulái ne · A lot of places have evolved like that. And then?

anna 十年前小镇开始转型，开辟了一片茶园，把旧工厂改装成了民宿，还改良了茶叶。小镇大为改观。
shí nián qián xiǎo zhèn kāishǐ zhuǎnxíng kāipì le yí piàn chá yuán bǎ jiù gōngchǎng gǎizhuāng chéng le mínsù hái gǎiliáng le cháyè xiǎo zhèn dàwéi gǎiguān · Ten years ago the town started to reinvent itself: it opened a tea garden, converted the old factory into guesthouses and improved its tea. The place looks completely different now.

manager liu 那这次洪水是一个转折，说不定也是小镇的转机。
nà zhè cì hóngshuǐ shì yí gè zhuǎnzhé shuōbudìng yě shì xiǎo zhèn de zhuǎnjī · So this flood is a turning point, and maybe a chance for the town to turn things around.

anna 对。我想做一个划时代的东西：给小镇做一个洪水预警的手机应用。大城市尚且来不及预警，何况一个小镇？
duì wǒ xiǎng zuò yí gè huàshídài de dōngxi gěi xiǎo zhèn zuò yí gè hóngshuǐ yùjǐng de shǒujī yìngyòng dà chéngshì shàngqiě láibují yùjǐng hékuàng yí gè xiǎo zhèn · Yes. I want to make something groundbreaking: a flood early-warning app for small towns. Even big cities can't warn people in time, let alone a small town.

manager liu 有意思。说实话，我们公司也正想开拓新的方向。老业务做到这个地步，不革新不行了。这对我们也是一场变革。
yǒu yìsi shuō shíhuà wǒmen gōngsī yě zhèng xiǎng kāituò xīn de fāngxiàng lǎo yèwù zuò dào zhège dìbù bù géxīn bùxíng le zhè duì wǒmen yě shì yì chǎng biàngé · Interesting. To be honest, our company is looking for a new direction too. The old business has got to the point where we have to innovate. It'll be a revolution for us too.

anna 我已经着手准备了。周博士说，可以从河边的水位数据入手，这就是突破口。
wǒ yǐjīng zhuóshǒu zhǔnbèi le Zhōubóshì shuō kěyǐ cóng hé biān de shuǐ wèi shùjù rùshǒu zhè jiùshì tūpòkǒu · I've already started on it. Dr Zhou says we can start with the river's water-level data: that's our way in.

manager liu 镇上的人刚刚从大水里逃生，这个应用对他们很重要。
zhèn shàng de rén gānggāng cóng dà shuǐ lǐ táoshēng zhège yìngyòng duì tāmen hěn zhòngyào · The people in that town have only just escaped the flood: this app matters a lot to them.

manager liu 计划要是有变更，或者要更改时间，先跟我说。
jìhuà yàoshi yǒu biàngēng huòzhě yào gēnggǎi shíjiān xiān gēn wǒ shuō · If the plan changes, or the timing needs altering, tell me first.

anna 好的。手机屏幕会根据危险程度变换颜色：绿色、黄色、红色。
hǎo de shǒujī píngmù huì gēnjù wēixiǎn chéngdù biànhuàn yánsè lǜsè huángsè hóngsè · Of course. The screen will change colour depending on the danger: green, amber, red.

manager liu 计划书写好以后给我看。上次的报告里有个数字错了，记得更正一下。
jìhuà shū xiě hǎo yǐhòu gěi wǒ kàn shàng cì de bàogào lǐ yǒu gè shùzì cuò le jìde gēngzhèng yíxià · Show me the proposal when it's written. One figure in your last report was wrong: remember to correct it.

anna 已经修正了。我只改动了那一个地方。
yǐjīng xiūzhèng le wǒ zhǐ gǎidòng le nà yí gè dìfang · It's already fixed. That was the only change I made.

manager liu 不过别急着下手。先把需求想清楚，再把技术转化成产品。
búguò bié jí zhe xiàshǒu xiān bǎ xūqiú xiǎng qīngchu zài bǎ jìshù zhuǎnhuà chéng chǎnpǐn · But don't rush in. Get clear on what people need first, then turn the technology into a product.

anna 明白。要是做成了，这就是全国首创。
míngbai yàoshi zuò chéng le zhè jiùshì quán guó shǒuchuàng · Understood. If we pull it off, it'll be the first of its kind in the country.

manager liu 那就是公司的一个里程碑。我们也算步入新的阶段了。
nà jiùshì gōngsī de yí gè lǐchéngbēi wǒmen yě suàn bùrù xīn de jiēduàn le · Then it'll be a milestone for the company. We'll be entering a new stage.

anna 说不定还能刷新我们的下载纪录！
shuōbudìng hái néng shuāxīn wǒmen de xiàzài jìlù · We might even break our download record!

manager liu 先别想纪录了。我们创过不少纪录，可是这一次，是为了救人。
xiān bié xiǎng jìlù le wǒmen chuàng guo bù shǎo jìlù kěshì zhè yí cì shì wèile jiù rén · Forget records for now. We've set plenty of records before, but this time it's about saving lives.

anna 对了，我的手机都被我摔得变形了，项目一开始就得换一个！
duì le wǒ de shǒujī dōu bèi wǒ shuāi de biànxíng le xiàngmù yì kāishǐ jiù děi huàn yí gè · Oh, and I've dropped my phone so often it's bent out of shape: I'll need a new one as soon as the project starts!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

帜
zhì
banner

峻
jùn
steep

涝
lào
waterlogged (fields)

堤
dī
dyke, embankment

good to know · 转 starts the words for turning: 转型 transform (a business), 转折 a twist, 转折点 turning point, 转机 a turn for the better, 转化 convert. Where to start? 起步 start out, 入手 start from (a point), 着手 set about, 下手 get to work (or, careful, "make a move against").

Turning points, milestones, a way in: you can now pitch a plan for change in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 128 trends and signs

Talk about trends, early signs and turning points, and say whether things are likely to happen.

Reports, news and meetings are full of trends and signs: this is the language of forecasts.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
动向	dòngxiàng	movement, trend	我们要随时关注市场的动向。 We need to keep an eye on how the market is moving.
走向	zǒuxiàng	direction, trend; to head towards	这次会议会影响整个行业的走向。 This meeting will shape the direction of the whole industry.
流向	liúxiàng	direction of flow	我们要查清楚这笔钱的流向。 We need to find out where this money went.
势头	shìtou	momentum, trend	今年的销售势头很好。 Sales have good momentum this year.
态势	tàishì	situation, posture	两家公司形成了竞争的态势。 The two companies are now squaring up to compete.
事态	shìtài	state of affairs (usually bad)	政府正在努力控制事态。 The government is trying to keep the situation under control.
大局	dàjú	the overall situation	他做事总是从大局出发。 He always acts with the bigger picture in mind.
全局	quánjú	the situation as a whole	当领导的要看全局，不能只看自己的部门。 A leader must see the whole picture, not just their own department.
格局	géjú	pattern, structure, layout	这套房子的格局很好，客厅很大。 The layout of this flat is good: the living room is big.
趋于	qūyú	to tend towards	天气趋于稳定，这周不会再下大雨了。 The weather is settling: no more heavy rain this week.
迹象	jìxiàng	sign, indication	现在还没有下雨的迹象。 There's no sign of rain yet.
苗头	miáotou	early sign (often of trouble)	发现不好的苗头，要马上处理。 When you spot early signs of trouble, deal with them at once.
预示	yùshì	to herald, foreshadow	早上的乌云预示着下午会有暴雨。 The dark clouds this morning signal a storm this afternoon.
曙光	shǔguāng	dawn; first light of hope	新药的出现给病人带来了曙光。 The new drug has brought a glimmer of hope to patients.
契机	qìjī	opportunity, moment	这次危机也是一个改变的契机。 This crisis is also a chance for change.

巧合	qiǎohé	coincidence; coincidental	我们穿了一样的衣服，真是巧合！ We're wearing the same outfit: what a coincidence!
热潮	rècháo	craze, upsurge	最近又掀起了一股学中文的热潮。 There's a new wave of enthusiasm for learning Chinese.
冷门	lěngmén	unpopular; a long shot	十年前，这还是个冷门专业。 Ten years ago, this was still an unpopular subject.
超前	chāoqián	ahead of its time; to be ahead	他的设计太超前了，当时没人理解。 His design was too far ahead of its time: nobody understood it then.
空前	kōngqián	unprecedented	这次比赛的规模是空前的。 This competition is on an unprecedented scale.
进程	jìnchéng	process, course (of events)	城市化的进程越来越快。 Urbanisation is speeding up.
历程	lìchéng	course, journey (of experience)	她在书里写了自己创业的历程。 In her book she writes about her journey as an entrepreneur.
漫	màn	to overflow; everywhere	河水漫过了路面。 The river overflowed onto the road.
有望	yǒuwàng	to be hopeful of, be likely to	这个项目有望在年底完成。 The project should be finished by the end of the year.
注定	zhùdìng	to be destined, doomed	这样做注定会失败。 Doing it this way is doomed to fail.
自发	zìfā	spontaneous	很多年轻人自发组织起来去救灾。 Many young people organised themselves to help in the disaster.
诱发	yòufā	to cause, trigger	压力太大，诱发了他的心脏病。 Too much stress brought on his heart problems.
衍生	yǎnshēng	to derive, produce (new things)	这个电影衍生出了很多玩具和游戏。 This film spun off lots of toys and games.
滋生	zīshēng	to breed, grow (usually bad things)	天气潮湿，容易滋生细菌。 Damp weather easily breeds bacteria.
酝酿	yùnniàng	to brew; prepare (a plan)	公司正在酝酿一个大计划。 The company is preparing a big plan.
迭起	diéqǐ	to happen one after another	比赛中高潮迭起，观众都站了起来。 The match had one high point after another, and the crowd was on its feet.
迸发	bèngfā	to burst out	大家的热情一下子迸发了出来。 Everyone's enthusiasm suddenly burst out.
掀起	xiānqǐ	to set off (a wave)	这篇文章掀起了一场讨论。 This article set off a debate.
显现	xiǎnxiàn	to appear, become visible	改革的效果已经开始显现。 The effects of the reform are starting to show.
显露	xiǎnlù	to reveal, show	她脸上显露出了一丝笑容。 A faint smile showed on her face.

pattern x也好，y也罢 and 不知……才好

X | **也好，** | **Y** | **也罢，** | **it's the same**

X也好，Y也罢 means "whether X or Y, it makes no difference", and the next clause says what stays the same. 不知X是好 / 不知X才好 means "not know what to X": 不知怎么办才好 "not know what to do".

下雨也好，不下雨也罢，预警都要提前发。 **xià yǔ yěhǎo bú xià yǔ yěbà yùjǐng dōu yào tíqián fā** Rain or no rain, the warnings have to go out early.

大城市也好，小镇也罢，都需要应急计划。 **dà chéngshì yěhǎo xiǎo zhèn yěbà dōu xūyào yìngjí jìhuà** Big city or small town, everyone needs an emergency plan.

事态发展得这么快，大家都不知怎么办才好。 **shìtài fāzhǎn de zhème kuài dàjiā dōu bù zhī zěnme bàn cái hǎo** Things moved so fast that nobody knew what to do.

dialogue thirty years of rain

dr zhou 你们看这张图。三十年来，这条河的雨量趋于集中，暴雨越来越多。这个走向很明显。

nǐmen kàn zhè zhāng tú sānshí nián lái zhè tiáo hé de yǔ liàng qūyú jízhōng bàoyǔ yuè lái yuè duō zhège zǒuxiàng hěn míngxiǎn · Look at this chart. Over thirty years, the river's rain has come in shorter, heavier bursts, with more and more storms. The trend is very clear.

anna 这么多年的数据，看得我都不知说什么才好。

zhème duō nián de shùjù kàn de wǒ dōu bù zhī shuō shénme cái hǎo · Looking at this many years of data, I don't know what to say.

dr zhou 更可怕的是，暴雨很容易诱发别的灾害。洪水退了，又会滋生细菌。

gèng kěpà de shì bàoyǔ hěn róngyì yòufā biéde zāihài hóngshuǐ tuì le yòu huì zīshēng xìjūn · Worse still, heavy rain easily triggers other disasters. And when the floodwater goes, it breeds bacteria.

editor lin 那今年的洪水是巧合，还是早就注定了？

nà jīnnián de hóngshuǐ shì qiǎohé háishi zǎo jiù zhùdìng le · So was this year's flood bad luck, or was it bound to happen?

dr zhou 不是巧合。几年前就有苗头了：河水好几次漫过路面，只是没有人重视。这些迹象都预示着会有大洪水。

bú shì qiǎohé jǐ nián qián jiù yǒu miáotou le hé shuǐ hǎo jǐ cì màn guò lùmiàn zhǐshì méiyǒu rén zhòngshì zhèxiē jìxiàng dōu yùshì zhe huì yǒu dà hóngshuǐ · Not bad luck. There were early signs years ago: the river spilled over the road several times, but nobody took it seriously. All of it pointed to a big flood.

anna 那现在的态势呢？

nà xiànzài de tàishì ne · And where do things stand now?

dr zhou 现在天气趋于稳定，水的流向也正常了，事态已经控制住了。不过从全局来看，危险并没有过去。

xiànzài tiānqì qūyú wěndìng shuǐ de liúxiàng yě zhèngcháng le shìtài yǐjīng kòngzhì zhù le búguò cóng quánjú lái kàn wēixiǎn bìng méiyǒu guòqù · The weather is settling and the water is flowing normally again, so the situation is under control. But looking at the whole picture, the danger hasn't passed.

editor lin 我有个好消息：我的报道发出去以后，网上掀起了一股做义工的热潮。几千个年轻人自发报名去小镇帮忙，这是空前的。

wǒ yǒu gè hǎo xiāoxi wǒ de bàodào fā chuqu yǐhòu wǎngshang xiānqǐ le yì gǔ zuò yìgōng de rècháo jǐ qiān gè niánqīng rén zìfā bàomíng qù xiǎo zhèn bāngmáng zhè shì kōngqián de · I have good news: since my story went out, there's been a wave of volunteering online. Thousands of young people have signed up on their own to help the town: it's never happened before.

anna 太好了！大家的热情一下子迸发出来了。

tài hǎo le dàjiā de rèqíng yíxià zi bèngfā chulai le · Wonderful! Everyone's enthusiasm has just burst out.

editor lin 后面的事也是高潮迭起：有人捐钱，有人捐车，还衍生出了一个“小镇的故事”的视频系列。

hòumiàn de shì yě shì gāocháo diéqǐ yǒu rén juān qián yǒu rén juān chē hái yǎnshēng chū le yí gè xiǎo zhèn de gùshi de shìpín xìliè · And it hasn't stopped: people donating money, people donating cars, and it's even spun off a video series, “Stories from the town”.

anna 听说这个视频系列还刷新了网站的纪录！

tīngshuō zhège shìpín xìliè hái shuāxīn le wǎngzhàn de jìlù · I heard the video series has even broken the site's record!

dr zhou 这对小镇是一个契机，说不定还是一个转机。灾难过后，总会显现出一些新的曙光。

zhè duì xiǎo zhèn shì yí gè qìjī shuōbudìng háishi yí gè zhuǎnjī zāinàn guòhòu zǒng huì xiǎnxiàn chū yìxiē xīn de shǔguāng · This is an opportunity for the town, maybe even a turn for the better. After a disaster, new hope always starts to show.

anna 我们公司也在酝酿一个预警应用，我已经着手设计了。刘经理说要从大局出发，不能只想着赚钱。

wǒmen gōngsī yě zài yùnniàng yí gè yùjǐng yìngyòng wǒ yǐjīng zhuóshǒu shèjì le Liújīnglǐ shuō yào cóng dàjú chūfā bù néng zhǐ xiǎng zhe zhuàn qián · Our company is preparing an early-warning app too, and I've already started designing it. Manager Liu says we have to think of the bigger picture, not just making money.

editor lin 这个应用会不会太超前了？小镇上很多老人不会用智能手机。
zhège yìngyòng huì bu huì tài chāoqián le xiǎo zhèn shàng hěn duō lǎorén bú huì yòng zhìnéng shǒujī · Isn't the app a bit ahead of its time? Lots of old people in the town can't use smartphones.

anna 我们也想到了。手机也好，广播也罢，预警都要让每个人收到。
wǒmen yě xiǎng dào le shǒujī yěhǎo guǎngbō yěbà yùjǐng dōu yào ràng měi gè rén shōudào · We've thought of that. Phone or radio, every warning has to reach everyone.

dr zhou 那你们要关注一下政府防汛工作的动向，最好一起合作。
nà nǐmen yào guānzhù yíxià zhèngfǔ fángxùn gōngzuò de dòngxiàng zuìhǎo yìqǐ hézuò · Then keep an eye on what the government is doing on flood prevention: ideally, work with them.

editor lin 我想写一篇长文章，讲讲小镇从洪水到重建的整个历程，还有城市化进程中的小镇格局。
wǒ xiǎng xiě yì piān cháng wénzhāng jiǎng jiang xiǎo zhèn cóng hóngshuǐ dào chóngjiàn de zhěnggè lìchéng hái yǒu chéngshì huà jìnchéng zhōng de xiǎo zhèn géjú · I want to write a long piece on the town's whole journey from the flood to rebuilding, and how small towns fit into the urbanisation picture.

anna 小镇这个题目，以前是冷门，现在大家都在看。
xiǎo zhèn zhège tímù yǐqián shì lěngmén xiànzài dàjiā dōu zài kàn · Small towns used to be a niche subject. Now everyone's reading about them.

dr zhou 只要势头不变，这个应用有望年底上线。
zhǐyào shìtou bú biàn zhège yìngyòng yǒuwàng niándǐ shàng xiàn · If things keep going like this, the app could be live by the end of the year.

editor lin 周博士，说到这儿，您脸上终于显露出笑容了。
Zhōubóshì shuō dào zhèr nín liǎn shàng zhōngyú xiǎnlù chū xiàoróng le · Dr Zhou, you're finally smiling.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

闸
zhá
sluice gate; to dam, stop

塌
tā
to collapse, cave in

捞
lāo
to fish out, scoop up

募
mù
collect, recruit

good to know · 向 makes direction words: 动向 where something is moving, 走向 the way it is heading, 流向 where water or money flows. Bad signs and good signs: 苗头 is usually an early warning of trouble; 曙光 is the first light of hope.

Trends, signs and turning points: you can now read a forecast, and argue about what it means.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 129 gathering and spreading

Describe people and things coming together and spreading: crowds gathering, help pouring in, news spreading.

Whether it is water, money, people or news, gathering and spreading is how reports describe big events.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
汇合	huìhé	to join, converge	两条河在城外汇合。 The two rivers meet outside the city.
汇集	huìjí	to collect, compile	这本书汇集了一百个小故事。 This book collects a hundred short stories.
汇聚	huìjù	to gather, assemble	广场上汇聚了几千人。 Several thousand people gathered in the square.
凝聚	níngjù	to bring together, unite; condense	这次活动凝聚了大家的力量。 This event brought everyone's strength together.
积	jī	to accumulate, pile up	桌子上积了厚厚的一层土。 A thick layer of dust has built up on the table.
累积	lěijī	to accumulate	他在这家公司累积了十年的经验。 He built up ten years of experience at this company.
吸纳	xīnà	to take in, absorb	这个城市每年吸纳很多年轻人。 This city takes in lots of young people every year.
容纳	róngnà	to hold, have room for	这个体育馆能容纳一万人。 This stadium holds ten thousand people.
涵盖	hángài	to cover, include	这门课涵盖了中国两千年的历史。 This course covers two thousand years of Chinese history.
纳入	nàrù	to bring into, include in	这个项目已经被纳入了明年的计划。 This project has been included in next year's plan.
夹杂	jiāzá	to be mixed with	风里夹杂着雨点。 The wind was mixed with drops of rain.
交织	jiāozhī	to interweave	她心里高兴和难过交织在一起。 Joy and sadness were mixed up together inside her.
贯穿	guànchuān	to run through	这条河贯穿整个城市。 This river runs right through the city.
渗透	shèntòu	to seep; permeate	雨水渗透到了地下。 The rain seeped into the ground.
波及	bōjí	to spread to, affect	这次洪水波及了五个县。 This flood affected five counties.

散落	sànluò	to be scattered	地上散落着很多纸。 There are bits of paper scattered all over the floor.
融	róng	to melt; blend in	春天到了，山上的雪开始融了。 Spring has come, and the snow on the mountains is starting to melt.
消	xiāo	to disappear, subside; dispel	等水消了，我们再回去。 We'll go back once the water has gone down.
销	xiāo	to sell; cancel	这批货一个星期就销完了。 This batch of goods sold out in a week.
泄	xiè	to let out, release; vent	他们把水库里的水泄出去一部分。 They let some of the water out of the reservoir.
充	chōng	to fill, charge	我的手机没电了，在哪儿能充一下? My phone's dead: where can I charge it?
充斥	chōngchì	to be full of, flood (usually bad)	网上充斥着各种假消息。 The internet is flooded with all kinds of fake news.
饱和	bǎohé	saturated	这个市场已经饱和了。 This market is already saturated.
爆满	bàomǎn	to be packed, full house	演出那天，剧场爆满。 On the night of the show, the theatre was packed.
增添	zēngtiān	to add	这些小花给房间增添了不少颜色。 These little flowers add a lot of colour to the room.
占用	zhànyòng	to occupy, take up	对不起，占用你几分钟时间。 Sorry, can I take a few minutes of your time?
动用	dòngyòng	to use, draw on (resources)	这次救灾，政府动用了大量的人力。 The government drew on huge numbers of people for this disaster relief.
借用	jièyòng	to borrow, make use of	我借用一下你的笔，可以吗? Can I borrow your pen for a moment?
选用	xuǎnyòng	to choose and use	我们选用了最好的材料。 We chose the best materials.
沿用	yányòng	to continue to use	这个小镇一直沿用老名字。 The town has always kept its old name.
启用	qǐyòng	to start using, bring into use	新的火车站下个月启用。 The new railway station opens next month.
依托	yītuō	to rely on, be based on	这个应用依托当地的气象数据。 This app relies on local weather data.
惯	guàn	to be used to; to spoil (a child)	别把孩子惯坏了。 Don't spoil the child.
开动	kāidòng	to start (a machine), set going	车开动了，大家向我们挥手。 The truck set off, and everyone waved to us.

pattern chains of cause and effect, and 不a而b

由于 A，　(加上 B，)　所以 C，　因此 D

One sentence can hold a chain: 由于 A (加上 B), 所以 C, 因此 D: each result becomes the cause of the next. 不A而B means “B without A”: 不约而同 “do the same thing without arranging it”, 不言而喻 “it goes without saying”.

由于消息传得快，加上大家都很热心，所以东西汇集得很快，因此我们提前出发了。
yóuyú xiāoxi chuán de kuài jiāshàng dàjiā dōu hěn rèxīn suǒyǐ dōngxi huìjí de hěn kuài yīncǐ wǒmen tíqián chūfā le
Because word spread fast and everyone was so keen, the donations came in quickly, so we set off early.

因为河水上涨，所以堤坝被冲坏了，结果整个小镇都被波及了。 **yīnwèi hé shuǐ shàngzhǎng suǒyǐ dībà bèi chōng huài le jiéguǒ zhěnggè xiǎo zhèn dōu bèi bōjí le** The river rose and washed away the dyke, so the whole town was affected.

看到小镇的照片，大家不约而同地哭了。 **kàn dào xiǎo zhèn de zhàopiàn dàjiā bùyuēértóng de kū le**
Seeing the pictures of the town, everyone started crying at the same time.

dialogue loading the trucks

xiaoming 哇，体育馆能容纳一万人，今天都爆满了！
wā tǐyùguǎn néng róngnà yí wàn rén jīntiān dōu bàomǎn le · Wow, the sports centre holds ten thousand people, and today it's packed!

little sister 我们班的同学不约而同都来了。我只在群里说了一句，大家就从城市各个地方汇聚到这儿。这完全是自发的。
wǒmen bān de tóngxué bùyuēértóng dōu lái le wǒ zhǐ zài qún lǐ shuō le yí jù dàjiā jiù cóng chéngshì gègè dìfang huìjù dào zhèr zhè wánquán shì zìfā de · Everyone in my class turned up without even planning it. I only posted one line in our group chat, and people came from all over the city. It was completely spontaneous.

anna 林编辑说，这次洪水一共波及了五个县，那个小镇最严重。
Línbiānjí shuō zhè cì hóngshuǐ yígòng bōjí le wǔ gè xiàn nàge xiǎo zhèn zuì yánzhòng · Editor Lin says the flood hit five counties in all, and that town was the worst.

xiaoming 由于消息传得快，加上大家都很热心，所以东西汇集得特别快，因此卡车提前开动了。
yóuyú xiāoxi chuán de kuài jiāshàng dàjiā dōu hěn rèxīn suǒyǐ dōngxi huìjí de tèbié kuài yīncǐ kǎchē tíqián kāidòng le · Because word spread fast and everyone was so keen, the donations came in really quickly, so the trucks are leaving early.

little sister 可是网上也充斥着假消息，说捐的钱都被人借用了。
kěshì wǎngshang yě chōngchì zhe jiǎ xiāoxi shuō juān de qián dōu bèi rén jièyòng le · But the internet is full of fake stories too, saying the donated money has been "borrowed".

anna 所以基金会把每一笔捐款都纳入了公开的系统，谁都能查。这次的捐款涵盖了水、药、被子和孩子的书。
suǒyǐ jījīnhuì bǎ měi yì bǐ juānkuǎn dōu nàrù le gōngkāi de xìtǒng shéi dōu néng chá zhè cì de juānkuǎn hángài le shuǐ yào bèizi hé háizi de shū · That's why the foundation puts every donation into a public system that anyone can check. The donations cover water, medicine, quilts and books for the children.

xiaoming 政府也动用了很多人和车。听说镇上新的学校下个月启用。
zhèngfǔ yě dòngyòng le hěn duō rén hé chē tīngshuō zhèn shàng xīn de xuéxiào xià gè yuè qǐyòng · The government has also brought in lots of people and vehicles. I hear the town's new school opens next month.

anna 还是沿用以前的名字，选用的是更结实的材料。我们的预警应用也会依托学校的广播。
háishi yányòng yǐqián de míngzi xuǎnyòng de shì gèng jiēshi de cáiliào wǒmen de yùjǐng yìngyòng yě huì yītuō xuéxiào de guǎngbō · It's keeping its old name, but they've chosen stronger materials. Our warning app will use the school's loudspeakers too.

xiaoming 听说镇上的义工已经饱和了，基金会说新报名的人先别去。
tīngshuō zhèn shàng de yìgōng yǐjīng bǎohé le jījīnhuì shuō xīn bàomíng de rén xiān bié qù · I hear the town already has more volunteers than it can use: the foundation says new sign-ups should hold off.

little sister 安娜，占用你一分钟：这些书放哪儿？
Ānnà zhànyòng nǐ yì fēnzhōng zhèxiē shū fàng nǎr · Anna, give me a minute: where do these books go?

anna 放在第三辆车上。小心，地上散落着很多瓶子。
fàng zài dì sān liàng chē shàng xiǎoxīn dì shàng sànluò zhe hěn duō píngzi · On the third truck. Careful, there are bottles all over the floor.

xiaoming 周博士说，镇上的积水还没消，水已经渗透到墙里了。上游的水库还在往外泄水，不过水位已经有下降的迹象了。
Zhōubóshì shuō zhèn shàng de jī shuǐ hái méi xiāo shuǐ yǐjīng shèntòu dào qiáng lǐ le shàngyóu de shuǐkù hái zài wǎng wài xiè shuǐ búguò shuǐ wèi yǐjīng yǒu xiàjiàng de jìxiàng le · Dr Zhou says the standing water in the town still hasn't gone, and it's soaked into the walls. The reservoir upstream is still letting water out, but there are signs the level is starting to drop.

little sister 那里的人会不会住不惯临时的房子？
nàlǐ de rén huì bu huì zhù bú guàn línshí de fángzi · Will people there be able to get used to temporary housing?

anna 慢慢就惯了。这次的事凝聚了大家的力量，镇上的人说，他们感觉自己不是一个人。
màn màn jiù guàn le zhè cì de shì níngjù le dàjiā de lìliàng zhèn shàng de rén shuō tāmen gǎnjué zìjǐ bú shì yí gè rén · They'll get used to it. This has brought everyone together: the townspeople say they don't feel alone.

xiaoming 我们公司也吸纳了几个小镇的年轻人，给他们一个工作。
wǒmen gōngsī yě xīnà le jǐ gè xiǎo zhèn de niánqīng rén gěi tāmen yí gè gōngzuò · Our company has also taken on a few young people from the town and given them jobs.

little sister 我的手机快没电了，哪儿能充一下？我要拍视频！
wǒ de shǒujī kuài méi diàn le nǎr néng chōng yíxià wǒ yào pāi shìpín · My phone's nearly dead: where can I charge it? I want to film this!

anna 那边有电。你的视频一定能给活动增添不少人气。
nàbiān yǒu diàn nǐ de shìpín yídìng néng gěi huódòng zēngtiān bù shǎo rénqì · There's power over there. Your video is sure to bring the event a lot of attention.

xiaoming 这些天，难过和感动交织在一起。累积了这么多年的经验，我第一次觉得工作这么有意义。
zhèxiē tiān nánguò hé gǎndòng jiāozhī zài yìqǐ lěijī le zhème duō nián de jīngyàn wǒ dì yī cì juéde gōngzuò zhème yǒu yìyì · These past few days, sadness and being moved have been all mixed up together. After all these years of work, it's the first time I've felt it really means something.

little sister 风里夹杂着雨点，又要下雨了吗？
fēng lǐ jiāzá zhe yǔ diǎn yòu yào xià yǔ le ma · There's rain in the wind: is it going to rain again?

anna 不会，天气预报说下午就晴了。看，第一辆车开动了！
bú huì tiānqì yùbào shuō xiàwǔ jiù qíng le kàn dì yī liàng chē kāidòng le · No, the forecast says it'll clear up this afternoon. Look, the first truck is off!

xiaoming 两条路上的车会在城外汇合，一起去小镇。帮助别人的意义，不言而喻。
liǎng tiáo lùshang de chē huì zài chéng wài huìhé yìqǐ qù xiǎo zhèn bāngzhù biérén de yìyì bùyánéryù · The trucks on the two roads will meet up outside the city and go to the town together. Why we do this goes without saying.

little sister 这些温暖贯穿了整个夏天。我的心都要融了！
zhèxiē wēnnuǎn guànchuān le zhěnggè xiàtiān wǒ de xīn dōu yào róng le · This warmth has run through the whole summer. My heart is melting!

xiaoming 对小镇来说，这就是新的曙光。
duì xiǎo zhèn lái shuō zhè jiùshì xīn de shǔguāng · For the town, this is a new dawn.

anna 还有好消息：小镇的茶叶在网上卖得特别好，一个星期就销完了！
hái yǒu hǎo xiāoxi xiǎo zhèn de cháyè zài wǎngshang mài de tèbié hǎo yí gè xīngqī jiù xiāo wán le · And more good news: the town's tea is selling brilliantly online. It sold out in a week!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

炭
tàn
charcoal

拓
tuò
expand

凝
níng
condense

渗 shèn seep, soak through														

good to know · 汇 means streams flowing together: 汇合 join up, 汇集 collect, 汇聚 gather. 聚 is people gathering; 集 is things being collected. 用 at the end: 占用 take up, 动用 draw on, 借用 borrow, 选用 choose, 沿用 keep using, 启用 start using. The first character says how.

Crowds gathering, help pouring in, news spreading: you can now describe a whole city coming together.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 130 change in four characters

Describe change, surprise and variety with four-character idioms, and use the frames 可A可B, 连A带B and 自A自B.

Good written Chinese packs a whole story into four characters: editors expect it, and readers enjoy it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
日新月异	rìxīnyuèyì	changing with each passing day	这几年，科技的发展日新月异。 Technology is changing by the day.
千变万化	qiānbiànwànhuà	ever-changing	山里的天气千变万化。 The weather in the mountains is always changing.
变幻莫测	biànhuànmòcè	changeable and unpredictable	市场变幻莫测，谁也说不准。 The market is unpredictable: nobody can say for sure.
翻天覆地	fāntiānfùdì	earth-shaking, world-changing	这三十年，小镇发生了翻天覆地的变化。 The town has changed out of all recognition in thirty years.
焕然一新	huànrányīxīn	looking brand new	房子重新装修以后，焕然一新。 After the renovation, the house looks brand new.
面目全非	miànmùquánfēi	changed beyond recognition (for the worse)	大水过后，老街面目全非。 After the flood, the old street was unrecognisable.
一成不变	yīchéngbùbiàn	unchanging, set in its ways	世界在变，我们的方法不能一成不变。 The world is changing: our methods can't stay the same for ever.
一如既往	yīrújìwǎng	just as before, as always	我们会一如既往地支持你。 We'll support you just as we always have.
与时俱进	yǔshíjùjìn	to keep up with the times	传统的手艺也要与时俱进。 Even traditional crafts have to move with the times.
与日俱增	yǔrìjùzēng	to grow day by day	他对中国文化的兴趣与日俱增。 His interest in Chinese culture grows by the day.
愈演愈烈	yùyǎnyùliè	to get worse and worse	雨愈演愈烈，到了晚上变成了暴雨。 The rain got heavier and heavier, and by night it was a storm.
欣欣向荣	xīnxīnxiàngróng	thriving, flourishing	春天到了，到处欣欣向荣。 Spring has come, and everything is flourishing.
朝气蓬勃	zhāoqìpéngbó	full of youthful energy	这些年轻人朝气蓬勃，让小镇热闹了起来。 These young people are full of energy and have brought the town to life.
势不可当	shìbùkědāng	unstoppable	新能源汽车的发展势不可当。 The rise of electric cars is unstoppable.

摇摇欲坠	yáoyáoyùzhuì	tottering, about to fall	那座老桥已经摇摇欲坠了。 That old bridge is on the verge of collapse.
突如其来	tūrúqílái	sudden, out of the blue	一场突如其来的暴雨打乱了我们的计划。 A sudden storm upset our plans.
措手不及	cuòshǒubùjí	caught off guard	水来得太快，大家措手不及。 The water came so fast that everyone was caught off guard.
出人意料	chūrényìliào	unexpected, surprising	比赛的结果出人意料。 The result of the match was a surprise.
意想不到	yìxiǎngbùdào	unexpected, unimaginable	这次旅行给了我很多意想不到的收获。 This trip gave me a lot of things I never expected.
难以置信	nányǐzhìxìn	hard to believe	他一个人跑了一百公里，真是难以置信。 He ran a hundred kilometres on his own: it's hard to believe.
化险为夷	huàxiǎnwéiyí	to turn danger into safety	幸好船长{zhang3=head, chief}很有经验，大家化险为夷。 Luckily the captain was experienced, and everyone came through safely.
峰回路转	fēnghuílùzhuǎn	a turn for the better, a twist	本来以为没希望了，没想到峰回路转。 We thought there was no hope, then things took an unexpected turn.
此起彼伏	cǐqǐbǐfú	to rise and fall one after another	体育馆里掌声此起彼伏。 Applause rose again and again around the stadium.
接二连三	jiēèrliánsān	one after another	最近坏消息接二连三。 Bad news has been coming one piece after another.
三番五次	sānfānwǔcì	again and again	我三番五次提醒他，他还是忘了。 I reminded him again and again, but he still forgot.
日复一日	rìfùyīrì	day after day	他日复一日地练习，终于成功了。 He practised day after day and finally succeeded.
翻来覆去	fānláifùqù	over and over; toss and turn	我翻来覆去睡不着。 I tossed and turned and couldn't sleep.
没完没了	méiwánméiliǎo	endless, on and on	他没完没了地说，我都听累了。 He went on and on, and I got tired of listening.
错综复杂	cuòzōngfùzá	intricate, tangled	这件事的原因错综复杂。 The causes of this are complicated and tangled.
千姿百态	qiānzībǎitài	in all shapes and forms	公园里的花千姿百态。 The flowers in the park come in every shape and form.
五花八门	wǔhuābāmén	all kinds of, a wide variety	网上卖的东西五花八门。 They sell all kinds of things online.
包罗万象	bāoluówànxiàng	all-embracing, covering everything	这个博物馆的展览包罗万象。 This museum's exhibitions cover everything.
应有尽有	yīngyǒujìnyǒu	everything you could want	这家超市里吃的喝的应有尽有。 This supermarket has everything you could want to eat and drink.

一应俱全	yīyīngjùquán	complete with everything	宾馆的房间不大，但是一应俱全。 The hotel room isn't big, but it has everything.

pattern three idiom frames: 可a可b, 连a带b, 自a自b

可 A 可 B · 连 A 带 B · 自 A 自 B

可A可B: either will do (可有可无 "not really needed", 可长可短). 连A带B: doing A and B at once (连说带笑 "talking and laughing", 连蹦带跳). 自A自B: by or to oneself (自言自语 "talk to yourself", 自产自销 "make and sell your own"). A and B are usually one character each.

这句话可有可无，删了吧。 **zhè jù huà kě yǒu kě wú shān le ba** This sentence doesn't add anything: cut it.

老人们连说带笑地走进了新家。 **lǎorénmen lián shuō dài xiào de zǒu jìn le xīn jiā** The old people walked into their new homes chatting and laughing.

他一边写，一边自言自语。 **tā yìbiān xiě yìbiān zìyán zìyǔ** He talked to himself as he wrote.

小镇的茶叶都是自产自销。 **xiǎo zhèn de cháyè dōu shì zì chǎn zì xiāo** The town grows its own tea and sells it itself.

dialogue the red pen

editor lin 安娜，你的文章写得很真实，就是太平了。我们一句一句来。第一句：“小镇这三十年变化很大。”

Ānnà nǐ de wénzhāng xiě de hěn zhēnshí jiùshì tài píng le wǒmen yí jù yí jù lái dì yī jù xiǎo zhèn zhè sānshí nián biànhuà hěn dà · Anna, your article is very honest, just a bit flat. Let’s go line by line. First sentence: “The town has changed a lot in thirty years.”

anna 那应该怎么写？

nà yīnggāi zěnme xiě · So how should I put it?

editor lin “这三十年，小镇发生了翻天覆地的变化。”比原来有力多了吧？

zhè sānshí nián xiǎo zhèn fāshēng le fāntiān fùdì de biànhuà bǐ yuánlái yǒulì duō le ba · “In thirty years, the town has been turned upside down.” Much stronger, isn’t it?

anna 对！这样写，文章的格局一下子就大了。下一段是洪水。我写的是“水来得很快，大家没有准备”。

duì zhèyàng xiě wénzhāng de géjú yíxià zi jiù dà le xià yí duàn shì hóngshuǐ wǒ xiě de shì shuǐ lái de hěn kuài dàjiā méiyǒu zhǔnbèi · Yes! Written like that, the whole piece feels bigger. The next paragraph is the flood. I wrote “The water came fast and nobody was ready.”

editor lin 可以说“雨愈演愈烈，洪水突如其来，大家措手不及”。坏消息接二连三，老街面目全非。

kěyǐ shuō yǔ yùyǎn yùliè hóngshuǐ tūrú qílái dàjiā cuòshǒu bùjí huài xiāoxi jiēèr liánsān lǎo jiē miànmù quánfēi · You could say: “The rain grew fiercer and fiercer, the flood came out of nowhere, and everyone was caught off guard.” Bad news came one after another, and the old street was unrecognisable.

anna 有一家人在楼顶上等了一夜，最后被船救了出来。

yǒu yì jiā rén zài lóu dǐng shàng děng le yí yè zuìhòu bèi chuán jiù le chulai · One family waited all night on their roof and were finally rescued by boat.

editor lin 这就是“化险为夷”。本来没有希望了，又峰回路转，真是出人意料。

zhè jiùshì huàxiǎnwéiyí běnlái méiyǒu xīwàng le yòu fēnghuí lùzhuǎn zhēnshi chūrényìliào · That’s “turning danger into safety”. It seemed hopeless, then things turned around: quite a surprise.

anna 镇上的老人说，他们看到房子倒了，连哭带喊，有的人还自言自语：“没了，都没了。”

zhèn shàng de lǎorén shuō tāmen kàn dào fángzi dào le lián kū dài hǎn yǒude rén hái zìyán zìyǔ méi le dōu méi le · The old people in the town said that when they saw the houses fall, they cried and shouted, and some kept muttering to themselves, “It’s gone, all gone.”

editor lin 这一句可以留下，很感人。这句“天气千变万化，变幻莫测”有点多，可有可无，删了吧。

zhè yí jù kěyǐ liúxia hěn gǎnrén zhè jù tiānqì qiānbiàn wànhuà biànhuàn mòcè yǒu diǎn duō kě yǒu kě wú shān le ba · Keep that line: it’s very moving. This one, “the weather is ever-changing and unpredictable”, says the same thing twice and doesn’t add much: cut it.

anna 好。后面我写了义工：三番五次地来，日复一日地帮忙，人数与日俱增，最后汇聚了几千人。

hǎo hòumiàn wǒ xiě le yìgōng sānfān wǔcì de lái rìfùyīrì de bāngmáng rénshù yǔrì jùzēng zuìhòu huìjù le jǐ qiān rén · OK. Then I wrote about the volunteers: they came again and again, helped day after day, and their numbers grew by the day until thousands had gathered.

editor lin 这些年轻人朝气蓬勃，连说带笑，镇上的笑声此起彼伏。这样写就更有画面了。

zhèxiē niánqīng rén zhāoqì péngbó lián shuō dài xiào zhèn shàng de xiào shēng cǐqǐ bǐfú zhèyàng xiě jiù gèng yǒu huàmiàn le · These young people are full of energy, chatting and laughing, and laughter rings out all over town. Write it like that, and you can see it.

anna 最后一段写新的小镇：新学校一应俱全，超市里应有尽有，茶园欣欣向荣，以前摇摇欲坠的老桥也焕然一新。

zuìhòu yí duàn xiě xīn de xiǎo zhèn xīn xuéxiào yìyīng jùquán chāoshì lǐ yīngyǒu jìnyǒu chá yuán xīnxīn xiàngróng yǐqián yáoyáo yùzhuì de lǎo qiáo yě huànrán yìxīn · The last paragraph is about the new town: the

new school has everything it needs, the supermarket has everything you could want, the tea garden is flourishing, and the old bridge that was about to fall down looks brand new.

editor lin 好！不过“与时俱进”这个词，网上的文章用得没完没了，换一个吧。
hǎo búguò yǔshí jùjìn zhège cí wǎngshang de wénzhāng yòng de méiwán méiliǎo huàn yí gè ba · Good! But “keeping up with the times”: online articles use it endlessly. Swap it for something else.

anna 那我写“小镇没有一成不变，可是镇上的人一如既往地热情”。
nà wǒ xiě xiǎo zhèn méiyǒu yìchéng búbiàn kěshì zhèn shàng de rén yìrú jìwǎng de rèqíng · Then I’ll write: “The town hasn’t stood still, but its people are as warm as ever.”

editor lin 很好。原因写得也清楚：错综复杂，有天气的原因，有人的原因，还有历史的原因。
hěn hǎo yuányīn xiě de yě qīngchu cuòzōng fùzá yǒu tiānqì de yuányīn yǒu rén de yuányīn hái yǒu lìshǐ de yuányīn · Very good. You’ve explained the causes clearly too: tangled, some about weather, some about people, some about history.

anna 我还想写写镇上的茶：五花八门、千姿百态的茶叶，全都自产自销。
wǒ hái xiǎng xiě xie zhèn shàng de chá wǔhuā bāmén qiānzī bǎitài de cháyè quándōu zì chǎn zì xiāo · I’d also like to write about the town’s tea: all kinds of it, leaves of every shape, all grown and sold by the town itself.

editor lin 这是你的第一篇中文文章？真是难以置信！有些地方写得意想不到地好，看得出你累积了不少经验。
zhè shì nǐ de dì yī piān Zhōngwén wénzhāng zhēnshi nányǐ zhìxìn yǒuxiē dìfang xiě de yìxiǎng búdào de hǎo kàn de chū nǐ lěijī le bù shǎo jīngyàn · This is your first article in Chinese? Hard to believe! Some bits are surprisingly good: you can tell you’ve built up plenty of experience.

anna 哪里哪里。我昨天晚上翻来覆去睡不着，一直在想怎么写。
nǎlǐ nǎlǐ wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang fānlái fùqù shuì bu zháo yìzhí zài xiǎng zěnme xiě · Not at all. I tossed and turned all last night thinking about how to write it.

editor lin 看得出来。这个小镇的故事包罗万象：有灾难，有希望，有变化。新能源、新应用，这样的变化势不可当。
kàn de chulai zhège xiǎo zhèn de gùshi bāoluó wànxiàng yǒu zāinàn yǒu xīwàng yǒu biànhuà xīnnéngyuán xīn yìngyòng zhèyàng de biànhuà shìbùkědāng · It shows. The town’s story has everything: disaster, hope, change. New energy, new apps: change like this is unstoppable.

anna 那题目呢？可长可短吗？
nà tímù ne kě cháng kě duǎn ma · And the title? Can it be long or short?

editor lin 最好短一点：“日新月异的小镇”。这个题目有望吸引更多读者。
zuìhǎo duǎn yìdiǎn rìxīn yuèyì de xiǎo zhèn zhège tímù yǒuwàng xīyǐn gèng duō dúzhě · Shorter is better: “A Town Changing by the Day”. A title like that should draw more readers.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

蓬
péng
flourishing

勃
bó
vigorous

good to know · Good change or bad? 焕然一新 and 欣欣向荣 are good; 面目全非 and 摇摇欲坠 are bad; 翻天覆地 and 日新月异 are huge, and usually good. Surprises in four: 突如其来 (sudden), 措手不及 (caught off guard), 出人意料 and 意想不到 (unexpected), 难以置信 (hard to believe).

Thirty-four ways to tell a story of change in four characters: your Chinese writing just levelled up.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 131 by hand, on the spot

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 17 · environment and change

Talk about work done by hand and on the spot, and use the frame 非A非B and the adverbs of a written report.

These little adverbs (亲手, 就地, 奋力, 不惜) are what make Chinese reports and speeches sound precise.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不算	bùsuàn	not count as, not really	这点雨不算什么，大家继续干吧。 This bit of rain is nothing: let's keep going.
不愧	bùkuì	to be worthy of, live up to	他不愧是这里最好的医生。 He truly lives up to being the best doctor here.
不经意	bùjīngyì	inadvertently, without noticing	她不经意的一句话，让我想了很久。 Something she said in passing made me think for a long time.
不乏	bùfá	to be no lack of	来帮忙的人里不乏专家。 There are plenty of experts among the helpers.
不惜	bùxī	to not hesitate to, spare no	为了救孩子，他不惜一切。 He would do anything to save the child.
除去	chúqù	apart from; to remove	除去周末，我每天都在小镇。 Apart from weekends, I'm in the town every day.
从头	cóngtóu	from the beginning, all over again	文件丢了，只好从头再写。 The file was lost, so I had to write it all over again.
凑巧	còuqiǎo	by coincidence, as it happens	真凑巧，我也要去那儿。 What luck, I'm going there too.
当众	dāngzhòng	in public, in front of everyone	他当众表扬了这位义工。 He praised the volunteer in front of everyone.
独	dú	alone, only	别人都走了，独她一个人还在干活。 Everyone else had gone; only she was still working.
非	fēi	not; to be not (written); non-	这件事非你不可。 Only you can do this.
奋力	fènlì	with all one's strength	他奋力把孩子拉上了船。 He pulled the child into the boat with all his strength.
附带	fùdài	incidentally; attached, additional	我附带说一句，明天早一点儿来。 By the way, come a bit earlier tomorrow.
好歹	hǎodǎi	anyway, at least; good or bad	你好歹吃一点儿再走。 At least eat something before you go.
好似	hǎosì	to seem, be just like	远处的山好似一幅画。 The mountains in the distance look just like a painting.

即可	jíkě	then it's OK, will do	报名很简单，填好表格即可。 Signing up is easy: just fill in the form.
继	jì	following, after (written)	继上次洪水之后，这里又下了一场大雨。 After the last flood, there has been another heavy rain here.
暨	jì	and (formal, in titles)	新学校开学典礼暨捐赠仪式明天举行。 The new school's opening ceremony and donation ceremony will be held tomorrow.
继而	jìér	then, after that	先是下大雨，继而发了洪水。 First came the heavy rain, then the flood.
竞相	jìngxiāng	to vie with each other to	各家公司竞相推出新产品。 Companies are competing to launch new products.
就地	jiùdì	on the spot	这些旧砖可以就地使用。 These old bricks can be used right here.
牢牢	láoláo	firmly, fast	他牢牢地抓住了绳子。 He held the rope tight.
老大	lǎodà	very, greatly; eldest	他老大不高兴地走了。 He left in a very bad mood.
连同	liántóng	together with, along with	他把钱连同一封信寄给了学校。 He sent the money to the school together with a letter.
偏	piān	deliberately, contrary to what's expected	叫他别去，他偏要去。 We told him not to go, but he insisted on going.
亲手	qīnshǒu	with one's own hands	这些椅子都是他亲手做的。 He made these chairs with his own hands.

pattern 非a非b, and turns inside turns

非 A 非 B = neither A nor B

非 is the written "not": 非A非B means "neither A nor B", as in 非亲非故 "neither relatives nor old friends", said of strangers who help anyway. A long sentence can also turn more than once: 虽然……，但是……；然而/可是…… gives the story a second twist.

他们和小镇非亲非故，却来帮了一个月。 **tāmen hé xiǎo zhèn fēi qīn fēi gù què lái bāng le yí gè yuè** They have no ties to the town, yet they came to help for a month.

虽然房子修好了，但是很多人还不敢回来；然而孩子们已经在新学校上课了。 **suīrán fángzi xiū hǎo le dànshì hěn duō rén hái bù gǎn huílái ránér háizimen yǐjīng zài xīn xuéxiào shàngkè le** The houses are repaired, but many people still daren't come back; the children, though, are already in class at the new school.

大水冲走了一切，可是没有冲走大家的希望，反而让大家更团结了。 **dà shuǐ chōng zǒu le yíqiè kěshì méiyǒu chōng zǒu dàjiā de xīwàng fǎnér ràng dàjiā gèng tuánjié le** The flood swept everything away, but not people's hope: if anything, it brought them closer together.

dialogue a weekend in the river town

dr zhou 真凑巧，你们也是今天到的！继上次洪水之后，这里又下了一场雨，不过不算大。
zhēn còuqiǎo nǐmen yě shì jīntiān dào de jì shàng cì hóngshuǐ zhīhòu zhèlǐ yòu xià le yì chǎng yǔ búguò bú suàn dà · What luck, you got here today too! There's been another rain since the flood, but it wasn't heavy.

xiaoming 这点雨不算什么。今天我们干什么？
zhè diǎn yǔ bú suàn shénme jīntiān wǒmen gàn shénme · That bit of rain is nothing. What are we doing today?

dr zhou 先把倒了的墙修好。旧砖都可以就地使用，不用从外面运。
xiān bǎ dào le de qiáng xiū hǎo jiù zhuān dōu kěyǐ jiùdì shǐyòng búyòng cóng wàimiàn yùn · First we fix the wall that fell down. The old bricks can be used right here: no need to bring any in.

xiaoming 这面墙早在洪水以前就摇摇欲坠了。
zhè miàn qiáng zǎo zài hóngshuǐ yǐqián jiù yáoyáo yùzhuì le · This wall was tottering long before the flood.

anna 这么多活，好歹先吃一点东西吧。
zhème duō huó hǎodāi xiān chī yìdiǎn dōngxi ba · So much to do: at least let's eat something first.

xiaoming 你看那位老师傅，大家都休息了，独他一个人还在奋力地搬砖。
nǐ kàn nà wèi lǎo shīfu dàjiā dōu xiūxi le dú tā yí gè rén hái zài fènlì de bān zhuān · Look at that old craftsman: everyone else is having a break, and he alone is still heaving bricks.

dr zhou 他是镇上做家具的老师傅。学校里的桌子椅子都是他亲手做的。他不惜花了一个月的时间，一分钱都没要。
tā shì zhèn shàng zuò jiājù de lǎo shīfu xuéxiào lǐ de zhuōzi yǐzi dōu shì tā qīnshǒu zuò de tā bùxī huā le yí gè yuè de shíjiān yì fēn qián dōu méi yào · He's the town's furniture maker. He made all the school's desks and chairs with his own hands. He gave up a whole month for it and didn't take a penny.

anna 不愧是老师傅！我们和他们非亲非故，可是在这儿，好似一家人。
búkuì shì lǎo shīfu wǒmen hé tāmen fēi qīn fēi gù kěshì zài zhèr hǎosì yì jiā rén · A true master! We're not related to these people, but here it feels like we're family.

xiaoming 我刚才叫老师傅休息一下，他偏不，还老大不高兴地说："我又不老！"
wǒ gāngcái jiào lǎo shīfu xiūxi yíxià tā piān bù hái lǎodà bù gāoxìng de shuō wǒ yòu bù lǎo · I just told the old man to take a break, and he flatly refused. He got quite cross: "I'm not old!"

dr zhou 先是下大雨，继而发洪水，他的家也被冲坏了。虽然家还没修好，但是他先来修学校；然而到现在，还没有人去帮他修自己的房子。
xiān shì xià dà yǔ jìér fā hóngshuǐ tā de jiā yě bèi chōng huài le suīrán jiā hái méi xiū hǎo dànshì tā xiān lái xiū xuéxiào ránér dào xiànzài hái méiyǒu rén qù bāng tā xiū zìjǐ de fángzi · First came the rain, then the flood, and his own house was damaged. His home still isn't repaired, but he came to fix the school first; and yet, so far, nobody has gone to help him fix his own house.

anna 我刚才不经意看到，他一边修墙，一边自言自语："孩子们要上学，孩子们要上学。"
wǒ gāngcái bù jīngyì kàn dào tā yìbiān xiū qiáng yìbiān zìyán zìyǔ háizimen yào shàngxué háizimen yào shàngxué · I happened to notice just now: as he fixed the wall, he kept saying to himself, "The children need their school, the children need their school."

dr zhou 他已经日复一日地干了一个月了。
tā yǐjīng rìfùyīrì de gàn le yí gè yuè le · He's been at it day after day for a month now.

xiaoming 来帮忙的人里不乏专家，还有很多大学生。各个公司也竞相捐东西，捐的东西五花八门。
lái bāngmáng de rén lǐ bùfá zhuānjiā hái yǒu hěn duō dàxuéshēng gègè gōngsī yě jìngxiāng juān dōngxi juān de dōngxi wǔhuā bāmén · There's no shortage of experts among the helpers, and lots of university students too. And companies are competing to donate things, all sorts of things.

dr zhou 明天是新学校开学典礼暨捐赠仪式。安娜，你的公司要当众讲几句话，这件事非你不可。
míngtiān shì xīn xuéxiào kāixué diǎnlǐ jì juānzèng yíshì Ānnà nǐ de gōngsī yào dāngzhòng jiǎng jǐ jù huà zhè

jiàn shì fēi nǐ bù kě · Tomorrow is the new school's opening and donation ceremony. Anna, your company has to say a few words in public, and only you can do it.

anna 我？那我要说的话得从头准备了。

wǒ nà wǒ yào shuō de huà děi cóngtóu zhǔnbèi le · Me? Then I'll have to prepare what to say from scratch.

dr zhou 不用长，讲三分钟即可。附带说一句，你们捐的电脑，连同那些书，都已经到了。

búyòng cháng jiǎng sān fēnzhōng jíkě fùdài shuō yí jù nǐmen juān de diànnǎo liántóng nàxiē shū dōu yǐjīng dào le · It doesn't need to be long: three minutes will do. And by the way, the computers your company donated have arrived, along with the books.

xiaoming 那我先去把电脑装好。除去这件事，还有什么要做？

nà wǒ xiān qù bǎ diànnǎo zhuāng hǎo chúqù zhè jiàn shì hái yǒu shénme yào zuò · Then I'll go and set up the computers. Apart from that, what else needs doing?

dr zhou 把这根绳子牢牢地系在树上，明天要挂一条红布。

bǎ zhè gēn shéngzi láoláo de jì zài shù shàng míngtiān yào guà yì tiáo hóng bù · Tie this rope tight to the tree: tomorrow we're hanging a red banner.

anna 好。今天晚上我就准备，一定写得让大家记住这一天。

hǎo jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ jiù zhǔnbèi yídìng xiě de ràng dàjiā jì zhù zhè yì tiān · OK. I'll prepare it tonight, and make sure everyone remembers this day.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

暨
jì
and
(formal, in titles)

good to know · 不 starts many of today's words: 不算 (doesn't count as), 不愧 (lives up to), 不经意 (without noticing), 不乏 (no shortage of), 不惜 (spare no cost). Formal notices love 即可 (will do), 暨 (and), 继……之后 (following) and 连同 (together with). In speech you would say 就行, 和, 在……以后 and 和……一起.

By hand, on the spot, with all your strength: you can now report on hard work like a newspaper, and thank the people who did it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 132 mission: the flood

Tell the whole story of a flood and a town's recovery in Chinese: the disaster, the causes, the help and the change.

Everything in this unit comes together on one day in the river town: rescue, resources, reform, trends, crowds and four-character idioms.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the notice at the gate

anna （读）“通知：新学校开学典礼暨捐赠仪式定于今天上午十点举行。三个月前，一场突如其来的洪水波及了我镇和附近四个县。河水泛滥，堤坝倒塌，学校和一百多座房子没能幸免。

dú tōngzhī xīn xuéxiào kāixué diǎnlǐ jì juānzèng yíshì dìng yú jīntiān shàngwǔ shí diǎn jǔxíng sān gè yuè qián yì chǎng tūrú qílái de hóngshuǐ bōjí le wǒ zhèn hé fùjìn sì gè xiàn hé shuǐ fànlàn dībà dǎotā xuéxiào hé yìbǎi duō zuò fángzi méi néng xìngmiǎn · (reading) “Notice: the opening ceremony of the new school and the donation ceremony will be held at ten this morning. Three months ago, a sudden flood struck our town and four nearby counties. The river burst its banks, the dykes collapsed, and the school and over a hundred houses were not spared.

anna 幸好镇上提前收到预警，连夜疏散了老人和孩子，全镇无一人遇难。在此，我们感谢搜救队、慈善基金会、各个公司和几千名义工。参加典礼的人员，请在门口领取一张地图即可。

xìnghǎo zhèn shàng tíqián shōudào yùjǐng liányè shūsàn le lǎorén hé háizi quán zhèn wú yì rén yùnàn zài cǐ wǒmen gǎnxiè sōujiù duì císhàn jījīnhuì gègè gōngsī hé jǐ qiān míng yìgōng cānjiā diǎnlǐ de rényuán qǐng zài ménkǒu lǐngqǔ yì zhāng dìtú jíkě · Thanks to an early warning, the old and the young were evacuated overnight, and not one person in the town lost their life. We thank the rescue teams, the charity foundation, the companies and the thousands of volunteers. Guests attending the ceremony need only collect a map at the gate.

anna 典礼结束后，学校将正式启用。学校的体育馆可容纳五百人，以后也是镇上的应急避难的地方。”

diǎnlǐ jiéshù hòu xuéxiào jiāng zhèngshì qǐyòng xuéxiào de tǐyùguǎn kě róngnà wǔbǎi rén yǐhòu yě shì zhèn shàng de yìngjí bìnàn de dìfang · After the ceremony, the school will officially open. Its gym holds five hundred people and will also be the town’s emergency shelter.”

xiaoming 读得不错！“全镇无一人遇难”，这句话我每次看都很感动。

dú de búcuò quán zhèn wú yì rén yùnàn zhè jù huà wǒ měi cì kàn dōu hěn gǎndòng · Nicely read! “Not one person in the town lost their life”: that line moves me every time I see it.

dr zhou 那天晚上的事，我到现在还记得。雨愈演愈烈，水一下子就漫过了堤，大家措手不及。

nà tiān wǎnshang de shì wǒ dào xiànzài hái jìde yǔ yùyǎn yùliè shuǐ yíxià zi jiù màn guò le dī dàjiā cuòshǒu bùjí · I still remember that night. The rain got heavier and heavier, the water came over the embankment all at once, and nobody was ready.

xiaoming 听说有一家人困在楼顶上，是搜救队营救出来的？

tīngshuō yǒu yì jiā rén kùn zài lóu dǐng shàng shì sōujiù duì yíngjiù chulai de · I heard a family was trapped on a roof and the rescue team got them out?

dr zhou 对，还有一位老人被困在倒塌的房子里，大家奋力把他解救了出来，真是化险为夷。一辆车被冲进了河里，第二天才打捞上来。

duì hái yǒu yí wèi lǎorén bèi kùn zài dǎotā de fángzi lǐ dàjiā fènlì bǎ tā jiějiù le chulai zhēnshi huàxiǎnwéiyí yí liàng chē bèi chōng jìn le hé lǐ dì èr tiān cái dǎlāo shanglai · Yes, and an old man was trapped in a collapsed house: everyone pulled him out with all their strength, and he came through safely. A car was swept into the river and only pulled out the next day.

anna 那时候很多人无家可归，是这所中学收留了他们。

nà shíhou hěn duō rén wújiā kěguī shì zhè suǒ zhōngxué shōuliú le tāmen · Back then lots of people had nowhere to live, and this secondary school took them in.

dr zhou 那天晚上还有一条小船在河上遇险，船上的人跳进水里逃生，游到了岸边。

nà tiān wǎnshang hái yǒu yì tiáo xiǎo chuán zài hé shàng yùxiǎn chuán shàng de rén tiào jìn shuǐ lǐ táoshēng yóu dào le àn biān · That night a little boat got into trouble on the river too: the people on it jumped into the water and swam to the bank.

xiaoming 我以前只在新闻里看到海啸、空难、飞机失事，没想到洪水也这么可怕。

wǒ yǐqián zhǐ zài xīnwén lǐ kàn dào hǎixiào kōngnàn fēijī shīshì méi xiǎng dào hóngshuǐ yě zhème kěpà · I’d only ever seen tsunamis, air crashes and plane accidents on the news: I never thought a flood could be so frightening.

dr zhou	大火烧毁房子，洪水冲走房子，都一样可怕。幸存的人最需要的是救济，也需要有人陪。 **dà huǒ shāohuǐ fángzi hóngshuǐ chōng zǒu fángzi dōu yíyàng kěpà xìngcún de rén zuì xūyào de shì jiùjì yě xūyào yǒu rén péi** · A fire that burns your house down, a flood that washes it away: both are terrifying. What survivors need most is relief, and someone to be with them.
anna	我记得撤离以后，田里全涝了，有的地到现在还荒着。 **wǒ jìde chèlí yǐhòu tián lǐ quán lào le yǒude de dào xiànzài hái huāng zhe** · I remember that after the evacuation all the fields were waterlogged, and some land is still lying waste.
xiaoming	基金会募捐了很多钱，还有很多人去医院捐献了血。拯救生命的，不只是英雄。 **jījīnhuì mùjuān le hěn duō qián hái yǒu hěn duō rén qù yīyuàn juānxiàn le xiě zhěngjiù shēngmìng de bù zhǐshì yīngxióng** · The foundation raised a lot of money, and lots of people went to give blood. It isn't only heroes who save lives.
xiaoming	现在学校焕然一新，跟三个月前比，好似两个地方。 **xiànzài xuéxiào huànrán yìxīn gēn sān gè yuè qián bǐ hǎosì liǎng gè dìfang** · Now the school looks brand new: compared with three months ago, it's like a different place.

chapter 2 chapter 2: along the new embankment

dr zhou 你们看，这就是新修的堤。上游也加了两道闸，防汛的能力比以前强多了。
nǐmen kàn zhè jiùshì xīn xiū de dī shàngyóu yě jiā le liǎng dào zhá fángxùn de nénglì bǐ yǐqián qiáng duō le · Look, this is the new embankment. Two more sluice gates have been added upstream too: flood defence is much stronger than before.

anna 河对面那一大片是什么?
hé duìmiàn nà yí dàpiàn shì shénme · What's that big area on the other side of the river?

dr zhou 那是新的湿地，以前是废弃的矿。山里蕴藏着丰富的矿产，大家开采了几十年，储量都快枯竭了，留下了很多废物。
nà shì xīn de shīdì yǐqián shì fèiqì de kuàng shān lǐ yùncáng zhe fēngfù de kuàngchǎn dàjiā kāicǎi le jǐ shí nián chǔliàng dōu kuài kūjié le liúxia le hěn duō fèiwù · That's the new wetland: it used to be an abandoned mine. The mountains hold a lot of minerals, people mined them for decades until the reserves nearly ran out, and they left a lot of waste behind.

xiaoming 那些废物不会泄漏到河里吗?
nàxiē fèiwù bú huì xièlòu dào hé lǐ ma · Won't that waste leak into the river?

dr zhou 以前会，检查结果严重超标。现在湿地可以净化水，还能吸收洪水。上游也不准再砍伐森林了，水土流失少多了。
yǐqián huì jiǎnchá jiéguǒ yánzhòng chāobiāo xiànzài shīdì kěyǐ jìnghuà shuǐ hái néng xīshōu hóngshuǐ shàngyóu yě bù zhǔn zài kǎnfá sēnlín le shuǐtǔ liúshī shǎo duō le · It used to: the tests were way over the limit. Now the wetland purifies the water and soaks up floods. And no more forest can be cut upstream, so there's much less soil erosion.

xiaoming 那以前为什么有那么多人来勘探?
nà yǐqián wèi shénme yǒu nàme duō rén lái kāntàn · So why did so many prospectors come here before?

dr zhou 因为大家都说地下的矿藏很多。镇上的卡车也烧柴油，尾气很大。现在都换成了电的，燃油也省了。
yīnwèi dàjiā dōu shuō dìxià de kuàngcáng hěn duō zhèn shàng de kǎchē yě shāo cháiyóu wěiqì hěn dà xiànzài dōu huàn chéng le diàn de rányóu yě shěng le · Because everyone said there were lots of deposits underground. The town's lorries burned diesel too, with filthy exhaust. Now they're all electric, and they save on fuel.

anna 镇上的人用什么取暖？以前是煤炭吧?
zhèn shàng de rén yòng shénme qǔnuǎn yǐqián shì méitàn ba · What do people in the town use for heating? It used to be coal, right?

dr zhou 对，以前烧煤炭，河边还有人焚烧废品。现在大部分家庭用燃气和太阳能，能耗也低了。只有老人们冬天还喜欢用炭火烤红薯。镇上还留了一片绿地，盖了几座温室种菜。
duì yǐqián shāo méitàn hé biān hái yǒu rén fénshāo fèipǐn xiànzài dà bùfen jiātíng yòng ránqì hé tàiyángnéng nénghào yě dī le zhǐyǒu lǎorénmen dōngtiān hái xǐhuan yòng tàn huǒ kǎo hóngshǔ zhèn shàng hái liú le yí piàn lǜdì gài le jǐ zuò wēnshì zhòng cài · Yes, they used to burn coal, and some people burned scrap by the river. Now most homes use gas and solar power, and they use less energy too. Only the old people still like roasting sweet potatoes over charcoal in winter. The town has also kept a green space and built a few greenhouses for vegetables.

xiaoming 河边那种珍稀的鸟呢?
hé biān nà zhǒng zhēnxī de niǎo ne · And that rare bird by the river?

dr zhou 还是濒危动物，不过在湿地里又出现了。在别的地方，它几乎已经绝迹了。要是湿地保护得好，只要上游不再污染，它就不会灭绝。
háishi bīnwēi dòngwù búguò zài shīdì lǐ yòu chūxiàn le zài biéde dìfang tā jīhū yǐjīng juéjì le yàoshi shīdì bǎohù de hǎo zhǐyào shàngyóu bú zài wūrǎn tā jiù bú huì mièjué · It's still endangered, but it has come back to the wetland. Everywhere else it has almost disappeared. If the wetland is well protected, then as long as there's no more pollution upstream, it won't die out.

anna 虽说这些工程花了很多钱，可是很值得。
suīshuō zhèxiē gōngchéng huā le hěn duō qián kěshì hěn zhídé · These projects cost a lot of money, true, but

they’re worth it.

dr zhou 一个小镇的水源，就是全镇人的命。水利做不好，什么都谈不上。

yí gè xiǎo zhèn de shuǐyuán jiùshì quán zhèn rén de mìng shuǐlì zuò bu hǎo shénme dōu tán bu shàng · A town’s water source is the life of everyone in it. If you don’t get water right, nothing else matters.

chapter 3 chapter 3: news from manager liu

manager liu 安娜！我刚到。好消息：我们的预警应用下个月就能上线了，这是全国首创。
Ānnà wǒ gāng dào hǎo xiāoxi wǒmen de yùjǐng yìngyòng xià gè yuè jiù néng shàng xiàn le zhè shì quán guó shǒuchuàng · Anna! I've just arrived. Good news: our warning app goes live next month, the first of its kind in the country.

anna 太好了！从这个小镇入手，真的找到了突破口。
tài hǎo le cóng zhège xiǎo zhèn rùshǒu zhēn de zhǎo dào le tūpòkǒu · Wonderful! Starting with this town really was our way in.

manager liu 对公司来说，这也是一个里程碑。老业务做到那个地步，再不转型就晚了。这次洪水，反而成了我们变革的契机。
duì gōngsī lái shuō zhè yě shì yí gè lǐchéngbēi lǎo yèwù zuò dào nàge dìbù zài bù zhuǎnxíng jiù wǎn le zhè cì hóngshuǐ fǎnér chéng le wǒmen biàngé de qìjī · For the company it's a milestone too. With the old business where it was, if we hadn't changed direction it would have been too late. This flood actually turned into our chance to transform.

dr zhou 应用依托我们研究站的数据：水位、雨量、河水的流向。数据显示，这几年暴雨的势头越来越强，这个走向很明显。
yìngyòng yītuō wǒmen yánjiū zhàn de shùjù shuǐ wèi yǔ liàng hé shuǐ de liúxiàng shùjù xiǎnshì zhè jǐ nián bàoyǔ de shìtou yuè lái yuè qiáng zhège zǒuxiàng hěn míngxiǎn · The app runs on our research station's data: water levels, rainfall, the direction of the river's flow. The data shows heavy rain getting stronger in recent years: the trend is very clear.

manager liu 说实话，一开始我觉得这个想法太超前了，市场也变幻莫测。可是现在，各家公司都在竞相做同样的东西。
shuō shíhuà yì kāishǐ wǒ juéde zhège xiǎngfǎ tài chāoqián le shìchǎng yě biànhuàn mòcè kěshì xiànzài gè jiā gōngsī dōu zài jìngxiāng zuò tóngyàng de dōngxi · To be honest, at first I thought the idea was too far ahead of its time, and the market is so unpredictable. But now every company is racing to make the same thing.

anna 镇上很多老人不用智能手机，所以我们的应用也会连同学校的广播一起发预警。手机也好，广播也罢，每个人都要收到。
zhèn shàng hěn duō lǎorén búyòng zhìnéng shǒujī suǒyǐ wǒmen de yìngyòng yě huì liántóng xuéxiào de guǎngbō yìqǐ fā yùjǐng shǒujī yěhǎo guǎngbō yěbà měi gè rén dōu yào shōudào · Lots of old people in the town don't use smartphones, so our app will send warnings through the school loudspeakers too. Phone or loudspeaker, everyone has to get it.

manager liu 有一个变更：上线以前要先在三个小镇试一试。计划我修正了一下，你看看要不要再改动。
yǒu yí gè biàngēng shàng xiàn yǐqián yào xiān zài sān gè xiǎo zhèn shì yi shi jìhuà wǒ xiūzhèng le yíxià nǐ kàn kan yào búyào zài gǎidòng · One change: before launch we'll trial it in three towns. I've revised the plan a bit: see if you want to alter anything.

anna 我看看……这个日期要更改一下，周博士下个月在外地。
wǒ kàn kan zhège rìqī yào gēnggǎi yíxià Zhōubóshì xià gè yuè zài wàidì · Let me see… this date needs changing: Dr Zhou is away next month.

manager liu 好。从起步到现在，你们只用了三个月，这个进程比我想的快多了。
hǎo cóng qǐbù dào xiànzài nǐmen zhǐ yòng le sān gè yuè zhège jìnchéng bǐ wǒ xiǎng de kuài duō le · Fine. From the start to now, you've taken just three months: much faster than I expected.

dr zhou 小镇从采矿到种茶，从洪水到重建，这个历程，也是很多小镇的故事。三十年的沧桑，经济剧变，很多家庭经历过变故，小镇一步一步演变成今天的样子。
xiǎo zhèn cóng cǎikuàng dào zhòng chá cóng hóngshuǐ dào chóngjiàn zhège lìchéng yě shì hěn duō xiǎo zhèn de gùshi sānshí nián de cāngsāng jīngjì jùbiàn hěn duō jiātíng jīnglì guo biàngù xiǎo zhèn yí bù yí bù yǎnbiàn chéng jīntiān de yàngzi · From mining to tea, from flood to rebuilding: the town's journey is the story of a lot of small towns. Thirty years of ups and downs, an economy turned upside down, many families through hard times: step by step, the town has become what it is today.

anna 镇上开辟了新的茶园，还改良了茶叶。旧工厂改装成了民宿，小镇大为改观。这次洪水是一个转折，也是一个转机。

zhèn shàng kāipì le xīn de chá yuán hái gǎiliáng le cháyè jiù gōngchǎng gǎizhuāng chéng le mínsù xiǎo zhèn dàwéi gǎiguān zhè cì hóngshuǐ shì yí gè zhuǎnzhé yě shì yí gè zhuǎnjī · The town has opened new tea gardens and improved its tea. The old factory has been converted into guesthouses, and the town looks completely different. This flood was a turning point, and a chance to turn things around.

manager liu 对我们公司也是一样。这个应用是我们步入新阶段的转折点，说不定还是一个划时代的产品。

duì wǒmen gōngsī yě shì yíyàng zhège yìngyòng shì wǒmen bùrù xīn jiēduàn de zhuǎnzhédiǎn shuōbudìng háishi yí gè huàshídài de chǎnpǐn · Same for our company. This app is our turning point into a new stage, and it might even be groundbreaking.

anna 我们已经着手准备第二个版本了：屏幕会根据危险程度变换颜色，还能把雨量数据转化成简单的图。

wǒmen yǐjīng zhuóshǒu zhǔnbèi dì èr gè bǎnběn le píngmù huì gēnjù wēixiǎn chéngdù biànhuàn yánsè hái néng bǎ yǔ liàng shùjù zhuǎnhuà chéng jiǎndān de tú · We've already started on version two: the screen changes colour with the level of danger, and it can turn rainfall data into simple charts.

manager liu 别急着下手，先把第一个版本做好。还有，上次报告里的错误更正了吗？

bié jí zhe xiàshǒu xiān bǎ dì yī gè bǎnběn zuò hǎo hái yǒu shàng cì bàogào lǐ de cuòwù gēngzhèng le ma · Don't rush into it: get version one right first. And did you correct the mistake in your last report?

anna 早就更正了！我们还在不停地革新，下载量有望刷新公司的纪录。

zǎo jiù gēngzhèng le wǒmen hái zài bù tíng de géxīn xiàzài liàng yǒuwàng shuāxīn gōngsī de jìlù · Long ago! And we keep improving: downloads could break the company record.

dr zhou 从全局来看，现在的态势还不错，天气也趋于稳定。可是一发现不好的苗头，比如有迹象预示会有暴雨，就要马上通知大家。

cóng quánjú lái kàn xiànzài de tàishì hái búcuò tiānqì yě qūyú wěndìng kěshì yì fāxiàn bù hǎo de miáotou bǐrú yǒu jìxiàng yùshì huì yǒu bàoyǔ jiù yào mǎshàng tōngzhī dàjiā · Looking at the whole picture, things are in good shape now, and the weather is settling. But the moment there are early signs of trouble, say anything that points to heavy rain, everyone must be told at once.

manager liu 事态控制住了，大局也稳定了。我们要关注防汛工作的动向，跟政府一起合作。

shìtài kòngzhì zhù le dàjú yě wěndìng le wǒmen yào guānzhù fángxùn gōngzuò de dòngxiàng gēn zhèngfǔ yìqǐ hézuò · The situation is under control and the bigger picture is stable. We need to follow what's happening in flood prevention and work with the government.

anna 以前小镇是个冷门话题，现在大家的关注是空前的。不过我觉得这不是巧合：好的故事，注定会有人看。

yǐqián xiǎo zhèn shì gè lěngmén huàtí xiànzài dàjiā de guānzhù shì kōngqián de búguò wǒ juéde zhè bú shì qiǎohé hǎo de gùshi zhùdìng huì yǒu rén kàn · Small towns used to be a niche subject; now the attention is unprecedented. But I don't think it's luck: a good story is bound to find readers.

chapter 4 chapter 4: anna's speech

xiaoming 院子里汇聚了几百人，都爆满了！镇上的人从各个村子赶来，跟义工们在门口汇合。
yuànzi lǐ huìjù le jǐ bǎi rén dōu bàomǎn le zhèn shàng de rén cóng gègè cūn zi gǎn lái gēn yìgōngmen zài ménkǒu huìhé · There are hundreds of people in the yard: it's packed! People have come from all the villages and met up with the volunteers at the gate.

anna 大家好！三个月前，我在北京的办公室里，看到这个小镇面目全非的照片。那时候，网上充斥着各种消息，我不知怎么办才好。
dàjiā hǎo sān gè yuè qián wǒ zài Běijīng de bàngōngshì lǐ kàn dào zhège xiǎo zhèn miànmù quánfēi de zhàopiàn nà shíhou wǎngshang chōngchì zhe gèzhǒng xiāoxi wǒ bù zhī zěnme bàn cái hǎo · Hello, everyone! Three months ago, in my office in Beijing, I saw pictures of this town, unrecognisable. The internet was full of all kinds of stories, and I didn't know what to do.

anna 后来，网上掀起了一股做义工的热潮。几千个年轻人自发报名，大家不约而同地来到这里。我们和这里的人非亲非故，可是在这儿，大家像一家人。
hòulái wǎngshang xiānqǐ le yì gǔ zuò yìgōng de rècháo jǐ qiān gè niánqīng rén zìfā bàomíng dàjiā bùyuēértóng de lái dào zhèlǐ wǒmen hé zhèlǐ de rén fēi qīn fēi gù kěshì zài zhèr dàjiā xiàng yì jiā rén · Then a wave of volunteering started online. Thousands of young people signed up on their own, and everyone came here without being asked. We aren't related to anyone here, but here we are like family.

anna 由于大家都很热心，加上捐款汇集得快，所以学校只用三个月就修好了，因此孩子们今天就能上课。
yóuyú dàjiā dōu hěn rèxīn jiāshàng juānkuǎn huìjí de kuài suǒyǐ xuéxiào zhǐ yòng sān gè yuè jiù xiū hǎo le yīncǐ háizimen jīntiān jiù néng shàngkè · Because everyone was so keen, and the donations came in so fast, the school was rebuilt in just three months, and so the children can start lessons today.

anna 我还记得一位做家具的老师傅。他日复一日地修墙，三番五次地说："孩子们要上学。"这些桌子椅子，都是他亲手做的。
wǒ hái jìde yí wèi zuò jiājù de lǎo shīfu tā rìfùyīrì de xiū qiáng sānfān wǔcì de shuō háizimen yào shàngxué zhèxiē zhuōzi yǐzi dōu shì tā qīnshǒu zuò de · I remember a furniture maker. Day after day he mended the walls, and again and again he said, "The children need their school." He made these desks and chairs with his own hands.

anna 这三十年，小镇发生了翻天覆地的变化。洪水来了，坏消息接二连三，可是小镇没有倒下。今天，茶园欣欣向荣，孩子们朝气蓬勃。
zhè sānshí nián xiǎo zhèn fāshēng le fāntiān fùdì de biànhuà hóngshuǐ lái le huài xiāoxi jiēèr liánsān kěshì xiǎo zhèn méiyǒu dǎo xià jīntiān chá yuán xīnxīn xiàngróng háizimen zhāoqì péngbó · In thirty years, this town has changed beyond recognition. The flood came, bad news followed bad news, but the town did not fall. Today the tea gardens are flourishing and the children are full of life.

anna 占用大家几分钟，我再说几件事。这次的捐款涵盖了水、药、被子和书，每一笔都纳入了公开的系统。政府也动用了很多人和车。新学校选用了最好的材料，名字还是沿用以前的。
zhànyòng dàjiā jǐ fēnzhōng wǒ zàishuō jǐ jiàn shì zhè cì de juānkuǎn hángài le shuǐ yào bèizi hé shū měi yì bǐ dōu nàrù le gōngkāi de xìtǒng zhèngfǔ yě dòngyòng le hěn duō rén hé chē xīn xuéxiào xuǎnyòng le zuìhǎo de cáiliào míngzi háishi yányòng yǐqián de · Let me take a few more minutes of your time. The donations covered water, medicine, quilts and books, and every one went into a public system. The government also brought in a great many people and vehicles. The new school is built from the best materials, and it keeps its old name.

anna 这件事凝聚了大家的力量。我们公司也吸纳了几个镇上的年轻人。科技日新月异，可是帮助别人的心一成不变。
zhè jiàn shì níngjù le dàjiā de lìliàng wǒmen gōngsī yě xīnà le jǐ gè zhèn shàng de niánqīng rén kējì rìxīn yuèyì kěshì bāngzhù biérén de xīn yìchéng búbiàn · All this brought everyone's strength together. Our company has also taken on a few young people from the town. Technology changes by the day, but the wish to help others never changes.

anna 未来也许还会有暴雨，可是我们会一如既往地和大家在一起。谢谢！
wèilái yěxǔ hái huì yǒu bàoyǔ kěshì wǒmen huì yìrú jìwǎng de hé dàjiā zài yìqǐ xièxie · There may be more storms in future, but we'll stand with you just as we always have. Thank you!

xiaoming 你听，掌声此起彼伏！老人们都连说带笑。我对这个小镇的感情真是与日俱增。
nǐ tīng zhǎngshēng cǐqǐ bǐfú lǎorénmen dōu lián shuō dài xiào wǒ duì zhège xiǎo zhèn de gǎnqíng zhēnshi yǔrì jùzēng · Listen to that applause, wave after wave! The old people are all chatting and laughing. I love this town more every day.

manager liu 讲得真好，不愧是我们的项目经理。说了五分钟，一句可有可无的话都没有。
jiǎng de zhēn hǎo búkuì shì wǒmen de xiàngmù jīnglǐ shuō le wǔ fēnzhōng yí jù kě yǒu kě wú de huà dōu méiyǒu · Beautifully done: a true project manager. Five minutes, and not one unnecessary word.

dr zhou 你看那位老师傅，他好像在自言自语，眼睛都红了。
nǐ kàn nà wèi lǎo shīfu tā hǎoxiàng zài zìyán zìyǔ yǎnjing dōu hóng le · Look at the old furniture maker: he seems to be talking to himself, and his eyes are red.

chapter 5 chapter 5: evening by the river

xiaoming 今天真累。不过这点累不算什么。
jīntiān zhēn lèi búguò zhè diǎn lèi bú suàn shénme · What a tiring day. But a bit of tiredness is nothing.

little sister 安娜，小明！我也来了！真凑巧，我坐的车跟刘经理的车一起到的。
Ānnà Xiǎomíng wǒ yě lái le zhēn còuqiǎo wǒ zuò de chē gēn Liújīnglǐ de chē yìqǐ dào de · Anna, Xiaoming! I'm here too! What a coincidence: my bus arrived at the same time as Manager Liu's car.

anna 你怎么来了？不是说今天要考试吗？
nǐ zěnme lái le bú shì shuō jīntiān yào kǎoshì ma · What are you doing here? Didn't you have an exam today?

little sister 考完了！大家都叫我别来，我偏要来。我拍了很多视频，还衍生出了一个新的系列。
kǎo wán le dàjiā dōu jiào wǒ bié lái wǒ piān yào lái wǒ pāi le hěn duō shìpín hái yǎnshēng chū le yí gè xīn de xìliè · It's over! Everyone told me not to come, but I insisted. I've filmed loads, and it's spun off a new series.

xiaoming 你好歹先吃点东西。镇上的饭馆一应俱全，吃的喝的应有尽有。
nǐ hǎodǎi xiān chī diǎn dōngxi zhèn shàng de fànguǎn yìyīng jùquán chī de hē de yīngyǒu jìnyǒu · At least eat something first. The town's restaurant has everything: anything you could want to eat or drink.

little sister 好。我刚才不经意听到老师傅说，他打算把旧砖都就地用起来，修一座小桥。
hǎo wǒ gāngcái bù jīngyì tīng dào lǎo shīfu shuō tā dǎsuàn bǎ jiù zhuān dōu jiùdì yòng qǐlai xiū yí zuò xiǎo qiáo · OK. Just now I happened to overhear the old furniture maker say he plans to use the old bricks right here to build a little bridge.

dr zhou 那座老桥以前摇摇欲坠，大家早就想修了。他为了小镇不惜一切。
nà zuò lǎo qiáo yǐqián yáoyáo yùzhuì dàjiā zǎo jiù xiǎng xiū le tā wèile xiǎo zhèn bùxī yíqiè · The old bridge was about to fall down: people have wanted to fix it for ages. He'd do anything for this town.

dr zhou 院子里散落着很多红纸，明天要从头打扫一遍。
yuànzi lǐ sànluò zhe hěn duō hóng zhǐ míngtiān yào cóngtóu dǎsǎo yí biàn · There's red paper scattered all over the yard: tomorrow it all needs sweeping from one end to the other.

xiaoming 除去打扫，明天还有什么事？
chúqù dǎsǎo míngtiān hái yǒu shénme shì · Apart from sweeping, what else is there tomorrow?

dr zhou 附带说一句，回北京的车早上八点开动，别迟到。
fùdài shuō yí jù huí Běijīng de chē zǎoshang bā diǎn kāidòng bié chídào · And by the way, the bus back to Beijing leaves at eight in the morning: don't be late.

little sister 我拍视频拍得手机都没电了，刚才在学校充了一下。我已经住惯这里了，都不想走了！
wǒ pāi shìpín pāi de shǒujī dōu méi diàn le gāngcái zài xuéxiào chōng le yíxià wǒ yǐjīng zhù guàn zhèlǐ le dōu bù xiǎng zǒu le · I filmed so much my phone died; I just charged it at the school. I'm so used to this place now, I don't want to leave!

anna 你们看，河上的天空千姿百态，好像一幅画。
nǐmen kàn hé shàng de tiānkōng qiānzī bǎitài hǎoxiàng yì fú huà · Look, the sky over the river changes shape all the time, like a painting.

dr zhou 别看现在这么安静，到了夏天，河水还是可能会上涨。所以防汛一天都不能放松……
biékàn xiànzài zhème ānjìng dào le xiàtiān hé shuǐ háishi kěnéng huì shàngzhǎng suǒyǐ fángxùn yì tiān dōu bù néng fàngsōng · It may look calm now, but come summer the river could still rise. That's why…

anna 周博士，今天就别说工作了！
Zhōubóshì jīntiān jiù bié shuō gōngzuò le · Dr Zhou, no work talk today!

dr zhou 好吧。我今天心里有很多事交织在一起：难过，感动，还有希望。
hǎo ba wǒ jīntiān xīnlǐ yǒu hěn duō shì jiāozhī zài yìqǐ nánguò gǎndòng hái yǒu xīwàng · All right. A lot of things are all mixed up in my heart today: sadness, being moved, and hope.

xiaoming 我们要牢牢地记住今天。三个月前，谁能想到会有这么意想不到的结局？
wǒmen yào láoláo de jì zhù jīntiān sān gè yuè qián shéi néng xiǎng dào huì yǒu zhème yìxiǎng búdào de jiéjú · We have to remember today, always. Three months ago, who could have imagined it would end like this?

anna 是啊，峰回路转。真是难以置信。

shì a fēnghuí lùzhuǎn zhēnshi nányǐ zhìxìn · Yes, what a turnaround. It's hard to believe.

You just told a whole flood story in Chinese, from the first warning to the last speech.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 133 money and the bank

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 18 · money and markets

Handle money at the bank: savings, foreign exchange, loans and guarantees, shares and debts.
Opening an account, changing money or taking out a loan in China all happen in this vocabulary.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
钞票	chāopiào	banknotes, cash	现在大家都用手机付钱，很少用钞票了。 Everyone pays by phone now: people rarely use banknotes.
纸币	zhǐbì	paper money	世界上最早的纸币出现|在宋朝。 The world's first paper money appeared in the Song dynasty.
硬币	yìngbì	coin	我的钱包里有很多硬币。 My purse is full of coins.
外币	wàibì	foreign currency	这家银行可以存外币。 You can deposit foreign currency at this bank.
外汇	wàihuì	foreign exchange	她在银行负责外汇业务。 She handles foreign exchange at the bank.
兑	duì	to exchange, convert	我想把美元兑成人民币。 I'd like to change dollars into renminbi.
兑换	duìhuàn	to exchange (currency)	机场也可以兑换外币。 You can also change foreign currency at the airport.
兑现	duìxiàn	to cash; to keep (a promise)	他终于兑现了自己的承诺。 He finally kept his promise.
支票	zhīpiào	cheque	现在很少有人用支票了。 Few people use cheques now.
存折	cúnzhé	bankbook, passbook	奶奶还在用存折，不习惯用银行卡。 Grandma still uses a passbook: she isn't used to bank cards.
活期	huóqī	current (account), on demand	活期存款随时都可以取。 You can withdraw money from a current account at any time.
利率	lìlǜ	interest rate	银行又降低了利率。 The bank has lowered interest rates again.
信贷	xìndài	credit, loans	银行的信贷政策变了，贷款更难了。 The bank's lending policy has changed: loans are harder to get.
透支	tòuzhī	to overdraw	这个月信用卡又透支了。 My credit card is overdrawn again this month.
借条	jiètiáo	IOU (written by a borrower)	借钱的时候最好写一张借条。 When you lend money, it's best to get an IOU in writing.
欠条	qiàntiáo	IOU (for money owed)	他给我打了一张欠条。 He wrote me an IOU.

债	zhài	debt	他借了很多债，现在压力很大。 He has run up a lot of debt and is under a lot of pressure.
债务	zhàiwù	debt, liabilities	这家公司的债务太多了。 This company has too much debt.
债券	zhàiquàn	bond	买国家的债券比较安全。 Buying government bonds is fairly safe.
证券	zhèngquàn	securities	他在一家证券公司工作。 He works at a securities firm.
股份	gǔfèn	shares, stake	她在这家公司有百分之十的股份。 She has a ten per cent stake in this company.
股东	gǔdōng	shareholder	公司每年开一次股东大会。 The company holds a shareholders' meeting once a year.
股民	gǔmín	(private) stock investor	股市一跌，股民都很紧张。 When the stock market falls, small investors get nervous.
分红	fēnhóng	to pay dividends	公司今年赚了钱，给股东分红。 The company made money this year and paid dividends to shareholders.
红利	hónglì	dividend, bonus	这些股票每年都有红利。 These shares pay a dividend every year.
抵押	dǐyā	to mortgage, pledge	他把房子抵押给银行，借了一笔钱。 He mortgaged his house to the bank for a loan.
担保	dānbǎo	to guarantee, vouch for	我可以担保，他是一个好人。 I can vouch for him: he's a good person.
偿还	chánghuán	to repay	他用了五年时间偿还了所有的债。 It took him five years to pay off all his debts.
拖欠	tuōqiàn	to be in arrears, delay paying	公司不能拖欠工人的工资。 Companies must not hold back workers' wages.
挂失	guàshī	to report the loss of	我的银行卡丢了，得{dei3}马上挂失。 I've lost my bank card: I must report it at once.
积蓄	jīxù	savings; to save up	这是我这些年所有的积蓄。 These are all my savings from these years.
积攒	jīzǎn	to save up bit by bit	她积攒了三年的钱，去了一次欧洲。 She saved for three years and went on a trip to Europe.
攒	zǎn	to save, put by	我每个月攒一千块钱。 I put by a thousand yuan every month.
手头	shǒutóu	at hand; money on hand	我最近手头有点紧。 I'm a bit short of money at the moment.
钱财	qiáncái	money, wealth	钱财丢了还能再赚，人丢了就找不回来了。 Money lost can be earned again; people lost can't be found again.

pattern 一来……二来…… and 一则……二则……: listing your reasons

一来 / 一则 | reason 1 | ，二来 / 二则 | reason 2 | （，三来……）

To give two or three reasons in a row, say 一来……，二来……(，三来……) “for one thing …, for another …”. 一则……，二则…… does the same in a more formal, written way: reports, letters, a careful explanation.

买房子一来要先付一大笔钱，二来每个月要还贷款，三来还要交很多税。 **mǎi fángzi yì lái yào xiān fù yí dà bǐ qián èr lái měi gè yuè yào huán dàikuǎn sān lái hái yào jiāo hěn duō shuì** Buying a flat means a down payment, then monthly loan repayments, and lots of taxes on top.

我想买房子，一来不想再搬家，二来房租太贵了。 **wǒ xiǎng mǎi fángzi yì lái bù xiǎng zài bānjiā èr lái fángzū tài guì le** I want to buy a flat: for one thing I don’t want to move again, and for another the rent is too high.

一则利率低，二则房价稳定，现在买房子比较合适。 **yì zé lìlǜ dī èr zé fángjià wěndìng xiànzài mǎi fángzi bǐjiào héshì** Firstly interest rates are low, and secondly prices are steady, so now is a good time to buy.

dialogue saturday at the bank

ms zhang 安娜，你真想好了？买房子一来要先付一大笔钱，二来每个月要还贷款，三来还要交很多税。
Ānnà nǐ zhēn xiǎng hǎo le mǎi fángzi yì lái yào xiān fù yí dà bǐ qián èr lái měi gè yuè yào huán dàikuǎn sān lái hái yào jiāo hěn duō shuì · Anna, have you really thought it through? Buying a flat means a down payment, then monthly loan repayments, and lots of taxes on top.

anna 想好了。我一来不想再搬家，二来房租越来越贵，还不如自己买。
xiǎng hǎo le wǒ yì lái bù xiǎng zài bānjiā èr lái fángzū yuè lái yuè guì hái bùrú zìjǐ mǎi · I have. For one thing I don't want to move again, and for another rent keeps going up: I might as well buy.

ms zhang 那先看看你的积蓄够不够。
nà xiān kàn kan nǐ de jīxù gòu búgòu · Then let's first see whether your savings are enough.

anna 我在活期账户里存了一些钱，还有一些美元。这几年我每个月都攒一点，积攒了不少。
wǒ zài huóqī zhànghù lǐ cún le yìxiē qián hái yǒu yìxiē měi yuán zhè jǐ nián wǒ měi gè yuè dōu zǎn yìdiǎn jīzǎn le bù shǎo · I have some money in my current account, and some dollars. I've put a bit by every month for years and saved quite a lot.

ms zhang 外币可以在这儿兑换。现在外汇的价格不错，可以兑一部分。
wàibì kěyǐ zài zhèr duìhuàn xiànzài wàihuì de jiàgé búcuò kěyǐ duì yí bùfen · You can change foreign currency here. The exchange rate is good at the moment: you could convert some of it.

anna 我还有一张英国的支票，好几年了，不知道还能不能兑现。
wǒ hái yǒu yì zhāng Yīngguó de zhīpiào hǎo jǐ nián le bù zhīdào hái néng bu néng duìxiàn · I also have a British cheque from years ago: I don't know whether it can still be cashed.

ms zhang 这个要问银行。你看那位老人，还拿着存折和一大把钞票、硬币来存钱。
zhège yào wèn yínháng nǐ kàn nà wèi lǎorén hái ná zhe cúnzhé hé yí dà bǎ chāopiào yìngbì lái cún qián · You'll have to ask the bank. Look at that old man: he's come to deposit money with a passbook and a big handful of notes and coins.

anna 我奶奶也这样，她偏要用纸币，说拿在手里才放心。
wǒ nǎinai yě zhèyàng tā piān yào yòng zhǐbì shuō ná zài shǒu lǐ cái fàngxīn · My grandma is the same: she insists on paper money, and says she only feels safe with it in her hand.

ms zhang 贷款的事，银行要看你的收入。不过现在买房子比较合适：一则利率低，信贷政策也比较宽，二则房价也比较稳定。
dàikuǎn de shì yínháng yào kàn nǐ de shōurù búguò xiànzài mǎi fángzi bǐjiào héshì yì zé lìlǜ dī xìndài zhèngcè yě bǐjiào kuān èr zé fángjià yě bǐjiào wěndìng · For the loan, the bank will look at your income. But now is a good time to buy: firstly, interest rates are low and lending rules fairly relaxed; secondly, prices are fairly steady.

anna 买房子要抵押吗？
mǎi fángzi yào dǐyā ma · Do I have to put up anything as security?

ms zhang 房子本身就是抵押。你是外国人，银行可能还要一个人担保。
fángzi běnshēn jiùshì dǐyā nǐ shì wàiguó rén yínháng kěnéng hái yào yí gè rén dānbǎo · The flat itself is the security. You're a foreigner, so the bank may want a guarantor too.

anna 我不想透支，也不想欠债。以前我借给朋友五千块，他打了一张欠条，到现在还拖欠着。
wǒ bù xiǎng tòuzhī yě bù xiǎng qiàn zhài yǐqián wǒ jiè gěi péngyou wǔqiān kuài tā dǎ le yì zhāng qiàntiáo dào xiànzài hái tuōqiàn zhe · I don't want to be overdrawn or in debt. I once lent a friend five thousand, he wrote me an IOU, and he still hasn't paid me back.

ms zhang 借钱一定要写借条。不过买房子的债务是好的债，只要你按时偿还就行。
jiè qián yídìng yào xiě jiètiáo búguò mǎi fángzi de zhàiwù shì hǎo de zhài zhǐyào nǐ ànshí chánghuán jiù xíng · Always get an IOU when you lend money. But a mortgage is good debt, as long as you repay it on time.

anna 那我手头还有一些股票，要不要卖掉？
nà wǒ shǒutóu hái yǒu yìxiē gǔpiào yào búyào mài diào · Then I still have some shares to hand: should I sell them?

ms zhang 什么股票?

shénme gǔpiào · Which ones?

anna 我们公司的股份。去年公司分红，我拿了一点红利，真是意想不到。我也算是个小股东了！

wǒmen gōngsī de gǔfèn qùnián gōngsī fēnhóng wǒ ná le yìdiǎn hónglì zhēnshi yìxiǎng búdào wǒ yě suànshì gè xiǎo gǔdōng le · Shares in my company. The company paid a dividend last year, and I got a little: I never expected it. I'm a small shareholder now!

ms zhang 哈哈，你还是个股民！我在证券公司的朋友说，卖股票不如卖一部分债券，风险小一点。

hā hā nǐ háishi gè gǔmín wǒ zài zhèngquàn gōngsī de péngyou shuō mài gǔpiào bùrú mài yí bùfen zhàiquàn fēngxiǎn xiǎo yìdiǎn · Ha, so you're a stock investor too! My friend at a securities firm says that rather than selling shares, you'd do better to sell some bonds: less risk.

anna 哎呀，我的银行卡呢？好像丢了！

āiyā wǒ de yínhángkǎ ne hǎoxiàng diū le · Oh no, where's my bank card? I think I've lost it!

ms zhang 别急，先挂失。钱财丢了还能再赚，人没事就好。

bié jí xiān guàshī qiáncái diū le hái néng zài zhuàn rén méishì jiù hǎo · Don't panic: report it lost first. Money can be earned again, as long as you're all right.

anna 啊，找到了，在我的包里！

a zhǎo dào le zài wǒ de bāo lǐ · Oh, found it: it was in my bag!

ms zhang 下次别这么吓人了！好歹先把包找一遍。

xià cì bié zhème xiàrén le hǎodǎi xiān bǎ bāo zhǎo yí biàn · Don't scare me like that next time! At least look through your bag first.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

兑
duì
to exchange, convert

债
zhài
debt

攒
zǎn
to save, put by

good to know · 股 builds the stock-market words: 股票 shares, 股份 a stake, 股东 shareholder, 股民 a small investor, 股市 the stock market. 借条 or 欠条? A 借条 records a loan of money; a 欠条 records any debt, such as goods not yet paid for. Either way, write the amount in words as well as figures.

Savings, exchange rates, loans and dividends: you can now sort out your money at a Chinese bank. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 134 shops and selling

Shop like a local: retail and wholesale, brands and fakes, price ranges and good deals.

From old markets to malls and live-stream sales, shopping words are everyday Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
零售	língshòu	to retail	这种茶叶的零售价格是一斤三百块。 This tea sells retail for three hundred yuan a jin.
批发	pīfā	to sell wholesale	他从市场批发水果，再拿到小区里卖。 He buys fruit wholesale at the market and sells it in the housing estates.
专卖	zhuānmài	to sell exclusively	这家店专卖运动鞋。 This shop sells only trainers.
专柜	zhuānguì	brand counter (in a store)	商场三楼有很多化妆品专柜。 The third floor of the mall has lots of cosmetics counters.
柜台	guìtái	counter (in a shop or bank)	请到柜台付钱。 Please pay at the counter.
橱窗	chúchuāng	shop window	她在橱窗前站了很久。 She stood in front of the shop window for a long time.
招牌	zhāopai	shop sign; signature (dish)	这家店的招牌已经有一百年了。 This shop's sign is a hundred years old.
老字号	lǎozìhao	time-honoured brand	北京有很多老字号饭店。 Beijing has lots of time-honoured restaurants.
集市	jíshì	country market, fair	周末镇上有集市，很热闹。 There's a market in town at the weekend, and it's very lively.
商贩	shāngfàn	trader, street vendor	集市上的商贩都在大声叫卖。 The traders at the market are all calling out their wares.
兜售	dōushòu	to peddle, hawk	地铁里有人兜售假手表。 Someone was hawking fake watches on the underground.
贩卖	fànmài	to sell; traffic (illegally)	贩卖野生动物是违法的。 Trading in wild animals is illegal.
拍卖	pāimài	to auction	这幅画在拍卖会{hui4-3}上卖了一百万。 This painting sold for a million at auction.
预售	yùshòu	to presell	新手机下周开始预售。 The new phone goes on presale next week.
热销	rèxiāo	to sell well	这种月饼每年都很热销。 These mooncakes sell well every year.
倾销	qīngxiāo	to dump (goods below cost)	有的国家反对低价倾销。 Some countries oppose dumping goods at low prices.

光顾	guānggù	to patronise (a shop)	欢迎再次光顾！ We look forward to seeing you again!
招揽	zhāolǎn	to tout for, attract (customers)	店员站在门口招揽客人。 The shop assistant stood at the door drumming up customers.
营销	yíngxiāo	marketing; to market	好的产品也需要|好的营销。 Good products need good marketing too.
代言	dàiyán	to endorse (as a spokesperson)	这个牌子请了一位明星代言。 This brand got a celebrity to be its face.
标签	biāoqiān	label, tag	买衣服以前，先看看标签。 Before you buy clothes, check the label.
样品	yàngpǐn	sample	他们给我们寄来了几个样品。 They sent us a few samples.
精品	jīngpǐn	top-quality goods, boutique	这家店只卖精品。 This shop sells only top-quality goods.
原装	yuánzhuāng	original, factory-packed	这是原装的电池，不是别的牌子的。 This is the original battery, not another brand.
劣质	lièzhì	poor-quality	劣质的东西用不了多久。 Shoddy goods don't last long.
山寨	shānzhài	knock-off, copycat	这是个山寨的名牌包。 This is a knock-off designer bag.
档次	dàngcì	grade, class, level	这家饭店档次很高。 This restaurant is very upmarket.
价位	jiàwèi	price range	你想要什么价位的? What price range are you looking for?
单价	dānjià	unit price	买得越多，单价越低。 The more you buy, the lower the unit price.
平价	píngjià	fair price; low-priced	小区里新开了一家平价超市。 A discount supermarket has opened in the housing estate.
廉价	liánjià	cheap, low-priced	廉价的东西不一定好。 Cheap things aren't necessarily good.
贱	jiàn	cheap; lowly	今年西瓜很贱，一块钱一斤。 Watermelons are dirt cheap this year: a yuan a jin.
划算	huásuàn	worth it, a good deal	买一送一，真划算！ Buy one, get one free: what a deal!
主打	zhǔdǎ	to feature as the main product	这家店主打北京小吃。 This shop specialises in Beijing snacks.

pattern (在).....之余 and 要我说

(在) | your main activity | 之余, | what else you do

(在)A之余 means “when not busy with A” or “besides A”: 在学习之余 “on top of studying”. 要我说 (or 让我说) means “if you ask me”, and comes before your opinion.

在工作之余，她喜欢逛集市。 **zài gōngzuò zhī yú tā xǐhuan guàng jíshì** When she isn’t working, she likes to wander round markets.

感动之余，大家也开始想怎么帮忙。 **gǎndòng zhī yú dàjiā yě kāishǐ xiǎng zěnme bāngmáng** Moved as they were, people also started thinking about how to help.

要我说，原装的比便宜的划算。 **yào wǒ shuō yuánzhuāng de bǐ piányi de huásuàn** If you ask me, the original is better value than the cheap one.

让我说，这家店的档次太高了。 **ràng wǒ shuō zhè jiā diàn de dàngcì tài gāo le** If you ask me, this shop is too upmarket.

dialogue a shopping trip with opinions

little sister 安娜，你看这块招牌！这家老字号已经开了一百年了。在学习之余，我现在帮他们做营销。

Ānnà nǐ kàn zhè kuài zhāopai zhè jiā lǎozìhao yǐjīng kāi le yìbǎi nián le zài xuéxí zhī yú wǒ xiànzài bāng tāmen zuò yíngxiāo · Anna, look at this sign! This shop has been open a hundred years. Besides studying, I do their marketing now.

anna 他们卖什么？

tāmen mài shénme · What do they sell?

little sister 主打茶杯和手工的碗。橱窗里那些都是精品，档次很高。

zhǔdǎ chá bēi hé shǒugōng de wǎn chúchuāng lǐ nàxiē dōu shì jīngpǐn dàngcì hěn gāo · Mainly teacups and handmade bowls. The things in the window are top quality, very upmarket.

anna 价位怎么样？我想先看看，以后有了自己的房子再买。

jiàwèi zěnmeyàng wǒ xiǎng xiān kàn kan yǐhòu yǒu le zìjǐ de fángzi zài mǎi · What's the price range? I just want to look for now, and buy once I have my own place.

little sister 零售比较贵，可是你要是买一套，单价就低多了。他们也批发给饭店。

língshòu bǐjiào guì kěshì nǐ yàoshi mǎi yí tào dānjià jiù dī duō le tāmen yě pīfā gěi fàndiàn · Retail is quite expensive, but if you buy a whole set the unit price is much lower. They sell wholesale to restaurants too.

anna 要我说，这个价位挺划算的。我先拿一个样品回去看看。

yào wǒ shuō zhège jiàwèi tǐng huásuàn de wǒ xiān ná yí gè yàngpǐn huíqù kàn kan · If you ask me, that price is pretty good value. I'll take one sample home to look at.

little sister 好。这家店的股东里还有我们学校的老师呢。今年过年的时候他们还预售了一种新茶，特别热销，一个星期就卖完了。

hǎo zhè jiā diàn de gǔdōng lǐ hái yǒu wǒmen xuéxiào de lǎoshī ne jīnnián guònián de shíhou tāmen hái yùshòu le yì zhǒng xīn chá tèbié rèxiāo yí gè xīngqī jiù mài wán le · Sure. One of the shop's shareholders is even a teacher at my university. At New Year they presold a new tea too, and it sold so well it was gone in a week.

anna 那你的营销做得很成功啊！

nà nǐ de yíngxiāo zuò de hěn chénggōng a · So your marketing works!

little sister 还行。我们没钱请明星代言，就请老顾客在网上讲故事。很多年轻人看了以后专门来光顾。

hái xíng wǒmen méi qián qǐng míngxīng dàiyán jiù qǐng lǎo gùkè zài wǎngshang jiǎng gùshi hěn duō niánqīng rén kàn le yǐhòu zhuānmén lái guānggù · Not bad. We can't afford a celebrity to endorse us, so we get regular customers to tell their stories online. Lots of young people come specially after seeing them.

anna 比站在门口招揽客人好多了。

bǐ zhàn zài ménkǒu zhāolǎn kèrén hǎo duō le · Much better than standing at the door touting for customers.

little sister 你看那边，有个商贩在兜售名牌包，三百块一个。肯定是山寨的，都是劣质的东西。

nǐ kàn nàbiān yǒu gè shāngfàn zài dōushòu míngpái bāo sānbǎi kuài yí gè kěndìng shì shānzhài de dōu shì lièzhì de dōngxi · Look over there: a trader is hawking designer bags at three hundred yuan each. They're bound to be knock-offs: shoddy stuff.

anna 廉价的东西不一定划算。我上次在网上买了一个耳机，说是原装的，结果用了一个星期就坏了。

liánjià de dōngxi bù yídìng huásuàn wǒ shàng cì zài wǎngshang mǎi le yí gè ěrjī shuō shì yuánzhuāng de jiéguǒ yòng le yí gè xīngqī jiù huài le · Cheap things aren't always a good deal. Last time I bought some headphones online that said it was original, and it broke within a week.

little sister 买以前一定要看标签。有的外国公司还往这里倾销，价格低得不正常。

mǎi yǐqián yídìng yào kàn biāoqiān yǒude wàiguó gōngsī hái wǎng zhèlǐ qīngxiāo jiàgé dī de bú zhèngcháng · Always check the label before you buy. Some foreign companies even dump goods here, at prices that just aren't normal.

anna 我们再去商场看看吧。

wǒmen zài qù shāngchǎng kàn kan ba · Let's go and look at the mall too.

little sister 好！商场三楼有家具专卖店，一楼都是化妆品专柜。
hǎo shāngchǎng sān lóu yǒu jiājù zhuānmài diàn yì lóu dōu shì huàzhuāng pǐn zhuānguì · OK! The mall has furniture stores on the third floor, and the ground floor is all cosmetics counters.

anna 我刚来北京的时候，胡同口周末有集市，东西很贱，几块钱就能买一大袋苹果。
wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou hútòng kǒu zhōumò yǒu jíshì dōngxi hěn jiàn jǐ kuài qián jiù néng mǎi yí dà dài píngguǒ · When I first came to Beijing, there was a weekend market at the end of the hutong. Things were dirt cheap: a few yuan bought a big bag of apples.

little sister 现在北京也有平价超市，可是集市更好玩。不过集市上很多人不收大钞票，最好带些硬币。
xiànzài Běijīng yě yǒu píngjià chāoshì kěshì jíshì gèng hǎowán búguò jíshì shàng hěn duō rén bù shōu dà chāopiào zuìhǎo dài xiē yìngbì · Beijing has discount supermarkets now, but markets are more fun. Mind you, lots of stallholders won't take big notes, so it's best to bring some coins.

anna 对了，上个月有一幅老画在拍卖会上卖了一千万，你看到新闻了吗？
duì le shàng gè yuè yǒu yì fú lǎo huà zài pāimài huì shàng mài le yìqiān wàn nǐ kàn dào xīnwén le ma · Oh, did you see the news last month? An old painting sold at auction for ten million.

little sister 看到了！不过要我说，这种东西不能随便贩卖，应该放在博物馆里。
kàn dào le búguò yào wǒ shuō zhè zhǒng dōngxi bù néng suíbiàn fànmài yīnggāi fàng zài bówùguǎn lǐ · I did! But if you ask me, things like that shouldn't just be bought and sold: they belong in a museum.

anna 好，到了。先去柜台问问有没有打折。
hǎo dào le xiān qù guìtái wèn wen yǒu méiyǒu dǎzhé · Right, here we are. Let's ask at the counter whether there's a discount first.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

廉
lián
inexpensive

贱
jiàn
cheap; lowly

good to know · 售 and 销 both mean sell: 零售 retail, 预售 presale, 热销 sell well, 倾销 dump, 营销 marketing. 售 is the act of selling; 销 is how goods move. 山寨 (a knock-off) is everyday Beijing slang now; in the written language you will also see 假冒 (counterfeit).

Retail or wholesale, original or knock-off, a bargain or a rip-off: you can now shop, and judge, like a Beijinger.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 135 spending and saving

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 18 · money and markets

Talk about budgets and spending: costs, deposits, receipts and refunds, and whether something is worth it.

Making a budget, asking for a receipt, getting a refund: these are the money words you use every week.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
开销	kāixiāo	expenses; to pay (expenses)	在北京生活，每个月的开销不小。 Living in Beijing, the monthly expenses are not small.
开支	kāizhī	expenditure, spending	公司今年要减少开支。 The company has to cut spending this year.
掏腰包	tāoyāobāo	to pay out of one's own pocket	这顿饭我请，我掏腰包！ This meal's on me: I'm paying!
自费	zìfèi	at one's own expense	这次去英国学习是自费的。 This study trip to the UK is at my own expense.
挥霍	huīhuò	to squander	他把父母的钱都挥霍了。 He squandered all his parents' money.
奢侈	shēchǐ	luxurious, extravagant	对我来说，打车上班太奢侈了。 For me, taking a taxi to work is too extravagant.
阔绰	kuòchuò	lavish, free-spending	他出手很阔绰，一请就是十几个人。 He's a big spender: when he treats people, it's a dozen at a time.
耗费	hàofèi	to use up, consume	这个项目耗费了很多时间和钱。 This project used up a lot of time and money.
划不来	huábulái	not worth it	为了省十块钱跑那么远，划不来。 It's not worth going all that way to save ten yuan.
划得来	huádelái	worth it	多花一点钱买好的，划得来。 Spending a bit more on a good one is worth it.
小费	xiǎofèi	tip, gratuity	在中国吃饭一般不用给小费。 In China you usually don't need to tip at restaurants.
订购	dìnggòu	to order (goods)	我在网上订购了一台新冰箱。 I ordered a new fridge online.
定做	dìngzuò	to have something made to order	这套衣服是在老裁缝那儿定做的。 This suit was made to measure by an old tailor.
定金	dìngjīn	deposit (to secure a deal)	订家具要先交定金。 To order furniture you pay a deposit first.
首付	shǒufù	down payment	买房子的首付是房价的三成。 The down payment on a flat is thirty per cent of the price.

收据	shōujù	receipt	付了钱，记得要收据。 When you pay, remember to ask for a receipt.
结算	jiésuàn	to settle (accounts), pay	我们月底结算。 We settle up at the end of the month.
算账	suànzhàng	to do the accounts; settle scores	每个月底，我都要算账。 At the end of every month I do my accounts.
扣除	kòuchú	to deduct	工资要扣除税和保险。 Tax and insurance are deducted from your wages.
返还	fǎnhuán	to return, refund	押金会在搬走的时候返还。 The deposit is refunded when you move out.
退回	tuìhuí	to return, send back	衣服太小了，我把它退回|去了。 The clothes were too small, so I sent them back.
索取	suǒqǔ	to ask for, demand	顾客有权索取发票。 Customers have the right to ask for an invoice.
无偿	wúcháng	free of charge, unpaid	这些义工都是无偿帮忙的。 These volunteers all help without pay.
值钱	zhíqián	valuable	这块旧手表很值钱。 This old watch is worth a lot.
发财	fācái	to get rich	祝你新年快乐，恭喜发财！ Happy New Year, and may you prosper!
致富	zhìfù	to become rich	这个村子靠种茶致富了。 This village got rich growing tea.
富豪	fùháo	tycoon, very rich person	他是这个城市有名的富豪。 He's a well-known tycoon in this city.
富翁	fùwēng	rich man	他买彩票中了大奖，一夜成了富翁。 He won the lottery and became a rich man overnight.
富足	fùzú	plentiful, well off	他们的生活越来越富足。 Their life is more and more comfortable.
资助	zīzhù	to fund, support financially	这个基金会资助了一百多个学生。 This foundation has funded more than a hundred students.
赞助	zànzhù	to sponsor	我们公司赞助了这次比赛。 Our company sponsored this competition.
出资	chūzī	to put up the money	这座桥是由镇上的人出资修的。 This bridge was paid for by the townspeople.
款项	kuǎnxiàng	sum of money, funds	这笔款项已经打到学校了。 This sum has already been transferred to the school.
数额	shùé	amount, figure	捐款的数额不重要，重要的是大家的心。 The amount donated doesn't matter: it's the thought that counts.
总额	zǒngé	total (amount)	这个月的开销总额是八千块。 This month's spending totalled eight thousand yuan.

pattern building up: 不但……而且……甚至……, and 更不用说

不但 A， **而且 B，** **甚至 C** **……，更不用说……了**

A sentence can climb step by step: 不但 A，而且 B，甚至 C “not only A but B, and even C”. ……，更不用说……了 makes the last step obvious: “…, not to mention …”.

装修不但耗费时间，而且耗费钱，甚至影响夫妻感情。 **zhuāngxiū búdàn hàofèi shíjiān érqiě hàofèi qián shènzhì yǐngxiǎng fūqī gǎnqíng** Renovating eats up not just time but money, and it can even strain a marriage.

他不但自费去了小镇，而且无偿帮忙，甚至还资助了两个学生。 **tā búdàn zìfèi qù le xiǎo zhèn érqiě wúcháng bāngmáng shènzhì hái zīzhù le liǎng gè xuéshēng** He not only went to the town at his own expense and helped without pay, he even funded two students.

在北京打车都很贵，更不用说买车了。 **zài Běijīng dǎchē dōu hěn guì gèng búyòng shuō mǎi chē le** Even taxis are expensive in Beijing, not to mention buying a car.

dialogue the budget

xiaoming 来，我们算算账。首付是房价的三成，你的积蓄够吗？
lái wǒmen suàn suànzhàng shǒufù shì fángjià de sān chéng nǐ de jīxù gòu ma · Right, let's do the sums. The down payment is thirty per cent of the price: are your savings enough?

anna 差不多够了。可是每个月的开销也不小：房租、吃饭、打车……
chàbuduō gòu le kěshì měi gè yuè de kāixiāo yě bù xiǎo fángzū chī fàn dǎchē · Just about. But my monthly expenses aren't small either: rent, food, taxis…

xiaoming 打车上班太奢侈了！坐地铁不但便宜，而且快，甚至还能看书。
dǎchē shàngbān tài shēchǐ le zuò dìtiě búdàn piányi érqiě kuài shènzhì hái néng kàn shū · Taking taxis to work is too extravagant! The underground is not only cheap but fast, and you can even read.

anna 好吧。上个月的开支总额是九千块，扣除房租，剩下的也不多。
hǎo ba shàng gè yuè de kāizhī zǒngé shì jiǔqiān kuài kòuchú fángzū shèng xià de yě bù duō · Fine. Last month's spending came to nine thousand in total, and after rent there isn't much left.

xiaoming 我结婚的时候也是这样。婚礼、装修、家具，花钱像流水一样。装修不但耗费时间，而且耗费钱，甚至影响夫妻感情。
wǒ jiéhūn de shíhou yě shì zhèyàng hūnlǐ zhuāngxiū jiājù huā qián xiàng liúshuǐ yíyàng zhuāngxiū búdàn hàofèi shíjiān érqiě hàofèi qián shènzhì yǐngxiǎng fūqī gǎnqíng · It was the same when I got married. The wedding, the renovation, the furniture: money poured out like water. Renovating eats up not just time but money, and it can even strain a marriage.

anna 你们的家具是定做的吧？
nǐmen de jiājù shì dìngzuò de ba · Your furniture was made to order, wasn't it?

xiaoming 对，订的时候先交了定金。后来有一个柜子做错了，我们退回去了，他们把钱返还给了我们。
duì dìng de shíhou xiān jiāo le dìngjīn hòulái yǒu yí gè guìzi zuò cuò le wǒmen tuìhuí qù le tāmen bǎ qián fǎnhuán gěi le wǒmen · Yes, we paid a deposit when we ordered. Then one cabinet was made wrong, so we sent it back and they refunded us.

anna 有收据吗？
yǒu shōujù ma · Did you have a receipt?

xiaoming 当然。付钱的时候一定要索取收据，月底结算的时候才说得清楚。
dāngrán fù qián de shíhou yídìng yào suǒqǔ shōujù yuè dǐ jiésuàn de shíhou cái shuō de qīngchu · Of course. Always ask for a receipt when you pay: then it's all clear when you settle up at the end of the month.

anna 我在银行开了一个活期账户，专门付这些开销。对了，我在网上订购了一个沙发，是精品，可是有点贵。你说划得来吗？
wǒ zài yínháng kāi le yí gè huóqī zhànghù zhuānmén fù zhèxiē kāixiāo duì le wǒ zài wǎngshang dìnggòu le yí gè shāfā shì jīngpǐn kěshì yǒu diǎn guì nǐ shuō huádelái ma · I've opened a current account at the bank just for these expenses. Oh, and I've ordered a sofa online: it's top quality, but a bit expensive. Do you think it's worth it?

xiaoming 沙发天天用，多花一点钱买好的，划得来。可是为了省十块钱跑那么远，就划不来了。
shāfā tiān tiān yòng duō huā yìdiǎn qián mǎi hǎo de huádelái kěshì wèile shěng shí kuài qián pǎo nàme yuǎn jiù huábulái le · You use a sofa every day: spending a bit more on a good one is worth it. But going miles to save ten yuan isn't.

anna 你妹妹上次跟我说，她想买一个名牌包，还不要山寨的。
nǐ mèimei shàng cì gēn wǒ shuō tā xiǎng mǎi yí gè míngpái bāo hái búyào shānzhài de · Your sister told me last time she wants a designer bag, and not a knock-off either.

xiaoming 她呀，出手比富豪还阔绰！她的工资都快挥霍完了，更不用说攒钱了。
tā yā chūshǒu bǐ fùháo hái kuòchuò tā de gōngzī dōu kuài huīhuò wán le gèng búyòng shuō zǎn qián le · Her? She spends like a tycoon! She's nearly blown all her pay, never mind saving.

anna 她还说要找我借钱，给我打一张借条呢。不过她在帮老字号做营销，赚的钱也不少吧？

tā hái shuō yào zhǎo wǒ jiè qián gěi wǒ dǎ yì zhāng jiètiáo ne búguò tā zài bāng lǎozìhao zuò yíngxiāo zhuàn de qián yě bù shǎo ba · She even said she'd borrow from me and write me an IOU. But she does marketing for that old shop: she must earn a fair bit?

xiaoming 她总说以后要发财，当个富翁。我说先别想发财了，自己的生活富足就够了。
tā zǒng shuō yǐhòu yào fācái dāng gè fùwēng wǒ shuō xiān bié xiǎng fācái le zìjǐ de shēnghuó fùzú jiù gòu le · She keeps saying she's going to get rich and be a millionaire. I tell her to forget getting rich: a comfortable life is enough.

anna 对了，我们公司赞助了小镇的新学校，还资助了几个学生。那个小镇现在靠种茶致富了。
duì le wǒmen gōngsī zànzhù le xiǎo zhèn de xīn xuéxiào hái zīzhù le jǐ gè xuéshēng nàge xiǎo zhèn xiànzài kào zhòng chá zhìfù le · Oh, our company sponsored the town's new school and is funding a few students too. The town is getting rich on its tea now.

xiaoming 这笔款项是公司出资的吗?
zhè bǐ kuǎnxiàng shì gōngsī chūzī de ma · Was that money from the company?

anna 一部分是。还有很多员工自费去当义工，无偿帮忙。数额不大，可是大家都很用心。
yí bùfen shì hái yǒu hěn duō yuángōng zìfèi qù dāng yìgōng wúcháng bāngmáng shùé bú dà kěshì dàjiā dōu hěn yòngxīn · Partly. Lots of staff also went to volunteer at their own expense, unpaid. The sums are small, but everyone cares.

xiaoming 好了，算完了。你的计划没问题。这顿饭我掏腰包，去吃火锅!
hǎo le suàn wán le nǐ de jìhuà méi wèntí zhè dùn fàn wǒ tāo yāobāo qù chī huǒguō · Right, all done. Your plan works. Dinner's on me: let's go for hotpot!

anna 好啊！在中国吃饭不用给小费，你更划得来了。下次我请你!
hǎo a zài Zhōngguó chī fàn búyòng gěi xiǎofèi nǐ gèng huádelái le xià cì wǒ qǐng nǐ · Great! And in China you don't tip, so it's even better value for you. Next time it's my treat!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

霍
huò
quickly

侈
chǐ
wasteful

good to know · 划得来 / 划不来 is how Beijingers say "worth it / not worth it"; the same idea in standard Chinese is 值得 / 不值得. Three "rich" words: 发财 get rich (personal, cheerful), 致富 become prosperous (often a whole village), 富足 well off and content.

Budgets, deposits, refunds and receipts: you can now manage your money in Chinese, and argue about whether a sofa is worth it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 136 companies and capital

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 18 · money and markets

Talk about companies, investment and property: who owns what, who pays, and what a development zone offers.

Business news, property ads and company meetings in China all run on these words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
市场经济	shìchǎngjīngjì	market economy	在市场经济中，价格由市场决定。 In a market economy, prices are set by the market.
资本主义	zīběnzhǔyì	capitalism	这本书讲的是资本主义的历史。 This book is about the history of capitalism.
私营	sīyíng	privately run	这家私营企业只有二十个员工。 This private business has only twenty staff.
民营	mínyíng	privately run (non-state)	很多民营企业发展得很快。 Many private companies are growing fast.
国有	guóyǒu	state-owned	这家银行是国有的。 This bank is state-owned.
私有	sīyǒu	privately owned	这个院子是私有的，不能随便进去。 This courtyard is private property: you can't just walk in.
合资	hézī	joint venture; to pool capital	他们跟一家美国公司合资开了工厂。 They opened a factory in a joint venture with an American company.
外资	wàizī	foreign capital, foreign investment	这个城市吸引了很多外资。 This city has attracted a lot of foreign investment.
跨国	kuàguó	transnational, multinational	她在一家跨国公司工作。 She works for a multinational company.
并购	bìnggòu	merger and acquisition	两家公司的并购谈了一年。 The merger of the two companies took a year to negotiate.
垄断	lǒngduàn	to monopolise; monopoly	一家公司垄断市场，对顾客不好。 One company monopolising the market is bad for customers.
产权	chǎnquán	property rights	买房子以前，要先看清楚产权。 Before you buy a flat, check the property rights carefully.
不动产	bùdòngchǎn	real estate, immovable property	他的不动产包括两套房子和一块地。 His real estate includes two flats and a plot of land.
房地产	fángdìchǎn	real estate, property (business)	这几年房地产市场变化很大。 The property market has changed a lot in recent years.

开发商	kāifāshāng	(property) developer	开发商说明年就能交房子。 The developer says the flats will be handed over next year.
开发区	kāifāqū	development zone	开发区里有很多新工厂。 There are lots of new factories in the development zone.
园区	yuánqū	(business or industrial) park	我们公司在科技园区里。 Our company is in the science park.
租赁	zūlìn	to lease, rent	这家公司租赁了三层办公楼。 The company has leased three floors of offices.
商机	shāngjī	business opportunity	新的政策带来了很多商机。 The new policy has brought lots of business opportunities.
商用	shāngyòng	commercial (use)	这层楼是商用的，不能住人。 This floor is for commercial use: you can't live here.
招商	zhāoshāng	to attract investment, invite business	开发区正在招商。 The development zone is looking for investors.
融资	róngzī	to raise finance; financing	公司今年融资了一个亿。 The company raised a hundred million this year.
集资	jízī	to raise funds (from many people)	村里集资修了一条路。 The village raised money to build a road.
筹集	chóují	to raise (funds, materials)	学生们为图书馆筹集了很多书。 The students collected lots of books for the library.
筹措	chóucuò	to raise (funds, with effort)	他四处筹措资金。 He went everywhere trying to raise funds.
筹码	chóumǎ	bargaining chip	在谈判中，技术是我们最大的筹码。 In the negotiations, technology is our biggest bargaining chip.
本钱	běnqián	capital (to start a business)	开饭馆的本钱是跟父母借的。 The money to open the restaurant was borrowed from his parents.
财力	cáilì	financial resources	我们公司没有那么大的财力。 Our company doesn't have such financial muscle.
经费	jīngfèi	funds (for a project or institution)	这个研究的经费不够。 There isn't enough funding for this research.
拨款	bōkuǎn	to allocate funds; allocated funds	政府给学校拨款修图书馆。 The government allocated money to the school to repair its library.
预算	yùsuàn	budget; to budget	我们的预算只有十万块。 Our budget is only a hundred thousand yuan.
财政	cáizhèng	public finance	财政部门每年都要公开预算。 The finance authorities publish the budget every year.
审计	shěnjì	to audit	公司每年都要请人审计。 The company has an audit every year.

财经	cáijīng	finance and economics	她每天早上看财经新闻。 She watches the business news every morning.
经贸	jīngmào	economy and trade	两国的经贸关系越来越密切。 Economic and trade ties between the two countries are getting closer.

pattern 非a非b, 可a可b and 连a带b in business talk

非A非B neither … nor · **可A可B** could be either · **连A带B** A and B together

The idiom frames come back in business Chinese. 可大可小 “could be big or small” and 可多可少 “more or less, either is fine”; 连人带车 “people and car together”, 连吃带住 “food and lodging included”; 非亲非故 “no family or friendship ties”, said of a deal with strangers.

合同上的小问题，可大可小。 **hétóng shàng de xiǎo wèntí kě dà kě xiǎo** A small problem in a contract could turn out big or small.

房租连吃带住，一个月三千块。 **fángzū lián chī dài zhù yí gè yuè sānqiān kuài** The rent is three thousand a month, food and lodging included.

我们跟这家公司非亲非故，只能靠合同。 **wǒmen gēn zhè jiā gōngsī fēi qīn fēi gù zhǐ néng kào hétóng** We have no ties with this company: we can only rely on the contract.

dialogue the sales office

anna 孙律师，谢谢你陪我来。开发商连人带车都派来了，服务真好。
Sūnlǜshī xièxie nǐ péi wǒ lái kāifāshāng lián rén dài chē dōu pài lái le fúwù zhēn hǎo · Lawyer Sun, thanks for coming with me. The developer even sent a car and a driver: great service.

lawyer sun 服务好是为了卖房子。我们跟他们非亲非故，只能靠合同。先看产权。
fúwù hǎo shì wèile mài fángzi wǒmen gēn tāmen fēi qīn fēi gù zhǐ néng kào hétóng xiān kàn chǎnquán · Good service is how they sell flats. We have no ties with them, so the contract is all we have. Property rights first.

anna 他们说这是一家民营的开发商，很有名，老板是个富翁。
tāmen shuō zhè shì yì jiā mínyíng de kāifāshāng hěn yǒumíng lǎobǎn shì gè fùwēng · They say it's a private developer, well known, and the boss is a rich man.

lawyer sun 私营也好，国有也好，都要看清楚。这块地是国有的，开发商买的是七十年的使用权，房子是私有的。你要注意，楼下那几层是商用的。
sīyíng yěhǎo guóyǒu yěhǎo dōu yào kàn qīngchu zhè kuài dì shì guóyǒu de kāifāshāng mǎi de shì qīshí nián de shǐyòng quán fángzi shì sīyǒu de nǐ yào zhùyì lóu xià nà jǐ céng shì shāngyòng de · Private or state-owned, you check either way. The land is state-owned: the developer bought a seventy-year right to use it, and the flats are privately owned. Note that the lower floors are commercial.

anna 商用的楼层会不会太吵？
shāngyòng de lóu céng huì bu huì tài chǎo · Won't the commercial floors be noisy?

lawyer sun 问题可大可小。要是开饭馆，就会吵；要是开银行，就没关系。
wèntí kě dà kě xiǎo yàoshi kāi fànguǎn jiù huì chǎo yàoshi kāi yínháng jiù méi guānxi · It could be a big problem or a small one. A restaurant would be noisy; a bank would be fine.

anna 这个开发区正在招商，吸引了很多外资和跨国公司。我们公司就在旁边的科技园区。
zhège kāifāqū zhèngzài zhāoshāng xīyǐn le hěn duō wàizī hé kuàguó gōngsī wǒmen gōngsī jiù zài pángbiān de kējì yuánqū · This development zone is inviting investment and has attracted a lot of foreign capital and multinationals. Our company is in the science park next door.

lawyer sun 所以房地产市场在这儿才这么热。不动产是大事，签字以前，我会把每一条都看清楚。
suǒyǐ fángdìchǎn shìchǎng zài zhèr cái zhème rè búdòngchǎn shì dàshì qiānzì yǐqián wǒ huì bǎ měi yì tiáo dōu kàn qīngchu · That's why the property market is so hot here. Real estate is a big deal: before you sign, I'll check every clause.

manager liu 安娜，孙律师！真巧，我刚跟投资人谈完。一起吃午饭吧？
Ānnà Sūnlǜshī zhēn qiǎo wǒ gāng gēn tóuzī rén tán wán yìqǐ chī wǔfàn ba · Anna, Lawyer Sun! What luck: I've just finished with the investors. Shall we have lunch together?

anna 谈得怎么样？我们的应用能融资吗？
tán de zěnmeyàng wǒmen de yìngyòng néng róngzī ma · How did it go? Can our app raise money?

manager liu 有一家合资公司想投资。我们的技术就是最大的筹码。不过他们想并购我们的团队，我没同意。
yǒu yì jiā hézī gōngsī xiǎng tóuzī wǒmen de jìshù jiùshì zuì dà de chóumǎ búguò tāmen xiǎng bìnggòu wǒmen de tuánduì wǒ méi tóngyì · A joint-venture company wants to invest. Our technology is our biggest bargaining chip. But they wanted to buy out our team, and I said no.

lawyer sun 对。小公司被大公司并购以后，大公司很容易垄断市场。
duì xiǎo gōngsī bèi dà gōngsī bìnggòu yǐhòu dà gōngsī hěn róngyì lǒngduàn shìchǎng · Right. Once a big company swallows a small one, it can easily dominate the market.

manager liu 政府也会给防汛的项目拨款，可是经费有限。我们的预算还差一些，只好再筹措一点。
zhèngfǔ yě huì gěi fángxùn de xiàngmù bōkuǎn kěshì jīngfèi yǒuxiàn wǒmen de yùsuàn hái chà yìxiē zhǐhǎo zài chóucuò yìdiǎn · The government will also allocate money for flood-prevention projects, but funding is limited. Our budget is still short, so we'll have to raise a bit more.

anna 小镇的人说，他们愿意集资，帮我们筹集一部分本钱。
xiǎo zhèn de rén shuō tāmen yuànyì jízī bāng wǒmen chóují yí bùfen běnqián · The townspeople say they're

willing to pool money and help us raise some of the capital.

manager liu 他们的好意我们领了，可是他们没有那么大的财力。这件事还是我们公司来出资。
tāmen de hǎoyì wǒmen lǐng le kěshì tāmen méiyǒu nàme dà de cáilì zhè jiàn shì háishi wǒmen gōngsī lái chūzī · It's very kind of them, but they don't have the financial resources. Our company should put up the money.

lawyer sun 用了政府的钱，以后还要接受审计，每一笔款项都要记清楚。
yòng le zhèngfǔ de qián yǐhòu hái yào jiēshòu shěnjì měi yì bǐ kuǎnxiàng dōu yào jì qīngchu · And if you use government money, you'll be audited later: every sum has to be clearly recorded.

anna 我们公司的办公室也是租赁的吧?
wǒmen gōngsī de bàngōngshì yě shì zūlìn de ba · Our company's office is leased too, isn't it?

manager liu 对，租了十年。这里商机很多，财政政策也好。今天的财经新闻说，这个开发区的经贸合作是全国最快的。
duì zū le shí nián zhèlǐ shāngjī hěn duō cáizhèng zhèngcè yě hǎo jīntiān de cáijīng xīnwén shuō zhège kāifāqū de jīngmào hézuò shì quán guó zuì kuài de · Yes, a ten-year lease. There are lots of business opportunities here, and good fiscal policies. Today's business news says this zone's economic and trade cooperation is the fastest-growing in the country.

anna 我在英国学过一点经济，书上讲市场经济，也讲资本主义的历史。可是书上的东西跟现实不太一样。
wǒ zài Yīngguó xué guo yìdiǎn jīngjì shū shàng jiǎng shìchǎng jīngjì yě jiǎng zīběn zhǔyì de lìshǐ kěshì shū shàng de dōngxi gēn xiànshí bú tài yíyàng · I studied a bit of economics in the UK: the textbooks covered market economies and the history of capitalism. But books and real life are rather different.

manager liu 那当然，做生意要在现实里学。好了，先吃饭，这顿我掏腰包!
nà dāngrán zuò shēngyi yào zài xiànshí lǐ xué hǎo le xiān chī fàn zhè dùn wǒ tāo yāobāo · Of course: business is learned in the real world. Right, let's eat: lunch is on me!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

赁
lìn
hire

垄
lǒng
ridge, control

good to know · 资 means capital: 外资 foreign investment, 合资 joint venture, 融资 raise finance, 集资 pool funds, 出资 put up the money. Who owns it? 国有 state-owned, 民营 / 私营 privately run, 私有 privately owned, 合资 a joint venture, 外资 foreign-owned.

Developers, investors, budgets and audits: you can now follow a business deal in Chinese, and ask the right questions.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 137 ups and downs

Read and discuss a market report: prices rising and falling, inflation, booms and slumps.

Every news report about the economy and every conversation about house prices uses these words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
行情	hángqíng	market conditions, prices	最近房子的行情怎么样? How is the housing market at the moment?
走势	zǒushì	trend, movement (of prices)	专家说，明年房价的走势很难判断。 Experts say next year's house-price trend is hard to call.
指数	zhǐshù	index	今天的股票指数又上涨了。 The stock index rose again today.
市值	shìzhí	market value	这家公司的市值超过了一千亿。 The company's market value has passed a hundred billion.
涨幅	zhǎngfú	rise, increase (in percent)	今年房价的涨幅是百分之三。 House prices rose three per cent this year.
跌幅	diēfú	fall, drop (in percent)	这个月的跌幅比上个月小。 This month's fall was smaller than last month's.
攀升	pānshēng	to climb, rise	这几年，城市的人口不断攀升。 The city's population has kept climbing in recent years.
回升	huíshēng	to pick up, rise again	天气暖和了，温度开始回升。 The weather is getting warmer and temperatures are rising again.
回落	huíluò	to fall back	菜的价格上个月很高，这个月回落了。 Vegetable prices were high last month and have come back down this month.
下跌	xiàdiē	to fall, drop	油的价格下跌了百分之十。 Oil prices have fallen ten per cent.
下滑	xiàhuá	to slide, decline	这家公司的销量在下滑。 This company's sales are sliding.
上调	shàngtiáo	to raise (prices, rates)	银行上调了利率。 The bank has raised interest rates.
下调	xiàtiáo	to lower (prices, rates)	汽油的价格下调了。 Fuel prices have been cut.
持平	chípíng	to stay level, hold steady	今年的工资跟去年持平。 This year's wages are level with last year's.
同比	tóngbǐ	year-on-year	这个月的销量同比增长了百分之五。 Sales this month are up five per cent year-on-year.
环比	huánbǐ	month-on-month, on the previous period	房价环比下跌了一点。 House prices fell slightly on the previous month.

翻番	fānfān	to double	十年里，这里的房价翻番了。 House prices here have doubled in ten years.
增值	zēngzhí	to appreciate, increase in value	这块地这几年增值了很多。 This land has gone up a lot in value in recent years.
升值	shēngzhí	to appreciate (of a currency, asset)	人民币升值以后，出国旅游便宜了。 When the renminbi rises, travelling abroad gets cheaper.
贬值	biǎnzhí	to depreciate, lose value	新车一开出去就贬值了。 A new car loses value the moment you drive it away.
通货膨胀	tōnghuòpéngzhàng	inflation	通货膨胀的时候，钱就不值钱了。 In times of inflation, money loses its value.
膨胀	péngzhàng	to swell, expand; inflate	他成功以后，有点自我膨胀。 After his success, he got a bit full of himself.
紧缩	jǐnsuō	to tighten, cut back	公司今年要紧缩开支。 The company has to tighten its spending this year.
萧条	xiāotiáo	depressed, in a slump; bleak	经济萧条的时候，很多人找不到工作。 In a slump, lots of people can't find work.
不景气	bùjǐngqì	in the doldrums, sluggish	最近生意不景气。 Business has been slow lately.
低迷	dīmí	in the doldrums, depressed	他最近情绪很低迷。 He's been feeling very low lately.
复苏	fùsū	to recover, revive	春天来了，万物复苏。 Spring has come, and all things come back to life.
衰退	shuāituì	to decline; recession	年纪大了，记忆力开始衰退。 With age, the memory starts to fade.
红火	hónghuo	flourishing, booming	这家饭馆生意很红火。 Business is booming at this restaurant.
兴隆	xīnglóng	prosperous, thriving (business)	祝您生意兴隆！ May your business prosper!
兴旺	xīngwàng	flourishing, thriving	这个小镇越来越兴旺。 This town is more and more prosperous.
旺	wàng	prosperous, vigorous	春节前后，饭馆的生意特别旺。 Around the Spring Festival, restaurants are especially busy.
旺季	wàngjì	peak season	夏天是旅游的旺季。 Summer is the peak season for travel.
淡季	dànjì	off season	淡季的时候机票很便宜。 In the off season, plane tickets are cheap.
居高不下	jūgāobùxià	to stay high	大城市的房价居高不下。 House prices in big cities stay high.

pattern **on what basis? 本着, 基于, 鉴于, 经, 依, and 无a不b**

本着 / 基于 / 鉴于 / 经 / 依 a basis , a decision

Formal Chinese names the basis of a decision first: 本着 (in the spirit of a principle), 基于 (based on facts), 鉴于 (in view of a situation), 经 (after going through a process), 依 (according to rules). 无A不B means “no A that is not B”: 无所不知 “knows everything”, 无微不至 “in every detail”.

鉴于现在的行情，最好先等一等。 **jiànyú xiànzài de hángqíng zuìhǎo xiān děng yi deng** In view of the current market, it’s best to wait a while.

基于这些数据，专家认为明年房价会持平。 **jīyú zhèxiē shùjù zhuānjiā rènwéi míngnián fángjià huì chípíng** Based on this data, experts think prices will hold steady next year.

本着公平的原则，价格要公开。 **běnzhe gōngpíng de yuánzé jiàgé yào gōngkāi** In the spirit of fairness, prices must be made public.

经银行同意，利率可以下调。 **jīng yínháng tóngyì lìlǜ kěyǐ xiàtiáo** With the bank’s approval, the rate can be lowered.

依合同，首付要在一个月内付清。 **yī hétóng shǒufù yào zài yí gè yuè nèi fù qīng** Under the contract, the down payment must be paid within a month.

dialogue sunday tea and a market report

ms zhang 安娜，你看这篇报道。北京的房价十年里翻了一番，现在还是居高不下。
Ānnà nǐ kàn zhè piān bàodào Běijīng de fángjià shí nián lǐ fān le yì fān xiànzài háishi jūgāo bú xià · Anna, look at this report. Beijing house prices have doubled in ten years, and they're still high.

anna 那现在的行情怎么样？是在攀升，还是在下跌？
nà xiànzài de hángqíng zěnmeyàng shì zài pānshēng háishi zài xiàdiē · So what's the market like now? Climbing or falling?

ms zhang 上个月环比下跌了一点，可是同比还是上涨的，涨幅是百分之二。新房子差不多持平，旧房子有点下滑。春天涨了一点，夏天又回落了。
shàng gè yuè huánbǐ xiàdiē le yìdiǎn kěshì tóngbǐ háishi shàngzhǎng de zhǎngfú shì bǎi fēn zhī èr xīn fángzi chàbuduō chípíng jiù fángzi yǒu diǎn xiàhuá chūntiān zhǎng le yìdiǎn xiàtiān yòu huíluò le · Last month prices fell slightly on the month before, but year-on-year they're still up, by two per cent. New flats are about level; older ones are sliding a bit. They rose a little in spring and fell back in summer.

little sister 妈妈，周末还看这些图，您真是对房价无所不知！
māma zhōumò hái kàn zhèxiē tú nín zhēnshi duì fángjià wú suǒ bù zhī · Mum, charts at the weekend? You really do know everything about house prices!

ms zhang 这叫关心。本着对安娜负责的原则，我得帮她看清楚走势。
zhè jiào guānxīn běnzhe duì Ānnà fùzé de yuánzé wǒ děi bāng tā kàn qīngchu zǒushì · That's called caring. On the principle of looking out for Anna, I have to help her read the trend.

anna 经济不景气的时候，房价会不会一直往下走？
jīngjì bùjǐngqì de shíhou fángjià huì bu huì yìzhí wǎng xià zǒu · When the economy is sluggish, will prices keep going down?

ms zhang 不一定。前几年经济低迷，很多人担心会衰退，甚至像以前那样萧条。可是后来慢慢复苏了，房价也开始回升。
bù yídìng qián jǐ nián jīngjì dīmí hěn duō rén dānxīn huì shuāituì shènzhì xiàng yǐqián nàyàng xiāotiáo kěshì hòulái màn màn fùsū le fángjià yě kāishǐ huíshēng · Not necessarily. A few years ago the economy was in the doldrums, and many people worried about a recession, or even a slump like in the old days. But it slowly recovered, and prices picked up again.

anna 那利率呢？
nà lìlǜ ne · And interest rates?

ms zhang 银行刚下调了利率，对买房子的人有利。不过要是通货膨胀，银行又会上调。物价一涨，钱就不值钱了；房价的泡沫要是继续膨胀，政府就会紧缩。
yínháng gāng xiàtiáo le lìlǜ duì mǎi fángzi de rén yǒulì búguò yàoshi tōnghuò péngzhàng yínháng yòu huì shàngtiáo wùjià yì zhǎng qián jiù bù zhíqián le fángjià de pàomò yàoshi jìxù péngzhàng zhèngfǔ jiù huì jǐnsuō · The bank has just cut rates, which is good for buyers. But if there's inflation, the bank will raise them again. When prices go up, money is worth less; and if the housing bubble keeps swelling, the government tightens up.

little sister 我只看股票指数。我的朋友说，有一家跨国公司的市值一年就涨了一倍，他买的股票也升值了。
wǒ zhǐ kàn gǔpiào zhǐshù wǒ de péngyou shuō yǒu yì jiā kuàguó gōngsī de shìzhí yì nián jiù zhǎng le yí bèi tā mǎi de gǔpiào yě shēngzhí le · I only look at the stock index. A friend says one multinational's market value doubled in a year, and the shares he bought went up in value too.

ms zhang 股票有涨就有跌，跌幅也可能很大。房子不一样：好地方的房子会慢慢增值。可是车一买就贬值。
gǔpiào yǒu zhǎng jiù yǒu diē diēfú yě kěnéng hěn dà fángzi bù yíyàng hǎo dìfang de fángzi huì màn màn zēngzhí kěshì chē yì mǎi jiù biǎnzhí · Shares go down as well as up, and the falls can be big. Flats are different: in a good area they slowly gain value. But a car loses value the moment you buy it.

little sister 那我还是先攒本钱，以后自己开店。
nà wǒ háishi xiān zǎn běnqián yǐhòu zìjǐ kāi diàn · Then I'll save up some capital first and open my own shop one day.

anna 基于这些数据，您觉得我现在买合适吗?
jīyú zhèxiē shùjù nín juéde wǒ xiànzài mǎi héshì ma · Based on all this, do you think now is a good time for me to buy?

ms zhang 鉴于现在利率低，房价也比较平，我觉得可以。不过要选好地方。你看开发区那边，生意都很红火，饭馆特别旺。
jiànyú xiànzài lìlǜ dī fángjià yě bǐjiào píng wǒ juéde kěyǐ búguò yào xuǎn hǎo dìfang nǐ kàn kāifāqū nàbiān shēngyi dōu hěn hónghuo fànguǎn tèbié wàng · Given that rates are low and prices are fairly flat, I think so. But choose the area well. Look at the development zone: business there is booming, and the restaurants are packed.

anna 孙律师说，那里有很多合资公司和民营企业。
Sūnlǜshī shuō nàlǐ yǒu hěn duō hézī gōngsī hé mínyíng qǐyè · Lawyer Sun says there are lots of joint ventures and private firms there.

little sister 我们老字号的生意也越来越兴旺了！上个月是旺季，这个月是淡季，可是也没差多少。
wǒmen lǎozìhao de shēngyi yě yuè lái yuè xīngwàng le shàng gè yuè shì wàngjì zhège yuè shì dànjì kěshì yě méi chà duōshao · Business at our old shop keeps getting better too! Last month was peak season and this month is the off season, but it's hardly any different.

ms zhang 那就祝你们生意兴隆!
nà jiù zhù nǐmen shēngyi xīnglóng · Then may your business prosper!

anna 那我下个星期就去银行。依合同，首付要在一个月内付清吧?
nà wǒ xià gè xīngqī jiù qù yínháng yī hétóng shǒufù yào zài yí gè yuè nèi fù qīng ba · Then I'll go to the bank next week. Under the contract the down payment has to be paid within a month, doesn't it?

ms zhang 对。经银行审查以后，贷款才能下来。
duì jīng yínháng shěnchá yǐhòu dàikuǎn cái néng xiàlái · Yes. The loan only comes through once the bank has checked everything.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

膨
péng
swell

萧
xiāo
bleak

good to know · 同比 compares with the same period last year; 环比 compares with the period just before. A report often gives both. Up and down: 上涨 / 攀升 / 回升 go up; 下跌 / 下滑 / 回落 go down; 持平 stays level; 上调 / 下调 are decisions to raise or cut.

Doubling, sliding, recovering: you can now read a Chinese market report, and decide when to buy.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 138 money, plans and luck

Talk about money and plans with idioms: budgeting, haggling, risks and luck, and play something down with 无非……罢了.

When Chinese people talk about money, idioms do half the work: they are how you sound wise rather than greedy.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
千方百计	qiānfāngbǎijì	by every possible means	他千方百计地想找到那本书。 He tried every possible way to find that book.
想方设法	xiǎngfāngshèfǎ	to do everything possible	我们一定想方设法帮你解决。 We'll do everything we can to sort it out for you.
精打细算	jīngdǎxìsuàn	to budget carefully	她过日子精打细算，一分钱都不乱花。 She budgets carefully and never wastes a penny.
节衣缩食	jiéyīsuōshí	to scrimp and save	父母节衣缩食，让他上了大学。 His parents scrimped and saved to put him through university.
讨价还价	tǎojiàhuánjià	to haggle	在集市上买东西可以讨价还价。 You can haggle when you shop at the market.
物美价廉	wùměijiàlián	good quality and cheap	这家小店的东西物美价廉。 The things in this little shop are good and cheap.
供不应求	gōngbùyìngqiú	demand outstrips supply	这种茶叶供不应求，一上市就卖完了。 Demand for this tea outstrips supply: it sells out as soon as it's in the shops.
倾家荡产	qīngjiādàngchǎn	to lose everything one owns	他赌博赌得倾家荡产。 He gambled away everything he had.
得不偿失	débùchángshī	to lose more than one gains	为了一点小钱跟朋友吵架，得不偿失。 Falling out with a friend over a little money isn't worth it.
一举两得	yījǔliǎngdé	to kill two birds with one stone	骑车上班，又省钱又锻炼身体，一举两得。 Cycling to work saves money and keeps you fit: two birds with one stone.
万无一失	wànwúyīshī	foolproof, completely safe	计划做得万无一失。 The plan was made foolproof.
居安思危	jūānsīwēi	to stay alert in times of peace	公司发展得好的时候，更要居安思危。 When the company is doing well, it must be all the more alert to danger.
后顾之忧	hòugùzhīyōu	worries about what one leaves behind	有了保险，就没有后顾之忧了。 With insurance, there's nothing to worry about.

顾全大局	gùquándàjú	to put the common good first	他顾全大局，把机会让给了别人。 He put the team first and gave the chance to someone else.
得天独厚	détiāndúhòu	richly blessed by nature	这个地方得天独厚，四季都有水果。 This place is blessed by nature: there's fruit all year round.
可乘之机	kěchéngzhījī	an opening to exploit	别给骗子可乘之机。 Don't give scammers an opening.
弄虚作假	nòngxūzuòjiǎ	to falsify, cheat	卖房子的时候不能弄虚作假。 You mustn't cheat when selling a flat.
改邪归正	gǎixiéguīzhèng	to mend one's ways	他年轻的时候偷过东西，后来改邪归正了。 He stole things when he was young, but later he mended his ways.
罪魁祸首	zuìkuíhuòshǒu	chief culprit	专家说，汽车尾气是空气污染的罪魁祸首之一。 Experts say car exhaust is one of the chief culprits of air pollution.
走过场	zǒuguòchǎng	to go through the motions	这次检查只是走过场。 This inspection was just for show.
取而代之	qǔérdàizhī	to replace, take the place of	手机支付已经取而代之，很少有人用现金了。 Mobile payment has taken over: few people use cash now.
发扬光大	fāyángguāngdà	to develop and carry forward	我们要把老字号的传统发扬光大。 We want to carry the old brand's traditions forward.
救死扶伤	jiùsǐfúshāng	to heal the sick and wounded	救死扶伤是医生的责任。 Healing the sick and wounded is a doctor's duty.
勤工俭学	qíngōngjiǎnxué	to work part-time to pay for one's studies	他上大学的时候勤工俭学，自己付学费。 At university he worked his way through and paid his own fees.
受益匪浅	shòuyìfěiqiǎn	to benefit greatly	听了您的|话，我受益匪浅。 I've learned a great deal from what you said.
知足常乐	zhīzúchánglè	contentment brings happiness	爷爷常说：“知足常乐。” Grandpa often says, “Be content and you'll be happy.”
心甘情愿	xīngānqíngyuàn	willingly, gladly	为了孩子，她心甘情愿地放弃了工作。 For her child, she gladly gave up her job.
随心所欲	suíxīnsuǒyù	to do as one pleases	有了自己的房子，就可以随心所欲地装修了。 With your own flat, you can decorate it however you like.
身不由己	shēnbùyóujǐ	not one's own master	在大公司工作，很多事情身不由己。 Working at a big company, a lot is out of your hands.
精疲力竭	jīngpílìjié	utterly exhausted	搬完家，大家都精疲力竭了。 After the move, everyone was utterly exhausted.
有朝一日	yǒuzhāoyīrì	some day, one day	有朝一日，我要去世界各地旅行。 Some day, I'm going to travel all over the world.
饱经沧桑	bǎojīngcāngsāng	to have weathered many changes	这座老房子饱经沧桑，墙上都是故事。 This old house has seen a lot: there's a story in every wall.

得意扬扬	déyìyángyáng	smug, pleased with oneself	他赢了比赛，得意扬扬地走了。 He won the match and walked off looking very pleased with himself.
从容不迫	cóngróngbùpò	calm and unhurried	面对记者的问题，她从容不迫。 Faced with the reporters' questions, she stayed calm and collected.

pattern 无非/不过/只是……罢了/而已: merely, that's all

无非 / 不过 / 只是 **something small** **罢了 / 而已**

To play something down, wrap it in 无非/不过/只是 … 罢了/而已: "it's merely …, nothing more". 无非 means "nothing but", often for someone's motive; 而已 is a little more written; 罢了 is more spoken and can sound dismissive. You can also use just one half: 只是看看而已.

他不降价，无非是想多卖点钱罢了。 **tā bú jiàngjià wúfēi shì xiǎng duō mài diǎn qián bàle** He won't lower the price: he just wants a bit more money, that's all.

墙上那条线不过是一点旧油漆而已。 **qiáng shàng nà tiáo xiàn búguò shì yìdiǎn jiù yóuqī éryǐ** That line on the wall is only a bit of old paint.

我只是开个玩笑罢了，你别生气。 **wǒ zhǐshì kāi gè wán xiào bàle nǐ bié shēngqì** I was only joking: don't be cross.

dialogue four characters at a time

anna 你们看，就是这套房子。房子饱经沧桑，可是阳光特别好，附近还有一个小公园。
nǐmen kàn jiùshì zhè tào fángzi fángzi bǎojīng cāngsāng kěshì yángguāng tèbié hǎo fùjìn hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo gōngyuán · Look, this is the flat. It's seen better days, but it gets wonderful light, and there's a little park nearby.

ms zhang 这个地方得天独厚，离地铁站又近。卖家要多少钱?
zhège dìfang détiāndúhòu lí dìtiě zhàn yòu jìn màijiā yào duōshao qián · It's a lucky spot, and close to the underground. How much does the owner want?

anna 比别的房子贵一点。我跟他讨价还价了半天，他一分钱都不降。
bǐ biéde fángzi guì yìdiǎn wǒ gēn tā tǎojià huánjià le bàntiān tā yì fēn qián dōu bú jiàng · A bit more than other flats. I haggled with him for ages, and he wouldn't drop a penny.

xiaoming 他无非是想多卖点钱罢了。这一带的房子供不应求，房价一直居高不下，他当然不急。
tā wúfēi shì xiǎng duō mài diǎn qián bàle zhè yídài de fángzi gōngbúyìngqiú fángjià yìzhí jūgāo bú xià tā dāngrán bù jí · He just wants a bit more money, that's all. Flats round here are in demand and prices stay high, so of course he's in no hurry.

anna 可是上个月房价环比下跌了一点。
kěshì shàng gè yuè fángjià huánbǐ xiàdiē le yìdiǎn · But prices did fall a little last month compared with the month before.

little sister 安娜，你别显得太想买，不然就给了他可乘之机。你要从容不迫，好像只是看看而已。
Ānnà nǐ bié xiǎnde tài xiǎng mǎi bùrán jiù gěi le tā kěchéngzhījī nǐ yào cóngróng búpò hǎoxiàng zhǐshì kàn kan éryǐ · Anna, don't look too keen, or you'll give him an opening. Stay cool, as if you're only looking.

anna 可是我真的很喜欢！为了这套房子，我这几年节衣缩食，千方百计地攒钱。
kěshì wǒ zhēn de hěn xǐhuan wèile zhè tào fángzi wǒ zhè jǐ nián jiéyī suōshí qiānfāng bǎijì de zǎn qián · But I really love it! I've scrimped and saved for years and tried every way I could to put money by for a place like this.

ms zhang 买房子是大事，要精打细算。为了一套房子倾家荡产，得不偿失。
mǎi fángzi shì dàshì yào jīngdǎ xìsuàn wèile yí tào fángzi qīngjiā dàngchǎn débùchángshī · Buying a flat is a big deal: budget carefully. Losing everything for a flat isn't worth it.

little sister 现在经济有点不景气，房价说不定还会回落。
xiànzài jīngjì yǒu diǎn bùjǐngqì fángjià shuōbudìng hái huì huíluò · The economy's a bit sluggish now: prices might fall back yet.

xiaoming 我有个朋友，卖家弄虚作假，说房子是新装修的，其实墙后面全是问题。
wǒ yǒu gè péngyou màijiā nòngxū zuòjiǎ shuō fángzi shì xīn zhuāngxiū de qíshí qiáng hòumiàn quán shì wèntí · A friend of mine had an owner who lied: said the flat was newly renovated, when actually the walls were full of problems.

ms zhang 所以要请专家检查，不能走过场。孙律师那边也要看合同，做到万无一失。
suǒyǐ yào qǐng zhuānjiā jiǎnchá bù néng zǒu guòchǎng Sūnlǜshī nàbiān yě yào kàn hétóng zuò dào wànwú yìshī · That's why you need a proper inspection, not just for show. And Lawyer Sun should check the contract, so nothing can go wrong.

anna 墙上有一条长长的线，卖家说那不过是一点旧油漆而已。
qiáng shàng yǒu yì tiáo cháng cháng de xiàn màijiā shuō nà búguò shì yìdiǎn jiù yóuqī éryǐ · There's a long line on one wall: the owner says it's only a bit of old paint.

xiaoming 也许是，也许不是。要是漏水，那才是罪魁祸首。
yěxǔ shì yěxǔ bú shì yàoshi lòu shuǐ nà cái shì zuìkuí huòshǒu · Maybe, maybe not. If there's a leak, that would be the real culprit.

little sister 买了房子，你就可以随心所欲地装修了！我想要一面全是书的墙。
mǎi le fángzi nǐ jiù kěyǐ suíxīnsuǒyù de zhuāngxiū le wǒ xiǎng yào yí miàn quán shì shū de qiáng · Once it's yours, you can decorate however you like! I want a wall made of books.

anna 这面墙我心甘情愿给你。你现在勤工俭学，书都是自己买的吧?
zhè miàn qiáng wǒ xīngān qíngyuàn gěi nǐ nǐ xiànzài qíngōng jiǎnxué shū dōu shì zìjǐ mǎi de ba · I'll gladly

give you that wall. You're working your way through university, so you buy all your books yourself, right?

little sister 对！我在老字号做营销，又赚钱又学东西，一举两得，受益匪浅。我们老板说要把老字号发扬光大。
duì wǒ zài lǎozìhao zuò yíngxiāo yòu zhuàn qián yòu xué dōngxi yìjǔ liǎngdé shòuyì fěiqiǎn wǒmen lǎobǎn shuō yào bǎ lǎozìhao fāyáng guāngdà · Right! Doing marketing for the old shop, I earn money and learn things: two birds with one stone, and I've learned a lot. Our boss wants to carry the brand forward.

ms zhang 好。可是安娜，买房子以后每个月都要还钱，要是利率上调，每个月还的钱就更多了，你要居安思危。最好有一些存款，这样就没有后顾之忧了。
hǎo kěshì Ānnà mǎi fángzi yǐhòu měi gè yuè dōu yào huán qián yàoshi lìlǜ shàngtiáo měi gè yuè huán de qián jiù gèng duō le nǐ yào jūān sīwēi zuìhǎo yǒu yìxiē cúnkuǎn zhèyàng jiù méiyǒu hòugùzhīyōu le · Good. But Anna, once you buy, you'll have repayments every month, and if rates go up you'll pay even more, so plan for bad times. Keep some savings, and then you won't have to worry.

anna 我明白。在公司里很多事身不由己，说不定哪天就要加班到精疲力竭。
wǒ míngbai zài gōngsī lǐ hěn duō shì shēnbùyóujǐ shuōbudìng nǎ tiān jiù yào jiābān dào jīngpí lìjié · I know. At work so much is out of my hands: any day I could be working late until I drop.

xiaoming 我爸爸以前也这样，他说救死扶伤是医生的责任，再累也得去。
wǒ bàba yǐqián yě zhèyàng tā shuō jiùsǐ fúshāng shì yīshēng de zérèn zài lèi yě děi qù · My dad used to be like that: he said healing the sick was a doctor's duty, so however tired he was, he went.

ms zhang 他呀，现在知足常乐了。以前用现金，现在什么都用手机，他说手机已经取而代之了。
tā yā xiànzài zhīzú chánglè le yǐqián yòng xiànjīn xiànzài shénme dōu yòng shǒujī tā shuō shǒujī yǐjīng qǔérdàizhī le · Him? He's content with his lot now. He used to pay cash; now he does everything by phone. He says the phone has taken over.

little sister 我哥哥以前也是个乱花钱的人，后来改邪归正了！
wǒ gēge yǐqián yě shì gè luàn huā qián de rén hòulái gǎixié guīzhèng le · My brother used to be a spendthrift too, then he mended his ways!

xiaoming 你看你，说得得意扬扬的。我只是不想让爸爸妈妈为我担心而已。
nǐ kàn nǐ shuō de déyì yángyáng de wǒ zhǐshì bù xiǎng ràng bàba māma wèi wǒ dānxīn éryǐ · Look at you, so pleased with yourself. I just didn't want Mum and Dad worrying about me, that's all.

ms zhang 好了，为了大家，顾全大局：明天安娜跟卖家再谈一次。有朝一日，这就是你的家了。
hǎo le wèile dàjiā gùquán dàjú míngtiān Ānnà gēn màijiā zài tán yí cì yǒuzhāo yīrì zhè jiùshì nǐ de jiā le · All right, for everyone's sake, let's keep the big picture: tomorrow Anna talks to the owner once more. One day, this will be your home.

anna 我们一定想方设法谈下来。这家小饭馆物美价廉，谈完了我请你们来吃！
wǒmen yídìng xiǎngfāng shèfǎ tán xialai zhè jiā xiǎo fànguǎn wùměi jiàlián tán wán le wǒ qǐng nǐmen lái chī · We'll find a way to make the deal. This little restaurant is good and cheap: once it's done, dinner is on me!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

俭 jiǎn frugal												
匪 fěi not												

good to know · 无非 often points to a motive: 他无非是想…… “all he wants is …”. 不过……而已 shrinks a problem: 不过是一点油漆而已 “only a bit of paint”. Money idioms come in pairs of opposites: 精打细算 (careful) vs 随心所欲 (as you please); 一举两得 (two gains) vs 得不偿失 (more lost than gained).

Haggling, budgeting and playing it cool, all in four characters: you are ready to make an offer in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 139 with one heart, one by one

Read a contract meeting and a formal greeting: in advance, truthfully, in turn, and 值此……之际.

Contracts, notices and festive greetings use their own set of precise adverbs, and every adult in China reads them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
亲眼	qīnyǎn	with one's own eyes	这是我亲眼{qin1yan3}看到的。 I saw it with my own eyes.
全身心	quánshēnxīn	wholeheartedly, body and soul	她全身心地投入到新工作中。 She threw herself into her new job body and soul.
如实	rúshí	truthfully, as it is	请如实回答我的问题。 Please answer my question truthfully.
顺势	shùnshì	to go with the flow, seize the moment	天|下雨了，他顺势留下来吃了晚饭。 It started raining, so he took the chance to stay for dinner.
顺手	shùnshǒu	conveniently, while at it; smooth	出门的时候，顺手把垃圾带下去。 When you go out, take the rubbish down while you're at it.
丝毫	sīháo	the slightest, in the least	他丝毫没有生气的样子。 He didn't look the least bit angry.
伺机	sìjī	to wait for one's chance	小偷在人多的地方伺机下手。 Pickpockets wait for their chance in crowded places.
随机	suíjī	random; at random	电脑随机选了十个人。 The computer picked ten people at random.
无缘	wúyuán	to miss out on, not be fated for	他因为受伤，跟这次比赛无缘了。 Because of his injury, he'll miss this competition.
须	xū	must, have to	进门须换鞋。 You must change your shoes at the door.
许	xǔ	to allow; perhaps	这里不|许{xu3}停车。 Parking is not allowed here.
依次	yīcì	in order, one after another	请大家依次进场。 Please go in one by one.
一味	yīwèi	blindly, stubbornly, always	不能一味地追求便宜。 You can't just go blindly for the cheapest option.
一齐	yīqí	all together, at the same time	大家一齐鼓掌。 Everyone clapped at the same time.
一头	yītóu	headlong; one end	他一头扎进了工作里。 He threw himself headlong into his work.

一心	yīxīn	wholeheartedly, with one mind	她一心想有一个自己的家。 All she wants is a home of her own.
有待	yǒudài	to remain to be (done)	这个问题有待解决。 This problem has yet to be solved.
预先	yùxiān	in advance, beforehand	去之前最好预先打个电话。 Best to call ahead before you go.
争相	zhēngxiāng	to vie with each other (to)	孩子们争相回答老师的问题。 The children were falling over each other to answer the teacher.
之际	zhījì	on the occasion of, at the time of	值此新年之际，祝大家身体健康。 On the occasion of the New Year, we wish you all good health.
直至	zhízhì	until, up to	他们一直工作，直至深夜。 They kept working until late at night.
只管	zhǐguǎn	just go ahead, feel free to	有什么问题，你只管问。 If you have any questions, just ask.
至此	zhìcǐ	at this point, so far	至此，我们的讨论就结束了。 That brings our discussion to an end.
逐年	zhúnián	year by year	这里的游客逐年增加。 The number of visitors here rises year by year.
着实	zhuóshí	really, truly	这件事着实让人头疼。 This is a real headache.
自行	zìxíng	by oneself, on one's own	停车的问题请自行解决。 Please sort out parking yourselves.

pattern 值此……之际: on the occasion of …

值此 | an occasion | 之际, | a greeting or thanks

值此……之际 opens formal greetings, letters and speeches: "on the occasion of …". Put a festival, an anniversary or an event in the middle, then the wish or the thanks: 值此新年之际，祝大家…… In speech you would just say 在……的时候.

值此中秋节之际，祝大家身体健康，家庭幸福。 **zhí cǐ Zhōngqiūjié zhījì zhù dàjiā shēntǐ jiànkāng jiātíng xìngfú** On the occasion of the Mid-Autumn Festival, we wish you good health and happy families.

值此新学校开学之际，我们感谢每一位义工。 **zhí cǐ xīn xuéxiào kāixué zhījì wǒmen gǎnxiè měi yí wèi yìgōng** As the new school opens, we thank every volunteer.

如果卖家同意，只要银行批了贷款，我们下周就能签合同。 **rúguǒ màijiā tóngyì zhǐyào yínháng pī le dàikuǎn wǒmen xià zhōu jiù néng qiān hétóng** If the seller agrees, then as long as the bank approves the loan, we can sign next week.

dialogue the contract, line by line

lawyer sun 安娜，我们一条一条看。第一条：卖家须如实说明房子的情况。有任何问题，你只管问。

Ānnà wǒmen yì tiáo yì tiáo kàn dì yī tiáo màijiā xū rúshí shuōmíng fángzi de qíngkuàng yǒu rènhé wèntí nǐ zhǐguǎn wèn · Anna, let's go clause by clause. Clause one: the seller must describe the flat's condition truthfully. If you have any questions, just ask.

anna 墙上那条线，卖家说只是旧油漆。我亲眼看过，丝毫看不出漏水的样子。

qiáng shàng nà tiáo xiàn màijiā shuō zhǐshì jiù yóuqī wǒ qīnyǎn kàn guo sīháo kàn bu chū lòu shuǐ de yàngzi · That line on the wall: the seller says it's just old paint. I've seen it with my own eyes, and there's no sign of a leak at all.

lawyer sun 看不出来不等于没有。我们预先请专家检查了，结果有待确认，下周才出来。

kàn bu chulai bù děngyú méiyǒu wǒmen yùxiān qǐng zhuānjiā jiǎnchá le jiéguǒ yǒudài quèrèn xià zhōu cái chūlái · Not seeing it doesn't mean it isn't there. We've arranged an inspection in advance; the result still has to be confirmed and comes out next week.

anna 如果检查没问题，只要银行批了贷款，我们下周就能签吧？

rúguǒ jiǎnchá méi wèntí zhǐyào yínháng pī le dàikuǎn wǒmen xià zhōu jiù néng qiān ba · If the inspection is fine, then as long as the bank approves the loan, we can sign next week, right?

lawyer sun 对。签字的时候，买卖双方依次签，再一齐去办手续。

duì qiānzì de shíhou mǎi mài shuāngfāng yīcì qiān zài yìqí qù bàn shǒuxù · Yes. At the signing, buyer and seller sign one after the other, then go together to do the paperwork.

anna 卖家同意降价了，不过只降了一点。我当时顺势说，那家具能不能留下？他就同意了。

màijiā tóngyì jiàngjià le búguò zhǐ jiàng le yìdiǎn wǒ dāngshí shùnshì shuō nà jiājù néng bu néng liúxia tā jiù tóngyì le · The seller has agreed to come down, though only a little. I seized the moment and asked whether he could leave the furniture, and he agreed.

lawyer sun 做得好！这一条要写进合同，免得他以后又讨价还价。不能一味地相信别人说的话。

zuò de hǎo zhè yì tiáo yào xiě jìn hétóng miǎnde tā yǐhòu yòu tǎojià huánjià bù néng yíwèi de xiāngxìn biérén shuō dehuà · Well done! That has to go into the contract, so he can't haggle over it again later. You can't just take people's word for things.

anna 我一心想有一个自己的家，差点就一头扎进去，当场签了。

wǒ yìxīn xiǎng yǒu yí gè zìjǐ de jiā chà diǎn jiù yìtóu zhā jinqu dāngchǎng qiān le · All I want is a home of my own: I nearly dived in headfirst and signed on the spot.

lawyer sun 别急。这一带的房子供不应求，房价逐年上涨，很多人争相来买，卖家也会伺机涨价。

bié jí zhè yídài de fángzi gōngbúyìngqiú fángjià zhúnián shàngzhǎng hěn duō rén zhēngxiāng lái mǎi màijiā yě huì sìjī zhǎngjià · Don't rush. Flats round here are in short supply, prices go up every year, lots of people are queueing up to buy, and sellers watch for their chance to put the price up.

anna 这着实让人紧张。要是这套房子没买成，我跟这个地方就无缘了。

zhè zhuóshí ràng rén jǐnzhāng yàoshi zhè tào fángzi méi mǎi chéng wǒ gēn zhège dìfang jiù wúyuán le · That's nerve-racking. If this flat falls through, I'll miss my chance with this area.

lawyer sun 别担心。还有，停车位的问题，合同上写的是“请买方自行解决”。小区里不许随便停车。

bié dānxīn hái yǒu tíng chēwèi de wèntí hétóng shàng xiě de shì qǐng mǎi fāng zìxíng jiějué xiǎoqū lǐ bù xǔ suíbiàn tíngchē · Don't worry. Also, about parking: the contract says "the buyer is to make their own arrangements". You can't just park anywhere on the estate.

anna 我不买车，坐地铁就行，一举两得：又省钱又环保。

wǒ bù mǎi chē zuò dìtiě jiù xíng yìjǔ liǎngdé yòu shěng qián yòu huánbǎo · I'm not buying a car: the underground is fine, and it kills two birds with one stone: it saves money and it's greener.

lawyer sun 好。你这样精打细算，买了房子也没有后顾之忧。至此，合同就看完了。我顺手把要改的地方都写在旁边了。

hǎo nǐ zhèyàng jīngdǎ xìsuàn mǎi le fángzi yě méiyǒu hòugùzhīyōu zhìcǐ hétóng jiù kàn wán le wǒ shùnshǒu bǎ yào gǎi de dìfang dōu xiě zài pángbiān le · Good. Budgeting this carefully, you won't have anything to worry about after you buy. That's the whole contract. I've noted everything that needs changing in the margin while I was at it.

anna 谢谢！这几个月我全身心地准备这件事，直至今天才觉得踏实一点。

xièxie zhè jǐ gè yuè wǒ quánshēnxīn de zhǔnbèi zhè jiàn shì zhízhì jīntiān cái juéde tāshi yìdiǎn · Thank you! I've put my heart and soul into this for months, and only today do I feel a bit more settled.

lawyer sun 你看，刘经理的邮件来了。

nǐ kàn Liújīnglǐ de yóujiàn lái le · Look, Manager Liu's email has arrived.

anna （读）“值此中秋节之际，公司感谢每一位员工这一年的努力。预警应用已经在三个小镇试用，下个月将随机选一百个用户……”

dú zhí cǐ Zhōngqiūjié zhījì gōngsī gǎnxiè měi yí wèi yuángōng zhè yì nián de nǔlì yùjǐng yìngyòng yǐjīng zài sān gè xiǎo zhèn shìyòng xià gè yuè jiāng suíjī xuǎn yìbǎi gè yònghù · (reading) “On the occasion of the Mid-Autumn Festival, the company thanks every member of staff for their hard work this year. The warning app is now being trialled in three towns, and next month we will choose a hundred users at random…”

lawyer sun 中秋节快乐！也许明年的中秋节，你就能在自己的新家里吃月饼了。

Zhōngqiūjié kuàilè yěxǔ míngnián de Zhōngqiūjié nǐ jiù néng zài zìjǐ de xīn jiā lǐ chī yuèbing le · Happy Mid-Autumn Festival! Maybe next year you'll be eating mooncakes in your own new home.

good to know · Contract and notice words: 须 (must), 不许 (not allowed), 如实 (truthfully), 依次 (in turn), 自行 (on your own), 预先 (in advance), 至此 (that concludes …). A festive email or card often starts 值此……之际 and ends with a wish: 祝大家节日快乐、身体健康、阖家幸福.

Truthfully, in advance, one after another: you can now read a contract with a lawyer, and write a festive greeting like a manager.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 140 mission: anna buys a flat

Buy a flat in Chinese from start to finish: the bank, the contract, the market and the housewarming.

Everything in this unit comes together on the day Anna gets her keys: money, shops, budgets, companies, prices, idioms and contract language.

chapter 1 chapter 1: a message from the bank

anna （读）“尊敬的客户：您的贷款已经批准。贷款利率依合同下调，按月偿还。首付须在三天内付清，请预先准备好身份证、存折和收据，到柜台办理。

dú zūnjìng de kèhù nín de dàikuǎn yǐjīng pīzhǔn dàikuǎn lìlǜ yī hétóng xiàtiáo àn yuè chánghuán shǒufù xū zài sān tiān nèi fù qīng qǐng yùxiān zhǔnbèi hǎo shēnfènzhèng cúnzhé hé shōujù dào guìtái bànlǐ · (reading) “Dear customer: your loan has been approved. Under the contract, the interest rate has been lowered, and repayments are monthly. The down payment must be paid in full within three days: please bring your ID card, passbook and receipts to the counter in advance.

anna 外币可在本行兑换。如银行卡丢失，请及时挂失。本行不会随机打电话向您索取密码。值此中秋节之际，祝您节日快乐，家庭幸福。”

wàibì kě zài běn háng duìhuàn rú yínhángkǎ diūshī qǐng jíshí guàshī běn háng bú huì suíjī dǎ diànhuà xiàng nín suǒqǔ mìmǎ zhí cǐ Zhōngqiūjié zhījì zhù nín jiérì kuàilè jiātíng xìngfú · Foreign currency can be exchanged at our branch. If your bank card is lost, please report it at once. We will never call you at random to ask for your password. On the occasion of the Mid-Autumn Festival, we wish you a happy holiday and a happy family.”

xiaoming （在电话里）批下来了？太好了！你这几年节衣缩食，终于等到这一天了。

zài diànhuà lǐ pī xiàlái le tài hǎo le nǐ zhè jǐ nián jiéyī suōshí zhōngyú děngdào zhè yì tiān le · (on the phone) It’s approved? Wonderful! You’ve scrimped and saved for years, and the day has finally come.

anna 是啊！我一心想有一个自己的家，今天心里着实有点紧张。

shì a wǒ yìxīn xiǎng yǒu yí gè zìjǐ de jiā jīntiān xīnlǐ zhuóshí yǒu diǎn jǐnzhāng · Yes! All I’ve wanted is a home of my own. I’m honestly a bit nervous today.

xiaoming 别紧张。不过是付钱、签字而已。我妈妈九点在银行等你。

bié jǐnzhāng búguò shì fù qián qiānzì éryǐ wǒ māma jiǔ diǎn zài yínháng děng nǐ · Don’t be. It’s only paying and signing, nothing more. My mum will meet you at the bank at nine.

anna 我把积蓄都放在活期账户里了，还有一些美元要兑换。

wǒ bǎ jīxù dōu fàng zài huóqī zhànghù lǐ le hái yǒu yìxiē měi yuán yào duìhuàn · I’ve put all my savings in my current account, and I have some dollars to change.

anna 还有好消息：以前我借给朋友五千块，他打了一张欠条。上个月他终于兑现了承诺，把钱还给我了。我连欠条都找不到了！

hái yǒu hǎo xiāoxi yǐqián wǒ jiè gěi péngyou wǔqiān kuài tā dǎ le yì zhāng qiàntiáo shàng gè yuè tā zhōngyú duìxiàn le chéngnuò bǎ qián huán gěi wǒ le wǒ lián qiàntiáo dōu zhǎo bu dào le · More good news: I once lent a friend five thousand and he wrote me an IOU. Last month he finally kept his promise and paid me back. I can’t even find the IOU!

xiaoming 那太好了。你每个月攒的钱，加上这五千，首付就够了吧？

nà tài hǎo le nǐ měi gè yuè zǎn de qián jiāshàng zhè wǔqiān shǒufù jiù gòu le ba · Great. With the money you save every month plus that five thousand, you’ve got the down payment, right?

anna 够了。银行的信贷经理说，我没有别的债务，所以批得很快。

gòu le yínháng de xìndài jīnglǐ shuō wǒ méiyǒu biéde zhàiwù suǒyǐ pī de hěn kuài · Yes. The loan officer at the bank said I have no other debts, so it was approved quickly.

anna 对了，我们公司今天也有大事：刘经理说，有一家跨国公司要投资我们的预警应用。中午她请我们吃饭，你也来吧！

duì le wǒmen gōngsī jīntiān yě yǒu dàshì Liújīnglǐ shuō yǒu yì jiā kuàguó gōngsī yào tóuzī wǒmen de yùjǐng yìngyòng zhōngwǔ tā qǐng wǒmen chī fàn nǐ yě lái ba · Oh, and there’s big news at my company too: Manager Liu says a multinational wants to invest in our warning app. She’s taking us to lunch: come too!

chapter 2 chapter 2: at the bank

ms zhang 安娜，这边！先兑换美元，现在外汇的价格不错。
Ānnà zhèbiān xiān duìhuàn měi yuán xiànzài wàihuì de jiàgé búcuò · Anna, over here! Change the dollars first: the exchange rate is good right now.

anna 好。我算了一下，首付的数额差不多是房价的三成，加上税，总额是……
hǎo wǒ suànle yíxià shǒufù de shùé chàbuduō shì fángjià de sān chéng jiāshàng shuì zǒngé shì · OK. By my sums, the down payment is about thirty per cent of the price, and with the tax, the total is…

ms zhang 别在这儿算账了，表上都写着呢。扣除你的定金，剩下的今天付清就行。
bié zài zhèr suànzhàng le biǎo shàng dōu xiě zhe ne kòuchú nǐ de dìngjīn shèng xià de jīntiān fù qīng jiù xíng · No need to do the sums here: it's all on the form. Take off your deposit, and pay the rest today.

anna 银行说，我是外国人，要有人担保。
yínháng shuō wǒ shì wàiguó rén yào yǒu rén dānbǎo · The bank says that as a foreigner I need a guarantor.

ms zhang 我已经跟银行说好了，我来担保。你按时偿还就行，不许拖欠。
wǒ yǐjīng gēn yínháng shuō hǎo le wǒ lái dānbǎo nǐ ànshí chánghuán jiù xíng bùxǔ tuōqiàn · I've already arranged it with the bank: I'll be your guarantor. Just repay on time, and no falling behind.

anna 您放心，我绝不透支，也不借债。房子就是抵押，我丝毫不敢马虎。
nín fàngxīn wǒ juébú tòuzhī yě bú jiè zhài fángzi jiùshì dǐyā wǒ sīháo bù gǎn mǎhu · Don't worry: I won't go overdrawn or run up debts. The flat is the security, and I won't take the slightest risk.

ms zhang 你看那位老先生，还拿着一大把钞票和硬币来存钱，跟三十年前一样。
nǐ kàn nà wèi lǎo xiānsheng hái ná zhe yí dà bǎ chāopiào hé yìngbì lái cún qián gēn sānshí nián qián yíyàng · Look at that old gentleman, still bringing a handful of notes and coins to deposit, just like thirty years ago.

anna 现在大家都用手机，纸币和支票都快被取而代之了。
xiànzài dàjiā dōu yòng shǒujī zhǐbì hé zhīpiào dōu kuài bèi qǔérdàizhī le · Everyone uses their phone now: paper money and cheques are being replaced.

ms zhang 对了，你那些股票呢？
duì le nǐ nàxiē gǔpiào ne · By the way, what about your shares?

anna 我留着公司的股份。公司今年又分红了，红利不多，可是我也算个小股东。我还买了一点国家的债券，比证券公司那些股民的东西安全。
wǒ liú zhe gōngsī de gǔfèn gōngsī jīnnián yòu fēnhóng le hónglì bù duō kěshì wǒ yě suàn gè xiǎo gǔdōng wǒ hái mǎi le yìdiǎn guójiā de zhàiquàn bǐ zhèngquàn gōngsī nàxiē gǔmín de dōngxi ānquán · I'm keeping them. The company paid a dividend again this year: not much, but I'm a small shareholder. I've also bought a few government bonds: safer than what the stock-market crowd buys from the securities firms.

ms zhang 这家银行是国有的，比较可靠。好，精打细算。以后手头紧的时候，就找我。
zhè jiā yínháng shì guóyǒu de bǐjiào kěkào hǎo jīngdǎ xìsuàn yǐhòu shǒutóu jǐn de shíhou jiù zhǎo wǒ · This bank is state-owned, so it's fairly reliable. Good: careful with money. If you're ever short, come to me.

anna 谢谢您。这些年我积攒下来的钱财，今天一下子都花出去了！
xièxie nín zhèxiē nián wǒ jīzǎn xialai de qiáncái jīntiān yíxià zi dōu huā chūqù le · Thank you. All the money I've saved over the years, gone in one morning!

chapter 3 chapter 3: the signing

lawyer sun 检查的结果出来了：墙上那条线确实只是旧油漆而已，没有漏水。
jiǎnchá de jiéguǒ chūlái le qiáng shàng nà tiáo xiàn quèshí zhǐshì jiù yóuqī éryǐ méiyǒu lòu shuǐ · The inspection results are in: the line on the wall really is just old paint, no leak.

anna 太好了！看来卖家没有弄虚作假。
tài hǎo le kànlái màijiā méiyǒu nòngxū zuòjiǎ · Brilliant! So the seller wasn't lying.

lawyer sun 产权也很清楚，房子是私有的，七十年。合同我已经改好了，家具都写进去了，可以说是万无一失。
chǎnquán yě hěn qīngchu fángzi shì sīyǒu de qīshí nián hétóng wǒ yǐjīng gǎi hǎo le jiājù dōu xiě jinqu le kěyǐ shuō shì wànwú yìshī · The property rights are clear too: privately owned, seventy years. I've already revised the contract and the furniture is written in, so it's about as safe as it gets.

anna 我一开始只是看看而已，没想到真的要买了。
wǒ yì kāishǐ zhǐshì kàn kan éryǐ méi xiǎng dào zhēn de yào mǎi le · At first I was only looking: I never thought I'd actually buy.

lawyer sun 卖家如实说明了房子的情况，没有隐瞒。上次他想伺机涨价，幸好你顺势让他把家具留下了。
màijiā rúshí shuōmíng le fángzi de qíngkuàng méiyǒu yǐnmán shàng cì tā xiǎng sìjī zhǎngjià xìnghǎo nǐ shùnshì ràng tā bǎ jiājù liúxia le · The seller described the flat truthfully and hid nothing. Last time he tried to push the price up, but luckily you seized the moment and got him to leave the furniture.

anna 这一带很多人争相来买，差一点我就跟这套房子无缘了。我当时都想当场签了。
zhè yídài hěn duō rén zhēngxiāng lái mǎi chà yìdiǎn wǒ jiù gēn zhè tào fángzi wúyuán le wǒ dāngshí dōu xiǎng dāngchǎng qiān le · So many people are rushing to buy round here, I nearly missed out on this flat. I almost signed on the spot.

lawyer sun 还有，停车的问题还有待解决，小区里不许随便停车。
hái yǒu tíngchē de wèntí hái yǒudài jiějué xiǎoqū lǐ bù xǔ suíbiàn tíngchē · Also, parking still has to be sorted out: you can't just park anywhere on the estate.

lawyer sun 好，请买卖双方依次签字。安娜，你先签，然后卖家签，最后一齐去办手续。
hǎo qǐng mǎi mài shuāngfāng yīcì qiānzì Ānnà nǐ xiān qiān ránhòu màijiā qiān zuìhòu yìqí qù bàn shǒuxù · Right: buyer and seller, please sign in turn. Anna, you first, then the seller, and then we all go and do the paperwork together.

anna 签好了！
qiān hǎo le · Signed!

lawyer sun 至此，这套房子就是你的了。这是钥匙。
zhìcǐ zhè tào fángzi jiùshì nǐ de le zhè shì yàoshi · And with that, the flat is yours. Here are the keys.

anna 我亲眼看着自己的名字写在合同上，真是难以置信。
wǒ qīnyǎn kàn zhe zìjǐ de míngzi xiě zài hétóng shàng zhēnshi nányǐ zhìxìn · I'm looking at my own name on the contract with my own eyes: it's hard to believe.

lawyer sun 物业费、燃气这些，请你自行去办。我顺手把电话写在这儿了。你只管问我，有什么不清楚的地方随时打电话。
wùyè fèi ránqì zhèxiē qǐng nǐ zìxíng qù bàn wǒ shùnshǒu bǎ diànhuà xiě zài zhèr le nǐ zhǐguǎn wèn wǒ yǒu shénme bù qīngchu de dìfang suíshí dǎ diànhuà · The management fee, the gas and so on, you'll need to set up yourself. I've jotted the numbers down here for you. Just ask me: call any time if anything is unclear.

anna 孙律师，这几个月我全身心地准备这件事，直至今天才放心。您帮了我这么多，我受益匪浅。
Sūnlǜshī zhè jǐ gè yuè wǒ quánshēnxīn de zhǔnbèi zhè jiàn shì zhízhì jīntiān cái fàngxīn nín bāng le wǒ zhème duō wǒ shòuyì fěiqiǎn · Lawyer Sun, I've put my heart and soul into this for months, and only today can I relax. You've helped me so much: I've learned a great deal.

lawyer sun 不客气。不动产是大事，你这次做得从容不迫，比很多人都好。
búkèqi búdòngchǎn shì dàshì nǐ zhè cì zuò de cóngróng búpò bǐ hěn duō rén dōu hǎo · You're welcome. Property is a big deal, and you kept calm all the way: better than most people.

chapter 4 chapter 4: lunch and the market

manager liu 安娜，恭喜你！听说你今天拿到钥匙了？
Ānnà gōngxǐ nǐ tīngshuō nǐ jīntiān ná dào yàoshi le · Anna, congratulations! I hear you got your keys today?

anna 拿到了！刘经理，您的好消息呢？
ná dào le Liújīnglǐ nín de hǎo xiāoxi ne · I did! Manager Liu, what's your good news?

manager liu 一家跨国公司要跟我们合资做预警应用。他们出资，我们出技术。他们想并购我们，我没同意，技术是我们的筹码。
yì jiā kuàguó gōngsī yào gēn wǒmen hézī zuò yùjǐng yìngyòng tāmen chūzī wǒmen chū jìshù tāmen xiǎng bìnggòu wǒmen wǒ méi tóngyì jìshù shì wǒmen de chóumǎ · A multinational wants a joint venture with us on the warning app. They put up the money, we provide the technology. They wanted to buy us out, but I said no: our technology is our bargaining chip.

xiaoming 那融资的事就解决了？
nà róngzī de shì jiù jiějué le · So the funding problem is solved?

anna 小镇的人还说想集资，帮我们筹集一点本钱。
xiǎo zhèn de rén hái shuō xiǎng jízī bāng wǒmen chóují yìdiǎn běnqián · The townspeople even said they wanted to pool money to help raise some capital for us.

manager liu 他们没有那么大的财力，我们自己筹措。在市场经济中，民营也好，私营也好，都要靠自己的技术。大公司很容易垄断市场。
tāmen méiyǒu nàme dà de cáilì wǒmen zìjǐ chóucuò zài shìchǎng jīngjì zhōng mínyíng yěhǎo sīyíng yěhǎo dōu yào kào zìjǐ de jìshù dà gōngsī hěn róngyì lǒngduàn shìchǎng · They don't have the means: we'll raise it ourselves. In a market economy, privately run or privately owned, you live by your own technology. Big companies can easily dominate a market.

manager liu 一部分。政府也会拨款，可是经费有限，明年的预算还要再看。用了政府的钱，以后还要接受审计。
yí bùfen zhèngfǔ yě huì bōkuǎn kěshì jīngfèi yǒuxiàn míngnián de yùsuàn hái yào zài kàn yòng le zhèngfǔ de qián yǐhòu hái yào jiēshòu shěnjì · Partly. The government will allocate money too, but funding is limited, and next year's budget still needs work. And with public money, we'll be audited later.

xiaoming 这个开发区正在招商，商机很多。财经新闻说，这里的经贸合作越来越多。
zhège kāifāqū zhèngzài zhāoshāng shāngjī hěn duō cáijīng xīnwén shuō zhèlǐ de jīngmào hézuò yuè lái yuè duō · This development zone is attracting investment, and there are lots of opportunities. The business news says economic and trade cooperation here keeps growing.

anna 我的房子不在开发区，在胡同旁边。开发商的新房子太贵了。
wǒ de fángzi bú zài kāifāqū zài hútòng pángbiān kāifāshāng de xīn fángzi tài guì le · My flat isn't in the development zone: it's by the hutong. The developers' new flats are too expensive.

manager liu 现在买正好。鉴于利率低，基于今年的行情，房价同比只涨了一点，环比还有点回落。
xiànzài mǎi zhènghǎo jiànyú lìlǜ dī jīyú jīnnián de hángqíng fángjià tóngbǐ zhǐ zhǎng le yìdiǎn huánbǐ hái yǒu diǎn huíluò · Now is a good time to buy. With interest rates low, and based on this year's market, prices are up only slightly year-on-year, and have even dipped a little on the month.

xiaoming 前几年经济低迷，很多人以为会萧条，后来又慢慢复苏了。这一带的房价逐年上涨，十年翻番了。
qián jǐ nián jīngjì dīmí hěn duō rén yǐwéi huì xiāotiáo hòulái yòu màn màn fùsū le zhè yídài de fángjià zhúnián shàngzhǎng shí nián fānfān le · A few years ago the economy was in the doldrums and many people expected a slump, but it slowly recovered. Prices round here have gone up year by year: they've doubled in ten years.

xiaoming 你们看今天的股票指数，又攀升了。市值最大的几家公司，涨幅都不小。
nǐmen kàn jīntiān de gǔpiào zhǐshù yòu pānshēng le shìzhí zuì dà de jǐ jiā gōngsī zhǎngfú dōu bù xiǎo · Look at the stock index today: it's climbing again. The biggest companies by market value have all risen quite a bit.

manager liu 跌幅也可能很大。明年的走势谁也说不准。房价也一样，有时候回升，有时候下滑，现在差不多持平。大城市的房价还是居高不下，银行一上调利率，买房子的人就紧张。

diēfú yě kěnéng hěn dà míngnián de zǒushì shéi yě shuō bù zhǔn fángjià yě yíyàng yǒu shíhou huíshēng yǒu shíhou xiàhuá xiànzài chàbuduō chípíng dà chéngshì de fángjià háishi jūgāo bú xià yínháng yí shàngtiáo lìlǜ mǎi fángzi de rén jiù jǐnzhāng · The falls can be big too. Nobody can say where things go next year. House prices are the same: sometimes up, sometimes down, about level right now. Big-city prices are still stubbornly high, and as soon as the bank raises rates, buyers get nervous.

manager liu 可是不能一味地看涨。通货膨胀的时候钱会贬值，房子会增值；可是市场不景气的时候，房价也会下跌。

kěshì bù néng yíwèi de kàn zhǎng tōnghuò péngzhàng de shíhou qián huì biǎnzhí fángzi huì zēngzhí kěshì shìchǎng bùjǐngqì de shíhou fángjià yě huì xiàdiē · But you can't just assume prices will rise. With inflation, money loses value and property gains it; but in a slow market, prices fall too.

anna 我不是为了赚钱，无非是想有一个自己的家罢了。

wǒ bú shì wèile zhuàn qián wúfēi shì xiǎng yǒu yí gè zìjǐ de jiā bàle · I'm not doing it to make money: I just want a home of my own, that's all.

manager liu 说得好。知足常乐！我们公司在园区里租赁了一层楼，楼下是商用的。这家饭馆就在楼下，现在是旺季，生意特别旺，越来越红火。这顿饭我掏腰包。

shuō de hǎo zhīzú chánglè wǒmen gōngsī zài yuánqū lǐ zūlìn le yì céng lóu lóu xià shì shāngyòng de zhè jiā fànguǎn jiù zài lóu xià xiànzài shì wàngjì shēngyi tèbié wàng yuè lái yuè hónghuo zhè dùn fàn wǒ tāo yāobāo · Well said. Contentment is happiness! Our company leases a floor in the park, and the ground floor is commercial. This restaurant is right downstairs: it's peak season, business is booming, and it gets busier all the time. Lunch is on me.

chapter 5 chapter 5: shopping and the housewarming

little sister 安娜，下午我带你去买东西！这个市场有批发也有零售，物美价廉，什么都有。
Ānnà xiàwǔ wǒ dài nǐ qù mǎi dōngxi zhège shìchǎng yǒu pīfā yě yǒu língshòu wùměi jiàlián shénme dōu yǒu · Anna, this afternoon I'm taking you shopping! This market does wholesale and retail, good and cheap: they have everything.

anna 我想要一张桌子，最好是定做的。
wǒ xiǎng yào yì zhāng zhuōzi zuìhǎo shì dìngzuò de · I want a table, ideally made to order.

little sister 那家店专卖手工家具，主打老北京样子的桌子和椅子，每次来都有新的样品。那家老字号也能做。你看它的招牌和橱窗，档次很高，价位也不贵。我们先交定金，下个月来拿。
nà jiā diàn zhuānmài shǒugōng jiājù zhǔdǎ lǎo Běijīng yàngzi de zhuōzi hé yǐzi měi cì lái dōu yǒu xīn de yàngpǐn nà jiā lǎozìhao yě néng zuò nǐ kàn tā de zhāopai hé chúchuāng dàngcì hěn gāo jiàwèi yě bú guì wǒmen xiān jiāo dìngjīn xià gè yuè lái ná · That shop sells only handmade furniture, mainly tables and chairs in the old Beijing style, with new samples every time. The old shop can do it too. Look at its sign and its window: very good quality, and not expensive. We pay a deposit now and pick it up next month.

little sister 你先看标签，单价写得很清楚，比平价超市还便宜。商场专柜的东西是精品，可是太贵了。
nǐ xiān kàn biāoqiān dānjià xiě de hěn qīngchu bǐ píngjià chāoshì hái piányi shāngchǎng zhuānguì de dōngxi shì jīngpǐn kěshì tài guì le · Check the label first: the unit price is clearly marked, and it's cheaper than a discount supermarket. The things at the mall counters are top quality, but far too expensive.

anna 那边那个商贩在兜售名牌灯，一百块一个。
nàbiān nàge shāngfàn zài dōushòu míngpái dēng yìbǎi kuài yí gè · That trader over there is hawking designer lamps at a hundred yuan each.

little sister 肯定是山寨的，劣质的东西用不了多久。廉价的东西不一定划算，买原装的划得来。
kěndìng shì shānzhài de lièzhì de dōngxi yòng bu liǎo duō jiǔ liánjià de dōngxi bù yídìng huásuàn mǎi yuánzhuāng de huádelái · Bound to be knock-offs: shoddy stuff doesn't last. Cheap isn't always good value: buying the real thing is worth it.

anna 你讨价还价真厉害，比我会算账多了。
nǐ tǎojià huánjià zhēn lìhai bǐ wǒ huì suànzhàng duō le · You're a brilliant haggler: much better with numbers than me.

little sister 我这是勤工俭学练出来的！不能挥霍，也不能太奢侈。我们老字号在网上预售新茶，每次都热销，供不应求，我天天跟顾客打交道。
wǒ zhè shì qíngōng jiǎnxué liàn chulai de bù néng huīhuò yě bù néng tài shēchǐ wǒmen lǎozìhao zài wǎngshang yùshòu xīn chá měi cì dōu rèxiāo gōngbúyìngqiú wǒ tiān tiān gēn gùkè dǎ jiāodao · That's what working my way through university does! No splashing out, and nothing too extravagant. Our old shop presells its new tea online: it sells out every time, demand outstrips supply, and I deal with customers every day.

xiaoming （晚上，在新家）大家都来了！这是我们送你的花，祝你在新家生活富足。
wǎnshang zài xīn jiā dàjiā dōu lái le zhè shì wǒmen sòng nǐ de huā zhù nǐ zài xīn jiā shēnghuó fùzú · (in the evening, at the new flat) Everyone's here! These flowers are from all of us: may you live well in your new home.

xiaoming 我们还订购了一个沙发，下午送到。收据在这儿，不合适可以退回，钱会返还。
wǒmen hái dìnggòu le yí gè shāfā xiàwǔ sòng dào shōujù zài zhèr bù héshì kěyǐ tuìhuí qián huì fǎnhuán · We've also ordered you a sofa: it arrives this afternoon. Here's the receipt: if it doesn't suit, you can send it back and get a refund.

ms zhang 这套房子饱经沧桑，阳光真好。房子是旧的，心情是新的。买房子不是为了发财，生活富足就好。不过要居安思危，每个月的开销要记清楚，这样就没有后顾之忧了。
zhè tào fángzi bǎojīng cāngsāng yángguāng zhēn hǎo fángzi shì jiù de xīnqíng shì xīn de mǎi fángzi bú shì wèile fācái shēnghuó fùzú jiù hǎo búguò yào jūān sīwēi měi gè yuè de kāixiāo yào jì qīngchu zhèyàng jiù méiyǒu hòugùzhīyōu le · This flat has seen a lot, and the light is lovely. Old flat, new start. You don't buy a home to get rich: a comfortable life is enough. But plan for bad times and keep track of your monthly spending: then you'll have nothing to worry about.

manager liu 来，我说两句。值此安娜搬进新家之际，祝她万事如意！
lái wǒ shuō liǎng jù zhí cǐ Ānnà bān jìn xīn jiā zhījì zhù tā wàn shì rúyì · Right, a few words from me. On the occasion of Anna moving into her new home, we wish her every success!

anna 谢谢大家！这些年我在北京，很多事身不由己，可是你们一直想方设法帮我。有朝一日，我也要这样帮别人。
xièxie dàjiā zhèxiē nián wǒ zài Běijīng hěn duō shì shēnbùyóujǐ kěshì nǐmen yìzhí xiǎngfāng shèfǎ bāng wǒ yǒuzhāo yīrì wǒ yě yào zhèyàng bāng biérén · Thank you, everyone! In my years in Beijing, so much has been out of my hands, but you've always found a way to help me. Some day, I want to help others the same way.

little sister 安娜说得得意扬扬的，我看她今天开心得精疲力竭了！
Ānnà shuō de déyì yángyáng de wǒ kàn tā jīntiān kāixīn de jīngpí lìjié le · Look how pleased with herself Anna is: I think she's worn herself out with happiness today!

anna 是有点累。不过我心甘情愿！从今天起，我就可以随心所欲地布置我的家了。
shì yǒu diǎn lèi búguò wǒ xīngān qíngyuàn cóng jīntiān qǐ wǒ jiù kěyǐ suíxīnsuǒyù de bùzhì wǒ de jiā le · I am a bit tired. But I don't mind at all! From today, I can arrange my home just the way I like.

You just bought a flat in Chinese: the bank, the lawyer, the market and the toast. Welcome home.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 141 trade and supply

Talk about foreign trade, supply and demand and stock in the warehouse, and grant a point before your "but" with X是X，……

Tariffs, supply chains and overstock are in every business story: this is how people talk about the economy at work and over dinner.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
外贸	wàimào	foreign trade	她在一家外贸公司工作了二十年。 She has worked at a foreign-trade company for twenty years.
关税	guānshuì	tariff, customs duty	今年进口汽车的关税降低了。 The tariff on imported cars went down this year.
顺差	shùnchā	(trade) surplus	这个国家出口多，进口少，贸易顺差很大。 This country exports a lot and imports little: its trade surplus is large.
赤字	chìzì	deficit	这个城市的财政已经连续三年出现赤字。 The city's budget has been in deficit three years running.
差额	chāé	difference (in amount), balance	两个方案的价格差额有五万元。 The two plans differ in price by fifty thousand yuan.
壁垒	bìlěi	barrier; rampart	有的国家|用高关税给进口商品设置壁垒。 Some countries put up barriers to imports with high tariffs.
供	gōng	to supply, provide	这家工厂专门给几家大超市供货。 This factory supplies goods to a few big supermarkets.
供求	gōngqiú	supply and demand	价格是由供求关系决定的。 Prices are set by supply and demand.
供需	gōngxū	supply and demand	春节前，市场上水果的供需很紧张。 Before the Spring Festival, fruit is in tight supply.
供应链	gōngyìngliàn	supply chain	一个工厂出了问题，整条供应链都会受影响。 If one factory has a problem, the whole supply chain is affected.
产业链	chǎnyèliàn	industrial chain	这个小城已经形成了完整的服装产业链。 This small city now has a complete clothing industry chain.
产值	chǎnzhí	output value	去年全县的茶叶产值增长了百分之十。 Last year the county's tea output grew by ten per cent in value.
增产	zēngchǎn	to increase production	今年雨水好，茶叶大大增产。 There was good rain this year, and the tea harvest is way up.
增收	zēngshōu	to increase income	种茶让村里的农民增收不少。 Growing tea has raised the villagers' incomes quite a bit.

增速	zēngsù	growth rate; to speed up	今年出口的增速有所放慢。 Export growth has slowed somewhat this year.
物流	wùliú	logistics	现在物流很快，昨天买的东西今天就到了。 Logistics are fast now: what I bought yesterday arrived today.
物资	wùzī	goods and materials, supplies	大雪以后，政府马上给山区送去了物资。 After the heavy snow, the government quickly sent supplies to the mountains.
物力	wùlì	material resources	这个项目花了大量的人力、物力。 This project took a great deal of manpower and resources.
存货	cúnhuò	goods in stock; to stock goods	店里的存货不多了，得{dei3}赶快进货。 The shop is low on stock: we need to order more, fast.
库存	kùcún	inventory, stock	这个系统可以随时查看每个仓库的库存。 This system lets you check every warehouse's stock at any time.
储备	chǔbèi	reserve; to stockpile	国家储备了大量的粮食。 The state keeps large reserves of grain.
贮藏	zhùcáng	to store, keep (goods, food)	苹果在低温下可以贮藏好几个月。 Apples keep for months at low temperatures.
大宗	dàzōng	large quantity, bulk	煤、粮食和石油都是大宗商品。 Coal, grain and oil are all bulk commodities.
紧缺	jǐnquē	in short supply	春节前，快递员特别紧缺。 Before the Spring Festival, couriers are in very short supply.
过剩	guòshèng	surplus, excess	去年苹果种{zhong4}得太多，结果过剩了，价格很低。 Too many apples were grown last year: there was a glut, and prices were low.
内需	nèixū	domestic demand	出口不好的时候，就要靠扩大内需。 When exports are weak, the economy has to rely on boosting domestic demand.
拉动	lādòng	to drive, boost (growth)	旅游拉动了当地的经济。 Tourism has boosted the local economy.
投放	tóufàng	to put on the market, release	春节前，超市投放了大量新鲜蔬菜。 Before the Spring Festival, supermarkets put lots of fresh vegetables on sale.
效益	xiàoyì	returns, (economic) benefit	这几年公司的效益越来越好。 The company's returns have been improving in recent years.
盈利	yínglì	profit; to make a profit	这家店开了三年才开始盈利。 The shop only started making a profit after three years.
营利	yínglì	to seek profit, be for profit	这是一家不以营利为{wei2-5b}目的的组织。 This is a non-profit organisation.
暴利	bàolì	huge (unfair) profits	有人趁东西紧缺卖高价，想赚暴利。 Some people jack up prices when goods are scarce, hoping to make a killing.
亏本	kuīběn	to lose money (on a deal)	这批货卖得太便宜，我们亏本了。 We sold this batch too cheaply and lost money.

停业	tíngyè	to close (for business), suspend business	这家饭店装修期间停业一个月。 The restaurant is closed for a month during the renovation.
开张	kāizhāng	to open for business	楼下新开张了一家面包店。 A new bakery has opened downstairs.

pattern x是x，……: x it is, but …

X	（倒）是	X（了）	，可是 / 就是 / 不过	the real point

Say a word, then 是, then the same word again: you grant the point (“good it is”) and get ready for the “but”. 好是好，就是贵 is “it’s good, all right, but it’s expensive”. Add 倒 for a stronger contrast (便宜倒是便宜), and 了 or 了一点儿 after an adjective (贵是贵了一点儿).

这个系统好是好，就是太贵了。 **zhège xìtǒng hǎo shì hǎo jiùshì tài guì le** The system is good, sure, but it’s far too expensive.

便宜倒是便宜，可是质量不太好。 **piányi dàoshì piányi kěshì zhìliàng bú tài hǎo** It’s cheap enough, but the quality isn’t great.

物流快是快了，不过运费也涨了。 **wùliú kuài shì kuài le búguò yùnfèi yě zhǎng le** Delivery is faster, all right, but shipping costs have gone up too.

dialogue tea, tariffs and a full warehouse

ms zhang 安娜，多吃一点儿！最近我忙得连做饭的时间都没有，今天的菜都是小明的爸爸做的。

Ānnà duō chī yìdiǎnr zuìjìn wǒ máng de lián zuòfàn de shíjiān dōu méiyǒu jīntiān de cài dōu shì Xiǎomíng de bàba zuò de · Anna, eat up! I've been so busy lately I haven't even had time to cook: today it's all Xiaoming's dad's work.

dr li 做是做了，就是盐放多了一点儿。

zuò shì zuò le jiùshì yán fàng duō le yìdiǎnr · I made it, all right, but I put in a bit too much salt.

anna 很好吃啊！阿姨，您最近在忙什么？

hěn hǎochī a āyí nín zuìjìn zài máng shénme · It's delicious! What's been keeping you so busy?

ms zhang 还不是外贸那些事。今年有几个国家提高了茶叶的关税，有的还设置了新的贸易壁垒，我们的订单少了一大半。

hái bú shì wàimào nàxiē shì jīnnián yǒu jǐ gè guójiā tígāo le cháyè de guānshuì yǒude hái shèzhì le xīn de màoyì bìlěi wǒmen de dìngdān shǎo le yí dà bàn · The usual foreign-trade headaches. A few countries raised their tariffs on tea this year, some even put up new trade barriers, and our orders have halved.

xiaoming 可是新闻上说，我们国家的贸易顺差还在增加。

kěshì xīnwén shàng shuō wǒmen guójiā de màoyì shùnchā hái zài zēngjiā · But the news says the country's trade surplus is still growing.

ms zhang 国家是国家，公司是公司。我们这个季度进出口的差额不太好看，财务说再这样下去，就要出现赤字了。

guójiā shì guójiā gōngsī shì gōngsī wǒmen zhège jìdù jìn chūkǒu de chāé bú tài hǎokàn cáiwù shuō zài zhèyàng xiàqù jiù yào chūxiàn chìzì le · The country is one thing, a company is another. Our import–export balance this quarter isn't pretty: finance says if this goes on, we'll be in the red.

anna 那卖不出去的茶怎么办？

nà mài bu chuqu de chá zěnme bàn · So what happens to the tea you can't sell?

ms zhang 这就是最头疼的。绿茶的库存过剩，仓库里的存货堆成了山；红茶却很紧缺，客户天天打电话催。

zhè jiùshì zuì tóu téng de lǜchá de kùcún guòshèng cāngkù lǐ de cúnhuò duī chéng le shān hóngchá què hěn jǐnquē kèhù tiān tiān dǎ diànhuà cuī · That's the biggest headache. We've got far too much green tea: the stock in the warehouse is piled sky-high. Black tea, on the other hand, is in short supply, and clients ring every day chasing it.

anna 怪不得最近红茶的行情这么好，价格一直在攀升。

guàibude zuìjìn hóngchá de hángqíng zhème hǎo jiàgé yìzhí zài pānshēng · No wonder the market for black tea is so strong lately: the price keeps climbing.

dr li 说白了，就是供求不平衡。

shuō bái le jiùshì gōngqiú bù pínghéng · In plain words: supply and demand are out of balance.

ms zhang 对。供需一乱，整条供应链都乱了。工厂想增产，原材料跟不上；物流也慢，有一批物资在港口等了两个星期。

duì gōngxū yí luàn zhěng tiáo gōngyìngliàn dōu luàn le gōngchǎng xiǎng zēngchǎn yuáncáiliào gēn bú shàng wùliú yě màn yǒu yì pī wùzī zài gǎngkǒu děng le liǎng gè xīngqī · Exactly. Once supply and demand go haywire, the whole supply chain goes haywire. The factory wants to produce more, but the raw materials can't keep up; logistics are slow too, and one shipment sat at the port for two weeks.

xiaoming 我们老家的县城也靠茶叶。现在有了完整的产业链，产值翻番了，种茶的农民也增收了。

wǒmen lǎojiā de xiàn chéng yě kào cháyè xiànzài yǒu le wánzhěng de chǎnyèliàn chǎnzhí fānfān le zhòng chá de nóngmín yě zēngshōu le · Our home county lives off tea too. Now it has a complete industry chain: output has doubled in value and the growers are earning more.

ms zhang 国内市场好是好，可是出口的增速今年明显放慢了。我们给国外几家超市供货，一家就占了三成。

guónèi shìchǎng hǎo shì hǎo kěshì chūkǒu de zēngsù jīnnián míngxiǎn fàng màn le wǒmen gěi guówài jǐ jiā chāoshì gōng huò yì jiā jiù zhàn le sān chéng · The home market is good, all right, but export growth has clearly slowed this year. We supply a few overseas supermarkets, and one of them alone is thirty per cent of our business.

anna 你们现在怎么管库存?

nǐmen xiànzài zěnme guǎn kùcún · How do you manage your stock at the moment?

ms zhang 说出来你别笑：还是用表格。三个仓库，有的贮藏茶叶，有的储备大宗原材料，每个月都要派人去数一遍。

shuō chulai nǐ bié xiào háishi yòng biǎogé sān gè cāngkù yǒude zhùcáng cháyè yǒude chǔbèi dàzōng yuáncáiliào měi gè yuè dōu yào pài rén qù shǔ yí biàn · Don't laugh: we still use spreadsheets. Three warehouses, some storing tea, some holding bulk raw materials, and every month we send people to count everything.

anna 这太费人力物力了！我们公司做过一个物流系统，可以随时看到每个仓库的库存。

zhè tài fèi rénlì wùlì le wǒmen gōngsī zuò guo yí gè wùliú xìtǒng kěyǐ suíshí kàn dào měi gè cāngkù de kùcún · That's a huge waste of manpower and resources! My company built a logistics system that shows every warehouse's stock at any moment.

ms zhang 真的？好是好，就是不知道贵不贵。今年我们的效益不好，哪儿还敢挥霍?

zhēn de hǎo shì hǎo jiùshì bù zhīdào guì bu guì jīnnián wǒmen de xiàoyì bù hǎo nǎr hái gǎn huīhuò · Really? Sounds good, but I wonder what it costs. Our returns are poor this year: we can't afford to throw money around.

anna 贵倒是不贵。而且存货一少，钱就省下来了。

guì dàoshì bú guì érqiě cúnhuò yì shǎo qián jiù shěng xiàlái le · It's not expensive, actually. And once your stock goes down, you save money.

ms zhang 那就好。系统要是划得来，我就订购。

nà jiù hǎo xìtǒng yàoshi huádelái wǒ jiù dìnggòu · Good. If the system is worth it, I'll order it.

dr li 安娜的公司也要盈利的，你别让人家做亏本的买卖。

Ānnà de gōngsī yě yào yínglì de nǐ bié ràng rénjia zuò kuīběn de mǎimai · Anna's company needs to make a profit too: don't make her do a deal at a loss.

xiaoming 妈妈，现在原材料紧缺，听说有的公司趁机涨价，赚了暴利。

māma xiànzài yuáncáiliào jǐnquē tīngshuō yǒude gōngsī chènjī zhǎngjià zhuàn le bàolì · Mum, raw materials are short right now, and I hear some companies have jacked up their prices and made a killing.

ms zhang 做生意当然要营利，可是靠暴利发财的公司走不远。楼下那家茶叶店就是这样，去年开张，今年就停业了。

zuò shēngyi dāngrán yào yínglì kěshì kào bàolì fācái de gōngsī zǒu bù yuǎn lóu xià nà jiā cháyè diàn jiùshì zhèyàng qùnián kāizhāng jīnnián jiù tíngyè le · Of course a business is there to make money, but companies that get rich on gouging don't last. Look at the tea shop downstairs: opened last year, closed this year.

anna 出口难，能不能多做国内市场？国家不是在拉动内需吗?

chūkǒu nán néng bu néng duō zuò guónèi shìchǎng guójiā bú shì zài lādòng nèixū ma · If exporting is hard, could you sell more at home? Isn't the government boosting domestic demand?

ms zhang 我们正有这个打算。下个月我们要在国内投放一批新茶，到时候还要去上海参加一个大的博览会。安娜，系统的事你帮我问问！

wǒmen zhèng yǒu zhège dǎsuàn xià gè yuè wǒmen yào zài guónèi tóufàng yì pī xīn chá dào shíhou hái yào qù Shànghǎi cānjiā yí gè dà de bólǎnhuì Ānnà xìtǒng de shì nǐ bāng wǒ wèn wen · That's exactly our plan. Next month we're launching a new tea at home, and then we're off to a big expo in Shanghai. Anna, please ask about the system for me!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

贮
zhù
store

good to know · Trade pairs to learn together: 顺差 surplus / 逆差 deficit (in trade); 盈利 profit / 亏本 loss; 过剩 surplus / 紧缺 shortage; 开张 open / 停业 close. In X是X, the second X can grow: 贵是贵了一点儿, 做是做了. The part after 可是 / 就是 is always what you really want to say.

Tariffs, supply chains and stock: you can now follow a business conversation over Sunday lunch.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 142 taxes and shares

Talk about taxes, market share, cash flow and profit-sharing in a business deal, using 别看…… and 无A可B.

Every contract comes down to the same questions: who pays what, who takes which share, and what the taxman gets.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
税收	shuìshōu	tax revenue	旅游业给这个小城带来了不少税收。 Tourism has brought this little town a good deal of tax revenue.
税务	shuìwù	tax affairs, taxation	公司的税务问题，我们请专业的人来处理。 We get a professional to handle the company's tax matters.
纳税	nàshuì	to pay taxes	依法纳税是每个公民的义务。 Paying taxes according to the law is every citizen's duty.
纳税人	nàshuìrén	taxpayer	政府花的每一分钱都是纳税人的钱。 Every cent the government spends is taxpayers' money.
缴	jiǎo	to pay (a fee); to hand over	这个月的电费还没缴。 This month's electricity bill hasn't been paid yet.
缴纳	jiǎonà	to pay (formally)	公司每个月都按时为员工缴纳社会保险。 The company pays its staff's social insurance on time every month.
交纳	jiāonà	to pay (fees, dues)	参加这次比赛的人要交纳二百元报名费。 Everyone taking part pays an entry fee of two hundred yuan.
征收	zhēngshōu	to levy, collect (taxes)	政府对进口汽车征收关税。 The government levies a tariff on imported cars.
减免	jiǎnmiǎn	to reduce or waive (taxes, fees)	小企业可以减免一部分税。 Small businesses can have part of their tax reduced or waived.
高额	gāoé	high (amount), large	为了还{huan2}高额的贷款，他每天加班。 He works overtime every day to pay off a huge loan.
巨额	jùé	huge (sum)	这家公司投资失败，损失了巨额资金。 The company's investment failed and it lost a huge sum.
额度	édù	quota, limit (of money)	我的信用卡额度是五万元。 My credit card limit is fifty thousand yuan.
份额	fèné	share (of a market)	这家公司在国内市场的份额越来越大。 The company's share of the domestic market keeps growing.
分成	fēnchéng	to split (profits) by percentage	卖出去的钱，我们三七分成。 We split the sales money 30/70.

巨头	jùtóu	giant (company), magnate	几家网络巨头占了这个市场的大部分。 A few internet giants hold most of this market.
投机	tóujī	to speculate; opportunistic	他买房子不是为了住，而是为了投机。 He didn't buy the flat to live in: he bought it to speculate.
周转	zhōuzhuǎn	to turn over (funds); cash flow	公司最近资金周转不开，工资晚发了几天。 The company has had cash-flow problems lately, and wages came a few days late.
冻结	dòngjié	to freeze (assets, talks)	因为一场官司，公司的账户被冻结了。 Because of a lawsuit, the company's account has been frozen.
折合	zhéhé	to convert into, amount to	一百美元折合人民币七百多|元。 A hundred US dollars comes to just over seven hundred yuan.
换取	huànqǔ	to get in exchange for	他用休息时间换取更高的收入。 He trades his free time for a higher income.
挂钩	guàgōu	to link (to), tie in with; hook	这份工作的工资跟销量挂钩。 Pay in this job is linked to sales.
网点	wǎngdiǎn	outlet, branch (of a network)	这家银行在全国|有一万多个网点。 This bank has over ten thousand branches across the country.
连锁	liánsuǒ	chain (stores); chain (reaction)	这家连锁超市在本市开了三十家店。 This supermarket chain has thirty stores in the city.
造价	zàojià	cost (of building, making)	这座大桥的造价超过十亿元。 The bridge cost more than a billion yuan to build.
高昂	gāoáng	high (costs); high-spirited	在市中心开店，房租非常高昂。 Rent for a shop in the city centre is extremely high.
收支	shōuzhī	income and expenses	这个月家里的收支基本平衡。 The household budget roughly balanced this month.
调控	tiáokòng	to regulate, control (the economy)	政府出台了新政策来调控房价。 The government has brought in new policies to rein in house prices.

pattern 别看..... and 无a可b, back for business

别看 how it looks , how it really is

别看 A，B: "don't go by A": A is how things look, B is the truth, often with 可 or 却. 无A可B is "no A to B": 无话可说 (nothing to say), 无路可走 (nowhere left to go), 无家可归 (homeless). Both are handy when you argue a case at work.

别看这个系统简单，它能帮你们省下不少钱。 **biékàn zhège xìtǒng jiǎndān tā néng bāng nǐmen shěng xià bù shǎo qián** The system may look simple, but it can save you a lot of money.

别看合同只有三页，里面的问题可不少。 **biékàn hétóng zhǐyǒu sān yè lǐmiàn de wèntí kě bù shǎo** The contract may only be three pages, but there are plenty of problems in it.

要是再不改，我们在市场上就无路可走了。 **yàoshi zài bù gǎi wǒmen zài shìchǎng shàng jiù wú lù kě zǒu le** If we don't change now, we'll have nowhere left to go in the market.

价格、服务都让客户满意，对手也无话可说。 **jiàgé fúwù dōu ràng kèhù mǎnyì duìshǒu yě wúhuà kěshuō** Price and service both keep the clients happy: even our rivals can't say a thing.

dialogue who pays, who shares

manager liu 张女士，欢迎！安娜跟我说了，你们想做一个物流系统。
Zhāngnǚshì huānyíng Ānnà gēn wǒ shuō le nǐmen xiǎng zuò yí gè wùliú xìtǒng · Ms Zhang, welcome! Anna has told me you're looking for a logistics system.

ms zhang 对。别看我们公司不大，在国内的茶叶市场上，我们的份额可不小。可是这几年几家巨头越做越大，我们压力很大。
duì biékàn wǒmen gōngsī bú dà zài guónèi de cháyè shìchǎng shàng wǒmen de fèné kě bù xiǎo kěshì zhè jǐ nián jǐ jiā jùtóu yuè zuò yuè dà wǒmen yālì hěn dà · Yes. We may look small, but our share of the tea market at home is anything but. Still, the big players keep growing, and we're under a lot of pressure.

manager liu 现在供求变化很快，供应链一定要可靠。我们先说价格吧。系统的造价是这样：软件一部分，每年的服务一部分。
xiànzài gōngqiú biànhuà hěn kuài gōngyìngliàn yídìng yào kěkào wǒmen xiān shuō jiàgé ba xìtǒng de zàojià shì zhèyàng ruǎnjiàn yí bùfen měi nián de fúwù yí bùfen · Supply and demand are shifting fast these days: your supply chain has to be reliable. Let's start with the price. Here's what the system costs: one part for the software, one part for the service each year.

ms zhang 说实话，一次付这么多，我们的资金有点儿周转不开。上个月因为一场官司，我们有一笔钱被冻结了，到现在还没解决。
shuō shíhuà yí cì fù zhème duō wǒmen de zījīn yǒudiǎnr zhōuzhuǎn bu kāi shàng gè yuè yīnwèi yì chǎng guānsi wǒmen yǒu yì bǐ qián bèi dòngjié le dào xiànzài hái méi jiějué · To be honest, paying that much at once would squeeze our cash flow. Last month a lawsuit got some of our money frozen, and it still isn't sorted out.

anna 那我们可以换一种方式：先少收一点儿，以后系统帮你们省下来的钱，我们二八分成。
nà wǒmen kěyǐ huàn yì zhǒng fāngshì xiān shǎo shōu yìdiǎnr yǐhòu xìtǒng bāng nǐmen shěng xiàlái de qián wǒmen èrbā fēnchéng · Then we could do it another way: we charge less up front, and whatever the system saves you, we take twenty per cent of.

manager liu 这样我们的收入跟你们的效益挂钩。你们省得越多，我们拿得越多。
zhèyàng wǒmen de shōurù gēn nǐmen de xiàoyì guàgōu nǐmen shěng de yuè duō wǒmen ná de yuè duō · That way our income is linked to your returns. The more you save, the more we earn.

ms zhang 这个办法好！我们宁可少赚一点儿，也要换取长期的合作。
zhège bànfǎ hǎo wǒmen nìngkě shǎo zhuàn yìdiǎnr yě yào huànqǔ chángqī de hézuò · I like it! We'd rather earn a little less in exchange for a long-term partnership.

ms zhang 我们在全国有二十多个销售网点，还给一家连锁超市供货。这几年房租越来越高昂，每个月的收支只能勉强平衡，再这样下去就是赤字了。
wǒmen zài quán guó yǒu èrshí duō gè xiāoshòu wǎngdiǎn hái gěi yì jiā liánsuǒ chāoshì gōng huò zhè jǐ nián fángzū yuè lái yuè gāoáng měi gè yuè de shōuzhī zhǐ néng miǎnqiǎng pínghéng zài zhèyàng xiàqù jiùshì chìzì le · We have over twenty sales outlets around the country, and we supply a supermarket chain. Rents keep getting steeper, and each month we barely break even: if this goes on, we'll be in deficit.

manager liu 那税务的问题呢？孙律师，你来说说吧。
nà shuìwù de wèntí ne Sūnlǜshī nǐ lái shuō shuo ba · What about the tax side? Mr Sun, over to you.

lawyer sun 这笔服务费要依法纳税。好消息是，张女士的公司是小企业，可以减免一部分税。
zhè bǐ fúwù fèi yào yīfǎ nàshuì hǎo xiāoxi shì Zhāngnǚshì de gōngsī shì xiǎo qǐyè kěyǐ jiǎnmiǎn yí bùfen shuì · The service fee has to be taxed according to the law. The good news is that Ms Zhang's company is a small business, so it can have part of the tax reduced or waived.

ms zhang 那太好了。我们县城的税收，有一大半来自茶叶，茶叶的产值每年都在增加。我们是纳税人，当然按时缴税。
nà tài hǎo le wǒmen xiàn chéng de shuìshōu yǒu yí dà bàn láizì cháyè cháyè de chǎnzhí měi nián dōu zài zēngjiā wǒmen shì nàshuìrén dāngrán ànshí jiǎo shuì · That's great. Over half of our county's tax revenue comes from tea, and tea output grows every year. We're taxpayers: of course we pay on time.

lawyer sun 还有，你们公司为员工缴纳的社会保险，也要在合同里写清楚。去博览会要交纳的费用，也是一样。

hái yǒu nǐmen gōngsī wèi yuángōng jiǎonà de shèhuì bǎoxiǎn yě yào zài hétóng lǐ xiě qīngchu qù bólǎnhuì yào jiāonà de fèiyong yě shì yíyàng · Also, the social insurance your company pays for its staff should be written clearly into the contract. Same for the fees you pay to go to the expo.

anna 国外的客户付美元，合同里要不要写怎么折合成人民币？
guówài de kèhù fù měi yuán hétóng lǐ yào búyào xiě zěnme zhéhé chéng rénmínbì · Your overseas clients pay in dollars: should the contract say how that converts into yuan?

lawyer sun 要写。别看这是小事，出了问题，到时候大家就无话可说了。
yào xiě biékàn zhè shì xiǎo shì chū le wèntí dào shíhou dàjiā jiù wúhuà kěshuō le · Yes. It may look like a small thing, but if something goes wrong, nobody will have a leg to stand on.

ms zhang 还有一件事：有的国家对我们的茶征收高额关税，有人劝我们做投机生意，赚快钱。我不干。
hái yǒu yí jiàn shì yǒude guójiā duì wǒmen de chá zhēngshōu gāoé guānshuì yǒu rén quàn wǒmen zuò tóujī shēngyi zhuàn kuài qián wǒ bú gàn · One more thing: some countries charge high tariffs on our tea, and people have told us to speculate and make a quick buck. I won't do it.

manager liu 您说得对。我见过一家公司投机失败，亏了巨额的资金，最后无路可走。
nín shuō de duì wǒ jiàn guo yì jiā gōngsī tóujī shībài kuī le jùé de zījīn zuìhòu wú lù kě zǒu · You're right. I've seen a company lose a fortune speculating, until it had nowhere left to go.

ms zhang 银行给我们的贷款额度也不高。不过国家最近在调控市场，拉动内需，对小公司有一些好政策。
yínháng gěi wǒmen de dàikuǎn édù yě bù gāo búguò guójiā zuìjìn zài tiáokòng shìchǎng lādòng nèixū duì xiǎo gōngsī yǒu yìxiē hǎo zhèngcè · The bank won't lend us much either. But the government has been regulating the market and boosting domestic demand lately, and there are some good policies for small companies.

manager liu 那就这么定了。安娜，你把方案和合同准备好，下个星期我们签字。
nà jiù zhème dìng le Ānnà nǐ bǎ fāngàn hé hétóng zhǔnbèi hǎo xià gè xīngqī wǒmen qiānzì · Then it's settled. Anna, get the plan and the contract ready, and we'll sign next week.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

缴
jiǎo
to pay (a fee); to hand over

good to know · Splitting money: 三七分成 is 30/70, 二八分成 20/80, 对半分 fifty-fifty. Say whose share comes first, or it's easy to get confused. Paying tax: 纳税 (formal, to pay tax), 缴纳 / 交纳 (to pay a fee or tax), 减免 (reduce or waive), 征收 (the state levies).

Price, tax and shares: you can now sit at the table when a deal is made.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 143 rise and fall

Describe how prices, markets and industries rise and fall, and explain a chain of causes with 由于……，加上……，所以…… and 虽说……

Ups and downs are the language of the economy: news reports, company meetings and charts all speak in soaring, falling and bouncing back.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
飙升	biāoshēng	to soar, shoot up	去年海运价格飙升了好几倍。 Shipping prices shot up several times over last year.
递增	dìzēng	to increase step by step	公司的销量逐年递增。 The company's sales rise year after year.
激增	jīzēng	to surge, increase sharply	放假期间，游客人数激增。 Visitor numbers surge during the holidays.
高涨	gāozhǎng	to rise (prices); to run high (feelings)	大家参加活动的热情很高涨。 Everyone is very keen to take part.
起伏	qǐfú	to rise and fall; ups and downs	这几年茶叶的价格起伏很大。 Tea prices have gone up and down a lot in recent years.
波动	bōdòng	to fluctuate	汇率波动对外贸公司影响很大。 Exchange-rate swings hit foreign-trade companies hard.
浮动	fúdòng	to float, vary (within a range)	这份工作的工资在八千到一万之间浮动。 The pay for this job varies between eight and ten thousand.
反弹	fǎntán	to rebound, bounce back	价格跌了半年以后，开始反弹了。 After falling for six months, prices have started to bounce back.
回归	huíguī	to return (to)	过了节，价格慢慢回归正常。 After the holiday, prices slowly went back to normal.
倒退	dàotuì	to go backwards	这样做只会让这个行业倒退十年。 Doing that would only set the industry back ten years.
退步	tuìbù	to fall behind, get worse	他这学期的成绩退步了。 His marks have slipped this term.
退化	tuìhuà	to degenerate, wither (skills, organs)	很久不写字，写字的能力就退化了。 If you don't write by hand for a long time, the skill withers.
衰减	shuāijiǎn	to weaken, decay	手机用了三年，电池的电量衰减了很多。 After three years, my phone's battery holds much less charge.
衰落	shuāiluò	to decline, go downhill	这个老港口曾经很热闹，后来慢慢衰落了。 This old port was once bustling, then slowly went into decline.
减退	jiǎntuì	to diminish, fade	年纪大了，记忆力减退了。 With age, my memory has faded.

萎缩	wěisuō	to shrink, wither	这几年，传统书店的市场不断萎缩。 The market for traditional bookshops has kept shrinking in recent years.
没落	mòluò	to decline, fall (of a family, class)	这个家族到了清朝末年开始没落。 This family began to decline at the end of the Qing dynasty.
低谷	dīgǔ	low point, trough	公司走出了最困难的低谷，现在终于好起来了。 The company has come through its worst slump and is finally doing better.
落差	luòchā	gap, drop	刚毕业的时候，理想和现实的落差让他很失望。 Just after graduating, the gap between his dreams and reality left him disappointed.
缩减	suōjiǎn	to reduce, cut back	公司今年缩减了广告费用。 The company has cut its advertising spending this year.
削减	xuējiǎn	to cut (a budget, numbers)	因为经费紧张，学校削减了一些活动。 Short of funds, the school has cut some activities.
削弱	xuēruò	to weaken	高关税削弱了我们产品的价格优势。 High tariffs have weakened our products' price advantage.
缩水	suōshuǐ	to shrink (in the wash); to lose value	这件毛衣洗了一次就缩水了。 This sweater shrank after one wash.
收缩	shōusuō	to contract, pull back	很多公司正在收缩海外业务。 Many companies are scaling back their overseas business.
扩	kuò	to expand, enlarge	这个公园又往东扩了一大片。 The park has been extended eastwards by a big stretch.
扩充	kuòchōng	to expand, augment	图书馆今年扩充了很多新书。 The library has added a lot of new books this year.
扩张	kuòzhāng	to expand (business, territory)	这家公司扩张得太快，资金跟不上了。 The company expanded too fast and its money couldn't keep up.
扩散	kuòsàn	to spread, diffuse	这条消息很快在网上扩散开了。 The news spread quickly online.
蔓延	mànyán	to spread (fire, disease, mood)	大火很快蔓延到了旁边的房子。 The fire quickly spread to the house next door.
拓宽	tuòkuān	to widen, broaden	这条路拓宽以后，就不怎么堵车了。 Since the road was widened, there are hardly any traffic jams.
拓展	tuòzhǎn	to expand, develop (a market)	公司计划把业务拓展到|南美{==South America}。 The company plans to expand its business into South America.
壮大	zhuàngdà	to grow stronger; strong	我们的团队从五个人发展壮大到五十个人。 Our team has grown from five people to fifty.
兴盛	xīngshèng	flourishing, prosperous	唐朝的时候，丝绸之路|上的贸易非常兴盛。 In the Tang dynasty, trade along the Silk Road flourished.
蓬勃	péngbó	vigorous, booming	这几年，网上购物蓬勃发展。 Online shopping has boomed in recent years.

盛行	shèngxíng	to be in vogue, prevail	现在盛行在直播里卖东西。 Selling through livestreams is all the rage right now.

pattern chains of cause and effect, and 虽说…… back again

由于 **cause 1** ，加上 **cause 2** ，所以 **result** ，因此 **further result**

Economics loves chains: 由于 A，加上 B，所以 C，因此 D: two causes, one result, then the result of that result. Follow it link by link. 虽说 A，但 / 可 B is the spoken cousin of 虽然: “granted, A, but still B”.

由于国外需求突然增加，加上很多工厂停产，所以订单激增，因此运费也跟着涨了。
yóuyú guówài xūqiú tūrán zēngjiā jiāshàng hěn duō gōngchǎng tíng chǎn suǒyǐ dìngdān jīzēng yīncǐ yùnfèi yě gēn zhe zhǎng le Because overseas demand suddenly jumped and many factories stopped work, orders surged, and so freight costs went up with them.

由于汇率波动，加上关税提高，所以利润缩水了，因此公司削减了广告费用。 **yóuyú huìlǜ bōdòng jiāshàng guānshuì tígāo suǒyǐ lìrùn suōshuǐ le yīncǐ gōngsī xuējiǎn le guǎnggào fèiyong** Exchange rates swung and tariffs went up, so profits shrank, and the company cut its advertising budget as a result.

虽说海外市场在萎缩，但国内的需求还在递增。 **suīshuō hǎiwài shìchǎng zài wěisuō dàn guónèi de xūqiú hái zài dìzēng** The overseas market may be shrinking, but demand at home is still rising steadily.

dialogue three years on a roller coaster

editor lin 张女士，谢谢您接受采访。我在写一篇文章，讲这几年茶叶出口的起伏。
Zhāngnǚshì xièxie nín jiēshòu cǎifǎng wǒ zài xiě yì piān wénzhāng jiǎng zhè jǐ nián cháyè chūkǒu de qǐfú · Ms Zhang, thank you for the interview. I'm writing a piece on the ups and downs of tea exports in recent years.

ms zhang 起伏太大了！三年前海运价格飙升了好几倍，一个集装箱的运费从两千美元涨到了一万多。
qǐfú tài dà le sān nián qián hǎiyùn jiàgé biāoshēng le hǎo jǐ bèi yí gè jízhuāngxiāng de yùnfèi cóng liǎngqiān měi yuán zhǎng dào le yí wàn duō · Huge ups and downs! Three years ago shipping prices shot up several times over: freight for one container went from two thousand dollars to over ten thousand.

anna 那时候订单是不是也激增了？
nà shíhou dìngdān shì bu shì yě jīzēng le · Did orders surge at that time too?

ms zhang 对。由于国外的需求突然增加，加上很多工厂停产，所以订单激增，因此运费也跟着涨。那时候大家热情高涨，都在扩张。
duì yóuyú guówài de xūqiú tūrán zēngjiā jiāshàng hěn duō gōngchǎng tíng chǎn suǒyǐ dìngdān jīzēng yīncǐ yùnfèi yě gēn zhe zhǎng nà shíhou dàjiā rèqíng gāozhǎng dōu zài kuòzhāng · Yes. Overseas demand suddenly jumped and lots of factories had stopped work, so orders surged, and freight costs rose with them. Everyone was fired up then, and everyone was expanding.

editor lin 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And then?

ms zhang 后来需求慢慢回归正常。今年海外市场萎缩，很多公司都在收缩海外业务。我们也缩减了一部分计划，削减了广告费用。
hòulái xūqiú màn màn huíguī zhèngcháng jīnnián hǎiwài shìchǎng wěisuō hěn duō gōngsī dōu zài shōusuō hǎiwài yèwù wǒmen yě suōjiǎn le yí bùfen jìhuà xuējiǎn le guǎnggào fèiyong · Then demand slowly went back to normal. This year the overseas market is shrinking and many companies are pulling back their overseas business. We've scaled down some plans too and cut our advertising budget.

editor lin 那你们的收支还平衡吗？
nà nǐmen de shōuzhī hái pínghéng ma · So do your income and expenses still balance?

ms zhang 勉强平衡。国家减免了一部分税，帮了我们不少。
miǎnqiǎng pínghéng guójiā jiǎnmiǎn le yí bùfen shuì bāng le wǒmen bù shǎo · Just about. The state waived part of our tax, which helped a lot.

editor lin 汇率的波动对你们影响大吗？
huìlǜ de bōdòng duì nǐmen yǐngxiǎng dà ma · How much do exchange-rate swings affect you?

ms zhang 很大。我们的价格跟着汇率在一定的范围里浮动。人民币一涨，我们的利润就缩水；再加上高额关税，我们的价格优势被削弱了不少。
hěn dà wǒmen de jiàgé gēn zhe huìlǜ zài yídìng de fànwéi lǐ fúdòng rénmínbì yì zhǎng wǒmen de lìrùn jiù suōshuǐ zài jiāshàng gāoé guānshuì wǒmen de jiàgé yōushì bèi xuēruò le bù shǎo · A lot. Our prices float within a certain range with the exchange rate. When the yuan goes up, our profits shrink; add the high tariffs, and our price advantage has been badly weakened.

anna 虽说出口不好，可国内的网上销售蓬勃发展，对吧？
suīshuō chūkǒu bù hǎo kě guónèi de wǎngshang xiāoshòu péngbó fāzhǎn duì ba · Exports may be poor, but online sales at home are booming, right?

ms zhang 对，现在盛行在直播里卖茶。我们网上的销量每个月都在递增，上个月价格也反弹了一点儿。
duì xiànzài shèngxíng zài zhíbō lǐ mài chá wǒmen wǎngshang de xiāoliàng měi gè yuè dōu zài dìzēng shàng gè yuè jiàgé yě fǎntán le yìdiǎnr · Right: selling tea on livestreams is all the rage now. Our online sales grow every month, and last month prices bounced back a little too.

editor lin 我听说您老家有个茶叶小镇，以前很兴盛？
wǒ tīngshuō nín lǎojiā yǒu gè cháyè xiǎo zhèn yǐqián hěn xīngshèng · I hear your home town is a tea town that used to be very prosperous?

ms zhang 是啊。唐朝的时候，那里的茶叶生意就很兴盛。后来交通变了，小镇慢慢衰落；到了清朝末年，那些有名的大家族也都没落了。
shì a Tángcháo de shíhou nàlǐ de cháyè shēngyi jiù hěn xīngshèng hòulái jiāotōng biàn le xiǎo zhèn màn màn shuāiluò dào le Qīngcháo mò nián nàxiē yǒumíng de dà jiāzú yě dōu mòluò le · Yes. In the Tang dynasty the tea trade there was already flourishing. Then the trade routes changed and the town slowly declined; by the end of the Qing dynasty its famous old families had all come down in the world.

anna 那十年前呢?
nà shí nián qián ne · And ten years ago?

ms zhang 十年前是最低谷：年轻人都走了，老茶园没人管，种茶的老手艺也在退化。城里和山里的收入，落差太大了。
shí nián qián shì zuì dīgǔ niánqīng rén dōu zǒu le lǎo chá yuán méi rén guǎn zhòng chá de lǎo shǒuyì yě zài tuìhuà chéng lǐ hé shān lǐ de shōurù luòchā tài dà le · Ten years ago was the very bottom: the young people had all left, nobody looked after the old tea gardens, and the old tea-growing skills were dying out. The income gap between the city and the hills was just too wide.

editor lin 后来是怎么好起来的?
hòulái shì zěnme hǎo qǐlai de · So how did things turn around?

ms zhang 政府拓宽了上山的路，我们也把生意拓展到了网上。我们的团队从十个人发展壮大到一百多人，仓库也扩了两个，销售网点也多了，今年还扩充了产品，开始卖茶点。
zhèngfǔ tuòkuān le shàng shān de lù wǒmen yě bǎ shēngyi tuòzhǎn dào le wǎngshang wǒmen de tuánduì cóng shí gè rén fāzhǎn zhuàngdà dào yìbǎi duō rén cāngkù yě kuò le liǎng gè xiāoshòu wǎngdiǎn yě duō le jīnnián hái kuòchōng le chǎnpǐn kāishǐ mài chádiǎn · The government widened the road up the mountain, and we took the business online. Our team has grown from ten people to over a hundred, we've added two warehouses and more sales outlets, and this year we've broadened our range and started selling tea snacks.

editor lin 有人说，传统外贸在倒退。您同意吗?
yǒu rén shuō chuántǒng wàimào zài dàotuì nín tóngyì ma · Some people say traditional foreign trade is going backwards. Do you agree?

ms zhang 我不同意。它不是在倒退，是在变。要是我们不学新东西，那才是真的退步。
wǒ bù tóngyì tā bú shì zài dàotuì shì zài biàn yàoshi wǒmen bù xué xīn dōngxi nà cái shì zhēn de tuìbù · I don't. It isn't going backwards, it's changing. If we stopped learning new things, that would be real backsliding.

anna 您现在最担心什么?
nín xiànzài zuì dānxīn shénme · What worries you most at the moment?

ms zhang 坏消息扩散得太快。去年网上有人说我们的茶不安全，那是假的，可是大家的担心一下子就蔓延开了。我的记忆力减退了，可那几天的事我忘不了。
huài xiāoxi kuòsàn de tài kuài qùnián wǎngshang yǒu rén shuō wǒmen de chá bù ānquán nà shì jiǎ de kěshì dàjiā de dānxīn yíxià zi jiù mànyán kāi le wǒ de jìyì lì jiǎntuì le kě nà jǐ tiān de shì wǒ wàng bu liǎo · Bad news spreads so fast. Last year someone online claimed our tea wasn't safe. It was false, but people's worry spread like wildfire. My memory isn't what it was, but I'll never forget those few days.

editor lin 网上的热度总是衰减得很快，可是信任丢了就很难找回来。这一点我一定写进文章里。
wǎngshang de rèdù zǒngshì shuāijiǎn de hěn kuài kěshì xìnrèn diū le jiù hěn nán zhǎo huilai zhè yìdiǎn wǒ yídìng xiě jìn wénzhāng lǐ · Online buzz always dies down fast, but lost trust is hard to win back. I'll definitely put that in the piece.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

飙
biāo
whirlwind

good to know · Going up: 飙升 (shoot up), 激增 (surge), 递增 (rise step by step), 反弹 (bounce back). Going down: 萎缩 (shrink), 缩水 (lose value), 衰落 (decline), 没落 (fall from glory). 缩减 and 削减 both mean “cut”: 削减 sounds tougher and is used for budgets and jobs; 削弱 is to weaken.

Soaring, slumping, bouncing back: you can now read the business page and tell the story behind the chart.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 144 results and foundations

Talk about results, what works and what a business is built on, and play things down with 无非……罢了 and 自A自B.

Every project ends in a review: did it work, who benefited, and what foundation does it leave for the next step?

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
产物	chǎnwù	product, outcome (of a process)	网上购物是互联网时代的产物。 Online shopping is a product of the internet age.
硕果	shuòguǒ	great achievement (rich fruit)	经过十年的研究，他们终于结出了硕果。 After ten years of research, their work finally bore fruit.
丰硕	fēngshuò	rich, fruitful	这次合作取得了丰硕的成果。 This partnership has produced rich results.
得失	déshī	gains and losses	做决定的时候，不能只看眼前的得失。 When you decide, you can't look only at what you gain or lose right now.
得手	déshǒu	to succeed (in a scheme), pull it off	小偷还没得手，就被警察抓住了。 The thief was caught by the police before he could get away with anything.
得益	déyì	to benefit (from)	他的好身体得益于每天跑步。 He owes his good health to running every day.
受益	shòuyì	to benefit, profit (from)	这个政策让很多小企业受益。 This policy has benefited many small businesses.
见效	jiànxiào	to take effect, show results	这种药吃了三天就见效了。 This medicine started working after three days.
奏效	zòuxiào	to prove effective, work	这个办法很快就奏效了。 The method soon worked.
效力	xiàolì	effect, force; to serve (a team)	合同签字以后才有法律效力。 A contract only has legal force once it is signed.
管用	guǎnyòng	useful, effective (spoken)	这个方法真管用！ That trick really works!
建树	jiànshù	achievement, contribution	他在经济学研究方面很有建树。 He has made a real contribution to economic research.
长足	chángzú	considerable (progress)	这几年，中国的物流业取得了长足的进步。 China's logistics industry has made great strides in recent years.
良性	liángxìng	benign, virtuous (circle)	顾客多了，收入多了，服务也更好了，这就是良性循环。 More customers, more income, better service: that's a virtuous circle.

长效	chángxiào	long-term, long-acting	光靠罚款不够，要建立长效的机制。 Fines alone aren't enough: we need a mechanism that works in the long term.
达标	dábiāo	to reach the standard	这批茶叶的质量全部达标。 This whole batch of tea meets the quality standard.
到位	dàowèi	to be in place; spot on	这家酒店的服务很到位。 The service at this hotel is spot on.
过关	guòguān	to pass (a test, check)	新系统的测试过关了。 The new system has passed its tests.
攻关	gōngguān	to tackle a key problem	工程师们正在攻关最难的技术问题。 The engineers are tackling the toughest technical problem.
成型	chéngxíng	to take shape	我们的方案已经基本成型了。 Our plan has more or less taken shape.
奠定	diàndìng	to lay (a foundation), establish	这次合作|为以后奠定了基础。 This partnership has laid the foundation for the future.
根基	gēnjī	foundation, basis	公司的根基还不牢，不能扩张太快。 The company's foundations aren't solid yet: it can't expand too fast.
底子	dǐzi	foundation, basics; bottom	他的中文底子很好，学得很快。 He has a solid grounding in Chinese, so he learns fast.
支柱	zhīzhù	pillar, mainstay	茶叶是这个县的支柱产业。 Tea is this county's main industry.
生命线	shēngmìngxiàn	lifeline	对外贸公司来说，物流就是生命线。 For a foreign-trade company, logistics are a lifeline.
源泉	yuánquán	source, fountainhead	创新是企业发展的源泉。 Innovation is the wellspring of a company's growth.
源头	yuántóu	source (of a river, problem)	要解决问题，就要从源头找原因。 To solve a problem, you have to look for the cause at its source.
夯实	hāngshí	to consolidate, make solid	先把基础夯实，再谈发展。 Make the foundations solid first, then talk about growth.
扎根	zhāgēn	to take root	王老师在这个城市扎根三十年了。 Teacher Wang has put down roots in this city for thirty years.
立足	lìzú	to gain a foothold; be based on	一家小公司要在市场上立足，并不容易。 It isn't easy for a small company to gain a foothold in the market.
造就	zàojiù	to make, shape (people)	艰苦的环境造就了他坚强的性格。 A hard environment shaped his strong character.
促成	cùchéng	to help bring about	是陈教授促成了这次合作。 It was Professor Chen who made this partnership happen.
营造	yíngzào	to create (an atmosphere, setting)	我们要为员工营造一个好的工作环境。 We want to create a good working environment for our staff.

构建	gòujiàn	to build, construct (a system)	我们帮客户构建了一个新的物流系统。 We built a new logistics system for a client.
设	shè	to set up, establish	公司在上海设了一个办公室。 The company has set up an office in Shanghai.

pattern 无非……罢了 (nothing more than) and 自a自b

无非 / 不过 / 只是 **the plain fact** **罢了 / 而已**

无非 (or 不过, 只是) … 罢了 (or 而已) plays something down: “it’s nothing more than …”. Use it to be modest about your work, or to say a problem is smaller than it looks. 自A自B, back from the environment unit, means “by oneself, for oneself”: 自产自销 (make and sell your own), 自言自语 (talk to yourself).

我们做的无非是把三个仓库的数据连起来罢了。 **wǒmen zuò de wúfēi shì bǎ sān gè cāngkù de shùjù lián qǐlái bàle** All we did was connect the data from the three warehouses.

他说来说去，不过是想多要一点儿钱而已。 **tā shuō lái shuō qù búguò shì xiǎng duō yào yìdiǎnr qián éryǐ** For all his talk, he just wants a bit more money.

以前的茶园自产自销，规模很小。 **yǐqián de chá yuán zì chǎn zì xiāo guīmó hěn xiǎo** The old tea gardens sold what they grew themselves, on a very small scale.

张女士看着报表，高兴得自言自语起来。 **Zhāngnǚshì kàn zhe bào biǎo gāoxìng de zìyán zìyǔ qǐlái** Looking at the report, Ms Zhang was so pleased she started talking to herself.

dialogue the first month in numbers

ms zhang 系统用了一个月，效果比我想的还好：库存少了三成，客户的订单也都能按时发出去了。
xìtǒng yòng le yí gè yuè xiàoguǒ bǐ wǒ xiǎng de hái hǎo kùcún shǎo le sān chéng kèhù de dìngdān yě dōu néng ànshí fā chuqu le · One month in, and it's working better than I expected: stock is down thirty per cent, and every client's order goes out on time.

manager liu 这么快就见效了？
zhème kuài jiù jiànxiào le · Results that quickly?

ms zhang 对。以前只要订单激增，仓库就乱了；现在一点儿也不乱。
duì yǐqián zhǐyào dìngdān jīzēng cāngkù jiù luàn le xiànzài yìdiǎnr yě bú luàn · Yes. Before, whenever orders surged, the warehouses were chaos; now there's no chaos at all.

anna 其实我们做的无非是把三个仓库的数据连起来罢了。
qíshí wǒmen zuò de wúfēi shì bǎ sān gè cāngkù de shùjù lián qǐlái bàle · Honestly, all we did was link up the data from your three warehouses.

ms zhang 你太谦虚了。是你们帮我们构建了一个新的物流系统。工人们一开始不习惯，后来发现手机扫一下就行，都说真管用。
nǐ tài qiānxū le shì nǐmen bāng wǒmen gòujiàn le yí gè xīn de wùliú xìtǒng gōngrénmen yì kāishǐ bù xíguàn hòulái fāxiàn shǒujī sǎo yíxià jiù xíng dōu shuō zhēn guǎnyòng · You're too modest. You built us a whole new logistics system. The workers weren't used to it at first, then they found one scan with a phone does the job, and now they all say it really works.

anna 最难的是找到数据的源头。三个仓库的表格都不一样，我们的工程师攻关了整整两个星期，测试才过关。
zuì nán de shì zhǎo dào shùjù de yuántóu sān gè cāngkù de biǎogé dōu bù yíyàng wǒmen de gōngchéngshī gōngguān le zhěngzhěng liǎng gè xīngqī cèshì cái guòguān · The hardest part was tracking down where the data came from. All three warehouses used different spreadsheets: our engineers spent two solid weeks cracking it before the tests passed.

manager liu 现在每个环节都到位了吗？
xiànzài měi gè huánjié dōu dàowèi le ma · Is every link in the chain in place now?

ms zhang 基本到位了，质量检查也全部达标。上个星期有人想用假订单骗我们的货，系统一查就发现了，他没得手。
jīběn dàowèi le zhìliàng jiǎnchá yě quánbù dábiāo shàng gè xīngqī yǒu rén xiǎng yòng jiǎ dìngdān piàn wǒmen de huò xìtǒng yì chá jiù fāxiàn le tā méi déshǒu · More or less, and every quality check passes. Last week someone tried to cheat us out of a shipment with a fake order: the system spotted it straight away, so he didn't get away with it.

manager liu 看来我们的分成办法也奏效了：你们省得多，我们也受益。
kànlái wǒmen de fēnchéng bànfǎ yě zòuxiào le nǐmen shěng de duō wǒmen yě shòuyì · So our profit-sharing idea worked too: you save more, and we benefit as well.

ms zhang 受益最多的是工人，他们再也不用每个月去数货了。这次的成功，得益于你们的专业。
shòuyì zuì duō de shì gōngrén tāmen zài yě búyòng měi gè yuè qù shǔ huò le zhè cì de chénggōng déyì yú nǐmen de zhuānyè · The workers benefit most: they never have to count stock every month again. This success is down to your expertise.

anna 也得益于你们的底子好。三十年的外贸经验，才是公司真正的根基。
yě déyì yú nǐmen de dǐzi hǎo sānshí nián de wàimào jīngyàn cái shì gōngsī zhēnzhèng de gēnjī · And to your solid foundations. Thirty years of foreign-trade experience: that's the company's real bedrock.

manager liu 这么说，您老家的茶叶也走出低谷了。
zhème shuō nín lǎojiā de cháyè yě zǒu chū dīgǔ le · So the tea back in your home town has climbed out of its low point too.

ms zhang 说得对。茶叶是我们老家的支柱产业，以前的茶园自产自销，规模很小。现在有了物流，茶就能卖到全国。对我们来说，物流就是生命线。

shuō de duì cháyè shì wǒmen lǎojiā de zhīzhù chǎnyè yǐqián de chá yuán zì chǎn zì xiāo guīmó hěn xiǎo xiànzài yǒu le wùliú chá jiù néng mài dào quán guó duì wǒmen lái shuō wùliú jiùshì shēngmìngxiàn · That's true. Tea is the main industry back home, and the old tea gardens used to sell what they grew themselves, on a tiny scale. With proper logistics, our tea can sell across the country. For us, logistics are a lifeline.

manager liu 这一个月，我们两家公司的合作取得了长足的进步。这个系统就是合作的产物。

zhè yí gè yuè wǒmen liǎng jiā gōngsī de hézuò qǔdé le chángzú de jìnbù zhège xìtǒng jiùshì hézuò de chǎnwù · In just one month, our two companies have come a long way together. This system is the product of that partnership.

ms zhang 这次合作是安娜促成的。第一个月就有这么丰硕的成果，这是我们合作结出的第一个硕果！

zhè cì hézuò shì Ānnà cùchéng de dì yī gè yuè jiù yǒu zhème fēngshuò de chéngguǒ zhè shì wǒmen hézuò jié chū de dì yī gè shuòguǒ · It was Anna who made this partnership happen. Such rich results in the very first month: the first great fruit of our partnership!

anna 省下来的钱，你们可以再投进新产品，产品好了，客户就更多，这就是良性循环。

shěng xiàlái de qián nǐmen kěyǐ zài tóu jìn xīn chǎnpǐn chǎnpǐn hǎo le kèhù jiù gèng duō zhè jiùshì liángxìng xúnhuán · You can put the money you save into new products; better products bring more clients: a virtuous circle.

manager liu 不过市场总有波动，我们不能只看一时的得失，还要建立长效的办法，让系统一直有效力。

búguò shìchǎng zǒng yǒu bōdòng wǒmen bù néng zhǐ kàn yìshí de déshī hái yào jiànlì chángxiào de bànfǎ ràng xìtǒng yìzhí yǒu xiàolì · But markets always fluctuate: we can't just look at short-term gains and losses. We need something that lasts, so the system keeps working.

ms zhang 我同意。我们公司在这个县城扎根三十年了，是这些困难造就了今天的我们。先把国内的市场夯实，再立足国内，走向世界。

wǒ tóngyì wǒmen gōngsī zài zhège xiàn chéng zhāgēn sānshí nián le shì zhèxiē kùnnan zàojiù le jīntiān de wǒmen xiān bǎ guónèi de shìchǎng hāngshí zài lìzú guónèi zǒuxiàng shìjiè · I agree. Our company has had roots in this county for thirty years, and it's the hard times that made us what we are. First we make the home market solid, then, from a firm base at home, we go out into the world.

anna 下一步的计划已经基本成型了吧?

xià yí bù de jìhuà yǐjīng jīběn chéngxíng le ba · Your next plan has more or less taken shape, then?

ms zhang 对！我们打算在上海设一个小仓库，下个月就去参加博览会。这次合作为博览会奠定了基础。

duì wǒmen dǎsuàn zài Shànghǎi shè yí gè xiǎo cāngkù xià gè yuè jiù qù cānjiā bólǎnhuì zhè cì hézuò wèi bólǎnhuì diàndìng le jīchǔ · Yes! We plan to set up a small warehouse in Shanghai, and next month we're off to the expo. This partnership has laid the groundwork for it.

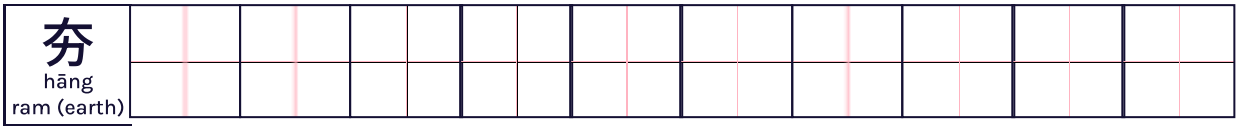
manager liu 我们也想去博览会。王老师常说，一个人要有建树，先要打好底子。公司也一样。

wǒmen yě xiǎng qù bólǎnhuì Wánglǎoshī cháng shuō yí gè rén yào yǒu jiànshù xiān yào dǎ hǎo dǐzi gōngsī yě yíyàng · We'd like to go to the expo too. Teacher Wang always says that if you want to achieve something, you first need solid basics. It's the same for a company.

ms zhang 好！客户的意见是我们改进的源泉，我们一起去听听。我们还要给员工营造一个好的工作环境，人永远是最重要的。

hǎo kèhù de yìjiàn shì wǒmen gǎijìn de yuánquán wǒmen yìqǐ qù tīng ting wǒmen hái yào gěi yuángōng yíngzào yí gè hǎo de gōngzuò huánjìng rén yǒngyuǎn shì zuì zhòngyào de · Great! Clients' feedback is where our improvements come from: let's go and hear it together. And we need to create a good working environment for our staff: people matter most.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



good to know · Did it work? 见效 / 奏效 (it worked), 管用 (spoken: it does the trick), 到位 (in place, spot on), 达标 (meets the standard), 过关 (passed). Foundations: 奠定基础 (lay the foundation), 夯实基础 (make it solid), 根基 / 底子 (the base you build on), 扎根 (put down roots), 立足 (gain a foothold).

You can now sum up a project's results, modestly or proudly, and say what the next step stands on. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 145 stop and control

Talk about stopping, curbing and controlling problems, ending deals and getting everything ready, and open a formal invitation with 值此……之际.

Before any big event something goes wrong: fakes, price wars, stuck deliveries. These are the words for stopping trouble and saying “we’re ready”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
遏制	èzhì	to curb, contain	政府采取措施遏制房价上涨。 The government has taken steps to curb rising house prices.
制止	zhìzhǐ	to stop, prevent (an act)	有人在地铁上抽烟，乘客们马上制止了他。 Someone lit a cigarette on the underground, and the passengers stopped him at once.
制约	zhìyuē	to restrict, constrain	资金不足制约了公司的发展。 A lack of funds has held back the company’s growth.
杜绝	dùjué	to put an end to, stamp out	我们要杜绝浪费。 We must stamp out waste.
阻力	zǔlì	resistance, drag	这项改革遇到了很大的阻力。 This reform has met strong resistance.
阻挠	zǔnáo	to obstruct, thwart	有人想阻挠这个项目。 Someone is trying to block this project.
牵制	qiānzhì	to tie down, hold in check	小公司常常被大客户牵制。 Small companies are often held in check by their big clients.
束缚	shùfù	to bind, fetter	不要被旧观念束缚。 Don’t let old ideas tie you down.
支配	zhīpèi	to control, have at one’s disposal	周末的时间可以自由支配。 Weekends are yours to spend as you like.
主宰	zhǔzǎi	to dominate; master, ruler	要做自己命运的主宰。 Be the master of your own fate.
驾驭	jiàyù	to control, master (a horse, a team)	他能很好地驾驭这么大的团队。 He handles such a big team very well.
压制	yāzhì	to suppress, stifle	好的领导不会压制不同的意见。 A good leader doesn’t stifle different opinions.
压倒	yādǎo	to overwhelm, prevail over	这次比赛，他以压倒性的优势赢了。 He won this match by an overwhelming margin.
屈服	qūfú	to yield, give in	面对压力，他没有屈服。 He didn’t give in under pressure.
抗衡	kànghéng	to compete on equal terms, match	小公司很难跟巨头抗衡。 It’s hard for small firms to take on the giants.
强势	qiángshì	strong position; dominant	这家公司在市场上非常强势。 This company is very dominant in the market.

劣势	lièshì	disadvantage, weak position	我们的劣势是没有名气。 Our weakness is that nobody knows our name.
中止	zhōngzhǐ	to suspend, break off	因为下大雨，比赛中止了。 The match was suspended because of heavy rain.
终止	zhōngzhǐ	to terminate, end	双方决定终止合同。 Both sides decided to terminate the contract.
终结	zhōngjié	to end, bring to an end	这场比赛终结了他们的十连胜。 This match ended their ten-game winning streak.
完毕	wánbì	finished, completed	准备工作已经完毕。 The preparations are complete.
了结	liǎojié	to settle, wind up	这件事终于了结了。 The matter has finally been settled.
罢休	bàxiū	to give up, let it go (with a negative)	不弄清楚，他是不会罢休的。 He won't let it go until he gets to the bottom of it.
免除	miǎnchú	to exempt; to spare	他家里困难，学校免除|了他的学费。 His family is hard up, so the school waived his fees.
清除	qīngchú	to clear away, get rid of	大雪以后，工人们连夜清除路上的雪。 After the heavy snow, workers cleared the roads through the night.
去除	qùchú	to remove	这种办法可以去除衣服上的油。 This method gets grease out of clothes.
剔除	tīchú	to weed out, reject	我们把不合格的茶叶全部剔除了。 We weeded out all the tea that didn't pass.
破除	pòchú	to break down (old ideas)	我们要破除“女生学不好数学”的旧观念。 We must break down the old idea that girls can't do maths.
卡	qiǎ	to get stuck, jam; to block	我们的货在海关卡{qia3}了三天。 Our goods were stuck at customs for three days.
锁定	suǒdìng	to lock in, pin down	我们已经锁定了目标客户。 We've pinned down our target customers.
限定	xiàndìng	to restrict, limit to	这种茶每人限定买两盒。 This tea is limited to two boxes per person.
后备	hòubèi	reserve, backup	我们准备了一套后备方案。 We've prepared a backup plan.
备	bèi	to prepare, have ready	我给你备了一把伞。 I've got an umbrella ready for you.
预备	yùbèi	to prepare, get ready	各就各位，预备，跑！ On your marks, get set, go!
就绪	jiùxù	to be ready, in place	一切准备就绪，就等客人来了。 Everything's ready: we're just waiting for the guests.

pattern 值此……之际 (on the occasion of) and the prefixes 后- / 亲-

值此 **occasion** 之际, **greeting, thanks or invitation**

值此……之际 opens formal letters, speeches and notices: “on the occasion of …”. Put an event in the middle (开幕, 新年, 公司成立十周年) and follow with thanks, wishes or an invitation. Also back today: 后- “post-” (后工业时代, 后真相时代) and 亲- “close to” (亲水平台, a waterside deck where you can touch the water).

值此博览会开幕之际，我们真诚地邀请新老客户来品尝新茶。 **zhí cǐ bólǎnhuì kāimù zhījì wǒmen zhēnchéng de yāoqǐng xīn lǎo kèhù lái pǐncháng xīn chá** As the expo opens, we warmly invite all our clients, old and new, to taste our new tea.

值此新年到来之际，祝大家身体健康，万事如意。 **zhí cǐ xīnnián dàolái zhījì zhù dàjiā shēntǐ jiànkāng wàn shì rúyì** As the New Year arrives, we wish you all good health and every success.

进入后工业时代，很多老工厂变成了博物馆。 **jìnrù hòu gōngyè shídài hěn duō lǎo gōngchǎng biànchéng le bówùguǎn** In the post-industrial age, many old factories have become museums.

博览会旁边有一个亲水平台，可以在河边喝茶。 **bólǎnhuì pángbiān yǒu yí gè qīn shuǐ píngtái kěyǐ zài hé biān hē chá** Next to the expo there’s a waterside deck where you can drink tea by the river.

dialogue fakes, price cuts and a contract that binds

ms zhang 孙律师，出事了。网上有人用我们的牌子卖假茶，价格只有我们的一半。
Sūnlǜshī chū shì le wǎngshang yǒu rén yòng wǒmen de páizi mài jiǎ chá jiàgé zhǐyǒu wǒmen de yíbàn · Mr Sun, we've got trouble. Someone online is selling fake tea under our brand, at half our price.

lawyer sun 这种事必须马上制止。我今天就通知那几个网站，让他们清除这些假货的链接。
zhè zhǒng shì bìxū mǎshàng zhìzhǐ wǒ jīntiān jiù tōngzhī nà jǐ gè wǎngzhàn ràng tāmen qīngchú zhèxiē jiǎ huò de liànjiē · That has to be stopped at once. I'll notify those websites today and have them take down the links to the fakes.

ms zhang 不让他们停下来，我是不会罢休的。在这个“后真相时代”，假消息、假货太多了。
bú ràng tāmen tíng xialai wǒ shì bú huì bàxiū de zài zhège hòu zhēnxiàng shídài jiǎ xiāoxi jiǎ huò tài duō le · I won't rest until they stop. In this "post-truth age" there's far too much fake news and fake stuff.

lawyer sun 光删链接还不够，要从源头杜绝。以后每盒茶都加一个查真假的码，买的人一扫就知道。
guāng shān liànjiē hái búgòu yào cóng yuántóu dùjué yǐhòu měi hé chá dōu jiā yí gè chá zhēn jiǎ de mǎ mǎi de rén yì sǎo jiù zhīdào · Removing links isn't enough: we need to stamp it out at the source. From now on, every box gets a code to check if it's genuine: buyers just scan it.

anna 这个我们的系统可以做。不合格的、不知道从哪儿来的茶，系统都会自动剔除，只留下达标的茶。
zhège wǒmen de xìtǒng kěyǐ zuò bù hégé de bù zhīdào cóng nǎr lái de chá xìtǒng dōu huì zìdòng tīchú zhǐ liúxia dábiāo de chá · Our system can do that. Anything that fails a check or has no clear origin gets weeded out automatically, leaving only tea that meets the standard.

ms zhang 这个系统真管用，上次的假订单也是它发现的，骗子没得手。还有一件麻烦事：一家大公司在博览会前突然降价，想压倒我们这些小公司。
zhège xìtǒng zhēn guǎnyòng shàng cì de jiǎ dìngdān yě shì tā fāxiàn de piànzi méi déshǒu hái yǒu yí jiàn máfan shì yì jiā dà gōngsī zài bólǎnhuì qián tūrán jiàngjià xiǎng yādǎo wǒmen zhèxiē xiǎo gōngsī · That system really works: it spotted the fake order last time too, and the scammer didn't get away with it. And another headache: a big company has suddenly cut its prices just before the expo, to crush us smaller players.

manager liu 他们想用低价压制对手。小公司是很难跟巨头抗衡，可是我们也有自己的优势。
tāmen xiǎng yòng dījià yāzhì duìshǒu xiǎo gōngsī shì hěn nán gēn jùtóu kànghéng kěshì wǒmen yě yǒu zìjǐ de yōushì · They want to squeeze out their rivals with low prices. It's true small firms find it hard to take on the giants, but we have strengths of our own.

anna 他们在价格上很强势，我们的劣势是名气小。可是我们的茶质量好，物流也快，这是我们的根基。
tāmen zài jiàgé shàng hěn qiángshì wǒmen de lièshì shì míngqi xiǎo kěshì wǒmen de chá zhìliàng hǎo wùliú yě kuài zhè shì wǒmen de gēnjī · They're strong on price; our weak point is that people don't know our name. But our tea is better and our deliveries are faster: that's our bedrock.

lawyer sun 降价是人家的自由。不过，要是用低于成本的价格挤走对手，法律是要遏制的。
jiàngjià shì rénjia de zìyóu búguò yàoshi yòng dīyú chéngběn de jiàgé jǐ zǒu duìshǒu fǎlǜ shì yào èzhì de · Cutting prices is their right. But if they sell below cost to drive out rivals, the law is there to curb that.

ms zhang 还有那个大客户的合同。合同限定我们只能卖给他们一家，这一条束缚了我们好几年，资金不足也一直制约着我们的发展。
hái yǒu nàge dà kèhù de hétóng hétóng xiàndìng wǒmen zhǐ néng mài gěi tāmen yì jiā zhè yì tiáo shùfù le wǒmen hǎo jǐ nián zījīn bùzú yě yìzhí zhìyuē zhe wǒmen de fāzhǎn · Then there's that big client's contract. It limits us to selling only to them: that clause has tied our hands for years, and being short of money has held back our growth all along.

lawyer sun 上个月你们已经中止了跟他们的谈判。合同下个月到期，可以依法终止，不必再签。改合同会有阻力，可是他们阻挠不了。
shàng gè yuè nǐmen yǐjīng zhōngzhǐ le gēn tāmen de tánpàn hétóng xià gè yuè dàoqī kěyǐ yīfǎ zhōngzhǐ búbì zài qiān gǎi hétóng huì yǒu zǔlì kěshì tāmen zǔnáo bu liǎo · You broke off talks with them last month. The contract expires next month and can be ended lawfully: you don't have to sign again. There'll be resistance to changing it, but they can't block it.

ms zhang 我不想再被一个客户牵制，公司的钱怎么支配，要我们自己说了算。
wǒ bù xiǎng zài bèi yí gè kèhù qiānzhì gōngsī de qián zěnme zhīpèi yào wǒmen zìjǐ shuō le suàn · I don't want to be held back by one client any more: how we use our money should be our own call.

manager liu 对，要做自己的主宰。我们不能在压力面前屈服。
duì yào zuò zìjǐ de zhǔzǎi wǒmen bù néng zài yālì miànqián qūfú · Exactly: be your own master. We mustn't give in under pressure.

ms zhang 对。我们在这个县城扎根三十年了，不会这么容易倒下。
duì wǒmen zài zhège xiàn chéng zhāgēn sānshí nián le bú huì zhème róngyì dǎo xià · Right. We've had roots in this county for thirty years: we won't fall over that easily.

lawyer sun 好消息也有：上个月那场官司终于了结了，被冻结的钱下个星期就能回到账户里。
hǎo xiāoxi yě yǒu shàng gè yuè nà chǎng guānsi zhōngyú liǎojié le bèi dòngjié de qián xià gè xīngqī jiù néng huí dào zhànghù lǐ · There's good news too: last month's lawsuit is finally settled, and the frozen money will be back in your account next week.

ms zhang 太好了！这样的坏日子总会终结的。还有，博览会给小企业免除了一半的费用。
tài hǎo le zhèyàng de huài rìzi zǒng huì zhōngjié de hái yǒu bólǎnhuì gěi xiǎo qǐyè miǎnchú le yíbàn de fèiyong · Wonderful! Bad times like these always come to an end. And the expo has waived half the fees for small businesses.

manager liu 安娜，这么多事一起来，你能驾驭得了吗？
Ānnà zhème duō shì yìqǐ lái nǐ néng jiàyù de liǎo ma · Anna, with all this happening at once, can you keep it under control?

anna 没问题。我们已经锁定了几个目标客户，样品都备好了，旧包装上的标签也去除了。
méi wèntí wǒmen yǐjīng suǒdìng le jǐ gè mùbiāo kèhù yàngpǐn dōu bèi hǎo le jiù bāozhuāng shàng de biāoqiān yě qùchú le · No problem. We've pinned down a few target clients, the samples are ready, and the labels have been taken off the old packaging.

ms zhang 我们第一批运到上海的货在路上卡了一天，不过现在已经到了。
wǒmen dì yī pī yùn dào Shànghǎi de huò zài lùshang qiǎ le yì tiān búguò xiànzài yǐjīng dào le · Our first shipment to Shanghai got stuck on the road for a day, but it's arrived now.

anna 我们还准备了后备方案：要是货到不了，就用上海仓库的存货。所有的检查都已经完毕。
wǒmen hái zhǔnbèi le hòubèi fāngàn yàoshi huò dào bu liǎo jiù yòng Shànghǎi cāngkù de cúnhuò suǒyǒu de jiǎnchá dōu yǐjīng wánbì · And we have a backup plan: if any goods don't make it, we'll use the stock in the Shanghai warehouse. All the checks are done.

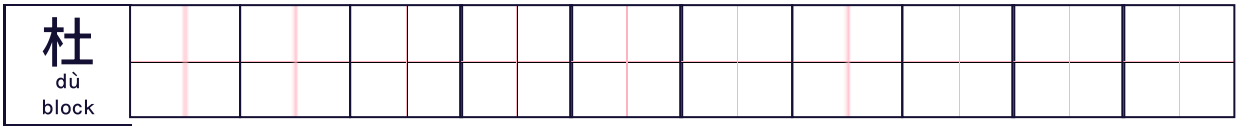
ms zhang 我写了一封邀请信，你们听听："值此博览会开幕之际，我们真诚地邀请新老客户来品尝新茶。"
wǒ xiě le yì fēng yāoqǐng xìn nǐmen tīng ting zhí cǐ bólǎnhuì kāimù zhījì wǒmen zhēnchéng de yāoqǐng xīn lǎo kèhù lái pǐncháng xīn chá · I've written an invitation, have a listen: "As the expo opens, we warmly invite all our clients, old and new, to come and taste our new tea."

manager liu 写得好。我们也要破除一个旧观念：小公司做不了大生意。
xiě de hǎo wǒmen yě yào pòchú yí gè jiù guānniàn xiǎo gōngsī zuò bu liǎo dà shēngyi · Nicely put. We need to break down an old idea too: that small companies can't do big business.

anna 那就这样：一切准备就绪，大家预备，去上海！
nà jiù zhèyàng yíqiè zhǔnbèi jiùxù dàjiā yùbèi qù Shànghǎi · Then that's it: everything's ready. Get set, everyone: Shanghai, here we come!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

遏 è check												



good to know · Stopping: 制止 stops an act on the spot; 遏制 curbs a trend; 杜绝 stamps something out for good; 制约 is a constraint that holds you back. Ending: 中止 is a pause (talks can restart); 终止 ends it (a contract); 了结 settles a matter; 完毕 means a task is finished.

Fakes, price wars, binding contracts: you can now talk your way through a crisis and declare "we're ready".
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 146 putting things right

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 19 · trade and the economy

Talk about fixing problems, winning back trust and getting things back to normal, with degree adverbs like 略, 极度, 越发 and X是X，……

Things go wrong the night before every big day. Saying how to put them right, calmly and precisely, is a real workplace skill.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
补救	bǔjiù	to remedy, make up for	现在补救还来得及。 There's still time to put it right.
挽回	wǎnhuí	to retrieve, win back	为了挽回损失，公司降价卖掉了库存。 To recover its losses, the company sold off its stock at lower prices.
挽救	wǎnjiù	to save, rescue	医生们挽救了他的生命。 The doctors saved his life.
复原	fùyuán	to restore; to recover (health)	专家们把这个古代花瓶复原了。 The experts restored this ancient vase.
复活	fùhuó	to come back to life, revive	这个老品牌又复活了。 This old brand has come back to life.
重返	chóngfǎn	to return to	伤好以后，他重返赛场。 Once his injury healed, he returned to competition.
重现	chóngxiàn	to reappear	老街上又重现了当年的热闹。 The old street is as lively as it used to be.
再现	zàixiàn	to recreate, reproduce	这部电影再现了唐朝长安的样子。 The film recreates Chang'an in the Tang dynasty.
化解	huàjiě	to resolve, defuse	他一句玩笑化解了紧张的气氛。 One joke from him defused the tension.
缓和	huǎnhé	to ease; mild	谈了一次以后，两个人的关系缓和了。 After one talk, things between the two of them eased.
平息	píngxī	to calm down, subside	这场风波很快就平息了。 The storm soon blew over.
平稳	píngwěn	smooth and steady, stable	飞机平稳地降落了。 The plane landed smoothly.
稳	wěn	steady, stable; to steady	新系统运行得很稳。 The new system runs very steadily.
稳固	wěngù	firm, stable; to consolidate	两家公司的合作关系很稳固。 The two companies have a solid partnership.
安定	āndìng	settled, stable; to stabilise	人们都希望过{guo4}安定的生活。 Everyone wants a settled life.
安宁	ānníng	peaceful, tranquil	搬到乡下以后，生活很安宁。 Life has been peaceful since we moved to the

			countryside.
安稳	ānwěn	safe and steady, secure	他只想找一份安稳的工作。 All he wants is a secure job.
均衡	jūnhéng	balanced, even	吃饭要营养均衡。 Your diet should be balanced.
常态	chángtài	normal state, the norm	在这家公司，加班已经成了常态。 At this company, overtime has become the norm.
顺畅	shùnchàng	smooth, unhindered	新系统用起来很顺畅。 The new system is smooth to use.
通畅	tōngchàng	unobstructed, clear	下了大雪，道路依然通畅。 Despite the heavy snow, the roads are still clear.
疏导	shūdǎo	to direct (traffic); to dredge	警察正在路口疏导交通。 The police are directing traffic at the junction.
调剂	tiáojì	to adjust, redistribute (supplies)	这个仓库缺货，可以从别的仓库调剂一些过来。 If this warehouse is short, we can move some stock over from another one.
填补	tiánbǔ	to fill (a gap)	这本书填补了这个领域的空白。 This book fills a gap in the field.
填充	tiánchōng	to fill up, stuff	箱子里空{kong4}的地方用旧报纸填充。 Fill the empty space in the box with old newspaper.
替换	tìhuàn	to replace, swap	坏了的灯要及时替换。 Broken lights should be replaced promptly.
交替	jiāotì	to alternate, take turns	夏天和秋天交替的时候，容易感冒。 It's easy to catch a cold when summer turns to autumn.
轮换	lúnhuàn	to rotate, take turns	开长途车的时候，我们三个人轮换着开。 On long drives, the three of us take turns at the wheel.
衔接	xiánjiē	to link up, join	两个系统的数据衔接得很好。 The data passes smoothly between the two systems.
接轨	jiēguǐ	to align with, integrate (standards)	我们的标准要跟国际接轨。 Our standards need to match international ones.
贯通	guàntōng	to link up, run through	这条地铁线全线贯通了。 The whole underground line is now connected.
相通	xiāngtōng	connected; to have in common	这两个房间是相通的。 These two rooms connect.
互补	hùbǔ	to complement each other	他们两个人的性格正好互补。 Their personalities complement each other perfectly.
呼应	hūyìng	to echo, work in concert	文章的开头和结尾互相呼应。 The beginning and end of the essay echo each other.
匹配	pǐpèi	to match, pair up	系统会自动匹配订单和库存。 The system automatically matches orders with stock.

pattern how much? 略, 颇, 极度, 越发 ... and x是x back again

略 / 稍稍 / 颇 / 尤为 / 极度 / 万分 / 越发 **adjective or feeling**

Written Chinese has a ladder of degree words. A little: 略, 略微, 稍稍, 微. Quite: 颇, 颇为. Especially: 尤为, 分外, 大为. Extremely: 极度, 万分. More and more: 越发, 愈加. Put one before an adjective or a feeling verb. X是X，可是…… grants a point before the “but”.

从杭州运过来，运费略高一些。 **cóng Hángzhōu yùn guolai yùnfèi lüè gāo yìxiē** Shipping it from Hangzhou costs a little more.

客户对新茶颇为满意，对包装尤为喜欢。 **kèhù duì xīn chá pō wèi mǎnyì duì bāozhuāng yóuwéi xǐhuan** The clients are quite pleased with the new tea, and they especially love the packaging.

雪停以后，晚上的上海分外安宁。 **xuě tíng yǐhòu wǎnshang de Shànghǎi fènwài ānníng** After the snow stopped, Shanghai was especially peaceful at night.

运费高是高了一点儿，可是能挽回客户的信任。 **yùnfèi gāo shì gāo le yìdiǎnr kěshì néng wǎnhuí kèhù de xìnrèn** Shipping costs a bit more, sure, but it wins back the client’s trust.

dialogue the night before

ms zhang 安娜，糟了！系统里的库存跟上海仓库的数字对不上，明天就开幕了！
Ānnà zāo le xìtǒng lǐ de kùcún gēn Shànghǎi cāngkù de shùzì duì bu shàng míngtiān jiù kāimù le · Anna, disaster! The stock in the system doesn't match the Shanghai warehouse, and we open tomorrow!

anna 别急，现在补救还来得及。我先跟小明视频一下，他是工程师。
bié jí xiànzài bǔjiù hái láidejí wǒ xiān gēn Xiǎomíng shìpín yíxià tā shì gōngchéngshī · Don't panic: there's still time to fix it. Let me video-call Xiaoming first: he's an engineer.

xiaoming 我看看……找到了：上海仓库的新系统跟你们老家的系统没有衔接好，所以订单和库存匹配不上。
wǒ kàn kan zhǎo dào le Shànghǎi cāngkù de xīn xìtǒng gēn nǐmen lǎojiā de xìtǒng méiyǒu xiánjiē hǎo suǒyǐ dìngdān hé kùcún pǐpèi bu shàng · Let me see… found it: the new Shanghai warehouse system wasn't properly linked to the one back home, so orders and stock don't match.

ms zhang 这个问题会不会影响明天的销售？
zhège wèntí huì bu huì yǐngxiǎng míngtiān de xiāoshòu · Will this problem hurt tomorrow's sales?

manager liu 数据能复原吗？
shùjù néng fùyuán ma · Can the data be restored?

xiaoming 能。我先把昨天的数据复原，再把两个系统接起来，让数据全部贯通。两个仓库的数据以后就是相通的。
néng wǒ xiān bǎ zuótiān de shùjù fùyuán zài bǎ liǎng gè xìtǒng jiē qǐlai ràng shùjù quánbù guàntōng liǎng gè cāngkù de shùjù yǐhòu jiùshì xiāngtōng de · Yes. I'll restore yesterday's data first, then connect the two systems so all the data runs through. From now on the two warehouses' data will be linked.

anna 我们的系统还要跟博览会的系统接轨，客户在博览会的网站上下单，我们马上就能看到。
wǒmen de xìtǒng hái yào gēn bólǎnhuì de xìtǒng jiēguǐ kèhù zài bólǎnhuì de wǎngzhàn shàng xiàdān wǒmen mǎshàng jiù néng kàn dào · Our system also needs to plug into the expo's system: when a client orders on the expo website, we'll see it straight away.

ms zhang 还有一件事：客户要的二百盒红茶，有一半在路上，高速公路因为大雪关了。
hái yǒu yí jiàn shì kèhù yào de èrbǎi hé hóngchá yǒu yíbàn zài lùshang gāosù gōnglù yīnwèi dà xuě guān le · One more thing: half of the two hundred boxes of black tea the client wants are on the road, and the motorway is closed because of snow.

anna 上海仓库的红茶不够，可以从杭州的仓库调剂一些过来。空出来的地方，就用绿茶填充。
Shànghǎi cāngkù de hóngchá búgòu kěyǐ cóng Hángzhōu de cāngkù tiáojì yìxiē guòlái kòng chulai de dìfang jiù yòng lǜchá tiánchōng · If the Shanghai warehouse is short of black tea, we can move some over from the Hangzhou warehouse. Any space left can be filled with green tea.

ms zhang 好是好，就是从杭州运过来，运费略高一些。
hǎo shì hǎo jiùshì cóng Hángzhōu yùn guolai yùnfèi lüè gāo yìxiē · That's fine, but shipping from Hangzhou costs a little more.

manager liu 运费高是高了一点儿，可是能挽回客户的信任，值得。红茶和绿茶的市场正好互补，这样库存也更均衡。
yùnfèi gāo shì gāo le yìdiǎnr kěshì néng wǎnhuí kèhù de xìnrèn zhídé hóngchá hé lǜchá de shìchǎng zhènghǎo hùbǔ zhèyàng kùcún yě gèng jūnhéng · Shipping costs a bit more, sure, but it wins back the client's trust: worth it. Black tea and green tea complement each other anyway, so the stock will be better balanced.

ms zhang 刚才一个老客户打电话来，很生气，因为上次我们的货晚了一个星期。我跟他道歉，还答应明天送他一盒新茶，他的气才平息了，关系也缓和了。
gāngcái yí gè lǎo kèhù dǎ diànhuà lái hěn shēngqì yīnwèi shàng cì wǒmen de huò wǎn le yí gè xīngqī wǒ gēn tā dàoqiàn hái dāying míngtiān sòng tā yì hé xīn chá tā de qì cái píngxī le guānxì yě huǎnhé le · An old client just rang, very angry because our last delivery was a week late. I apologised and promised him a box of the new tea tomorrow: only then did he calm down, and things eased between us.

anna 您一句话就化解了问题，这件事总算了结了。
nín yí jù huà jiù huàjiě le wèntí zhè jiàn shì zǒngsuàn liǎojié le · You defused the whole thing in one sentence: that's finally settled.

ms zhang 还有好消息：五年前离开我们的一个大客户，这次说要重返我们的客户名单。
hái yǒu hǎo xiāoxi wǔ nián qián líkāi wǒmen de yí gè dà kèhù zhè cì shuō yào chóngfǎn wǒmen de kèhù míngdān · And some good news: a big client who left us five years ago says he wants to come back to us.

manager liu 太好了。明天的摊位怎么布置？样品都备好了吗？
tài hǎo le míngtiān de tānwèi zěnme bùzhì yàngpǐn dōu bèi hǎo le ma · Excellent. How are we setting up the stand tomorrow? Are the samples ready?

ms zhang 我们要让老家一个清朝的老品牌复活：摊位上再现一百年前老街卖茶的样子，让当年的热闹重现。新茶的包装也跟老品牌互相呼应。
wǒmen yào ràng lǎojiā yí gè Qīngcháo de lǎo pǐnpái fùhuó tānwèi shàng zàixiàn yìbǎi nián qián lǎo jiē mài chá de yàngzi ràng dāngnián de rènao chóngxiàn xīn chá de bāozhuāng yě gēn lǎo pǐnpái hùxiāng hūyìng · We're bringing an old Qing-dynasty brand from back home back to life: the stand recreates a tea street from a hundred years ago, so its old bustle comes alive again. The new tea's packaging echoes the old brand too.

anna 这个想法颇有意思，可以填补市场上的一个空白。
zhège xiǎngfǎ pō yǒu yìsi kěyǐ tiánbǔ shìchǎng shàng de yí gè kòngbái · That's quite an idea: it could fill a gap in the market.

xiaoming 好了！系统重新运行了，数据传得很顺畅，比以前还稳。坏了的那台手机也替换掉了。
hǎo le xìtǒng chóngxīn yùnxíng le shùjù chuán de hěn shùnchàng bǐ yǐqián hái wěn huài le de nà tái shǒujī yě tìhuàn diào le · Done! The system is running again, the data is flowing smoothly, and it's steadier than before. The broken phone has been replaced too.

anna 太好了，故障全部清除了！
tài hǎo le gùzhàng quánbù qīng chúle · Brilliant: the faults are all cleared!

ms zhang 小明，这次多亏你挽救了我们。我刚才极度紧张，现在心里越发踏实了。
Xiǎomíng zhè cì duōkuī nǐ wǎnjiù le wǒmen wǒ gāngcái jídù jǐnzhāng xiànzài xīnlǐ yuèfā tāshi le · Xiaoming, you saved us this time. I was incredibly nervous a moment ago, and now I feel calmer and calmer.

manager liu 今天晚上大家轮换休息，两个人一组，交替检查系统，再准备一台后备电脑。以后每天检查一次数据，要成为常态。
jīntiān wǎnshang dàjiā lúnhuàn xiūxi liǎng gè rén yì zǔ jiāotì jiǎnchá xìtǒng zài zhǔnbèi yì tái hòubèi diànnǎo yǐhòu měi tiān jiǎnchá yí cì shùjù yào chéngwéi chángtài · Tonight let's take turns to rest, two to a team, checking the system in shifts, and have a backup computer ready. From now on, a daily data check has to be the norm.

anna 外面的雪停了，警察在路口疏导交通，路已经通畅了。
wàimiàn de xuě tíng le jǐngchá zài lùkǒu shūdǎo jiāotōng lù yǐjīng tōngchàng le · The snow outside has stopped, the police are directing traffic at the junction, and the roads are clear again.

ms zhang 雪停以后，晚上的上海分外安宁。这一年公司的收入很平稳，客户关系也更稳固了。我希望大家都能过安定、安稳的日子。
xuě tíng yǐhòu wǎnshang de Shànghǎi fènwài ānníng zhè yì nián gōngsī de shōurù hěn píngwěn kèhù guānxì yě gèng wěngù le wǒ xīwàng dàjiā dōu néng guò āndìng ānwěn de rìzi · Now that the snow has stopped, Shanghai is especially peaceful tonight. Our income has been steady this year, and our client relationships are stronger. I hope everyone can have a settled, secure life.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

衔
xián
hold in the mouth

good to know · Putting things right: 补救 (remedy), 挽回 (win back: trust, losses), 挽救 (save: a life, a company), 复原 (restore), 化解 (defuse), 平息 (calm down). Pairs that look alike: 重现 (reappear, by itself) and 再现 (recreate, on purpose); 交替 (alternate) and 轮换 (take turns); 顺畅 (smooth) and 通畅 (unblocked).

A crisis at ten at night, solved by eleven: you can now talk a team through putting things right.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 147 mission: the trade fair

Follow three days at a trade expo in Chinese: the notice, the stand, a price war, the deals and the numbers.

Everything in this unit meets at the expo: trade and supply, taxes and shares, ups and downs, results, control and putting things right.

chapter 1 chapter 1: opening morning

anna （读）“博览会通知：值此博览会开幕之际，欢迎各位来上海。本届博览会为期三天，参加的有外贸公司、物流公司、连锁超市和几家网络巨头，大宗商品和茶叶在二楼。

dú bólǎnhuì tōngzhī zhí cǐ bólǎnhuì kāimù zhījì huānyíng gèwèi lái Shànghǎi běn jiè bólǎnhuì wéiqī sān tiān cānjiā de yǒu wàimào gōngsī wùliú gōngsī liánsuǒ chāoshì hé jǐ jiā wǎngluò jùtóu dàzōng shāngpǐn hé cháyè zài èr lóu · (reading) “Expo notice: as the expo opens, we welcome you all to Shanghai. This year’s expo runs for three days, with foreign-trade companies, logistics firms, supermarket chains and several internet giants taking part. Bulk commodities and tea are on the second floor.

anna 一楼设有服务台，介绍关税、税务和减免政策；小企业可以减免一半的费用，纳税人的问题也可以在这里咨询。各位需要交纳的费用，请在开幕前缴纳完毕。

yì lóu shè yǒu fúwù tái jièshào guānshuì shuìwù hé jiǎnmiǎn zhèngcè xiǎo qǐyè kěyǐ jiǎnmiǎn yíbàn de fèiyong nàshuìrén de wèntí yě kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ zīxún gèwèi xūyào jiāonà de fèiyong qǐng zài kāimù qián jiǎonà wánbì · There is a service desk on the ground floor with information on tariffs, tax and relief policies; small businesses can have half their fees waived, and taxpayers can ask their questions here too. Please pay any fees you owe before the opening.

anna 为了杜绝假货，所有的商品都要有查真假的码，不合格的商品一律剔除。博览会期间，外面的道路由警察疏导，请大家注意安全。

wèile dùjué jiǎ huò suǒyǒu de shāngpǐn dōu yào yǒu chá zhēn jiǎ de mǎ bù hégé de shāngpǐn yílǜ tīchú bólǎnhuì qījiān wàimiàn de dàolù yóu jǐngchá shūdǎo qǐng dàjiā zhùyì ānquán · To stamp out fakes, every product must carry a code to check that it’s genuine, and anything that fails will be removed. During the expo the police will direct traffic outside: please take care.

anna 今年博览会的主题是：减少贸易壁垒，让物资和供应链更通畅。”

jīnnián bólǎnhuì de zhǔtí shì jiǎnshǎo màoyì bìlěi ràng wùzī hé gōngyìngliàn gèng tōngchàng · This year’s theme is: fewer trade barriers, and goods and supply chains that flow more freely.”

ms zhang 听见了吗？小企业可以免除一半的费用。来是来晚了一点儿，不过一切准备就绪。

tīngjiàn le ma xiǎo qǐyè kěyǐ miǎnchú yíbàn de fèiyong lái shì lái wǎn le yìdiǎnr búguò yíqiè zhǔnbèi jiùxù · Did you hear that? Small businesses can have half their fees waived. We got here a bit late, true, but everything’s ready.

manager liu 张女士，你们的摊位真好看！再现了一百年前老街卖茶的样子。

Zhāngnǚshì nǐmen de tānwèi zhēn hǎokàn zàixiàn le yìbǎi nián qián lǎo jiē mài chá de yàngzi · Ms Zhang, your stand looks wonderful! It recreates an old tea street from a hundred years ago.

ms zhang 这个老品牌在清朝很兴盛，后来没落了，今天终于复活了。包装跟老品牌互相呼应，旁边还有一个小摊位卖茶点。

zhège lǎo pǐnpái zài Qīngcháo hěn xīngshèng hòulái mòluò le jīntiān zhōngyú fùhuó le bāozhuāng gēn lǎo pǐnpái hùxiāng hūyìng pángbiān hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo tānwèi mài chádiǎn · This old brand flourished in the Qing dynasty, then fell from glory, and today it’s finally back to life. The packaging echoes the old brand, and there’s a little counter next to it selling tea snacks.

anna 系统也准备好了：上海、杭州和老家三个仓库的库存都是相通的，客户一下单，系统就自动匹配订单和库存。

xìtǒng yě zhǔnbèi hǎo le Shànghǎi Hángzhōu hé lǎojiā sān gè cāngkù de kùcún dōu shì xiāngtōng de kèhù yí xiàdān xìtǒng jiù zìdòng pǐpèi dìngdān hé kùcún · The system’s ready too: the stock in all three warehouses, Shanghai, Hangzhou and back home, is linked, and as soon as a client orders, the system matches the order with the stock automatically.

ms zhang 上海仓库里储备了两千盒新茶，贮藏的温度也由系统控制。上个月我们在国内投放了一批新茶，杭州的新店也开张了。

Shànghǎi cāngkù lǐ chǔbèi le liǎngqiān hé xīn chá zhùcáng de wēndù yě yóu xìtǒng kòngzhì shàng gè yuè wǒmen zài guónèi tóufàng le yì pī xīn chá Hángzhōu de xīn diàn yě kāizhāng le · The Shanghai warehouse holds two thousand boxes of new tea, and the system controls the storage temperature too. Last month we launched a new tea at home, and our new shop in Hangzhou opened.

manager liu 昨天晚上的问题补救得及时，今天数据传得很顺畅，运行得也很稳。
zuótiān wǎnshang de wèntí bǔjiù de jíshí jīntiān shùjù chuán de hěn shùnchàng yùnxíng de yě hěn wěn · Last night's problem was fixed in time: today the data is flowing smoothly and the system is running steadily.

ms zhang 多亏了小明。我们还准备了后备方案：要是哪种茶紧缺，就从别的仓库调剂。
duōkuī le Xiǎomíng wǒmen hái zhǔnbèi le hòubèi fāngàn yàoshi nǎ zhǒng chá jǐnquē jiù cóng biéde cāngkù tiáojì · Thanks to Xiaoming. And we've got a backup plan: if any tea runs short, we'll move some over from another warehouse.

anna 大家预备，开幕了！
dàjiā yùbèi kāimù le · Get set, everyone: we're open!

chapter 2 chapter 2: editor lin at the stand

editor lin 张女士，我来了！上次的文章发了以后，很多读者想知道你们后来怎么样了。
Zhāngnǚshì wǒ lái le shàng cì de wénzhāng fā le yǐhòu hěn duō dúzhě xiǎng zhīdào nǐmen hòulái zěnmeyàng le · Ms Zhang, here I am! After my last piece came out, lots of readers wanted to know how you got on.

ms zhang 这一年起伏很大。由于海外市场萎缩，加上几个国家提高了关税，所以出口的增速放慢了，因此我们收缩了海外业务。
zhè yì nián qǐfú hěn dà yóuyú hǎiwài shìchǎng wěisuō jiāshàng jǐ gè guójiā tígāo le guānshuì suǒyǐ chūkǒu de zēngsù fàng màn le yīncǐ wǒmen shōusuō le hǎiwài yèwù · It's been a year of ups and downs. The overseas market shrank and several countries raised their tariffs, so export growth slowed, and as a result we scaled back our overseas business.

editor lin 三年前海运价格飙升，订单激增，大家热情高涨，都在扩张。现在呢？
sān nián qián hǎiyùn jiàgé biāoshēng dìngdān jīzēng dàjiā rèqíng gāozhǎng dōu zài kuòzhāng xiànzài ne · Three years ago shipping prices shot up, orders surged, everyone was fired up and expanding. And now?

ms zhang 现在运费回归正常了，上个月价格还反弹了一点儿。不过高关税削弱了我们的价格优势，所以我们缩减了一些计划，削减了广告费用，把钱用来扩充产品，仓库也扩了一个。
xiànzài yùnfèi huíguī zhèngcháng le shàng gè yuè jiàgé hái fǎntán le yìdiǎnr búguò gāo guānshuì xuēruò le wǒmen de jiàgé yōushì suǒyǐ wǒmen suōjiǎn le yìxiē jìhuà xuējiǎn le guǎnggào fèiyong bǎ qián yònglái kuòchōng chǎnpǐn cāngkù yě kuò le yí gè · Freight is back to normal now, and last month prices even bounced back a little. But high tariffs have weakened our price advantage, so we scaled back some plans and cut advertising, put the money into broadening our range, and added a warehouse.

editor lin 可是我听说，你们今年的效益反而好了？
kěshì wǒ tīngshuō nǐmen jīnnián de xiàoyì fǎnér hǎo le · But I hear your returns have actually improved this year?

ms zhang 虽说出口难，可国内的网上销售蓬勃发展。现在盛行在直播里卖茶，我们的销量每个月都在递增。
suīshuō chūkǒu nán kě guónèi de wǎngshang xiāoshòu péngbó fāzhǎn xiànzài shèngxíng zài zhíbō lǐ mài chá wǒmen de xiāoliàng měi gè yuè dōu zài dìzēng · Exporting may be hard, but online sales at home are booming. Selling tea on livestreams is all the rage, and our sales grow every month.

anna 以前绿茶的库存过剩，红茶却很紧缺。现在供需平衡多了，存货少了三成。
yǐqián lǜchá de kùcún guòshèng hóngchá què hěn jǐnquē xiànzài gōngxū pínghéng duō le cúnhuò shǎo le sān chéng · Before, there was a glut of green tea and a shortage of black tea. Now supply and demand are much better balanced, and stock is down thirty per cent.

editor lin 这么快就见效了？
zhème kuài jiù jiànxiào le · Results that quickly?

anna 其实我们做的无非是把三个仓库的数据连起来罢了，工程师攻关了两个星期，测试才过关。
qíshí wǒmen zuò de wúfēi shì bǎ sān gè cāngkù de shùjù lián qǐlái bàle gōngchéngshī gōngguān le liǎng gè xīngqī cèshì cái guòguān · Honestly, all we did was link up the data from the three warehouses. The engineers spent two weeks cracking it before the tests passed.

ms zhang 她太谦虚了。对我们来说，物流就是生命线。这个系统让我们省了很多人力物力，工人们也受益了。
tā tài qiānxū le duì wǒmen lái shuō wùliú jiùshì shēngmìngxiàn zhège xìtǒng ràng wǒmen shěng le hěn duō rénlì wùlì gōngrénmen yě shòuyì le · She's too modest. For us, logistics are a lifeline. The system has saved us a lot of manpower and resources, and the workers have benefited too.

editor lin 你们老家的茶叶小镇呢？
nǐmen lǎojiā de cháyè xiǎo zhèn ne · And your home town, the tea town?

ms zhang 十年前是最低谷，现在茶叶是县里的支柱产业，有了完整的产业链，产值翻了一番，种茶的农民也增收了。我们的团队也从十个人发展壮大到一百多人。
shí nián qián shì zuì dīgǔ xiànzài cháyè shì xiàn lǐ de zhīzhù chǎnyè yǒu le wánzhěng de chǎnyèliàn chǎnzhí

fān le yì fān zhòng chá de nóngmín yě zēngshōu le wǒmen de tuánduì yě cóng shí gè rén fāzhǎn zhuàngdà dào yìbǎi duō rén · Ten years ago was rock bottom. Now tea is the county's main industry, with a complete industry chain: output has doubled in value and the growers earn more. Our team has grown from ten people to over a hundred.

editor lin 有人说，老茶镇衰落了，传统外贸在倒退。

yǒu rén shuō lǎo chá zhèn shuāiluò le chuántǒng wàimào zài dàotuì · Some people say the old tea towns are in decline and traditional foreign trade is going backwards.

ms zhang 不是倒退，是在变。现在城里和山里收入的落差在变小，年轻人回来了，老手艺也没有退化。今年全国的贸易顺差还在增加，可是小公司要靠自己找路。

bú shì dàotuì shì zài biàn xiànzài chéng lǐ hé shān lǐ shōurù de luòchā zài biàn xiǎo niánqīng rén huílái le lǎo shǒuyì yě méiyǒu tuìhuà jīnnián quán guó de màoyì shùnchā hái zài zēngjiā kěshì xiǎo gōngsī yào kào zìjǐ zhǎo lù · It isn't going backwards: it's changing. The income gap between the city and the hills is narrowing, young people are coming back, and the old skills haven't died out. The national trade surplus is still growing this year, but small companies have to find their own way.

editor lin 那你们为什么还要来博览会？

nà nǐmen wèi shénme hái yào lái bólǎnhuì · Then why come to the expo at all?

ms zhang 先立足国内，再把生意拓展到全世界。国家在拉动内需，我们也要拓宽自己的路。

xiān lìzú guónèi zài bǎ shēngyi tuòzhǎn dào quán shìjiè guójiā zài lādòng nèixū wǒmen yě yào tuòkuān zìjǐ de lù · Gain a firm foothold at home first, then expand our business to the whole world. The government is boosting domestic demand, and we need to widen our own road too.

editor lin 好，这句话我写进文章里。网上的热度衰减得快，好的故事能留下来。

hǎo zhè jù huà wǒ xiě jìn wénzhāng lǐ wǎngshang de rèdù shuāijiǎn de kuài hǎo de gùshi néng liú xialai · Great, that line goes in my piece. Online buzz fades fast, but a good story stays.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the price war

manager liu 张女士，对面那家大公司又降价了，价格只有你们的六成。
Zhāngnǚshì duìmiàn nà jiā dà gōngsī yòu jiàngjià le jiàgé zhǐyǒu nǐmen de liù chéng · Ms Zhang, the big company opposite has cut its prices again: they're at sixty per cent of yours.

ms zhang 他们想用低价压倒我们这些小公司。他们在价格上很强势，我们的劣势是名气小。
tāmen xiǎng yòng dījià yādǎo wǒmen zhèxiē xiǎo gōngsī tāmen zài jiàgé shàng hěn qiángshì wǒmen de lièshì shì míngqi xiǎo · They want to crush us small players with low prices. They're strong on price; our weakness is that nobody knows our name.

anna 便宜倒是便宜，可是他们的茶是从仓库里拿出来的旧货，我们的是今年的新茶。
piányi dàoshì piányi kěshì tāmen de chá shì cóng cāngkù lǐ ná chulai de jiù huò wǒmen de shì jīnnián de xīn chá · Cheap, all right, but their tea is old stock out of a warehouse; ours is this year's new tea.

manager liu 小公司很难跟巨头抗衡，可是我们不能屈服。价格可以在一定范围里浮动，可质量不能退步。
xiǎo gōngsī hěn nán gēn jùtóu kànghéng kěshì wǒmen bù néng qūfú jiàgé kěyǐ zài yídìng fànwéi lǐ fúdòng kě zhìliàng bù néng tuìbù · It's hard for small firms to take on the giants, but we can't give in. Prices can float within a range, but quality can't slip.

manager liu 他们想压制对手，还想阻挠我们签新客户。可是阻力再大，我们也能驾驭。公司的命运要自己主宰。
tāmen xiǎng yāzhì duìshǒu hái xiǎng zǔnáo wǒmen qiān xīn kèhù kěshì zǔlì zài dà wǒmen yě néng jiàyù gōngsī de mìngyùn yào zìjǐ zhǔzǎi · They want to suppress their rivals and block us from signing new clients. But however strong the resistance, we can handle it. A company has to be master of its own fate.

ms zhang 我们已经锁定了几个大客户，样品也都备好了。
wǒmen yǐjīng suǒdìng le jǐ gè dà kèhù yàngpǐn yě dōu bèi hǎo le · We've already pinned down a few big clients, and the samples are all ready.

ms zhang 还有一件事：有一个摊位在卖用我们牌子的假茶。
hái yǒu yí jiàn shì yǒu yí gè tānwèi zài mài yòng wǒmen páizi de jiǎ chá · And there's another thing: one of the stands is selling fake tea under our brand.

lawyer sun （在电话里）我已经通知博览会了，他们马上就会制止。这种事必须从源头遏制，不弄清楚，我们是不会罢休的。
zài diànhuà lǐ wǒ yǐjīng tōngzhī bólǎnhuì le tāmen mǎshàng jiù huì zhìzhǐ zhè zhǒng shì bìxū cóng yuántóu èzhì bú nòng qīngchu wǒmen shì bú huì bàxiū de · (on the phone) I've already told the expo, and they'll stop it at once. This sort of thing has to be curbed at the source: we won't let it go until we get to the bottom of it.

anna 坏消息扩散得很快，要是大家的担心蔓延开来，就麻烦了。
huài xiāoxi kuòsàn de hěn kuài yàoshi dàjiā de dānxīn mànyán kāi lái jiù máfan le · Bad news spreads fast: if people's worries take hold, we're in trouble.

ms zhang 所以我们要把真假码放在最前面，买的人一扫就知道。
suǒyǐ wǒmen yào bǎ zhēn jiǎ mǎ fàng zài zuì qiánmiàn mǎi de rén yì sǎo jiù zhīdào · That's why we'll put the authenticity code right at the front: buyers just scan it and they'll know.

lawyer sun （一个小时以后）假货已经清除了，那个摊位也停业了。事情了结了。
yí gè xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiǎ huò yǐjīng qīngchú le nàge tānwèi yě tíngyè le shìqing liǎojié le · (an hour later) The fakes have been cleared away and that stand has been closed. The matter's settled.

ms zhang 那个人想骗买茶的人，结果没得手。我们旧包装上的标签也全部去除了，换成了新的码。
nà gè rén xiǎng piàn mǎi chá de rén jiéguǒ méi déshǒu wǒmen jiù bāozhuāng shàng de biāoqiān yě quánbù qùchú le huàn chéng le xīn de mǎ · That man wanted to cheat tea buyers, and he didn't get away with it. We've taken all the labels off our old packaging too and swapped in the new codes.

manager liu 还有，那个大客户的合同下个月就终止了吧？以后我们不会再被一个客户牵制了。
hái yǒu nàge dà kèhù de hétóng xià gè yuè jiù zhōngzhǐ le ba yǐhòu wǒmen bú huì zài bèi yí gè kèhù qiānzhì le · And the big client's contract ends next month, doesn't it? Then we won't be held back by one client any more.

lawyer sun 上个月你们已经中止了跟他们的谈判。被一个客户牵制的日子，总算终结了。
shàng gè yuè nǐmen yǐjīng zhōngzhǐ le gēn tāmen de tánpàn bèi yí gè kèhù qiānzhì de rìzi zǒngsuàn zhōngjié le · You broke off talks with them last month. The days of being held back by one client are finally over.

ms zhang 对。那份合同限定我们只能卖给他们一家，束缚了我们好几年，资金不足也一直制约着我们。以后公司的钱怎么支配，我们自己说了算。
duì nà fèn hétóng xiàndìng wǒmen zhǐ néng mài gěi tāmen yì jiā shùfù le wǒmen hǎo jǐ nián zījīn bùzú yě yìzhí zhìyuē zhe wǒmen yǐhòu gōngsī de qián zěnme zhīpèi wǒmen zìjǐ shuō le suàn · Yes. That contract limited us to selling only to them and tied our hands for years, and the lack of money held us back all along. From now on, how we use our money is our own call.

anna 这次我们要破除一个旧观念：小公司做不了大生意。
zhè cì wǒmen yào pòchú yí gè jiù guānniàn xiǎo gōngsī zuò bu liǎo dà shēngyi · This time we're going to break down an old idea: that small companies can't do big business.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the deals

ms zhang 三天，我们签了十二个订单！还有一家连锁超市，在全国有三百多个网点，想让我们长期给他们供货。
sān tiān wǒmen qiān le shíèr gè dìngdān hái yǒu yì jiā liánsuǒ chāoshì zài quán guó yǒu sānbǎi duō gè wǎngdiǎn xiǎng ràng wǒmen chángqī gěi tāmen gōng huò · Three days, and we've signed twelve orders! And a supermarket chain with over three hundred outlets around the country wants us to supply them long-term.

manager liu 这次合作取得了丰硕的成果，这十二个订单就是我们结出的第一批硕果。
zhè cì hézuò qǔdé le fēngshuò de chéngguǒ zhè shíèr gè dìngdān jiùshì wǒmen jié chū de dì yī pī shuòguǒ · This partnership has produced rich results: these twelve orders are its first great harvest.

anna 五年前离开的那个大客户也重返了。他说，这次是我们的服务很到位，他才回来的。
wǔ nián qián líkāi de nàge dà kèhù yě chóngfǎn le tā shuō zhè cì shì wǒmen de fúwù hěn dàowèi tā cái huílái de · And the big client who left five years ago has come back. He says it's because our service was spot on this time.

ms zhang 这些订单折合成人民币有八百多万。不过国外的客户付美元，汇率一波动，利润就会缩水。
zhèxiē dìngdān zhéhé chéng rénmínbì yǒu bābǎi duō wàn búguòguówài de kèhù fù měi yuán huìlǜ yì bōdòng lìrùn jiù huì suōshuǐ · These orders come to over eight million yuan. But overseas clients pay in dollars, so when the exchange rate swings, the profit shrinks.

ms zhang 我们宁可少赚一点儿，也要换取长期的合作。我们不做投机生意，不赚暴利，也不做亏本的买卖。
wǒmen nìngkě shǎo zhuàn yìdiǎnr yě yào huànqǔ chángqī de hézuò wǒmen bú zuò tóujī shēngyi bú zhuàn bàolì yě bú zuò kuīběn de mǎimai · We'd rather earn a bit less in exchange for long-term partnerships. We don't speculate, we don't gouge, and we don't sell at a loss.

lawyer sun 今年有的国家降低了贸易壁垒，可还有几个国家对茶叶征收高额关税。这几年有的公司投机失败，亏了巨额的资金。
jīnnián yǒude guójiā jiàngdī le màoyì bìlěi kě hái yǒu jǐ gè guójiā duì cháyè zhēngshōu gāoé guānshuì zhè jǐ nián yǒude gōngsī tóujī shībài kuī le jùé de zījīn · Some countries lowered their trade barriers this year, but a few still charge high tariffs on tea. In recent years some companies have lost fortunes speculating.

lawyer sun 所以合同里要写清楚汇率。别看这是小事，出了问题，到时候大家就无话可说了。还有，这些收入都要依法纳税。
suǒyǐ hétóng lǐ yào xiě qīngchu huìlǜ biékàn zhè shì xiǎo shì chū le wèntí dào shíhou dàjiā jiù wúhuà kěshuō le hái yǒu zhèxiē shōurù dōu yào yīfǎ nàshuì · So the contract has to spell out the exchange rate. It may look minor, but if something goes wrong, nobody will have a leg to stand on. And all this income has to be taxed according to the law.

manager liu 国家在调控市场，对小企业的税收政策也变好了。银行给你们的贷款额度也提高了吧？
guójiā zài tiáokòng shìchǎng duì xiǎo qǐyè de shuìshōu zhèngcè yě biàn hǎo le yínháng gěi nǐmen de dàikuǎn édù yě tígāo le ba · The government is regulating the market, and tax policy for small businesses has improved. Has the bank raised your credit limit too?

ms zhang 提高了。我们按时缴税，信用好。今年我们在国内茶叶市场的份额第一次超过了百分之五。
tígāo le wǒmen ànshí jiǎo shuì xìnyòng hǎo jīnnián wǒmen zài guónèi cháyè shìchǎng de fèné dì yī cì chāoguò le bǎi fēn zhī wǔ · It has. We pay our taxes on time and have a good credit record. This year our share of the domestic tea market went over five per cent for the first time.

lawyer sun 签了字的合同才有法律效力，明天上午我们一起签。
qiān le zì de hétóng cái yǒu fǎlǜ xiàolì míngtiān shàngwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qiān · A contract only has legal force once it's signed: let's sign together tomorrow morning.

manager liu 我们两家的分成也是一样：系统帮你们省下来的钱，我们二八分成。我们的收入跟你们的效益挂钩。
wǒmen liǎng jiā de fēnchéng yě shì yíyàng xìtǒng bāng nǐmen shěng xiàlái de qián wǒmen èrbā fēnchéng

wǒmen de shōurù gēn nǐmen de xiàoyì guàgōu · Same for our split: of whatever the system saves you, we take twenty per cent. Our income is linked to your returns.

ms zhang 被冻结的钱也回来了，资金终于能周转开了。今年的收支第一次有了盈利，不再是赤字了。

bèi dòngjié de qián yě huílái le zījīn zhōngyú néng zhōuzhuǎn kāi le jīnnián de shōuzhī dì yī cì yǒu le yínglì bú zài shì chìzì le · The frozen money is back too, so our cash flow finally works. For the first time this year, the books show a profit, not a deficit.

anna 省下来的钱再投进新产品，客户就更多，这就是良性循环。

shěng xiàlái de qián zài tóu jìn xīn chǎnpǐn kèhù jiù gèng duō zhè jiùshì liángxìng xúnhuán · Put the savings into new products and you get more clients: a virtuous circle.

manager liu 不过不能只看一时的得失。我们要建立长效的办法，先把基础夯实。

búguò bù néng zhǐ kàn yìshí de déshī wǒmen yào jiànlì chángxiào de bànfǎ xiān bǎ jīchǔ hāngshí · But we can't just look at short-term gains and losses. We need something that lasts, and to make the foundations solid first.

ms zhang 我同意。三十年的外贸经验是我们的根基，是这些困难造就了今天的我们。我们打算在上海再设一个小仓库。

wǒ tóngyì sānshí nián de wàimào jīngyàn shì wǒmen de gēnjī shì zhèxiē kùnnan zàojiù le jīntiān de wǒmen wǒmen dǎsuàn zài Shànghǎi zài shè yí gè xiǎo cāngkù · I agree. Thirty years in foreign trade is our bedrock, and it's the hard times that made us who we are. We're planning to set up another small warehouse in Shanghai.

anna 上海的房租很高昂，新仓库的造价也不低。不过有了我们构建的系统，一个小仓库就够用了。

Shànghǎi de fángzū hěn gāoáng xīn cāngkù de zàojià yě bù dī búguò yǒu le wǒmen gòujiàn de xìtǒng yí gè xiǎo cāngkù jiù gòu yòng le · Rent in Shanghai is steep, and a new warehouse isn't cheap to build. But with the system we built, one small warehouse is enough.

ms zhang 公司当然要营利，可是也要给员工营造一个好的工作环境。员工的想法是我们改进的源泉。

gōngsī dāngrán yào yínglì kěshì yě yào gěi yuángōng yíngzào yí gè hǎo de gōngzuò huánjìng yuángōng de xiǎngfǎ shì wǒmen gǎijìn de yuánquán · Of course a company has to make money, but it also has to create a good place to work. Our staff's ideas are where our improvements come from.

manager liu 这次的成功得益于你们的底子好。我们的分成办法也奏效了，真管用。

zhè cì de chénggōng déyì yú nǐmen de dǐzi hǎo wǒmen de fēnchéng bànfǎ yě zòuxiào le zhēn guǎnyòng · This success is down to your solid foundations. And our profit-sharing idea worked too: it really does the trick.

anna 这次合作是怎么促成的，您还记得吗？

zhè cì hézuò shì zěnme cùchéng de nín hái jìde ma · Do you remember how this partnership came about?

ms zhang 当然记得！一顿午饭，小明的爸爸做的菜，好吃是好吃，就是盐放多了一点儿。

dāngrán jìde yí dùn wǔfàn Xiǎomíng de bàba zuò de cài hǎochī shì hǎochī jiùshì yán fàng duō le yìdiǎnr · Of course! One lunch: Xiaoming's dad's cooking, tasty, sure, but a bit too much salt.

chapter 5 chapter 5: by the river

anna 博览会旁边这个亲水平台真舒服。晚上的上海分外安宁。
bólǎnhuì pángbiān zhège qīn shuǐ píngtái zhēn shūfu wǎnshang de Shànghǎi fènwài ānníng · This waterside deck by the expo is lovely. Shanghai is especially peaceful at night.

ms zhang 这三天我极度紧张，现在心里越发踏实了。安娜，谢谢你们。
zhè sān tiān wǒ jídù jǐnzhāng xiànzài xīnlǐ yuèfā tāshi le Ānnà xièxie nǐmen · I've been incredibly tense these three days, and now I feel calmer and calmer. Anna, thank you all.

anna 累是累了一点儿，可是我学到了很多：关税、供应链、税务、分成……
lèi shì lèi le yìdiǎnr kěshì wǒ xué dào le hěn duō guānshuì gōngyìngliàn shuìwù fēnchéng · Tired, sure, but I've learned so much: tariffs, supply chains, tax, profit shares…

manager liu 你们这次化解了好几个问题：数据对不上，红茶在路上卡住，对面降价，还有假货。
nǐmen zhè cì huàjiě le hǎo jǐ gè wèntí shùjù duì bu shàng hóngchá zài lùshang qiǎ zhù duìmiàn jiàngjià hái yǒu jiǎ huò · You defused quite a few problems this time: data that didn't match, black tea stuck on the road, the price cuts opposite, and the fakes.

anna 那天晚上，小明先把数据复原，再把两个系统衔接起来，坏了的手机也替换了。
nà tiān wǎnshang Xiǎomíng xiān bǎ shùjù fùyuán zài bǎ liǎng gè xìtǒng xiánjiē qǐlai huài le de shǒujī yě tìhuàn le · That night Xiaoming restored the data first, then linked the two systems, and replaced the broken phone as well.

manager liu 红茶不够，就从杭州调过来；空出来的地方用绿茶填充。现在三个仓库的库存终于均衡了。
hóngchá búgòu jiù cóng Hángzhōu diào guolai kòng chulai de dìfang yòng lǜchá tiánchōng xiànzài sān gè cāngkù de kùcún zhōngyú jūnhéng le · When black tea ran short, we brought some over from Hangzhou and filled the empty space with green tea. Now the stock in all three warehouses is finally balanced.

ms zhang 那个老客户的气也平息了，我们的关系缓和了，比以前更稳固。
nàge lǎo kèhù de qì yě píngxī le wǒmen de guānxì huǎnhé le bǐ yǐqián gèng wěngù · And that old client has calmed down: things between us have eased, and the relationship is stronger than before.

anna 这一年，您的公司从低谷走出来，又挽回了客户的信任。
zhè yì nián nín de gōngsī cóng dīgǔ zǒu chulai yòu wǎnhuí le kèhù de xìnrèn · This year your company has climbed out of the slump and won back its clients' trust.

anna 当年老街卖茶的热闹又重现了，还填补了市场上的一个空白。
dāngnián lǎo jiē mài chá de rènao yòu chóngxiàn le hái tiánbǔ le shìchǎng shàng de yí gè kòngbái · The bustle of the old tea street has come back to life, and it fills a gap in the market.

manager liu 这个系统是我们两家合作的产物。几个月以前，方案才刚刚成型；现在测试全部达标，合作也取得了长足的进步。安娜，你在物流方面也开始有建树了。
zhège xìtǒng shì wǒmen liǎng jiā hézuò de chǎnwù jǐ gè yuè yǐqián fāngàn cái gānggāng chéngxíng xiànzài cèshì quánbù dábiāo hézuò yě qǔdé le chángzú de jìnbù Ānnà nǐ zài wùliú fāngmiàn yě kāishǐ yǒu jiànshù le · This system is the product of our two companies working together. A few months ago the plan had only just taken shape; now every test meets the standard and the partnership has come a long way. Anna, you're starting to make your mark in logistics too.

ms zhang 是你们帮我们挽救了一个老品牌。我只希望公司以后平稳一点儿，工人们能过安定、安稳的日子。
shì nǐmen bāng wǒmen wǎnjiù le yí gè lǎo pǐnpái wǒ zhǐ xīwàng gōngsī yǐhòu píngwěn yìdiǎnr gōngrénmen néng guò āndìng ānwěn de rìzi · You helped us save an old brand. All I want now is for the company to have a steadier time, so the workers can have a settled, secure life.

manager liu 以后每天检查一次数据，要成为常态。两个团队轮换着做，交替检查。
yǐhòu měi tiān jiǎnchá yí cì shùjù yào chéngwéi chángtài liǎng gè tuánduì lúnhuàn zhe zuò jiāotì jiǎnchá · From now on, a daily data check has to be the norm. The two teams will take turns, checking in shifts.

anna 我们两家公司正好互补：你们懂茶，我们懂数据。
wǒmen liǎng jiā gōngsī zhènghǎo hùbǔ nǐmen dǒng chá wǒmen dǒng shùjù · Our two companies complement each other perfectly: you know tea, we know data.

ms zhang 下一步，我们的系统还要跟国外客户的系统接轨，让整条供应链都贯通。
xià yí bù wǒmendexìtǒngháiyàogēnguówài kèhù de xìtǒng jiēguǐ ràng zhěng tiáo gōngyìngliàn dōu guàntōng · Next, our system has to plug into our overseas clients' systems, so the whole supply chain is connected.

manager liu 这次合作为以后奠定了基础。明年的博览会，我们一起再来！
zhè cì hézuò wèi yǐhòu diàndìng le jīchǔ míngnián de bólǎnhuì wǒmen yìqǐ zài lái · This partnership has laid the foundation for what comes next. Next year's expo: we'll come back together!

Three days at an expo, from the notice on the wall to the deals on the table: all in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 148 hired and fired

Talk about hiring, appointing, resigning and being laid off, and say "even if …, still …" with 纵然……，也……

Jobs come and go: news of layoffs, a new boss, a friend switching companies. These are the words people use about work every day.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
雇	gù	to hire, employ	他们雇了两个人帮忙搬家。 They hired two people to help them move.
雇佣	gùyōng	to employ, hire	这家工厂雇佣了三百多名工人。 The factory employs over three hundred workers.
雇员	gùyuán	employee	公司有两千多名雇员。 The company has over two thousand employees.
雇主	gùzhǔ	employer	雇主必须按时给员工发工资。 Employers must pay their staff on time.
聘	pìn	to engage, appoint (a professional)	公司聘了一位律师当顾问。 The company has engaged a lawyer as an adviser.
聘任	pìnrèn	to appoint (to a post)	学校聘任他为{wei2-5b}历史系{xi4-5}主任。 The university appointed him head of the history department.
聘用	pìnyòng	to hire, take on (staff)	这家公司今年聘用了五十名大学毕业生。 The company has taken on fifty university graduates this year.
招募	zhāomù	to recruit	我们正在招募志愿者。 We're recruiting volunteers.
人选	rénxuǎn	candidate (for a post)	新经理的人选还没定。 They haven't chosen the new manager yet.
人手	rénshǒu	manpower, staff (hands)	最近订单太多，人手不够。 We have too many orders right now: we're short-handed.
物色	wùsè	to look for, seek out (a person)	经理一直在物色合适的人选。 The manager has been on the lookout for the right candidate.
引荐	yǐnjiàn	to recommend, introduce (a person)	是王老师把我引荐给这家公司的。 It was Teacher Wang who introduced me to this company.
任命	rènmìng	to appoint	公司任命她为{wei2-5b}新的总经理。 The company appointed her as the new general manager.
任职	rènzhí	to hold a post	他在一家外贸公司任职十年。 He held a post at a foreign-trade company for ten years.
就任	jiùrèn	to take office	新校长下个月正式就任。 The new head takes office next month.

就职	jiùzhí	to take up a post, be sworn in	他毕业以后在一家银行就职。 After graduating he took a job at a bank.
上任	shàngrèn	to take up a post; the predecessor	新经理一上任，就开始改革。 The moment the new manager took over, she started making changes.
上岗	shànggǎng	to start work (at a post)	新员工培训一个星期以后|才|能上岗。 New staff can only start work after a week of training.
出任	chūrèn	to take on (a post)	她将出任这家公司的新经理。 She is to become the company's new manager.
在职	zàizhí	to be in work, on the payroll	他一边在职工作，一边读硕士。 He's doing a master's while keeping his job.
现任	xiànrèn	current, incumbent; to hold (a post) now	现任经理是去年从上海调来的。 The current manager was moved here from Shanghai last year.
前任	qiánrèn	predecessor	新经理比前任年轻十岁。 The new manager is ten years younger than her predecessor.
卸任	xièrèn	to leave office, step down	老校长明年卸任。 The old head steps down next year.
免职	miǎnzhí	to remove from office	因为工作出了大错，他被免职了。 He was removed from his post after a serious mistake at work.
辞	cí	to resign, quit; to leave	她把工作辞了，回老家开店。 She quit her job and went home to open a shop.
辞呈	cíchéng	(letter of) resignation	他今天上午交了辞呈。 He handed in his resignation this morning.
辞退	cítuì	to dismiss, let go	饭店生意不好，辞退了两个服务员。 Business was poor, so the restaurant let two waiters go.
解雇	jiěgù	to dismiss, fire	公司不能没有理由就解雇员工。 A company can't fire staff without a reason.
开除	kāichú	to expel, fire	他因为偷公司的东西被开除|了。 He was fired for stealing from the company.
裁员	cáiyuán	to cut staff, lay off	因为生意不好，公司决定裁员。 Business is bad, so the company has decided to cut jobs.
跳槽	tiàocáo	to change jobs, job-hop	他工作三年，跳槽了两次。 He's changed jobs twice in three years.
饭碗	fànwǎn	job, livelihood (rice bowl)	很多人担心自己的饭碗不保。 Lots of people are worried about losing their jobs.
谋生	móushēng	to make a living	他年轻的时候一个人去上海谋生。 When he was young he went to Shanghai alone to make a living.
务工	wùgōng	to work as a labourer (away from home)	春节以后，村里的年轻人又出去务工了。 After the Spring Festival, the young people of the village went off to work in the cities again.
劳务	láowù	labour services	这家公司给工厂提供劳务。 This company supplies labour to factories.

pattern 纵然……，也……: even if …, still …

纵然 | even if this happens | ，也 | this still holds

纵然 is a written, stronger 即使: “even if, granted that”. The first half can be true or only imagined; the second half, with 也, says it changes nothing. 纵然……再……，也…… pushes it further: “however …”. You will also read 纵使 in books: it means the same.

纵然公司有困难，也不能这么突然裁员。 zòngrán gōngsī yǒu kùnnan yě bù néng zhème tūrán cáiyuán Even if the company is in trouble, it can’t cut jobs this suddenly.

纵然你不想跳槽，也可以先跟刘经理聊聊。 zòngrán nǐ bù xiǎng tiàocáo yě kěyǐ xiān gēn Liújīnglǐ liáo liao Even if you don’t want to change jobs, you could still have a chat with Manager Liu.

纵然工资再高，我也不想离开老同事。 zòngrán gōngzī zài gāo wǒ yě bù xiǎng líkāi lǎo tóngshì However high the pay, I don’t want to leave my old colleagues.

dialogue noodles and news

xiaoming 安娜，你听说了吗？我们公司要裁员了，一下子要辞退两百多人。
Ānnà nǐ tīngshuō le ma wǒmen gōngsī yào cáiyuán le yíxià zi yào cítuì liǎngbǎi duō rén · Anna, have you heard? My company is cutting jobs: they're letting more than two hundred people go at once.

anna 啊？那你呢？
a nà nǐ ne · What? And you?

xiaoming 我暂时没事。可是跟我一起进公司的老张被解雇了。他在公司任职八年，就这样丢了饭碗。
wǒ zànshí méishì kěshì gēn wǒ yìqǐ jìn gōngsī de lǎo zhāng bèi jiěgù le tā zài gōngsī rènzhí bā nián jiù zhèyàng diū le fànwǎn · I'm fine for now. But Lao Zhang, who joined the same time as me, has been let go. Eight years at the company, and just like that he's lost his job.

anna 纵然公司有困难，也不能这么突然吧？
zòngrán gōngsī yǒu kùnnan yě bù néng zhème tūrán ba · Even if the company's in trouble, it can't be this sudden, surely?

xiaoming 公司说是按合同来的，雇主有这个权利，我们雇员处于劣势，能做的不多。他又不是犯了错被开除的，至少还有补偿。
gōngsī shuō shì àn hétóng lái de gùzhǔ yǒu zhège quánlì wǒmen gùyuán chǔyú lièshì néng zuò de bù duō tā yòu bú shì fàn le cuò bèi kāichú de zhìshǎo hái yǒu bǔcháng · The company says it's all by the contract: employers have the right, and we employees are at a disadvantage, so there's not much we can do. At least he wasn't fired for doing something wrong, so he gets compensation.

anna 要是补偿不够，他可以去维权。那他以后怎么谋生？
yàoshi bǔcháng búgòu tā kěyǐ qù wéiquán nà tā yǐhòu zěnme móushēng · If the compensation isn't enough, he can stand up for his rights. So how will he make a living now?

xiaoming 他先去朋友的劳务公司帮忙。现在很多工厂不直接雇佣工人，都找劳务公司。从农村出来务工的人，很多都在那儿找工作。
tā xiān qù péngyou de láowù gōngsī bāngmáng xiànzài hěn duō gōngchǎng bù zhíjiē gùyōng gōngrén dōu zhǎo láowù gōngsī cóng nóngcūn chūlái wùgōng de rén hěn duō dōu zài nàr zhǎo gōngzuò · For now he's helping out at a friend's labour agency. A lot of factories don't hire workers directly any more: they go through agencies. Many people who come from the countryside to find work get jobs there.

anna 我们公司正好相反。博览会以后订单太多，人手不够，今年已经聘用了二十多个新人，培训一个星期就上岗。
wǒmen gōngsī zhènghǎo xiāngfǎn bólǎnhuì yǐhòu dìngdān tài duō rénshǒu búgòu jīnnián yǐjīng pìnyòng le èrshí duō gè xīnrén péixùn yí gè xīngqī jiù shànggǎng · My company is the exact opposite. Since the expo we have too many orders and not enough people: we've taken on over twenty new staff this year, and they start work after a week's training.

xiaoming 你们公司真是欣欣向荣！你们聘人看什么？
nǐmen gōngsī zhēnshi xīnxīn xiàngróng nǐmen pìn rén kàn shénme · Your company really is thriving! What do you look for when you hire?

anna 看能力。刘经理还在招募一个工程师，负责新的物流项目。她一直在物色合适的人选，公司打算任命一个有经验的人出任技术负责人。
kàn nénglì Liújīnglǐ hái zài zhāomù yí gè gōngchéngshī fùzé xīn de wùliú xiàngmù tā yìzhí zài wùsè héshì de rénxuǎn gōngsī dǎsuàn rènmìng yí gè yǒu jīngyàn de rén chūrèn jìshù fùzérén · Ability. Manager Liu is also recruiting an engineer to run the new logistics project. She's been looking for the right candidate for a while: the company plans to appoint someone experienced as technical lead.

xiaoming 要求一定很高吧？
yāoqiú yídìng hěn gāo ba · They must want someone really good.

anna 她说，上次在视频里帮我们修系统的那个人就很合适。
tā shuō shàng cì zài shìpín lǐ bāng wǒmen xiū xìtǒng de nà gè rén jiù hěn héshì · She says the person who fixed our system over a video call last time would be perfect.

xiaoming 你是说我？我可从来没想过跳槽，这真是出人意料。
nǐ shì shuō wǒ wǒ kě cónglái méi xiǎng guo tiàocáo zhè zhēnshi chūrényìliào · You mean me? I've never even thought about changing jobs: that's a real surprise.

anna 纵然你不想跳槽，也可以先跟刘经理聊聊。我可以把你引荐给她。
zòngrán nǐ bù xiǎng tiàocáo yě kěyǐ xiān gēn Liújīnglǐ liáo liao wǒ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ yǐnjiàn gěi tā · Even if you don't want to switch, you could still talk to Manager Liu. I can introduce you.

xiaoming 最近公司变化太大了。前任经理上个月卸任，听说是被免职的；现任经理上个月才正式就任，一上任就开始裁员，大家都措手不及。
zuìjìn gōngsī biànhuà tài dà le qiánrèn jīnglǐ shàng gè yuè xièrèn tīngshuō shì bèi miǎnzhí de xiànrèn jīnglǐ shàng gè yuè cái zhèngshì jiùrèn yí shàngrèn jiù kāishǐ cáiyuán dàjiā dōu cuòshǒu bùjí · So much is changing at my company. The old manager left last month, removed from his post, they say; the current one only officially took over last month and started cutting jobs the moment he arrived, catching everyone off guard.

anna 新官上任三把火。
xīn guān shàngrèn sān bǎ huǒ · New brooms sweep clean.

xiaoming 还有几个同事自己把工作辞了，有的已经交了辞呈。老张说，他下个月去一家小公司就职，人家只雇了五个人。
hái yǒu jǐ gè tóngshì zìjǐ bǎ gōngzuò cí le yǒude yǐjīng jiāo le cíchéng lǎo zhāng shuō tā xià gè yuè qù yì jiā xiǎo gōngsī jiùzhí rénjia zhǐ gù le wǔ gè rén · And a few colleagues have quit of their own accord; some have already handed in their resignations. Lao Zhang says he's starting at a small company next month: they've only got five people.

anna 如果你来我们公司，刘经理说会正式聘任你为项目的技术负责人。
rúguǒ nǐ lái wǒmen gōngsī Liújīnglǐ shuō huì zhèngshì pìnrèn nǐ wéi xiàngmù de jìshù fùzérén · If you came to us, Manager Liu says you'd be formally appointed technical lead on the project.

xiaoming 我在现在的公司在职五年了，还一边工作一边读了硕士。纵然工资再高，我也不想随便离开老同事。
wǒ zài xiànzài de gōngsī zàizhí wǔ nián le hái yìbiān gōngzuò yìbiān dú le shuòshì zòngrán gōngzī zài gāo wǒ yě bù xiǎng suíbiàn líkāi lǎo tóngshì · I've been at my company five years, and I did my master's while working there. However high the pay, I don't want to walk away from my old colleagues on a whim.

anna 我明白。你好好想想，不着急，想好了只管告诉我。
wǒ míngbai nǐ hǎohǎo xiǎng xiang bù zháojí xiǎng hǎo le zhǐguǎn gàosu wǒ · I understand. Take your time and think it over: there's no rush. When you've decided, just tell me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

雇
gù
to hire, employ

佣
yōng
servant

good to know · Leaving a job, from gentle to harsh: 辞职 / 辞 (you quit), 卸任 (you step down), 辞退 (they let you go), 裁员 (job cuts), 解雇 (dismissed), 免职 (removed from office), 开除 (fired as punishment). Starting a job: 上岗 (start work), 上任 / 就任 (take office), 就职 (take up a post), 出任 (become, for a high post). 跳槽 is to switch companies.

Layoffs, hiring and a tempting offer: you can now talk about jobs the way people really do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 149 bosses and teams

Describe who's who in a company, from the board to the front desk, and give a quick example with the spoken marker 这不.

Titles, ranks and who reports to whom matter a lot in Chinese workplaces. Knowing the words helps you read a company, and a name card.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
上司	shàngsi	boss, superior	我的上司对我要求很高。 My boss expects a lot of me.
下属	xiàshǔ	subordinate	好的领导会听下属的意见。 A good leader listens to the people who work for them.
下级	xiàjí	lower level, subordinate	上级的决定，下级要执行。 Decisions from above are carried out by those below.
同仁	tóngrén	colleagues (formal)	感谢各位同仁这一年的辛苦工作。 Thank you, colleagues, for all your hard work this year.
骨干	gǔgàn	backbone, key member	她是我们团队的技术骨干。 She's the technical backbone of our team.
元老	yuánlǎo	founding member, veteran	王师傅是公司的元老，一开始就在这儿。 Master Wang is one of the company's founding members: he's been here from the start.
资深	zīshēn	senior, experienced	他是一位资深记者。 He's a senior journalist.
资历	zīlì	experience, record (of service)	他的资历比我老，可是能力不一定比我强。 He's been here longer than me, but he isn't necessarily more capable.
职称	zhíchēng	professional title	她今年评上了高级工程师的职称。 This year she was awarded the title of senior engineer.
头衔	tóuxián	title (of a position)	他的名片上有好几个头衔。 His business card lists several titles.
级别	jíbié	level, rank	在公司里，工资跟级别有关系。 In the company, pay depends on your level.
首席	shǒuxí	chief; first seat	他是这家公司的首席工程师。 He's the company's chief engineer.
董事	dǒngshì	director (of a board)	她是这家公司的董事之一。 She's one of the company's directors.
董事会	dǒngshìhuì	board of directors	这件事要董事会决定。 This has to be decided by the board.
董事长	dǒngshìzhǎng	chairman (of the board)	董事长每年都给全体员工写一封信。 Every year the chairman writes a letter to all the staff.
理事	lǐshì	council member; to manage affairs	他是本市足球协会的理事。 He's a council member of the city football

			association.
干事	gànshi	officer, secretary (of a group)	她在学生会{hui4-3}当干事，负责组织活动。 She's an officer in the student union, in charge of organising events.
创始人	chuàngshǐrén	founder	这家公司的创始人只有二十五岁。 The company's founder is only twenty-five.
接班人	jiēbānrén	successor	老板一直在找自己的接班人。 The boss has long been looking for a successor.
接班	jiēbān	to take over (a shift, a role)	我八点下班，小李八点来接班。 I finish at eight, and Xiao Li takes over at eight.
接手	jiēshǒu	to take over (a task)	这个项目我刚接手，还不太熟悉。 I've only just taken over this project, so I don't know it well yet.
接替	jiētì	to replace, succeed (someone)	她走了以后，谁来接替她的工作? Once she leaves, who will take over her work?
交接	jiāojiē	to hand over (work)	离开以前，他把工作跟同事交接好了。 Before leaving, he handed his work over to his colleague.
掌管	zhǎngguǎn	to be in charge of	家里的钱都是妈妈掌管的。 Mum is in charge of all the money at home.
掌舵	zhǎngduò	to be at the helm; helmsman	新董事长掌舵以后，公司发展得很快。 Since the new chairman took the helm, the company has grown fast.
领军	lǐngjūn	to lead (a field); leading	他是这个领域的领军人物。 He's a leading figure in this field.
带头	dàitóu	to take the lead, set an example	经理带头加班，大家也都留了下来。 The manager stayed late first, so everyone else stayed too.
带队	dàiduì	to lead a team or group	这次比赛由王老师带队。 Teacher Wang is leading the team for this competition.
牵头	qiāntóu	to take the lead (in organising)	这个项目由我们公司牵头，三家公司一起做。 Our company is leading this project, with three companies working on it together.
率	shuài	to lead (a group)	校长率{shuai4-7}全体老师去山区学校参观。 The head led all the teachers on a visit to a mountain school.
器重	qìzhòng	to think highly of (a junior)	老板很器重这个年轻人。 The boss thinks very highly of this young man.
重用	zhòngyòng	to give an important post to	公司重用年轻人，很多经理不到三十岁。 The company gives young people big jobs: many managers are under thirty.
提拔	tíbá	to promote	她工作努力，很快就被提拔了。 She worked hard and was soon promoted.
晋升	jìnshēng	to be promoted	他去年晋升为{wei2-5b}部门经理。 Last year he was promoted to department manager.
赏识	shǎngshí	to appreciate (someone's talent)	老板很赏识她的能力。 The boss really appreciates her ability.

pattern 这不: see? here's a case in point

a general statement **。这不，** **a fresh example, right here**

这不 (literally “isn’t this…?”) is a spoken marker that brings in proof straight after you say something: “see? case in point”. First make your point, then 这不，+ an example that is happening now or just happened. It is never a question and never negative.

董事长很器重年轻人。这不，安娜三十出头就带队了。 **dǒngshìzhǎng hěn qìzhòng niánqīng rén zhè bù Ānnà sānshí chūtóu jiù dàiduì le** The chairman thinks highly of young people. Look at Anna: just over thirty and already leading a team.

我们公司提拔人只看能力。这不，小王来了两年就晋升了。 **wǒmen gōngsī tíbá rén zhǐ kàn nénglì zhè bù xiǎo Wáng lái le liǎng nián jiù jìnshēng le** My company promotes people on ability alone. Take Xiao Wang: promoted after just two years.

他做事总是很认真。这不，又在办公室加班呢。 **tā zuò shì zǒngshì hěn rènzhēn zhè bù yòu zài bàngōngshì jiābān ne** He always takes his work seriously. See? He’s working late in the office again.

dialogue who’s who

xiaoming 安娜，你们公司到底是谁说了算？
Ānnà nǐmen gōngsī dàodǐ shì shéi shuō le suàn · Anna, who actually calls the shots at your company?

anna 大事都要董事会决定。董事长就是公司的创始人，已经掌舵十五年了，明年要退休。
dàshì dōu yào dǒngshìhuì juédìng dǒngshìzhǎng jiùshì gōngsī de chuàngshǐrén yǐjīng zhǎngduò shíwǔ nián le míngnián yào tuìxiū · The big decisions are made by the board. The chairman is the company's founder: he's been at the helm for fifteen years, and he retires next year.

little sister 那谁来接班？
nà shéi lái jiēbān · So who's taking over from him?

anna 接班人还没定。几个董事里，有一位是公司的元老，资历最老；还有我们的首席工程师，是这个领域的领军人物。
jiēbānrén hái méi dìng jǐ gè dǒngshì lǐ yǒu yí wèi shì gōngsī de yuánlǎo zīlì zuì lǎo hái yǒu wǒmen de shǒuxí gōngchéngshī shì zhège lǐngyù de lǐngjūn rénwù · The successor hasn't been chosen yet. Among the directors, one is a founding member with the longest service; the other is our chief engineer, a leading figure in the field.

xiaoming 刘经理呢？
Liújīnglǐ ne · And Manager Liu?

anna 她是我的上司，很受董事长器重。这不，新的物流项目又让她牵头了。
tā shì wǒ de shàngsi hěn shòu dǒngshìzhǎng qìzhòng zhè bù xīn de wùliú xiàngmù yòu ràng tā qiāntóu le · She's my boss, and the chairman thinks very highly of her. See? She's been put in charge of the new logistics project too.

little sister 你们公司提拔人看什么？看资历，还是看能力？
nǐmen gōngsī tíbá rén kàn shénme kàn zīlì háishi kàn nénglì · What does your company promote people on? Length of service, or ability?

anna 主要看能力。公司很重用年轻人。这不，我三十出头，就带队去上海参加博览会了。
zhǔyào kàn nénglì gōngsī hěn zhòngyòng niánqīng rén zhè bù wǒ sānshí chūtóu jiù dàiduì qù Shànghǎi cānjiā bólǎnhuì le · Mostly ability. The company gives young people big jobs. Look at me: just over thirty and I led the team to the Shanghai expo.

xiaoming 我们公司正相反，晋升要看级别、看职称。有的人头衔一大堆，名片上写满了，可是什么都不管。
wǒmen gōngsī zhèng xiāngfǎn jìnshēng yào kàn jíbié kàn zhíchēng yǒude rén tóuxián yí dà duī míngpiàn shàng xiě mǎn le kěshì shénme dōu bù guǎn · My company is the opposite: promotion depends on your grade and your professional title. Some people have a pile of titles, their name cards are full of them, but they're not in charge of anything.

anna 这种人只会标榜自己，大家都敬而远之。
zhè zhǒng rén zhǐ huì biāobǎng zìjǐ dàjiā dōu jìngéryuǎnzhī · People like that just talk themselves up, and everyone keeps their distance.

little sister 我们学生会也一样！我只是一个小干事，上面一级一级的，开个会要先问好几个人。我们老师还是一个学会的理事呢。
wǒmen xuéshēng huì yě yíyàng wǒ zhǐshì yí gè xiǎo gànshi shàngmiàn yì jí yì jí de kāi gè huì yào xiān wèn hǎo jǐ gè rén wǒmen lǎoshī hái shì yí gè xuéhuì de lǐshì ne · Same in our student union! I'm just a junior officer, with level after level above me: holding a meeting means checking with several people first. And our teacher sits on the council of an academic society.

anna 上级和下级的关系很重要。好的上司会听下属的意见，刘经理就是这样。
shàngjí hé xiàjí de guānxì hěn zhòngyào hǎo de shàngsi huì tīng xiàshǔ de yìjiàn Liújīnglǐ jiùshì zhèyàng · Relations between levels matter a lot. A good boss listens to her team, and Manager Liu does.

xiaoming 如果我去了，要接手哪些工作？
rúguǒ wǒ qù le yào jiēshǒu nǎxiē gōngzuò · If I joined, what work would I be taking over?

anna 以前的技术负责人调到上海去了，你要接替他的工作。他会跟你交接好，你就掌管整个技术团队。
yǐqián de jìshù fùzérén diào dào Shànghǎi qù le nǐ yào jiētì tā de gōngzuò tā huì gēn nǐ jiāojiē hǎo nǐ jiù

zhǎngguǎn zhěnggè jìshù tuánduì · The old technical lead has moved to Shanghai, so you'd replace him. He'd hand everything over to you properly, and you'd be in charge of the whole tech team.

xiaoming 团队有多少人?

tuánduì yǒu duōshao rén · How big is the team?

anna 十二个人，有三个资深工程师，都是团队的骨干。大家都很努力，经理常常带头加班，有时候加到精疲力竭。

shíèr gè rén yǒu sān gè zīshēn gōngchéngshī dōu shì tuánduì de gǔgàn dàjiā dōu hěn nǔlì jīnglǐ chángcháng dàitóu jiābān yǒu shíhou jiā dào jīngpí lìjié · Twelve people, including three senior engineers who are the backbone of the team. Everyone works hard, and the manager often stays late first, sometimes until they're all exhausted.

little sister 加班不是什么好事!

jiābān bú shì shénme hǎo shì · Overtime is not a good thing!

anna 所以刘经理说，以后不能这样。每年年会上，董事长都会说：“感谢各位同仁这一年的努力。”

suǒyǐ Liújīnglǐ shuō yǐhòu bù néng zhèyàng měi nián nián huì shàng dǒngshìzhǎng dōu huì shuō gǎnxiè gèwèi tóngrén zhè yì nián de nǔlì · That's why Manager Liu says it can't go on. At the annual party every year the chairman says: “Thank you, colleagues, for all your efforts this year.”

xiaoming 听起来挺好的。你们董事长是怎么发现刘经理的?

tīng qǐlai tǐng hǎo de nǐmen dǒngshìzhǎng shì zěnme fāxiàn Liújīnglǐ de · Sounds good. How did your chairman spot Manager Liu?

anna 十年前，她率一个三个人的小组拿下了公司第一个大客户。董事长很赏识她，两年就把她提拔成了经理。

shí nián qián tā shuài yí gè sān gè rén de xiǎozǔ ná xià le gōngsī dì yī gè dà kèhù dǒngshìzhǎng hěn shǎngshí tā liǎng nián jiù bǎ tā tíbá chéng le jīnglǐ · Ten years ago she led a three-person team that won the company's first big client. The chairman was so impressed he promoted her to manager within two years.

little sister 哥哥，有朝一日你也会被赏识的!

gēge yǒuzhāo yīrì nǐ yě huì bèi shǎngshí de · Big brother, one day you'll be spotted too!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

舵
duò
rudder

good to know · Up and down the ladder: 董事长 (chairman) → 董事会 (the board) → 总经理 (general manager) → 经理 (manager) → 员工 (staff). Your 上司 is above you, your 下属 below. Promotion verbs: the boss 提拔 / 重用 you (promotes you, gives you a big job); you 晋升 (are promoted). 器重 and 赏识 are how the boss feels about you.

Board, boss, backbone, successor: you can now map out a Chinese company and know who's who. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 150 pay and performance

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 20 · the workplace

Talk about pay, performance reviews, targets and workload, using the idiom frames 非A非B, 可A可B and 连A带B.

Reviews, bonuses, expense claims and who does what: the everyday business of working life, in the words your boss will use.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
年薪	niánxīn	annual salary	这个职位的年薪是三十万。 The post pays three hundred thousand a year.
薪酬	xīnchóu	pay, remuneration	这家公司的薪酬在行业里不算高。 Pay at this company isn't high for the industry.
报酬	bàochou	pay, fee (for work done)	这次翻译的报酬是两千元。 The fee for this translation is two thousand yuan.
奖赏	jiǎngshǎng	to reward	公司奖赏了这次表现最好的团队。 The company rewarded the team that did best this time.
报销	bàoxiāo	to claim back (expenses)	出差的车票可以报销。 Train tickets for business trips can be claimed back.
绩效	jìxiào	performance (at work)	公司每年考核一次员工的绩效。 The company assesses staff performance once a year.
业绩	yèjì	results, track record	她今年的业绩是全公司最好的。 Her results this year are the best in the whole company.
指标	zhǐbiāo	target, indicator	这个月的销售指标已经完成了。 This month's sales target has already been met.
评审	píngshěn	to assess, judge; panel	专家们正在评审这些设计。 The experts are assessing the designs.
处分	chǔfèn	to discipline; disciplinary action	他上班喝酒，受到了处分。 He was disciplined for drinking at work.
不力	bùlì	ineffective, not up to the job	这次问题这么大，是因为管理不力。 The problem got this big because of weak management.
怠工	dàigōng	to go slow (at work)	工人们对新规定不满，开始消极怠工。 Unhappy with the new rules, the workers started going slow.
罢工	bàgōng	to strike, go on strike	因为工资问题，工人们罢工了三天。 The workers went on strike for three days over pay.
工会	gōnghuì	trade union	工会代表员工跟公司谈判。 The union negotiates with the company on

			behalf of the staff.
敬业	jìngyè	dedicated (to one's work)	他工作非常敬业，从来不迟到。 He's very dedicated to his work and is never late.
胜任	shèngrèn	to be up to (a job)	我相信你能胜任这份工作。 I'm sure you're up to this job.
重任	zhòngrèn	important task, heavy responsibility	公司把这个重任交给了她。 The company has entrusted this important job to her.
担负	dānfù	to bear, shoulder (costs, duties)	他一个人担负着全家的生活。 He supports the whole family on his own.
肩负	jiānfù	to shoulder (a mission)	医生肩负着救人的责任。 Doctors shoulder the duty of saving lives.
兼	jiān	to hold (two jobs) at once; and	他是老师，也兼做翻译。 He's a teacher, and he translates on the side.
兼任	jiānrèn	to hold a second post	王老师是校长，还兼任语文老师。 Teacher Wang is the head and also teaches Chinese.
兼顾	jiāngù	to attend to both, balance	工作和家庭很难兼顾。 It's hard to balance work and family.
分担	fēndān	to share (a burden)	家务应该大家一起分担。 Housework should be shared by everyone.
推卸	tuīxiè	to shirk, pass the buck	出了问题，他总是推卸责任。 When something goes wrong, he always passes the buck.
打下手	dǎxiàshǒu	to help out, be an assistant	妈妈做饭，我给她打下手。 Mum cooks, and I help out.
充当	chōngdāng	to serve as, act as	这次活动，他充当翻译。 He's acting as interpreter at this event.
忙活	mánghuo	to be busy (with chores)	奶奶在厨房里忙活了一上午。 Grandma was busy in the kitchen all morning.
夜班	yèbān	night shift	这个星期我上夜班。 I'm on nights this week.
一线	yīxiàn	front line	她在一线工作了十年，最了解客户。 She spent ten years on the front line, so she knows the customers best.
繁重	fánzhòng	heavy, demanding (work)	医生的工作很繁重。 Doctors' work is very demanding.
公事	gōngshì	official business	这是公事，不能用私人关系解决。 This is official business: it can't be settled through personal connections.
事宜	shìyí	matters, arrangements	开会的有关事宜，我会发邮件告诉大家。 I'll email everyone the arrangements for the meeting.
缺席	quēxí	to be absent (from a meeting)	他因为生病缺席了今天的会议。 He was off sick and missed today's meeting.
请示	qǐngshì	to ask for instructions	这件事我得{dei3}先请示经理。 I need to check with my manager first.

上报	shàngbào	to report to a higher level	这个问题已经上报给公司了。 The problem has been reported up to the company.

pattern 非a非b, 可a可b and 连a带b: three idiom frames at work

非 / 可 / 连 **A** 非 / 可 / 带 **B**

Three four-character frames. 非A非B is “neither A nor B”: 非亲非故 “neither family nor friend”, a stranger. 可A可B is “could be A or B”, often meaning it doesn’t matter much: 可有可无 “not really needed”, 可大可小 “could be big or small”. 连A带B is doing A and B at once: 连说带笑 “talking and laughing”, 连吃带喝 “eating and drinking”.

我们跟他非亲非故，他却一分钱报酬也没要。 **wǒmen gēn tā fēiqīnfēigù tā què yì fēn qián bàochou yě méi yào** He’s no relation or friend of ours, yet he didn’t ask for a single cent.

报告里有些话可有可无，可以删掉。 **bàogào lǐ yǒuxiē huà kěyǒukěwú kěyǐ shān diào** Some lines in the report aren’t really needed: you can cut them.

这个问题可大可小，最好先上报。 **zhège wèntí kědàkěxiǎo zuìhǎo xiān shàngbào** This problem could turn out big or small: better report it upwards first.

年会上，大家连吃带喝，连说带笑，热闹极了。 **nián huì shàng dàjiā liánchīdàihē liánshuōdàixiào rènao jí le** At the annual party everyone ate, drank, talked and laughed: it was great fun.

dialogue the half-year review

manager liu 安娜，坐吧。今天是你半年的绩效考核。
Ānnà zuò ba jīntiān shì nǐ bàn nián de jìxiào kǎohé · Anna, have a seat. Today is your half-year performance review.

anna 说实话，我有点儿紧张，昨天晚上翻来覆去睡不着。
shuō shíhuà wǒ yǒudiǎnr jǐnzhāng zuótiān wǎnshang fānlái fùqù shuì bu zháo · To be honest, I'm a bit nervous: I tossed and turned all last night.

manager liu 不用紧张。你的业绩很好，销售指标完成了百分之一百二十，评审小组给了你最高分。
búyòng jǐnzhāng nǐ de yèjì hěn hǎo xiāoshòu zhǐbiāo wánchéng le bǎi fēn zhī yībǎièrshí píngshěn xiǎozǔ gěi le nǐ zuì gāo fēn · No need. Your results are very good: you hit 120 per cent of your sales target, and the review panel gave you the top mark.

anna 这是团队一起做的。博览会那几天，我什么都干：给张女士打下手，还充当翻译，从早忙活到晚，不过我心甘情愿。
zhè shì tuánduì yìqǐ zuò de bólǎnhuì nà jǐ tiān wǒ shénme dōu gàn gěi Zhāngnǚshì dǎ xiàshǒu hái chōngdāng fānyì cóng zǎo mánghuo dào wǎn búguò wǒ xīngān qíngyuàn · It was a team effort. During the expo I did everything: helped Ms Zhang out, acted as interpreter, and was on the go from morning till night, but I was glad to do it.

manager liu 公司决定奖赏你们团队，每个人有一笔奖金。你明年的年薪也会提高。
gōngsī juédìng jiǎngshǎng nǐmen tuánduì měi gè rén yǒu yì bǐ jiǎngjīn nǐ míngnián de niánxīn yě huì tígāo · The company has decided to reward your team: everyone gets a bonus. And your salary goes up next year.

anna 谢谢！这半年我受益匪浅。对了，上海出差的车票和饭钱，我还没报销。
xièxie zhè bàn nián wǒ shòuyì fěiqiǎn duì le Shànghǎi chūchāi de chē piào hé fàn qián wǒ hái méi bàoxiāo · Thank you! I've learned a great deal these six months. Oh, and I still haven't claimed back my train tickets and meals from the Shanghai trip.

manager liu 把发票交给财务就行。这是公事，按规定办。你的报告我也看了，写得很好，就是有些话可有可无，可以删掉。
bǎ fāpiào jiāo gěi cáiwù jiù xíng zhè shì gōngshì àn guīdìng bàn nǐ de bàogào wǒ yě kàn le xiě de hěn hǎo jiùshì yǒuxiē huà kěyǒukěwú kěyǐ shān diào · Just hand the receipts to finance. It's company business: go by the rules. I've read your report too: it's very good, but some lines aren't really needed. You can cut them.

manager liu 还有一件事：新的物流项目是个重任，你要担负起管理的工作，还要兼任两个大客户的联系人。你能胜任吗？
hái yǒu yí jiàn shì xīn de wùliú xiàngmù shì gè zhòngrèn nǐ yào dānfù qǐ guǎnlǐ de gōngzuò hái yào jiānrèn liǎng gè dà kèhù de liánxì rén nǐ néng shèngrèn ma · One more thing: the new logistics project is a big responsibility. You'll take on the management, and also be the contact for two major clients. Are you up to it?

anna 我会尽力。可是一个人兼做两份工作，工作和生活就很难兼顾了。
wǒ huì jìnlì kěshì yí gè rén jiān zuò liǎng fèn gōngzuò gōngzuò hé shēnghuó jiù hěn nán jiāngù le · I'll do my best. But doing two jobs at once, it'll be hard to balance work and life.

manager liu 所以技术方面要找人分担。我们肩负着整个项目，不能只靠你一个人。你那个朋友小明怎么样？
suǒyǐ jìshù fāngmiàn yào zhǎo rén fēndān wǒmen jiānfù zhe zhěnggè xiàngmù bù néng zhǐ kào nǐ yí gè rén nǐ nàge péngyou Xiǎomíng zěnmeyàng · That's why we need someone to share the technical side. We're shouldering the whole project: it can't all rest on you. What about your friend Xiaoming?

anna 他很敬业。上次在视频里帮我们修系统，我们跟他非亲非故，他却一分钱报酬也没要。
tā hěn jìngyè shàng cì zài shìpín lǐ bāng wǒmen xiū xìtǒng wǒmen gēn tā fēiqīnfēigù tā què yì fēn qián bàochou yě méi yào · He's very dedicated. When he fixed our system over a video call, he was no relation or friend of the company, yet he didn't ask for a single cent.

manager liu 这样的人难得。他在一线干过吗？
zhèyàng de rén nándé tā zài yíxiàn gàn guo ma · People like that are rare. Has he worked on the front line?

anna 干过。他刚工作的时候在工厂上了两年夜班，工作很繁重。
gàn guo tā gāng gōngzuò de shíhou zài gōngchǎng shàng le liǎng nián yèbān gōngzuò hěn fánzhòng · He has. When he started out he did two years of night shifts at a factory: very demanding work.

manager liu 好。薪酬方面我们可以谈。不过招人的有关事宜，我得先请示董事长，再上报公司。下星期的董事会你也要参加，不能缺席。
hǎo xīnchóu fāngmiàn wǒmen kěyǐ tán búguò zhāo rén de yǒuguān shìyí wǒ děi xiān qǐngshì dǒngshìzhǎng zài shàngbào gōngsī xià xīngqī de dǒngshìhuì nǐ yě yào cānjiā bù néng quēxí · Good. We can talk about pay. But for the hiring arrangements I need to check with the chairman first, then report it upwards. You need to be at the board meeting next week too: don't miss it.

anna 好的。您听说了吗？新闻里说，有一家工厂拖欠了工人好几个月的工资，工人们罢工了。
hǎo de nín tīngshuō le ma xīnwén lǐ shuō yǒu yì jiā gōngchǎng tuōqiàn le gōngrén hǎo jǐ gè yuè de gōngzī gōngrénmen bàgōng le · Will do. Did you hear? The news said a factory owed its workers several months' wages, and they went on strike.

manager liu 听说了。工会正在跟老板谈。有的工人说，老板不改，他们就消极怠工。
tīngshuō le gōnghuì zhèngzài gēn lǎobǎn tán yǒude gōngrén shuō lǎobǎn bù gǎi tāmen jiù xiāojí dàigōng · I did. The union is talking to the owner. Some workers say that if he doesn't change, they'll go slow.

anna 后来呢？
hòulái ne · And then?

manager liu 那个管工资的经理因为管理不力，受了处分。出了问题，最怕的就是推卸责任。这一点你做得很好。
nàge guǎn gōngzī de jīnglǐ yīnwèi guǎnlǐ búlì shòu le chǔfèn chū le wèntí zuì pà de jiùshì tuīxiè zérèn zhè yìdiǎn nǐ zuò de hěn hǎo · The manager in charge of pay was disciplined for weak management. When something goes wrong, the worst thing is to pass the buck. You're very good on that.

anna 谢谢您。下个月的年会，我们团队想表演一个节目。
xièxie nín xià gè yuè de nián huì wǒmen tuánduì xiǎng biǎoyǎn yí gè jiémù · Thank you. Our team wants to put on a performance at next month's annual party.

manager liu 好啊！去年的年会上，大家连吃带喝，连说带笑，热闹极了。今年你们来带头！
hǎo a qùnián de nián huì shàng dàjiā liánchīdàihē liánshuōdàixiào rènao jí le jīnnián nǐmen lái dàitóu · Great! At last year's party everyone ate, drank, talked and laughed: it was such fun. This year you lead the way!

good to know · Pay words: 工资 (monthly pay), 年薪 (annual salary), 薪酬 (pay, formal), 报酬 (a fee for a task), 奖金 (bonus). Claiming expenses is 报销, with a 发票 (official receipt). Results: 业绩 (results, track record), 指标 (target), 绩效 (performance, as reviewed), 考核 (assessment).

Targets, bonuses, receipts and responsibility: you can now get through a performance review in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 151 effort and willpower

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 20 · the workplace

Talk about hard work, willpower and self-control, with word-building suffixes (-然, -为, -制, -界, -鬼) and the marker 不是.....

Every interview, every family talk about work comes back to effort: who works hard, who never gives up, and who should calm down a little.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
刻苦	kèkǔ	hard-working, assiduous	他学习非常刻苦，每天学到很晚。 He studies very hard, until late every night.
吃苦	chīkǔ	to bear hardship	年轻的时候多吃苦，没坏处。 Bearing a bit of hardship when you're young does you no harm.
勤快	qínkuai	hard-working, diligent (spoken)	这个孩子很勤快，每天帮妈妈做家务。 This child is very hard-working and helps Mum with the housework every day.
勤俭	qínjiǎn	hard-working and thrifty	爷爷奶奶一辈子勤俭，从来不乱花钱。 Grandpa and Grandma worked hard and saved all their lives, and never wasted money.
节俭	jiéjiǎn	frugal, thrifty	他虽然很有钱，可是生活很节俭。 He's very rich, but he lives frugally.
辛勤	xīnqín	hard-working, industrious	感谢老师们一年来的辛勤工作。 Thank you, teachers, for a year of hard work.
兢兢业业	jīngjīngyèyè	conscientious, dedicated	他在这个工厂兢兢业业地工作了三十年。 He worked conscientiously in this factory for thirty years.
不懈	bùxiè	untiring, unremitting	经过多年不懈的努力，他终于成功了。 After years of unremitting effort, he finally succeeded.
坚韧	jiānrèn	tough, tenacious	她是一个坚韧的人，什么困难都不怕。 She's tough: no difficulty scares her.
韧性	rènxìng	toughness, resilience	做研究需要韧性，不能怕失败。 Research needs resilience: you can't be afraid of failure.
毅力	yìlì	willpower, perseverance	每天跑十公里，需要很大的毅力。 Running ten kilometres a day takes a lot of willpower.
意志	yìzhì	will	她的意志非常坚强。 She has a very strong will.
斗志	dòuzhì	fighting spirit	输了一场比赛，大家的斗志反而更强了。 After losing a match, the team's fighting spirit was even stronger.
干劲	gànjìn	drive, enthusiasm (for work)	年轻人干劲很足。 The young people are full of drive.

劲	jìn	strength, energy; spirit	他干活的那股劲，跟他爸爸一模一样。 He throws himself into work exactly like his dad.
劲头	jìntóu	energy, enthusiasm	刚开始学的时候劲头很大，后来就慢慢少了。 At first he was very keen to learn, then it slowly wore off.
拼搏	pīnbó	to strive, go all out	他一个人在大城市拼搏了十年。 He spent ten years working all out in the big city on his own.
奋勇	fènyǒng	to summon up courage	队员们奋勇向前，终于赢了比赛。 The players pushed forward bravely and finally won.
力求	lìqiú	to strive to	我们力求把每一个细节都做好。 We strive to get every detail right.
力争	lìzhēng	to do one's best to win	我们力争明年把销量提高一倍。 We're aiming to double sales next year.
进取	jìnqǔ	to be enterprising, forge ahead	他是一个积极进取的年轻人。 He's a keen, go-getting young man.
要强	yàoqiáng	determined to excel	她很要强，什么事都不想输给别人。 She's very driven: she never wants to lose to anyone at anything.
好胜	hàoshèng	competitive, eager to win	我弟弟很好胜，打球输了就不高兴。 My little brother is so competitive he sulks when he loses a game.
争气	zhēngqì	to do oneself credit, make (people) proud	孩子很争气，考上了最好的大学。 The child made us proud and got into the best university.
执着	zhízhuó	persistent, dedicated	他对音乐很执着，三十年没放弃。 He's devoted to music: he hasn't given up in thirty years.
潜心	qiánxīn	to devote oneself wholly	他退休以后潜心研究书法。 Since retiring he has devoted himself to calligraphy.
投身	tóushēn	to throw oneself into	毕业以后，她投身到教育工作中。 After graduating she threw herself into teaching.
忍耐	rěnnài	to endure, put up with	他忍耐了很久，最后还是说出来了。 He held it in for a long time, but in the end he said it.
容忍	róngrěn	to tolerate	我不能容忍别人对我的家人不礼貌。 I won't tolerate anyone being rude to my family.
耐	nài	to be able to bear, resist	这双鞋很耐穿。 These shoes are very hard-wearing.
磨炼	móliàn	to temper, toughen	在一线工作，最能磨炼人。 Working on the front line toughens you up like nothing else.
克制	kèzhì	to restrain (oneself)	他很生气，可是克制住了。 He was furious, but he kept himself in check.
节制	jiézhì	to control, moderate	吃甜的要有节制。 Go easy on the sweets.
收敛	shōuliǎn	to restrain oneself, tone down	被老师批评以后，他收敛了很多。 After his teacher told him off, he toned it

down a lot.

pattern suffixes -然, -为, -制, -界, -鬼, and 不是…… back again

a word or root **+ 然 / 为 / 制 / 界 / 鬼** **a new word**

Suffixes build new words. -然 makes adverbs (果然 as expected, 居然 to my surprise, 显然 obviously); -为 is "as" (视为 regard as); -制 is a system (合同制 contract system); -界 is a world or field (医学界 the medical world); -鬼 labels a person by a habit (小气鬼 a stingy person, 胆小鬼 a coward). 不是……吗? points out a gap: "didn't you say …?", and 不是我说你 softens a criticism.

我就知道你会去面试，果然！ **wǒ jiù zhīdào nǐ huì qù miànshì guǒrán** I knew you'd go for the interview: and you are!

刘经理把这个项目视为公司未来的关键。 **Liújīnglǐ bǎ zhège xiàngmù shìwéi gōngsī wèilái de guānjiàn** Manager Liu sees this project as key to the company's future.

我们公司是合同制，合同明年三月到期。 **wǒmen gōngsī shì hétóng zhì hétóng míngnián sān yuè dàoqī** My company works on contracts: mine runs out next March.

节俭不是小气。小气鬼什么都舍不得给别人。 **jiéjiǎn bú shì xiǎoqi xiǎoqi guǐ shénme dōu shěbude gěi biérén** Being thrifty isn't being mean. A cheapskate can't bear to give anyone anything.

dialogue six o'clock starts

little sister 哥哥，你不是说不想跳槽吗？怎么天天早上六点起来跑步，晚上还看书到十二点？
gēge nǐ bú shì shuō bù xiǎng tiàocáo ma zěnme tiān tiān zǎoshang liù diǎn qǐlái pǎobù wǎnshang hái kàn shū dào shíèr diǎn · Didn't you say you didn't want to change jobs? So why are you up at six every morning to run, and reading until midnight?

xiaoming 不是我想跳槽，是我想准备好。刘经理下个星期想跟我见面。他们公司在招聘，想物色一个能带队的人。
bú shì wǒ xiǎng tiàocáo shì wǒ xiǎng zhǔnbèi hǎo Liújīnglǐ xià gè xīngqī xiǎng gēn wǒ jiànmiàn tāmen gōngsī zài zhāopìn xiǎng wùsè yí gè néng dàiduì de rén · It's not that I want to switch: I want to be ready. Manager Liu wants to meet me next week. Her company is hiring and looking for someone who can lead a team.

little sister 果然！我就知道。她想聘你吗？年薪多少？
guǒrán wǒ jiù zhīdào tā xiǎng pìn nǐ ma niánxīn duōshao · I knew it! Does she want to hire you? What's the annual salary?

xiaoming 还没谈到待遇呢。先面试，看我能不能胜任这份工作。
hái méi tán dào dàiyù ne xiān miànshì kàn wǒ néng bu néng shèngrèn zhè fèn gōngzuò · We haven't got to pay and conditions yet. First the interview: let's see if I'm up to the job.

dr li 要面试，就要刻苦准备。年轻人多吃苦，没坏处。
yào miànshì jiù yào kèkǔ zhǔnbèi niánqīng rén duō chīkǔ méi huàichù · If you're having an interview, prepare properly. A bit of hardship does young people no harm.

anna 叔叔，您年轻的时候是怎么当上医生的？
shūshu nín niánqīng de shíhou shì zěnme dāng shàng yīshēng de · Uncle, how did you become a doctor when you were young?

dr li 我们那时候条件差，可是大家学习都很刻苦，干劲很足。后来我投身医学，潜心研究心脏病，在医院兢兢业业地干了三十年。那时候医生少，工作特别繁重，一个人要兼顾门诊和病房。
wǒmen nà shíhou tiáojiàn chà kěshì dàjiā xuéxí dōu hěn kèkǔ gànjìn hěn zú hòulái wǒ tóushēn yīxué qiánxīn yánjiū xīnzàng bìng zài yīyuàn jīngjīngyèyè de gàn le sānshí nián nà shíhou yīshēng shǎo gōngzuò tèbié fánzhòng yí gè rén yào jiāngù ménzhěn hé bìngfáng · Times were hard back then, but everyone studied hard and was full of drive. Later I threw myself into medicine, devoted myself to heart disease, and worked conscientiously at the hospital for thirty years. There were few doctors then and the work was very heavy: one person had to look after both the outpatient clinic and the wards.

little sister 妈妈说，爸爸年轻的时候连着上了一个月的夜班，一天假也没请过，意志多坚强啊。
māma shuō bàba niánqīng de shíhou lián zhe shàng le yí gè yuè de yèbān yì tiān jià yě méi qǐng guo yìzhì duō jiānqiáng a · Mum says that when Dad was young he did a whole month of night shifts in a row and never took a day off: what willpower.

dr li 当医生要有毅力，也要有韧性。病人等不了，你就不能停。
dāng yīshēng yào yǒu yìlì yě yào yǒu rènxìng bìngrén děng bu liǎo nǐ jiù bù néng tíng · A doctor needs willpower, and resilience too. Patients can't wait, so you can't stop.

anna 我觉得小明最大的优点是执着。上次帮我们修系统，他两个小时都没停。他是一个很坚韧的人。
wǒ juéde Xiǎomíng zuì dà de yōudiǎn shì zhízhuó shàng cì bāng wǒmen xiū xìtǒng tā liǎng gè xiǎoshí dōu méi tíng tā shì yí gè hěn jiānrèn de rén · I think Xiaoming's greatest strength is that he doesn't give up. When he fixed our system, he didn't stop for two hours. He's really tough.

xiaoming 那是因为我好胜，问题不解决，我就睡不着。
nà shì yīnwèi wǒ hàoshèng wèntí bù jiějué wǒ jiù shuì bu zháo · That's because I'm competitive: if a problem isn't solved, I can't sleep.

little sister 不是我说你，你也太要强了。上次比赛你脚都受伤了，还要跑，结果在床上躺了一个星期。
bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ yě tài yàoqiáng le shàng cì bǐsài nǐ jiǎo dōu shòushāng le hái yào pǎo jiéguǒ zài chuáng

shàng tǎng le yí gè xīngqī · I don't mean to nag, but you're way too driven. In that race last time you'd hurt your foot and still kept running, and you ended up in bed for a week.

xiaoming 那叫斗志！最后一公里我奋勇向前，超过了十几个人。

nà jiào dòuzhì zuìhòu yì gōnglǐ wǒ fènyǒng xiàng qián chāoguò le shí jǐ gè rén · That's called fighting spirit! In the last kilometre I pushed hard and overtook more than ten people.

dr li 要强是好事，可是也要学会克制。吃东西要有节制，脾气也要收敛一点儿。你看你这股劲，跟我年轻的时候一模一样。

yàoqiáng shì hǎo shì kěshì yě yào xuéhuì kèzhì chī dōngxi yào yǒu jiézhì píqi yě yào shōuliǎn yìdiǎnr nǐ kàn nǐ zhè gǔ jìn gēn wǒ niánqīng de shíhou yìmú yíyàng · Being driven is good, but you also need self-control. Eat in moderation, and tone your temper down a bit. Look at you: the same drive I had at your age.

little sister 我们家的人都很勤快。爷爷奶奶一辈子勤俭，爸爸也很节俭，一双鞋穿了十年。

wǒmen jiā de rén dōu hěn qínkuai yéye nǎinai yíbèizi qínjiǎn bàba yě hěn jiéjiǎn yì shuāng xié chuān le shí nián · Our whole family is hard-working. Grandpa and Grandma worked and saved all their lives, and Dad is thrifty too: he's worn the same pair of shoes for ten years.

dr li 那是因为鞋耐穿！节俭不是小气。小气鬼什么都舍不得给别人，我们只是不浪费。

nà shì yīnwèi xié nài chuān jiéjiǎn bú shì xiǎoqi xiǎoqi guǐ shénme dōu shěbude gěi biérén wǒmen zhǐshì bú làngfèi · That's because they're hard-wearing! Being thrifty isn't being mean. A cheapskate can't bear to give anyone anything: we just don't waste.

anna 刘经理把这个项目视为公司未来的关键。她最看重进取的精神和敬业的态度，常说要力求简单，别说太多技术细节。

Liújīnglǐ bǎ zhège xiàngmù shìwéi gōngsī wèilái de guānjiàn tā zuì kànzhòng jìnqǔ de jīngshén hé jìngyè de tàidù cháng shuō yào lìqiú jiǎndān bié shuō tài duō jìshù xìjié · Manager Liu sees this project as key to the company's future. What she values most is a go-getting spirit and dedication, and she always says to keep things simple and skip the technical detail.

xiaoming 我力争把每个问题都准备好。可是我们公司是合同制，我的合同明年三月才到期。现在走的话，手上的项目也没人接手。

wǒ lìzhēng bǎ měi gè wèntí dōu zhǔnbèi hǎo kěshì wǒmen gōngsī shì hétóng zhì wǒ de hétóng míngnián sān yuè cái dàoqī xiànzài zǒu dehuà shǒu shàng de xiàngmù yě méi rén jiēshǒu · I'm going to do my best to prepare for every question. But my company works on contracts, and mine doesn't run out until next March. If I left now, there'd be no one to take over my projects.

dr li 这些年你辛勤工作，在工厂上夜班、做项目，都是磨炼。你早就成了公司的骨干。经过这么多年不懈的努力，你显然已经准备好了。走以前，手上的事要交接清楚，别让同事一个人担负全部的工作。

zhèxiē nián nǐ xīnqín gōngzuò zài gōngchǎng shàng yèbān zuò xiàngmù dōu shì móliàn nǐ zǎo jiù chéng le gōngsī de gǔgàn jīngguò zhème duō nián búxiè de nǔlì nǐ xiǎnrán yǐjīng zhǔnbèi hǎo le zǒu yǐqián shǒu shàng de shì yào jiāojiē qīngchu bié ràng tóngshì yí gè rén dānfù quánbù de gōngzuò · All these years of hard work, the night shifts at the factory and all the projects, were your training. You've long been one of the company's key people. After so many years of steady effort, you're clearly ready. Before you go, hand your work over properly: don't leave a colleague to carry it all alone.

xiaoming 我什么都能忍耐，就是不能容忍自己浪费时间。

wǒ shénme dōu néng rěnnài jiùshì bù néng róngrěn zìjǐ làngfèi shíjiān · I can put up with anything, except wasting my own time.

little sister 刚开始的时候劲头都很大，看你能坚持几天。哥哥，你要争气，可是别在拼搏的时候把身体拼坏了！

gāng kāishǐ de shíhou jìntóu dōu hěn dà kàn nǐ néng jiānchí jǐ tiān gēge nǐ yào zhēngqì kěshì bié zài pīnbó de shíhou bǎ shēntǐ pīn huài le · Everyone's keen at the start: let's see how long you keep it up. Big brother, make us proud, but don't wear yourself out going all out!

anna 他居然没反对！看来他真的听进去了。

tā jūrán méi fǎnduì kànlái tā zhēn de tīng jinqu le · He didn't even argue! Looks like he actually listened.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

兢 jīng cautious	
韧 rèn tough, pliable	

good to know · Hard-working, three ways: 刻苦 (studies or trains hard), 勤快 (quick to help, spoken), 兢兢业业 (conscientious over many years). Thrifty: 节俭, 勤俭 (hard-working and thrifty). Self-control: 克制 (hold back feelings), 节制 (in moderation: food, spending), 收敛 (tone down behaviour).

Willpower, drive and self-control: you can now talk about effort the way families and bosses do.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 152 dreams and ambition

Talk about ambition, character and courage, using scope adverbs (均, 皆, 唯独, 一概, 统统, 大体) and 不瞒你说.

Big decisions bring out big words: ambition, duty, integrity, nerve. Teachers and parents use them, and so do interviewers.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
抱负	bàofù	aspiration, ambition	他年轻的时候很有抱负。 When he was young he had big ambitions.
志气	zhìqì	aspiration, backbone	人穷，志气不能穷。 You can be poor in money, but never poor in spirit.
志向	zhìxiàng	aim, aspiration	她从小的志向就是当医生。 Ever since she was little, she's wanted to be a doctor.
志愿	zhìyuàn	wish, choice; to volunteer	考大学的时候，我的第一志愿是北京的一所大学。 When I applied to university, my first choice was a university in Beijing.
野心	yěxīn	ambition (often negative)	这家公司野心很大，想成为行业第一。 The company is very ambitious: it wants to be number one in the industry.
使命	shǐmìng	mission	医生的使命是救死扶伤。 A doctor's mission is to heal the sick and save the dying.
前程	qiánchéng	future, prospects	祝你前程远大！ Wishing you a bright future!
出息	chūxi	promise, prospects (spoken)	这孩子从小就爱学习，以后一定有出息。 This kid has loved learning since he was little: he's sure to go far.
成才	chéngcái	to become a useful person	父母都希望孩子成才。 All parents want their children to make something of themselves.
励志	lìzhì	inspiring; to resolve to succeed	这是一部很励志的电影。 It's a very inspiring film.
谋求	móuqiú	to seek, strive for	两家公司都在谋求合作。 Both companies are looking to work together.
谋取	móuqǔ	to seek, gain (often for oneself)	他利用工作的方便，为自己谋取好处。 He used his position to get things for himself.
自立	zìlì	to stand on one's own feet	孩子长大了，要学会自立。 Once children grow up, they need to learn to stand on their own feet.
自理	zìlǐ	to take care of oneself	爷爷九十岁了，生活还能自理。 Grandpa is ninety, but he can still look

			after himself.
自主	zìzhǔ	to decide for oneself; independent	选什么专业，应该让孩子自主决定。 Children should decide for themselves what to study.
担当	dāndāng	to take on (responsibility)	出了问题，领导要敢于担当。 When things go wrong, a leader must be willing to take responsibility.
本分	běnfèn	one's duty; honest, decent	做好自己的工作，是每个人的本分。 Doing your own job well is everyone's duty.
秉承	bǐngchéng	to carry on (a tradition)	我们秉承“顾客第一”的传统。 We carry on the tradition of putting the customer first.
秉持	bǐngchí	to uphold (a principle)	他一直秉持公平的原则。 He has always upheld the principle of fairness.
坚守	jiānshǒu	to hold fast to, stand by	大雪中，医生们坚守在自己的岗位上。 Through the snowstorm, the doctors stayed at their posts.
守信	shǒuxìn	to keep one's word	做生意一定要守信。 In business you have to keep your word.
如一	rúyī	to be the same throughout	他三十年如一日，每天早上六点起床。 For thirty years, without fail, he has got up at six every morning.
言行	yánxíng	words and deeds	父母的言行对孩子影响很大。 What parents say and do has a big effect on their children.
为人	wéirén	the way one treats people; character	他为人很正直，大家都相信他。 He's an upright person: everyone trusts him.
处事	chǔshì	to handle affairs	她处事很冷静。 She handles things very calmly.
作风	zuòfēng	style (of work), way of doing things	新经理的工作作风很踏实。 The new manager has a very down-to-earth way of working.
作为	zuòwéi	accomplishment; to make a mark	年轻人应该有所作为{zuo4wei2-7}。 Young people should make their mark.
姿态	zītài	posture; attitude, stance	我们要以开放的姿态欢迎新同事。 We should welcome new colleagues with an open attitude.
胆量	dǎnliàng	courage, guts	一个人去国外创业，要有很大的胆量。 Starting a business abroad on your own takes a lot of guts.
胆小鬼	dǎnxiǎoguǐ	coward, scaredy-cat	别当胆小鬼，去试试吧！ Don't be a scaredy-cat: go on, give it a try!
魄力	pòlì	boldness, drive	新董事长很有魄力，一上任就做了大改革。 The new chairman is very bold: she launched big reforms the moment she took office.
气魄	qìpò	boldness of vision, grandeur	这座桥设计得很有气魄。 The bridge has a grand, bold design.
豪迈	háomài	bold and generous, heroic	他说话很豪迈，一点儿也不怕困难。 He speaks with great boldness, not the least bit afraid of difficulty.

英勇	yīngyǒng	heroic, brave	消防员们英勇地冲进了大火。 The firefighters bravely rushed into the blaze.
逞强	chěngqiáng	to show off one's strength, push too hard	身体不舒服就休息，别逞强。 If you're not feeling well, rest: don't try to tough it out.

pattern all, every, only: scope adverbs, and 不瞒你说 back again

who or what | **均 / 皆 / 一概 / 统统 / 唯独 / 大体** | **the rest of the sentence**

Written Chinese marks how far something reaches. All: 均, 皆 (written), 统统 / 通通 (spoken, "the whole lot"), 一概 (without exception, often with 不). Only: 唯独 (all except), 唯有……才…… (only … can …). By and large: 大体. 不瞒你说 ("not hiding it from you") opens an honest confession.

两家公司的条件均不错，唯独发展的机会不一样。 **liǎng jiā gōngsī de tiáojiàn jūn búcuò wéidú fāzhǎn de jīhuì bù yíyàng** Both companies offer good terms; only the chances to grow are different.

我爸爸的原则是：病人的事一概不能马虎。 **wǒ bàba de yuánzé shì bìngrén de shì yígài bù néng mǎhu** My dad's rule is: nothing to do with patients is ever done carelessly.

家里的收音机、电视统统被他拆过。 **jiā lǐ de shōuyīnjī diànshì tǒngtǒng bèi tā chāi guo** He took apart every radio and TV in the house.

不瞒您说，我有点儿害怕。 **bù mán nín shuō wǒ yǒudiǎnr hàipà** To be honest with you, I'm a little scared.

dialogue what you wanted to be at ten

xiaoming 王老师，不瞒您说，我今天来是想听听您的意见。有一家公司想聘我去当技术负责人。

Wánglǎoshī bù mán nín shuō wǒ jīntiān lái shì xiǎng tīng ting nín de yìjiàn yǒu yì jiā gōngsī xiǎng pìn wǒ qù dāng jìshù fùzérén · Teacher Wang, to be honest, I've come for your advice. A company wants to hire me as their technical lead.

teacher wang 好事啊！你从小就有志气。我记得你十岁的时候说，你的志向是当工程师。

hǎo shì a nǐ cóngxiǎo jiù yǒu zhìqì wǒ jìde nǐ shí suì de shíhou shuō nǐ de zhìxiàng shì dāng gōngchéngshī · That's great news! You've always had spirit. I remember that at ten you told me you wanted to be an engineer.

xiaoming 是啊。家里的收音机、电视统统被我拆过。考大学的时候，我的第一志愿也是工程。

shì a jiā lǐ de shōuyīnjī diànshì tǒngtǒng bèi wǒ chāi guo kǎo dàxué de shíhou wǒ de dì yī zhìyuàn yě shì gōngchéng · That's right. I took apart every radio and TV in the house. When I applied to university, engineering was my first choice too.

teacher wang 你那时候就很执着，东西修不好就不吃饭。那你现在担心什么？怕吃苦吗？

nǐ nà shíhou jiù hěn zhízhuó dōngxi xiū bu hǎo jiù bù chī fàn nà nǐ xiànzài dānxīn shénme pà chīkǔ ma · Even then you never gave up: if you couldn't fix something, you wouldn't eat. So what's worrying you now? Afraid of hard work?

xiaoming 不瞒您说，我有点儿害怕。我怕换工作是野心太大，也怕自己是个胆小鬼，没有胆量离开熟悉的地方。

bù mán nín shuō wǒ yǒudiǎnr hàipà wǒ pà huàn gōngzuò shì yěxīn tài dà yě pà zìjǐ shì gè dǎnxiǎoguǐ méiyǒu dǎnliàng líkāi shúxi de dìfang · To be honest, I'm a little scared. I'm afraid changing jobs is too ambitious, and I'm also afraid I'm a coward with no nerve to leave somewhere familiar.

teacher wang 野心和抱负不一样。野心是什么都想要；抱负是想把一件事做好。你想做的无非是做好技术，这叫抱负。

yěxīn hé bàofù bù yíyàng yěxīn shì shénme dōu xiǎng yào bàofù shì xiǎng bǎ yí jiàn shì zuò hǎo nǐ xiǎng zuò de wúfēi shì zuò hǎo jìshù zhè jiào bàofù · Greed and ambition aren't the same. Greed is wanting everything; ambition is wanting to do one thing well. All you want is to do good engineering: that's ambition.

anna 刘经理很赏识小明。她说，这个位子唯有能担当的人才能做好。

Liújīnglǐ hěn shǎngshí Xiǎomíng tā shuō zhège wèizi wéiyǒu néng dāndāng de rén cái néng zuò hǎo · Manager Liu thinks highly of Xiaoming. She says only someone who can take responsibility will do this job well.

teacher wang 年轻人应该有所作为。你父母都希望你成才、有出息。

niánqīng rén yīnggāi yǒusuǒ zuòwéi nǐ fùmǔ dōu xīwàng nǐ chéngcái yǒu chūxi · Young people should make their mark. Your parents both want you to make something of yourself.

xiaoming 我爸爸常说，做好自己的本分最重要。他从来不在乎什么头衔和职称。

wǒ bàba cháng shuō zuò hǎo zìjǐ de běnfèn zuì zhòngyào tā cónglái bú zàihu shénme tóuxián hé zhíchēng · My dad always says doing your own job well matters most. He never cared about titles or rank.

teacher wang 你爸爸为人正直，处事冷静，三十年言行如一。他一直秉持一个原则：病人的事一概不能马虎。

nǐ bàba wéirén zhèngzhí chǔshì lěngjìng sānshí nián yánxíng rúyī tā yìzhí bǐngchí yí gè yuánzé bìngrén de shì yígài bù néng mǎhu · Your dad is an upright man who handles things calmly, and for thirty years he's practised what he preaches. He has always held to one principle: nothing to do with patients is ever done carelessly.

xiaoming 我也想秉承这个传统。做人要守信，答应别人的事要坚守到底。

wǒ yě xiǎng bǐngchéng zhège chuántǒng zuò rén yào shǒuxìn dāying biérén de shì yào jiānshǒu dàodǐ · I want to carry on that tradition. You have to keep your word, and stand by what you promise to the end.

teacher wang 那你就要想清楚：去新公司，是为了谋求更大的发展，还是为了给自己谋取好处？

nà nǐ jiù yào xiǎng qīngchu qù xīn gōngsī shì wèile móuqiú gèng dà de fāzhǎn háishi wèile gěi zìjǐ móuqǔ hǎochù · Then think it through: are you going to the new company to seek more room to grow, or to get something for yourself?

xiaoming 当然是为了发展。两家公司的条件均不错，工资大体差不多，唯独发展的机会不一样。

dāngrán shì wèile fāzhǎn liǎng jiā gōngsī de tiáojiàn jūn búcuò gōngzī dàtǐ chàbuduō wéidú fāzhǎn de jīhuì bù yíyàng · To grow, of course. Both companies offer good terms, and the pay is roughly the same: only the chances to grow are different.

teacher wang 你去了新公司，要充当什么角色?

nǐ qù le xīn gōngsī yào chōngdāng shénme juésè · What role would you play at the new company?

xiaoming 技术负责人，还要兼任一个新团队的经理。

jìshù fùzérén hái yào jiānrèn yí gè xīn tuánduì de jīnglǐ · Technical lead, and I'd also manage a new team on the side.

teacher wang 你十八岁就离开家，生活全靠自己，早就学会了自立，生活也能自理。这次的决定，也要你自主做，别人的意见只是参考。

nǐ shíbā suì jiù líkāi jiā shēnghuó quán kào zìjǐ zǎo jiù xuéhuì le zìlì shēnghuó yě néng zìlǐ zhè cì de juédìng yě yào nǐ zìzhǔ zuò biérén de yìjiàn zhǐshì cānkǎo · You left home at eighteen and stood on your own feet: you learned long ago to be independent and look after yourself. This decision is yours to make too: other people's opinions are just for reference.

anna 刘经理的工作作风很踏实。她希望新同事有干劲，以开放的姿态加入团队，人人皆知她最讨厌说空话。

Liújīnglǐ de gōngzuò zuòfēng hěn tāshi tā xīwàng xīn tóngshì yǒu gànjìn yǐ kāifàng de zītài jiārù tuánduì rén rén jiē zhī tā zuì tǎoyàn shuō kōng huà · Manager Liu is very down-to-earth in how she works. She wants new colleagues to have drive and come in with an open attitude, and everyone knows she hates empty talk.

teacher wang 换工作要有一点儿魄力。当年我辞掉了安稳的工作，一个人办这所学校，没有人相信能成功。办学校也需要气魄。

huàn gōngzuò yào yǒuyìdiǎnr pòlì dāngnián wǒ cí diào le ānwěn de gōngzuò yí gè rén bàn zhè suǒ xuéxiào méiyǒu rén xiāngxìn néng chénggōng bàn xuéxiào yě xūyào qìpò · Changing jobs takes a bit of boldness. Back then I gave up a secure job and started this school on my own, and nobody believed it would work. Starting a school takes vision too.

anna 王老师的故事真励志，您是一个人拼搏出来的。您学校的使命就是让每个学生都能用中文跟世界交流，对吧?

Wánglǎoshī de gùshi zhēn lìzhì nín shì yí gè rén pīnbó chulai de nín xuéxiào de shǐmìng jiùshì ràng měi gè xuéshēng dōu néng yòng Zhōngwén gēn shìjiè jiāoliú duì ba · Your story is so inspiring, Teacher Wang: you fought your way up on your own. Your school's mission is for every student to be able to talk to the world in Chinese, isn't it?

teacher wang 对！不过有胆量不等于逞强。英勇的人也懂得克制，知道什么时候该停下来。

duì búguò yǒu dǎnliàng bù děngyú chěngqiáng yīngyǒng de rén yě dǒngde kèzhì zhīdào shénme shíhou gāi tíng xialai · Right! But having nerve doesn't mean pushing too hard. Brave people also know how to hold back, and when to stop.

xiaoming 听您这么一说，我也想豪迈一回！

tīng nín zhème yì shuō wǒ yě xiǎng háomài yì huí · Hearing you say that, I want to be bold for once!

teacher wang 哈哈，去吧。祝你前程远大！

hā hā qù ba zhù nǐ qiánchéng yuǎn dà · Ha ha, off you go. Wishing you a bright future!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

秉
bǐng
hold

逞
chěng
show off

good to know · Ambition, three shades: 抱负 and 志向 (positive aims), 野心 (often greedy ambition). 志气 is backbone; 出息 is what parents hope you'll have. Character words for interviews: 为人正直 (upright), 处事冷静 (handles things calmly), 言行如一 (practises what they preach), 守信 (keeps their word), 有担当 (takes responsibility).

Ambition, integrity, nerve: you can now talk about who you want to become, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 153 reputation and honour

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 20 · the workplace

Talk about reputation, honour and role models, and share big feelings with 别提多……了 and 纵然……

Awards, reputations and the people we look up to: the language of speeches, news stories and proud families.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
名声	míngshēng	reputation	这家饭店的名声很好。 This restaurant has a good reputation.
名誉	míngyù	reputation, good name; honorary	他是这所大学的名誉教授。 He's an honorary professor at this university.
声望	shēngwàng	prestige, standing	王老师在这一带很有声望。 Teacher Wang is highly respected around here.
声誉	shēngyù	reputation, fame (of an institution)	这所医院在全国享有很高的声誉。 This hospital is highly regarded across the country.
信誉	xìnyù	credibility, good faith	做生意，信誉最重要。 In business, credibility matters most.
威望	wēiwàng	prestige, authority	他在村里很有威望，大家有事都找他。 He's highly respected in the village: everyone goes to him with their problems.
威信	wēixìn	credibility, authority (of a leader)	说话不算数，领导就没有威信了。 A leader who doesn't keep their word loses all credibility.
美誉	měiyù	good name, fine reputation	杭州有“人间天堂”的美誉。 Hangzhou is famed as “paradise on earth”.
名利	mínglì	fame and fortune	他把名利看得很淡。 He cares little for fame and fortune.
光荣	guāngróng	glorious, honoured; honour	能代表公司去比赛，我感到很光荣。 I feel honoured to represent the company in the competition.
荣耀	róngyào	glory, honour	这块奖牌是全队的荣耀。 This medal is the whole team's glory.
体面	tǐmiàn	dignity, face; respectable	他想找一份体面的工作。 He wants a respectable job.
尊严	zūnyán	dignity	每个人都有自己的尊严。 Everyone has their own dignity.
尊贵	zūnguì	honourable, distinguished	欢迎各位尊贵的客人！ Welcome, distinguished guests!
高贵	gāoguì	noble	她有一颗高贵的心。 She has a noble heart.

身价	shēnjià	social standing; market value (of a person)	他出名以后，身价一下子高了好几倍。 Once he became famous, his market value shot up several times over.
显赫	xiǎnhè	illustrious, eminent	这个家族在清朝很显赫。 This family was very illustrious in the Qing dynasty.
驰名	chímíng	to be famous (far and wide)	这里的茶叶驰名全国。 The tea from here is famous all over the country.
著称	zhùchēng	to be noted for	杭州以西湖著称。 Hangzhou is noted for West Lake.
出众	chūzhòng	outstanding	她能力出众，很快就当上了经理。 She's outstandingly able and soon became a manager.
功	gōng	merit, achievement	这次能成功，他的功最大。 He deserves the most credit for this success.
功劳	gōngláo	credit, contribution	这次成功是大家的功劳。 This success is down to everyone.
立功	lìgōng	to perform a meritorious deed	他抓住了小偷，立功|了。 He caught the thief and was praised for it.
事迹	shìjì	deeds, achievements	报纸上登了这位老师的事迹。 The paper ran a story on this teacher's achievements.
生平	shēngpíng	life story	这本书介绍了他的生平。 This book tells the story of his life.
生涯	shēngyá	career	他三十年的医生生涯里，救了很多人。 In thirty years as a doctor, he has saved many lives.
泰斗	tàidǒu	leading authority, grand master	他是中国书法界的泰斗。 He's a grand master of Chinese calligraphy.
楷模	kǎimó	model, example	他是我们学习的楷模。 He's a model for us all.
典范	diǎnfàn	model, paragon	这座老房子是传统建筑的典范。 This old house is a classic example of traditional architecture.
模范	mófàn	model (worker); exemplary	她被评为{wei2-5b}全市的模范教师。 She was named a model teacher for the whole city.
表率	biǎoshuài	example (to others)	父母要给孩子做表率。 Parents should set an example for their children.
先锋	xiānfēng	vanguard, pioneer	他是网上卖茶的先锋。 He was a pioneer of selling tea online.
栋梁	dòngliáng	pillar (of society)	年轻人是国家的栋梁。 Young people are the pillars of the nation.

pattern 别提多……了 and 纵然……也…… for big feelings

who or what | 别提（有）多 | adjective | 了

别提多……了 means “don’t even ask how …”: a warm, spoken way to say a feeling is huge. Put a bare adjective or feeling between 多 and 了. 纵然……也…… (from day 148) says even the biggest “if” changes nothing: 纵然没有人知道，也要做 “even if no one knows, you still do it”.

爸爸得了奖，我们别提多高兴了！ **bàba de le jiǎng wǒmen bié tí duō gāoxìng le** Dad has won an award: you can’t imagine how happy we are!

上台的时候，我心里别提有多紧张了。 **shàngtái de shíhou wǒ xīnlǐ bié tí yǒu duō jǐnzhāng le** When I went up on stage, I was more nervous than you can imagine.

纵然没有人知道，该做的事也要做。 **zòngrán méiyǒu rén zhīdào gāi zuò de shì yě yào zuò** Even if nobody knows, you still do what has to be done.

dialogue a model doctor

little sister 爸爸被评为全市的模范医生，我们别提多高兴了！
bàba bèi píng wéi quán shì de mófàn yīshēng wǒmen bié tí duō gāoxìng le · Dad's been named a model doctor for the whole city: you can't imagine how happy we are!

ms zhang 报纸上还登了他的事迹，林编辑也写了一篇文章。这是我们全家的荣耀，我为他感到光荣。
bàozhǐ shàng hái dēng le tā de shìjì Línbiānjí yě xiě le yì piān wénzhāng zhè shì wǒmen quán jiā de róngyào wǒ wèi tā gǎndào guāngróng · The paper ran a story on him, and Editor Lin wrote a piece too. It's an honour for the whole family: I'm so proud of him.

little sister 爸爸年轻的时候就投身医学，一直很刻苦。
bàba niánqīng de shíhou jiù tóushēn yīxué yìzhí hěn kèkǔ · Dad threw himself into medicine when he was young, and he's always worked hard.

editor lin 李医生三十年的医生生涯里，一直坚守在一线，救了很多病人。他是年轻医生学习的楷模。
Lǐyīshēng sānshí nián de yīshēng shēngyá lǐ yìzhí jiānshǒu zài yíxiàn jiù le hěn duō bìngrén tā shì niánqīng yīshēng xuéxí de kǎimó · In thirty years as a doctor, Dr Li has always stayed on the front line and saved many patients. He's a model for young doctors.

dr li 过奖了。这是整个科室的功劳，不是我一个人的功。
guòjiǎng le zhè shì zhěnggè kē shì de gōngláo bú shì wǒ yí gè rén de gōng · You flatter me. The credit belongs to the whole department, not just me.

editor lin 您太谦虚了。去年大雪封路，是您走了两个小时到医院做手术，大家都说您很英勇，为医院立功了。
nín tài qiānxū le qùnián dà xuě fēng lù shì nín zǒu le liǎng gè xiǎoshí dào yīyuàn zuò shǒushù dàjiā dōu shuō nín hěn yīngyǒng wèi yīyuàn lìgōng le · You're too modest. Last year, when the snow closed the roads, you walked two hours to the hospital to operate: everyone says you were heroic and did the hospital a great service.

anna 叔叔兢兢业业几十年，是我们大家的表率。
shūshu jīngjīngyèyè jǐ shí nián shì wǒmen dàjiā de biǎoshuài · Uncle, after decades of conscientious work, you're an example to us all.

dr li 当医生不是为了名利。纵然没有人知道，该做的事也要做。
dāng yīshēng bú shì wèile mínglì zòngrán méiyǒu rén zhīdào gāi zuò de shì yě yào zuò · Being a doctor isn't about fame and fortune. Even if nobody knows, you do what has to be done.

xiaoming 我爸爸看病，从来不看病人的身价，有钱没钱都一样对待。他常说，每个病人都有自己的尊严。
wǒ bàba kànbìng cónglái bú kàn bìngrén de shēnjià yǒu qián méi qián dōu yíyàng duìdài tā cháng shuō měi gè bìngrén dōu yǒu zìjǐ de zūnyán · When my dad treats someone, he never looks at what they're worth: rich or poor, they're treated the same. He always says every patient has their own dignity.

editor lin 所以他在科室里很有威信，在这一带也很有声望，病人中间名声特别好。老病人都说，李医生的威望比院长还高。
suǒyǐ tā zài kē shì lǐ hěn yǒu wēixìn zài zhè yídài yě hěn yǒu shēngwàng bìngrén zhōngjiān míngshēng tèbié hǎo lǎo bìngrén dōu shuō Lǐyīshēng de wēiwàng bǐ yuànzhǎng hái gāo · That's why he has real authority in his department, he's highly respected around here, and he has a wonderful reputation among patients. His long-time patients say he's more respected than the hospital director.

ms zhang 他们医院在全国享有很高的声誉，以心脏科著称，还有“病人的第二个家”的美誉。一个医院的信誉，靠的就是这样的医生。
tāmen yīyuàn zài quán guó xiǎngyǒu hěn gāo de shēngyù yǐ xīnzàng kē zhùchēng hái yǒu bìngrén de dì èr gè jiā de měiyù yí gè yīyuàn de xìnyù kào de jiùshì zhèyàng de yīshēng · His hospital is highly regarded nationwide and noted for its heart department; it's even known as "the patients' second home". A hospital's good name rests on doctors like him.

xiaoming 爸爸一直秉持一个原则：病人第一。
bàba yìzhí bǐngchí yí gè yuánzé bìngrén dì yī · Dad has always held to one principle: patients come first.

little sister 我们大学也请爸爸去当名誉教授！学校里有一位老教授，是心脏病研究的泰斗，驰名全国。
wǒmen dàxué yě qǐng bàba qù dāng míngyù jiàoshòu xuéxiào lǐ yǒu yí wèi lǎo jiàoshòu shì xīnzàng bìng yánjiū de tàidǒu chímíng quán guó · And my university has invited Dad to be an honorary professor! There's an old professor there who's the grand master of heart research, famous all over the country.

dr li 他是我的老师，能力出众，一辈子潜心研究，是医学界的典范。他的生平就是一部医学的历史。
tā shì wǒ de lǎoshī nénglì chūzhòng yíbèizi qiánxīn yánjiū shì yīxué jiè de diǎnfàn tā de shēngpíng jiùshì yí bù yīxué de lìshǐ · He was my teacher: outstanding in every way, devoted to research all his life, a model for the whole medical world. His life story is a history of medicine in itself.

editor lin 您年轻的时候，是医院里第一批去山区看病的医生吧？听说你们几个医生轮换着去，一去就是半年。
nín niánqīng de shíhou shì yīyuàn lǐ dì yī pī qù shānqū kànbìng de yīshēng ba tīngshuō nǐmen jǐ gè yīshēng lúnhuàn zhe qù yí qù jiùshì bàn nián · When you were young, you were among the first doctors from the hospital to go and treat people in the mountains, weren't you? I heard a few of you took turns to go, half a year at a time.

dr li 对，那时候我们是先锋，觉得这是医生的使命。现在年轻医生才是国家的栋梁。
duì nà shíhou wǒmen shì xiānfēng juéde zhè shì yīshēng de shǐmìng xiànzài niánqīng yīshēng cái shì guójiā de dòngliáng · Yes, back then we were the pioneers, and we felt it was a doctor's mission. Now it's the young doctors who are the pillars of the country.

anna 叔叔，颁奖典礼的时候紧张吗？
shūshu bānjiǎng diǎnlǐ de shíhou jǐnzhāng ma · Uncle, were you nervous at the award ceremony?

dr li 别提多紧张了！台上坐着很多尊贵的客人。我穿了一身新衣服，体面是体面，就是不舒服。
bié tí duō jǐnzhāng le tái shàng zuò zhe hěn duō zūnguì de kèrén wǒ chuān le yìshēn xīn yīfu tǐmiàn shì tǐmiàn jiùshì bù shūfu · You can't imagine! There were so many distinguished guests on stage. I wore a brand-new suit: respectable, sure, but so uncomfortable.

ms zhang 他这个人处事低调，最不喜欢这种场合。我们家不是什么显赫的家庭，就是普通人。可是他言行如一，他的为人比什么都高贵。
tā zhè gè rén chǔshì dīdiào zuì bù xǐhuan zhè zhǒng chǎnghé wǒmen jiā bú shì shénme xiǎnhè de jiātíng jiùshì pǔtōng rén kěshì tā yánxíng rúyī tā de wéirén bǐ shénme dōu gāoguì · He keeps a low profile, and he really doesn't like occasions like this. We're not a grand family: just ordinary people. But he practises what he preaches, and the kind of man he is, that's nobler than anything.

xiaoming 爸爸，明天我就去面试了。纵然这次不成功，我也要像您一样，有担当，把工作做好。
bàba míngtiān wǒ jiù qù miànshì le zòngrán zhè cì bù chénggōng wǒ yě yào xiàng nín yíyàng yǒu dāndāng bǎ gōngzuò zuò hǎo · Dad, I have my interview tomorrow. Even if it doesn't work out, I want to be like you: take responsibility and do my work well.

dr li 好！有志气！去吧，别逞强，就做你自己。
hǎo yǒu zhìqì qù ba bié chěngqiáng jiù zuò nǐ zìjǐ · Good! That's the spirit! Go on, don't try too hard: just be yourself.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

涯
yá
edge, span

泰
tài
Mount Tai

good to know · Reputation, by who has it: a person has 名声, 声望, 威望 (respect) and 威信 (authority); a company or hospital has 声誉 and 信誉 (credibility); a place has a 美誉 (a fine nickname). Role models: 楷模, 典范 and 表率 (an example to follow), 模范 (model worker, often an official title), 先锋 (pioneer), 栋梁 (pillar of society), 泰斗 (grand master of a field).

Honour, reputation and the people we look up to: you can now give praise, and accept it, in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 154 mission: the job interview

Follow a whole job interview in Chinese: the job advert, the questions about your career, pay, effort and character, and the phone call afterwards.

Everything in this unit meets in one room: hiring, bosses and teams, pay and performance, willpower, ambition and reputation.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the job advert

xiaoming （读）“招聘启事：本公司因业务扩张，人手不够，现在招募技术负责人一名。职位：物流项目技术负责人，掌管十二人的技术团队，向项目经理请示、上报工作。
dú zhāopìn qǐshì běn gōngsī yīn yèwù kuòzhāng rénshǒu búgòu xiànzài zhāomù jìshù fùzérén yì míng zhíwèi wùliú xiàngmù jìshù fùzérén zhǎngguǎn shíèr rén de jìshù tuánduì xiàng xiàngmù jīnglǐ qǐngshì shàngbào gōngzuò · (reading) “Job advert: as our business is expanding and we are short of staff, we are recruiting one technical lead. Post: technical lead of the logistics project, in charge of a twelve-person tech team, reporting to the project manager.

xiaoming 要求：资深工程师，在一线工作过，有带队的经验，能胜任繁重的工作，能兼顾技术和管理。年薪三十万到四十万，具体薪酬面谈；出差费用可以报销。
yāoqiú zīshēn gōngchéngshī zài yíxiàn gōngzuò guo yǒu dàiduì de jīngyàn néng shèngrèn fánzhòng de gōngzuò néng jiāngù jìshù hé guǎnlǐ niánxīn sānshí wàn dào sìshí wàn jùtǐ xīnchóu miàn tán chūchāi fèiyong kěyǐ bàoxiāo · Requirements: a senior engineer with front-line experience and experience leading a team, able to handle a heavy workload and balance technology with management. Annual salary 300,000 to 400,000; exact pay to be discussed at interview; travel expenses can be claimed back.

xiaoming 本公司秉承‘客户第一’的传统，重用年轻人，晋升均看业绩，不看资历。欢迎敬业、守信、有担当的人加入我们。”
běn gōngsī bǐngchéng kèhù dì yī de chuántǒng zhòngyòng niánqīng rén jìnshēng jūn kàn yèjì bú kàn zīlì huānyíng jìngyè shǒuxìn yǒu dāndāng de rén jiārù wǒmen · Our company carries on the tradition of putting customers first. We give young people real responsibility, and all promotion is based on results, not length of service. We welcome dedicated, trustworthy people who take responsibility.”

little sister 年薪三十万！哥哥，这份工作又体面，报酬又高，你一定要去。
niánxīn sānshí wàn gēge zhè fèn gōngzuò yòu tǐmiàn bàochou yòu gāo nǐ yídìng yào qù · Three hundred thousand a year! Big brother, it’s respectable and well paid: you have to go.

xiaoming 我不是为了名利。这个项目我上次帮过忙，我想把它做好。
wǒ bú shì wèile mínglì zhège xiàngmù wǒ shàng cì bāng guo máng wǒ xiǎng bǎ tā zuò hǎo · It’s not about fame or money. I helped with this project last time, and I want to do it properly.

dr li 说得好。面试的时候别逞强，也别当胆小鬼，就做你自己。
shuō de hǎo miànshì de shíhou bié chěngqiáng yě bié dāng dǎnxiǎoguǐ jiù zuò nǐ zìjǐ · Well said. In the interview, don’t push too hard, and don’t be a coward either: just be yourself.

ms zhang 穿这件衬衫吧，又干净又体面。我们家的人都很争气，这不，你爸爸刚被评为模范医生！
chuān zhè jiàn chènshān ba yòu gānjìng yòu tǐmiàn wǒmen jiā de rén dōu hěn zhēngqì zhè bù nǐ bàba gāng bèi píng wéi mófàn yīshēng · Wear this shirt: it’s clean and smart. Our family always does us proud: look, your dad’s just been named a model doctor!

little sister 哥哥这几天别提多刻苦了，天天六点起来跑步，晚上看书到十二点。
gēge zhè jǐ tiān bié tí duō kèkǔ le tiān tiān liù diǎn qǐlái pǎobù wǎnshang kàn shū dào shíèr diǎn · You can’t imagine how hard my brother has worked these last few days: running at six every morning, reading until midnight.

xiaoming 纵然这次不成功，我也学到了很多。走了！
zòngrán zhè cì bù chénggōng wǒ yě xué dào le hěn duō zǒu le · Even if it doesn’t work out this time, I’ve learned a lot. I’m off!

chapter 2 chapter 2: who are you?

anna 刘经理，小明是我的朋友，今天的面试我就不参加了。
Liújīnglǐ Xiǎomíng shì wǒ de péngyou jīntiān de miànshì wǒ jiù bù cānjiā le · Manager Liu, Xiaoming is my friend, so I won't sit in on today's interview.

manager liu 好。小明，请坐。公事公办：纵然你是安娜引荐的，我也只看能力。
hǎo Xiǎomíng qǐng zuò gōngshì gōngbàn zòngrán nǐ shì Ānnà yǐnjiàn de wǒ yě zhǐ kàn nénglì · Fine. Xiaoming, have a seat. This is business, by the book: even though Anna introduced you, I only look at ability.

xiaoming 我明白。我在现在的公司任职五年了，是技术骨干，现在还在职，一边工作一边读完了硕士。
wǒ míngbai wǒ zài xiànzài de gōngsī rènzhí wǔ nián le shì jìshù gǔgàn xiànzài hái zàizhí yìbiān gōngzuò yìbiān dú wán le shuòshì · I understand. I've held a post at my current company for five years and I'm one of its key technical people. I'm still employed there, and I did my master's while working.

manager liu 你的职称和级别是什么？
nǐ de zhíchēng hé jíbié shì shénme · What's your professional title and grade?

xiaoming 我的职称是工程师，级别不高，名片上也没有什么头衔。我刚工作的时候在工厂的一线上了两年夜班。
wǒ de zhíchēng shì gōngchéngshī jíbié bù gāo míngpiàn shàng yě méiyǒu shénme tóuxián wǒ gāng gōngzuò de shíhou zài gōngchǎng de yíxiàn shàng le liǎng nián yèbān · My title is engineer; my grade isn't high, and there aren't any fancy titles on my card. When I started out I did two years of night shifts on the factory front line.

manager liu 为什么想跳槽？听说你们公司最近在裁员。
wèi shénme xiǎng tiàocáo tīngshuō nǐmen gōngsī zuìjìn zài cáiyuán · Why do you want to change jobs? I hear your company has been cutting jobs.

xiaoming 我暂时没事，饭碗还在。可是新经理上任以后，很多老同事被辞退了，有的自己辞了工作。我想去一个能做事的地方，不想只为了谋生。
wǒ zànshí méishì fànwǎn hái zài kěshì xīn jīnglǐ shàngrèn yǐhòu hěn duō lǎo tóngshì bèi cítuì le yǒude zìjǐ cí le gōngzuò wǒ xiǎng qù yí gè néng zuò shì de dìfang bù xiǎng zhǐ wèile móushēng · I'm fine for now: my job's safe. But since the new manager took over, lots of old colleagues have been let go, and some have quit. I want to go somewhere I can get things done, not just earn a living.

xiaoming 我们的现任经理是从总部调来的。前任经理被免职以后，自己交了辞呈。
wǒmen de xiànrèn jīnglǐ shì cóng zǒngbù diào lái de qiánrèn jīnglǐ bèi miǎnzhí yǐhòu zìjǐ jiāo le cíchéng · Our current manager was moved in from head office. After the previous one was removed from his post, he handed in his resignation himself.

manager liu 我们公司有两千多名雇员，雇主和员工的关系，我们很重视，工会也很活跃。新闻里说的那种罢工，我们这儿从来没有发生过。
wǒmen gōngsī yǒu liǎngqiān duō míng gùyuán gùzhǔ hé yuángōng de guānxì wǒmen hěn zhòngshì gōnghuì yě hěn huóyuè xīnwén lǐ shuō de nà zhǒng bàgōng wǒmen zhèr cónglái méiyǒu fāshēng guo · We have over two thousand employees, and we take the relationship between employer and staff seriously; the union is very active too. The kind of strike you see in the news has never happened here.

xiaoming 我的同事老张被解雇以后，去了一家劳务公司，帮从农村出来务工的人找工作。
wǒ de tóngshì lǎo zhāng bèi jiěgù yǐhòu qù le yì jiā láowù gōngsī bāng cóng nóngcūn chūlái wùgōng de rén zhǎo gōngzuò · After my colleague Lao Zhang was let go, he went to a labour agency, helping people who come from the countryside find work.

manager liu 如果我们决定聘你，公司会正式聘任你为技术负责人，你可以出任项目的技术顾问。去年我们还雇了两个外国工程师，团队很国际化。
rúguǒ wǒmen juédìng pìn nǐ gōngsī huì zhèngshì pìnrèn nǐ wéi jìshù fùzérén nǐ kěyǐ chūrèn xiàngmù de jìshù gùwèn qùnián wǒmen hái gù le liǎng gè wàiguó gōngchéngshī tuánduì hěn guójì huà · If we decide to take you on, the company will formally appoint you technical lead, and you could become the project's technical adviser. Last year we hired two foreign engineers too: the team is very international.

manager liu 你跟上司和下属的关系怎么样？
nǐ gēn shàngsi hé xiàshǔ de guānxì zěnmeyàng · How do you get on with your boss and the people under you?

xiaoming 我的上司很器重我，有大项目常常让我牵头。下属有问题，我会带头解决，不推卸责任。

wǒ de shàngsi hěn qìzhòng wǒ yǒu dà xiàngmù chángcháng ràng wǒ qiāntóu xiàshǔ yǒu wèntí wǒ huì dàitóu jiějué bù tuīxiè zérèn · My boss thinks highly of me and often puts me in charge of big projects. When the team has a problem, I lead the way in solving it: I don't pass the buck.

manager liu 我们公司的创始人是董事长，明年卸任。接班人还没定，董事会正在物色人选。公司变化很大，你能接受吗?

wǒmen gōngsī de chuàngshǐrén shì dǒngshìzhǎng míngnián xièrèn jiēbānrén hái méi dìng dǒngshìhuì zhèngzài wùsè rénxuǎn gōngsī biànhuà hěn dà nǐ néng jiēshòu ma · Our founder is the chairman, and he steps down next year. His successor hasn't been chosen: the board is looking for candidates. There's a lot of change here: can you handle that?

manager liu 我们的首席工程师也是董事，你要直接跟他配合。他是公司的元老，也是这个领域的领军人物。董事长掌舵十五年，明年谁来接班，大家都很关心。

wǒmen de shǒuxí gōngchéngshī yě shì dǒngshì nǐ yào zhíjiē gēn tā pèihé tā shì gōngsī de yuánlǎo yě shì zhège lǐngyù de lǐngjūn rénwù dǒngshìzhǎng zhǎngduò shíwǔ nián míngnián shéi lái jiēbān dàjiā dōu hěn guānxīn · Our chief engineer is also a director: you'd work directly with him. He's one of the company's founding members and a leading figure in the field. The chairman has been at the helm for fifteen years, and everyone wants to know who'll take over next year.

xiaoming 能。我会以开放的姿态加入团队。前任负责人调到上海了，我愿意接替他，跟他好好交接，尽快接手。

néng wǒ huì yǐ kāifàng de zītài jiārù tuánduì qiánrèn fùzérén diào dào Shànghǎi le wǒ yuànyì jiētì tā gēn tā hǎohǎo jiāojiē jǐnkuài jiēshǒu · Yes. I'd join the team with an open attitude. The previous lead has moved to Shanghai: I'm happy to replace him, do a proper handover, and take over as quickly as possible.

manager liu 我们很重用年轻人。这不，安娜三十出头就带队去上海参加博览会了。董事长很赏识她，提拔得很快。

wǒmen hěn zhòngyòng niánqīng rén zhè bù Ānnà sānshí chūtóu jiù dàiduì qù Shànghǎi cānjiā bólǎnhuì le dǒngshìzhǎng hěn shǎngshí tā tíbá de hěn kuài · We give young people big jobs. Look at Anna: just over thirty and she led the team to the Shanghai expo. The chairman really appreciates her, and she's risen fast.

manager liu 十年前，我率一个三个人的小组拿下了第一个大客户。上级和下级之间，我们说话都很直接。每年年会，董事长都感谢各位同仁。

shí nián qián wǒ shuài yí gè sān gè rén de xiǎozǔ ná xià le dì yī gè dà kèhù shàngjí hé xiàjí zhījiān wǒmen shuōhuà dōu hěn zhíjiē měi nián nián huì dǒngshìzhǎng dōu gǎnxiè gèwèi tóngrén · Ten years ago I led a three-person team that landed our first big client. Between levels, we all speak our minds here. Every year at the annual party, the chairman thanks all his colleagues.

xiaoming 我妹妹在学生会当干事，她的老师是一个学会的理事。她说，开个会要先问好几个人。

wǒ mèimei zài xuéshēng huì dāng gànshi tā de lǎoshī shì yí gè xuéhuì de lǐshì tā shuō kāi gè huì yào xiān wèn hǎo jǐ gè rén · My sister is an officer in her student union, and her teacher sits on the council of an academic society. She says holding a meeting means asking several people first.

manager liu 哈哈，我们这儿没那么复杂。很多年轻人毕业以后想到我们公司就职，就是因为这一点。

hā hā wǒmen zhèr méi nàme fùzá hěn duō niánqīng rén bìyè yǐhòu xiǎng dào wǒmen gōngsī jiùzhí jiùshì yīnwèi zhè yìdiǎn · Ha ha, it's not that complicated here. That's exactly why many young people want to work for us after they graduate.

chapter 3 chapter 3: pay, performance and effort

manager liu 我们每半年做一次绩效考核，评审小组看业绩、看指标。完成得好，公司会奖赏整个团队。

wǒmen měi bàn nián zuò yí cì jìxiào kǎohé píngshěn xiǎozǔ kàn yèjì kàn zhǐbiāo wánchéng de hǎo gōngsī huì jiǎngshǎng zhěnggè tuánduì · We do a performance review every six months: the review panel looks at results and targets. If you do well, the company rewards the whole team.

xiaoming 要是没完成呢?

yàoshi méi wánchéng ne · And if the targets aren't met?

manager liu 那要找原因。管理不力的，会受处分；可是我们从来不会因为一次失败就开除人。

nà yào zhǎo yuányīn guǎnlǐ búlì de huì shòu chǔfèn kěshì wǒmen cónglái bú huì yīnwèi yí cì shībài jiù kāichú rén · Then we look for the reason. Weak management gets disciplined, but we never fire anyone for one failure.

xiaoming 这个工作很繁重吧?

zhège gōngzuò hěn fánzhòng ba · The work must be demanding?

manager liu 很繁重。你要担负整个技术团队，还要兼任客户的技术顾问。项目由我们公司牵头，我们肩负着一个重任。

hěn fánzhòng nǐ yào dānfù zhěnggè jìshù tuánduì hái yào jiānrèn kèhù de jìshù gùwèn xiàngmù yóu wǒmen gōngsī qiāntóu wǒmen jiānfù zhe yí gè zhòngrèn · Very. You'll carry the whole tech team, and also act as technical adviser to clients. Our company is leading the project: it's a big responsibility on our shoulders.

manager liu 博览会的时候，安娜什么都干，给张女士打下手，还充当翻译。我们团队的每个人都要能兼做几件事。开会不能随便缺席。

bólǎnhuì de shíhou Ānnà shénme dōu gàn gěi Zhāngnǚshì dǎ xiàshǒu hái chōngdāng fānyì wǒmen tuánduì de měi gè rén dōu yào néng jiān zuò jǐ jiàn shì kāihuì bù néng suíbiàn quēxí · At the expo Anna did everything: she helped Ms Zhang out and acted as interpreter too. Everyone on our team has to be able to do several jobs at once. And you can't just skip meetings.

xiaoming 我不怕吃苦。上次修系统，我在视频里忙活了两个小时。我比较好胜，问题不解决，我就睡不着。

wǒ bú pà chīkǔ shàng cì xiū xìtǒng wǒ zài shìpín lǐ mánghuo le liǎng gè xiǎoshí wǒ bǐjiào hàoshèng wèntí bù jiějué wǒ jiù shuì bu zháo · I'm not afraid of hard work. When I fixed the system last time, I was at it for two hours on the video call. I'm quite competitive: if a problem isn't solved, I can't sleep.

manager liu 我记得。我们跟你非亲非故，你却一分钱报酬也没要。你是一个很执着、很坚韧的人。

wǒ jìde wǒmen gēn nǐ fēi qīn fēi gù nǐ què yì fēn qián bàochou yě méi yào nǐ shì yí gè hěn zhízhuó hěn jiānrèn de rén · I remember. You owed us nothing, yet you didn't ask for a cent. You're very persistent and tough.

xiaoming 我爸爸说，要强是好事，可是也要学会克制、有节制。我这几年也收敛了很多。

wǒ bàba shuō yàoqiáng shì hǎo shì kěshì yě yào xuéhuì kèzhì yǒu jiézhì wǒ zhè jǐ nián yě shōuliǎn le hěn duō · My dad says being driven is good, but you also have to learn self-control and moderation. I've toned it down a lot in recent years.

manager liu 做研究需要毅力和韧性，还要有坚强的意志。这个工作要耐得住压力。

zuò yánjiū xūyào yìlì hé rènxìng hái yào yǒu jiānqiáng de yìzhì zhège gōngzuò yào nài de zhù yālì · Research takes willpower and resilience, and a strong will. This job means standing up to pressure.

xiaoming 我爸爸在医院兢兢业业干了三十年，我们家的人都很勤俭、节俭。我跑步的时候，最后一公里总是奋勇向前，斗志最强。

wǒ bàba zài yīyuàn jīngjīngyèyè gàn le sānshí nián wǒmen jiā de rén dōu hěn qínjiǎn jiéjiǎn wǒ pǎobù de shíhou zuìhòu yì gōnglǐ zǒngshì fènyǒng xiàng qián dòuzhì zuì qiáng · My dad worked conscientiously at the hospital for thirty years, and our family has always worked hard and spent carefully. When I run, I always push hardest in the last kilometre: that's when my fighting spirit is strongest.

manager liu 你这股劲，这种劲头，正是我们需要的。我们力求简单，力争明年把系统卖给一百家公司。

nǐ zhè gǔ jìn zhè zhǒng jìntóu zhèng shì wǒmen xūyào de wǒmen lìqiú jiǎndān lìzhēng míngnián bǎ xìtǒng

mài gěi yìbǎi jiā gōngsī · That drive, that enthusiasm, is exactly what we need. We aim to keep things simple, and to sell the system to a hundred companies next year.

xiaoming 我愿意投身这个项目，潜心把系统做好。经过不懈的努力，我相信能做到。

wǒ yuànyì tóushēn zhège xiàngmù qiánxīn bǎ xìtǒng zuò hǎo jīngguò búxiè de nǔlì wǒ xiāngxìn néng zuò dào · I'd be glad to throw myself into this project and devote myself to getting the system right. With steady effort, I believe we can do it.

manager liu 我们希望员工积极进取。每年年会，董事长都会感谢每一位辛勤工作的同事。

wǒmen xīwàng yuángōng jījí jìnqǔ měi nián nián huì dǒngshìzhǎng dōu huì gǎnxiè měi yí wèi xīnqín gōngzuò de tóngshì · We want staff who push ahead. Every year at the annual party, the chairman thanks every colleague for their hard work.

manager liu 团队里有人怠工，你怎么办？

tuánduì lǐ yǒu rén dàigōng nǐ zěnme bàn · What would you do if someone on the team was slacking?

xiaoming 先忍耐，先听他的理由。可是我不能容忍有人把自己的工作推给别人。工作要大家分担。

xiān rěnnài xiān tīng tā de lǐyóu kěshì wǒ bù néng róngrěn yǒu rén bǎ zìjǐ de gōngzuò tuī gěi biérén gōngzuò yào dàjiā fēndān · First I'd be patient and hear his reasons. But I can't tolerate people pushing their work onto others. Work should be shared.

manager liu 薪酬方面，年薪三十五万，奖金跟绩效挂钩。你觉得怎么样？

xīnchóu fāngmiàn niánxīn sānshíwǔ wàn jiǎngjīn gēn jìxiào guàgōu nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng · On pay: three hundred and fifty thousand a year, with a bonus linked to performance. What do you think?

xiaoming 大体可以。不过我更看重的是能做事，钱可多可少。

dàtǐ kěyǐ búguò wǒ gèng kànzhòng de shì néng zuò shì qián kě duō kě shǎo · That's broadly fine. But what matters more to me is being able to get things done: the money can be more or less.

manager liu 这不，你又说到我心里去了。这几年你在工厂、在项目里磨炼，拼搏了这么多年，刻苦、勤快、有干劲，就是我们要的人。

zhè bù nǐ yòu shuō dào wǒ xīnlǐ qù le zhè jǐ nián nǐ zài gōngchǎng zài xiàngmù lǐ móliàn pīnbó le zhème duō nián kèkǔ qínkuai yǒu gànjìn jiùshì wǒmen yào de rén · See, you've said just what I was thinking again. All these years of being toughened up in the factory and on projects, going all out, working hard, keen and full of drive: you're exactly who we want.

chapter 4 chapter 4: ambition and character

manager liu 最后几个问题。你的志向是什么？五年以后想做什么？
zuìhòu jǐ gè wèntí nǐ de zhìxiàng shì shénme wǔ nián yǐhòu xiǎng zuò shénme · A few final questions. What are your aims? What do you want to be doing in five years?

xiaoming 不瞒您说，我十岁的时候就想当工程师，考大学的第一志愿也是工程。我的抱负是做一个真正好用的物流系统，让小公司也能跟巨头抗衡。
bù mán nín shuō wǒ shí suì de shíhou jiù xiǎng dāng gōngchéngshī kǎo dàxué de dì yī zhìyuàn yě shì gōngchéng wǒ de bàofù shì zuò yí gè zhēnzhèng hǎo yòng de wùliú xìtǒng ràng xiǎo gōngsī yě néng gēn jùtóu kànghéng · To be honest, I wanted to be an engineer at ten, and engineering was my first choice for university. My ambition is to build a logistics system that really works, so small companies can stand up to the giants.

manager liu 这是抱负，不是野心。我们公司的使命也是这样。你怎么看名声和信誉？
zhè shì bàofù bú shì yěxīn wǒmen gōngsī de shǐmìng yě shì zhèyàng nǐ zěnme kàn míngshēng hé xìnyù · That's ambition, not greed. It's our company's mission too. What do you think about reputation and credibility?

xiaoming 一个公司的声誉，靠的是守信。我爸爸三十年言行如一，在医院很有威望，在这一带也很有声望。他是我的楷模。
yí gè gōngsī de shēngyù kào de shì shǒuxìn wǒ bàba sānshí nián yánxíng rúyī zài yīyuàn hěn yǒu wēiwàng zài zhè yídài yě hěn yǒu shēngwàng tā shì wǒ de kǎimó · A company's good name rests on keeping its word. My dad has practised what he preaches for thirty years: he has real standing at the hospital and he's highly respected around here. He's my role model.

manager liu 我看了报纸，李医生是全市的模范，他的事迹很励志。在医学界，这是很高的荣耀。
wǒ kàn le bàozhǐ Lǐyīshēng shì quán shì de mófàn tā de shìjì hěn lìzhì zài yīxué jiè zhè shì hěn gāo de róngyào · I saw the paper: Dr Li is one of the city's model doctors, and his story is very inspiring. In medicine, that's a great honour.

xiaoming 他说，这是整个科室的功劳。他为人正直，处事冷静，从来不看病人的身价，说每个病人都有尊严。
tā shuō zhè shì zhěnggè kē shì de gōngláo tā wéirén zhèngzhí chǔshì lěngjìng cónglái bú kàn bìngrén de shēnjià shuō měi gè bìngrén dōu yǒu zūnyán · He says the credit belongs to the whole department. He's an upright man who handles things calmly, never looks at what a patient is worth, and says every patient has their dignity.

manager liu 你觉得自己是一个怎么样的人？
nǐ juéde zìjǐ shì yí gè zěnmeyàng de rén · What kind of person do you think you are?

xiaoming 我十八岁就自立了，什么事都能自主决定。我秉持一个原则：做好本分，答应的事一概做到。
wǒ shíbā suì jiù zìlì le shénme shì dōu néng zìzhǔ juédìng wǒ bǐngchí yí gè yuánzé zuò hǎo běnfèn dāying de shì yígài zuò dào · I've stood on my own feet since I was eighteen and I can make my own decisions. I hold to one principle: do my job well, and never fail to do what I've promised.

manager liu 你父母一定很为你骄傲。你成才了，也很有志气。
nǐ fùmǔ yídìng hěn wèi nǐ jiāoào nǐ chéngcái le yě hěn yǒu zhìqì · Your parents must be very proud of you. You've made something of yourself, and you've got backbone.

xiaoming 王老师说，年轻人应该有所作为。我爷爷九十岁了，生活还能自理，他常说要坚守自己的原则。
Wánglǎoshī shuō niánqīng rén yīnggāi yǒusuǒ zuòwéi wǒ yéye jiǔshí suì le shēnghuó hái néng zìlǐ tā cháng shuō yào jiānshǒu zìjǐ de yuánzé · Teacher Wang says young people should make their mark. My grandpa is ninety and still looks after himself, and he always says to stand by your principles.

manager liu 我们董事长当年一个人创业，很有气魄，说话也很豪迈。
wǒmen dǒngshìzhǎng dāngnián yí gè rén chuàngyè hěn yǒu qìpò shuōhuà yě hěn háomài · When our chairman started the company on his own, he had real vision and spoke with great boldness.

xiaoming 我不是什么英勇的人，可是遇到困难，我不会躲。
wǒ bú shì shénme yīngyǒng de rén kěshì yùdào kùnnan wǒ bú huì duǒ · I'm no hero, but I don't run from problems.

manager liu 你的工作作风很踏实。不过离开熟悉的地方要有胆量，也要有魄力。
nǐ de gōngzuò zuòfēng hěn tāshi búguò líkāi shúxi de dìfang yào yǒu dǎnliàng yě yào yǒu pòlì · You have a very down-to-earth way of working. But leaving somewhere familiar takes nerve, and boldness too.

xiaoming 我知道。王老师说，有胆量不等于逞强。我想去新公司谋求更大的发展，不是为自己谋取什么好处。
wǒ zhīdào Wánglǎoshī shuō yǒu dǎnliàng bù děngyú chěngqiáng wǒ xiǎng qù xīn gōngsī móuqiú gèng dà de fāzhǎn bú shì wèi zìjǐ móuqǔ shénme hǎochù · I know. Teacher Wang says having nerve isn't the same as pushing too hard. I want to come here to grow, not to get anything for myself.

manager liu 我们公司不是什么显赫的大公司，可是在物流软件方面有很好的美誉，以服务好著称。一个经理要有威信，说话就要算数。
wǒmen gōngsī bú shì shénme xiǎnhè de dà gōngsī kěshì zài wùliú ruǎnjiàn fāngmiàn yǒu hěn hǎo de měiyù yǐ fúwù hǎo zhùchēng yí gè jīnglǐ yào yǒu wēixìn shuōhuà jiù yào suànshù · We're not some grand, famous company, but we have a fine reputation in logistics software and we're known for good service. A manager needs authority, so she has to keep her word.

xiaoming 我听说你们的首席工程师是这个领域的泰斗，他的生平我在网上看过。
wǒ tīngshuō nǐmen de shǒuxí gōngchéngshī shì zhège lǐngyù de tàidǒu tā de shēngpíng wǒ zài wǎngshang kàn guo · I hear your chief engineer is a grand master in this field: I've read his life story online.

manager liu 对，他是我们的典范，也给年轻人做表率。他是国内最早做物流软件的先锋之一。
duì tā shì wǒmen de diǎnfàn yě gěi niánqīng rén zuò biǎoshuài tā shì guó nèi zuì zǎo zuò wùliú ruǎnjiàn de xiānfēng zhī yī · Yes, he's our model, and he sets an example for the young ones. He was one of the first pioneers of logistics software in the country.

manager liu 好。我们的面试就到这儿。所有的候选人里，唯独你帮过这个项目。有关事宜，我会先请示董事长。
hǎo wǒmen de miànshì jiù dào zhèr suǒyǒu de hòuxuǎnrén lǐ wéidú nǐ bāng guo zhège xiàngmù yǒuguān shìyí wǒ huì xiān qǐngshì dǒngshìzhǎng · Good. That's the end of the interview. Of all the candidates, only you have already helped with this project. I'll check the details with the chairman first.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the phone call

little sister 哥哥，怎么样？你别提多紧张了吧？
gēge zěnmeyàng nǐ bié tí duō jǐnzhāng le ba · So, big brother? You must have been terribly nervous?

xiaoming 刚开始很紧张，后来就好了。刘经理问得很细，可是很公平。
gāng kāishǐ hěn jǐnzhāng hòulái jiù hǎo le Liújīnglǐ wèn de hěn xì kěshì hěn gōngpíng · Very nervous at first, then it was fine. Manager Liu asked about everything in detail, but she was fair.

manager liu （打电话）小明，我是刘经理。董事长同意了，公司决定聘用你，任命你为物流项目的技术负责人。
dǎ diànhuà Xiǎomíng wǒ shì Liújīnglǐ dǒngshìzhǎng tóngyì le gōngsī juédìng pìnyòng nǐ rènmìng nǐ wéi wùliú xiàngmù de jìshù fùzérén · (on the phone) Xiaoming, it's Manager Liu. The chairman has agreed: the company has decided to hire you and appoint you technical lead of the logistics project.

xiaoming 太谢谢您了！
tài xièxie nín le · Thank you so much!

manager liu 不过我们知道，你现在的公司是合同制。纵然我们很希望你早一点儿上岗，也要等你跟现在的公司交接好。
búguò wǒmen zhīdào nǐ xiànzài de gōngsī shì hétóng zhì zòngrán wǒmen hěn xīwàng nǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr shànggǎng yě yào děng nǐ gēn xiànzài de gōngsī jiāojiē hǎo · But we know your current company works on contracts. However much we'd like you to start soon, we'll wait until you've handed over properly at your current company.

xiaoming 我明白。我得先跟我的上司谈谈，不能让老同事为难。
wǒ míngbai wǒ děi xiān gēn wǒ de shàngsi tán tan bù néng ràng lǎo tóngshì wéinán · I understand. I need to talk to my boss first: I can't leave my old colleagues in a difficult spot.

manager liu 好，你考虑一下，下个星期给我答复。我们欢迎你成为团队的栋梁。
hǎo nǐ kǎolǜ yíxià xià gè xīngqī gěi wǒ dáfù wǒmen huānyíng nǐ chéngwéi tuánduì de dòngliáng · Fine. Think it over and give me your answer next week. We'd love you to become a pillar of the team.

manager liu 你正式就任以后，下个月公司有一个活动，会有很多尊贵的客人，你也来。
nǐ zhèngshì jiùrèn yǐhòu xià gè yuè gōngsī yǒu yí gè huódòng huì yǒu hěn duō zūnguì de kèrén nǐ yě lái · Once you officially take up the post, there's a company event next month with lots of distinguished guests: you should come too.

anna （来到李家）我都听说了！你看，纵然你说不想跳槽，机会还是找上门来了。
lái dào Lǐ jiā wǒ dōu tīngshuō le nǐ kàn zòngrán nǐ shuō bù xiǎng tiàocáo jīhuì háishi zhǎo shàngmén lái le · (arriving at the Li family's home) I've heard everything! See, even though you said you didn't want to switch jobs, the chance came knocking anyway.

dr li 不管你最后怎么决定，我们都为你感到光荣。
bùguǎn nǐ zuìhòu zěnme juédìng wǒmen dōu wèi nǐ gǎndào guāngróng · Whatever you decide in the end, we're proud of you.

dr li 大学请我当名誉教授，我觉得没什么。在我的医生生涯里，最高兴的就是看到孩子们有出息。
dàxué qǐng wǒ dāng míngyù jiàoshòu wǒ juéde méi shénme zài wǒ de yīshēng shēngyá lǐ zuì gāoxìng de jiùshì kàn dào háizimen yǒu chūxi · The university asked me to be an honorary professor: that's nothing much. In my whole career as a doctor, nothing has made me happier than seeing my children make something of themselves.

ms zhang 先吃饭！今天我和小明的爸爸忙活了一下午，大家连吃带喝，好好庆祝一下。
xiān chī fàn jīntiān wǒ hé Xiǎomíng de bàba mánghuo le yí xiàwǔ dàjiā lián chī dài hē hǎohǎo qìngzhù yíxià · Dinner first! Xiaoming's dad and I have been busy all afternoon: let's eat, drink and celebrate properly.

ms zhang 我们公司的茶叶驰名全国，今天就喝最好的。你爸爸能力出众，大雪那天他立功的事，报纸上都登了，可是他从来不说是自己的功。
wǒmen gōngsī de cháyè chímíng quán guó jīntiān jiù hē zuìhǎo de nǐ bàba nénglì chūzhòng dà xuě nà tiān tā lìgōng de shì bàozhǐ shàng dōu dēng le kěshì tā cónglái bù shuō shì zìjǐ de gōng · Our company's tea is famous all over the country, so tonight we're drinking the best. Your dad is outstanding: the paper even wrote about the great service he did that snowy day, but he never says the credit is his.

little sister 爸爸说，一个人高贵不高贵，不看钱，看为人。

bàba shuō yí gè rén gāoguì bù gāoguì bú kàn qián kàn wéirén · Dad says whether a person is noble has nothing to do with money: it's about how they treat people.

little sister 哥哥，祝你前程远大！以后你有出息了，别忘了请我吃饭。

gēge zhù nǐ qiánchéng yuǎn dà yǐhòu nǐ yǒu chūxi le bié wàng le qǐng wǒ chī fàn · Big brother, here's to a bright future! When you've made it, don't forget to take me out to dinner.

A whole interview, from the advert to the phone call: you could sit on either side of that table in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 155 meetings and deals

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 21 · business and projects

Take part in a business meeting in Chinese: agendas, talks, contracts, agents and partners, and back up a point with 这不 and X得要命.

Meetings and deals have their own vocabulary: 磋商, 洽谈 and 协商 are all “negotiate”, but they are not used in quite the same way. Get them right and you sound like someone people want to sign with.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
会场	huìchǎng	meeting venue, conference hall	会场里已经坐满了人。 The venue was already packed.
议程	yìchéng	agenda	今天会议的议程一共有三项。 Today’s meeting has three items on the agenda.
议题	yìtí	topic for discussion, issue	这次会议的主要议题是明年的预算。 The main issue at this meeting is next year’s budget.
座谈	zuòtán	have an informal discussion	下午公司请几位老客户来座谈。 This afternoon the company has invited some long-time clients in for a discussion.
商讨	shāngtǎo	discuss, deliberate over	双方正在商讨合作的细节。 The two sides are discussing the details of the partnership.
商议	shāngyì	confer, talk over	这件事我得{dei3}跟家里人商议一下。 I need to talk this over with my family.
磋商	cuōshāng	consult, negotiate (formal)	经过几轮磋商，两家公司终于达成了协议。 After several rounds of talks, the two companies finally reached an agreement.
洽谈	qiàtán	talk business, negotiate	欢迎各位来我们公司洽谈业务。 You are all welcome to come and talk business with us.
协商	xiéshāng	negotiate, settle through talks	价格问题我们可以再协商。 We can negotiate the price again.
交涉	jiāoshè	take up a matter with, negotiate	他去跟商家交涉，要求退款。 He went to take it up with the shop and asked for a refund.
签约	qiānyuē	sign a contract	我们下周一正式签约。 We sign the contract officially next Monday.
签署	qiānshǔ	sign (an official document)	两国领导人签署了合作协议。 The leaders of the two countries signed a cooperation agreement.
签	qiān	slip (drawn as a lot); label	每个人从盒子里抽了一支签{qian1-7b}。 Everyone drew a slip from the box.
合约	héyuē	contract	这份合约明年三月到期。 This contract runs out next March.

承包	chéngbāo	contract for, undertake (a job)	这个工程由一家本地公司承包。 A local firm has the contract for this project.
承接	chéngjiē	take on (an order, a job)	我们工厂现在也承接小批量{liang4-5}的订单。 Our factory now takes small orders too.
招标	zhāobiāo	invite bids, put out to tender	市里正在为新的体育馆招标。 The city is putting the new sports hall out to tender.
合伙	héhuǒ	go into partnership	他和大学同学合伙开了一家咖啡店。 He opened a café in partnership with a university friend.
加盟	jiāméng	join (a group); take a franchise	现在很多年轻人选择加盟连锁店。 These days many young people choose to open a chain franchise.
双赢	shuāngyíng	win-win	这样的合作|对双方来说都是双赢。 A partnership like this is a win-win for both sides.
协同	xiétóng	coordinate, work in concert	这个项目需要几个部门协同完成。 Several departments need to work together to finish this project.
协作	xiézuò	cooperate, collaborate	团队协作比个人能力更重要。 Teamwork matters more than individual ability.
召集	zhàojí	call together, convene	经理召集大家开了一个短会。 The manager called everyone together for a short meeting.
拍板	pāibǎn	have the final say, give the go-ahead	这件事最后得{dei3}由老板拍板。 In the end the boss has to make the call on this.
授权	shòuquán	authorise	公司授权她代表我们签字。 The company has authorised her to sign on our behalf.
权限	quánxiàn	limits of authority; access rights	你没有权限打开这个文件。 You don't have permission to open this file.
所属	suǒshǔ	belonging to, under (a body)	他所属的部门最近特别忙。 The department he belongs to has been very busy lately.
附属	fùshǔ	attached, affiliated	她在一所大学的附属医院工作。 She works at a university teaching hospital.
分支	fēnzhī	branch	这家银行在全国|有几百个分支机构。 This bank has several hundred branches across the country.
办事处	bànshìchù	office (local or liaison)	公司在上海设了一个办事处。 The company has set up an office in Shanghai.
事务所	shìwùsuǒ	firm (law, accounting)	孙律师在一家律师事务所工作。 Lawyer Sun works at a law firm.
代理人	dàilǐrén	agent, representative	这位是我们在英国的代理人。 This is our agent in the UK.
公关	gōngguān	PR, public relations	公司新请了一位公关经理。 The company has hired a new PR manager.
保密	bǎomì	keep secret, confidential	合约的内容一定要保密。 The terms of the contract must stay confidential.

pattern 这不, “see? here’s a case in point” (and x得要命)

a claim。 **这不，** **a fresh example that proves it。**

这不 is spoken Chinese for “See? Here’s one right now”: you make a claim, then point to something that has just happened to prove it. It always comes after the claim. Back again too: X得要命 or X得要死, “terribly X”: 忙得要命, 急得要死.

张女士的公司最近生意特别好。这不，又在上海开了一个办事处。 **Zhāngnǚshì de gōngsī zuìjìn shēngyi tèbié hǎo zhè bù yòu zài Shànghǎi kāi le yí gè bànshìchù** Ms Zhang’s company is doing really well. See? It has just opened another office in Shanghai.

我们的台灯越来越受欢迎。这不，上周又有两家店来问能不能加盟。 **wǒmen de táidēng yuè lái yuè shòu huānyíng zhè bù shàng zhōu yòu yǒu liǎng jiā diàn lái wèn néng bu néng jiāméng** Our lamp is getting more and more popular. Case in point: two more shops asked last week about joining as franchises.

为了准备这次洽谈，安娜这几天累得要命。 **wèile zhǔnbèi zhè cì qiàtán Ānnà zhè jǐ tiān lèi de yàomìng** Getting ready for these talks has worn Anna out these last few days.

dialogue the first round of talks

manager liu 各位，今天召集大家，是要商讨跟张女士公司的合作。这次合作由安娜牵头。议程上一共有三个议题：价格、海外代理，还有保密。

gèwèi jīntiān zhàojí dàjiā shì yào shāngtǎo gēn Zhāngnǚshì gōngsī de hézuò zhè cì hézuò yóu Ānnà qiāntóu yìchéng shàng yígòng yǒu sān gè yìtí jiàgé hǎiwài dàilǐ hái yǒu bǎomì · Everyone, I've called you together to discuss our partnership with Ms Zhang's company. Anna is taking the lead on it. There are three items on the agenda: price, overseas agency and confidentiality.

anna 会场已经布置好了。张女士她们十点到，我们先座谈半个小时，再正式洽谈。

huìchǎng yǐjīng bùzhì hǎo le Zhāngnǚshì tāmen shí diǎn dào wǒmen xiān zuòtán bàn gè xiǎoshí zài zhèngshì qiàtán · The room is ready. Ms Zhang's team arrive at ten: we'll have half an hour of informal discussion first, then the formal talks.

manager liu 张女士的公司以茶叶著称，在行业里很有声望。

Zhāngnǚshì de gōngsī yǐ cháyè zhùchēng zài hángyè lǐ hěn yǒu shēngwàng · Ms Zhang's company is known for its tea, and it's highly respected in the trade.

ms zhang 我们公司在英国有一个办事处，是我们的分支机构。我们的销售网和你们的产品正好互补。我们想当你们在欧洲的代理人，把这款台灯卖到欧洲去。

wǒmen gōngsī zài Yīngguó yǒu yí gè bànshìchù shì wǒmen de fēnzhī jīgòu wǒmen de xiāoshòu wǎng hé nǐmen de chǎnpǐn zhènghǎo hùbǔ wǒmen xiǎng dāng nǐmen zài Ōuzhōu de dàilǐrén bǎ zhè kuǎn táidēng mài dào Ōuzhōu qù · Our company has an office in the UK, one of our branches. Our sales network and your product complement each other perfectly. We'd like to be your agent in Europe and sell this lamp there.

manager liu 我们的台灯在国内卖得不错。这不，上周又有两家店来问能不能加盟。

wǒmen de táidēng zài guó nèi mài de búcuò zhè bù shàng zhōu yòu yǒu liǎng jiā diàn lái wèn néng bu néng jiāméng · Our lamp is selling well at home. See? Last week two more shops asked whether they could join as franchises.

ms zhang 价格方面，我们还想再磋商一下。我们承接过很多海外订单，知道外国客户最看重什么：质量和信誉。

jiàgé fāngmiàn wǒmen hái xiǎng zài cuōshāng yíxià wǒmen chéngjiē guo hěn duō hǎiwài dìngdān zhīdào wàiguó kèhù zuì kànzhòng shénme zhìliàng hé xìnyù · On price, we'd like to talk a little more. We've handled a lot of overseas orders, and we know what foreign buyers care about most: quality and a good name.

anna 价格可以协商，我们也希望这次合作是双赢。台灯的底座去年招标，最后由我们所属集团的一家附属工厂承包，质量没有问题。

jiàgé kěyǐ xiéshāng wǒmen yě xīwàng zhè cì hézuò shì shuāngyíng táidēng de dǐ zuò qùnián zhāobiāo zuìhòu yóu wǒmen suǒshǔ jítuán de yì jiā fùshǔ gōngchǎng chéngbāo zhìliàng méiyǒu wèntí · We can negotiate on price; we want this to be a win-win too. Last year we put the lamp bases out to tender, and in the end a factory affiliated to our parent group won the contract, so the quality is sound.

ms zhang 卖到欧洲，台灯的标准要跟欧洲接轨，这一点很关键。

mài dào Ōuzhōu táidēng de biāozhǔn yào gēn Ōuzhōu jiēguǐ zhè yìdiǎn hěn guānjiàn · To sell in Europe, the lamp's standards have to match Europe's: that's key.

manager liu 放心，我们一开始就按欧洲的标准设计，这方面由首席工程师亲自负责。

fàngxīn wǒmen yì kāishǐ jiù àn Ōuzhōu de biāozhǔn shèjì zhè fāngmiàn yóu shǒuxí gōngchéngshī qīnzì fùzé · Don't worry: we designed it to European standards from the start, and our chief engineer handles that personally.

lawyer sun 我是孙律师，在一家律师事务所工作。公司已经授权我准备合约。签约以前，合约的内容请各位一定保密。

wǒ shì Sūnlǜshī zài yì jiā lǜshī shìwùsuǒ gōngzuò gōngsī yǐjīng shòuquán wǒ zhǔnbèi héyuē qiānyuē yǐqián héyuē de nèiróng qǐng gèwèi yídìng bǎomì · I'm Lawyer Sun, from a law firm. The company has authorised me to prepare the contract. Until it is signed, please keep its terms strictly confidential.

ms zhang 我有一个问题：我在这件事上的权限有限，价格最后还得由我们老板拍板。我回去跟他商议一下。

wǒ yǒu yí gè wèntí wǒ zài zhè jiàn shì shàng de quánxiàn yǒuxiàn jiàgé zuìhòu hái děi yóu wǒmen lǎobǎn pāibǎn wǒ huíqù gēn tā shāngyì yíxià · One thing: my authority on this is limited. The final say on price lies with my boss, so I'll go back and talk it over with him.

manager liu 没问题，我们不急。上次我们跟一家工厂交涉，前前后后谈了三个月，大家急得要死。
méi wèntí wǒmen bù jí shàng cì wǒmen gēn yì jiā gōngchǎng jiāoshè qiánqiánhòuhòu tán le sān gè yuè dàjiā jí de yào sǐ · No problem, we're in no hurry. Last time we took up an issue with a factory, it went on for three months and we were all frantic.

anna 还有公关方面的事宜：签署合约那天，公关部想请几位记者来。
hái yǒu gōngguān fāngmiàn de shìyí qiānshǔ héyuē nà tiān gōngguān bù xiǎng qǐng jǐ wèi jìzhě lái · And there are the PR matters: on the day the contract is signed, the PR department would like to invite a few journalists.

ms zhang 好。以后我们还可以合伙开一家网店，两个团队协作，一起做。
hǎo yǐhòu wǒmen hái kěyǐ héhuǒ kāi yì jiā wǎng diàn liǎng gè tuánduì xiézuò yìqǐ zuò · Fine. Later on we could also open an online shop in partnership, with our two teams working together.

anna 我们要在三个城市办发布会，先去哪儿呢？
wǒmen yào zài sān gè chéngshì bàn fābù huì xiān qù nǎr ne · We're holding launch events in three cities. Where should we go first?

ms zhang 抽签吧！这个盒子里有三支签，抽到哪儿就先去哪儿。
chōuqiān ba zhège hézi lǐ yǒu sān zhī qiān chōu dào nǎr jiù xiān qù nǎr · Let's draw lots! There are three slips in this box: wherever we draw, we go there first.

manager liu 好主意。今天谈得很顺畅，我们下次就签约！
hǎo zhǔyi jīntiān tán de hěn shùnchàng wǒmen xià cì jiù qiānyuē · Good idea. Today went very smoothly; next time, we sign!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

磋
cuō
polish, rub

good to know · 商讨 and 商议 are everyday "talk over"; 磋商 is formal (between governments or big firms); 洽谈 is talking business; 协商 aims at an agreement; 交涉 is arguing your case with the other side. 签约 is "sign a contract" (a verb-object word); 签署 is the formal verb before the document: 签署合约, 签署协议.

Agendas, agents, tenders and a win-win: you can now sit at the table when the deal is done in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 156 plans, papers and checks

Plan an event and handle its paperwork in Chinese (drafts, minutes, licences, checks and follow-ups), and sum up a list of points with 概括来说.

Every project runs on paper: memos, lists, certificates and approvals. And after the details, people want the one-line version: 概括来说 is how you give it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
筹	chóu	raise (money); plan	他们正在为新项目筹钱。 They are raising money for the new project.
筹办	chóubàn	make arrangements for, organise	我们正在筹办下个月的发布会。 We're organising next month's launch event.
筹划	chóuhuà	plan and prepare	这次旅行他筹划了整整半年。 He spent a full six months planning this trip.
谋划	móuhuà	plan carefully, scheme	公司正在谋划进入海外市场。 The company is working out how to enter overseas markets.
统筹	tǒngchóu	plan as a whole, coordinate	整个活动由安娜统筹安排。 Anna is coordinating the whole event.
蓝图	lántú	blueprint, master plan	新城区的蓝图已经画好了。 The blueprint for the new district is ready.
图纸	túzhǐ	drawing, plan (on paper)	工程师正在看新楼的图纸。 The engineer is looking at the plans for the new building.
拟	nǐ	draft; intend to (formal)	公司拟于明年三月推出新产品。 The company plans to launch a new product next March.
拟定	nǐdìng	draw up, work out (a plan)	律师已经拟定了合同的条款。 The lawyer has drawn up the terms of the contract.
起草	qǐcǎo	draft (a text)	请你起草一封给客户的信。 Please draft a letter to the client.
备忘录	bèiwànglù	memo, memorandum	双方签了一份合作备忘录。 The two sides signed a memorandum of cooperation.
纪要	jìyào	minutes, summary (of a meeting)	会议纪要明天发给大家。 The minutes will go out to everyone tomorrow.
年报	niánbào	annual report	公司的年报显示，去年的利润增长了百分之十。 The annual report shows profits grew by ten per cent last year.
清单	qīngdān	list, checklist	出发以前，我列了一张清单。 Before leaving I made a checklist.

副本	fùběn	copy, duplicate	原件你留着，给我一份副本就行。 Keep the original; a copy is fine for me.
函	hán	letter (formal)	我们已经向对方发函，请他们说明原因。 We have written to them formally to ask for an explanation.
递交	dìjiāo	hand in, submit	他向公司递交了辞职信。 He handed in his letter of resignation.
出具	chūjù	issue (a document)	医院为他出具了一份证明。 The hospital issued him a certificate.
凭证	píngzhèng	proof, voucher	请保留好发票，这是报销的凭证。 Please keep the receipt: it's your proof for the expense claim.
认证	rènzhèng	certify; certification	这款产品已经通过了安全认证。 This product has passed its safety certification.
执照	zhízhào	licence, permit	开餐厅必须先拿到营业执照。 To open a restaurant you first need a business licence.
牌照	páizhào	licence plate; licence	在北京，汽车牌照很难拿到。 In Beijing, car number plates are hard to get.
注销	zhùxiāo	cancel, deregister	这家公司关门以后，执照也注销了。 After the company closed, its licence was cancelled.
审定	shěndìng	examine and approve	这本教材已经由专家审定。 This textbook has been examined and approved by experts.
审核	shěnhé	check and approve, audit	你的申请正在审核中。 Your application is being reviewed.
核查	héchá	check, verify	银行正在核查这笔钱的来源。 The bank is checking where this money came from.
核对	héduì	check against, verify	请核对一下你的姓名和电话。 Please check your name and phone number.
核实	héshí	verify, confirm as true	这个消息还没有核实，先别发出去。 This news hasn't been verified yet; don't send it out.
抽查	chōuchá	spot-check	工作人员每天抽查一百件产品。 The staff spot-check a hundred products every day.
排查	páichá	check one by one, investigate	工人正在排查电路的问题。 The workers are tracking down the problem in the wiring.
验收	yànshōu	check and accept (on delivery)	新楼下个月验收。 The new building will be inspected and handed over next month.
跟进	gēnjìn	follow up	这个客户以后由你来跟进。 From now on you'll follow up with this client.
督促	dūcù	urge, keep after	妈妈每天都督促孩子写作业。 Every day the mother makes sure her child does the homework.
通报	tōngbào	circulate a notice; bulletin	公司向全体员工通报了事故的原因。 The company informed all staff of the cause

			of the accident.
下达	xiàdá	issue (orders) to lower levels	上级已经下达了新的任务。 The higher-ups have handed down a new task.

pattern 概括来说, "to sum up"

point 1, point 2, point 3 …. **概括来说,** **the whole thing in one sentence.**

概括 is to summarise, so 概括来说 means "to sum up, in a nutshell". It comes after you have set out several points and introduces one sentence that holds them all. It is a little formal: reports, meetings and presentations. Close cousins: 总的来说 "overall" and 总之 "in short".

我们要拿到认证，要办好执照，还要找好场地。概括来说，发布会以前还有三件大事。
wǒmen yào ná dào rènzhèng yào bàn hǎo zhízhào hái yào zhǎo hǎo chǎngdì gàikuò lái shuō fābù huì yǐqián hái yǒu sān jiàn dàshì We need the certification, the licence and the venue. To sum up, there are three big jobs left before the launch.

有的部门负责审核，有的负责核实，有的负责抽查。概括来说，每份文件都要查三遍。
yǒude bùmén fùzé shěnhé yǒude fùzé héshí yǒude fùzé chōuchá gàikuò lái shuō měi fèn wénjiàn dōu yào chá sān biàn One department reviews, one verifies and one spot-checks. In short, every document is checked three times.

概括来说，这个方案好处多，问题少。 **gàikuò lái shuō zhège fāngàn hǎochù duō wèntí shǎo** All in all, this plan has a lot going for it and few problems.

dialogue the checklist

manager liu 安娜，跟张女士公司签的合作备忘录，副本我已经收到了。下一步就是筹办发布会，整个活动由你统筹，公关部会跟你协同工作。

Ānnà gēn Zhāngnǚshì gōngsī qiān de hézuò bèiwànglù fùběn wǒ yǐjīng shōudào le xià yí bù jiùshì chóubàn fābù huì zhěnggè huódòng yóu nǐ tǒngchóu gōngguān bù huì gēn nǐ xiétóng gōngzuò · Anna, I've received our copy of the memorandum we signed with Ms Zhang's company. The next step is organising the launch: you're coordinating the whole thing, and the PR department will work with you.

anna 好的。我已经筹划了一个初步方案，发布会拟在下个月十五号举行。这是场地的图纸，这是准备工作的清单。预算够了，不用另外筹钱。

hǎo de wǒ yǐjīng chóuhuà le yí gè chūbù fāngàn fābù huì nǐ zài xià gè yuè shíwǔ hào jǔxíng zhè shì chǎngdì de túzhǐ zhè shì zhǔnbèi gōngzuò de qīngdān yùsuàn gòu le búyòng lìngwài chóu qián · Sure. I've worked out an outline plan: the launch is set for the fifteenth of next month. Here are the plans of the venue and the checklist. The budget is enough, so we don't need to raise any more money.

manager liu 很好。公司正在谋划未来三年的发展，这次发布会是蓝图里的第一步，年底的年报里也要写进去。

hěn hǎo gōngsī zhèngzài móuhuà wèilái sān nián de fāzhǎn zhè cì fābù huì shì lántú lǐ de dì yī bù niándǐ de niánbào lǐ yě yào xiě jinqu · Good. The company is planning its next three years, and this launch is the first step in that blueprint. It will go in the annual report at the end of the year too.

anna 还有几件事要办：第一，台灯要通过安全认证，检测中心会给我们出具一份报告；第二，场地要有消防的凭证；第三，邀请函我今天起草，明天发出去。

hái yǒu jǐ jiàn shì yào bàn dì yī táidēng yào tōngguò ānquán rènzhèng jiǎncè zhōngxīn huì gěi wǒmen chūjù yí fèn bàogào dì èr chǎngdì yào yǒu xiāofáng de píngzhèng dì sān yāoqǐng hán wǒ jīntiān qǐcǎo míngtiān fā chuqu · There are a few more things to do. First, the lamp has to pass safety certification, and the testing centre will issue us a report. Second, the venue needs its fire-safety certificate. Third, I'm drafting the invitations today and sending them tomorrow.

lawyer sun （打电话）安娜，正式的合约我已经按双方协商的结果拟定好了，明天递交给你们公司审核。条款请你们再核对一遍。

dǎ diànhuà Ānnà zhèngshì de héyuē wǒ yǐjīng àn shuāngfāng xiéshāng de jiéguǒ nǐdìng hǎo le míngtiān dìjiāo gěi nǐmen gōngsī shěnhé tiáokuǎn qǐng nǐmen zài héduì yí biàn · (on the phone) Anna, I've drawn up the formal contract along the lines both sides agreed. I'll submit it to your company tomorrow for review. Please check the terms through once more.

anna 好的。签约那天，您也来吗？

hǎo de qiānyuē nà tiān nín yě lái ma · Will do. Are you coming on the day of the signing too?

lawyer sun 当然。我是你们公司授权的代理人，签约的时候要在场。

dāngrán wǒ shì nǐmen gōngsī shòuquán de dàilǐrén qiānyuē de shíhou yào zàichǎng · Of course. I'm the agent your company has authorised, so I have to be there for the signing.

anna 好的。合约里的每一个数字，我们都会一一核查。张女士公司的营业执照，我们也要核实一下。

hǎo de héyuē lǐ de měi yí gè shùzì wǒmen dōu huì yīyī héchá Zhāngnǚshì gōngsī de yíngyè zhízhào wǒmen yě yào héshí yíxià · Will do. We'll check every figure in the contract one by one, and we'll verify Ms Zhang's company's business licence too.

lawyer sun 对。另外，你们在杭州的那个旧办事处，执照注销了吗？

duì lìngwài nǐmen zài Hángzhōu de nàge jiù bànshìchù zhízhào zhùxiāo le ma · Right. And the old office you had in Hangzhou: has its licence been cancelled?

manager liu 上个月已经注销了。对了，发布会那天，嘉宾的汽车牌照要提前报给大楼的物业。那天车多，门口还要安排人疏导交通。

shàng gè yuè yǐjīng zhùxiāo le duì le fābù huì nà tiān jiābīn de qìchē páizhào yào tíqián bào gěi dà lóu de wùyè nà tiān chē duō ménkǒu hái yào ānpái rén shūdǎo jiāotōng · It was cancelled last month. Oh, and on the day, the guests' number plates have to be given to the building's management in advance. There'll be a lot of cars, so we need someone at the gate to direct the traffic.

anna 这件事我来跟进。物业说，那天他们会抽查进出的车辆。场地验收以前，电路也要排查一遍。发布会以前，我再召集各个部门开个会，商讨一下议程。
zhè jiàn shì wǒ lái gēnjìn wùyè shuō nà tiān tāmen huì chōuchá jìn chū de chēliàng chǎngdì yànshōu yǐqián diàn lù yě yào páichá yí biàn fābù huì yǐqián wǒ zài zhàojí gègè bùmén kāi gè huì shāngtǎo yíxià yìchéng · I'll follow that up. The management say they'll spot-check vehicles coming in and out that day. And before the venue is signed off, the wiring has to be checked from end to end. Before the launch, I'll call all the departments together again to go over the agenda.

manager liu 人手不够的话，市场部可以派两个人给你打下手。产品说明书请专家审定了吗?
rénshǒu búgòu dehuà shìchǎng bù kěyǐ pài liǎng gè rén gěi nǐ dǎ xiàshǒu chǎnpǐn shuōmíngshū qǐng zhuānjiā shěndìng le ma · If you're short of hands, the marketing department can send two people to help you out. Has an expert approved the user manual?

anna 已经审定了，会议纪要里也写了。下午我把纪要上报给总部。
yǐjīng shěndìng le huìyì jìyào lǐ yě xiě le xiàwǔ wǒ bǎ jìyào shàngbào gěi zǒngbù · Yes, it's approved; it's in the minutes too. This afternoon I'll send the minutes up to head office.

manager liu 还有，总部刚下达了通知：今年所有的大型活动都要提前通报。你别忘了，我会经常督促你的，哈哈。
hái yǒu zǒngbù gāng xiàdá le tōngzhī jīnnián suǒyǒu de dàxíng huódòng dōu yào tíqián tōngbào nǐ bié wàng le wǒ huì jīngcháng dūcù nǐ de hā hā · One more thing: head office has just sent down a notice that every big event this year has to be reported in advance. Don't forget: I'll be keeping after you, ha ha.

anna 没问题。概括来说，我们还有三件事：认证、合约和场地。这个星期都能办完。
méi wèntí gàikuò lái shuō wǒmen hái yǒu sān jiàn shì rènzhèng héyuē hé chǎngdì zhège xīngqī dōu néng bàn wán · No problem. To sum up, we have three things left: the certification, the contract and the venue. They can all be done this week.

manager liu 好。概括来说就是：时间紧，任务多，但是有办法。
hǎo gàikuò lái shuō jiùshì shíjiān jǐn rènwu duō dànshì yǒu bànfǎ · Good. In a nutshell: little time, lots to do, but we can manage.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

函
hán
letter
(formal)

good to know · Four kinds of checking: 核对 compare against a record, 核实 confirm it is true, 核查 investigate, 抽查 check a random sample. 审核 and 审定 add "and approve". 拟 is formal for "plan to": 公司拟于三月推出新产品. In speech, say 打算 or 准备.

Drafts, memos, licences and checklists: you can now run the paperwork of a project in Chinese, and sum it all up in one sentence.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 157 on the factory floor

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 21 · business and projects

Follow a factory tour in Chinese (workshops, production lines, rejects, delivery and reorganisation), say “never”, “not necessarily” and “no need” with the advanced negative adverbs, and grumble with 真是的.

Factories, warehouses and supply chains are where a product becomes real. And 不见得, 绝不, 无须 and 勿 let you say no with precision, from a polite doubt to a sign on the door.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
车间	chējiān	workshop (in a factory)	车间里的机器正在运转。 The machines in the workshop are running.
生产线	shēngchǎnxiàn	production line	工厂今年新建了一条生产线。 The factory built a new production line this year.
开工	kāigōng	start work, start production	新工厂下个月开工。 The new factory starts production next month.
出厂	chūchǎng	leave the factory	每台机器出厂以前都要检查。 Every machine is checked before it leaves the factory.
成品	chéngpǐn	finished product	成品都放在这个仓库里。 All the finished goods are kept in this warehouse.
次品	cìpǐn	defective product, reject	这批货里有不少次品。 There are quite a few rejects in this batch.
规格	guīgé	specifications, size	这种纸有好几种规格。 This paper comes in several sizes.
特制	tèzhì	specially made	这是为孩子特制的小椅子。 This is a little chair made specially for children.
仿制	fǎngzhì	copy, imitate (a product)	有的小工厂专门仿制名牌包。 Some small factories do nothing but copy designer bags.
组装	zǔzhuāng	assemble	这台电脑是我自己组装的。 I built this computer myself.
纺织	fǎngzhī	spinning and weaving, textiles	这座城市以前以纺织业出名。 This city used to be famous for its textile industry.
木匠	mùjiàng	carpenter	我爷爷是个木匠，家里的桌子都是他做的。 My grandfather was a carpenter: he made all the tables in our house.
后勤	hòuqín	logistics, support services	后勤部门负责员工的吃饭和住宿。 The support department looks after the staff’s meals and housing.
调度	diàodù	dispatch, schedule; dispatcher	工厂每天要调度几十辆货车。 The factory dispatches dozens of lorries every day.

调	diào	tune, key; accent	这首歌的调{diao4-7}太高了，我唱不上去。 This song is pitched too high: I can't reach the notes.
派遣	pàiqiǎn	send, dispatch (people)	公司派遣了两名工程师去工厂。 The company sent two engineers to the factory.
移交	yíjiāo	hand over, transfer	这个项目下个月移交给新团队。 This project goes over to a new team next month.
交付	jiāofù	deliver, hand over	新房子年底交付。 The new flats will be handed over at the end of the year.
分发	fēnfā	distribute, hand out	老师把试卷分发给学生。 The teacher handed out the exam papers to the students.
演练	yǎnliàn	drill, rehearse	学校每学期都进行一次消防演练。 The school holds a fire drill every term.
演示	yǎnshì	demonstrate	工程师给我们演示了新机器的用法。 The engineer demonstrated how to use the new machine.
照办	zhàobàn	do as told, act accordingly	你说怎么做，我们就怎么照办。 Whatever you say, we'll do it just that way.
指令	zhǐlìng	instruction, command	机器人按照指令工作。 The robot works according to instructions.
下令	xiàlìng	give orders, order	老板下令暂停生产。 The boss ordered production to stop.
编制	biānzhì	draw up (a plan); staffing quota	财务部正在编制明年的预算。 The finance department is drawing up next year's budget.
组建	zǔjiàn	set up, form (a team)	公司组建了一个新的研发团队。 The company has formed a new R&D team.
开办	kāibàn	open, set up (a school, business)	她在老家开办了一所小学。 She set up a primary school in her home town.
重组	chóngzǔ	reorganise, restructure	公司重组以后，部门少了一半。 After the restructuring, the company had half as many departments.
整顿	zhěngdùn	overhaul, put in order	这家工厂关门|整顿了一个月。 The factory shut for a month to sort itself out.
整合	zhěnghé	integrate, bring together	我们把三个部门整合|成了一个。 We merged three departments into one.
精简	jīngjiǎn	streamline, cut down	公司精简了审批的步骤。 The company cut down the steps for approval.
运转	yùnzhuǎn	run, operate (a machine, a body)	机器二十四小时不停地运转。 The machines run round the clock.
运作	yùnzuò	operate, function	这个基金会已经运作了十年。 The foundation has been running for ten years.
职能	zhínéng	function (of a body or department)	每个部门都有自己的职能。 Every department has its own function.

pattern saying no precisely: 不见得, 绝不, 无从, 无须, 无可, 勿 (and 真是的)

不见得 / 绝不 / 无从 / 无须 / 勿 **+ verb**

Each of these says “no” in its own way: 不见得 “not necessarily”, 绝不 “absolutely never”, 无从 “there is no way to”, 无须 “there is no need to”, 无可 “nothing can be” (无可挑剔 flawless), and 勿 “do not” on signs and notices (请勿吸烟). And back from your first days: 真是的, the sigh of “honestly!” when someone annoys you.

仿制的台灯不见得便宜，质量也差得远。 **fǎngzhì de táidēng bújiàndé piányi zhìliàng yě chà de yuǎn** The copies aren’t necessarily cheaper, and the quality is far worse.

当年的记录都没有了，问题出在哪儿已经无从查起。 **dāngnián de jìlù dōu méiyǒu le wèntí chū zài nǎr yǐjīng wúcóng chá qǐ** The records from back then are gone, so there’s no way of finding out where the problem was.

这些都是自动的，你们无须担心。 **zhèxiē dōu shì zìdòng de nǐmen wúxū dānxīn** It’s all automatic: there’s no need to worry.

你真是的，又把帽子戴反了！ **nǐ zhēnshi de yòu bǎ màozi dài fǎn le** Honestly, you’ve put your cap on backwards again!

dialogue a tour of the lamp factory

manager liu 这家工厂以前是一家纺织厂。五年前重组的时候，整合了两家小厂，现在专门生产台灯。

zhè jiā gōngchǎng yǐqián shì yì jiā fǎngzhī chǎng wǔ nián qián chóngzǔ de shíhou zhěnghé le liǎng jiā xiǎo chǎng xiànzài zhuānmén shēngchǎn táidēng · This factory used to be a textile mill. When it was restructured five years ago it merged two small plants, and now it makes nothing but lamps.

xiaoming 对。我这次是被请来当技术顾问的。工厂精简了管理部门，后勤和调度合在了一起，还组建了一个设计团队。每个部门的职能都很清楚，运作得很好。

duì wǒ zhè cì shì bèi qǐng lái dāng jìshù gùwèn de gōngchǎng jīngjiǎn le guǎnlǐ bùmén hòuqín hé diàodù hé zài le yìqǐ hái zǔjiàn le yí gè shèjì tuánduì měi gè bùmén de zhínéng dōu hěn qīngchu yùnzuò de hěn hǎo · That's right; this time I've been brought in as technical adviser. The factory has streamlined its management, merged support services with scheduling and set up a design team. Every department knows its job, and it all works well.

anna 这家工厂的执照和各种凭证，我都核实过了。门口的牌子上写着“车间重地，闲人勿进”。我们能进去吗？

zhè jiā gōngchǎng de zhízhào hé gèzhǒng píngzhèng wǒ dōu héshí guo le ménkǒu de páizi shàng xiě zhe chējiān zhòng dì xián rén wù jìn wǒmen néng jìnqù ma · I've verified this factory's licence and all its certificates. The sign on the door says "Workshop: authorised staff only". Can we go in?

xiaoming 你们无须担心，我已经跟车间主任说好了。请戴上帽子……安娜，你真是的，怎么又把帽子戴反了！

nǐmen wúxū dānxīn wǒ yǐjīng gēn chējiān zhǔrèn shuō hǎo le qǐng dài shàng màozi Ānnà nǐ zhēnshi de zěnme yòu bǎ màozi dài fǎn le · Don't worry, I've cleared it with the workshop head. Please put on a cap … Anna, honestly, you've put it on backwards again!

anna 哈哈，不好意思。这条生产线真长！

hā hā bù hǎoyìsi zhè tiáo shēngchǎnxiàn zhēn cháng · Ha ha, sorry. What a long production line!

xiaoming 这条线去年才开工，机器二十四小时运转。灯罩用的布是工厂自己纺织的，底座是木匠师傅一个一个做的。工厂还在旁边开办了一所技术学校，培训刚上岗的年轻工人。

zhè tiáo xiàn qùnián cái kāigōng jīqì èrshísì xiǎoshí yùnzhuǎn dēng zhào yòng de bù shì gōngchǎng zìjǐ fǎngzhī de dǐ zuò shì mùjiàng shīfu yí gè yí gè zuò de gōngchǎng hái zài pángbiān kāibàn le yì suǒ jìshù xuéxiào péixùn gāng shànggǎng de niánqīng gōngrén · This line only started last year, and the machines run round the clock. The cloth for the shades is woven here, and the bases are made one by one by the carpenters. The factory has also opened a technical school next door to train young workers who have just started.

manager liu 工厂一共雇了多少人？每台台灯都是工人自己组装的吗？

gōngchǎng yígòng gù le duōshao rén měi tái táidēng dōu shì gōngrén zìjǐ zǔzhuāng de ma · How many people does the factory employ? Is every lamp assembled by hand?

xiaoming 工厂有两百多名雇员，很多是从外地来务工的。每台台灯都是他们自己组装的。按照规格，每台灯在出厂以前都要检查，最后还要抽查一遍。成品放在那边，次品放在这边，次品绝不出厂。

gōngchǎng yǒu liǎngbǎi duō míng gùyuán hěn duō shì cóng wàidì lái wùgōng de měi tái táidēng dōu shì tāmen zìjǐ zǔzhuāng de ànzhào guīgé měi tái dēng zài chūchǎng yǐqián dōu yào jiǎnchá zuìhòu hái yào chōuchá yí biàn chéngpǐn fàng zài nàbiān cìpǐn fàng zài zhèbiān cìpǐn juébù chūchǎng · The factory has over two hundred employees, many of whom have come from other provinces to work. Every lamp is assembled by hand. Every lamp is checked against the specifications before it leaves the factory, and then there's a final spot-check. Finished lamps go over there, rejects over here, and rejects never leave.

manager liu 台灯已经通过安全认证了吗？

táidēng yǐjīng tōngguò ānquán rènzhèng le ma · Has the lamp passed its safety certification?

xiaoming 通过了，检测中心已经出具了报告。

tōngguò le jiǎncè zhōngxīn yǐjīng chūjù le bàogào · Yes, the testing centre has already issued its report.

anna 我听说市场上已经有人仿制我们的台灯了。

wǒ tīngshuō shìchǎng shàng yǐjīng yǒu rén fǎngzhì wǒmen de táidēng le · I hear someone is already copying

our lamp.

manager liu 仿制的不见得便宜，质量也差得远。我们这一批是为发布会特制的，底座上还刻着名字。
fǎngzhì de bújiàndé piányi zhìliàng yě chà de yuǎn wǒmen zhè yì pī shì wèi fābù huì tèzhì de dǐ zuò shàng hái kè zhe míngzi · The copies aren't necessarily cheaper, and the quality is far worse. This batch is specially made for the launch: the bases even have names carved on them.

xiaoming 刚才车间主任下令，下周搞一次安全演练。通知已经分发给每个工人了。
gāngcái chējiān zhǔrèn xiàlìng xià zhōu gǎo yí cì ānquán yǎnliàn tōngzhī yǐjīng fēnfā gěi měi gè gōngrén le · The workshop head has just ordered a safety drill for next week. The notice has gone out to every worker.

anna 交付的时间呢？按照备忘录，发布会以前我们需要五百台。
jiāofù de shíjiān ne ànzhào bèiwànglù fābù huì yǐqián wǒmen xūyào wǔbǎi tái · What about delivery? Under the memorandum, we need five hundred lamps before the launch.

xiaoming 后勤部门正在编制生产计划，调度说二十号以前可以交付。工厂会派遣两名工人去会场帮忙，到时候验收以后，把台灯直接移交给你们。
hòuqín bùmén zhèngzài biānzhì shēngchǎn jìhuà diàodù shuō èrshí hào yǐqián kěyǐ jiāofù gōngchǎng huì pàiqiǎn liǎng míng gōngrén qù huìchǎng bāngmáng dào shíhou yànshōu yǐhòu bǎ táidēng zhíjiē yíjiāo gěi nǐmen · The support department is drawing up the production plan, and scheduling says they can deliver before the twentieth. The factory will send two workers to the venue to help, and once the lamps are checked and accepted there, they'll hand them straight over to you.

manager liu 好。小明，给我们演示一下台灯的语音功能吧。
hǎo Xiǎomíng gěi wǒmen yǎnshì yíxià táidēng de yǔyīn gōngnéng ba · Good. Xiaoming, show us the lamp's voice control.

xiaoming 你说“开灯”，它就照办。不过指令要说清楚：上次有个工人对着它唱歌，调一高，它就无从听懂了。
nǐ shuō kāi dēng tā jiù zhàobàn búguò zhǐlìng yào shuō qīngchu shàng cì yǒu gè gōngrén duì zhe tā chàng gē diào yì gāo tā jiù wúcóng tīng dǒng le · Say “lights on” and it does just that. But the command has to be clear: last time a worker sang at it, and once he hit the high notes it had no way of understanding him.

anna 哈哈！整个工厂运转得这么好，管理真的无可挑剔。
hā hā zhěnggè gōngchǎng yùnzhuǎn de zhème hǎo guǎnlǐ zhēn de wúkě tiāoti · Ha ha! The whole factory runs so well: the management really is faultless.

manager liu 是啊。我们以前合作的那家工厂乱得很，管理不力，工人常常怠工，后来被要求关门整顿，耽误了我们好几个月，真是的！
shì a wǒmen yǐqián hézuò de nà jiā gōngchǎng luàn de hěn guǎnlǐ búlì gōngrén chángcháng dàigōng hòulái bèi yāoqiú guān mén zhěngdùn dānwu le wǒmen hǎo jǐ gè yuè zhēnshi de · It is. The factory we used to work with was a mess: the management was ineffective and the workers kept slacking. It was made to close for an overhaul, and that cost us months. Honestly!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

纺
fǎng
spin

good to know · 勿 belongs to signs and notices: 请勿吸烟 no smoking, 请勿拍照 no photos, 闲人勿进 staff only. In speech say 别 or 不要. 交付 is to deliver what was promised (a product, a flat); 移交 is to hand over responsibility; 分发 is to hand out to many people.

Workshops, rejects, drills and deliveries: you could now walk a factory floor in Chinese, and say no in six different ways.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 158 delays and detours

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 21 · business and projects

Talk about delays, mistakes, missing items and hassle in Chinese, play a problem down with 无非/只是……罢了/而已, and recognise a blunt "take it or leave it" (爱A不A).

Every project hits delays, and how you talk about them matters. 无非……罢了 calms a room down; 爱要不要 tells you the other side has stopped being polite.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
耽搁	dānge	delay, hold up	路上耽搁了一会儿，所以来晚了。 I got held up on the way, so I'm late.
延误	yánwù	delay (and miss)	因为大雾，航班延误了三个小时。 Because of the fog, the flight was delayed by three hours.
延缓	yánhuǎn	postpone, slow down	多运动可以延缓衰老。 Exercise can slow down ageing.
延	yán	extend, prolong, put off	因为下雨，比赛往后延{yan2-7}了一天。 Because of the rain, the match was put back a day.
顺延	shùnyán	postpone (to the next slot)	如果下雨，活动顺延一天。 If it rains, the event moves to the next day.
逾期	yúqī	be overdue	逾期还书要交罚款。 You pay a fine if you return a book late.
掉队	diàoduì	fall behind	爬山的时候，他一直跟着大家，从不掉队。 On the hike he kept up with everyone and never fell behind.
走弯路	zǒuwānlù	take a detour, go the long way	有经验的人带着你，可以少走弯路。 With someone experienced to guide you, you waste less time.
差错	chācuò	mistake, slip	这份报告不能有一点差错。 This report can't have a single mistake.
错位	cuòwèi	out of place, misaligned	他摔倒了，骨头错位了。 He had a fall and dislocated a bone.
偏离	piānlí	deviate, stray from	我们的讨论已经偏离了主题。 Our discussion has drifted off the topic.
脱节	tuōjié	be out of touch, disconnected	学校教的东西不能和实际脱节。 What schools teach shouldn't lose touch with real life.
遗漏	yílòu	leave out, omit	名单上遗漏了两个人的名字。 Two people's names were left off the list.
遗失	yíshī	lose (a thing)	他在火车上遗失了钱包。 He lost his wallet on the train.
遗留	yíliú	be left over (from the past)	这是上一任经理遗留下来的问题。 This is a problem left over from the last manager.

欠缺	qiànquē	lack; shortcoming	他能力不错，就是欠缺经验。 He's capable; he just lacks experience.
缺失	quēshī	lack, absence; be missing	这份档案缺失了好几页。 Several pages are missing from this file.
贫乏	pínfá	poor, meagre (in content)	他的语言很贫乏，说来说去就是那几句话。 His language is thin: he keeps saying the same few things.
徒劳	túláo	futile, in vain	没有方向的努力往往是徒劳的。 Effort without direction is often wasted.
费劲	fèijìn	take effort, strenuous	搬这张桌子真费劲。 Moving this table is hard work.
费力	fèilì	take great effort	这件事做起来很费力，可是很值得。 It takes a lot of effort, but it's worth it.
吃力	chīlì	struggling, strenuous	爬到山顶，她觉得有点吃力。 Climbing to the top, she found it a bit of a struggle.
伤脑筋	shāngnǎojīn	troublesome, a headache	这个问题真伤脑筋。 This problem is a real headache.
没辙	méizhé	be at a loss, nothing to be done	钥匙丢了，我也没辙了。 The key is lost; I'm out of ideas.
折腾	zhēteng	toss about; do over and over	一年搬了三次家，真把我折腾坏了。 Moving house three times in a year has worn me out.
辗转	zhǎnzhuǎn	pass through many hands or places	这封信辗转了好几个城市才到我手里。 This letter went through several cities before it reached me.
卷入	juǎnrù	be drawn into	他不想卷入别人的争吵。 He doesn't want to get drawn into other people's quarrels.
牵扯	qiānchě	involve, drag in	这件事牵扯到好几个部门。 This matter involves several departments.
牵涉	qiānshè	involve, concern	这个问题牵涉到很多人的利益。 This issue touches on the interests of many people.
扰乱	rǎoluàn	disturb, disrupt	这些假消息扰乱了市场。 This fake news threw the market into confusion.
将就	jiāngjiu	make do, put up with	房间小了点，我们将就住一晚吧。 The room is a bit small, but let's make do for one night.
凑合	còuhe	make do; passable	这家饭馆的菜还凑合。 The food at this restaurant is passable.
绊脚石	bànjiǎoshí	stumbling block	骄傲是进步的绊脚石。 Pride is a stumbling block to progress.
碍事	àishì	be in the way; matter	箱子放在门口太碍事了。 The box is right in the way by the door.
累赘	léizhui	burden; cumbersome	出门旅行，行李太多就是累赘。 When you travel, too much luggage is just a burden.

pattern 无非/不过/只是……罢了/而已, "merely … that's all" (and 爱a不a)

无非 / 不过 / 只是 **something small** 罢了 / 而已

Put 无非, 不过 or 只是 in front and 罢了 or 而已 at the end to shrink a thing down to size: “it’s merely …, that’s all”. One half alone works too, but the pair sounds calm and reassuring. Also back today: 爱A不A, a blunt “take it or leave it”: 爱要不要, 爱信不信.

这无非是运输上的一点小问题罢了，别太担心。 **zhè wúfēi shì yùnshū shàng de yìdiǎn xiǎo wèntí bàle bié tài dānxīn** It’s only a small transport problem, that’s all: don’t worry too much.

发布会只是往后延了两天而已。 **fābù huì zhǐshì wǎnghòu yán le liǎng tiān éryǐ** The launch has only been put back two days, nothing more.

他们说新布要等两个星期，价格还更贵，爱要不要。 **tāmen shuō xīn bù yào děng liǎng gè xīngqī jiàgé hái gèng guì ài yào búyào** They say new cloth will take two weeks and cost more, take it or leave it.

dialogue one week to go

anna 刘经理，坏消息：运灯罩的货车在路上耽搁了三天，第一批布又遗失了一大包。
Liújīnglǐ huài xiāoxi yùn dēng zhào de huòchē zài lùshang dānge le sān tiān dì yī pī bù yòu yíshī le yí dà bāo · Manager Liu, bad news: the lorry with the lampshades was held up on the road for three days, and a big bundle of cloth from the first batch has gone missing.

manager liu 别急，还有补救的办法。这无非是运输上的一点小问题罢了。发布会能不能顺延？
bié jí hái yǒu bǔjiù de bànfǎ zhè wúfēi shì yùnshū shàng de yìdiǎn xiǎo wèntí bàle fābù huì néng bu néng shùnyán · Don’t panic: there are still ways to put it right. It’s only a small transport problem. Can the launch move back?

anna 场地的合同规定，逾期要多交钱。而且邀请函已经发出去了，再往后延，很多嘉宾就来不了了。
chǎngdì de hétóng guīdìng yúqī yào duō jiāo qián érqiě yāoqǐng hán yǐjīng fā chuqu le zài wǎnghòu yán hěn duō jiābīn jiù lái bu liǎo le · The venue contract says we pay extra if we run over. And the invitations have gone out: if we put it off again, a lot of guests won’t be able to come.

xiaoming （打电话）工厂这边也出了差错：一批底座装错位了，得拆了重新组装，真费劲。还有，说明书上遗漏了一个步骤。这些问题会延缓生产，不过不会延误交付。
dǎ diànhuà gōngchǎng zhèbiān yě chū le chācuò yì pī dǐ zuò zhuāng cuòwèi le děi chāi le chóngxīn zǔzhuāng zhēn fèijìn hái yǒu shuōmíngshū shàng yílòu le yí gè bùzhòu zhèxiē wèntí huì yánhuǎn shēngchǎn búguò bú huì yánwù jiāofù · (on the phone) We’ve had slips at the factory too: a batch of bases was fitted out of line and has to be taken apart and reassembled, which is a real slog. And a step was left out of the manual. All this will slow production down, but it won’t make delivery late.

anna 生产线现在还在运转吗？
shēngchǎnxiàn xiànzài hái zài yùnzhuǎn ma · Is the production line still running?

xiaoming 在。调度把夜班也安排上了。车间主任下令，次品一台也不能出厂。
zài diàodù bǎ yèbān yě ānpái shàng le chējiān zhǔrèn xiàlìng cìpǐn yì tái yě bù néng chūchǎng · Yes. Scheduling has added a night shift. The workshop head has ordered that not a single reject leaves the factory.

anna 这一周真把我折腾坏了。一个问题牵扯出另一个问题，牵涉到所有部门，大家都卷入进来了。
zhè yì zhōu zhēn bǎ wǒ zhēteng huài le yí gè wèntí qiānchě chū lìng yí gè wèntí qiānshè dào suǒyǒu bùmén dàjiā dōu juǎnrù jinlai le · This week has worn me out. One problem drags in another, it involves every department, and everyone has been pulled in.

manager liu 做项目最怕计划和实际脱节，最后偏离目标。不过我觉得，我们这只是走弯路而已，不是走错路。
zuò xiàngmù zuì pà jìhuà hé shíjì tuōjié zuìhòu piānlí mùbiāo búguò wǒ juéde wǒmen zhè zhǐshì zǒu wānlù éryǐ bú shì zǒu cuò lù · The worst thing in a project is when the plan loses touch with reality and you drift off target. But to me, we’re just taking the long way round, not the wrong way.

ms zhang 安娜，给你们供应布的工厂怎么说？
Ānnà gěi nǐmen gōngyìng bù de gōngchǎng zěnme shuō · Anna, what does the supplier say?

anna 他们说，那包布辗转了好几个仓库，现在也找不到。新布要等两个星期，价格还更贵，爱要不要。我真没辙了。
tāmen shuō nà bāo bù zhǎnzhuǎn le hǎo jǐ gè cāngkù xiànzài yě zhǎo bu dào xīn bù yào děng liǎng gè xīngqī jiàgé hái gèng guì ài yào búyào wǒ zhēn méizhé le · They say the bundle went through several warehouses and now it can’t be found. New cloth will take two weeks and cost more, take it or leave it. I’m out of ideas.

ms zhang 他们欠缺的是服务意识。我认识一家纺织厂，可以先调剂一些布给你们凑合一下，只是颜色有点不一样而已。
tāmen qiànquē de shì fúwù yìshí wǒ rènshi yì jiā fǎngzhī chǎng kěyǐ xiān tiáojì yìxiē bù gěi nǐmen còuhe yíxià zhǐshì yánsè yǒu diǎn bù yíyàng éryǐ · What they lack is any idea of service. I know a textile mill that can spare you some cloth to make do for now; the only thing is the colour is a little different.

manager liu 颜色不一样不碍事，嘉宾不见得看得出来。先将就用吧。
yánsè bù yíyàng bú àishì jiābīn bújiàndé kàn de chulai xiān jiāngjiu yòng ba · A different colour doesn’t

matter; the guests won't necessarily notice. Let's make do for now.

anna 好，我马上通报各个部门，跟进这件事。还有一个遗留问题：去年的展示台又大又重，搬起来很吃力，带过去就是个累赘。

hǎo wǒ mǎshàng tōngbào gègè bùmén gēnjìn zhè jiàn shì hái yǒu yí gè yíliú wèntí qùnián de zhǎnshì tái yòu dà yòu zhòng bān qǐlai hěn chīlì dài guoqu jiùshì gè léizhui · OK, I'll let every department know right away and follow it up. There's one problem left over too: last year's display stand is big and heavy, a struggle to move. Taking it would just be a burden.

xiaoming 那就别带了。另外，工厂的检查记录有几页缺失了，我正在一页一页地核查，把缺的补上，很费力。

nà jiù bié dài le lìngwài gōngchǎng de jiǎnchá jìlù yǒu jǐ yè quēshī le wǒ zhèngzài yí yè yí yè de héchá bǎ quē de bǔ shàng hěn fèilì · Then don't take it. Also, a few pages of the factory's inspection records are missing. I'm checking them page by page and filling in the gaps; it's hard going.

manager liu 团队里有两个新人有点掉队，你多带带他们。我再从别的部门派两个人过来。别让这些小事扰乱了我们的计划。

tuánduì lǐ yǒu liǎng gè xīnrén yǒu diǎn diàoduì nǐ duō dài dai tāmen wǒ zài cóng biéde bùmén pài liǎng gè rén guòlái bié ràng zhèxiē xiǎo shì rǎoluàn le wǒmen de jìhuà · Two of the newcomers on the team are falling behind a bit, so give them extra help. I'll send over two people from another department. Don't let these little things throw our plan off.

anna 以前我觉得开发布会无非是请人、讲话、拍照罢了，现在才知道这么伤脑筋。

yǐqián wǒ juéde kāi fābù huì wúfēi shì qǐng rén jiǎnghuà pāizhào bàle xiànzài cái zhīdào zhème shāng nǎojīn · I used to think a launch was just inviting people, giving a speech and taking photos. Now I know what a headache it is.

manager liu 别灰心。真正的绊脚石不是困难，是办法贫乏。没有办法，再努力也是徒劳。

bié huīxīn zhēnzhèng de bànjiǎoshí bú shì kùnnan shì bànfǎ pínfá méiyǒu bànfǎ zài nǔlì yě shì túláo · Don't lose heart. The real stumbling block isn't the difficulty, it's running short of ideas. Without a plan, all the effort in the world is wasted.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

搁
gē
to put, leave (somewhere)

逾
yú
go beyond

good to know · 将就 and 凑合 both mean "make do"; 凑合 is more casual and also means "so-so": 这家饭馆还凑合. 耽搁 is a hold-up; 延误 is a delay that makes you miss something (flights, deliveries); 顺延 moves everything back in turn.

Delays, slips, missing pages and a stubborn supplier: you can now talk about trouble in Chinese, and make it sound smaller.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 159 keeping it going

Talk about keeping something going under pressure (booms, shocks, rumours and quick fixes), and open a formal speech or letter with 值此……之际 and 向……致以……

When sales take off, the work really starts: you cope, handle, cool things down and keep going. And every Chinese speech, card and company letter seems to begin with 值此……之际: now you can write one.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
续	xù	continue; add more; extend	服务员，麻烦帮我续{xu4-7}一下水。 Excuse me, could you top up my water?
后续	hòuxù	follow-up, subsequent	后续的工作由小明负责。 Xiaoming is in charge of the follow-up work.
连绵	liánmián	continuous, unbroken	这几天阴雨连绵。 It has been grey and rainy for days on end.
间断	jiànduàn	be interrupted, break off	他学了十年中文，从来没有间断过。 He has studied Chinese for ten years without a break.
间歇	jiànxiē	intermittent; a break	工作间歇，大家一起喝杯茶。 In the break we all have a cup of tea.
流转	liúzhuǎn	circulate, pass around	文件在几个部门之间流转，要花一个星期。 It takes a week for a document to go round several departments.
脱离	tuōlí	break away from, get out of	病人已经脱离了危险。 The patient is out of danger.
脱落	tuōluò	come off, fall off	墙上的油漆开始脱落了。 The paint on the wall has started to peel off.
脱身	tuōshēn	get away, get free	会议一结束，他就找了个借口脱身。 As soon as the meeting ended, he found an excuse to slip away.
应付	yìngfu	cope with; do half-heartedly	一个人应付这么多客户，真不容易。 Handling so many clients on your own isn't easy.
对付	duìfu	deal with, handle; make do	这种小问题，我一个人就能对付。 I can handle a little problem like this on my own.
处置	chǔzhì	handle, dispose of	这批次品要尽快处置。 This batch of rejects must be dealt with quickly.
施加	shījiā	exert, apply (pressure)	父母不要给孩子施加太大的压力。 Parents shouldn't put too much pressure on their children.
承载	chéngzài	bear the weight of, carry	这座桥能承载很重的货车。 This bridge can carry very heavy lorries.
抵消	dǐxiāo	offset, cancel out	工资涨了一点，可是房租也涨了，正好抵消了。 My pay went up a little, but so did the rent, so it cancelled out.
淡化	dànhuà	play down; fade	时间会慢慢淡化痛苦。 Time slowly softens pain.

掩盖	yǎngài	cover up, hide	他想用笑来掩盖自己的紧张。 He tried to hide his nerves with a smile.
冷却	lěngquè	cool off, cool down	等机器冷却以后再检查。 Wait for the machine to cool down before you check it.
震	zhèn	shake, shock	楼上的音乐声震得窗户都在响。 The music upstairs is so loud the windows are rattling.
震荡	zhèndàng	shake, turbulence	最近股市震荡得很厉害。 The stock market has been very volatile lately.
震动	zhèndòng	shake; shock, stir	火车开过的时候，房子都在震动。 When a train goes by, the whole house shakes.
急剧	jíjù	rapid, sharp	这几年，城市人口急剧增加。 In recent years the city's population has shot up.
仓促	cāngcù	hasty, hurried	时间太仓促，我们来不及准备。 Time is too short: we can't get ready in time.
火爆	huǒbào	booming, red-hot	这家新开的餐厅生意特别火爆。 Business at this new restaurant is booming.
过头	guòtóu	overdo it, go too far	玩笑开过头了，她生气了。 The joke went too far, and she got angry.
滥用	lànyòng	abuse, misuse	抗生素不能滥用。 Antibiotics must not be overused.
耗	hào	use up, consume; waste (time)	这台旧空调很耗电。 This old air conditioner uses a lot of electricity.
废	fèi	waste, useless; abandon	这些废纸可以回收。 This waste paper can be recycled.
绝	jué	cut off; unique; absolutely	你这个主意真绝！ That idea of yours is brilliant!
缓	huǎn	delay; slow; recover	这件事不急，可以缓几天再说。 This isn't urgent; it can wait a few days.
护	hù	protect, shield	妈妈总是护着小儿子。 Mum always sticks up for her youngest son.
逆	nì	go against; contrary	我们逆着人流往外走。 We walked out against the flow of people.
顺应	shùnyìng	go along with, adapt to	企业要顺应市场的变化。 A business has to adapt to changes in the market.
破例	pòlì	make an exception	看你这么努力，老板破例给你放一天假。 Seeing how hard you've worked, the boss is making an exception and giving you a day off.
省事	shěngshì	save trouble, convenient	在网上买票省事多了。 Buying tickets online is much less hassle.

pattern 值此……之际, "on the occasion of …" (and 向……致以……)

值此 | occasion | 之际, | 向 someone 致以 thanks / greetings / respect

值此……之际 “on the occasion of …” opens speeches, letters and greetings. It is usually followed by 向……致以……, “to extend (thanks, greetings, congratulations) to …”: 向大家致以诚挚的感谢. Both belong to writing and ceremonies; with friends, just say 谢谢大家.

值此新品发布之际，我们向各位合作伙伴致以诚挚的感谢。 **zhí cǐ xīn pǐn fābù zhījì wǒmen xiàng gèwèi hézuò huǒbàn zhì yǐ chéngzhì de gǎnxiè** As we launch our new product, we extend our sincere thanks to all our partners.

值此春节之际，向全体员工和家人致以新年的问候。 **zhí cǐ Chūnjié zhījì xiàng quántǐ yuángōng hé jiārén zhì yǐ xīnnián de wènhòu** On the occasion of the Spring Festival, New Year greetings to all our staff and their families.

值此公司成立十周年之际，向一直支持我们的客户致以敬意。 **zhí cǐ gōngsī chénglì shí zhōunián zhījì xiàng yìzhí zhīchí wǒmen de kèhù zhì yǐ jìngyì** As the company turns ten, we pay tribute to the clients who have always supported us.

dialogue a boom, a rumour and a speech

anna 刘经理，预订开始才两天，订单就急剧增加，比我们想的火爆多了！
Liújīnglǐ yùdìng kāishǐ cái liǎng tiān dìngdān jiù jíjù zēngjiā bǐ wǒmen xiǎng de huǒbào duō le · Manager Liu, pre-orders opened only two days ago and orders have shot up: it's far busier than we expected!

manager liu 太好了。不过别高兴过头。卖得好以后，后续的服务才是真正的考验，发货千万不能延误。
tài hǎo le búguò bié gāoxìng guòtóu mài de hǎo yǐhòu hòuxù de fúwù cái shì zhēnzhèng de kǎoyàn fā huò qiānwàn bù néng yánwù · Wonderful. But don't get carried away. Once it sells well, the after-sales service is the real test, and deliveries must never be late.

anna 客服电话从早到晚没有间断过，我们三个人很吃力，快应付不过来了。有的订单发货可能要耽搁几天。
kèfú diànhuà cóng zǎo dào wǎn méiyǒu jiànduàn guo wǒmen sān gè rén hěn chīlì kuài yìngfu bu guolai le yǒude dìngdān fā huò kěnéng yào dānge jǐ tiān · The customer service phones haven't stopped from morning to night. The three of us are struggling and can barely cope. Some orders may be held up a few days before they ship.

manager liu 让后勤部再派两个人来帮忙，这个月我破例给他们加工资。
ràng hòuqín bù zài pài liǎng gè rén lái bāngmáng zhège yuè wǒ pòlì gěi tāmen jiā gōngzī · Get support services to send two more people. This month I'll make an exception and give them a pay rise.

editor lin 安娜，网上有人说你们的台灯掉漆，照片都发出来了，还在到处流转。有人怀疑你们想掩盖问题。
Ānnà wǎngshang yǒu rén shuō nǐmen de táidēng diào qī zhàopiàn dōu fā chulai le hái zài dàochù liúzhuǎn yǒu rén huáiyí nǐmen xiǎng yǎngài wèntí · Anna, someone online says the paint comes off your lamp. The photos are out and still going round, and people are wondering if you're covering something up.

anna 那是仿制的台灯！我们的底座是木头的，根本没有漆，哪来的脱落？
nà shì fǎngzhì de táidēng wǒmen de dǐ zuò shì mùtou de gēnběn méiyǒu qī nǎ lái de tuōluò · That's a copy! Our bases are wood, there's no paint at all, so how could it come off?

editor lin 那就好对付了。别想着淡化这件事，也别一直解释。把两张照片放在一起比一比，事情就会慢慢冷却，风波也会平息。
nà jiù hǎo duìfu le bié xiǎng zhe dànhuà zhè jiàn shì yě bié yìzhí jiěshì bǎ liǎng zhāng zhàopiàn fàng zài yìqǐ bǐ yi bi shìqing jiù huì màn màn lěngquè fēngbō yě huì píngxī · Then it's easy to deal with. Don't try to play it down, and don't keep explaining. Put the two photos side by side, and things will cool off and the fuss will die down.

manager liu 对，这件事要马上处置。我们不删别人的评论，也不向任何人施加压力，更不能滥用投诉。
duì zhè jiàn shì yào mǎshàng chǔzhì wǒmen bù shān biérén de pínglùn yě bú xiàng rènhé rén shījiā yālì gèng bù néng lànyòng tóusù · Right, we deal with this at once. We don't delete anyone's comments, we don't put pressure on anyone, and we certainly don't abuse the complaints system.

anna 好，我们不卷入网上的争吵，只把事实说清楚。
hǎo wǒmen bù juǎnrù wǎngshang de zhēngchǎo zhǐ bǎ shìshí shuō qīngchu · OK. We won't get drawn into arguments online; we'll just set out the facts.

ms zhang 最近股市震荡得厉害，有点坏消息，市场就震动不小。不过好的口碑能抵消这些影响。
zuìjìn gǔshì zhèndàng de lìhai yǒu diǎn huài xiāoxi shìchǎng jiù zhèndòng bù xiǎo búguò hǎo de kǒubēi néng dǐxiāo zhèxiē yǐngxiǎng · The stock market has been very jumpy lately: a bit of bad news shakes things up. But a good reputation can cancel that out.

anna 我们也不能因为这件事偏离原来的计划。
wǒmen yě bù néng yīnwèi zhè jiàn shì piānlí yuánlái de jìhuà · And we mustn't let this throw us off our original plan.

manager liu 做企业要顺应市场，不能逆着走。好在最难的阶段我们已经脱离了，现在一切都很平稳。

zuò qǐyè yào shùnyìng shìchǎng bù néng nì zhe zǒu hǎozài zuì nán de jiēduàn wǒmen yǐjīng tuōlí le xiànzài yíqiè dōu hěn píngwěn · A business has to go with the market, not against it. Luckily we're already past the hardest part, and everything is steady now.

anna 还有，昨天排练，音乐一开，整个舞台都在震。舞台能承载那么多设备吗?

hái yǒu zuótiān páiliàn yīnyuè yì kāi zhěnggè wǔtái dōu zài zhèn wǔtái néng chéngzài nàme duō shèbèi ma · And at yesterday's rehearsal the whole stage shook when the music started. Can it carry that much equipment?

manager liu 舞台没问题。不过那台旧音响太耗电，已经废了，换一台新的。这几天阴雨连绵，嘉宾出门不方便，我们派车去接，省事。

wǔtái méi wèntí búguò nà tái jiù yīnxiǎng tài hào diàn yǐjīng fèi le huàn yì tái xīn de zhè jǐ tiān yīn yǔ liánmián jiābīn chūmén bù fāngbiàn wǒmen pài chē qù jiē shěngshì · The stage is fine. But that old sound system eats electricity and it's had it, so get a new one. And with all this rain, it's hard for guests to get about, so we'll send cars for them: much less trouble.

anna 旧音响搬来搬去也是个累赘。好，我的开场白写好了：“值此新品发布之际，我们向各位合作伙伴、媒体朋友和用户致以诚挚的感谢……”

jiù yīnxiǎng bān lái bān qù yě shì gè léizhui hǎo wǒ de kāichǎngbái xiě hǎo le zhí cǐ xīn pǐn fābù zhījì wǒmen xiàng gèwèi hézuò huǒbàn méitǐ péngyou hé yònghù zhì yǐ chéngzhì de gǎnxiè · Lugging that old sound system around is a burden anyway. OK. My opening is ready: “As we launch our new product, we extend our sincere thanks to all our partners, friends in the media and users …”

editor lin 这句真绝！不过别说得太仓促，说完这句缓一缓，看看台下的人。

zhè jù zhēn jué búguò bié shuō de tài cāngcù shuō wán zhè jù huǎn yi huan kàn kan tái xià de rén · That line is perfect! But don't rush it: after that sentence, pause and look at the audience.

manager liu 我再续一句：向一直加班的团队致以敬意。中间休息的间歇，我请大家喝咖啡。大家也要护好自己的身体，别累病了。

wǒ zài xù yí jù xiàng yìzhí jiābān de tuánduì zhì yǐ jìngyì zhōngjiān xiūxi de jiànxiē wǒ qǐng dàjiā hē kāfēi dàjiā yě yào hù hǎo zìjǐ de shēntǐ bié lèi bìng le · Let me add one line: our respect to the team who have worked late all along. In the break, coffee is on me. And look after yourselves: don't work yourselves ill.

anna 谢谢！我还有一个会，先脱身了，晚上再改。

xièxie wǒ hái yǒu yí gè huì xiān tuōshēn le wǎnshang zài gǎi · Thanks! I've got another meeting, so I'll slip away now and edit it tonight.

good to know · 应付 is to cope (应付不过来 can't keep up), but also to do something half-heartedly; 对付 is to deal with a problem or an opponent; 处置 is formal: to handle or dispose of. 值此 is literary (值 “meet with”, 此 “this”): you'll see it on company cards, banners and speeches at every festival.

A sales boom, a rumour stopped in its tracks and a speech that opens like a pro's: you can now keep a project going in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 160 talent and skill

Describe people's talents, skills, strengths and weaknesses in Chinese, grant a point and then push back with "X是X，……", and use the stock phrase 想X之所想，急X之所急.

Interviews, reviews and introductions are all about what people are good at. And "好是好，就是……" is how Chinese says "yes, but" without hurting anyone.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
才干	cáigàn	ability, competence	她很有才干，三年就当上了经理。 She is very able: she became a manager in three years.
能耐	néngnai	skill, ability (spoken)	你真有能耐，这么难的事都办成了。 You're really something: you pulled off something this hard.
能人	néngrén	capable person	他是我们村里有名的能人。 He's well known in our village as someone who can do anything.
两下子	liǎngxiàzi	real skill, a few tricks	你做饭还真有两下子！ You really know your way round a kitchen!
拿手	náshǒu	good at, a speciality	红烧鱼是我妈妈的拿手菜。 Braised fish is my mum's signature dish.
内行	nèiháng	expert; expert in a field	买电脑最好找个内行帮你看看。 When you buy a computer, it's best to get an expert to look at it.
外行	wàiháng	layman; amateurish	我对摄影完全是外行。 I'm a complete beginner at photography.
行家	hángjia	expert, connoisseur	他是品茶的行家。 He's a connoisseur of tea.
新手	xīnshǒu	novice, beginner	我是新手，请多指教。 I'm new at this; please show me the ropes.
专长	zhuāncháng	speciality, expertise	每个人都有自己的专长。 Everyone has their own area of expertise.
强项	qiángxiàng	strong point	数学一直是她的强项。 Maths has always been her strong point.
弱项	ruòxiàng	weak point	口语是我的弱项。 Speaking is my weak point.
天分	tiānfèn	natural gift, talent	这孩子很有音乐天分。 This child has a real gift for music.
天赋	tiānfù	talent, gift; be endowed with	天赋很重要，可是努力更重要。 Talent matters, but hard work matters more.
天生	tiānshēng	born, innate	他天生就是个乐观的人。 He was born an optimist.
天性	tiānxìng	nature, instinct	孩子爱玩是天性。 Children love to play: it's their nature.

本性	běnxìng	true nature, inherent nature	一个人的本性很难改变。 A person's true nature is hard to change.
资质	zīzhì	aptitude; qualifications	这家公司的资质符合招标的要求。 This company's qualifications meet the tender requirements.
智商	zhìshāng	IQ	智商高不一定就能成功。 A high IQ doesn't guarantee success.
情商	qíngshāng	EQ, emotional intelligence	他情商很高，跟谁都处{chu3}得来。 He has a high EQ: he gets on with everyone.
潜能	qiánnéng	potential	每个人都有很大的潜能。 Everyone has great potential.
功底	gōngdǐ	grounding, solid foundation	她的书法功底很深。 She has a very solid grounding in calligraphy.
基本功	jīběngōng	basic skills, the basics	学钢琴，基本功最重要。 When you learn the piano, the basics matter most.
过硬	guòyìng	up to standard, really solid	他的技术很过硬。 His technical skills are first-rate.
全能	quánnéng	all-round	她是个全能选手，什么都|会。 She's an all-rounder: she can do anything.
博学	bóxué	learned, erudite	陈教授是一位非常博学的老人。 Professor Chen is a very learned old man.
素养	sùyǎng	accomplishment, all-round quality	记者要有很好的职业素养。 A journalist needs real professionalism.
修养	xiūyǎng	self-cultivation, good manners	他说话很有修养，从来不骂人。 He speaks like a cultured man: he never swears at anyone.
得力	délì	capable, effective	她是经理最得力的助手。 She's the manager's most capable assistant.
施展	shīzhǎn	put to good use, show (one's skill)	新工作让他有机会施展自己的才干。 The new job gives him a chance to show what he can do.

pattern x(倒)是x(了)，……，"x, sure, but …" (and 想x之所想)

X | **(倒)是** | **X(了)，** | **可是 / 就是 / 不过 + the real point**

Say a word, then 是, then the same word again to grant a point before you push back: 好是好，就是太贵 "it's good, sure, but it's too expensive." 倒 makes the concession softer, and 了 often follows: 便宜倒是便宜了，可是…. Also back today: 想X之所想，急X之所急, "think what X thinks, worry about what X worries about", a stock phrase for putting people first.

他内行倒是内行，就是脾气不太好。 **tā nèiháng dàoshì nèiháng jiùshì píqi bú tài hǎo** He knows his stuff, all right, but his temper isn't great.

这个新手能干是能干，可是基本功还不够过硬。 **zhège xīnshǒu nénggàn shì nénggàn kěshì jīběngōng hái búgòu guòyìng** The new hire is capable enough, but the basics aren't solid yet.

好的服务，就是要想客户之所想，急客户之所急。 **hǎo de fúwù jiùshì yào xiǎng kèhù zhī suǒ xiǎng jí kèhù zhī suǒ jí** Good service means thinking what the customer thinks and worrying about what they worry about.

dialogue an interview over tea

manager liu 安娜，发布会上谁来演示产品？人选还没定。我们需要一个既懂产品、又会说话的人。

Ānnà fābù huì shàng shéi lái yǎnshì chǎnpǐn rénxuǎn hái méi dìng wǒmen xūyào yí gè jì dǒng chǎnpǐn yòu huì shuōhuà de rén · Anna, who's going to demonstrate the product at the launch? We haven't picked anyone yet. We need someone who knows it and can talk.

anna 我推荐小明的妹妹。她年轻倒是年轻，可是很有能耐。她现在一边上学，一边帮胡同里的一家老店做营销，做得很好。

wǒ tuījiàn Xiǎomíng de mèimei tā niánqīng dàoshì niánqīng kěshì hěn yǒu néngnai tā xiànzài yìbiān shàngxué yìbiān bāng hútòng lǐ de yì jiā lǎo diàn zuò yíngxiāo zuò de hěn hǎo · I'd suggest Xiaoming's sister. She's young, sure, but she's very capable. Besides her studies, she does marketing for an old shop in the hutong, and she's very good at it.

manager liu 那家老店最近生意很火爆，原来是她做的营销？她对这个行业是内行还是外行？

nà jiā lǎo diàn zuìjìn shēngyi hěn huǒbào yuánlái shì tā zuò de yíngxiāo tā duì zhège hángyè shì nèiháng háishi wàiháng · That old shop has been booming lately: so she's behind the marketing? Does she know this business, or is she an outsider?

little sister 刘经理好！说实话，技术方面我是新手，可是我学得快。我的专长是跟人打交道。说话是我的强项，数学是我的弱项。

Liújīnglǐ hǎo shuō shíhuà jìshù fāngmiàn wǒ shì xīnshǒu kěshì wǒ xué de kuài wǒ de zhuāncháng shì gēn rén dǎ jiāodao shuōhuà shì wǒ de qiángxiàng shùxué shì wǒ de ruòxiàng · Hello, Manager Liu! To be honest, I'm a beginner on the technical side, but I learn fast. My speciality is dealing with people. Talking is my strong point; maths is my weak point.

manager liu 做营销，最难对付的是什么？

zuò yíngxiāo zuì nán duìfu de shì shénme · In marketing, what's the hardest thing to deal with?

little sister 是网上的负面评论。不能掩盖，也不能淡化，要说实话。

shì wǎngshang de fùmiàn pínglùn bù néng yǎngài yě bù néng dànhuà yào shuō shíhuà · Negative reviews online. You can't cover them up or play them down: you have to tell the truth.

manager liu 哈哈，你倒是很诚实。负责设计的师傅是个资深的行家，以前是木匠，做木头的功底很深，基本功特别过硬。

hā hā nǐ dàoshì hěn chéngshí fùzé shèjì de shīfu shì gè zīshēn de hángjia yǐqián shì mùjiàng zuò mùtou de gōngdǐ hěn shēn jīběngōng tèbié guòyìng · Ha ha, you're honest, I'll give you that. The man who does our design is a seasoned expert: he used to be a carpenter, so his grounding in woodwork is deep and his basic skills are first-rate.

little sister 我知道！他做的台灯底座真有两下子。王老师说过，做手工要有天分，也要有耐心。

wǒ zhīdào tā zuò de táidēng dǐ zuò zhēn yǒu liǎngxiàzi Wánglǎoshī shuō guo zuò shǒugōng yào yǒu tiānfèn yě yào yǒu nàixīn · I know! The lamp bases he makes are really something. Teacher Wang once said handwork takes a gift, and patience too.

anna 王老师还常说，天赋是天生的，可是潜能要靠磨炼。

Wánglǎoshī hái cháng shuō tiānfù shì tiānshēng de kěshì qiánnéng yào kào móliàn · Teacher Wang also says talent is something you're born with, but potential has to be worked on.

manager liu 我们选人，不只看智商，也看情商和进取的精神，还要看职业素养和个人修养。

wǒmen xuǎn rén bù zhǐ kàn zhìshāng yě kàn qíngshāng hé jìnqǔ de jīngshén hái yào kàn zhíyè sùyǎng hé gèrén xiūyǎng · When we choose people, we look not just at IQ but at EQ and drive, and at professionalism and personal character too.

little sister 陈教授也说过，一个人再博学，也不一定是全能的。每个人的资质都不一样。

Chénjiàoshòu yě shuō guo yí gè rén zài bóxué yě bù yídìng shì quánnéng de měi gè rén de zīzhì dōu bù yíyàng · Professor Chen says however learned you are, you can't be good at everything. Everyone's aptitude is different.

manager liu 说得对。这样吧，你来公司实习，正好有机会施展一下你的才干。安娜手下正缺一个得力的帮手。

shuō de duì zhèyàng ba nǐ lái gōngsī shíxí zhènghǎo yǒu jīhuì shīzhǎn yíxià nǐ de cáigàn Ānnà shǒu xià zhèng

quē yí gè délì de bāngshou · Quite right. Tell you what: come and do an internship with us; it's a chance to show what you can do. Anna is short of a capable assistant.

anna 太好了！她做事很勤快，天性开朗，跟谁都聊得来。我们团队里能人很多，你可以跟大家学。

tài hǎo le tā zuò shì hěn qínkuai tiānxìng kāilǎng gēn shéi dōu liáo de lái wǒmen tuánduì lǐ néngrén hěn duō nǐ kěyǐ gēn dàjiā xué · Wonderful! She's hard-working, cheerful by nature and gets on with everyone. There are lots of capable people on our team, so you can learn from them.

little sister 我学东西很有劲头，遇到困难也不怕。我一定好好干，给家里争气。做产品就要想用户之所想，急用户之所急。

wǒ xué dōngxi hěn yǒu jìntóu yùdào kùnnan yě bú pà wǒ yídìng hǎohǎo gàn gěi jiā lǐ zhēngqì zuò chǎnpǐn jiù yào xiǎng yònghù zhī suǒ xiǎng jí yònghù zhī suǒ jí · I'm keen when I learn things, and I'm not scared of difficulties. I'll work hard and do my family proud. Making products means thinking what users think and worrying about what they worry about.

manager liu 说得好。人的本性很难改，你这么热情，千万别改。

shuō de hǎo rén de běnxìng hěn nán gǎi nǐ zhème rèqíng qiānwàn bié gǎi · Well said. People's nature is hard to change, and you're so full of enthusiasm: don't ever change.

little sister 我最拿手的是讲故事。发布会那天，我在台上讲讲这盏台灯的故事。

wǒ zuì náshǒu de shì jiǎng gùshi fābù huì nà tiān wǒ zài tái shàng jiǎng jiang zhè zhǎn táidēng de gùshi · What I do best is tell stories. On the day of the launch, I'll tell the story of this lamp on stage.

anna 好是好，就是你得先把说明书背下来！

hǎo shì hǎo jiùshì nǐ děi xiān bǎ shuōmíngshū bèi xiàlái · Good idea, but first you'll have to learn the manual by heart!

good to know · 内行 / 外行 are also adjectives: 他说话很内行 he talks like an expert; 这个问题问得太外行了 that's an amateur's question. 天分, 天赋, 天生 and 天性 all start with 天 "heaven, nature": a gift, a talent, inborn, and one's nature.

Talent, grounding, strengths and "yes, but": you can now size people up, kindly, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 161 mission: the product launch

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 21 · business and projects

Follow a whole product launch in Chinese, from the invitation letter and the morning checks to the speech, the demonstration, the contract signing and the debrief, using this unit's words for deals, paperwork, factories, delays, pressure and talent.

A launch is a whole business in one afternoon: planning, paperwork, a factory, things going wrong, a speech, a deal and a summing-up. If you can follow this one, you can follow a working week in a Chinese company.

chapter 1 the invitation

anna （读）“邀请函。尊敬的各位来宾：值此我公司第一款智能台灯发布之际，我们诚挚地邀请您参加新品发布会。时间：本月十五日下午两点。会场：公司大楼一层大厅。”

dú yāoqǐng hán zūnjìng de gèwèi láibīn zhí cǐ wǒ gōngsī dì yī kuǎn zhìnéng táidēng fābù zhījì wǒmen chéngzhì de yāoqǐng nín cānjiā xīn pǐn fābù huì shíjiān běn yuè shíwǔ rì xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn huìchǎng gōngsī dà lóu yì céng dàtīng · (reading) “Invitation. Dear guests: on the occasion of the launch of our company’s first smart desk lamp, we warmly invite you to our new product launch. Time: 2 p.m. on the fifteenth of this month. Venue: the ground-floor hall of the company building.”

anna “议程如下：一、开场致辞；二、产品演示；三、与合作伙伴签署海外代理合约；四、座谈：商讨下一阶段的合作议题。”

yìchéng rúxià yī kāichǎng zhìcí èr chǎnpǐn yǎnshì sān yǔ hézuò huǒbàn qiānshǔ hǎiwài dàilǐ héyuē sì zuòtán shāngtǎo xià yì jiēduàn de hézuò yìtí · “The agenda is as follows: one, opening address; two, product demonstration; three, signing of the overseas agency contract with our partner; four, discussion: topics for the next stage of our cooperation.”

anna “本次发布会由我公司统筹，与张女士所在的贸易公司协同筹办。台灯由我公司所属集团的附属工厂承包生产，已通过国家安全认证，检测中心出具的报告和认证凭证将在会场展示。”

běn cì fābù huì yóu wǒ gōngsī tǒngchóu yǔ Zhāngnǚshì suǒzài de màoyì gōngsī xiétóng chóubàn táidēng yóu wǒ gōngsī suǒshǔ jítuán de fùshǔ gōngchǎng chéngbāo shēngchǎn yǐ tōngguò guójiā ānquán rènzhèng jiǎncè zhōngxīn chūjù de bàogào hé rènzhèng píngzhèng jiāng zài huìchǎng zhǎnshì · “This launch is coordinated by our company and organised together with the trading company of Ms Zhang. The lamp is made under contract by a factory affiliated to our parent group and has passed national safety certification; the testing centre’s report and certificate will be on display at the venue.”

anna “来宾请凭此函入场，请勿转借他人。驾车的来宾，请提前把汽车牌照号码发给我公司后勤部门。敬请光临！”

láibīn qǐng píng cǐ hán rùchǎng qǐng wù zhuǎn jiè tārén jià chē de láibīn qǐng tíqián bǎ qìchē páizhào hàomǎ fā gěi wǒ gōngsī hòuqín bùmén jìngqǐng guānglín · “Guests are kindly asked to present this letter at the door; please do not pass it on to others. If you are coming by car, please send your number plate to our support department in advance. We look forward to seeing you!”

little sister 写得真好！不过，要是有人把函遗失了怎么办？

xiě de zhēn hǎo búguò yàoshi yǒu rén bǎ hán yíshī le zěnme bàn · That’s really well written! But what if someone loses their letter?

anna 那就让后勤在门口核实一下名单，名单上有名字就能进。你帮我把嘉宾名单再核对一遍，别遗漏了谁。

nà jiù ràng hòuqín zài ménkǒu héshí yíxià míngdān míngdān shàng yǒu míngzi jiù néng jìn nǐ bāng wǒ bǎ jiābīn míngdān zài héduì yí biàn bié yílòu le shéi · Then support services can check the list at the door: if your name is on it, you can come in. Could you check the guest list through again for me, so we don’t leave anyone out?

little sister 好。名单上有英国办事处的代理人，有孙律师事务所的两位律师，林编辑也会带几位记者来。

hǎo míngdān shàng yǒu Yīngguó bànshìchù de dàilǐrén yǒu Sūnlǜshī shìwùsuǒ de liǎng wèi lǜshī Línbiānjí yě huì dài jǐ wèi jìzhě lái · Sure. On the list there’s the agent from the UK office, two lawyers from Lawyer Sun’s firm, and Editor Lin is bringing a few journalists.

anna 林编辑是来帮我们做公关的。对了，说明书的副本明天一早分发给每位嘉宾。合作备忘录的事，签约以前还要保密。

Línbiānjí shì lái bāng wǒmen zuò gōngguān de duì le shuōmíngshū de fùběn míngtiān yìzǎo fēnfā gěi měi wèi jiābīn hézuò bèiwànglù de shì qiānyuē yǐqián hái yào bǎomì · Editor Lin is coming to help with our PR. Oh, and copies of the manual go out to every guest first thing tomorrow. The memorandum stays confidential until the signing.

little sister 明白。我还列了一张清单：台灯五百台、展示台三张、签约用的笔……安娜，你督促我的样子，跟刘经理一模一样！

míngbai wǒ hái liè le yì zhāng qīngdān táidēng wǔbǎi tái zhǎnshì tái sān zhāng qiānyuē yòng de bǐ Ānnà nǐ dūcù wǒ de yàngzi gēn Liújīnglǐ yìmú yíyàng · Got it. I've made a checklist too: five hundred lamps, three display stands, pens for the signing … Anna, the way you keep after me, you're just like Manager Liu!

anna 哈哈，被你发现了。

hā hā bèi nǐ fāxiàn le · Ha ha, you've found me out.

chapter 2 the morning checks

manager liu 安娜，会场验收了吗？
Ānnà huìchǎng yànshōu le ma · Anna, has the venue been signed off?

anna 昨天晚上验收了。工人把电路又排查了一遍，舞台也能承载所有的设备。工厂派遣的两位师傅一早就把台灯送来了，已经移交给我们了。
zuótiān wǎnshang yànshōu le gōngrén bǎ diàn lù yòu páichá le yí biàn wǔtái yě néng chéngzài suǒyǒu de shèbèi gōngchǎng pàiqiǎn de liǎng wèi shīfu yìzǎo jiù bǎ táidēng sòng lái le yǐjīng yíjiāo gěi wǒmen le · Last night. The workers went over the wiring again, and the stage can carry all the equipment. The two technicians the factory sent brought the lamps first thing and have handed them over to us.

xiaoming 我刚才抽查了五十台，都是出厂以前重新组装、检查过的成品，没有一台次品，规格也都对。调度昨天下令，台灯一早先送会场。上个月工厂重组，整合了两个车间，精简了很多步骤，现在运作得很好。
wǒ gāngcái chōuchá le wǔshí tái dōu shì chūchǎng yǐqián chóngxīn zǔzhuāng jiǎnchá guo de chéngpǐn méiyǒu yì tái cìpǐn guīgé yě dōu duì diàodù zuótiān xiàlìng táidēng yìzǎo xiān sòng huìchǎng shàng gè yuè gōngchǎng chóngzǔ zhěnghé le liǎng gè chējiān jīngjiǎn le hěn duō bùzhòu xiànzài yùnzuò de hěn hǎo · I've just spot-checked fifty: all finished lamps, reassembled and checked before they left the factory, not a single reject, and all to specification. Yesterday scheduling ordered the lamps to go to the venue first thing. Last month the factory reorganised, merged two workshops and cut out a lot of steps, and now it runs very well.

anna 上周遗留的问题也都解决了：缺失的检查记录补齐了，说明书里遗漏的步骤也加上了。
shàng zhōu yíliú de wèntí yě dōu jiějué le quēshī de jiǎnchá jìlù bǔ qí le shuōmíngshū lǐ yílòu de bùzhòu yě jiāshàng le · The problems left over from last week are all solved too: the missing inspection records are filled in, and the step left out of the manual has been added.

manager liu 好。嘉宾那边呢？
hǎo jiābīn nàbiān ne · Good. What about the guests?

anna 有个坏消息：这几天阴雨连绵，雨又下了一夜，航班延误了，有几位嘉宾在路上耽搁了，可能要晚一点到。
yǒu gè huài xiāoxi zhè jǐ tiān yīn yǔ liánmián yǔ yòu xià le yí yè hángbān yánwù le yǒu jǐ wèi jiābīn zài lùshang dānge le kěnéng yào wǎn yìdiǎn dào · One piece of bad news: it has been raining for days, it rained all night again, flights are delayed, and some guests have been held up on the way, so they may be a bit late.

manager liu 那议程能不能往后延半个小时？
nà yìchéng néng bu néng wǎnghòu yán bàn gè xiǎoshí · Then can the programme be put back half an hour?

anna 可以，签约顺延到最后。我已经通报给大家了。场地不会逾期，也不用多交钱。昨天下午我们还进行了一次消防演练。
kěyǐ qiānyuē shùnyán dào zuìhòu wǒ yǐjīng tōngbào gěi dàjiā le chǎngdì bú huì yúqī yě búyòng duō jiāo qián zuótiān xiàwǔ wǒmen hái jìnxíng le yí cì xiāofáng yǎnliàn · Yes: the signing moves to the end. I've let everyone know. We won't run over our time at the venue, so there's no extra charge. And yesterday afternoon we held a fire drill.

xiaoming 还有，备用的灯罩颜色不一样，只能凑合用了。
hái yǒu bèiyòng de dēng zhào yánsè bù yíyàng zhǐ néng còuhe yòng le · And the spare lampshades are a different colour, so we'll just have to make do.

manager liu 不碍事。这几天大家都很吃力，我知道。不过这无非是一点小问题罢了，别慌。
bú àishì zhè jǐ tiān dàjiā dōu hěn chīlì wǒ zhīdào búguò zhè wúfēi shì yìdiǎn xiǎo wèntí bàle bié huāng · That doesn't matter. I know it's been a struggle for everyone these past few days. But this is only a small thing, so don't panic.

little sister 我紧张得要命！说明书我背了三遍，还是怕说错。
wǒ jǐnzhāng de yàomìng shuōmíngshū wǒ bèi le sān biàn háishi pà shuō cuò · I'm terribly nervous! I've learned the manual three times over and I'm still scared of getting it wrong.

manager liu 你天生就会说话，别怕，把你最拿手的故事讲出来就行。
nǐ tiānshēng jiù huì shuōhuà bié pà bǎ nǐ zuì náshǒu de gùshi jiǎng chulai jiù xíng · You're a born talker. Don't

be scared: just tell the story you tell best.

xiaoming 这不，她又对着镜子练起来了。

zhè bù tā yòu duì zhe jìngzi liàn qǐlai le · See? She's back in front of the mirror practising again.

chapter 3 the speech and the demonstration

anna 各位来宾，下午好！值此新品发布之际，我们向各位合作伙伴、媒体朋友和用户致以诚挚的感谢。

gèwèi láibīn xiàwǔ hǎo zhí cǐ xīn pǐn fābù zhījì wǒmen xiàng gèwèi hézuò huǒbàn méitǐ péngyou hé yònghù zhì yǐ chéngzhì de gǎnxiè · Good afternoon, everyone! As we launch our new product, we extend our sincere thanks to all our partners, our friends in the media and our users.

anna 一年前，这盏台灯还只是一张图纸。我们筹划了半年，招标、签约、组建团队。我们也出过差错：一批底座装错位了，货车在路上耽搁了，一包布也遗失了。有时候一个问题牵扯出另一个问题，真伤脑筋，我们也没辙过。

yì nián qián zhè zhǎn táidēng hái zhǐshì yì zhāng túzhǐ wǒmen chóuhuà le bàn nián zhāobiāo qiānyuē zǔjiàn tuánduì wǒmen yě chū guo chācuò yì pī dǐ zuò zhuāng cuòwèi le huòchē zài lùshang dānge le yì bāo bù yě yíshī le yǒu shíhou yí gè wèntí qiānchě chū lìng yí gè wèntí zhēn shāng nǎojīn wǒmen yě méizhé guo · A year ago this lamp was just a drawing. We spent six months planning: tenders, contracts, building a team. We made mistakes too: a batch of bases was fitted out of line, a lorry was held up on the road and a bundle of cloth went missing. Sometimes one problem dragged in another, a real headache, and there were times we were out of ideas.

anna 可是我们知道，没有方向的努力是徒劳的；只要方向对，困难就不是绊脚石。我们的想法很简单：想学生之所想，急学生之所急。

kěshì wǒmen zhīdào méiyǒu fāngxiàng de nǔlì shì túláo de zhǐyào fāngxiàng duì kùnnan jiù bú shì bànjiǎoshí wǒmen de xiǎngfǎ hěn jiǎndān xiǎng xuéshēng zhī suǒ xiǎng jí xuéshēng zhī suǒ jí · But we knew that effort without direction is wasted; as long as the direction is right, difficulties are not stumbling blocks. Our idea is simple: think what students think, and care about what they care about.

little sister 下面我来给大家演示一下。我说“开灯”，它就照办；我说“休息”，它就提醒你站起来走走。这个指令是我最喜欢的。

xiàmiàn wǒ lái gěi dàjiā yǎnshì yíxià wǒ shuō kāi dēng tā jiù zhàobàn wǒ shuō xiūxi tā jiù tíxǐng nǐ zhàn qǐlái zǒu zou zhège zhǐlìng shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de · Now let me show you. I say “lights on”, and it does just that; I say “rest”, and it reminds you to get up and walk around. That command is my favourite.

little sister 这盏灯的底座是一位老木匠特制的。他做了四十年木头，功底很深，基本功也特别过硬，是这个行业真正的行家。灯罩的布，是一家有六十年历史的纺织厂织的。

zhè zhǎn dēng de dǐ zuò shì yí wèi lǎo mùjiàng tèzhì de tā zuò le sìshí nián mùtou gōngdǐ hěn shēn jīběngōng yě tèbié guòyìng shì zhège hángyè zhēnzhèng de hángjia dēng zhào de bù shì yì jiā yǒu liùshí nián lìshǐ de fǎngzhī chǎng zhī de · The base of this lamp is specially made by an old carpenter. He has worked with wood for forty years; his grounding is deep, his basic skills are first-rate, and he is a real master of the trade. The cloth for the shade is woven by a textile mill with sixty years of history.

editor lin （小声）安娜，这位演示的姑娘真有两下子！是新来的吗？

xiǎo shēng Ānnà zhè wèi yǎnshì de gūniang zhēn yǒu liǎngxiàzi shì xīn lái de ma · (quietly) Anna, the girl doing the demo is really good! Is she new?

anna 她是实习生。年轻倒是年轻，可是能耐不小。

tā shì shíxí shēng niánqīng dàoshì niánqīng kěshì néngnai bù xiǎo · She’s an intern. Young, sure, but very capable.

editor lin 说话很有修养，情商也高，天性就很开朗。这个演示，外行看了觉得有意思，内行看了也说好。你们公司能人真多。

shuōhuà hěn yǒu xiūyǎng qíngshāng yě gāo tiānxìng jiù hěn kāilǎng zhège yǎnshì wàiháng kàn le juéde yǒu yìsi nèiháng kàn le yě shuō hǎo nǐmen gōngsī néngrén zhēn duō · She speaks with real poise, her EQ is high and she’s cheerful by nature. Outsiders find the demo fun, and experts like it too. Your company has a lot of talented people.

little sister 有人问，台灯耗不耗电？不耗电，一晚上的电费不到一毛钱。还有人问，市场上有仿制的台灯，怎么看出来？很简单：我们的底座是木头的，没有漆，绝不会脱落。

yǒu rén wèn táidēng hào bu hào diàn bú hào diàn yì wǎnshang de diàn fèi bú dào yì máo qián hái yǒu rén wèn shìchǎng shàng yǒu fǎngzhī de táidēng zěnme kàn chulai hěn jiǎndān wǒmen de dǐ zuò shì mùtou de méiyǒu qī juébú huì tuōluò · People ask whether the lamp uses a lot of electricity. It doesn’t: a night’s electricity costs

less than ten fen. People also ask how to spot the copies on the market. Easy: our base is wood, with no paint, so nothing can ever peel off.

anna

最后，我还要向我们的团队致以敬意。他们为了这一天，费了很大的劲。没有大家的协作，就没有今天。

zuìhòu wǒ hái yào xiàng wǒmen de tuánduì zhì yǐ jìngyì tāmen wèile zhè yì tiān fèi le hěn dà de jìn méiyǒu dàjiā de xiézuò jiù méiyǒu jīntiān · Finally, I want to pay tribute to our team. They put enormous effort into this day. Without everyone working together, there would be no today.

chapter 4 the signing

manager liu 下面进行最后一项议程：我公司与张女士的公司签署海外代理合约。
xiàmiàn jìnxíng zuìhòu yí xiàng yìchéng wǒ gōngsī yǔ Zhāngnǚshì de gōngsī qiānshǔ hǎiwài dàilǐ héyuē · And now the last item on the agenda: the signing of the overseas agency contract between our company and Ms Zhang's.

ms zhang 谢谢！经过几轮磋商，我们终于谈好了。我们老板昨天拍板了，还授权我今天代表公司签字。
xièxie jīngguò jǐ lún cuōshāng wǒmen zhōngyú tán hǎo le wǒmen lǎobǎn zuótiān pāibǎn le hái shòuquán wǒ jīntiān dàibiǎo gōngsī qiānzì · Thank you! After several rounds of talks, we have finally reached agreement. My boss gave the go-ahead yesterday and has authorised me to sign on the company's behalf today.

lawyer sun 合约是我起草的，条款是双方一起拟定的，双方都审核过了。张女士公司的营业执照，我们也核查过了。按照合约，张女士的公司是我们在欧洲的代理人，英国办事处负责销售，后续的服务由安娜的公司负责。
héyuē shì wǒ qǐcǎo de tiáokuǎn shì shuāngfāng yìqǐ nǐdìng de shuāngfāng dōu shěnhé guo le Zhāngnǚshì gōngsī de yíngyè zhízhào wǒmen yě héchá guo le ànzhào héyuē Zhāngnǚshì de gōngsī shì wǒmen zài Ōuzhōu de dàilǐrén Yīngguó bànshìchù fùzé xiāoshòu hòuxù de fúwù yóu Ānnà de gōngsī fùzé · I drafted the contract, both sides worked out the terms together, and both have reviewed it. We've also checked Ms Zhang's company's business licence. Under the contract, Ms Zhang's company is our agent in Europe, the UK office handles sales, and Anna's company is responsible for after-sales service.

ms zhang 我们的权限只在欧洲，美国市场以后再协商。我们承接过很多海外订单，可是代理智能产品还是第一次。我相信这是一次双赢的合作。
wǒmen de quánxiàn zhǐ zài Ōuzhōu Měiguó shìchǎng yǐhòu zài xiéshāng wǒmen chéngjiē guo hěn duō hǎiwài dìngdān kěshì dàilǐ zhìnéng chǎnpǐn háishi dì yī cì wǒ xiāngxìn zhè shì yí cì shuāngyíng de hézuò · Our rights cover Europe only; the US market we'll negotiate later. We've handled plenty of overseas orders, but this is our first time as agent for a smart product. I believe this partnership is a win-win.

lawyer sun 如果有一方逾期付款，另一方可以先发函交涉。这些条款写得很清楚。
rúguǒ yǒu yì fāng yúqī fù kuǎn lìng yì fāng kěyǐ xiān fā hán jiāoshè zhèxiē tiáokuǎn xiě de hěn qīngchu · If either side pays late, the other may first take it up formally by letter. The terms are very clear about that.

manager liu 签约以前，合约的内容一直保密，今天终于可以公开了。
qiānyuē yǐqián héyuē de nèiróng yìzhí bǎomì jīntiān zhōngyú kěyǐ gōngkāi le · Until today the terms were confidential; now at last we can make them public.

editor lin 两位请看这边，拍张照片！好！明天的报道，我就写“老朋友的新合作”。
liǎng wèi qǐng kàn zhèbiān pāi zhāng zhàopiàn hǎo míngtiān de bàodào wǒ jiù xiě lǎo péngyou de xīn hézuò · Both of you, look this way for a photo! Lovely! Tomorrow's story will be called “an old friendship, a new partnership”.

ms zhang 安娜，你们要是以后在上海开分支机构，我们可以合伙。
Ānnà nǐmen yàoshi yǐhòu zài Shànghǎi kāi fēnzhī jīgòu wǒmen kěyǐ héhuǒ · Anna, if you ever open a branch in Shanghai, we could go into it together.

anna 刘经理，这不，又有三家店来问能不能加盟。
Liújīnglǐ zhè bù yòu yǒu sān jiā diàn lái wèn néng bu néng jiāméng · Manager Liu, see? Three more shops have asked about joining as franchises.

manager liu 好事！欢迎他们以后来洽谈。以后的事，我们召集大家再商议。今天先庆祝！
hǎo shì huānyíng tāmen yǐhòu lái qiàtán yǐhòu de shì wǒmen zhàojí dàjiā zài shāngyì jīntiān xiān qìngzhù · Good news! They're welcome to come and talk business. We'll get everyone together and talk the rest over later. Today, we celebrate!

chapter 5 the debrief

manager liu 大家辛苦了。安娜，你先说说昨天的情况。

dàjiā xīnkǔ le Ānnà nǐ xiān shuō shuo zuótiān de qíngkuàng · Thank you all for your hard work. Anna, tell us how yesterday went.

anna 来了两百多位嘉宾。一个晚上，预订就急剧增加了三千台，比我们想的火爆多了。最近股市在震荡，可是我们的消息在市场上震动不小，好的评论抵消了那张假照片的影响。前天那张照片还在网上流转，昨天就没人转了。我们没有淡化问题，也没有掩盖什么，事情已经冷却了。

lái le liǎngbǎi duō wèi jiābīn yí gè wǎnshang yùdìng jiù jíjù zēngjiā le sānqiān tái bǐ wǒmen xiǎng de huǒbào duō le zuìjìn gǔshì zài zhèndàng kěshì wǒmen de xiāoxi zài shìchǎng shàng zhèndòng bù xiǎo hǎo de pínglùn dǐxiāo le nà zhāng jiǎ zhàopiàn de yǐngxiǎng qiántiān nà zhāng zhàopiàn hái zài wǎngshang liúzhuǎn zuótiān jiù méi rén zhuǎn le wǒmen méiyǒu dànhuà wèntí yě méiyǒu yǎngài shénme shìqing yǐjīng lěngquè le · Over two hundred guests came. In one evening, pre-orders shot up by three thousand, far more than we expected. The stock market has been jumpy, but our news made a real stir, and the good reviews cancelled out that fake photo. The day before yesterday it was still going round online; yesterday nobody was sharing it. We didn't play anything down or cover anything up, and it has all cooled off.

little sister 客服电话一个晚上没有间断过。我们几个人轮流接，只有间歇的时候才能喝一口水，不过应付得过来，小问题我们自己都能对付。

kèfú diànhuà yí gè wǎnshang méiyǒu jiànduàn guo wǒmen jǐ gè rén lúnliú jiē zhǐyǒu jiànxiē de shíhou cáinéng hē yì kǒu shuǐ búguò yìngfu de guolai xiǎo wèntí wǒmen zìjǐ dōu néng duìfu · The customer service phones didn't stop all evening. A few of us took turns answering, and we only got a sip of water in the breaks, but we coped: we can handle the little problems ourselves.

xiaoming 工厂那边，后勤部门正在编制下个月的生产计划。按现在的订单，生产线要二十四小时运转，交付不会延误。

gōngchǎng nàbiān hòuqín bùmén zhèngzài biānzhì xià gè yuè de shēngchǎn jìhuà àn xiànzài de dìngdān shēngchǎnxiàn yào èrshísì xiǎoshí yùnzhuǎn jiāofù bú huì yánwù · At the factory, support services are drawing up next month's production plan. With the orders we have, the line will run round the clock, and delivery won't be late.

manager liu 好，可是别高兴过头，也别仓促决定。做企业要顺应市场，不能逆着走。那批旧展示台怎么处置？

hǎo kěshì bié gāoxìng guòtóu yě bié cāngcù juédìng zuò qǐyè yào shùnyìng shìchǎng bù néng nì zhe zǒu nà pī jiù zhǎnshì tái zěnme chǔzhì · Good, but let's not get carried away or rush into decisions. A business has to go with the market, not against it. What are we doing with the old display stands?

xiaoming 已经废了，卖给回收站，省事。

yǐjīng fèi le mài gěi huíshōu zhàn shěngshì · They've had it. We'll sell them for recycling: much less hassle.

manager liu 这一个月，大家加班加得太多了。我不想给大家施加太大的压力，所以破例多给每个人两天假。

zhè yí gè yuè dàjiā jiābān jiā de tài duō le wǒ bù xiǎng gěi dàjiā shījiā tài dà de yālì suǒyǐ pòlì duō gěi měi gè rén liǎng tiān jià · Everyone has worked far too much overtime this month. I don't want to put too much pressure on you, so I'm making an exception and giving everyone two extra days off.

anna 谢谢刘经理！会议纪要我已经起草好了，下午发给大家，再递交给总部。后续的工作由我来跟进。

xièxie Liújīnglǐ huìyì jìyào wǒ yǐjīng qǐcǎo hǎo le xiàwǔ fā gěi dàjiā zài dìjiāo gěi zǒngbù hòuxù de gōngzuò yóu wǒ lái gēnjìn · Thank you, Manager Liu! I've drafted the minutes and will send them round this afternoon, then submit them to head office. I'll follow up on what comes next.

manager liu 下个月我们还要招几个人。我们不只看智商，更看专长和职业素养。新手也没关系，只要有潜能、肯练基本功。

xià gè yuè wǒmen hái yào zhāo jǐ gè rén wǒmen bù zhǐ kàn zhìshāng gèng kàn zhuāncháng hé zhíyè sùyǎng xīnshǒu yě méi guānxi zhǐyào yǒu qiánnéng kěn liàn jīběngōng · Next month we're hiring a few more people. We look not only at IQ but even more at expertise and professionalism. Beginners are fine, as long as they have potential and are willing to work on the basics.

little sister 我有个同学很有天分，数学是她的强项，口语是她的弱项。
wǒ yǒu gè tóngxué hěn yǒu tiānfèn shùxué shì tā de qiángxiàng kǒuyǔ shì tā de ruòxiàng · I have a classmate with real talent: maths is her strong point, speaking is her weak point.

manager liu 让她来试试。人没有全能的，再博学的人也有不懂的地方。概括来说，昨天的发布会很成功，可是还有两件事要做：第一，保证质量和交付；第二，做好后续的服务。
ràng tā lái shì shi rén méiyǒu quánnéng de zài bóxué de rén yě yǒu bù dǒng de dìfang gàikuò lái shuō zuótiān de fābù huì hěn chénggōng kěshì hái yǒu liǎng jiàn shì yào zuò dì yī bǎozhèng zhìliàng hé jiāofù dì èr zuò hǎo hòuxù de fúwù · Let her come and try. Nobody can do everything; even the most learned people have gaps. To sum up: yesterday's launch was a success, but there are two things still to do. First, guarantee quality and delivery; second, get the after-sales service right.

little sister 我的实习还能继续吗?
wǒ de shíxí hái néng jìxù ma · Can I carry on with my internship?

manager liu 当然。你昨天充分施展了你的才干。概括来说，你是我们团队的得力帮手。
dāngrán nǐ zuótiān chōngfèn shīzhǎn le nǐ de cáigàn gàikuò lái shuō nǐ shì wǒmen tuánduì de délì bāngshou · Of course. You showed exactly what you can do yesterday. In short, you're a real asset to our team.

anna 这一年真把我们折腾坏了，可是很值得。下一个项目，希望我们少走弯路!
zhè yì nián zhēn bǎ wǒmen zhēteng huài le kěshì hěn zhídé xià yí gè xiàngmù xīwàng wǒmen shǎo zǒu wānlù · This year has worn us out, but it was worth it. On the next project, let's hope we take fewer detours!

An invitation, a venue check, a speech, a demo, a contract and a debrief: you just followed a whole product launch in Chinese, and you could have run it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 162 computers and networks

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 22 · science and technology

Talk about computers, servers, networks and security in Chinese, use the advanced set verbs (巴不得, 恨不得, 并非, 免不了, 所谓, 可谓, 犯不着, 可否, 除外, 予以, 有所), and sum up with 概括来说.

Tech vocabulary is everywhere in Chinese life, from your phone's settings to the news. And the set verbs of this level (并非, 免不了, 所谓) are what make Chinese sound grown-up, in speech and in writing.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
编程	biānchéng	programming; to program	她十二岁就开始学编程了。 She started learning to code at twelve.
服务器	fúwùqì	server	公司的服务器昨天晚上出了问题。 The company's server went wrong last night.
数据库	shùjùkù	database	所有客户的信息都存|在数据库里。 All the customers' details are kept in the database.
大数据	dàshùjù	big data	很多公司用大数据来了解用户。 Many companies use big data to understand their users.
内存	nèicún	memory (RAM)	这台手机的内存不够了。 This phone has run out of memory.
硬盘	yìngpán	hard disk	照片都存|在移动硬盘里。 The photos are all on an external hard drive.
芯片	xīnpiàn	(micro)chip	这款台灯里有一块小芯片。 There's a small chip inside this lamp.
显示器	xiǎnshìqì	monitor, display	我买了一台更大的显示器。 I bought a bigger monitor.
液晶	yèjīng	liquid crystal (LCD)	现在的电视大多是液晶电视。 Most TVs today are LCD TVs.
光盘	guāngpán	CD, disc	现在很少有人用光盘听音乐了。 Hardly anyone listens to music on CD any more.
磁带	cídài	(cassette) tape	我小时候用磁带学外语。 As a child I learned foreign languages from cassettes.
主页	zhǔyè	homepage	请打开学校网站的主页。 Please open the homepage of the school website.
黑客	hēikè	hacker	黑客攻击了这家银行的网站。 Hackers attacked the bank's website.
防火墙	fánghuǒqiáng	firewall	公司的电脑都装了防火墙。 All the company's computers have a firewall.
杀毒	shādú	kill viruses, scan for viruses	电脑要定期杀毒。 Computers should be scanned for viruses regularly.

备份	bèifèn	back up; backup	重要的文件一定要备份。 Always back up important files.
卸载	xièzài	uninstall; unload	不用的软件可以卸载。 You can uninstall software you don't use.
激活	jīhuó	activate	新手机要先激活才能用。 A new phone has to be activated before you can use it.
调试	tiáoshì	debug, fine-tune	工程师正在调试新系统。 The engineers are testing and tuning the new system.
兼容	jiānróng	compatible	这个软件跟旧电脑不兼容。 This software isn't compatible with old computers.
交互	jiāohù	interactive; interact	这个网站的交互设计很好。 This website's interaction design is very good.
虚拟	xūnǐ	virtual	戴上这副眼镜，你就进入了一个虚拟的世界。 Put on these glasses and you enter a virtual world.
仿真	fǎngzhēn	simulate; simulation	飞行员先在仿真的环境里练习。 Pilots first practise in a simulated environment.
三维	sānwéi	three-dimensional, 3D	这部电影是三维的。 This film is in 3D.
数码	shùmǎ	digital	他喜欢买各种数码产品。 He loves buying all kinds of digital gadgets.
无线	wúxiàn	wireless	这家咖啡店有免费的无线网络。 This café has free Wi-Fi.
光缆	guānglǎn	optical (fibre) cable	有了新的光缆，上网快了很多。 With the new fibre cable, the internet is much faster.
电信	diànxìn	telecommunications	他在一家电信公司工作。 He works for a telecoms company.
天线	tiānxiàn	antenna, aerial	楼顶上装着一根大天线。 There's a big aerial on the roof.
终端	zhōngduān	terminal (device)	手机已经成了最重要的上网终端。 The phone has become the main device for going online.
遥控	yáokòng	remote control	这台空调可以用手机遥控。 You can control this air conditioner from your phone.
切换	qiēhuàn	switch (between)	按这个键，就可以切换语言。 Press this key to switch languages.
屏蔽	píngbì	block, shield	我把这个人的消息屏蔽了。 I've blocked this person's messages.
同步	tóngbù	synchronise; in sync	手机和电脑上的文件会自动同步。 Files on your phone and computer sync automatically.
设定	shèdìng	set, set up	我把闹钟设定在早上六点。 I set the alarm for six in the morning.

pattern set verbs: 巴不得, 恨不得, 并非, 免不了, 所谓, 可谓, 犯不着, 可否, 除外, 予以, 有所

subject | **巴不得 / 恨不得 / 免不了 / 犯不着 …** | **+ what follows**

These fixed verbs each carry a whole idea: 巴不得 / 恨不得 “be dying to”, 并非 “is not (in fact)”, 免不了 “can’t avoid”, 所谓 “so-called”, 可谓 “can truly be called”, 犯不着 “it’s not worth”, 可否 “could … ? (formal)”, X除外 “except X”, 予以 “give (formal: 予以补偿)”, 有所 “to some extent (有所提高)”. And back from day 156: 概括来说 to sum it all up.

防火墙并非什么都能挡住。所谓“安全”，只是相对的。 **fánghuǒqiáng bìngfēi shénme dōu néng dǎng zhù suǒwèi ānquán zhǐshì xiāngduì de** A firewall can’t stop everything. So-called “security” is only relative.

犯不着为这点事着急，可是要认真对待。 **fànbuzháo wèi zhè diǎn shì zháojí kěshì yào rènzhēn duìdài** It’s not worth panicking over, but it has to be taken seriously.

这次的损失，我们会对客户予以补偿。 **zhè cì de sǔnshī wǒmen huì duì kèhù yǔyǐ bǔcháng** We will compensate our customers for this loss.

所有电脑都要检查，前台那两台除外。 **suǒyǒu diànnǎo dōu yào jiǎnchá qiántái nà liǎng tái chúwài** Every computer has to be checked, except the two at reception.

dialogue the server goes down

anna 小明，快来帮忙！订单系统从早上就打不开了，客户都在问。我恨不得马上把它修好。

Xiǎomíng kuài lái bāngmáng dìngdān xìtǒng cóng zǎoshang jiù dǎ bu kāi le kèhù dōu zài wèn wǒ hènbude mǎshàng bǎ tā xiū hǎo · Xiaoming, help! The order system has been down since this morning, and the customers are all asking. I'm dying to get it fixed now.

xiaoming 别急，我看看……服务器的内存快用完了，硬盘也满了。访问量急剧增加，有人在攻击你们的网站，应该是黑客。

bié jí wǒ kàn kan fúwùqì de nèicún kuài yòng wán le yìngpán yě mǎn le fǎngwèn liàng jíjù zēngjiā yǒu rén zài gōngjī nǐmen de wǎngzhàn yīnggāi shì hēikè · Don't panic, let me look … The server's memory is nearly used up and the hard disk is full. The traffic has shot up: someone is attacking your website, probably hackers.

manager liu 黑客？我们装了防火墙啊。

hēikè wǒmen zhuāng le fánghuǒqiáng a · Hackers? But we have a firewall.

xiaoming 防火墙并非什么都能挡住。所谓“安全”，只是相对的。你们的系统好几年没有更新了，免不了有漏洞。

fánghuǒqiáng bìngfēi shénme dōu néng dǎng zhù suǒwèi ānquán zhǐshì xiāngduì de nǐmen de xìtǒng hǎo jǐ nián méiyǒu gēngxīn le miǎnbuliǎo yǒu lòudòng · A firewall can't stop everything. So-called "security" is only relative. Your system hasn't been updated for years, so it's bound to have holes.

manager liu 这方面我是外行。你是内行，你看怎么处置吧。

zhè fāngmiàn wǒ shì wàiháng nǐ shì nèiháng nǐ kàn zěnme chǔzhì ba · I'm no expert on this. You are: you decide how to handle it.

anna 那数据库里客户的信息呢？会不会丢？

nà shùjùkù lǐ kèhù de xìnxī ne huì bu huì diū · What about the customer details in the database? Could we lose them?

xiaoming 别担心，你们每天晚上都备份。我先把系统切换到备用的服务器上，再杀毒，把不用的软件都卸载了。

bié dānxīn nǐmen měi tiān wǎnshang dōu bèifèn wǒ xiān bǎ xìtǒng qiēhuàn dào bèiyòng de fúwùqì shàng zài shādú bǎ búyòng de ruǎnjiàn dōu xièzài le · Don't worry, you back up every night. First I'll switch the system over to the spare server, then scan for viruses and uninstall the software you don't use.

manager liu 犯不着为这点事这么着急吧？

fànbuzháo wèi zhè diǎn shì zhème zháojí ba · Surely it's not worth getting this worked up about?

xiaoming 犯不着着急，可是要认真对待。我还要调试一下新系统，看看它跟你们的旧终端兼容不兼容。

fànbuzháo zháojí kěshì yào rènzhēn duìdài wǒ hái yào tiáoshì yíxià xīn xìtǒng kàn kan tā gēn nǐmen de jiù zhōngduān jiānróng bù jiānróng · Not worth panicking, but worth taking seriously. I also need to test and tune the new system and see whether it works with your old terminals.

anna 我们的台灯也连着网络：用户可以用手机遥控，设定开灯的时间，数据会自动同步到手机上。台灯里的芯片会不会也有危险？

wǒmen de táidēng yě lián zhe wǎngluò yònghù kěyǐ yòng shǒujī yáokòng shèdìng kāi dēng de shíjiān shùjù huì zìdòng tóngbù dào shǒujī shàng táidēng lǐ de xīnpiàn huì bu huì yě yǒu wēixiǎn · Our lamps are online too: users control them from their phones and set the times they switch on, and the data syncs to the phone automatically. Could the chips in the lamps be at risk too?

xiaoming 台灯用的是无线网络，我会一个一个检查。另外，你们主页上那个三维的虚拟台灯做得很好，交互也不错，可是服务器承载不了这么大的压力。

táidēng yòng de shì wúxiàn wǎngluò wǒ huì yí gè yí gè jiǎnchá lìngwài nǐmen zhǔyè shàng nàge sānwéi de xūnǐ táidēng zuò de hěn hǎo jiāohù yě búcuò kěshì fúwùqì chéngzài bu liǎo zhème dà de yālì · The lamps use wireless; I'll check them one by one. And that 3D virtual lamp on your homepage is very nicely done, and the interaction is good, but the server can't carry that kind of load.

manager liu 其他产品可否也检查一下？所有电脑都要检查，前台那两台旧电脑除外，它们没有联网。
qítā chǎnpǐn kěfǒu yě jiǎnchá yíxià suǒyǒu diànnǎo dōu yào jiǎnchá qiántái nà liǎng tái jiù diànnǎo chúwài tāmen méiyǒu liánwǎng · Could you check our other products as well? And every computer needs checking, except the two old ones at reception: they're not online.

xiaoming 没问题。不过，你们的显示器还是老的液晶的，性能也差，该换一批新的数码设备了。
méi wèntí búguò nǐmen de xiǎnshìqì háishi lǎo de yèjīng de xìngnéng yě chà gāi huàn yì pī xīn de shùmǎ shèbèi le · No problem. But your monitors are old LCD ones and the performance is poor: it's time for a batch of new digital kit.

manager liu 我巴不得都换了呢，可是预算有限。这次的损失，我们会对客户予以补偿。
wǒ bābudé dōu huàn le ne kěshì yùsuàn yǒuxiàn zhè cì de sǔnshī wǒmen huì duì kèhù yǔyǐ bǔcháng · I'd love to replace the lot, but the budget is limited. We'll compensate our customers for this loss.

xiaoming 旧电脑太耗电，换了也能省钱。那个新来的同事刚学编程，是个新手吧？听说他很有天分。我看见他桌子上有光盘，还有几盘磁带。
jiù diànnǎo tài hào diàn huàn le yě néng shěng qián nàge xīn lái de tóngshì gāng xué biānchéng shì gè xīnshǒu ba tīngshuō tā hěn yǒu tiānfèn wǒ kànjiàn tā zhuōzi shàng yǒu guāngpán hái yǒu jǐ pán cídài · Old computers eat electricity, so replacing them saves money too. That new colleague has only just started coding, hasn't he? I hear he has a real gift for it. I saw CDs on his desk, and a few cassette tapes.

anna 哈哈，那是刘经理的“古董”。现在是大数据时代，可是她说扔了可惜。
hā hā nà shì Liújīnglǐ de gǔdǒng xiànzài shì dàshùjù shídài kěshì tā shuō rēng le kěxī · Ha ha, those are Manager Liu's "antiques". This is the age of big data, but she says it would be a shame to throw them out.

xiaoming 好了，服务器恢复了。新系统我已经帮你们激活了，也在仿真的环境里测试过了。攻击你们的那个地址，我也屏蔽了。以后你们要定期排查漏洞。
hǎo le fúwùqì huīfù le xīn xìtǒng wǒ yǐjīng bāng nǐmen jīhuó le yě zài fǎngzhēn de huánjìng lǐ cèshì guo le gōngjī nǐmen de nàge dìzhǐ wǒ yě píngbì le yǐhòu nǐmen yào dìngqī páichá lòudòng · There: the server is back up. I've activated the new system for you and tested it in a simulated environment. I've also blocked the address that was attacking you. From now on you should check for holes regularly.

anna 太感谢了！你修电脑真有两下子。概括来说，这次的问题可谓不大不小：系统旧，内存小，黑客正好找到了机会。
tài gǎnxiè le nǐ xiū diànnǎo zhēn yǒu liǎngxiàzi gàikuò lái shuō zhè cì de wèntí kěwèi bú dà bù xiǎo xìtǒng jiù nèicún xiǎo hēikè zhènghǎo zhǎo dào le jīhuì · Thank you so much! You really know your way around a computer. To sum up, this problem was neither big nor small: an old system, too little memory, and the hackers saw their chance.

manager liu 小明是电脑方面的行家，技术真过硬。
Xiǎomíng shì diànnǎo fāngmiàn de hángjia jìshù zhēn guòyìng · Xiaoming is a real computer expert: his skills are first-rate.

xiaoming 过奖了。我建议你们找电信公司把光缆升级一下，楼顶上的天线也该换了。这样，网络会更通畅，速度和安全都会有所提高。
guòjiǎng le wǒ jiànyì nǐmen zhǎo diànxìn gōngsī bǎ guānglǎn shēngjí yíxià lóu dǐng shàng de tiānxiàn yě gāi huàn le zhèyàng wǎngluò huì gèng tōngchàng sùdù hé ānquán dōu huì yǒusuǒ tígāo · You flatter me. I suggest you get the telecoms company to upgrade your fibre cable, and the aerial on the roof should be replaced too. Then the network will run more smoothly, and both speed and security will improve somewhat.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

芯
xīn
core

磁 cí magnetic													

good to know · 巴不得 and 恨不得 both mean “be dying to”; 恨不得 is stronger and often for something you can’t really do: 我恨不得飞回家. Many computer words are built from old characters: 服务器 “serving device”, 防火墙 “firewall”, 杀毒 “kill poison”, 黑客 “black guest”.

Servers, firewalls, backups and a hacker blocked: you can now handle a tech crisis in Chinese, and sum it up afterwards.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 163 space and energy

Talk about space, rockets, stars and energy in Chinese, say “let alone” with 别说……，都/也……, and ask a favour “for someone’s sake” with 看在X的面子上.

Space and energy are in the news every week in China, from rocket launches to nuclear power. And 看在……的面子上 is how favours really get done.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
宇宙	yǔzhòu	universe	宇宙到底有多大? Just how big is the universe?
星球	xīngqiú	planet, heavenly body	地球是一个美丽的星球。 The Earth is a beautiful planet.
星系	xīngxì	galaxy	宇宙里有无数个星系。 There are countless galaxies in the universe.
星座	xīngzuò	constellation; star sign	天气好的晚上，能看到很多星座。 On a clear night you can see lots of constellations.
恒星	héngxīng	star (a sun)	太阳是一颗恒星。 The Sun is a star.
行星	xíngxīng	planet	地球是围着太阳转的一颗行星。 The Earth is a planet that goes round the Sun.
卫星	wèixīng	satellite	月亮是地球的卫星。 The Moon is the Earth’s satellite.
陨石	yǔnshí	meteorite	博物馆里有一块从天上掉下来的陨石。 The museum has a meteorite that fell from the sky.
外星人	wàixīngrén	alien, extraterrestrial	你相信有外星人吗? Do you believe in aliens?
飞碟	fēidié	UFO, flying saucer	他说昨天晚上看见了飞碟。 He says he saw a UFO last night.
飞船	fēichuán	spaceship	飞船已经顺利进入太空。 The spaceship has entered space successfully.
火箭	huǒjiàn	rocket	火箭今天早上成功发射了。 The rocket was launched successfully this morning.
发射	fāshè	launch, fire	这颗卫星是去年发射的。 This satellite was launched last year.
航天	hángtiān	spaceflight, space (industry)	中国的航天事业发展得很快。 China’s space programme has developed fast.
航天员	hángtiānyuán	astronaut	航天员在太空里生活了半年。 The astronauts lived in space for six months.
空间站	kōngjiānzhàn	space station	空间站每天绕着地球飞十几圈。 The space station goes round the Earth more than ten times a day.

续航	xùháng	range, battery life	这辆电动车的续航有五百公里。 This electric car has a range of five hundred kilometres.
望远镜	wàngyuǎnjìng	telescope	我们用望远镜看月亮。 We looked at the Moon through a telescope.
雷达	léidá	radar	雷达发现了一架飞机。 The radar picked up a plane.
探测	tàncè	probe, detect	科学家|用机器人探测月球的表面。 Scientists use robots to explore the surface of the Moon.
观测	guāncè	observe (scientifically)	科学家每天晚上都在这里观测天空。 The scientists observe the sky from here every night.
轨迹	guǐjì	track, path	雷达记录下了飞机的轨迹。 The radar recorded the plane's path.
时空	shíkōng	time and space	这部电影讲的是一个穿越时空的故事。 This film is about travelling through time and space.
真空	zhēnkōng	vacuum	太空几乎是真空的。 Space is almost a vacuum.
引擎	yǐnqíng	engine	飞机的引擎突然出了问题。 The plane's engine suddenly developed a fault.
驱动	qūdòng	drive; driver (software)	这辆车是用电驱动的。 This car is driven by electricity.
马力	mǎlì	horsepower	这台机器有一百马力。 This machine has a hundred horsepower.
功率	gōnglǜ	power (watts)	这台空调的功率很大。 This air conditioner is very powerful.
半导体	bàndǎotǐ	semiconductor	芯片是用半导体做的。 Chips are made from semiconductors.
核	hé	stone (of a fruit); nucleus	这种水果的核很大，不能吃。 This fruit has a big stone that you can't eat.
核能	hénéng	nuclear energy	很多国家|用核能发电。 Many countries use nuclear energy to make electricity.
核电站	hédiànzhàn	nuclear power station	这座核电站能给几百万个家庭提供电。 This nuclear power station can supply electricity to millions of homes.
电网	diànwǎng	power grid	风能和太阳能发的电都要送进电网。 Electricity from wind and solar power all has to go into the grid.
激光	jīguāng	laser	医生用激光给他做了眼睛手术。 The doctor operated on his eyes with a laser.

pattern 别说……，都/也……，"let alone" (and 看在x的面子上)

别说 | the easy case, | (连) the hard case + 都/也 …

别说 A，(连) B 都/也 … means “let alone A, even B …”: you dismiss the obvious case and jump to a stronger one. Also back today: 看在X的面子上, “for X’s sake”, out of respect for someone: 看在老朋友的面子上, 我就帮你一次.

宇宙有多大？别说普通人，连科学家都说不清楚。 **yǔzhòu yǒu duō dà biéshuō pǔtōng rén lián kēxué jiā dōu shuō bu qīngchu** How big is the universe? Even scientists can’t say for sure, let alone ordinary people.

火箭的马力大得很，别说汽车，连大飞机也比不上。 **huǒjiàn de mǎlì dà de hěn biéshuō qìchē lián dà fēijī yě bǐ bu shàng** A rocket is incredibly powerful: let alone cars, not even big planes come close.

看在你哥哥的面子上，我周六去看看。 **kàn zài nǐ gēge de miànzi shàng wǒ zhōu liù qù kàn kan** For your brother’s sake, I’ll come and take a look on Saturday.

dialogue an evening among the stars

dr zhou

宇宙到底有多大？别说普通人，连科学家都说不清楚。我们只知道，宇宙里有无数个星系，每个星系里又有无数颗恒星。

yǔzhòu dàodǐ yǒu duō dà biéshuō pǔtōng rén lián kēxué jiā dōu shuō bu qīngchu wǒmen zhǐ zhīdào yǔzhòu lǐ yǒu wúshù gè xīngxì měi gè xīngxì lǐ yòu yǒu wúshù kē héngxīng · Just how big is the universe? Even scientists can't say for sure, let alone ordinary people. We only know there are countless galaxies, and countless stars in each.

little sister

我只认识几个星座。周博士，除了地球，别的行星上有生命吗？

wǒ zhǐ rènshi jǐ gè xīngzuò Zhōubóshì chúle dìqiú biéde xíngxīng shàng yǒu shēngmìng ma · I only know a few constellations. Dr Zhou, is there life on any planet besides Earth?

dr zhou

现在还没有发现。别的星球上有没有生命，还是一个谜。所以外星人和飞碟，目前还只是电影里的故事。

xiànzài hái méiyǒu fāxiàn biéde xīngqiú shàng yǒu méiyǒu shēngmìng háishi yí gè mí suǒyǐ wàixīngrén hé fēidié mùqián hái zhǐshì diànyǐng lǐ de gùshi · None has been found yet. Whether there's life on other worlds is still a mystery, so aliens and flying saucers are just film stories for now.

little sister

电影里的外星人都特别聪明，智商比人类高多了！

diànyǐng lǐ de wàixīngrén dōu tèbié cōngmíng zhìshāng bǐ rénlèi gāo duō le · The aliens in films are always so clever, with IQs far higher than ours!

anna

我小时候摸过一块陨石，是从天上掉下来的，特别重。

wǒ xiǎoshíhou mō guo yí kuài yǔnshí shì cóng tiānshàng diào xialai de tèbié zhòng · When I was little I touched a meteorite that had fallen from the sky. It was really heavy.

dr zhou

陨石很有研究价值。现在我们用望远镜和雷达观测天空，记录它们的轨迹；还发射卫星，用机器人去探测别的星球。拍到的照片都存在地面的数据库里。

yǔnshí hěn yǒu yánjiū jiàzhí xiànzài wǒmen yòng wàngyuǎnjìng hé léidá guāncè tiānkōng jìlù tāmen de guǐjì hái fāshè wèixīng yòng jīqìrén qù tàncè biéde xīngqiú pāi dào de zhàopiàn dōu cúnzài dìmiàn de shùjùkù lǐ · Meteorites are very valuable for research. Today we watch the sky with telescopes and radar and record their paths; we also launch satellites and send robots to explore other worlds. All the photos they take are stored in databases on the ground.

xiaoming

卫星上的芯片一定特别复杂吧？中国的航天发展得真快。我第一次看火箭发射的时候，激动得要命。

wèixīng shàng de xīnpiàn yídìng tèbié fùzá ba Zhōngguó de hángtiān fāzhǎn de zhēn kuài wǒ dì yī cì kàn huǒjiàn fāshè de shíhou jīdòng de yàomìng · The chips on satellites must be incredibly complex, surely? China's space programme has moved so fast. The first time I watched a rocket launch, I was terribly excited.

dr zhou

现在航天员可以在空间站里住半年。飞船发射以后，几个小时就能到。太空几乎是真空，航天员到外面工作，要穿特制的衣服。当航天员要有坚强的意志，训练非常艰苦。

xiànzài hángtiānyuán kěyǐ zài kōngjiānzhàn lǐ zhù bàn nián fēichuán fāshè yǐhòu jǐ gè xiǎoshí jiù néng dào tàikōng jīhū shì zhēnkōng hángtiānyuán dào wàimiàn gōngzuò yào chuān tèzhì de yīfu dāng hángtiānyuán yào yǒu jiānqiáng de yìzhì xùnliàn fēicháng jiānkǔ · Today astronauts can live on the space station for six months. Once a spaceship is launched it can get there in a few hours. Space is almost a vacuum, so astronauts working outside wear specially made suits. Being an astronaut takes a strong will: the training is very tough.

little sister

电影里的飞船一下子就能穿越时空！

diànyǐng lǐ de fēichuán yíxià zi jiù néng chuānyuè shíkōng · In films, spaceships jump through time and space in a flash!

dr zhou

那是电影。真正的飞船要靠引擎驱动。火箭的马力大得很，别说汽车，连大飞机也比不上。

nà shì diànyǐng zhēnzhèng de fēichuán yào kào yǐnqíng qūdòng huǒjiàn de mǎlì dà de hěn biéshuō qìchē lián dà fēijī yě bǐ bu shàng · That's the movies. Real spaceships are driven by engines. And rockets are incredibly powerful: let alone cars, not even big planes can match them.

xiaoming 火箭发射的时候，几公里以外的地面都在震动。
huǒjiàn fāshè de shíhou jǐ gōnglǐ yǐwài de dìmiàn dōu zài zhèndòng · When a rocket launches, the ground shakes even several kilometres away.

anna 周博士，能源方面呢？现在的电动车，续航还是太短。
Zhōubóshì néngyuán fāngmiàn ne xiànzài de diàndòngchē xùháng háishi tài duǎn · Dr Zhou, what about energy? Electric cars today still have too short a range.

dr zhou 关键是电池和半导体技术。另外，发电也很重要：很多国家用核能发电，一座核电站能给几百万个家庭提供电。风能和太阳能发的电，也都要送进电网。功率越大，对电网的要求就越高。
guānjiàn shì diànchí hé bàndǎotǐ jìshù lìngwài fādiàn yě hěn zhòngyào hěn duō guójiā yòng hénéng fādiàn yí zuò hédiànzhàn néng gěi jǐ bǎi wàn gè jiātíng tígōng diàn fēng néng hé tàiyángnéng fā de diàn yě dōu yào sòng jìn diànwǎng gōnglǜ yuè dà duì diànwǎng de yāoqiú jiù yuè gāo · The key is battery and semiconductor technology. Generating power matters too: many countries use nuclear energy, and one nuclear power station can supply millions of homes. Electricity from wind and solar all has to go into the grid, and the more power, the more the grid has to handle.

xiaoming 核电站安全吗？
hédiànzhàn ānquán ma · Are nuclear power stations safe?

dr zhou 现在的标准非常严格。核技术用好了，能造福人类；用不好，就很危险。还有激光，现在医院和工厂都离不开它。
xiànzài de biāozhǔn fēicháng yángé hé jìshù yòng hǎo le néng zàofú rénlèi yòng bu hǎo jiù hěn wēixiǎn hái yǒu jīguāng xiànzài yīyuàn hé gōngchǎng dōu lí bu kāi tā · The standards today are very strict. Used well, nuclear technology benefits humanity; used badly, it's very dangerous. Then there are lasers: hospitals and factories can't do without them now.

little sister 周博士，我们学校的团队要参加下个月的科学节，做一个能用手机遥控的小机器人，现在还在调试。您能不能来指导一下？
Zhōubóshì wǒmen xuéxiào de tuánduì yào cānjiā xià gè yuè de kēxué jié zuò yí gè néng yòng shǒujī yáokòng de xiǎo jīqìrén xiànzài hái zài tiáoshì nín néng bu néng lái zhǐdǎo yíxià · Dr Zhou, my university team is entering next month's science fair with a little robot you can control from a phone, and we're still testing it. Could you come and give us some advice?

dr zhou 我最近忙得很……
wǒ zuìjìn máng de hěn · I'm very busy at the moment …

xiaoming 周博士，看在我的面子上，帮帮她吧！她很有天赋。
Zhōubóshì kàn zài wǒ de miànzi shàng bāng bang tā ba tā hěn yǒu tiānfù · Dr Zhou, for my sake, please help her! She's really talented.

dr zhou 哈哈，好吧。看在你这个老朋友的面子上，我周六去看看。
hā hā hǎo ba kàn zài nǐ zhège lǎo péngyou de miànzi shàng wǒ zhōu liù qù kàn kan · Ha ha, all right. For old friendship's sake, I'll come and have a look on Saturday.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

宇
yǔ
space

宙
zhòu
time

擎
qíng
lift up

good to know · 恒星 is a star like the Sun, 行星 a planet that circles one, 卫星 a moon or satellite that circles a planet. 星球 is any heavenly body. 面子 is “face”: 看在……的面子上 asks a favour on the strength of a relationship, and 给面子 is to show someone respect.

Stars, rockets, a space station and a favour granted: you can now talk about the universe in Chinese, and get people to help you.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 164 physics and chemistry

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 22 · science and technology

Talk about basic physics and chemistry in Chinese (forces, light, heat, metals and solutions), and scold gently with 不是我说你 and 你看你.

Science words turn up in cooking, cleaning and the news as much as in class. And 不是我说你 and 你看你 are how Chinese families tell each other off, kindly.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
定律	dìnglǜ	(scientific) law	这是物理里最重要的定律之一。 This is one of the most important laws in physics.
公式	gōngshì	formula	这道题用这个公式就能算出来。 You can work this problem out with this formula.
惯性	guànxìng	inertia	汽车突然停下，人会因为惯性往前冲。 When a car stops suddenly, inertia throws you forward.
浮力	fúlì	buoyancy	船能浮在水上，是因为有浮力。 A boat floats on water because of buoyancy.
摩擦	mócā	friction; rub; clash	两只手互相摩擦，就会变热。 Rub your hands together and they get warm.
杠杆	gànggǎn	lever	用杠杆可以很轻松地抬起重东西。 With a lever you can lift heavy things easily.
高压	gāoyā	high pressure, high voltage	高压电很危险，不要靠近。 High-voltage power is dangerous: keep away.
对流	duìliú	convection	热空气上升，冷空气下降，这就是对流。 Warm air rises and cold air sinks: that's convection.
反射	fǎnshè	reflect	镜子能反射阳光。 A mirror reflects sunlight.
折射	zhéshè	refract	筷子放在水里看起来是弯的，这是光的折射。 A chopstick in water looks bent: that's refraction.
照射	zhàoshè	shine on, light up	阳光照射在湖上，特别漂亮。 The sunlight on the lake is beautiful.
投射	tóushè	cast, project	灯光把我们的影子投射在墙上。 The light cast our shadows on the wall.
辐射	fúshè	radiation; radiate	手机的辐射其实很小。 The radiation from a phone is actually very small.
放射	fàngshè	emit, radiate	太阳向四周放射出光和热。 The Sun sends out light and heat in every direction.
振动	zhèndòng	vibrate	手机在桌子上振动了一下。 The phone buzzed on the table.

荧光	yíngguāng	fluorescence; fluorescent	这支笔写出来的字会发荧光。 The writing from this pen glows.
磁铁	cítiě	magnet	冰箱上贴着几块磁铁。 There are a few magnets on the fridge.
绝缘	juéyuán	insulate; insulated	电线外面那一层是绝缘的。 The outer layer of the wire is insulated.
电线	diànxiàn	electric wire	老房子的电线该换了。 The wiring in the old house needs replacing.
钙	gài	calcium	牛奶里有很多钙。 Milk has a lot of calcium in it.
铁	tiě	iron; hard as iron	这扇门是铁做的。 This door is made of iron.
钢铁	gāngtiě	steel; iron and steel	这座城市以前是有名的钢铁基地。 This city used to be a famous centre of steelmaking.
炼	liàn	smelt, refine	古人很早就学会了炼铁。 People learned to smelt iron long ago.
铸造	zhùzào	cast (metal)	这口大钟是明朝铸造的。 This great bell was cast in the Ming dynasty.
提炼	tíliàn	refine, extract	这种药是从植物里提炼出来的。 This medicine is extracted from a plant.
腐蚀	fǔshí	corrode	海水会腐蚀铁。 Seawater corrodes iron.
溶解	róngjiě	dissolve	糖很快就在热水里溶解了。 The sugar soon dissolved in the hot water.
沉淀	chéndiàn	settle; sediment	河水放一个晚上，脏东西就沉淀下来了。 Leave river water overnight and the dirt settles to the bottom.
凝固	nínggù	solidify, set	水在零度会凝固成冰。 Water freezes into ice at zero degrees.
凝结	níngjié	condense	早上，窗户上凝结了一层水。 In the morning there was a film of water on the window.
蒸发	zhēngfā	evaporate	天太热，地上的水很快就蒸发了。 It was so hot that the water on the ground soon evaporated.
沸腾	fèiténg	boil	水在一百度的时候沸腾。 Water boils at a hundred degrees.
结晶	jiéjīng	crystallise; crystal; fruit (of)	海水蒸发以后，会留下盐的结晶。 When seawater evaporates, it leaves salt crystals behind.
浓缩	nóngsuō	concentrate	这瓶果汁是浓缩的，要加水喝。 This juice is concentrated: add water before you drink it.
过滤	guòlǜ	filter	自来水最好过滤以后再喝。 Tap water is best filtered before you drink it.

pattern 不是我说你 and 你看你: gentle scolding

不是我说你，/ 你看你， **what the person did wrong**

不是我说你 (literally “it’s not that I’m criticising you”) softens criticism before it comes: “I hate to say it, but …”. 你看你 “look at you!” points at something silly someone has just done. Both belong to family, friends and close colleagues, and both are half affectionate.

不是我说你，你做实验总是太马虎。 **bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ zuò shíyàn zǒngshì tài mǎhu** I hate to say it, but you’re always too careless in experiments.

你看你，电线外面绝缘的那层都破了！ **nǐ kàn nǐ diànxiàn wàimiàn juéyuán de nà céng dōu pò le** Look at you: the insulation on that wire is split!

你看你，又忘了戴手套。 **nǐ kàn nǐ yòu wàng le dài shǒutào** Look at you, you’ve forgotten your gloves again.

dialogue a boat in the workshop

dr zhou 你们的机器人是一条小船?

nǐmen de jīqìrén shì yì tiáo xiǎo chuán · Your robot is a little boat?

little sister 对！它靠电池驱动，在河上走，能取水样，还能把水里的垃圾过滤出来。

duì tā kào diànchí qūdòng zài hé shàng zǒu néng qǔ shuǐ yàng hái néng bǎ shuǐ lǐ de lājī guòlǜ chulai · Yes! It runs on a battery, moves along the river, takes water samples and filters the rubbish out of the water.

dr zhou 它怎么知道往哪儿走?

tā zěnme zhīdào wǎng nǎr zǒu · How does it know where to go?

little sister 我们给它编程，设定好路线，它就自己走，还能记录走过的轨迹，用无线网络把数据同步到手机上。

wǒmen gěi tā biānchéng shèdìng hǎo lùxiàn tā jiù zìjǐ zǒu hái néng jìlù zǒu guo de guǐjì yòng wúxiàn wǎngluò bǎ shùjù tóngbù dào shǒujī shàng · We program it and set the route, and it goes by itself. It records the track it has taken, too, and syncs its data to a phone over wireless.

dr zhou 好主意。船能浮在水上，靠的是浮力。你们算过它能装多重的东西吗?

hǎo zhǔyi chuán néng fú zài shuǐ shàng kào de shì fúlì nǐmen suàn guo tā néng zhuāng duō zhòng de dōngxi ma · Good idea. A boat floats thanks to buoyancy. Have you worked out how much weight it can carry?

little sister 算过，用的是课本上的公式。可是它一转弯，就往一边倒。

suàn guo yòng de shì kèběn shàng de gōngshì kěshì tā yì zhuǎn wān jiù wǎng yìbiān dǎo · Yes, with the formula from our textbook. But every time it turns, it tips to one side.

dr zhou 这是惯性。转弯太快，上面的东西会往外冲。把重的电池放低一点，船就平稳了。这是物理定律，谁也改变不了。

zhè shì guànxìng zhuǎn wān tài kuài shàngmiàn de dōngxi huì wǎng wài chōng bǎ zhòng de diànchí fàng dī yìdiǎn chuán jiù píngwěn le zhè shì wùlǐ dìnglǜ shéi yě gǎibiàn bu liǎo · That's inertia. If it turns too fast, everything on top is thrown outwards. Put the heavy battery lower down and the boat will be steady. That's a law of physics: nobody can change it.

xiaoming 你看你，电线外面绝缘的那层都破了！高压的东西千万别碰。

nǐ kàn nǐ diànxiàn wàimiàn juéyuán de nà céng dōu pò le gāoyā de dōngxi qiānwàn bié pèng · Look at you: the insulation on that wire is split! Never touch anything high-voltage.

little sister 哥哥，我知道了，你别说了。

gēge wǒ zhīdào le nǐ biéshuō le · All right, I know. Stop going on.

xiaoming 不是我说你，你做事总是太急。上次做实验，你把一整瓶盐都倒进了水里，根本溶解不了，杯子底下全是沉淀。

bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ zuò shì zǒngshì tài jí shàng cì zuò shíyàn nǐ bǎ yì zhěng píng yán dōu dào jìn le shuǐ lǐ gēnběn róngjiě bu liǎo bēizi dǐxia quán shì chéndiàn · I hate to say it, but you always rush things. In the last experiment you tipped a whole bottle of salt into the water. It couldn't possibly dissolve, and the bottom of the glass was all sediment.

dr zhou 哈哈，那也是实验。把那杯水加热到沸腾，水蒸发了，就会留下盐的结晶。很多发现就是这么来的。

hā hā nà yě shì shíyàn bǎ nà bēi shuǐ jiārè dào fèiténg shuǐ zhēngfā le jiù huì liúxia yán de jiéjīng hěn duō fāxiàn jiùshì zhème lái de · Ha ha, that's an experiment too. Heat the water until it boils, the water evaporates, and salt crystals are left behind. A lot of discoveries happen that way.

little sister 周博士，船身用铁做好不好?

Zhōubóshì chuán shēn yòng tiě zuò hǎo bu hǎo · Dr Zhou, should we make the hull out of iron?

dr zhou 河水会腐蚀铁，钢铁也会生锈。古人会炼铁，还能铸造大钟，非常了不起；可是做小船，塑料更轻。

hé shuǐ huì fǔshí tiě gāngtiě yě huì shēng xiù gǔrén huì liàn tiě hái néng zhùzào dà zhōng fēicháng liǎobuqǐ kěshì zuò xiǎo chuán sùliào gèng qīng · River water corrodes iron, and steel rusts too. People long ago could smelt iron and even cast great bells, which is amazing; but for a little boat, plastic is lighter.

little sister 我们还想在船上装一个小灯，晚上也能工作。灯光照射到水面上，会不会反射回来?
wǒmen hái xiǎng zài chuán shàng zhuāng yí gè xiǎo dēng wǎnshang yě néng gōngzuò dēngguāng zhàoshè dào shuǐmiàn shàng huì bu huì fǎnshè huilai · We also want a little light on the boat so it can work at night. When the light shines on the water, will it reflect back?

dr zhou 会有反射，也有折射。你们可以把灯光往下投射，再用荧光的颜色画出船的位置。
huì yǒu fǎnshè yě yǒu zhéshè nǐmen kěyǐ bǎ dēngguāng wǎng xià tóushè zài yòng yíngguāng de yánsè huà chū chuán de wèizhì · There'll be reflection, and refraction too. You could aim the light downwards and mark the boat's position with a fluorescent colour.

xiaoming 船上的机器振动得太厉害了。我看可以用磁铁把电池固定住，这样更牢固。
chuán shàng de jīqì zhèndòng de tài lìhai le wǒ kàn kěyǐ yòng cítiě bǎ diànchí gùdìng zhù zhèyàng gèng láogù · The machinery on the boat vibrates far too much. I think we could hold the battery in place with magnets: it'd be more secure.

little sister 上次装电池，说明书上遗漏了一步，折腾了我们一下午。
shàng cì zhuāng diànchí shuōmíngshū shàng yílòu le yí bù zhēteng le wǒmen yí xiàwǔ · Last time we fitted the battery, the instructions left out a step, and it took us a whole afternoon of messing about.

dr zhou 用磁铁可以。收垃圾的那只“手”是一个杠杆，转的地方要减少摩擦。还有，晚上河上的水汽会凝结在船上，胶水要完全凝固以后再下水。
yòng cítiě kěyǐ shōu lājī de nà zhī shǒu shì yí gè gànggǎn zhuǎn de dìfang yào jiǎnshǎo mócā hái yǒu wǎnshang hé shàng de shuǐqì huì níngjié zài chuán shàng jiāoshuǐ yào wánquán nínggù yǐhòu zài xià shuǐ · Magnets will work. The “arm” that picks up rubbish is a lever, so cut down the friction where it turns. And at night the moisture over the river will condense on the boat, so let the glue set completely before it goes in the water.

little sister 我们取的河水里钙很多，烧开以后，壶里有一层白色的东西。
wǒmen qǔ de hé shuǐ lǐ gài hěn duō shāo kāi yǐhòu hú lǐ yǒu yì céng báisè de dōngxi · The river water we took has a lot of calcium: when we boil it, there's a white layer left in the kettle.

dr zhou 对，那就是钙。太阳放射出来的热让水面蒸发，热空气上升，冷空气下降，这是对流。手机和你们这条小船的辐射都很小，不用担心。
duì nà jiùshì gài tàiyáng fàngshè chulai de rè ràng shuǐmiàn zhēngfā rè kōngqì shàngshēng lěng kōngqì xiàjiàng zhè shì duìliú shǒujī hé nǐmen zhè tiáo xiǎo chuán de fúshè dōu hěn xiǎo búyòng dānxīn · Right, that's the calcium. The heat the Sun gives off makes the surface water evaporate; warm air rises and cold air sinks, which is convection. And the radiation from phones and from your little boat is tiny, so don't worry.

little sister 过滤出来的东西，我们想先浓缩，再提炼出有用的材料。
guòlǜ chulai de dōngxi wǒmen xiǎng xiān nóngsuō zài tíliàn chū yǒuyòng de cáiliào · We'd like to concentrate what we filter out and then extract useful materials from it.

dr zhou 想法很好，先把船做稳吧!
xiǎngfǎ hěn hǎo xiān bǎ chuán zuò wěn ba · Great idea, but first get the boat stable!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

辐
fú
spoke (of a wheel)

钙
gài
calcium

good to know · Many science words share 射 “shoot”: 反射 reflect, 折射 refract, 照射 shine on, 投射 project, 辐射 radiation, 放射 emit, 发射 launch. 凝固 is liquid to solid (water to ice), 凝结 is gas to liquid (steam on a window), 蒸发 is liquid to gas, 溶解 is dissolving.

Buoyancy, inertia, reflection, crystals and a brother's scolding: you can now do a science lesson in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 165 in the lab

Talk about a science lab in Chinese (samples, microscopes, microbes, measuring and error), tease with 你说你一个X，……, and admit a pleasant surprise with (你)还别说.

Labs, tests and measurements are part of health, food and environment news. And 你说你一个X and 还别说 are two of the most natural-sounding things you can say in spoken Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
微生物	wēishēngwù	microorganism	我们身上有无数的微生物。 There are countless microbes on our bodies.
微观	wēiguān	microscopic	在微观世界里，一切都很不一样。 In the microscopic world, everything is very different.
显微镜	xiǎnwēijìng	microscope	用显微镜可以看到细胞。 With a microscope you can see cells.
标本	biāoběn	specimen	博物馆里有很多蝴蝶标本。 The museum has lots of butterfly specimens.
样本	yàngběn	sample	我们从河里取了十个水的样本。 We took ten water samples from the river.
抽样	chōuyàng	take a sample; sampling	这次调查是抽样调查。 This is a sample survey.
胚胎	pēitāi	embryo	鸡蛋里的胚胎要二十一天才能变成小鸡。 The embryo in an egg takes twenty-one days to become a chick.
克隆	kèlóng	clone	科学家克隆了一只羊。 Scientists cloned a sheep.
杂交	zájiāo	cross-breed, hybridise	杂交水稻让很多人吃饱了饭。 Hybrid rice has fed a great many people.
变异	biànyì	mutate; mutation	病毒会不断变异。 Viruses keep mutating.
演化	yǎnhuà	evolve; evolution	地球上的生命经过了几十亿年的演化。 Life on Earth has evolved over billions of years.
解剖	jiěpōu	dissect; anatomy	医生在大学里都学过解剖。 All doctors studied anatomy at university.
膜	mó	membrane; thin film	手机屏幕上贴了一层膜。 There's a protective film on the phone screen.
纤维	xiānwéi	fibre	多吃蔬菜，可以补充纤维。 Eat more vegetables to get more fibre.
载体	zàitǐ	carrier, medium	文字是文化的载体。 Writing is a carrier of culture.
分解	fēnjiě	break down, decompose	塑料袋要几百年才能分解。 A plastic bag takes hundreds of years to break down.
渗	shèn	seep, soak through	雨水慢慢渗进了地下。 The rain slowly soaked into the ground.

中性	zhōngxìng	neutral	这种肥皂是中性的，不伤手。 This soap is neutral, so it's kind to your hands.
显性	xiǎnxìng	dominant (gene); visible	棕色眼睛一般是显性的。 Brown eyes are usually dominant.
橡胶	xiàngjiāo	rubber	轮胎是用橡胶做的。 Tyres are made of rubber.
人造	rénzào	man-made, artificial	这些花是人造的，不是真的。 These flowers are artificial, not real.
原型	yuánxíng	prototype; model	这是新机器人的原型。 This is the prototype of the new robot.
验	yàn	test, examine	医生让我去验血。 The doctor sent me for a blood test.
测定	cèdìng	measure, determine	科学家测定了这块石头的年龄。 Scientists determined the age of this rock.
测算	cèsuàn	estimate, calculate	据测算，这个工程要花三年时间。 By one estimate, the project will take three years.
量化	lianghuà	quantify	有些东西很难量化，比如幸福。 Some things are hard to measure, like happiness.
运算	yùnsuàn	calculate, compute	这台电脑每秒能运算几亿次。 This computer can do hundreds of millions of calculations a second.
精度	jīngdù	precision, accuracy	这台机器的精度非常高。 This machine is extremely precise.
精密	jīngmì	precise, precision	这是一台很精密的仪器。 This is a very precise instrument.
误差	wùchā	error, margin of error	这次测量的误差不到一毫米。 The margin of error in this measurement is under a millimetre.
温度计	wēndùjì	thermometer	温度计显示今天三十八度。 The thermometer says thirty-eight degrees today.
天平	tiānpíng	balance, scales	用天平称一下这些盐有多重。 Weigh this salt on the scales.
器材	qìcái	equipment, materials	体育器材都放在这个房间里。 The sports equipment is all kept in this room.
器械	qìxiè	apparatus, instruments	医院新买了一批医疗器械。 The hospital has bought a batch of new medical equipment.

pattern 你说你一个x，…… (and 还别说)

你说你一个 | X (who you are), | and yet you ...!

你说你一个X，…… means “here you are, an X, and you …!”: you remind someone of who they are, then point out what they can’t or shouldn’t do. It’s teasing or a mild scolding. Also back today: (你)还别说, “you know what, actually …”, when something turns out better than you expected.

你说你一个工程师，怎么连天平都放不平？ **nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè gōngchéngshī zěnme lián tiānpíng dōu fàng bu píng** Here you are, an engineer, and you can’t even set a balance level?

你说你一个大学生，这么快就成了小科学家了！ **nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè dàxuéshēng zhème kuài jiù chéng le xiǎo kēxué jiā le** Look at you, a university student, and already a little scientist!

你还别说，看微生物比看书有意思多了。 **nǐ hái biéshuō kàn wēishēngwù bǐ kàn shū yǒu yìsi duō le** You know what, looking at microbes is far more fun than reading about them.

dialogue a drop of river water

dr zhou 欢迎来我的实验室。这些器材都很精密，请大家小心。
huānyíng lái wǒ de shíyànshì zhèxiē qìcái dōu hěn jīngmì qǐng dàjiā xiǎoxīn · Welcome to my lab. All this equipment is very precise, so please be careful.

little sister 哇，这么多显微镜！架子上还有好多标本：蝴蝶、小鱼……这个是什么？
wā zhème duō xiǎnwēijìng jiàzi shàng hái yǒu hǎoduō biāoběn húdié xiǎo yú zhège shì shénme · Wow, so many microscopes! And all these specimens on the shelves: butterflies, little fish … what's this one?

dr zhou 那是鸡蛋里的胚胎，是一位研究生物的同事做的。
nà shì jīdàn lǐ de pēitāi shì yí wèi yánjiū shēngwù de tóngshì zuò de · That's an embryo from an egg. A colleague who studies biology made it.

xiaoming 我们带来了河水的样本，一共二十瓶，是在河上不同的地方抽样取的，还没有过滤过。
wǒmen dài lái le hé shuǐ de yàngběn yígòng èrshí píng shì zài hé shàng bù tóng de dìfang chōuyàng qǔ de hái méiyǒu guòlǜ guo · We've brought the river water samples: twenty bottles, taken at different points along the river, not yet filtered.

dr zhou 好。先用温度计量一下水的温度，再用天平称一称……小明，你说你一个工程师，怎么连天平都放不平？
hǎo xiān yòng wēndùjì liáng yíxià shuǐ de wēndù zài yòng tiānpíng chēng yi cheng Xiǎomíng nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè gōngchéngshī zěnme lián tiānpíng dōu fàng bu píng · Good. First take the water temperature with the thermometer, then weigh them on the balance … Xiaoming, here you are, an engineer, and you can't even set the balance level?

xiaoming 哈哈，我平时用的都是电脑，这些老器械我真没用过。
hā hā wǒ píngshí yòng de dōu shì diànnǎo zhèxiē lǎo qìxiè wǒ zhēn méi yòng guo · Ha ha, I spend my life on computers. I've honestly never used these old instruments.

dr zhou 没关系，天平跟杠杆的道理一样，两边一样重就平了。我们来看看水里的微生物。在微观世界里，一滴水就是一座大城市。
méi guānxi tiānpíng gēn gànggǎn de dàolǐ yíyàng liǎng biān yíyàng zhòng jiù píng le wǒmen lái kàn kan shuǐ lǐ de wēishēngwù zài wēiguān shìjiè lǐ yì dī shuǐ jiùshì yí zuò dà chéngshì · Never mind: a balance works like a lever, and it's level when both sides weigh the same. Let's look at the microbes in the water. In the microscopic world, one drop of water is a big city.

little sister 我看见了！有的在动，有的好像被一层膜包着。
wǒ kànjiàn le yǒude zài dòng yǒude hǎoxiàng bèi yì céng mó bāo zhe · I can see them! Some are moving, and some seem to be wrapped in a sort of membrane.

dr zhou 对。显微镜里的光经过反射和折射，才能把它们放大。有的微生物能把垃圾分解掉，可是水里的塑料和人造纤维，它们分解不了。
duì xiǎnwēijìng lǐ de guāng jīngguò fǎnshè hé zhéshè cái néng bǎ tāmen fàngdà yǒude wēishēngwù néng bǎ lājī fēnjiě diào kěshì shuǐ lǐ de sùliào hé rénzào xiānwéi tāmen fēnjiě bu liǎo · Right. In the microscope, the light is reflected and refracted, and that's what magnifies them. Some microbes can break rubbish down, but they can't break down the plastic and man-made fibres in the water.

anna 河边的工厂会不会有带腐蚀性的脏水渗进河里？
hé biān de gōngchǎng huì bu huì yǒu dài fǔshí xìng de zāng shuǐ shèn jìn hé lǐ · Could corrosive dirty water from the factories by the river be seeping into it?

dr zhou 有可能。我们先测定水里有什么，再把它量化，比如每瓶水里有多少塑料。电脑运算一下，就能测算出整条河的情况。测量都有误差，不过这些仪器的精度很高。
yǒu kěnéng wǒmen xiān cèdìng shuǐ lǐ yǒu shénme zài bǎ tā liànghuà bǐrú měi píng shuǐ lǐ yǒu duōshao sùliào diànnǎo yùnsuàn yíxià jiù néng cèsuàn chū zhěng tiáo hé de qíngkuàng cèliáng dōu yǒu wùchā búguò zhèxiē yíqì de jīngdù hěn gāo · It's possible. First we determine what's in the water, then we quantify it, for example how much plastic there is in each bottle. A computer runs the numbers and estimates the state of the whole river. Every measurement has some error, but these instruments are very accurate.

xiaoming 这么多数据，用大数据的方法分析就更快了。
zhème duō shùjù yòng dàshùjù de fāngfǎ fēnxī jiù gèng kuài le · With this much data, big-data methods would make the analysis quicker.

little sister 你还别说，这比看书有意思多了！
nǐ hái biéshuō zhè bǐ kàn shū yǒu yìsi duō le · You know what, this is far more fun than reading books!

dr zhou 还别说，你们的船如果能每天自动取样，就是一个很好的原型。外面再包一层橡胶，就不怕撞了。
hái biéshuō nǐmen de chuán rúguǒ néng měi tiān zìdòng qǔ yàng jiùshì yí gè hěn hǎo de yuánxíng wàimiàn zài bāo yì céng xiàngjiāo jiù bú pà zhuàng le · Actually, if your boat could take samples automatically every day, it would make a very good prototype. Wrap it in rubber, and it won't mind bumping into things.

anna 周博士，您也研究过生物吗？
Zhōubóshì nín yě yánjiū guo shēngwù ma · Dr Zhou, have you studied biology too?

dr zhou 研究过一点。比如杂交水稻，就是把两种水稻的优点放在一起；病毒会不断变异；地球上的生命一直在演化。克隆又是另一回事了。
yánjiū guo yìdiǎn bǐrú zájiāo shuǐdào jiùshì bǎ liǎng zhǒng shuǐdào de yōudiǎn fàng zài yìqǐ bìngdú huì búduàn biànyì dìqiú shàng de shēngmìng yìzhí zài yǎnhuà kèlóng yòu shì lìng yì huí shì le · A little. Take hybrid rice: it puts the strengths of two kinds of rice together. Viruses keep mutating, and life on Earth is always evolving. Cloning is something else again.

little sister 周博士真博学！我在课上学过：基因是遗传信息的载体，眼睛的颜色有的是显性的。
Zhōubóshì zhēn bóxué wǒ zài kè shàng xué guo jīyīn shì yíchuán xìnxī de zàitǐ yǎnjing de yánsè yǒude shì xiǎnxìng de · Dr Zhou, you know so much! We learned in class that genes carry hereditary information, and that some eye colours are dominant.

dr zhou 没错。这条河的水是中性的，还不算太坏。最后，有几瓶样本底下有沉淀，我们把它们再验一遍。以前的科学家要解剖很多动物，现在我们有了更好的方法。
méi cuò zhè tiáo hé de shuǐ shì zhōngxìng de hái bú suàn tài huài zuìhòu yǒu jǐ píng yàngběn dǐxia yǒu chéndiàn wǒmen bǎ tāmen zài yàn yí biàn yǐqián de kēxué jiā yào jiěpōu hěn duō dòngwù xiànzài wǒmen yǒu le gèng hǎo de fāngfǎ · Exactly. The river water is neutral, so it's not too bad. Finally, a few samples have sediment at the bottom, so we test them again. Scientists used to dissect a lot of animals; now we have better methods.

little sister 有沉淀的样本，我们可以先加热到沸腾，再看看。
yǒu chéndiàn de yàngběn wǒmen kěyǐ xiān jiārè dào fèiténg zài kàn kan · For the samples with sediment, we could heat them to boiling first and then take another look.

anna 你说你一个大学生，这么快就成了小科学家了！
nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè dàxuéshēng zhème kuài jiù chéng le xiǎo kēxué jiā le · Look at you, a university student, and already a little scientist!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

膜
mó
membrane; thin film

纤
xiān
fine

good to know · 样本 is a sample you test (a water sample); 标本 is a specimen you keep (a butterfly on a pin); 原型 is a prototype. 测定 measures and pins down, 测算 estimates by calculation, 量化 turns something into numbers.

Samples, microscopes, microbes and margins of error: you can now find your way round a lab in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 166 shapes, parts and machines

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 22 · science and technology

Describe shapes, sizes, parts and controls of a machine in Chinese, and cut a long explanation short with 简而言之.

Whether you are building something, buying something or reading instructions, you need words for shapes, parts and buttons. And 简而言之 gets you from a long explanation to the point.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
简而言之	jiǎnéryánzhī	in short, in a word	简而言之，这个计划行不通。 In short, this plan won't work.
尖锐	jiānruì	sharp, pointed; incisive	记者提了一个很尖锐的问题。 The journalist asked a very pointed question.
锋利	fēnglì	sharp (of a blade)	这把刀很锋利，小心手。 This knife is very sharp: mind your hands.
平坦	píngtǎn	flat, level	这条路又宽又平坦。 This road is wide and level.
半径	bànjìng	radius	这个圆的半径是五厘米。 The radius of this circle is five centimetres.
直径	zhíjìng	diameter	这个轮子的直径是一米。 This wheel is a metre across.
直线	zhíxiàn	straight line; direct	两点之间，直线最短。 The shortest distance between two points is a straight line.
曲线	qūxiàn	curve	这条曲线表示一年里温度的变化。 This curve shows how the temperature changes over a year.
平面	píngmiàn	plane, flat surface	桌子的表面是一个平面。 A table top is a flat surface.
三角	sānjiǎo	triangle; triangular	他把面包切成了三角的小块。 He cut the bread into little triangles.
椭圆	tuǒyuán	ellipse, oval	地球绕太阳的轨道是一个椭圆。 The Earth's orbit round the Sun is an ellipse.
图形	túxíng	figure, shape, graphic	孩子们在纸上画各种图形。 The children are drawing all kinds of shapes on paper.
整数	zhěngshù	whole number, integer	一、二、三都是整数。 One, two and three are all whole numbers.
跨度	kuàdù	span	这座桥的跨度有一千多米。 This bridge has a span of over a thousand metres.
骨架	gǔjià	skeleton, framework	这座楼的骨架是钢铁做的。 The building's frame is made of steel.
支架	zhījià	stand, support	把手机放在支架上看视频。 Put the phone on the stand to watch videos.

部件	bùjiàn	component, part	这台机器有上千个部件。 This machine has over a thousand components.
零件	língjiàn	(spare) part	这辆自行车的零件都很好买。 Parts for this bike are easy to buy.
配件	pèijiàn	accessory, fitting	这款手机的配件很齐全。 This phone comes with a full set of accessories.
装置	zhuāngzhì	device, installation; install	每个房间都有报警装置。 Every room has an alarm device.
阀门	fámén	valve	用完煤气，记得关上阀门。 When you've finished with the gas, remember to close the valve.
按钮	ànniǔ	button	按一下这个红色的按钮，机器就停了。 Press this red button and the machine stops.
手动	shǒudòng	manual, hand-operated	这辆车是手动的，不是自动的。 This car is a manual, not an automatic.
便携式	biànxiéshì	portable	我买了一台便携式的打印机。 I bought a portable printer.
操控	cāokòng	control, operate	这架小飞机可以用手机操控。 You can fly this little plane from your phone.
操纵	cāozòng	operate; manipulate	有人在背后操纵市场价格。 Someone is manipulating market prices behind the scenes.
配置	pèizhì	configure; configuration, specs	这台电脑的配置很高。 This computer has a high spec.
失灵	shīlíng	fail, stop working	刹车突然失灵了。 The brakes suddenly failed.
尖端	jiānduān	cutting-edge; tip	这家公司掌握了很多尖端技术。 This company has a lot of cutting-edge technology.
前沿	qiányán	frontier, forefront	她一直在科学研究的前沿工作。 She has always worked at the frontier of scientific research.

pattern 简而言之, "in short"

a long explanation …. **简而言之,** **the point, in one short sentence.**

简而言之 means "to put it briefly": after a long or technical explanation, it gives the point in one short sentence. It is a little formal, good for presentations, reports and explaining things. Compare 概括来说, which sums up a list of points: 简而言之 is more about cutting a long story short.

船太窄，电池太高，转弯又太快。简而言之，它不稳。 **chuán tài zhǎi diànchí tài gāo zhuǎn wān yòu tài kuài jiǎnéryánzhī tā bù wěn** The boat is too narrow, the battery too high and the turns too sharp. In short, it isn't stable.

我们不是在操纵自然，而是在了解自然。简而言之，科学是为了更懂这个世界。 **wǒmen bú shì zài cāozòng zìrán ér shì zài liǎojiě zìrán jiǎnéryánzhī kēxué shì wèile gèng dǒng zhège shìjiè** We aren't controlling nature, we're understanding it. In short, science is about understanding the world better.

零件都到了，图纸也改好了。简而言之，我们下周就能下水了。 **língjiàn dōu dào le túzhǐ yě gǎi hǎo le jiǎnéryánzhī wǒmen xià zhōu jiù néng xià shuǐ le** All the parts have arrived and the drawings are corrected. In short, we can go in the water next week.

xiaoming 我们先看图纸。这是第二个原型。船的骨架是椭圆的，长一米，最宽的地方半米。
wǒmen xiān kàn túzhǐ zhè shì dì èr gè yuánxíng chuán de gǔjià shì tuǒyuán de cháng yì mǐ zuì kuān de dìfang bàn mǐ · Let's look at the drawings first. This is the second prototype. The frame of the boat is oval: a metre long and half a metre at the widest point.

little sister 为什么不做成三角的？前面尖一点，走得快。
wèi shénme bú zuò chéng sānjiǎo de qiánmiàn jiān yìdiǎn zǒu de kuài · Why not make it triangular? Pointier at the front, so it goes faster.

xiaoming 前面可以尖，可是后面要宽，放电池才稳，浮力也更大。也别做得太尖锐，撞到人就不好了。船底要平坦，放在桌子上不会倒。
qiánmiàn kěyǐ jiān kěshì hòumiàn yào kuān fàng diànchí cái wěn fúlì yě gèng dà yě bié zuò de tài jiānruì zhuàng dào rén jiù bù hǎo le chuán dǐ yào píngtǎn fàng zài zhuōzi shàng bú huì dǎo · The front can be pointed, but the back has to be wide so the battery sits steady, and it floats better too. And don't make it too sharp, or it'll hurt someone if it hits them. The bottom has to be flat so it stands on a table without falling over.

anna 我带来了台灯工厂的木匠师傅做的支架，可以放电池。师傅的刀真锋利，每一面都切得很平。
wǒ dài lái le táidēng gōngchǎng de mùjiàng shīfu zuò de zhījià kěyǐ fàng diànchí shīfu de dāo zhēn fēnglì měi yímiàn dōu qiē de hěn píng · I've brought a stand made by the carpenter at the lamp factory, to hold the battery. His knife must be really sharp: every face is cut perfectly flat.

xiaoming 太好了。支架外面再包一层橡胶，可以减少振动。图纸上是一个平面，做出来就是立体的了。轮子的直径是十厘米，半径就是五厘米。
tài hǎo le zhījià wàimiàn zài bāo yì céng xiàngjiāo kěyǐ jiǎnshǎo zhèndòng túzhǐ shàng shì yí gè píngmiàn zuò chulai jiùshì lìtǐ de le lúnzi de zhíjìng shì shí límǐ bànjìng jiùshì wǔ límǐ · Brilliant. Wrap the stand in a layer of rubber and it'll cut down the vibration. On the drawing it's a flat plane; when you build it, it becomes three-dimensional. The wheels are ten centimetres across, so the radius is five.

little sister 用公式一算就知道了。电脑运算的结果是九点八厘米，我们取整数，十厘米，这点误差没关系。轮子在岸上走直线，转弯的时候走一条曲线。
yòng gōngshì yí suàn jiù zhīdào le diànnǎo yùnsuàn de jiéguǒ shì jiǔ diǎn bā límǐ wǒmen qǔ zhěngshù shí límǐ zhè diǎn wùchā méi guānxi lúnzi zài àn shàng zǒu zhíxiàn zhuǎn wān de shíhou zǒu yì tiáo qūxiàn · Work it out with the formula and you'll see. The computer's result was 9.8 centimetres; we rounded it to a whole number, ten: that small an error doesn't matter. On land the wheels go in a straight line and follow a curve when they turn.

xiaoming 这些零件都是买的，规格都匹配，部件我们自己装。配件里还缺一个阀门，是排水用的。
zhèxiē língjiàn dōu shì mǎi de guīgé dōu pǐpèi bùjiàn wǒmen zìjǐ zhuāng pèijiàn lǐ hái quē yí gè fámén shì pái shuǐ yòng de · We bought all these parts and their specifications all match; we put the components together ourselves. The only fitting missing is a valve, for letting water out.

little sister 船上有三个按钮：红色的是停，绿色的是开，黄色的是手动。
chuán shàng yǒu sān gè ànniǔ hóngsè de shì tíng lǜsè de shì kāi huángsè de shì shǒudòng · There are three buttons on the boat: red is stop, green is go, yellow is manual.

anna 平时用手机操控吗？要是遥控失灵了怎么办？
píngshí yòng shǒujī cāokòng ma yàoshi yáokòng shīlíng le zěnme bàn · Normally you steer it from a phone? What if the remote control fails?

xiaoming 船上有一个安全装置：信号断了十秒，它就自己回到岸边。电脑是便携式的，放在包里就能带走。
chuán shàng yǒu yí gè ānquán zhuāngzhì xìnhào duàn le shí miǎo tā jiù zìjǐ huí dào àn biān diànnǎo shì biànxiéshì de fàng zài bāo lǐ jiù néng dài zǒu · There's a safety device on board: if the signal drops for ten seconds, it comes back to the bank by itself. The computer is a portable one, so it goes in a bag.

little sister 电线外面都包了绝缘的材料，不怕进水。
diànxiàn wàimiàn dōu bāo le juéyuán de cáiliào bú pà jìn shuǐ · All the wires are wrapped in insulation, so it won't matter if water gets in.

dr zhou （进来）不错！这些图形画得很清楚。收垃圾的那只“手”，跨度有多大？
jìnlái búcuò zhèxiē túxíng huà de hěn qīngchu shōu lājī de nà zhī shǒu kuàdù yǒu duō dà · (coming in) Very nice! These diagrams are really clear. How wide is the span of the arm that picks up rubbish?

little sister 四十厘米。周博士，您觉得我们的电脑配置够不够？跟船上的系统兼容吗？
sìshí límǐ Zhōubóshì nín juéde wǒmen de diànnǎo pèizhì gòu búgòu gēn chuán shàng de xìtǒng jiānróng ma · Forty centimetres. Dr Zhou, do you think our computer’s specs are good enough? Is it compatible with the boat’s system?

dr zhou 够了。你们用的技术并不尖端，可是想法很新。很多前沿的研究，也是从这样的小问题开始的。
gòu le nǐmen yòng de jìshù bìng bù jiānduān kěshì xiǎngfǎ hěn xīn hěn duō qiányán de yánjiū yě shì cóng zhèyàng de xiǎo wèntí kāishǐ de · Plenty. Your technology isn’t cutting-edge, but the idea is fresh. A lot of research at the frontier starts with little problems like this.

little sister 有人说，科学家想操纵自然。您怎么看？
yǒu rén shuō kēxué jiā xiǎng cāozòng zìrán nín zěnme kàn · Some people say scientists want to control nature. What do you think?

dr zhou 我不喜欢“操纵”这个词。我们不是在操纵自然，而是在了解自然。简而言之，科学是为了更懂这个世界。
wǒ bù xǐhuan cāozòng zhège cí wǒmen bú shì zài cāozòng zìrán ér shì zài liǎojiě zìrán jiǎnéryánzhī kēxué shì wèile gèng dǒng zhège shìjiè · I don’t like the word “control”. We aren’t controlling nature, we’re understanding it. In short, science is about understanding the world better.

xiaoming 零件都到了，图纸也改好了。简而言之，我们下周就能下水了！
língjiàn dōu dào le túzhǐ yě gǎi hǎo le jiǎnéryánzhī wǒmen xià zhōu jiù néng xià shuǐ le · All the parts are here and the drawings are fixed. In short, we can go in the water next week!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

钮
niǔ
knob, button

椭
tuǒ
oval

good to know · 锋利 is sharp like a blade; 尖锐 is pointed, and also “sharp” for words: 尖锐的问题 a pointed question. 零件 are small parts you can buy; 部件 are bigger assembled parts (components); 配件 are accessories and fittings.

Shapes, sizes, parts and buttons, and the whole thing in a sentence: you can now talk a machine through in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 167 tricks and methods

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 22 · science and technology

Talk about methods, tricks, reasons and lessons learned in Chinese, write a paragraph in logical order (首先, 其次, 然后, 最后, 因此), and say "even if ..., still ..." with 纵然……也……

Reports, essays and the HSK writing paper all reward a paragraph that moves in clear steps. And every project needs a good post-mortem: what went wrong, why, and what to do next.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
诀窍	juéqiào	knack, secret	做好这道菜，有什么诀窍吗? Is there a knack to cooking this dish well?
秘诀	mìjué	secret (of success)	她长寿的秘诀是每天散步。 The secret of her long life is a walk every day.
窍门	qiàomén	trick, knack	学外语有没有什么窍门? Are there any tricks to learning a foreign language?
计策	jìcè	stratagem, plan	他想了一个计策，终于说服了对方。 He came up with a plan and finally won the other side round.
招数	zhāoshù	move, trick	这种骗人的招数，我早就见过了。 I've seen this kind of con trick before.
对策	duìcè	countermeasure, response	遇到问题，要尽快想出对策。 When a problem comes up, work out a response quickly.
路子	lùzi	approach, way (of doing)	你的路子不对，换个方法试试。 You're going about it the wrong way: try another method.
两手	liǎngshǒu	two-pronged approach; skill	我们要做好两手准备。 We need to be prepared either way.
点子	diǎnzi	idea	她的点子特别多。 She's full of ideas.
亮点	liàngdiǎn	highlight, bright spot	这次展览最大的亮点是一个机器人。 The highlight of the exhibition is a robot.
设法	shèfǎ	try, find a way	我们会设法尽快解决这个问题。 We'll find a way to solve this as soon as possible.
摸索	mōsuǒ	feel one's way, grope	刚开始工作的时候，什么都要自己摸索。 When you first start work, you have to figure everything out yourself.
破解	pòjiě	crack, solve	科学家终于破解了这个难题。 Scientists have finally cracked this problem.
探究	tànjiū	investigate, inquire into	孩子总是想探究为什么。 Children always want to find out why.
探求	tànqiú	seek, pursue	人类一直在探求宇宙的秘密。 People have always sought the secrets of the universe.

取经	qǔjīng	learn from others' experience	我们去别的公司取经，学习他们的经验。 We visited other companies to learn from their experience.
揭示	jiēshì	reveal, bring to light	这项研究揭示了睡眠的重要性。 This study reveals how important sleep is.
解析	jiěxī	analyse, explain in detail	老师详细解析了这道题。 The teacher went through this question in detail.
检讨	jiǎntǎo	self-criticism; review	他写了一份检讨，承认自己错了。 He wrote a self-criticism, admitting he was wrong.
反省	fǎnxǐng	reflect on oneself	每天睡觉以前，他都会反省一下自己。 Every night before bed he reflects on his day.
正视	zhèngshì	face squarely, face up to	我们要正视自己的缺点。 We have to face up to our shortcomings.
审视	shěnshì	examine closely, scrutinise	他重新审视了自己的计划。 He took a fresh look at his plan.
纵观	zòngguān	survey, take a broad view of	纵观历史，每次技术革命都改变了人们的生活。 Look across history and every technological revolution has changed people's lives.
追溯	zhuīsù	trace back	这个习惯可以追溯到唐朝。 This custom can be traced back to the Tang dynasty.
来历	láilì	origin, background	这件古董的来历不简单。 This antique has quite a history.
缘故	yuángù	reason, cause	也许是天气的缘故，我今天特别累。 Maybe it's the weather, but I'm really tired today.
根源	gēnyuán	root cause	我们要找到问题的根源。 We need to find the root of the problem.
实地	shídì	on the spot, on site	记者到实地采访了当地人。 The reporter went there in person to interview local people.
实体	shítǐ	entity; physical (shop)	现在很多人不去实体店买东西了。 These days a lot of people don't shop in physical stores.
实物	shíwù	the real thing, real object	照片和实物差别很大。 The photo and the real thing are very different.
切身	qièshēn	personal, of direct concern	这件事关系到每个人的切身利益。 This touches everyone's own interests directly.
亲身	qīnshēn	personal, first-hand	这是我的亲身经历。 This happened to me personally.
直观	zhíguān	direct, intuitive, visual	用图表来说明，更直观。 A chart makes it clearer at a glance.
见证	jiànzhèng	witness; testimony	这座老桥见证了城市一百年的变化。 This old bridge has witnessed a hundred years of change in the city.

pattern **a paragraph in logical order (and 纵然……也……)**

首先 …。 | 其次 / 然后 …。 | 最后 … 因此 …。

A clear paragraph moves in one direction: step by step (首先, 其次, 然后, 最后), or from problem to cause to solution, ending with the result (因此, 所以). Pick one order and signpost every step. Also back today: 纵然……也……, "even if …, still …": 纵然失败了，也不是白忙.

首先，我们把船放进河里，记下了它走的路线。其次，我们看了视频，找到了翻船的原因。最后，我们改了设计，把电池放低了。因此，第二次试验成功了。 **shǒuxiān wǒmen bǎ chuán fàng jìn hé lǐ jì xià le tā zǒu de lùxiàn qícì wǒmen kàn le shìpín zhǎo dào le fān chuán de yuányīn zuìhòu wǒmen gǎi le shèjì bǎ diànchí fàng dī le yīncǐ dì èr cì shìyàn chénggōng le** First, we put the boat in the river and recorded its route. Next, we watched the video and found why it capsized. Finally, we changed the design and moved the battery lower. As a result, the second trial succeeded.

我做研究的诀窍是：首先，把现象记下来；其次，找原因；最后，想对策。 **wǒ zuò yánjiū de juéqiào shì shǒuxiān bǎ xiànxiàng jì xialai qícì zhǎo yuányīn zuìhòu xiǎng duìcè** My secret in research is this: first, record what happens; next, find the cause; finally, work out a response.

纵然这次失败了，我们也学到了很多。 **zòngrán zhè cì shībài le wǒmen yě xué dào le hěn duō** Even though we failed this time, we learned a lot.

dialogue what went wrong

little sister 完了！船在河里不走直线，一直转圈，最后还翻了。我们白忙了。
wán le chuán zài hé lǐ bù zǒu zhíxiàn yìzhí zhuǎn quān zuìhòu hái fān le wǒmen bái máng le · That's it! The boat wouldn't go straight: it went round in circles and then capsized. All that work for nothing.

dr zhou 纵然失败了，也不是白忙。我们先正视问题，再找根源。
zòngrán shībài le yě bú shì bái máng wǒmen xiān zhèngshì wèntí zài zhǎo gēnyuán · Even though it failed, it wasn't for nothing. First let's face the problem squarely, then find the root cause.

xiaoming 我先检讨：是我把电池放得太高了。
wǒ xiān jiǎntǎo shì wǒ bǎ diànchí fàng de tài gāo le · I'll own up first: I put the battery too high.

little sister 我也要反省：我太着急，没在实地测试，就直接下水了。
wǒ yě yào fǎnxǐng wǒ tài zháojí méi zài shídì cèshì jiù zhíjiē xià shuǐ le · And I need to look at myself: I was in too much of a hurry and put it straight in without testing it on site.

xiaoming 还有，手动的按钮太小，很不好操控。
hái yǒu shǒudòng de ànniǔ tài xiǎo hěn bù hǎo cāokòng · And the manual buttons are too small: it's hard to control the boat with them.

dr zhou 好。我们重新审视一下设计。我做研究的诀窍是：首先，把现象记下来；其次，找原因；最后，想对策。
hǎo wǒmen chóngxīn shěnshì yíxià shèjì wǒ zuò yánjiū de juéqiào shì shǒuxiān bǎ xiànxiàng jì xialai qícì zhǎo yuányīn zuìhòu xiǎng duìcè · Good. Let's take a fresh look at the design. My secret in research is: first, record what happens; next, find the cause; finally, work out a response.

dr zhou 我来解析一下刚才的视频：船转弯太快，惯性太大，加上风的缘故，才翻了。
wǒ lái jiěxī yíxià gāngcái de shìpín chuán zhuǎn wān tài kuài guànxìng tài dà jiāshàng fēng de yuángù cái fān le · Let me go through the video: the boat turned too fast, so the inertia was too great, and with the wind on top of that, it capsized.

anna 我们公司做台灯的时候也是这样，一开始什么都要自己摸索。后来我们去别的公司取经，就不用再走弯路了。
wǒmen gōngsī zuò táidēng de shíhou yě shì zhèyàng yì kāishǐ shénme dōu yào zìjǐ mōsuǒ hòulái wǒmen qù biéde gōngsī qǔjīng jiù búyòng zài zǒu wānlù le · It was the same when our company made the lamp: at first we had to figure everything out ourselves. Later we went to learn from other companies, and then we didn't have to take detours any more.

professor chen 纵观历史，很多发明都是这样来的。用磁铁找方向，这个办法的来历可以追溯到两千年前。古人也是一点一点探究，才揭示了磁铁的秘密。
zòngguān lìshǐ hěn duō fāmíng dōu shì zhèyàng lái de yòng cítiě zhǎo fāngxiàng zhège bànfǎ de láilì kěyǐ zhuīsù dào liǎngqiān nián qián gǔrén yě shì yìdiǎn yìdiǎn tànjiū cái jiēshì le cítiě de mìmì · Look across history and many inventions came about this way. Using magnets to find direction can be traced back about two thousand years. People back then also investigated bit by bit before they uncovered the magnet's secrets.

little sister 陈教授，您做研究有什么秘诀吗？
Chénjiàoshòu nín zuò yánjiū yǒu shénme mìjué ma · Professor Chen, do you have a secret for research?

professor chen 秘诀谈不上。我的路子是：首先看实物，然后去实地，最后才读书。亲身看见的东西，最直观。
mìjué tán bu shàng wǒ de lùzi shì shǒuxiān kàn shíwù ránhòu qù shídì zuìhòu cái dúshū qīnshēn kànjiàn de dōngxi zuì zhíguān · Hardly a secret. My way is: first look at the real objects, then go to the actual place, and only then read. What you see for yourself is the clearest.

xiaoming 那我们明天再去实地抽样，多取几个样本。我有个点子：在船底加一块重的铁，船就不会翻了。
nà wǒmen míngtiān zài qù shídì chōuyàng duō qǔ jǐ gè yàngběn wǒ yǒu gè diǎnzi zài chuán dǐ jiā yí kuài zhòng de tiě chuán jiù bú huì fān le · Then tomorrow we'll go and take samples on site again, and get a few more. I've got an idea: put a heavy piece of iron in the bottom of the boat, and it won't capsize.

dr zhou 这个窍门很好。不过要做好两手准备：如果还是不稳，就把船的骨架做宽一点。
zhège qiàomén hěn hǎo búguò yào zuò hǎo liǎngshǒu zhǔnbèi rúguǒ háishi bù wěn jiù bǎ chuán de gǔjià zuò

kuān yìdiǎn · That's a good trick. But be ready either way: if it's still not stable, make the boat's frame wider.

little sister 我们先在电脑上测算一下，再把放电池的支架改低一点。我们一定会设法在科学节以前破解这个难题！

wǒmen xiān zài diànnǎo shàng cèsuàn yíxià zài bǎ fàng diànchí de zhījià gǎi dī yìdiǎn wǒmen yídìng huì shèfǎ zài kēxué jié yǐqián pòjiě zhège nántí · First we'll work it out on the computer, then lower the stand that holds the battery. We'll find a way to crack this before the science fair!

xiaoming 妹妹，你还有什么计策？

mèimei nǐ hái yǒu shénme jìcè · So, little sister, any more cunning plans?

little sister 我的招数只有一个：不放弃！

wǒ de zhāoshù zhǐyǒu yí gè bú fàngqì · I've only got one move: never give up!

anna 这条船最大的亮点，是能在河里自动取样，这关系到住在河边的人的切身利益。等船做好了，我们公司的实体店可以帮你们展示。

zhè tiáo chuán zuì dà de liàngdiǎn shì néng zài hé lǐ zìdòng qǔ yàng zhè guānxì dào zhù zài hé biān de rén de qièshēn lìyì děng chuán zuò hǎo le wǒmen gōngsī de shítǐ diàn kěyǐ bāng nǐmen zhǎnshì · The boat's best feature is that it can take samples in the river automatically, and that matters directly to the people who live by the river. When it's finished, our company's shop can display it for you.

professor chen 人类一直在探求自然的规律，你们这条小船也是。这座老桥见证了很多人的失败和成功，今天也见证了你们的第一次。

rénlèi yìzhí zài tànqiú zìrán de guīlǜ nǐmen zhè tiáo xiǎo chuán yě shì zhè zuò lǎo qiáo jiànzhèng le hěn duō rén de shībài hé chénggōng jīntiān yě jiànzhèng le nǐmen de dì yī cì · People have always searched for the laws of nature, and your little boat is doing the same. This old bridge has seen a lot of people fail and succeed, and today it saw your first try.

anna 我来写一段总结：首先，我们找到了问题；其次，我们找到了原因；最后，我们有了新的对策。因此，下一次一定会更好！

wǒ lái xiě yí duàn zǒngjié shǒuxiān wǒmen zhǎo dào le wèntí qícì wǒmen zhǎo dào le yuányīn zuìhòu wǒmen yǒu le xīn de duìcè yīncǐ xià yí cì yídìng huì gèng hǎo · I'll write a short summary: first, we found the problem; next, we found the cause; finally, we have a new plan. So next time will definitely be better!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

诀 jué secret formula	
窍 qiào key point	

good to know · 诀窍, 窍门 and 秘诀 are all "secrets, tricks": 窍门 is a handy trick, 诀窍 a knack, 秘诀 the secret of success. 检讨 is a formal self-criticism (often written), 反省 is reflecting on yourself, 审视 is examining something closely.

A failure faced squarely, a cause found and a plan in three steps: you can now write a clear, logical paragraph in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 168 mission: the science fair

Follow a whole science fair in Chinese, from the programme notice and a technical crisis at the stand to a talk on space, an open lab, the judges' hard questions and the results, using this unit's words for computers, space, physics, the lab, machines and methods.

A science fair puts all of science and technology in one hall: networks, rockets, experiments, machines and the thinking behind them. If you can follow this day, you can follow a science programme on Chinese TV.

chapter 1 the programme

little sister （读）“城市科学节通知：本届科学节于本周六在大学体育馆举行。活动内容如下：一、周博士讲座：宇宙、航天与能源；二、实验室开放：显微镜、天平、温度计等器材，大家可以亲手试一试；三、大学生机器人比赛。”

dú chéngshì kēxué jié tōngzhī běn jiè kēxué jié yú běn zhōu liù zài dàxué tǐyùguǎn jǔxíng huódòng nèiróng rúxià yī Zhōubóshì jiǎngzuò yǔzhòu hángtiān yǔ néngyuán èr shíyànshì kāifàng xiǎnwēijìng tiānpíng wēndùjì děng qìcái dàjiā kěyǐ qīnshǒu shì yi shi sān dàxuéshēng jīqìrén bǐsài · (reading) “City Science Fair notice: this year's fair takes place this Saturday in the university gym. Programme: one, a talk by Dr Zhou on the universe, spaceflight and energy; two, open lab: microscopes, balances, thermometers and other equipment for everyone to try; three, the university robot competition.”

little sister “参赛的团队请带好原型、图纸和配件。工作人员会检查每个团队的电线和安全装置，高压设备附近请勿进入。现场有免费的无线网络，比赛的数据会同步到科学节的主页上，每位评委都有一台终端，可以随时查看。”

cānsài de tuánduì qǐng dài hǎo yuánxíng túzhǐ hé pèijiàn gōngzuò rényuán huì jiǎnchá měi gè tuánduì de diànxiàn hé ānquán zhuāngzhì gāoyā shèbèi fùjìn qǐng wù jìnrù xiànchǎng yǒu miǎnfèi de wúxiàn wǎngluò bǐsài de shùjù huì tóngbù dào kēxué jié de zhǔyè shàng měi wèi píngwěi dōu yǒu yì tái zhōngduān kěyǐ suíshí chákàn · “Teams taking part should bring their prototypes, drawings and accessories. Staff will check every team's wiring and safety devices; please keep away from high-voltage equipment. There is free Wi-Fi, and competition data will sync to the fair's homepage; each judge has a terminal to check it at any time.”

anna 你们的船准备好了吗？

nǐmen de chuán zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma · Is your boat ready?

little sister 准备好了！上次翻船以后，我们重新审视了设计：船底加了一块铁，电池放低了，骨架也改成了更宽的椭圆。

zhǔnbèi hǎo le shàng cì fān chuán yǐhòu wǒmen chóngxīn shěnshì le shèjì chuán dǐ jiā le yí kuài tiě diànchí fàng dī le gǔjià yě gǎi chéng le gèng kuān de tuǒyuán · Ready! After it capsized last time, we took a fresh look at the design: we put a piece of iron in the bottom, lowered the battery and made the frame a wider oval.

xiaoming 不是我说你，你昨天晚上又只睡了三个小时吧？你看你，眼睛都红了。

bú shì wǒ shuō nǐ nǐ zuótiān wǎnshang yòu zhǐ shuì le sān gè xiǎoshí ba nǐ kàn nǐ yǎnjing dōu hóng le · I hate to say it, but you only slept three hours again last night, didn't you? Look at you, your eyes are all red.

little sister 哥哥，今天别管我了。我紧张得要命！

gēge jīntiān bié guǎn wǒ le wǒ jǐnzhāng de yàomìng · Not today, big brother. I'm terribly nervous!

chapter 2 trouble at the stand

little sister 糟了！遥控失灵了，按哪个按钮都没反应。
zāo le yáokòng shīlíng le àn nǎge ànniǔ dōu méi fǎnyìng · Oh no! The remote control has stopped working: none of the buttons do anything.

xiaoming 别急，我来调试一下。……好在芯片没坏，也不是黑客，问题在软件：你们的新程序跟这台便携式电脑不兼容，内存也不够。
bié jí wǒ lái tiáoshì yíxià hǎozài xīnpiàn méi huài yě bú shì hēikè wèntí zài ruǎnjiàn nǐmen de xīn chéngxù gēn zhè tái biànxiéshì diànnǎo bù jiānróng nèicún yě búgòu · Don't panic, let me take a look … Luckily the chip isn't broken and it isn't hackers: the problem is the software. Your new program isn't compatible with this portable computer, and there isn't enough memory either.

little sister 我们队里写编程的同学都是新手，交互的部分是昨天晚上才写好的。比赛九点半就开始了，怎么办？
wǒmen duì lǐ xiě biānchéng de tóngxué dōu shì xīnshǒu jiāohù de bùfen shì zuótiān wǎnshang cái xiě hǎo de bǐsài jiǔ diǎn bàn jiù kāishǐ le zěnme bàn · The people on our team who do the coding are all beginners, and the interface was only finished last night. The competition starts at half past nine: what do we do?

xiaoming 我先把旧版本卸载了，再装新的，顺便给电脑杀杀毒，把防火墙也打开。你们的数据备份了吗？
wǒ xiān bǎ jiù bǎnběn xièzài le zài zhuāng xīn de shùnbiàn gěi diànnǎo shā shādú bǎ fánghuǒqiáng yě dǎkāi nǐmen de shùjù bèifèn le ma · First I'll uninstall the old version and install the new one, and while I'm at it I'll scan the computer for viruses and switch the firewall on. Have you backed up your data?

little sister 备份了！所有样本的数据都存在数据库里，也同步到了手机上。
bèifèn le suǒyǒu yàngběn de shùjù dōu cún zài shùjùkù lǐ yě tóngbù dào le shǒujī shàng · Yes! All the sample data is in the database and synced to my phone as well.

xiaoming 好。实在不行，就切换成手动，用这个黄色的按钮操控。
hǎo shízài bùxíng jiù qiēhuàn chéng shǒudòng yòng zhège huángsè de ànniǔ cāokòng · Good. If all else fails, switch to manual and steer with this yellow button.

anna 附近的信号也不太好，是不是天线的问题？
fùjìn de xìnhào yě bú tài hǎo shì bu shì tiānxiàn de wèntí · The signal round here isn't great either. Could it be the aerial?

xiaoming 可能是体育馆的墙太厚，把信号屏蔽了。我把船上的天线换个地方……好了，可以了！新程序也激活了。主页的数据我设定好了，每十分钟同步一次。
kěnéng shì tǐyùguǎn de qiáng tài hòu bǎ xìnhào píngbì le wǒ bǎ chuán shàng de tiānxiàn huàn gè dìfang hǎo le kěyǐ le xīn chéngxù yě jīhuó le zhǔyè de shùjù wǒ shèdìng hǎo le měi shí fēnzhōng tóngbù yí cì · Probably the gym walls are so thick they block the signal. Let me move the aerial on the boat … There, that's it! The new program is activated too, and I've set the homepage data to sync every ten minutes.

anna 你们看旁边那个团队：三维的虚拟仿真，大大的液晶显示器，配置真高！
nǐmen kàn pángbiān nàge tuánduì sānwéi de xūnǐ fǎngzhēn dàdà de yèjīng xiǎnshìqì pèizhì zhēn gāo · Look at the team next door: a 3D virtual simulation and a huge LCD monitor. What a spec!

xiaoming 还有一个团队带来了光盘和磁带，要讲数码技术的历史。现在是大数据的时代，网上的信息都在电信公司的光缆和服务器、硬盘里跑来跑去。
hái yǒu yí gè tuánduì dài lái le guāngpán hé cídài yào jiǎng shùmǎ jìshù de lìshǐ xiànzài shì dàshùjù de shídài wǎngshang de xìnxī dōu zài diànxìn gōngsī de guānglǎn hé fúwùqì yìngpán lǐ pǎo lái pǎo qù · And another team has brought CDs and cassettes to talk about the history of digital technology. This is the age of big data: everything online is racing around telecoms fibre cables, servers and hard disks.

little sister 你说你一个工程师，平时那么慢，今天怎么这么快！
nǐ shuō nǐ yí gè gōngchéngshī píngshí nàme màn jīntiān zěnme zhème kuài · Look at you, an engineer who's usually so slow, and so quick today!

xiaoming 还别说，我也觉得今天发挥得不错。
hái biéshuō wǒ yě juéde jīntiān fāhuī de búcuò · You know what, I think I did pretty well today too.

chapter 3 the opening talk

dr zhou 同学们好！我们先从宇宙说起。宇宙里有无数个星系，太阳只是其中一颗普通的恒星，地球是围着它转的一颗行星。天气好的晚上，你们可以看看星座。

tóngxuémen hǎo wǒmen xiān cóng yǔzhòu shuō qǐ yǔzhòu lǐ yǒu wúshù gè xīngxì tàiyáng zhǐshì qízhōng yì kē pǔtōng de héngxīng dìqiú shì wéi zhe tā zhuǎn de yì kē xíngxīng tiānqì hǎo de wǎnshang nǐmen kěyǐ kàn kan xīngzuò · Hello, everyone! Let's start with the universe. It holds countless galaxies; the Sun is just one ordinary star among them, and the Earth is a planet going round it. On a clear night, you can look for the constellations.

dr zhou 有人问我：有没有外星人？飞碟是不是真的？到现在为止，我们还没有发现。不过，天上有时候会掉下来陨石，那可是真的。

yǒu rén wèn wǒ yǒu méiyǒu wàixīngrén fēidié shì bu shì zhēn de dào xiànzài wéizhǐ wǒmen hái méiyǒu fāxiàn búguò tiānshàng yǒu shíhou huì diào xialai yǔnshí nà kěshì zhēn de · People ask me: are there aliens? Are flying saucers real? So far we haven't found any. But meteorites really do fall from the sky sometimes.

dr zhou 我们用望远镜和雷达观测天空，发射卫星和飞船去探测别的星球。火箭靠引擎驱动，马力大得很；雷达会记录下它的轨迹。太空几乎是真空，电影里的飞船能穿越时空，真正的飞船还做不到。

wǒmen yòng wàngyuǎnjìng hé léidá guāncè tiānkōng fāshè wèixīng hé fēichuán qù tàncè biéde xīngqiú huǒjiàn kào yǐnqíng qūdòng mǎlì dà de hěn léidá huì jìlù xià tā de guǐjì tàikōng jīhū shì zhēnkōng diànyǐng lǐ de fēichuán néng chuānyuè shíkōng zhēnzhèng de fēichuán hái zuò bu dào · We watch the sky with telescopes and radar, and launch satellites and spaceships to explore other worlds. A rocket is driven by its engines and is hugely powerful; radar records its path. Space is almost a vacuum. Spaceships in films travel through time and space; real ones can't yet.

dr zhou 现在，航天员可以在空间站里住半年。别说一百年前，就是三十年前，这也是很难想象的。

xiànzài hángtiānyuán kěyǐ zài kōngjiānzhàn lǐ zhù bàn nián biéshuō yìbǎi nián qián jiùshì sānshí nián qián zhè yě shì hěn nán xiǎngxiàng de · Today astronauts can live on the space station for six months. Thirty years ago that was hard to imagine, let alone a hundred years ago.

dr zhou 能源也一样重要：一座核电站的功率很大，核能、风能、太阳能发的电，都要送进电网。核技术用得好，能造福人类。医院里还用激光做手术。电动车的续航越来越长，靠的是电池和半导体技术。

néngyuán yě yíyàng zhòngyào yí zuò hédiànzhàn de gōnglǜ hěn dà hénéng fēng néng tàiyángnéng fā de diàn dōu yào sòng jìn diànwǎng hé jìshù yòng de hǎo néng zàofú rénlèi yīyuàn lǐ hái yòng jīguāng zuò shǒushù diàndòngchē de xùháng yuè lái yuè cháng kào de shì diànchí hé bàndǎotǐ jìshù · Energy matters just as much: a nuclear power station is enormously powerful, and electricity from nuclear, wind and solar all goes into the grid. Used well, nuclear technology benefits humanity. Hospitals use lasers for surgery. Electric cars go further and further on a charge, thanks to battery and semiconductor technology.

dr zhou 研究科学有没有窍门？我的诀窍是：首先，多问为什么；其次，亲手做实验；最后，正视失败。纵然实验失败了，也能从中学到东西。简而言之，科学就在我们身边。

yánjiū kēxué yǒu méiyǒu qiàomén wǒ de juéqiào shì shǒuxiān duō wèn wèi shénme qícì qīnshǒu zuò shíyàn zuìhòu zhèngshì shībài zòngrán shíyàn shībài le yě néng cóngzhōng xué dào dōngxi jiǎnéryánzhī kēxué jiù zài wǒmen shēnbiān · Is there a trick to doing science? My secret is: first, keep asking why; next, do the experiments yourself; finally, face failure honestly. Even when an experiment fails, you can learn from it. In short, science is all around us.

editor lin （小声）安娜，周博士讲得真直观，连孩子都听得懂。

xiǎo shēng Ānnà Zhōubóshì jiǎng de zhēn zhíguān lián háizi dōu tīng de dǒng · (quietly) Anna, Dr Zhou explains things so clearly that even children can follow.

anna 是啊。看在周博士的面子上，今天来的人特别多。

shì a kàn zài Zhōubóshì de miànzi shàng jīntiān lái de rén tèbié duō · Yes. A lot of people have come today on Dr Zhou's account.

chapter 4 the open lab

dr zhou 小朋友们，欢迎来到开放实验室！先做一个最简单的：两只手互相摩擦，是不是变热了？

xiǎopéngyǒumen huānyíng lái dào kāifàng shíyànshì xiān zuò yí gè zuì jiǎndān de liǎng zhī shǒu hùxiāng mócā shì bu shì biàn rè le · Welcome to the open lab, everyone! Let's start with the simplest one: rub your hands together. Getting warm?

little sister 这是一个杠杆，用它抬这块铁，一点也不费劲。这是磁铁，能吸住铁，可是吸不住塑料。电线外面那层是绝缘的。

zhè shì yí gè gànggǎn yòng tā tái zhè kuài tiě yìdiǎn yě bú fèijìn zhè shì cítiě néng xī zhù tiě kěshì xī bu zhù sùliào diànxiàn wàimiàn nà céng shì juéyuán de · This is a lever: with it, lifting this lump of iron is no effort at all. This is a magnet: it picks up iron, but not plastic. And the outer layer of this wire is insulated.

dr zhou 这面镜子能反射阳光。灯光照射到墙上，就把我们的影子投射在上面。这支笔写的字还会发荧光。

zhè miàn jìngzi néng fǎnshè yángguāng dēngguāng zhàoshè dào qiáng shàng jiù bǎ wǒmen de yǐngzi tóushè zài shàngmiàn zhè zhī bǐ xiě de zì hái huì fā yíngguāng · This mirror reflects sunlight. When the lamp shines on the wall, it casts our shadows there. And what you write with this pen glows.

dr zhou 我们来烧水：水沸腾以后会蒸发，水汽遇到冷的玻璃，又凝结成了水。一杯盐水放一个晚上，会留下盐的结晶；水里的脏东西也会沉淀下来。

wǒmen lái shāo shuǐ shuǐ fèiténg yǐhòu huì zhēngfā shuǐqì yùdào lěng de bōli yòu níngjié chéng le shuǐ yì bēi yán shuǐ fàng yí gè wǎnshang huì liúxia yán de jiéjīng shuǐ lǐ de zāng dōngxi yě huì chéndiàn xialai · Now let's boil some water: once it boils it evaporates, and when the steam meets cold glass it condenses back into water. Leave a glass of salt water overnight and salt crystals are left behind, and any dirt in the water settles to the bottom.

xiaoming 周博士，古人怎么炼铁、铸造大钟？

Zhōubóshì gǔrén zěnme liàn tiě zhùzào dà zhōng · Dr Zhou, how did people in the old days smelt iron and cast great bells?

dr zhou 靠很高的温度。铁和钢铁都怕腐蚀，所以海边的铁桥要经常刷漆。物理里有很多定律和公式，比如惯性：车突然停下，人会往前冲。热空气上升，冷空气下降，就是对流。

kào hěn gāo de wēndù tiě hé gāngtiě dōu pà fǔshí suǒyǐ hǎi biān de tiě qiáo yào jīngcháng shuā qī wùlǐ lǐ yǒu hěn duō dìnglǜ hé gōngshì bǐrú guànxìng chē tūrán tíng xià rén huì wǎng qián chōng rè kōngqì shàngshēng lěng kōngqì xiàjiàng jiùshì duìliú · With very high temperatures. Iron and steel both corrode, so iron bridges by the sea need painting often. Physics has many laws and formulas, like inertia: when a car stops suddenly, you lurch forward. Warm air rising and cold air sinking is convection.

little sister 这边可以用显微镜看微观世界。架子上有蝴蝶的标本，还有鸡蛋里的胚胎。你们看，这层薄薄的膜里，有很多微生物。

zhèbiān kěyǐ yòng xiǎnwēijìng kàn wēiguān shìjiè jiàzi shàng yǒu húdié de biāoběn hái yǒu jīdàn lǐ de pēitāi nǐmen kàn zhè céng báo báo de mó lǐ yǒu hěn duō wēishēngwù · Over here you can use the microscopes to see the microscopic world. On the shelf there are butterfly specimens and an embryo from an egg. Look: inside this thin membrane there are lots of microbes.

dr zhou 生命一直在演化，病毒也会变异。杂交水稻、克隆羊，都是科学家的成果。今天我们不解剖动物，只看样本。这些器械都很精密，大家小心。

shēngmìng yìzhí zài yǎnhuà bìngdú yě huì biànyì zájiāo shuǐdào kèlóng yáng dōu shì kēxué jiā de chéngguǒ jīntiān wǒmen bù jiěpōu dòngwù zhǐ kàn yàngběn zhèxiē qìxiè dōu hěn jīngmì dàjiā xiǎoxīn · Life is always evolving, and viruses mutate. Hybrid rice and cloned sheep are both achievements of science. Today we won't dissect any animals, we'll just look at samples. All these instruments are very precise, so be careful.

little sister 这个球是用人造橡胶做的。这杯水是中性的，我们刚刚验过。

zhège qiú shì yòng rénzào xiàngjiāo zuò de zhè bēi shuǐ shì zhōngxìng de wǒmen gānggāng yàn guo · This ball is made of synthetic rubber. And this glass of water is neutral: we've just tested it.

chapter 5 the judges' questions

little sister 各位评委好！我们的机器人是一条小船。它的亮点是：能在河里自动取样，还能过滤水里的垃圾。
gèwèi píngwěi hǎo wǒmen de jīqìrén shì yì tiáo xiǎo chuán tā de liàngdiǎn shì néng zài hé lǐ zìdòng qǔ yàng hái néng guòlǜ shuǐ lǐ de lājī · Good morning, judges! Our robot is a little boat. Its best features: it takes samples from the river automatically, and it filters rubbish out of the water.

professor chen 先说说设计吧。
xiān shuō shuo shèjì ba · Tell us about the design first.

little sister 船的骨架是椭圆的，船底很平坦。轮子的直径是十厘米，半径五厘米。收垃圾的“手”跨度四十厘米，前面锋利的地方都包了橡胶。零件和部件大多是买的，电池的支架是一位木匠师傅做的。后面还有一个阀门，用来排水。
chuán de gǔjià shì tuǒyuán de chuán dǐ hěn píngtǎn lúnzi de zhíjìng shì shí límǐ bànjìng wǔ límǐ shōu lājī de shǒu kuàdù sìshí límǐ qiánmiàn fēnglì de dìfang dōu bāo le xiàngjiāo língjiàn hé bùjiàn dàduō shì mǎi de diànchí de zhījià shì yí wèi mùjiàng shīfu zuò de hòumiàn hái yǒu yí gè fámén yònglái pái shuǐ · The frame is oval and the bottom is flat. The wheels are ten centimetres across, five in radius. The arm that collects rubbish has a forty-centimetre span, and any sharp edges at the front are wrapped in rubber. Most of the parts and components were bought; the battery stand was made by a carpenter. At the back there’s a valve for letting water out.

professor chen 这条船是自己走，还是有人在操纵？
zhè tiáo chuán shì zìjǐ zǒu háishi yǒu rén zài cāozòng · Does the boat steer itself, or is someone controlling it?

little sister 两种都可以：它能自动走，也可以用手机操控。
liǎng zhǒng dōu kěyǐ tā néng zìdòng zǒu yě kěyǐ yòng shǒujī cāokòng · Both: it can go by itself, or you can steer it from a phone.

professor chen 我再问一个尖锐的问题：你们怎么证明数据是对的？
wǒ zài wèn yí gè jiānruì de wèntí nǐmen zěnme zhèngmíng shùjù shì duì de · Let me ask a pointed question: how do you prove your data is right?

little sister 首先，我们在河上不同的地方抽样，一共取了二十个样本。其次，我们在周博士的实验室里用显微镜看微生物，再测定水里有多少塑料和纤维。最后，我们用电脑运算，把结果量化，结果都取了整数。因此，我们的数据是可以检查的。
shǒuxiān wǒmen zài hé shàng bù tóng de dìfang chōuyàng yígòng qǔ le èrshí gè yàngběn qícì wǒmen zài Zhōubóshì de shíyànshì lǐ yòng xiǎnwēijìng kàn wēishēngwù zài cèdìng shuǐ lǐ yǒu duōshao sùliào hé xiānwéi zuìhòu wǒmen yòng diànnǎo yùnsuàn bǎ jiéguǒ liànghuà jiéguǒ dōu qǔ le zhěngshù yīncǐ wǒmen de shùjù shì kěyǐ jiǎnchá de · First, we sampled at different points on the river: twenty samples in all. Next, in Dr Zhou’s lab, we looked at the microbes under a microscope and measured how much plastic and fibre was in the water. Finally, we ran the numbers on a computer to quantify the results, rounded to whole numbers. So our data can be checked.

professor chen 测量都有误差。你们的误差有多大？
cèliáng dōu yǒu wùchā nǐmen de wùchā yǒu duō dà · Every measurement has error. How big is yours?

little sister 我们的仪器精度不高，误差大概是百分之五。简而言之，数据不完美，可是方向是对的。
wǒmen de yíqì jīngdù bù gāo wùchā dàgài shì bǎi fēn zhī wǔ jiǎnéryánzhī shùjù bù wánměi kěshì fāngxiàng shì duì de · Our instruments aren’t very precise, so the error is about five per cent. In short, the data isn’t perfect, but it points the right way.

professor chen 很诚实。你们遇到过什么问题？
hěn chéngshí nǐmen yùdào guo shénme wèntí · Very honest. What problems did you run into?

little sister 第一次下水，船翻了。我们检讨了很久，找到了根源：电池太高，加上风的缘故。后来我们改了设计，又去别的大学取经，少走了很多弯路。
dì yī cì xià shuǐ chuán fān le wǒmen jiǎntǎo le hěn jiǔ zhǎo dào le gēnyuán diànchí tài gāo jiāshàng fēng de yuángù hòulái wǒmen gǎi le shèjì yòu qù biéde dàxué qǔjīng shǎo zǒu le hěn duō wān lù · The first time it went in the water, it capsized. We spent a long time looking at what we’d done wrong and found the root cause: the

battery was too high, and the wind made it worse. Then we changed the design and went to learn from another university, which saved us a lot of wasted effort.

professor chen 最后一个问题：这条船对普通人有什么用？
zuìhòu yí gè wèntí zhè tiáo chuán duì pǔtōng rén yǒu shénme yòng · One last question: what use is this boat to ordinary people?

little sister 河水干不干净，关系到住在河边的人的切身利益。我们希望以后大家每天都能知道河水的情况。
hé shuǐ gān bu gānjìng guānxì dào zhù zài hé biān de rén de qièshēn lìyì wǒmen xīwàng yǐhòu dàjiā měi tiān dōu néng zhīdào hé shuǐ de qíngkuàng · Whether the river is clean matters directly to the people who live beside it. We hope that one day everyone will know the state of the river every day.

xiaoming （小声）别怕，就像上次练的那样，先走直线，再走一条曲线。
xiǎo shēng bié pà jiù xiàng shàng cì liàn de nàyàng xiān zǒu zhíxiàn zài zǒu yì tiáo qūxiàn · (quietly) Don’t be scared: just like we practised, first a straight line, then a curve.

chapter 6 the results

professor chen 下面宣布结果。本届机器人比赛的“最佳创意奖”是：小河清洁船团队！
xiàmiàn xuānbù jiéguǒ běn jiè jīqìrén bǐsài de zuìjiā chuàngyì jiǎng shì xiǎo hé qīngjié chuán tuánduì · Here are the results. This year’s “best idea” award in the robot competition goes to … the river-cleaning boat team!

little sister 真的吗？我们拿奖了！
zhēn de ma wǒmen ná jiǎng le · Really? We’ve won a prize!

professor chen 评委昨天到河边实地看过，也亲身试了你们的船。你们的数据揭示了一个问题：河的下游塑料更多。纵然还有很多问题，这条船也是一个很好的开始。今天，我们见证了它的成功。
píngwěi zuótiān dào hé biān shídì kàn guo yě qīnshēn shì le nǐmen de chuán nǐmen de shùjù jiēshì le yí gè wèntí hé de xiàyóu sùliào gèng duō zòngrán hái yǒu hěn duō wèntí zhè tiáo chuán yě shì yí gè hěn hǎo de kāishǐ jīntiān wǒmen jiànzhèng le tā de chénggōng · The judges went to the river yesterday to see for themselves and tried your boat in person. Your data reveals a problem: there’s more plastic downstream. Even if there are still many problems, this boat is a very good start. Today we have seen it succeed.

editor lin 恭喜！我想写一篇报道。这条船的来历，可以追溯到一次失败，对吧？你们的秘诀是什么？
gōngxǐ wǒ xiǎng xiě yì piān bàodào zhè tiáo chuán de láilì kěyǐ zhuīsù dào yí cì shībài duì ba nǐmen de mìjué shì shénme · Congratulations! I’d like to write a story. This boat’s story goes back to a failure, doesn’t it? What’s your secret?

little sister 没有什么秘诀。第一次失败以后，我们反省了很久。一开始我们什么都不懂，只能自己摸索；后来设法找到了好的路子：多问，多试，不放弃。
méiyǒu shénme mìjué dì yī cì shībài yǐhòu wǒmen fǎnxǐng le hěn jiǔ yì kāishǐ wǒmen shénme dōu bù dǒng zhǐ néng zìjǐ mōsuǒ hòulái shèfǎ zhǎo dào le hǎo de lùzi duō wèn duō shì bú fàngqì · There’s no secret. After the first failure we spent a long time reflecting. At first we knew nothing and had to feel our way; later we found a good approach: ask a lot, try a lot, never give up.

dr zhou 你还别说，这就是科学家最重要的东西。纵观历史，很多难题都是这样一点一点破解的。
nǐ hái biéshuō zhè jiùshì kēxué jiā zuì zhòngyào de dōngxi zòngguān lìshǐ hěn duō nántí dōu shì zhèyàng yìdiǎn yìdiǎn pòjiě de · You know what, that’s the most important thing a scientist has. Look across history, and many hard problems were cracked just like that, bit by bit.

anna 你那些计策和招数，今天全用上了！我们公司想把你们的船放在实体店里展示，让更多人看到实物。
nǐ nàxiē jìcè hé zhāoshù jīntiān quán yòng shàng le wǒmen gōngsī xiǎng bǎ nǐmen de chuán fàng zài shítǐ diàn lǐ zhǎnshì ràng gèng duō rén kàn dào shíwù · All your plans and tricks paid off today! Our company would like to display your boat in our shop, so more people can see the real thing.

xiaoming 下一步有什么点子？
xià yí bù yǒu shénme diǎnzi · So what’s the next idea?

little sister 我们要做好两手准备：一边改船，一边找更多的同学，一起探求河水的秘密。周博士，您再给我们解析一下数据，好吗？
wǒmen yào zuò hǎo liǎngshǒu zhǔnbèi yìbiān gǎi chuán yìbiān zhǎo gèng duō de tóngxué yìqǐ tànqiú hé shuǐ de mìmì Zhōubóshì nín zài gěi wǒmen jiěxī yíxià shùjù hǎo ma · We’ll get ready on two fronts: improve the boat, and find more students to explore the river’s secrets with us. Dr Zhou, could you go through our data with us again?

xiaoming 我来写个总结：首先，我们找到了问题；其次，我们找到了对策；最后，我们拿到了奖。因此，今天晚上，我请客！
wǒ lái xiě gè zǒngjié shǒuxiān wǒmen zhǎo dào le wèntí qícì wǒmen zhǎo dào le duìcè zuìhòu wǒmen ná dào le jiǎng yīncǐ jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ qǐngkè · Let me sum up: first, we found the problem; next, we found a solution; finally, we won a prize. Therefore, tonight, dinner’s on me!

little sister 简而言之：哥哥请客！
jiǎnéryánzhī gēge qǐngkè · In short: big brother’s paying!

A crash fixed in time, a talk on the stars, an open lab, hard questions answered in four clear steps and a prize: you just followed a whole science fair in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 169 school and degrees

Talk about schools, degrees and studying as an adult, and leave out a subject that comes later in the sentence (蒙后省略), as in 一下班，他就去夜校.

Everyone in China has a story about exams, dorm rooms and night classes. These are the words for telling yours, and for understanding theirs.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
办学	bànxué	to run a school	这所学校已经办学五十年了。 This school has been running for fifty years.
私立	sīlì	private (school, hospital)	他在一所私立中学当老师。 He teaches at a private secondary school.
师范	shīfàn	teacher training	她是师范大学毕业的。 She graduated from a teachers' university.
师资	shīzī	teaching staff, teachers	这所学校的师资很强。 This school has very strong teaching staff.
师长	shīzhǎng	teachers (respectful)	毕业以后，他常常回学校看望师长。 After graduating, he often goes back to visit his old teachers.
夜校	yèxiào	night school, evening classes	他下了班就去夜校学外语。 After work he goes to evening classes to learn a foreign language.
寝室	qǐnshì	(student) dormitory room	我们寝室住了四个人。 Four of us share our dorm room.
礼堂	lǐtáng	assembly hall, auditorium	开学典礼在学校礼堂举行。 The opening ceremony is held in the school hall.
社团	shètuán	(student) club, society	她参加了学校的摄影社团。 She joined the university photography club.
新生	xīnshēng	new student	九月一号，新生来学校报到。 On the first of September the new students arrive and register.
学子	xuézǐ	students, scholars (written)	每年都有很多学子来北京求学。 Every year many young people come to Beijing to study.
学业	xuéyè	studies, schoolwork	他一边工作，一边完成学业。 He finished his studies while working.
求学	qiúxué	to pursue one's studies	她十八岁离开家乡，到上海求学。 At eighteen she left her home town to study in Shanghai.
攻读	gōngdú	to study for (a degree)	他正在攻读历史学博士。 He's doing a PhD in history.
进修	jìnxiū	to do further study or training	公司送她去国外进修了一年。 Her company sent her abroad for a year of further training.
深造	shēnzào	to pursue advanced studies	大学毕业后，他想出国深造。 After university he wants to go abroad for

			further study.
学士	xuéshì	bachelor's degree; scholar	她明年就能拿到学士学位了。 She'll get her bachelor's degree next year.
文凭	wénpíng	diploma, certificate	有的公司更看重能力，不太看重文凭。 Some companies care more about ability than about diplomas.
院士	yuànshì	academician	这位老院士八十岁了还在做研究。 This academician is eighty and still doing research.
知识分子	zhīshifènzǐ	intellectual	他的父母都是知识分子，一个是教授，一个是医生。 His parents are both intellectuals: one is a professor and the other a doctor.
工科	gōngkē	engineering (as a subject)	他是学工科的，现在当工程师。 He studied engineering and is now an engineer.
人文	rénwén	the humanities	这所大学的人文学科很有名。 This university is famous for its humanities.
学识	xuéshí	learning, scholarship	陈教授学识很深，却一点儿也不骄傲。 Professor Chen is very learned, yet not in the least proud.
学说	xuéshuō	theory, doctrine	这本书介绍了几种不同的教育学说。 This book introduces several different theories of education.
测验	cèyàn	test, quiz; to test	每个星期五都有一次小测验。 There's a little quiz every Friday.
考查	kǎochá	to assess, examine (learning)	这门课主要考查学生的阅读能力。 This course mainly assesses students' reading skills.
旷课	kuàngkè	to skip class	他这个月已经旷课三次了。 He has already skipped class three times this month.
作弊	zuòbì	to cheat (in an exam)	考试作弊是绝对不允许的。 Cheating in exams is absolutely not allowed.
抄袭	chāoxí	to plagiarise	他的论文抄袭了别人的文章。 His thesis plagiarised someone else's article.
减负	jiǎnfù	to lighten the burden (on pupils)	为了给学生减负，学校减少了作业。 To lighten the pupils' load, the school cut down on homework.
备课	bèikè	to prepare lessons	王老师每天晚上都要备课。 Teacher Wang prepares her lessons every evening.
温习	wēnxí	to review, revise (lessons)	考试前，他把课本又温习了一遍。 Before the exam he went over the textbook once more.
背诵	bèisòng	to recite, learn by heart	小时候，我们每天都要背诵古诗。 As children, we had to recite old poems every day.
训	xùn	to lecture, scold; to train	他上课说话，被老师训了一顿。 He talked in class and got a telling-off from the teacher.
灌输	guànshū	to instil, cram (ideas) into	好老师不只是给学生灌输知识。 A good teacher doesn't just cram knowledge into pupils.

pattern say the subject once, later (蒙后省略), and 这不

first clause (no subject) **，subject** **second clause**

English says “she” in both halves: “When she heard the news, she cried.” Chinese often names the subject only once, in the second clause, and leaves it out of the first: 听到这个消息，她哭了. This is 蒙后省略, “leaving out what comes after”. And 这不 (from day 149) brings in a live example: “see?”

刚到北京求学的时候，她连一个朋友也没有。 **gāng dào Běijīng qiúxué de shíhou tā lián yí gè péngyou yě méiyǒu** When she first came to Beijing to study, she didn’t have a single friend.

拿到学士文凭以后，他又去英国攻读硕士。 **ná dào xuéshì wénpíng yǐhòu tā yòu qù Yīngguó gōngdú shuòshì** After getting his bachelor’s degree, he went to the UK to do a master’s.

听说有人抄袭了她的文章，她气得一夜没睡。 **tīngshuō yǒu rén chāoxí le tā de wénzhāng tā qì de yí yè méi shuì** When she heard someone had plagiarised her article, she was so angry she didn’t sleep all night.

现在的学生学业压力太大了。这不，我妹妹天天温习到半夜。 **xiànzài de xuéshēng xuéyè yālì tài dà le zhè bù wǒ mèimei tiān tiān wēnxí dào bànyè** Students are under so much pressure these days. Look at my sister: she revises till midnight every night.

dialogue an interview about night schools

little sister 王老师，谢谢您抽时间！我的毕业论文写的是北京夜校的历史，想先来向您取经，听听您的故事。

Wánglǎoshī xièxie nín chōu shíjiān wǒ de bìyè lùnwén xiě de shì Běijīng yèxiào de lìshǐ xiǎng xiān lái xiàng nín qǔjīng tīng ting nín de gùshi · Teacher Wang, thank you for making the time! My graduation thesis is on the history of Beijing's night schools, and I've come to learn from you first and hear your story.

teacher wang 说起夜校，这栋楼七十年前就是一所夜校。白天在工厂上班，下了班，工人们就来这里学认字。这栋楼见证了好几代人的变化。

shuō qǐ yèxiào zhè dòng lóu qīshí nián qián jiùshì yì suǒ yèxiào báitiān zài gōngchǎng shàngbān xià le bān gōngrénmen jiù lái zhèlǐ xué rèn zì zhè dòng lóu jiànzhèng le hǎo jǐ dài rén de biànhuà · Speaking of night schools, seventy years ago this building was one. After a day in the factory, the workers came here to learn to read. This building has seen several generations change.

anna 难怪楼后面有个老礼堂！我第一次来上课，还以为那是个电影院呢。

nánguài lóu hòumiàn yǒu gè lǎo lǐtáng wǒ dì yī cì lái shàngkè hái yǐwéi nà shì gè diànyǐngyuàn ne · No wonder there's an old hall behind the building! The first time I came for a class, I thought it was a cinema.

teacher wang 二十年前开始办学的时候，我看中的就是这个礼堂。我们是私立学校，钱不多，可是师资很好，老师大多是师范大学毕业的，功底都很深。

èrshí nián qián kāishǐ bànxué de shíhou wǒ kànzhòng de jiùshì zhège lǐtáng wǒmen shì sīlì xuéxiào qián bù duō kěshì shīzī hěn hǎo lǎoshī dàduō shì shīfàn dàxué bìyè de gōngdǐ dōu hěn shēn · When I started the school twenty years ago, it was that hall that won me over. We're a private school without much money, but our teachers are very good: most of them trained at teachers' universities and have a deep grounding.

little sister 现在来进修的都是什么人？

xiànzài lái jìnxiū de dōu shì shénme rén · Who comes to study here now?

teacher wang 什么人都有：刚工作的年轻人，想出国深造的学子，还有一位八十岁的老院士。这不，他昨天又来问我测验的时间了。

shénme rén dōu yǒu gāng gōngzuò de niánqīng rén xiǎng chūguó shēnzào de xuézǐ hái yǒu yí wèi bāshí suì de lǎo yuànshì zhè bù tā zuótiān yòu lái wèn wǒ cèyàn de shíjiān le · All sorts: young people who've just started work, students hoping to study abroad, and an academician of eighty. In fact, he came by only yesterday to ask me when the next quiz is.

anna 我认识他！他年轻的时候学的是工科，现在退休了，想补补人文的课。学识那么深，还那么谦虚，这才是真正的知识分子。

wǒ rènshi tā tā niánqīng de shíhou xué de shì gōngkē xiànzài tuìxiū le xiǎng bǔ bu rénwén de kè xuéshí nàme shēn hái nàme qiānxū zhè cái shì zhēnzhèng de zhīshi fènzǐ · I know him! He studied engineering when he was young, and now he's retired he wants to catch up on the humanities. So learned and still so modest: that's a true intellectual.

teacher wang 对，他是我们学校所有学生的楷模。

duì tā shì wǒmen xuéxiào suǒyǒu xuéshēng de kǎimó · Yes, he's a model for every student in our school.

little sister 您觉得夜校跟大学最大的不同是什么？

nín juéde yèxiào gēn dàxué zuì dà de bù tóng shì shénme · What do you think is the biggest difference between a night school and a university?

teacher wang 来这里的人都是自己想学，没有人旷课，更没有人作弊、抄袭。我们考查的不是背诵，是会不会用。

lái zhèlǐ de rén dōu shì zìjǐ xiǎng xué méiyǒu rén kuàngkè gèng méiyǒu rén zuòbì chāoxí wǒmen kǎochá de bú shì bèisòng shì huì bu huì yòng · People here come because they want to learn. Nobody skips class, let alone cheats or copies. What we test isn't reciting, it's whether you can use it.

little sister 我们的老师常常只是往我们脑子里灌输各种学说。为了完成学业，我们只能拼命温习、背诵。

wǒmen de lǎoshī chángcháng zhǐshì wǎng wǒmen nǎozi lǐ guànshū gèzhǒng xuéshuō wèile wánchéng xuéyè wǒmen zhǐ néng pīnmìng wēnxí bèisòng · Our lecturers often just cram theories into our heads. To get through our degrees, all we can do is revise and memorise like mad.

teacher wang 所以大家都说要给学生减负。我每天备课的时候也在想：怎么让学生自己愿意学?
suǒyǐ dàjiā dōu shuō yào gěi xuéshēng jiǎnfù wǒ měi tiān bèikè de shíhou yě zài xiǎng zěnme ràng xuéshēng zìjǐ yuànyì xué · That's why everyone says students' load needs lightening. Every day when I prepare my lessons I ask myself the same thing: how do I make students want to learn?

little sister 您有什么诀窍吗?
nín yǒu shénme juéqiào ma · Do you have a knack for it?

teacher wang 没什么秘诀，就是让学生亲身去用：去市场买菜，去医院挂号。
méi shénme mìjué jiùshì ràng xuéshēng qīnshēn qù yòng qù shìchǎng mǎi cài qù yīyuàn guàhào · No secret: I just get students to use it themselves: buying food at the market, registering at the hospital.

anna 王老师以前还训过我呢："安娜，别光记生词，要开口说！"
Wánglǎoshī yǐqián hái xùn guo wǒ ne Ānnà bié guāng jì shēng cí yào kāi kǒu shuō · Teacher Wang used to scold me, you know: "Anna, don't just learn words, open your mouth and speak!"

teacher wang 那时候夜校的新生一入学，就可以参加读书社团。很多人在这里拿到了学士文凭，后来又攻读了硕士，都很有出息。毕业多年，他们还会回来看望师长。
nà shíhou yèxiào de xīnshēng yí rùxué jiù kěyǐ cānjiā dúshū shètuán hěn duō rén zài zhèlǐ ná dào le xuéshì wénpíng hòulái yòu gōngdú le shuòshì dōu hěn yǒu chūxi bìyè duō nián tāmen hái huì huílái kànwàng shīzhǎng · Back then, as soon as new students enrolled at the night school, they could join the reading club. Many earned their bachelor's degrees here and later went on to do master's degrees, and they all did well. Years after graduating, they still came back to visit their teachers.

little sister 太好了，我想去找这些老学生！我在寝室里列个采访名单，求学的故事一定很多。
tài hǎo le wǒ xiǎng qù zhǎo zhèxiē lǎo xuéshēng wǒ zài qǐnshì lǐ liè gè cǎifǎng míngdān qiúxué de gùshi yídìng hěn duō · Brilliant, I want to find those old students! I'll make a list of people to interview back in my dorm: there must be so many stories about studying.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

旷
kuàng
neglect

good to know · Degrees: 学士 bachelor's, 硕士 master's, 博士 doctorate. 攻读 is the verb for working towards one: 攻读硕士学位. 进修 is further training once you have started work; 深造 is going on to a higher level, often abroad. Both sound positive and a little formal.

You can now tell the story of your own studies, from the dorm room to the degree certificate, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 170 reading and writing

Talk about books, notes, formats and characters while you write a long piece, and leave out a subject or object that was just mentioned (承前省略).

A thesis, a report or a long email to a Chinese colleague all need this vocabulary, and dropping what was just said is what makes Chinese prose flow.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
教科书	jiàokēshū	textbook	这本教科书已经用了二十年了。 This textbook has been in use for twenty years.
读物	dúwù	reading matter, books	图书馆里有很多适合孩子的读物。 The library has lots of books for children.
手册	shǒucè	handbook, manual	新生入学的时候，每人会拿到一本学生手册。 Each new student gets a student handbook on arrival.
指南	zhǐnán	guide, guidebook	这本旅游指南写得很详细。 This travel guide is very detailed.
百科全书	bǎikēquánshū	encyclopedia	小时候，我最喜欢翻那套百科全书。 As a child, my favourite thing was leafing through that set of encyclopedias.
辞典	cídiǎn	dictionary (of words)	他翻开辞典，查了这个词的意思。 He opened the dictionary and looked up the meaning of the word.
参见	cānjiàn	see (also), refer to	详细的数字，请参见第五页。 For the detailed figures, see page five.
引用	yǐnyòng	to quote, cite	他在文章里引用了一句古诗。 He quoted a line of classical poetry in his article.
注释	zhùshì	note, annotation; to annotate	这本古书的注释比书本身还长。 The notes in this old book are longer than the book itself.
摘要	zhāiyào	abstract, summary; to summarise	每篇论文前面都有一段摘要。 Every paper begins with an abstract.
提纲	tígāng	outline (of a talk or essay)	写文章以前，先写一个提纲。 Before you write an essay, draft an outline.
大纲	dàgāng	outline, syllabus	老师第一节课就发了这门课的大纲。 The teacher handed out the course syllabus in the very first class.
纲要	gāngyào	outline, programme (formal)	这份计划纲要只有三页，但是内容很多。 The outline of the plan is only three pages, but it covers a lot.
概论	gàilùn	introduction (to a subject)	我们大一的第一门课是“历史学概论”。 Our first course in first year was “An Introduction to History”.
专著	zhuānzhù	monograph, scholarly book	陈教授写过三本关于唐朝的专著。 Professor Chen has written three scholarly books on the Tang dynasty.

撰写	zhuànxiě	to write (formal)	她正在撰写一篇关于城市历史的文章。 She is writing an article on the history of the city.
论述	lùnshù	to discuss, expound	这一章主要论述了夜校的作用。 This chapter mainly discusses the role of night schools.
论证	lùnzhèng	to argue, prove; argument	你的观点很好，可是论证还不够。 Your point is good, but the argument for it isn't strong enough yet.
答辩	dábiàn	to defend (a thesis), reply in a defence	下个月，她要参加论文答辩。 Next month she has her thesis defence.
篇幅	piānfú	length, space (of writing)	由于篇幅有限，这里不再举例子了。 For reasons of space, we won't give more examples here.
段落	duànluò	paragraph, section	这个段落太长了，最好分成两段。 This paragraph is too long: better split it in two.
格式	géshi	format, layout	请按照学校规定的格式写论文。 Please write your thesis in the format set by the university.
省略	shěnglüè	to leave out, omit	时间不够，这一部分我就省略了。 There isn't enough time, so I'll skip this part.
通顺	tōngshùn	(of writing) smooth, readable	这篇文章写得很通顺。 This piece reads very smoothly.
简称	jiǎnchēng	short form, abbreviation	“北大”是北京大学的简称。 “Beida” is short for Peking University.
标点	biāodiǎn	punctuation	这句话的标点用错了。 The punctuation in this sentence is wrong.
括号	kuòhào	brackets	第一次出现的时候，把简称写在括号里。 The first time it appears, put the short form in brackets.
墨水	mòshuǐ	ink	爷爷写字还用钢笔和墨水。 Grandpa still writes with a fountain pen and ink.
字迹	zìjì	handwriting	这封信的字迹已经看不清了。 The handwriting on this letter can hardly be read any more.
字体	zìtǐ	typeface, font; style of writing	论文的字体和大小都有规定。 There are rules about the font and size in your thesis.
错别字	cuòbiézì	wrongly written character	这篇作文里有五个错别字。 There are five wrongly written characters in this essay.
繁体字	fántǐzì	traditional character	一百年前，中国人写的都是繁体字。 A hundred years ago, Chinese people all wrote traditional characters.
简体字	jiǎntǐzì	simplified character	很多简体字比繁体字的笔画少。 Many simplified characters have fewer strokes than the traditional ones.
部首	bùshǒu	radical (dictionary heading)	查字典的时候，可以先找部首。 To look something up in a dictionary, you can start with the radical.

偏旁	piānpáng	component of a character, side part	“河”和“湖”的偏旁都跟水有关。 The side components of 河 and 湖 both have to do with water.

pattern don’t say it twice: leaving out what was just said (承前省略)

subject | first action | ，(no subject) next action | ，(no subject) next action

Once a person or thing has been named, Chinese simply carries on without naming it again: 她打开电脑，看了看提纲，开始写. The same goes for an object: 这本书我看过，写得很好 (the book is understood). This is 承前省略, “leaving out what came before”. Repeating 她 or 它 each time sounds like a translation.

她打开电脑，看了看提纲，开始撰写第三章。 **tā dǎkāi diànnǎo kàn le kan tígāng kāishǐ zhuànxiě dì sān zhāng** She switched on her computer, glanced at the outline and started writing chapter three.

这本手册我翻了一下午，越看越有意思。 **zhè běn shǒucè wǒ fān le yí xiàwǔ yuè kàn yuè yǒu yìsi** I spent the afternoon leafing through this handbook: the more I read, the more interesting it got.

这些老笔记是在仓库里找到的，墨水都淡了，字迹还看得清。 **zhèxiē lǎo bǐjì shì zài cāngkù lǐ zhǎo dào de mòshuǐ dōu dàn le zìjì hái kàn de qīng** These old notebooks were found in the storeroom: the ink has faded, but the handwriting is still readable.

以前查资料要翻百科全书和辞典，现在上网就行了。 **yǐqián chá zīliào yào fān bǎikē quánshū hé cídiǎn xiànzài shàngwǎng jiù xíng le** You used to have to search encyclopedias and dictionaries to look things up; now you just go online.

dialogue red pen in professor chen’s office

little sister 陈教授，这是我毕业论文的提纲和第一章，您帮我看看？
Chénjiàoshòu zhè shì wǒ bìyè lùnwén de tígāng hé dì yī zhāng nín bāng wǒ kàn kan · Professor Chen, here's the outline and first chapter of my thesis: could you take a look?

professor chen 题目好，提纲也清楚。不过第一章的篇幅太长了，两万字，学士论文一共才要一万五。
tímù hǎo tígāng yě qīngchu búguò dì yī zhāng de piānfú tài cháng le liǎng wàn zì xuéshì lùnwén yígòng cái yào yí wàn wǔ · Good topic, and the outline is clear. But the first chapter is far too long: twenty thousand characters, and a bachelor's thesis only needs fifteen thousand in total.

little sister 材料太多了：当年夜校的教科书、课外读物、学生手册，还有一本“夜校教学指南”，我都舍不得省略。这些材料能揭示夜校的来历。
cáiliào tài duō le dāngnián yèxiào de jiàokēshū kè wài dúwù xuéshēng shǒucè hái yǒu yì běn yèxiào jiàoxué zhǐnán wǒ dōu shěbude shěnglüè zhèxiē cáiliào néng jiēshì yèxiào de láilì · There's so much material: the night school's old textbooks, reading books, the student handbook, and a Teaching Guide for Night Schools. I can't bear to leave any of it out. This material shows where the night schools came from.

professor chen 材料多是好事，但是要会选。跟主题关系不大的段落，删掉；真想留，就放进注释里。
cáiliào duō shì hǎo shì dànshì yào huì xuǎn gēn zhǔtí guānxì bú dà de duànluò shān diào zhēn xiǎng liú jiù fàng jìn zhùshì lǐ · Lots of material is a good thing, but you have to choose. Paragraphs that aren't really on topic: cut them. If you really want to keep them, put them in the notes.

anna 我在英国写论文的时候，老师也这么说。还有，引用别人的话，一定要写清楚参见哪本专著、哪一页，格式和字体都有规定。
wǒ zài Yīngguó xiě lùnwén de shíhou lǎoshī yě zhème shuō hái yǒu yǐnyòng biérén de huà yídìng yào xiě qīngchu cānjiàn nǎ běn zhuānzhù nǎ yí yè géshi hé zìtǐ dōu yǒu guīdìng · When I wrote my dissertation in the UK, my tutor said the same. And when you quote someone, you must say exactly which book and which page to see: there are rules for the format and even the font.

professor chen 对。你这里引用了一本“中国教育概论”，作者是谁？哪年出版的？都要写清楚，不然别人会以为是抄袭。
duì nǐ zhèlǐ yǐnyòng le yì běn Zhōngguó jiàoyù gàilùn zuòzhě shì shéi nǎ nián chūbǎn de dōu yào xiě qīngchu bùrán biérén huì yǐwéi shì chāoxí · Right. Here you quote An Introduction to Chinese Education: who wrote it? When was it published? You have to give all that, or people will think it's plagiarism.

little sister 明白了。还有，“北京第三工人夜校”太长了，我想用简称“三夜”，可以吗？
míngbai le hái yǒu Běijīng dì sān gōngrén yèxiào tài cháng le wǒ xiǎng yòng jiǎnchēng sān yè kěyǐ ma · Got it. And “Beijing No. 3 Workers' Night School” is so long: may I use the short form “Sanye”?

professor chen 可以。第一次出现的时候写全名，后面加个括号，写上简称就行。
kěyǐ dì yī cì chūxiàn de shíhou xiě quán míng hòumiàn jiā gè kuòhào xiě shàng jiǎnchēng jiù xíng · Yes. The first time it comes up, write the full name and put the short form after it in brackets.

anna 您看这些老笔记！是在王老师学校的仓库里找到的，墨水都淡了，字迹还看得清，写的都是繁体字。
nín kàn zhèxiē lǎo bǐjì shì zài Wánglǎoshī xuéxiào de cāngkù lǐ zhǎo dào de mòshuǐ dōu dàn le zìjì hái kàn de qīng xiě de dōu shì fántǐzì · Look at these old notebooks! We found them in the storeroom at Teacher Wang's school. The ink has faded, but you can still read the handwriting, and it's all in traditional characters.

professor chen 一九五六年以前，大家写的都是繁体字。后来国家公布了简体字，夜校的课本也跟着改了。这个学生还写了一个错别字，“学”字下面少了一笔。
yījiǔwǔliù nián yǐqián dàjiā xiě de dōu shì fántǐzì hòulái guójiā gōngbù le jiǎntǐzì yèxiào de kèběn yě gēn zhe gǎi le zhège xuéshēng hái xiě le yí gè cuòbiézì xué zì xiàmiàn shǎo le yì bǐ · Before 1956 everybody wrote traditional characters. Then the state announced the simplified characters, and the night schools' textbooks changed with them. This student has written a character wrong, too: 学 is missing a stroke at the bottom.

anna 这些笔记都是实物，能追溯到七十年前的夜校。
zhèxiē bǐjì dōu shì shíwù néng zhuīsù dào qīshí nián qián de yèxiào · These notebooks are the real thing: they

go back to the night school seventy years ago.

professor chen 当年的夜校不是私立学校，几乎不收钱，很多工人就是在那里求学的。
dāngnián de yèxiào bú shì sīlì xuéxiào jīhū bù shōu qián hěn duō gōngrén jiùshì zài nàlǐ qiúxué de · The night schools back then weren't private: they charged almost nothing, and many workers got their education there.

little sister 我奶奶也是在夜校认的字。她说老师先教部首和偏旁，比如“河”“湖”“海”，偏旁都是三点水，都跟水有关。
wǒ nǎinai yě shì zài yèxiào rèn de zì tā shuō lǎoshī xiān jiāo bùshǒu hé piānpáng bǐrú hé hú hǎi piānpáng dōu shì sān diǎn shuǐ dōu gēn shuǐ yǒuguān · My grandma learned to read at a night school too. She says the teacher started with radicals and components: 河, 湖 and 海 all have the three-drop water component, and all have to do with water.

professor chen 这个例子很直观，可以写进论文。论述不能只讲道理，要用例子来论证。还有，这几句的标点要改改，读起来不通顺。
zhège lìzi hěn zhíguān kěyǐ xiě jìn lùnwén lùnshù bù néng zhǐ jiǎng dàolǐ yào yòng lìzi lái lùnzhèng hái yǒu zhè jǐ jù de biāodiǎn yào gǎi gai dú qǐlai bù tōngshùn · That example is very clear: it can go in your thesis. You can't just state principles: you need examples to prove your point. And fix the punctuation in these lines: they don't read smoothly.

little sister 好的，我回去重新撰写第一章，摘要和大纲下周给您。
hǎo de wǒ huíqù chóngxīn zhuànxiě dì yī zhāng zhāiyào hé dàgāng xià zhōu gěi nín · All right, I'll go back and rewrite chapter one. You'll have the abstract and the outline next week.

professor chen 好。下个月就要答辩了，学校发的那份答辩纲要，你先看一遍。
hǎo xià gè yuè jiù yào dábiàn le xuéxiào fā de nà fèn dábiàn gāngyào nǐ xiān kàn yí biàn · Good. Your defence is next month, so read through the defence guidelines the university handed out first.

little sister 好的。我今天晚上就在寝室里把它读一遍。
hǎo de wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang jiù zài qǐnshì lǐ bǎ tā dú yí biàn · All right. I'll read it through in my dorm tonight.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

撰
zhuàn
compose

good to know · Chinese counts the length of a text in characters (字), not words: a 一万字 thesis is about 6,000 to 7,000 English words. 部首 and 偏旁 overlap: every radical is a component, but a dictionary files each character under just one radical. 河 is filed under 氵, the water radical.

You can now talk through a draft in Chinese, from the outline to the last bracket, and write prose that doesn't say everything twice.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 171 learning from others

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 23 · study and research

Talk about learning from teachers, books and colleagues, and frame what you say with 归根到底 (in the final analysis), 无论如何 (whatever happens) and 总而言之 (in a word).

These three markers turn a list of thoughts into a speech with a point. You will hear them in every lecture, meeting and wedding toast.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
会意	huìyì	to understand (without words); ideograph	他看了我一眼，会意地笑了。 He glanced at me and smiled: he knew what I meant.
文	wén	writing, written language	古人说“文如其人”。 The ancients said: “The writing is like the writer.”
文盲	wénmáng	illiterate person; illiteracy	七十年前，村里很多老人是文盲。 Seventy years ago, many old people in the village couldn’t read.
译	yì	to translate (written)	这本小说已经被译成了二十种语言。 This novel has been translated into twenty languages.
阅览	yuèlǎn	to read (in a library)	图书馆二楼是阅览室。 The reading room is on the library’s first floor.
涉猎	shèliè	to read widely, dip into	他读书很广，历史、科学、文学都有涉猎。 He reads widely: history, science, literature, he’s dipped into it all.
汲取	jíqǔ	to draw (lessons, strength) from	我们要从失败中汲取经验。 We should learn from our failures.
钻研	zuānyán	to study in depth	他退休以后，一直在钻研书法。 Since he retired, he has been studying calligraphy in depth.
切磋	qiēcuō	to learn from each other, compare notes	两个学校的老师常常在一起切磋。 Teachers from the two schools often get together to compare notes.
观摩	guānmó	to observe and learn from	今天有十几位老师来观摩她的课。 A dozen or so teachers came to observe her class today.
启迪	qǐdí	to inspire; inspiration	这本书给了我很多启迪。 This book has given me a lot to think about.
启蒙	qǐméng	to teach the basics, enlighten	我的启蒙老师是一位小学老师。 The person who first taught me was a primary-school teacher.
陶冶	táoyě	to shape, cultivate (character)	音乐可以陶冶人的心灵。 Music can nourish the soul.
熏陶	xūntáo	to influence gradually, nurture	从小受到父母的熏陶，她也爱上了读书。 Nurtured by her parents from an early age,

			she too came to love reading.
聚焦	jùjiāo	to focus on	这次会议聚焦农村的教育问题。 This conference focuses on education in the countryside.
亮相	liàngxiàng	to appear, make one's debut	新的阅览室今天第一次亮相。 The new reading room makes its first appearance today.
灵通	língtōng	well-informed, quick (of news)	你的消息真灵通，我刚知道你就知道了！ You're so well-informed: you knew the moment I found out!
归根到底	guīgēndàodǐ	in the final analysis, at root	归根到底，学习是自己的事。 In the final analysis, learning is up to you.
无论如何	wúlùnrúhé	whatever happens, in any case	无论如何，我都要把论文写完。 Whatever happens, I'm going to finish my thesis.
总而言之	zǒngéryánzhī	in a word, in short	总而言之，学语言没有捷径。 In a word, there are no shortcuts to learning a language.
到头来	dàotóulái	in the end, after all	他忙了一年，到头来什么也没得到。 He worked hard for a whole year, and in the end got nothing for it.
反之	fǎnzhī	conversely, otherwise	多读书，进步就快；反之，进步就慢。 Read a lot and you make fast progress; otherwise, it's slow.
好比	hǎobǐ	to be like, can be compared to	读书好比交朋友。 Reading is like making friends.
譬如	pìrú	for example	有些汉字很好记，譬如“人”和“口”。 Some characters are easy to remember: for example 人 and 口.
可不是	kěbùshi	exactly! isn't it just!	可不是，今天真热！ You can say that again: it's so hot today!

pattern 归根到底, 无论如何 and 总而言之: getting to the point

details, reasons , **归根到底 / 总而言之** , **the core point**

归根到底 “in the final analysis” digs down to the real cause or point. 总而言之 “in a word” sums up a list at the end. 无论如何 “whatever happens, no matter what” comes before a firm decision, usually with 都 or 也: 无论如何都要去.

方法有很多种，归根到底，还是要多练。 **fāngfǎ yǒu hěn duō zhǒng guīgēn dàodǐ háishi yào duō liàn**
There are lots of methods, but in the final analysis, it comes down to practice.

明天的答辩，你无论如何不能迟到。 **míngtiān de dábiàn nǐ wúlùn rúhé bù néng chídào** Whatever happens, you mustn't be late for your defence tomorrow.

观摩别人的课，跟同事切磋，自己钻研，总而言之，要向别人学习。 **guānmó biérén de kè gēn tóngshì qiēcuō zìjǐ zuānyán zǒngéryánzhī yào xiàng biérén xuéxí** Watch other people teach, compare notes with colleagues, study on your own: in a word, learn from others.

dialogue an open class

anna

今天学校怎么这么热闹?

jīntiān xuéxiào zěnme zhème rènao · Why is the school so busy today?

teacher wang

别的学校来了十几位老师，观摩我的课。新的阅览室今天也第一次亮相。

biéde xuéxiào lái le shí jǐ wèi lǎoshī guānmó wǒ de kè xīn de yuèlǎn shì jīntiān yě dì yī cì liàngxiàng · A dozen teachers from other schools have come to watch my class. And the new reading room makes its debut today.

little sister

王老师，您的消息真灵通，我刚说要写夜校，您就把老笔记找出来了！今天讲什么?

Wánglǎoshī nín de xiāoxi zhēn língtōng wǒ gāng shuō yào xiě yèxiào nín jiù bǎ lǎo bǐjì zhǎo chulai le jīntiān jiǎng shénme · Teacher Wang, you're so well-informed: I'd only just said I was writing about night schools and you'd already dug out the old notebooks! What's today's class?

teacher wang

讲会意字。很多会意字由两个偏旁组成。譬如“从”，是一个人跟着另一个人走；“看”，是把手放在眼睛上面，往远处看。学生一看就会意了。

jiǎng huìyì zì hěn duō huìyì zì yóu liǎng gè piānpáng zǔchéng pìrú cóng shì yí gè rén gēn zhe lìng yí gè rén zǒu kàn shì bǎ shǒu fàng zài yǎnjing shàngmiàn wǎng yuǎn chù kàn xuéshēng yí kàn jiù huìyì le · Ideographs: characters that join two meanings. Many are made of two components. For example 从: one person following another. Or 看: a hand held over an eye, looking into the distance. Students get it at a glance.

anna

以前我常写错别字，就是因为没弄懂一个字为什么这么写。我刚来北京的时候，差不多是个“中文文盲”，是王老师给我启蒙的。

yǐqián wǒ cháng xiě cuòbiézì jiùshì yīnwèi méi nòng dǒng yí gè zì wèi shénme zhème xiě wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou chàbuduō shì gè Zhōngwén wénmáng shì Wánglǎoshī gěi wǒ qǐméng de · I used to write characters wrong all the time, because I hadn't understood why a character is written the way it is. When I first came to Beijing I was more or less illiterate in Chinese. Teacher Wang taught me my first steps.

little sister

夜校的老学生也这么说。我奶奶那时候是文盲，她说夜校的老师不只教她认字，还启迪她去想：人为什么要读书。

yèxiào de lǎo xuéshēng yě zhème shuō wǒ nǎinai nà shíhou shì wénmáng tā shuō yèxiào de lǎoshī bù zhǐ jiāo tā rèn zì hái qǐdí tā qù xiǎng rén wèi shénme yào dúshū · The night school's old students say the same. My grandma couldn't read back then. She says the teachers didn't just teach her characters: they got her thinking about why people read at all.

teacher wang

一开始大家只想认几个字，到头来，很多人什么书都涉猎，有的还开始钻研历史和文学。

yì kāishǐ dàjiā zhǐ xiǎng rèn jǐ gè zì dàotóulái hěn duō rén shénme shū dōu shèliè yǒude hái kāishǐ zuānyán lìshǐ hé wénxué · At first people only wanted to learn a few characters, and in the end lots of them read everything they could find; some even started studying history and literature seriously.

little sister

很多人后来还继续进修，有的去大学深造了。

hěn duō rén hòulái hái jìxù jìnxiū yǒude qù dàxué shēnzào le · Many of them went on to further study later, and some went to university.

anna

上个月，我把一首唐朝的诗译成了我的母语，查了好几本辞典。可惜译完以后，诗的味道少了一半。

shàng gè yuè wǒ bǎ yì shǒu Tángcháo de shī yì chéng le wǒ de mǔyǔ chá le hǎo jǐ běn cídiǎn kěxī yì wán yǐhòu shī de wèidào shǎo le yíbàn · Last month I translated a Tang poem into my own language, and looked things up in several dictionaries. Pity that once it was translated, half the flavour was gone.

teacher wang

古人说“文如其人”，诗也一样，很难完全译出来。不过译的时候，你一定汲取了很多东西。

gǔrén shuō wén rú qí rén shī yě yíyàng hěn nán wánquán yì chulai búguò yì de shíhou nǐ yídìng jíqǔ le hěn duō dōngxi · The ancients said “the writing is like the writer”, and poems are the same: you can never fully translate them. But I'm sure you took a lot from it as you translated.

little sister

您除了备课，平时怎么提高自己的教学?

nín chúle bèikè píngshí zěnme tígāo zìjǐ de jiàoxué · Besides preparing lessons, how do you keep improving your teaching?

teacher wang 跟别的老师切磋，去别的学校观摩，自己读书。总而言之，向别人学习。
gēn biéde lǎoshī qiēcuō qù biéde xuéxiào guānmó zìjǐ dúshū zǒngéryánzhī xiàng biérén xuéxí · I compare notes with other teachers, observe classes at other schools and read. In a word: learn from others.

anna 王老师还给我们列了一份课外读物的清单。
Wánglǎoshī hái gěi wǒmen liè le yí fèn kè wài dúwù de qīngdān · Teacher Wang even made us a list of extra reading.

little sister 我觉得夜校最好的是那种气氛：大家在一起读书，慢慢就受到了熏陶。
wǒ juéde yèxiào zuìhǎo de shì nà zhǒng qìfēn dàjiā zài yìqǐ dúshū màn màn jiù shòudào le xūntáo · I think the best thing about the night schools was the atmosphere: everyone reading together, and gradually it rubs off on you.

teacher wang 可不是。读书好比交朋友，可以陶冶人的心灵；反之，只为考试读书，就没意思了。归根到底，学习是自己的事。
kěbùshi dúshū hǎobǐ jiāo péngyou kěyǐ táoyě rén de xīnlíng fǎnzhī zhǐ wèi kǎoshì dúshū jiù méi yìsi le guīgēn dàodǐ xuéxí shì zìjǐ de shì · Exactly. Reading is like making friends: it nourishes the soul. Read only for exams, on the other hand, and it's no fun. In the final analysis, learning is down to you.

teacher wang 好了，上课了！今天的观摩课聚焦一个问题：怎么让学生爱上汉字。你的论文呢，无论如何要按时交！
hǎo le shàngkè le jīntiān de guānmó kè jùjiāo yí gè wèntí zěnme ràng xuéshēng ài shàng Hànzì nǐ de lùnwén ne wúlùn rúhé yào ànshí jiāo · Right, class is starting! Today's open class focuses on one question: how to make students fall in love with characters. As for your thesis: whatever happens, hand it in on time!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

汲
jí
draw water

迪
dí
guide

good to know · 归根到底 and 归根结底 mean the same: "in the final analysis". Both are common. 可不是 (可不是嘛, 可不) is a warm, spoken way to agree strongly: "You can say that again!"

With these three little markers, your Chinese now has a beginning, a middle and a point.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 172 thinking it over

Talk about thinking, remembering and weighing up a decision, and sum things up with 简而言之 (in short) and 总而言之 (in a word).

Chinese has a word for every shade of thinking, from 琢磨 (turning it over) to 权衡 (weighing up). They are how people talk about big choices.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
沉思	chénsī	to ponder, be lost in thought	她坐在窗前，陷入了沉思。 She sat by the window, lost in thought.
深思	shēnsī	to think deeply about	这个问题值得我们深思。 This question deserves serious thought.
思索	sīsuǒ	to think hard, search one's mind	他思索了很久，才回答我的问题。 He thought for a long time before answering my question.
思绪	sīxù	train of thought; mood	外面太吵，打断了我的思绪。 The noise outside broke my train of thought.
琢磨	zuómo	to turn over in one's mind, puzzle over	这件事我琢磨了好几天。 I've been turning this over in my mind for days.
推敲	tuīqiāo	to weigh one's words, polish (writing)	这句话我又推敲了一遍。 I went over the wording of this sentence once again.
斟酌	zhēnzhuó	to consider carefully, weigh	写结论的时候，每个字都要斟酌。 When you write the conclusion, every word has to be weighed.
揣摩	chuǎimó	to try to figure out, fathom	他一直在揣摩老板的意思。 He keeps trying to work out what the boss means.
揣测	chuǎicè	to guess, speculate	别乱揣测别人的想法。 Don't go guessing what other people are thinking.
猜想	cāixiǎng	to guess, suppose; conjecture	这只是我的猜想，还没有证据。 This is only my guess: there's no evidence yet.
盘算	pánsuan	to figure, plan, calculate	他心里盘算着明年去哪儿工作。 He's quietly working out where to work next year.
考量	kǎoliáng	to consider; consideration	选学校的时候，他的考量主要是离家近。 When choosing a school, his main consideration was being close to home.
权衡	quánhéng	to weigh up	他权衡了很久，最后决定留在北京。 He weighed it up for a long time, and in the end decided to stay in Beijing.
顾及	gùjí	to take into account, give thought to	做决定的时候，也要顾及家人的感受。 When you make a decision, take your family's feelings into account too.

着眼	zhuóyǎn	to have in mind, focus on	我们要着眼于长远。 We should keep the long term in view.
着重	zhuózhòng	to stress, emphasise	这次会议着重讨论了教育问题。 This meeting concentrated on education.
侧重	cèzhòng	to focus on, lay stress on	这门课侧重口语，不太考语法。 This course focuses on speaking, and doesn't test much grammar.
心思	xīnsi	thoughts, mind; mood	她的心思全在论文上。 Her mind is entirely on her thesis.
念头	niàntou	idea, thought, notion	我突然有了一个念头。 A thought suddenly came to me.
脑海	nǎohǎi	mind, memory	那张老照片一直在我脑海里。 That old photo stays in my mind.
浮现	fúxiàn	to appear, come to mind	一闭上眼睛，她的样子就浮现|在我眼前。 As soon as I close my eyes, I see her face.
回想	huíxiǎng	to think back, recall	回想起来，那是我最快乐的一年。 Looking back, that was the happiest year of my life.
回首	huíshǒu	to look back (on the past)	回首过去的十年，我很感谢身边的人。 Looking back on the past ten years, I'm grateful to the people around me.
遗忘	yíwàng	to forget	这些老故事不应该被遗忘。 These old stories shouldn't be forgotten.
牢记	láojì	to keep firmly in mind	老师的|话，我一直牢记在心。 I've always kept my teacher's words close to my heart.
铭记	míngjì	to engrave on one's mind	我们要铭记历史。 We must never forget history.
切记	qièjì	be sure to remember	切记：出门前关好门窗。 Be sure to close the doors and windows before you go out.
记性	jìxing	memory (ability to remember)	我的记性越来越差了。 My memory is getting worse and worse.
下意识	xiàyìshí	subconscious; instinctively	一紧张，她就下意识地摸头发。 Whenever she's nervous, she touches her hair without thinking.
直觉	zhíjué	intuition	我的直觉告诉我，他说的是真话。 My gut tells me he's telling the truth.
预感	yùgǎn	premonition; to have a feeling	我有一种预感，明天会有好消息。 I have a feeling there'll be good news tomorrow.
预见	yùjiàn	to foresee; foresight	十年前，谁也没有预见到今天的变化。 Ten years ago, nobody foresaw today's changes.
远见	yuǎnjiàn	vision, foresight	他是一个很有远见的人。 He's a man of great vision.
预言	yùyán	to predict, prophesy; prophecy	他的预言后来真的实现了。 His prediction later came true.
展望	zhǎnwàng	to look ahead; outlook	文章的最后，作者展望了未来。 At the end of the article, the author looks ahead to the future.

pattern review: 简而言之 (in short) and 总而言之 (in a word)

a long explanation or a list | ，简而言之 / 总而言之 | ，the short version

简而言之 “in short” squeezes one long explanation into a line: it often comes after you have talked for a while. 总而言之 “in a word” gathers several points into one conclusion. Both are a little formal; in chat, people also say 简单地说.

这个问题我想了很久，简而言之，就是时间不够。 **zhège wèntí wǒ xiǎng le hěn jiǔ jiǎnéryánzhī jiùshì shíjiān búgòu** I’ve thought about it for a long time. In short: there isn’t enough time.

有人想读书，有人想工作，有人想出国，总而言之，每个人的路都不一样。 **yǒu rén xiǎng dúshū yǒu rén xiǎng gōngzuò yǒu rén xiǎng chūguó zǒngéryánzhī měi gè rén de lù dōu bù yíyàng** Some want to study, some want to work, some want to go abroad: in a word, everyone’s path is different.

结论不用长，简而言之：说清楚你发现了什么。 **jiélùn búyòng cháng jiǎnéryánzhī shuō qīngchu nǐ fāxiàn le shénme** The conclusion needn’t be long. In short: say clearly what you found.

dialogue what’s on her mind

ms zhang 安娜，你来得正好。她在桌子前坐了一下午，一动不动，不知道在沉思什么。
Ānnà nǐ lái de zhènghǎo tā zài zhuōzi qián zuò le yí xiàwǔ yídòng búdòng bù zhīdào zài chénsī shénme · Anna, perfect timing. She's been sitting at her desk all afternoon without moving, lost in thought about who knows what.

little sister 在推敲结论呢。最后一段我改了五遍，每个字都要斟酌，篇幅也不能太长。前面几章侧重历史，结论要着重写今天的意义，还要着眼未来，写一点展望。
zài tuīqiāo jiélùn ne zuìhòu yí duàn wǒ gǎi le wǔ biàn měi gè zì dōu yào zhēnzhuó piānfú yě bù néng tài cháng qiánmiàn jǐ zhāng cèzhòng lìshǐ jiélùn yào zhuózhòng xiě jīntiān de yìyì hái yào zhuóyǎn wèilái xiě yìdiǎn zhǎnwàng · I'm polishing my conclusion. I've rewritten the last paragraph five times: every word has to be weighed, and it can't be too long either. The earlier chapters focus on history, so the conclusion has to stress what it all means today, look to the future and add a bit of an outlook.

ms zhang 我揣摩着，你的心思不只在论文上吧？
wǒ chuǎimó zhe nǐ de xīnsi bù zhǐ zài lùnwén shàng ba · I have a feeling your mind isn't only on your thesis, is it?

little sister 妈妈，您真会揣测别人的心思。我有一个念头：毕业以后，跟陈教授读历史硕士。可是我的思绪很乱，一想到这件事，就下意识地摸头发。
māma nín zhēn huì chuǎicè biérén de xīnsi wǒ yǒu yí gè niàntou bìyè yǐhòu gēn Chénjiàoshòu dú lìshǐ shuòshì kěshì wǒ de sīxù hěn luàn yì xiǎng dào zhè jiàn shì jiù xiàyìshí de mō tóufa · Mum, you're so good at guessing what people are thinking. I've had an idea: after I graduate, to do a master's in history with Professor Chen. But my thoughts are all over the place: whenever I think about it, I start touching my hair without noticing.

ms zhang 这件事要好好权衡。读书要好几年，工作的机会也不能不顾及。陈教授怎么说？
zhè jiàn shì yào hǎohǎo quánhéng dúshū yào hǎo jǐ nián gōngzuò de jīhuì yě bù néng bú gùjí Chénjiàoshòu zěnme shuō · You need to weigh this up carefully. Studying takes years, and you have to think about job opportunities too. What does Professor Chen say?

little sister 他说，读书不只是学业上的考量，还要想清楚自己喜欢什么，做研究要肯钻研。我已经琢磨了好几天了。
tā shuō dúshū bù zhǐshì xuéyè shàng de kǎoliáng hái yào xiǎng qīngchu zìjǐ xǐhuan shénme zuò yánjiū yào kěn zuānyán wǒ yǐjīng zuómo le hǎo jǐ tiān le · He says it isn't only an academic decision: I need to be clear about what I love, and research means being willing to dig deep. I've been turning it over for days.

ms zhang 这是你自己的前程，要自主决定。
zhè shì nǐ zìjǐ de qiánchéng yào zìzhǔ juédìng · It's your own future: you have to decide for yourself.

anna 我当年来中国，也盘算了很久，家里人都觉得我太冒险。可是我的直觉告诉我：一定要来。
wǒ dāngnián lái Zhōngguó yě pánsuan le hěn jiǔ jiā lǐ rén dōu juéde wǒ tài màoxiǎn kěshì wǒ de zhíjué gàosu wǒ yídìng yào lái · When I came to China, I spent ages working it out too, and my family thought it was far too risky. But my gut told me: you have to go.

little sister 你后悔过吗？
nǐ hòuhuǐ guo ma · Have you ever regretted it?

anna 从来没有。回首这些年，很多事我都遗忘了，可是第一节中文课，我一直牢记在心。回想起来，那时候我连“你好”都说不清楚。王老师却预言：“你一定能学好。”
cónglái méiyǒu huíshǒu zhèxiē nián hěn duō shì wǒ dōu yíwàng le kěshì dì yī jié Zhōngwén kè wǒ yìzhí láojì zài xīn huíxiǎng qǐlai nà shíhou wǒ lián nǐhǎo dōu shuō bu qīngchu Wánglǎoshī què yùyán nǐ yídìng néng xué hǎo · Never. Looking back on these years, I've forgotten a lot, but I still remember my first Chinese class. When I think back, I couldn't even say 你好 properly. And yet Teacher Wang predicted: "You'll learn it well, you'll see."

little sister 王老师是你的启蒙老师吧？
Wánglǎoshī shì nǐ de qǐméng lǎoshī ba · Teacher Wang was the one who first taught you, wasn't she?

ms zhang 王老师有远见。十年前，谁能预见你今天会看中文报纸？可惜我的记性不好，那时候的事都记不清了。
Wánglǎoshī yǒu yuǎnjiàn shí nián qián shéi néng yùjiàn nǐ jīntiān huì kàn Zhōngwén bàozhǐ kěxī wǒ de jìxing

bù hǎo nà shíhou de shì dōu jì bu qīng le · Teacher Wang has vision. Ten years ago, who could have foreseen you reading Chinese newspapers today? Shame my memory's so bad: I can't remember much from back then.

little sister 我还在想另一件事。在那些老笔记里，我找到一张老照片：一位年轻的女老师站在夜校门口。这几天她的样子总在我脑海里浮现。我有一种预感，她跟王老师有关系。我想好好探究一下。

wǒ hái zài xiǎng lìng yí jiàn shì zài nàxiē lǎo bǐjì lǐ wǒ zhǎo dào yì zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn yí wèi niánqīng de nǚ lǎoshī zhàn zài yèxiào ménkǒu zhè jǐ tiān tā de yàngzi zǒng zài wǒ nǎohǎi lǐ fúxiàn wǒ yǒu yì zhǒng yùgǎn tā gēn Wánglǎoshī yǒu guānxì wǒ xiǎng hǎohǎo tànjiū yíxià · There's something else I keep thinking about. Among those old notebooks I found an old photo: a young woman teacher standing at the gate of the night school. Her face keeps coming back to me. I have a feeling she has something to do with Teacher Wang. I want to look into it properly.

anna 是直觉，还是有证据？

shì zhíjué háishi yǒu zhèngjù · Is that intuition, or do you have evidence?

little sister 只是猜想。照片后面写着一行字：“切记：教人先教心。”这句话值得深思，我想把它铭记在心。

zhǐshì cāixiǎng zhàopiàn hòumiàn xiě zhe yì háng zì qièjì jiāo rén xiān jiāo xīn zhè jù huà zhídé shēnsī wǒ xiǎng bǎ tā míngjì zài xīn · Just a guess. On the back of the photo there's a line: “Remember: to teach people, first teach the heart.” That's worth thinking about, and I want to keep it close to my heart.

anna 这句话对我也很有启迪。

zhè jù huà duì wǒ yě hěn yǒu qǐdí · That line speaks to me too.

ms zhang 好了，你们俩别再思索了，先吃饭。简而言之：饭凉了！

hǎo le nǐmen liǎ bié zài sīsuǒ le xiān chī fàn jiǎnéryánzhī fàn liáng le · Right, you two, enough deep thinking: dinner first. In short: the food's getting cold!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

揣
chuāi
to tuck (into clothing)

琢
zuó
carve jade

good to know · 推敲 comes from a Tang story: the poet 贾岛 could not decide whether a visitor “pushes” (推) or “knocks on” (敲) a moonlit gate, and walked into a high official's procession while miming both. 记性 is your ability to remember (我记性不好); 记忆 is memory as what you remember (美好的记忆).

You can now talk about a big decision in Chinese, from the first 念头 to the final 权衡.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 173 seeing clearly

Talk about noticing, telling things apart and understanding at last, agree strongly with 可不是嘛, and order a piece of reasoning step by step.

Spotting a detail, telling two things apart and suddenly seeing the light: this is the language of research, detective stories and everyday life.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
领会	lǐnghuì	to grasp, understand	我领会您的意思了。 I see what you mean.
领悟	lǐngwù	to come to understand, realise	读了这本书，我才领悟到父母的用心。 It was only after reading this book that I understood what my parents had meant for me.
领略	lǐnglüè	to experience, appreciate	我们在西安领略了这座古城的风采。 In Xi'an we got a taste of the old city's splendour.
觉悟	juéwù	awareness, consciousness; to realise	这位老师的觉悟很高，从来不收学生的礼物。 This teacher has high principles and never accepts presents from students.
觉醒	juéxǐng	to awaken	读书让很多普通人觉醒了。 Reading awakened many ordinary people.
醒悟	xǐngwù	to wake up to the truth, see the light	他到了四十岁才醒悟，健康最重要。 Only at forty did he wake up to the fact that health matters most.
心得	xīndé	what one has learned, insights	请大家写一写这次实习的心得。 Please write a little about what you learned on this internship.
见识	jiànshi	knowledge, experience; to see, experience	他去过很多国家，见识很广。 He has been to many countries and seen a lot of the world.
阅历	yuèlì	life experience	他阅历很丰富，看问题很全面。 He has a lot of life experience and sees problems from every side.
眼界	yǎnjiè	horizons, field of vision	旅行可以开阔眼界。 Travel broadens the mind.
视野	shìyě	field of vision; horizons	读书让孩子的视野更开阔。 Reading opens up children's horizons.
视角	shìjiǎo	perspective, angle	换一个视角看问题，也许会有新的发现。 Look at the problem from a different angle, and you may find something new.
发觉	fājué	to find, realise	我走到楼下才发觉忘了带钥匙。 Only when I got downstairs did I realise I'd forgotten my keys.
察觉	chájué	to notice, become aware of	她很快察觉到了朋友的不安。 She soon sensed her friend's unease.

留心	liúxīn	to be careful, pay attention	过马路要留心来往的车。 Watch out for the traffic when you cross the road.
留意	liúyì	to pay attention, keep an eye out	我没留意他是什么时候走的。 I didn't notice when he left.
辨别	biànbié	to distinguish, tell apart	要学会辨别网上消息的真假{jia3}。 You need to learn to tell true news from fake online.
辨认	biànrèn	to recognise, identify	照片太旧了，人的样子已经很难辨认了。 The photo is so old that the faces are hard to make out.
分辨	fēnbiàn	to distinguish	黑白照片很难分辨衣服的颜色。 In a black-and-white photo it's hard to tell the colours of the clothes.
鉴别	jiànbié	to authenticate, appraise	专家正在鉴别这幅画是真|是假{jia3}。 Experts are working out whether this painting is genuine.
不解	bùjiě	to not understand, be puzzled	他突然生气了，大家都很不解。 He suddenly got angry, and nobody could understand why.
困惑	kùnhuò	puzzled, confused	这个问题让很多学生感到困惑。 This question leaves many students confused.
迷惑	míhuò	puzzled; to confuse, mislead	别被他的|话迷惑了。 Don't be taken in by what he says.
混淆	hùnxiáo	to confuse, mix up	这两个词意思很像，很容易混淆。 These two words mean nearly the same, so they're easy to mix up.
错觉	cuòjué	false impression, illusion	我有一种错觉，好像她在看着我。 I have the strange feeling she's looking at me.
幻觉	huànjué	hallucination	刚才是我的幻觉吗？我好像听到有人叫我。 Was I imagining it just now? I thought I heard someone call me.
幻影	huànyǐng	phantom, unreal image	雾里的高楼像一个幻影。 In the fog the tall building looks like a mirage.
梦幻	mènghuàn	dreamlike, magical	晚上的湖边，灯光很梦幻。 By the lake at night the lights look like something out of a dream.
虚幻	xūhuàn	unreal, illusory	网上的生活有时候很虚幻。 Life online can feel unreal at times.
空想	kōngxiǎng	daydream; to daydream	光空想没有用，要去做。 Daydreaming is no use: you have to do it.
妄想	wàngxiǎng	wishful thinking; to vainly hope	一个月就学好中文？那简直是妄想。 Master Chinese in a month? That's a fantasy.
玄	xuán	mysterious, far-fetched	你说得太玄了，我不信。 That sounds far-fetched: I don't believe it.
玄机	xuánjī	hidden meaning, mystery	这幅画里藏着很多玄机。 There are lots of hidden meanings in this painting.

奥秘	àomì	mystery, secret (of nature)	科学家们一直在探索宇宙的奥秘。 Scientists keep exploring the mysteries of the universe.
谜团	mítuán	mystery, riddle	这张照片里藏着一个谜团。 There's a mystery hidden in this photo.

pattern 可不(是嘛): "exactly!", and reasoning in order

A says something | **可不(是嘛)!** | **B backs it up with more**

可不是嘛 (or 可不是, or just 可不) is a warm spoken "isn't it just!": you agree strongly, then usually add a detail of your own. And when you explain how you reached a view, keep it in order: 首先……，其次……，最后…… (from day 167).

"这张照片真老啊。""可不是嘛，差不多七十年了。" **zhè zhāng zhàopiàn zhēn lǎo a kěbùshi ma chàbuduō qīshí nián le** "This photo is so old." "Isn't it just: almost seventy years."

"做研究要特别留心细节。""可不是！一个小细节就能改变结论。" **zuò yánjiū yào tèbié liúxīn xìjié kěbùshi yí gè xiǎo xìjié jiù néng gǎibiàn jiélùn** "In research you have to watch the details." "Absolutely! One small detail can change your conclusion."

鉴别一张老照片，首先看衣服，其次看背景，最后看照片后面的字。 **jiànbié yì zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn shǒuxiān kàn yīfu qícì kàn bèijǐng zuìhòu kàn zhàopiàn hòumiàn de zì** To date an old photo, first look at the clothes, then the background, and finally the writing on the back.

dialogue reading an old photo

little sister 陈教授，您帮我鉴别一下这张照片吧。我琢磨了好几天，越看越困惑。
Chénjiàoshòu nín bāng wǒ jiànbié yíxià zhè zhāng zhàopiàn ba wǒ zuómo le hǎo jǐ tiān yuè kàn yuè kùnhuò · Professor Chen, could you help me date this photo? I've been turning it over for days, and the more I look, the more puzzled I get.

professor chen 我看看。鉴别老照片，首先看衣服，其次看背景，最后看照片后面的字。
wǒ kàn kan jiànbié lǎo zhàopiàn shǒuxiān kàn yīfu qícì kàn bèijǐng zuìhòu kàn zhàopiàn hòumiàn de zì · Let me see. To date an old photo, you look first at the clothes, then at the background, and last at any writing on the back.

little sister 我先回想一下：照片是在王老师学校的仓库里找到的，夹在一本老笔记里。
wǒ xiān huíxiǎng yíxià zhàopiàn shì zài Wánglǎoshī xuéxiào de cāngkù lǐ zhǎo dào de jiā zài yì běn lǎo bǐjì lǐ · Let me think back first: the photo was found in the storeroom at Teacher Wang's school, tucked inside an old notebook.

anna 她的衣服很朴素，头发很短。黑白照片虽然分辨不出颜色，可是看样子像五十年代。
tā de yīfu hěn pǔsù tóufa hěn duǎn hēi bái zhàopiàn suīrán fēnbiàn bu chū yánsè kěshì kàn yàngzi xiàng wǔshí niándài · Her clothes are very plain and her hair is short. You can't make out the colours in a black-and-white photo, but it looks like the fifties.

professor chen 可不是嘛！你的眼光不错。再看背景：门上的牌子写的是“第三工人夜校”，字已经淡了，不留意的话看不出来，可是还能辨认出来。
kěbùshi ma nǐ de yǎnguāng búcuò zài kàn bèijǐng mén shàng de páizi xiě de shì dì sān gōngrén yèxiào zì yǐjīng dàn le bù liúyì dehuà kàn bu chulai kěshì hái néng biànrèn chulai · Exactly! You've got a good eye. Now the background: the sign on the gate says "No. 3 Workers' Night School". It's faded, and you'd miss it if you weren't paying attention, but you can still make it out.

little sister 我一开始没察觉，后来才发觉牌子旁边还有两个小字：“东城”。当年北京有好几所“第三夜校”，很容易混淆。
wǒ yì kāishǐ méi chájué hòulái cái fājué páizi pángbiān hái yǒu liǎng gè xiǎo zì dōng chéng dāngnián Běijīng yǒu hǎo jǐ suǒ dì sān yèxiào hěn róngyì hùnxiáo · I didn't notice at first, but later I realised there are two small characters beside the sign: "Dongcheng", the district. Back then Beijing had several "No. 3 night schools", so they're easy to mix up.

professor chen 所以要留心细节。这是我做了四十年研究的心得：细节里常常有玄机。网上的老照片很多，要学会辨别真假，别被迷惑了。
suǒyǐ yào liúxīn xìjié zhè shì wǒ zuò le sìshí nián yánjiū de xīndé xìjié lǐ chángcháng yǒu xuánjī wǎngshang de lǎo zhàopiàn hěn duō yào xuéhuì biànbié zhēn jiǎ bié bèi míhuò le · That's why you have to watch the details. It's what forty years of research have taught me: details often hide the key. There are lots of old photos online, and you have to learn to tell real from fake and not be taken in.

anna 您看她的眼睛。她的样子一直在我脑海里。我有一种错觉，好像她马上就要说话了。
nín kàn tā de yǎnjing tā de yàngzi yìzhí zài wǒ nǎohǎi lǐ wǒ yǒu yì zhǒng cuòjué hǎoxiàng tā mǎshàng jiù yào shuōhuà le · Look at her eyes. I can't get her face out of my mind. I have the oddest feeling she's about to speak.

little sister 我也是！有时候我觉得是幻觉，她像一个梦幻里的幻影。哈哈，我是不是太累了？
wǒ yě shì yǒu shíhou wǒ juéde shì huànjué tā xiàng yí gè mènghuàn lǐ de huànyǐng hā hā wǒ shì bu shì tài lèi le · Me too! Sometimes I think I'm imagining it, like a phantom in a dream. Ha, am I just too tired?

professor chen 你不是累，是想知道历史的奥秘。不过不能空想。切记：没有证据，结论就是虚幻的。
nǐ bú shì lèi shì xiǎng zhīdào lìshǐ de àomì búguò bù néng kōngxiǎng qièjì méiyǒu zhèngjù jiélùn jiùshì xūhuàn de · You're not tired, you want to know history's secrets. But you can't just daydream. Remember: without evidence, a conclusion is an illusion.

little sister 我领会您的意思了。我以前以为一个月就能写完论文，现在才醒悟过来：那简直是妄想。
wǒ lǐnghuì nín de yìsi le wǒ yǐqián yǐwéi yí gè yuè jiù néng xiě wán lùnwén xiànzài cái xǐngwù guolai nà jiǎnzhí shì wàngxiǎng · I see what you mean. I used to think I could write my thesis in a month; only now do I realise that was pure fantasy.

professor chen 写论文要反复推敲，急不得。那时候很多工人刚刚觉醒，相信读书能改变命运；夜校的老师觉悟也很高，晚上不要钱，教大家认字。
xiě lùnwén yào fǎnfù tuīqiāo jí bude nà shíhou hěn duō gōngrén gānggāng juéxǐng xiāngxìn dúshū néng gǎibiàn mìngyùn yèxiào de lǎoshī juéwù yě hěn gāo wǎnshang búyào qián jiāo dàjiā rèn zì · A thesis needs polishing again and again: you can't rush it. Back then many workers had just woken up to the idea that reading could change their lives, and the night-school teachers had a strong sense of duty: they taught people to read in the evenings for nothing.

anna 我在中国这么多年，见识了不少，可是这段历史，我今天才第一次领略到。阅历再多，眼界还是不够宽。
wǒ zài Zhōngguó zhème duō nián jiànshi le bù shǎo kěshì zhè duàn lìshǐ wǒ jīntiān cái dì yī cì lǐnglüè dào yuèlì zài duō yǎnjiè háishi búgòu kuān · I've been in China all these years and seen a lot, but today is the first time I've had a real sense of this part of history. However much you've lived, your horizons are never wide enough.

professor chen 换一个视角看，这张照片也是一份历史资料，它让我们的视野从课本走进了普通人的生活。
huàn yí gè shìjiǎo kàn zhè zhāng zhàopiàn yě shì yí fèn lìshǐ zīliào tā ràng wǒmen de shìyě cóng kèběn zǒu jìn le pǔtōng rén de shēnghuó · Seen from another angle, this photo is a historical source too: it takes us out of the textbooks and into ordinary people's lives.

anna 陈教授，您的话我会牢记在心。
Chénjiàoshòu nín dehuà wǒ huì láojì zài xīn · Professor Chen, I'll keep your words in mind.

little sister 可我还是不解：她到底是谁？照片后面写的是繁体字，字迹跟王老师的有点儿像。
kě wǒ háishi bùjiě tā dàodǐ shì shéi zhàopiàn hòumiàn xiě de shì fántǐzì zìjì gēn Wánglǎoshī de yǒudiǎnr xiàng · But I still don't get it: who is she? The back of the photo is written in traditional characters, and the handwriting looks a bit like Teacher Wang's.

professor chen 这就说得太玄了，字迹像，说明不了什么。你去问问王老师吧，也许这个谜团很快就解开了。
zhè jiù shuō de tài xuán le zìjì xiàng shuōmíng bu liǎo shénme nǐ qù wèn wen Wánglǎoshī ba yěxǔ zhège mítuán hěn kuài jiù jiě kāi le · Now that's far-fetched: similar handwriting proves nothing. Go and ask Teacher Wang: perhaps the mystery will soon be solved.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

辨
biàn
tell apart

玄
xuán
mysterious, far-fetched

good to know · 发觉, 察觉, 留意: 发觉 is to realise, 察觉 to sense something small or hidden, 留意 to keep an eye out (often in the negative: 我没留意). 可不 (kěbù) on its own also means "exactly!": "这天气真热。" "可不！"

You can now follow a line of reasoning in Chinese, notice the detail that matters and agree warmly with **可不是嘛**.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 174 reasoning

Reason your way from evidence to a conclusion in Chinese: assume, estimate, infer, verify, define and sum up, and keep naming the subject only once, later in the sentence.

Whether you are solving a puzzle, planning a project or writing a thesis, this is how Chinese sounds when it thinks clearly.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
推理	tuīlǐ	to reason, infer; reasoning	他最喜欢看推理小说。 His favourite books are detective novels.
推论	tuīlùn	to infer; inference	这只是一个推论，还需要证据。 This is only an inference: we still need evidence.
推断	tuīduàn	to infer, deduce	从脚印推断，他是往东边走的。 Judging by the footprints, he went east.
推算	tuīsuàn	to calculate, work out	根据照片上的年份，可以推算出她的年龄。 From the year on the photo, you can work out her age.
估算	gūsuàn	to estimate	我估算了一下，这次旅行要花五千块。 I've estimated that this trip will cost five thousand yuan.
计	jì	plan, idea; to count, calculate	那些老师教课，从来不计报酬。 Those teachers never counted the pay for their lessons.
假定	jiǎdìng	to suppose, assume	我们先假定这个数字是对的。 Let's assume for now that this figure is right.
断定	duàndìng	to conclude, determine	现在还不能断定是谁做的。 We can't yet say for certain who did it.
判定	pàndìng	to judge, decide (officially)	比赛的结果由裁判判定。 The result of the match is decided by the referee.
评定	píngdìng	to assess, evaluate	论文的成绩由老师们共同评定。 Theses are marked jointly by the teachers.
定论	dìnglùn	final conclusion, accepted view	这个问题到现在还没有定论。 There's still no settled view on this question.
求证	qiúzhèng	to seek proof, verify	网上的消息，要先求证再转发。 Check news you see online before you share it.
印证	yìnzhèng	to confirm, bear out	实验的结果印证了他的猜想。 The results of the experiment bore out his hypothesis.
确切	quèqiè	exact, precise	我想知道确切的时间。 I'd like to know the exact time.
确凿	quèzáo	conclusive, irrefutable	警察已经找到了确凿的证据。 The police have found conclusive evidence.
确信	quèxìn	to be sure, firmly believe	我确信他会来的。 I'm sure he'll come.

坚信	jiānxìn	to firmly believe	她坚信自己的选择是对的。 She firmly believes she made the right choice.
当真	dàngzhēn	to take seriously; really	我开玩笑的，你别当真。 I was joking: don't take it seriously.
归纳	guīnà	to sum up, generalise	请把文章的要点归纳一下。 Please sum up the main points of the article.
归结	guījié	to sum up, put down to	他把成功归结为{wei2}运气好。 He puts his success down to good luck.
归于	guīyú	to belong to, be attributed to	这次比赛的成功归于每一个人。 The credit for this match goes to everyone.
取决	qǔjué	to depend on	去不去，取决于天气。 Whether we go depends on the weather.
梳理	shūlǐ	to sort out, put in order	写论文以前，要先梳理一下材料。 Before writing your thesis, sort through your material.
条理	tiáolǐ	order, method (in thinking or writing)	他说话很有条理。 He speaks very clearly and logically.
脉络	màiluò	thread, overall structure	这一章的脉络不太清楚。 The thread of this chapter isn't very clear.
框架	kuàngjià	framework	先搭好框架，再写细节。 Set up the framework first, then write the details.
界定	jièdìng	to define (the limits of)	首先，要界定一下“夜校”这个概念。 First, we need to define the term “night school”.
范畴	fànchóu	category, domain	这个问题属于法律的范畴。 This question belongs to the field of law.
属性	shǔxìng	attribute, nature	这种材料有很多特殊的属性。 This material has many special properties.
广义	guǎngyì	broad sense	广义的“书”，也包括网上的电子书。 “Book” in the broad sense also includes e-books online.
狭义	xiáyì	narrow sense	狭义的“夜校”，只指给工人办的学校。 A “night school” in the narrow sense means only the schools set up for workers.
宏观	hóngguān	macro, big-picture	从宏观上看，经济还在增长。 Seen from the big picture, the economy is still growing.
共性	gòngxìng	common feature	这些学校有很多共性。 These schools have a lot in common.
主体	zhǔtǐ	main body, main part	夜校学生的主体是工人。 Most night-school students were workers.

pattern review: the subject comes later (蒙后省略), and 可不是嘛

first clause (no subject) **，subject** **second clause**

In a chain of reasoning, Chinese often starts with what was done and names who did it only in the second clause: 推算了一下，小明觉得…… “Having worked it out, Xiaoming thinks…”. And when someone makes a point you agree with, back them up with 可不是嘛 plus a reason.

仔细梳理了所有的材料以后，她发现了一个共同点。 **zǐxì shūlǐ le suǒyǒu de cáiliào yǐhòu tā fāxiàn le yí gè gòngtóng diǎn** Having gone carefully through all the material, she found something they had in common.

看了照片后面的字，大家都推断她是一位老师。 **kàn le zhàopiàn hòumiàn de zì dàjiā dōu tuīduàn tā shì yí wèi lǎoshī** Having seen the writing on the back of the photo, everyone concluded she was a teacher.

“推理要有证据。”“可不是嘛，光凭感觉可不行。” **tuīlǐ yào yǒu zhèngjù kěbùshi ma guāng píng gǎnjué kě bùxíng** “Reasoning needs evidence.” “Absolutely: gut feeling alone won’t do.”

dialogue three detectives

xiaoming 听说你们在破案？什么谜团，给我看看那张照片。我是工程师，最喜欢推理了。
tīngshuō nǐmen zài pòàn shénme mítuán gěi wǒ kàn kan nà zhāng zhàopiàn wǒ shì gōngchéngshī zuì xǐhuan tuīlǐ le · I hear you're solving a case? What's the mystery? Let me see this photo. I'm an engineer: I love a bit of deduction.

little sister 不是破案，是求证。陈教授说，没有确凿的证据，就不能下定论。
bú shì pòàn shì qiúzhèng Chénjiàoshòu shuō méiyǒu quèzáo de zhèngjù jiù bù néng xià dìnglùn · It's not a case, we're looking for proof. Professor Chen says that without conclusive evidence, you can't draw a conclusion.

xiaoming 好。我们先假定照片是一九五六年拍的。看样子，她大概二十岁。这样推算，她是一九三六年左右出生的，今天应该九十岁了。
hǎo wǒmen xiān jiǎdìng zhàopiàn shì yījiǔwǔliù nián pāi de kàn yàngzi tā dàgài èrshí suì zhèyàng tuīsuàn tā shì yījiǔsānliù nián zuǒyòu chūshēng de jīntiān yīnggāi jiǔshí suì le · Fine. Let's assume the photo was taken in 1956. She looks about twenty. Working from that, she was born around 1936, so she'd be ninety today.

anna 王老师六十岁左右。按年龄估算，这位老师可能是她的妈妈，也可能是她的奶奶。
Wánglǎoshī liùshí suì zuǒyòu àn niánlíng gūsuàn zhè wèi lǎoshī kěnéng shì tā de māma yě kěnéng shì tā de nǎinai · Teacher Wang is about sixty. Going by the ages, this teacher could be her mother, or her grandmother.

xiaoming 照片后面的字，我也辨认不出是谁写的。
zhàopiàn hòumiàn de zì wǒ yě biànrèn bu chū shì shéi xiě de · I can't make out whose handwriting is on the back of the photo either.

little sister 可不是嘛！可这只是推论，不能断定。字迹像不像，也要请专家来鉴别、判定。
kěbùshi ma kě zhè zhǐshì tuīlùn bù néng duàndìng zìjì xiàng bu xiàng yě yào qǐng zhuānjiā lái jiànbié pàndìng · Exactly! But that's only an inference: we can't be sure. Whether the handwriting matches is something an expert has to examine and decide.

xiaoming 你们俩太当真了。这些都只是猜想，也许她们一点儿关系都没有。
nǐmen liǎ tài dàngzhēn le zhèxiē dōu zhǐshì cāixiǎng yěxǔ tāmen yìdiǎnr guānxì dōu méiyǒu · You two are taking this far too seriously. It's all guesswork: maybe they're not related at all.

anna 我有一种预感：她们有关系。我坚信这一点。
wǒ yǒu yì zhǒng yùgǎn tāmen yǒu guānxì wǒ jiānxìn zhè yìdiǎn · I have a feeling they're related. I'm sure of it.

little sister 我也确信。可是“确信”不等于知道确切的答案。王老师这个星期去外地看亲戚了，答辩那天才回来。到时候我当面问她，看她的回答能不能印证我们的推断。
wǒ yě quèxìn kěshì quèxìn bù děngyú zhīdào quèqiè de dáàn Wánglǎoshī zhège xīngqī qù wàidì kàn qīnqi le dábiàn nà tiān cái huílái dào shíhou wǒ dāngmiàn wèn tā kàn tā de huídá néng bu néng yìnzhèng wǒmen de tuīduàn · So am I. But being sure isn't the same as knowing the exact answer. Teacher Wang is out of town visiting relatives this week and won't be back until the day of my defence. I'll ask her then, face to face, and see whether her answer bears out what we've worked out.

xiaoming 好，那我们这几天多留意别的线索。那论文呢？准备得怎么样了？
hǎo nà wǒmen zhè jǐ tiān duō liúyì biéde xiànsuǒ nà lùnwén ne zhǔnbèi de zěnmeyàng le · OK, then over the next few days let's keep an eye out for other clues. And the thesis? How's it coming along?

little sister 正在梳理材料。陈教授说我的第二章没有条理，有两所夜校还被我混淆了，看不出脉络，要重新搭一个框架。
zhèngzài shūlǐ cáiliào Chénjiàoshòu shuō wǒ de dì èr zhāng méiyǒu tiáolǐ yǒu liǎng suǒ yèxiào hái bèi wǒ hùnxiáo le kàn bu chū màiluò yào chóngxīn dā yí gè kuàngjià · I'm sorting through the material. Professor Chen says chapter two is disorganised, I've even mixed up two night schools, and you can't follow the thread, so I need to build a new framework.

xiaoming 写论文跟设计机器一样：先有框架，再装零件。你先界定一下，什么叫“夜校”？
xiě lùnwén gēn shèjì jīqì yíyàng xiān yǒu kuàngjià zài zhuāng língjiàn nǐ xiān jièdìng yíxià shénme jiào yèxiào · Writing a thesis is like designing a machine: first the frame, then the parts. Start by defining your terms: what counts as a “night school”?

little sister 广义的夜校，包括所有晚上上课的学校；狭义的，只指五六十年代给工人办的夜校。我的论文属于后一个范畴。这些夜校的属性很特别：既是学校，也是工人的俱乐部。

guǎngyì de yèxiào bāokuò suǒyǒu wǎnshang shàngkè de xuéxiào xiáyì de zhǐ zhǐ wǔliùshí niándài gěi gōngrén bàn de yèxiào wǒ de lùnwén shǔyú hòu yí gè fànchóu zhèxiē yèxiào de shǔxìng hěn tèbié jì shì xuéxiào yě shì gōngrén de jùlèbù · In the broad sense, a night school is any school with classes in the evening; in the narrow sense, only the schools set up for workers in the fifties and sixties. My thesis belongs in the second category. Those night schools had an unusual character: they were schools and workers' clubs at the same time.

xiaoming 这么说我就领会了：你写的是狭义的夜校。
zhème shuō wǒ jiù lǐnghuì le nǐ xiě de shì xiáyì de yèxiào · Put like that, I get it: you're writing about night schools in the narrow sense.

anna 那它们有什么共性？
nà tāmen yǒu shénme gòngxìng · So what did they have in common?

little sister 我归纳了三点：第一，学生的主体是工人；第二，老师大多不计报酬；第三，都在下班以后上课。最后，我把夜校的作用归结为一句话：让普通人有了读书的机会。
wǒ guīnà le sān diǎn dì yī xuéshēng de zhǔtǐ shì gōngrén dì èr lǎoshī dàduō bú jì bàochou dì sān dōu zài xiàbān yǐhòu shàngkè zuìhòu wǒ bǎ yèxiào de zuòyòng guījié wéi yí jù huà ràng pǔtōng rén yǒu le dúshū de jīhuì · I've boiled it down to three points: first, most of the students were workers; second, most teachers didn't count the pay; third, classes were always after work. And I sum up what the night schools did in one sentence: they gave ordinary people the chance to read.

xiaoming 从宏观上看，是一个国家在学认字；换个视角，从每个人看，是一个人在改变命运。这份功劳归于谁，就看你的证据了。
cóng hóngguān shàng kàn shì yí gè guójiā zài xué rèn zì huàn gè shìjiǎo cóng měi gè rén kàn shì yí gè rén zài gǎibiàn mìngyùn zhè fèn gōngláo guīyú shéi jiù kàn nǐ de zhèngjù le · In the big picture, it's a whole country learning to read; from another angle, for each person, it's someone changing their life. Who the credit belongs to: that depends on your evidence.

little sister 对。论文的成绩由答辩委员会评定，好不好，就取决于我的论证了。
duì lùnwén de chéngjì yóu dábiàn wěiyuánhuì píngdìng hǎo bu hǎo jiù qǔjué yú wǒ de lùnzhèng le · Right. The thesis is marked by the defence committee, and how well I do depends on how I argue my case.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

畴
chóu
category

good to know · 推断, 断定, 判定: 推断 is to infer, 断定 to say for certain, 判定 to rule officially (a referee, a court, an expert). 当真 is read dàngzhēn: 别当真 "don't take it seriously"; 你当真要去？ "are you really going?"

You can now reason out loud in Chinese, from a first guess to a conclusion you can defend.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 175 views and principles

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 23 · study and research

Talk about opinions, principles and intentions: agree and disagree politely, explain what you really meant, and sum up with 概括来说.

Every serious conversation, from a meeting to a family row, turns on what people meant, what they believe is right and where their bottom line is.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
见解	jiànjiě	view, opinion, insight	她对这个问题有独到的见解。 She has original views on this question.
高见	gāojiàn	your wise opinion (polite)	这件事您有什么高见? What's your view on this?
观感	guāngǎn	impressions	请谈谈你对这部电影的观感。 Tell us your impressions of the film.
共识	gòngshí	consensus	经过讨论，大家终于达成了共识。 After discussion, everyone finally reached a consensus.
分歧	fēnqí	difference (of opinion); divergent	我们在这个问题上有分歧。 We disagree on this point.
异议	yìyì	objection	如果没有异议，我们就这样决定了。 If there are no objections, we'll go ahead.
偏见	piānjiàn	prejudice, bias	我对他没有偏见。 I have nothing against him.
偏向	piānxiàng	to be partial to; tendency	他的看法有点儿偏向一方。 His view leans a little towards one side.
偏差	piānchā	deviation, error	数据有一点偏差，要再算一遍。 The data is a bit off: it needs working out again.
是非	shìfēi	right and wrong; gossip	孩子要学会分辨是非。 Children need to learn to tell right from wrong.
真理	zhēnlǐ	truth	他一生都在追求真理。 All his life he has searched for the truth.
情理	qínglǐ	reason, sense (what people feel is right)	他这么生气，也在情理之中。 It's understandable that he's so angry.
常理	chánglǐ	common sense, normal logic	按常理，他早该到了。 By rights he should have arrived ages ago.
伦理	lúnlǐ	ethics	做研究也要讲伦理。 Research has to follow ethics too.
教条	jiàotiáo	dogma; dogmatic	学习方法不能太教条。 Your way of studying mustn't be too rigid.
准则	zhǔnzé	norm, standard (of conduct)	诚实是做人的基本准则。 Honesty is a basic rule for how to live.

尺度	chǐdù	yardstick, scale	评判对错，要用同一个尺度。 To judge right and wrong, you have to use the same yardstick.
基准	jīzhǔn	benchmark, standard	我们以去年的数字为{wei2}基准。 We take last year's figures as the benchmark.
水准	shuǐzhǔn	level, standard	她的中文水准很高。 Her Chinese is of a very high standard.
底线	dǐxiàn	bottom line	说实话是我的底线。 Telling the truth is my bottom line.
宗旨	zōngzhǐ	aim, purpose (of an organisation)	我们学校的宗旨是“让每个人都能学”。 Our school's aim is “learning for everyone”.
出发点	chūfādiǎn	starting point; motive	他的出发点是好的。 He meant well.
初衷	chūzhōng	original intention	不管多忙，都不要忘了初衷。 However busy you are, don't forget why you started.
本意	běnyì	original meaning or intention	对不起，我的本意不是这样。 Sorry, that's not what I meant.
用意	yòngyì	intention, purpose	我明白你的用意了。 I see what you're getting at.
意图	yìtú	intention; to intend	他这么做的意图是什么? What is he trying to achieve by doing that?
意向	yìxiàng	intention, interest (to do a deal)	这家出版社有意向出版她的书。 This publisher is interested in publishing her book.
意愿	yìyuàn	wish, will	要尊重孩子自己的意愿。 You should respect the child's own wishes.
意味	yìwèi	meaning, hint, flavour	她的笑里有一点儿批评的意味。 There was a hint of criticism in her smile.
意料	yìliào	to expect, anticipate	结果完全在我的意料之外。 The result took me completely by surprise.
企图	qǐtú	to attempt (usually bad); attempt	有人企图用假{jia3}照片骗人。 Someone is trying to fool people with fake photos.
导向	dǎoxiàng	guidance, orientation; to guide	新闻不能以点击量{liang4-5}为{wei2}导向。 News mustn't be driven by clicks.
指向	zhǐxiàng	to point to; direction	所有的证据都指向同一个|人。 All the evidence points to the same person.
定向	dìngxiàng	directional; targeted	这所大学为农村定向培养老师。 This university trains teachers specifically for the countryside.
动摇	dòngyáo	to waver, shake	不管别人怎么说，她的决心都没有动摇。 Whatever people said, her resolve never wavered.

pattern review: 概括来说 (to sum up), and saying it only once

several points ，概括来说 ，**one summary**

概括来说 “to sum up, broadly speaking” (from day 156) wraps a discussion into one line. And remember 承前省略 from day 170: once the person is named, the next actions follow without naming them again: 老人看完稿子，想了想，同意了.

我们讨论了两个小时，概括来说，分歧不大。 **wǒmen tǎolùn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí gàikuò lái shuō fēnqí bú dà** We talked for two hours; to sum up, there isn’t much disagreement.

林编辑看完我的文章，提了三条意见，概括来说，就是“少写自己，多写别人”。 **Línbiānjí kàn wán wǒ de wénzhāng tí le sān tiáo yìjiàn gàikuò lái shuō jiùshì shǎo xiě zìjǐ duō xiě biérén** Editor Lin read my piece and made three points; in short: “Write less about yourself and more about others.”

老人看完稿子，想了想，同意我们发表。 **lǎorén kàn wán gǎozi xiǎng le xiang tóngyì wǒmen fābiǎo** The old lady read the draft, thought it over and agreed to let us publish it.

当年很多夜校老师是师范学校定向培养的。 **dāngnián hěn duō yèxiào lǎoshī shì shīfàn xuéxiào dìngxiàng péiyǎng de** Back then many night-school teachers were trained by teachers’ colleges specially for the job.

dialogue a story she can’t tell

little sister 林编辑、陈教授，我想听听你们的高见。我采访了一位九十岁的老学生，她讲了一个家里的故事，很感人，可是她说：“别写进去。”

Línbiānjí Chénjiàoshòu wǒ xiǎng tīng ting nǐmen de gāojiàn wǒ cǎifǎng le yí wèi jiǔshí suì de lǎo xuéshēng tā jiǎng le yí gè jiā lǐ de gùshi hěn gǎnrén kěshì tā shuō bié xiě jinqu · Editor Lin, Professor Chen, I'd like your advice. I interviewed a former student who's ninety. She told me a family story, a very moving one, but then she said: "Don't put that in."

editor lin 那就不能写。我们做新闻有一条准则，也是底线：被采访的人不同意，就不发表。我们网站的宗旨是讲真实的故事，但是不伤害任何人。

nà jiù bù néng xiě wǒmen zuò xīnwén yǒu yì tiáo zhǔnzé yě shì dǐxiàn bèi cǎifǎng de rén bù tóngyì jiù bù fābiǎo wǒmen wǎngzhàn de zōngzhǐ shì jiǎng zhēnshí de gùshi dànshì bù shānghài rènhé rén · Then you can't. In news we have a rule, and it's our bottom line too: if the person interviewed doesn't agree, it isn't published. Our website's aim is to tell true stories without hurting anyone.

little sister 可是这个故事最能说明夜校的作用，我的出发点是好的。

kěshì zhège gùshi zuì néng shuōmíng yèxiào de zuòyòng wǒ de chūfādiǎn shì hǎo de · But that story shows better than anything what the night schools did. I mean well.

professor chen 出发点好，不等于做法对。研究也要讲伦理，要尊重被采访的人的意愿，顾及她的尊严。你的初衷是记录历史，不是让老人难过。

chūfādiǎn hǎo bù děngyú zuòfǎ duì yánjiū yě yào jiǎng lúnlǐ yào zūnzhòng bèi cǎifǎng de rén de yìyuàn gùjí tā de zūnyán nǐ de chūzhōng shì jìlù lìshǐ bú shì ràng lǎorén nánguò · Meaning well doesn't make it the right thing to do. Research has its ethics too: you respect the wishes of the people you interview and think of their dignity. You set out to record history, not to upset an old lady.

little sister 那我把名字改了，可以吗？

nà wǒ bǎ míngzi gǎi le kěyǐ ma · What if I change her name?

editor lin 按常理是可以的。可是她那条街上谁都认识她，大家一看就知道是谁。合不合情理，要站在她的角度想。

àn chánglǐ shì kěyǐ de kěshì tā nà tiáo jiē shàng shéi dōu rènshi tā dàjiā yí kàn jiù zhīdào shì shéi hé bu hé qínglǐ yào zhàn zài tā de jiǎodù xiǎng · Normally that would be fine. But everyone on her street knows her: they'd see at once who it was. Whether it's fair, you have to judge from where she stands.

professor chen 你先回去问问她的本意：是不想写名字，还是根本不想让人知道这件事？弄清楚她的用意，再决定。

nǐ xiān huíqù wèn wen tā de běnyì shì bù xiǎng xiě míngzi háishi gēnběn bù xiǎng ràng rén zhīdào zhè jiàn shì nòng qīngchu tā de yòngyì zài juédìng · Go back and ask what she really meant: is it her name she doesn't want in, or does she not want anyone to know at all? Once you know what she intends, then decide.

little sister 好，我先跟她求证一下，再仔细斟酌。还有一件事：我跟另一位老师有分歧。他觉得夜校的水准不高，只教认字；我觉得夜校改变了很多人的一生。他说话的时候，带着一点儿看不起的意味，好像对夜校有偏见。

hǎo wǒ xiān gēn tā qiúzhèng yíxià zài zǐxì zhēnzhuó hái yǒu yí jiàn shì wǒ gēn lìng yí wèi lǎoshī yǒu fēnqí tā juéde yèxiào de shuǐzhǔn bù gāo zhǐ jiāo rèn zì wǒ juéde yèxiào gǎibiàn le hěn duō rén de yìshēng tā shuōhuà de shíhou dài zhe yìdiǎnr kànbuqǐ de yìwèi hǎoxiàng duì yèxiào yǒu piānjiàn · All right, I'll check with her first, then think it over carefully. One more thing: I disagree with another lecturer. He thinks the night schools were low-level and only taught reading; I think they changed many people's lives. When he talks about them there's a hint of contempt, as if he's biased against them.

professor chen 有异议很正常。学术上的是非，要靠确凿的证据，不是看谁的声音大，能不能达成共识，也不要紧。不过你的看法也有点儿偏向夜校，要小心出现偏差。

yǒu yìyì hěn zhèngcháng xuéshù shàng de shìfēi yào kào quèzáo de zhèngjù bú shì kàn shéi de shēngyīn dà néng bu néng dáchéng gòngshí yě búyàojǐn búguò nǐ de kànfǎ yě yǒudiǎnr piānxiàng yèxiào yào xiǎoxīn chūxiàn piānchā · Disagreement is perfectly normal. In scholarship, right and wrong come down to hard evidence, not to who shouts loudest, and it doesn't matter whether you reach a consensus. But your own view leans a bit towards the night schools too, so watch out for bias.

editor lin 没有证据，就别轻易下定论。写新闻也一样。真理不怕讨论。评判一篇文章，要用同一个尺度、同一个基准，不能以点击量为导向。有的网站企图用老人的故事赚点击，那种意图就不对了。
méiyǒu zhèngjù jiù bié qīngyì xià dìnglùn xiě xīnwén yě yíyàng zhēnlǐ bú pà tǎolùn píngpàn yì piān wénzhāng yào yòng tóngyī gè chǐdù tóngyī gè jīzhǔn bù néng yǐ diǎnjī liàng wéi dǎoxiàng yǒude wǎngzhàn qǐtú yòng lǎorén de gùshi zhuàn diǎnjī nà zhǒng yìtú jiù bú duì le · Without evidence, don't rush to a conclusion. News is just the same. The truth isn't afraid of debate. When you judge a piece, you use the same yardstick, the same benchmark, and you don't let clicks drive you. Some websites try to use old people's stories to rake in clicks: that kind of motive is wrong.

anna 林编辑，你对她的论文观感怎么样？我觉得她把夜校的历史梳理得很有条理。你的见解一向很准。
Línbiānjí nǐ duì tā de lùnwén guāngǎn zěnmeyàng wǒ juéde tā bǎ yèxiào de lìshǐ shūlǐ de hěn yǒu tiáolǐ nǐ de jiànjiě yíxiàng hěn zhǔn · Editor Lin, what's your impression of her thesis? I think she's set out the night schools' history in very good order. Your judgement is always spot on.

editor lin 很好！说实话，比我意料的还要好。我们网站有意向发表她论文的摘要，这意味着会有很多人看到夜校的故事。
hěn hǎo shuō shíhuà bǐ wǒ yìliào de hái yào hǎo wǒmen wǎngzhàn yǒu yìxiàng fābiǎo tā lùnwén de zhāiyào zhè yìwèizhe huì yǒu hěn duō rén kàn dào yèxiào de gùshi · Very good! Honestly, it's even better than I expected. Our website would like to publish her abstract, which means a lot of people would get to read about the night schools.

little sister 真的吗？太好了！不过我得先通过答辩……
zhēn de ma tài hǎo le búguò wǒ děi xiān tōngguò dábiàn · Really? That's wonderful! But first I have to pass my defence…

anna 我确信你一定能通过。
wǒ quèxìn nǐ yídìng néng tōngguò · I'm sure you'll pass.

professor chen 别太教条，也别太紧张。你的方向是对的，所有证据都指向同一个结论，只要你自己不动摇就行。概括来说：尊重材料，尊重人。
bié tài jiàotiáo yě bié tài jǐnzhāng nǐ de fāngxiàng shì duì de suǒyǒu zhèngjù dōu zhǐxiàng tóngyī gè jiélùn zhǐyào nǐ zìjǐ bú dòngyáo jiù xíng gàikuò lái shuō zūnzhòng cáiliào zūnzhòng rén · Don't be too rigid, and don't be too nervous. You're on the right track, all the evidence points to the same conclusion, and as long as you don't waver you'll be fine. To sum up: respect your material, and respect people.

good to know · 本意, 用意, 意图, 企图: 本意 what you really meant, 用意 the purpose behind it, 意图 an intention (neutral), 企图 an attempt (usually bad). 高见 is polite when you ask (您有什么高见？) but sarcastic if you say it about someone's silly idea: 这就是你的高见?

You can now disagree politely in Chinese, explain what you meant, and hold a line you won't cross. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 176 mission: the thesis defence

Follow a whole thesis defence in Chinese: the notice, a twelve-minute talk, the committee's questions, a mystery solved and the result, using this unit's words for study, writing, thinking and reasoning.

A defence, a pitch or a big presentation: in every one of them you explain, answer objections and stand by your evidence. Today you watch someone do it, start to finish.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the notice on the door

anna （读）“通知：本届历史专业学士学位论文答辩定于本周五上午九点在学校礼堂举行。答辩委员会由五位教师组成，论文成绩由委员会共同评定。

dú tōngzhī běn jiè lìshǐ zhuānyè xuéshì xuéwèi lùnwén dábiàn dìng yú běn zhōu wǔ shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn zài xuéxiào lǐtáng jǔxíng dábiàn wěiyuánhuì yóu wǔ wèi jiàoshī zǔchéng lùnwén chéngjì yóu wěiyuánhuì gòngtóng píngdìng · (reading) “Notice: This year’s bachelor’s thesis defences for the history students will be held at 9 a.m. this Friday in the university hall. The defence committee is made up of five teachers, who will mark each thesis together.

anna 每位学生先用十二分钟论述论文的主要内容，再回答委员的问题。答辩主要考查学生独立研究的能力。请按学校规定的格式准备材料：论文、中文和外文摘要、提纲；引用的专著、教科书、辞典等，都要写在注释里。论文篇幅不少于一万字；段落、标点、括号、字体都要符合要求，不能有错别字。

měi wèi xuéshēng xiān yòng shíèr fēnzhōng lùnshù lùnwén de zhǔyào nèiróng zài huídá wěiyuán de wèntí dábiàn zhǔyào kǎochá xuéshēng dúlì yánjiū de nénglì qǐng àn xuéxiào guīdìng de géshi zhǔnbèi cáiliào lùnwén Zhōngwén hé wài wén zhāiyào tígāng yǐnyòng de zhuānzhù jiàokēshū cídiǎn děng dōu yào xiě zài zhùshì lǐ lùnwén piānfú bù shǎo yú yí wàn zì duànluò biāodiǎn kuòhào zìtǐ dōu yào fúhé yāoqiú bù néng yǒu cuòbiézì · Each student will first spend twelve minutes setting out the main content of the thesis, then answer the committee’s questions. The defence mainly assesses the student’s ability to do research independently. Please prepare your material in the format set by the university: the thesis, an abstract in Chinese and in a foreign language, and an outline; all scholarly books, textbooks, dictionaries and so on that you quote must be given in the notes. Theses must be at least ten thousand characters long; paragraphs, punctuation, brackets and fonts must follow the rules, and there must be no wrongly written characters.

anna 切记：凡是抄袭别人成果、在答辩中作弊的，一律取消答辩资格，不发文凭。欢迎师长、同学和亲人来观摩。”

qièjì fánshì chāoxí biérén chéngguǒ zài dábiàn zhōng zuòbì de yílǜ qǔxiāo dábiàn zīgé bù fā wénpíng huānyíng shīzhǎng tóngxué hé qīnrén lái guānmó · Please note: anyone who has plagiarised the work of others or cheats during the defence will be disqualified and will not receive a diploma. Teachers, fellow students and families are welcome to come and watch.”

xiaoming 五个委员！你紧张吗？

wǔ gè wěiyuán nǐ jǐnzhāng ma · Five on the committee! Are you nervous?

little sister 紧张得要命。我们专业的师资很强，委员都很严格。去年有个学生抄袭了别人的学说，当场就被取消了资格。

jǐnzhāng de yàomìng wǒmen zhuānyè de shīzī hěn qiáng wěiyuán dōu hěn yángé qùnián yǒu gè xuéshēng chāoxí le biérén de xuéshuō dāngchǎng jiù bèi qǔxiāo le zīgé · Terrified. Our subject has very strong staff, and the committee members are all strict. Last year a student plagiarised someone else’s theory and was disqualified on the spot.

xiaoming 听说今天还有一位老院士来观摩。他是学工科的，可是对人文也很有兴趣，学识很深。

tīngshuō jīntiān hái yǒu yí wèi lǎo yuànshì lái guānmó tā shì xué gōngkē de kěshì duì rénwén yě hěn yǒu xìngqù xuéshí hěn shēn · I hear an elderly academician is coming to watch today, too. He’s an engineer by training, but he’s very interested in the humanities, and extremely learned.

little sister 你的消息真灵通！我现在思绪很乱，脑海里全是委员会可能问的问题。一紧张，我就下意识地摸头发。昨天晚上在寝室里温习到两点，开头那段已经背诵下来了。

nǐ de xiāoxi zhēn língtōng wǒ xiànzài sīxù hěn luàn nǎohǎi lǐ quán shì wěiyuánhuì kěnéng wèn de wèntí yì jǐnzhāng wǒ jiù xiàyìshí de mō tóufa zuótiān wǎnshang zài qǐnshì lǐ wēnxí dào liǎng diǎn kāitóu nà duàn yǐjīng bèisòng xialai le · You’re so well-informed! My thoughts are all over the place right now: my head is full of questions the committee might ask. When I’m nervous I touch my hair without noticing. I was revising in my dorm until two last night, and I’ve learned the opening by heart.

anna 你从新生到现在，学业一直很好，连一次小测验都没缺过。外文摘要是我帮你译的，我猜想他们会问数字的问题。

nǐ cóng xīnshēng dào xiànzài xuéyè yìzhí hěn hǎo lián yí cì xiǎo cèyàn dōu méi quē guo wài wén zhāiyào shì

wǒ bāng nǐ yì de wǒ cāixiǎng tāmen huì wèn shùzì de wèntí · From your first year till now you've always done well: you never even missed a single quiz. I translated your foreign-language abstract for you, and my guess is they'll ask about your figures.

xiaoming 别揣摩他们的心思了。刚上大学的时候你参加了那么多社团，不也都过来了吗?

bié chuǎimó tāmen de xīnsi le gāng shàng dàxué de shíhou nǐ cānjiā le nàme duō shètuán bù yě dōu guòlái le ma · Stop trying to read their minds. In first year you were in so many clubs, and you got through all that, didn't you?

anna 别光背。王老师以前训我的一句话，我送给你：“话是说给人听的，不是背给人听的。”

bié guāng bèi Wánglǎoshī yǐqián xùn wǒ de yí jù huà wǒ sòng gěi nǐ huà shì shuō gěi rén tīng de bú shì bèi gěi rén tīng de · Don't just recite it. Here's something Teacher Wang once told me off with, and now it's yours: “You speak to people; you don't recite at them.”

little sister 王老师呢？她说今天无论如何都会来。

Wánglǎoshī ne tā shuō jīntiān wúlùn rúhé dōu huì lái · Where's Teacher Wang? She said she'd come today whatever happened.

xiaoming 她刚发了消息，说火车晚点了，十点以前一定到，还说要带一个人来。

tā gāng fā le xiāoxi shuō huǒchē wǎndiǎn le shí diǎn yǐqián yídìng dào hái shuō yào dài yí gè rén lái · She's just texted: her train is late, but she'll definitely be here before ten, and she says she's bringing someone.

little sister 带谁？算了，现在我没心思琢磨这个。

dài shéi suànle xiànzài wǒ méi xīnsi zuómo zhège · Bringing who? Never mind, I can't think about that now.

anna 深呼吸。归根到底，论文是你自己写的，没有人比你更了解它。

shēn hūxī guīgēn dàodǐ lùnwén shì nǐ zìjǐ xiě de méiyǒu rén bǐ nǐ gèng liǎojiě tā · Deep breath. In the end, you wrote this thesis yourself: nobody knows it better than you.

chapter 2 chapter 2: twelve minutes

little sister

各位老师好。我的论文题目是“五六十年代的北京工人夜校”。首先，我界定一下研究的范畴：本文的“夜校”是狭义的，只指当年给工人办的学校，不包括广义上所有晚上上课的学校。

gèwèi lǎoshī hǎo wǒ de lùnwén tímù shì wǔliùshí niándài de Běijīng gōngrén yèxiào shǒuxiān wǒ jièdìng yíxià yánjiū de fànchóu běn wén de yèxiào shì xiáyì de zhǐ zhǐ dāngnián gěi gōngrén bàn de xuéxiào bù bāokuò guǎngyì shàng suǒyǒu wǎnshang shàngkè de xuéxiào · Good morning, everyone. My thesis is called “Beijing’s Workers’ Night Schools in the 1950s and 60s”. First, let me define the scope: “night school” here is meant in the narrow sense, the schools set up for workers at that time, not every school with evening classes in the broad sense.

little sister

其次，论文的框架分三部分：第一部分梳理夜校的历史脉络；第二部分分析夜校的教学，比如用什么教科书和读物，老师怎么备课，学生怎么温习；第三部分换一个视角，从学生的角度看夜校怎样改变了他们的生活。

qícì lùnwén de kuàngjià fēn sān bùfen dì yī bùfen shūlǐ yèxiào de lìshǐ màiluò dì èr bùfen fēnxī yèxiào de jiàoxué bǐrú yòng shénme jiàokēshū hé dúwù lǎoshī zěnme bèikè xuéshēng zěnme wēnxí dì sān bùfen huàn yí gè shìjiǎo cóng xuéshēng de jiǎodù kàn yèxiào zěnyàng gǎibiàn le tāmen de shēnghuó · Next, the framework has three parts. Part one traces the history of the night schools; part two looks at how they taught, for example which textbooks and readers they used, how the teachers prepared lessons and how the students revised; part three changes perspective and looks, from the students’ side, at how the night schools changed their lives.

little sister

论文着重分析第二部分，侧重老师怎么教认字：先教部首和偏旁，再讲会意字。当年用的是繁体字，一九五六年以后，课本才改成了简体字。学生用钢笔和墨水写字，我找到的老笔记，字迹到现在还很清楚。

lùnwén zhuózhòng fēnxī dì èr bùfen cèzhòng lǎoshī zěnme jiāo rèn zì xiān jiāo bùshǒu hé piānpáng zài jiǎng huìyì zì dāngnián yòng de shì fántǐzì yījiǔwǔliù nián yǐhòu kèběn cái gǎi chéng le jiǎntǐzì xuéshēng yòng gāngbǐ hé mòshuǐ xiě zì wǒ zhǎo dào de lǎo bǐjì zìjì dào xiànzài hái hěn qīngchu · The thesis concentrates on part two, with the focus on how teachers taught reading: radicals and components first, then ideographs. At first they used traditional characters; only after 1956 did the textbooks switch to simplified ones. The students wrote with fountain pens and ink, and the old notebooks I found are still perfectly legible.

little sister

材料方面，我参考了当年的教学指南、教学大纲和几本教育概论，还采访了二十多位老学生。时间有限，有些细节我就省略了。以下把“第三工人夜校”简称为“三夜”。

cáiliào fāngmiàn wǒ cānkǎo le dāngnián de jiàoxué zhǐnán jiàoxué dàgāng hé jǐ běn jiàoyù gàilùn hái cǎifǎng le èrshí duō wèi lǎo xuéshēng shíjiān yǒuxiàn yǒuxiē xìjié wǒ jiù shěnglüè le yǐxià bǎ dì sān gōngrén yèxiào jiǎnchēng wéi sān yè · For sources, I used teaching guides and syllabuses from the time and several introductions to education, and I interviewed over twenty former students. Time is short, so I’ll leave some details out. From here on I’ll call the “No. 3 Workers’ Night School” “Sanye” for short.

little sister

我归纳了这些夜校的三个共性：学生的主体是工人；老师大多是师范学校定向培养的，很多人不计报酬；课都在下班以后上。

wǒ guīnà le zhèxiē yèxiào de sān gè gòngxìng xuéshēng de zhǔtǐ shì gōngrén lǎoshī dàduō shì shīfàn xuéxiào dìngxiàng péiyǎng de hěn duō rén bú jì bàochou kè dōu zài xiàbān yǐhòu shàng · I have identified three features these night schools shared: most students were workers; most teachers had been trained by teachers’ colleges specifically for this, and many took no pay; and classes were always held after work.

little sister

从宏观上看，夜校让成千上万的文盲认了字。从每个人看，夜校是他们的启蒙。一位九十岁的老学生对我说，那时候她第一次觉醒：原来读书可以改变命运。

cóng hóngguān shàng kàn yèxiào ràng chéngqiān shàngwàn de wénmáng rèn le zì cóng měi gè rén kàn yèxiào shì tāmen de qǐméng yí wèi jiǔshí suì de lǎo xuéshēng duì wǒ shuō nà shíhou tā dì yī cì juéxǐng yuánlái dúshū kěyǐ gǎibiàn mìngyùn · In the big picture, the night schools taught tens of thousands of illiterate people to read. For each person, the night school was where their mind was first opened. A ninety-year-old former student told me that back then she woke up for the first time to the idea that reading could change her life.

little sister

“三夜”还有一间阅览室，工人下了班就在那里阅览报纸。他们常常在一起切磋，有的什么书都涉猎，从书里汲取力量，有的开始钻研技术。这段历史对今天也有启迪：

我们现在常说要给学生减负，当年没有人给工人减负，可是他们学得很快乐。

sān yè hái yǒu yì jiān yuèlǎn shì gōngrén xià le bān jiù zài nàlǐ yuèlǎn bàozhǐ tāmen chángcháng zài yìqǐ qiēcuō yǒude shénme shū dōu shèliè cóng shū lǐ jíqǔ lìliàng yǒude kāishǐ zuānyán jìshù zhè duàn lìshǐ duì jīntiān yě yǒu qǐdí wǒmen xiànzài cháng shuō yào gěi xuéshēng jiǎnfù dāngnián méiyǒu rén gěi gōngrén jiǎnfù kěshì tāmen xué de hěn kuàilè · Sanye also had a reading room, where workers read the papers after their shifts. They often studied together and compared notes; some read anything they could lay hands on and drew strength from books, and some started studying their trade in depth. This history has a lesson for today too: we often talk about lightening students' load, and nobody lightened the workers' load back then, yet they loved learning.

little sister 很多学生后来又进修、深造，有的成了工程师，有的成了知识分子。总而言之，夜校不只是教人认字，也在熏陶人、陶冶人。到头来，它给学生最多的，不是文凭，而是求学的勇气。谢谢各位老师。

hěn duō xuéshēng hòulái yòu jìnxiū shēnzào yǒude chéng le gōngchéngshī yǒude chéng le zhīshi fènzǐ zǒngéryánzhī yèxiào bù zhǐshì jiāo rén rèn zì yě zài xūntáo rén táoyě rén dàotóulái tā gěi xuéshēng zuì duō de bú shì wénpíng ér shì qiúxué de yǒngqì xièxie gèwèi lǎoshī · Many students later went on to further training and study; some became engineers, some intellectuals. In a word, the night schools didn't only teach people to read: they shaped and nurtured them. In the end, what they gave students most was not a diploma but the courage to keep learning. Thank you.

anna （小声）讲得真通顺，一点儿也不像背的。

xiǎo shēng jiǎng de zhēn tōngshùn yìdiǎnr yě bú xiàng bèi de · (whispering) That flowed so well: it didn't sound recited at all.

xiaoming （小声）可不是嘛！条理清楚，论证也有力。陈教授一直在点头。

xiǎo shēng kěbùshi ma tiáolǐ qīngchu lùnzhèng yě yǒulì Chénjiàoshòu yìzhí zài diǎntóu · (whispering) Isn't it just! Clear and well organised, and a strong argument too. Professor Chen hasn't stopped nodding.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the committee's questions

xiaoming 怎么样？他们都问了什么？

zěnmeyàng tāmen dōu wèn le shénme · Well? What did they ask?

little sister 第一位老师问：论文里的数字确切吗？我说，每个数字都参见了当年的报纸和档案，有的我还求证过两次。有些数字是我推算和估算的，譬如我假定每所夜校平均有一百个学生，这些我都在注释里说明了，没有把它们当作定论。

dì yī wèi lǎoshī wèn lùnwén lǐ de shùzì quèqiè ma wǒ shuō měi gè shùzì dōu cānjiàn le dāngnián de bàozhǐ hé dàngàn yǒude wǒ hái qiúzhèng guo liǎng cì yǒuxiē shùzì shì wǒ tuīsuàn hé gūsuàn de pìrú wǒ jiǎdìng měi suǒ yèxiào píngjūn yǒu yìbǎi gè xuéshēng zhèxiē wǒ dōu zài zhùshì lǐ shuōmíng le méiyǒu bǎ tāmen dàngzuò dìnglùn · The first one asked whether my figures are exact. I said every figure was checked against newspapers and archives from the time, and some I verified twice. Some figures I worked out or estimated, for example I assumed an average of a hundred students per night school, and I explained all that in the notes rather than treating them as settled.

little sister 第二位老师有异议。她说我的看法有点儿偏向夜校，写历史要用同一个尺度，不能只看好的一面。她说话的时候，带着一点儿批评的意味，这个问题完全在我的意料之外。我沉思了几秒钟，才开始回答。

dì èr wèi lǎoshī yǒu yìyì tā shuō wǒ de kànfǎ yǒudiǎnr piānxiàng yèxiào xiě lìshǐ yào yòng tóngyī gè chǐdù bù néng zhǐ kàn hǎo de yímiàn tā shuōhuà de shíhou dài zhe yìdiǎnr pīpíng de yìwèi zhège wèntí wánquán zài wǒ de yìliào zhī wài wǒ chénsī le jǐ miǎo zhōng cái kāishǐ huídá · The second one had an objection. She said my view leans a bit in the night schools' favour, and that history has to be judged by one yardstick: you can't only look at the good side. There was a hint of criticism in her voice, and I really hadn't expected that question. I thought for a few seconds before I answered.

anna 你怎么回答的？

nǐ zěnme huídá de · How did you answer?

little sister 我说她的见解很有道理。论文里也写了夜校的问题：有的老师水准不高，有的课太教条，只会往学生脑子里灌输。我也承认，有些推论还需要更多的证据。人人都可能有偏见，所以我一直很留心，努力分辨哪些材料可靠。有的材料很容易混淆，让我困惑了很久。

wǒ shuō tā de jiànjiě hěn yǒu dàolǐ lùnwén lǐ yě xiě le yèxiào de wèntí yǒude lǎoshī shuǐzhǔn bù gāo yǒude kè tài jiàotiáo zhǐ huì wǎng xuéshēng nǎozi lǐ guànshū wǒ yě chéngrèn yǒuxiē tuīlùn hái xūyào gèng duō de zhèngjù rén rén dōu kěnéng yǒu piānjiàn suǒyǐ wǒ yìzhí hěn liúxīn nǔlì fēnbiàn nǎxiē cáiliào kěkào yǒude cáiliào hěn róngyì hùnxiáo ràng wǒ kùnhuò le hěn jiǔ · I said she had a very good point. My thesis does cover the night schools' problems: some teachers weren't very good, and some classes were too rigid, just cramming things into students' heads. And I admitted that some of my inferences still need more evidence. Anyone can be biased, so I've been careful all along to sort reliable sources from unreliable ones. Some sources are easy to mix up, and they had me puzzled for a long time.

anna 我坐在下面听，观感很好。你没有动摇，也没有生气。

wǒ zuò zài xiàmiàn tīng guāngǎn hěn hǎo nǐ méiyǒu dòngyáo yě méiyǒu shēngqì · Sitting in the audience, I thought it went really well. You didn't waver, and you didn't get cross.

professor chen 回答得很好。学术上有分歧很正常，大家不一定要达成共识。是非对错，要靠证据。她的本意不是批评你，她的用意是让论文更好。能听进不同的意见，就会进步；反之，就会停在原地。

huídá de hěn hǎo xuéshù shàng yǒu fēnqí hěn zhèngcháng dàjiā bù yídìng yào dáchéng gòngshí shìfēi duì cuò yào kào zhèngjù tā de běnyì bú shì pīpíng nǐ tā de yòngyì shì ràng lùnwén gèng hǎo néng tīng jìn bù tóng de yìjiàn jiù huì jìnbù fǎnzhī jiù huì tíng zài yuán dì · Well answered. Disagreement is normal in scholarship, and people don't have to reach a consensus. Right and wrong come down to evidence. She didn't mean to criticise you: her aim was to make the thesis better. If you can take other views on board, you improve; if not, you stand still.

little sister 第三位老师问的是伦理：采访老人的时候，怎么尊重他们的意愿？我讲了那位老学生的故事：她家里的那件事，我没写进去，因为那是她的底线。

dì sān wèi lǎoshī wèn de shì lúnlǐ cǎifǎng lǎorén de shíhou zěnme zūnzhòng tāmen de yìyuàn wǒ jiǎng le nà

wèi lǎo xuéshēng de gùshi tā jiā lǐ de nà jiàn shì wǒ méi xiě jinqu yīnwèi nà shì tā de dǐxiàn · The third asked about ethics: how did I respect the wishes of the old people I interviewed? I told them about that former student: I left out her family story, because that was her line.

professor chen 这个回答好。这个问题值得每个人深思。做研究，出发点和初衷都要对得起被采访的人。有的人企图用别人的故事来证明自己的观点，那种意图就不对了。

zhège huídá hǎo zhège wèntí zhídé měi gè rén shēnsī zuò yánjiū chūfādiǎn hé chūzhōng dōu yào duìdeqǐ bèi cǎifǎng de rén yǒude rén qǐtú yòng biérén de gùshi lái zhèngmíng zìjǐ de guāndiǎn nà zhǒng yìtú jiù bú duì le · Good answer. That's a question everyone should think hard about. In research, your motives and your aims have to do right by the people you interview. Some people try to use other people's stories just to prove their own point: that kind of motive is wrong.

xiaoming 他们问没问那张照片？

tāmen wèn méi wèn nà zhāng zhàopiàn · Did they ask about the photo?

little sister 问了。我说，我根据衣服、背景和字迹推断，照片是一九五六年左右拍的。可是照片上的人是谁，现在还没有确凿的证据，不能断定。

wèn le wǒ shuō wǒ gēnjù yīfu bèijǐng hé zìjì tuīduàn zhàopiàn shì yījiǔwǔliù nián zuǒyòu pāi de kěshì zhàopiàn shàng de rén shì shéi xiànzài hái méiyǒu quèzáo de zhèngjù bù néng duàndìng · They did. I said that from the clothes, the background and the handwriting, I infer it was taken around 1956. But who the person in it is, there's no conclusive evidence yet, so I can't say for certain.

professor chen 不知道就说不知道，不乱揣测，这就是学者的准则。答辩好比一次考试，也好比一次聊天。我看了几十年答辩，你的心得可以写进下一届学生的手册里了！

bù zhīdào jiù shuō bù zhīdào bú luàn chuǎicè zhè jiùshì xuézhě de zhǔnzé dábiàn hǎobǐ yí cì kǎoshì yě hǎobǐ yí cì liáotiān wǒ kàn le jǐ shí nián dábiàn nǐ de xīndé kěyǐ xiě jìn xià yí jiè xuéshēng de shǒucè lǐ le · If you don't know, say so, and don't speculate wildly: that's a scholar's rule. A defence is like an exam, and also like a conversation. I've sat through decades of defences, and what you've learned could go into next year's student handbook!

chapter 4 chapter 4: the woman in the photo

teacher wang 对不起，来晚了！这位是我妈妈，今年九十岁了。她听说你在写夜校，非要来看看。
duìbuqǐ lái wǎn le zhè wèi shì wǒ māma jīnnián jiǔshí suì le tā tīngshuō nǐ zài xiě yèxiào fēi yào lái kàn kan · Sorry I'm late! This is my mother: she's ninety this year. When she heard you were writing about night schools, she insisted on coming.

little sister 阿姨好！王老师，我一直很不解：这张照片怎么会在您学校的仓库里？您认识照片上的人吗？
āyí hǎo Wánglǎoshī wǒ yìzhí hěn bùjiě zhè zhāng zhàopiàn zěnme huì zài nín xuéxiào de cāngkù lǐ nín rènshi zhàopiàn shàng de rén ma · How do you do! Teacher Wang, there's something I've never understood: how did this photo end up in your school's storeroom? Do you know who this is?

teacher wang 这……这是我妈妈！照片虽然旧了，我一眼就能辨认出来。你看，我妈妈看了照片，先笑了，又哭了。一看到照片，她的眼睛就亮了，过去的事一件件浮现在她眼前。
zhè zhè shì wǒ māma zhàopiàn suīrán jiù le wǒ yì yǎn jiù néng biànrèn chulai nǐ kàn wǒ māma kàn le zhàopiàn xiān xiào le yòu kū le yí kàn dào zhàopiàn tā de yǎnjing jiù liàng le guòqù de shì yí jiàn jiàn fúxiàn zài tā yǎnqián · This… this is my mother! The photo may be old, but I'd know her anywhere. Look: my mother has looked at it, smiled, and now she's crying. The moment she saw it, her eyes lit up, and the past is coming back to her, one thing after another.

anna 真的是她！我们的推理被印证了！我一直坚信她们有关系。
zhēn de shì tā wǒmen de tuīlǐ bèi yìnzhèng le wǒ yìzhí jiānxìn tāmen yǒu guānxì · It really is her! Our reasoning was right! I was always sure they were connected.

xiaoming 我还说你们太当真了。这件事说起来真玄，我还以为是我的错觉呢。
wǒ hái shuō nǐmen tài dàngzhēn le zhè jiàn shì shuō qǐlai zhēn xuán wǒ hái yǐwéi shì wǒ de cuòjué ne · And I said you were taking it too seriously. It sounds far-fetched, I'd have thought I was imagining it.

teacher wang 我妈妈是师范学校毕业的，二十岁被分到东城的第三工人夜校教书，晚上教工人认字，从来不要钱。她那一代老师觉悟很高，心里只有一个念头：让每个工人都能看报纸。照片后面那行字，是她写的。
wǒ māma shì shīfàn xuéxiào bìyè de èrshí suì bèi fēn dào dōng chéng de dì sān gōngrén yèxiào jiāo shū wǎnshang jiāo gōngrén rèn zì cónglái búyào qián tā nà yídài lǎoshī juéwù hěn gāo xīnlǐ zhǐyǒu yí gè niàntou ràng měi gè gōngrén dōu néng kàn bàozhǐ zhàopiàn hòumiàn nà háng zì shì tā xiě de · My mother trained at a teachers' college, and at twenty she was sent to teach at the No. 3 Workers' Night School in Dongcheng. In the evenings she taught workers to read, and never took a penny. Teachers of her generation had a real sense of duty, and only one thought in their heads: that every worker should be able to read a newspaper. The line on the back of the photo is in her handwriting.

little sister "切记：教人先教心。"
qièjì jiāo rén xiān jiāo xīn · "Remember: to teach people, first teach the heart."

teacher wang 对，这句话我一直牢记在心。二十年前我开始办学，看中那栋老楼，就是因为妈妈在那里教过书。我们学校的宗旨，就来自这句话。我妈妈记性不太好了，可是她说，那时候的学生白天干活，晚上上课，一个都不旷课。
duì zhè jù huà wǒ yìzhí láojì zài xīn èrshí nián qián wǒ kāishǐ bànxué kànzhòng nà dòng lǎo lóu jiùshì yīnwèi māma zài nàlǐ jiāo guo shū wǒmen xuéxiào de zōngzhǐ jiù láizì zhè jù huà wǒ māma jìxing bú tài hǎo le kěshì tā shuō nà shíhou de xuéshēng báitiān gànhuó wǎnshang shàngkè yí gè dōu bú kuàngkè · Yes, and I've always kept it close to my heart. Twenty years ago, when I started the school, I chose that old building because my mother had taught there. Our school's motto comes from that line. My mother's memory isn't what it was, but she says the students back then worked all day and came to class at night, and not one of them ever skipped.

professor chen 她们那一代老师很有远见，早就预见到：一个国家要发展，先要让人人都能读书。我们应该铭记她们。
tāmen nà yídài lǎoshī hěn yǒu yuǎnjiàn zǎo jiù yùjiàn dào yí gè guójiā yào fāzhǎn xiān yào ràng rén rén dōu néng dúshū wǒmen yīnggāi míngjì tāmen · Teachers of that generation had real vision: they saw long ago that for a country to develop, everyone must first be able to read. We should never forget them.

little sister 王老师，我能把阿姨的故事写进论文吗？我要先尊重她自己的意愿。
Wánglǎoshī wǒ néng bǎ āyí de gùshi xiě jìn lùnwén ma wǒ yào xiān zūnzhòng tā zìjǐ de yìyuàn · Teacher Wang,

may I put your mother's story in my thesis? I want to respect her own wishes first.

teacher wang 她刚才跟我说：“写吧，这些事不应该被遗忘。”

tā gāngcái gēn wǒ shuō xiě ba zhèxiē shì bù yīnggāi bèi yíwàng · She's just told me: "Write it. These things shouldn't be forgotten."

professor chen 一张照片，解开了一个谜团，也连起了两代老师。历史的奥秘和玄机，比任何推理小说都好看。

yì zhāng zhàopiàn jiě kāi le yí gè mítuán yě lián qǐ le liǎng dài lǎoshī lìshǐ de àomì hé xuánjī bǐ rènhé tuīlǐ xiǎoshuō dōu hǎokàn · One photo has solved a mystery and joined up two generations of teachers. History's secrets beat any detective novel.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the result

professor chen 结果出来了：答辩通过，成绩优秀！委员会一致认为，你的论证很有说服力，对不同意见的态度也很好。
jiéguǒ chūlái le dábiàn tōngguò chéngjì yōuxiù wěiyuánhuì yízhì rènwéi nǐ de lùnzhèng hěn yǒu shuōfú lì duì bù tóng yìjiàn de tàidù yě hěn hǎo · The result is in: you passed, with distinction! The committee agreed that your argument is very convincing, and that you handled the objections well.

little sister 真的吗？我还以为第二位老师会给我打低分呢。
zhēn de ma wǒ hái yǐwéi dì èr wèi lǎoshī huì gěi wǒ dǎ dī fēn ne · Really? I thought the second one would mark me down.

professor chen 就是她提议给你优秀的。她说，能领会别人的批评，比没有批评更难得。成绩取决于论证，不取决于结论。这份功劳归于你自己，也归于那些愿意讲故事的老人。
jiùshì tā tíyì gěi nǐ yōuxiù de tā shuō néng lǐnghuì biérén de pīpíng bǐ méiyǒu pīpíng gèng nándé chéngjì qǔjué yú lùnzhèng bù qǔjué yú jiélùn zhè fèn gōngláo guīyú nǐ zìjǐ yě guīyú nàxiē yuànyì jiǎng gùshi de lǎorén · She was the one who proposed the distinction. She said that taking criticism on board is rarer than having none. The mark depends on how you argue, not on what you conclude. The credit belongs to you, and to the old people who were willing to tell their stories.

ms zhang 祝贺你！这下能拿到学士文凭了。林编辑刚给我发消息，说她们网站下周就发表你的摘要，标题她还在推敲。
zhùhè nǐ zhè xià néng ná dào xuéshì wénpíng le Línbiānjí gāng gěi wǒ fā xiāoxi shuō tāmen wǎngzhàn xià zhōu jiù fābiǎo nǐ de zhāiyào biāotí tā hái zài tuīqiāo · Congratulations! Now you'll get your bachelor's degree. Editor Lin has just messaged me: her website is publishing your abstract next week, and she's still polishing the headline.

little sister 撰写这篇论文花了半年。回首这半年，我领略了一段历史，长了见识，也多了一点儿阅历。我把我的心得归结为三句话：做研究不能空想，要求证；写文章要推敲、要斟酌；对被采访的人要尊重。
zhuànxiě zhè piān lùnwén huā le bàn nián huíshǒu zhè bàn nián wǒ lǐnglüè le yí duàn lìshǐ zhǎng le jiànshi yě duō le yìdiǎnr yuèlì wǒ bǎ wǒ de xīndé guījié wéi sān jù huà zuò yánjiū bù néng kōngxiǎng yào qiúzhèng xiě wénzhāng yào tuīqiāo yào zhēnzhuó duì bèi cǎifǎng de rén yào zūnzhòng · Writing this thesis took six months. Looking back, I've had a taste of a whole chapter of history, seen more of the world and lived a little more. I'd sum up what I've learned in three sentences: in research you can't just daydream, you have to check; in writing you have to weigh every word; and you have to respect the people you interview.

little sister 我现在才醒悟：以前以为一个月就能写完论文，简直是妄想！
wǒ xiànzài cái xǐngwù yǐqián yǐwéi yí gè yuè jiù néng xiě wán lùnwén jiǎnzhí shì wàngxiǎng · Only now do I see it: I used to think I could write a thesis in a month. What a fantasy!

ms zhang 毕业以后，你打算怎么办？
bìyè yǐhòu nǐ dǎsuàn zěnme bàn · So what are you going to do after you graduate?

little sister 我盘算了很久，既要考量家里的情况，也要顾及自己的兴趣，还要着眼长远。无论如何，我还想继续读书。也许马上攻读硕士，也许先工作几年再深造，具体怎么走，我还要好好想想。
wǒ pánsuan le hěn jiǔ jì yào kǎoliáng jiā lǐ de qíngkuàng yě yào gùjí zìjǐ de xìngqù hái yào zhuóyǎn chángyuǎn wúlùn rúhé wǒ hái xiǎng jìxù dúshū yěxǔ mǎshàng gōngdú shuòshì yěxǔ xiān gōngzuò jǐ nián zài shēnzào jùtǐ zěnme zǒu wǒ hái yào hǎohǎo xiǎng xiang · I've been working it out for a long time: I have to consider the family's situation, think about what I actually love, and keep the long term in view. Whatever happens, I want to keep studying. Maybe go straight on to a master's, maybe work for a few years first and then go back. Exactly which way, I still have to think about properly.

anna 我有一种预感，不，我敢预言：不管走哪条路，你都会走得很好。
wǒ yǒu yì zhǒng yùgǎn bù wǒ gǎn yùyán bùguǎn zǒu nǎ tiáo lù nǐ dōu huì zǒu de hěn hǎo · I have a feeling, no, I'll make a prediction: whichever way you go, you'll do brilliantly.

teacher wang 不管走哪条路，都要记住我妈妈那句话：教人先教心，做人也一样。
bùguǎn zǒu nǎ tiáo lù dōu yào jì zhù wǒ māma nà jù huà jiāo rén xiān jiāo xīn zuò rén yě yíyàng · Whichever

way you go, remember my mother's words: to teach people, first teach the heart. And the same goes for how you live.

professor chen 展望未来，你们这一代人眼界更宽，视野更开阔。可是归根到底，读书的初衷没有变：让自己，也让别人，活得更明白。

zhǎnwàng wèilái nǐmen zhè yídài rén yǎnjiè gèng kuān shìyě gèng kāikuò kěshì guīgēn dàodǐ dúshū de chūzhōng méiyǒu biàn ràng zìjǐ yě ràng biérén huó de gèng míngbai · Looking ahead, your generation sees further and wider than we did. But in the final analysis, the reason we read hasn't changed: to help ourselves, and others, see life more clearly.

You have just followed a whole thesis defence in Chinese: the talk, the objections and the evidence. Your next big presentation is waiting.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 177 pros, cons and nonsense

Weigh pros and cons, call out nonsense and say what is proper, and frame a judgement with 归根到底, 无论如何 and 总而言之.

Arguments are won by finding the crux and spotting the absurd. These words let you do both, politely or bluntly.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
利弊	lìbì	pros and cons	做决定以前，要先权衡利弊。 Before deciding, weigh up the pros and cons.
利害	lìhài	gains and losses, stakes	这件事跟我们没有直接的利害关系。 We have no direct stake in this.
要害	yàohài	vital point, crux	他一句话就说到了问题的要害。 With one sentence he went straight to the heart of the problem.
要紧	yàojǐn	important, urgent	这件事很要紧，你马上去办吧。 This is urgent: go and deal with it right away.
要领	yàolǐng	essentials, the knack	游泳的要领是放松。 The trick to swimming is to relax.
症结	zhēngjié	crux, sticking point	问题的症结在于沟通不够。 The crux of the problem is poor communication.
疑点	yídiǎn	point of doubt	这件事还有很多疑点。 There are still a lot of unanswered questions about this.
可疑	kěyí	suspicious	门口有个可疑的人，你快报警。 There's someone suspicious at the door: call the police.
蹊跷	qīqiao	odd, fishy	这件事有点儿蹊跷。 There's something fishy about this.
误区	wùqū	misconception, pitfall	少吃饭就能减肥，这是一个误区。 Thinking that eating less rice makes you lose weight is a misconception.
荒诞	huāngdàn	absurd, fantastic	这个故事很荒诞，但是很有意思。 The story is absurd, but very entertaining.
荒谬	huāngmiù	absurd, preposterous	这种说法太荒谬了，没有人会信。 That claim is preposterous: nobody will believe it.
荒唐	huāngtáng	ridiculous, outrageous	他的想法太荒唐了。 His idea is ridiculous.
离谱儿	lípǔr	outrageous, way off	这个价格太离谱儿了！ That price is outrageous!
无理	wúlǐ	unreasonable	他的要求很无理。 His demands are unreasonable.

不当	bùdàng	improper, unsuitable	他用词不当，让大家误会了。 His poor choice of words caused a misunderstanding.
得当	dédàng	proper, appropriate	她处理得很得当，没人有意见。 She handled it very well: nobody had any complaints.
妥	tuǒ	appropriate, settled	我觉得这样说不太妥。 I don't think that's quite the right thing to say.
妥当	tuǒdàng	appropriate, proper	这样安排比较妥当。 This arrangement seems the most suitable.
妥善	tuǒshàn	well arranged, properly	这件事已经妥善处理了。 The matter has been properly dealt with.
稳妥	wěntuǒ	safe, reliable	先在两个班试一试，比较稳妥。 It's safer to try it in two classes first.
合乎	héhū	to conform to, accord with	这样做合乎规定。 This is in line with the rules.
吻合	wěnhé	to match, tally	他说的跟监控录像完全吻合。 What he said matches the CCTV footage exactly.
同等	tóngděng	equal, of the same rank	男女做一样的工作，就应该得到同等的报酬。 Men and women doing the same work should get equal pay.
媲美	pìměi	to rival, compare favourably with	这家小店的菜可以媲美大饭店。 The food at this little place rivals a big restaurant's.
雷同	léitóng	identical, duplicated (pejorative)	这两篇文章内容雷同。 These two articles are practically identical.
反差	fǎnchā	contrast	新楼和旧楼形成了很大的反差。 The new building and the old one make a striking contrast.
对照	duìzhào	to compare, contrast	对照原文，看看译得对不对。 Check it against the original and see if the translation is right.
参照	cānzhào	to refer to, use as a reference	我们参照了别的学校的做法。 We followed the example of other schools.
先例	xiānlì	precedent	这种情况以前没有先例。 There's no precedent for this.
特例	tèlì	special case	这次是特例，以后可不行。 This is a special case: it won't happen again.
个案	gèàn	individual case	这只是个案，不能说明所有的问题。 This is just one case: it doesn't explain everything.
效仿	xiàofǎng	to imitate, follow the example of	别的学校纷纷效仿这种做法。 Other schools followed suit one after another.
无条件	wútiáojiàn	unconditional	父母对孩子的爱是无条件的。 Parents' love for their children is unconditional.
次要	cìyào	secondary, less important	价格是次要的，质量最重要。 Price is secondary: quality matters most.

pattern review: 归根到底, 无论如何 and 总而言之 in an argument

pros, cons, details | **，归根到底 / 总而言之** | **，your judgement**

In a debate, 归根到底 digs down to the root of the problem, 总而言之 gathers your points into one verdict, and 无论如何 shows a line you will not move from: 无论如何不能作弊.

好处和坏处我们都说了，总而言之，还是好处大于坏处。 **hǎochù hé huàichù wǒmen dōu shuō le zǒngéryánzhī háishi hǎochù dàyú huàichù** We've covered the pros and the cons; all in all, the pros win.

问题看起来很多，归根到底，是准备不够。 **wèntí kàn qǐlai hěn duō guīgēn dàodǐ shì zhǔnbèi búgòu** There seem to be lots of problems, but at root, we didn't prepare enough.

稿子可以写得不好，但是无论如何不能抄。 **gǎozi kěyǐ xiě de bù hǎo dànshì wúlùn rúhé bù néng chāo** Your speech can be badly written, but whatever happens, you mustn't copy it.

dialogue the motion is announced

professor chen 各位，今年的大辩论定在下个月，辩题是：“人工智能进课堂，好处大于坏处。”今年第一次由毕业生队对学生队。

gèwèi jīnnián de dà biànlùn dìng zài xià gè yuè biàn tí shì réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng hǎochù dàyú huàichù jīnnián dì yī cì yóu bìyèshēng duì duì xuéshēng duì · Everyone, this year's great debate is next month, and the motion is: "AI in the classroom does more good than harm." And for the first time, it's the graduates against the students.

little sister 这个辩题好！利弊都很明显，大家的分歧很大，谁也说服不了谁。我是学生队的队长。

zhège biàn tí hǎo lìbì dōu hěn míngxiǎn dàjiā de fēnqí hěn dà shéi yě shuōfú bu liǎo shéi wǒ shì xuéshēng duì de duìzhǎng · Great motion! The pros and cons are both obvious, opinions are deeply divided, and nobody will convince anybody. I'm the students' captain.

anna 辩论的宗旨不是赢，是让大家把道理说清楚。

biànlùn de zōngzhǐ bú shì yíng shì ràng dàjiā bǎ dàolǐ shuō qīngchu · The point of a debate isn't winning: it's getting everyone to make their reasoning clear.

xiaoming 我和安娜代表毕业生队，我无论如何都要参加！我们是正方还是反方？

wǒ hé Ānnà dàibiǎo bìyèshēng duì wǒ wúlùn rúhé dōu yào cānjiā wǒmen shì zhèng fāng háishi fǎn fāng · Anna and I are on the graduates' team, and I wouldn't miss it for anything! Are we for or against?

professor chen 抽签决定。不管抽到哪一方，先界定概念，分析利害，再找对方的要害。辩论的要领就一条：不说无理的话，不打不当的比方。

chōuqiān juédìng bùguǎn chōu dào nǎ yì fāng xiān jièdìng gàiniàn fēnxī lìhài zài zhǎo duìfāng de yàohài biànlùn de yàolǐng jiù yì tiáo bù shuō wúlǐ de huà bù dǎ búdàng de bǐfang · That's decided by drawing lots. Whichever side you get, first define your terms, work out what's at stake, then find the other side's weak spot. There's only one rule to debating: never say anything unreasonable, and never use a misleading comparison.

anna 我先讲一个我们公司的个案。去年我们给一所中学做学习软件，做法比较稳妥：先在两个班试，再跟别的班对照。结果，两个班的成绩都提高了，跟我们的估算基本吻合。

wǒ xiān jiǎng yí gè wǒmen gōngsī de gèàn qùnián wǒmen gěi yì suǒ zhōngxué zuò xuéxí ruǎnjiàn zuòfǎ bǐjiào wěntuǒ xiān zài liǎng gè bān shì zài gēn biéde bān duìzhào jiéguǒ liǎng gè bān de chéngjì dōu tígāo le gēn wǒmen de gūsuàn jīběn wěnhé · Let me tell you about one case at my company. Last year we made learning software for a secondary school, and we played it safe: first we tried it in two classes, then compared them with the other classes. Both classes' marks went up, more or less in line with our estimates.

anna 可是我们也发现了一个误区：有的家长以为有了人工智能，老师就是次要的了。

kěshì wǒmen yě fāxiàn le yí gè wùqū yǒude jiāzhǎng yǐwéi yǒu le réngōng zhìnéng lǎoshī jiùshì cìyào de le · But we also found a misconception: some parents thought that with AI, teachers had become secondary.

little sister 这个想法太荒唐了！我坚信，人工智能再聪明，也没法跟好老师媲美。

zhège xiǎngfǎ tài huāngtáng le wǒ jiānxìn réngōng zhìnéng zài cōngmíng yě méifǎ gēn hǎo lǎoshī pìměi · That's ridiculous! I firmly believe that however clever AI gets, it can't compare with a good teacher.

xiaoming 我觉得说“没法”有点儿不妥。问题的症结不在机器，在人怎么用。效果好不好，取决于老师。

wǒ juéde shuō méifǎ yǒudiǎnr bù tuǒ wèntí de zhēngjié bú zài jīqì zài rén zěnme yòng xiàoguǒ hǎo bu hǎo qǔjué yú lǎoshī · I'm not sure "can't" is quite fair. The crux of the problem isn't the machine, it's how people use it. Whether it works depends on the teacher.

professor chen 说得对，要找到症结。还有一件要紧的事：去年的比赛有点儿蹊跷，两个队的稿子有三段完全雷同。

shuō de duì yào zhǎo dào zhēngjié hái yǒu yí jiàn yàojǐn de shì qùnián de bǐsài yǒudiǎnr qīqiao liǎng gè duì de gǎozi yǒu sān duàn wánquán léitóng · Quite right: find the crux. And there's something important: last year's debate had something fishy about it. Three paragraphs of the two teams' speeches were exactly the same.

little sister 我记得！很可疑。后来查清楚了吗？

wǒ jìde hěn kěyí hòulái chá qīngchu le ma · I remember! Very suspicious. Did anyone ever get to the bottom of

it?

professor chen 查了。疑点很多，最后发现两个队都参照了网上同一篇文章。这在我们辩论社没有先例，后来也妥善处理了。所以今年规定：稿子必须自己写，不能效仿别人。
chá le yídiǎn hěn duō zuìhòu fāxiàn liǎng gè duì dōu cānzhào le wǎngshang tóngyī piān wénzhāng zhè zài wǒmen biànlùn shè méiyǒu xiānlì hòulái yě tuǒshàn chǔlǐ le suǒyǐ jīnnián guīdìng gǎozi bìxū zìjǐ xiě bù néng xiàofǎng biérén · Yes. There were plenty of doubtful points, and in the end we found both teams had drawn on the same article online. There was no precedent in our club, and it was dealt with properly. So this year the rule is: you write your own speech, and you don't copy anyone else's.

little sister 他们的初衷可能是好的，可是做法不当。
tāmen de chūzhōng kěnéng shì hǎo de kěshì zuòfǎ búdàng · Maybe they meant well, but what they did was wrong.

anna 这个规定很妥当。那用人工智能写稿子呢?
zhège guīdìng hěn tuǒdàng nà yòng réngōng zhìnéng xiě gǎozi ne · That's a sensible rule. What about using AI to write your speech?

professor chen 好问题！跟抄别人的稿子同等对待，一律不行，没有特例。这是无条件的，也是我们的底线，这样才合乎辩论的精神。
hǎo wèntí gēn chāo biérén de gǎozi tóngděng duìdài yílǜ bùxíng méiyǒu tèlì zhè shì wútiáojiàn de yě shì wǒmen de dǐxiàn zhèyàng cái héhū biànlùn de jīngshén · Good question! It's treated the same as copying someone else's speech: not allowed, no exceptions. That's unconditional, and it's our bottom line: it's the only way that fits the spirit of debate.

xiaoming 这个准则很合理。
zhège zhǔnzé hěn hélǐ · That's a fair rule.

little sister 哈哈，辩论“人工智能进课堂”，却不能用人工智能，反差真大，像一个荒诞的笑话！
hā hā biànlùn réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng què bù néng yòng réngōng zhìnéng fǎnchā zhēn dà xiàng yí gè huāngdàn de xiàohua · Ha! Debating “AI in the classroom” but not allowed to use AI: what a contrast, it's like some absurd joke!

professor chen 这不是荒谬，是规则。用得得当，是工具；用得离谱儿，就是作弊。总而言之：辩题可以讨论，规则不能讨论。
zhè bú shì huāngmiù shì guīzé yòng de dédàng shì gōngjù yòng de lípǔr jiùshì zuòbì zǒngéryánzhī biàn tí kěyǐ tǎolùn guīzé bù néng tǎolùn · It isn't absurd, it's the rules. Used properly, it's a tool; used outrageously, it's cheating. In a word: the motion is up for debate, the rules are not.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

蹊
qī
path

跷
qiao
strange

good to know · Three ways to say “absurd”: 荒谬 (logically wrong), 荒唐 (ridiculous, reckless), 荒诞 (bizarre, like a surreal story). 离谱儿 is the chatty one: way off. 要紧 is most common in the negative: 不要紧 “it doesn't matter, never mind”.

You can now take an argument apart in Chinese: find the crux, call out the absurd and say what's proper.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 178 hidden depths

Talk about hidden costs, subtle meanings and hard choices, finish with 罢了 (that's all) and 也罢 (all right then), and describe a loop with X了Y，Y了X.

A good argument looks beneath the surface. These words name what is hidden, implied, potential or subtle, and these endings make your Chinese sound relaxed.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
不及	bùjí	to be not as good as; too late to	我的中文远远不及她。 My Chinese is nowhere near as good as hers.
呈	chéng	to show, assume (a form)	今年学生人数呈上升趋势。 Student numbers are on the rise this year.
暧昧	àimèi	ambiguous, vague (attitude)	他的态度很暧昧，不说同意，也不说反对。 His attitude is vague: he neither agrees nor objects.
变通	biàntōng	to be flexible, adapt	规定是死的，人是活的，要学会变通。 Rules are fixed, but people aren't: learn to adapt.
辩证	biànzhèng	dialectical; seeing both sides	看问题要辩证，不能只看一面。 Look at problems from both sides, not just one.
打消	dǎxiāo	to give up (an idea), dispel	听了医生的|话，他打消了去爬山的念头。 After hearing the doctor, he gave up the idea of going climbing.
大意	dàyì	main idea, gist	请用几句话说说这篇文章的大意{da4yi4}。 Sum up the main idea of this article in a few sentences.
低估	dīgū	to underestimate	千万别低估你的对手。 Never underestimate your opponent.
反面	fǎnmiàn	reverse side; negative	这次失败是一个反面的例子。 This failure is an example of what not to do.
概况	gàikuàng	general situation, overview	先给大家介绍一下公司的概况。 First, a quick overview of the company.
感性	gǎnxìng	perceptual, emotional	孩子学东西很感性，喜欢看得见、摸得着的东西。 Children learn through their senses: they like things they can see and touch.
功利	gōnglì	utilitarian, materialistic	学习不能太功利，只为了分数。 Learning shouldn't be so utilitarian that it's only about marks.
构想	gòuxiǎng	idea, plan; to conceive	这只是一个构想，还没有开始做。 This is only an idea: we haven't started on it yet.
固有	gùyǒu	inherent, intrinsic	每个城市都有自己固有的文化。 Every city has its own culture.

观望	guānwàng	to wait and see	很多人还在观望，不敢马上买房子。 Lots of people are waiting to see what happens before buying a flat.
境界	jìngjiè	level (of understanding), realm	学习的最高境界是自己想学。 The highest level of learning is wanting to learn.
抉择	juézé	choice, to choose (a hard one)	留下还是回国，这是一个很难的抉择。 Stay or go home: it's a hard choice.
名义	míngyì	name, in the name of	他是以个人的名义来的，不代表公司。 He came in a personal capacity, not on behalf of the company.
内在	nèizài	inner, intrinsic	内在的美比外在的美更重要。 Inner beauty matters more than outward beauty.
潜在	qiánzài	potential, latent	这种做法有潜在的风险。 This approach carries hidden risks.
切忌	qièjì	must avoid	跑步切忌一开始就跑得太快。 Whatever you do, don't start a run too fast.
深奥	shēnào	profound, abstruse	这本书太深奥了，我看不懂。 This book is too deep for me: I can't follow it.
缩影	suōyǐng	epitome, microcosm	这条老街是北京变化的缩影。 This old street is Beijing's changes in miniature.
透彻	tòuchè	thorough, penetrating	他把这个问题讲得很透彻。 He explained the problem thoroughly.
外在	wàizài	external, outward	别只看一个人外在的东西。 Don't judge a person only by the outside.
微妙	wēimiào	subtle, delicate	两个人的关系变得很微妙。 The relationship between the two has become delicate.
未知数	wèizhīshù	unknown quantity	明天谁会赢，还是一个未知数。 Who'll win tomorrow is still anyone's guess.
虚假	xūjiǎ	false, fake	这条消息是虚假的，别相信。 This news is false: don't believe it.
选项	xuǎnxiàng	option	这道题有四个选项。 This question has four options.
演绎	yǎnyì	to act out; to deduce	他用一个小故事演绎了这个道理。 He brought the idea to life with a little story.
隐含	yǐnhán	to imply, contain	这句话隐含着批评的意思。 This sentence implies criticism.
隐性	yǐnxìng	hidden, invisible	加班也有隐性的代价，比如健康。 Overtime has hidden costs too, like your health.
蕴含	yùnhán	to contain, hold (meaning)	这个小故事蕴含着深刻的道理。 This little story holds a deep truth.
酌情	zhuóqíng	to use one's judgement, as appropriate	罚不罚，老师会酌情决定。 The teacher will decide case by case whether to punish anyone.

pattern review: 罢了, 也罢, 矣 and x了y，y了x

statement **罢了 / 也罢 / 矣**

罢了 at the end plays something down: “that’s all”. 也罢 says “oh well, all right then”, and A也罢，B也罢 means “whether A or B”. 矣 is a written 了 (足矣 “that is enough”). From day 27: X了Y，Y了X describes an endless loop: 问了抄，抄了问 “ask, copy, ask, copy”.

我没有反对，只是提个问题罢了。 **wǒ méiyǒu fǎnduì zhǐshì tí gè wèntí bàle** I’m not against it: I’m just asking a question, that’s all.

抽到反方？也罢，反方更有意思。 **chōu dào fǎn fāng yěbà fǎn fāng gèng yǒu yìsi** We drew the “against” side? Oh well, it’s more interesting anyway.

有的学生用机器写作业，问了抄，抄了问。 **yǒude xuéshēng yòng jīqì xiě zuòyè wèn le chāo chāo le wèn** Some students do homework with a machine: ask, copy, ask, copy.

一个好例子，足矣。 **yí gè hǎo lìzi zú yǐ** One good example is enough.

dialogue the “against” side

xiaoming 抽签结果出来了：我们是反方，要说人工智能进课堂坏处大于好处。我本来想当正方的。

chōuqiān jiéguǒ chūlái le wǒmen shì fǎn fāng yào shuō réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng huàichù dàyú hǎochù wǒ běnlái xiǎng dāng zhèng fāng de · The draw is in: we're against, so we have to argue that AI in the classroom does more harm than good. I wanted to be for.

anna 也罢，反方更有意思。正方的观点谁都想得到，反方要讲出那些隐含的问题。

yěbà fǎn fāng gèng yǒu yìsi zhèng fāng de guāndiǎn shéi dōu xiǎng de dào fǎn fāng yào jiǎng chū nàxiē yǐnhán de wèntí · Oh well, the "against" side is more fun. Anyone can think of the arguments for; we have to bring out the hidden problems.

dr zhou 我是你们的"科学顾问"。先说概况：现在很多学校在用人工智能，效果呈两种情况，有的很好，有的很差。

wǒ shì nǐmen de kēxué gùwèn xiān shuō gàikuàng xiànzài hěn duō xuéxiào zài yòng réngōng zhìnéng xiàoguǒ chéng liǎng zhǒng qíngkuàng yǒude hěn hǎo yǒude hěn chà · I'm your "science adviser". First, the general picture: lots of schools are using AI now, and the results fall into two camps: some very good, some very poor.

xiaoming 那我们有哪些选项？说它完全没用？太虚假了，评委不会信的。

nà wǒmen yǒu nǎxiē xuǎnxiàng shuō tā wánquán méi yòng tài xūjiǎ le píngwěi bú huì xìn de · So what are our options? Say it's completely useless? That would be dishonest, and the judges won't buy it.

anna 对，说它没用太荒谬了。我们的出发点应该是：怎么用才得当。

duì shuō tā méi yòng tài huāngmiù le wǒmen de chūfādiǎn yīnggāi shì zěnme yòng cái dédàng · Right, saying it's useless would be absurd. Our starting point should be: how do you use it properly?

dr zhou 切忌说过头。说得太离谱儿，对方一下子就能抓住要害。要辩证地看：先承认它的好处，再讲它潜在的风险和隐性的代价。

qièjì shuō guòtóu shuō de tài lípǔr duìfāng yíxià zi jiù néng zhuā zhù yàohài yào biànzhèng de kàn xiān chéngrèn tā de hǎochù zài jiǎng tā qiánzài de fēngxiǎn hé yǐnxìng de dàijià · Whatever you do, don't overstate it. Go too far and the other side will go straight for your weak spot. Look at both sides: admit the benefits first, then talk about the potential risks and the hidden costs.

anna 譬如，学生太依赖它，自己就不想了。有的学生写作业，问了抄，抄了问。

pìrú xuéshēng tài yīlài tā zìjǐ jiù bù xiǎng le yǒude xuéshēng xiě zuòyè wèn le chāo chāo le wèn · For example, students lean on it so much they stop thinking. Some do their homework like this: ask, copy, ask, copy.

xiaoming 这就是很多家长的误区：以为用了机器，学生就一定学得好。还有，学习变得很功利，只看外在的分数，不管内在的兴趣。学习的最高境界是自己想学，机器给不了。

zhè jiùshì hěn duō jiāzhǎng de wùqū yǐwéi yòng le jīqì xuéshēng jiù yídìng xué de hǎo hái yǒu xuéxí biàn de hěn gōnglì zhǐ kàn wàizài de fēnshù bùguǎn nèizài de xìngqù xuéxí de zuì gāo jìngjiè shì zìjǐ xiǎng xué jīqì gěi bù le · That's where a lot of parents go wrong: they think that once there's a machine, students are bound to learn well. And learning becomes purely about results: only the marks on the outside, never the interest inside. The highest form of learning is wanting to learn, and a machine can't give you that.

dr zhou 好。还有一个大家都低估的问题：孩子学东西很感性。机器能把深奥的道理讲得很透彻，可是不及老师的一个微笑、一句鼓励。人和人之间那种微妙的东西，是课堂固有的。

hǎo hái yǒu yí gè dàjiā dōu dīgū de wèntí háizi xué dōngxi hěn gǎnxìng jīqì néng bǎ shēnào de dàolǐ jiǎng de hěn tòuchè kěshì bùjí lǎoshī de yí gè wēixiào yí jù gǔlì rén hé rén zhījiān nà zhǒng wēimiào de dōngxi shì kètáng gùyǒu de · Good. There's another problem everyone underestimates: children learn through feeling. A machine can explain a deep idea thoroughly, but it can't match a teacher's smile or a word of encouragement. That subtle something between people is part of what a classroom is.

anna 我的构想是：开头用一个小故事，演绎一个整天跟机器学习的孩子。他的一天，就是这个时代的缩影。这个故事蕴含的道理，比数字更有力。

wǒ de gòuxiǎng shì kāitóu yòng yí gè xiǎo gùshi yǎnyì yí gè zhěng tiān gēn jīqì xuéxí de háizi tā de yì tiān jiùshì zhège shídài de suōyǐng zhège gùshi yùnhán de dàolǐ bǐ shùzì gèng yǒulì · My idea is to open with a little story that acts out the day of a child who learns with a machine all day long. His day is our times in miniature. The point that story holds is more powerful than any figures.

dr zhou 好主意。你们先用三句话说说发言的大意。一个好例子，足矣。不过对方会说：机器可以根据每个学生的情况酌情调整，比老师更了解学生。你们要准备好回答。
hǎo zhǔyi nǐmen xiān yòng sān jù huà shuō shuo fāyán de dàyì yí gè hǎo lìzi zú yǐ búguò duìfāng huì shuō jīqì kěyǐ gēnjù měi gè xuéshēng de qíngkuàng zhuóqíng tiáozhěng bǐ lǎoshī gèng liǎojiě xuéshēng nǐmen yào zhǔnbèi hǎo huídá · Good idea. First sum up the gist of your speech in three sentences. One good example is enough. But the other side will say a machine can adapt to each student case by case, and knows them better than a teacher. Be ready with an answer.

xiaoming 说实话，我还在观望：我们真能赢吗？对方有好几个高手，结果还是个未知数。
shuō shíhuà wǒ hái zài guānwàng wǒmen zhēn néng yíng ma duìfāng yǒu hǎo jǐ gè gāoshǒu jiéguǒ háishi gè wèizhīshù · Honestly, I'm still not sure: can we really win? They've got several really good speakers, and the result is anyone's guess.

dr zhou 别动摇。你们的框架很清楚，论证也很有力。
bié dòngyáo nǐmen de kuàngjià hěn qīngchu lùnzhèng yě hěn yǒulì · Don't waver. Your framework is clear and your arguments are strong.

anna 打消这个念头吧！别大意，也别害怕。我们不是以公司的名义去的，是以老学生的名义去的。输赢不过是一场比赛罢了，重要的是说得有道理。
dǎxiāo zhège niàntou ba bié dàyi yě bié hàipà wǒmen bú shì yǐ gōngsī de míngyì qù de shì yǐ lǎo xuéshēng de míngyì qù de shū yíng búguò shì yì chǎng bǐsài bàle zhòngyào de shì shuō de yǒu dàolǐ · Put that thought out of your head! Don't get careless, and don't be scared. We're not going in the company's name, we're going as old students. Win or lose, it's only a debate; what matters is that we make sense.

dr zhou 记住，对方的说法有时候会很暧昧，你们要会变通，不要只背稿子。在机器和老师之间，学校不需要做抉择，这也是一个反面的观点，你们要想好怎么回答。
jì zhù duìfāng de shuōfǎ yǒu shíhou huì hěn àimèi nǐmen yào huì biàntōng búyào zhǐ bèi gǎozi zài jīqì hé lǎoshī zhījiān xuéxiào bù xūyào zuò juézé zhè yě shì yí gè fǎnmiàn de guāndiǎn nǐmen yào xiǎng hǎo zěnme huídá · Remember, the other side will sometimes be vague, so you need to adapt, not just recite your notes. And schools don't actually have to choose between machines and teachers: that's a counter-argument too, so think about how you'll answer it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

暧
ài
dim

抉
jué
pick out

good to know · 大意 has two readings: dàyì "the gist" (文章的大意) and dàyi "careless" (别大意). 切忌 (must avoid) and 切记 (must remember) sound the same, qièjì, but give opposite advice.

You can now look beneath the surface of an argument in Chinese and say what is hidden, subtle or still unknown.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 179 reason, logic and order

Argue with logic in Chinese: use idioms for what follows, what differs and what matters most, say "more or less" with 或多或少 (或A或B), and close with 综上所述.

Four-character idioms are the backbone of formal argument. A few in the right place make a speech sound clear, educated and confident.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
综上所述	zōngshàngsuǒshù	to sum up (all of the above)	综上所述，我们认为这个方案是可行的。 To sum up, we believe this plan is workable.
理所当然	lǐsuǒdāngrán	only natural, a matter of course	帮助朋友是理所当然的。 Helping friends is only natural.
理直气壮	lǐzhíqìzhuàng	bold and confident (because right)	他理直气壮地说：“我没错！” He said boldly: “I’m not wrong!”
天经地义	tiānjīngdìyì	perfectly natural and right	父母照顾孩子，这是天经地义的。 Parents looking after their children: nothing could be more natural.
顺理成章	shùnlǐchéngzhāng	logical, follows naturally	他工作很努力，当上经理是顺理成章的事。 He worked hard, so it followed naturally that he became manager.
顺其自然	shùnqízìrán	to let nature take its course	别太着急，顺其自然吧。 Don’t rush it: let things take their course.
自然而然	zìránérrán	naturally, of its own accord	住久了，自然而然就习惯了。 Live there long enough and you get used to it without trying.
岂有此理	qǐyǒucǐlǐ	outrageous! how absurd!	岂有此理！他怎么能这样说？ That’s outrageous! How can he say that?
似是而非	sìshìérfēi	plausible but wrong	这个说法似是而非，听起来对，其实不对。 This claim is specious: it sounds right but it isn’t.
自相矛盾	zìxiāngmáodùn	to contradict oneself	他前面说同意，后面又说反对，自相矛盾。 First he says he agrees, then he says he’s against: he contradicts himself.
相提并论	xiāngtíbìnglùn	to put on a par	这两个人的水平不能相提并论。 The two of them aren’t remotely in the same league.
相辅相成	xiāngfǔxiāngchéng	to complement each other	理论和实践是相辅相成的。 Theory and practice complement each other.
息息相关	xīxīxiāngguān	closely bound up	环境和每个人的生活息息相关。 The environment is closely bound up with everyone’s life.
一概而论	yīgàiérlùn	to lump together, generalise	每个人的情况不同，不能一概而论。 Everyone’s situation is different: you can’t generalise.

因人而异	yīnrénéryì	to vary from person to person	学习方法因人而异。 The best way to learn varies from person to person.
因地制宜	yīndìzhìyí	to suit local conditions	种{zhong4}什么菜要因地制宜。 What vegetables to grow depends on local conditions.
截然不同	jiéránbùtóng	completely different	南方和北方的饮食习惯截然不同。 Eating habits in the south and the north are completely different.
大同小异	dàtóngxiǎoyì	much the same	这两种手机大同小异。 These two phones are much the same.
与众不同	yǔzhòngbùtóng	out of the ordinary, unique	她的想法总是与众不同。 Her ideas are always out of the ordinary.
独一无二	dúyīwúèr	unique, one of a kind	每个人都是独一无二的。 Everyone is unique.
诸如此类	zhūrúcǐlèi	and so on, things like that	吃饭、睡觉、交通，诸如此类的问题都要考虑。 Food, sleep, transport: all that sort of thing needs thinking about.
举足轻重	jǔzúqīngzhòng	to play a decisive role	他在公司里举足轻重。 He carries a lot of weight in the company.
重中之重	zhòngzhōngzhīzhòng	the most important thing of all	安全是重中之重。 Safety comes before everything.
当务之急	dāngwùzhījí	the most urgent task	当务之急是把病人送到医院。 The first priority is to get the patient to hospital.
刻不容缓	kèbùrónghuǎn	extremely urgent	保护环境，刻不容缓。 Protecting the environment can't wait.
恰到好处	qiàdàohǎochù	just right	菜里的盐放得恰到好处。 There's just the right amount of salt in this dish.
恰如其分	qiàrúqífèn	just right, apt (of words, praise)	他的评价恰如其分。 His assessment was spot on.
面面俱到	miànmiànjùdào	thorough, covering every aspect	他考虑问题面面俱到。 He thinks through every aspect of a problem.
有条不紊	yǒutiáobùwěn	methodical, in perfect order	她做事有条不紊。 She does things methodically.
自始至终	zìshǐzhìzhōng	from start to finish	他自始至终没说一句话。 He didn't say a word from start to finish.
一干二净	yīgānèrjìng	completely, thoroughly	他把这件事忘得一干二净。 He completely forgot about it.
一塌糊涂	yītāhútú	in a terrible mess	我的房间乱得一塌糊涂。 My room is in a terrible mess.
优胜劣汰	yōushèngliètài	survival of the fittest	市场竞争，优胜劣汰。 In the market, the best survive and the weak fall away.
新陈代谢	xīnchéndàixiè	metabolism; the new replacing the old	运动可以加快新陈代谢。 Exercise speeds up your metabolism.

在所难免	zàisuǒnánmiǎn	unavoidable	第一次做，出错是在所难免的。 Making a few mistakes the first time is unavoidable.

pattern 或a或b (more or less) and 综上所述 (to sum up)

或 A 或 B

或A或B puts two opposite words side by side: “A or B, one way or the other”. 或多或少 more or less, 或早或晚 sooner or later, 或大或小 big or small. 综上所述 “to sum up all of the above” opens the last paragraph of a speech or report; it is more formal than 总而言之.

人工智能或多或少会改变课堂。 **réngōng zhìnéng huòduō huòshǎo huì gǎibiàn kètáng** AI will change the classroom to some extent.

问题或大或小，都要认真对待。 **wèntí huò dà huò xiǎo dōu yào rènzhēn duìdài** Big or small, every problem has to be taken seriously.

综上所述，人工智能进课堂，好处大于坏处。 **zōngshàngsuǒshù réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng hǎochù dàyú huàichù** To sum up: AI in the classroom does more good than harm.

“我们要准备得面面俱到。”“可不是嘛，一点儿都不能大意。” **wǒmen yào zhǔnbèi de miànmiàn jùdào kěbùshi ma yìdiǎnr dōu bù néng dàyi** “We need to prepare every angle.” “Absolutely: we can’t be careless about anything.”

dialogue a practice round

professor chen 我们来练习一下。正方，你先说。
wǒmen lái liànxí yíxià zhèng fāng nǐ xiān shuō · Let's have a practice round. Speaker for the motion, off you go.

little sister 人工智能进课堂，是理所当然的事。时代在变，学校也要变，这是天经地义的道理！
réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng shì lǐsuǒdāngrán de shì shídài zài biàn xuéxiào yě yào biàn zhè shì tiānjīng dìyì de dàolǐ · AI in the classroom is a matter of course. The times are changing, so schools must change too: that is the natural order of things!

professor chen 停。“理所当然”“天经地义”，说得理直气壮，可是没有证据。评委会觉得你的话似是而非。
tíng lǐsuǒdāngrán tiānjīng dìyì shuō de lǐzhí qìzhuàng kěshì méiyǒu zhèngjù píngwěi huì juéde nǐ de huà sìshì érfēi · Stop. “A matter of course”, “the natural order”: very bold, but no evidence. The judges will think your claims sound right but aren't.

teacher wang 还有，你说“所有学生都喜欢人工智能”，这不能一概而论。效果因人而异，城市和农村也不一样，要因地制宜。
hái yǒu nǐ shuō suǒyǒu xuéshēng dōu xǐhuan réngōng zhìnéng zhè bù néng yígàiérlùn xiàoguǒ yīnrénéryì chéngshì hé nóngcūn yě bù yíyàng yào yīndì zhìyí · And you said “all students love AI”: you can't generalise like that. Results vary from person to person, and cities and the countryside are different too: it has to suit local conditions.

professor chen 切忌把话说得太满。可以先讲概况，再举一个个案。
qièjì bǎ huà shuō de tài mǎn kěyǐ xiān jiǎng gàikuàng zài jǔ yí gè gèàn · Above all, don't overstate things. Give the general picture first, then one individual case.

little sister 可不是嘛，我太着急了。那我换个说法：人工智能和老师不是截然不同的两种东西，而是相辅相成的。
kěbùshi ma wǒ tài zháojí le nà wǒ huàn gè shuōfǎ réngōng zhìnéng hé lǎoshī bú shì jiérán bùtóng de liǎng zhǒng dōngxi ér shì xiāngfǔ xiāngchéng de · You're right, I rushed it. Let me put it another way: AI and teachers aren't two completely different things; they complement each other.

professor chen 好！这样就顺理成章了。可是对方会说：你前面说机器跟老师一样好，后面又说老师更重要，这不是自相矛盾吗？
hǎo zhèyàng jiù shùnlǐ chéngzhāng le kěshì duìfāng huì shuō nǐ qiánmiàn shuō jīqì gēn lǎoshī yíyàng hǎo hòumiàn yòu shuō lǎoshī gèng zhòngyào zhè bú shì zìxiāng máodùn ma · Good! Now it follows naturally. But the other side will say: first you say machines are as good as teachers, then you say teachers matter more. Isn't that contradicting yourself?

little sister 岂有此理，我可没这么说！
qǐyǒucǐlǐ wǒ kě méi zhème shuō · That's outrageous, I never said that!

professor chen 哈哈，别激动。比赛的时候，对方的话或真或假，你都要冷静。
hā hā bié jīdòng bǐsài de shíhou duìfāng de huà huò zhēn huò jiǎ nǐ dōu yào lěngjìng · Ha, calm down. In the debate, whether what they say is true or not, you have to stay cool.

teacher wang 其实很多队的说法都大同小异，有的几乎雷同。你们要讲出与众不同的地方，独一无二的例子。
qíshí hěn duō duì de shuōfǎ dōu dàtóng xiǎoyì yǒude jīhū léitóng nǐmen yào jiǎng chū yǔzhòng bùtóng de dìfang dúyì wúèr de lìzi · Actually, lots of teams say much the same thing, and some are almost identical. You need to show what makes yours different: an example nobody else has.

little sister 我们的例子是农村的小学：没有音乐老师，就用人工智能上音乐课。这对那些孩子来说，举足轻重。
wǒmen de lìzi shì nóngcūn de xiǎoxué méiyǒu yīnyuè lǎoshī jiù yòng réngōng zhìnéng shàng yīnyuè kè zhè duì nàxiē háizi lái shuō jǔzú qīngzhòng · Our example is a village primary school: they have no music teacher, so they use AI for music lessons. For those children, it makes all the difference.

teacher wang 这个例子很感性，也很有说服力。可是别低估对方，他们会说这只是一个特例。
zhège lìzi hěn gǎnxìng yě hěn yǒu shuōfú lì kěshì bié dīgū duìfāng tāmen huì shuō zhè zhǐshì yí gè tèlì · That

example speaks to the heart, and it's convincing. But don't underestimate the other side: they'll say it's just a special case.

professor chen 这个例子好，教育公平是重中之重。不过别把话说满：农村学校的当务之急，还是请到好老师，这件事刻不容缓。不能把机器和老师相提并论。
zhège lìzi hǎo jiàoyù gōngpíng shì zhòngzhōngzhīzhòng búguò bié bǎ huà shuō mǎn nóngcūn xuéxiào de dāngwùzhījí háishi qǐng dào hǎo lǎoshī zhè jiàn shì kèbùrónghuǎn bù néng bǎ jīqì hé lǎoshī xiāngtí bìnglùn · Good example: fairness in education matters above all. But don't overstate it: what village schools need most urgently is still good teachers, and that can't wait. You can't put machines and teachers on a par.

teacher wang 发言要有条不紊，自始至终围绕一个观点。不要面面俱到，什么都说。用词要恰到好处，评价对方要恰如其分。
fāyán yào yǒutiáo bùwěn zìshǐ zhìzhōng wéirào yí gè guāndiǎn búyào miànmiàn jùdào shénme dōu shuō yòng cí yào qiàdào hǎochù píngjià duìfāng yào qiàrú qífèn · Your speech has to be orderly and stick to one point from start to finish. Don't try to cover everything. Choose your words just right, and be fair when you judge the other side.

little sister 明白了，这就是辩论的要领。上次练习，我的稿子写得一塌糊涂，今天全改了，旧的那些我已经忘得一干二净。那结尾呢？
míngbai le zhè jiùshì biànlùn de yàolǐng shàng cì liànxí wǒ de gǎozi xiě de yìtāhútú jīntiān quán gǎi le jiù de nàxiē wǒ yǐjīng wàng de yìgān èrjìng nà jiéwěi ne · Got it: that's the essence of debating. Last practice my speech was a total mess. I've rewritten all of it today, and I've completely forgotten the old version. What about the ending?

professor chen 用“综上所述”，把前面的观点收起来：人工智能跟学习息息相关，或多或少会改变课堂。教育也有新陈代谢，可是在优胜劣汰中被淘汰的，不是老师，是老的方法。
yòng zōngshàngsuǒshù bǎ qiánmiàn de guāndiǎn shōu qǐlai réngōng zhìnéng gēn xuéxí xīxī xiāngguān huòduō huòshǎo huì gǎibiàn kètáng jiàoyù yě yǒu xīnchén dàixiè kěshì zài yōushèng liètài zhōng bèi táotài de bú shì lǎoshī shì lǎo de fāngfǎ · Use 综上所述 to gather up your points: AI is closely bound up with learning and will change the classroom to some degree. Education renews itself too, but what gets left behind isn't teachers, it's old methods.

teacher wang 第一次比赛，紧张是在所难免的。诸如此类的问题，顺其自然吧，练多了，自然而然就不紧张了。
dì yī cì bǐsài jǐnzhāng shì zàisuǒnánmiǎn de zhūrú cǐlèi de wèntí shùnqízìrán ba liàn duō le zìránérrán jiù bù jǐnzhāng le · Nerves are unavoidable in your first debate. Things like that: let them take their course. Practise enough and the nerves go away of their own accord.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

岂
qǐ
how

good to know · 综上所述 is for the end of something formal: a report, a thesis, a debate. In conversation, say 总之 or 总而言之. Use idioms like spices: one or two in a paragraph sound educated; five in a row sound like a textbook.

You can now build an argument with the idioms that real debaters use, and land it with 综上所述. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 180 talk, thought and decisions

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 24 · reason and argument

Describe how people speak, keep quiet, hesitate and decide, using idioms, and say “sometimes A, sometimes B” with 时A时B (时好时坏).

From meetings to dinner parties, Chinese loves a vivid idiom for how someone talks. These are the ones you will hear at work, in the news and in family stories.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
各抒己见	gèshūjǐjiàn	everyone airs their views	会上大家各抒己见，讨论得很热烈。 At the meeting everyone had their say, and the discussion was lively.
见仁见智	jiànrénjiànzhì	opinions differ	这部电影好不好，见仁见智。 Whether the film is any good is a matter of opinion.
集思广益	jísīguǎngyì	to pool ideas	大家集思广益，想出了一个好办法。 Everyone pooled their ideas and came up with a good solution.
求同存异	qiútóngcúnyì	to agree to differ	朋友之间要求同存异。 Between friends, find common ground and accept your differences.
针锋相对	zhēnfēngxiāngduì	tit for tat, point against point	两个队针锋相对，谁也不让谁。 The two teams went point for point, and neither gave an inch.
侃侃而谈	kǎnkǎnértán	to speak with ease and confidence	她在台上侃侃而谈，一点儿也不紧张。 She spoke easily and confidently on stage, without a trace of nerves.
夸夸其谈	kuākuāqítán	to talk big, prattle	他总是夸夸其谈，从来不做事。 He’s all talk and never does anything.
出口成章	chūkǒuchéngzhāng	eloquent, every word polished	她才八岁，说起话来出口成章。 She’s only eight, but every sentence she says is beautifully put.
绘声绘色	huìshēnghuìsè	vivid, lively (in telling)	爷爷把小时候的故事讲得绘声绘色。 Grandpa told the stories of his childhood vividly.
有声有色	yǒushēngyǒusè	vivid, full of life	这次活动办得有声有色。 The event was a lively success.
头头是道	tóutóushìdào	clear and logical (in speech)	他讲起道理来头头是道。 When he explains something, every point makes sense.
实话实说	shíhuàshíshuō	to tell it straight	我实话实说，这个方案不行。 I’ll be honest: this plan won’t work.
脱口而出	tuōkǒuérchū	to blurt out	他一着急，不该说的话就脱口而出。 When he’s flustered, things he shouldn’t say just slip out.
异口同声	yìkǒutóngshēng	with one voice	大家异口同声地说：“同意！” Everyone said with one voice: “Agreed!”

交头接耳	jiāotóujiēěr	to whisper to each other	上课的时候不要交头接耳。 No whispering in class.
指手画脚	zhǐshǒuhuàjiǎo	to gesticulate; to boss people about	他自己不干活，还对别人指手画脚。 He does no work himself, yet tells everyone else what to do.
一言不发	yīyánbùfā	to not say a word	开会的时候，他一言不发。 He didn't say a word in the meeting.
一声不吭	yīshēngbùkēng	to keep silent	他一声不吭地走了。 He left without a sound.
鸦雀无声	yāquèwúshēng	total silence	老师一进来，教室里鸦雀无声。 When the teacher came in, the classroom fell silent.
抑扬顿挫	yìyángdùncuò	with rising and falling tones (of speech)	他朗读得抑扬顿挫，很好听。 He read aloud with lovely rise and fall.
斩钉截铁	zhǎndīngjiétiě	firm and decisive	她斩钉截铁地说：“不行！” She said flatly: “No!”
当机立断	dāngjīlìduàn	to decide on the spot	情况紧急，他当机立断，马上报警。 It was an emergency, so he made an instant decision and called the police.
举棋不定	jǔqíbùdìng	to waver, can't make up one's mind	他在两个工作之间举棋不定。 He can't decide between the two jobs.
犹豫不决	yóuyùbùjué	hesitant, undecided	别再犹豫不决了，机会不等人。 Stop dithering: opportunities don't wait.
思前想后	sīqiánxiǎnghòu	to think it over from every angle	我思前想后，还是决定留下。 I thought it over again and again, and decided to stay.
胡思乱想	húsīluànxiǎng	to let one's imagination run wild	别胡思乱想了，早一点儿睡吧。 Stop letting your mind run away with you: get some sleep.
异想天开	yìxiǎngtiānkāi	wildly fanciful	他想骑自行车去月亮，真|是异想天开。 He wants to ride a bike to the moon: what a wild idea.
恍然大悟	huǎngrándàwù	to suddenly see the light	听了老师的解释，我恍然大悟。 After the teacher's explanation, it suddenly all made sense.
灵机一动	língjīyīdòng	to have a sudden inspiration	他灵机一动，想出了一个好主意。 Inspiration struck, and he came up with a good idea.
急中生智	jízhōngshēngzhì	quick-witted in an emergency	她急中生智，用手机的灯照亮了路。 Thinking fast, she lit the way with her phone torch.
胸有成竹	xiōngyǒuchéngzhú	to have a well-thought-out plan	他准备得很充分，胸有成竹。 He's well prepared and confident of success.
一目了然	yīmùliǎorán	clear at a glance	这张图一目了然。 This chart is clear at a glance.
显而易见	xiǎnéryìjiàn	obvious	显而易见，他没有说真话。 Obviously, he wasn't telling the truth.
可想而知	kěxiǎngérzhī	one can imagine	一个人在国外过春节，心情可想而知。 Spending the Spring Festival alone abroad: you can imagine how it feels.

pattern 时a时b: sometimes a, sometimes b

时 A 时 B

时A时B joins two opposite one-character words to describe something that keeps changing: 时好时坏 “sometimes good, sometimes bad”, 时快时慢 “now fast, now slow”, 时冷时热, 时高时低. It works like a four-character idiom.

他说话时快时慢，评委听得很累。 **tā shuōhuà shí kuài shí màn píngwěi tīng de hěn lèi** He speaks now fast, now slow, and the judges find it tiring.

这几天天气时冷时热，小心感冒。 **zhè jǐ tiān tiānqì shí lěng shí rè xiǎoxīn gǎnmào** The weather’s been hot and cold these last few days: watch you don’t catch a cold.

他的声音时高时低，听不清楚。 **tā de shēngyīn shí gāo shí dī tīng bu qīngchu** His voice keeps going up and down: you can’t hear him properly.

dialogue two judges at lunchtime

manager liu 听说你们要参加辩论？中午就在会议室练吧，我和林编辑当评委。
tīngshuō nǐmen yào cānjiā biànlùn zhōngwǔ jiù zài huìyì shì liàn ba wǒ hé Línbiānjí dāng píngwěi · I hear you're in a debate? Practise in the meeting room at lunch: Editor Lin and I will judge.

xiaoming 太好了！我最近状态时好时坏：有时候侃侃而谈，有时候一紧张就一言不发。一着急，不该说的话还会脱口而出。
tài hǎo le wǒ zuìjìn zhuàngtài shíhǎo shíhuài yǒu shíhou kǎnkǎnértán yǒu shíhou yì jǐnzhāng jiù yìyán bùfā yì zháojí bù gāi shuō de huà hái huì tuōkǒuérchū · Brilliant! My form comes and goes these days: sometimes I talk away easily, and sometimes I get nervous and can't say a word. And when I'm flustered, things I shouldn't say just slip out.

anna 我们还举棋不定：用一个故事开头，还是直接说数字？思前想后两个星期了，还是犹豫不决。
wǒmen hái jǔqí búdìng yòng yí gè gùshi kāitóu háishi zhíjiē shuō shùzì sīqián xiǎnghòu liǎng gè xīngqī le háishi yóuyù bùjué · And we still can't decide: open with a story, or go straight to the figures? We've been going round in circles for two weeks and we still haven't made up our minds.

manager liu 在公司开会，我最怕的就是这种情况。要当机立断！我建议用故事，讲得绘声绘色，评委就记住了。
zài gōngsī kāihuì wǒ zuì pà de jiùshì zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng yào dāngjī lìduàn wǒ jiànyì yòng gùshi jiǎng de huìshēng huìsè píngwěi jiù jì zhù le · That's exactly what I dread in meetings at work. Decide on the spot! I'd go with the story: tell it vividly and the judges will remember it.

xiaoming 那我先试试……怎么样？
nà wǒ xiān shì shi zěnmeyàng · Let me try it, then… How was that?

editor lin 实话实说：前面有声有色，后面有点儿夸夸其谈，像在背广告。说话要抑扬顿挫，别时快时慢。
shíhuà shíshuō qiánmiàn yǒushēng yǒusè hòumiàn yǒudiǎnr kuākuā qítán xiàng zài bèi guǎnggào shuōhuà yào yìyáng dùncuò bié shí kuài shí màn · I'll be honest: the start was lively, but the end turned into hot air, like reciting an advert. Let your voice rise and fall, and don't speed up and slow down.

xiaoming 明白了。我上次讲得一塌糊涂，这次已经好多了。还有，对方队长，也就是我妹妹，说起话来头头是道，出口成章，我们怎么办？
míngbai le wǒ shàng cì jiǎng de yìtāhútú zhè cì yǐjīng hǎo duō le hái yǒu duìfāng duìzhǎng yě jiùshì wǒ mèimei shuō qǐ huà lái tóutóu shìdào chūkǒu chéngzhāng wǒmen zěnme bàn · Got it. Last time I made a total mess of it; this time was much better. And their captain, my own sister, makes perfect sense every time she opens her mouth, every word beautifully put. What do we do about that?

manager liu 别胡思乱想。紧张是在所难免的。辩论不是比谁的话多，是比谁的理由硬。对方说得再好，你们也要针锋相对，一句一句地回答。
bié húsī luànxiǎng jǐnzhāng shì zàisuǒnánmiǎn de biànlùn bú shì bǐ shéi de huà duō shì bǐ shéi de lǐyóu yìng duìfāng shuō de zài hǎo nǐmen yě yào zhēnfēng xiāngduì yí jù yí jù de huídá · Don't let your imagination run away with you. Nerves are unavoidable. A debate isn't about who talks most, it's about whose reasons are strongest. However well they speak, go point for point and answer them one line at a time.

anna 我刚才灵机一动：对方说“机器能教音乐”，我们就问：“机器能不能听出一个孩子今天心情不好？”
wǒ gāngcái língjī yídòng duìfāng shuō jīqì néng jiāo yīnyuè wǒmen jiù wèn jīqì néng bu néng tīng chū yí gè háizi jīntiān xīnqíng bù hǎo · Inspiration just struck: when they say “machines can teach music”, we ask: “Can a machine hear that a child is having a bad day?”

editor lin 好！这个问题简单，一目了然。一问出来，全场一定鸦雀无声。显而易见，机器做不到。
hǎo zhège wèntí jiǎndān yímù liǎorán yí wèn chulai quán chǎng yídìng yāquè wúshēng xiǎnéryìjiàn jīqì zuò bu dào · Excellent! It's simple and clear at a glance. Ask it and the whole hall will go silent. Obviously, a machine can't do that.

anna 这个问题跟每个孩子都息息相关。
zhège wèntí gēn měi gè háizi dōu xīxī xiāngguān · That question matters to every child.

xiaoming 我恍然大悟！原来一个好问题，比说一大段话更有力。我还想过让大白上台呢，是不是太异想天开了？
wǒ huǎngrán dàwù yuánlái yí gè hǎo wèntí bǐ shuō yí dà duàn huà gèng yǒulì wǒ hái xiǎng guo ràng Dàbái shàngtái ne shì bu shì tài yìxiǎng tiānkāi le · Now I get it! A good question is stronger than a long speech. I even thought of bringing Dabai on stage: is that too crazy an idea?

manager liu 哈哈，太异想天开了。还有，比赛的时候，队员之间别交头接耳，也别对评委指手画脚。对方发言，你们就一声不吭地听，记下要点。
hā hā tài yìxiǎng tiānkāi le hái yǒu bǐsài de shíhou duìyuán zhījiān bié jiāotóu jiēěr yě bié duì píngwěi zhǐshǒu huàjiǎo duìfāng fāyán nǐmen jiù yìshēng bùkēng de tīng jì xià yàodiǎn · Ha, far too crazy. And during the debate, no whispering to each other, and no waving your hands at the judges. While the other side speaks, listen in silence and note down their points.

editor lin 至于能不能赢，还是个未知数，见仁见智，每个评委的看法都不一样。
zhìyú néng bu néng yíng háishi gè wèizhīshù jiànrén jiànzhì měi gè píngwěi de kànfǎ dōu bù yíyàng · As for whether you'll win, that's still anyone's guess: it's a matter of opinion, and every judge sees it differently.

xiaoming 评委的看法因人而异，那我们就顺其自然吧。
píngwěi de kànfǎ yīnrényì nà wǒmen jiù shùnqízìrán ba · Judges vary from person to person, so we'll just let things take their course.

anna 周末我们再请大家来集思广益，各抒己见。意见不一样也没关系，求同存异。
zhōumò wǒmen zài qǐng dàjiā lái jísī guǎngyì gèshū jǐjiàn yìjiàn bù yíyàng yě méi guānxi qiútóng cúnyì · At the weekend we'll get everyone together again to pool ideas and say what they think. It doesn't matter if we disagree: we'll find common ground and leave the rest.

xiaoming 那我斩钉截铁地说一句：这次我们一定拼尽全力！
nà wǒ zhǎndīng jiétiě de shuō yí jù zhè cì wǒmen yídìng pīn jìn quánlì · Then let me say it loud and clear: this time we're giving it everything!

anna 对！
duì · Yes!

manager liu 你们俩异口同声，可想而知，比赛一定很精彩。准备得胸有成竹，到时候才能急中生智。
nǐmen liǎ yìkǒu tóngshēng kěxiǎngérzhī bǐsài yídìng hěn jīngcǎi zhǔnbèi de xiōngyǒuchéngzhú dào shíhou cáinéng jízhōng shēngzhì · You two speak with one voice: you can imagine what a great debate it'll be. Prepare until you're sure of yourselves, and on the day you'll think fast when you need to.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

吭
kēng
utter

鸦
yā
crow

good to know · Praise or criticism? 侃侃而谈, 头头是道, 出口成章 and 绘声绘色 are praise; 夸夸其谈 and 指手画脚 are criticism. 胸有成竹 comes from the Song painter 文与可, who was said to have the whole bamboo in his mind before he picked up the brush.

You can now describe how anyone talks, from the eloquent to the silent, and how they make up their minds.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 181 values and morals

Talk about character, conscience and values, praise integrity and condemn what is shameful, and recycle 或多或少 and 综上所述.

Values are where debates get personal. These words let you praise someone's character or call out bad behaviour, in the measured way Chinese prefers.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
价值观	jiàzhíguān	values	每一代人的价值观都不一样。 Every generation has different values.
美德	měidé	virtue	诚实是一种美德。 Honesty is a virtue.
品德	pǐndé	moral character	学校不只教知识，也教品德。 Schools teach not only knowledge but also character.
品行	pǐnxíng	conduct, behaviour	这孩子学习好，品行也好。 This child does well at school and behaves well too.
人格	réngé	personality, dignity	我们要尊重每个人的人格。 We must respect every person's dignity.
人品	rénpǐn	moral quality, character	他的人品很好，大家都信任他。 He's a man of good character, and everyone trusts him.
人性	rénxìng	human nature	这本小说写出了复杂的人性。 This novel captures the complexity of human nature.
良心	liángxīn	conscience	做事要对得起自己的良心。 Act so that your conscience is clear.
正气	zhèngqì	integrity, healthy atmosphere	我们公司要有一股正气。 Our company needs a spirit of integrity.
廉洁	liánjié	honest, incorruptible	他当了二十年干部，一直很廉洁。 He was an official for twenty years and never took a bribe.
廉正	liánzhèng	honest and upright	大家都说这位法官很廉正。 Everyone says this judge is honest and upright.
公道	gōngdao	fair, just	说句公道话，这件事不能全怪他。 To be fair, this isn't all his fault.
端正	duānzhèng	upright, correct (attitude)	学习态度要端正。 You need the right attitude to learning.
崇高	chónggāo	lofty, noble	当老师是一份崇高的工作。 Teaching is a noble profession.
崇尚	chóngshàng	to advocate, uphold	我们公司崇尚诚实。 Our company values honesty above all.
无私	wúsī	selfless	母亲对孩子的爱是无私的。 A mother's love for her child is selfless.

慷慨	kāngkǎi	generous	他对朋友很慷慨，常常请大家吃饭。 He's generous with his friends and often treats everyone to dinner.
胸怀	xiōnghuái	mind, breadth of heart	她有宽广的胸怀，从来不为小事生气。 She's broad-minded and never gets angry over small things.
心胸	xīnxiōng	breadth of mind	他心胸很宽，不会生你的气。 He's big-hearted: he won't be angry with you.
心眼儿	xīnyǎnr	mind, intention; heart	她心眼儿好，总是帮助别人。 She has a kind heart and always helps others.
心血	xīnxuè	painstaking effort	这本书花了他十年的心血。 This book cost him ten years of hard work.
苦心	kǔxīn	pains, trouble taken	父母的一片苦心，孩子长大了才明白。 Children only understand their parents' efforts once they grow up.
恳切	kěnqiè	earnest, sincere	他的态度很恳切。 He was very sincere.
骨气	gǔqì	backbone, moral courage	他很有骨气，从来不求别人。 He has backbone: he never begs anyone for anything.
可贵	kěguì	valuable, admirable	这种精神非常可贵。 This spirit is truly admirable.
可耻	kěchǐ	shameful	骗老人的钱，真可耻！ Cheating old people out of their money is shameful!
不像话	bùxiànghuà	outrageous, unacceptable	你这么晚才回来，太不像话了！ Coming home this late is just not on!
过错	guòcuò	fault, mistake	这不是你的过错。 This isn't your fault.
恶	è	evil; fierce	他没有那么恶，只是脾气不好。 He isn't that nasty: he just has a bad temper.
恶意	èyì	malice	我说这些话没有恶意。 I don't mean anything bad by saying this.
堕落	duòluò	to degenerate, go to the bad	他交了坏朋友，慢慢堕落了。 He fell in with a bad crowd and gradually went off the rails.
败坏	bàihuài	to ruin, corrupt	这种行为败坏了学校的名声。 Behaviour like this ruins the school's reputation.
放纵	fàngzòng	to indulge, let run wild	对孩子不能太放纵。 You can't let children do whatever they like.
小人	xiǎorén	petty person	他在背后说别人坏话，真|是个小人。 He badmouths people behind their backs: what a petty man.
无赖	wúlài	rogue; shameless	他借钱不还，真|是个无赖。 He borrows money and never pays it back: a real scoundrel.

pattern review: 或a或b (more or less) and 综上所述 (to sum up)

或 A 或 B ..... 综上所述，conclusion

Two tools from day 179. 或A或B with opposites (或多或少, 或善或恶) admits a range: “to some degree, one way or the other”. 综上所述 closes a formal argument by gathering everything said above.

每个孩子或多或少都会犯错。 **měi gè háizi huòduō huòshǎo dōu huì fàn cuò** Every child makes mistakes to some degree.

人或善或恶，要看环境，也要看教育。 **rén huò shàn huò è yào kàn huánjìng yě yào kàn jiàoyù** Whether people turn out good or bad depends on their surroundings and on their education.

综上所述，品德要靠人来教。 **zōngshàngsuǒshù pǐndé yào kào rén lái jiāo** To sum up, character has to be taught by people.

dialogue can a machine teach character?

ms zhang 妹妹今天去同学家了，说不能听你们的“秘密”。来，边吃边讨论，大家各抒己见。
mèimei jīntiān qù tóngxué jiā le shuō bù néng tīng nǐmen de mìmì lái biān chī biān tǎolùn dàjiā gèshū jǐjiàn · Your sister’s gone to a friend’s today: she says she mustn’t hear your “secrets”. Come on, let’s talk while we eat, and everyone can have their say.

xiaoming 我们想加一个观点：学校不只教知识，还教品德、教价值观。这一点，机器做不到。
wǒmen xiǎng jiā yí gè guāndiǎn xuéxiào bù zhǐ jiāo zhīshi hái jiāo pǐndé jiāo jiàzhíguān zhè yìdiǎn jīqì zuò bu dào · We want to add a point: schools don’t just teach knowledge, they teach character and values. A machine can’t do that.

dr li 我同意。我当了三十年医生，最看重的就是人品。上个月一位病人的家人给我塞了一个红包，我当场就退回去了。医生要廉洁，这是起码的本分。
wǒ tóngyì wǒ dāng le sānshí nián yīshēng zuì kànzhòng de jiùshì rénpǐn shàng gè yuè yí wèi bìngrén de jiārén gěi wǒ sāi le yí gè hóngbāo wǒ dāngchǎng jiù tuì huiqu le yīshēng yào liánjié zhè shì qǐmǎ de běnfèn · I agree. I’ve been a doctor for thirty years, and what I value most is character. Last month a patient’s family slipped me a red envelope, and I gave it straight back. A doctor has to be clean: that’s the very least of the job.

anna 叔叔真是廉正无私！
shūshu zhēn shì liánzhèng wúsī · You’re so honest and selfless!

xiaoming 爸爸一直都这样，在他看来，这是天经地义的事。
bàba yìzhí dōu zhèyàng zài tā kànlái zhè shì tiānjīng dìyì de shì · Dad’s always been like that: to him, it’s simply the right thing to do.

dr li 这算不上什么崇高，做人对得起良心就行。可是也有极少数人收钱，真是可耻，败坏了医生的声誉。
zhè suàn bu shàng shénme chónggāo zuò rén duìdeqǐ liángxīn jiù xíng kěshì yě yǒu jí shǎoshù rén shōu qián zhēn shì kěchǐ bàihuài le yīshēng de shēngyù · Nothing noble about it: you just need a clear conscience. But there’s the odd one who takes the money: it’s shameful, and it ruins doctors’ good name.

ms zhang 做生意也一样。我们公司崇尚诚实，谁要是有恶意骗客户，马上开除。人格比钱重要。
zuò shēngyi yě yíyàng wǒmen gōngsī chóngshàng chéngshí shéi yàoshi yǒu èyì piàn kèhù mǎshàng kāichú réngé bǐ qián zhòngyào · Business is the same. My company values honesty above all: anyone who sets out to cheat a client is fired on the spot. Your integrity matters more than money.

xiaoming 我小时候特别淘气，有一次骗了同学的零花钱。爸爸知道了，斩钉截铁地说：“太不像话了！”罚我一个月不能看电视。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou tèbié táoqì yǒu yí cì piàn le tóngxué de línghuāqián bàba zhīdào le zhǎndīng jiétiě de shuō tài búxiànghuà le fá wǒ yí gè yuè bù néng kàn diànshì · When I was little I was really naughty, and once I tricked a classmate out of his pocket money. When Dad found out he said flatly: “That is just not on!” and banned me from TV for a month.

dr li 那不是为了罚你，是为了让你知道自己的过错。每个孩子或多或少都会犯错，要紧的是品行端正。
nà bú shì wèile fá nǐ shì wèile ràng nǐ zhīdào zìjǐ de guòcuò měi gè háizi huòduō huòshǎo dōu huì fàn cuò yàojǐn de shì pǐnxíng duānzhèng · That wasn’t about punishing you: it was so you’d understand what you’d done wrong. Every child makes mistakes to some degree; what matters is that they grow up to behave well.

anna 那人性到底是善还是恶？古人不是争论过吗？
nà rénxìng dàodǐ shì shàn háishi è gǔrén bú shì zhēnglùn guo ma · So is human nature good or evil? Didn’t the ancients argue about that?

dr li 古人有两种说法：一种说人性本善，一种说人性本恶。我觉得人或善或恶，要看环境，也要看教育。从小太放纵，孩子就容易堕落。
gǔrén yǒu liǎng zhǒng shuōfǎ yì zhǒng shuō rénxìng běn shàn yì zhǒng shuō rénxìng běn è wǒ juéde rén huò shàn huò è yào kàn huánjìng yě yào kàn jiàoyù cóngxiǎo tài fàngzòng háizi jiù róngyì duòluò · The ancients had two views: one said human nature is good, the other that it’s evil. I think whether people turn out good or bad depends on their surroundings and on their education. Spoil a child from the start, and they can easily go astray.

xiaoming 显而易见，教育对品德的影响很大。
xiǎnéryìjiàn jiàoyù duì pǐndé de yǐngxiǎng hěn dà · Clearly, education has a big influence on character.

ms zhang 所以老师的苦心特别可贵。王老师的妈妈当年教工人认字，不知道花了多少心血！那就是美德，那就是一股正气。
suǒyǐ lǎoshī de kǔxīn tèbié kěguì Wánglǎoshī de māma dāngnián jiāo gōngrén rèn zì bù zhīdào huā le duōshao xīnxuè nà jiùshì měidé nà jiùshì yì gǔ zhèngqì · That's why the trouble teachers take is so precious. Teacher Wang's mother, teaching workers to read all those years ago: think of the effort she put in! That's virtue, that's integrity.

anna 王老师也是这样。她心眼儿好，对学生很慷慨，常常自己出钱给学生买书。我刚来北京的时候，遇到一个像无赖一样的房东，也是她帮我找到了新房子。
Wánglǎoshī yě shì zhèyàng tā xīnyǎnr hǎo duì xuéshēng hěn kāngkǎi chángcháng zìjǐ chū qián gěi xuéshēng mǎi shū wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou yùdào yí gè xiàng wúlài yíyàng de fángdōng yě shì tā bāng wǒ zhǎo dào le xīn fángzi · Teacher Wang is the same. She has a kind heart and is generous to her students: she often buys them books out of her own pocket. When I first came to Beijing and ran into a landlord who was a real scoundrel, she was the one who found me a new place.

xiaoming 王老师胸怀真大。不像有些人，心胸很小，一点儿小事就记一辈子，还在背后说别人坏话，真是小人。
Wánglǎoshī xiōnghuái zhēn dà bú xiàng yǒuxiē rén xīnxiōng hěn xiǎo yìdiǎnr xiǎo shì jiù jì yíbèizi hái zài bèihòu shuō biérén huài huà zhēn shì xiǎorén · Teacher Wang is so big-hearted. Not like some people: so petty that they remember the smallest thing for life, and badmouth people behind their backs. Real small-minded types.

dr li 有骨气的人，不靠别人，也不说别人。人和人的差别，不在钱，在品德。
yǒu gǔqì de rén bú kào biérén yě bù shuō biérén rén hé rén de chābié bú zài qián zài pǐndé · People with backbone don't lean on others and don't talk about them either. The difference between people isn't money, it's character.

anna 叔叔说得真好，我恍然大悟。
shūshu shuō de zhēn hǎo wǒ huǎngrán dàwù · Beautifully put, Uncle: suddenly it all makes sense.

ms zhang 不过说句公道话，学生队的观点也很有道理，说起来头头是道。你们别太骄傲。
búguò shuō jù gōngdao huà xuéshēng duì de guāndiǎn yě hěn yǒu dàolǐ shuō qǐlai tóutóu shìdào nǐmen bié tài jiāoào · But to be fair, the students' team has a good case too, and every point they make adds up. Don't get cocky.

anna 谢谢叔叔阿姨这么恳切的意见！
xièxie shūshu āyí zhème kěnqiè de yìjiàn · Thank you both for such heartfelt advice!

xiaoming 我来总结：机器能教知识，教不了做人。综上所述，品德要靠人来教。王老师她妈妈那句话就是最好的例子：教人先教心！
wǒ lái zǒngjié jīqì néng jiāo zhīshi jiāo bu liǎo zuò rén zōngshàngsuǒshù pǐndé yào kào rén lái jiāo Wánglǎoshī tā māma nà jù huà jiùshì zuìhǎo de lìzi jiāo rén xiān jiāo xīn · Let me sum up: a machine can teach knowledge, but not how to be a person. To sum up, character has to be taught by people. Teacher Wang's mother's words are the best example: to teach people, first teach the heart!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

慨
kǎi
generous

慷
kāng
generous

good to know · Chinese friends' parents are 叔叔 (uncle) and 阿姨 (auntie) to you: warm and respectful, never 李医生 at the dinner table. 小人 (a petty person) is the classic opposite of 君子 (a person of honour), a pair that goes back to Confucius.

You can now talk about character and conscience in Chinese, and disagree about human nature over dinner.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 182 loyal and open-minded

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 24 · reason and argument

Describe loyalty, character and attitudes, from open-minded to stubborn, recycle 时A时B, and use the written 乃 (is, is indeed).

Teams win or lose on character. These words describe the people you work with, and yourself on a good or a bad day.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
忠诚	zhōngchéng	loyal	他对朋友很忠诚。 He's very loyal to his friends.
忠实	zhōngshí	faithful, true	他是这家店的忠实顾客。 He's a loyal customer of this shop.
忠心	zhōngxīn	loyalty, devotion	他对这个辩论社一片忠心。 He is utterly devoted to this debate club.
忠于	zhōngyú	to be loyal to, true to	记者要忠于事实。 A reporter must stay true to the facts.
忠贞	zhōngzhēn	faithful, constant	爷爷奶奶结婚五十多年，对彼此一直很忠贞。 Grandpa and Grandma have been married over fifty years and always faithful to each other.
保守	bǎoshǒu	conservative	他的想法有点儿保守。 His ideas are a bit conservative.
开明	kāimíng	enlightened, open-minded	她的父母很开明，让她自己选择专业。 Her parents are open-minded and let her choose her own subject.
务实	wùshí	practical, down-to-earth	她做事很务实，从来不说空话。 She's practical and never talks empty talk.
严谨	yánjǐn	rigorous, careful	做研究一定要严谨。 Research has to be rigorous.
苛刻	kēkè	harsh, demanding	这个老板对员工太苛刻了。 This boss is far too harsh on his staff.
软弱	ruǎnruò	weak, feeble	你的态度太软弱了，要坚持自己的意见。 You're being too soft: stand up for your view.
无能	wúnéng	incompetent, useless	输了一次，不代表你无能。 Losing once doesn't mean you're useless.
不肖	bùxiào	unworthy (of one's parents or teacher)	他笑着说自己是陈教授的“不肖学生”。 He laughed and called himself Professor Chen's “unworthy student”.
本色	běnsè	true character, natural colour	他当了经理，还是保持着工人的本色。 Even as manager, he stayed the down-to-earth worker he always was.
出身	chūshēn	family background, origin	他出身农民家庭，靠自己考上了大学。 He comes from a farming family and got into university on his own merits.

品位	pǐnwèi	taste (in style, art)	林编辑很有品位，不喜欢夸张的|话。 Editor Lin has good taste: she doesn't like exaggerated language.
敷衍	fūyǎn	to do perfunctorily, brush off	他回答问题很敷衍，一看就没准备。 He answered the questions half-heartedly: clearly he hadn't prepared.
计较	jìjiào	to fuss over, haggle	他从来不计较这些小事。 He never fusses over small things like that.
接纳	jiēnà	to accept, take in	一个好团队，要能接纳不同的意见。 A good team can take on board different views.
露面	lòumiàn	to show up, appear	他很少露面，大家都不太认识他。 He hardly ever shows up, so not many people know him.
吓唬	xiàhu	to frighten, scare	别吓唬孩子，他已经很害怕了。 Don't frighten the child: he's scared enough already.
心意	xīnyì	regard, kindly feelings; a small gift	这是我的一点儿心意，请收下。 This is just a little something from me: please accept it.
卑微	bēiwēi	humble, lowly	不管出身多么卑微，都可以有大理想。 However humble your background, you can have big dreams.
功力	gōnglì	skill, (kung fu) mastery	她写文章的功力很深。 Her writing is the work of a real master.
果断	guǒduàn	decisive	她做事很果断，从不犹豫。 She's decisive and never hesitates.
精神	jīngshén	spirit	我们要学习这种不怕困难的精神{jing1shen2}。 We should learn from this spirit of not fearing difficulty.
拧	nǐng	to twist; at cross purposes	你们俩别越说越拧{ning3}了。 You two, stop talking yourselves into opposite corners.
强硬	qiángyìng	tough, unyielding	对方的态度很强硬。 The other side took a hard line.
自如	zìrú	with ease, freely	她说中文已经很自如了。 She speaks Chinese with ease now.

pattern review: 乃 (is indeed) and 时a时b

A **乃** **B (a judgement)**

乃 is a written, rather classical word for 是 "is, is indeed" (from day 28). You meet it in sayings and formal writing: 胜败乃常事 "winning and losing are normal". And 时A时B (day 180) describes something that keeps swinging: 时冷时热, 时好时坏.

胜败乃常事，别太在意。 **shèng bài nǎi cháng shì bié tài zàiyì** Winning and losing are part of the game: don't take it too hard.

诚实乃做人之本。 **chéngshí nǎi zuò rén zhī běn** Honesty is the foundation of a good life.

他的态度时冷时热，让人看不懂。 **tā de tàidù shí lěng shí rè ràng rén kàn bu dǒng** He blows hot and cold: you can't make him out.

dialogue the last practice

professor chen 评委名单定了：王老师、林编辑、周博士。王老师严谨，林编辑务实，周博士很开明。林编辑还很有品位，最不喜欢夸张的话。

píngwěi míngdān dìng le Wánglǎoshī Línbiānjí Zhōubóshì Wánglǎoshī yánjǐn Línbiānjí wùshí Zhōubóshì hěn kāimíng Línbiānjí hái hěn yǒu pǐnwèi zuì bù xǐhuan kuāzhāng de huà · The judges are confirmed: Teacher Wang, Editor Lin and Dr Zhou. Teacher Wang is rigorous, Editor Lin practical and Dr Zhou open-minded. Editor Lin also has excellent taste, and can't stand exaggeration.

xiaoming 太好了！不过听说学生队请了一位教练，辩论的功力很深。

tài hǎo le búguò tīngshuō xuéshēng duì qǐng le yí wèi jiàoliàn biànlùn de gōnglì hěn shēn · Great! But I hear the students' team has a coach who's a real master of debate.

manager liu 别被吓唬住。对方要是很强硬，你们就冷静；对方要是回答得很敷衍，你们就追问。

bié bèi xiàhu zhù duìfāng yàoshi hěn qiángyìng nǐmen jiù lěngjìng duìfāng yàoshi huídá de hěn fūyǎn nǐmen jiù zhuīwèn · Don't let that scare you. If they take a hard line, stay calm; if they brush off a question, press them.

anna 对，准备得胸有成竹，到时候才能急中生智。

duì zhǔnbèi de xiōngyǒuchéngzhú dào shíhou cái néng jízhōng shēngzhì · Right: if we're well prepared, we'll think on our feet when it counts.

xiaoming 可是我觉得安娜的开头太软弱了，应该更强硬一点儿。

kěshì wǒ juéde Ānnà de kāitóu tài ruǎnruò le yīnggāi gèng qiángyìng yìdiǎnr · But I think Anna's opening is too soft: it should be tougher.

anna 我不同意。我们不是去吓唬人的，是去讲道理的。你的想法太保守了，辩论不一定要吵，更不用指手画脚。

wǒ bù tóngyì wǒmen bú shì qù xiàhu rén de shì qù jiǎng dàolǐ de nǐ de xiǎngfǎ tài bǎoshǒu le biànlùn bù yídìng yào chǎo gèng búyòng zhǐshǒu huàjiǎo · I disagree. We're not there to scare anyone, we're there to reason. You're being old-fashioned: a debate doesn't have to be a shouting match, let alone a lot of finger-wagging.

manager liu 好了，你们俩别越说越拧了。一个团队，要能求同存异，接纳不同的意见。还有，小明，你别再计较谁先发言了。

hǎo le nǐmen liǎ bié yuè shuō yuè nǐng le yí gè tuánduì yào néng qiútóng cúnyì jiēnà bù tóng de yìjiàn hái yǒu Xiǎomíng nǐ bié zài jìjiào shéi xiān fāyán le · All right, you two, stop arguing yourselves into corners. A team has to find common ground and take different views on board. And Xiaoming, stop fussing about who speaks first.

anna 其实我心里也没底。在对方面前，我有时候觉得自己很卑微：她们天天练，我们只是业余的。

qíshí wǒ xīnlǐ yě méi dǐ zài duìfāng miànqián wǒ yǒu shíhou juéde zìjǐ hěn bēiwēi tāmen tiān tiān liàn wǒmen zhǐshì yèyú de · Honestly, I'm not confident either. Next to them I sometimes feel very small: they practise every day, and we're only amateurs.

professor chen 别这么说。评委都很公道，辩论不看出身，不看你是谁，只看你说得有没有道理。

bié zhème shuō píngwěi dōu hěn gōngdao biànlùn bú kàn chūshēn bú kàn nǐ shì shéi zhǐ kàn nǐ shuō de yǒu méiyǒu dàolǐ · Don't say that. The judges are fair: a debate doesn't care about your background or who you are, only whether you make sense.

manager liu 而且你们有自己的本色：务实，说真话，人品好。不要为了赢，变成另一个样子。

érqiě nǐmen yǒu zìjǐ de běnsè wùshí shuō zhēn huà rénpǐn hǎo búyào wèile yíng biànchéng lìng yí gè yàngzi · And you have your own character: practical, honest, decent people. Don't turn into someone else just to win.

anna 说得对，诚实是最可贵的。

shuō de duì chéngshí shì zuì kěguì de · You're right: honesty is what counts most.

xiaoming 我想起大学时候的事。那时候我是队长，比赛前很果断，可是一上台就胡思乱想，状态时好时坏，说话一点儿也不自如。

wǒ xiǎng qǐ dàxué shíhou de shì nà shíhou wǒ shì duìzhǎng bǐsài qián hěn guǒduàn kěshì yí shàngtái jiù húsī luànxiǎng zhuàngtài shíhǎo shíhuài shuōhuà yìdiǎnr yě bú zìrú · It reminds me of university. I was captain, very decisive before the debates, but once I was on stage my mind ran wild, my form came and went, and I couldn't speak freely at all.

professor chen 那次你们输了，你难过了一个星期，说自己无能。我对你说：胜败乃常事。
nà cì nǐmen shū le nǐ nánguò le yí gè xīngqī shuō zìjǐ wúnéng wǒ duì nǐ shuō shèng bài nǎi cháng shì · You lost that time, and you were miserable for a week, saying you were useless. I told you: winning and losing are part of the game.

xiaoming 对，我还说自己是您的“不肖学生”。
duì wǒ hái shuō zìjǐ shì nín de búxiào xuéshēng · Yes, and I called myself your “unworthy student”.

professor chen 哈哈，你从来不是。你对辩论社一片忠心，毕业十年，每年都回来露面。这就是忠诚。
hā hā nǐ cónglái bú shì nǐ duì biànlùn shè yí piàn zhōngxīn bìyè shí nián měi nián dōu huílái lòumiàn zhè jiùshì zhōngchéng · Ha, you never were. You’re utterly devoted to the club: ten years after graduating, you still show up every year. That’s loyalty.

manager liu 小明心眼儿好，对朋友也很无私。
Xiǎomíng xīnyǎnr hǎo duì péngyou yě hěn wúsī · Xiaoming has a good heart, and he’s selfless with his friends.

xiaoming 说到忠诚，我爷爷奶奶结婚五十多年，对彼此一直很忠贞，那才叫忠诚。
shuō dào zhōngchéng wǒ yéye nǎinai jiéhūn wǔshí duō nián duì bǐcǐ yìzhí hěn zhōngzhēn nà cái jiào zhōngchéng · Speaking of loyalty, my grandparents have been married over fifty years and always true to each other: now that’s loyalty.

manager liu 我们公司也需要这种精神：忠于团队，也忠于事实。
wǒmen gōngsī yě xūyào zhè zhǒng jīngshén zhōngyú tuánduì yě zhōngyú shìshí · That’s the spirit my company needs too: loyal to the team, and true to the facts.

anna 那我们就忠实地说我们相信的东西。
nà wǒmen jiù zhōngshí de shuō wǒmen xiāngxìn de dōngxi · Then let’s say what we truly believe.

xiaoming 好，不计较了。安娜，你开头，我结尾。
hǎo bú jìjiào le Ānnà nǐ kāitóu wǒ jiéwěi · Fine, no more fuss. Anna, you open and I’ll close.

professor chen 这才是一个队。这两支笔是我的一点儿心意，比赛的时候记要点用。
zhè cái shì yí gè duì zhè liǎng zhī bǐ shì wǒ de yìdiǎnr xīnyì bǐsài de shíhou jì yàodiǎn yòng · Now that’s a team. These two pens are a little something from me: for taking notes during the debate.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

贞
zhēn
constant

苛
kē
harsh

good to know · 心意 is the polite word when you give a gift: 一点儿心意，请收下 “just a little something, please accept it”. 精神 has two readings: jīngshén “spirit” (团队精神) and jīngshen “lively, full of energy” (你今天很精神).

You can now describe the character of the people around you, and hold a team together, in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 183 hold, tie and wrap

Talk about practical jobs with your hands: stack, fold, tie, wrap, nail, pour and spill, and recycle 打 “from” and the prepositions 当着 and 就.

These short verbs are the Chinese of real life: setting up a room, packing a bag, cooking, cleaning up a mess. Natives use them all the time.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
持	chí	to hold; to maintain	双方持不同的看法。 The two sides hold different views.
搁	gē	to put, leave (somewhere)	箱子先搁在门口吧。 Leave the box by the door for now.
放置	fàngzhì	to place, put	请把手机放置在指定的地方。 Please put your phones in the designated place.
置	zhì	to place, set	把奖杯置于台子正中间。 Set the trophy right in the middle of the stage.
揣	chuāi	to tuck (into clothing)	他把稿子揣在口袋里。 He tucked the speech into his pocket.
捎	shāo	to take or bring (for someone)	你去超市，顺便帮我捎一瓶水。 If you’re going to the supermarket, could you bring me a bottle of water?
码	mǎ	to stack, pile up neatly	把椅子码{ma3-7b}整齐。 Stack the chairs neatly.
叠	dié	to fold; to pile up	把衣服叠好，放进箱子里。 Fold the clothes and put them in the case.
折叠	zhédié	to fold; folding	仓库里有两百把可以折叠的椅子。 There are two hundred folding chairs in the storeroom.
捆	kǔn	to tie up, bundle	把旧报纸捆起来。 Tie the old newspapers into a bundle.
绑	bǎng	to tie, bind	把横幅绑在柱子上。 Tie the banner to the pillar.
拴	shuān	to tie (to a post), tether	他把狗拴在门口。 He tied the dog up by the door.
缠	chán	to wind, twine; to pester	电线缠在一起了。 The cables are all tangled up.
缠绕	chánrào	to wind round, coil	把电线缠绕在架子上。 Coil the cable round the stand.
绞	jiǎo	to twist, wring	把毛巾绞干{gan1}，再擦桌子。 Wring out the towel, then wipe the table.
裹	guǒ	to wrap, bind	用布把奖杯裹好。 Wrap the trophy carefully in cloth.
勒	lēi	to tie tight, strap	绳子别勒得太紧。 Don’t pull the rope too tight.

绷	bēng	to stretch tight, tense	横幅要绷紧，不然不好看。 The banner needs to be pulled tight, or it won't look good.
钉	dìng	to nail, sew on	把牌子钉{ding4-7}在墙上。 Nail the sign to the wall.
镶	xiāng	to inlay, set	奖杯上镶了一块小石头。 A little stone is set into the trophy.
拼接	pīnjiē	to piece together, splice	这张海报是两张纸拼接起来的。 This poster is two sheets of paper joined together.
切割	qiēgē	to cut (apart)	用刀把纸切割成两半。 Cut the paper in two with a knife.
筛	shāi	to sift, sieve; sieve	把面粉筛一遍。 Sift the flour once.
淘	táo	to wash in a pan (rice, beans)	煮饭以前，先把米淘干净。 Before cooking rice, rinse it clean.
捞	lāo	to fish out, scoop up	我的钥匙掉进水桶里了，快帮我捞出来！ My keys have fallen into the bucket: quick, fish them out!
涂	tú	to smear, paint	这块牌子涂了三遍颜色。 This sign has had three coats of paint.
抹	mǒ	to smear, wipe	她脸上抹了一道墨水。 She has a streak of ink across her face.
沾	zhān	to be stained with, touch	我手上沾了墨水。 I've got ink on my hands.
溅	jiàn	to splash	小心，别把水溅到桌子上。 Careful: don't splash water on the table.
淌	tǎng	to drip, trickle, flow	他热得满头大汗，汗一直往下淌。 He was so hot that the sweat kept trickling down.
溢	yì	to overflow	水太满了，溢出来了。 The water was too full and spilled over.
灌	guàn	to fill, pour into	往水壶里灌满开水。 Fill the flask with boiling water.
注	zhù	to pour (into); note	往杯子里注满茶。 Fill the cups with tea.
埋藏	máicáng	to lie hidden, bury	这个老礼堂里埋藏着很多故事。 This old hall holds many stories.

pattern review: 打 (from), 当着 (in front of) and 就 (about)

打 | a time or place | 起 / 来

Three prepositions from day 28. Spoken 打 means “from”: 打明天起 “from tomorrow”, 打北京来 “from Beijing”. 当着……的面 is “in front of someone”. 就 + topic means “about, on the subject of”: 就这个问题谈一谈.

打明天起，我们每天下午都在这里练习。 **dǎ míngtiān qǐ wǒmen měi tiān xiàwǔ dōu zài zhèlǐ liànxí** From tomorrow on, we practise here every afternoon.

当着大家的面，陈教授把奖杯包好了。 **dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn Chénjiàoshòu bǎ jiǎngbēi bāo hǎo le** In front of everyone, Professor Chen wrapped up the trophy.

评委会就你们的观点提问。 **píngwěi huì jiù nǐmen de guāndiǎn tíwèn** The judges will ask questions about your points.

dialogue setting up the hall

professor chen 大学的礼堂在装修，王老师把她学校的老礼堂借给了我们。打明天下午起，这里就归辩论社用了。两个队一起干活！

dàxué de lǐtáng zài zhuāngxiū Wánglǎoshī bǎ tā xuéxiào de lǎo lǐtáng jiè gěi le wǒmen dǎ míngtiān xiàwǔ qǐ zhèlǐ jiù guī biànlùn shè yòng le liǎng gè duì yìqǐ gànhuó · The university hall is being renovated, so Teacher Wang has lent us the old hall at her school. From tomorrow afternoon, it's the debate club's. Both teams, let's get to work!

little sister 先放置椅子。仓库里有两百把可以折叠的椅子，我们已经搁在门口了。

xiān fàngzhì yǐzi cāngkù lǐ yǒu liǎngbǎi bǎ kěyǐ zhédié de yǐzi wǒmen yǐjīng gē zài ménkǒu le · Chairs first. There are two hundred folding chairs in the storeroom: we've left them by the door.

professor chen 两个队交替着搬，别都挤在门口。

liǎng gè duì jiāotì zhe bān bié dōu jǐ zài ménkǒu · Take turns carrying them, team by team: don't all crowd round the door.

xiaoming 我来，这种活我最拿手。打开以后码整齐，一排二十把。旧报纸叠好，捆起来，放回仓库。

wǒ lái zhè zhǒng huó wǒ zuì náshǒu dǎkāi yǐhòu mǎ zhěngqí yì pái èrshí bǎ jiù bàozhǐ dié hǎo kǔn qǐlai fàng huí cāngkù · I'll do it: this kind of job is my speciality. Open them up and stack them neatly, twenty to a row. And fold the old newspapers, tie them in bundles and put them back in the storeroom.

anna 横幅谁来挂？绳子我捎来了。

héng fú shéi lái guà shéngzi wǒ shāo lái le · Who's putting up the banner? I've brought some rope.

little sister 我们俩来。左边绑在柱子上，右边拴在窗户上，要绷紧，不然不好看。上面的牌子钉在墙上。

wǒmen liǎ lái zuǒbian bǎng zài zhùzi shàng yòubian shuān zài chuānghu shàng yào bēng jǐn bùrán bù hǎokàn shàngmiàn de páizi dìng zài qiáng shàng · The two of us will. Tie the left side to the pillar and the right side to the window, and pull it tight, or it won't look good. The sign on top gets nailed to the wall.

xiaoming 话筒的电线太长，全缠在一起了，放在地上也碍事。我把它缠绕在这个架子上。

huàtǒng de diànxiàn tài cháng quán chán zài yìqǐ le fàng zài dì shàng yě àishì wǒ bǎ tā chánrào zài zhège jiàzi shàng · The microphone cable is too long and it's all tangled, and it gets in the way on the floor. I'll coil it round this stand.

professor chen 别勒得太紧，电线会坏的。

bié lēi de tài jǐn diànxiàn huì huài de · Don't pull it too tight, or the cable will break.

anna 这张海报是我们拼接的：一张纸太小，我们用刀切割了另一张，接在一起。上面的字涂了三遍颜色。

zhè zhāng hǎibào shì wǒmen pīnjiē de yì zhāng zhǐ tài xiǎo wǒmen yòng dāo qiēgē le lìng yì zhāng jiē zài yìqǐ shàngmiàn de zì tú le sān biàn yánsè · We made this poster by joining two sheets: one was too small, so we cut another with a knife and joined them up. The letters have had three coats of paint.

xiaoming 你们真严谨，连颜色都这么讲究，很有品位。

nǐmen zhēn yánjǐn lián yánsè dōu zhème jiǎngjiu hěn yǒu pǐnwèi · You're so meticulous, even about the colours: very tasteful.

little sister 我手上沾了墨水，脸上也抹了一道！

wǒ shǒu shàng zhān le mòshuǐ liǎn shàng yě mǒ le yí dào · I've got ink on my hands, and a streak of it on my face!

professor chen 奖杯在这儿，我用布把它裹好了，底下还镶了一块小石头。明天把它置于台子正中间。

jiǎngbēi zài zhèr wǒ yòng bù bǎ tā guǒ hǎo le dǐxia hái xiāng le yí kuài xiǎo shítou míngtiān bǎ tā zhì yú tái zi zhèng zhōngjiān · Here's the trophy: I've wrapped it in cloth, and there's a little stone set into the base. Tomorrow it goes right in the middle of the stage.

anna 我去烧水……哎呀！水壶灌得太满，水溢出来了，溅了一地，还淌到门口了！

wǒ qù shāo shuǐ āiyā shuǐ hú guàn de tài mǎn shuǐ yì chulai le jiàn le yí dì hái tǎng dào ménkǒu le · I'll boil some water... Oh no! I filled the kettle too full, it's spilled over, splashed all over the floor and run right to the door!

little sister 我来擦！毛巾先绞干。哎，小明，你的钥匙掉进水桶里了！
wǒ lái cā máojīn xiān jiǎo gān āi Xiǎomíng nǐ de yàoshi diào jìn shuǐ tǒng lǐ le · I'll wipe it up! Wring out the towel first. Hey, Xiaoming, your keys have fallen in the bucket!

xiaoming 快帮我捞出来！明天的稿子我揣在口袋里了，可别掉进去。
kuài bāng wǒ lāo chulai míngtiān de gǎozi wǒ chuāi zài kǒudai lǐ le kě bié diào jinqu · Quick, fish them out! I've got tomorrow's speech tucked in my pocket: don't let that fall in too.

anna 捞上来了！还好稿子没掉进去。
lāo shanglai le hái hǎo gǎozi méi diào jinqu · Got them! And luckily the speech didn't fall in.

little sister 哥哥真不像话，那么重要的东西也不放好。明天的茶点我们包了：我妈妈做豆子包，豆子先淘干净，煮烂了，再用筛子筛一遍。到时候给每个杯子都注满茶。
gēge zhēn búxiànghuà nàme zhòngyào de dōngxi yě bú fàng hǎo míngtiān de chá diǎn wǒmen bāo le wǒ māma zuò dòuzi bāo dòuzi xiān táo gānjìng zhǔ làn le zài yòng shāi zi shāi yí biàn dào shíhou gěi měi gè bēizi dōu zhù mǎn chá · Honestly, brother, leaving something that important lying around! We're doing tomorrow's refreshments: my mum is making bean buns. You rinse the beans, cook them soft, then press them through a sieve. And we'll fill every cup with tea.

professor chen 好。当着大家的面，我说一句：明天就这个辩题，两个队持不同的看法，可是比完以后，大家还是一家人。这个老礼堂里埋藏着七十年的故事，明天，又会多一个。
hǎo dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn wǒ shuō yí jù míngtiān jiù zhège biàn tí liǎng gè duì chí bù tóng de kànfǎ kěshì bǐ wán yǐhòu dàjiā háishi yì jiā rén zhège lǎo lǐtáng lǐ máicáng zhe qīshí nián de gùshi míngtiān yòu huì duō yí gè · Good. In front of you all, let me say this: tomorrow, on this motion, the two teams hold opposite views, but once it's over, you're all one family again. This old hall holds seventy years of stories, and tomorrow there'll be one more.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

捎 shāo — to take or bring (for someone)

捆 kǔn — to tie up, bundle

拴 shuān — to tie (to a post), tether

绞 jiǎo — to twist, wring

good to know · Several of today's verbs are northern and spoken: 搁 (put), 码 (stack), 捎 (bring along). In writing, use 放, 摆, 带. Watch the readings: 钉 dìng to nail, dīng a nail; 揣 chuāi to tuck in, chuǎi to guess; 勒 lēi to tie tight.

You can now get stuck in to any practical job in Chinese, and deal with the mess when the water spills.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 184 mission: the great debate

Follow a whole debate in Chinese: the rules, two opening speeches, a heated free debate, the closing speeches and the judges' verdict, using this unit's words for reasons, values, idioms of argument and practical jobs.

A debate packs everything into one hour: reasons, objections, idioms, values and nerves. If you can follow this, you can follow almost any argument in Chinese.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the rules

xiaoming 两百把椅子，坐得满满的！我现在有点儿胡思乱想，思前想后，还是举棋不定：开头要不要改？

liǎngbǎi bǎ yǐzi zuò de mǎn mǎn de wǒ xiànzài yǒudiǎnr húsī luànxiǎng sīqián xiǎnghòu háishi jǔqí búdìng kāitóu yào búyào gǎi · Two hundred chairs, every one taken! My mind's running away with me: I keep going back and forth, and I still can't decide whether to change our opening.

anna 别再犹豫不决了，我们早就胸有成竹。当机立断：不改！

bié zài yóuyù bùjué le wǒmen zǎo jiù xiōngyǒuchéngzhú dāngjī lìduàn bù gǎi · Stop dithering: we've had this planned for ages. Decision made: we're not changing it!

xiaoming 好，我斩钉截铁地说一句：不改！稿子我揣在口袋里了。

hǎo wǒ zhǎndīng jiétiě de shuō yí jù bù gǎi gǎozi wǒ chuāi zài kǒudai lǐ le · Fine, I'll say it once and for all: no change! I've got the speech in my pocket.

manager liu 记住，实话实说，别夸夸其谈。对方说得再好，也别一言不发。

jì zhù shíhuà shíshuō bié kuākuā qítán duìfāng shuō de zài hǎo yě bié yìyán bùfā · Remember: tell it straight, no hot air. However well the other side speaks, don't go quiet.

xiaoming 我昨天手上沾的墨水，今天才洗得一干二净。你看，奖杯已经置于台子正中间，横幅绷得紧紧的，左边绑在柱子上，右边拴在窗户上。

wǒ zuótiān shǒu shàng zhān de mòshuǐ jīntiān cái xǐ de yìgān èrjìng nǐ kàn jiǎngbēi yǐjīng zhì yú tái zi zhèng zhōngjiān héng fú bēng de jǐn jǐn de zuǒbian bǎng zài zhùzi shàng yòubian shuān zài chuānghu shàng · The ink I got on my hands yesterday only came off completely today. Look: the trophy's right in the middle of the stage, and the banner is pulled tight, tied to the pillar on the left and the window on the right.

little sister 哥哥，安娜，等一下我可不客气了。我们队员个个都能侃侃而谈。

gēge Ānnà děng yíxià wǒ kě búkèqi le wǒmen duìyuán gè gè dōu néng kǎnkǎnértán · Brother, Anna: in a minute, I'm not going easy on you. Every one of us can talk the hind legs off a donkey.

anna 我们也是。不过比完以后，还是一家人。

wǒmen yě shì búguò bǐ wán yǐhòu háishi yì jiā rén · Nor are we. But once it's over, we're family again.

professor chen （读）“各位来宾：今天晚上的辩题是‘人工智能进课堂，好处大于坏处’。正方为学生队，反方为毕业生队。本次比赛的规则如下：

dú gèwèi láibīn jīntiān wǎnshang de biàn tí shì réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng hǎochù dàyú huàichù zhèng fāng wéi xuéshēng duì fǎn fāng wéi bìyèshēng duì běn cì bǐsài de guīzé rúxià · (reading) “Ladies and gentlemen: tonight's motion is 'AI in the classroom does more good than harm'. The students' team is for the motion, the graduates' team against. The rules of this debate are as follows:

professor chen 一、所有稿子必须由队员自己撰写，不得用人工智能写稿子，不得参照、效仿别人的稿子。抄袭是可耻的，会败坏辩论社的名声。这一条无条件执行，没有特例。

yī suǒyǒu gǎozi bìxū yóu duìyuán zìjǐ zhuànxiě bùdé yòng réngōng zhìnéng xiě gǎozi bùdé cānzhào xiàofǎng biérén de gǎozi chāoxí shì kěchǐ de huì bàihuài biànlùn shè de míngshēng zhè yì tiáo wútiáojiàn zhíxíng méiyǒu tèlì · One: all speeches must be written by the team members themselves. No AI may be used to write them, and no one may draw on or imitate anyone else's speech. Plagiarism is shameful and would ruin the club's good name. This rule applies without exception.

professor chen 二、发言时间由评委计时，超时的部分不算。三、比赛中，队员不得交头接耳，不得对评委指手画脚，不得对对方有任何恶意。四、评委就双方的观点、论证和表达打分，名次由三位评委共同判定。请大家把手机放置在门口的盒子里。”

èr fāyán shíjiān yóu píngwěi jì shí chāo shí de bùfen bú suàn sān bǐsài zhōng duìyuán bùdé jiāotóu jiēěr bùdé duì píngwěi zhǐshǒu huàjiǎo bùdé duì duìfāng yǒu rènhé èyì sì píngwěi jiù shuāngfāng de guāndiǎn lùnzhèng hé biǎodá dǎ fēn míngcì yóu sān wèi píngwěi gòngtóng pàndìng qǐng dàjiā bǎ shǒujī fàngzhì zài ménkǒu de hézi lǐ · Two: speaking time is kept by the judges, and anything over time does not count. Three: during the debate, team members may not whisper to each other, gesture at the judges or show any ill will to the other side. Four: the judges will mark both sides on their points, their reasoning and their delivery, and the result will be decided jointly by all three. Please leave your phones in the box by the door.”

professor chen 好，比赛开始！先请正方发言。

hǎo bǐsài kāishǐ xiān qǐng zhèng fāng fāyán · Right, let the debate begin! First, the side for the motion.

chapter 2 chapter 2: two opening speeches

little sister 各位评委，各位来宾：人工智能进课堂，利弊都有，可是问题的要害不在机器，在怎么用。人工智能和学习息息相关，进课堂是顺理成章、自然而然的事。人工智能和老师不是截然不同的两种东西，而是相辅相成的。

gèwèi píngwěi gèwèi láibīn réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng lìbì dōu yǒu kěshì wèntí de yàohài bú zài jīqì zài zěnme yòng réngōng zhìnéng hé xuéxí xīxī xiāngguān jìn kètáng shì shùnlǐ chéngzhāng zìránérrán de shì réngōng zhìnéng hé lǎoshī bú shì jiérán bùtóng de liǎng zhǒng dōngxi ér shì xiāngfǔ xiāngchéng de · Judges, ladies and gentlemen: AI in the classroom has pros and cons, but the crux isn't the machine, it's how we use it. AI is closely bound up with learning, and its arrival in the classroom follows naturally. AI and teachers aren't two completely different things: they complement each other.

little sister 举一个例子：一所农村小学没有音乐老师，就用人工智能上音乐课。孩子们第一次会唱歌、会看乐谱。对他们来说，这一点举足轻重。教育要因地制宜，不能一概而论。

jǔ yí gè lìzi yì suǒ nóngcūn xiǎoxué méiyǒu yīnyuè lǎoshī jiù yòng réngōng zhìnéng shàng yīnyuè kè háizimen dì yī cì huì chàng gē huì kàn yuèpǔ duì tāmen lái shuō zhè yìdiǎn jǔzú qīngzhòng jiàoyù yào yīndì zhìyí bù néng yígàiérlùn · Take an example: a village primary school has no music teacher, so it uses AI for music lessons. For the first time, the children can sing and read music. For them, that makes all the difference. Education has to suit local conditions; you can't generalise.

little sister 时代在变，教育也有新陈代谢，优胜劣汰。刚开始出点问题，在所难免。拒绝新的工具，并不稳妥，反而会让孩子输在起点上。谢谢！

shídài zài biàn jiàoyù yě yǒu xīnchén dàixiè yōushèng liètài gāng kāishǐ chū diǎn wèntí zàisuǒnánmiǎn jùjué xīn de gōngjù bìng bù wěntuǒ fǎnér huì ràng háizi shū zài qǐdiǎn shàng xièxie · Times change; education renews itself too, and the better methods win out. A few problems at the start are unavoidable. Turning away new tools isn't the safe choice: if anything, it leaves children behind from the start. Thank you!

anna 谢谢主席。我先讲一个小故事。有一个十岁的孩子，每天的作业都交给机器：问了抄，抄了问。他的分数时高时低，可是他从来不想“为什么”。

xièxie zhǔxí wǒ xiān jiǎng yí gè xiǎo gùshi yǒu yí gè shí suì de háizi měi tiān de zuòyè dōu jiāo gěi jīqì wèn le chāo chāo le wèn tā de fēnshù shí gāo shí dī kěshì tā cónglái bù xiǎng wèi shénme · Thank you, Chair. Let me start with a little story. There's a ten-year-old who hands all his homework to a machine: ask, copy, ask, copy. His marks go up and down, but he never once wonders "why".

anna 他的一天，就是这个时代的缩影。对方只讲了外在的好处，却低估了隐性的代价：学习变得很功利，只看分数，不看内在的兴趣。学习的最高境界，是自己想学。

tā de yì tiān jiùshì zhège shídài de suōyǐng duìfāng zhǐ jiǎng le wàizài de hǎochù què dīgū le yǐnxìng de dàijià xuéxí biàn de hěn gōnglì zhǐ kàn fēnshù bú kàn nèizài de xìngqù xuéxí de zuì gāo jìngjiè shì zìjǐ xiǎng xué · His day is our times in miniature. The other side only talked about the visible benefits and underestimated the hidden costs: learning becomes purely about results, about marks rather than real interest. The highest form of learning is wanting to learn.

anna 还有一个潜在的风险：机器能教知识，可是教不了品德、价值观和人格。孩子的良心、骨气和胸怀，是从老师身上学来的。一位好老师的无私、严谨和忠诚，机器给不了。

hái yǒu yí gè qiánzài de fēngxiǎn jīqì néng jiāo zhīshi kěshì jiāo bu liǎo pǐndé jiàzhíguān hé réngé háizi de liángxīn gǔqì hé xiōnghuái shì cóng lǎoshī shēn shàng xué lái de yí wèi hǎo lǎoshī de wúsī yánjǐn hé zhōngchéng jīqì gěi bù le · And there's a potential risk: a machine can teach knowledge, but not character, values or integrity. Children learn conscience, backbone and generosity of spirit from their teachers. A good teacher's selflessness, rigour and loyalty: a machine can't give them that.

anna 孩子学东西很感性，需要人和人之间那种微妙的东西。机器能把深奥的道理讲得很透彻，可是不及老师的一个微笑。这个故事蕴含的道理，比任何数字都清楚。谢谢！

háizi xué dōngxi hěn gǎnxìng xūyào rén hé rén zhījiān nà zhǒng wēimiào de dōngxi jīqì néng bǎ shēnào de dàolǐ jiǎng de hěn tòuchè kěshì bùjí lǎoshī de yí gè wēixiào zhège gùshi yùnhán de dàolǐ bǐ rènhé shùzì dōu qīngchu xièxie · Children learn through feeling, and need that subtle something between people. A machine can explain the deepest idea thoroughly, but it can't match a teacher's smile. The truth in that story is clearer than any figures. Thank you!

xiaoming （小声）讲得真好，一点儿也不软弱。

xiǎo shēng jiǎng de zhēn hǎo yìdiǎnr yě bù ruǎnruò · (whispering) Brilliant, and not soft at all.

chapter 3 chapter 3: the free debate

xiaoming 对方说人工智能和老师相辅相成，可是又说机器能代替音乐老师，这不是自相矛盾吗？

duìfāng shuō réngōng zhìnéng hé lǎoshī xiāngfǔ xiāngchéng kěshì yòu shuō jīqì néng dàitì yīnyuè lǎoshī zhè bú shì zìxiāng máodùn ma · The other side says AI and teachers complement each other, but then says a machine can replace a music teacher. Isn't that contradicting yourselves?

little sister 这是似是而非的说法。我们说的是：没有老师的时候，有机器总比什么都没有好。这是理所当然的。对方的态度太保守了。

zhè shì sìshì érfēi de shuōfǎ wǒmen shuō de shì méiyǒu lǎoshī de shíhou yǒu jīqì zǒng bǐ shénme dōu méiyǒu hǎo zhè shì lǐsuǒdāngrán de duìfāng de tàidù tài bǎoshǒu le · That sounds right but isn't. What we said is: when there's no teacher, a machine is better than nothing. That's only common sense. The other side is being far too conservative.

xiaoming 我们不是保守，是严谨。对方举的只是一个个案，不能代表所有的学校。

wǒmen bú shì bǎoshǒu shì yánjǐn duìfāng jǔ de zhǐshì yí gè gèàn bù néng dàibiǎo suǒyǒu de xuéxiào · We're not conservative, we're rigorous. The other side has given us one single case, and it doesn't represent every school.

anna 我们参照了二十所学校的数据，跟我们的结论完全吻合。没有先例的事，要先试，要稳妥。对方说机器可以酌情调整，可是机器不懂人性。那我请问对方：机器能不能听出一个孩子今天心情不好？

wǒmen cānzhào le èrshí suǒ xuéxiào de shùjù gēn wǒmen de jiélùn wánquán wěnhé méiyǒu xiānlì de shì yào xiān shì yào wěntuǒ duìfāng shuō jīqì kěyǐ zhuóqíng tiáozhěng kěshì jīqì bù dǒng rénxìng nà wǒ qǐngwèn duìfāng jīqì néng bu néng tīng chū yí gè háizi jīntiān xīnqíng bù hǎo · We drew on data from twenty schools, and it matches our conclusion exactly. Where there's no precedent, you try things first and play it safe. The other side says machines can adjust case by case, but machines don't understand human nature. So let me ask the other side: can a machine hear that a child is having a bad day?

professor chen 全场鸦雀无声。请正方回答。

quán chǎng yāquè wúshēng qǐng zhèng fāng huídá · You could hear a pin drop. The side for, your answer please.

little sister ……能不能听出来，因人而异。可是老师也不是每次都能听出来！显而易见，一个班四十个孩子，老师也有看不到的时候。

néng bu néng tīng chulai yīnrénéryì kěshì lǎoshī yě bú shì měi cì dōu néng tīng chulai xiǎnéryìjiàn yí gè bān sìshí gè háizi lǎoshī yě yǒu kàn bu dào de shíhou · ...Whether it can tell varies from person to person. But teachers can't always tell either! Obviously, with forty children in a class, there are times a teacher misses things.

xiaoming 那就更要多请老师，而不是多买机器！我们公司的机器……哦不，我是说……

nà jiù gèng yào duō qǐng lǎoshī ér bú shì duō mǎi jīqì wǒmen gōngsī de jīqì ò bù wǒ shì shuō · Then hire more teachers, not more machines! Our company's machines... oh no, I mean...

little sister 对方脱口而出，说明他们心里也知道机器有用！

duìfāng tuōkǒuérchū shuōmíng tāmen xīnlǐ yě zhīdào jīqì yǒuyòng · The other side has let it slip: they know perfectly well machines are useful!

xiaoming 这种说法太离谱儿了，岂有此理！

zhè zhǒng shuōfǎ tài lípǔr le qǐyǒucǐlǐ · That's outrageous, absurd!

little sister 对方的问题有点儿蹊跷：我们从来没说机器能代替老师，对方却一直这么说，这是一个疑点。

duìfāng de wèntí yǒudiǎnr qīqiao wǒmen cónglái méi shuō jīqì néng dàitì lǎoshī duìfāng què yìzhí zhème shuō zhè shì yí gè yídiǎn · There's something fishy about the other side's question: we never said machines can replace teachers, yet they keep saying we did. That's a point to question.

xiaoming 你们的数据跟我们的对照一下，反差很大。我们的说法没有一句是虚假的。

nǐmen de shùjù gēn wǒmen de duìzhào yíxià fǎnchā hěn dà wǒmen de shuōfǎ méiyǒu yí jù shì xūjiǎ de · Compare your data with ours and the contrast is huge. Not one thing we've said is false.

little sister 可是对方说人工智能会让孩子堕落、放纵自己，这太荒谬了。
kěshì duìfāng shuō réngōng zhìnéng huì ràng háizi duòluò fàngzòng zìjǐ zhè tài huāngmiù le · But the other side says AI will make children go to the bad and run wild: that's preposterous.

anna 我们没说堕落！我们只是举了一个反面的例子。
wǒmen méi shuō duòluò wǒmen zhǐshì jǔ le yí gè fǎnmiàn de lìzi · We never said go to the bad! We just gave an example of what can go wrong.

little sister 对方的态度很暧昧：一会儿说机器有用，一会儿说没用。
duìfāng de tàidù hěn àimèi yíhuìr shuō jīqì yǒuyòng yíhuìr shuō méi yòng · The other side is very vague: one minute machines are useful, the next they're not.

anna 我们的观点自始至终只有一个：好处和坏处，要放在同等的位置上看。对方只讲好处，不讲坏处，这才荒唐。
wǒmen de guāndiǎn zìshǐ zhìzhōng zhǐyǒu yí gè hǎochù hé huàichù yào fàng zài tóngděng de wèizhì shàng kàn duìfāng zhǐ jiǎng hǎochù bù jiǎng huàichù zhè cái huāngtáng · Our position has been the same from start to finish: the pros and cons have to be weighed equally. The other side only talks about the pros: that's what's ridiculous.

little sister 我们承认有坏处，但是坏处是次要的。看问题要辩证，不要面面俱到，什么都怕。
wǒmen chéngrèn yǒu huàichù dànshì huàichù shì cìyào de kàn wèntí yào biànzhèng búyào miànmiàn jùdào shénme dōu pà · We admit there are downsides, but they're secondary. You have to see both sides, not worry about every possible thing.

professor chen 时间到！双方针锋相对，真是有声有色。
shíjiān dào shuāngfāng zhēnfēng xiāngduì zhēn shì yǒushēng yǒusè · Time's up! Point for point on both sides: what a lively exchange.

chapter 4 chapter 4: closing speeches

xiaoming 各位评委：对方的说法头头是道，出口成章，可是有一个误区：以为孩子缺什么，机器就能补什么。我们不是要打消大家对新东西的兴趣，我们也愿意接纳新的工具；我们的态度不是苛刻，是务实。我们的观点一目了然：机器是工具，或多或少会改变课堂，可是教育的重中之重，是人。

gèwèi píngwěi duìfāng de shuōfǎ tóutóu shìdào chūkǒu chéngzhāng kěshì yǒu yí gè wùqū yǐwéi háizi quē shénme jīqì jiù néng bǔ shénme wǒmen bú shì yào dǎxiāo dàjiā duì xīn dōngxi de xìngqù wǒmen yě yuànyì jiēnà xīn de gōngjù wǒmen de tàidù bú shì kēkè shì wùshí wǒmen de guāndiǎn yímù liǎorán jīqì shì gōngjù huòduō huòshǎo huì gǎibiàn kètáng kěshì jiàoyù de zhòngzhōngzhīzhòng shì rén · Judges: the other side argued very cleverly and very eloquently, but they fall into one trap: thinking that whatever a child lacks, a machine can make up for. We don't want to put anyone off new things, and we're happy to take on new tools; we're not being harsh, we're being practical. Our point is clear at a glance: a machine is a tool, and will change the classroom more or less, but in education, people matter above all.

xiaoming 当务之急不是买更多的机器，而是请到更多的好老师，这件事刻不容缓。孩子需要老师，这是天经地义的。可想而知，一个只跟机器学习的孩子，会少了多少东西。综上所述，我方认为：人工智能进课堂，坏处大于好处。谢谢！

dāngwùzhījí bú shì mǎi gèng duō de jīqì ér shì qǐng dào gèng duō de hǎo lǎoshī zhè jiàn shì kèbùrónghuǎn háizi xūyào lǎoshī zhè shì tiānjīng dìyì de kěxiǎngérzhī yí gè zhǐ gēn jīqì xuéxí de háizi huì shǎo le duōshao dōngxi zōngshàngsuǒshù wǒ fāng rènwéi réngōng zhìnéng jìn kètáng huàichù dàyú hǎochù xièxie · The most urgent job isn't buying more machines, it's finding more good teachers, and that can't wait. Children need teachers: nothing could be more natural. You can imagine how much a child who only learns from a machine would miss. To sum up, our side believes that AI in the classroom does more harm than good. Thank you!

little sister 各位评委：今天我们针锋相对，可是双方其实有很多共同点，很多观点大同小异。我们都同意，好老师独一无二，机器不能和老师相提并论。

gèwèi píngwěi jīntiān wǒmen zhēnfēng xiāngduì kěshì shuāngfāng qíshí yǒu hěn duō gòngtóng diǎn hěn duō guāndiǎn dàtóng xiǎoyì wǒmen dōu tóngyì hǎo lǎoshī dúyì wúèr jīqì bù néng hé lǎoshī xiāngtí bìnglùn · Judges: tonight we've gone point for point, but the two sides actually agree on a lot; many of our points are much the same. We both agree that good teachers are irreplaceable, and that machines and teachers aren't in the same league.

little sister 可是在没有老师的地方，在老师忙不过来的时候，批改作业、准备材料，诸如此类的事，机器都能帮忙。对方的观点隐含着一个意思：机器会代替老师。可我们的构想从来不是这样。我们不是在机器和老师之间做抉择，而是让机器帮老师。综上所述，我方理直气壮地认为：好处大于坏处。谢谢！

kěshì zài méiyǒu lǎoshī de dìfang zài lǎoshī máng bu guolai de shíhou pī gǎi zuòyè zhǔnbèi cáiliào zhūrú cǐlèi de shì jīqì dōu néng bāngmáng duìfāng de guāndiǎn yǐnhán zhe yí gè yìsi jīqì huì dàitì lǎoshī kě wǒmen de gòuxiǎng cónglái bú shì zhèyàng wǒmen bú shì zài jīqì hé lǎoshī zhījiān zuò juézé ér shì ràng jīqì bāng lǎoshī zōngshàngsuǒshù wǒ fāng lǐzhí qìzhuàng de rènwéi hǎochù dàyú huàichù xièxie · But where there are no teachers, or when teachers can't cope, marking homework, preparing material and things like that, machines can help. The other side's view implies that machines will replace teachers, but that has never been our idea. We aren't choosing between machines and teachers, we're letting machines help teachers. To sum up, our side is confident that the good outweighs the harm. Thank you!

anna （小声）她讲得有条不紊，抑扬顿挫，恰到好处。

xiǎo shēng tā jiǎng de yǒutiáo bùwěn yìyáng dùncuò qiàdào hǎochù · (whispering) Calm, orderly, beautifully paced and just right.

xiaoming （小声）我妹妹的功力真深，我心服口服。

xiǎo shēng wǒ mèimei de gōnglì zhēn shēn wǒ xīn fú kǒu fú · (whispering) My sister really knows her stuff. I'm won over.

chapter 5 chapter 5: the verdict, and clearing up

editor lin 我先说说观感。双方都很务实，没有人敷衍，也没有人夸夸其谈，两个队的稿子也没有一句雷同。正方的例子与众不同；反方的故事讲得绘声绘色，安娜的那个问题，全场一下子安静了。

wǒ xiān shuō shuo guāngǎn shuāngfāng dōu hěn wùshí méiyǒu rén fūyǎn yě méiyǒu rén kuākuā qítán liǎng gè duì de gǎozi yě méiyǒu yí jù léitóng zhèng fāng de lìzi yǔzhòng bùtóng fǎn fāng de gùshi jiǎng de huìshēng huìsè Ānnà de nàge wèntí quán chǎng yíxià zi ānjìng le · Let me give my impressions first. Both sides were practical: nobody coasted, nobody spouted hot air, and not one line of the two teams' speeches was alike. The side for had an unusual example; the side against told their story vividly, and Anna's question silenced the whole hall.

dr zhou 从科学的角度看，正方的数据更可靠，回答问题也很果断、自如。反方有几个说法不太妥当，比如“机器完全听不出心情”，这一点还是个未知数。

cóng kēxué de jiǎodù kàn zhèng fāng de shùjù gèng kěkào huídá wèntí yě hěn guǒduàn zìrú fǎn fāng yǒu jǐ gè shuōfǎ bú tài tuǒdàng bǐrú jīqì wánquán tīng bu chū xīnqíng zhè yìdiǎn háishi gè wèizhīshù · From a scientific point of view, the side for had more reliable data and answered questions decisively and with ease. A few of the claims against weren't quite right: "machines can't hear feelings at all", for example, is still an open question.

teacher wang 我的评价是：正方说理透彻，反方情理动人。双方态度端正，都有一股正气。安娜忠实、恳切，这是她的本色；正方队长的语言很有品位。这种精神很可贵。不过比赛总要有结果：经过三位评委判定，正方学生队赢了！最佳辩手：反方，安娜！

wǒ de píngjià shì zhèng fāng shuō lǐ tòuchè fǎn fāng qínglǐ dòngrén shuāngfāng tàidù duānzhèng dōu yǒu yì gǔ zhèngqì Ānnà zhōngshí kěnqiè zhè shì tā de běnsè zhèng fāng duìzhǎng de yǔyán hěn yǒu pǐnwèi zhè zhǒng jīngshén hěn kěguì búguò bǐsài zǒng yào yǒu jiéguǒ jīngguò sān wèi píngwěi pàndìng zhèng fāng xuéshēng duì yíng le zuìjiā biàn shǒu fǎn fāng Ānnà · My verdict: the side for argued thoroughly, and the side against moved us. Both sides had the right attitude and real integrity. Anna was true and sincere, as she always is, and the students' captain spoke with real taste. That spirit is precious. But a debate needs a result: the three judges have decided that the students' team, for the motion, has won! Best speaker: Anna, against!

xiaoming 输了也罢，这个结果恰如其分。妹妹，祝贺你！刚才我脱口而出，真不像话，是我的过错。我这个哥哥输给了妹妹，不算无能吧？

shū le yěbà zhège jiéguǒ qiàrú qífèn mèimei zhùhè nǐ gāngcái wǒ tuōkǒuérchū zhēn búxiànghuà shì wǒ de guòcuò wǒ zhège gēge shū gěi le mèimei bú suàn wúnéng ba · Losing is fine: it's a fair result. Congratulations, sis! And what I let slip earlier was ridiculous: my fault entirely. Losing to my little sister doesn't make me useless, does it?

little sister 谢谢哥哥！其实结果见仁见智。你们的问题差点儿把我吓唬住了，幸好我急中生智。

xièxie gēge qíshí jiéguǒ jiànrén jiànzhì nǐmen de wèntí chàdiǎnr bǎ wǒ xiàhu zhù le xìnghǎo wǒ jízhōng shēngzhì · Thanks! Honestly, it could have gone either way. Your question nearly frightened me out of my wits; luckily I thought fast.

professor chen 你不是无能，也不是不肖学生。你每年都露面，对辩论社一片忠心。这次比赛，大家付出了很多心血，特别要谢谢王老师，慷慨地借出了礼堂。

nǐ bú shì wúnéng yě bú shì búxiào xuéshēng nǐ měi nián dōu lòumiàn duì biànlùn shè yí piàn zhōngxīn zhè cì bǐsài dàjiā fùchū le hěn duō xīnxuè tèbié yào xièxie Wánglǎoshī kāngkǎi de jiè chū le lǐtáng · You're not useless, and you're not an unworthy student either. You show up every year, utterly devoted to the club. Everyone put a lot of effort into this debate, and special thanks to Teacher Wang for generously lending us the hall.

professor chen 好！当着大家的面，我把奖杯交给学生队。胜败乃常事，大家各抒己见，求同存异，这才是辩论。明年的辩题，我已经想好了：人性本善，还是本恶？

hǎo dāngzhe dàjiā de miàn wǒ bǎ jiǎngbēi jiāo gěi xuéshēng duì shèng bài nǎi cháng shì dàjiā gèshū jǐjiàn qiútóng cúnyì zhè cái shì biànlùn míngnián de biàn tí wǒ yǐjīng xiǎng hǎo le rénxìng běn shàn háishi běn è · Good! In front of you all, I hand the trophy to the students' team. Winning and losing are part of the game. Everyone had their say, found common ground and accepted their differences: that's what debate is. And I've already decided next year's motion: is human nature good, or evil?

professor chen 现在大家一起收拾：椅子折叠好，码在墙边；横幅解下来，捆好；电线缠绕在架子上，别勒得太紧；奖杯用布裹好；海报用刀切割一下，叠好；墙上钉的牌子先别拆。

xiànzài dàjiā yìqǐ shōushi yǐzi zhédié hǎo mǎ zài qiáng biān héng fú jiě xialai kǔn hǎo diànxiàn chánrào zài jiàzi shàng bié lēi de tài jǐn jiǎngbēi yòng bù guǒ hǎo hǎibào yòng dāo qiēgē yíxià dié hǎo qiáng shàng dìng de páizi xiān bié chāi · Now let's all clear up: fold the chairs and stack them by the wall; take down the banner and tie it in a bundle; coil the cables round the stand, not too tight; wrap the trophy in cloth; cut the poster down with a knife and fold it up; and leave the sign nailed to the wall for now.

anna 哎呀，茶又溢出来了，溅到我的衣服上了！
āiyā chá yòu yì chulai le jiàn dào wǒ de yīfu shàng le · Oh no, the tea's spilled over again, all over my clothes!

ms zhang 别急，毛巾在这儿，先绞干。水还淌了一地，我再去灌一壶新的。吃个豆子包吧，豆子是我昨天淘的，又筛了一遍。
bié jí máojīn zài zhèr xiān jiǎo gān shuǐ hái tǎng le yí dì wǒ zài qù guàn yì hú xīn de chī gè dòuzi bāo ba dòuzi shì wǒ zuótiān táo de yòu shāi le yí biàn · Don't worry, here's a towel: wring it out first. And there's water all over the floor: I'll go and fill a fresh kettle. Have a bean bun: I rinsed the beans myself yesterday and put them through a sieve.

xiaoming 我再拿两个揣在口袋里，捎回去给大白！
wǒ zài ná liǎng gè chuāi zài kǒudai lǐ shāo huiqu gěi Dàbái · I'll tuck two more in my pocket and take them home for Dabai!

teacher wang 我妈妈说，七十年前，她的学生出身都很卑微，可是个个有骨气，也在这个礼堂里这样争论，争完了一起吃饭。这是她的一点儿心意：一本她当年用的教科书，送给今天的冠军。
wǒ māma shuō qīshí nián qián tā de xuéshēng chūshēn dōu hěn bēiwēi kěshì gè gè yǒu gǔqì yě zài zhège lǐtáng lǐ zhèyàng zhēnglùn zhēng wán le yìqǐ chī fàn zhè shì tā de yìdiǎnr xīnyì yì běn tā dāngnián yòng de jiàokēshū sòng gěi jīntiān de guànjūn · My mother says that seventy years ago her students all came from humble backgrounds, but every one had backbone, and they argued like this in this very hall, then ate together afterwards. And here's a little something from her: a textbook she used back then, for tonight's champions.

little sister 太珍贵了！我会好好保存。这个老礼堂里埋藏的故事，今天又多了一个。
tài zhēnguì le wǒ huì hǎohǎo bǎocún zhège lǎo lǐtáng lǐ máicáng de gùshi jīntiān yòu duō le yí gè · That's so precious! I'll take good care of it. The stories hidden in this old hall have one more tonight.

You have just followed a whole debate in Chinese, from the rules to the trophy. Next time someone disagrees with you, you know exactly what to say.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 185 love and admiration

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Talk about admiration, passion, gratitude and nostalgia, and sum up with 总的来说 (on the whole), alongside 或多或少 and 综上所述.

Thanking a teacher, toasting a colleague, writing a farewell card: these are the words that carry real feeling in Chinese.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
爱慕	àimù	to adore; to crave (vanity)	她一点儿也不爱慕虚荣。 She doesn't care in the least about vanity.
爱惜	àixī	to cherish, take good care of	她很爱惜书，每本都包着书皮。 She takes great care of her books: every one has a cover.
珍视	zhēnshì	to value, treasure	我们要珍视身边的人。 We should treasure the people around us.
偏爱	piānài	to favour, have a soft spot for	奶奶最偏爱小孙子。 Grandma has a soft spot for her youngest grandson.
迷恋	míliàn	to be infatuated with, be hooked on	他迷恋上了读书。 He became hooked on reading.
痴迷	chīmí	to be obsessed with	他痴迷于历史，一看书就是一整天。 He's obsessed with history: once he opens a book, the whole day goes.
痴心	chīxīn	devotion; infatuated	她对教书一片痴心。 She is utterly devoted to teaching.
着迷	zháomí	to be fascinated	孩子们听故事听得着迷了。 The children were spellbound by the story.
陶醉	táozuì	to be intoxicated (with), revel in	大家都陶醉在美丽的音乐中。 Everyone was lost in the beautiful music.
沉迷	chénmí	to be addicted to, wallow in	他沉迷电脑游戏，学习越来越差。 He's addicted to computer games, and his schoolwork keeps getting worse.
沉浸	chénjìn	to be immersed in	她沉浸在回忆里。 She was lost in her memories.
热衷	rèzhōng	to be keen on	他热衷于公益活动。 He's keen on charity work.
狂热	kuángrè	fanatical; fanaticism	学东西要有热情，但是不要太狂热。 Be passionate about learning, but not fanatical.
喜好	xǐhào	liking, preference	每个人的喜好都不一样。 Everyone's tastes are different.
青睐	qīnglài	favour, attention	这本书很受年轻人青睐。 This book is very popular with young people.

钦佩	qīnpèi	to admire	我很钦佩她的勇气。 I really admire her courage.
敬佩	jìngpèi	to admire, respect deeply	大家都很敬佩这位老医生。 Everyone has great respect for this old doctor.
敬畏	jìngwèi	to revere, hold in awe	我们要对大自然有敬畏之心。 We should hold nature in awe.
崇敬	chóngjìng	to revere	学生们对这位老教授非常崇敬。 The students hold this old professor in the highest esteem.
推崇	tuīchóng	to hold in esteem, praise highly	很多学校都推崇她的教学方法。 Many schools hold her teaching methods in high regard.
由衷	yóuzhōng	heartfelt	我由衷地感谢你。 I thank you from the bottom of my heart.
衷心	zhōngxīn	heartfelt, sincere	衷心感谢大家的帮助！ Heartfelt thanks to everyone for your help!
深切	shēnqiè	deep, heartfelt; profound	我们表示深切的感谢。 We express our deepest thanks.
深情	shēnqíng	deep feeling; affectionately	她深情地看着自己的学生。 She looked at her students with deep affection.
真情	zhēnqíng	true feelings	这封信写的都是真情。 Every word of this letter comes from the heart.
情怀	qínghuái	feelings, sentiments (for a cause)	她有很深的教育情怀。 She has a deep feeling for education.
情结	qíngjié	complex, attachment	他对老北京有很深的情结。 He has a deep attachment to old Beijing.
怀旧	huáijiù	nostalgic; to feel nostalgic	人老了，就喜欢怀旧。 As people get older, they like to look back.
留恋	liúliàn	to be reluctant to leave	毕业的时候，大家都很留恋学校。 At graduation, everyone was sad to leave the school.
缅怀	miǎnhuái	to remember (the dead)	我们缅怀那些已经去世的老师。 We remember the teachers who are no longer with us.
回味	huíwèi	to call to mind, savour (memories)	那次旅行，我到现在还常常回味。 I still often think back fondly on that trip.
感恩	gǎnēn	grateful; gratitude	我们要有一颗感恩的心。 We should have a grateful heart.
感触	gǎnchù	feelings, thoughts (on reflection)	读了这本书，我感触很深。 Reading this book left a deep impression on me.
感慨	gǎnkǎi	to sigh with emotion	回到老家，他感慨万分。 Back in his home town, he was overcome with emotion.
感叹	gǎntàn	to sigh (with feeling), exclaim	她常常感叹：时间过得真快！ She often sighs: how time flies!

pattern 总的来说: on the whole

details, good and bad | **，总的来说** | **，an overall judgement**

总的来说 “on the whole, all in all” gives your overall view after the details. It is softer and more spoken than 综上所述 (a formal conclusion) and less final than 总而言之 (in a word). Our other tools come back too: 或多或少 “to some degree”.

有好有坏，总的来说，还是好的多。 **yǒu hǎo yǒu huài zǒng de lái shuō háishi hǎo de duō** There’s good and bad, but on the whole, more good.

告别会不用太正式，总的来说，温暖就好。 **gàobié huì búyòng tài zhèngshì zǒng de lái shuō wēnnuǎn jiù hǎo** The farewell party needn’t be too formal: on the whole, warm is what matters.

每个学生或多或少都受过她的影响。 **měi gè xuéshēng huòduō huòshǎo dōu shòu guo tā de yǐngxiǎng** Every student has been influenced by her to some degree.

综上所述，王老师是我们最敬佩的老师。 **zōngshàngsuǒshù Wánglǎoshī shì wǒmen zuì jìngpèi de lǎoshī** To sum up, Teacher Wang is the teacher we admire most.

dialogue planning a farewell

anna 你们听说了吗？王老师这个学期结束就退休了，由一位年轻老师接替她。

nǐmen tīngshuō le ma Wánglǎoshī zhège xuéqī jiéshù jiù tuìxiū le yóu yí wèi niánqīng lǎoshī jiētì tā · Have you heard? Teacher Wang is retiring at the end of term, and a younger teacher is taking over from her.

little sister 真的？我有点儿感慨。她是学校的创始人，教了四十年书，学校是她一辈子的心血。她一定很留恋。

zhēn de wǒ yǒudiǎnr gǎnkǎi tā shì xuéxiào de chuàngshǐrén jiāo le sìshí nián shū xuéxiào shì tā yíbèizi de xīnxuè tā yídìng hěn liúliàn · Really? That makes me a bit emotional. She founded the school and has taught for forty years: it's her life's work. She must be so sad to leave it.

xiaoming 我们给她办一个告别会吧！把她教过的学生都请来。

wǒmen gěi tā bàn yí gè gàobié huì ba bǎ tā jiāo guo de xuéshēng dōu qǐng lái · Let's throw her a farewell party! We'll invite all the students she's ever taught.

anna 好主意！邀请函我来写，再捎给几位老学生。总的来说，我想办得温暖一点儿，不要太正式。每个人或多或少都受过她的影响，我想请大家写几句心里话，表达我们的感恩。

hǎo zhǔyi yāoqǐng hán wǒ lái xiě zài shāo gěi jǐ wèi lǎo xuéshēng zǒng de lái shuō wǒ xiǎng bàn de wēnnuǎn yìdiǎnr búyào tài zhèngshì měi gè rén huòduō huòshǎo dōu shòu guo tā de yǐngxiǎng wǒ xiǎng qǐng dàjiā xiě jǐ jù xīnlǐ huà biǎodá wǒmen de gǎnēn · Great idea! I'll write the invitations and take them round to some of her old students. On the whole, I'd like it to be warm rather than too formal. Everyone has been influenced by her to some degree, so I'd like to ask everyone to write a few words from the heart, to say how grateful we are.

little sister 我第一次见她，就很钦佩她：一个人办学校，一点儿也不爱慕虚荣，不追求名利，只热衷教书。她对教书真是一片痴心。

wǒ dì yī cì jiàn tā jiù hěn qīnpèi tā yí gè rén bàn xuéxiào yìdiǎnr yě bú àimù xūróng bù zhuīqiú mínglì zhǐ rèzhōng jiāo shū tā duì jiāo shū zhēn shì yí piàn chīxīn · The first time I met her I admired her: running a school on her own, not caring at all about show or about fame and fortune, only about teaching. She's utterly devoted to it.

xiaoming 她也很爱惜学生。她偏爱那些学得慢的学生，总说："慢一点儿没关系。"很多学校都推崇她的方法。

tā yě hěn àixī xuéshēng tā piānài nàxiē xué de màn de xuéshēng zǒng shuō màn yìdiǎnr méi guānxi hěn duō xuéxiào dōu tuīchóng tā de fāngfǎ · And she really cares for her students. She has a soft spot for the slow learners, and always says, "Slow is fine." Lots of schools think very highly of her methods.

little sister 她辛勤工作了四十年，是所有老师的典范。我的论文也是她帮的。我由衷地敬佩她，也有点儿敬畏她：她看我一眼，就知道我有没有准备好。

tā xīnqín gōngzuò le sìshí nián shì suǒyǒu lǎoshī de diǎnfàn wǒ de lùnwén yě shì tā bāng de wǒ yóuzhōng de jìngpèi tā yě yǒudiǎnr jìngwèi tā tā kàn wǒ yì yǎn jiù zhīdào wǒ yǒu méiyǒu zhǔnbèi hǎo · She's worked hard for forty years: she's a model for every teacher. She helped with my thesis too. I admire her from the bottom of my heart, and I'm a bit in awe of her as well: one look and she knows whether I've prepared.

anna 我刚来北京的时候，对汉字特别着迷，有一段时间简直是痴迷：走在路上，看到招牌就停下来认字。王老师说："学东西要有热情，但是不能太狂热，要沉浸在里面，慢慢就会陶醉在汉字的美里。"

wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou duì Hànzì tèbié zháomí yǒu yí duàn shíjiān jiǎnzhí shì chīmí zǒu zài lùshang kàn dào zhāopai jiù tíng xialai rèn zì Wánglǎoshī shuō xué dōngxi yào yǒu rèqíng dànshì bù néng tài kuángrè yào chénjìn zài lǐmiàn màn màn jiù huì táozuì zài Hànzì de měi lǐ · When I first came to Beijing I was fascinated by characters; for a while I was practically obsessed: I'd stop in the street to read every shop sign. Teacher Wang said: "Be passionate about learning, but not fanatical. Immerse yourself in it, and slowly you'll fall in love with the beauty of the characters."

xiaoming 我上中学的时候沉迷电脑游戏，是她让我迷恋上了读书。学生们对她都很崇敬。

wǒ shàng zhōngxué de shíhou chénmí diànnǎo yóuxì shì tā ràng wǒ míliàn shàng le dúshū xuéshēngmen duì tā dōu hěn chóngjìng · At secondary school I was addicted to computer games: she's the one who got me hooked on books. All her students hold her in the highest esteem.

anna
她有很深的教育情怀，对夜校也有很深的情结，因为她妈妈是夜校老师。
tā yǒu hěn shēn de jiàoyù qínghuái duì yèxiào yě yǒu hěn shēn de qíngjié yīnwèi tā māma shì yèxiào lǎoshī · She has a deep feeling for education, and a deep attachment to night schools too, because her mother was a night-school teacher.

little sister
告别会上我们放老照片吧，把它们拼接成一张大照片。王老师喜欢怀旧，可以一起回味以前的日子，也缅怀那些已经去世的老夜校老师。
gàobié huì shàng wǒmen fàng lǎo zhàopiàn ba bǎ tāmen pīnjiē chéng yì zhāng dà zhàopiàn Wánglǎoshī xǐhuan huáijiù kěyǐ yìqǐ huíwèi yǐqián de rìzi yě miǎnhuái nàxiē yǐjīng qùshì de lǎo yèxiào lǎoshī · Let's show old photos at the party, pieced together into one big picture. Teacher Wang loves looking back: we can all remember the old days together, and pay tribute to the night-school teachers who are no longer with us.

xiaoming
音乐我负责。王老师的喜好是京剧和老歌，她的书法也很受学生青睐，我们可以请她现场写几个字。
yīnyuè wǒ fùzé Wánglǎoshī de xǐhào shì jīngjù hé lǎo gē tā de shūfǎ yě hěn shòu xuéshēng qīnglài wǒmen kěyǐ qǐng tā xiànchǎng xiě jǐ gè zì · I'll do the music. Teacher Wang loves Peking opera and old songs, and her calligraphy is a big hit with her students: we could ask her to write a few characters on the spot.

little sister
我们再准备一个小礼物，用红纸包好，表达一点儿心意。写论文的时候，我感触很深。王老师常常感叹：时间过得真快，一转眼，学生都长大了。
wǒmen zài zhǔnbèi yí gè xiǎo lǐwù yòng hóng zhǐ bāo hǎo biǎodá yìdiǎnr xīnyì xiě lùnwén de shíhou wǒ gǎnchù hěn shēn Wánglǎoshī chángcháng gǎntàn shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài yì zhuǎnyǎn xuéshēng dōu zhǎng dà le · Let's get her a little present too, wrapped in red paper, as a small token of our thanks. Writing my thesis left a deep impression on me. Teacher Wang often sighs: "How time flies: in the blink of an eye, my students have all grown up."

anna
所以我们要珍视和她在一起的时间。最后，我们用真情写一封信，深情地读给她听，表达我们深切的感谢：衷心感谢您，王老师！
suǒyǐ wǒmen yào zhēnshì hé tā zài yìqǐ de shíjiān zuìhòu wǒmen yòng zhēnqíng xiě yì fēng xìn shēnqíng de dú gěi tā tīng biǎodá wǒmen shēnqiè de gǎnxiè zhōngxīn gǎnxiè nín Wánglǎoshī · So let's treasure the time we have with her. And at the end, we'll write her a letter straight from the heart, read it to her with all our love, and say how deeply grateful we are: heartfelt thanks, Teacher Wang!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

抹
mǒ
to smear, wipe

溅
jiàn
to splash

good to know · 衷心 (heartfelt: 衷心感谢) and 忠心 (loyalty: 一片忠心) sound the same, zhōngxīn. Thanks are always 衷心. 缅怀 is only for those who have died or for a past age: 缅怀先人. For the living, say 怀念 or 想念.

You can now say thank you in Chinese the way it is meant: with admiration, gratitude and a little nostalgia.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 186 noise, quiet and heat

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Describe sounds, silence, wind and heat, from a noisy street to a peaceful courtyard, and recycle 时A时B and 简而言之.

Choosing a place, complaining about a restaurant, describing the weather: Chinese has a precise word for every kind of noise and every kind of quiet.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
嘈杂	cáozá	noisy	这家饭馆太嘈杂了，说话都听不清。 This restaurant is too noisy: you can't hear yourself speak.
喧哗	xuānhuá	to make a racket	请不要在图书馆里大声喧哗。 Please don't make noise in the library.
喧闹	xuānnào	noisy, bustling	放学的时候，学校门口很喧闹。 When school's out, the gate is noisy and busy.
轰	hōng	to bang, rumble; boom	一辆大卡车轰的一声开了过去。 A big lorry roared past.
刺耳	cìěr	ear-piercing, grating	汽车的喇叭声很刺耳。 Car horns are ear-splitting.
洪亮	hóngliàng	loud and clear, resonant	老师的声音很洪亮。 The teacher has a ringing voice.
响亮	xiǎngliàng	loud and clear	他的回答很响亮。 His answer rang out loud and clear.
悦耳	yuèěr	pleasant to the ear	她的声音很悦耳。 Her voice is lovely to listen to.
清脆	qīngcuì	clear and sweet (sound)	鸟叫声清脆悦耳。 The birdsong is clear and sweet.
寂静	jìjìng	quiet, silent	夜里的山村一片寂静。 At night the mountain village is utterly silent.
宁静	níngjìng	peaceful, tranquil	我喜欢乡下宁静的生活。 I love the peace of country life.
清静	qīngjìng	quiet, peaceful (no disturbance)	王老师喜欢清静，不喜欢热闹。 Teacher Wang likes peace and quiet, not crowds.
僻静	pìjìng	secluded, out of the way	这条小胡同很僻静。 This little hutong is quiet and out of the way.
祥和	xiánghé	peaceful, harmonious	晚上的院子里，气氛很祥和。 In the courtyard in the evening, the atmosphere is calm and peaceful.
宜人	yírén	pleasant, agreeable (climate, scenery)	秋天的北京气候宜人。 Beijing's weather is delightful in autumn.

动静	dòngjing	sound of activity, movement	外面有什么动静? What's that noise outside?
静止	jìngzhǐ	motionless, at a standstill	湖面好像静止了一样。 The surface of the lake seemed perfectly still.
熙熙攘攘	xīxīrǎngrǎng	bustling, swarming with people	节日的街上熙熙攘攘。 On holidays the streets are packed with people.
急促	jícù	hurried, rapid	电话里他的声音很急促。 His voice on the phone was hurried and urgent.
徐徐	xúxú	slowly, gently	微风徐徐吹来。 A light breeze blew gently.
断断续续	duànduànxùxù	on and off, intermittently	雨断断续续地下了一天。 It rained on and off all day.
迅猛	xùnměng	swift and violent	这场雨来得很迅猛。 The rain came down fast and hard.
猛	měng	fierce, violent; suddenly	雨下得很猛。 It's pouring.
猛烈	měngliè	fierce, violent	空调的风太猛烈了。 The air conditioning is blowing far too hard.
强劲	qiángjìng	powerful, strong	今天晚上有强劲的大风。 There'll be strong winds tonight.
威力	wēilì	power, might	这场大风的威力很大。 This gale is very powerful.
微弱	wēiruò	faint, weak	她的声音很微弱，我听不清。 Her voice was so faint I couldn't hear it.
微微	wēiwēi	slightly, faintly	她微微一笑。 She gave a little smile.
轻微	qīngwēi	slight, light	他有轻微的感冒。 He has a slight cold.
细微	xìwēi	tiny, subtle	她注意到了一个细微的变化。 She noticed a tiny change.
柔和	róuhé	gentle, soft	灯光很柔和。 The light is soft.
火辣辣	huǒlàlà	scorching, burning	太阳火辣辣的，晒得人受不了。 The sun is scorching: it's unbearable.
火热	huǒrè	burning hot; fervent, passionate	大家的心都是火热的。 Everyone's heart is full of warmth.
灼热	zhuórè	scorching, burning hot	中午的地面很灼热。 At midday the ground is scorching.
暖烘烘	nuǎnhōnghōng	nice and warm	冬天晒着太阳，身上暖烘烘的。 Sitting in the winter sun, you feel lovely and warm.

pattern review: 时a时b and 简而言之

时 A 时 B

Two old friends. 时A时B describes something that keeps switching: 时冷时热 “now cold, now hot”, 时大时小 “now heavy, now light”. 简而言之 “in short” cuts a long complaint down to one line.

饭馆里的空调时冷时热，真受不了。 **fànguǎn lǐ de kōngtiáo shí lěng shí rè zhēn shòubuliǎo** The air conditioning in the restaurant blows hot and cold: it’s unbearable.

雨时大时小，断断续续地下了一天。 **yǔ shí dà shí xiǎo duànduànxùxù de xià le yì tiān** The rain came and went, on and off all day.

外面熙熙攘攘，里面也很嘈杂。简而言之，这里太吵了。 **wàimiàn xīxī rǎngrǎng lǐmiàn yě hěn cáozá jiǎnéryánzhī zhèlǐ tài chǎo le** It’s crowded outside and noisy inside. In short, it’s too loud here.

dialogue too loud, too hot, just right

anna 这家饭馆太嘈杂了，大家都在大声喧哗，我连你的声音都听不清。
zhè jiā fànguǎn tài cáozá le dàjiā dōu zài dà shēng xuānhuá wǒ lián nǐ de shēngyīn dōu tīng bu qīng · This restaurant is far too noisy: everyone's shouting, and I can't even hear you.

little sister 外面的街上熙熙攘攘，大卡车轰的一声开过去，喇叭声特别刺耳。
wàimiàn de jiē shàng xīxī rǎngrǎng dà kǎchē hōng de yì shēng kāi guoqu lǎba shēng tèbié cìěr · The street outside is heaving, lorries roar past and the horns are ear-splitting.

anna 而且太阳火辣辣的，地面灼热，饭馆里的空调风又太猛烈，时冷时热。简而言之：这里不行，王老师喜欢清静。
érqiě tàiyáng huǒlàlà de dìmiàn zhuórè fànguǎn lǐ de kōngtiáo fēng yòu tài měngliè shí lěng shí rè jiǎnéryánzhī zhèlǐ bùxíng Wánglǎoshī xǐhuan qīngjìng · And the sun is scorching, the pavement's burning hot, and in here the air conditioning is blasting, hot one minute and cold the next. In short: this won't do. Teacher Wang likes peace and quiet.

xiaoming 喂？你们……在哪儿？……听得见吗？
wèi nǐmen zài nǎr tīng de jiàn ma · Hello? Where… are you? …Can you hear me?

little sister 哥哥，你的声音断断续续的，太微弱了！你那边什么动静？刚才你说话那么急促，我还以为出事了。
gēge nǐ de shēngyīn duànduànxùxù de tài wēiruò le nǐ nàbiān shénme dòngjing gāngcái nǐ shuōhuà nàme jícù wǒ hái yǐwéi chū shì le · Brother, you keep cutting out, and you're so faint! What's going on your end? You sounded so urgent just now, I thought something had happened.

xiaoming 没事！好消息：新校长说，学校的院子可以借给我们。这里很僻静，大树下面凉快极了，特别宜人。你们快过来！
méishì hǎo xiāoxi xīn xiàozhǎng shuō xuéxiào de yuànzi kěyǐ jiè gěi wǒmen zhèlǐ hěn pìjìng dà shù xiàmiàn liángkuai jí le tèbié yírén nǐmen kuài guolai · Nothing's wrong! Good news: the new head says we can borrow the school courtyard. It's quiet and tucked away, it's lovely and cool under the big tree, really pleasant. Come over now!

anna 太好了！王老师对这个院子有很深的情结。
tài hǎo le Wánglǎoshī duì zhège yuànzi yǒu hěn shēn de qíngjié · Perfect! Teacher Wang has a deep attachment to this courtyard.

little sister 真的好宁静！只听得见鸟叫，清脆悦耳，我都陶醉了。
zhēn de hǎo níngjìng zhǐ tīng de jiàn niǎo jiào qīngcuì yuèěr wǒ dōu táozuì le · It's so peaceful! All you can hear is the birds, clear and sweet: I'm enchanted.

anna 风徐徐地吹过来，树微微地动。一点儿也不热了。院子里寂静得好像时间都静止了。
fēng xúxú de chuī guolai shù wēiwēi de dòng yìdiǎnr yě bú rè le yuànzi lǐ jìjìng de hǎoxiàng shíjiān dōu jìngzhǐ le · The breeze blows gently and the tree sways a little. It isn't hot at all any more. The courtyard is so still that time seems to stand still.

little sister 王老师最喜欢这种安宁的地方。
Wánglǎoshī zuì xǐhuan zhè zhǒng ānníng de dìfang · Teacher Wang loves peaceful places like this.

xiaoming 下午放学的时候，孩子们很喧闹；晚上七点以后就安静了。点上灯，光线很柔和，气氛一定很祥和。
xiàwǔ fàngxué de shíhou háizimen hěn xuānnào wǎnshang qī diǎn yǐhòu jiù ānjìng le diǎn shàng dēng guāngxiàn hěn róuhé qìfēn yídìng hěn xiánghé · When school's out in the afternoon it's noisy with children, but after seven it's quiet. With the lights on, the light will be soft and the atmosphere really peaceful.

little sister 可是要是下雨怎么办？天气预报说晚上有雷阵雨，来得很迅猛，雨下得很猛，风也很强劲。
kěshì yàoshi xià yǔ zěnme bàn tiānqì yùbào shuō wǎnshang yǒu léi zhènyǔ lái de hěn xùnměng yǔ xià de hěn měng fēng yě hěn qiángjìng · But what if it rains? The forecast says thunderstorms tonight, coming in fast and hard, heavy rain and strong winds.

xiaoming 礼堂就在旁边，椅子可以先搁在里面。雨的威力再大，我们进礼堂就行了。
lǐtáng jiù zài pángbiān yǐzi kěyǐ xiān gē zài lǐmiàn yǔ de wēilì zài dà wǒmen jìn lǐtáng jiù xíng le · The hall is

right next door, and we can leave the chairs in there to start with. However hard it rains, we just move into the hall.

anna 还有一个细微的问题：王老师的耳朵有轻微的问题，声音太小她听不见。
hái yǒu yí gè xìwēi de wèntí Wánglǎoshī de ěrduo yǒu qīngwēi de wèntí shēngyīn tài xiǎo tā tīng bu jiàn · And one small detail: Teacher Wang is a little hard of hearing, so she can't hear quiet voices.

xiaoming 那我们准备一个话筒。王老师的声音很洪亮，可是我们讲话的声音也要响亮一点儿。
nà wǒmen zhǔnbèi yí gè huàtǒng Wánglǎoshī de shēngyīn hěn hóngliàng kěshì wǒmen jiǎnghuà de shēngyīn yě yào xiǎngliàng yìdiǎnr · Then we'll get a microphone. Teacher Wang has a ringing voice, but we'll need to speak up too.

anna 冬天坐在这里晒太阳，一定暖烘烘的。王老师在这个院子里教了二十年书，她一定很留恋这里。
dōngtiān zuò zài zhèlǐ shài tàiyáng yídìng nuǎnhōnghōng de Wánglǎoshī zài zhège yuànzi lǐ jiāo le èrshí nián shū tā yídìng hěn liúliàn zhèlǐ · In winter it must be lovely and warm sitting here in the sun. Teacher Wang has taught in this courtyard for twenty years: she must be so attached to it.

xiaoming 老学生们都很怀旧，回到这里一定感触很深。
lǎo xuéshēngmen dōu hěn huáijiù huí dào zhèlǐ yídìng gǎnchù hěn shēn · The old students are all nostalgic: coming back here will move them deeply.

little sister 就这里了！告别会那天，天气热不热不要紧，大家的心一定是火热的。
jiù zhèlǐ le gàobié huì nà tiān tiānqì rè bu rè búyàojǐn dàjiā de xīn yídìng shì huǒrè de · This is the place! On the day of the party, it doesn't matter whether it's hot or not: everyone's hearts will be warm.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

嘈
cáo
noisy

喧
xuān
loud

good to know · Quiet words: 安静 everyday quiet, 清静 free from disturbance, 宁静 peaceful, 寂静 silent, 僻静 quiet because out of the way. 请勿喧哗 "please keep quiet" is a common sign in libraries, museums and hospitals.

You can now describe any place in Chinese by its sounds and its weather, and choose the perfect spot for a party.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 187 rare, odd and ordinary

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Describe what is rare, strange or ordinary, fine or clumsy, neat or scrawled, write a short text in logical order, and sum up with 总的来说.

Shopping for a gift, judging quality, telling a strange story: these words help you notice and say exactly what makes something special.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
寻常	xúncháng	ordinary, usual	今天的天气很不寻常。 Today's weather is most unusual.
难得一见	nándéyījiàn	rarely seen	这种鸟在城市里难得一见。 You rarely see this bird in the city.
随处可见	suíchùkějiàn	to be found everywhere	这种小店在北京随处可见。 Little shops like this are everywhere in Beijing.
离奇	líqí	bizarre, strange	这个故事太离奇了，我不太相信。 This story is too bizarre: I don't quite believe it.
怪异	guàiyì	weird, strange	那个房间里有一种怪异的声音。 There's a weird noise in that room.
反常	fǎncháng	unusual, abnormal	他今天一句话也不说，很反常。 He hasn't said a word all day: that's not like him.
酷似	kùsì	to look just like	他长{zhang3}得酷似他爸爸年轻的时候。 He looks just like his father did when he was young.
相近	xiāngjìn	similar, close	这两种颜色很相近。 These two colours are very close.
悬殊	xuánshū	vast (difference), wide apart	两支笔的价格很悬殊。 There's a huge difference in price between the two pens.
逊色	xùnsè	to be inferior, pale in comparison	他的中文一点儿也不比中国人逊色。 His Chinese is every bit as good as a native speaker's.
优越	yōuyuè	superior, favourable	现在孩子的学习条件比以前优越多了。 Children today have far better conditions for learning than before.
良	liáng	good	她的批评很严，可是良药苦口。 Her criticism was harsh, but good medicine tastes bitter.
精	jīng	refined, skilled, expert	学东西要精，不要多。 When you learn, go for depth, not quantity.
精华	jīnghuá	essence, the best part	我们只选这些信里的精华。 We'll choose only the best of these letters.
精巧	jīngqiǎo	exquisite, ingenious	这个小盒子做得很精巧。 This little box is exquisitely made.

精细	jīngxì	fine, meticulous	笔上的花纹很精细。 The pattern on the pen is very fine.
工整	gōngzhěng	neat, tidy (handwriting)	他的字写得很工整。 His handwriting is very neat.
拙劣	zhuōliè	clumsy, inferior	这幅画模仿得很拙劣，一看就是假{jia3}的。 This painting is a clumsy copy: you can tell at a glance it's fake.
潦草	liáocǎo	scrawled, sloppy	他的字太潦草了，我看不懂。 His writing is such a scrawl that I can't read it.
瑕疵	xiácī	flaw, blemish	这块玉有一点儿瑕疵。 This jade has a slight flaw.
万能	wànnéng	all-powerful, universal	人工智能不是万能的。 AI can't do everything.
无穷	wúqióng	endless, infinite	她对我们的影响是无穷的。 Her influence on us is endless.
无形	wúxíng	invisible, intangible	父母的|话对孩子有一种无形的影响。 Parents' words have an invisible influence on their children.
隐形	yǐnxíng	invisible, hidden	他戴的是隐形眼镜。 He wears contact lenses.
隐约	yǐnyuē	faint, indistinct	我隐约记得那天|下着雨。 I vaguely remember it was raining that day.
逼真	bīzhēn	lifelike	这幅画画得很逼真。 This painting is very lifelike.
鲜活	xiānhuó	vivid, lively	她把人物写得很鲜活。 She brings her characters vividly to life.
像样	xiàngyàng	presentable, decent	我们得{dei3}准备一个像样的礼物。 We need to get a decent present.
可观	kěguān	considerable	这个月的收入很可观。 This month's income is considerable.
海量	hǎiliàng	massive amount	网上有海量的信息。 There's a massive amount of information online.
形形色色	xíngxíngsèsè	all kinds of	市场上的东西形形色色，什么都有。 The market has all sorts of things: everything you can think of.
重重	chóngchóng	layer upon layer, one after another	这件事困难重重。 This is full of difficulties.

pattern review: a paragraph in order, ending with 总的来说

首先 其次 最后 …… 总的来说

A clear Chinese paragraph walks through its points in order (day 167): 首先 first, 其次 next, 最后 finally, and then sums up with 总的来说 “on the whole” (day 185).

纪念册首先放老照片，其次放大家的信，最后放王老师自己的话。 **jìniàn cè shǒuxiān fàng lǎo zhàopiàn qícì fàng dàjiā de xìn zuìhòu fàng Wánglǎoshī zìjǐ de huà** The album will have old photos first, then everyone’s letters, and finally Teacher Wang’s own words.

有的字工整，有的潦草，总的来说，每一封信都很真诚。 **yǒude zì gōngzhěng yǒude liáocǎo zǒng de lái shuō měi yì fēng xìn dōu hěn zhēnchéng** Some handwriting is neat and some is scrawled, but on the whole, every letter is sincere.

挑旧钢笔，首先看样子，其次看有没有瑕疵，最后才看价格。 **tiāo jiù gāngbǐ shǒuxiān kàn yàngzi qícì kàn yǒu méiyǒu xiácī zuìhòu cái kàn jiàgé** When choosing an old fountain pen, look first at how it looks, then at whether it has flaws, and only last at the price.

dialogue a pen, and a pile of letters

xiaoming 这里熙熙攘攘，东西形形色色，什么都有。可是真正的老东西难得一见。
zhèlǐ xīxī rǎngrǎng dōngxi xíngxíngsèsè shénme dōu yǒu kěshì zhēnzhèng de lǎo dōngxi nándé yí jiàn · It's bustling here, with every kind of thing for sale. But genuinely old things are rare.

anna 我们要找一支老钢笔，最好酷似王老师妈妈当年用的那种。我们得准备一个像样的礼物。
wǒmen yào zhǎo yì zhī lǎo gāngbǐ zuìhǎo kùsì Wánglǎoshī māma dāngnián yòng de nà zhǒng wǒmen děi zhǔnbèi yí gè xiàngyàng de lǐwù · We're looking for an old fountain pen, ideally just like the one Teacher Wang's mother used. We need a proper present.

xiaoming 市场里太嘈杂了，我们说话得响亮一点儿。你看这支！做得很精巧，笔上的花纹也很精细。
shìchǎng lǐ tài cáozá le wǒmen shuōhuà děi xiǎngliàng yìdiǎnr nǐ kàn zhè zhī zuò de hěn jīngqiǎo bǐ shàng de huāwén yě hěn jīngxì · The market's so noisy that we'll have to speak up. Look at this one! It's exquisitely made, and the pattern on it is really fine.

anna 可是上面有一点儿细微的瑕疵。老板说是五十年代的。价格也很悬殊：这支三百，那支三千。
kěshì shàngmiàn yǒuyìdiǎnr xìwēi de xiácī lǎobǎn shuō shì wǔshí niándài de jiàgé yě hěn xuánshū zhè zhī sānbǎi nà zhī sānqiān · But it's got a tiny flaw. The stallholder says it's from the fifties. And the prices are worlds apart: this one's three hundred, that one three thousand.

xiaoming 三千那支是假的，做得很拙劣。这里假的东西随处可见，要小心。
sānqiān nà zhī shì jiǎ de zuò de hěn zhuōliè zhèlǐ jiǎ de dōngxi suíchù kě jiàn yào xiǎoxīn · The three-thousand one is fake, and a clumsy fake at that. Fakes are everywhere here: you have to be careful.

anna 那就买这支。虽然有瑕疵，可是一点儿也不比新笔逊色。
nà jiù mǎi zhè zhī suīrán yǒu xiácī kěshì yìdiǎnr yě bù bǐ xīn bǐ xùnsè · Then let's buy this one. It has a flaw, but it's every bit as good as a new pen.

xiaoming 王老师一定会珍视这份礼物。
Wánglǎoshī yídìng huì zhēnshì zhè fèn lǐwù · Teacher Wang will treasure this present, I'm sure.

little sister 我这边收到了海量的信，加起来很可观！王老师教过的学生形形色色：有工程师、医生，还有一位院士。
wǒ zhèbiān shōudào le hǎiliàng de xìn jiā qǐlai hěn kěguān Wánglǎoshī jiāo guo de xuéshēng xíngxíngsèsè yǒu gōngchéngshī yīshēng hái yǒu yí wèi yuànshì · I've had a mountain of letters, quite a pile all together! Teacher Wang's students are every kind of person: engineers, doctors, even an academician.

anna 字写得怎么样？
zì xiě de zěnmeyàng · What's the handwriting like?

little sister 有的很工整，有的很潦草。还有一封信很离奇：说王老师二十年前帮他找回了一只猫！
yǒude hěn gōngzhěng yǒude hěn liáocǎo hái yǒu yì fēng xìn hěn líqí shuō Wánglǎoshī èrshí nián qián bāng tā zhǎo huí le yì zhī māo · Some is very neat, some a terrible scrawl. And one letter is really strange: it says that twenty years ago Teacher Wang helped him find his lost cat!

xiaoming 这太怪异了吧？王老师一向怕猫，这件事很反常。
zhè tài guàiyì le ba Wánglǎoshī yíxiàng pà māo zhè jiàn shì hěn fǎncháng · Isn't that weird? Teacher Wang has always been scared of cats: that's not like her at all.

little sister 我也觉得不寻常。可是信里写得很逼真、很鲜活，好像就是昨天的事。我隐约记得，她好像说过这件事。
wǒ yě juéde bù xúncháng kěshì xìn lǐ xiě de hěn bīzhēn hěn xiānhuó hǎoxiàng jiùshì zuótiān de shì wǒ yǐnyuē jìde tā hǎoxiàng shuō guo zhè jiàn shì · I thought it was odd too. But the letter is so lifelike and vivid, as if it happened yesterday. And I vaguely remember her mentioning it.

anna 要是真的，那也是一件很感人的事，值得回味。纪念册我想这样安排：首先放老照片，其次放大家的信，最后放王老师自己的话。信太多了，我们只选其中的精华。总

的来说，要像样，但是不要太正式。

yàoshi zhēn de nà yě shì yí jiàn hěn gǎnrén de shì zhídé huíwèi jìniàn cè wǒ xiǎng zhèyàng ānpái shǒuxiān fàng lǎo zhàopiàn qícì fàng dàjiā de xìn zuìhòu fàng Wánglǎoshī zìjǐ de huà xìn tài duō le wǒmen zhǐ xuǎn qízhōng de jīnghuá zǒng de lái shuō yào xiàngyàng dànshì búyào tài zhèngshì · If it's true, it's a very touching story, one worth savouring. Here's how I'd arrange the album: old photos first, then everyone's letters, and finally Teacher Wang's own words. There are too many letters, so we'll just choose the best. On the whole, it should look good without being too formal.

xiaoming 还有一位学生画了一张王老师的画，跟照片很相近。我们小时候的条件没有现在优越，可是王老师教会了我们：学东西要精，不要多。

hái yǒu yí wèi xuéshēng huà le yì zhāng Wánglǎoshī de huà gēn zhàopiàn hěn xiāngjìn wǒmen xiǎoshíhou de tiáojiàn méiyǒu xiànzài yōuyuè kěshì Wánglǎoshī jiāo huì le wǒmen xué dōngxi yào jīng búyào duō · And one student has painted Teacher Wang, very close to the photo. When we were young, our conditions weren't as good as today's, but Teacher Wang taught us: in learning, go for depth, not quantity.

anna 她的批评有时候很严，声音也很洪亮，可是良药苦口。她常说：“人工智能不是万能的，老师也不是。”

tā de pīpíng yǒu shíhou hěn yán shēngyīn yě hěn hóngliàng kěshì liáng yào kǔ kǒu tā cháng shuō réngōng zhìnéng bú shì wànnéng de lǎoshī yě bú shì · Her criticism could be tough at times, and loud and clear too, but good medicine tastes bitter. She always says: “AI can't do everything, and neither can teachers.”

little sister 她对我们的影响是无形的，好像一种隐形的力量，也是无穷的。这次告别会要保密，困难重重，可是一定值得。

tā duì wǒmen de yǐngxiǎng shì wúxíng de hǎoxiàng yì zhǒng yǐnxíng de lìliàng yě shì wúqióng de zhè cì gàobié huì yào bǎomì kùnnan chóngchóng kěshì yídìng zhídé · Her influence on us is invisible, like a hidden force, and it goes on for ever. Keeping this party a secret is one problem after another, but it'll definitely be worth it.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

潦 liáo careless												
瑕 xiá spot on jade												

good to know · 不寻常, 反常, 离奇, 怪异: 不寻常 out of the ordinary (often good), 反常 abnormal, not like someone, 离奇 bizarre (of a story), 怪异 weird, eerie. 工整 is the highest praise for handwriting at school; 潦草 the classic teacher's complaint.

You can now describe what makes something rare or ordinary, fine or clumsy, and shop for a gift like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 188 short, sharp and detailed

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Talk about writing that is brief, concise, vague or long-winded, describe faces, figures, marks and moods, and recycle manner adverbs (不由得, 趁早, 照例) and the subject that comes later.

A good speech is short and concrete. These are the words editors use, and the words that turn a vague memory into a picture.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
斑点	bāndiǎn	spot, speck	围巾上有几个小斑点。 There are a few little spots on the scarf.
背影	bèiyǐng	figure seen from behind	看着妈妈的背影，我突然很想哭。 Watching my mother walk away, I suddenly wanted to cry.
标	biāo	to mark, label	请在地图上标出学校的位置。 Please mark where the school is on the map.
标记	biāojì	mark, sign; to mark	我在书上做了一个标记。 I put a mark in the book.
标识	biāoshí	sign, logo, marker	门口有停车的标识。 There's a parking sign at the entrance.
标示	biāoshì	to mark, indicate	地图上用红色标示出了出口。 The exits are marked in red on the map.
丑陋	chǒulòu	ugly	我写的第一个汉字很丑陋。 The first character I ever wrote was hideous.
纯粹	chúncuì	pure; purely	我这么做，纯粹是为了帮她。 I did it purely to help her.
刺骨	cìgǔ	piercing (cold)	冬天的风冷得刺骨。 In winter the wind is bitterly cold.
粗略	cūlüè	rough, sketchy	我粗略地算|了一下，大概有五百人。 I did a rough count: about five hundred people.
单薄	dānbó	thin (clothing); frail	天这么冷，你穿得太单薄了。 It's so cold, and you're dressed far too thinly.
晃	huǎng	to flash past; to dazzle	一晃{huang3}十年过去了。 Ten years have flashed by.
记号	jìhao	mark, sign	她在我的作业上画了一个笑脸做记号。 She drew a smiley face on my homework as a mark.
架势	jiàshi	posture, stance; manner	看他这个架势，是要大干一场。 Judging by his manner, he's gearing up for something big.
简短	jiǎnduǎn	brief, short	他的讲话很简短。 His speech was brief.
简洁	jiǎnjié	concise, succinct	写文章要简洁。 Writing should be concise.

简要	jiǎnyào	brief, to the point	请简要地介绍一下你的计划。 Please give a brief outline of your plan.
简易	jiǎnyì	simple, basic	教室很简易：一块黑板，几张桌子。 The classroom was basic: a blackboard and a few desks.
紧凑	jǐncòu	compact, tight	这次的安排很紧凑。 The schedule is tight this time.
笼统	lǒngtǒng	vague, general	你说得太笼统了，能不能具体一点儿? That's too vague: can you be more specific?
裸	luǒ	bare, naked	他光着脚，裸着上身在河边游泳。 He was swimming by the river, barefoot and bare-chested.
裸露	luǒlù	exposed, bare	墙上的砖都裸露着。 The bricks in the wall were all exposed.
闷	mēn	stuffy, muggy	天气很闷{men1}，好像要下雨。 It's muggy: it looks like rain.
面貌	miànmào	appearance, look	十年来，学校的面貌发生了很大的变化。 Over ten years, the school has changed beyond recognition.
平淡	píngdàn	plain, ordinary, flat	生活虽然平淡，可是很幸福。 Life may be quiet and ordinary, but it's happy.
气息	qìxī	smell, atmosphere	教室里有一股书的气息。 The classroom smells of books.
浅显	qiǎnxiǎn	simple, easy to understand	她把深奥的道理讲得很浅显。 She explains deep ideas in simple terms.
冗长	rǒngcháng	long-winded	他的讲话太冗长了。 His speech was far too long-winded.
深邃	shēnsuì	deep, profound	她的目光很深邃。 Her gaze is deep.
身影	shēnyǐng	figure, form	远远地，我看见一个熟悉的身影。 In the distance, I saw a familiar figure.
详尽	xiángjìn	detailed, exhaustive	这本书写得很详尽。 This book is very detailed.
严密	yánmì	tight, watertight	他的推理很严密。 His reasoning is watertight.
扎实	zhāshi	solid, sound	她的中文基础很扎实。 She has a solid foundation in Chinese.
周密	zhōumì	careful, thorough	他们准备了一个很周密的计划。 They've drawn up a very thorough plan.
足迹	zújì	footprint, track	这本书记录了学校二十年的足迹。 This book records twenty years of the school's journey.

pattern review: manner adverbs (不由得, 趁早, 照例, 刻意) and the subject that comes later

(no subject) first clause **, subject** **+ manner adverb + verb**

Manner adverbs from day 29 say how something is done: 不由得 “can’t help”, 趁早 “as early as possible”, 照例 “as usual”, 刻意 “deliberately”, 尽情 “to your heart’s content”. And from day 169: in a story, name the person once, in the second clause: 一走进学校，我就看见了她.

一走进学校，我就看见了王老师。 **yì zǒu jìn xuéxiào wǒ jiù kànjiàn le Wánglǎoshī** As soon as I walked into the school, I saw Teacher Wang.

看我冻得发抖，她不由得笑了。 **kàn wǒ dòng de fādǒu tā bùyóude xiào le** Seeing me shivering, she couldn’t help smiling.

讲话的稿子要趁早写好，那天就可以尽情地玩了。 **jiǎnghuà de gǎozi yào chènzǎo xiě hǎo nà tiān jiù kěyǐ jìnqíng de wán le** Write your speech early, and on the day you can enjoy yourself to the full.

王老师每天照例七点到学校。 **Wánglǎoshī měi tiān zhàolì qī diǎn dào xuéxiào** Teacher Wang always gets to school at seven.

dialogue three minutes, not three pages

anna 林编辑，告别会上我要讲几句话。我写了三页，是不是太冗长了？
Línbiānjí gàobié huì shàng wǒ yào jiǎng jǐ jù huà wǒ xiě le sān yè shì bu shì tài rǒngcháng le · Editor Lin, I have to say a few words at the farewell party. I've written three pages: is that far too long-winded?

editor lin 太长了。按说三分钟就够了。能省略的都省略，要简短、简洁。内容可以简要，但是不能笼统。
tài cháng le ànshuō sān fēnzhōng jiù gòu le néng shěnglüè de dōu shěnglüè yào jiǎnduǎn jiǎnjié nèiróng kěyǐ jiǎnyào dànshì bù néng lǒngtǒng · Far too long. Normally three minutes is plenty. Leave out whatever you can, and keep it short and concise. The content can be brief, but it mustn't be vague.

anna 那怎么写才不笼统？
nà zěnme xiě cái bù lǒngtǒng · So how do I write it so it isn't vague?

editor lin 写细节。一个具体的画面，比一大段详尽的介绍更有力。写写你第一天见到王老师的样子。
xiě xìjié yí gè jùtǐ de huàmiàn bǐ yí dà duàn xiángjìn de jièshào gèng yǒulì xiě xie nǐ dì yī tiān jiàn dào Wánglǎoshī de yàngzi · Write details. One concrete picture beats a long, detailed introduction. Write about the first day you met Teacher Wang.

anna 那是十年前的一月。风又冷又猛，冷得刺骨，我只穿了一件单薄的外套，两只手裸在外面，冻得很疼。一走进学校，我就看见门口站着一个身影，是王老师。
nà shì shí nián qián de yī yuè fēng yòu lěng yòu měng lěng de cìgǔ wǒ zhǐ chuān le yí jiàn dānbó de wàitào liǎng zhī shǒu luǒ zài wàimiàn dòng de hěn téng yì zǒu jìn xuéxiào wǒ jiù kànjiàn ménkǒu zhàn zhe yí gè shēnyǐng shì Wánglǎoshī · It was January, ten years ago. The wind was fierce and bitterly cold, and I had on just one thin coat, my bare hands aching with cold. As soon as I walked into the school, I saw a figure standing at the door: it was Teacher Wang.

anna 她看我冻得发抖，不由得笑了，把自己的围巾给了我。围巾上有几个小斑点，是墨水留下的。她的目光很深邃，好像一眼就能看到你心里。
tā kàn wǒ dòng de fādǒu bùyóude xiào le bǎ zìjǐ de wéijīn gěi le wǒ wéijīn shàng yǒu jǐ gè xiǎo bāndiǎn shì mòshuǐ liúxia de tā de mùguāng hěn shēnsuì hǎoxiàng yì yǎn jiù néng kàn dào nǐ xīnlǐ · Seeing me shivering, she couldn't help smiling, and gave me her own scarf. There were a few little spots on it, ink stains. She had a deep gaze, as if she could see straight into your heart.

editor lin 好！这就是画面，这些细节写得很有真情。然后呢？
hǎo zhè jiùshì huàmiàn zhèxiē xìjié xiě de hěn yǒu zhēnqíng ránhòu ne · Good! That's a picture: these details really come from the heart. And then?

anna 第一节课的教室很简易：一块黑板，几张桌子，墙上的砖都裸露着。可是她讲得很浅显，我一下子就懂了。我写的第一个汉字很丑陋，她在旁边画了一个笑脸做记号，说："不错！"
dì yī jié kè de jiàoshì hěn jiǎnyì yí kuài hēibǎn jǐ zhāng zhuōzi qiáng shàng de zhuān dōu luǒlù zhe kěshì tā jiǎng de hěn qiǎnxiǎn wǒ yíxià zi jiù dǒng le wǒ xiě de dì yī gè Hànzì hěn chǒulòu tā zài pángbiān huà le yí gè xiào liǎn zuò jìhao shuō búcuò · The classroom for my first lesson was very basic: a blackboard, a few desks, the bricks in the wall all bare. But she explained things so simply that I understood straight away. The first character I wrote was hideous, and she drew a smiley face next to it as a mark and said: "Not bad!"

editor lin 后来呢？学校的面貌变了吗？
hòulái ne xuéxiào de miànmào biàn le ma · And after that? Has the school changed?

anna 变了很多。一晃十年，墙刷了，书多了，教室里有了一股书的气息。王老师还是照例每天七点到学校。
biàn le hěn duō yì huǎng shí nián qiáng shuā le shū duō le jiàoshì lǐ yǒu le yì gǔ shū de qìxī Wánglǎoshī háishi zhàolì měi tiān qī diǎn dào xuéxiào · A lot. Ten years flashed by: the walls have been painted, there are more books, and the classrooms smell of books. And Teacher Wang still gets in at seven every day, as always.

editor lin 这一段写得很深情，读的时候声音柔和一点儿。结构很紧凑。要删的段落，我在稿子上做了标记。开头的架势太大了："尊敬的各位领导"，太正式。王老师要的不是这

个。

zhè yí duàn xiě de hěn shēnqíng dú de shíhou shēngyīn róuhé yìdiǎnr jiégòu hěn jǐncòu yào shān de duànluò wǒ zài gǎozi shàng zuò le biāojì kāitóu de jiàshi tài dà le zūnjìng de gèwèi lǐngdǎo tài zhèngshì Wánglǎoshī yào de bú shì zhège · This part is full of feeling: read it gently. The structure is nice and tight. I've marked the paragraphs to cut on your draft. And the opening is far too grand: "Respected leaders" is much too formal. That's not what Teacher Wang wants.

anna 那我刻意写得平淡一点儿?

nà wǒ kèyì xiě de píngdàn yìdiǎnr · So should I deliberately make it plainer?

editor lin 不是刻意平淡，是纯粹说真话。学校二十年的足迹，粗略地说两句就行。你的中文基础很扎实，照样写下去就好。

bú shì kèyì píngdàn shì chúncuì shuō zhēn huà xuéxiào èrshí nián de zújì cūlüè de shuō liǎng jù jiù xíng nǐ de Zhōngwén jīchǔ hěn zhāshi zhàoyàng xiě xiaqu jiù hǎo · Not deliberately plain: just purely the truth. As for the school's twenty-year journey, a couple of rough lines will do. Your Chinese is solid: just carry on like that.

anna 好，我今天晚上重新撰写一遍。小明他们准备了一个很周密的计划，节目表上标了每个人讲话的时间，我的只有三分钟。他还在门口做了停车的标识，地图上用红色标示出了院子的位置。

hǎo wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang chóngxīn zhuànxiě yí biàn Xiǎomíng tāmen zhǔnbèi le yí gè hěn zhōumì de jìhuà jiémù biǎo shàng biāo le měi gè rén jiǎnghuà de shíjiān wǒ de zhǐyǒu sān fēnzhōng tā hái zài ménkǒu zuò le tíngchē de biāoshí dìtú shàng yòng hóngsè biāoshì chū le yuánzi de wèizhì · OK, I'll rewrite it tonight. Xiaoming and the others have drawn up a really thorough plan: the programme marks how long everyone speaks, and I only get three minutes. He's even put up parking signs by the gate, and marked the courtyard in red on the map.

editor lin 他们想得真严密，连天气都考虑到了?

tāmen xiǎng de zhēn yánmì lián tiānqì dōu kǎolǜ dào le · They've thought of everything. Even the weather?

anna 连天气都想到了：那天可能很闷，他准备了扇子。最后一句我想写："王老师，您的背影，我会一直记得。"

lián tiānqì dōu xiǎng dào le nà tiān kěnéng hěn mēn tā zhǔnbèi le shànzi zuìhòu yí jù wǒ xiǎng xiě Wánglǎoshī nín de bèiyǐng wǒ huì yìzhí jìde · Even the weather: it might be muggy that day, so he's got fans ready. And for my last line I want to write: "Teacher Wang, I will always remember the sight of you walking away."

editor lin 很好，这句话让人感叹。趁早写好，那天就尽情享受吧。

hěn hǎo zhè jù huà ràng rén gǎntàn chènzǎo xiě hǎo nà tiān jiù jìnqíng xiǎngshòu ba · Lovely: that line will move people. Finish it early, and on the day, just enjoy yourself.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

粹
cuì
unmixed

冗
rǒng
superfluous

good to know · 简短 short, 简洁 concise, 简要 brief and to the point, 简易 simple and basic: all start with 简 "simple". Readings to watch: 闷 mēn (muggy, stuffy) vs mèn (bored); 晃 huǎng (flash, dazzle) vs huàng (sway); 薄 bó in 单薄.

You can now cut a long draft down to three good minutes, and turn a memory into a picture.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 189 breaking down

Talk about things breaking, wearing out, stalling and being saved, and recycle mood adverbs (偏偏, 幸亏, 索性, 不妨, 难怪) and carrying on without repeating the subject.

Things go wrong, and Chinese has a precise verb for every kind of breakdown, from a cracked cup to a computer crash to a shattered dream.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
崩溃	bēngkuì	to collapse; to break down	电脑突然崩溃了，文件都打不开了。 The computer suddenly crashed, and none of the files will open.
瓦解	wǎjiě	to disintegrate, collapse	工厂关门以后，那个夜校也慢慢瓦解了。 After the factory closed, its night school slowly fell apart.
解体	jiětǐ	to break up, disintegrate	那家老工厂八十年代就解体了。 That old factory broke up back in the eighties.
垮	kuǎ	to collapse; to break down	树枝掉下来，把桌子砸垮了。 The branch came down and smashed the table.
塌	tā	to collapse, cave in	后面的旧墙塌了一块。 Part of the old wall at the back has collapsed.
倾倒	qīngdǎo	to topple, collapse; to pour out	那面墙好像要往外倾倒。 That wall looks as if it's about to topple outwards.
断裂	duànliè	to break, snap	大风把一根树枝吹得断裂了。 The wind snapped off a branch.
裂	liè	to split, crack	杯子掉在地上，裂了。 The cup fell on the floor and cracked.
破碎	pòsuì	broken, smashed to pieces	地上全是破碎的玻璃。 The floor is covered in broken glass.
破灭	pòmiè	to be shattered (hopes, dreams)	他的梦想破灭了。 His dream was shattered.
毁	huǐ	to ruin, destroy	大雨把花园全毁了。 The heavy rain completely ruined the garden.
毁坏	huǐhuài	to damage	这场大风毁坏了很多房子。 The gale damaged many houses.
毁灭	huǐmiè	to destroy completely	一场大火毁灭了这座古城。 A great fire destroyed the old city completely.
摧残	cuīcán	to wreck, devastate	大风大雨摧残了院子里的花。 The wind and rain battered the flowers in the courtyard.
糟蹋	zāotà	to waste, spoil	别糟蹋粮食。 Don't waste food.
磨损	mósǔn	to wear out, abrade	这双鞋已经磨损得很厉害了。 These shoes are very worn.

报废	bàofèi	to scrap, write off	这台打印机已经报废了，不能修了。 This printer has been written off: it can't be repaired.
作废	zuòfèi	to be void, invalid	这张票已经作废了。 This ticket is no longer valid.
失效	shīxiào	to lose effect, expire	这种药已经失效了，不能吃了。 This medicine has expired: don't take it.
残	cán	damaged, incomplete	那面墙残了一半。 Half of that wall has crumbled.
残留	cánliú	to remain, be left over	衣服上还残留着一点儿墨水。 There's still a trace of ink on the clothes.
腐朽	fǔxiǔ	rotten, decayed	木头的窗户都腐朽了。 The wooden windows have all rotted.
老化	lǎohuà	to age, deteriorate	这栋老楼的电线已经老化了。 The wiring in this old building has deteriorated.
僵化	jiānghuà	rigid, ossified	年纪大了，思想不能僵化。 Getting older doesn't mean your thinking has to set in stone.
固化	gùhuà	to solidify, become fixed	学习方法一旦固化，就很难改。 Once your study habits harden, they're hard to change.
停滞	tíngzhì	to stagnate	那几年，经济发展停滞了。 In those years, economic growth stagnated.
停顿	tíngdùn	to pause, halt	他说到一半，停顿了一下。 Halfway through, he paused.
滞后	zhìhòu	to lag behind	这个地方的教育有点儿滞后。 Education in this area lags a little behind.
迟缓	chíhuǎn	slow, sluggish	工程的进度有点儿迟缓。 Progress on the project is a bit slow.
搁浅	gēqiǎn	to run aground; to be stalled	因为没有钱，这个计划搁浅了。 The plan has stalled for lack of money.
搁置	gēzhì	to shelve, put aside	这件事|先搁置一下，以后再说。 Let's put this aside for now and come back to it later.
闲置	xiánzhì	to lie idle, be unused	仓库里有一台旧电视，闲置了十年。 There's an old television in the storeroom that has sat unused for ten years.
埋没	máimò	to bury, stifle (talent)	很多有才华的人被埋没了。 Many talented people never got their chance.
抹杀	mǒshā	to obliterate, deny	他的功劳不能被抹杀。 His contribution must not be written off.
销毁	xiāohuǐ	to destroy (documents, goods)	这些旧文件按规定要销毁。 These old documents must be destroyed according to the rules.

pattern review: mood adverbs (偏偏, 幸亏, 索性, 不妨, 难怪) and carrying on without the subject

mood adverb **what happened** **, (no subject) what followed**

Mood adverbs (day 29) show how you feel about what happened: 偏偏 “of all times”, 幸亏 / 好在 “luckily”, 索性 “might as well”, 不妨 “why not”, 难怪 “no wonder”, 何必 “why bother”. And from day 170: once the subject is named, carry on without it: 树枝断了，掉下来，砸垮了桌子.

一根树枝被风吹断了，掉下来，砸垮了两张桌子。 **yì gēn shù zhī bèi fēng chuī duàn le diào xialai zá kuǎ le liǎng zhāng zhuōzi** A branch was snapped off by the wind, came down and smashed two tables.

电脑偏偏在这个时候崩溃了。 **diànnǎo piānpiān zài zhège shíhou bēngkuì le** Of all times, the computer had to crash now.

幸亏文件有备份，不然就全毁了。 **xìngkuī wénjiàn yǒu bèifèn bùrán jiù quán huǐ le** Luckily the files were backed up, or everything would have been lost.

打印机报废了，我们索性去外面打印吧。 **dǎyìnjī bàofèi le wǒmen suǒxìng qù wàimiàn dǎyìn ba** The printer’s dead: we might as well go and print somewhere else.

dialogue the morning after the storm

little sister 我快崩溃了！昨天晚上的大风大雨来得很迅猛，偏偏在告别会的前一天来了。
wǒ kuài bēngkuì le zuótiān wǎnshang de dà fēng dà yǔ lái de hěn xùnměng piānpiān zài gàobié huì de qián yì tiān lái le · I'm about to lose it! Last night's storm came on so fast, and it had to come the day before the farewell party, of all days.

xiaoming 昨天晚上的风太猛烈了。那棵老树断裂了一根大树枝，掉下来，把两张桌子砸垮了。
zuótiān wǎnshang de fēng tài měngliè le nà kē lǎo shù duànliè le yì gēn dà shù zhī diào xialai bǎ liǎng zhāng zhuōzi zá kuǎ le · Last night's wind was ferocious. A big branch snapped off the old tree, came down and smashed two tables.

anna 后面那面旧墙也被强劲的大风毁坏了，塌了一块，剩下的残了一半，好像要往外倾倒。木头的窗户都腐朽了，玻璃也裂了，地上全是破碎的玻璃。
hòumiàn nà miàn jiù qiáng yě bèi qiángjìng de dà fēng huǐhuài le tā le yí kuài shèng xià de cán le yíbàn hǎoxiàng yào wǎng wài qīngdǎo mùtou de chuānghu dōu fǔxiǔ le bōli yě liè le dì shàng quán shì pòsuì de bōli · The strong wind has damaged the old wall at the back too: part of it has collapsed, and what's left is half crumbled and looks ready to topple outwards. The wooden windows have rotted, the glass has cracked, and the ground is covered in broken glass.

xiaoming 窗户先用木头钉住，免得玻璃掉下来伤人。
chuānghu xiān yòng mùtou dìng zhù miǎnde bōli diào xialai shāng rén · Let's nail some wood over the windows first, so the glass doesn't fall and hurt anyone.

professor chen 幸亏是晚上，没有人受伤。那面墙务必不要靠近。
xìngkuī shì wǎnshang méiyǒu rén shòushāng nà miàn qiáng wùbì búyào kàojìn · Luckily it was at night and nobody was hurt. Whatever you do, keep away from that wall.

little sister 还有更糟的：我的电脑也崩溃了，纪念册的文件差点儿全毁了！
hái yǒu gèng zāo de wǒ de diànnǎo yě bēngkuì le jìniàn cè de wénjiàn chàdiǎnr quán huǐ le · And it gets worse: my computer crashed too, and the album files were nearly all lost!

anna 那怎么办？我们的计划要搁浅了吗？
nà zěnme bàn wǒmen de jìhuà yào gēqiǎn le ma · So what now? Is our plan dead in the water?

little sister 好在我有备份。可是打印机也坏了，修理的人说已经报废了。
hǎozài wǒ yǒu bèifèn kěshì dǎyìnjī yě huài le xiūlǐ de rén shuō yǐjīng bàofèi le · Luckily I have a backup. But the printer's broken too: the repair man says it's a write-off.

anna 有备份就好，文件都能复原。打印机坏了不要紧。
yǒu bèifèn jiù hǎo wénjiàn dōu néng fùyuán dǎyìnjī huài le búyàojǐn · Thank goodness for the backup: the files can all be restored. The printer doesn't matter.

xiaoming 何必修呢？我们索性去外面打印。仓库里那台旧电视闲置了十年，也该报废了。
hébì xiū ne wǒmen suǒxìng qù wàimiàn dǎyìn cāngkù lǐ nà tái jiù diànshì xiánzhì le shí nián yě gāi bàofèi le · Why bother repairing it? We might as well print somewhere else. And that old TV in the storeroom has sat unused for ten years: it should go too.

professor chen 难怪新校长说，这栋老楼的电线老化了，下个月要大修。
nánguài xīn xiàozhǎng shuō zhè dòng lǎo lóu de diànxiàn lǎohuà le xià gè yuè yào dà xiū · No wonder the new head says the wiring in this old building has deteriorated and needs a major overhaul next month.

anna 大修？是不是要拆了？那王老师二十年的心血不就毁灭了吗？
dà xiū shì bu shì yào chāi le nà Wánglǎoshī èrshí nián de xīnxuè bú jiù huǐmiè le ma · An overhaul? Are they going to knock it down? Wouldn't that destroy twenty years of Teacher Wang's work?

professor chen 不会。新校长说，老礼堂要保护，只是修。过去的东西不能都抹杀。八十年代很多工厂解体，夜校也慢慢瓦解了，很多有才华的工人被埋没了。王老师的学校让夜校的精神活了下来。
bú huì xīn xiàozhǎng shuō lǎo lǐtáng yào bǎohù zhǐshì xiū guòqù de dōngxi bù néng dōu mǒshā bāshí niándài hěn duō gōngchǎng jiětǐ yèxiào yě màn màn wǎjiě le hěn duō yǒu cáihuá de gōngrén bèi máimò le Wánglǎoshī de xuéxiào ràng yèxiào de jīngshén huó le xialai · No. The new head says the old hall will be protected, only repaired. You can't just wipe out the past. In the eighties many factories broke up, the night schools slowly fell

apart, and a lot of talented workers never got their chance. Teacher Wang's school kept the night schools' spirit alive.

xiaoming 大修也不会停顿，只是进度可能迟缓一点儿。学校的发展不会停滞，也不会滞后。
dà xiū yě bú huì tíngdùn zhǐshì jìndù kěnéng chíhuǎn yìdiǎnr xuéxiào de fāzhǎn bú huì tíngzhì yě bú huì zhìhòu · The work won't stop, either; progress might just be a bit slow. The school won't stand still, and it won't fall behind.

little sister 我在仓库里还找到一堆旧作业本和作废的学生证，按规定要销毁吗？
wǒ zài cāngkù lǐ hái zhǎo dào yì duī jiù zuòyè běn hé zuòfèi de xuéshēng zhèng àn guīdìng yào xiāohuǐ ma · I found a pile of old exercise books and expired student cards in the storeroom too. Do they have to be destroyed by the rules?

professor chen 学生证早就失效了，可以销毁。不过作业本上残留着很多老学生的字迹，你们不妨留几本，放进纪念册。
xuéshēng zhèng zǎo jiù shīxiào le kěyǐ xiāohuǐ búguò zuòyè běn shàng cánliú zhe hěn duō lǎo xuéshēng de zìjì nǐmen bùfáng liú jǐ běn fàng jìn jìniàn cè · The student cards expired long ago, so yes. But the exercise books still carry so much of the old students' handwriting: why not keep a few for the album?

anna 好主意！这事就这么定了。至于墙怎么修，先搁置一下，交给新校长。
hǎo zhǔyi zhè shì jiù zhème dìng le zhìyú qiáng zěnme xiū xiān gēzhì yíxià jiāo gěi xīn xiàozhǎng · Great idea! That's settled, then. As for how to fix the wall, let's put that aside for now and leave it to the new head.

xiaoming 院子里的花都被大风大雨摧残了。别糟蹋了，捡起来，还能插在瓶子里。桌子腿也磨损得很厉害，正好换新的。
yuànzi lǐ de huā dōu bèi dà fēng dà yǔ cuīcán le bié zāotà le jiǎn qǐlai hái néng chā zài píngzi lǐ zhuōzi tuǐ yě mósǔn de hěn lìhai zhènghǎo huàn xīn de · The storm has battered all the flowers in the courtyard. Don't waste them: pick them up and they'll still do in a vase. And the table legs were badly worn anyway: now we can get new ones.

little sister 地上的泥水我来扫，小心别溅到身上。我刚才以为一切都破灭了，现在反倒觉得，有点儿乱也好，像生活一样。
dì shàng de ní shuǐ wǒ lái sǎo xiǎoxīn bié jiàn dào shēn shàng wǒ gāngcái yǐwéi yíqiè dōu pòmiè le xiànzài fǎndào juéde yǒudiǎnr luàn yěhǎo xiàng shēnghuó yíyàng · I'll sweep up the mud: careful it doesn't splash on you. A minute ago I thought everything was ruined. Now, if anything, I think a bit of mess is fine: it's like life.

professor chen 说得好。人和学校一样，最怕的不是老，是思想僵化、固化。王老师就从来不这样。
shuō de hǎo rén hé xuéxiào yíyàng zuì pà de bú shì lǎo shì sīxiǎng jiānghuà gùhuà Wánglǎoshī jiù cónglái bú zhèyàng · Well said. People are like schools: the worst thing isn't growing old, it's letting your thinking set in stone. Teacher Wang has never been like that.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

垮
kuǎ
to collapse; to break down

崩
bēng
collapse

good to know · 崩溃 started as a word for armies and economies collapsing; today everyone uses it for a computer crash and for feeling overwhelmed: 我要崩溃了！ Readings: 埋没 máimò (没 mò, not méi); 磨损 mósǔn; 倾倒 qīngdǎo (topple) vs qīngdào (pour out).

You can now describe anything breaking down in Chinese, and, with 幸亏 and 好在, how you saved the day.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 190 eyes, faces and fists

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Describe how people look, glance, stare, grin and touch, and how a dog sniffs, licks and struggles, and recycle 无论如何, 归根到底 and 总的来说.

A story comes alive in its gestures: a glance, a grin, a hug. Chinese has a single verb for each, and you will meet them in every novel and film.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
瞅	chǒu	to look, have a look (northern)	你瞅瞅，这是谁来了? Look, who's this?
盯	dīng	to stare at, keep an eye on	他一直盯着手机。 He keeps staring at his phone.
瞪	dèng	to glare, stare (wide-eyed)	别瞪我，又不是我的错! Don't glare at me: it isn't my fault!
眯	mī	to narrow one's eyes, squint	她眯着眼睛笑了。 She smiled with her eyes crinkling up.
眨眼	zhǎyǎn	to blink; in a blink	一眨眼，孩子就长大了。 In the blink of an eye, the children have grown up.
凝视	níngshì	to gaze at	她久久地凝视着那张老照片。 She gazed at the old photo for a long time.
注视	zhùshì	to watch closely	大家都注视着台上的人。 Everyone watched the person on stage closely.
直视	zhíshì	to look straight at	她总是直视你的眼睛，认真听你说话。 She always looks you in the eye and really listens.
仰望	yǎngwàng	to look up at; to look up to	我们躺在草地上，仰望天空。 We lie on the grass, looking up at the sky.
俯视	fǔshì	to look down at; to look down on	从山上俯视，整个城市都在眼前。 Looking down from the hill, the whole city lies before you.
俯首	fǔshǒu	to bow one's head; to submit	在困难面前，她从来不俯首。 She has never bowed her head to hardship.
眺望	tiàowàng	to look into the distance	站在楼上，可以眺望远处的山。 From upstairs you can see the hills far away.
打量	dǎliang	to size up, look someone up and down	她上下打量了我一下。 She looked me up and down.
察看	chákàn	to inspect, look into	工人来察看昨天被风毁坏的墙。 The workers came to inspect the wall damaged by the wind yesterday.
目睹	mùdǔ	to witness	他亲眼目睹了那次事故。 He witnessed the accident with his own eyes.

视线	shìxiàn	line of sight; view	大树挡住了我的视线。 The big tree blocks my view.
眼色	yǎnsè	meaningful glance, wink	他给我使了个眼色，让我别说话。 He gave me a look that told me to keep quiet.
眼神	yǎnshén	look in someone's eyes, expression	她的眼神里全是笑。 Her eyes were full of laughter.
扭头	niǔtóu	to turn one's head	她扭头看了我一眼。 She turned her head and glanced at me.
咧嘴	liězuǐ	to grin	他咧嘴一笑。 He broke into a grin.
叼	diāo	to hold in the mouth	大白叼着一个包子跑了。 Dabai ran off with a bun in his mouth.
舔	tiǎn	to lick	小狗舔了舔我的手。 The puppy licked my hand.
嗅	xiù	to sniff, smell	大白在桌子下面嗅来嗅去。 Dabai is sniffing about under the table.
搂	lǒu	to hug, hold in one's arms	妈妈把孩子搂在怀里。 The mother held the child in her arms.
抚摸	fǔmō	to stroke, caress	她轻轻地抚摸着狗的头。 She gently stroked the dog's head.
触摸	chùmō	to touch	请不要触摸这些画。 Please don't touch these paintings.
蹭	cèng	to rub against	小猫在我腿上蹭来蹭去。 The kitten keeps rubbing against my leg.
巴掌	bāzhang	palm, hand; slap	大家拍着巴掌唱歌。 Everyone clapped and sang.
耳光	ěrguāng	slap in the face	戏里那一个耳光，其实只是做做样子。 That slap in the play is just pretend.
拳头	quántóu	fist	他握紧拳头，给自己加油。 He clenched his fists to psych himself up.
揍	zòu	to beat up, hit	小时候，他说谁欺负妹妹，他就揍谁。 As a boy, he said he'd thump anyone who picked on his sister.
踹	chuài	to kick	孩子睡觉总是踹被子。 The child always kicks off the quilt in his sleep.
搏斗	bódòu	to fight, struggle	大白和一只猫在院子里“搏斗”了半天。 Dabai had a long “fight” with a cat in the courtyard.
挣扎	zhēngzhá	to struggle	大白挣扎着|想跑出去。 Dabai struggled to get away.
捕捉	bǔzhuō	to catch, capture	她用相机捕捉到了那个美好的瞬间。 She caught that lovely moment on camera.

pattern review: 无论如何, 归根到底 and 总的来说

无论如何 / 归根到底 / 总的来说 **，what you insist on, the root, or the overall view**

Three markers to frame what you say: 无论如何 “whatever happens” before something you insist on; 归根到底 “at root, in the end” for the real reason; 总的来说 “on the whole” for an overall view.

无论如何，明天以前不能让王老师知道。 **wúlùn rúhé míngtiān yǐqián bù néng ràng Wánglǎoshī zhīdào** Whatever happens, Teacher Wang mustn’t find out before tomorrow.

我们准备了这么多，归根到底，是想说一句谢谢。 **wǒmen zhǔnbèi le zhème duō guīgēn dàodǐ shì xiǎng shuō yí jù xièxie** We’ve prepared all this, but at root, we just want to say thank you.

还有一点儿小问题，总的来说，准备得差不多了。 **hái yǒuyìdiǎnr xiǎo wèntí zǒng de lái shuō zhǔnbèi de chàbuduō le** There are still a few small problems, but on the whole we’re just about ready.

dialogue footsteps in the courtyard

xiaoming 大家注意，最后一件事：挂灯。我把大白也带来了，用绳子拴在门口，它可以帮我们看门。

dàjiā zhùyì zuìhòu yí jiàn shì guà dēng wǒ bǎ Dàbái yě dài lái le yòng shéngzi shuān zài ménkǒu tā kěyǐ bāng wǒmen kàn mén · Listen up, one last job: hanging the lights. And I've brought Dabai: I've tied him up by the gate so he can guard it for us.

little sister 它能看什么门？你瞅瞅，它正在桌子下面嗅来嗅去，一直盯着那盘包子。

tā néng kàn shénme mén nǐ chǒu chou tā zhèngzài zhuōzi xiàmiàn xiù lái xiù qù yìzhí dīng zhe nà pán bāozi · Guard the gate? Look at him: sniffing about under the table, staring at that plate of buns.

anna 大白，别动！……它叼着一个包子跑了！

Dàbái bié dòng tā diāo zhe yí gè bāozi pǎo le · Dabai, stay! ...He's run off with a bun in his mouth!

xiaoming 大白，回来！（搂住大白）别挣扎了！上次它跟一只猫在院子里“搏斗”了半天，还把椅子踹倒了。

Dàbái huílái lǒu zhù Dàbái bié zhēngzhá le shàng cì tā gēn yì zhī māo zài yuànzi lǐ bódòu le bàntiān hái bǎ yǐzi chuài dǎo le · Dabai, come back! (grabbing him) Stop wriggling! Last time he had a great "fight" with a cat in the courtyard and kicked a chair over.

anna 大白最热衷的就是吃。

Dàbái zuì rèzhōng de jiùshì chī · What Dabai loves most is eating.

little sister 哥哥，别瞪我，又不是我带它来的。无论如何，明天以前不能让王老师知道。……等等，外面有动静！我听见脚步声了！是王老师！

gēge bié dèng wǒ yòu bú shì wǒ dài tā lái de wúlùn rúhé míngtiān yǐqián bù néng ràng Wánglǎoshī zhīdào děng deng wàimiàn yǒu dòngjing wǒ tīngjiàn jiǎobù shēng le shì Wánglǎoshī · Don't glare at me, brother: I didn't bring him. Whatever happens, Teacher Wang mustn't find out before tomorrow. ...Wait, there's something outside! I can hear footsteps! It's Teacher Wang!

anna （小声）快藏起来！脚步声越来越急促了！小明在给我使眼色呢，我们在桌子后面注视着她。

xiǎo shēng kuài cáng qǐlai jiǎobù shēng yuè lái yuè jícù le Xiǎomíng zài gěi wǒ shǐ yǎnsè ne wǒmen zài zhuōzi hòumiàn zhùshì zhe tā · (whispering) Quick, hide! The footsteps are getting faster! Xiaoming's giving me a look. We're watching her from behind the table.

teacher wang 哎？院子里怎么摆了这么多桌子？（眯着眼睛，上下打量着院子）谁在那儿？

āi yuànzi lǐ zěnme bǎi le zhème duō zhuōzi mī zhe yǎnjing shàngxià dǎliang zhe yuànzi shéi zài nàr · Hm? Why are there so many tables in the courtyard? (narrowing her eyes and looking the courtyard up and down) Who's there?

xiaoming （小声）糟了，大白跑过去了！它在蹭王老师的腿，还舔她的手！

xiǎo shēng zāo le Dàbái pǎo guoqu le tā zài cèng Wánglǎoshī de tuǐ hái tiǎn tā de shǒu · (whispering) Oh no, Dabai's run over! He's rubbing against her legs and licking her hand!

teacher wang 大白？你怎么在这儿？（抚摸着大白的头）你的主人呢？

Dàbái nǐ zěnme zài zhèr fǔmō zhe Dàbái de tóu nǐ de zhǔrén ne · Dabai? What are you doing here? (stroking his head) Where's your owner?

little sister （小声）王老师一向偏爱大白。

xiǎo shēng Wánglǎoshī yíxiàng piānài Dàbái · (whispering) Teacher Wang has always had a soft spot for Dabai.

anna 王老师！是我……我们来察看一下昨天被大风毁坏的墙。

Wánglǎoshī shì wǒ wǒmen lái chákàn yíxià zuótiān bèi dà fēng huǐhuài de qiáng · Teacher Wang! It's me... We came to inspect the wall the wind damaged yesterday.

teacher wang （轻轻触摸着墙上的砖）是吗？那桌子上的花，也是来察看墙的？

qīng qīng chùmō zhe qiáng shàng de zhuān shì ma nà zhuōzi shàng de huā yě shì lái chákàn qiáng de · (gently touching the bricks) Oh yes? And the flowers on the tables: have they come to inspect the wall too?

little sister 那是……捡回来的花，不能糟蹋。

nà shì jiǎn huilai de huā bù néng zāotà · That's... flowers we picked up. We couldn't let them go to waste.

teacher wang （咧嘴一笑）好吧，我什么也没目睹。年纪大了，视线不好。（扭头就走）明天见！
liězuǐ yí xiào hǎo ba wǒ shénme yě méi mùdǔ niánjì dà le shìxiàn bù hǎo niǔtóu jiù zǒu míngtiān jiàn · (with a grin) All right, I didn't witness a thing. I'm getting old, my eyesight isn't what it was. (turning away) See you tomorrow!

anna 她走了，院子里又安静下来了。
tā zǒu le yuànzi lǐ yòu ānjìng xialai le · She's gone. The courtyard is quiet again.

xiaoming 她是不是知道了？
tā shì bu shì zhīdào le · Does she know?

anna 你看她刚才的眼神，我觉得她知道，可是不说，给我们留着惊喜。
nǐ kàn tā gāngcái de yǎnshén wǒ juéde tā zhīdào kěshì bù shuō gěi wǒmen liú zhe jīngxǐ · Did you see the look in her eyes? I think she knows, but she's not saying, so we can keep our surprise.

little sister 我用相机捕捉到了那一瞬间！你看，她扭头的时候，还对我们眨眼。
wǒ yòng xiàngjī bǔzhuō dào le nà yí shùnjiān nǐ kàn tā niǔtóu de shíhou hái duì wǒmen zhǎyǎn · I caught that moment on camera! Look: as she turned away, she even winked at us.

xiaoming 小时候有人欺负我妹妹，我握着拳头说要去揍他，是王老师拦住了我。她说：“打人一巴掌、一个耳光，都很容易，难的是说一句对不起。”
xiǎoshíhou yǒu rén qīfu wǒ mèimei wǒ wò zhe quántóu shuō yào qù zòu tā shì Wánglǎoshī lán zhù le wǒ tā shuō dǎ rén yì bāzhang yí gè ěrguāng dōu hěn róngyì nán de shì shuō yí jù duìbuqǐ · When we were small, someone picked on my sister, and I clenched my fists and said I'd thump him. Teacher Wang stopped me. She said: “A slap is easy; the hard thing is saying sorry.”

anna 她从来不俯视学生，总是直视你的眼睛，凝视着你，认真听你说话。在困难面前，她也从来不俯首。我们都仰望着她。
tā cónglái bù fǔshì xuéshēng zǒngshì zhíshì nǐ de yǎnjing níngshì zhe nǐ rènzhēn tīng nǐ shuōhuà zài kùnnan miànqián tā yě cónglái bù fǔshǒu wǒmen dōu yǎngwàng zhe tā · She never looks down on her students: she always looks you in the eye, holds your gaze and really listens. And she has never bowed her head to hardship. We all look up to her.

little sister 归根到底，我们准备这么多，就是想说一句谢谢。总的来说，准备得差不多了。你们看，站在这里，可以眺望整个院子，灯就挂在这儿，用绳子绑在树上！
guīgēn dàodǐ wǒmen zhǔnbèi zhème duō jiùshì xiǎng shuō yí jù xièxie zǒng de lái shuō zhǔnbèi de chàbuduō le nǐmen kàn zhàn zài zhèlǐ kěyǐ tiàowàng zhěnggè yuànzi dēng jiù guà zài zhèr yòng shéngzi bǎng zài shù shàng · In the end, all this is just our way of saying thank you. On the whole, we're nearly ready. Look: from here you can see the whole courtyard. The lights go here, tied to the tree with rope!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

瞅 chǒu — to look, have a look (northern)

盯 dīng — to stare at, keep an eye on

眯 mī — to narrow one's eyes, squint

叼
diāo
to hold in the mouth

舔
tiǎn
to lick

搂
lǒu
to hug, hold in one's arms

蹭
cèng
to rub against

揍
zòu
to beat up, hit

good to know · Ways of looking: 看 look, 瞅 look (northern), 盯 stare at, 瞪 glare, 眯 squint, 凝视 gaze, 注视 watch closely, 打量 size up, 眺望 look into the distance. 使眼色 is the silent "look" that says "don't say anything" or "let's go". Every Chinese child knows their mother's.

You can now tell a scene through glances, grins and gestures, the way a good storyteller does.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 191 mission: the farewell party

Chinese HSK 7–9 in 193 days
unit 25 · taste, talent and admiration

Follow a whole farewell party in Chinese: the surprise, the gifts, a short speech, a letter read aloud and a teacher's reply, using this unit's words for admiration, sounds, quality, detail, breakdowns and gestures, and the whole course behind them.

Saying thank you and goodbye well is one of the most human things you can do in any language. This is the last story of the course, and it is about the person who taught Anna her very first word.

chapter 1 chapter 1: the surprise

xiaoming 王老师到门口了！大家安静，别喧哗！
Wánglǎoshī dào ménkǒu le dàjiā ānjìng bié xuānhuá · Teacher Wang's at the gate! Quiet, everyone, no noise!

little sister 刚才院子里还熙熙攘攘、喧闹得像个市场，一下子就寂静了。连大白都一声不吭，盯着门口。我粗略地数了一下，来了一百多人。
gāngcái yuànzi lǐ hái xīxī rǎngrǎng xuānnào de xiàng gè shìchǎng yíxià zi jiù jìjìng le lián Dàbái dōu yìshēng bùkēng dīng zhe ménkǒu wǒ cūlüè de shǔ le yíxià lái le yìbǎi duō rén · A minute ago the courtyard was packed and as noisy as a market, and now it's silent. Even Dabai hasn't made a sound: he's staring at the gate. I did a rough count: over a hundred people have come.

teacher wang （走进院子，愣住了）这……这是怎么回事？我扭头一看，院子里全是人！
zǒu jìn yuànzi lèng zhù le zhè zhè shì zěnme huí shì wǒ niǔtóu yí kàn yuànzi lǐ quán shì rén · (walking into the courtyard and stopping short) What… what's all this? I turn round, and the whole courtyard is full of people!

anna 王老师，欢迎您！今天不是简单的晚饭，是您的告别会。您教过的一百多个学生都来了！
Wánglǎoshī huānyíng nín jīntiān bú shì jiǎndān de wǎnfàn shì nín de gàobié huì nín jiāo guo de yìbǎi duō gè xuéshēng dōu lái le · Welcome, Teacher Wang! This isn't a simple dinner: it's your farewell party. Over a hundred of your former students are here!

teacher wang （眯着眼睛，看了看大家，咧嘴笑了）我昨天就猜到了。你们昨天晚上来察看墙的时候，我什么都目睹了。我的视线不好，可是你们给我使的眼色，我看得清清楚楚。
mī zhe yǎnjing kàn le kan dàjiā liězuǐ xiào le wǒ zuótiān jiù cāi dào le nǐmen zuótiān wǎn shanglai chákàn qiáng de shíhou wǒ shénme dōu mùdǔ le wǒ de shìxiàn bù hǎo kěshì nǐmen gěi wǒ shǐ de yǎnsè wǒ kàn de qīngqīngchuchu · (narrowing her eyes, looking round at everyone, then grinning) I guessed yesterday. When you came to "inspect the wall" last night, I saw everything. My eyesight isn't good, but I could see those looks you were giving each other perfectly well.

xiaoming 哈哈，我们就知道！大白，别蹭了！它又在舔王老师的手。
hā hā wǒmen jiù zhīdào Dàbái bié cèng le tā yòu zài tiǎn Wánglǎoshī de shǒu · Ha, we knew it! Dabai, stop rubbing against her! He's licking Teacher Wang's hand again.

dr li 王老师，我们全家都要谢谢您：两个孩子小时候都在您这儿上过课。
Wánglǎoshī wǒmen quán jiā dōu yào xièxie nín liǎng gè háizi xiǎoshíhou dōu zài nín zhèr shàng guo kè · Teacher Wang, our whole family wants to thank you: both our children took classes with you when they were little.

teacher wang （上下打量着小明）我记得！小明那时候总在课上画画，画的老师一点儿也不像我，丑陋得很！
shàngxià dǎliang zhe Xiǎomíng wǒ jìde Xiǎomíng nà shíhou zǒng zài kè shàng huà huà huà de lǎoshī yìdiǎnr yě bú xiàng wǒ chǒulòu de hěn · (looking Xiaoming up and down) I remember! Xiaoming was always drawing in class, and the teachers he drew looked nothing like me: hideous, every one!

ms zhang 外面街上很嘈杂，汽车轰轰地开过去，喇叭声很刺耳；可是一进院子，就清静了。这里真僻静，真宜人。门口的停车标识也做得很好，地图上标示得清清楚楚。
wàimiàn jiē shàng hěn cáozá qìchē hōng hōng de kāi guoqu lǎba shēng hěn cìěr kěshì yí jìn yuànzi jiù qīngjìng le zhèlǐ zhēn pìjìng zhēn yírén ménkǒu de tíngchē biāoshí yě zuò de hěn hǎo dìtú shàng biāoshì de qīngqīngchuchu · The street outside is so noisy, with cars roaring by and ear-splitting horns; but step into the courtyard and it's all peace and quiet. It's so secluded here, so pleasant. And the parking signs at the gate are great: the map shows everything clearly.

dr zhou 前天的雨来得那么迅猛，风那么强劲，威力那么大，大树还断裂了一根树枝，花也被摧残了，差点儿把告别会毁了。中午太阳火辣辣的，地面很灼热，现在终于凉快了。
qiántiān de yǔ lái de nàme xùnměng fēng nàme qiángjìng wēilì nàme dà dà shù hái duànliè le yì gēn shù zhī huā yě bèi cuīcán le chàdiǎnr bǎ gàobié huì huǐ le zhōngwǔ tàiyáng huǒlàlà de dìmiàn hěn zhuórè xiànzài zhōngyú liángkuai le · The storm the day before yesterday came in so fast, the wind was so strong and so powerful: it snapped a branch off the big tree and battered the flowers, and nearly ruined the party. At midday today the sun was scorching and the ground was burning hot, but now at last it's cool.

teacher wang	灯光这么柔和，鸟叫声这么清脆，风徐徐吹来，一点儿也不闷，气氛这么祥和，比我想象的更好。 **dēngguāng zhème róuhé niǎo jiào shēng zhème qīngcuì fēng xúxú chuī lái yìdiǎnr yě bù mēn qìfēn zhème xiánghé bǐ wǒ xiǎngxiàng de gèng hǎo** · The lights are so soft, the birdsong so clear, the breeze so gentle, it isn't muggy at all, and the atmosphere is so peaceful: it's even better than I imagined.

chapter 2 chapter 2: the gifts

xiaoming 王老师，这是我们送您的第一件礼物：一支老钢笔，酷似您妈妈当年用的那一支。旧货市场的东西形形色色，真东西难得一见，假的随处可见，做得很拙劣，价格也很悬殊。我们找了好久。

Wánglǎoshī zhè shì wǒmen sòng nín de dì yī jiàn lǐwù yì zhī lǎo gāngbǐ kùsì nín māma dāngnián yòng de nà yì zhī jiù huò shìchǎng de dōngxi xíngxíngsèsè zhēn dōngxi nándé yí jiàn jiǎ de suíchù kě jiàn zuò de hěn zhuōliè jiàgé yě hěn xuánshū wǒmen zhǎo le hǎojiǔ · Teacher Wang, here's our first present: an old fountain pen, just like the one your mother used. The second-hand market has every kind of thing, but genuine old pieces are rare, while clumsy fakes are everywhere, and the prices are worlds apart. It took us ages to find.

teacher wang （凝视着钢笔，轻轻抚摸着）这么精巧……上面的花纹真精细。这儿有一点儿瑕疵，跟我妈妈那支一模一样！这件礼物太不寻常了。

níngshì zhe gāngbǐ qīng qīng fǔmō zhe zhème jīngqiǎo shàngmiàn de huāwén zhēn jīngxì zhèr yǒuyìdiǎnr xiácī gēn wǒ māma nà zhī yìmú yíyàng zhè jiàn lǐwù tài bù xúncháng le · (gazing at the pen, stroking it gently) So exquisite… and the pattern is so fine. There's a little flaw just here, exactly like my mother's! This is no ordinary present.

little sister 第二件礼物是这本纪念册。首先是老照片，其次是大家的信，最后是您说过的话。信太多了，海量的，加起来很可观，我们只选了其中的精华。为了保密，困难重重！

dì èr jiàn lǐwù shì zhè běn jìniàn cè shǒuxiān shì lǎo zhàopiàn qícì shì dàjiā de xìn zuìhòu shì nín shuō guo de huà xìn tài duō le hǎiliàng de jiā qǐlai hěn kěguān wǒmen zhǐ xuǎn le qízhōng de jīnghuá wèile bǎomì kùnnan chóngchóng · The second present is this album. First the old photos, then everyone's letters, and last the things you've said. There were a mountain of letters, quite a pile all together, so we only chose the best. Keeping it secret was one problem after another!

teacher wang （触摸着纪念册上的照片）这个字写得这么工整，是谁？那个字这么潦草，一看就是小明！

chùmō zhe jìniàn cè shàng de zhàopiàn zhège zì xiě de zhème gōngzhěng shì shéi nàge zì zhème liáocǎo yí kàn jiùshì Xiǎomíng · (touching the photos in the album) Who wrote this so neatly? And this scrawl: that's Xiaoming, I'd know it anywhere!

xiaoming 被您认出来了！

bèi nín rèn chulai le · You've found me out!

teacher wang 还有这封信，说我二十年前帮他找回了一只猫？这件事太离奇了……我想起来了！我一向怕猫，那天很反常，也很怪异：那个孩子哭得太可怜了，我就去了。我隐约还记得那只猫的样子。

hái yǒu zhè fēng xìn shuō wǒ èrshí nián qián bāng tā zhǎo huí le yì zhī māo zhè jiàn shì tài líqí le wǒ xiǎng qǐlai le wǒ yíxiàng pà māo nà tiān hěn fǎncháng yě hěn guàiyì nàge háizi kū de tài kělián le wǒ jiù qù le wǒ yǐnyuē hái jìde nà zhī māo de yàngzi · And this letter, saying I helped him find a cat twenty years ago? How bizarre… Now I remember! I've always been scared of cats, so it was most unlike me, and very strange: but the boy was crying so pitifully that I went. I can still vaguely picture that cat.

anna 这张画也是一位老学生画的，跟您很相近，画得很逼真，很鲜活，一点儿也不比照片逊色。

zhè zhāng huà yě shì yí wèi lǎo xuéshēng huà de gēn nín hěn xiāngjìn huà de hěn bīzhēn hěn xiānhuó yìdiǎnr yě bù bǐ zhàopiàn xùnsè · And this painting is by one of your old students too: so close to you, so lifelike and so vivid, every bit as good as a photo.

teacher wang 你们这些学生，什么人都有：工程师、医生、编辑、院士。可是在我眼里，你们永远是我的学生。我以前对你们很严，可是良药苦口。我常说：学东西要精，不要多。

nǐmen zhèxiē xuéshēng shénme rén dōu yǒu gōngchéngshī yīshēng biānjí yuànshì kěshì zài wǒ yǎn lǐ nǐmen yǒngyuǎn shì wǒ de xuéshēng wǒ yǐqián duì nǐmen hěn yán kěshì liáng yào kǔ kǒu wǒ cháng shuō xué dōngxi yào jīng búyào duō · You lot are every kind of person: engineers, doctors, editors, academicians. But in my eyes, you'll always be my students. I used to be strict with you, but good medicine tastes bitter. I always said: in learning, go for depth, not quantity.

professor chen 纪念册里还夹着几页老作业本，每页都标了日期，上面有您当年用红笔做的标记。

jìniàn cè lǐ hái jiā zhe jǐ yè lǎo zuòyè běn měi yè dōu biāo le rìqī shàngmiàn yǒu nín dāngnián yòng hóng bǐ zuò

de biāojì · There are a few pages from old exercise books tucked into the album too, each one dated, with the marks you made in red pen all those years ago.

teacher wang

（沉浸在回忆里）这些作业本，我以为早就销毁了……真让人怀旧。现在有人说人工智能是万能的，可是你们这份心意，机器做不出来。准备得这么像样，你们一定花了很多心血。

chénjìn zài huíyì lǐ zhèxiē zuòyè běn wǒ yǐwéi zǎo jiù xiāohuǐ le zhēn ràng rén huáijiù xiànzài yǒu rén shuō réngōng zhìnéng shì wànnéng de kěshì nǐmen zhè fèn xīnyì jīqì zuò bu chulai zhǔnbèi de zhème xiàngyàng nǐmen yídìng huā le hěn duō xīnxuè · (lost in memories) I thought these exercise books were destroyed long ago... It makes me so nostalgic. These days some people say AI can do anything, but no machine could have done what you've done here. You've put this together so beautifully: it must have taken so much work.

chapter 3 chapter 3: three minutes

anna 王老师，各位老同学：我只讲三分钟，所以讲得简短一点儿。

Wánglǎoshī gèwèi lǎo tóngxué wǒ zhǐ jiǎng sān fēnzhōng suǒyǐ jiǎng de jiǎnduǎn yìdiǎnr · Teacher Wang, fellow students: I'm only speaking for three minutes, so I'll keep it short.

anna 十年前的一月，风冷得刺骨，我只穿了一件单薄的外套，两只手裸在外面。一走进这个院子，我就看见门口站着一个身影。那就是王老师。

shí nián qián de yī yuè fēng lěng de cìgǔ wǒ zhǐ chuān le yí jiàn dānbó de wàitào liǎng zhī shǒu luǒ zài wàimiàn yì zǒu jìn zhège yuànzi wǒ jiù kànjiàn ménkǒu zhàn zhe yí gè shēnyǐng nà jiùshì Wánglǎoshī · One January ten years ago, the wind was bitterly cold; I had on just one thin coat, and my hands were bare. As soon as I walked into this courtyard, I saw a figure standing at the door. That was Teacher Wang.

anna 她看我冻得发抖，不由得笑了，把自己的围巾给了我。围巾上有几个小斑点，是墨水留下的。那条围巾，我到现在还留着。

tā kàn wǒ dòng de fādǒu bùyóude xiào le bǎ zìjǐ de wéijīn gěi le wǒ wéijīn shàng yǒu jǐ gè xiǎo bāndiǎn shì mòshuǐ liúxia de nà tiáo wéijīn wǒ dào xiànzài hái liú zhe · Seeing me shivering, she couldn't help smiling, and gave me her own scarf. There were a few little spots on it, ink stains. I still have that scarf today.

anna 那时候，第一节课的教室很简易，墙上的砖都裸露着。我只会说一句中文："你好。"我写的第一个汉字很丑陋，她在旁边画了一个笑脸做记号。她讲得浅显，可是我的基础学得很扎实。

nà shíhou dì yī jié kè de jiàoshì hěn jiǎnyì qiáng shàng de zhuān dōu luǒlù zhe wǒ zhǐ huì shuō yí jù Zhōngwén nǐhǎo wǒ xiě de dì yī gè Hànzì hěn chǒulòu tā zài pángbiān huà le yí gè xiào liǎn zuò jìhao tā jiǎng de qiǎnxiǎn kěshì wǒ de jīchǔ xué de hěn zhāshi · Back then, the classroom for my first lesson was very basic, the bricks in the wall all bare. I could say exactly one thing in Chinese: 你好. The first character I wrote was hideous, and she drew a smiley face beside it. She explained things simply, but the foundations she gave me were solid.

anna 一晃十年，学校的面貌变了，教室里有了书的气息，这里留下了很多人的足迹。生活有时候很平淡，可是有一样东西没有变：王老师的目光，还是那么深邃，那么温暖；她的心还是那么纯粹，只想把学生教好。

yì huǎng shí nián xuéxiào de miànmào biàn le jiàoshì lǐ yǒu le shū de qìxī zhèlǐ liúxia le hěn duō rén de zújì shēnghuó yǒu shíhou hěn píngdàn kěshì yǒu yíyàng dōngxi méiyǒu biàn Wánglǎoshī de mùguāng háishi nàme shēnsuì nàme wēnnuǎn tā de xīn háishi nàme chúncuì zhǐ xiǎng bǎ xuéshēng jiāo hǎo · Ten years have flashed by. The school looks different now, the classrooms smell of books, and so many people have passed through here. Life is sometimes quiet and ordinary, but one thing hasn't changed: Teacher Wang's gaze is as deep and as warm as ever, and her heart is as pure as ever: all she wants is to teach her students well.

anna 总的来说，我想说的只有一句：王老师，您的背影，我会一直记得。谢谢您！

zǒng de lái shuō wǒ xiǎng shuō de zhǐyǒu yí jù Wánglǎoshī nín de bèiyǐng wǒ huì yìzhí jìde xièxie nín · All in all, I only want to say one thing: Teacher Wang, I will always remember you. Thank you!

editor lin （小声）简要、紧凑，可是一点儿也不笼统，一句冗长的话都没有。三分钟，一秒不多，安排得真周密。

xiǎo shēng jiǎnyào jǐncòu kěshì yìdiǎnr yě bù lǒngtǒng yí jù rǒngcháng de huà dōu méiyǒu sān fēnzhōng yì miǎo bù duō ānpái de zhēn zhōumì · (whispering) Brief and tight, but not vague at all, and not one long-winded sentence. Three minutes, not a second more: perfectly planned.

little sister （小声）你瞅瞅，王老师在擦眼泪，大家都拍起了巴掌。看这个架势，今天要聊到半夜了。

xiǎo shēng nǐ chǒu chou Wánglǎoshī zài cā yǎnlèi dàjiā dōu pāi qǐ le bāzhang kàn zhège jiàshi jīntiān yào liáo dào bànyè le · (whispering) Look at that: Teacher Wang is wiping her eyes, and everyone's clapping. From the look of things, we'll be talking till midnight.

chapter 4 chapter 4: the letter

little sister （读）“亲爱的王老师：这封信，是您一百多个学生一起写的。我们有的出身卑微，有的从小条件优越；有的学得快，有的学得慢。可是在您的课堂上，我们都是同等的。

dú qīnài de Wánglǎoshī zhè fēng xìn shì nín yìbǎi duō gè xuéshēng yìqǐ xiě de wǒmen yǒude chūshēn bēiwēi yǒude cóngxiǎo tiáojiàn yōuyuè yǒude xué de kuài yǒude xué de màn kěshì zài nín de kètáng shàng wǒmen dōu shì tóngděng de · (reading) “Dear Teacher Wang: This letter was written by more than a hundred of your students together. Some of us come from humble backgrounds, some had every advantage growing up; some learned fast, some slowly. But in your classroom, we were all equal.

little sister 您偏爱学得慢的学生，常常说：“慢一点儿没关系。”您爱惜每一本书，珍视每一个学生。您从来不俯视我们，总是直视我们的眼睛，认真听我们说话。在困难面前，您从来不俯首。

nín piānài xué de màn de xuéshēng chángcháng shuō màn yìdiǎnr méi guānxi nín àixī měi yì běn shū zhēnshì měi yí gè xuéshēng nín cónglái bù fǔshì wǒmen zǒngshì zhíshì wǒmen de yǎnjing rènzhēn tīng wǒmen shuōhuà zài kùnnan miànqián nín cónglái bù fǔshǒu · You had a soft spot for slow learners, and always said: “Slow is fine.” You cherished every book and treasured every student. You never looked down on us: you always looked us in the eye and really listened. And you never bowed your head to hardship.

little sister 您热衷教书，对汉字痴迷，可是从来不狂热；您对教书一片痴心，一点儿也不爱慕虚荣。您有很深的教育情怀，也有夜校的情结。我们有的人小时候沉迷游戏，是您让我们迷恋上了读书；有的人对汉字着迷，是您让我们陶醉在汉字的美里。您的影响是无形的，也是无穷的。

nín rèzhōng jiāo shū duì Hànzì chīmí kěshì cónglái bù kuángrè nín duì jiāo shū yí piàn chīxīn yìdiǎnr yě bú àimù xūróng nín yǒu hěn shēn de jiàoyù qínghuái yě yǒu yèxiào de qíngjié wǒmen yǒude rén xiǎoshíhou chénmí yóuxì shì nín ràng wǒmen míliàn shàng le dúshū yǒude rén duì Hànzì zháomí shì nín ràng wǒmen táozuì zài Hànzì de měi lǐ nín de yǐngxiǎng shì wúxíng de yě shì wúqióng de · You loved teaching and were passionate about characters, but never fanatical; you were utterly devoted to teaching and never cared for show. You have a deep feeling for education, and a deep attachment to the night schools. Some of us were hooked on games as children, and you got us hooked on books instead; some of us were fascinated by characters, and you helped us fall in love with their beauty. Your influence on us is invisible, and it has no end.

little sister 我们钦佩您，由衷地敬佩您，也带着一点儿敬畏；我们崇敬您，也推崇您的教学方法。今天，我们用最深切的真情，表达我们的感恩：衷心感谢您，王老师！我们也缅怀那些已经去世的老夜校老师，他们的功劳，谁也不能抹杀。

wǒmen qīnpèi nín yóuzhōng de jìngpèi nín yě dài zhe yìdiǎnr jìngwèi wǒmen chóngjìng nín yě tuīchóng nín de jiàoxué fāngfǎ jīntiān wǒmen yòng zuì shēnqiè de zhēnqíng biǎodá wǒmen de gǎnēn zhōngxīn gǎnxiè nín Wánglǎoshī wǒmen yě miǎnhuái nàxiē yǐjīng qùshì de lǎo yèxiào lǎoshī tāmen de gōngláo shéi yě bù néng mǒshā · We admire you, from the bottom of our hearts, with a little awe as well; we revere you, and we hold your way of teaching in the highest regard. Today, with our deepest and truest feelings, we want to say how grateful we are: heartfelt thanks, Teacher Wang! We also remember the old night-school teachers who are no longer with us: nobody can ever wipe away what they did.

little sister 您的学生们敬上。”

nín de xuéshēngmen jìng shàng · Your students.”

teacher wang （把纪念册搂在怀里，一眨眼，眼泪就流下来了）你们……让我说什么好呢？

bǎ jìniàn cè lǒu zài huái lǐ yì zhǎyǎn yǎnlèi jiù liú xialai le nǐmen ràng wǒ shuō shénme hǎo ne · (holding the album to her chest; in the blink of an eye, the tears come) You… what can I say?

dr zhou 王老师，您什么都不用说。您的眼神，大家都看见了。你瞅，大家都在注视着您。

Wánglǎoshī nín shénme dōu búyòng shuō nín de yǎnshén dàjiā dōu kànjiàn le nǐ chǒu dàjiā dōu zài zhùshì zhe nín · Teacher Wang, you don’t need to say anything. We’ve all seen the look in your eyes. Look: everyone’s watching you.

xiaoming 知道您的喜好，我们还请了一位老学生唱京剧。您的书法最受学生青睐，等一会儿，请您给大家写几个字！

zhīdào nín de xǐhào wǒmen hái qǐng le yí wèi lǎo xuéshēng chàng jīngjù nín de shūfǎ zuì shòu xuéshēng

qīnglài děng yíhuìr qǐng nín gěi dàjiā xiě jǐ gè zì · We know what you love, so we've asked an old student to sing some Peking opera. And your calligraphy is everyone's favourite: in a little while, please write a few characters for us!

chapter 5 chapter 5: not goodbye

teacher wang （深情地看着大家）谢谢大家。我教了四十年书，感触很多，今天更是感慨万分。我常常感叹：时间过得真快。这栋老楼也老了：电线老化了，窗户腐朽了，玻璃破碎了，墙也塌了一块，有的地方裂了，可是它没有倾倒。

shēnqíng de kàn zhe dàjiā xièxie dàjiā wǒ jiāo le sìshí nián shū gǎnchù hěn duō jīntiān gèng shì gǎnkǎi wànfēn wǒ chángcháng gǎntàn shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài zhè dòng lǎo lóu yě lǎo le diànxiàn lǎohuà le chuānghu fǔxiǔ le bōli pòsuì le qiáng yě tā le yí kuài yǒude dìfang liè le kěshì tā méiyǒu qīngdǎo · (looking at everyone with deep affection) Thank you, everyone. I've taught for forty years and felt a great deal, and today I'm overcome. I often sigh at how fast time goes. This old building has grown old too: the wiring is worn out, the windows have rotted, the glass is broken, part of the wall has collapsed and there are cracks here and there, but it hasn't toppled.

teacher wang 这四十年，我的计划搁浅过，被搁置过；夜校瓦解过，教室闲置过，很多工人差点儿被埋没；我也跟困难搏斗过、挣扎过，差点儿崩溃过。可是学校没有垮，因为有你们。

zhè sìshí nián wǒ de jìhuà gēqiǎn guo bèi gēzhì guo yèxiào wǎjiě guo jiàoshì xiánzhì guo hěn duō gōngrén chàdiǎnr bèi máimò wǒ yě gēn kùnnan bódòu guo zhēngzhá guo chàdiǎnr bēngkuì guo kěshì xuéxiào méiyǒu kuǎ yīnwèi yǒu nǐmen · In these forty years, my plans have run aground and been shelved; the night schools fell apart, classrooms stood empty, and many workers nearly never got their chance; I've fought and struggled with hardship myself, and nearly broken down. But the school didn't collapse, because of you.

teacher wang 作业本磨损了，学生证作废了、失效了，可是你们的字迹还残留在这里。人会老，可是只要思想不僵化、不固化，教育就不会停顿，也不会滞后。我的梦想从来没有破灭。

zuòyè běn mósǔn le xuéshēng zhèng zuòfèi le shīxiào le kěshì nǐmen de zìjì hái cánliú zài zhèlǐ rén huì lǎo kěshì zhǐyào sīxiǎng bù jiānghuà bú gùhuà jiàoyù jiù bú huì tíngdùn yě bú huì zhìhòu wǒ de mèngxiǎng cónglái méiyǒu pòmiè · The exercise books are worn, the student cards have expired and are void, but your handwriting is still here. People grow old, but as long as their thinking doesn't harden and set, education never stops and never falls behind. My dream has never been shattered.

teacher wang 我很留恋这个院子，可是我不说再见。退休以后，我每个星期六晚上，在老礼堂免费上一节课，什么人都可以来，就像我妈妈当年的夜校一样。

wǒ hěn liúliàn zhège yuànzi kěshì wǒ bù shuō zàijiàn tuìxiū yǐhòu wǒ měi gè xīngqīliù wǎnshang zài lǎo lǐtáng miǎnfèi shàng yì jié kè shénme rén dōu kěyǐ lái jiù xiàng wǒ māma dāngnián de yèxiào yíyàng · I'll miss this courtyard, but I'm not saying goodbye. After I retire, every Saturday evening I'll teach a free class in the old hall, open to anyone: just like my mother's night school back then.

professor chen 好！夜校又回来了！这才叫“教人先教心”。站在这里，可以眺望整个院子，我好像看见了七十年前的夜校。

hǎo yèxiào yòu huílái le zhè cái jiào jiāo rén xiān jiāo xīn zhàn zài zhèlǐ kěyǐ tiàowàng zhěnggè yuànzi wǒ hǎoxiàng kànjiàn le qīshí nián qián de yèxiào · Wonderful! The night school is back! That's what "to teach people, first teach the heart" really means. Standing here, looking out over the whole courtyard, I can almost see the night school of seventy years ago.

teacher wang 安娜，第一节课，你来帮我教，好不好？你还记得你学的第一句中文吗？

Ānnà dì yī jié kè nǐ lái bāng wǒ jiāo hǎo bu hǎo nǐ hái jìde nǐ xué de dì yī jù Zhōngwén ma · Anna, will you help me teach the first class? Do you still remember the first thing you ever learned in Chinese?

anna 当然记得：“你好。”

dāngrán jìde nǐhǎo · Of course I do: 你好.

teacher wang 那第一节课，就由你来教“你好”。十年前，你从这句话开始；今天，你用它去帮别人开始。

nà dì yī jié kè jiù yóu nǐ lái jiāo nǐhǎo shí nián qián nǐ cóng zhè jù huà kāishǐ jīntiān nǐ yòng tā qù bāng biérén kāishǐ · Then in the first class, you'll teach 你好. Ten years ago, you started with those words; now you'll use them to help someone else start.

anna （搂住王老师）王老师，我一定去！

lǒu zhù Wánglǎoshī Wánglǎoshī wǒ yídìng qù · (hugging Teacher Wang) Teacher Wang, I'll be there!

xiaoming 我也去！我负责把大白拴在门口看门。大白，别叼包子！它又在嗅蛋糕了！

wǒ yě qù wǒ fùzé bǎ Dàbái shuān zài ménkǒu kàn mén Dàbái bié diāo bāozi tā yòu zài xiù dàngāo le · Me too! I'll be in charge of tying Dabai up at the gate to keep watch. Dabai, put that bun down! Now he's sniffing the cake!

little sister 我用相机捕捉到了这一刻！总的来说，这是我见过的最好的告别会，因为它根本不是告别。

wǒ yòng xiàngjī bǔzhuō dào le zhè yí kè zǒng de lái shuō zhè shì wǒ jiàn guo de zuìhǎo de gàobié huì yīnwèi tā gēnběn bú shì gàobié · I've caught this moment on camera! All in all, it's the best farewell party I've ever been to, because it isn't a farewell at all.

teacher wang （仰望着院子上面的星星）今天，我会常常回味的。好了，大家吃饭吧！

yǎngwàng zhe yuànzi shàngmiàn de xīngxing jīntiān wǒ huì chángcháng huíwèi de hǎo le dàjiā chī fàn ba · (looking up at the stars above the courtyard) I'll often think back on today. Right, everyone: let's eat!

You started this journey with 你好. Today you followed a whole farewell party in Chinese, every word of it. Thank you for learning with us: now go and help someone else start.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**